Cancer Immunology

A Translational Medicine Context

Nima Rezaei
Editor

Second Edition

Springer

Cancer Immunology

Nima Rezaei
Editor

Cancer Immunology

A Translational Medicine Context

Second Edition

Springer

Editor
Nima Rezaei
Research Center for Immunodeficiencies
Children's Medical Center
Pediatrics Center of Excellence
Tehran University of Medical Sciences
Tehran
Iran

Department of Immunology
School of Medicine
Tehran University of Medical Sciences
Tehran
Iran

Network of Immunity in Infection
Malignancy and Autoimmunity (NIIMA)
Universal Scientific Education and Research Network (USERN)
Tehran
Iran

ISBN 978-3-030-30844-5 ISBN 978-3-030-30845-2 (eBook)
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-30845-2

This Springer imprint is published by the registered company Springer Nature Switzerland AG
The registered company address is: Gewerbestrasse 11, 6330 Cham, Switzerland

This book would not have been possible without the continuous encouragement by my parents and my wife, Maryam.

I wish to dedicate it to my daughters, Ariana and Arnika, with the hope that progress in diagnosis and treatment of these diseases may result in improved survival and quality of life for the next generations, and at the same time that international collaboration in research will happen without barriers.

Whatever I have learnt, comes from my mentors. This book is therefore dedicated also to all of them, but most importantly to the patients and their families whose continuous support has guided me during the years.

Preface

The rapid flow of studies in the field of cancer immunology during the last decade has increased our understanding of the interactions between the immune system and cancerous cells. In particular, it is now well-known that such interactions result in the induction of epigenetic changes in cancerous cells and the selection of less immunogenic clones as well as alterations in immune responses. Understanding the cross-talk between nascent transformed cells and cells of the immune system has led to the development of combinatorial immunotherapeutic strategies to combat cancer.

Cancer Immunology series, a three-volume book series, is intended as an up-to-date, clinically relevant review of cancer immunology and immunotherapy. The first edition of the book was published 4 years ago, which was very welcomed by the readers, made us to work on the second edition of the book in such a short period of time.

Volume I, *Cancer Immunology: A Translational Medicine Context,* is focused on the immunopathology of cancers. Volume II, *Cancer Immunology: Bench to Bedside Immunotherapy of Cancers,* is a translation text explaining novel approaches in the immunotherapy of cancers; and finally, Volume III, *Cancer Immunology: Cancer Immunotherapy for Organ-Specific Tumors,* thoroughly addresses the immunopathology and immunotherapy of organ-specific cancers.

In Volume I, interactions between cancerous cells and various components of the innate and adaptive immune system are fully described. Notably, the principal focus is very much on clinical aspects, the aim being to educate clinicians on the clinical implications of the most recent findings and novel developments in the field. To meet this purpose, this volume was extended from 26 chapters in the first edition to 33 chapters in the second edition. After

an overview on cancer immunology in Chap. 1, the role of innate immunity in cancers is explained in Chaps. 2 and 3, followed by the adaptive immunity, including B-cells, T-cells, and T regulatory and Th17 cells in Chaps. 4–8. NK cells, plasmacytoid dendritic cells, CD95/CD95L signaling pathway, and MHC class I molecules are separately described in Chaps. 9–12, respectively. Cytokines and chemokine receptors are explained in Chaps. 13 and 14, respectively. Chapter 15 focuses on inflammasome in cancer. Cancer immunoediting is a subject that is explained in Chap. 16. Meanwhile, Chaps. 17 and 18 explain apoptosis and autophagy in cancers. Subsequently, Chap. 19 presents the prognostic value of innate and adaptive immunity in cancers. Immunogenetics and epigenetics are explicated in Chaps. 20–22. In addition, immunosenescence (Chap. 23), nutrition (Chap. 24), immunodeficiencies (Chap. 25), and allergies (Chap. 26) are individually described in the following chapters. Chapter 27 enlightens systems biology in cancer immunology, while immunological diagnostic tests, including immunohistochemistry, fluorescent in situ hybridization, molecular and functional imaging as well as imaging with radiolabeled monoclonal antibodies are mentioned in Chaps. 28–32. Finally, by allocating the final chapter to flow cytometry in cancer immunotherapy, Volume I comes to its end.

The *Cancer Immunology* series is the result of valuable contribution of more than 300 scientists from more than 100 well-known universities/institutes worldwide. I would like to hereby acknowledge the expertise of all contributors, for generously devoting their time and considerable effort in preparing their respective chapters. I would also like to express my gratitude to the Springer Nature publication for providing me the opportunity to publish the book.

Finally, I hope that this translational book will be comprehensible, cogent, and of special value for researchers and clinicians who wish to extend their knowledge on cancer immunology.

Tehran, Iran Nima Rezaei

Acknowledgment

I would like to express my gratitude to the editorial assistants of this book, Dr. Farnaz Delavari and Dr. Mahsa Keshavarz-Fathi. With no doubt, the book would not have been completed without their contribution.

Contents

Abbreviations

γδ T-cells	Gamma delta T-cells
ACT	Adoptive cell transfer
AICL	Activation-induced C-type lectin
ALL	Acute lymphoblastic leukemia
AML	Acute myeloid leukemia
APCs	Antigen presenting cells
BAT3	HLA-B-associated transcript 3
BCL-6	Transcription factor B-cell lymphoma 6
CAR	Chimeric antigen receptor
CLL	Chronic lymphocytic leukemia
CML	Chronic myeloid leukemia
CXCR5	CXC chemokine receptor 5
DAMPs	Damage-associated molecular patterns
DCs	Dendritic cells
GM-CSF	Granulocyte-macrophage colony-stimulating factor
HA	Hemagglutinins
HBV	Hepatitis B virus
HCC	Hepatocellular carcinoma
HIV	Human immunodeficiency virus
HMGB1	High-mobility group box 1
HN	Hemagglutinin neuraminidases
HVEM	Herpesvirus entry mediator
ICOS	Inducible co-stimulator
IFN I	Type I interferon
IFN-γ	Interferon-gamma
LIGHT	Homologous to lymphotoxin exhibits inducible expression and competes with HSV glycoprotein D for binding to herpesvirus entry mediator, a receptor expressed on T lymphocytes
MM	Multiple myeloma
NKp44L	NKp44 ligand
NKT	Natural killer T
NLR	Nod-like receptors
*n*Tregs	Natural Tregs
PAMPs	Pathogen-associated molecular patterns
PBMCs	Peripheral blood mononuclear cells
PCNA	Proliferating cell nuclear antigen

PfEMP1	Plasmodium falciparum erythrocyte membrane protein-1
RCC	Renal cell carcinoma
Tfh	Follicular helper T
Th	T-helper
TILs	Tumor-infiltrating lymphocytes
TLR	Toll-like receptors
TNF-α	Tumor necrosis factor-alpha
TNM	Tumor, node, and metastasis
Tr1 cells	IL-10-producing type 1 Tregs
Treg	Regulatory T-cells

1 Introduction on Cancer Immunology and Immunotherapy

Nima Rezaei, Seyed Hossein Aalaei-Andabili, Neda Amini, Farnaz Delavari, Mahsa Keshavarz-Fathi, and Howard L. Kaufman

Contents

N. Rezaei (✉)
Research Center for Immunodeficiencies, Children's Medical Center, Pediatrics Center of Excellence, Tehran University of Medical Sciences, Tehran, Iran

Department of Immunology, School of Medicine, Tehran University of Medical Sciences, Tehran, Iran

Network of Immunity in Infection, Malignancy and Autoimmunity (NIIMA), Universal Scientific Education and Research Network (USERN), Tehran, Iran
e-mail: rezaei_nima@tums.ac.ir

S. H. Aalaei-Andabili
Research Center for Immunodeficiencies, Children's Medical Center, Pediatrics Center of Excellence, Tehran University of Medical Sciences, Tehran, Iran

Thoracic and Cardiovascular Surgery, Department of Surgery, College of Medicine, University of Florida, Gainesville, FL, USA

Cancer Immunology Project (CIP), Universal Scientific Education and Research Network (USERN), Gainesville, FL, USA

N. Amini
Department of Surgery, Sinai Hospital, Baltimore, MD, USA

Department of Surgery, the Johns Hopkins University School of Medicine, Baltimore, MD, USA

Cancer Immunology Project (CIP), Universal Scientific Education and Research Network (USERN), Baltimore, MD, USA

F. Delavari
Interactive Research Education and Training Association (IRETA), Universal Scientific Education and Research Network (USERN), Tehran, Iran

N. Rezaei (ed.), *Cancer Immunology*, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-30845-2_1

M. Keshavarz-Fathi
Cancer Immunology Project (CIP), Universal Scientific Education and Research Network (USERN), Tehran, Iran

School of Medicine, Tehran University of Medical Sciences, Tehran, Iran

H. L. Kaufman
Department of General Surgery and Immunology and Microbiology, Rush University Medical Center, Rush University Cancer Center, Chicago, IL, USA

1.1 Introduction

Cancer is a life-threatening disease, which can involve all human organs and tissues. It is the second leading cause of death and is responsible for 25% of all deaths in the USA. It is estimated that around 1.7 million of new cases of cancer of any site will be diagnosed in 2018 in the USA, and an estimated 609,640 people will die of this disease [1]. The major cancers in adults include lung, breast, prostate, and colorectal cancer. In addition, 4613 adolescents and young adults aged 15–19 years old were diagnosed with invasive cancers. Among all invasive cancers, lymphoma was the most common cancer (20%), followed by invasive skin cancer (15%), male genital system cancer (11%), and endocrine system cancer (11%) [2]. The overall incidence of all type of cancers has been falling on average 1.1% each year over the last 10 years. In addition, death related to cancer has been decreased on average 1.5% each year over 2006–2015 [3].

Many cancer predisposing factors have been recognized; it has been found that cancer incidence is significantly associated with age from 10 to 60 years. Additionally, male gender is at higher risk of developing cancer compared to females [2]. Race is another important factor for cancer development; before 40 years of age, non-Hispanic whites and, after 40 years of age, African-Americans/blacks have the highest incidence [4]. Other risk factors include life style choices, such as tobacco use, obesity, and lack of exercise, and environmental factors, such as exposure to excessive sun, radiation during childhood, human papilloma virus (HPV), human immunodeficiency virus, and Epstein–Barr virus (EBV) infection [4].

Cancer can be a life-threatening health problem, especially when the tumor has metastasized to other organs. Its estimated number of deaths was 163.5 per 100,000 men and women per year based on 2011–2015 database of the USA. Lung and bronchus, colorectal, pancreatic, and breast cancers are responsible for approximately 50% of cancer-related deaths. Fortunately, the overall cancer-related mortality has been decreasing in recent years. Between 2011 and 2015, the death rate decreased on an average of 1.8% per year for men and 1.4% for women. Liver and intrahepatic bile duct cancer showed the greatest increase in mortality among both men and women [3].

Cancer survival significantly impacts patients' quality of life. Five-year mortality rates depend on several factors; survival is worse among males over 30 years of age, and the survival gets worse for patients over 45 years in both males and females. Non-Hispanic whites have the best survival rate and African-Americans have the worst survival with survival differences as great as 20% at 5 years after cancer diagnosis [5]. Furthermore, the type of cancer is another risk factor for patient survival. Total mortality rates vary from 6% in thyroid cancer to 97% in pancreatic cancer [6].

1.2 Cancer Immunity

Cancer immunology has been studied for a long time; however, the molecular and cellular basis of tumor immunity is not completely understood. Advances in understanding the basis of immunosurveillance and progress in the treatment of infectious disease have had a major impact on the development of tumor immunotherapy. The modern era of tumor immunology began in the 1950s when the role of T-cell responses in tissue allograft rejection was initially identified. Since then, it has been confirmed that tumors occur in association with impaired function of T-cells, indicating the importance of the immune system in the development and progression of cancer [7]. The identification of tumor-associated antigens, knowledge of effector T-cell responses, and the role of regulatory and suppressor T-cell populations are now shaping the use of the immune system to treat cancer.

In addition to an improved understanding of the immune system, significant advances in understanding the molecular basis of neoplasia have occurred. Precise control of cellular activity and metabolism is crucial for proper physiologic function. Notably, cell division is an important process that requires precise regulation. The main difference between tumor cells and normal cells is lack of growth control during the cell division process. This uncontrolled cell division can originate from various factors, such as chemical agents, viral infections, and mutations, that lead to escape of cells from the checkpoints which properly control cell division. According to the type of tumor and proliferation rate, cancers can be benign or malignant [8]. It has been found that some tumors are caused by oncogenic viruses that induce malignant transformation. These oncogenic viruses can be both RNA and DNA viruses. Also, viral infection may lead to leukopenia and immunodeficiency, increasing the risk of malignancy. Therefore, prophylactic immunization against oncogenic viruses (such as EBV, HPV, and HBV) might be a logical strategy for prevention of malignancy [9]. Indeed, a vaccine against the human papilloma virus has shown significant impact on preventing cervical intraepithelial neoplasia and may prevent development of cervical carcinoma.

1.3 Cancer and Immune System Impairment

It has been reported that impaired immune response can induce tumor growth and prevent effective antitumor suppression, possibly through a process of "sneaking through" which allows improved growth of small tumors rather than large tumors [10]. Tumors may also produce immunosuppressive factors, such as interleukin-10 (IL-10), transforming growth factor-β (TGF-β), and alpha-fetoprotein, which suppress innate immune responses against cancer. This has led to investigations using neutralizing antibodies against these immunosuppressive factors [7]. In contrast, tumor-specific cytotoxic T lymphocytes (CTLs) can be genetically altered to become resistant to the TGF-β inhibitory effect by transgene expression of a mutant-dominant-negative TGF-β type II receptor (DNR). In addition, specific T-cells genetically manipulated to produce IL-12 can overcome the inhibitory effects of IL-10. On the other hand, tumors may express FasL and stimulate apoptosis of tumor-infiltrating effector T-cells. Small interfering RNA (siRNA) can be used to knock down the Fas receptor in tumor-specific CTL, leading to a significant decrease in their susceptibility to Fas-/FasL-mediated apoptosis [11].

The interaction between the immune system and established cancers is complex, because in addition to increasing carcinogenesis by various carcinogens among compromised subjects, cancer cells themselves can lead to severe immunosuppression. It has been reported that patients involved with primary immunodeficiency syndromes have higher risk of cancer development. In a report by Kersey et al., subjects that had an inherited abnormal lymphoid system were susceptible to malignant transformation and impairment of tumor immunosurveillance [12]. In addition, tumors produce soluble factors which downregulate the interleukin-2 receptor-α (IL-2Rα), leading to suppression of T-cell function. Furthermore, established tumors may result in severe protein expenditures in hosts, contributing to impairment of immune system function [13].

1.4 Immune System Reaction to Cancer

A critical question is whether cancer cells are sufficiently different from their normal cellular counterparts and can thus be recognized by the immune system. The immune system also produces a group of complementary markers with protective effects against cancer and other immunologic or inflammatory stresses. These markers include proteins released by T-cells and are generally classified as "cytokines." Cytokines include interleukins, interferons, tumor-necrosis factors (TNF), and lymphocyte-derived growth factors. The production of tumor-specific antibodies and/or activation of tumor antigen-specific T-cells target tumor-associated antigens typically found on the cell

membrane. Studies have suggested that vaccination in the presence of complements can lead to tumor lysis. While incompletely defined, several soluble and cellular mediators of tumor rejection have been described, including complement factors, active macrophages, T-cells, and NK cells. While T-cells require antigen specificity, the soluble and cellular mechanisms of the innate immune response can recognize the malignant phenotype in the absence of antigen specificity [14].

Since most tumor-associated antigens are self-proteins, the immune response is largely weak and patients may develop immune tolerance to tumor-associated antigens. Furthermore, the cells of the immune system may not adequately penetrate to the internal tumor microenvironment, resulting in slower immune-mediated tumor elimination. However, it is possible that the immune system may be more effective in controlling tumor growth rate rather than tumor regression [10]. Recently, it has been found that nutrition also plays a crucial role in protection against human cancer, and normal levels of zinc are required for protection against the detrimental effects of various immunosuppressive cytokines [15].

1.5 Genetic and Environmental Carcinogenesis

It has been found that genetic factors are as important as environmental carcinogens. Trials have tested carcinogenesis of retrovirus infection between different breeds of animals. A unique carcinogen resulted in disparate outcomes among different breeds, indicating the importance of genetic background in the progression of cancer. Environmental factors may also suppress immune responses and dysregulate immunosurveillance mechanisms [16].

1.5.1 Cancer Cells Escape from Host Immunosurveillance

Antigens that distinguish tumor cells from normal cells depend on the histologic origin of the tumor. Tumor-associated antigens may be viral in origin, represent mutated self-antigens, be cancer-testis antigens which are expressed only by tumor cells and normal testes, or be normal differentiation antigens. Thus, tumor cells may express similar antigens to normal cells, allowing tumor cells to escape immune system attack through induction of innate and/or peripheral tolerance. A corollary to this is that immunotherapy or stimulation of immune responses to some tumor-associated antigens may lead to damage of normal tissues and organs, as exemplified by the development of autoimmunity induced by anti-CTLA-4 or anti-PD-1 monoclonal antibody (mAb) treatment [17].

A number of complex mechanisms have been suggested for the escape of cancer cells from host immunosurveillance. Tumors alter their characteristics by decreased expression of immunogenic tumor-associated antigens, MHC class I molecules, beta2-microglobulin, and costimulatory molecules, which mediate the activation of T-cells. Another strategy resulting in failure of tumor immunosurveillance could be the expression of very low levels of antigens, unable to stimulate an immune response. Under some circumstances, such as failure of the immune response to induce a rapid response, cancer cells may proliferate rapidly. Further strategies for escape of tumor cells from immunosurveillance are based on inhibitory tumor-mediated signaling by CTLs, as occurs through changes in cell death receptor signaling. Other strategies which allow tumor cells to evade the immune system are the secretion immunosuppressive molecules dampening tumor-reactive effector T-cells and the induction of regulatory and/or suppressor cells [18].

To date, most direct evidence on tumor immunosurveillance originates from experimental studies in animal models. These models have supported the potential for antitumor immunity via vaccination, as, for example, by administration of inactivated cancer cells or through removal of a primary tumor. In addition, antitumor immunity can be adoptively transferred through administration of tumor-reactive T lymphocytes. The complexities of immunotherapy are evident as nearly all immune system components can influence tumor growth and progression. Although there is evidence for antitumor immunity in humans, and

several new agents have gained regulatory approval for cancer therapy, further investigation is warranted to increase the impact of tumor immunotherapy for more cancer patients [19].

1.5.2 Cancer Immunodiagnosis

Nowadays, new immunomolecular diagnostic approaches have been suggested for tumor detection. Monoclonal antibodies marked with radioisotopes have been used for in vivo diagnosis of small tumor foci. In addition, monoclonal antibodies have been used for in vitro recognition of the cell of origin for tumors with poor differentiation. Immunodiagnostics have also been used to determine the extent of metastatic disease, especially metastasis to the bone marrow [20].

1.6 Cancer Treatment

Systemic cancer treatment is based on four general therapeutic approaches: (1) chemotherapy, which contains a wide group of cytotoxic drugs that interfere with cell division and DNA synthesis; (2) hormonal therapy, which contains drugs that interfere with growth signaling via tumor cell hormone receptors; (3) targeted therapy, which involves a novel group of antibodies and small-molecule kinase suppressors that principally target proteins crucial in cancer cell growth signaling pathways; and (4) immunotherapy, which targets the induction or expansion of antitumor immune responses [21].

1.6.1 Cancer Immunotherapy

Tumor immunotherapy is a novel therapeutic approach for cancer treatment, with increasing clinical benefits. Tumor immunotherapy is based on strategies which improve the cancer-related immune response through either promoting components of the immune system that mediate an effective immune response or via suppressing components that inhibit the immune response. Two current approaches commonly used for immunotherapy are allogeneic bone marrow transplantation and mAbs targeting cancer cells or T-cell checkpoints [22]. Recently, various other approaches have been tested such as injection of cytokines. FDA recently approved injection of PEG-IFN-a2b in high-risk melanoma [23].

Initially, anticancer vaccines were considered for prevention and treatment of various tumors [22]. It is estimated that more than 15% of human cancers are caused by viral infection [24]. Vaccine-based immunotherapy may, thus, be most useful for virus-induced cancers. Consistent with this hypothesis, a 50% complete remission (CR) of HPV-associated vulvar intraepithelial neoplasia grade III (VINIII) has been reported [25]. An attenuated, oncolytic herpes simplex type 1, which is genetically engineered to secrete granulocyte-macrophage colony-stimulating factor (GM-CSF), has been developed for cancer therapy. This oncolytic immunotherapeutic agent has been injected to the tumor mass and has had beneficial effects in the treatment of melanoma and head and neck squamous cell carcinoma [26]. Although vaccine-based therapy has not been effective in some types of cancer, there are studies that have shown an overall survival benefit compared to placebo therapy [27]. FDA recently approved a vaccination therapy using dendritic cells for prostate cancer [28].

Another immune-targeted approach is mAbs which blocks T-cell checkpoints functioning to suppress T-cell responses. Cytotoxic T lymphocyte-associated antigen 4 (CTLA-4) is a member of a large family of molecules regulating T-cell immune responses. CTLA-4 is expressed on CD4+ and CD8+ T-cells, as well as on FOXP3+ regulatory T-cells [29]. Administration of mAbs targeting human CTLA-4 leads to the rejection of established tumors in a small cohort of patients with metastatic melanoma and demonstrated improved overall survival in patients with metastatic melanoma, resulting in US FDA approval for the treatment of metastatic melanoma [30]. Recent trial showed survival benefit of ipilimumab, a CTLA-4 inhibitor, in setting of metastatic melanoma and also after resection of stage III melanoma [31, 32].

Monoclonal antibodies which block other T-cell checkpoints, such as the programmed cell death protein 1 (PDCD1/PD-1), programmed cell

death ligand 1 (PD-L1/CD274), CD276 (B7H3) antigen, V-set domain-containing T-cell function inhibitor 1 (B7x), and B and T lymphocyte attenuator, have also entered clinical trials. In addition, recent trials have demonstrated significant therapeutic activity in several types of cancer, including melanoma, metastatic urothelial carcinoma, gastric cancer, hepatocellular cancer, colorectal cancer, renal cell carcinoma, non-small cell lung carcinoma, and ovarian cancer [33–38]. It has been reported that PD-L1 expression by tumor cells is associated with poor clinical outcome and may be associated with clinical response to anti-PD-1 and anti-PD-L1 therapy. Also, ligation of PD-L1 leads to inactivation of tumor-infiltrating cells [39]. On the other hand, regulatory T-cells have an immunosuppressive role in the tumor microenvironment. Studies of anti-PD-1 and anti-PD-L1 are in progress. Moreover, the combination of these agents with anti-CTLA-4 and other immunotherapy strategies has yielded promising results.

The combination of antitumor vaccines with agents targeting the IL-12 receptor resulted in conflicting results. This may be due to the upregulation of IL-12 receptor by both activated T effector cells and regulatory T-cells [40]. Thus, new approaches focused on more specific targeting of regulatory T-cells which reduce their suppressive effects on the immune system are necessary. Adoptive T-cell therapy (ACT) has been described as an effective therapeutic approach for cancer immunotherapy in early phase clinical trials. In this method, a large number of tumor-specific T-cells derived from peripheral blood, or preferably from the tumor microenvironment (with or without genetic manipulation to express a high-affinity antigen-specific T-cell receptor, or TCR), are adoptively transferred to patients with established tumors [41]. ACT mostly relies on endogenous T-cell repertoire; recent advancements allow induction chimeric antigen receptors (CARs). In CAR T-cell (CAR-T) therapy, T-cells of patients with B-cell tumors are transfected with anti-CD19 and in result, T-cells will gain the capacity to recognize B-cells in all stages of development. The first CAR-T was recently approved by FDA based on phase 2 trial which showed a dramatic complete response in 83% of patients within 3 months of infusion [42, 43]. Chemotherapy-mediated cell death leads to immune responses in a drug-induced biochemical cell death cascade-dependent manner, suggesting beneficial effects of chemotherapy and immunotherapy, in combination [44]. It seems that future goals of tumor immunotherapy are headed towards chemoimmunotherapy. Potential candidates for this combination approach include antitumor vaccines, Toll-like receptor (TLR) signaling pathway agonists/antagonists, cytokines, and mAbs targeting T-cell checkpoints, such as CTLA-4, PD-1, or PD-L1/2 [45]. Also, it seems that radiation and radiofrequency ablation are future candidates for combination therapy with immunotherapy [46]. Although immunotherapy and its combination with other therapeutic approaches such as radioimmunotherapy may be beneficial for tumor treatment, there are several limitations that need to be addressed; defining the optimal target patient, optimal biological dose, and schedule, the need for better trial designs incorporating appropriate clinical endpoints, and the identification and validation of predictive biomarkers are just a few points to note [22].

1.6.2 Cancer Cell "Switch"

Cancer cells can switch on genes mostly related to the earlier embryonic stages of development. During rapid proliferation of cancer cells, precise orchestrated enzyme formation needed for suitable metabolism of its different components might get unbalanced, and products which are not observed in normal dividing cells are produced [47]. Recently, it has been reported that these biochemical "switches" lead to uncontrolled multiplication of cancer cells. One switch has been found for a type of leukemia. It has been suggested that targeting tumor switches can make treatment of cancers very simple [19]. Nonetheless, it is unclear how this may be used to optimize tumor immunotherapy.

Since cancer immunology is a highly complex process, further research is needed to more completely understand how the immune system recognizes and eradicates cancer. In this book, we will describe a variety of novel mechanisms cur-

rently under investigation for mediating aspects of tumor immunology with a particular focus on promising therapeutic approaches, producing a complete comprehensive up-to-date textbook.

1.7 Concluding Remarks

Cancer is a life-threatening health problem which is related to several genetic and environmental risk factors that manipulate immune system function. Cancers themselves produce immunosuppressor factors to impair cells division check points, leading to uncontrolled proliferation of cancer cells. Importantly, tumor cells have learned how to escape from immune system attack via presenting of similar antigens to normal cells and expression of very low levels of antigens. Therefore, diagnosis of tumors and their progression is not easy. Recently, immunodiagnostic methods are shown to be helpful in the diagnosis of cancers and determining the extent of metastasis. On the other hand, classic treatment of cancers led to unsatisfactory results, and intelligent immunological approaches, such as regulatory T-cell targeting, adoptive T-cell administration, and combination of immunotherapy and chemotherapy are addressed. Results of antitumor vaccines, Toll-like receptor (TLR) signaling pathway agonists/antagonists, cytokines, and mAbs targeting T-cell checkpoints, such as CTLA-4, PD-1, or PDL-1/2 are promising. However, due to the high complexity of the cancer immunology, still a lot of gaps exist in this field that indicate the necessity of further research for complete understanding of cancers' immunological behaviors and emerging of more novel immunotherapeutic strategies.

References

1. Siegel R, Naishadham D, Jemal A. Cancer statistics, 2012. CA Cancer J Clin. 2012;62(1):10–29.
2. Noone AM, Cronin KA, Altekruse SF, Howlader N, Lewis DR, Petkov VI, et al. Cancer incidence and survival trends by subtype using data from the surveillance epidemiology and end results program, 1992-2013. Cancer Epidemiol Biomark Prev. 2017;26(4):632–41.
3. Howlader N, Noone AM, Krapcho M, Miller D, Brest A, Yu M, Ruhl J, Tatalovich Z, Mariotto A, Lewis DR, Chen HS, Feuer EJ, Cronin KA, editors. SEER cancer statistics review, 1975–2015. Bethesda: National Cancer Institute; 2019.
4. Ries LAG, Eisner MP, Kosary CL, et al. SEER cancer statistics review, 1975-2002. Bethesda: National Cancer Institute; 2005. http://seer.cancer.gov/csr/1975_2002/. Based on November 2004 SEER data submission.
5. Smith MAGJ, Ries L. Cancer among adolescents 15–19 years old. In: Ries LAG, Smith MA, Gurney JG, et al., editors. Cancer incidence and survival among children and adolescents: United States SEER program 1975–1995. Bethesda: National Cancer Institute; 1999. SEER Program NIH Pub No. 99-4649.
6. Wikipedia. List of cancer mortality rates. 2013 Jul 10 vaS. http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/List_of_cancer_mortality_rates.
7. Lachmann PJ. Tumour immunology: a review. J R Soc Med. 1984;77(12):1023–9.
8. Friedl P, Alexander S. Cancer invasion and the microenvironment: plasticity and reciprocity. Cell. 2011;147(5):992–1009.
9. Biggs PM. Oncogenesis and herpes virus II PIdTG. In: Epstein MA, zur Hausen H, editors. Epidemiology, host response and control II. Lyon: IARC Publications; 1972. p. 317.
10. Prehn RT. The immune reaction as a stimulator of tumor growth. Science. 1972;176(4031):170–1.
11. Berzofsky JA, Terabe M, Oh S, Belyakov IM, Ahlers JD, Janik JE, et al. Progress on new vaccine strategies for the immunotherapy and prevention of cancer. J Clin Invest. 2004;113(11):1515–25.
12. Kersey JH, Spector BD, Good RA. Primary immunodeficiency diseases and cancer: the immunodeficiency-cancer registry. Int J Cancer. 1973;12:333–47.
13. Sheu BC, Hsu SM, Ho HN, Lien HC, Huang SC, Lin RH. A novel role of metalloproteinase in cancer-mediated immunosuppression. Cancer Res. 2001;61(1):237–42.
14. Schlager SI, Ohanian SH, Borsos T. Correlation between the ability of tumor cells to resist humoral immune attack and their ability to synthesize lipid. J Immunol. 1978;120(2):463–71.
15. Lin YS, Caffrey JL, Lin JW, Bayliss D, Faramawi MF, Bateson TF, et al. Increased risk of cancer mortality associated with cadmium exposures in older Americans with low zinc intake. J Toxicol Environ Health A. 2013;76(1):1–15.
16. Bleyer A, Viny A, Barr R. Introduction. In: Bleyer A, Viny A, Barr R, editors. Cancer epidemiology in older adolescents and young adults 15 to 29 years of age, including SEER incidence and survival: 1975–2000. Bethesda: National Cancer Institute; 2006. NIH Pub. No. 06-5767.
17. Greaves MF. Analysis of the clinical and biological significance of lymphoid phenotypes in acute leukemia. Cancer Res. 1981;41(11 Pt 2):4752–66.

18. Wilczynski JR, Duechler M. How do tumors actively escape from host immunosurveillance? Arch Immunol Ther Exp. 2010;58(6):435–48.
19. Lewis M, Lewis G. Strengthen the body and its immune cells. In: Lewis M, Lewis G, editors. Cancer – a threat to your life OR A chance to control your future. Australia Cancer & Natural Therapy Foundation of Australia; Lewis Publications, New Zealand 2006.
20. Szekeres G, Battyani Z. Immuno-diagnosis of malignant melanoma. Magy Onkol. 2003;47(1): 45–50.
21. Coley WB. The treatment of inoperable sarcoma by bacterial toxins (the mixed toxins of the Streptococcus erysipelas and the Bacillus prodigiosus). Proc R Soc Med. 1910;3(Surg Sect):1–48.
22. Lesterhuis WJ, Haanen JB, Punt CJ. Cancer immunotherapy--revisited. Nat Rev Drug Discov. 2011;10(8):591–600.
23. Eggermont AM, Suciu S, Testori A, Santinami M, Kruit WH, Marsden J, et al. Long-term results of the randomized phase III trial EORTC 18991 of adjuvant therapy with pegylated interferon alfa-2b versus observation in resected stage III melanoma. J Clin Oncol. 2012;30(31):3810–8.
24. Moore PS, Chang Y. Why do viruses cause cancer? Highlights of the first century of human tumour virology. Nat Rev Cancer. 2010;10(12):878–89.
25. Paavonen J, Naud P, Salmeron J, Wheeler CM, Chow SN, Apter D, et al. Efficacy of human papillomavirus (HPV)-16/18 AS04-adjuvanted vaccine against cervical infection and precancer caused by oncogenic HPV types (PATRICIA): final analysis of a double-blind, randomised study in young women. Lancet. 2009;374(9686):301–14.
26. Kaufman HL, Kim DW, DeRaffele G, Mitcham J, Coffin RS, Kim-Schulze S. Local and distant immunity induced by intralesional vaccination with an oncolytic herpes virus encoding GM-CSF in patients with stage IIIc and IV melanoma. Ann Surg Oncol. 2010;17(3):718–30.
27. Kantoff PW, Higano CS, Shore ND, Berger ER, Small EJ, Penson DF, et al. Sipuleucel-T immunotherapy for castration-resistant prostate cancer. N Engl J Med. 2010;363(5):411–22.
28. Higano CS, Small EJ, Schellhammer P, Yasothan U, Gubernick S, Kirkpatrick P, et al. Sipuleucel-T. Nat Rev Drug Discov. 2010;9(7):513–4.
29. Peggs KS, Quezada SA, Chambers CA, Korman AJ, Allison JP. Blockade of CTLA-4 on both effector and regulatory T cell compartments contributes to the antitumor activity of anti-CTLA-4 antibodies. J Exp Med. 2009;206(8):1717–25.
30. van Elsas A, Hurwitz AA, Allison JP. Combination immunotherapy of B16 melanoma using anti-cytotoxic T lymphocyte-associated antigen 4 (CTLA-4) and granulocyte/macrophage colony-stimulating factor (GM-CSF)-producing vaccines induces rejection of subcutaneous and metastatic tumors accompanied by autoimmune depigmentation. J Exp Med. 1999;190(3):355–66.
31. Robert C, Thomas L, Bondarenko I, O'Day S, Weber J, Garbe C, et al. Ipilimumab plus dacarbazine for previously untreated metastatic melanoma. N Engl J Med. 2011;364(26):2517–26.
32. Eggermont AM, Chiarion-Sileni V, Grob JJ, Dummer R, Wolchok JD, Schmidt H, et al. Adjuvant ipilimumab versus placebo after complete resection of high-risk stage III melanoma (EORTC 18071): a randomised, double-blind, phase 3 trial. Lancet Oncol. 2015;16(5):522–30.
33. Powles T, Eder JP, Fine GD, Braiteh FS, Loriot Y, Cruz C, et al. MPDL3280A (anti-PD-L1) treatment leads to clinical activity in metastatic bladder cancer. Nature. 2014;515(7528):558–62.
34. Fuchs CS, Doi T, Jang RW, Muro K, Satoh T, Machado M, et al. Safety and efficacy of pembrolizumab monotherapy in patients with previously treated advanced gastric and gastroesophageal junction cancer: phase 2 clinical KEYNOTE-059 trial. JAMA Oncol. 2018;4(5):e180013.
35. El-Khoueiry AB, Sangro B, Yau T, Crocenzi TS, Kudo M, Hsu C, et al. Nivolumab in patients with advanced hepatocellular carcinoma (CheckMate 040): an open-label, non-comparative, phase 1/2 dose escalation and expansion trial. Lancet. 2017;389(10088):2492–502.
36. Le DT, Uram JN, Wang H, Bartlett BR, Kemberling H, Eyring AD, et al. PD-1 blockade in tumors with mismatch-repair deficiency. N Engl J Med. 2015;372(26):2509–20.
37. Reck M, Rodriguez-Abreu D, Robinson AG, Hui R, Csoszi T, Fulop A, et al. Pembrolizumab versus chemotherapy for PD-L1-positive non-small-cell lung cancer. N Engl J Med. 2016;375(19):1823–33.
38. Zou W, Chen L. Inhibitory B7-family molecules in the tumour microenvironment. Nat Rev Immunol. 2008;8(6):467–77.
39. Thompson RH, Kuntz SM, Leibovich BC, Dong H, Lohse CM, Webster WS, et al. Tumor B7-H1 is associated with poor prognosis in renal cell carcinoma patients with long-term follow-up. Cancer Res. 2006;66(7):3381–5.
40. Dannull J, Su Z, Rizzieri D, Yang BK, Coleman D, Yancey D, et al. Enhancement of vaccine-mediated antitumor immunity in cancer patients after depletion of regulatory T cells. J Clin Invest. 2005;115(12):3623–33.
41. Dudley ME, Wunderlich JR, Robbins PF, Yang JC, Hwu P, Schwartzentruber DJ, et al. Cancer regression and autoimmunity in patients after clonal repopulation with antitumor lymphocytes. Science. 2002;298(5594):850–4.
42. Chen R, Song XT, Chen B, et al. Discov Med. 2015;20(110):185–90.
43. Kochenderfer JN, Wilson WH, Janik JE, Dudley ME, Stetler-Stevenson M, Feldman SA, et al. Eradication of B-lineage cells and regression of lymphoma in a patient treated with autologous T cells genetically engineered to recognize CD19. Blood. 2010;116(20):4099–102.
44. Obeid M, Tesniere A, Ghiringhelli F, Fimia GM, Apetoh L, Perfettini JL, et al. Calreticulin exposure

dictates the immunogenicity of cancer cell death. Nat Med. 2007;13(1):54–61.
45. Lesterhuis WJ, de Vries IJ, Aarntzen EA, de Boer A, Scharenborg NM, van de Rakt M, et al. A pilot study on the immunogenicity of dendritic cell vaccination during adjuvant oxaliplatin/capecitabine chemotherapy in colon cancer patients. Br J Cancer. 2010;103(9):1415–21.
46. den Brok MH, Sutmuller RP, van der Voort R, Bennink EJ, Figdor CG, Ruers TJ, et al. In situ tumor ablation creates an antigen source for the generation of antitumor immunity. Cancer Res. 2004;64(11):4024–9.
47. Brickell PM, Latchman DS, Murphy D, Willison K, Rigby PW. Activation of a Qa/Tla class I major histocompatibility antigen gene is a general feature of oncogenesis in the mouse. Nature. 1983;306(5945):756–60.

Role of Innate Immunity in Cancers and Antitumor Response

2

Masahisa Jinushi and Muhammad Baghdadi

Contents

M. Jinushi (✉)
Research Center for Infection-Associated Cancer, Institute for Genetic Medicine, Hokkaido University, Sapporo, Japan
e-mail: Jinushi@igm.hokudai.ac.jp

M. Baghdadi
Division of Immunobiology, Institute for Genetic Medicine, Hokkaido University, Sapporo, Japan

2.1 Introduction

Cellular components of the innate immune system serve as a "first line of defense" against tumorigenic cells. Recognition of transformed cells by pattern-recognition receptor (PRRs) on the innate immune cells activates specialized

N. Rezaei (ed.), *Cancer Immunology*, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-30845-2_2

inflammatory signaling cascades, including transcription factor nuclear factor-kappa B (NF-κB) and interferon regulatory transcription factor (IRF), which lead to the release of various cytokines and chemokines attracting and activating effector lymphocytes at the tumor site. In addition, effector cells kill transformed cells through the activation of perforin or death receptor-mediated pathways, as well as secretion of cytokines necessary for the initiation of immune responses against transformed cells [1, 2]. However, some tumor cells escape from the innate immune machinery, which leads to the dysfunction of innate immune compartment, signaling pathways, and effector functions. This manipulation of innate immune systems by tumor microenvironments includes impairment of antigen processing and presentation by antigen-presenting cells (APCs) [3], inhibition of innate immune signaling pathways [4, 5], and anti-inflammatory cytokines such as IL-10 and transforming growth factor-β (TGF-β) [6, 7]. Moreover, tumors manipulate innate immune systems to create protumorigenic environments, which lead to further tumor progression and metastasis. Therefore, it is critical to clarify the molecular mechanisms through which the interaction between tumors and innate immune systems is modified during different phases of tumorigenesis.

In this chapter, we describe the general functions of innate immunity in cancer and antitumor host response. In addition, an overview is provided on the mechanism through which coordinated actions of innate immune signals and their downstream effectors have an impact on the immunosurveillance and immune subversion within the tumor microenvironment.

2.2 Role of Innate Immune Cells in Cancer and Antitumor Immunity

2.2.1 Natural Killer (NK) Cells

NK cells are important effector cells for protection against viruses and some tumors, since NK-cell-depleted mice were more susceptible to 3-methylcholanthrene (MCA)-induced tumors [8]. Chemokines, such as CXCL12 and CXCL3L1, are key factors for NK migration to tumor sites [9], where they play an important role in the tumor immunosurveillance [10]. NK cells recognize and eliminate transformed cells by releasing perforin or death signal-associated receptors such as FAS and TRAIL (tumor necrosis factor-related apoptosis-inducing ligand) [11–13]. NK cells secrete interferon gamma (IFN-γ) which helps to activate T-cell-mediated immunity and suppress tumor angiogenesis [14, 15]. Moreover, various innate immune networks such as cytokines and PRR recognition systems play an important role in stimulating effector functions of NK cells as discussed later.

NK cells have the ability to distinguish transformed cells from normal cells by recognizing a variety of cell surface receptors, including killer activation receptors (KARs), killer inhibitory receptors (KIRs), natural killer group two member D (NKG2D), DNAX-accessory molecule (DNAM), etc., which will be discussed later in this chapter. For example, KIRs on NK cells have a high affinity to the specific alleles in HLA class I molecules, transducing an inhibitory signal to the NK cells and preventing it from eliminating nontransformed cells. However, deletion of a single allele in HLA class I and/or induction of activating receptors, such as NKG2D ligands, which frequently occurs on transformed cells, triggers effector functions of NK cells against tumor cells [10, 16]. Recent studies have focused on "licensing" NK cells to become functionally competent through the interaction with self-MHC molecules. Ly49C is an inhibitory receptor expressed on a subset of NK cells, which interact with self-MHC molecules on target cells, and plays an unexpected role in enabling immature NK cells to develop into functioning, mature cells. On the other hand, Ly49C-negative NK cells are considered as "non-licensed" and remain at an immature stage [17]. These evolutionary processes of NK cell development and activation may help explain why donor NK cells administrated to leukemia patients during bone marrow transplantation do not always show antitumor

effects [18]. The NK cell-mediated cytotoxic activities mediate the release of granule contents (perforin and granzyme) onto the surface of the tumor cell [19].

The interaction between NK cells and dendritic cells (DCs) is crucial for the amplification of innate responses and the induction of potent adaptive immunity. Immature DCs are susceptible to NK-cell-mediated cytolysis [20], while mature DCs are activated by NK cells through cytokines (TNF-α and IFN-γ) and receptor (NKp30 and NKG2D)-mediated mechanisms [21, 22]. On the other hand, activated DCs trigger effector activities of NK cells, such as IFN-γ production, proliferation, and cytotoxic activities [23]. In addition, treatment with TLR3 agonist polyinosinic-polycytidylic acid (Poly (I: C)) triggers DCs to activate antitumor activities of NK cells [24, 25]. Thus, the reciprocal interaction between NK and DC regulates the direction and quality of antitumor immunity, which is important for the development of effective cancer immunotherapy.

2.2.2 Natural Killer T (NKT) Cells

NKT cells are innate lymphocytes which share features of both NK cells and T-cells. NKT cells express particular NK cell markers such as CD161 or NKR-P1, in addition to an invariant T-cell receptor alpha chain (Vα14-Jα18 in mice and Vα24-Jα18 in humans) [26]. The invariant T-cell receptor alpha chain is specific for glycolipid antigens presented by CD1d, which is an MHC class I-related molecule expressed on antigen-presenting cells and also found in some tumor cells. NKT cells were shown to play a role in the tumor immunosurveillance, since *Jα18*$^{-/-}$ mice showed increased susceptibility to chemically induced tumors and experimentally induced metastases [27]. Moreover, the administration of α-galactosylceramide, a natural lipid isolated from marine sponges which efficiently binds to CD1d and thus activates NKT cells, induces antitumor immune responses against established murine tumors [28]. The antitumor activities of NKT cells are mediated by IFN-γ production, which also activates NK and CD8^{+} T-cells. NKT cell activities are also important for granulocyte macrophage colony-stimulating factor (GM-CSF) and IL-12-based cytokine strategies [29, 30]. Recent reports have identified subpopulations of NKT cells which secrete TH1 or TH2 cytokines and thus play different roles in the pathogenesis of many diseases. For example, CD4^{-} NKT cells serve as potent effectors for triggering tumor rejection in various murine tumor models, while CD4^{+} NKT cells contribute to the pathogenesis of allergic diseases and tumors by promoting the release of IL-4, IL-5, and IL-13 [31, 32]. Indeed, IL-13 released from NKT cells antagonizes tumor immunosurveillance by promoting TGF-β secretion from Gr-1^{+} myeloid suppressor cells [33, 34]. Thus, the identification of factors influencing the differentiation of specific NKT cell subsets during tumor development is important in order to optimize the therapeutic interventions which utilize NKT cell functions against tumors.

2.2.3 γδ-T Cells

Although γδ-T cells represent a small population among T lymphocytes, they share several features with innate immune cells. γδ-T cells show high frequencies in intraepithelial lymphocytes (IELs) in the skin and gut mucosa and possess a distinct T-cell receptor on their surface with limited diversity, which may serve as a pattern-recognition receptor [35]. Moreover, γδ-T cells lack CD4 and CD8 expressed by αβ-T cells and express a number of molecules shared with NK cells or APCs, such as Fc gamma RIII/CD16 and PRRs. γδ-T cells also recognize lipid-derived antigens and function as professional phagocytes which recognize and ingest apoptotic tumor cells and may influence antitumor immune responses [36, 37].

Mice lacking γδ-T cells showed increased incidence of chemically induced sarcoma and spindle cell carcinoma, indicating the importance of these cells in tumor immunosurveillance [38]. In addition, γδ-T cells express NKG2D receptors and interact with their ligands on transformed cells, leading to enhanced cytotoxic activities and

effector cytokine production [39, 40]. The activated γδ-T cells then serve as the major early source of IFN-γ, which contribute to maturation of APCs and prime αβ-T cells, and mediate cytotoxicity against tumor cells [40, 41].

2.2.4 Macrophages

Macrophages serve as a first line of defense against tumorigenesis by directly killing tumor cells and producing various antitumor mediators [42]. On the other hand, macrophages render tumor cells with the ability to acquire invasive and metastatic activities [43]. Macrophages are differentiated from immature myeloid precursors or circulating monocytes released from the bone marrow [44]. In particular, the inflammatory monocytes expressing *Ly6C* are preferentially attracted from the circulation into the tumor site by tumor-derived chemokines, such as CCL2 (MCP1-1) and CCL5 (RANTES) and CXCL12 (SDF1) [45–47]. Immature monocytes are then differentiated into either M1 or M2 macrophages by distinct sets of cytokines when entered into distinct tumor microenvironments [48]. M1 macrophages may induce antitumor response by producing IFN-γ and IL-12 and triggering cytotoxic activities [49, 50]. In contrast, tumor microenvironments adopt multiple strategies to tip a balance in the favor of differentiating M2-type macrophages through complex network of cytokines, chemokines, and growth factors [43, 51].

Taken together, macrophages have a dual role in modulating tumorigenesis and antitumor host responses. Thus, detailed characterization of molecular machineries which govern macrophage polarization in tumors seems necessary for a thorough understanding of pharmacological targeting of macrophages and their derivatives.

2.2.5 Dendritic Cells

DCs are professional APCs contributing to the induction of both innate and adaptive immune responses against pathogens as well as tumors. DCs express Toll-like receptors (TLRs) and costimulatory molecules necessary for the activation of various effectors [52]. Due to the potent immunogenicity of DC, tumor microenvironments adopt multiple tactics to subvert DC functions. In addition, tumor-infiltrating DCs can both induce tumor growth and metastasis by regulating angiogenesis, host immunity, and tumor metastasis [53–56]. Moreover, indoleamine 2, 3-dioxygenase (IDO)-producing DCs cause poor tumor immunogenicity via generating Foxp3-positive regulatory T-cells [57] and interacting with other innate lymphocytes such as γδ-T cells [58] and NKT cells [59].

In summary, tumor-infiltrating DCs represent a double-edged sword which can induce an immune response against tumors or tolerize the immune system against tumors and contribute to tumor growth and metastasis. Thus, a deep understanding about DC biology at tumor microenvironment is critical to optimize anticancer therapies and improve the clinical output of DC vaccines.

2.2.6 Granulocytes

Granulocytes, the key mediators of inflammation, have a potential role in the initiation of immune response cascades against tumors [60]. Granulocytes induce tumor destruction through the release of cathepsin G, azurocidin, reactive oxygen species, and inflammatory cytokines. Moreover, granulocytes, along with macrophages and T-cells, are main effectors that elicit antitumor responses by DNA vaccines in murine tumor models [61]. In addition, dense infiltration of granulocytes in tumor tissues is associated with clinical responses of GM-CSF-secreting cancer cells and Bacillus Calmette-Guérin (BCG) in patients with advanced melanoma and bladder carcinoma, respectively [62, 63]. On the other hand, granulocytes contribute to tumor angiogenesis and metastasis by promoting secretion of proteinases, ROS, and cytokines that may acts as antitumor effectors in different conditions [64]. Therefore, granulocytes have both pro- and antitumor activities depending on distinct environments.

2.3 The Role of Innate Immune Receptors on Innate Immune Cells in Cancer and Antitumor Immunity

2.3.1 Toll-like Receptors (TLRs)

Toll-like receptors (TLRs) are innate immune receptors mainly expressed on APCs, such as macrophages and dendritic cells. They play an important role in host defense against pathogens by recognizing pathogen-associated molecular patterns (PAMPs) and damage-associated molecular pattern molecules (DAMPs). The recognition of PAMPs and DAMPs by PRRs activates inflammatory pathways, such as NF-κB and IRF-mediated signals, leading to antitumor mediators like type I interferons, as well as cell survival and proliferation [65].

Various sets of TLR ligands induce the upregulation of co-stimulatory molecules and proinflammatory cytokine production by APCs, thus breaking the tolerogenic status to various tumor antigens and inducing antigen-specific antitumor immune responses [66–68]. In addition, TLR4 on DCs could interact with high mobility group box 1 (HMGB1) and facilitate antigen cross-presentation to antitumor T lymphocytes [69]. Thus, TLRs agonists serve as effective adjuvants in harnessing potent antitumor immune response and clinical responses.

In contrast, tumor cells license TLRs on myeloid cells to acquire invasive and metastatic activities by promoting the secretion of various protumorigenic mediators, such as TNF-α and S100A8 [70, 71]. Thus, the careful optimization of suitable TLRs ligands for cancer immunotherapy is critical in order to avoid protumorigenic inflammation caused by the TLRs expressed on innate immune cells in tumor microenvironments.

2.3.2 RIG-I-Like Helicases (RLHs)

RIG-I-like helicases (RLHs) are specific families of pattern-recognition receptors bearing caspase-recruitment domain (CARD) at N-terminus and helicase domains, which are responsible for detecting intracellular double-strand RNA and inducing innate immune responses. RLHs include retinoic acid-inducible gene-I (RIG-I), myeloid differentiation antigen-5 (MDA5), and laboratory of genetics and physiology-2 (LGP2 or DHX58), which are expressed constitutively in both immune and nonimmune cells. RLHs recruit specific intracellular adaptors to initiate NF-κB- and IRF-mediated inflammatory signaling pathways that lead to the synthesis of type I interferons (IFNs) and other proinflammatory cytokines [72, 73]. The utilization of RLHs ligands as adjuvants to trigger antitumor immune responses has been validated by several studies. Its administration with retinoic acid-inducible gene-I (RIG-I) ligand triphosphate RNA triggers antitumor immune response by inducing the production of IFN-α/IFN-β and various immunogenic cytokines, as well as activating antitumor immune response cells [74, 75].

Taken together, RLHs ligands may be utilized as adjuvants with other immunotherapies in order to overcome immunosuppressive tumor microenvironments.

2.3.3 NOD-like Receptors (NLRs)

NOD-like receptors (NLRs) are especially important for the recognition of sterile inflammation such as uric acids and silica [76, 77]. NLR-mediated innate immune systems play an important role in both antitumor immunity and tumorigenicity. For example, nucleotide-binding oligomerization domain-containing protein 1 (NOD1) has a protective role against tumors, and the knockdown of NOD1 promotes tumor growth in breast cancer model in vivo [78, 79]. NOD-like receptor family pyrin domain containing 3 (NLRP3) serves as a sensor for activating the inflammasome pathway which regulates procaspase-1 cleavage and subsequent IL-1β activation [80]. NLRP3 is a negative regulator of chemical colon carcinogenesis. In a dextran sulfate sodium (DSS) and azoxymethane-induced colon cancer model, *NLRP3* $^{-/-}$ mice showed increased colitis and colitis-associated cancer, which was correlated with attenuated levels of

IL-1β and IL-18 at the tumor site [81]. However, in other models, NLRP3 may also have a role in the promotion of tumors as in inflammation-induced skin cancers through the enhancement of inflammatory environment [82], which suggests a dual role for NLLRP3 in the regulation of host immunity for pro- or antitumor responses. ATP released by dying tumor cells serves as a "find-me" signal and recruits phagocytes to facilitate the engulfment of apoptotic cells [83]. Thus, ATP serves as an agonist for NLRP3 whose activation triggers IL-1β production and cross-priming of antitumor $CD8^+$ T-cells [84].

2.3.4 Phagocytosis Receptors

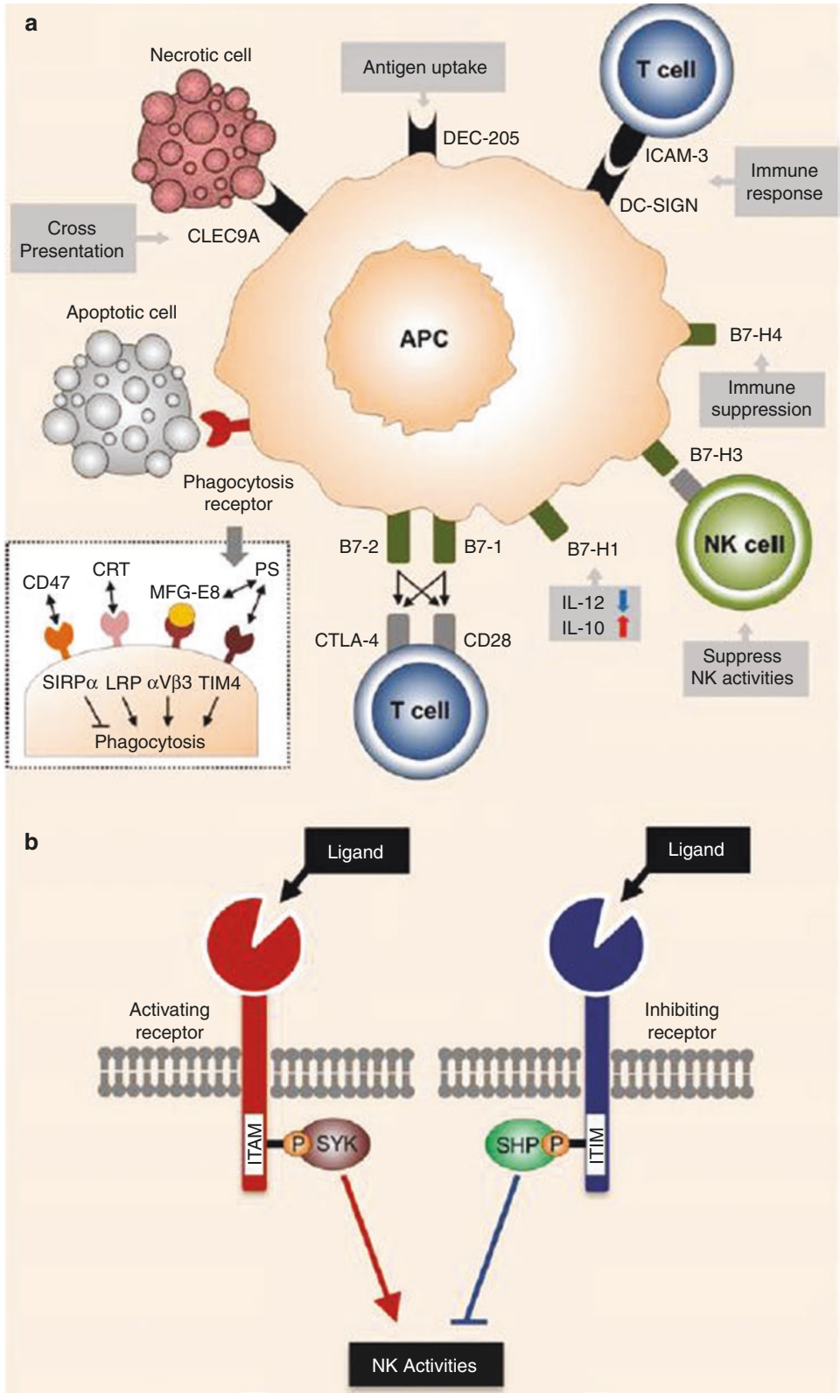
Phagocytes are specialized eating cells responsible for removing apoptotic cells in the body through a function of ligand–receptor interaction. Dying tumor cells attacked by immune cells or targeted by cytotoxic chemotherapeutic reagents are subject to recognition and removal by phagocytic myeloid cells [85, 86]. Molecules responsible for delivering "eat me" signals, including milk-fat globule-EGF factor 8 (MFG-E8), growth arrest-specific 6 (Gas-6), T-cell immunoglobulin-mucin domain protein-4 (TIM-4), and calreticulin (CRT), recognize the phosphatidylserine (PS) on apoptotic cells by integrin αvβ3 on phagocytes [87–90]. On the other hand, the "do not eat me" signal serves as negative regulators for phagocytes. One example includes the interaction between CD47 and signal-regulatory protein-α (SIRP-α), which provides inhibitory signals that block phagocytosis [91] (Fig. 2.1a).

Manipulation of phagocytic systems has emerged as one of the tumor immune evasion machineries, and pharmacological targeting of these pathways provides a feasible option to augment host immune responses and eradicate tumors. For example, blocking CD47 with a monoclonal antibody triggers tumor destruction by inducing phagocytosis of malignant cells [90, 92], and the treatment with anti-MFG-E8 antibodies elicits potent antitumor responses in combination with conventional anticancer drugs [93].

2.3.5 C-Type Lectin-like Receptors (CLRs)

Carbohydrate-binding C-type lectin and lectin-like receptors (CLRs) are a large family of molecules expressed in innate immune cells and play an important role in the regulation of antitumor immunity. For example, the interaction between DC-SIGN (dendritic cell-specific ICAM-3 grabbing nonintegrin) and ICAM-3 (intercellular adhesion molecule 3) facilitates the cross-talk between DCs and T lymphocytes, hence influences immunogenic responses against pathogens and tumors [94]. DEC-205 is highly expressed on DCs and promotes cross-presentation of tumor

Fig. 2.1 Role of innate immune receptors in the regulation of antitumor immunity. (**a**) The functions of the innate immune system are regulated by various receptors expressed in immune cells. C-type lectin-like receptors (CLRs) regulate recognition and uptake of antigens (such as DEC-205), the interactions between immune cells (such as the interaction between DC-SIGN on APCs and ICAM-3 on T-cells), and the recognition of dead cells, such as CLEC-9A, which recognizes necrotic cells and enhances cross-presentation of antigens derived from necrotic cells to $CD8^+$ T-cells. Members of B7 family regulate the functions of APCs, such as B7-H1 and B7-H4, which have immune suppressive effects, while other members regulate the interaction with immune cells, such as B7-H3, which interacts with NK cells and suppresses its functions, and B7-1/B7-2, which regulates APCs-T-cell interactions. Phagocytosis receptors expressed on APCs interact with ligands on apoptotic cells and mediate its removal by APCs. In some cases, ligand-phagocytosis receptor interactions (such as CD47-SIRP-α) provide an inhibitory signal which blocks phagocytosis, a system utilized by tumors to evade immune machineries. (**b**) The balance between activating and inhibiting signals is critical for NK cell activities. Upon interaction with corresponsive ligands, activating and inhibitory receptors deliver a signal which is mediated by ITAM and ITIM in their cytoplasmic domain. Phosphorylated ITAM motifs in activating receptors recruit adaptor proteins which activate downstream signaling pathways, while phosphorylated ITIM motifs in inhibitor receptors recruit proteins, such as SHP-1, which dephosphorylate downstream signal molecules and inhibit NK activities


a
Necrotic cell
Antigen uptake
T cell
DEC-205
ICAM-3
Immune response
DC-SIGN
Cross Presentation
CLEC9A
Apoptotic cell
APC
B7-H4
Immune suppression
B7-H3
Phagocytosis receptor
NK cell
B7-2
B7-1
B7-H1
CD47
CRT
PS
MFG-E8
IL-12
IL-10
CTLA-4
CD28
SIRPα LRP αVβ3 TIM4
Phagocytosis
T cell
Suppress NK activities
b
Ligand
Ligand
Activating receptor
Inhibiting receptor
ITAM
P SYK
SHP P
ITIM
NK Activities

antigens to cytotoxic T lymphocytes [95]. Indeed, agonistic antibody targeting DEC-205 elicits potent antitumor immunity and durable tumor regression in various murine tumor models [96]. In addition, C-type lectin domain family 9A (CLEC9A) utilizes necrotic cells for uptake, antigen presentation, and immune response, hence raising the possibility that CLEC9A-mediated recognition of immunogenic antigens may enhance antitumor immunity and clinical responses [97] (Fig. 2.1a). Therefore, CLRs serve as promising candidates for improving therapeutic responses to cancer immunotherapy. Moreover, deep understanding of the mechanism through which CLRs regulate innate immune response will lead to improvement in cancer vaccines.

2.3.6 NK Cell Receptors

NK cells possess various sets of pattern-recognition receptors which activate or suppress immune responses upon encountering their target cells. The balance between activation and inhibition signals is carefully mediated by signals triggered by both activation and inhibition receptors in combination with cytokines. Signals delivered from NK receptors mainly mediate through immunoreceptor tyrosine-based activation motif (ITAM) and immunoreceptor tyrosine-based inhibition motif (ITIM). ITAM and ITIM bear conserved sequences of four amino acids repeated twice in the cytoplasmic tails of NK cell receptors. Phosphorylation of tyrosine within ITAM motifs recruits adaptor proteins such as DNAX-activating protein-12 (DAP12) and DNAX-activating protein-10 (DAP10) involved in activating downstream signaling pathways. On the other hand, phosphorylation of tyrosine within ITIM motifs recruits proteins, such as SHP, which dephosphorylate downstream signal molecules to inhibit NK stimulation [98] (Fig. 2.1b).

Tumor cells evolve multiple strategies to evade NK cells by modulating ligand expression, ligand shedding, and upregulation of MHC molecules, in addition to the production of immunosuppressive cytokines. Thus, it is important to understand the underlying mechanism of NK cell activation and inhibition by their receptors, which eventually regulate immunosurveillance. NKG2D is a homodimeric C-type lectin-activating receptor expressed on NK, NKT, and activated $CD8^+$ T-cells [16, 99]. Ligands for NKG2D include stress-induced proteins, such as MHC class I chain-related A and B (MICA and MICB) as well as unique long 16 binding proteins (ULBPs) in human [99] and RAE1, H60, and Mult1 in mice. NKG2D ligands are upregulated in stress conditions, such as viral infection and transformation [99–102]. Several signaling pathways are involved in the induction of NKG2D ligands, including HSP70-mediated cellular stress [101] and ATM/ATR-mediated DNA damage pathways [103]. Importantly, blocking of NKG2D pathways increases the susceptibility of mice to chemically induced carcinogenesis [104], indicating the importance of NKG2D in tumor immunosurveillance. Natural cytotoxicity receptor (NCR) family consists of three activating receptors: NKp30, NKp44, and NKp46, which are able to induce a strong cytotoxic reaction by NK cells. Expression levels of NCRs are correlated with cytotoxic ability of NK cells. MHC class I molecules counteract with NCR-mediated activation signals; in addition, the loss of MHC-I molecules, frequently observed in transformed cells, activates NCRs on NK cells [105–107].

Killer cell immunoglobulin-like receptors (KIRs) are a family of cell surface molecules expressed on NK cells. KIRs have many members divided into two groups depending on the number of extracellular Ig domains (2D or 3D) or the length of their cytoplasmic tail, long vs. short (L or S). L-forms are shown to have inhibitory functions, while S-forms enhance cytotoxic activities of NK cells in DAP12-mediated signal pathways. KIRs regulate NK cells' killing function through the interaction with MHC class I molecules [100, 108].

The interaction between inhibitory KIRs and normal MHC-I molecules inhibits NK cell stimulation. Correspondingly, NK cell stimulation can occur due to an interaction between activating KIRs and polymorphic self-MHC class I mole-

cules. Inhibitory KIRs were shown to be involved in the escape mechanism of acute myeloid leukemia (AML) from NK cell immune surveillance, mechanism of which includes a mismatch between donor KIRs and recipient human leukocyte antigen ligands [109]. Thus, the understanding of KIR-mediated recognition of the missing self is important in the treatment of AML [110].

Ly49 family is a large group of receptors expressed in mice but not in humans [111]. Functionally, Ly49 is similar to human KIRs, containing both activating and inhibitory receptors. Inhibitory Ly94 receptors possess ITIM motifs which recruit SHP-1 to trigger an inhibitory signal, while activation receptors interact with DAP12 to activate lytic machinery in NK cells [112]. Ly49H is an activating NK receptor which recognizes m157 glycoprotein encoded by mouse cytomegalovirus (MCMV). Upon interaction with m157, Ly49H associates with DAP12 and DAP10 to stimulate NK cell-mediated cytotoxic activities against infected cells [113], suggesting a role for Ly49H in the protection against viral infection-associated tumors [114].

DNAM-1 (CD226) is an adhesion molecule expressed on the surface of NK cells, monocytes, and a subset of T-cells. DNAM-1 belongs to the immunoglobulin superfamily containing two Ig-like domains of the V-set. DNAM-1 is reported to bind to two ligands: CD112 and CD155 [115]. CD112 and CD155 are highly expressed in some tumors like melanoma and neuroblastoma. Importantly, neuroblastoma cells that do not express CD112 and CD155 are resistant to NK cells, indicating that NK lysis of this neuroblastoma cells requires DNAM-1 interaction with its ligands on tumor cells [116].

2.3.7 B7 Family

B7 family consists of co-stimulatory and co-inhibitory receptors found on activated APC and T-cells, which regulate the interaction between APCs and T-cells. B7-1 and B7-2 are expressed on APCs and are involved in the stimulation of T-cell response. B7-1 and B7-2 on APCs serve as co-stimulatory molecules and play a critical role in regulating antitumor immune responses through reciprocal interaction of their receptor CD28 and cytotoxic T-lymphocyte antigen-4 (CTLA-4) on T lymphocytes [117, 118]. B7-H1 (PD-L1) expression in DCs is induced by IL-10 and VEGF at ovarian tumors [119]. B7-H1 on DCs suppresses IL-12 and promotes IL-10 secretion, creating an immunosuppressive tumor environment. Moreover, the blockade of B7-H1 enhances antitumor immunity by DC-mediated T-cell activation [119, 120]. In addition, treatment with PD-1 neutralizing antibodies has been found to decrease tumor growth and metastasis in B16 melanoma and colon cancer models [121, 122]. B7-H3 on APCs binds to an unidentified receptor on NK cells and transduces an inhibitory signal which suppresses cytotoxic activities of NK cell. In addition, blocking of B7-H3 could restore the antitumor effects of NK cells [116]. Finally, B7-H4 promotes protumorigenic and immunosuppressive phenotypes of macrophages; for example, the blockade of B7-H4 normalized immunogenicity of macrophages and augmented antitumor immunity in ovarian tumor tissues [123] (Fig. 2.1a).

2.4 The Role of Effectors Produced from Innate Immune Cells in Cancer and Antitumor Immunity

2.4.1 Interferons (IFNs)

Type I IFNs are produced by many different cells in response to viral or bacterial infections. Type I IFNs (IFN-α/IFN-β) enhance proliferation and activation of innate immune cells such as DCs, macrophages, and NK cells [124]. In addition, they stimulate antigen processing and presentation to antigen-specific lymphocytes, which greatly contribute to tumor immunosurveillance [125]. The importance of type I IFNs in tumor immunosurveillance also validated enhanced susceptibility to tumorigenesis by treatment with anti-IFN-α/IFN-β neutralizing antibodies or in mice with targeted mutations of type I IFN receptor [126, 127].

Type II IFN (IFN-γ) is a cytokine involved in the activation of adaptive immune cells. IFN-γ is

primarily produced by various innate immune lymphocytes such as NK, NKT, and γδ-T cells and plays a critical role in the induction of Th1 immune responses and the production of NO and ROS by macrophages, leading to enhanced cytotoxic activities against transformed cells [128]. IFN-γ has an important role in the protection against transplanted tumors or chemically induced tumors by increasing intrinsic immunogenicity of tumor cells [129, 130]. IFNGR$^{-/-}$ mice or mice deficient in IFN-γ-downstream signaling molecule Stat-1 developed tumors more rapidly and in greater frequencies compared to wild-type mice [131, 132]. Thus, IFN-γ-mediated regulation of tumor immunogenicity has a great impact on innate immunity and tumor immunosurveillance.

2.4.2 Other Cytokines

Interleukins have an important role in regulating innate immune functions in tumor microenvironments. Several cytokines, such as IL-2, IL-12, IL-18, IL-15, and IL-21, serve as NK cell-stimulants, competent in targeting transformed cells. Mice deficient for IL-12p40 are susceptible to carcinogen-induced tumorigenesis; in addition, IL-21$^{-/-}$ mice showed reduced colitis-associated cancers [133], indicating the role of these cytokine in protecting hosts from arising tumors. With respect to the mechanisms of action, NKG2D systems are involved in the enhancement of NK cell cytotoxic activities by all cytokines suggested above, and perforin-granzyme pathways play an important role in exerting NK cell cytolysis by IL-18. Moreover, IL-21 induces NK cell effector functions by increasing sensitivities to IFN-γ, and IL-15 regulates survival, activation, and proliferation of NK cells [134]. Cytokines produced from innate immune cells serve as feasible adjuvants in activating antitumor responses in patients with advanced cancer. For example, the systemic administration of high doses of recombinant IL-2 or the adaptive transfer of IL-2-stimulated NK cell can trigger potent antitumor responses and mediate durable tumor regressions in patients with advanced melanoma and renal cell carcinoma [135]. The clinical efficacy of IL-12 has been evaluated as a monotherapy or in combination with other immunotherapies in patients with cancer; however, they did not induce durable clinical responses [136, 137].

Several cytokines antagonize immunogenic potential of tumors and innate lymphocytes. IL-10 downregulates the expression of immunogenic cytokines, such as IFN-γ, IL-2, TNF-α, and GM-CSF, and also suppresses antigen presentation by APCs. On the other hand, the carcinogen-mediated tumor incidence was increased in IL-10-knockout mice, whereas IL-10 overexpression protects mice from arising tumors [138]. Thus, IL-10 has a complex role in tumorigenesis, and the pro- and antitumor effects of IL-10 may depend on the different experimental models. TGF-β is a regulatory cytokine which has important roles in the regulation of immune responses and immune tolerance as well as carcinogenesis [139, 140]. TGF-β can inhibit the activities of NK cells through the suppression of IFN-γ production [141], as well as the downregulation of activating receptors such as NKp30 and NKG2D [142]. On the other hand, TGF-β negatively regulates recruitment and differentiation of myeloid-derived suppressor cells (MDSCs) in tumor tissues derived from mammary carcinomas, contributing to enhanced host immunity and tumor rejection [143]. Therefore, TGF-β has different roles in antitumor immunity and tumorigenicity, which are in part dependent on the phase of tumor progression and different cellular components in tumor microenvironments [144]. Vascular endothelial growth factor-A (VEGF-A) also plays a critical role in suppressing DC maturation and differentiation, therefore impacting tumor immunogenicity and host immunosurveillance [145]. Thus, various cytokines are responsible for attenuating immunogenic potentials of innate immune systems in tumors.

Several cytokines derived from innate lymphocytes contribute to smoldering inflammation and tumor progression. IL-23-IL-17 pathway operated in endogenous tumor microenvironments represents prototypical mediators which promote tumor-associate inflammation. IL-23 promotes tumor cell growth and invasion through upregulation of proteins of the matrix metalloproteinase-9

(MMP9), COX-2, and angiogenesis. In contrast, IL-23$^{-/-}$ mice showed reduced inflammation and thus attenuated tumor formation [146]. IL-17 is elevated in various tumors, where it plays an important role in tumor growth. IL-17 can enhance tumor growth by direct effects on tumor cells and tumor-associated stromal cells by activating IL-6-Stat3 pathways [147]. Furthermore, the altered composition of commensal microbes and disruption of epithelial barrier functions facilitate differentiation of IL-17-producing T lymphocytes by IL-23 from myeloid cells in intestine, leading to increased colon tumorigenesis [148, 149].

Granulocyte-macrophage colony-stimulating factor (GM-CSF) is produced in vivo by many cells including mast cells, macrophages, T-cells, fibroblasts, and endothelial cells in response to immune activation and proinflammatory cytokines. GM-CSF creates an immunosuppressive tumor microenvironment by differentiating immature myeloid-derived suppressor cells (MDSCs) into tumor tissues [150]. On the other hand, the therapeutic administration of GM-CSF has been emerged as a potent immunogenic adjuvant to stimulate antitumor immunity by enhancing APC functions [151].

Macrophage colony-stimulating factor, M-CSF (also known as CSF-1) is a dimeric polypeptide growth factor which regulates the proliferation, differentiation, and survival of macrophages and their bone marrow progenitors. CSF-1 expression is elevated in different tumors and is found to be accompanied by high grade and poor prognosis [152]. Targeting of CSF-1 has been evaluated in preclinical and clinical studies [153]. The administration of anti-CSF1R-neutralizing antibody (AFS98) or a CSF-1R inhibitor (Ki20227) resulted in reduced numbers of tumor-infiltrated macrophages in an implanted osteosarcoma model and reduced vascularization, angiogenesis, and tumor growth [154, 155].

2.4.3 Chemokines

Chemokines are small cytokines secreted by many cell types in response to pathological conditions, in order to activate and attract effector cells which express appropriate chemokine receptors. Two types of chemokines have been identified: CC chemokines that are chemotactic for monocytes and CXC chemokines which attract polymorphonuclear leukocytes (PMNs). Chemokines have a central role in tumor progression through the recruitment of innate immune cells into tumor site. Most studies have focused on CCL2 and CCL5 as the major chemokines in tumor microenvironment.

CCL2 (MCP-1) is produced by tumor cells and tumor-associated stromal cells and attracts CCR2^{+} inflammatory monocytes to the tumor microenvironment, which differentiate into tumor-associated macrophages and promote tumor aggressiveness, and the blockade of CCL2-CCR2 signaling by neutralizing antibodies suppresses metastasis and prolongs overall survival of tumor-bearing mice [156]. The levels of CCL2 expression and macrophage infiltration into tumors are correlated with poor prognosis and metastases in human breast cancer, suggesting significance of CCL2-mediated immune regulation in cancer patients [157].

CCL5, another important chemokine, plays an important role in the recruitment of monocytes into the tumor microenvironment [158]. CCL5 induces expression of CCL2, CCL3 (MIP-α), CCL4 (MIP-β), and CXCL8 (IL-8) by monocytes, which leads to the recruitment of myeloid cells into tumor site [159]. CCL5 also induces CCR1 expression on monocytes [160]. Hence, chemokines lead to the recruitment of monocytes, which produce more chemokines to further attract more monocytes as well as other leukocytes into the tumor site. CCL5 enhances antitumor immune responses against tumors [161], while it promotes tumorigenesis and metastases in some conditions [162, 163]. These findings suggest dual function of CCL5 in cancer and antitumor immunity.

Taken together, the dynamic interactions between tumor cells and innate immune cells governed by chemokine networks play a pivotal role in the regulation of tumor immunosurveillance and tumorigenicity (Fig. 2.2).

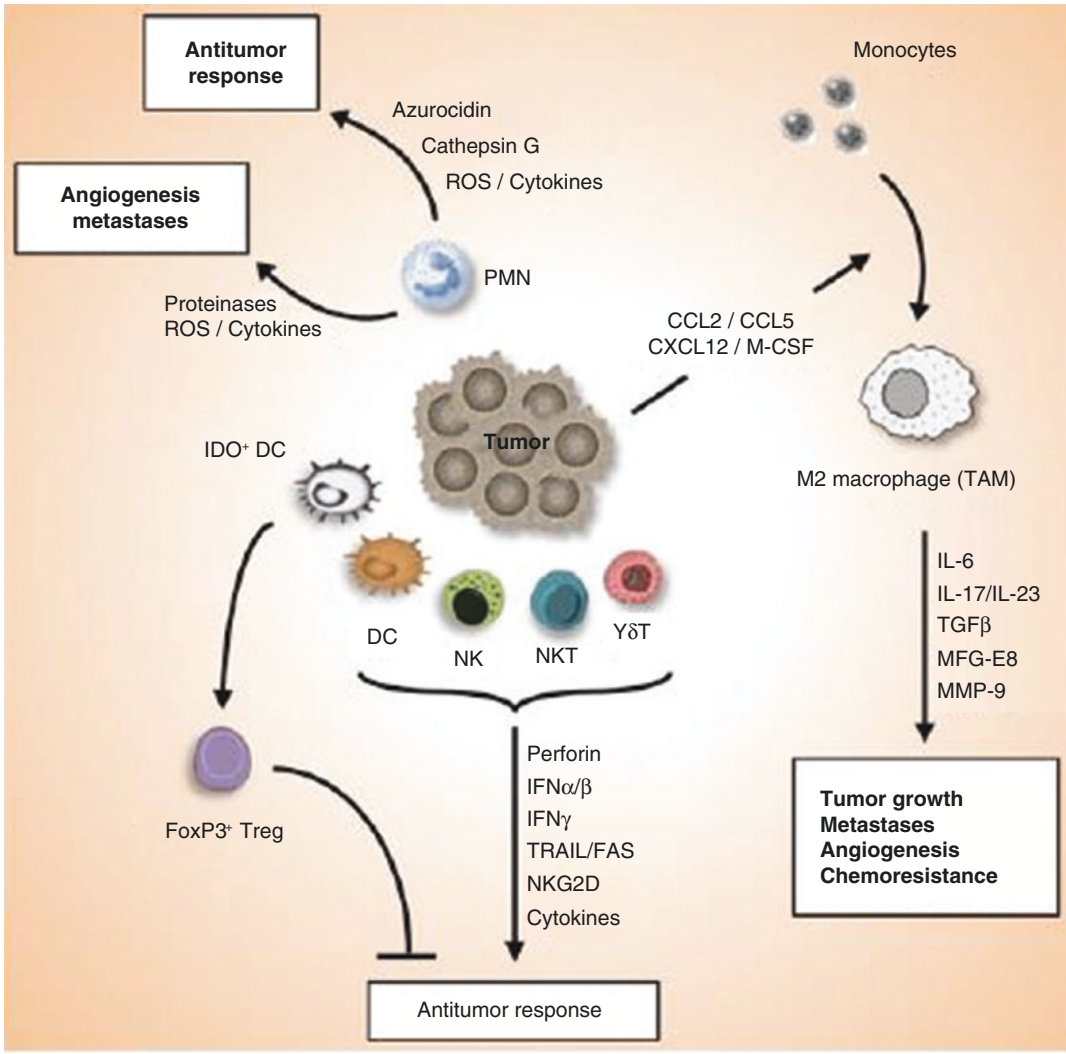


Fig. 2.2 Role of the innate immune system in cancer and antitumor immunity. Innate immune system serves as the first defense line against cancers. Innate immune cells such as DC, NK, NKT, γδ-T cells are attracted into the tumor site, where they recognize the transformed cells and release multiple factors which initiate an antitumor immune response. On the other hand, other innate immune cells may also involve in the promotion of tumor growth, angiogenesis, and metastasis. For example, IDO$^+$ DC induces differentiation of FoxP3$^+$Treg cells which suppress antitumor immunity, and molecules released by PMNs may have protumorigenic or antitumor effects. Furthermore, tumors secrete chemokines and cytokines that attract inflammatory monocytes into the tumor microenvironment and induce its differentiation into M2 macrophages, which play important roles in tumor progression, metastases, angiogenesis, and chemoresistance

2.5 Concluding Remarks

Innate immune system serves as the first line of defense against pathogens and cancers. In tumors, innate immune cells are attracted into the tumor site. Factors released from stressed cells at the tumor microenvironment, such as PAMPs and DAMPs, are recognized by another set of receptors, including TLRs, RLRs, and NLRs, which trigger distinct innate signaling pathways; these pathways lead to maturation, activation, as well as production of cytokines and chemokines from

immune cells, to attract more immune cells into the tumor site and initiate an immune response against tumor cells. Thus, a deep knowledge of the role of innate immune system in tumor immunity and tumorigenesis is critical to develop new strategies for the immunotherapy of cancer.

Acknowledgments We apologize to the authors whose work could not be cited due to space constraints.

This study is partially supported by a Grant-in-Aid for Scientific Research and Scientific Research for Innovative Areas from the Ministry of Education, Culture, Sports, Science and Technology (MEXT) and the Ministry of Health, Labour and Welfare, The Naito Foundation, and the Astellas Foundation for Research on Metabolic Disorders (M.J.).

References

1. Condeelis J, Pollard JW. Macrophages: obligate partners for tumor cell migration, invasion, and metastasis. Cell. 2006;124:263–6.
2. Vesely MD, Kershaw MH, Schreiber RD, Smyth MJ. Natural innate and adaptive immunity to cancer. Annu Rev Immunol. 2011;29:235–71.
3. Seliger B, Maeurer MJ, Ferrone S. Antigen-processing machinery breakdown and tumor growth. Immunol Today. 2000;21:455–64.
4. Chiba S, Baghdadi M, Akiba H, Yoshiyama H, Kinoshita I, Dosaka-Akita H, et al. Tumor-infiltrating DCs suppress nucleic acid-mediated innate immune responses through interactions between the receptor TIM-3 and the alarming HMGB1. Nat Immunol. 2012;13:832–42.
5. Balkwill F, Charles KA, Mantovani A. Smoldering and polarized inflammation in the initiation and promotion of malignant disease. Cancer Cell. 2005;7:211–7.
6. Khong HT, Restifo NP. Natural selection of tumor variants in the generation of "tumor escape" phenotypes. Nat Immunol. 2002;3:999–1005.
7. Zou W. Regulatory T, cells, tumour immunity and immunotherapy. Nat Rev Immunol. 2006;6:295–307.
8. Smyth MJ, Cretney E, Takeda K, Wiltrout RH, Sedger LM, Kayagaki N, et al. Tumor necrosis factor-related apoptosis-inducing ligand (TRAIL) contributes to interferon gamma-dependent natural killer cell protection from tumor metastasis. J Exp Med. 2001;193:661–70.
9. Robertson MJ. Role of chemokines in the biology of natural killer cells. J Leukoc Biol. 2002;71:173–83.
10. Bottino C, Moretta L, Pende D, Vitale M, Moretta A. Learning how to discriminate between friends and enemies, a lesson from natural killer cells. Mol Immunol. 2004;41:569–75.
11. Sinkovics JG, Horvath JC. Human natural killer cells: a comprehensive review. Int J Oncol. 2005;27:5–47.
12. Johnsen AC, Haux J, Steinkjer B, Nonstad U, Egeberg K, Sundan A, et al. Regulation of APO-2 ligand/trail expression in NK cells-involvement in NK cell-mediated cytotoxicity. Cytokine. 1999;11:664–72.
13. Mirandola P, Ponti C, Gobbi G, Sponzilli I, Vaccarezza M, Cocco L, et al. Activated human NK and $CD8^+$ T cells express both TNF-related apoptosis-inducing ligand (TRAIL) and TRAIL receptors but are resistant to TRAIL-mediated cytotoxicity. Blood. 2004;104:2418–24.
14. Gołab J. Interleukin 18-interferon γ inducing factor-a novel player in tumour immunotherapy? Cytokine. 2000;12:332–8.
15. Zamai L, Ponti C, Mirandola P, Gobbi G, Papa S, Galeotti L, et al. NK cells and cancer. J Immunol. 2007;178:4011–6.
16. Bauer S, Groh V, Wu J, Steinle A, Phillips JH, Lanier LL, et al. Activation of NK cells and T cells by NKG2D, a receptor for stress-inducible MICA. Science. 1999;285:727–9.
17. Kim S, Poursine-Laurent J, Truscott SM, Lybarger L, Song YJ, Yang L, et al. Licensing of natural killer cells by host major histocompatibility complex class I molecules. Nature. 2005;436:709–13.
18. Elliott JM, Wahle JA, Yokoyama WM. MHC class I-deficient natural killer cells acquire a licensed phenotype after transfer into an MHC class I-sufficient environment. J Exp Med. 2010;207:2073–9.
19. Smyth MJ, Thia KY, Cretney E, Kelly JM, Snook MB, Forbes CA, et al. Perforin is a major contributor to NK cell control of tumor metastasis. J Immunol. 1999;162:6658–62.
20. Piccioli D, Sbrana S, Melandri E, Valiante NM. Contact-dependent stimulation and inhibition of dendritic cells by natural killer cells. J Exp Med. 2002;195:335–41.
21. Jinushi M, Takehara T, Tatsumi T, Hiramatsu N, Sakamori R, Yamaguchi S, et al. Impairment of natural killer cell and dendritic cell functions by the soluble form of MHC class I-related chain A in advanced human hepatocellular carcinomas. J Hepatol. 2005;43:1013–20.
22. Gerosa F, Baldani-Guerra B, Nisii C, Marchesini V, Carra G, Trinchieri G. Reciprocal activating interaction between natural killer cells and dendritic cells. J Exp Med. 2002;195:327–33.
23. Walzer T, Dalod M, Robbins SH, Zitvogel L, Vivier E. Natural-killer cells and dendritic cells: "l'union fait la force". Blood. 2005;106:2252–8.
24. Akazawa T, Ebihara T, Okuno M, Okuda Y, Shingai M, Tsujimura K, et al. Antitumor NK activation induced by the toll-like receptor 3-TICAM-1 (TRIF) pathway in myeloid dendritic cells. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2007;104:252–7.
25. Boudreau JE, Stephenson KB, Wang F, Ashkar AA, Mossman KL, Lenz LL, et al. IL-15 and type I interferon are required for activation of tumoricidal NK cells by virus-infected dendritic cells. Cancer Res. 2011;71:2497–506.

26. Taniguchi M, Harada M, Kojo S, Nakayama T, Wakao H. The regulatory role of Valpha14 NKT cells in innate and acquired immune response. Annu Rev Immunol. 2003;21:483–513.
27. Smyth MJ, Thia KY, Street SE, Cretney E, Trapani JA, Taniguchi M, et al. Differential tumor surveillance by natural killer (NK) and NKT cells. J Exp Med. 2000;191:661–8.
28. Singh AK, Wilson MT, Hong S, Olivares-Villagómez D, Du C, Stanic AK, et al. Natural killer T cell activation protects mice against experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis. J Exp Med. 2001;194:1801–11.
29. Cui J, Shin T, Kawano T, Sato H, Kondo E, Toura I, et al. Requirement for Valpha14 NKT cells in IL-12-mediated rejection of tumors. Science. 1997;278:1623–6.
30. Gillessen S, Naumov YN, Nieuwenhuis EE, Exley MA, Lee FS, Mach N, et al. CD1d-restricted T cells regulate dendritic cell function and antitumor immunity in a granulocyte-macrophage colony-stimulating factor-dependent fashion. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2003;100:8874–9.
31. Akbari O, Faul JL, Hoyte EG, Berry GJ, Wahlström J, Kronenberg M, et al. $CD4^+$ invariant T-cell-receptor natural killer T cells in bronchial asthma. N Engl J Med. 2006;354:1117–29.
32. Crowe NY, Coquet JM, Berzins SP, Kyparissoudis K, Keating R, Pellicci DG, et al. Differential antitumor immunity mediated by NKT cell subsets in vivo. J Exp Med. 2005;202:1279–88.
33. Terabe M, Matsui S, Noben-Trauth N, Chen H, Watson C, Donaldson DD, et al. NKT cell-mediated repression of tumor immunosurveillance by IL-13 and the IL-4R-STAT6 pathway. Nat Immunol. 2000;1:515–20.
34. Terabe M, Matsui S, Park JM, Mamura M, Noben-Trauth N, Donaldson DD, et al. Transforming growth factor-beta production and myeloid cells are an effector mechanism through which CD1d-restricted T cells blocks cytotoxic T lymphocyte-mediated tumor immunosurveillance: abrogation prevents tumor recurrence. J Exp Med. 2003;198:1741–52.
35. Hayday AC. Gamma delta cells: a right time and a right place for a conserved third way of protection. Annu Rev Immunol. 2000;18:975–1026.
36. Mortia CT, Mariuzza RA, Brenner MB. Antigen recognition by human gamma delta T cells: pattern recognition by the adaptive immune system. Springer Semin Immunopathol. 2000;22:191–217.
37. Wu Y, Wu W, Wong WM, Ward E, Thrasher AJ, Goldblatt D, et al. Human gamma delta T cells: a lymphoid lineage cell capable of professional phagocytosis. J Immunol. 2009;183:5622–9.
38. Girardi M, Glusac E, Filler RB, Roberts SJ, Propperova I, Lewis J, et al. The distinct contributions of murine T cell receptor (TCR) gamma-delta$^+$ and TCR alpha-beta$^+$ T cells to different stages of chemically induced skin cancer. J Exp Med. 2003;198:747–55.
39. Girardi M, Oppenheim DE, Steele CR, Lewis JM, Glusac E, Filler R, et al. Regulation of cutaneous malignancy by gamma-delta T cells. Science. 2001;294:605–9.
40. Kabelitz D, Wesch D, He W. Perspectives of gamma delta T cells in tumor immunology. Cancer Res. 2007;67:5–8.
41. Brandes M, Willimann K, Moser B. Professional antigen-presentation function by human gamma-delta T cells. Science. 2005;309:264–8.
42. De Palma M, Lewis CE. Macrophage regulation of tumor responses to anticancer therapies. Cancer Cell. 2013;23:277–86.
43. Qian BZ, Pollard JW. Macrophage diversity enhances tumor progression and metastasis. Cell. 2010;141:39–51.
44. Shi C, Pamer EG. Monocyte recruitment during infection and inflammation. Nat Rev Immunol. 2011;11:762–74.
45. Goede V, Brogelli L, Ziche M, Augustin HG. Induction of inflammatory angiogenesis by monocyte chemoattractant protein-1. Int J Cancer. 1999;82:765–70.
46. Luboshits G, Shina S, Kaplan O, Engelberg S, Nass D, Lifshitz-Mercer B, et al. Elevated expression of the CC chemokine regulated on activation, normal T cell expressed and secreted (RANTES) in advanced breast carcinoma. Cancer Res. 1999;59:4681–7.
47. Teicher BA, Fricker SP. CXCL12 (SDF-1)/CXCR4 pathway in cancer. Clin Cancer Res. 2010;16:2927–31.
48. Sica A, Larghi P, Mancino A, Rubino L, Porta C, Totaro MG, et al. Macrophage polarization in tumour progression. Semin Cancer Biol. 2008;18:349–55.
49. Bancroft GJ, Schreiber RD, Unanue ER. Natural immunity: a T-cell-independent pathway of macrophage activation, defined in the SCID mouse. Immunol Rev. 1991;124:5–24.
50. MacMicking J, Xie QW, Nathan C. Nitric oxide and macrophage function. Annu Rev Immunol. 1997;15:323–50.
51. Biswas SK, Mantovani A. Macrophage plasticity and interaction with lymphocyte subsets: cancer as a paradigm. Nat Immunol. 2010;11:889–96.
52. Palucka K, Banchereau J. Cancer immunotherapy via dendritic cells. Nat Rev Cancer. 2012;12:265–77.
53. Conejo-Garcia JR, Benencia F, Courreges MC, Kang E, Mohamed-Hadley A, Buckanovich RJ, et al. Tumor-infiltrating dendritic cell precursors recruited by a beta-defensin contribute to vasculogenesis under the influence of VEGF-A. Nat Med. 2004;10:950–8.
54. Robinson RT, Khader SA, Martino CA, Fountain JJ, Teixeira-Coelho M, Pearl JE, et al. *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* infection induces il12rb1 splicing to generate a novel IL-12Rbeta1 isoform that enhances DC migration. J Exp Med. 2010;207:591–605.
55. Curiel TJ, Cheng P, Mottram P, Alvarez X, Moons L, Evdemon-Hogan M, et al. Dendritic cell subsets differentially regulate angiogenesis in human ovarian cancer. Cancer Res. 2004;64:5535–8.
56. Osman M, Tortorella M, Londei M, Quaratino S. Expression of matrix metalloproteinases and tissue inhibitors of metalloproteinases define the migratory

characteristics of human monocyte-derived dendritic cells. Immunology. 2002;105:73–82.
57. Wobser M, Voigt H, Houben R, Eggert AO, Freiwald M, Kaemmerer U, et al. Dendritic cell based antitumor vaccination: impact of functional indoleamine 2,3-dioxygenase expression. Cancer Immunol Immunother. 2007;56:1017–24.
58. Peng G, Wang HY, Peng W, Kiniwa Y, Seo KH, Wang RF. Tumor-infiltrating gamma-delta T cells suppress T and dendritic cell function via mechanisms controlled by a unique toll-like receptor signaling pathway. Immunity. 2007;27:334–48.
59. Ebata K, Shimizu Y, Nakayama Y, Minemura M, Murakami J, Kato T, et al. Immature NK cells suppress dendritic cell functions during the development of leukemia in a mouse model. J Immunol. 2006;176:4113–24.
60. Lichtenstein AK, Berek J, Kahle J, Zighelboim J. Role of inflammatory neutrophils in antitumor effects induced by intraperitoneal administration of Corynebacterium parvum in mice. Cancer Res. 1984;44:5118–23.
61. Curcio C, Di Carlo E, Clynes R, Smyth MJ, Boggio K, Quaglino E, et al. Nonredundant roles of antibody, cytokines, and perforin in the eradication of established Her-2/neu carcinomas. J Clin Invest. 2003;111:1161–70.
62. Soiffer R, Hodi FS, Haluska F, Jung K, Gillessen S, Singer S, et al. Vaccination with irradiated, autologous melanoma cells engineered to secrete granulocyte-macrophage colony-stimulating factor by adenoviral-mediated gene transfer augments antitumor immunity in patients with metastatic melanoma. J Clin Oncol. 2003;21:3343–50.
63. Suttmann H, Riemensberger J, Bentien G, Schmaltz D, Stöckle M, Jocham D, et al. Neutrophil granulocytes are required for effective Bacillus Calmette-Guérin immunotherapy of bladder cancer and orchestrate local immune responses. Cancer Res. 2006;66:8250–7.
64. Gregory AD, Houghton AM. Tumor-associated neutrophils: new targets for cancer therapy. Cancer Res. 2011;71:2411–6.
65. Kawai T, Akira S. The role of pattern-recognition receptors in innate immunity: update on toll-like receptors. Nat Immunol. 2010;11:373–84.
66. Watts C, West MA, Zaru R. TLR signalling regulated antigen presentation in dendritic cells. Curr Opin Immunol. 2010;22:124–30.
67. Blander JM, Medzhitov R. Toll-dependent selection of microbial antigens for presentation by dendritic cells. Nature. 2006;440:808–12.
68. Iwasaki A, Medzhitov R. Regulation of adaptive immunity by the innate immune system. Science. 2010;327:291–5.
69. Apetoh L, Ghiringhelli F, Tesniere A, Criollo A, Ortiz C, Lidereau R, et al. The interaction between HMGB1 and TLR4 dictates the outcome of anticancer chemotherapy and radiotherapy. Immunol Rev. 2007;220:47–59.
70. Hiratsuka S, Watanabe A, Sakurai Y, Akashi-Takamura S, Ishibashi S, Miyake K, et al. The S100A8-serum amyloid A3-TLR4 paracrine cascade establishes a pre-metastatic phase. Nat Cell Biol. 2008;10:1349–55.
71. Kim S, Takahashi H, Lin WW, Descargues P, Grivennikov S, Kim Y, et al. Carcinoma-produced factors activate myeloid cells through TLR2 to stimulate metastasis. Nature. 2009;457:102–6.
72. Thompson AV, Locarnini SA. Toll-like receptors, RIG-I-like RNA helicases and the antiviral innate immune response. Immunol Cell Biol. 2007;85:435–45.
73. Kato H, Takahasi K, Fujita T. RIG-I-like receptors: cytoplasmic sensors for non-self RNA. Immunol Rev. 2011;243:91–8.
74. Poeck H, Besch R, Maihoefer C, Renn M, Tormo D, Morskaya SS, et al. 5′-triphosphate-siRNA: turning gene silencing and rig-I activation against melanoma. Nat Med. 2008;14:1256–63.
75. Kübler K, Gehrke N, Riemann S, Böhnert V, Zillinger T, Hartmann E, et al. Targeted activation of RNA helicase retinoic acid-inducible gene-I induces proimmunogenic apoptosis of human ovarian cancer cells. Cancer Res. 2010;70:5293–304.
76. Ting JY, Duncan JA, Lei Y. How the noninflammasome NLRs function in the innate immune system? Science. 2010;327:286–90.
77. Chen G, Shaw MH, Kim YG, Nuñez G. NOD-like receptors: role in innate immunity and inflammatory disease. Annu Rev Pathol. 2009;4:365–98.
78. Da Silva CJ, Miranda Y, Austin-Brown N, Hsu J, Mathison J, Xiang R, et al. Nod1-dependent control of tumor growth. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2006;103:1840–5.
79. Chen GY, Shaw MH, Redondo G, Núñez G. The innate immune receptor Nod1 protects the intestine from inflammation-induced tumorigenesis. Cancer Res. 2008;68:10060–7.
80. Schroder K, Tschopp J. The inflammasomes. Cell. 2010;140:821–32.
81. Allen IC, TeKippe EM, Woodford RT, Uronis JM, Holl EK, Rogers AB, et al. The NLRP3 inflammasome functions as a negative regulator of tumorigenesis during colitis-associated cancer. J Exp Med. 2010;207:1045–56.
82. Chow MT, Sceneay J, Paget C, Wong CF, Duret H, Tschopp J, et al. NLRP3 suppresses NK cell-mediated responses to carcinogen-induced tumors and metastases. Cancer Res. 2012;72:5721–32.
83. Elliott MR, Chekeni FB, Trampont PC, Lazarowski ER, Kadl A, Walk SF, et al. Nucleotides released by apoptotic cells act as a find-me signal to promote phagocytic clearance. Nature. 2009;461:282–6.
84. Ghiringhelli F, Apetoh L, Tesniere A, Aymeric L, Ma Y, Ortiz C, et al. Activation of the NLRP3 inflammasome in dendritic cells induces IL-1beta-dependent adaptive immunity against tumors. Nat Med. 2009;15:1170–8.
85. Makin G, Dive C. Apoptosis and cancer chemotherapy. Trends Cell Biol. 2001;11:S22–6.
86. Pervaiz S. Anti-cancer drugs of today and tomorrow: are we close to making the turn from treating to curing cancer? Curr Pharm Des. 2002;8:1723–34.
87. Hanayama R, Tanaka M, Miwa K, Shinohara A, Iwamatsu A, Nagata S. Identification of a factor that links apoptotic cells to phagocytes. Nature. 2002;417:182–7.

88. Nakano T, Ishimoto Y, Kishino J, Umeda M, Inoue K, Nagata K, et al. Cell adhesion to phosphatidylserine mediated by a product of growth arrest-specific gene 6. J Biol Chem. 1997;272:29411–4.
89. Miyanishi M, Tada K, Koike M, Uchiyama Y, Kitamura T, Nagata S. Identification of Tim4 as a phosphatidylserine receptor. Nature. 2007;450:435–9.
90. Chao MP, Jaiswal S, Weissman-Tsukamoto R, Alizadeh AA, Gentles AJ, Volkmer J, et al. Calreticulin is the dominant pro-phagocytic signal on multiple human cancers and is counterbalanced by CD47. Sci Transl Med. 2010;2:63–94.
91. Okazawa H, Motegi S, Ohyama N, Ohnishi H, Tomizawa T, Kaneko Y, et al. Negative regulation of phagocytosis in macrophages by the CD47-SHPS-1 system. J Immunol. 2005;174:2004–11.
92. Willingham SB, Volkmer JP, Gentles AJ, Sahoo D, Dalerba P, Mitra SS, et al. The CD47-signal regulatory protein alpha (SIRPα) interaction is a therapeutic target for human solid tumors. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2012;109:6662–7.
93. Jinushi M, Sato M, Kanamoto A, Itoh A, Nagai S, Koyasu S, et al. Milk fat globule epidermal growth factor-8 blockade triggers tumor destruction through coordinated cell-autonomous and immune-mediated mechanisms. J Exp Med. 2009;206:1317–26.
94. Geijtenbeek TH, Gringhuis SI. Signalling through C-type lectin receptors: shaping immune responses. Nat Rev Immunol. 2009;9:465–79.
95. Hawiger D, Inaba K, Dorsett Y, Guo M, Mahnke K, Rivera M, et al. Dendritic cells induce peripheral T cell unresponsiveness under steady state conditions in vivo. J Exp Med. 2001;194:769–79.
96. Steinman RM, Banchereau J. Taking dendritic cells into medicine. Nature. 2007;449:419–26.
97. Sancho D, Joffre OP, Keller AM, Rogers NC, Martínez D, Hernanz-Falcón P, et al. Identification of a dendritic cell receptor that couples sensing of necrosis to immunity. Nature. 2009;458:899–903.
98. Billadeau DD, Leibson PJ. ITAMs versus ITIMs: striking a balance during cell regulation. J Clin Invest. 2002;109:161–8.
99. Cosman D, Müllberg J, Sutherland CL, Chin W, Armitage R, Fanslow W, et al. ULBPs, novel MHC class I-related molecules, bind to CMV glycoprotein UL16 and stimulate NK cytotoxicity through the NKG2D receptor. Immunity. 2001;14:123–33.
100. Moretta L, Bottino C, Pende D, Castriconi R, Mingari MC, Moretta A. Surface NK receptors and their ligands on tumor cells. Semin Immunol. 2006;18:151–8.
101. Groh V, Wu J, Yee C, Spies T. Tumour-derived soluble MIC ligands impair expression of NKG2D and T-cell activation. Nature. 2002;419:734–8.
102. Salih HR, Rammensee HG, Steinle A. Cutting edge: down-regulation of MICA on human tumors by proteolytic shedding. J Immunol. 2002;169:4098–102.
103. Gasser S, Orsulic S, Brown EJ, Raulet DH. The DNA damage pathway regulates innate immune system ligands of the NKG2D receptor. Nature. 2005;436:1186–90.
104. Smyth MJ, Swann J, Cretney E, Zerafa N, Yokoyama WM, Hayakawa Y. NKG2D function protects the host from tumor initiation. J Exp Med. 2005;202:583–8.
105. Cantoni C, Bottino C, Vitale M, Pessino A, Augugliaro R, Malaspina A, et al. NKp44, a triggering receptor involved in tumor cell lysis by activated human natural killer cells, is a novel member of the immunoglobulin superfamily. J Exp Med. 1999;189:787–96.
106. Alvarez-Breckenridge CA, Yu J, Price R, Wojton J, Pradarelli J, Mao H, et al. NK cells impede glioblastoma virotherapy through NKp30 and NKp46 natural cytotoxicity receptors. Nat Med. 2012;18:1827–34.
107. Glasner A, Ghadially H, Gur C, Stanietsky N, Tsukerman P, Enk J, et al. Recognition and prevention of tumor metastasis by the NK receptor NKp46/NCR1. J Immunol. 2012;188:2509–15.
108. Bléry M, Olcese L, Vivier E. Early signaling via inhibitory and activating NK receptors. Hum Immunol. 2000;61:51–64.
109. Ruggeri L, Mancusi A, Burchielli E, Capanni M, Carotti A, Aloisi T, et al. NK cell alloreactivity and allogeneic hematopoietic stem cell transplantation. Blood Cells Mol Dis. 2008;40:84–90.
110. Passweg JR, Huard B, Tiercy JM, Roosnek E. HLA and KIR polymorphisms affect NK-cell anti-tumor activity. Trends Immunol. 2007;28:437–41.
111. Yokoyama WM, Plougastel BM. Immune functions encoded by the natural killer gene complex. Nat Rev Immunol. 2003;3:304–16.
112. Smith KM, Wu J, Bakker AB, Phillips JH, Lanier LL. Ly-49D and Ly-49H associate with mouse DAP12 and form activating receptors. J Immunol. 1998;161:7–10.
113. Orr MT, Sun JC, Hesslein DT, Arase H, Phillips JH, Takai T, et al. Ly49H signaling through DAP10 is essential for optimal natural killer cell responses to mouse cytomegalovirus infection. J Exp Med. 2009;206:807–17.
114. Cerwenka A, Lanier LL. Ligands for natural killer cell receptors: redundancy or specificity. Immunol Rev. 2001;181:158–69.
115. Bottino C, Castriconi R, Pende D, Rivera P, Nanni M, Carnemolla B, et al. Identification of PVR (CD155) and Nectin-2 (CD112) as cell surface ligands for the human DNAM-1 (CD226) activating molecule. J Exp Med. 2003;198:557–67.
116. Castriconi R, Dondero A, Corrias MV, Lanino E, Pende D, Moretta L, et al. Natural killer cell-mediated killing of freshly isolated neuroblastoma cells: critical role of DNAX accessory molecule-1-poliovirus receptor interaction. Cancer Res. 2004;64:9180–4.
117. Chen L, Ashe S, Brady WA, Hellström I, Hellström KE, Ledbetter JA, et al. Costimulation of antitumor immunity by the B7 counter-receptor for the T lymphocyte molecules CD28 and CTLA-4. Cell. 1992;71:1093–102.

118. Chen L, McGowan P, Ashe S, Johnston J, Li Y, Hellström I, et al. Tumor immunogenicity determines the effect of B7 costimulation on T cell-mediated tumor immunity. J Exp Med. 1994;179:523–32.
119. Curiel TJ, Wei S, Dong H, Alvarez X, Cheng P, Mottram P, et al. Blockade of B7-H1 improves myeloid dendritic cell-mediated antitumor immunity. Nat Med. 2003;9:562–7.
120. Brown JA, Dorfman DM, Ma FR, Sullivan EL, Munoz O, Wood CR, et al. Blockade of programmed death-1 ligands on dendritic cells enhances T cell activation and cytokine production. J Immunol. 2003;170:1257–66.
121. Iwai Y, Ishida M, Tanaka Y, Okazaki T, Honjo T, Minato N. Involvement of PD-L1 on tumor cells in the escape from host immune system and tumor immunotherapy by PD-L1 blockade. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2002;99:12293–7.
122. Iwai Y, Terawaki S, Honjo T. PD-1 blockade inhibits hematogenous spread of poorly immunogenic tumor cells by enhanced recruitment of effector T cells. Int Immunol. 2005;17:133–44.
123. Kryczek I, Zou L, Rodriguez P, Zhu G, Wei S, Mottram P, et al. B7-H4 expression identifies a novel suppressive macrophage population in human ovarian carcinoma. J Exp Med. 2006;203:871–81.
124. Dunn GP, Koebel CM, Schreiber RD. Interferons, immunity and cancer immunoediting. Net Rev Immunol. 2006;6:836–48.
125. Diamond MS, Kinder M, Matsushita H, Mashayekhi M, Dunn GP, Archambault JM, et al. Type I interferon is selectively required by dendritic cells for immune rejection of tumors. J Exp Med. 2011;208:1989–2003.
126. Gresser I, Belardelli F. Endogenous type I interferons as a defense against tumors. Cytokine Growth Factor Rev. 2002;13:111–8.
127. Dunn GP, Bruce AT, Sheehan KC, Shankaran V, Uppaluri R, Bui JD, et al. A critical function for type I interferons in cancer immunoediting. Nat Immunol. 2005;6:722–9.
128. Schroder K, Hertzog PJ, Ravasi T, Hume DA. Interferon-gamma: an overview of signals, mechanisms and functions. J Leukoc Biol. 2004;75:163–89.
129. Shankaran V, Ikeda H, Bruce AT, White JM, Swanson PE, Old LJ, et al. IFNgamma and lymphocytes prevent primary tumour development and shape tumour immunogenicity. Nature. 2001;410:1107–11.
130. Dunn GP, Old LJ, Schreiber RD. The immunobiology of cancer immunosurveillance and immunoediting. Immunity. 2004;21:137–48.
131. Meraz MA, White JM, Sheehan KC, Bach EA, Rodig SJ, Dighe AS, et al. Targeted disruption of the Stat1 gene in mice reveals unexpected physiologic specificity in the JAK-STAT signaling pathway. Cell. 1996;84:431–42.
132. Dighe AS, Richards E, Old LJ, Schreiber RD. Enhanced in vivo growth and resistance to rejection of tumor cells expressing dominant negative IFN gamma receptors. Immunity. 1994;1:447–56.
133. Stolfi C, Rizzo A, Franzè E, Rotondi A, Fantini MC, Sarra M, et al. Involvement of interleukin-21 in the regulation of colitis-associated colon cancer. J Exp Med. 2011;208:2279–90.
134. Steel JC, Waldmann TA, Morris JC. Interleukin-15 biology and its therapeutic implications in cancer. Trends Pharmacol Sci. 2012;33:35–41.
135. Rosenberg SA. Progress in human tumour immunology and immunotherapy. Nature. 2001;411:380–4.
136. Del Vecchio M, Bajetta E, Canova S, Lotze MT, Wesa A, Parmiani G, et al. Interleukin-12: biological properties and clinical application. Clin Cancer Res. 2007;13:4677–85.
137. Jinushi M, Tahara H. Cytokine gene-mediated immunotherapy: current status and future perspectives. Cancer Sci. 2009;100:1389–96.
138. Mumm JB, Emmerich J, Zhang X, Chan I, Wu L, Mauze S, et al. IL-10 elicits IFNγ-dependent tumor immune surveillance. Cancer Cell. 2011;20:781–96.
139. Li MO, Wan YY, Sanjabi S, Robertson AL, Flavell RA. Transforming growth factor-beta regulation of immune responses. Annu Rev Immunol. 2006;24:99–146.
140. Blobe GC, Schiemann WP, Lodish HF. Role of transforming growth factor beta in human disease. N Engl J Med. 2000;342:1350–8.
141. Hunter CA, Bermudez L, Beernink H, Waegell W, Remington JS. Transforming growth factor-beta inhibits interleukin-12-induced production of interferon-gamma by natural killer cells: a role for transforming growth factor-beta in the regulation of T cell-independent resistance to toxoplasma gondii. Eur J Immunol. 1995;25:994–1000.
142. Castriconi R, Cantoni C, Della-Chiesa M, Vitale M, Marcenaro E, Conte R, et al. Transforming growth factor beta 1 inhibits expression of NKp30 and NKG2D receptors: consequences for the NK-mediated killing of dendritic cells. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2003;100:4120–5.
143. Yang L, Huang J, Ren X, Gorska AE, Chytil A, Aakre M, et al. Abrogation of TGF beta signaling in mammary carcinomas recruits Gr-1^{+}CD11b^{+} myeloid cells that promote metastasis. Cancer Cell. 2008;13:23–35.
144. Wakefield LM, Roberts AB. TGF-beta signaling: positive and negative effects on tumorigenesis. Curr Opin Genet Dev. 2002;12:22–9.
145. Fricke I, Mirza N, Dupont J, Lockhart C, Jackson A, Lee JH, et al. Vascular endothelial growth factor-trap overcomes defects in dendritic cell differentiation but does not improve antigen-specific immune responses. Clin Cancer Res. 2007;13:4840–8.
146. Langowski JL, Zhang X, Wu L, Mattson JD, Chen T, Smith K, et al. IL-23 promotes tumour incidence and growth. Nature. 2006;442:461–5.
147. Wang L, Yi T, Kortylewski M, Pardoll DM, Zeng D, Yu H. IL-17 can promote tumor growth through

an IL-6-Stat3 signaling pathway. J Exp Med. 2009;206:1457–64.
148. Wu S, Rhee KJ, Albesiano E, Rabizadeh S, Wu X, Yen HR, et al. A human colonic commensal promotes colon tumorigenesis via activation of T helper type 17 T cell responses. Nat Med. 2009;15:1016–22.
149. Grivennikov SI, Wang K, Mucida D, Stewart CA, Schnabl B, Jauch D, et al. Adenoma-linked barrier defects and microbial products drive IL-23/IL-17-mediated tumour growth. Nature. 2012;491:254–8.
150. Dolcetti L, Peranzoni E, Ugel S, Marigo I, Fernandez Gomez A, Mesa C, et al. Hierarchy of immunosuppressive strength among myeloid-derived suppressor cell subsets is determined by GM-CSF. Eur J Immunol. 2010;40:22–35.
151. Dranoff G. GM-CSF-based cancer vaccines. Immunol Rev. 2002;188:147–54.
152. Lin EY, Nguyen AV, Russell RG, Pollard JW. Colony-stimulating factor 1 promotes progression of mammary tumors to malignancy. J Exp Med. 2001;193:727–40.
153. Hume DA, MacDonald KP. Therapeutic applications of macrophage colony-stimulating factor-1 (CSF-1) and antagonists of CSF-1 receptor (CSF-1R) signaling. Blood. 2012;119:1810–20.
154. Kubota Y, Takubo K, Shimizu T, Ohno H, Kishi K, Shibuya M, et al. M-CSF inhibition selectively targets pathological angiogenesis and lymphangiogenesis. J Exp Med. 2009;206:1089–102.
155. DeNardo DG, Brennan DJ, Rexhepaj E, Ruffell B, Shiao SL, Madden SF, et al. Leukocyte complexity predicts breast cancer survival and functionally regulates response to chemotherapy. Cancer Discov. 2011;1:54–67.
156. Qian BZ, Li J, Zhang H, Kitamura T, Zhang J, Campion LR, et al. CCL2 recruits inflammatory monocytes to facilitate breast-tumour metastasis. Nature. 2011;475:222–5.
157. Ueno T, Toi M, Saji H, Muta M, Bando H, Kuroi K, et al. Significance of macrophage chemoattractant protein-1 in macrophage recruitment, angiogenesis, and survival in human breast cancer. Clin Cancer Res. 2000;6:3282–9.
158. Azenshtein E, Luboshits G, Shina S, Neumark E, Shahbazian D, Weil M, et al. The CC chemokine RANTES in breast carcinoma progression: regulation of expression and potential mechanisms of promalignant activity. Cancer Res. 2002;62:1093–102.
159. Locati M, Deuschle U, Massardi ML, Martinez FO, Sironi M, Sozzani S, et al. Analysis of the gene expression profile activated by the CC chemokine ligand 5/RANTES and by lipopolysaccharide in human monocytes. J Immunol. 2002;168:3557–62.
160. Rot A, Von Andrian UH. Chemokines in innate and adaptive host defense: basic chemokinese grammar for immune cells. Annu Rev Immunol. 2004;22:891–928.
161. Lapteva N, Huang XF. CCL5 as an adjuvant for cancer immunotherapy. Expert Opin Biol Ther. 2010;10:725–33.
162. Stormes KA, Lemken CA, Lepre JV, Marinucci MN, Kurt RA. Inhibition of metastasis by inhibition of tumor-derived CCL5. Breast Cancer Res Treat. 2005;89:209–12.
163. Cambien B, Richard-Fiardo P, Karimdjee BF, Martini V, Ferrua B, Pitard B, et al. CCL5 neutralization restricts cancer growth and potentiates the targeting of PDGFRβ in colorectal carcinoma. PLoS One. 2011;6:28842.

Tumor-Associated Myeloid Cells in Cancer Progression

3

Tamara Gulic, Rita Silva-Gomes, Sadaf Davoudian, Marina Sironi, Paola Allavena, Alberto Mantovani, and Barbara Bottazzi

Contents

TG, RSG, and SD have equally contributed to this review.

T. Gulic
Humanitas Clinical and Research Institute, Rozzano, MI, Italy

Department of Physiology and Immunology, Medical Faculty, University of Rijeka, Rijeka, Croatia

R. Silva-Gomes
Humanitas Clinical and Research Institute, Rozzano, MI, Italy

Graduate Program in Areas of Basic and Applied Biology (GABBA), Instituto de Ciências Biomédicas Abel Salazar (ICBAS), University of Porto, Porto, Portugal

S. Davoudian
Humanitas Clinical and Research Institute, Rozzano, MI, Italy

Humanitas University, Rozzano, MI, Italy

M. Sironi · P. Allavena · B. Bottazzi (✉)
Humanitas Clinical and Research Institute, Rozzano, MI, Italy
e-mail: barbara.bottazzi@humanitasresearch.it

A. Mantovani
Humanitas Clinical and Research Institute, Rozzano, MI, Italy

Humanitas University, Rozzano, MI, Italy

The William Harvey Research Institute, Queen Mary University of London, London, UK

N. Rezaei (ed.), *Cancer Immunology*, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-30845-2_3

3.1 Introduction

A common characteristic in all cancers is the presence of a host cell infiltrate that includes fibroblasts, endothelial cells, and immune cells [1–3]. Infiltrating host cells, together with soluble factors, signaling molecules, and extracellular matrix components, constitute the tumor microenvironment (TME). It is well-established that TME orchestrates tumor initiation, progression, and spreading, and growing evidences indicate that it also plays a pivotal role in the response to therapy [4].

Solid tumors are infiltrated by several and distinct populations of lymphoid and myeloid immune cells [1–3]. Tumor-infiltrating lymphocytes (TILs) are recognized as major determinants of the host immune response to tumor cells. The therapeutic improvement following the development of immune checkpoint inhibitors (ICI), contributing to restore T-cell cytotoxicity eliminating negative signals blocking T-cell functions, demonstrates the pivotal role of TILs. On the other side, cells of the myeloid lineage, that commonly represent the highest proportion of immune cells in TME, can exert pro- or anti-tumoral functions.

Tumor-associated myeloid cells mainly derive from the correspondent blood cells which in turn originate from hematopoietic stem cells (Fig. 3.1). Among myeloid cells, tumor-associ-

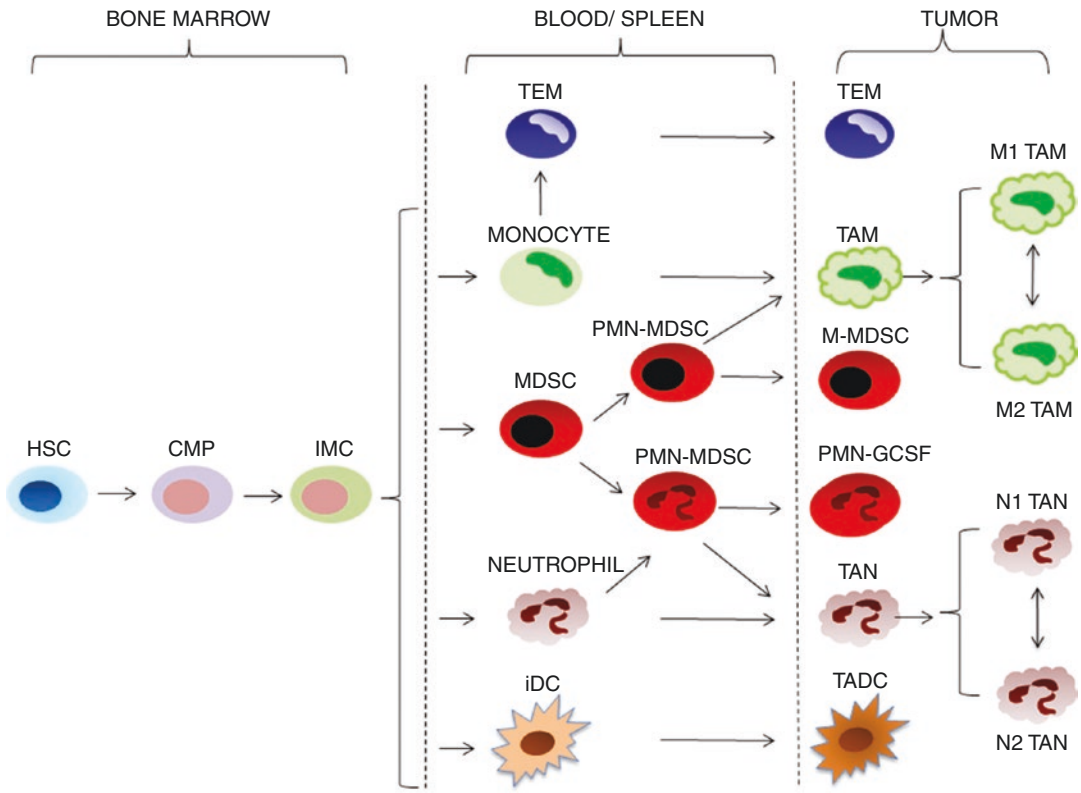


Fig. 3.1 Differentiation pathways of tumor-associated myeloid cells. Myeloid cells originate from hematopoietic precursor in the bone marrow. Here are indicated the precursors and the networks giving rise to the various myeloid cells in the different compartments (bone marrow, blood/spleen, and tumors). Tissue macrophages and neutrophils display a gradient of polarized phenotypes whose extremes are M1 and M2 for macrophages, N1 and N2 for neutrophils. HSC: hematopoietic stem cells; CMP: common myeloid progenitors; IMC: immature myeloid cells; MDSC: myeloid-derived suppressor cells; M-MDSC: monocytic MDSC; PMN-MDSC: polymorphonuclear/granulocytic MDSC; TAM: tumor-associated macrophages; TAN: tumor-associated neutrophils; iDC: immature dendritic cells; TADC: tumor-associated dendritic cells; TEM: Tie-2-expressing monocytes

ated macrophages (TAMs) are the most abundant leukocytes infiltrating tumors. Chemokines, cytokines, and complement components [C-C motif chemokine 2 (CCL2); colony stimulating factor-1 (CSF-1); C5a] are major determinants of macrophage recruitment in tumors [5–8]; however, in situ proliferation has been also reported [9, 10]. TAMs can engage complex and bidirectional interactions with the other cells of the TME, as well as with cancer cells, and are key orchestrators of cancer-related inflammation (CRI) [3, 7, 11]. The set of myeloid cells infiltrating tumors also includes neutrophils, the predominant leukocyte subset in the blood, and a heterogeneous population of immunosuppressive cells defined as myeloid-derived suppressor cells (MDSCs) [12]. Tumor-associated myeloid cells are recognized as major players in the connection between inflammation and cancer, considered the seventh hallmark of cancer [7, 11, 13–18]. Given their role in tumor-promotion (Fig. 3.2), growing efforts are devoted to target tumor-associated myeloid cells and/or to skew their properties toward antitumoral effects.

In this chapter, we focus essentially on tumor-associated macrophages, neutrophils, and MDSCs, providing a summary of the current knowledge centered on these cells and a rationale for their therapeutic targeting.

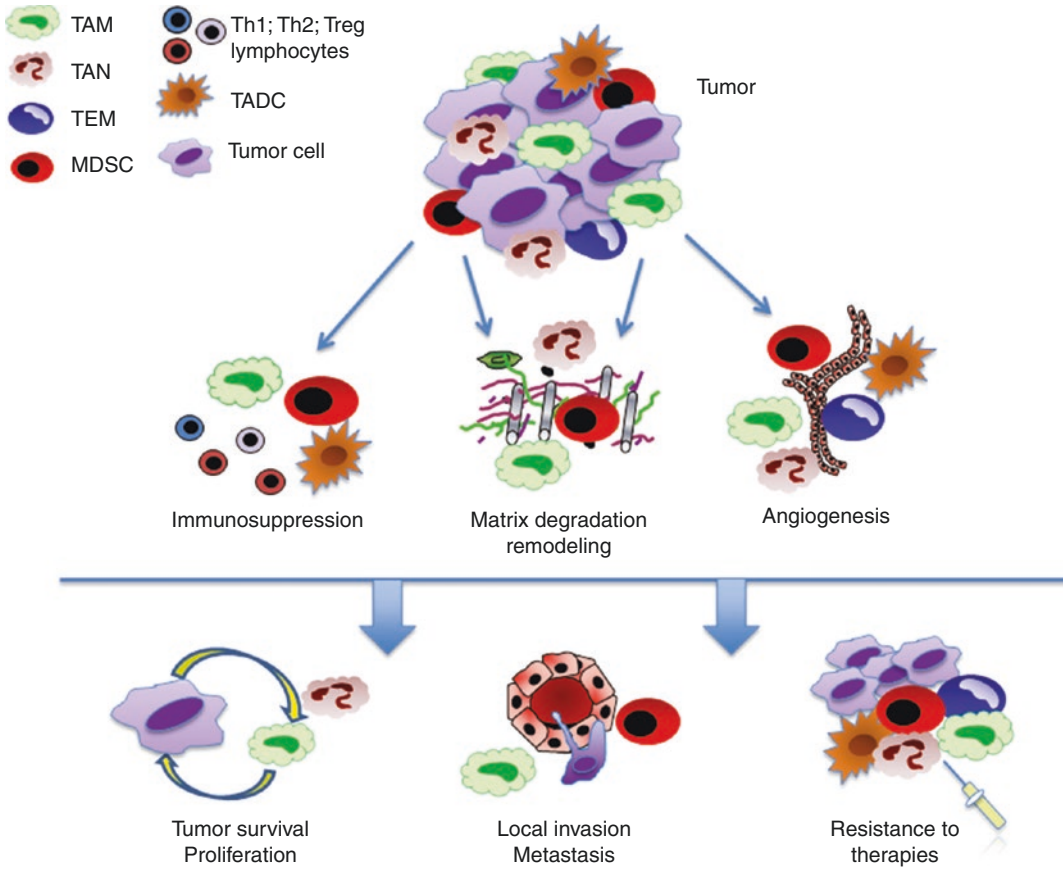


Fig. 3.2 Protumoral functions of tumor-associated myeloid cells. Tumor-associated myeloid cells, once exposed to the tumor microenvironment, acquire the capability to exert several pro-tumoral functions, including promotion of tumor cell survival, angiogenesis, matrix degradation and suppression of adaptive immunity. Soluble factors (cytokines, chemokines, growth factors and proteolytic enzymes) are involved in the regulation of these pro-tumoral effects

3.2 Tumor-Associated Macrophages

3.2.1 General Characteristics

Macrophages (Mφ) commonly represent the highest proportion of myeloid cells in the TME, and they are described to have mostly pro-tumoral activity [3].

The monocyte-Mφ lineage is characterized by its high plasticity and variety [19], influenced by the environment in which they are inserted. Mφ polarization and activation is described as a continuum of different cells, which differ in morphology, function, and metabolism [19, 20]. In the two extremes of this continuum are the M1 (classically activated) Mφ and the M2 (alternatively activated) Mφ [19, 20]. While M1-Mφ are classically pro-inflammatory, being involved in the killing of invading intracellular pathogens and in the activation of anti-tumoral Th1 adaptive immune responses, M2-Mφ mediate the control of parasitic infections, secrete anti-inflammatory, and immunomodulatory mediators, being involved in tissue remodeling and repair and dampening of anti-tumor adaptive immune responses [19, 20]. The M1 and M2 activation states also present very distinct glucose, amino acid, iron, and lipid metabolism [20, 21], which impact their immune functions. M1-Mφ metabolic profile is characterized by enhanced glycolysis, a continuous flux through the pentose phosphatase pathway, fatty acid synthesis, a truncated tricarboxylic acid cycle [20], and an "iron-sequestering" phenotype [21]. Paradoxically, M2-Mφ metabolism is described to be mainly dependent on oxidative phosphorylation and fatty acid oxidation [20], presenting an "iron release" phenotype [21].

Although CRI is highly variable and dependent on the tissue where the tumor develops, being composed of different inflammatory cells and inflammatory mediators, TAMs are always the major coordinators of CRI [2, 3]. In fact, both in the primary tumor and in the metastasis, TAMs are involved in a complex interplay with all the cells composing the TME, from cancer cells to fibroblasts, endothelial cells, stromal cells, and other inflammatory cells [19]. During this interplay, TAMs usually adopt a M2-like phenotype and orchestrate an inflammatory environment that promotes survival and proliferation of the cancer cells, by suppressing anti-tumor responses, supporting angiogenesis, cancer cell migration, and invasion [3, 20]. Interestingly, due to the great plasticity of TAMs, it is possible to detect different subpopulations of these cells within distinct regions of the tumor tissue [20].

3.2.2 Role in Cancer and Dissemination

One of the first inflammatory cells to infiltrate solid tumors are Mφ. Contrarily to what was previously described, TAMs are composed of a mixed population of blood monocyte-derived Mφ and embryonic-derived tissue-resident Mφ [22, 23].

In the TME, through the production of cytokines, chemokines, and other factors, tumor cells are able to modulate Mφ function and characteristics in their profit, taking advantage of Mφ normal function in wound healing and tissue regeneration [3]. Production of CCL2 and IL-13 by tumor cells was shown to modulate TAM polarization into a M2-like activation state [24, 25], but many other factors present in the TME, as TGF-β or prostanglandin-E2, could possibly alter Mφ polarization [26, 27].

In the breast, CCL2 secretion by tumor cells was shown to be involved in the recruitment of inflammatory monocytes into the metastatic site and drive their differentiation into metastasis-associated Mφ (MAMs) [28]. CCL2 increases CCL3 expression by MAMs, which autologous signaling via CCR1 induces their retention in the lung, promoting metastasis [29]. In another report, CCL2 expression by $HER2^+$ tumor cells resulted in the production of Wnt-1 by intra-epithelial Mφ in the mouse, inducing the disruption of E-cadherin junctions between early cancer cells [24]. This process leads to an early dissemination and lung intravasation of the breast tumor cells, even before the primary tumor becomes palpable [24]. A similar process was observed in a model of hepatocellular carcinoma, where tumor cells drive the polarization of TAMs into

a M2-activation state via the canonical Wnt/β--catenin pathway, culminating with increased tumor growth, metastization, and immunosuppression [30].

In a mouse model of hepatocellular carcinoma, a role for CCL2-CCR2 axis in tumor growth was also described [31], supported by the inverse association of high CCL2 expression in human hepatic tumor tissues and post-surgical survival [31]. In human primary colon tumors, CCL2 is expressed in all tumor stages, being particularly highly expressed in tumor stage IV that developed metastasis in distant organs [32].

Contrarily, in a preclinical melanoma model, CCL2 was shown to direct the migration of γδ T-cells into the tumor, where they play a protective role by exerting an effective cytotoxicity against the tumor cells [33]. This example clearly shows that the same immune pathways might have distinct functions and effects in different tumor contexts.

While inflammatory monocytes have been shown to support metastization [28, 29], non-conventional patrolling monocytes, characterized as $CX3CR1^{+}Ly6C^{-}$, were reported to prevent melanoma lung metastasis through the recruitment of NK cells into the lung [34]. In an independent study, patrolling monocytes responded to primary melanoma tumors through the production of IL15, activating NK cells and the production of IFNγ, which inhibited a subsequent experimental lung metastization [35].

Interestingly, both in colon adenocarcinoma [22] and pancreatic ductal adenocarcinoma (PDAC) [23] mouse models, it was reported that the TME drives the in situ proliferation of embryonic-derived tissue-resident Mφ. In the colon, increased levels of CSF-1 during tumor progression where driving the mechanism, and antibody blocking of CSF-1 receptor (CSF-1R) was able to reduce the number of these cells in the mice colon, resulting in reduced tumor incidence and tumor size [22]. Transcriptional profiling of TAMs derived from tissue-resident Mφ revealed that these cells expressed higher levels of M2 genes and genes involved in extracellular matrix (ECM) remodeling [e.g., arginase-1 (arg-1), metalloproteases (MMPs)] than monocyte-derived TAMs [22, 23]. In fact, experiments with $CCR2^{-/-}$ mice in both PDAC and colon adenocarcinoma models demonstrated that inhibition of monocyte recruitment into the tumor site is not enough to inhibit tumor growth [22, 23]. A $CXCR4^{+}$ TAM population expressing high levels of ECM-remodeling genes, which resembles the embryonic-derived TAM in the mouse, was also detected in human PDAC samples, suggesting its involvement in the modulation of the pathology-associated fibrosis [23]. Modulation of the ECM by TAMs opens the way for tumor cells dissemination in the tissue, therefore prompting metastasis formation [2].

Both IL-4 and IL-13 signal through IL4Rα chain, activating STAT6 pathway, which is known to be associated with tissue remodeling and vascularization [3]. $STAT6^{-/-}$ mice were reported to be protected from tumor development in a colitis-associated cancer model [36], presenting reduced proliferation and increased apoptosis of epithelial cells, reduced pro-inflammatory cytokines and chemokines, and reduced accumulation of $CD11b^{+}Ly6C^{hi}CCR2^{+}$ cells. In a pancreatic tumor model, IL-13 was reported to polarize TAMs into a M2-phenotype, which in turn release CCL2 and IL1ra, driving pancreatic tumorigenesis [25]. Another study described an intricate communication between TAMs and tumor cells in the pancreas. The production of CCL18 by TAMs enhanced the aerobic glycolytic pathway in tumor cells, increasing lactate levels which modulate TAM phenotype into M2-like [37].

The PD-1/PD-L1 is one of the most studied immune checkpoints, with an important role in the regulation of T-cell function, being currently used as a drug target in the clinic. Both tumor cells and TAMs can express PD-1 ligands, which block T-cells via PD-1 [3, 21]. Remarkably, it was recently reported that TAMs also express PD-1, both in the murine and human setting, and that $PD\text{-}1^{+}$ TAMs presented a M2-phenotype, expressing higher levels of CD206 and lower levels of MHCII in comparison with their negative counterparts [38, 39]. Supporting the pre-clinical data, in human colorectal cancer the frequency of PD-1 expressing TAMs was positively correlated with disease stage [38].

The TME is usually characterized by a deprivation of nutrients and oxygen, due to the uncontrolled tumor cells growth. The aerobic glycolysis metabolism of tumor cells induces an increase in the local lactate levels, and it was recently reported that Mφ can sense hypoxia and lactate gradients, resulting in patterns of Mφ expressing arginase-1 and VEGF, therefore promoting angiogenesis and tumor growth [40].

The mechanisms described above represent only a fraction of the pathways by which Mφ influence tumor growth and dissemination, and a lot remains poorly understood.

3.2.3 Targeting Strategies

The pro-tumoral role of Mφ and other myeloid cells infiltrating tumors make these cells good therapy targets. In agreement, during the past years, a huge effort has been made to develop drugs able to target TAMs, eliminating them from the tumor tissue or even reprogramming their activation state and function. The results of several pre-clinical studies indicate that targeting of TAMs might be an efficient strategy to limit tumor growth and metastization, and enhance the response to other therapies.

Tumor cells have been reported to express on their surface molecules that allow them to avoid innate immune surveillance [3]. One example is CD47, which was reported to be expressed by several tumor cells [41, 42], and serves as an anti-phagocytic signal by binding SIRPα on the membrane of Mφ [3, 41, 42]. In a small-cell lung cancer model, blocking of CD47-SIRPα using an anti-CD47 therapy induced Mφ-mediated phagocytosis of the tumor cells and reduced tumor growth [41]. *Gholamin* et al. have demonstrated that CD47 is highly expressed in several malignant pediatric brain tumors, and that a humanized anti-CD47 antibody (Hu5F9-G4) presents therapeutic activity both in vitro and in vivo against clinical-derived human xenograft mouse models, without affecting the normal cells of the central nervous system [42].

Since Mφ function is highly dependent on CSF-1, several CSF-1R blocking therapies are currently under investigation [43–45]. In a mouse model of glioblastoma multiforme, although the treatment with a CSF-1R-inhibitor under clinical trial (BLZ945, Novartis) effectively reduced tumor size, more than 50% of the animals suffer rebound with high grade tumors [43]. Interestingly, this resistance was TME-driven, since TAMs present in rebound tumors upregulated insulin-like growth factor 1 (IGF-1), which results in activation of IGF-1R and PI3K signaling in glioma cells, supporting tumor growth and malignancy [43]. A therapeutic approach combining both CSF-1R blocking with PI3K or IGF-1 blocking increased the survival rate of the animals with recurrent tumors [43].

Inhibition of CSF-1R with PLX3397 (Plexxikon) in a pre-clinical model of hepatocellular carcinoma altered the polarization of TAMs into a M1-profile, resulting in increased numbers of CD8 T-cells, delayed tumor growth, increased survival of the mice [45]. Interestingly, an independent study demonstrated that a combinatory therapy of anti-CSF-1R and CD40-agonist also induced a reprogramming of TAM before their depletion, consequently boosting an anti-tumoral T-cell response against several transplantable tumor models [44].

These are just few examples on how targeting of TAMs can be helpful in the treatment of cancer, but it also points out the obstacles that can arise in the clinics from the use of mono-therapy. Pre-clinical data show that a more efficacious approach could be the targeting of more than one pathway by which TAMs promote tumor progression.

3.3 Tumor-associated Neutrophils

3.3.1 General Characteristics

Neutrophils, also known as polymorphonuclear leukocytes (PMN), are the most abundant white blood cells in the human circulatory system, typically representing more than 70% of all leukocytes [46, 47]. They are the first line of defense of the innate immune system, being able to detect and destroy invading pathogens through phagocytosis and intracellular degradation, degranulation of antimicrobial products [i.e., reactive oxygen species (ROS), antibacterial peptides, and enzymes]

and production of neutrophils extracellular traps (NETs) entrapping microorganisms [46]. During the differentiation and maturation process from hematopoietic stem cells, neutrophils undergo extensive changes and acquire distinct mature phenotypic and functional properties [47].

Neutrophils are short-lived cells under steady state condition, but, once migrated into tissues in response to inflammatory stimuli, their longevity is increased several fold [48]. During their persistence in tissues, neutrophils can exert complex activities, including orchestration of the immune response, but during the late final phases of acute inflammatory responses, they are involved in the resolution of inflammation through the production of pro-resolving lipid mediators [46, 47, 49–51]. Intra-vital imaging and animal models showed that neutrophils recruited at sites of damage do not undergo apoptosis once their life span ended, but they leave the site of tissue damage in a process termed "reverse transmigration" [49, 52]. Recent data indicate that leukotriene B4 induces cleavage of JAM-C by neutrophil elastase, driving neutrophil reverse transmigration in vivo [53].

Neutrophils are heterogeneous and versatile cells able to modulate inflammatory and immune responses. Plasticity of neutrophils is particularly evident among those infiltrating tumors. Tumor-associated neutrophils (TANs) undergo the most impressive phenotype changes. In fact, mirroring macrophages, TANs can be divided in two distinct functional subpopulations, N1 and N2 neutrophil. N1 neutrophils are mature cells characterized by anti-tumorigenic properties [52, 54]. On the contrary, N2 neutrophils are more immature cells and exert pro-tumorigenic properties, expressing high levels of MMP-9, Arg-1, and VEGF, factors promoting angiogenesis, facilitating an immune suppressive TME, and increasing cancer dissemination [55–58].

3.3.2 Role in Cancer and Dissemination

Neutrophils have traditionally received little attention in the cancer field, partly because their limited life span and fully differentiated phenotype seemed at odds with the chronic nature of cancer and has long been considered meaningless [57, 59]. Interest in neutrophil cell biology in the context of cancer has increased in the last years, also thanks to the yin/yang role of these cells on tumor development.

Neutrophils are recruited into growing tumors in response to CXC chemokines released by cancer and stromal cells [57]. The axis CXCL8-CXCR2 is among the most relevant for neutrophils recruitment, as shown, for instance, in human head and neck squamous cell carcinoma (HNSCC) or hepatocellular carcinoma [60–63]. Neutrophils play a role in the carcinogenesis process by releasing nitric oxide derivatives and ROS, promoting genetic instability and DNA point mutations [18, 55, 64]. Release of neutrophil elastase (NE) can also favor tumor cell proliferation and is involved in neutrophil mediated epithelial-to-mesenchymal transition [65]. CXCR2 deletion suppresses inflammation-induced carcinogenesis in mice, underlining the crucial role exerted by neutrophils in this process. In agreement, aberrant accumulation of neutrophils, documented in a wide variety of tumors, is often associated with poor clinical outcomes [63, 66, 67].

In general, N1 neutrophils were found in early stage tumors, whereas N2 TANs are predominantly found in established tumors [68]. It is known that type I Interferons (IFNs) are main inducers of N1 TANs, while TGF-β promote the acquisition of a N2 pro-tumoral phenotype [59, 69]. In HNSCC, expression of MMP-9 was increased in TANs in comparison to any other cell type in the tumor [70], while in hepatocellular carcinoma, increased number of TANs correlated with a higher angiogenic response [62]. Direct proof for neutrophils being the major tumor-associated leukocyte type expressing MMP-9 was recently provided in a study employing human xenografts and syngeneic murine tumors [71]. Also in melanoma or fibrosarcoma it was found that TANs are major source of MMP-9 and VEGF, and elimination of TANs resulted in reduced tumor growth [72].

A plethora of cytokines and proteins are stored within neutrophil granules and can be released in the TME [73]. Neutrophil-derived chemokines can influence tumor fate either indirectly, through the recruitment and activation of innate and adap-

tive immune cells [73], or directly, thanks to their capacity to modulate angiogenesis and cell proliferation [74, 75].

Recently, it was proposed that NETs could enhance adhesion of escaped circulating tumor cells and formation of distant metastases [76]. Activated neutrophils can promote metastasis by stimulation of tumor invasion at the primary site, wherein a "premetastatic phase" tumor-derived factor stimulates hematopoietic mobilization and tissue-specific responses, preparing a distant site for metastatic seeding. Wculek et al. showed in orthotopic mammary tumor-bearing mice that neutrophils accumulated in the lungs before cancer cells and their number increased during metastatic progression [77]. Neutrophils in the premetastatic lung augmented the tumorigenic potential of cancer cells in vivo and in vitro. In addition, reduction of TANs in prostate carcinomas seems to reduce angiogenesis and tumor cell intravasation [78].

Although a growing body of literature points to activated neutrophils driving tumor progression, this is not a universal finding. Granot et al. showed that neutrophil accumulation in the lung protected mice from mammary tumor metastasis, an effect that was mediated by reactive oxidant generation and tumor-secreted CCL2 [79]. Blaisdell et al. identified a protective role for neutrophils in a mouse model of PTEN-deficient uterine cancer [80]. In this model, neutrophils were recruited by the hypoxic tumor microenvironment, and their infiltration led to detachment of tumor cells from the basement membrane, reduction in tumor growth and metastasis. In addition, TANs were associated with good prognosis in patients with gastric and colorectal cancer [81, 82]. Galdiero and coworkers also showed for the first time that higher TANs density was associated with better response to 5-FU-based chemotherapy, while in patients only treated with surgery, TANs levels correlate with poor prognosis [82]. This suggests that the predictive role of TANs needs to be re-addressed in consideration of the therapeutic history of the patients.

The contradictory roles of neutrophils may reflect differences in tumor phenotypes and underlines the high plasticity and heterogeneity of these cells. The potential for TANs to be friends or foes in cancer points to the role of tumor microenvironment in conditioning neutrophils polarization. However, whether neutrophil heterogeneity and polarization in cancer is dependent on the tumor type is yet to be defined.

3.3.3 Targeting Strategies

As outlined above, growing evidences suggest an important role of neutrophils during tumor initiation, growth, and dissemination. As a consequence, interest is increasing on the possible prognostic role of TANs and on the therapeutic options to target neutrophils. In several human tumors, neutrophil infiltration was correlated with poor prognosis [66, 83–85] and with high tumor grade or more aggressive tumors [86, 87]. TANs were able to predict mortality in NSCLC [88, 89], but were associated with good prognosis in gastric and colorectal cancer [82, 90, 91].

At the moment, one of the most used predictive biomarker is the so-called neutrophil-to-lymphocyte ratio (NLR) measured in the peripheral blood. An elevated NLR is considered an indicator of inflammation and is associated with worse outcomes in many solid tumors, both in early and advanced stages of cancer [92–97]. Despite the number of studies supporting the validity of NLR as predictive biomarker in cancer, its prognostic value is controversial. In fact, levels of circulating neutrophils can be affected by several factors and do not necessarily mirror TANs, putting in place the need for further studies.

Detailed studies on neutrophils in the tumor microenvironment, including modern approaches evaluating genome-wide expression profiles of the population, potentially at single cell level, will add insight into neutrophil heterogeneity and may form the basis for targeted approaches against populations that drive tumor progression.

A first strategy to target neutrophils is inhibiting their trafficking and/or activation. Agents developed for the treatment of inflammatory and autoimmune diseases can be used also to target TANs. CXCR2 antagonists, developed to treat chronic obstructive pulmonary disease, decrease absolute neutrophil counts, reducing inflammation

[98]. Anti-CXCL8 antibodies that inhibit CXCL8–CXCR1/2 signaling pathway or small molecules targeting CXCR1 and/or CXCR2 decreased tumor growth and progression in mouse models [78, 99–101]. CXCR2 inhibition has also been associated with enhanced response of both tumor and micrometastases to chemotherapy treatment [102]. In addition, inhibitors of neutrophil-elastase displayed promise in lung cancer mouse models [103]. Another pathway under intense investigation is the IL-23–IL-17 axis [101]. As we acquire more knowledge about the plasticity of neutrophils, new approaches will emerge based on N1/N2 axis. Andzinski et al. showed that type I interferons skew TANs versus an anti-tumor N1 phenotype in tumor-bearing mice, and similar changes in neutrophil activation were observed in melanoma patients receiving type I interferon [69].

As previously mentioned, there is also growing evidence for NETs to drive tumor dissemination. There are currently several experimental approaches that can deplete NETs, including DNase treatment, antibodies against NET constituents, and small molecule inhibitors of signaling pathways required for NETosis [104]. Since neutrophils turnover in the tissue is very high, they could be potentially mediators for delivery of antineoplastic agents as "Trojan horse." As a proof of principle, Chu et al. observed in murine melanoma that neutrophils enhanced the delivery of nanoparticles to the tumor and augmented the effect of antibody-mediated immunotherapy [105]. Moreover, another promising approach is the use of anti-tumor monoclonal antibodies (mAbs) to activate the ADCC reaction in neutrophils. Upon Fc receptor activation, neutrophils produce ROS and release mediators with direct anti-tumor potential [106].

Many questions remain open and we need to study deeper the molecular mechanisms regulating the link between neutrophils and cancer to identify new prognostic and predictive biomarkers. Given the dual role of neutrophils in cancer, the consequences of depleting anti-tumor neutrophils together with tumor promoting cells are still unclear, reinforcing the importance of novel biomarker discovery. Cancer immunotherapy should drive to more personalized therapeutic approach. As we acquire knowledge about the cues which regulate neutrophil diversity, new approaches for their therapeutic modulation are expected to emerge.

3.4 Myeloid-derived Suppressor Cells

3.4.1 General Characteristics

Myeloid-derived suppressor cells (MDSCs) are a heterogeneous population of immature myeloid cells first described in 2007 [107]. They arise from myeloid progenitors which fail to differentiate into mature dendritic cells (DCs), granulocytes, or Mφ [108, 109].

Three subsets of human MDSCs were defined: monocytic (M-MDSCs), polymorphonuclear/granulocytic (PMN-MDSCs), and early stage (e-MDSCs). M-MDSCs are identified as $CD11b^{+}CD14^{+}HLA\text{-}DR^{-/lo}CD15^{-}$ cells, PMN-MDSCs are defined as $CD11b^{+}CD14^{-}CD15^{+}$ or $CD11b^{+}CD14^{-}CD66b^{+}$ cells, while e-MDSCs, that lacks myeloid lineage markers characteristic of monocytic and granulocytic subsets, express CD33 and are $HLA\text{-}DR^{-}$ [110]. M-MDSCs and PMN-MDSCs include Mφ or neutrophils in different maturation stages, respectively, while e-MDSCs are immature cells [111, 112]. Early studies in the mice showed the existence of murine M-MDSCs and PMN-MDSCs in inflammatory conditions, while the mouse equivalent of e-MDSCs is yet to be identified [110]. Murine PMN-MDSCs are defined as $CD11b^{+}Ly6G^{+}Ly6C^{lo}$ cells, while M-MDSCs are $CD11b^{+}Ly6G^{-}Ly6C^{hi}$ cells.

Generally, human MDSCs are not present in healthy individuals but appear in cancer and other pathological conditions characterized by chronic inflammation that represents the driving force leading to the development of these cells [113, 114]. Accumulating evidences have shown that MDSCs also regulate immune responses during infections, acute and chronic inflammation, traumatic stress, sepsis and transplantation (reviewed in [108]).

MDSCs exert a general role in the suppression of T-cell, NK cell, and DC activity, support-

ing immune escape and tumor progression, and are the major obstacle to anti-tumor immunity [111, 115–118]. The strong suppressive activity exerted by MDSCs is associated to peculiar gene expression profiles resulting in the maintenance of a high oxidative stress environment. The importance of MDSCs in cancer is demonstrated by preclinical data indicating that their elimination in tumor-bearing mice restores the immune response and enhances the anti-tumor effects of immunotherapy.

3.4.2 Role in Cancer and Dissemination

MDSCs are recruited in the TME by different chemokines and sustain human cancer stemness [119–122]. CCL2, CCL5, and CSF-1 are involved in the recruitment of M-MDSCs, while CXCL1, CXCL5, CXCL6, CXCL8, and CXCL12 mediate PMN-MDSCs migration and degranulation through CXCR1 and CXCR2 signaling. Tumor cells, myeloid cells, and certain subset of regulatory T-cells (Treg) express CXCL8 and recruit neutrophils and PMN-MDSCs to TME. CXCL17 is also involved in recruitment of PMN-MDSCs and promotes angiogenesis partially by inducing VEGF expression in monocytes and endothelial cells [23, 24, 123].

Tumor cells can promote expansion of MDSCs trough the production of factors stimulating myelopoiesis and inhibiting maturation of differentiated myeloid cells. Prostaglandins, cyclooxygenase 2, IL6, IL-10, CSF-1, GM-CSF, and VEGF are some of the molecules that can promote expansion of myeloid suppressor cells [124–126]. Most of these factors trigger MDSCs expansion through Janus kinase (JAK) protein family members and signal transducer and activator of transcription 3 (STAT3).

In acute myeloid leukemia, extracellular vesicles (EVs) secreted by tumor cells play a key role in the formation of MDSCs via the conversion of normal myeloid cells and changing the normal myelopoiesis. The Mucin 1 (MUC1) oncoprotein was identified as the critical driver of MDSCs expansion mediated by EV: it has been shown that MUC1 induces increased expression of c-myc in EVs, affecting cell cycle proteins and inducing MDSCs proliferation [119, 127].

The generation of MDSCs is also promoted by persistent endoplasmic reticulum (ER) stress [128]. In addition, ER stress modulates the immunosuppressive capacity of tumor-infiltrating MDSCs by increasing expression of Arg-1, iNOS, and NOX2. Therefore, agents reducing ER stress could restore anti-tumor immunity by inhibiting suppressive MDSCs exacerbated by ER stress [128].

Once in the TME, MDSCs promote angiogenesis and contribute to establish pre-metastatic niches, enhancing metastasis [129–131]. In addition, MDSCs can contribute to recruit other immunosuppressive cells, such as regulatory T-cells (Treg). Also, MDSCs can reduce effectiveness of Chimeric Antigen Receptor (CAR) T-cell therapy by providing immunosuppressive profile within solid tumors [111, 132]. MDSCs are activated by tumor-derived factors. Several proinflammatory cytokines are involved in the activation of MDSCs, including IL-6, IL-1β, TNF-α, IFN-γ [126]. However contradictory data were obtained when one or more of these mediators were knocked down, suggesting that further studies are mandatory.

MDSCs and their secreted cytokines, such as IL-6, TNF-α and IL-1β, would be the key mediators in promoting tumor progression [122]. As already mentioned, MDSCs have a fundamental ability to suppress immune cell functions through a variety of mechanisms, the most relevant being the ability to suppress T-cell proliferation and cytotoxicity via release of soluble mediators such as IL-10, Arg-1, and nitric oxide (NO) and exhaustion of some amino acids [122, 133]. NO and ROS produced by MDSCs can promote apoptosis of T-cells [111, 134, 135]. Anergy and apoptosis of T-cells is also a consequence of the interaction of membrane molecules on MDSCs and T-cells, such as PD-1 and PD-L1 or Galectin 9 and T-cell immunoglobulin and mucin domain-3 [122]. In addition, it has been described that MDSCs are involved in the inhibition of NK cell activation and can promote expansion of immune-suppressive cell populations, such as Treg cells, through IL-10 and TGF-β release [136–138]. IL-10 secreted by MDSCs also promote M2-Mφ polarization

while down-regulating IL-12 expression by M1-Mφ [139]. Once in the tumor, MDSCs can also promote novel vessel formation and release matrix-bound VEGF by MMPs, in particular MMP-9.

Recent studies focused on energy metabolic pathway of MDSCs and its impact on immunosuppressive function showed that tumor-infiltrating MDCSs utilize fatty-acid β oxidation (FAO) as primary source of energy along with increased mitochondrial mass and high rate of oxygen consumption [140]. Blockage of FAO could significantly inhibit the immunosuppressive effect of MDSCs in humans and could be used as therapeutic strategy.

3.4.3 Targeting Strategies

Nowadays novel trends in anticancer therapies are focused on targeting tumor-related immune-suppression responses [141, 142]. Given their multiple functions, MDSCs can be considered as one of the major orchestrators of the immunosuppressive network contributing significantly to tumor progression and metastatization, correlating negatively with prognosis and overall survival [111, 143–145]. Therefore, MDSCs have captured considerable interest in the last few years as prime target for cancer immunotherapy [2, 7, 35, 146].

Strategies to target MDSCs are gradually emerging with promising results. Increasing numbers of preclinical and clinical studies were performed in the last years targeting MDSCs in cancer patients [see for a review [147]]. The list of ongoing clinical trials includes patients with chronic myeloid leukemia, NSCLC, hepatocellular carcinoma, metastatic and recurrent renal cell cancer, glioblastoma, sarcoma, and many others [147]. Inhibition of tumor growth and survival prolongation is obtained modulating MDSCs by three main ways: (1) inhibiting immunosuppressive activity of MDSCs, using STAT3 inhibitors [148, 149], phosphodiesterase type 5 (PDE5) inhibitors [150], and class I histone deacetylase [151, 152]; (2) blocking MDSCs recruitment to the tumor site, by, for example, CCR5 antagonists and IL-18 or CCL2 inhibitors [153, 154]; and (3) regulating myelopoiesis and depletion of MDSCs in the tumor-bearing hosts, thanks for instance to the treatment with all-trans-retinoic acid (ATRA), tyrosine-kinase inhibitors, and chemotherapeutic agents [147, 155–157].

Blockade of the activation of STAT3 by several STAT3 oligonucleotide inhibitors, in particular AZD9150, reduced MDSCs and Treg. AZD9150 is used to improve therapeutic efficacy in combination with ICI in different phase I/II clinical trial [149].

Another possibility to target MDSCs is through the modulation of their metabolic pathways. Recent studies showed that tumor-infiltrating MDCSs utilize FAO as primary source of energy along with increased mitochondrial mass and high rate of oxygen consumption [140]. Pharmacological inhibition of FAO, in combination with low-dose chemotherapy and adoptive cellular therapy, decreased production of inhibitory cytokines by MDSCs, thus reducing their immunosuppressive effects and inducing a significant anti-tumor effect [140, 158]. Finally, the development of multifunctional nanoparticle systems for effective targeting of MDSCs is a novel strategy for the manipulation of these cells [159].

Since MDSCs, opposite of Treg, are not present in steady-state conditions, their targeting has possibly no side-effects. In addition, targeting MDSCs in combination with ICI, antagonists, or chemotherapeutic reagents is more effective in tumor growth inhibition [142, 146, 155]. Several trials are ongoing where ICI are associated with strategies to target MDSCs. For instance, immune checkpoint blockade (ICB) with anti-CTLA-4 or anti-PD1/PD-L1 showed de novo resistance in metastatic castration-resistant prostate cancer (mCRPC) therapy, while combination of ICB agents and neutralizing agents that targets MDSCs could preserve T-cell function and showed robust synergetic response in mCRPC treatment [160].

Entinostat, a class I histone deacetylase inhibitor, inhibited the immunosuppressive function of both PMN-MDSCs and M-MDSCs and, in combination with anti-PD-1 antibodies, significantly increased survival and delayed tumor growth in mice with lung and renal cancer [151].

Given that the number of MDSCs correlates with tumor progression and low success of immu-

notherapy, an efficient personalized medicine is important to define the presence of all the different MDSCs subsets and the mechanisms through which they can suppress the anti-tumor response [122, 155]. Along this line, the development of strategies to identify the different subsets of MDSCs and distinguish these cells from neutrophils and macrophages is a challenge for developing and expanding the existing panels of markers.

3.5 Concluding Remarks

The TME exerts essential roles in the development and regulation of tumor growth. Innate immune cells, in particular TAMs, TANs and MDSCs, are integral components of TME. It is expected that innate immune cells exert a role in promoting the immune response against tumor growth; however, data collected over the years demonstrate that cancer cells can subvert the anti-tumoral properties of innate immune cells. TAMs exposed to the TME acquire an M2 phenotype and became the major orchestrator of CRI. TAMs promote survival and proliferation of cancer cells, angiogenesis, cancer cell migration, and invasion [2, 3, 7, 11, 20]. Neutrophils-infiltrating tumors are more immature cells exerting pro-tumorigenic properties and expressing factors promoting angiogenesis, facilitating an immunosuppressive TME, and increasing cancer dissemination [55–58]. Finally, accumulating evidences demonstrated that MDSCs play a pivotal role in the immunosuppressive TME and correlate with tumor progression [122, 155].

All together, these observations strongly suggest that targeting tumor-infiltrating myeloid cells represents a promising therapeutic tool against cancer, and recent or ongoing efforts further support this hypothesis.

Acknowledgments The financial support from Fondazione Cariplo (Contract n. 2015-0564), Cluster Alisei (MEDINTECH CTN01_00177_962865), the European Research Council (project PHII-669415), and the Italian Association for Cancer Research (AIRC, IG and 5x1000) to AM and BB is gratefully acknowledged. RS-G was supported by a PhD studentship (PD/BD/114138/2016) from Fundação para a Ciência e Tecnologia, Portugal; SD was supported by the European Sepsis Academy Horizon 2020 Marie Skłodowska-Curie Action: Innovative Training Network.

References

1. Hanahan D, Coussens LM. Accessories to the crime: functions of cells recruited to the tumor microenvironment. Cancer Cell. 2012;21(3):309–22.
2. Mantovani A, Marchesi F, Malesci A, Laghi L, Allavena P. Tumour-associated macrophages as treatment targets in oncology. Nat Rev Clin Oncol. 2017;14(7):399–416.
3. Murray PJ. Nonresolving macrophage-mediated inflammation in malignancy. FEBS J. 2018;285(4):641–53.
4. Wu T, Dai Y. Tumor microenvironment and therapeutic response. Cancer Lett. 2017;387:61–8.
5. Bonavita E, Gentile S, Rubino M, Maina V, Papait R, Kunderfranco P, et al. PTX3 is an extrinsic oncosuppressor regulating complement-dependent inflammation in cancer. Cell. 2015;160(4):700–14.
6. Franklin RA, Liao W, Sarkar A, Kim MV, Bivona MR, Liu K, et al. The cellular and molecular origin of tumor-associated macrophages. Science. 2014;344(6186):921–5.
7. Noy R, Pollard JW. Tumor-associated macrophages: from mechanisms to therapy. Immunity. 2014;41(1):49–61.
8. Shand FH, Ueha S, Otsuji M, Koid SS, Shichino S, Tsukui T, et al. Tracking of intertissue migration reveals the origins of tumor-infiltrating monocytes. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2014;111(21):7771–6.
9. Bottazzi B, Erba E, Nobili N, Fazioli F, Rambaldi A, Mantovani A. A paracrine circuit in the regulation of the proliferation of macrophages infiltrating murine sarcomas. J Immunol. 1990;144(6):2409–12.
10. Tymoszuk P, Evens H, Marzola V, Wachowicz K, Wasmer MH, Datta S, et al. In situ proliferation contributes to accumulation of tumor-associated macrophages in spontaneous mammary tumors. Eur J Immunol. 2014;44(8):2247–62.
11. Mantovani A, Allavena P, Sica A, Balkwill F. Cancer-related inflammation. Nature. 2008;454(7203):436–44.
12. Veglia F, Perego M, Gabrilovich D. Myeloid-derived suppressor cells coming of age. Nat Immunol. 2018;19(2):108–19.
13. Coussens LM, Zitvogel L, Palucka AK. Neutralizing tumor-promoting chronic inflammation: a magic bullet? Science. 2013;339(6117):286–91.
14. Balkwill FR, Mantovani A. Cancer-related inflammation: common themes and therapeutic opportunities. Semin Cancer Biol. 2012;22(1):33–40.
15. DiDonato JA, Mercurio F, Karin M. NF-kappaB and the link between inflammation and cancer. Immunol Rev. 2012;246(1):379–400.

16. Colotta F, Allavena P, Sica A, Garlanda C, Mantovani A. Cancer-related inflammation, the seventh hallmark of cancer: links to genetic instability. Carcinogenesis. 2009;30(7):1073–81.
17. Mantovani A. Cancer: Inflaming metastasis. Nature. 2009;457(7225):36–7.
18. Hanahan D, Weinberg RA. Hallmarks of cancer: the next generation. Cell. 2011;144(5):646–74.
19. Mantovani A, Allavena P. The interaction of anticancer therapies with tumor-associated macrophages. J Exp Med. 2015;212(4):435–45.
20. Rabold K, Netea MG, Adema GJ, Netea-Maier RT. Cellular metabolism of tumor-associated macrophages - functional impact and consequences. FEBS Lett. 2017;591(19):3022–41.
21. Porta C, Sica A, Riboldi E. Tumor-associated myeloid cells: new understandings on their metabolic regulation and their influence in cancer immunotherapy. FEBS J. 2018;285(4):717–33.
22. Soncin I, Sheng J, Chen Q, Foo S, Duan K, Lum J, et al. The tumour microenvironment creates a niche for the self-renewal of tumour-promoting macrophages in colon adenoma. Nat Commun. 2018;9(1):582.
23. Zhu Y, Herndon JM, Sojka DK, Kim KW, Knolhoff BL, Zuo C, et al. Tissue-resident macrophages in pancreatic ductal adenocarcinoma originate from embryonic hematopoiesis and promote tumor progression. Immunity. 2017;47(3):597.
24. Linde N, Casanova-Acebes M, Sosa MS, Mortha A, Rahman A, Farias E, et al. Macrophages orchestrate breast cancer early dissemination and metastasis. Nat Commun. 2018;9(1):21.
25. Liou GY, Bastea L, Fleming A, Döppler H, Edenfield BH, Dawson DW, et al. The presence of Interleukin-13 at pancreatic ADM/PanIN lesions alters macrophage populations and mediates pancreatic tumorigenesis. Cell Rep. 2017;19(7):1322–33.
26. Luan B, Yoon YS, Le Lay J, Kaestner KH, Hedrick S, Montminy M. CREB pathway links PGE2 signaling with macrophage polarization. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2015;112(51):15642–7.
27. Zhang F, Wang H, Wang X, Jiang G, Liu H, Zhang G, et al. TGF-β induces M2-like macrophage polarization via SNAIL-mediated suppression of a pro-inflammatory phenotype. Oncotarget. 2016;7(32):52294–306.
28. Qian BZ, Li J, Zhang H, Kitamura T, Zhang J, Campion LR, et al. CCL2 recruits inflammatory monocytes to facilitate breast-tumour metastasis. Nature. 2011;475(7355):222–5.
29. Kitamura T, Qian BZ, Soong D, Cassetta L, Noy R, Sugano G, et al. CCL2-induced chemokine cascade promotes breast cancer metastasis by enhancing retention of metastasis-associated macrophages. J Exp Med. 2015;212(7):1043–59.
30. Yang Y, Ye YC, Chen Y, Zhao JL, Gao CC, Han H, et al. Crosstalk between hepatic tumor cells and macrophages via Wnt/β-catenin signaling promotes M2-like macrophage polarization and reinforces tumor malignant behaviors. Cell Death Dis. 2018;9(8):793.
31. Li X, Yao W, Yuan Y, Chen P, Li B, Li J, et al. Targeting of tumour-infiltrating macrophages via CCL2/CCR2 signalling as a therapeutic strategy against hepatocellular carcinoma. Gut. 2017;66(1):157–67.
32. Wolf MJ, Hoos A, Bauer J, Boettcher S, Knust M, Weber A, et al. Endothelial CCR2 signaling induced by colon carcinoma cells enables extravasation via the JAK2-Stat5 and p38MAPK pathway. Cancer Cell. 2012;22(1):91–105.
33. Lança T, Costa MF, Gonçalves-Sousa N, Rei M, Grosso AR, Penido C, et al. Protective role of the inflammatory CCR2/CCL2 chemokine pathway through recruitment of type 1 cytotoxic γδ T lymphocytes to tumor beds. J Immunol. 2013;190(12):6673–80.
34. Hanna RN, Cekic C, Sag D, Tacke R, Thomas GD, Nowyhed H, et al. Patrolling monocytes control tumor metastasis to the lung. Science. 2015;350(6263):985–90.
35. Kubo H, Mensurado S, Gonçalves-Sousa N, Serre K, Silva-Santos B. Primary tumors limit metastasis formation through induction of IL15-mediated cross-talk between patrolling monocytes and NK cells. Cancer Immunol Res. 2017;5(9):812–20.
36. Leon-Cabrera SA, Molina-Guzman E, Delgado-Ramirez YG, Vázquez-Sandoval A, Ledesma-Soto Y, Pérez-Plasencia CG, et al. Lack of STAT6 attenuates inflammation and drives protection against early steps of colitis-associated colon cancer. Cancer Immunol Res. 2017;5(5):385–96.
37. Ye H, Zhou Q, Zheng S, Li G, Lin Q, Wei L, et al. Tumor-associated macrophages promote progression and the Warburg effect via CCL18/NF-kB/VCAM-1 pathway in pancreatic ductal adenocarcinoma. Cell Death Dis. 2018;9(5):453.
38. Gordon SR, Maute RL, Dulken BW, Hutter G, George BM, McCracken MN, et al. PD-1 expression by tumour-associated macrophages inhibits phagocytosis and tumour immunity. Nature. 2017;545(7655):495–9.
39. Wang F, Li B, Wei Y, Zhao Y, Wang L, Zhang P, et al. Tumor-derived exosomes induce PD1. Oncogene. 2018;7(5):41.
40. Carmona-Fontaine C, Deforet M, Akkari L, Thompson CB, Joyce JA, Xavier JB. Metabolic origins of spatial organization in the tumor microenvironment. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2017;114(11):2934–9.
41. Weiskopf K, Jahchan NS, Schnorr PJ, Cristea S, Ring AM, Maute RL, et al. CD47-blocking immunotherapies stimulate macrophage-mediated destruction of small-cell lung cancer. J Clin Invest. 2016;126(7):2610–20.
42. Gholamin S, Mitra SS, Feroze AH, Liu J, Kahn SA, Zhang M, et al. Disrupting the CD47-SIRPα anti-phagocytic axis by a humanized anti-CD47 antibody is an efficacious treatment for malignant pediatric brain tumors. Sci Transl Med. 2017;9(381):eaaf2968.
43. Quail DF, Bowman RL, Akkari L, Quick ML, Schuhmacher AJ, Huse JT, et al. The tumor microenvi-

ronment underlies acquired resistance to CSF-1R inhibition in gliomas. Science. 2016;352(6288):aad3018.
44. Hoves S, Ooi CH, Wolter C, Sade H, Bissinger S, Schmittnaegel M, et al. Rapid activation of tumor-associated macrophages boosts preexisting tumor immunity. J Exp Med. 2018;215(3):859–76.
45. Ao JY, Zhu XD, Chai ZT, Cai H, Zhang YY, Zhang KZ, et al. Colony-stimulating factor 1 receptor blockade inhibits tumor growth by altering the polarization of tumor-associated macrophages in hepatocellular carcinoma. Mol Cancer Ther. 2017;16(8):1544–54.
46. Amulic B, Cazalet C, Hayes GL, Metzler KD, Zychlinsky A. Neutrophil function: from mechanisms to disease. Annu Rev Immunol. 2012;30:459–89.
47. Mayadas TN, Cullere X, Lowell CA. The multifaceted functions of neutrophils. Annu Rev Pathol. 2014;9:181–218.
48. Witko-Sarsat V, Pederzoli-Ribeil M, Hirsch E, Sozzani S, Cassatella MA. Regulating neutrophil apoptosis: new players enter the game. Trends Immunol. 2011;32(3):117–24.
49. Kolaczkowska E, Kubes P. Neutrophil recruitment and function in health and inflammation. Nat Rev Immunol. 2013;13(3):159–75.
50. Mocsai A. Diverse novel functions of neutrophils in immunity, inflammation, and beyond. J Exp Med. 2013;210(7):1283–99.
51. Serhan CN. Pro-resolving lipid mediators are leads for resolution physiology. Nature. 2014;510(7503):92–101.
52. Shaul ME, Fridlender ZG. Cancer related circulating and tumor-associated neutrophils - subtypes, sources and function. FEBS J. 2018;285(23):4316–42.
53. Colom B, Bodkin JV, Beyrau M, Woodfin A, Ody C, Rourke C, et al. Leukotriene B4-neutrophil elastase axis drives neutrophil reverse transendothelial cell migration in vivo. Immunity. 2015;42(6):1075–86.
54. Granot Z, Fridlender ZG. Plasticity beyond cancer cells and the "immunosuppressive switch". Cancer Res. 2015;75(21):4441–5.
55. Rosales C. Neutrophil: a cell with many roles in inflammation or several cell types? Front Physiol. 2018;9:113.
56. Galdiero MR, Bonavita E, Barajon I, Garlanda C, Mantovani A, Jaillon S. Tumor associated macrophages and neutrophils in cancer. Immunobiology. 2013;218(11):1402–10.
57. Mantovani A, Cassatella MA, Costantini C, Jaillon S. Neutrophils in the activation and regulation of innate and adaptive immunity. Nat Rev Immunol. 2011;11(8):519–31.
58. Wu Y, Zhao Q, Peng C, Sun L, Li XF, Kuang DM. Neutrophils promote motility of cancer cells via a hyaluronan-mediated TLR4/PI3K activation loop. J Pathol. 2011;225(3):438–47.
59. Fridlender ZG, Sun J, Kim S, Kapoor V, Cheng G, Ling L, et al. Polarization of tumor-associated neutrophil phenotype by TGF-beta: "N1" versus "N2" TAN. Cancer Cell. 2009;16(3):183–94.
60. Jablonska J, Wu CF, Andzinski L, Leschner S, Weiss S. CXCR2-mediated tumor-associated neutrophil recruitment is regulated by IFN-beta. Int J Cancer. 2014;134(6):1346–58.
61. Dumitru CA, Gholaman H, Trellakis S, Bruderek K, Dominas N, Gu X, et al. Tumor-derived macrophage migration inhibitory factor modulates the biology of head and neck cancer cells via neutrophil activation. Int J Cancer. 2011;129(4):859–69.
62. Kuang DM, Zhao Q, Wu Y, Peng C, Wang J, Xu Z, et al. Peritumoral neutrophils link inflammatory response to disease progression by fostering angiogenesis in hepatocellular carcinoma. J Hepatol. 2011;54(5):948–55.
63. Trellakis S, Farjah H, Bruderek K, Dumitru CA, Hoffmann TK, Lang S, et al. Peripheral blood neutrophil granulocytes from patients with head and neck squamous cell carcinoma functionally differ from their counterparts in healthy donors. Int J Immunopathol Pharmacol. 2011;24(3):683–93.
64. Gungor N, Knaapen AM, Munnia A, Peluso M, Haenen GR, Chiu RK, et al. Genotoxic effects of neutrophils and hypochlorous acid. Mutagenesis. 2010;25(2):149–54.
65. Grosse-Steffen T, Giese T, Giese N, Longerich T, Schirmacher P, Hansch GM, et al. Epithelial-to-mesenchymal transition in pancreatic ductal adenocarcinoma and pancreatic tumor cell lines: the role of neutrophils and neutrophil-derived elastase. Clin Dev Immunol. 2012;2012:720768.
66. Rao HL, Chen JW, Li M, Xiao YB, Fu J, Zeng YX, et al. Increased intratumoral neutrophil in colorectal carcinomas correlates closely with malignant phenotype and predicts patients' adverse prognosis. PLoS One. 2012;7(1):e30806.
67. Donskov F. Immunomonitoring and prognostic relevance of neutrophils in clinical trials. Semin Cancer Biol. 2013;23(3):200–7.
68. Shaul ME, Levy L, Sun J, Mishalian I, Singhal S, Kapoor V, et al. Tumor-associated neutrophils display a distinct N1 profile following TGFbeta modulation: a transcriptomics analysis of pro- vs. antitumor TANs. Oncoimmunology. 2016;5(11):e1232221.
69. Andzinski L, Kasnitz N, Stahnke S, Wu CF, Gereke M, von Kockritz-Blickwede M, et al. Type I IFNs induce anti-tumor polarization of tumor associated neutrophils in mice and human. Int J Cancer. 2016;138(8):1982–93.
70. Dumitru CA, Moses K, Trellakis S, Lang S, Brandau S. Neutrophils and granulocytic myeloid-derived suppressor cells: immunophenotyping, cell biology and clinical relevance in human oncology. Cancer Immunol Immunother. 2012;61(8):1155–67.
71. Deryugina EI, Zajac E, Juncker-Jensen A, Kupriyanova TA, Welter L, Quigley JP. Tissue-infiltrating neutrophils constitute the major in vivo source of angiogenesis-inducing MMP-9 in the tumor microenvironment. Neoplasia. 2014;16(10):771–88.
72. Jablonska J, Leschner S, Westphal K, Lienenklaus S, Weiss S. Neutrophils responsive to endog-

enous IFN-beta regulate tumor angiogenesis and growth in a mouse tumor model. J Clin Invest. 2010;120(4):1151–64.
73. Tecchio C, Cassatella MA. Neutrophil-derived chemokines on the road to immunity. Semin Immunol. 2016;28(2):119–28.
74. Tazzyman S, Niaz H, Murdoch C. Neutrophil-mediated tumour angiogenesis: subversion of immune responses to promote tumour growth. Semin Cancer Biol. 2013;23(3):149–58.
75. Tecchio C, Cassatella MA. Neutrophil-derived cytokines involved in physiological and pathological angiogenesis. Chem Immunol Allergy. 2014;99:123–37.
76. Arelaki S, Arampatzioglou A, Kambas K, Papagoras C, Miltiades P, Angelidou I, et al. Gradient infiltration of neutrophil extracellular traps in colon cancer and evidence for their involvement in tumour growth. PLoS One. 2016;11(5):e0154484.
77. Wculek SK, Malanchi I. Neutrophils support lung colonization of metastasis-initiating breast cancer cells. Nature. 2015;528(7582):413–7.
78. Bekes EM, Schweighofer B, Kupriyanova TA, Zajac E, Ardi VC, Quigley JP, et al. Tumor-recruited neutrophils and neutrophil TIMP-free MMP-9 regulate coordinately the levels of tumor angiogenesis and efficiency of malignant cell intravasation. Am J Pathol. 2011;179(3):1455–70.
79. Granot Z, Henke E, Comen EA, King TA, Norton L, Benezra R. Tumor entrained neutrophils inhibit seeding in the premetastatic lung. Cancer Cell. 2011;20(3):300–14.
80. Blaisdell A, Crequer A, Columbus D, Daikoku T, Mittal K, Dey SK, et al. Neutrophils oppose uterine epithelial carcinogenesis via debridement of hypoxic tumor cells. Cancer Cell. 2015;28(6):785–99.
81. Caruso RA, Bellocco R, Pagano M, Bertoli G, Rigoli L, Inferrera C. Prognostic value of intratumoral neutrophils in advanced gastric carcinoma in a high-risk area in northern Italy. Mod Pathol. 2002;15(8):831–7.
82. Galdiero MR, Bianchi P, Grizzi F, Di Caro G, Basso G, Ponzetta A, et al. Occurrence and significance of tumor-associated neutrophils in patients with colorectal cancer. Int J Cancer. 2016;139(2):446–56.
83. Jensen HK, Donskov F, Marcussen N, Nordsmark M, Lundbeck F, von der Maase H. Presence of intratumoral neutrophils is an independent prognostic factor in localized renal cell carcinoma. J Clin Oncol. 2009;27(28):4709–17.
84. Jensen TO, Schmidt H, Moller HJ, Donskov F, Hoyer M, Sjoegren P, et al. Intratumoral neutrophils and plasmacytoid dendritic cells indicate poor prognosis and are associated with pSTAT3 expression in AJCC stage I/II melanoma. Cancer. 2012;118(9):2476–85.
85. Matsumoto Y, Mabuchi S, Kozasa K, Kuroda H, Sasano T, Yokoi E, et al. The significance of tumor-associated neutrophil density in uterine cervical cancer treated with definitive radiotherapy. Gynecol Oncol. 2017;145(3):469–75.
86. Fossati G, Ricevuti G, Edwards SW, Walker C, Dalton A, Rossi ML. Neutrophil infiltration into human gliomas. Acta Neuropathol. 1999;98(4):349–54.
87. Reid MD, Basturk O, Thirabanjasak D, Hruban RH, Klimstra DS, Bagci P, et al. Tumor-infiltrating neutrophils in pancreatic neoplasia. Mod Pathol. 2011;24(12):1612–9.
88. Gentles AJ, Newman AM, Liu CL, Bratman SV, Feng W, Kim D, et al. The prognostic landscape of genes and infiltrating immune cells across human cancers. Nat Med. 2015;21(8):938–45.
89. Kargl J, Busch SE, Yang GH, Kim KH, Hanke ML, Metz HE, et al. Neutrophils dominate the immune cell composition in non-small cell lung cancer. Nat Commun. 2017;8:14381.
90. Daster S, Eppenberger-Castori S, Hirt C, Soysal SD, Delko T, Nebiker CA, et al. Absence of myeloperoxidase and CD8 positive cells in colorectal cancer infiltrates identifies patients with severe prognosis. Oncoimmunology. 2015;4(12):e1050574.
91. Droeser RA, Hirt C, Eppenberger-Castori S, Zlobec I, Viehl CT, Frey DM, et al. High myeloperoxidase positive cell infiltration in colorectal cancer is an independent favorable prognostic factor. PLoS One. 2013;8(5):e64814.
92. Templeton AJ, McNamara MG, Seruga B, Vera-Badillo FE, Aneja P, Ocana A, et al. Prognostic role of neutrophil-to-lymphocyte ratio in solid tumors: a systematic review and meta-analysis. J Natl Cancer Inst. 2014;106(6):dju124.
93. Nakamura K, Yoshida N, Baba Y, Kosumi K, Uchihara T, Kiyozumi Y, et al. Elevated preoperative neutrophil-to-lymphocytes ratio predicts poor prognosis after esophagectomy in T1 esophageal cancer. Int J Clin Oncol. 2017;22(3):469–75.
94. Kosumi K, Baba Y, Ishimoto T, Harada K, Nakamura K, Ohuchi M, et al. Neutrophil/lymphocyte ratio predicts the prognosis in esophageal squamous cell carcinoma patients. Surg Today. 2016;46(4):405–13.
95. Gokce MI, Tangal S, Hamidi N, Suer E, Ibis MA, Beduk Y. Role of neutrophil-to-lymphocyte ratio in prediction of Gleason score upgrading and disease upstaging in low-risk prostate cancer patients eligible for active surveillance. Can Urol Assoc J. 2016;10(11–12):E383–e7.
96. Kadokura M, Ishida Y, Tatsumi A, Takahashi E, Shindo H, Amemiya F, et al. Performance status and neutrophil-lymphocyte ratio are important prognostic factors in elderly patients with unresectable pancreatic cancer. J Gastrointest Oncol. 2016;7(6):982–8.
97. Ethier JL, Desautels D, Templeton A, Shah PS, Amir E. Prognostic role of neutrophil-to-lymphocyte ratio in breast cancer: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Breast Cancer Res. 2017;19(1):2.
98. Rennard SI, Dale DC, Donohue JF, Kanniess F, Magnussen H, Sutherland ER, et al. CXCR2 antagonist MK-7123. A phase 2 proof-of-concept trial for

chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. Am J Respir Crit Care Med. 2015;191(9):1001–11.
99. Khan MN, Wang B, Wei J, Zhang Y, Li Q, Luan X, et al. CXCR1/2 antagonism with CXCL8/Interleukin-8 analogue CXCL8(3-72)K11R/G31P restricts lung cancer growth by inhibiting tumor cell proliferation and suppressing angiogenesis. Oncotarget. 2015;6(25):21315–27.
100. Powell DR, Huttenlocher A. Neutrophils in the tumor microenvironment. Trends Immunol. 2016;37(1):41–52.
101. Coffelt SB, Wellenstein MD, de Visser KE. Neutrophils in cancer: neutral no more. Nat Rev Cancer. 2016;16(7):431–46.
102. Acharyya S, Oskarsson T, Vanharanta S, Malladi S, Kim J, Morris PG, et al. A CXCL1 paracrine network links cancer chemoresistance and metastasis. Cell. 2012;150(1):165–78.
103. Houghton AM, Rzymkiewicz DM, Ji H, Gregory AD, Egea EE, Metz HE, et al. Neutrophil elastase-mediated degradation of IRS-1 accelerates lung tumor growth. Nat Med. 2010;16(2):219–23.
104. Grayson PC, Kaplan MJ. At the bench: neutrophil extracellular traps (NETs) highlight novel aspects of innate immune system involvement in autoimmune diseases. J Leukoc Biol. 2016;99(2):253–64.
105. Chu D, Zhao Q, Yu J, Zhang F, Zhang H, Wang Z. Nanoparticle targeting of neutrophils for improved cancer immunotherapy. Adv Healthc Mater. 2016;5(9):1088–93.
106. Uribe-Querol E, Rosales C. Neutrophils in cancer: two sides of the same coin. J Immunol Res. 2015;2015:983698.
107. Gabrilovich DI, Bronte V, Chen SH, Colombo MP, Ochoa A, Ostrand-Rosenberg S, et al. The terminology issue for myeloid-derived suppressor cells. Cancer Res. 2007;67(1):425; author reply 6.
108. Gabrilovich DI, Nagaraj S. Myeloid-derived suppressor cells as regulators of the immune system. Nat Rev Immunol. 2009;9(3):162–74.
109. Millrud CR, Bergenfelz C, Leandersson K. On the origin of myeloid-derived suppressor cells. Oncotarget. 2017;8(2):3649–65.
110. Bronte V, Brandau S, Chen SH, Colombo MP, Frey AB, Greten TF, et al. Recommendations for myeloid-derived suppressor cell nomenclature and characterization standards. Nat Commun. 2016;7:12150.
111. Kumar V, Patel S, Tcyganov E, Gabrilovich DI. The nature of myeloid-derived suppressor cells in the tumor microenvironment. Trends Immunol. 2016;37(3):208–20.
112. Solito S, Marigo I, Pinton L, Damuzzo V, Mandruzzato S, Bronte V. Myeloid-derived suppressor cell heterogeneity in human cancers. Ann N Y Acad Sci. 2014;1319:47–65.
113. Ostrand-Rosenberg S, Sinha P, Chornoguz O, Ecker C. Regulating the suppressors: apoptosis and inflammation govern the survival of tumor-induced myeloid-derived suppressor cells (MDSC). Cancer Immunol Immunother. 2012;61(8):1319–25.
114. Umansky V, Adema GJ, Baran J, Brandau S, Van Ginderachter JA, Hu X, et al. Interactions among myeloid regulatory cells in cancer. Cancer Immunol Immunother. 2019;68(4):645–60.
115. Weide B, Martens A, Zelba H, Stutz C, Derhovanessian E, Di Giacomo AM, et al. Myeloid-derived suppressor cells predict survival of patients with advanced melanoma: comparison with regulatory T cells and NY-ESO-1- or melan-A-specific T cells. Clin Cancer Res. 2014;20(6):1601–9.
116. Jordan KR, Kapoor P, Spongberg E, Tobin RP, Gao D, Borges VF, et al. Immunosuppressive myeloid-derived suppressor cells are increased in splenocytes from cancer patients. Cancer Immunol Immunother. 2017;66(4):503–13.
117. Jordan KR, Amaria RN, Ramirez O, Callihan EB, Gao D, Borakove M, et al. Myeloid-derived suppressor cells are associated with disease progression and decreased overall survival in advanced-stage melanoma patients. Cancer Immunol Immunother. 2013;62(11):1711–22.
118. de Coana YP, Wolodarski M, Poschke I, Yoshimoto Y, Yang Y, Nystrom M, et al. Ipilimumab treatment decreases monocytic MDSCs and increases CD8 effector memory T cells in long-term survivors with advanced melanoma. Oncotarget. 2017;8(13):21539–53.
119. Peng D, Tanikawa T, Li W, Zhao L, Vatan L, Szeliga W, et al. Myeloid-derived suppressor cells endow stem-like qualities to breast cancer cells through IL6/STAT3 and NO/NOTCH cross-talk signaling. Cancer Res. 2016;76(11):3156–65.
120. Chun E, Lavoie S, Michaud M, Gallini CA, Kim J, Soucy G, et al. CCL2 promotes colorectal carcinogenesis by enhancing polymorphonuclear myeloid-derived suppressor cell population and function. Cell Rep. 2015;12(2):244–57.
121. Wan S, Zhao E, Kryczek I, Vatan L, Sadovskaya A, Ludema G, et al. Tumor-associated macrophages produce interleukin 6 and signal via STAT3 to promote expansion of human hepatocellular carcinoma stem cells. Gastroenterology. 2014;147(6):1393–404.
122. Chen J, Ye Y, Liu P, Yu W, Wei F, Li H, et al. Suppression of T cells by myeloid-derived suppressor cells in cancer. Hum Immunol. 2017;78(2):113–9.
123. Oka T, Sugaya M, Takahashi N, Takahashi T, Shibata S, Miyagaki T, et al. CXCL17 attenuates imiquimod-induced psoriasis-like skin inflammation by recruiting myeloid-derived suppressor cells and regulatory T cells. J Immunol. 2017;198(10):3897–908.
124. Sinha P, Clements VK, Fulton AM, Ostrand-Rosenberg S. Prostaglandin E2 promotes tumor progression by inducing myeloid-derived suppressor cells. Cancer Res. 2007;67(9):4507–13.
125. Bayne LJ, Beatty GL, Jhala N, Clark CE, Rhim AD, Stanger BZ, et al. Tumor-derived granulocyte-macrophage colony-stimulating factor regulates myeloid inflammation and T cell immunity in pancreatic cancer. Cancer Cell. 2012;21(6):822–35.
126. Marvel D, Gabrilovich DI. Myeloid-derived suppressor cells in the tumor microenvironment:

expect the unexpected. J Clin Invest. 2015;125(9):3356–64.
127. Pyzer AR, Stroopinsky D, Rajabi H, Washington A, Tagde A, Coll M, et al. MUC1-mediated induction of myeloid-derived suppressor cells in patients with acute myeloid leukemia. Blood. 2017;129(13):1791–801.
128. Lee BR, Chang SY, Hong EH, Kwon BE, Kim HM, Kim YJ, et al. Elevated endoplasmic reticulum stress reinforced immunosuppression in the tumor microenvironment via myeloid-derived suppressor cells. Oncotarget. 2014;5(23):12331–45.
129. Condamine T, Ramachandran I, Youn JI, Gabrilovich DI. Regulation of tumor metastasis by myeloid-derived suppressor cells. Annu Rev Med. 2015;66:97–110.
130. Kusmartsev S, Gabrilovich DI. Role of immature myeloid cells in mechanisms of immune evasion in cancer. Cancer Immunol Immunother. 2006;55(3):237–45.
131. Cao Y, Slaney CY, Bidwell BN, Parker BS, Johnstone CN, Rautela J, et al. BMP4 inhibits breast cancer metastasis by blocking myeloid-derived suppressor cell activity. Cancer Res. 2014;74(18):5091–102.
132. Long AH, Highfill SL, Cui Y, Smith JP, Walker AJ, Ramakrishna S, et al. Reduction of MDSCs with all-trans retinoic acid improves CAR therapy efficacy for sarcomas. Cancer Immunol Res. 2016;4(10):869–80.
133. Bronte V, Zanovello P. Regulation of immune responses by L-arginine metabolism. Nat Rev Immunol. 2005;5(8):641–54.
134. Gabrilovich DI, Ostrand-Rosenberg S, Bronte V. Coordinated regulation of myeloid cells by tumours. Nat Rev Immunol. 2012;12(4):253–68.
135. Ostrand-Rosenberg S, Sinha P. Myeloid-derived suppressor cells: linking inflammation and cancer. J Immunol. 2009;182(8):4499–506.
136. Li H, Han Y, Guo Q, Zhang M, Cao X. Cancer-expanded myeloid-derived suppressor cells induce anergy of NK cells through membrane-bound TGF-beta 1. J Immunol. 2009;182(1):240–9.
137. Chen W, Jin W, Hardegen N, Lei KJ, Li L, Marinos N, et al. Conversion of peripheral CD4+CD25- naive T cells to CD4+CD25+ regulatory T cells by TGF-beta induction of transcription factor Foxp3. J Exp Med. 2003;198(12):1875–86.
138. Chikamatsu K, Sakakura K, Toyoda M, Takahashi K, Yamamoto T, Masuyama K. Immunosuppressive activity of CD14+ HLA-DR- cells in squamous cell carcinoma of the head and neck. Cancer Sci. 2012;103(6):976–83.
139. Ostrand-Rosenberg S, Sinha P, Beury DW, Clements VK. Cross-talk between myeloid-derived suppressor cells (MDSC), macrophages, and dendritic cells enhances tumor-induced immune suppression. Semin Cancer Biol. 2012;22(4):275–81.
140. Hossain F, Al-Khami AA, Wyczechowska D, Hernandez C, Zheng L, Reiss K, et al. Inhibition of fatty acid oxidation modulates immunosuppressive functions of myeloid-derived suppressor cells and enhances cancer therapies. Cancer Immunol Res. 2015;3(11):1236–47.
141. Farkona S, Diamandis EP, Blasutig IM. Cancer immunotherapy: the beginning of the end of cancer? BMC Med. 2016;14:73.
142. Adah D, Hussain M, Qin L, Qin L, Zhang J, Chen X. Implications of MDSCs-targeting in lung cancer chemo-immunotherapeutics. Pharmacol Res. 2016;110:25–34.
143. Chesney JA, Mitchell RA, Yaddanapudi K. Myeloid-derived suppressor cells-a new therapeutic target to overcome resistance to cancer immunotherapy. J Leukoc Biol. 2017;102(3):727–40.
144. Ostrand-Rosenberg S, Fenselau C. Myeloid-derived suppressor cells: immune-suppressive cells that impair antitumor immunity and are sculpted by their environment. J Immunol. 2018;200(2):422–31.
145. Tcyganov E, Mastio J, Chen E, Gabrilovich DI. Plasticity of myeloid-derived suppressor cells in cancer. Curr Opin Immunol. 2018;51:76–82.
146. Weber R, Fleming V, Hu X, Nagibin V, Groth C, Altevogt P, et al. Myeloid-derived suppressor cells hinder the anti-cancer activity of immune checkpoint inhibitors. Front Immunol. 2018;9:1310.
147. Fleming V, Hu X, Weber R, Nagibin V, Groth C, Altevogt P, et al. Targeting myeloid-derived suppressor cells to bypass tumor-induced immunosuppression. Front Immunol. 2018;9:398.
148. Soong RS, Anchoori RK, Yang B, Yang A, Tseng SH, He L, et al. RPN13/ADRM1 inhibitor reverses immunosuppression by myeloid-derived suppressor cells. Oncotarget. 2016;7(42):68489–502.
149. Kortylewski M, Moreira D. Myeloid cells as a target for oligonucleotide therapeutics: turning obstacles into opportunities. Cancer Immunol Immunother. 2017;66(8):979–88.
150. Tai LH, Alkayyal AA, Leslie AL, Sahi S, Bennett S, Tanese de Souza C, et al. Phosphodiesterase-5 inhibition reduces postoperative metastatic disease by targeting surgery-induced myeloid derived suppressor cell-dependent inhibition of natural killer cell cytotoxicity. Oncoimmunology. 2018;7(6):e1431082.
151. Orillion A, Hashimoto A, Damayanti N, Shen L, Adelaiye-Ogala R, Arisa S, et al. Entinostat neutralizes myeloid-derived suppressor cells and enhances the antitumor effect of PD-1 inhibition in murine models of lung and renal cell carcinoma. Clin Cancer Res. 2017;23(17):5187–201.
152. Briere D, Sudhakar N, Woods DM, Hallin J, Engstrom LD, Aranda R, et al. The class I/IV HDAC inhibitor mocetinostat increases tumor antigen presentation, decreases immune suppressive cell types and augments checkpoint inhibitor therapy. Cancer Immunol Immunother. 2018;67(3):381–92.
153. Yang L, Wang B, Qin J, Zhou H, Majumdar APN, Peng F. Blockade of CCR5-mediated myeloid derived suppressor cell accumulation enhances anti-

PD1 efficacy in gastric cancer. Immunopharmacol Immunotoxicol. 2018;40(1):91–7.
154. Guan Y, Zhang R, Peng Z, Dong D, Wei G, Wang Y. Inhibition of IL-18-mediated myeloid derived suppressor cell accumulation enhances anti-PD1 efficacy against osteosarcoma cancer. J Bone Oncol. 2017;9:59–64.
155. Liu Y, Wei G, Cheng WA, Dong Z, Sun H, Lee VY, et al. Targeting myeloid-derived suppressor cells for cancer immunotherapy. Cancer Immunol Immunother. 2018;67(8):1181–95.
156. Ma J, Xu H, Wang S. Immunosuppressive role of myeloid-derived suppressor cells and therapeutic targeting in lung cancer. J Immunol Res. 2018;2018:6319649.
157. Martire-Greco D, Rodriguez-Rodrigues N, Castillo LA, Vecchione MB, de Campos-Nebel M, Cordoba Moreno M, et al. Novel use of all-trans-retinoic acid in a model of lipopolysaccharide-immunosuppression to decrease the generation of myeloid-derived suppressor cells by reducing the proliferation of CD34+ precursor cells. Shock. 2017;48(1):94–103.
158. Al-Khami AA, Rodriguez PC, Ochoa AC. Energy metabolic pathways control the fate and function of myeloid immune cells. J Leukoc Biol. 2017;102(2):369–80.
159. Wilkerson A, Kim J, Huang AY, Zhang M. Nanoparticle systems modulating myeloid-derived suppressor cells for cancer immunotherapy. Curr Top Med Chem. 2017;17(16):1843–57.
160. Comiskey MC, Dallos MC, Drake CG. Immunotherapy in prostate cancer: teaching an old dog new tricks. Curr Oncol Rep. 2018;20(9):75.

4 B-Cells in Cancer Immunology: For or Against Cancer Growth?

Qiao Li, Qin Pan, Huimin Tao, Xiao-Lian Zhang, Shiang Huang, and Alfred E. Chang

Contents

Q. Li (✉)
Department of Surgery, University of Michigan, Ann Arbor, MI, USA
e-mail: qiaoli@umich.edu

Q. Pan
Department of Surgery, University of Michigan, Ann Arbor, MI, USA

State Key Laboratory of Virology, Department of Immunology, Hubei Province Key Laboratory of Allergy and Immunology, Wuhan University School of Medicine, Wuhan, China

Department of Immunology, Wuhan University School of Medicine, Wuhan, China

H. Tao
Department of Surgery, University of Michigan, Ann Arbor, MI, USA

Department of Hematology, Wuhan Union Hospital, Wuhan, China

X.-L. Zhang
State Key Laboratory of Virology, Department of Immunology, Hubei Province Key Laboratory of Allergy and Immunology, Wuhan University School of Medicine, Wuhan, China

Department of Immunology, Wuhan University School of Medicine, Wuhan, China

S. Huang
Department of Hematology, Wuhan Union Hospital, Wuhan, China

Hubei Province Stem Cell Research and Appling Center, Wuhan Union Hospital, Wuhan, China

A. E. Chang
Department of Surgery, University of Michigan, Ann Arbor, MI, USA

Division of Surgical Oncology, Department of Surgery, University of Michigan Comprehensive Cancer Center, Ann Arbor, MI, USA

N. Rezaei (ed.), *Cancer Immunology*, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-30845-2_4

4.1 Introduction

In the 1960s, B-cells were first defined in birds when researchers found that removal of the bursa in newly hatched chicks severely impaired the ability of the adult birds to produce Abs [1, 2]. A decade later, it was found that mammalian B-cells are derived from bone marrow and develop into plasma cells that are the source of antibodies (Abs). Over the years, most studies on B-cell function in immune response have focused on antigen presentation and antibody production. However, recent advances in B-cell biology have capitalized on old findings and demonstrated that B-cells can also act as effector cells or as regulatory cells [3, 4].

B-cells are often overlooked in tumor immunology, likely because of the common notion that humoral and cytolytic responses work in opposition. The field of tumor immunology has focused on $CD8^+$ T-cells due to their ability to directly kill tumor cells, as well as the close association between tumor-infiltrating $CD8^+$ T-cells and cancer patients' survival [5]. To date, the role of B-cells in tumor immunity has remained largely elusive. Results from different research groups are somewhat controversial. In this chapter, we review the roles of B-cells in tumor immunology, which may either positively or negatively affect tumor growth and patient outcomes.

4.2 CD40-Activated B (CD40-B) Cells

CD40-activated B (CD40-B) cells are thought to be an excellent source of professional antigen-presenting cells (APCs) for antigen-specific tumor immunotherapy. They have demonstrated potent effects on cellular immunotherapy of cancers [6–17]. CD40-B-cells induce potent expansion of antigen-specific $CD4^+$ and $CD8^+$ T-cells, including naïve $CD8^+$ T-cells [6–9, 12, 16]. One reason that dendritic cells (DCs) are considered as excellent APCs in tumor immunotherapy is that they can powerfully prime naïve T-cells, while resting B-cells cannot. Resting B-cells poorly express costimulatory molecules, resulting in immune tolerance regarding the induction of naïve T-cells. Recent studies have shown that activation of mouse and human B-cells using CD40L in vitro upregulates the expression of major histocompatibility complex (MHC) I, MHC II, and costimulatory molecules on B-cells [6–9, 13, 14, 16]. These B-cells present exogenous antigens by MHC class I or II molecules and stimulate antigen-specific T-cells [7, 8]. CD40-B-cells induce T-cell proliferation, interferon-γ (IFN-γ) production, and specific cytotoxic T lymphocyte (CTL) responses [6–9, 11–15]. In mouse models, it has been shown that CD40-B-cells directly present antigen to naïve $CD8^+$ T-cells, in order to induce the generation of potent T effectors which are able to secrete cytokines and kill target cells [16]. Moreover, CD40-B-cells express the full lymph node homing triad CD62L, CCR7/CXCR4, and leukocyte function antigen-1 (LFA1), suggesting that they could co-localize with T-cells in the T-cell-rich areas of secondary lymphoid organs [11, 15]. This will facilitate CD40-B-cell and T-cell contact for antigen presentation.

Using a metastatic mouse model, Li et al. provided direct experimental evidence that the augmented antitumor activity by anti-CD40 monoclonal antibody (mAb)-stimulated tumor-draining lymph node (TDLN) cells requires the presence of APCs, e.g., B-cells as well as DCs. They found that anti-CD40 mAb augments antitumor responses of TDLN cells via ligation to CD40 on both B-cells and DCs [17].

Typically, TDLN cells are composed of approximately 60% $CD3^+$ T-cells, 30% $CD40^+$ B-cells, and 5% DCs. In a murine sarcoma model, anti-CD3−/anti-CD40-activated MCA205 TDLN T-cells secreted significantly higher amount of IFN-γ in an antigen-specific manner (in response to MCA205 tumor, but not to MCA 207 tumor), in comparison with solely anti-CD3-activated TDLN T-cells (Fig. 4.1a). However, when B-cells were depleted from MCA205 TDLN cells, anti-CD3/anti-CD40 activation could not increase the IFN-γ anymore. This effect is very similar to DC depletion (Fig. 4.1a). In vivo, adoptive transfer of anti-CD3−/anti-CD40-activated MCA205 TDLN T-cells mediated significantly higher MCA205 tumor regression in a pulmonary metastasis setting, compared to anti-CD3-alone-activated TDLN T-cells (Fig. 4.1b). However, B-cell removal significantly reduced the therapeutic efficacy con-

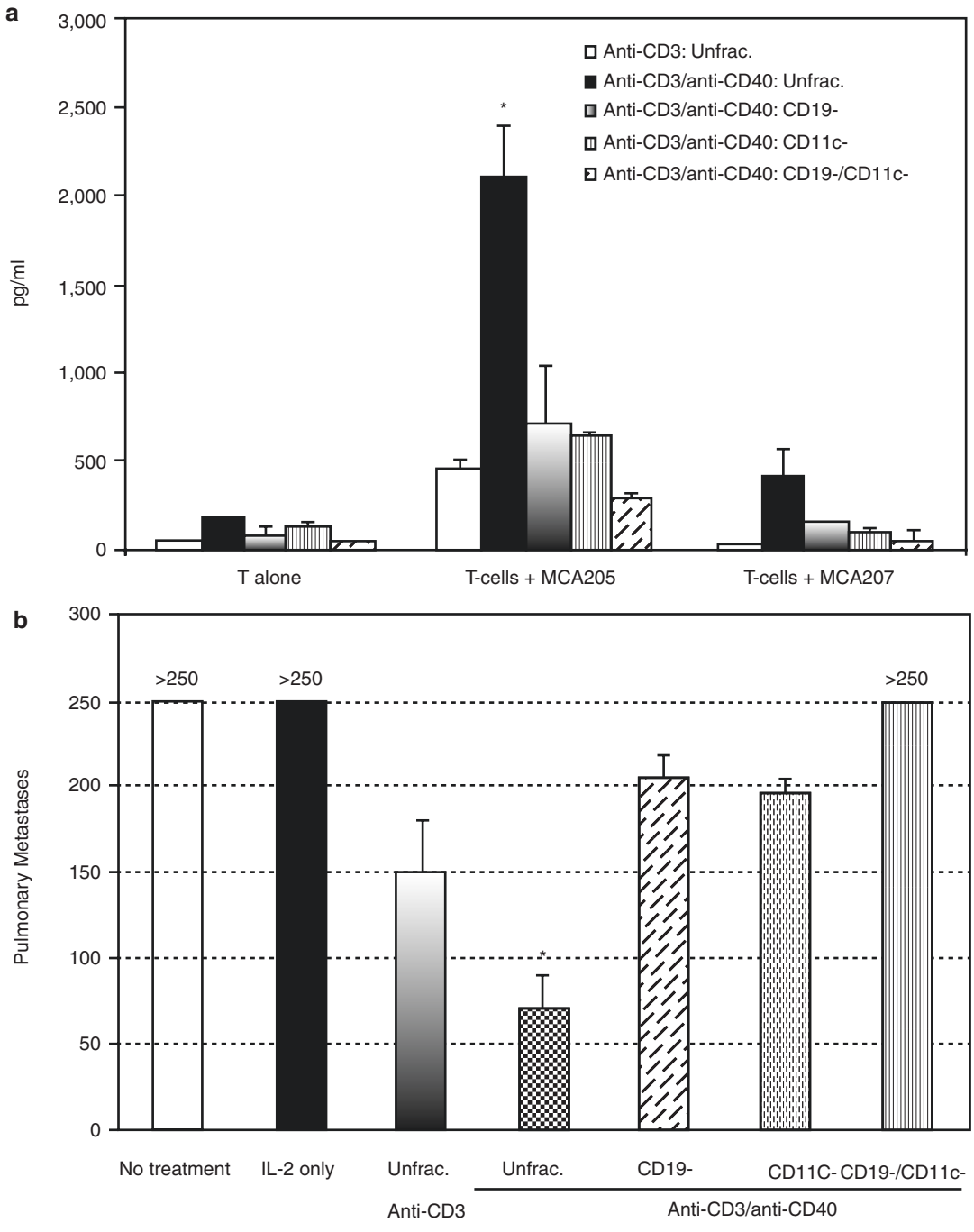


Fig. 4.1 Anti-CD40 mAb augmented antitumor responses of anti-CD3-activated TDLN cells via ligation to CD40 on both B-cells and DCs. (**a**) Activated total unfractionated (Unfrac) TDLN cells were co-cultured with MCA 205 vs. MCA 207 tumor cells to determine IFN-γ production. B-cells were removed by CD19 depletion ($CD19^-$), and DCs were removed by CD11c depletion ($CD11c^-$). (**b**) Activated total TDLN (Unfrac) cells or B-cell, DC-depleted TDLN cells ($CD19^-$ and/or $CD11c^-$) TDLN cells adoptively transferred into tumor-bearing mice for therapy. $*p < 0.05$ compare with any other group in (**a**, **b**), respectively (adapted by permission from the American Association of Immunologists, Inc. Copyright 2005: Li et al. [17])

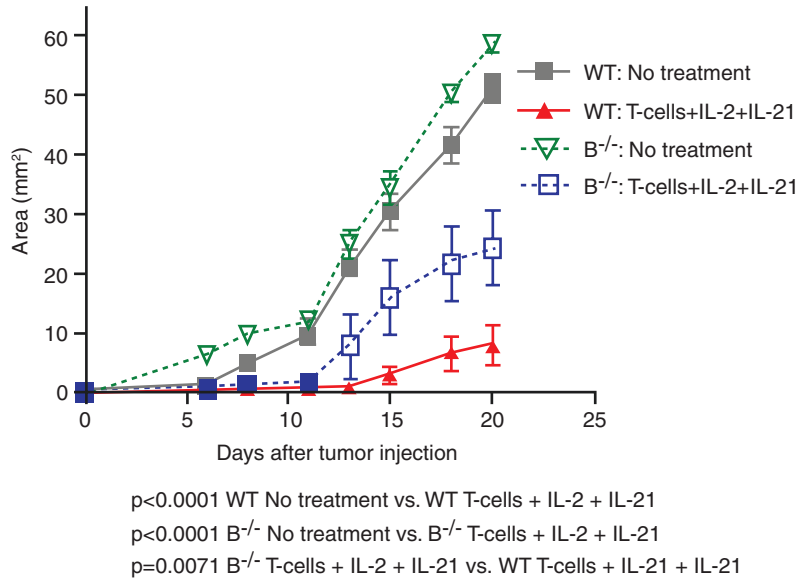


Fig. 4.2 Requirement for host B-cells in T-cell transfer + IL-2 and IL-21 administration-elicited antitumor immunity (adapted by permission from the American Association for Cancer Research: Iuchi et al. [18])

ferred by CD40 engagement, and so did DC removal. Together, these studies indicate that B-cells, as well as DCs, are required in the generation of potent antitumor T effector cells from TDLN cells via simultaneous targeting of CD3 on T-cells and CD40 on B and dendritic cells.

In a separate study, Iuchi et al. reported that host B-cells were required for adoptive transferred T-cells to mediate optimal antitumor immunity [18]. Tumor-bearing mice were treated with adoptive transfer of T-cells accompanied with IL-2 and IL-21 administration in wild-type and B-cell knockout ($B^{-/-}$) animals, respectively. They found that tumor growth inhibition was significantly diminished in the B-cell-deficient mice after T-cell + IL-2 + IL-21 combined therapy (Fig. 4.2).

In contrast to DCs, large numbers of B-cells can be obtained from the blood of patients after ex vivo expansion (up to 1000-fold) in the presence of CD40L [6]. For example, only about 10^6 DCs can be generated from 10 ml of blood, while 10^9–10^{10} B-cells can be produced from the same volume of the blood sample. Additionally, CD40-B-cells can be continuously expanded in long-term culture (>65 days) without the loss of APC functionality [6]. Therefore, CD40-B-cells have the advantage over DCs in terms of isolation, generation, and long-term expansion. These characteristics make CD40-B-cells a promising alternative as cell-based vaccines.

In current B-cell vaccine preparations, activated B-cells can be loaded with antigens by pulsing with peptides, proteins, tumor lysates, or by transfection with DNA or RNA, or transduction with viral vectors [9, 10, 19]. Coughlin et al. [9] loaded RNA on CD40-B-cells from pediatric patients. Vaccination using these B-cells resulted in simultaneous targeting of multiple antigenic epitopes and induced CTLs. Chung et al. [10] reported that B-cells stimulated with iNKT (CD1d-restricted invariant T-cells) ligand alpha-galactosylceramide (alphaGalCer) could directly prime CTLs and generate long-lasting cytotoxic antitumor immunity in vivo. Furthermore, Garbe et al. [19] reported that semi-allogeneic fusions of microsatellite instability (MSI) tumor cells with B-cells primed B-cells to induce MSI-specific T-cell responses.

4.3 Tumor Killer B-Cells

B-cells can directly kill tumor cells through antibody (Ab)-independent mechanisms [20]. Recent studies have shown that B-cells express death-

inducing ligands and can therefore mediate cell death under many circumstances. Evidence has emerged that B-cells express Fas ligand (FasL), tumor necrosis factor-related apoptosis-inducing ligand (TRAIL), programmed death ligands 1 and 2 (PD-L1 and PD-L2), and granzyme B (GrB), which are potentially involved in B-cell-mediated direct cytotoxicity against tumor cells [21–29].

Due to the well-known fact that B-cells can produce Abs which lead to CDC and ADCC, as well as the recent findings that B-cells may kill tumor cells directly through antibody-independent mechanisms, it is hypothesized that appropriately sensitized and activated B-cells can function as effector cells to mediate antitumor immunity. Indeed, Li et al. [30] proved that in vivo sensitized and in vitro activated B-cells could mediate tumor regression in cancer adoptive immunotherapy. In vivo sensitized TDLN cells were activated and expanded in vitro with LPS/anti-CD40, resulting in B-cell proliferation and differentiation. These activated B-cells were then adoptively transferred into tumor-bearing recipients for therapy. These tumor-primed and tumor-activated B-cells significantly reduced lung metastases in an adoptive immunotherapy model (Fig. 4.3). Furthermore, total body irradiation (TBI) could enhance the antitumor activity of the adoptively transferred B-cells. This study represents one of the early studies demonstrating that effector B-cells could confer antitumor immunity after adoptive transfer into tumor-bearing mice [30].

Using a murine 4T1 pulmonary metastatic model, it was found that adoptive transfer of 4T1-primed and LPS−/anti-CD40-activated TDLN B-cells significantly inhibited 4T1 pulmonary metastasis in tumor-bearing mice [31] (Fig. 4.4). The efficacy mediated by B-cells was comparable to that mediated by an equal number of T-cells, which served as a positive control in the experiment (Fig. 4.4a). Of note, adoptively transferred 4T1 TDLN T + B-cells mediated inhibition of the spontaneous pulmonary metastasis of 4T1 in a dose-dependent manner (Fig. 4.4b).

This study also showed that activated 4T1 TDLN B-cells caused tumor cell lysis directly in vitro in the absence of Ab and other effector cells and this direct cytotoxicity was tumor specific (Fig. 4.5). In these experiments, 4T1 mammary carcinoma murine tumor-primed TDLN B-cells were activated with LPS and anti-CD40 mAb, washed thoroughly, and then co-cultured with 4T1 tumor cells or irrelevant tumor controls, Renca (renal cell carcinoma) and TSA (sarcoma).

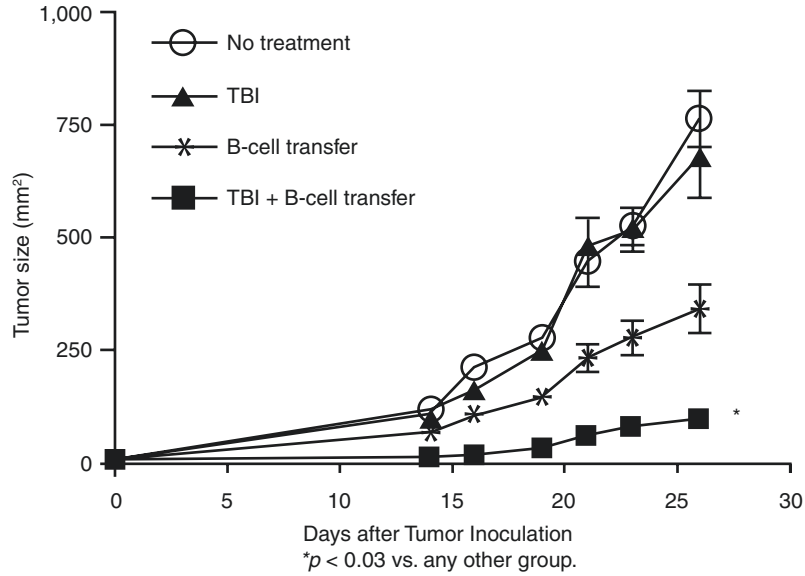


Fig. 4.3 TBI (total body irradiation) significantly augmented the therapeutic efficacy of adoptively transferred B-cells in the s.c. D5 tumor model (adapted by permission from the American Association of Immunologists, Inc. Copyright 2009: Li et al. [31])

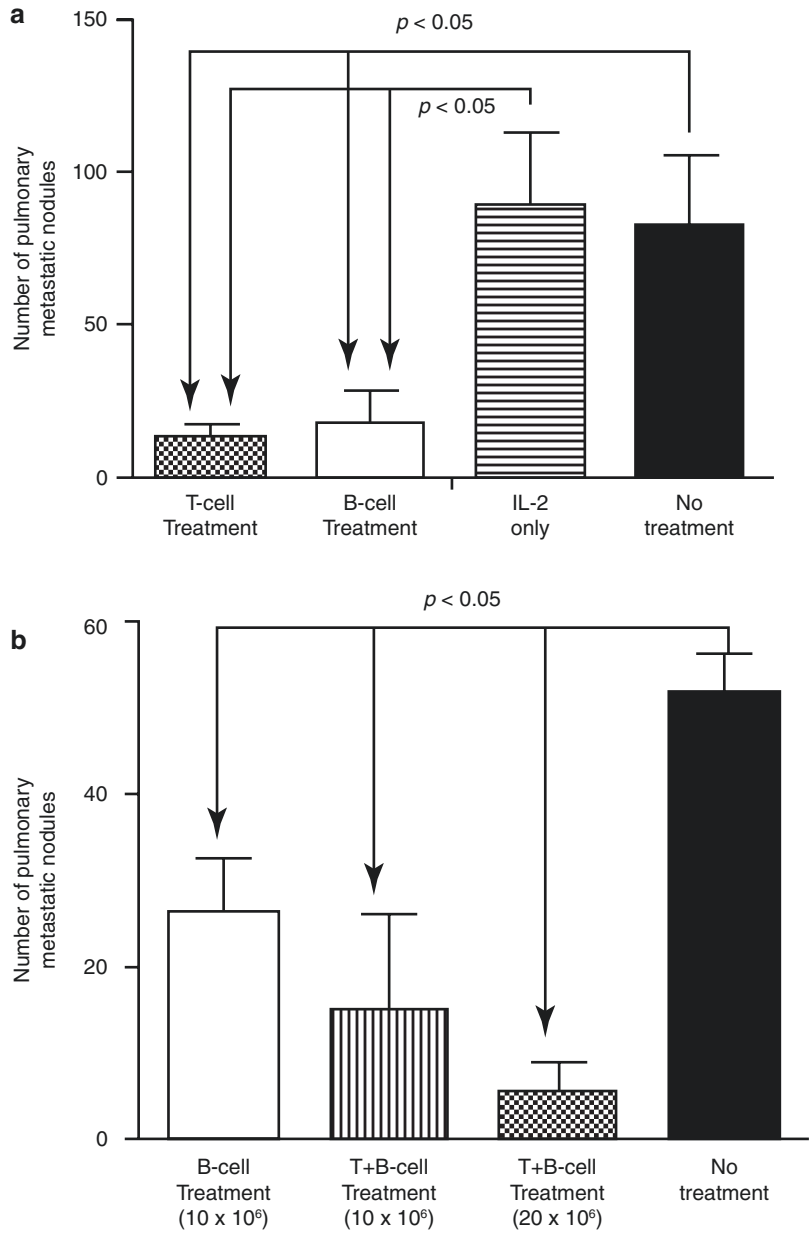


Fig. 4.4 (**a**) Adoptively transferred 4T1 TDLN B-cells mediated effective inhibition of the spontaneous pulmonary metastasis of 4T1 breast cancer cells similarly to equal numbers of T-cells. (**b**) adoptively transferred 4T1 TDLN T + B-cells mediated inhibition of the spontaneous pulmonary metastasis of 4T1 better then B-cells alone, and the efficacy was dose dependent (adapted by permission from the American Association for Cancer Research: Li et al. [31])

The effector B-cells killed 4T1 cells directly in a dose-dependent way and were significantly more effective than their killing of the control tumors. These data support the conclusion that tumor antigen-primed and in vitro activated B-cells are able to kill tumor cells independent of Ab or complement. However, the mechanism(s) by which the killer B-cells lyse tumor cells directly in such a setting remains to be identified.

In line with these findings, Kemp et al. demonstrated that CpG-A oligodeoxynucleotide (CpG-A ODN) stimulation of human PBMCs leads to high

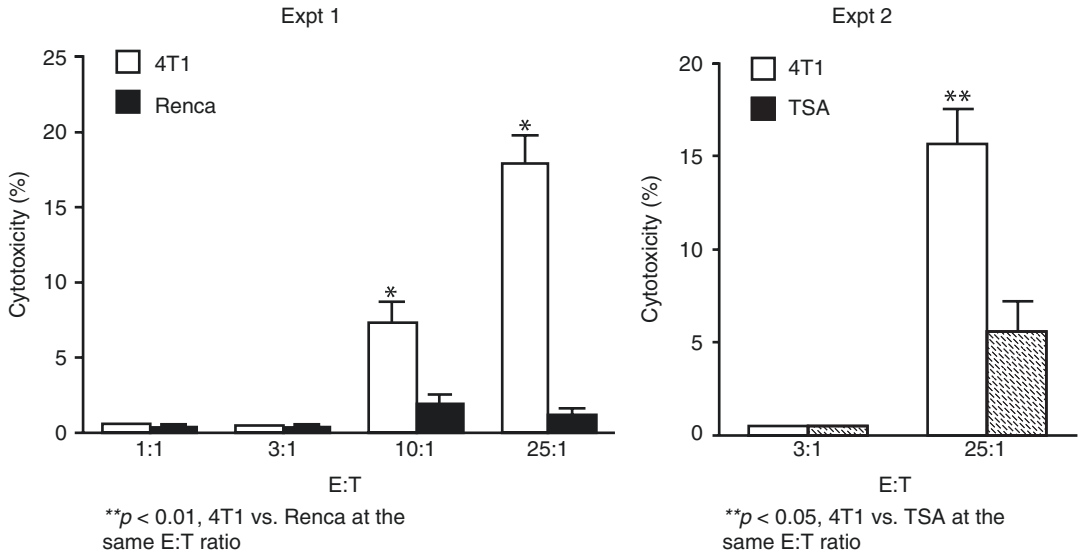


Fig. 4.5 Activated 4T1 TDLN B-cells mediate direct and tumor-specific cytotoxicity of 4T1 cells (adapted by permission from the American Association for Cancer Research: Li et al. [31])

levels of functional TRAIL/Apo-2L expression on B-cells, and these B-cells mediate TRAIL−/Apo-2L-dependent tumor cell lysis [25].

Additional studies support the observation that B-cell can function as effector cells in antitumor responses. For example, Penafuerte et al. reported that B effector cells activated with a chimeric protein consisting of IL-2 and the ectodomain of TGF-β receptor II (also known as FIST) induce potent antitumor immunity [32]. In this study, the B effector cells were characterized by the production of TNFα and IFN-γ and potent antigen presentation properties [32]. In addition, Forte et al. found that administration of a specific CD73 inhibitor, adenosine 5′-(α, β-methylene) diphosphate (APCP), to melanoma-bearing mice induced significant tumor regression [33]. They observed that after APCP administration, the presence of B-cells in the melanoma tissue was more than that observed in control mice. This was associated with the production of IgG2b within the melanoma, implying a critical role for B-cells in the antitumor activity of APCP [33]. Together, these studies suggest that the mechanisms underlining B-cell-mediated antitumor immunity may involve multiple cellular and molecular events, as well as direct killing of the tumor cells.

4.4 Tumor-Infiltrating B-Cells (TIL-Bs) in Cancer

Tumor-infiltrating B-cells (TIL-Bs) have revealed controversial roles in antitumor immunity. They have been found in breast cancer [34–36], ovarian cancer [37], lung cancer [38], colorectal cancer [39, 40], cervical cancer [41], cutaneous melanoma [42], and prostate cancer (CaP) [43]. A few studies have indicated that TIL-Bs are correlated with favorable survival of patients [36, 37, 42, 44, 45], lower relapse rate [41], or low metastasis [42]. In a study on immune infiltrates in high-grade serous ovarian cancer, it was revealed that intraepithelial $CD20^+$ TIL-Bs are associated with increased disease-specific survival [37]. Importantly, the association between the immune infiltrates and survival

was dependent on histological subtype, because immune infiltrates were less prevalent in the other histological subtypes compared to the high-grade serous cases [37]. In breast cancer, TIL-Bs are present in about 24% of tumors and comprise up to 40% of the lymphocytic infiltrates [34]. TIL-Bs have been shown to undergo antigen-driven clonal proliferation and affinity maturation in situ [35]. Very recently, in a large patient cohort of different histological and biological subtypes, Mahmoud and colleagues provided evidence for a favorable outcome when high numbers of $CD20^+$ TIL-Bs were present [36]. Additionally, TIL-Bs may be involved in humoral immune response in situ. Using recombinant Ab cloning techniques, Hansen et al. reported an antigen-driven humoral immune response directed against β-actin exposed on apoptotic mammary carcinoma cells [46]. Yasuda and coworkers [47] identified TIL-Bs which produce tumor-specific Abs against mutated p53. Maletzki et al. [40] also reported that TIL-Bs from colorectal carcinoma show an activated immunophenotype ($CD23^+$, $CD80^+$) and produce IgGs that specifically bind to allogeneic target tumor cells.

On the other hand, TIL-Bs may produce cytokines contributing to tumor development. It has been reported that TIL-Bs in castration-resistant CaP produce lymphotoxin by an inflammation-responsive IκB kinase (IKK)-β-dependent pathway, which then in turn activates IKK-α and STAT3 in tumor cells to enhance hormone-free tumor survival [43]. In this study, B-cell infiltration was detected in 100% of human CaP samples, while B-cells were undetectable in normal prostate or benign prostatic hyperplasia [43]. Castration-resistant CaP growth was delayed in mice reconstituted with bone marrow from $JH^{-/-}$ mice, which lack mature B-cells [43]. It was further found that these CaP allografts exhibited IKK-α nuclear translocation, which was dependent on IKK-β in B-cells. IKK-β deletion abolished lymphotoxin expression by B-cells. When lymphotoxin-β was ablated in B-cells, growth of castration-resistant CaP was delayed. Similarly, another study showed that tumor-infiltrating T and B-cells were not associated with long-term survival of patients with non-small-cell lung cancer [38].

The roles of TIL-Bs may be complicated, since the tumor environment is dynamic and changes during tumor onset and progression. TIL-Bs need to contact other immune cells or tumor cells to be activated or regulated, so their contributions to immune responses are likely to vary in different cancers and during the course of cancer.

4.5 Resting B-Cells and Regulatory B-Cells in Cancer

In contrast to activated B-cells, there is abundant evidence indicating that resting B-cells can promote the development or progression of cancer. Resting B-cells are small B-cells in the G0 stage of cell cycle, prior to activation. Studies have shown that B-cell-deficient mice exhibit enhanced T-cell antitumor activity and significant improvement in survival rate [48–52]. It has been reported that there are increased effector T-cells [48], increased T-cell infiltration of tumors [52], higher Th1 cytokine and antitumor CTL response [49, 51, 52], and even reduced T regulatory cell (Treg) frequencies [53] in these B-cell-deficient mice. Some studies explored the possible mechanisms involved. B-cells present in the priming phase result in disabled $CD4^+$ T-cell help for CTL-mediated tumor immunity [51]. B-cells produce IL-10 which can repress antitumor immunity [49, 54]. Similarly, Abs were shown to promote primary tumor formation in a transgenic mouse model of inflammation-associated carcinogenesis [55]. Autoantibody responses to self-proteins triggered by cancer vaccines may influence the efficacy of vaccination [56]. Additionally, B-cells have been shown to have other pro-tumorigenic roles. For example, enhanced NK cell antitumor activity has been reported in B-cell-deficient mice [48, 50, 52]; however, the mechanisms are poorly understood.

We hypothesize that the effects of B-cells on antitumor immunity depend on the presence of B-cell subsets mainly involved under certain tumor conditions. In the past two decades, investigators have identified B-cell subsets which are capable of suppressing the immune response. Suppression of an immune response was first reported in 1974 where spleen B-cells were found to impair delayed-type hypersensitivity (DTH) responses in guinea pigs [57, 58]. This finding led to the conclusion that DTH responses and T-cell function can be regulated by suppressor B-cells. Subsequently, convincing data have demonstrated that IL-10-producing B-cells, termed regulatory B-cells (Bregs) by Mizoguchi et al. [59], can suppress inflammatory responses in experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis (EAE), collagen-induced arthritis (CIA), and colitis [59–61]. Recently, Bregs and their potential immunomodulatory activities have been examined in several immune-related diseases. In the majority of these studies, the function of Bregs is dependent on IL-10 production, whereas the mechanisms are still undefined partly because of conflicting results regarding the phenotypic characterization of IL-10-producing cells. For example, the following B-cells have been reported as putative mouse Bregs: $CD1d^{high}$ subset of B-cells in chronic colitis in TCRα-deficient mice [59], $CD21^{high}CD23^{low}$ B-cells in contact hypersensitivity (CHS) mouse model [62], $CD21^{high}CD23^{high}$ T2-MZ precursor B-cells in CIA model [63], $CD1d^{high}CD5^{+}$ B-cells (termed B10 cells by Yanaba et al.) in CHS [64] and EAE models [65], $CD138^{+}CD19^{+}$ plasmablasts in *Salmonella typhimurium* infection [66], and T-cell Ig domain and mucin domain protein (TIM)-1^{+} B-cells [67]. For human, $CD19^{+}CD24^{hi}CD38^{hi}$ B-cells have been found as putative Bregs [68, 69].

Triggering Toll-like receptors (TLRs) [70–72], the BCR [64], CD40 [73], or combinations thereof have been shown to promote IL-10 production by B-cells. BCR-mediated Ca^{2+} flux appears to be required for IL-10 production, since B-cells deficient in the calcium sensors stromal interaction molecule (STIM) 1 and STIM2 have a profound defect in IL-10 secretion and abrogated suppression abilities in vivo [74]. Nuclear factor of activated T-cells (NFAT) 1, a transcription factor, is involved in Ca^{2+}-dependent IL-10 production [74]. Therefore, their proposed model for IL-10 production by B-cells is that, after BCR stimulation, STIM and Orai-dependent Ca^{2+} increase by store-operated Ca^{2+} entry (SOCE) activates calmodulin/calcineurin and then NFAT1, leading to IL-10 expression. In addition, the TLR signaling pathway is also required for IL-10 secretion [70–72]. Given that TLR stimulation does not induce Ca^{2+} mobilization in B-cells, crosstalk between Ca^{2+} and Ca^{2+}-independent TLR cascades may be involved in IL-10 production.

IL-10 is an immunomodulatory cytokine and inhibits Th1 polarization, prevents Th2 responses, and suppresses pro-inflammatory cytokine production by monocytes and macrophages [75]. So far, the potential role of Bregs in tumor immunology is not clear, but several studies suggest that Bregs can negatively regulate antitumor immunity. Using a mouse chemical carcinogenesis model, Schioppa et al. found that resistance to papilloma development in $Tnf^{-/-}$ mice was associated with a significant reduction in IL-10-producing B regulatory cells alongside an increase in IFN-γ-producing $CD8^{+}$ T-cells in the spleen [54]. In this study, $Tnf^{-/-}$ mice were resistant to chemical carcinogenesis of the skin. LPS-stimulated $CD19^{+}$ B-cells isolated from $Tnf^{-/-}$ mice produced less IL-10. These mice had a reduced absolute number of $IL\text{-}10^{+}CD19^{+}$ B-cells in their spleens, and $Tnf^{-/-}$ mice were deficient for $CD19^{+}CD21^{high}$ B-cells. The authors speculated that resistance to carcinogenesis in $Tnf^{-/-}$ mice may result from increased $CD8^{+}$ IFN-γ-producing T-cells and decreased IL-10-producing B-cells. In another study, Horikawa et al. reported that production of IL-10 by Breg inhibits lymphoma depletion during CD20 immunotherapy in mice [76]. They found that

adoptive transfer of CD1d^{high}CD5^{+} B-cells (that are enriched for B10 cells) eliminates the therapeutic benefit of CD20 mAbs in mouse lymphoma model. The transferred B10 cells in this model downregulated the expression of MHC II molecules and CD86 on macrophages and reduced LPS-induced nitric oxide and TNF-α production by macrophages, indicating that B10 cells suppress the antitumor response at least partly by downregulation of macrophage activity. Our unpublished data support that Bregs play a negative role in antitumor immunity. In melanoma and breast carcinoma models, depletion of IL-10-producing B-cells from TDLN cells resulted in the generation of potent effector B-cells which dramatically inhibit tumor metastasis after adoptive transfer in two genetically distinct immune competent hosts, B6 and Balb/c mice, respectively.

Although little is known about the mechanisms by which Bregs undermine effective antitumor immunity, several possibilities are suggested by studies on inflammation and autoimmunity. Bregs impair Th1 immune responses. The initial finding about Th1 response regulated by Bregs was reported by Skok et al. [77]; they found that IL-10 produced by B-cells is involved in the feedback regulation of Th1 development. It has been reported that Bregs suppress the Th1 cell-mediated immune reactions in a number of mouse models, including EAE, CIA, CHS, and diabetes mellitus [60, 61, 64, 65, 72, 78, 79]. Fillatreau et al. [60] reported that B-cell IL-10 deficiency correlates with enhanced type I autoreactivity; in addition, transfer of IL-10^{+} B-cells was found to result in resolution of EAE, characterized by enhanced encephalitogenic Th1 response. Later, Lampropoulou et al. [72] showed that TLR signaling in B-cells suppresses inflammatory T-cell responses (both Th1 and Th17) and stimulates recovery from EAE. Similarly, using mouse model of CIA, Mauri et al. showed that transfer of IL-10-producing B-cells inhibits T helper type 1 differentiation and prevents arthritis development [61]. Yanaba et al. [64] also revealed that CD1d^{high}CD5^{+} B-cell transfer normalized inflammation in CHS model. Using NOD mouse model of type 1 diabetes (T1D), Hussain et al. found that BCR-stimulated B-cells produce IL-10 and attenuate islet inflammation by polarizing CD4^{+} T-cell response toward a Th2 phenotype [79].

Bregs induce the differentiation of Tregs. Given that μMT$^{-/-}$ B-cell-deficient mice display reduced Treg frequencies in comparison with wild-type mice [53] and that these mice develop exacerbated EAE and Ag-induced arthritis (AIA) [60, 80], a role for Bregs in modulating Tregs was proposed. Several disease models have demonstrated that IL-10 produced by Bregs is important for the generation and/or maintenance of Tregs. Sun et al. reported that after oral tolerance induction, Treg cells increase much more in WT than in μMT$^{-/-}$ mice. However, adoptive transfer of B-cells before treatment normalized Treg cell development in μMT$^{-/-}$ mice [81]. In this study, they found that sublingual tolerization with OVA/CTB (Ag conjugated to cholera toxin B subunit) enhances the tolerogenic activity of B-cells and their production of IL-10, which was associated with the generation of Ag-specific Foxp3^{+}CD25^{+}CD4^{+} Tregs [81]. This relationship between Bregs and Tregs is further supported by the results from mouse models of airway sensitization. These results showed that Bregs prevent and reverse allergic airway inflammation via FoxP3^{+} T regulatory cells [82, 83]. Additionally, Bregs can induce the differentiation of T regulatory 1 (Tr1) cells [84–86]. Gray et al. [84] reported that autoimmune inflammation could be protected by the induction of Bregs which induce T-cell-derived IL-10. Blair et al. [86] used the transitional 2 immature (T2) B-cells stimulated with agonistic anti-CD40 (T2-like Bregs) to convert autologous effector T-cells into Tr1 cells. Sayi et al. [85] also showed that B-cells activated by *Helicobacter* TLR-2 ligands produce IL-10 and induce IL-10-producing CD4^{+}CD25^{+} Tr1 cells

Table 4.1 Phenotypic characterization of B-cell subpopulations

	Marker		Source	References
Resting B-cells	Human	$CD19^+CD38^-IgD^+CD27^-$	Tonsils	[87, 88]
		$CD38^-IgM^+IgD^+CD27^-$	Blood	[88]
	Mouse	$IgM^{low}IgD^{high}HSA^{low}CD21^{int}CD23^{bright}Mel14$ $(CD62L)^{bright}CD44^{int}CD69^-$	Lymph node	[89]
		$IgM^{high}IgD^{high}CD23^{bright}$	Spleen	[90]
CD40 B-cell	Human	$CD19^+CD38^+CD80^+CD86^+CD71^+$ $CD95^+CPM(carboxypeptidase\text{-}M)^+$	Tonsils	[87]
		$CD19^+CD23^+CD54^+CD58^+CD80^+$ $CD86^+MHCI^{high}MHCII^{bright}$	Blood	[6]
	Mouse	$B7.1^{high}B7.2^{high}ICAM^+MHCI^{high}$ $MHCII^{bright}$	Spleen	[90, 91]
Putative Breg	Human	$CD19^+CD24^{high}CD38^{high}$	Blood	[68, 69]
	Mouse	$B220^+CD1d^{high}CD21^{intermediate(int)}$ $CD62^{low}IgM^{int}CD23^{high}$	Lymph nodes[a]	[59]
		$B220^+CD21^{high}CD23^{low}$	Spleen in CHS model	[62]
		$B220^+CD21^{high}CD23^{high}$ $IgM^{bright}CD1d^{high}$	Spleen in CIA model	[63]
		$CD1d^{high}CD5^+$ $CD19^+$ $B220^+$	Spleen in CHS model	[64]
		$CD1d^{high}CD5^+$ $CD19^+$	Spleen in EAE model	[65]
		$CD138^+CD19^+$	Spleen of mice infected with *Salmonella*	[66]
		TIM-1(T-cell Ig domain and mucin domain protein)$^+CD19^+$	Spleen	[67]
TIL-Bs	Mostly unknown. Related to cancer types and progression			
	Human	$CD19^+CD20^+$ $CD23^+CD80^+$	From colorectal carcinomas	[40]
Killer B	Unknown			

[a]From TCRα-deficient mice

depending on TCR signaling and a direct T-B-cell interaction through CD40/CD40L and CD80/CD28 pathways.

4.6 Concluding Remarks

B-cells are phenotypically and functionally heterogeneous. Characterization of B-cell subpopulations is shown in Table 4.1. B-cells play multiple roles in tumor immunity (Fig. 4.6). On the one hand, accumulating literature indicates that B-cells are significantly involved in antitumor responses. In this regard, B-cells present tumor antigens to T-cells to generate antitumor CTLs. Upon tumor antigen stimulation, B-cells can differentiate into plasma cells to produce antibodies to target tumor cells via ADCC and/or CDC. In addition, B-cells may act as killer cells to directly cause tumor cell lysis in the absence of antibodies. B-cells migrate to tumor tissue and become TIL-Bs which may induce humoral immune response or act as killer cells in situ. On the other hand, regulatory B-cells have been described which downregulate antitumor responses by producing immunomodulatory cytokine IL-10, suppressing Th1 immune responses, and enhancing Treg and Tr1 responses. Further characterization of B-cell subsets responsible for these conflicting functions demonstrated in tumor immunity and understanding of the molecular mechanisms involved would help

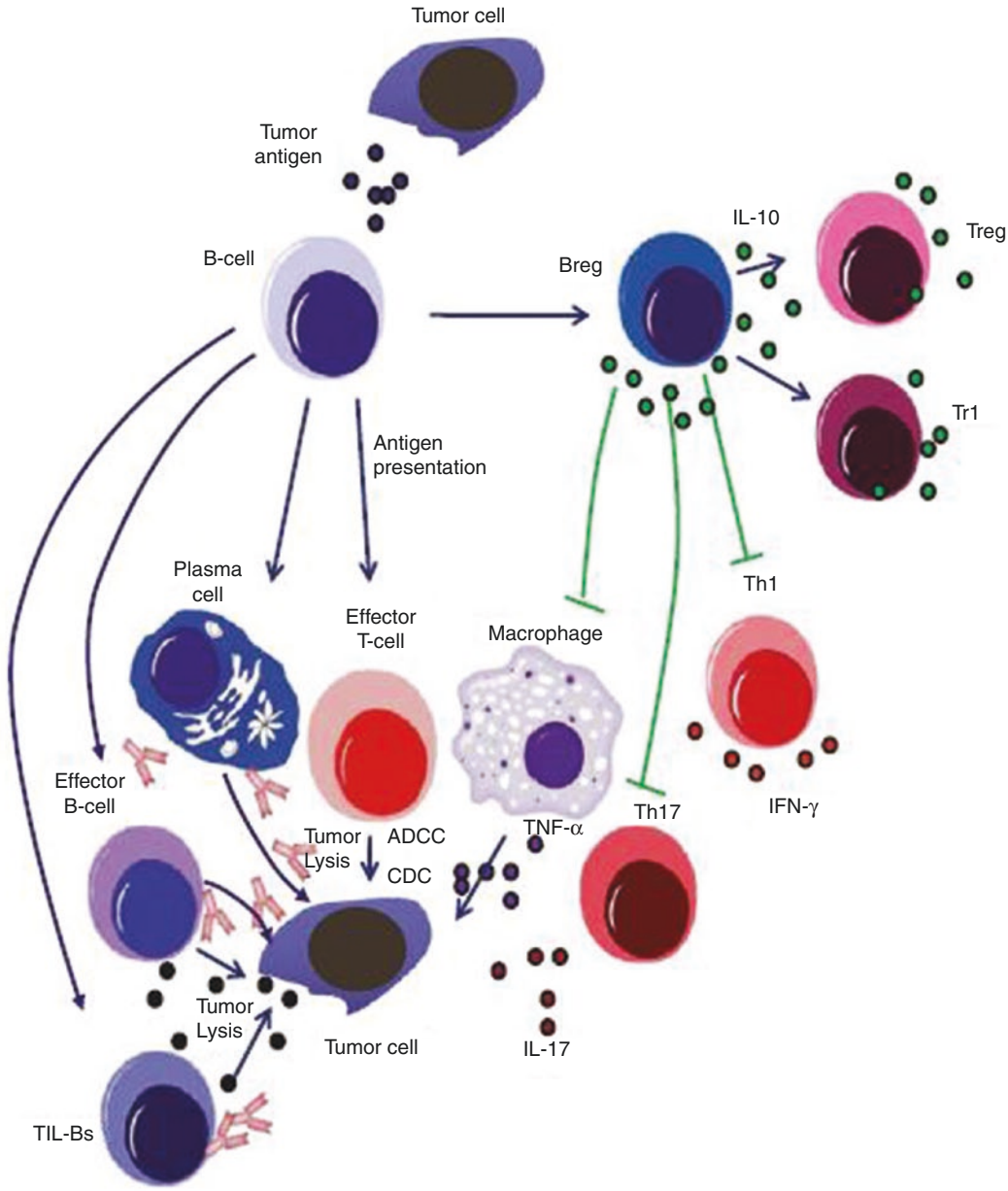


Fig. 4.6 Potential roles played by B-cells in tumor immunity. *ADCC* antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity, *CDC* complement-dependent cytotoxicity, *TIL-Bs* tumor-infiltrating B-cells

develop novel clinical strategies for cancer immunotherapy.

Acknowledgments This work was supported in part by the Gillson Longenbaugh Foundation, the National Outstanding Youth Foundation of China (81025008, Xiao-Lian Zhang), and the National Natural Science Foundation of China (31270176, Qin Pan).

Competing Interests The authors have declared that no competing interest exists.

References

1. Cooper MD, Raymond DA, Peterson RD, South MA, Good RA. The functions of the thymus system and the bursa system in the chicken. J Exp Med. 1966;123:75–102.
2. Cooper MD, Peterson RD, Good RA. Delineation of the thymic and bursal lymphoid systems in the chicken. Nature. 1965;205:143–6.
3. Mizoguchi A, Bhan AK. A case for regulatory B cells. J Immunol. 2006;176:705–10.
4. Mauri C, Ehrenstein MR. The 'short' history of regulatory B cells. Trends Immunol. 2008;29:34–40.
5. Pages F, Galon J, Dieu-Nosjean MC, Tartour E, Sautès-Fridman C, Fridman WF. Immune infiltration in human tumors: a prognostic factor that should not be ignored. Oncogene. 2010;29:1093–102.
6. Schultze JL, Michalak S, Seamon MJ, Dranoff G, Jung K, Daley J, et al. CD40-activated human B cells: an alternative source of highly efficient antigen presenting cells to generate autologous antigen-specific T cells for adoptive immunotherapy. J Clin Invest. 1997;100:2757–65.
7. Von Bergwelt-Baildon MS, Vonderheide RH, Maecker B, Hirano N, Anderson KS, Butler MO, et al. Human primary and memory cytotoxic T lymphocyte responses are efficiently induced by means of CD40-activated B cells as antigen-presenting cells: potential for clinical application. Blood. 2002;99:3319–25.
8. Lapointe R, Bellemare-Pelletier A, Housseau F, et al. CD40-stimulated B lymphocytes pulsed with tumor antigens are effective antigen-presenting cells that can generate specific T cells. Cancer Res. 2003;63:2836–43.
9. Coughlin CM, Vance BA, Grupp SA, Vonderheide RH. RNA-transfected CD40-activated B cells induce functional T-cell responses against viral and tumor antigen targets: implications for pediatric immunotherapy. Blood. 2004;103:2046–54.
10. Chung Y, Kim BS, Kim YJ, Ko HJ, Ko SY, Kim DH, et al. CD1d-restricted T cells license B cells to generate long-lasting cytotoxic antitumor immunity in vivo. Cancer Res. 2006;66:6843–50.
11. von Bergwelt-Baildon M, Shimabukuro-Vornhagen A, Popov A, Klein-Gonzalez N, Fiore F, Debey S, et al. CD40-activated B cells express full lymph node homing triad and induce T-cell chemotaxis: potential as cellular adjuvants. Blood. 2006;107:2786–9.
12. Zentz C, Wiesner M, Man S, Frankenberger B, Wollenberg B, Hillemanns P, et al. Activated B cells mediate efficient expansion of rare antigen-specific T cells. Hum Immunol. 2007;68:75–85.
13. Carpenter EL, Mick R, Ruter J, Vonderheide RH, et al. Activation of human B cells by the agonist CD40 antibody CP-870,893 and augmentation with simultaneous toll-like receptor 9 stimulation. J Transl Med. 2009;7:93.
14. Guo S, Xu J, Denning W, Hel Z. Induction of protective cytotoxic T-cell responses by a B-cell-based cellular vaccine requires stable expression of antigen. Gene Ther. 2009;16:1300–13.
15. Kondo E, Gryschok L, Klein-Gonzalez N, Rademacher S, Weihrauch MR, Liebig T, et al. CD40-activated B cells can be generated in high number and purity in cancer patients: analysis of immunogenicity and homing potential. Clin Exp Immunol. 2009;155:249–56.
16. Mathieu M, Cotta-Grand N, Daudelin JF, Boulet S, Lapointe R, Labrecque N. CD40-activated B cells can efficiently prime antigen-specific naive CD8+ T cells to generate effector but not memory T cells. PLoS One. 2012;7:e30139.
17. Li Q, Grover AC, Donald EJ, Carr A, Yu J, Whitfield J, et al. Simultaneous targeting of CD3 on T cells and CD40 on B or dendritic cells augments the antitumor reactivity of tumor-primed lymph node cells. J Immunol. 2005;175:1424–32.
18. Iuchi T, Teitz-Tennenbaum S, Huang J, Redman BG, Hughes SD, Li M, Jiang G, Chang AE, Li Q. Interleukin-21 augments the efficacy of T-cell therapy by eliciting concurrent cellular and humoral responses. Cancer Res. 2008;68(11):4431–41.
19. Garbe Y, Klier U, Linnebacher M. Semiallogenic fusions of MSI(+) tumor cells and activated B cells induce MSI-specific T cell responses. BMC Cancer. 2011;11:410.
20. Lundy SK, Killer B. Lymphocytes: the evidence and the potential. Inflamm Res. 2009;58:345–57.
21. Hahne M, Renno T, Schroeter M, Irmler M, French L, Bornard T, et al. Activated B cells express functional Fas ligand. Eur J Immunol. 1996;26:721–4.
22. Nilsson N, Ingvarsson S, Borrebaeck CA. Immature B cells in bone marrow express Fas/FasL. Scand J Immunol. 2000;51:279–84.
23. Strater J, Mariani SM, Walczak H, Rücker FG, Leithäuser F, Krammer PH, et al. CD95 ligand (CD95L) in normal human lymphoid tissues: a subset of plasma cells are prominent producers of CD95L. Am J Pathol. 1999;154:193–201.
24. Mariani SM, Krammer PH. Surface expression of TRAIL/Apo-2 ligand in activated mouse T and B cells. Eur J Immunol. 1998;28:1492–8.
25. Kemp TJ, Moore JM, Griffith TS. Human B cells express functional TRAIL/Apo-2 ligand after CpG-containing oligodeoxynucleotide stimulation. J Immunol. 2004;173:892–9.
26. Agata Y, Kawasaki A, Nishimura H, Ishida Y, Tsubata T, Yagita H, et al. Expression of the PD-1 antigen on the surface of stimulated mouse T and B lymphocytes. Int Immunol. 1996;8:765–72.

27. Zhong X, Tumang JR, Gao W, Bai C, Rothstein TL. PD-L2 expression extends beyond dendritic cells/macrophages to B1 cells enriched for V(H)11/V(H)12 and phosphatidylcholine binding. Eur J Immunol. 2007;37:2405–10.
28. Hagn M, Schwesinger E, Ebel V, Sontheimer K, Maier J, Beyer T, et al. Human B cells secrete granzyme B when recognizing viral antigens in the context of the acute phase cytokine IL-21. J Immunol. 2009;183:1838–45.
29. Hagn M, Ebel V, Sontheimer K, Lunov O, Beyer T, Fabricius D, et al. CD5+ B cells from individuals with systemic lupus erythematosus express granzyme B. Eur J Immunol. 2010;40:2060–9.
30. Li Q, Teitz-Tennenbaum S, Donald EJ, Li M, Chang AE, et al. In vivo sensitized and in vitro activated B cells mediate tumor regression in cancer adoptive immunotherapy. J Immunol. 2009;183:3195–203.
31. Li Q, Lao X, Pan Q, Ning N, Yet J, Xu Y, et al. Adoptive transfer of tumor reactive B cells confers host T-cell immunity and tumor regression. Clin Cancer Res. 2011;17:4987–95.
32. Penafuerte C, Ng S, Bautista-Lopez N, Birman E, Forner K, Galipeau J, et al. B effector cells activated by a chimeric protein consisting of IL-2 and the ectodomain of TGF-beta receptor II induce potent antitumor immunity. Cancer Res. 2012;72:1210–20.
33. Forte G, Sorrentino R, Montinaro A, Luciano A, Adcock IM, Maiolino P, et al. Inhibition of CD73 improves B cell-mediated anti-tumor immunity in a mouse model of melanoma. J Immunol. 2012;189:2226–33.
34. Chin Y, Janseens J, Vandepitte J, Vandenbrande J, Opdebeek L, Raus J, et al. Phenotypic analysis of tumor-infiltrating lymphocytes from human breast cancer. Anticancer Res. 1992;12:1463–6.
35. Nzula S, Going JJ, Stott DI. Antigen-driven clonal proliferation, somatic hypermutation, and selection of B lymphocytes infiltrating human ductal breast carcinomas. Cancer Res. 2003;63:3275–80.
36. Mahmoud SM, Lee AH, Paish EC, Macmillan RD, Ellis IO, Green AR. The prognostic significance of B lymphocytes in invasive carcinoma of the breast. Breast Cancer Res Treat. 2012;132:545–53.
37. Milne K, Kobel M, Kalloger SE, Barnes RO, Gao D, Gilks CB, et al. Systematic analysis of immune infiltrates in high-grade serous ovarian cancer reveals CD20, FoxP3 and TIA-1 as positive prognostic factors. PLoS One. 2009;4:e6412.
38. Dieu-Nosjean MC, Antoine M, Danel C, Heudes D, Wislez M, Poulot V, et al. Long-term survival for patients with non-small-cell lung cancer with intratumoral lymphoid structures. J Clin Oncol. 2008;26:4410–7.
39. Jackson PA, Green MA, Marks CG, King RJ, Hubbard R, Cook MG, et al. Lymphocyte subset infiltration patterns and HLA antigen status in colorectal carcinomas and adenomas. Gut. 1996;38:85–9.
40. Maletzki C, Jahnke A, Ostwald C, et al. Ex-vivo clonally expanded B lymphocytes infiltrating colorectal carcinoma are of mature immunophenotype and produce functional IgG. PLoS One. 2012;7:e32639.
41. Nedergaard BS, Ladekarl M, Nyengaard JR, Nielsen K. A comparative study of the cellular immune response in patients with stage IB cervical squamous cell carcinoma. Low numbers of several immune cell subtypes are strongly associated with relapse of disease within 5 years. Gynecol Oncol. 2008;108:106–11.
42. Ladanyi A, Kiss J, Mohos A, Somlai B, Liszkay G, Gilde K, et al. Prognostic impact of B-cell density in cutaneous melanoma. Cancer Immunol Immunother. 2011;60:1729–38.
43. Ammirante M, Luo JL, Grivennikov S, et al. B-cell-derived lymphotoxin promotes castration-resistant prostate cancer. Nature. 2010;464:302–5.
44. Milne K, Alexander C, Webb JR, Sun W, Dillon K, Kalloger SE, et al. Absolute lymphocyte count is associated with survival in ovarian cancer independent of tumor-infiltrating lymphocytes. J Transl Med. 2012;10:33.
45. Nelson BH. CD20+ B cells: the other tumor-infiltrating lymphocytes. J Immunol. 2010;185:4977–82.
46. Hansen MH, Nielsen HV, Ditzel HJ. Translocation of an intracellular antigen to the surface of medullary breast cancer cells early in apoptosis allows for an antigen-driven antibody response elicited by tumor-infiltrating B cells. J Immunol. 2002;169:2701–11.
47. Yasuda M, Takenoyama M, Obata Y, Sugaya M, So T, Hanagiri T. Tumor-infiltrating B lymphocytes as a potential source of identifying tumor antigen in human lung cancer. Cancer Res. 2002;62:1751–6.
48. Chapoval AI, Fuller JA, Kremlev SG, Kamdar SJ, Evans R. Combination chemotherapy and IL-15 administration induce permanent tumor regression in a mouse lung tumor model: NK and T cell-mediated effects antagonized by B cells. J Immunol. 1998;161:6977–84.
49. Inoue S, Leitner WW, Golding B, Scott D. Inhibitory effects of B cells on antitumor immunity. Cancer Res. 2006;66:7741–7.
50. Perricone MA, Smith KA, Claussen KA, Plog MS, Hempel DM, Roberts BL, et al. Enhanced efficacy of melanoma vaccines in the absence of B lymphocytes. J Immunother. 2004;27:273–81.
51. Qin Z, Richter G, Schuler T, Ibe S, Cao X, Blankenstein T. B cells inhibit induction of T cell-dependent tumor immunity. Nat Med. 1998;4:627–30.
52. Shah S, Divekar AA, Hilchey SP, Cho HM, Newman CL, Shin SU, et al. Increased rejection of primary tumors in mice lacking B cells: inhibition of anti-tumor CTL and TH1 cytokine responses by B cells. Int J Cancer. 2005;117:574–86.
53. Tadmor T, Zhang Y, Cho HM, Podack ER, Rosenblatt JD. The absence of B lymphocytes reduces the number and function of T-regulatory cells and enhances

the anti-tumor response in a murine tumor model. Cancer Immunol Immunother. 2011;60:609–19.
54. Schioppa T, Moore R, Thompson RG, Rosser EC, Kulbe H, Nedospasov S, et al. B regulatory cells and the tumor-promoting actions of TNF-alpha during squamous carcinogenesis. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2011;108:10662–7.
55. de Visser KE, Eichten A, Coussens LM. Paradoxical roles of the immune system during cancer development. Nat Rev Cancer. 2006;6:24–37.
56. Nesslinger NJ, Ng A, Tsang KY, Ferrara T, Schlom J, Gulley JL, et al. A viral vaccine encoding prostate-specific antigen induces antigen spreading to a common set of self-proteins in prostate cancer patients. Clin Cancer Res. 2010;16:4046–56.
57. Katz SI, Parker D, Turk JL. B-cell suppression of delayed hypersensitivity reactions. Nature. 1974;251:550–1.
58. Neta R, Salvin SB. Specific suppression of delayed hypersensitivity: the possible presence of a suppressor B cell in the regulation of delayed hypersensitivity. J Immunol. 1974;113:1716–25.
59. Mizoguchi A, Mizoguchi E, Takedatsu H, Blumberg RS, Bhan AK. Chronic intestinal inflammatory condition generates IL-10-producing regulatory B cell subset characterized by CD1d upregulation. Immunity. 2002;16:219–30.
60. Fillatreau S, Sweenie CH, McGeachy MJ, Gray D, Anderton SM. B cells regulate autoimmunity by provision of IL-10. Nat Immunol. 2002;3:944–50.
61. Mauri C, Gray D, Mushtaq N, Londei M, et al. Prevention of arthritis by interleukin 10-producing B cells. J Exp Med. 2003;197:489–501.
62. Watanabe R, Fujimoto M, Ishiura N, Kuwano Y, Nakashima H, Yazawa N, et al. CD19 expression in B cells is important for suppression of contact hypersensitivity. Am J Pathol. 2007;171:560–70.
63. Evans JG, Chavez-Rueda KA, Eddaoudi A, Meyer-Bahlburg A, Rawlings DJ, Ehrenstein MR, et al. Novel suppressive function of transitional 2 B cells in experimental arthritis. J Immunol. 2007;178:7868–78.
64. Yanaba K, Bouaziz JD, Haas KM, Poe JC, Fujimoto M, Tedder TF. A regulatory B cell subset with a unique CD1dhiCD5+ phenotype controls T cell-dependent inflammatory responses. Immunity. 2008;28:639–50.
65. Matsushita T, Yanaba K, Bouaziz JD, Fujimoto M, Tedder T. Regulatory B cells inhibit EAE initiation in mice while other B cells promote disease progression. J Clin Invest. 2008;118:3420–30.
66. Neves P, Lampropoulou V, Calderon-Gomez E, Roch T, Stervbo U, Shen P, et al. Signaling via the MyD88 adaptor protein in B cells suppresses protective immunity during Salmonella typhimurium infection. Immunity. 2010;33:777–90.
67. Ding Q, Yeung M, Camirand G, Zeng Q, Akiba H, Yagita H, et al. Regulatory B cells are identified by expression of TIM-1 and can be induced through TIM-1 ligation to promote tolerance in mice. J Clin Invest. 2011;121:3645–56.
68. Blair PA, Norena LY, Flores-Borja F, Rawlings DJ, Isenberg DA, Ehrenstein MR, et al. CD19(+) CD24(hi)CD38(hi) B cells exhibit regulatory capacity in healthy individuals but are functionally impaired in systemic Lupus Erythematosus patients. Immunity. 2010;32:129–40.
69. Newell KA, Asare A, Kirk AD, Gisler TD, Bourcier K, Suthanthiran M, et al. Identification of a B cell signature associated with renal transplant tolerance in humans. J Clin Invest. 2010;120:1836–47.
70. Yanaba K, Bouaziz JD, Matsushita T, Tsubata T, Tedder TF. The development and function of regulatory B cells expressing IL-10 (B10 cells) requires antigen receptor diversity and TLR signals. J Immunol. 2009;182:7459–72.
71. Barr TA, Brown S, Ryan G, Zhao J, Gray D. TLR-mediated stimulation of APC: distinct cytokine responses of B cells and dendritic cells. Eur J Immunol. 2007;37:3040–53.
72. Lampropoulou V, Hoehlig K, Roch T, Neves P, Calderón Gómez E, Sweenie CH, et al. TLR-activated B cells suppress T cell-mediated autoimmunity. J Immunol. 2008;180:4763–73.
73. Hayakawa K, Asano M, Shinton SA, Gui M, Allman D, Stewart CL, et al. Positive selection of natural autoreactive B cells. Science. 1999;285:113–6.
74. Matsumoto M, Fujii Y, Baba A, Hikida M, Kurosaki T, Baba Y. The calcium sensors STIM1 and STIM2 control B cell regulatory function through interleukin-10 production. Immunity. 2011;34:703–14.
75. Sato T, Terai M, Tamura Y, Alexeev V, Mastrangelo MJ, Selvan SR. Interleukin 10 in the tumor microenvironment: a target for anticancer immunotherapy. Immunol Res. 2011;51:170–82.
76. Horikawa M, Minard-Colin V, Matsushita T, Tedder TF. Regulatory B cell production of IL-10 inhibits lymphoma depletion during CD20 immunotherapy in mice. J Clin Invest. 2011;121:4268–80.
77. Skok J, Poudrier J, Gray D. Dendritic cell-derived IL-12 promotes B cell induction of Th2 differentiation: a feedback regulation of Th1 development. J Immunol. 1999;163:4284–91.
78. DiLillo DJ, Matsushita T, Tedder TF. B10 cells and regulatory B cells balance immune responses during inflammation, autoimmunity, and cancer. Ann N Y Acad Sci. 2010;1183:38–57.
79. Hussain S, Delovitch TL. Intravenous transfusion of BCR-activated B cells protects NOD mice from type 1 diabetes in an IL-10-dependent manner. J Immunol. 2007;179:7225–32.
80. Carter NA, Vasconcellos R, Rosser EC, Tulone C, Muñoz-Suano A, Kamanaka M, et al. Mice lacking endogenous IL-10-producing regulatory B cells develop exacerbated disease and present with an increased frequency of Th1/Th17 but a decrease in regulatory T cells. J Immunol. 2011;186:5569–79.
81. Sun JB, Flach CF, Czerkinsky C, Holmgren J. B lymphocytes promote expansion of regulatory T cells in oral tolerance: powerful induction by anti-

gen coupled to cholera toxin B subunit. J Immunol. 2008;181:8278–87.
82. Amu S, Saunders SP, Kronenberg M, Mangan NE, Atzberger A, Fallon PG. Regulatory B cells prevent and reverse allergic airway inflammation via FoxP3-positive T regulatory cells in a murine model. J Allergy Clin Immunol. 2010;125:1114–24.
83. Mangan NE, Fallon RE, Smith P, van Rooijen N, McKenzie AN, Fallon PG. Helminth infection protects mice from anaphylaxis via IL-10-producing B cells. J Immunol. 2004;173:6346–56.
84. Gray M, Miles K, Salter D, Gray D, Savill J. Apoptotic cells protect mice from autoimmune inflammation by the induction of regulatory B cells. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2007;104:14080–5.
85. Sayi A, Kohler E, Toller IM, Flavell RA, Müller W, Roers A, et al. TLR-2-activated B cells suppress Helicobacter-induced preneoplastic gastric immunopathology by inducing T regulatory-1 cells. J Immunol. 2011;186:878–90.
86. Blair PA, Chavez-Rueda KA, Evans JG, Shlomchik MJ, Eddaoudi A, Isenberg DA, et al. Selective targeting of B cells with agonistic anti-CD40 is an efficacious strategy for the generation of induced regulatory T2-like B cells and for the suppression of lupus in MRL/lpr mice. J Immunol. 2009;182:3492–502.
87. Galibert L, Burdin N, de Saint-Vis B, Garrone P, Van Kooten C, Banchereau J, et al. CD40 and B cell antigen receptor dual triggering of resting B lymphocytes turns on a partial germinal center phenotype. J Exp Med. 1996;183(1):77–85.
88. van Zelm MC, Szczepanski T, van der Burg M, van Dongen JJ. Replication history of B lymphocytes reveals homeostatic proliferation and extensive antigen-induced B cell expansion. J Exp Med. 2007;204(3):645–55.
89. Agenès F, Freitas AA. Transfer of small resting B cells into immunodeficient hosts results in the selection of a self-renewing activated B cell population. J Exp Med. 1999;189(2):319–30.
90. Jongstra-Bilen J, Vukusic B, Boras K, Whither JE. Resting B cells from autoimmune lupus-prone New Zealand Black and (New Zealand Black x New Zealand White)F1 mice are hyper-responsive to T cell-derived stimuli. J Immunol. 1997;159(12):5810–20.
91. Liebig TM, Fiedler A, Klein-Gonzalez N, Shimabukuro-Vornhagen A, von Bergwelt-Baildon M. Murine model of CD40-activation of B cells. J Vis Exp. 2010;37:1734.

The Roles of CD4+ T-Cells in Tumor Immunity

5

Soheil Tavakolpour and Mohammad Darvishi

Contents

S. Tavakolpour (✉)
Cancer Research Center, Cancer Institute of Iran, Tehran University of Medical Sciences, Tehran, Iran

Genomic Research Center, Shahid Beheshti University of Medical Sciences, Tehran, Iran

Network of Immunity in Infection, Malignancy and Autoimmunity (NIIMA), Universal Scientific Education and Research Network (USERN), Tehran, Iran

M. Darvishi
Infectious Diseases and Tropical Medicine Research Center (IDTMRC), Department of Aerospace and Subaquatic Medicine, AJA University of Medical Sciences, Tehran, Iran

N. Rezaei (ed.), *Cancer Immunology*, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-30845-2_5

5.1 Introduction

The immune system is not only responsible for the specific defense against pathogens like viruses, bacteria, and parasitic worms but is also involved in cancer prevention and suppression. In the past few decades, it has been accepted that both innate and adaptive immune systems contribute to the early detection and regression of tumors. Crosstalk between these two arms may be a requisite factor for the initiation of efficient and optimal immune responses against the tumors. Till date, the majority of studies has focused on the responses of CD8+ cytotoxic T lymphocyte (CTL) or dendritic cells (DCs) against tumor-associated antigens presented by major histocompatibility complex (MHC) Class I. However, a significant number of studies have demonstrated that cancer cells might evade these cells through down-regulation/loss of MHC class I. Interestingly, CD4+ T-cells could well respond to MHC Class I negative tumors—those resistant to CTL lysis. Additionally, evidence has emerged that successful elimination of tumors required the cooperation of CD4+ and CD8+ T-cells, and CD8+ fail to adequately function in the dearth of adequate help from CD4+ T-cells [1]. This has highlighted the critical roles these cells [2]. In other words, CD4+ T-cells contribute in facilitating the initial activation and expansion of CD8+ T-cells directly (CD40–CD154 interaction) and indirectly (IL-2 production). Apart from the recruitment of CD8+ T-cell responses, some unconventional effects of CD4+ T-cells in tumor rejection have been suggested, including the cytotoxic effect on tumor cells, upregulation of the expression of MHC molecules, inhibition of angiogenesis, and induction of tumor dormancy (reviewed in [3]).

Effector CD4+ T-cells can be divided into multiple types. In addition to the classical T-helper (Th)1 and Th2—which were considered the only two Th cells for a long time—other subsets have been discovered in recent decades. The newly identified Th cells include Th17, follicular helper T (Tfh) cell, Th9, and Th22, each with a characteristic cytokine profile and individual transcription factors. Apart from the aforementioned effector cells, various subsets of CD4+ regulatory T-cells (Tregs) with suppressive function had been identified, including natural Tregs (nTregs), interleukin (IL)-10-producing type 1 Tregs (Tr1), and transforming growth factor (TGF)-β-producing Th3 cells.

Our understanding of the critical role of CD4+ T-cells in orchestrating immune responses during cancer has grown dramatically in recent decades. In the past decades, several studies have been conducted, implying the presence of different subtypes of T-cells in the peripheral blood of cancer patients as well as their tumor biopsies. These studies conducted have shown that the immune system and developing tumors are intimately intertwined. Hence, awareness of the exact roles of critical cells that contribute to cancer is required for the emergence of a novel therapeutic strategy for cancer treatment. Although all the CD4+ T-cells subsets are present in the tumor site, they do not contribute equally. Moreover, some of these cells may have both positive and negative roles during the process of tumor eradication. It is accepted that some particular types of CD4+ T-cells—specifically Th1 cells—can effectively eradicate or arrest the growth of large, established tumors. There is some evidence of the direct negative role of some effector subsets of Th cells, such as Th17, in certain types of cancer. Moreover, some other subgroups, such as Th2 cells, could inhibit the differentiation of Th1 cells, one of the

most potent players in anti-tumor immunity. Aside from effector T-cells that contribute to the initiation of tumor-specific immunity, Tregs have been proven to play a role an active and significant role in the progression of cancer, probably through the suppression of anti-tumor mediated responses. These cells have central roles in the maintenance of self-tolerance in healthy individuals, which protect them from developing autoimmunity. However, a growing body of evidence suggests that the regulation of effector T-cell by the Tregs causes impairment of immune response against tumor cells. In other words, CD4+ Tregs hamper the function of antigen-specific T-cells that recognize tumor antigens and maintain T-cell tolerance to self-antigens. Hence, the elimination of Tregs in cancer patients—and within the tumor microenvironment, in particular—seems essential for a successful cancer therapy [4]. Despite the initiation of anti-tumor immunity by effector T-cells, tumor cells have evolved different tumor-immune escape mechanisms. This might explain the progression of tumor cells in the presence of T-cell-mediated immunity and defeat conventional cancer immunotherapy. Down-regulation of target antigen expression and antigen-presenting machinery and the promotion of regulatory responses in tumors are examples of primary tumor immune escape mechanisms. Considering the suppressive function of Tregs, and also a correlation of their accumulation in tumor sites with intratumoral angiogenesis [5], it can be expected that these cells contribute to promoting cancer through tumor immune escape and angiogenesis [4].

An understanding of the role of different subsets of CD4+ T-cells in the solid tumor and hematological malignancies has evolved rapidly over the past few years. Although the vast majority of those studies have provided several valuable findings related to roles of CD4+ T-cells in cancer, controversy remains in other studies. In this context, the exact role of each subset of effector CD4+ T-cells, as well as Tregs, may change current cancer therapeutic options when combined with our previous understanding of the functions of other cells (e.g., CD8+ T-cells) during cancer. Although the innate immune cells, humoral immune responses, and CD8+ T-cells contribute significantly to the initiation of anti-tumor immunity, in this chapter, the role of only CD4+ T-cells subsets will be discussed in detail.

5.2 Adaptive Immune Responses During the Cancer

For decades, recognizing and destroying tumor cells were conceived as one of the duties of the immune system. Generally, the immune system could be divided into two major arms, including the primitive innate immune system and the acquired or adaptive immune system. In the former arm, different critical immune cells provide protection against various pathogens and foreign agents. These cells include DCs, macrophages, granulocytes, mast cells, natural killer (NK) cells, gamma delta T-cells (γδ T-cells) cells, as well as natural killer T (NKT) cells. On the other side, the latter arm primarily consists of T lymphocytes and B lymphocytes, and also their associated mediators (e.g., cytokines and antibodies). Every day, a large number of cancer cells are detected with the cooperation of both innate and adaptive immunities. Regarding developed tumors, these two arms start working together against the cancer cells long before it becomes clinically apparent, but because of several possible reasons, failed to detect them well or destroy them. Considering several studies of increased susceptibility to tumor development in immunodeficient mice, the critical role of different components of both the innate and adaptive immune systems in preventing cancer can be better understood. The increased incidence of cancer in patients with some types of primary immunodeficiencies—as the results of dysregulation of the immune response (regardless of exposure to an infectious organism)—can confirm this context in humans [6]. Moreover, the higher prevalence of cancer among patients who use a variety of immunosuppressants, such as kidney transplant recipients, also imply the critical role of the immune system function in destroying cancer cells [7, 8]. The fact that the HIV/AIDS population appears to be more susceptible to almost all cancers also supports the role of the immune system, specifically

CD4+ T-cells, in prevention of cancer development [9]. There are some reported associations between the tumor infiltration by T-cells with an improved prognosis for different types of tumors, which highlight the pivotal role of the adaptive immune system during cancer [10, 11].

Thanks to the ability of a generation of a diverse repertoire of antigen receptor specificities via DNA recombination, adaptive immunity is able to recognize a great variety of different antigens, including exogenous (entering from outside) and endogenous (generated within the cells). Hence, it is expected that both the arms of the immune system rise against the newly developed cancer cells. Typical tumors usually contain all immune cell types related to both innate and adaptive immune systems, including macrophages, DCs, NK cells, mast cells, B-cells as well as several subsets of T-cells. Although the adaptive immune system elicits other cell responses as well as directly acting against the tumor cells, the dual nature of the adaptive immune system has made it a double-edged sword in cancer. Indeed, some individual subsets of lymphocytes try to impair immune responses. In a healthy condition, it is beneficial and could significantly prevent organ damage and also the development of autoimmunity. However, in the patients with cancer, impairment of immune system means allowing tumor cells to grow. In theory, it was expected that reversing the impaired immune responses might promote anti-tumor immunity. Interestingly, this theory was converted to reality after the first successful immunotherapy in cancer patients. Today, there are some limited checkpoint inhibitors, including PD-L1 inhibitors (atezolizumab, avelumab, and durvalumab), two PD-1 inhibitors (nivolumab and pembrolizumab), and a CTLA-4 inhibitor (ipilimumab), which have shown to be helpful in treating different types of cancer. Although cellular immunity is thought to be more critical than humoral immunity in cancer, there is mounting evidence to support the fundamental role of B-cells in tumor immunology. In fact, these types of cells could play different roles, which aid the shrinkage of the tumor. In addition to the classical functions of antibody production, these cells also could act as antigen presenting cells (APCs), provide co-stimulation, and also secrete cytokines that promote both innate and adaptive immune systems [12]. The role of B-cells in tumor immunity is beyond the scope of this chapter and will not be discussed.

5.3 T-Helper Cells Differentiation and Function

5.3.1 Overview of CD4+ T-Cell Subsets

T-cells are classically divided into two major groups, including CD8+ T-cells and CD4+ T-cells, which become activated when they are presented with MHC-I and MHC-II, respectively. Each of these groups contains effector and regulatory subsets, which act in opposite directions. CD4+ T-cells (also called Th cells) play critical roles in instigating and shaping adaptive immune responses. Th lymphocytes are prototypic members of T-cells, which augment both humoral and cellular immune responses. In addition to their roles in modulating immune responses to different types of pathogens and chronic infectious agents, they are capable of enhancing immunity against the tumors. These cells can act through activation of other tumor-specific cells or even direct recognition of antigen on MHC-II-expressing tumor cells, followed by hindering tumor growth or inducing tumor cell death. During an immune response, both the activation of naïve T-cells stimulus through the T-cell receptor (signal 1) and the interaction between appropriate costimulatory molecules (signal 2) are required. Receiving enough signals results in the robust clonal expansion of naïve T-cells and their differentiation into either effector or memory cells.

5.3.2 Differentiation

The identification and characterization of CD4+ T-cell lineage subsets began with a description of Th1 and Th2 cells [13]. Subsequently, different other subsets of effector CD4+ T-cells in the past 10 years—including Th17, Tfh, Th9, and Th22—have filled the gaps and deficiencies existing in

the previous simplistic Th1/Th2 paradigm. Moreover, another different subset, with a suppressor function, could be differentiated from the naïve T-cells, called iTregs. These large subsets are defined by their pattern of cytokine production and function.

As regards the traditional Th1/Th2 dichotomy, Th1 cells make interferon-gamma (IFN-γ) their signature cytokine and tend secret IL-2 and tumor necrosis factor-alpha (TNF-α). However, Th2 cells produce IL-4 in a significant amount of their signature cytokine. The production of IL-5, IL-13, and sometimes IL-9 is another characteristic of these cells [14]. The presence of both IL-2 and IL-4 in the microenvironment of activated naïve T-cells is essential for the differentiation of Th2 cells. Interestingly, IL-4 secreted from Th2 cells acts in an autocrine manner to induce Th2 differentiation. Subsequently, it was found that IL-4 neutralization as well as the addition of IL-12 to the culture cause Th1 differentiation. The involvement of T-bet as a master regulator, STAT1 (triggered by IFN-γ), and activated STAT4 (by IL-12) contribute to the development of Th1 cells. On the other hand, GATA3 as a primary master regulator and STAT6 activation (by IL-4) are required for Th2 differentiation from the naïve T-cells [15].

Th17—the next discovered subset of Th cells—was characterized as the major source of IL-17A, IL-17F, and IL-22, which could not be secreted by previously defined Th cells. First, it was reported that the presence of both TGF-β1 and IL-6 is essential for the generation of T17 cells. Subsequently, it was reduced to only IL-6 [15]. Aside from the previously described Th cell subsets, Th9 could also be considered a critical one, with emerging evidence of involvement in a different type of disease. These IL-9-producing cells are differentiated from activated naïve T-cells in the presence of TGF-β and IL-4. In addition to PU.1, the critical transcription factor for Th9 differentiation, other players—such as STAT6, IRF4, and GATA3—were suggested to be involved [16–19]. Aside from the IL-9, IL-4, and TGF-β, multiple cytokines, including IL-1, IL-2, IL-23, IL-25, and IL-33, affect Th9 priming and IL-9 production (reviewed in [20]).

Before the identification of Th22, IL-22 production was thought to be mainly associated with Th17 cells. However, IL-22 is now recognized to be not only produced by Th17 but also the Th22 subset. In fact, the highest IL-22 levels are present in Th22 cells, while Th22 subset completely lacks expression of IL-17A [21, 22]. In this subset, with the CCR6+CCR4+CCR10+ phenotype, AHR plays a vital role in IL22 expression as the key transcription factor [23]. Moreover, two cytokines of IL-6 and TNF-α have also been found to be essential for Th22 differentiation. Tfh is another subset of CD4+ T-cells, which provides a helper function to B-cells; this is characterized by the expression of CXC chemokine receptor 5 (CXCR5) along with other markers, including expression of inducible co-stimulator (ICOS), PD-1, cytokine IL-21, and transcription factor B-cell lymphoma 6 (BCL-6). Among the cytokines, IL-6 and IL-21 are indispensable for Tfh differentiation, and BCL-6 is a master regulator of this effector T-cell subset. In addition to the generation of Tfh cells from naïve T-cells, there is some evidence that this type of cell could be generated from other effector T-cells. Additionally, several signaling pathways are involved in the differentiation or inhibition of Tfh cells (reviewed in [24]).

Aside from effector CD4+ T-cells, iTregs is a subset, with suppressor function. This subset is different from CD4+ nTregs that develop in the thymus during positive and negative selection. iTregs are formed in the periphery from activated naïve CD4+ T-cells. However, both iTregs and nTregs maintain peripheral tolerance through the suppression of aberrant immune responses and protect from potential autoimmune responses [25]. Tregs—regardless of their origin of development—are vital in the prevention of autoimmunity. Three main subsets of iTregs have been described, including Th3 [26], Tr1 cells [27], and the recently described iTr35 Tregs [28]. These three subsets of iTregs are induced via TGFβ, IL-10, and IL-35, respectively. In contrast to Th3 cells, neither of the Tr1 and iTr35 subsets expresses or requires the transcription factor Foxp3.

5.3.3 Functions

Th1 cells—which involve cell-mediated immunity—deal with viral infections and some bacteria, certain autoimmune diseases, and, most importantly, anti-tumor immunity. This arm of cellular immunity is triggered by replicating intracellular pathogens, which is followed by the inhibition of Th2 differentiation. In contrast, Th2 cells are involved in the promotion of specific humoral immunity, and usually deal with some bacteria, toxins, and allergens. These cells also cause certain autoimmunity conditions and major types of allergies. Moreover, it is believed that Th2 immunity interferes with anti-tumor immunity through the inhibition of Th1-related responses. In contrast to Th1, Th2 promotes during helminth infection and skews responses toward a Th2 phenotype in an autocrine manner. Because of the significant role of Th1 and Th2 cells in the adaptive immune system, any long-lasting alteration in the Th1/Th2 balance without normalization may be associated with different types of diseases. For example, some autoimmune diseases are believed to be the results of higher Th1 or Th2-related responses [29]. Interestingly, it was suggested that the outcomes of some autoimmune diseases could be predicted during pregnancy, based on an alteration in the Th1/Th2 balance [30]. Additionally, the regulation of the Th1/Th2 ratio was effective in treating some of those conditions.

The emergence of Th17 shed light on different other functions of effector CD4+ T-cells. These cells participate in antimicrobial immunity and fight against extracellular bacteria/fungi. Th17 cells have inhibitory effects on the regulatory function of Tregs. According to these roles and distortion of the Th17/Treg balance favoring the pro-inflammatory Th17 in the majority, this critical subset was identified as a critical player in the majority of inflammatory and autoimmune diseases [31]. With regard to the role of Th17 in tumor-immunity, there are controversial findings. However, the accumulation of Th17 cells in many different types of tumors in comparison with healthy tissues demonstrated their significant contribution to cancer, which is discussed below.

The exact roles of Th9 and Th22 have not been described as well as other three discussed Th cells. There is some evidence of the contribution of IL-9 in inflammation, allergic diseases, and autoimmune conditions. Despite the elusive functions of Th9 cells in cancer, these cells activate not only the determining signaling pathways for tumor regression but also exert anti-tumor immunity [32]. Because of the high secretion of proinflammatory cytokines, such as IL-22 and TNF-α by Th22 cells, it is not surprising that these cells contribute to the pathogenesis of inflammatory and autoimmune diseases [33]. The significant alteration in the Th22-related responses in different cancers also suggests the pivotal role of this subset of CD4+ T-cells in cancer [34–36]. Tfh cells, which their primary function is to provide help to B-cells are other involved cells in regulation of immune system [37]. Moreover, considering the increase in circulating Tfh cells as well as its correlation with disease activity and autoantibody production in multiple autoimmune diseases, these cells could be referred to as the central players during autoimmunity [38]. Regarding the role of Tfh cells in different types of cancer, there is little available data on their correlation with cancer progression and survival rates, which will be discussed in this chapter.

The regulatory function of Tregs is essential to prevent autoimmunity. These cells are involved in a wide range of diseases, including infection, autoimmunity, and cancer. Perturbations in the development and/or function of Tregs can manifest themselves as severe autoimmune conditions. For example, the lack of the function/number of Tregs during a large number of autoimmune diseases had been proposed earlier. Conversely, some persistent infections, such as chronic hepatitis B virus (HBV) infection, were found to be associated with the regulatory function of Tregs or increase in the level of their related cytokines. This led to some approaches being proposed to cure HBV, based on the impairment of regulatory responses. These suppressive cells act through by not only depending on a single mechanism of suppression but also have an arsenal of regulatory mechanisms at their disposal [39]. The promotion

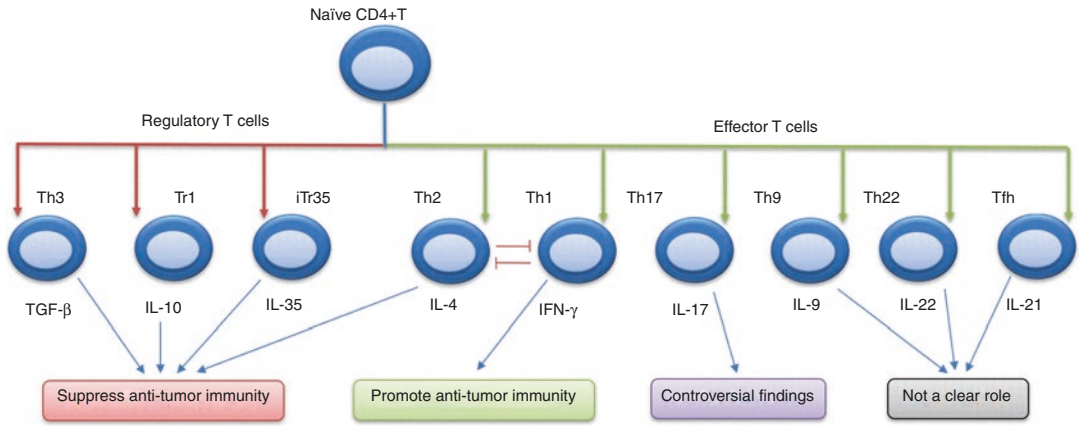


Fig. 5.1 Differentiated CD4+ T cells can be classified into regulatory and effector arms. Both Tregs and effector T cells inhibit each other. In the effector arm, Th1 and Th2 responses mutually inhibit each other. Any of the differentiated CD4+ T cells produce several cytokines, while the related master cytokine has been written. Generally, it has been accepted that Tregs and Th2 cells seem to inhibit anti-tumor immunity. Conversely, Th1 cells lead to enhancement of anti-tumor immunity. Th17 cells act as a double-edged sword in anti-tumor immunity. Although recent studies have shed light on the probable role of recently described CD4+ T cells, including Th9, Th22, and Tfh cells, there is no consensus about their roles against tumors

of tumors is another negatively described outcome of high numbers of Tregs. Indeed, it seems that large numbers of these cells in tumors cause impairment of anti-tumor immunity. The differentiation of CD4+ T-cells and their suggested roles in relation to anti-tumor immunity have been presented in Fig. 5.1.

5.4 T-Helper Cells in Tumor Microenvironment and Their Roles in Inducing Anti-tumor Immune or Immune System Exhaustion

The tumor microenvironment is complex and dynamic, consisting of several components, including tumor parenchyma cells, fibroblasts, mesenchymal cells, blood, lymph vessels, as well as tumor-infiltrating immune cells and their products (e.g., cytokines and chemokines). The intratumor cell types seem to play different roles in the natural life of the tumor, which cause tumor suppression or the opposite. T-cells are critical players in tumor immunity, which migrate into the tumor microenvironment randomly or undergo fully ballistic migration [40]. As it was briefly described, T-cells consist of various anti-tumor effector and regulatory subsets. Though they are a vital part of the immune system that actively plays a role in the tumor microenvironment, their dysfunction in solid tumors results from multiple mechanisms. The tumor-infiltrating lymphocytes (TILs) are increasingly significant predictors of tumor biology and outcome. More precisely, tumor-infiltrating T-cells were found to be associated with the improved clinical outcome as well as survival in patients with different types of cancer, including colorectal cancer [41], breast cancer [42, 43], and lung cancer [44, 45]. Although a significant anti-tumor role for CD8+ TILs was described in several studies, increasing evidence implicates the undeniable roles of CD4+ T-cells during cancer.

The exact role of CD4+ T-cells in induction or inhibition of tumorigenesis and metastasis is very complex and not yet fully clarified. However, accumulating evidence is pointing to the pivotal role of these cells in the modulation of the anti-tumor immune response. Different subsets of CD4+ T-cells do not act in the tumor microenvironment in the same ways. Some of these suppress tumors while some others promote tumors. The balance of these two major groups may be

essential in determining the outcome of immune responses within tumors. Accordingly, some TILs may be friends, while others may be foes [46]. The majority of the studies have shown that Th1 cells could be considered a positive prognostic factor in cancer [47]. Thereby, some strategies with the goal of promoting effector cells responses, such as an adoptive transfer of TILs in combination with IL-2 was suggested as an effective treatment approach for patients with metastatic melanoma [48]. In contrast, Tregs may accumulate in the tumor environment, which results in hindering tumor rejection via the suppression of tumor-specific T-cell responses [46]. Indeed, these cells are accepted as limiting anti-tumor immune responses, because of the prevention of induction of tumor-associated antigen-specific immunity as well as the inhibition of the effector function of cytotoxic T-cells and NK cells [49, 50].

5.5 Elimination of Tumor Cells by Effector T-Helper Cells and Tumor Evasion Strategies

The principal purpose of T-cell motility is to search for cognate antigen on APCs as well as target cells with the majority of tumors that are MHC-I positive in the early stages. This makes them recognizable by the specific anti-tumor CD8+ T-cells, which target them and progressively kill MHC-I positive cells. Aside from this subset, CD4+ T-cells also employ different strategies to target tumor cells or even stimulate other anti-tumor immunity arms [51]. The direct cytotoxicity of CD4+ T-cells was reported both in vitro and in vivo toward MHC-II positive tumor cells. Moreover, some indirect strategies to target MHC-II negative tumor cells have also been suggested [51].

Although T-cells function to eliminate tumors, there are a number of different strategies implemented by tumor cells to escape immune surveillance, including the loss/down-regulation of tumor antigen/MHC expression on tumor cells, resistance to apoptosis, accelerate apoptosis in activated T-cells, anergy induction, attraction of Tregs to the tumor, and stimulation of regulatory cytokines production (e.g., IL-10 or TGF-β) [52]. Increasing numbers of researchers believe that Tregs, as well as co-inhibitory molecules on effector T-cells, are exploited by several types of tumors to evade anti-tumor immunity [4, 53, 54]. Tumor antigens have the potential to elicit tumor-specific immune responses. However, cancer cells may lose their antigenicity, which could be considered one of the strategies of most studies for tumor-immune evasion [55]. If tumor cells are detected by T-cells, apoptotic evasion through the alteration or defection in apoptotic pathways is another barrier. The blockage of Fas or TNF receptors that can lead to apoptosis signaling and expression of decoy receptors to inhibit death receptor signaling are two examples of evading apoptosis strategies by tumor cells [56]. There is some evidence of the acceleration of T-cells apoptosis (e.g., FasL-mediated or TRAIL-mediated apoptosis induction) [56]. The detected tumor cells could also induce anergy in activated T-cells. Indeed, tumor cells may cause a problem in the induction of second signals by triggering the T-cell receptor either without adequate concomitant co-stimulation or high co-inhibitory signaling [52]. The negative roles of some co-inhibitory molecules, such as CTLA-4 and PD-1, in cancer, could also be confirmed by improving the survival of patients with metastatic melanoma following the blocking of the CTLA-4 by ipilimumab or PD-1 by nivolumab and pembrolizumab [57–59]. Inducing the exhaustion of T-cells through Tregs recruitment (probably by attracting them with chemokine CCL22 produced by tumor cells [60]) could also significantly limit anti-tumor immunity.

5.6 The Role of Effector T-Helper Cells in Cancer Immunity

5.6.1 Overview

As was pointed out in previous sections, effector CD4+ T-cells contribute to priming anti-tumor immunity through different major strategies,

such as exertion of direct anti-tumor activity, activation, and expansion of CD8+ T-cells as well as orchestration of antibody production [51, 61]. These have made Th cells the attractive immunotherapeutic approach for the treatment of cancer. There is much data on the roles of CD4+ T-cells in solid tumors as compared to the hematological malignancies. Traditionally, research in cancer immunity has focused almost exclusively on Th1/Th2 cell balance, which has been replaced by the Th17 and Tregs paradigm during the last decade. Recently, Th9, Th22, and Tfh cells were also found be involved in tumorigenesis, and this has been a hot topic among researchers in recent years. Moreover, the possible interaction between each of these subsets during human cancer remains to be elucidated. Two issues related to these cells had been discussed widely, including the proportion of Th1 cells/expression of Th1-associated genes in the baseline as well as the association of those with the outcomes, which have been discussed in this chapter.

5.6.2 T-helper 1

Among the different subsets of Th cells, Th1 is one of the most studied and critical ones in the mediation of anti-tumor immunity. In other words, it has been accepted that Th1-dominant immunity is essential for the induction of anti-tumor cellular immunity in vivo [62]. This role for Th1 immunity is likely due to the stimulation of both innate and adaptive immune response to tumors. IFN-γ, the principal Th1 effector cytokine, has been shown to be crucial for preventing and suppressing the development of cancers. Although most cell types in the body can produce IFN-γ, Th1 cells were identified as a primary source. This cytokine helps immune system to inhibit and kill tumor cells and impedes tumor growth through different mechanisms. For example, it seems that IFN-γ acts as a bridge between the Th1 cells and tumor-infiltrating antigen-presenting macrophages [63]. During this process, *macrophages could render tumor cells cytotoxic, either directly or indirectly*. This could lead to an acceleration of tumor eradication through the initiation of collaboration between innate and adaptive immunity. Boosting the MHC-I antigen-processing machinery that facilitates cytotoxic T-cells to recognize cancer cells [64], enhancing NK cells activity [65], and regulating their proliferation in vivo [66], inducing DC cytotoxic function [67], activation of effector cells (e.g., macrophages and neutrophils), inducing the infiltration of macrophages as well as CTL into the tumor, regulating CD4+ Th cell differentiation, and modifying anti-tumor cytokine responses [68–71] are some of the proposed mechanisms of the anti-tumor functions of IFN-γ. Moreover, IFNs could regulate the expression of a vast array of genes involved in tumor cell growth, proliferation, differentiation, survival, migration, and also other specialized functions favoring tumor shrinkage [72]. In this respect, it was shown that Th1 cytokine-enriched microenvironment hampered tumor growth [73]. In addition to the IFN-γ, related chemokines are also capable of recruiting effector immune cells into the tumor microenvironment, which can act in concert with tumor elimination [74].

In recent decades, a large number of studies have assessed the role of Th1 cells in patients with different types of cancer. There is a consensus among researchers with regard to the crucial role of Th1 cells in regressing tumors and impeding tumor growth. Generally, the enhancement of Th1 responses in several types of cancer, such as lung cancer [75], cervical cancer [76], and breast cancer [77], was demonstrated to be involved in augmenting anti-tumor responses.

Moreover, an elevated level of T-bet, the master transcription factor of Th1 cells, was reported in patients with high-grade bladder cancer in comparison to those with low/medium-grade bladder cancer [78]. In contrast to such evidence, there is some evidence implying a decrease in Th1-related responses. For example, suppressed levels of Th1-related cytokines in hypopharyngeal carcinoma [79] and oral squamous cell carcinoma [80] have been noted.

There are different pieces of evidence suggesting the correlation between the Th1-related responses and a favorable outcome in several tumor types. A high proportion of Th1 was asso-

ciated with a desirable outcome in colorectal cancer [81]. Indeed, those with high expression of the Th1 cluster had a prolonged disease-free survival. A better outcome as the result of increased expression of genes for Th1 adaptive immunity during colorectal cancer and, subsequently, presumably facilitation of the effector memory T-cell infiltration was also reported in another study [41]. Moreover, high Th1 infiltrated lymphocyte was found to be strongly associated with a better prognosis in patients with colorectal cancer [82]. A higher T-bet expression was reported to be a predictor of outcome in HER2-overexpressing breast cancer patients treated with trastuzumab plus docetaxel [83] and a predictor of patients' survival in bladder carcinoma [78]. In contrast, a weak Th1 response was found to be associated with the poor treatment response and prognosis in breast cancer patients [84]. The predominance of Th1 response after the cancer treatment was reported in both animal and human models also suggests the critical role of Th1 cells in establishing anti-tumor immunity [85].

In addition to solid tumors, different studies have suggested the importance of Th1 cells in the hemolytic cancers. Regarding acute lymphoblastic leukemia (ALL), it was found that the circulating levels of two of the most important Th1-related cytokines, IFN-γ and IL-12, were significantly higher than they were in the control group [86]. In contrast, Chen et al. [87] have demonstrated an observable decrease in both bone marrow and peripheral blood Th1 cells frequencies of newly diagnosed chronic myeloid leukemia (CML) patients. Similar to solid tumors, there is some evidence of better outcome in patients with more Th1-related responses. For instance, acute myeloid leukemia (AML) patients with high Th1 frequencies have shown a prolonged survival [88].

5.6.3 T-helper 2

Generally, among the two classical subsets of Th cells (Th1 and Th2), the majority of studies had focused on the role of Th1 rather Th2 cells. Although Th2 cells are capable of destroying the tumor by inducing tumor necrosis [70], the majority of studies on Th2 have suggested no beneficial role for them against the tumors. In fact, Th2 cells seem to promote tumor progression via counteraction of Th1 cells—key players in the initiation of anti-tumor immunity—as well as interfere with anti-tumor CTL activity. Moreover, IL-4 and IL-10 secreted by Th2 cells contribute to inhibit cell apoptosis [89] and promote regulatory responses through the inducement of the differentiation of Tr1 cells [90], respectively. However, Th2 master cytokine (e.g., IL-4) were also demonstrated to induce infiltrating eosinophils and macrophages, followed by the initiation of anti-tumor immunity [91–93]. IL-13 is another Th2 production, with both positive and adverse impacts on anti-tumor immunity. It causes tumor regression by inducing the activities of neutrophils and macrophages [94, 95] while protecting tumors through the suppression of IFN-γ and CTL activity [96]. Th2 cells-associated cytokines provide help for B-cells and facilitate IgG and IgE antibody responses. Although tumor-infiltrating B-cells may lead to favorable clinical outcome in some types of cancers [12], there is some speculation, related to the inhibition of anti-tumor immunity via B-cells, including the production of anti-tumor immunity cytokines (e.g., IL-10), the inhibition of production/activity of critical players against the tumor (IFN-γ, CTL, NK cells), and the masking of T-cell epitopes by secreted antibodies [97]. Considering the probable adverse effect of B-cells in anti-tumor immunity, the tumor promotion role of Th2 cells could be confirmed from another aspect.

Some studies have examined Th2 responses in cancer patients. A significant decrease in Th1, but not Th2 in renal cell carcinoma (RCC), has caused the skewing of Th1:Th2 balance toward more Th2 correlated with tumor stage and grade progression [98]. A distinct polarization of Th2-related cytokines, including IL-4 and IL-10, as well as suppressed Th1-related cytokines in those with oral squamous cell carcinoma [80] and cervical cancer [99] are other pieces of evidence for the skewing of Th1:Th2 toward Th2 phenotype. Moreover, because of increased Th2-associated

cytokines in hypopharyngeal cancer tissues and pericarcinoma tissues, it was suggested that this type of cell might promote cancer development as well as metastasis during hypopharyngeal carcinoma [79]. Th2 cells were also reported to associate with reduced patient survival pancreatic cancer [100]. However, it seems that Th2 cells do not play a significant role in patient's prognosis during colorectal cancer [81].

Regarding the hematological cancers, there is some evidence implementing the correlation of Th2 cell population and advanced disease. For example, shifting from the dominance of Th1-mediated immunity in chronic lymphocytic leukemia (CLL) patients toward Th2 phenotype by disease progression was reported [101]. In childhood ALL, a decreased Th2-related cytokines was observed [86], and also Th2 cytokine expression was suggested as the predictor of relapse [102]. In contrast to the CLL and ALL, Kiani et al. [103] reported no difference between the Th2 cytokines (IL-4, IL-10, IL-13) in CML and controls.

5.6.4 T-helper 17

Before the appearance of the Th17 subset, it was generally agreed that Th1 and Th2 are the only Th subsets that play significant roles in, respectively, the regression or promotion of tumors. Following the discovery of the third Th subset, Th17 cells, researchers have more focused on Th17/Treg instead of the classical Th1/Th2 paradigm. As mentioned, Th17 cells have recently been identified as important immune modulators in a variety of diseases, including autoimmune diseases as well as several types of cancer. In contrast to the role of Th17 cells in inflammation and autoimmunity [104], results from Th17 studies in different types of cancer have yielded conflicting results [105]. On the other word, there is enough evidence for considering it as a double-edged sword in cancer [106]. From the anti-tumor point of view, Th17 cells have shown both a direct eradication of tumors and the exertion of indirect anti-tumor effects through several signaling pathways. The capability of production of different effector cytokines by tumor-infiltrating Th17 cells as well as negatively correlated with the proportion of Th17 and Tregs, favoring the promotion of anti-tumor immunity and the prevention of immune system exhaustion. Moreover, the recruitment or activation of other tumor-specific immune cells, such as tumor-specific CD8+ T-cell and DCs, inducing the Th1-type chemokines CXCL9 and CXCL10, and promotion of IFN-γ secretion also contribute to the enhancement of Th17-associated anti-tumor responses [107]. On the other hand, the promotion of tumor angiogenesis as well as up-regulated prosurvival and proangiogenic genes as the result of Th17 activity could be considered the pro-tumor effects of these cells [107]. It was demonstrated that IL-17A triggers STAT3 activation in tumor cells, which leads to tumor growth [108]. Moreover, a vast majority of studies has shown that Th17 cell infiltration is detrimental in several types of cancer, which may be explained by the function of these cells as regulatory cells with the capacity to suppress anti-tumor immunity [106].

The majority of the murine and human studies implicate the increased proportion of Th17 cells as well as their associated cytokines in peripheral blood or in different types of tumor samples, such as RCC, gastric cancer, breast cancer, squamous cell carcinoma, lung cancer, hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC), cervical cancer [35, 76, 98, 109–118]. The enhancement of Th17 immune response in the adjacent tissues of sporadic colorectal cancer [119] or serum [120], making Th17 cells a valuable tumor marker in patients with colorectal cancer. Although the exact mechanism of Th17 cells up-regulation in tumor has remained unknown, some suggested mechanisms are responsible for the Th17 cell expansion and their migration into tumor microenvironments, such as chemokine-mediated recruitment of these cells into tumor sites as well as the function of tumor microenvironment factors (e.g., IL-1b, TNF-α, and IL-17) [121]. In contrast to different studies that had suggested the detrimental effects of Th17 cells in establishing anti-tumor immunity, there is paucity of evidence of the beneficial roles of Th17 cells in human cancer, such as ovarian cancer [122]. For example, impaired Th17 responses

were observed with the tumor progression in the tissue [81], which is inconsistent with some other cancers. The role of Th17 in the destruction of advanced melanoma was also previously deduced in a transgenic mouse model [123].

The association between the Th17 cells and poor outcome in different types of cancer, including HCC and colorectal cancer, has previously been reported [81, 124]. Interestingly, it was reported that Th17 cells' population dramatically decreased 2 weeks of radiofrequency ablation in lung cancer patients [109]. Moreover, there is some evidence of the Th17 response increasing as gastric cancer advanced [125]. However, in advanced colorectal cancer, it was reported that Th17 cells ratio in circulation to tumor tissues were decreased [126], which is consistent with the previous study that suggested Th17 cells can be recruited into the tumor microenvironment from the circulation [127].

In addition to the solid tumors, there are several findings with regard to the roles of Th17 in hematological malignancies, including multiple myeloma (MM), CLL, AML, non-Hodgkin lymphoma, as well as CML in bone marrow and/or peripheral blood. A significant elevation in the baseline and an induced frequency of Th17 cells were reported in both peripheral blood mononuclear cells (PBMCs) and bone marrow mononuclear cells in MM patients as compared to healthy controls [128]. Moreover, the suppression of Th1-mediated cytokines (e.g., IFN-γ) was observed as the result of a function of IL-17 and IL-22 combination, which suggests Th17 cells as the inhibitors of immune function in MM patients [128]. The elevated number of Th17 cells was seen in a different stage of AML in comparison with controls [129, 130], while a significant decrease in plasma IL-17 was found [129]. This unexpected finding may be explained by promoting the effect of Th17 independent of direct secretion of IL-17. In another study, in various stages of AML, a marked decrease in Th17 cells in the bone marrow microenvironment of newly diagnosed patients compared patients with complete remission, relapsed-refractory patients, or controls was observed [131]. Considering the role of IL-17 in MM pathobiology, it is conceivable that Th17 cells exert a pathogenetic role and are an important therapeutic target in MM and probably AML. Conversely, a significantly low percentage of Th17 cells present in lymphoma specimens from patients with B-cell non-Hodgkin's lymphoma was observed [132]. Because the higher number of Th17 and IL-17A levels was found to be associated with a less advanced clinical stage of CLL in a study containing untreated CLL patients in different clinical stages, the beneficial role of Th17 in CLL immunity was suggested [133]. Furthermore, a higher proportion of Th17 cells seems to be associated with a more favorable clinical course in CLL patients [134]. Hus et al. [133] found a positive correlation and a negative one between the Th17 percentages and iNKT and Tregs, respectively, in CLL patients. These results demonstrate the probable beneficial role of Th17 in CLL immunity. Regarding CML, considering the decrease in the frequency of Th17 in newly diagnosed CML patients in comparison with healthy controls, the protective role of Th17 cells in CML pathogenesis was suggested [135]. The association of high Th17 cell frequency in the AML patients with poor prognosis was also reported [88].

In summary, answering the question as to whether Th17 cells in tumor tissues are beneficial for patients through enhanced anti-tumor immunity, or cause promotion of tumor through an increase in inflammatory angiogenesis, is not easy. Indeed, it seems that Th17 cells play a role both in tumorigenesis and the eradication of an established tumor, which makes it a double-edged sword.

5.6.5 T-helper 9

Less than a decade ago, another CD4+ T-cell subset—characterized by the secretion of high levels of IL-9—was called the Th9 cell has identified [16]. Before the discovery of Th9, IL-9 was suggested as a promoter of some human hematological tumors, such as Hodgkin's lymphoma [136]. Indeed, high levels of IL-9 in the sera from Hodgkin's lymphoma patients, but not in non-Hodgkin's lymphoma patients or healthy con-

trols, implied the contribution of this cytokine to the development of Hodgkin's lymphoma. These effects may be explained by inducing regulatory responses via IL-9. The role of IL-9 in enhancing the suppressive functions of Tregs in vitro was another novel function against tumor regression via anti-tumor immunity [137]. This finding was subsequently confirmed by Hoelzinger et al. [138], who showed that IL-9 ablation enables CD8+ and CD4+ and activates the adaptive anti-tumor immunity. In contrast, there is enough evidence that Th9 cells activate both innate and adaptive immune responses, thereby harboring anti-cancer properties in solid tumors [139].

From the view of the beneficial role of Th9 cells, different studies were published during the last decade. The first report regarding the anti-tumor effect of Th9 cells was conducted using the murine melanoma model. As a result, it was concluded that the adoptive transfer of tumor antigen-specific Th9 cells could block tumor growth, which was reversed by anti-IL-9 [140]. This is consistent with the anti-tumor function of Th9 in an IL-9 dependent fashion. Interestingly, the efficacy of recombinant IL-9 administration was found to depend on the presence of mast cells, but not on the presence of T-cells or B-cells [140]. Because of the triggering mast cell activation by IL-9 [141], it was proposed that anti-tumor capacity of IL-9 and Th9 cells might be through the activation of mast cell [32]. In another study on metastatic melanoma patients, because of the association between the early increase in Th9 cell counts and improved clinical response during the nivolumab therapy, Th9 cells were suggested as cells with anti-cancer properties as well as a valid biomarker for anti-PD-1 response [142]. Lu et al. [143] have examined the role of IL-9/Th9 in a murine model of pulmonary melanoma; the anti-tumor effects of Th9 cells through provoking CD8+ CTL-mediated anti-tumor immunity were reported. Another interesting finding related to the function of Th9 cells was the recruitment of effector cells against tumor growth into the tumor sites [143]. Th9 cells also enhance anti-tumor immunity by triggering IL-21 in addition to IL-9 [144], and probably the involvement of IL-3, which could favor the survival of DCs [145]. Employing CD8+ T-cells' anti-tumor responses is another suggested mechanism underlying Th9 anti-tumor activities.

In studies of human cancer, some contradictory results have been reported. Ye et al. [146] found Th9 cells as a promoter of proliferation and migratory activity of lung cancer cells, which act through the regulation of immune responses in lung cancer cells in the tumor environment. During this process, the activation of STAT3 signaling pathway was responsible, which works in a manner opposite to IFN-γ activated STAT1 signaling that suppresses lung cancer cell proliferation and migration. A recent study on HCC patients had shown a significantly higher frequency of circulating IL-9-producing Th9 cells (specifically in peritumoral and tumor tissues) in comparison with healthy controls [147]. Additionally, because the association of higher tumor-infiltrating Th9 frequency had shorter disease-free survival period in the patients studied, the tumor-promoting role of Th9 cells in HCC, probably through CCL20 and STAT3 pathways, were suggested [147]. Taken together, Th9 cells seem to be new players in exerting anti-tumor activities, perhaps through the promotion of the activation of innate and adaptive immune responses as well as by triggering cancer cell death [32]. However, further studies are required to explain the controversial results regarding the role of Th9 cells in human cancer.

5.6.6 T-helper 22

Recently, the Th22 subset was identified as a new human Th subset, characterized by abundant secretion of IL-22 and TNF-α, but not IL-17 or IFN-γ, which makes it clearly separate from the Th17 and Th1 subsets [21, 148, 149]. There is some growing evidence regarding the role of Th22 and in the pathogenesis of inflammatory and autoimmune diseases, including psoriasis and rheumatoid arthritis [150, 151]. Mounting evidence suggests that Th22 cells are other critical players during the human cancers [34–36].

Before focusing on the Th22 cells in cancers, some evidence was found that is related to high

levels of IL-22 in the tumor tissues or peripheral blood of cancer patients [152–155]. Some of them interpreted it as the involvement of Th17 cells, but not Th22 cells. The higher expression of the cytokine and also its receptor was found to positively relate to invasion and metastasis in pancreatic ductal adenocarcinoma [156]. In contrast, some studies reported that IL-22 levels were lower in patients with HCC than in healthy controls [157]. Subsequently, different authors have evaluated the possible role of another subset of IL-22-producing cells (L-22(+) IL-17(−) IFN-γ(−)CD4(+) T-cells), which could be distinguished from Th17 cells. These cells seem to contribute to tumorigenesis through STAT3 and probably epigenetic alterations, which was recently concluded in the study of Th22 cells' interaction and colon cancer cells [158]. As one of the first studies on the role of Th22 in tumor immunity, it was demonstrated that Th22 cells are increased in tumor tissues in gastric cancer [159]. It was thereby suggested that these newly identified cells contribute to tumor progression and predict poorer patient survival. Moreover, targeting of these cells in patients with gastric cancer was also proposed as a therapeutic option. The same year, these results were confirmed by another study, and positive correlation between Th22 cells and Th17 cells was also reported [34]. Soon, new evidence for the involvement of Th22 cells in other solid tumors, such as HCC, gastric cancer, colorectal cancer, cervical cancer, ovarian cancer, and pancreatic cancer, was revealed. A few years ago, the elevation of both serum IL-22 and IL-22 in HCC tissues was observed, as compared to the normal tissues or healthy controls [35]. Interestingly, an increase in Th22 cells was correlated with the advancement of the tumor stage. Another consequence was finding a correlation between the frequency of Th22 cells and serum IL-22 in HCC patients, which was not true in healthy controls [35]. Considering the role of IL-22 in leading to tumor growth, the inhibition of apoptosis, and the promotion of metastasis in HCC patients [153], it was suggested that Th22 cells contribute to the pathogenesis of HCC through the production of IL-22. In a study of gastric cancer patients, increases in circulating Th22 cells in the peripheral blood of gastric cancer patients with tumor progression or tumor tissues in another, which were associated with tumor progression and predicted poorer patient survival, were revealed [34, 159]. Huang et al. [160] have found a higher prevalence of Th22 cells in tumor tissues as compared to paratumoral tissues in colorectal cancer. However, those results are probably inconsistent with the lower in percentages of Th22 cells (IL-22 mRNA in tumors were determined by real-time PCR) in colorectal cancer compared to healthy individuals and negatively correlated with the pathological stages of cancer [161]. Regarding cervical cancer, the possible adverse role of Th22 cells was suggested when a higher proportion of these cells was recorded in the peripheral blood of the patients compared to healthy controls [76]. Another significant finding was a correlation of aggregation of Th22 cells with lymph node metastases in cervical cancer patients [76]. Additionally, a positive relationship between Th22 and Th17 cells, but a negative correlation between Th22 and Th1 cells were reported [76]. In a study of patients with epithelial ovarian cancer, in addition to an elevation of Th22 responses, associations of both Th22 and IL-22 with the stage of disease were observed [162]. Stimulation of colon cancer proliferation via Th22 cells was also suggested in colon cancer [158]. Increasing IL-22-producing T-cells in tumor tissue of patients with pancreatic cancer, and its positive correlation with increased tumor, node, and metastasis (TNM) as well as poorer patient survival also caused the suggestion of blockade of IL-22 signaling as a viable method to treat these patients [163].

Th22 cells conjointly contribute to the pathogenesis of AML, which led to the introduction of Th22 as a novel biomarker to assess patients at risk [129]. Moreover, Th22 cells (and also IL-22) were negatively correlated with Th1 cells in newly diagnosed AML patients [129].

Considering the increase of Th22 population, newly diagnosed AML patients—in comparison with controls as well as no significant difference between the circulating Th22 cells in those who achieved complete remission and controls—it was suggested that Th22 cells participate in the development and progress of AML [129].

However, a lack of correlation between the Th22 cells and plasma level of IL-22 in newly diagnosed AML patients suggest the involvement of another source(s) of IL-22 in those patients [129]. A bright increase in Th22 (examined by flow cytometry) plasma IL-22 concentration (measured by ELISA), and AHR expression (analyzed by RT-PCR) in both groups of newly diagnosed with T-cell ALL and those who achieved complete remission was observed, when compared to the healthy controls [164]. It is interesting to note that in that study, a positive correlation of Th22 cells with Th17 or Th1 cells was also reported. In the evaluation of Th22 responses (frequency of Th22 cells, AHR expression, but not IL-22 concentration) in the peripheral blood and bone marrow of CML patients, it was revealed that the frequencies of these cells were profoundly lower in newly diagnosed CML patients than healthy controls [87]. Conversely, Lu et al. [165] have reported an elevation in the frequency of Th22 cells in the peripheral blood of newly diagnosed B-cell non-Hodgkin's lymphoma patients. Interestingly, the frequency of Th22 cells was correlated with poorer response to chemotherapy and also decreased following chemotherapy. Similar to several other reported blood cancers, increased levels of Th22 cells in MM was reported in different studies, which was associated with therapeutic outcome (decline in complete remission patients following chemotherapy), clinical stage (higher frequency in higher stages), and a poor prognosis [166, 167].

Altogether, these results suggest that Th22 cells may be involved in the development of both solid tumors and hematological malignancies, and tumor-infiltrating Th22 cells may be suitable therapeutic targets in those patients. According to the results of some studies, it is conceivable that other unknown sources of IL-22 can be involved in cancers.

5.6.7 T-Follicular Helper

Tfh cells provide help to B-cells in the lymph node and express essential cytokines and chemokines, such as IL-4, IL-21, and CXCL13, to promote B-cell immunity. IL-21, a key Tfh-related cytokine, was found to have a high ability to establish anti-tumor immunity through induction of tumor-reactive CD8+ T-cells with cytotoxic effects [168]. In the past decade, several attempts have been made toward clearing the role of Tfh cells in different types of cancer. In the evaluation of HBV-associated HCC patients, it was observed that Tfh cells have significantly declined in HCC patients as compared to healthy controls [169]. Interestingly, the higher Tfh population was also found at the tumor site when compared to the non-tumor regions. Correlation of Tfh cell numbers with the disease progression and reduced disease-free survival were other important findings, which have highlighted the critical role of these cells in HCC development among the HBV-infected individuals [169]. The impairment of HCC-specific Tfh cells, probably due to an elevation in the expression of PD-1 and PD-L1—which was associated with advanced tumor stages—was also reported [170]. The beneficial role of Tfh cells was also previously suggested in patients with breast cancer. Gu-Trantien et al. [171] have found that not only higher Th1 but also Tfh cells in breast cancer patients are significantly associated with better outcome. In another study, the impairment of Tfh cells was the result of elevation in the expression of TIM-3 and PD-1, but no alteration in the frequencies of circulating Tfh cells in breast cancer patients was reported when compared to healthy controls [170]. The significantly lower frequency of Tfh cells in the peripheral blood of non-small-cell lung carcinoma patients than in healthy subjects and the positive correlation of frequency of tumor-infiltrating Tfh cells with survival time from the date of surgery was another evidence of the involvement of Tfh cells in anti-tumor immunity [172]. These cells may also have a role in antibody class switching of B-cells toward the promotion of anti-tumor immunity, which was previously shown in prostate cancer [173]. In contrast to the majority of solid cancer, hematological cancer patients, including non-Hodgkin lymphoma [174] and CLL [175], showed an increase in the circulating Tfh in CD4+ T-cells as compared to the normal subjects.

5.7 Regulatory T-Cells in Cancer Immunity

Tregs have been found to be the critical players in almost all types of immune-related conditions. In the majority of autoimmune diseases, the impaired activities of these cells seem to be responsible. Conversely, the same cells have an entirely opposite role in cancers. In fact, exerting the suppression of both innate and adaptive immunity by Tregs could cause the promotion of the progression of the disease in cancer [53]. In addition to the impairment of anti-tumor immunity, it was suggested that these cells represent significant hurdles toward successful immunotherapy [176]. In contrast to autoimmune diseases, which are usually associated with a decreased number of Tregs, in cancer individuals, these cells were found to downregulate the activity of effector T-cells against tumors, resulting in T-cell impairment in cancer-bearing hosts and favoring tumor escape from immune response [53]. Generally, Tregs could be divided into two major groups: Those derived from the thymus (nTregs) or those that arise extrathymically in the periphery (iTregs). Till date, different subsets of T-cells with regulatory function have been identified, including Foxp3+ T-cells, Th3, Tr1, iTr35+ T-cells, etc., that seem to contribute in the exhaustion of anti-tumor activities [177]. Different mechanisms of action related to Tregs have been suggested, including the production of inhibitory cytokines (e.g., IL-10, TGF-β, and IL-35), using direct cytolysis to mediate suppression, metabolic disruption, DC modulation, etc. [178].

The involvement of Tregs in peripheral blood and tumor tissues in the patients with different types of human cancer has been observed [179–182]. In fact, these cells seem to contribute to attenuate host anti-tumor immunity. This has led to the emergence of the idea of blocking Tregs migration or function to defeat human cancer [60]. Indeed, these cells contribute to suppression of anti-tumor responses and mediate immune tolerance favoring tumor growth. The fact that the suppression of Tregs could lead to an enhancement of anti-tumor immunity was suggested, which may be related to the function of proinflammatory cytokines [183]. A significant decrease in the activated Tregs and naïve Tregs in the peripheral blood of patients with different stages of RCC was reported [98]. Indeed, the balance of Th17 and Tregs was skewed toward the Th17 profile, as the tumor stage and grade progressed [98]. In contrast, Liotta et al. [184] have shown a significant elevation in Tregs frequency in TILs, with no important differences between the peripheral blood of controls and patients with RCC, which were associated with worse prognosis.

The disappearance of tumor-infiltrating Tregs following neoadjuvant chemotherapy in breast cancer patients could confirm the harmful role of these cells during cancer [185]. Contradictory results are associated with the role of regulatory responses in different types of cancer. Although expression of FoxP3, a critical transcription for Tregs, was associated with the worst overall survival in breast cancer [186, 187], the positive impact of Tregs was suggested in colorectal cancer [81]. Moreover, there is some growing evidence of the protective role of Tregs during cancer [188].

As one of the first studies on the role of Tregs in hematologic cancers, Beyer et al. [189] showed the increased frequency of Tregs in CLL patients, specifically in untreated or progressing patients. Since that time, different studies have been published, which confirmed the previously reported data [190, 191]. Moreover, increasing the proportion of Tregs in CLL patients, particularly those with progressive disease, seems to be associated with a higher suppressive function on the anti-tumor immunity, which is followed by the expansion of leukemic cells as well as disease progression [192]. The critical role of Tregs in other types of leukemia was also reported. It was found that the percentages of these suppressor cells were significantly higher in AML patients in comparison with healthy controls [193]. More interestingly, the Tregs frequency negatively correlated with clinical improvement after six cycles of chemotherapy. The same story of the promotion of Tregs-related responses has been reported in ALL [194] and CML [195].

5.8 Clinical Therapeutic Implications: Focused on T-Cell-based Therapies

Despite the advancements in the understanding of cancer over the last few decades, the therapeutic efficacy of cancer treatments is currently still poor. Traditional cancer treatments mainly consist of surgery, chemotherapy, and radiation therapy. However, these approaches have demonstrated insufficient efficacy for a large number of patients with late-stage disease. Additionally, because of several side effects of chemotherapy and radiation therapy, more effective methods with fewer side effects are required to be employed for cancer patients. The employment of body's own immune system to shrinkage tumor is associated with significantly less severe adverse events, as compared to chemotherapy. In recent decades, cancer immunotherapy has emerged as a promising therapeutic option for cancer individuals.

As discussed, during the majority of the cancers, the dysfunction of the immune system has caused the development and promotion of a tumor. This could be confirmed by several reports of T-cells exhaustion in those with cancer. Hence, it could be expected that reversing the functional impairment of the tumor-specific T-cells is a potent strategy to induce tumor regression. Manipulating the immune system to promote anti-tumor immunity is the primary aim of cancer immunotherapy. To reach this goal, multiple immunotherapeutic approaches could be employed. For instance, different strategies to deplete Tregs have been introduced to restore the impaired anti-tumor immunity, which are relying on monoclonal antibodies. Cancer vaccines and adoptive cell transfer are other approaches to improve the chance of tumor shrinkage and eradication. Additionally, using engineered T-cell receptor TCR- and chimeric antigen receptor (CAR)-transduced T-cells were found to be the promising approaches to treat cancer, which is not addressed here effectively. Side effects of immunotherapy could vary significantly from one approach to another (e.g., cancer vaccines, cytokines therapy, adoptive cell therapy, immune checkpoint inhibitors, and monoclonal antibodies). However, the main possible side effects of immunotherapy remained immunotoxicity and autoimmunity [196].

In theory, and based on animal models, we could be optimistic about these strategies to eradicate tumors; however, sometimes the results may be a little frustrating in clinics. Interestingly, these procedures could also be opportunities to reduce viral-related cancers (human papillomavirus, cervical cancer, HBV, HCC). Adoptive cell transfer (ACT) [197], T-cell targeting antibodies [197], and cytokine-based immunotherapy [198] are three approaches that are directly related to T-cells and have been reviewed below. Although all these strategies have been designed to promote anti-tumor immunity, each of them has its own characteristics. There is some evidence to support beneficial roles of combining immunotherapy approaches to enhance and broaden the anti-tumor activity [199].

5.8.1 Adoptive Cell Transfer

Adoptive T-cell transfer aims to expand anti-tumor T-cells via autologous TILs. During this procedure, patients could benefit from expanding their own T-cells in vitro, which is followed by the promotion of tumor-specific T-cells by reinfusion of ex vivo-expanded TILs. It can be considered an emerging field for cancer treatment, which has shown promise in recent trials. More precisely, this approach consists of the infusion of unmodified or engineered T-cells, capable of recognizing and eliminating cancer cells expressing TAAs by their surface receptors (T-cell receptors, or chimeric antigen receptors). ACT is efficient immunotherapies against metastatic *melanoma*, which have yielded durable and complete responses in those with refractory metastatic melanoma. CAR T-cell therapy is one of the forms of the ACT, which recently have got its FDA approval for the treatment of children and young adults with B-cell ALL. In contrast to the hematological malignancies, the results of trials on targeting solid tumors

by CAR T-cells are less spectacular; however, it could still be a treatment for solid tumors [200].

5.8.2 Inhibiting Regulatory Responses

As discussed, Tregs in the tumor microenvironment interferes with successful cancer immunotherapy. Thereby, the modulation of Tregs number/function in cancer is expected to hold promise for unleashing potent anti-tumor immunity. Accordingly, Tregs depletion and blockade could potentially override the development of effective anti-tumor immunity against the cancer cells. Recently, Taylor et al. have shown that a combination of these approaches could lead to more potent immunotherapy in claudin-low breast cancer patients [201]. A large number of murine studies has demonstrated that the depletion of Tregs from tumor microenvironment could potentially restore impaired anti-tumor immune responses [202–204]. As an example, Mattarollo et al. [203] selectively depleted of Foxp3+ Tregs in animal models of melanoma, which resulted in the inhibition of tumor growth as well as the enhancement of survival after receiving cancer vaccination with NKT cell adjuvants. As could be expected, via non-selective depletion of tumor-infiltrating Tregs, severe autoimmunity can occur in genetically susceptible individuals [205]. Moreover, the specificity of targeting of tumor-infiltrating Tregs and not confusing with effector lymphocytes because of some common molecules targeted for therapy is another concern related to the depletion of Tregs in cancer.

It is generally accepted that co-inhibitory pathways are the primary reason for failing the spontaneous immune-mediated tumor elimination during cancer. With regard to two different types of tumors (non-small-cell lung cancer and colorectal cancer), it was found those infiltrated Tregs upregulate immune checkpoints and are more suppressive than those isolated from non-tumor Tregs in vitro [206]. Among the exclusively expressed co-inhibitory molecules on T-cells, CTLA-4, and PD-1 have attracted many attentions during the recent decade. CTLA-4 (also known as CD152) was the first identified co-inhibitory molecule on the T-cells, responsible for blocking autoreactive T-cells in the early stages of T-cell activation [207]. It was also the first approved targeted immune checkpoint receptor in cancer (FDA approval for metastatic melanoma [208]). Another well-studied immune-checkpoint receptor related to cancer is PD-1, which could exhaust anti-tumor immune responses and then cause cancer immune resistance, once engaged by PD-L1 and PD-L2 [209]. Following the very promising results of the inhibition of the immune checkpoint, the FDA has approved some new drugs to target CTLA-4 (ipilimumab), PD-1 (pembrolizumab and nivolumab), and PDL-1 (atezolizumab) for the treatment of increasing numbers of cancers. Following proving of the efficacy of checkpoint blockade in metastatic melanoma [208], it was extended for the treatment of other cancers, such as prostate cancer [210], RCC [211], non-small-cell lung cancer [212], urothelial carcinoma [213], and ovarian cancer [214]. Recent findings also suggest that combined therapy may be more beneficial than monotherapy [215–218].

5.8.3 Cytokine-based Immunotherapy

The employment of two cytokines of IL-2 and IFN-α could be considered the first attempts for cytokine-based immunotherapy in patients with cancers, such as advanced melanoma [219, 220]. In

addition to IFNs and IL-2, the employment of several other cytokines with a potential of anti-tumor function, including granulocyte-macrophage colony-stimulating factor (GM-CSF), IL-7, IL-12, IL-15, IL-18, and IL-21 seem to be useful to achieve better immunity [221]. Animal models have shown that cytokine-based therapy could enhance NK cell functions in cancer patients with the relatively non-toxic effects [222]. The ability of some cytokines to induce the differentiation and the stimulation of anti-tumor T-cells, as well as the inhibition of Tregs, makes them even more attractive. Because of the ability of T-cells to recognize neoantigens, promotion of effector T-cells response may be used as an effective immunotherapy approach to cancer [223]. The increasing knowledge regarding the roles of different subsets of Th cells in cancer has opened up several new avenues for research into its treatment. For example, because the Th1 response is essential for initiation of anti-tumor immunity, boosting Th1 response by cytokine-based therapies has attracted a lot of attention in recent times [198]. Additionally, the promotion of Th9 cell may lead to the establishment of novel Th9-dependent treatments of cancer [224]. In contrast, considering the impact of some suppressive cytokines, such as IL-10 and IL-35, on tumor progression, neutralization of these could be used in cancer immunotherapy [221, 225]. Targeted therapies were not only discussed for those involved in regulatory responses but also some pro-inflammatory cytokines. For example, the use of anti-IL-6 agents in human cancer was found capable of targeting malignant tumor cells as well as limit the interactions of cancer cells with their microenvironment [226]. There are also some cytokines, with the dual function, such as IL-17, IL-23, and TGF-β, which could act as both tumor promoters and tumor suppressors [221].

5.9 Concluding Remarks

Accumulating evidence indicates that CD4+ T-cells undeniably play a vital function in constraining tumor development. CD4+ T-cells could be categorized into various subsets, with each of them having a distinct role in tumor immunosurveillance. In general, these cells contribute to enhancing anti-tumor immunity through multiple mechanisms. The most well-studied Th cells with anti-tumor properties are Th1 cells. New evidence also implies the likely role of the newly identified subset, Th9, in exerting anti-tumor activities. However, some subsets of CD4+ T-cells, such as Tregs, inhibit anti-tumor immunity and play a direct role in promoting immune evasion. Some other subsets, such as Th2, also play an indirect role in inhibition of anti-tumor immunity. Moreover, some of the effector T-cells—such as Th17 and Th22—seem to contribute to tumorigenesis. These findings have made CD4+ T-cells the double-edged sword in cancer. The evaluation of frequencies of CD4+ cells subsets in patients with various types of cancers has suggested the probably different roles of specific subsets in various types of cancers. Table 5.1 summarizes the last findings on the involvement of different subsets of CD4+ T-cells in cancers. The recognition of exact roles of each subset of Th may be followed by more effective therapeutic options for cancer patients. Although there is a large number of studies regarding the role of various cancers, the exact role of some newly identified subsets, such as Th9, Th22, and Tfh, have remained uncertain. Contradictory results regarding the particular types of cancer is another challenge in the clarification of the CD4+ T-cells roles.

Table 5.1 The last findings about the roles of CD4+ T cells in cancers

CD4+ T cells	Role	Frequency/expression of related genes responses in cancers	Outcome
Th1	– Essential for the induction of anti-tumor cellular immunity	– Enhanced Th1 responses in several types of cancer, but not all	– A positive correlation between the Th1-related responses and a favorable outcome in several solid tumors and hematologic malignancies
Th2	– Although Th2 cells are capable of destroying the tumor by inducing tumor necrosis, the majority of studies on Th2 suggests no beneficial role for them against the tumors – It seems that Th2 cells tend to promote tumor progression via counteraction of Th1 cells	– Skewing Th1:Th2 balance toward more Th2 in the majority of cancers	– Th2 responses are probably associated with cancer development, metastasis, and reduced patient survival
Th17	– There is enough evidence to consider Th17 cells the double-edged sword in cancer	– Increased proportion of Th17 cells as well as their associated cytokines during different types of cancer was reported	– Association between the Th17 cells and poor outcome in various types of cancer. However, a few studies on the association of Th17 cells with a more favorable clinical course during some hematologic malignancies are available
Th9	– The majority of studies has reported anti-tumor activity of Th9 cells, probably through promotion, the activation of innate and adaptive immune responses as well as triggering cancer cell death	– More studies required to clarify	– Require more studies to clarify
Th22	– The possible adverse role of Th22 cells in priming anti-tumor immunity was suggested in different studies	– The majority of studies reported increased frequency of Th22 cells in solid and hematological cancers	– Correlation of Th22 cells frequency and poorer outcome
Tfh	– The high ability to establish anti-tumor immunity through induction of tumor-reactive CD8+ T cells with cytotoxic effects	– Contradictory results	– Probably correlation of Tfh cells' frequency and better outcome, but require more studies to clarify
Tregs	– Suppression of both innate and adaptive immunity favoring tumor promotion	– Increased in almost all the reported studies	– Associated with the poor outcomes

References

1. Schietinger A, Philip M, Liu RB, Schreiber K, Schreiber H. Bystander killing of cancer requires the cooperation of CD4(+) and CD8(+) T cells during the effector phase. J Exp Med. 2010;207(11):2469–77.
2. Bos R, Sherman LA. CD4+ T-cell help in the tumor milieu is required for recruitment and cytolytic function of CD8+ T lymphocytes. Cancer Res. 2010;70(21):8368–77.
3. Lai Y-P, Jeng C-J, Chen S-C. The roles of CD4+ T cells in tumor immunity. ISRN Immunol. 2011;2011:6.
4. Facciabene A, Motz GT, Coukos G. T-regulatory cells: key players in tumor immune escape and angiogenesis. Cancer Res. 2012;72(9):2162–71.
5. Giatromanolaki A, Bates GJ, Koukourakis MI, Sivridis E, Gatter KC, Harris AL, et al. The presence of tumor-infiltrating FOXP3+ lymphocytes correlates with intratumoral angiogenesis in endometrial cancer. Gynecol Oncol. 2008;110(2):216–21.
6. Mortaz E, Tabarsi P, Mansouri D, Khosravi A, Garssen J, Velayati A, et al. Cancers related to immunodeficiencies: update and perspectives. Front Immunol. 2016;7:365.
7. Moloney FJ, Comber H, O'Lorcain P, O'Kelly P, Conlon PJ, Murphy GM. A population-based study of skin cancer incidence and prevalence in renal transplant recipients. Br J Dermatol. 2006;154(3):498–504.

8. Vajdic CM, McDonald SP, McCredie MR, van Leeuwen MT, Stewart JH, Law M, et al. Cancer incidence before and after kidney transplantation. JAMA. 2006;296(23):2823–31.
9. Rubinstein PG, Aboulafia DM, Zloza A. Malignancies in HIV/AIDS: from epidemiology to therapeutic challenges. AIDS. 2014;28(4):453–65.
10. Zhang L, Conejo-Garcia JR, Katsaros D, Gimotty PA, Massobrio M, Regnani G, et al. Intratumoral T cells, recurrence, and survival in epithelial ovarian cancer. N Engl J Med. 2003;348(3):203–13.
11. Naito Y, Saito K, Shiiba K, Ohuchi A, Saigenji K, Nagura H, et al. CD8⁺ T cells infiltrated within cancer cell nests as a prognostic factor in human colorectal cancer. Cancer Res. 1998;58(16):3491–4.
12. Tsou P, Katayama H, Ostrin EJ, Hanash SM. The emerging role of B cells in tumor immunity. Cancer Res. 2016;76(19):5597–601.
13. Mosmann TR, Cherwinski H, Bond MW, Giedlin MA, Coffman RL. Two types of murine helper T cell clone. I. Definition according to profiles of lymphokine activities and secreted proteins. J Immunol. 1986;136(7):2348–57.
14. Zhu J, Yamane H, Paul WE. Differentiation of effector CD4 T cell populations. Annu Rev Immunol. 2010;28:445–89.
15. Sun B, Zhang Y. Overview of orchestration of CD4+ T cell subsets in immune responses. Adv Exp Med Biol. 2014;841:1–13.
16. Veldhoen M, Uyttenhove C, van Snick J, Helmby H, Westendorf A, Buer J, et al. Transforming growth factor-beta 'reprograms' the differentiation of T helper 2 cells and promotes an interleukin 9-producing subset. Nat Immunol. 2008;9(12):1341–6.
17. Staudt V, Bothur E, Klein M, Lingnau K, Reuter S, Grebe N, et al. Interferon-regulatory factor 4 is essential for the developmental program of T helper 9 cells. Immunity. 2010;33(2):192–202.
18. Dardalhon V, Awasthi A, Kwon H, Galileos G, Gao W, Sobel RA, et al. IL-4 inhibits TGF-beta-induced Foxp3+ T cells and, together with TGF-beta, generates IL-9+ IL-10+ Foxp3(−) effector T cells. Nat Immunol. 2008;9(12):1347–55.
19. Chang HC, Sehra S, Goswami R, Yao W, Yu Q, Stritesky GL, et al. The transcription factor PU.1 is required for the development of IL-9-producing T cells and allergic inflammation. Nat Immunol. 2010;11(6):527–34.
20. Kaplan MH. Th9 cells: differentiation and disease. Immunol Rev. 2013;252(1):104–15.
21. Eyerich S, Eyerich K, Pennino D, Carbone T, Nasorri F, Pallotta S, et al. Th22 cells represent a distinct human T cell subset involved in epidermal immunity and remodeling. J Clin Invest. 2009;119(12):3573–85.
22. Fujita H, Nograles KE, Kikuchi T, Gonzalez J, Carucci JA, Krueger JG. Human Langerhans cells induce distinct IL-22-producing CD4+ T cells lacking IL-17 production. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2009;106(51):21795–800.
23. Ramirez JM, Brembilla NC, Sorg O, Chicheportiche R, Matthes T, Dayer JM, et al. Activation of the aryl hydrocarbon receptor reveals distinct requirements for IL-22 and IL-17 production by human T helper cells. Eur J Immunol. 2010;40(9):2450–9.
24. Jogdand GM, Mohanty S, Devadas S. Regulators of Tfh cell differentiation. Front Immunol. 2016;7:520.
25. DiPaolo RJ, Brinster C, Davidson TS, Andersson J, Glass D, Shevach EM. Autoantigen-specific TGFbeta-induced Foxp3+ regulatory T cells prevent autoimmunity by inhibiting dendritic cells from activating autoreactive T cells. J Immunol. 2007;179(7):4685–93.
26. Weiner HL. Induction and mechanism of action of transforming growth factor-beta-secreting Th3 regulatory cells. Immunol Rev. 2001;182:207–14.
27. Vieira PL, Christensen JR, Minaee S, O'Neill EJ, Barrat FJ, Boonstra A, et al. IL-10-secreting regulatory T cells do not express Foxp3 but have comparable regulatory function to naturally occurring CD4+CD25+ regulatory T cells. J Immunol. 2004;172(10):5986–93.
28. Collison LW, Chaturvedi V, Henderson AL, Giacomin PR, Guy C, Bankoti J, et al. IL-35-mediated induction of a potent regulatory T cell population. Nat Immunol. 2010;11(12):1093–101.
29. Crane IJ, Forrester JV. Th1 and Th2 lymphocytes in autoimmune disease. Crit Rev Immunol. 2005;25(2):75–102.
30. Tavakolpour S, Rahimzadeh G. New insights into the management of patients with autoimmune diseases or inflammatory disorders during pregnancy. Scand J Immunol. 2016;84(3):146–9.
31. Eisenstein EM, Williams CB. The T(reg)/Th17 cell balance: a new paradigm for autoimmunity. Pediatr Res. 2009;65(5 Pt 2):26R–31R.
32. Rivera Vargas T, Humblin E, Vegran F, Ghiringhelli F, Apetoh L. TH9 cells in anti-tumor immunity. Semin Immunopathol. 2017;39(1):39–46.
33. Azizi G, Yazdani R, Mirshafiey A. Th22 cells in autoimmunity: a review of current knowledge. Eur Ann Allergy Clin Immunol. 2015;47(4):108–17.
34. Liu T, Peng L, Yu P, Zhao Y, Shi Y, Mao X, et al. Increased circulating Th22 and Th17 cells are associated with tumor progression and patient survival in human gastric cancer. J Clin Immunol. 2012;32(6):1332–9.
35. Qin S, Ma S, Huang X, Lu D, Zhou Y, Jiang H. Th22 cells are associated with hepatocellular carcinoma development and progression. Chin J Cancer Res. 2014;26(2):135–41.
36. Zhang L, Li YG, Li YH, Qi L, Liu XG, Yuan CZ, et al. Increased frequencies of Th22 cells as well as Th17 cells in the peripheral blood of patients with ankylosing spondylitis and rheumatoid arthritis. PLoS One. 2012;7(4):e31000.
37. Breitfeld D, Ohl L, Kremmer E, Ellwart J, Sallusto F, Lipp M, et al. Follicular B helper T cells express CXC chemokine receptor 5, localize to B cell follicles, and support immunoglobulin production. J Exp Med. 2000;192(11):1545–52.

38. Nakayamada S, Tanaka Y. T follicular helper (Tfh) cells in autoimmune diseases. Nihon Rinsho Meneki Gakkai Kaishi. 2016;39(1):1–7.
39. Workman CJ, Szymczak-Workman AL, Collison LW, Pillai MR, Vignali DAA. The development and function of regulatory T cells. Cell Mol Life Sci. 2009;66(16):2603–22.
40. Krummel MF, Bartumeus F, Gerard A. T cell migration, search strategies and mechanisms. Nat Rev Immunol. 2016;16(3):193–201.
41. Galon J, Costes A, Sanchez-Cabo F, Kirilovsky A, Mlecnik B, Lagorce-Pages C, et al. Type, density, and location of immune cells within human colorectal tumors predict clinical outcome. Science. 2006;313(5795):1960–4.
42. Menegaz RA, Michelin MA, Etchebehere RM, Fernandes PC, Murta EF. Peri- and intratumoral T and B lymphocytic infiltration in breast cancer. Eur J Gynaecol Oncol. 2008;29(4):321–6.
43. Marrogi AJ, Munshi A, Merogi AJ, Ohadike Y, El-Habashi A, Marrogi OL, et al. Study of tumor infiltrating lymphocytes and transforming growth factor-beta as prognostic factors in breast carcinoma. Int J Cancer. 1997;74(5):492–501.
44. Dieu-Nosjean MC, Antoine M, Danel C, Heudes D, Wislez M, Poulot V, et al. Long-term survival for patients with non-small-cell lung cancer with intratumoral lymphoid structures. J Clin Oncol. 2008;26(27):4410–7.
45. Al-Shibli KI, Donnem T, Al-Saad S, Persson M, Bremnes RM, Busund LT. Prognostic effect of epithelial and stromal lymphocyte infiltration in non-small cell lung cancer. Clin Cancer Res. 2008;14(16):5220–7.
46. Yu P, Fu YX. Tumor-infiltrating T lymphocytes: friends or foes? Lab Investig. 2006;86(3):231–45.
47. Hadrup S, Donia M, Thor Straten P. Effector CD4 and CD8 T cells and their role in the tumor microenvironment. Cancer Microenviron. 2013;6(2):123–33.
48. Lee S, Margolin K. Tumor-infiltrating lymphocytes in melanoma. Curr Oncol Rep. 2012;14(5):468–74.
49. Lizee G, Cantu MA, Hwu P. Less yin, more yang: confronting the barriers to cancer immunotherapy. Clin Cancer Res. 2007;13(18 Pt 1):5250–5.
50. Ralainirina N, Poli A, Michel T, Poos L, Andres E, Hentges F, et al. Control of NK cell functions by CD4+CD25+ regulatory T cells. J Leukoc Biol. 2007;81(1):144–53.
51. Haabeth OAW, Tveita AA, Fauskanger M, Schjesvold F, Lorvik KB, Hofgaard PO, et al. How do CD4(+) T cells detect and eliminate tumor cells that either lack or express MHC class II molecules? Front Immunol. 2014;5:174.
52. Muenst S, Laubli H, Soysal SD, Zippelius A, Tzankov A, Hoeller S. The immune system and cancer evasion strategies: therapeutic concepts. J Intern Med. 2016;279(6):541–62.
53. Chaudhary B, Elkord E. Regulatory T cells in the tumor microenvironment and cancer progression: role and therapeutic targeting. Vaccine. 2016;4(3):28.
54. Mahoney KM, Rennert PD, Freeman GJ. Combination cancer immunotherapy and new immunomodulatory targets. Nat Rev Drug Discov. 2015;14:561.
55. Coulie PG, Van den Eynde BJ, van der Bruggen P, Boon T. Tumour antigens recognized by T lymphocytes: at the core of cancer immunotherapy. Nat Rev Cancer. 2014;14(2):135–46.
56. Töpfer K, Kempe S, Müller N, Schmitz M, Bachmann M, Cartellieri M, et al. Tumor evasion from T cell surveillance. J Biomed Biotechnol. 2011;2011:19.
57. Hodi FS, O'Day SJ, McDermott DF, Weber RW, Sosman JA, Haanen JB. Improved survival with ipilimumab in patients with metastatic melanoma. N Engl J Med. 2010;363:711.
58. Wolchok JD, Kluger H, Callahan MK, Postow MA, Rizvi NA, Lesokhin AM. Nivolumab plus ipilimumab in advanced melanoma. N Engl J Med. 2013;369:122.
59. Schachter J, Ribas A, Long GV, Arance A, Grob JJ, Mortier L, et al. Pembrolizumab versus ipilimumab for advanced melanoma: final overall survival results of a multicentre, randomised, open-label phase 3 study (KEYNOTE-006). Lancet. 2017;390(10105):1853–62.
60. Curiel TJ, Coukos G, Zou L, Alvarez X, Cheng P, Mottram P, et al. Specific recruitment of regulatory T cells in ovarian carcinoma fosters immune privilege and predicts reduced survival. Nat Med. 2004;10(9):942–9.
61. Dobrzanski M. Expanding roles for CD4 T cells and their subpopulations in tumor immunity and therapy. Front Oncol. 2013;3:63.
62. Nishimura T, Nakui M, Sato M, Iwakabe K, Kitamura H, Sekimoto M, et al. The critical role of Th1-dominant immunity in tumor immunology. Cancer Chemother Pharmacol. 2000;46(Suppl):S52–61.
63. Haabeth OA, Lorvik KB, Hammarstrom C, Donaldson IM, Haraldsen G, Bogen B, et al. Inflammation driven by tumour-specific Th1 cells protects against B-cell cancer. Nat Commun. 2011;2:240.
64. Lindahl P, Gresser I, Leary P, Tovey M. Interferon treatment of mice: enhanced expression of histocompatibility antigens on lymphoid cells. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 1976;73(4):1284–7.
65. Gidlund M, Orn A, Wigzell H, Senik A, Gresser I. Enhanced NK cell activity in mice injected with interferon and interferon inducers. Nature. 1978;273(5665):759–61.
66. Biron CA, Sonnenfeld G, Welsh RM. Interferon induces natural killer cell blastogenesis in vivo. J Leukoc Biol. 1984;35(1):31–7.
67. LaCasse CJ, Janikashvili N, Larmonier CB, Alizadeh D, Hanke N, Kartchner J, et al. T helper-1 lymphocytes induce dendritic cell tumor killing activity by an interferon-γ-dependent mechanism. J Immunol. 2011;187(12):6310–7.
68. Corthay A, Skovseth DK, Lundin KU, Rosjo E, Omholt H, Hofgaard PO, et al. Primary antitumor immune response mediated by CD4+ T cells. Immunity. 2005;22(3):371–83.

69. Ossendorp F, Mengede E, Camps M, Filius R, Melief CJ. Specific T helper cell requirement for optimal induction of cytotoxic T lymphocytes against major histocompatibility complex class II negative tumors. J Exp Med. 1998;187(5):693–702.
70. Nishimura T, Iwakabe K, Sekimoto M, Ohmi Y, Yahata T, Nakui M, et al. Distinct role of antigen-specific T helper type 1 (Th1) and Th2 cells in tumor eradication in vivo. J Exp Med. 1999;190(5):617–27.
71. Billiau A. Interferon-gamma: biology and role in pathogenesis. Adv Immunol. 1996;62:61–130.
72. Parker BS, Rautela J, Hertzog PJ. Antitumour actions of interferons: implications for cancer therapy. Nat Rev Cancer. 2016;16(3):131–44.
73. Thakur A, Schalk D, Sarkar SH, Al-Khadimi Z, Sarkar FH, Lum LG. A Th1 cytokine–enriched microenvironment enhances tumor killing by activated T cells armed with bispecific antibodies and inhibits the development of myeloid-derived suppressor cells. Cancer Immunol Immunother. 2012;61(4):497–509.
74. Nagarsheth N, Wicha MS, Zou W. Chemokines in the cancer microenvironment and their relevance in cancer immunotherapy. Nat Rev Immunol. 2017;17(9):559–72.
75. Duan MC, Zhong XN, Liu GN, Wei JR. The Treg/Th17 paradigm in lung cancer. J Immunol Res. 2014;2014:730380.
76. Zhang W, Tian X, Mumtahana F, Jiao J, Zhang T, Croce KD, et al. The existence of Th22, pure Th17 and Th1 cells in CIN and Cervical Cancer along with their frequency variation in different stages of cervical cancer. BMC Cancer. 2015;15:717.
77. Tashnizi AH, Habibagahi M, Majidi J, Razmkhah M, Talei A, Ghaderi A, et al. Th1 and Th2 cytokine gene expression in the peripheral blood of breast cancer patients compared to controls. Middle East J Cancer. 2014;5(3):119–27.
78. Bahria-Sediki IB, Yousfi N, Paul C, Chebil M, Cherif M, Zermani R, et al. Clinical significance of T-bet, GATA-3, and Bcl-6 transcription factor expression in bladder carcinoma. J Transl Med. 2016;14:144.
79. Chen X, Wang J, Wang R, Su Q, Luan J, Huang H, et al. Th1-, Th2-, and Th17-associated cytokine expression in hypopharyngeal carcinoma and clinical significance. Eur Arch Otorhinolaryngol. 2016;273(2):431–8.
80. Gaur P, Singh AK, Shukla NK, Das SN. Inter-relation of Th1, Th2, Th17 and Treg cytokines in oral cancer patients and their clinical significance. Hum Immunol. 2014;75(4):330–7.
81. Tosolini M, Kirilovsky A, Mlecnik B, Fredriksen T, Mauger S, Bindea G, et al. Clinical impact of different classes of infiltrating T cytotoxic and helper cells (Th1, th2, treg, th17) in patients with colorectal cancer. Cancer Res. 2011;71(4):1263–71.
82. Ling A, Lundberg IV, Eklof V, Wikberg ML, Oberg A, Edin S, et al. The infiltration, and prognostic importance, of Th1 lymphocytes vary in molecular subgroups of colorectal cancer. J Pathol Clin Res. 2016;2(1):21–31.
83. Ladoire S, Arnould L, Mignot G, Apetoh L, Rebe C, Martin F, et al. T-bet expression in intratumoral lymphoid structures after neoadjuvant trastuzumab plus docetaxel for HER2-overexpressing breast carcinoma predicts survival. Br J Cancer. 2011;105(3):366–71.
84. Datta J, Fracol M, McMillan MT, Berk E, Xu S, Goodman N, et al. Association of depressed anti-HER2 T-helper type 1 response with recurrence in patients with completely treated HER2-positive breast cancer: role for immune monitoring. JAMA Oncol. 2016;2(2):242–6.
85. Sredni B, Tichler T, Shani A, Catane R, Kaufman B, Strassmann G, et al. Predominance of TH1 response in tumor-bearing mice and cancer patients treated with AS101. J Natl Cancer Inst. 1996;88(18):1276–84.
86. Perez-Figueroa E, Sanchez-Cuaxospa M, Martinez-Soto KA, Sanchez-Zauco N, Medina-Sanson A, Jimenez-Hernandez E, et al. Strong inflammatory response and Th1-polarization profile in children with acute lymphoblastic leukemia without apparent infection. Oncol Rep. 2016;35(5):2699–706.
87. Chen P, Wang M, Li D, Jia Y, He N, Li W, et al. The alteration and clinical significance of Th22/Th17/Th1 cells in patients with chronic myeloid leukemia. J Immunol Res. 2015;2015:12.
88. Han Y, Ye A, Bi L, Wu J, Yu K, Zhang S. Th17 cells and interleukin-17 increase with poor prognosis in patients with acute myeloid leukemia. Cancer Sci. 2014;105(8):933–42.
89. Conticello C, Pedini F, Zeuner A, Patti M, Zerilli M, Stassi G, et al. IL-4 protects tumor cells from anti-CD95 and chemotherapeutic agents via up-regulation of antiapoptotic proteins. J Immunol. 2004;172(9):5467–77.
90. Levings MK, Sangregorio R, Galbiati F, Squadrone S, de Waal MR, Roncarolo MG. IFN-alpha and IL-10 induce the differentiation of human type 1 T regulatory cells. J Immunol. 2001;166(9):5530–9.
91. Pericle F, Giovarelli M, Colombo MP, Ferrari G, Musiani P, Modesti A, et al. An efficient Th2-type memory follows CD8+ lymphocyte-driven and eosinophil-mediated rejection of a spontaneous mouse mammary adenocarcinoma engineered to release IL-4. J Immunol. 1994;153(12):5659–73.
92. Tepper RI, Coffman RL, Leder P. An eosinophil-dependent mechanism for the antitumor effect of interleukin-4. Science. 1992;257(5069):548–51.
93. Modesti A, Masuelli L, Modica A, D'Orazi G, Scarpa S, Bosco MC, et al. Ultrastructural evidence of the mechanisms responsible for interleukin-4-activated rejection of a spontaneous murine adenocarcinoma. Int J Cancer. 1993;53(6):988–93.
94. Ma HL, Whitters MJ, Jacobson BA, Donaldson DD, Collins M, Dunussi-Joannopoulos K. Tumor cells secreting IL-13 but not IL-13Ralpha2 fusion protein have reduced tumorigenicity in vivo. Int Immunol. 2004;16(7):1009–17.
95. Lebel-Binay S, Laguerre B, Quintin-Colonna F, Conjeaud H, Magazin M, Miloux B, et al.

Experimental gene therapy of cancer using tumor cells engineered to secrete interleukin-13. Eur J Immunol. 1995;25(8):2340–8.
96. Terabe M, Matsui S, Noben-Trauth N, Chen H, Watson C, Donaldson DD, et al. NKT cell-mediated repression of tumor immunosurveillance by IL-13 and the IL-4R-STAT6 pathway. Nat Immunol. 2000;1(6):515–20.
97. Ellyard JI, Simson L, Parish CR. Th2-mediated anti-tumour immunity: friend or foe? Tissue Antigens. 2007;70(1):1–11.
98. Li L, Yang C, Zhao Z, Xu B, Zheng M, Zhang C, et al. Skewed T-helper (Th)1/2- and Th17/T regulatory-cell balances in patients with renal cell carcinoma. Mol Med Rep. 2015;11(2):947–53.
99. Sharma A, Rajappa M, Satyam A, Sharma M. Cytokines (TH1 and TH2) in patients with advanced cervical cancer undergoing neoadjuvant chemoradiation: correlation with treatment response. Int J Gynecol Cancer. 2009;19(7):1269–75.
100. De Monte L, Reni M, Tassi E, Clavenna D, Papa I, Recalde H, et al. Intratumor T helper type 2 cell infiltrate correlates with cancer-associated fibroblast thymic stromal lymphopoietin production and reduced survival in pancreatic cancer. J Exp Med. 2011;208(3):469–78.
101. Podhorecka M, Dmoszynska A, Rolinski J, Wasik E. T type 1/type 2 subsets balance in B-cell chronic lymphocytic leukemia—the three-color flow cytometry analysis. Leuk Res. 2002;26(7):657–60.
102. Stachel D, Albert M, Meilbeck R, Kreutzer B, Haas RJ, Schmid I. Bone marrow Th2 cytokine expression as predictor for relapse in childhood acute lymphoblastic leukemia (ALL). Eur J Med Res. 2006;11(3):102–13.
103. Kiani A, Habermann I, Schake K, Neubauer A, Rogge L, Ehninger G. Normal intrinsic Th1/Th2 balance in patients with chronic phase chronic myeloid leukemia not treated with interferon-alpha or imatinib. Haematologica. 2003;88(7):754–61.
104. Tabarkiewicz J, Pogoda K, Karczmarczyk A, Pozarowski P, Giannopoulos K. The role of IL-17 and Th17 lymphocytes in autoimmune diseases. Arch Immunol Ther Exp. 2015;63:435–49.
105. Young MRI. Th17 cells in protection from tumor or promotion of tumor progression. J Clin Cell Immunol. 2016;7(3):431.
106. Zou W, Restifo NP. T(H)17 cells in tumour immunity and immunotherapy. Nat Rev Immunol. 2010;10(4):248–56.
107. Ye J, Livergood RS, Peng G. The role and regulation of human Th17 cells in tumor immunity. Am J Pathol. 2013;182(1):10–20.
108. Wang L, Yi T, Kortylewski M, Pardoll DM, Zeng D, Yu H. IL-17 can promote tumor growth through an IL-6-Stat3 signaling pathway. J Exp Med. 2009;206(7):1457–64.
109. Shaobin W, Yu X, Jiatian L, Zaizhong C, Luping D, Junhui C. Changes of CD4+ T-cell subsets after radiofrequency ablation in lung cancer and its significance. J Cancer Res Ther. 2016;12(Supplement):C166–70.
110. Tang WJ, Tao L, Lu LM, Tang D, Shi XL. Role of T helper 17 cytokines in the tumour immune inflammation response of patients with laryngeal squamous cell carcinoma. Oncol Lett. 2017;14(1):561–8.
111. Yamada Y, Saito H, Ikeguchi M. Prevalence and clinical relevance of Th17 cells in patients with gastric cancer. J Surg Res. 2012;178(2):685–91.
112. Cantini G, Pisati F, Mastropietro A, Frattini V, Iwakura Y, Finocchiaro G, et al. A critical role for regulatory T cells in driving cytokine profiles of Th17 cells and their modulation of glioma microenvironment. Cancer Immunol Immunother. 2011;60(12):1739–50.
113. Wainwright DA, Sengupta S, Han Y, Ulasov IV, Lesniak MS. The presence of IL-17A and T helper 17 cells in experimental mouse brain tumors and human glioma. PLoS One. 2010;5(10):e15390.
114. Attig S, Hennenlotter J, Pawelec G, Klein G, Koch SD, Pircher H, et al. Simultaneous infiltration of polyfunctional effector and suppressor T cells into renal cell carcinomas. Cancer Res. 2009;69(21):8412–9.
115. Yang L, Qi Y, Hu J, Tang L, Zhao S, Shan B. Expression of Th17 cells in breast cancer tissue and its association with clinical parameters. Cell Biochem Biophys. 2012;62(1):153–9.
116. Kesselring R, Thiel A, Pries R, Trenkle T, Wollenberg B. Human Th17 cells can be induced through head and neck cancer and have a functional impact on HNSCC development. Br J Cancer. 2010;103(8):1245–54.
117. Liu J, Duan Y, Cheng X, Chen X, Xie W, Long H, et al. IL-17 is associated with poor prognosis and promotes angiogenesis via stimulating VEGF production of cancer cells in colorectal carcinoma. Biochem Biophys Res Commun. 2011;407(2):348–54.
118. Iida T, Iwahashi M, Katsuda M, Ishida K, Nakamori M, Nakamura M, et al. Tumor-infiltrating CD4+ Th17 cells produce IL-17 in tumor microenvironment and promote tumor progression in human gastric cancer. Oncol Rep. 2011;25(5):1271–7.
119. Cui G, Yang H, Zhao J, Yuan A, Florholmen J. Elevated proinflammatory cytokine IL-17A in the adjacent tissues along the adenoma-carcinoma sequence. Pathol Oncol Res. 2015;21(1):139–46.
120. Radosavljevic G, Ljujic B, Jovanovic I, Srzentic Z, Pavlovic S, Zdravkovic N, et al. Interleukin-17 may be a valuable serum tumor marker in patients with colorectal carcinoma. Neoplasma. 2010;57(2):135–44.
121. Qi W, Huang X, Wang J. Correlation between Th17 cells and tumor microenvironment. Cell Immunol. 2013;285(1–2):18–22.
122. Munn DH. Th17 cells in ovarian cancer. Blood. 2009;114(6):1134–5.
123. Muranski P, Boni A, Antony PA, Cassard L, Irvine KR, Kaiser A, et al. Tumor-specific Th17-polarized cells eradicate large established melanoma. Blood. 2008;112(2):362–73.

124. Zhang JP, Yan J, Xu J, Pang XH, Chen MS, Li L, et al. Increased intratumoral IL-17-producing cells correlate with poor survival in hepatocellular carcinoma patients. J Hepatol. 2009;50(5):980–9.
125. Zhang B, Rong G, Wei H, Zhang M, Bi J, Ma L, et al. The prevalence of Th17 cells in patients with gastric cancer. Biochem Biophys Res Commun. 2008;374(3):533–7.
126. Wang J, Xu K, Wu J, Luo C, Li Y, Wu X, et al. The changes of Th17 cells and the related cytokines in the progression of human colorectal cancers. BMC Cancer. 2012;12:418.
127. Su X, Ye J, Hsueh EC, Zhang Y, Hoft DF, Peng G. Tumor microenvironments direct the recruitment and expansion of human Th17 cells. J Immunol. 2010;184(3):1630–41.
128. Prabhala RH, Pelluru D, Fulciniti M, Prabhala HK, Nanjappa P, Song W, et al. Elevated IL-17 produced by TH17 cells promotes myeloma cell growth and inhibits immune function in multiple myeloma. Blood. 2010;115(26):5385–92.
129. Yu S, Liu C, Zhang L, Shan B, Tian T, Hu Y, et al. Elevated Th22 cells correlated with Th17 cells in peripheral blood of patients with acute myeloid leukemia. Int J Mol Sci. 2014;15(2):1927–45.
130. Wu C, Wang S, Wang F, Chen Q, Peng S, Zhang Y, et al. Increased frequencies of T helper type 17 cells in the peripheral blood of patients with acute myeloid leukaemia. Clin Exp Immunol. 2009;158(2):199–204.
131. Tian T, Yu S, Wang M, Yuan C, Zhang H, Ji C, et al. Aberrant T helper 17 cells and related cytokines in bone marrow microenvironment of patients with acute myeloid leukemia. Clin Dev Immunol. 2013;2013:915873.
132. Yang ZZ, Novak AJ, Ziesmer SC, Witzig TE, Ansell SM. Malignant B cells skew the balance of regulatory T cells and TH17 cells in B-cell non-Hodgkin's lymphoma. Cancer Res. 2009;69(13):5522–30.
133. Hus I, Bojarska-Junak A, Chocholska S, Tomczak W, Wos J, Dmoszynska A, et al. Th17/IL-17A might play a protective role in chronic lymphocytic leukemia immunity. PLoS One. 2013;8(11):e78091.
134. Jain P, Javdan M, Feger FK, Chiu PY, Sison C, Damle RN, et al. Th17 and non-Th17 interleukin-17-expressing cells in chronic lymphocytic leukemia: delineation, distribution, and clinical relevance. Haematologica. 2012;97(4):599–607.
135. Chen P, Wang M, Li D, Jia Y, He N, Li W, et al. The alteration and clinical significance of Th22/Th17/Th1 cells in patients with chronic myeloid leukemia. J Immunol Res. 2015;2015:416123.
136. Fischer M, Bijman M, Molin D, Cormont F, Uyttenhove C, van Snick J, et al. Increased serum levels of interleukin-9 correlate to negative prognostic factors in Hodgkin's lymphoma. Leukemia. 2003;17(12):2513–6.
137. Elyaman W, Bradshaw EM, Uyttenhove C, Dardalhon V, Awasthi A, Imitola J, et al. IL-9 induces differentiation of TH17 cells and enhances function of FoxP3+ natural regulatory T cells. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2009;106(31):12885–90.
138. Hoelzinger DB, Dominguez AL, Cohen PA, Gendler SJ. Inhibition of adaptive immunity by IL9 can be disrupted to achieve rapid T-cell sensitization and rejection of progressive tumor challenges. Cancer Res. 2014;74(23):6845–55.
139. Rivera Vargas T, Humblin E, Végran F, Ghiringhelli F, Apetoh L. T(H)9 cells in anti-tumor immunity. Semin Immunopathol. 2017;39(1):39–46.
140. Purwar R, Schlapbach C, Xiao S, Kang HS, Elyaman W, Jiang X, et al. Robust tumor immunity to melanoma mediated by interleukin-9-producing T cells. Nat Med. 2012;18(8):1248–53.
141. Eller K, Wolf D, Huber JM, Metz M, Mayer G, McKenzie AN, et al. IL-9 production by regulatory T cells recruits mast cells that are essential for regulatory T cell-induced immune suppression. J Immunol. 2011;186(1):83–91.
142. Nonomura Y, Otsuka A, Nakashima C, Seidel JA, Kitoh A, Dainichi T, et al. Peripheral blood Th9 cells are a possible pharmacodynamic biomarker of nivolumab treatment efficacy in metastatic melanoma patients. Oncoimmunology. 2016;5(12):e1248327.
143. Lu Y, Hong S, Li H, Park J, Hong B, Wang L, et al. Th9 cells promote antitumor immune responses in vivo. J Clin Invest. 2012;122(11):4160–71.
144. Vegran F, Berger H, Boidot R, Mignot G, Bruchard M, Dosset M, et al. The transcription factor IRF1 dictates the IL-21-dependent anticancer functions of TH9 cells. Nat Immunol. 2014;15(8):758–66.
145. Park J, Li H, Zhang M, Lu Y, Hong B, Zheng Y, et al. Murine Th9 cells promote the survival of myeloid dendritic cells in cancer immunotherapy. Cancer Immunol Immunother. 2014;63(8):835–45.
146. Ye ZJ, Zhou Q, Yin W, Yuan ML, Yang WB, Xiong XZ, et al. Differentiation and immune regulation of IL-9-producing CD4+ T cells in malignant pleural effusion. Am J Respir Crit Care Med. 2012;186(11):1168–79.
147. Tan H, Wang S, Zhao L. A tumour-promoting role of Th9 cells in hepatocellular carcinoma through CCL20 and STAT3 pathways. Clin Exp Pharmacol Physiol. 2017;44(2):213–21.
148. Trifari S, Kaplan CD, Tran EH, Crellin NK, Spits H. Identification of a human helper T cell population that has abundant production of interleukin 22 and is distinct from T(H)-17, T(H)1 and T(H)2 cells. Nat Immunol. 2009;10(8):864–71.
149. Duhen T, Geiger R, Jarrossay D, Lanzavecchia A, Sallusto F. Production of interleukin 22 but not interleukin 17 by a subset of human skin-homing memory T cells. Nat Immunol. 2009;10(8):857–63.
150. Kagami S, Rizzo HL, Lee JJ, Koguchi Y, Blauvelt A. Circulating Th17, Th22, and Th1 cells are increased in psoriasis. J Invest Dermatol. 2010;130(5):1373–83.
151. Zhang L, Li JM, Liu XG, Ma DX, Hu NW, Li YG, et al. Elevated Th22 cells correlated with Th17

cells in patients with rheumatoid arthritis. J Clin Immunol. 2011;31(4):606–14.
152. Curd LM, Favors SE, Gregg RK. Pro-tumour activity of interleukin-22 in HPAFII human pancreatic cancer cells. Clin Exp Immunol. 2012;168(2):192–9.
153. Jiang R, Tan Z, Deng L, Chen Y, Xia Y, Gao Y, et al. Interleukin-22 promotes human hepatocellular carcinoma by activation of STAT3. Hepatology. 2011;54(3):900–9.
154. Jiang R, Wang H, Deng L, Hou J, Shi R, Yao M, et al. IL-22 is related to development of human colon cancer by activation of STAT3. BMC Cancer. 2013;13:59.
155. Kobold S, Volk S, Clauditz T, Kupper NJ, Minner S, Tufman A, et al. Interleukin-22 is frequently expressed in small- and large-cell lung cancer and promotes growth in chemotherapy-resistant cancer cells. J Thorac Oncol. 2013;8(8):1032–42.
156. Wen Z, Liao Q, Zhao J, Hu Y, You L, Lu Z, et al. High expression of interleukin-22 and its receptor predicts poor prognosis in pancreatic ductal adenocarcinoma. Ann Surg Oncol. 2014;21(1):125–32.
157. Kim MJ, Jang JW, Oh BS, Kwon JH, Chung KW, Jung HS, et al. Change in inflammatory cytokine profiles after transarterial chemotherapy in patients with hepatocellular carcinoma. Cytokine. 2013;64(2):516–22.
158. Sun D, Lin Y, Hong J, Chen H, Nagarsheth N, Peng D, et al. Th22 cells control colon tumorigenesis through STAT3 and Polycomb Repression complex 2 signaling. Oncoimmunology. 2016;5(8):e1082704.
159. Zhuang Y, Peng LS, Zhao YL, Shi Y, Mao XH, Guo G, et al. Increased intratumoral IL-22-producing CD4(+) T cells and Th22 cells correlate with gastric cancer progression and predict poor patient survival. Cancer Immunol Immunother. 2012;61(11):1965–75.
160. Huang YH, Cao YF, Jiang ZY, Zhang S, Gao F. Th22 cell accumulation is associated with colorectal cancer development. World J Gastroenterol. 2015;21(14):4216–24.
161. Ling L, Zhao P, Yan G, Chen M, Zhang T, Wang L, et al. The frequency of Th17 and Th22 cells in patients with colorectal cancer at pre-operation and post-operation. Immunol Investig. 2015;44(1):56–69.
162. Wang T, Zhang Z, Xing H, Wang L, Zhang G, Yu N, et al. Elevated Th22 cells and related cytokines in patients with epithelial ovarian cancer. Medicine. 2017;96(43):e8359.
163. Niccolai E, Taddei A, Ricci F, Rolla S, D'Elios MM, Benagiano M, et al. Intra-tumoral IFN-gamma-producing Th22 cells correlate with TNM staging and the worst outcomes in pancreatic cancer. Clin Sci. 2016;130(4):247–58.
164. Tian T, Sun Y, Li M, He N, Yuan C, Yu S, et al. Increased Th22 cells as well as Th17 cells in patients with adult T-cell acute lymphoblastic leukemia. Clin Chim Acta. 2013;426:108–13.
165. Lu T, Liu Y, Yu S, Yin C, Li P, Ye J, et al. Increased frequency of circulating Th22 cells in patients with B-cell non-Hodgkin's lymphoma. Oncotarget. 2016;7(35):56574–83.
166. Wang M, Chen P, Jia Y, He N, Li D, Ji C, et al. Elevated Th22 as well as Th17 cells associated with therapeutic outcome and clinical stage are potential targets in patients with multiple myeloma. Oncotarget. 2015;6(20):17958–67.
167. Di Lullo G, Marcatti M, Heltai S, Brunetto E, Tresoldi C, Bondanza A, et al. Th22 cells increase in poor prognosis multiple myeloma and promote tumor cell growth and survival. Oncoimmunology. 2015;4(5):e1005460.
168. Santegoets SJ, Turksma AW, Powell DJ Jr, Hooijberg E, de Gruijl TD. IL-21 in cancer immunotherapy: at the right place at the right time. Oncoimmunology. 2013;2(6):e24522.
169. Jia Y, Zeng Z, Li Y, Li Z, Jin L, Zhang Z, et al. Impaired function of CD4+ T follicular helper (Tfh) cells associated with hepatocellular carcinoma progression. PLoS One. 2015;10(2):e0117458.
170. Zhu S, Lin J, Qiao G, Wang X, Xu Y. Tim-3 identifies exhausted follicular helper T cells in breast cancer patients. Immunobiology. 2016;221(9):986–93.
171. Gu-Trantien C, Loi S, Garaud S, Equeter C, Libin M, de Wind A, et al. CD4(+) follicular helper T cell infiltration predicts breast cancer survival. J Clin Invest. 2013;123(7):2873–92.
172. Ma QY, Huang DY, Zhang HJ, Chen J, Miller W, Chen XF. Function of follicular helper T cell is impaired and correlates with survival time in non-small cell lung cancer. Int Immunopharmacol. 2016;41:1–7.
173. Tan J, Jin X, Zhao R, Wei X, Liu Y, Kong X. Beneficial effect of T follicular helper cells on antibody class switching of B cells in prostate cancer. Oncol Rep. 2015;33(3):1512–8.
174. Cha Z, Guo H, Tu X, Zang Y, Gu H, Song H, et al. Alterations of circulating follicular helper T cells and interleukin 21 in diffuse large B-cell lymphoma. Tumour Biol. 2014;35(8):7541–6.
175. Ahearne MJ, Willimott S, Pinon L, Kennedy DB, Miall F, Dyer MJ, et al. Enhancement of CD154/IL4 proliferation by the T follicular helper (Tfh) cytokine, IL21 and increased numbers of circulating cells resembling Tfh cells in chronic lymphocytic leukaemia. Br J Haematol. 2013;162(3):360–70.
176. Jacobs JF, Nierkens S, Figdor CG, de Vries IJ, Adema GJ. Regulatory T cells in melanoma: the final hurdle towards effective immunotherapy? Lancet Oncol. 2012;13(1):e32–42.
177. Povoleri GAM, Scottà C, Nova-Lamperti EA, John S, Lombardi G, Afzali B. Thymic versus induced regulatory T cells—who regulates the regulators? Front Immunol. 2013;4:169.
178. Caridade M, Graca L, Ribeiro RM. Mechanisms underlying CD4+ Treg immune regulation in the adult: from experiments to models. Front Immunol. 2013;4:378.
179. Ormandy LA, Hillemann T, Wedemeyer H, Manns MP, Greten TF, Korangy F. Increased popula-

tions of regulatory T cells in peripheral blood of patients with hepatocellular carcinoma. Cancer Res. 2005;65(6):2457–64.
180. Schaefer C, Kim GG, Albers A, Hoermann K, Myers EN, Whiteside TL. Characteristics of CD4+CD25+ regulatory T cells in the peripheral circulation of patients with head and neck cancer. Br J Cancer. 2005;92(5):913–20.
181. Wolf AM, Wolf D, Steurer M, Gastl G, Gunsilius E, Grubeck-Loebenstein B. Increase of regulatory T cells in the peripheral blood of cancer patients. Clin Cancer Res. 2003;9(2):606–12.
182. Liyanage UK, Moore TT, Joo HG, Tanaka Y, Herrmann V, Doherty G, et al. Prevalence of regulatory T cells is increased in peripheral blood and tumor microenvironment of patients with pancreas or breast adenocarcinoma. J Immunol. 2002;169(5):2756–61.
183. Hashimoto H, Ueda R, Narumi K, Heike Y, Yoshida T, Aoki K. Type I IFN gene delivery suppresses regulatory T cells within tumors. Cancer Gene Ther. 2014;21(12):532–41.
184. Liotta F, Gacci M, Frosali F, Querci V, Vittori G, Lapini A, et al. Frequency of regulatory T cells in peripheral blood and in tumour-infiltrating lymphocytes correlates with poor prognosis in renal cell carcinoma. BJU Int. 2011;107(9):1500–6.
185. Ladoire S, Arnould L, Apetoh L, Coudert B, Martin F, Chauffert B, et al. Pathologic complete response to neoadjuvant chemotherapy of breast carcinoma is associated with the disappearance of tumor-infiltrating foxp3+ regulatory T cells. Clin Cancer Res. 2008;14(8):2413–20.
186. Merlo A, Casalini P, Carcangiu ML, Malventano C, Triulzi T, Menard S, et al. FOXP3 expression and overall survival in breast cancer. J Clin Oncol. 2009;27(11):1746–52.
187. Adams SF, Levine DA, Cadungog MG, Hammond R, Facciabene A, Olvera N, et al. Intraepithelial T cells and tumor proliferation: impact on the benefit from surgical cytoreduction in advanced serous ovarian cancer. Cancer. 2009;115(13):2891–902.
188. Siddiqui SA, Frigola X, Bonne-Annee S, Mercader M, Kuntz SM, Krambeck AE, et al. Tumor-infiltrating Foxp3-CD4+CD25+ T cells predict poor survival in renal cell carcinoma. Clin Cancer Res. 2007;13(7):2075–81.
189. Beyer M, Kochanek M, Darabi K, Popov A, Jensen M, Endl E, et al. Reduced frequencies and suppressive function of CD4+CD25hi regulatory T cells in patients with chronic lymphocytic leukemia after therapy with fludarabine. Blood. 2005;106(6):2018–25.
190. Giannopoulos K, Schmitt M, Kowal M, Wlasiuk P, Bojarska-Junak A, Chen J, et al. Characterization of regulatory T cells in patients with B-cell chronic lymphocytic leukemia. Oncol Rep. 2008;20(3):677–82.
191. Giannopoulos K, Schmitt M, Wlasiuk P, Chen J, Bojarska-Junak A, Kowal M, et al. The high frequency of T regulatory cells in patients with B-cell chronic lymphocytic leukemia is diminished through treatment with thalidomide. Leukemia. 2008;22(1):222–4.
192. Jadidi-Niaragh F, Ghalamfarsa G, Memarian A, Asgarian-Omran H, Razavi SM, Sarrafnejad A, et al. Downregulation of IL-17-producing T cells is associated with regulatory T cell expansion and disease progression in chronic lymphocytic leukemia. Tumour Biol. 2013;34(2):929–40.
193. Yang W, Xu Y. Clinical significance of Treg cell frequency in acute myeloid leukemia. Int J Hematol. 2013;98(5):558–62.
194. Idris SZ, Hassan N, Lee LJ, Md Noor S, Osman R, Abdul-Jalil M, et al. Increased regulatory T cells in acute lymphoblastic leukaemia patients. Hematology. 2016;21(4):206–12.
195. Zahran AM, Badrawy H, Ibrahim A. Prognostic value of regulatory T cells in newly diagnosed chronic myeloid leukemia patients. Int J Clin Oncol. 2014;19(4):753–60.
196. June CH, Warshauer JT, Bluestone JA. Is autoimmunity the Achilles' heel of cancer immunotherapy? Nat Med. 2017;23(5):540–7.
197. Houot R, Schultz LM, Marabelle A, Kohrt H. T-cell-based immunotherapy: adoptive cell transfer and checkpoint inhibition. Cancer Immunol Res. 2015;3(10):1115–22.
198. Xu HM. Th1 cytokine-based immunotherapy for cancer. Hepatobiliary Pancreat Dis Int. 2014;13(5):482–94.
199. Ito R, Takahashi T, Katano I, Ito M. Current advances in humanized mouse models. Cell Mol Immunol. 2012;9:208.
200. Abken H. Driving CARs on the highway to solid cancer: some considerations on the adoptive therapy with CAR T cells. Hum Gene Ther. 2017;28:1047.
201. Taylor NA, Vick SC, Iglesia MD, Brickey WJ, Midkiff BR, McKinnon KP, et al. Treg depletion potentiates checkpoint inhibition in claudin-low breast cancer. J Clin Invest. 2017;127(9):3472–83.
202. Fisher SA, Aston WJ, Chee J, Khong A, Cleaver AL, Solin JN, et al. Transient Treg depletion enhances therapeutic anti-cancer vaccination. Immun Inflamm Dis. 2017;5(1):16–28.
203. Mattarollo SR, Steegh K, Li M, Duret H, Foong Ngiow S, Smyth MJ. Transient Foxp3+ regulatory T-cell depletion enhances therapeutic anticancer vaccination targeting the immune-stimulatory properties of NKT cells. Immunol Cell Biol. 2013;91(1):105–14.
204. Viehl CT, Moore TT, Liyanage UK, Frey DM, Ehlers JP, Eberlein TJ, et al. Depletion of CD4+CD25+ regulatory T cells promotes a tumor-specific immune response in pancreas cancer–bearing mice. Ann Surg Oncol. 2006;13(9):1252–8.
205. Nishikawa H, Sakaguchi S. Regulatory T cells in tumor immunity. Int J Cancer. 2010;127(4):759–67.
206. De Simone M, Arrigoni A, Rossetti G, Gruarin P, Ranzani V, Politano C, et al. Transcriptional

landscape of human tissue lymphocytes unveils uniqueness of tumor-infiltrating T regulatory cells. Immunity. 2016;45(5):1135–47.
207. Brunet JF, Denizot F, Luciani MF, Roux-Dosseto M, Suzan M, Mattei MG, et al. A new member of the immunoglobulin superfamily—CTLA-4. Nature. 1987;328(6127):267–70.
208. Hodi FS, O'Day SJ, McDermott DF, Weber RW, Sosman JA, Haanen JB, et al. Improved survival with ipilimumab in patients with metastatic melanoma. N Engl J Med. 2010;363(8):711–23.
209. Ghiotto M, Gauthier L, Serriari N, Pastor S, Truneh A, Nunes JA, et al. PD-L1 and PD-L2 differ in their molecular mechanisms of interaction with PD-1. Int Immunol. 2010;22(8):651–60.
210. van den Eertwegh AJ, Versluis J, van den Berg HP, Santegoets SJ, van Moorselaar RJ, van der Sluis TM, et al. Combined immunotherapy with granulocyte-macrophage colony-stimulating factor-transduced allogeneic prostate cancer cells and ipilimumab in patients with metastatic castration-resistant prostate cancer: a phase 1 dose-escalation trial. Lancet Oncol. 2012;13(5):509–17.
211. Yang JC, Hughes M, Kammula U, Royal R, Sherry RM, Topalian SL, et al. Ipilimumab (anti-CTLA4 antibody) causes regression of metastatic renal cell cancer associated with enteritis and hypophysitis. J Immunother. 2007;30(8):825–30.
212. Rizvi NA, Mazieres J, Planchard D, Stinchcombe TE, Dy GK, Antonia SJ, et al. Activity and safety of nivolumab, an anti-PD-1 immune checkpoint inhibitor, for patients with advanced, refractory squamous non-small-cell lung cancer (CheckMate 063): a phase 2, single-arm trial. Lancet Oncol. 2015;16(3):257–65.
213. Markham A. Atezolizumab: first global approval. Drugs. 2016;76(12):1227–32.
214. Gaillard SL, Secord AA, Monk B. The role of immune checkpoint inhibition in the treatment of ovarian cancer. Gynecol Oncol Res Pract. 2016;3(1):11.
215. Larkin J, Chiarion-Sileni V, Gonzalez R, Grob JJ, Cowey CL, Lao CD, et al. Combined nivolumab and ipilimumab or monotherapy in untreated melanoma. N Engl J Med. 2015;373(1):23–34.
216. Wolchok JD, Chiarion-Sileni V, Gonzalez R, Rutkowski P, Grob J-J, Cowey CL, et al. Overall survival with combined nivolumab and ipilimumab in advanced melanoma. N Engl J Med. 2017;377:1345.
217. Hammers HJ, Plimack ER, Infante JR, Rini BI, McDermott DF, Lewis LD, et al. Safety and efficacy of nivolumab in combination with ipilimumab in metastatic renal cell carcinoma: the CheckMate 016 study. J Clin Oncol. 2017;35:3851.
218. Deng J, Le Mercier I, Kuta A, Noelle RJ. A New VISTA on combination therapy for negative checkpoint regulator blockade. J Immunother Cancer. 2016;4(1):86.
219. Dutcher JP, Creekmore S, Weiss GR, Margolin K, Markowitz AB, Roper M, et al. A phase II study of interleukin-2 and lymphokine-activated killer cells in patients with metastatic malignant melanoma. J Clin Oncol. 1989;7(4):477–85.
220. Kirkwood JM, Ernstoff MS. Interferons in the treatment of human cancer. J Clin Oncol. 1984;2(4):336–52.
221. Lee S, Margolin K. Cytokines in cancer immunotherapy. Cancers. 2011;3(4):3856–93.
222. Ardolino M, Azimi CS, Iannello A, Trevino TN, Horan L, Zhang L, et al. Cytokine therapy reverses NK cell anergy in MHC-deficient tumors. J Clin Invest. 2014;124(11):4781–94.
223. Schumacher TN, Schreiber RD. Neoantigens in cancer immunotherapy. Science. 2015;348 (6230):69–74.
224. Zhao Y, Chu X, Chen J, Wang Y, Gao S, Jiang Y, et al. Dectin-1-activated dendritic cells trigger potent antitumour immunity through the induction of Th9 cells. Nat Commun. 2016;7:12368.
225. Turnis ME, Sawant DV, Szymczak-Workman AL, Andrews LP, Delgoffe GM, Yano H, et al. Interleukin-35 limits anti-tumor immunity. Immunity. 2016;44(2):316–29.
226. Guo Y, Xu F, Lu T, Duan Z, Zhang Z. Interleukin-6 signaling pathway in targeted therapy for cancer. Cancer Treat Rev. 2012;38(7):904–10.

Regulatory T-Cells and Th17 Cells in Tumor Microenvironment

6

Chang H. Kim

Contents

6.1 Introduction

Organs and tissues in the body are highly heterogeneous in producing tissue factors that affect the development and maintenance of immune cells. In general, the tissues in the body maintain highly tolerogenic conditions. This is important to prevent unwanted autoimmune or inflammatory responses to harmless antigens and immune stimulants. Tumors, formed in tolerogenic tissue environments, are naturally hypo-immunogenic and utilize a number of mechanisms to actively suppress the generation of effector T-cells [1, 2]. Tumors maintain tolerogenic environments to avoid anti-tumor immune responses. Tolerogenic tumors harbor high numbers of FoxP3$^+$ T-cells (commonly called Tregs). Despite the tolerogenic nature of the tumor microenvironment, tumors variably produce many factors that affect T-cell differentiation and maintenance. The numbers of effector T-cell populations in tumors are highly variable. Certain cancers are associated with chronic inflammatory conditions [3]. For example, cancers formed in certain tissues, such as the intestine and in patients with chronic infection, are exposed to microbes, which can form inflammatory conditions in tumors. Cancers formed under these conditions would be heavily influenced by inflammatory conditions. Necrotic tumor cells also induce inflammation through damage-associated molecular pattern (DAMP) receptors such as TLR2, TLR4, and the receptor for advanced glycation end products (RAGE) [4]. In addition, necrtotic cells in tumor microenvironments can generate Adenosine Triphosphate (ATP) and Nicotinamide Adenine Dinucleotide (NAD), which not only trigger the activation of purinergic receptors expressed

C. H. Kim (✉)
Laboratory of Immunology and Hematopoiesis, Department of Pathology, Michigan Medicine, Mary H. Weiser Food Allergy Center, University of Michigan, Ann Arbor, MI, USA
e-mail: chhkim@med.umich.edu

N. Rezaei (ed.), *Cancer Immunology*, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-30845-2_6

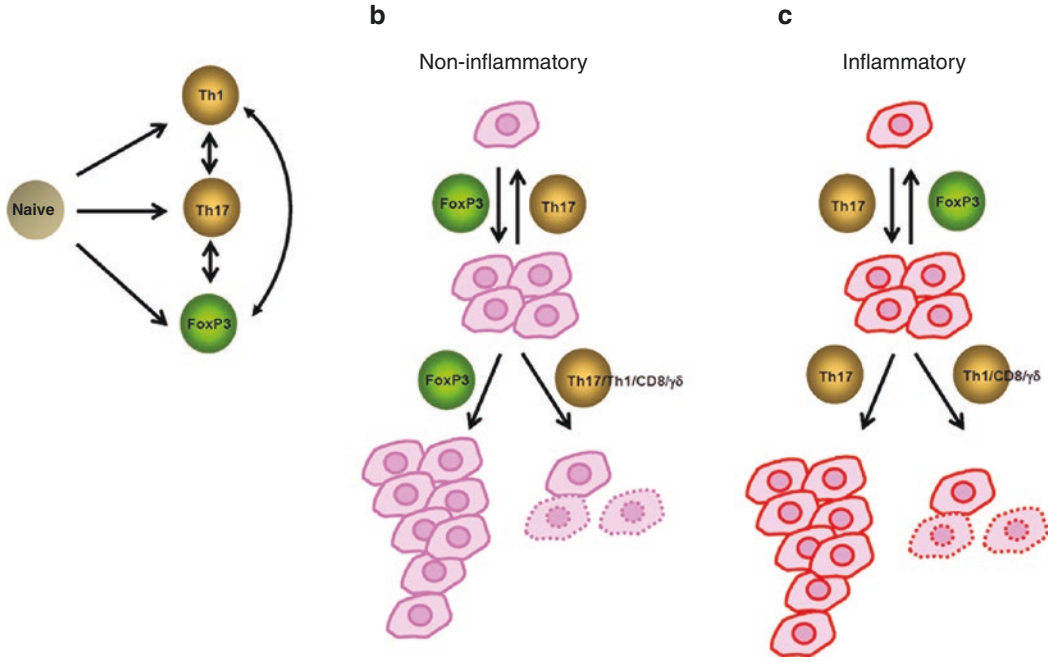


Fig. 6.1 Potential roles of FoxP3⁺ T-cells and Th17 cells in tumors. (**a**) FoxP3⁺ T-cells are made in the thymus as naïve-type FoxP3⁺ T-cells, which migrate to lymphoid tissues. These FoxP3⁺ T-cells can become the memory type after activation in secondary lymphoid tissues. Induced FoxP3⁺ T-cells with memory-type FoxP3⁺ T-cells and Th17 cells are made from naïve CD4⁺ T-cells. FoxP3⁺ T-cells suppress effector T-cells and other immune cells and decrease tissue inflammation. Th17 cells produce IL-17 cytokines to induce inflammatory responses. FoxP3⁺ T-cells, Th17 cells, and Th1 cells can also trans-differentiate into each other in appropriate cytokine and antigen priming conditions. (**b**) FoxP3⁺ T-cells can promote tumor growth by suppressing anti-tumor immune responses at early and late stages. On the other hand, Th17 cells can induce immune responses that lead to eradication of tumor cells in a manner similar to other effector, CD8⁺ and γδ T-cells. (**c**) In inflammatory conditions, FoxP3⁺ T-cells and Th17 cells have the potential to play different roles. Th17 cells cause inflammation in tissues; hence inflammatory tumors are formed and stimulated to grow. FoxP3⁺ T-cells suppress the function of Th17 cells and other inflammatory T-cells, leading to suppression of the tumorigenic process in inflamed tissues. It is thought that complex interactions and balances among these T-cells and other cell types determine the overall immune responses in tumors

by many cell types including immune cells but also are metabolized by ectoenzymes [5]. Inflammatory tumors harbor FoxP3⁺ T-cells and effector T-cells, including Th17 cells and Th1 cells [6, 7]. FoxP3⁺ T-cells can suppress the function of anti-tumor effector T-cells and other immune cells to promote tumorigenesis (Fig. 6.1). On the other hand, FoxP3⁺ T-cells can suppress tissue inflammation to prevent the emergence of tumor cells following chronic tissue inflammation. Effector T-cells produce inflammatory cytokines that promote tumorigenesis by increasing tissue inflammation and angiogenesis, but they can also promote anti-tumor immunity. An inverse correlation was observed between frequencies of FoxP3⁺ T-cells and effector T-cells such as Th17 cells and Th1 cells [8–10]. In certain cancers, the frequency of FoxP3⁺ T-cells increases, whereas that of Th17 cells decreases as cancers advance to more aggressive stages [10]. The presence of FoxP3⁺ T-cells and Th17 cells in tumors and associated tissues not only reflects the nature of tumor microenvironments but also indicates the types of active T-cell-mediated immune responses in tumors. In this chapter, we will discuss tumor factors that regulate T-cell differentiation into Tregs and Th17 cells, migration of the T-cell subsets into tumors and associated lymphoid tissues, and the functions of Tregs and Th17 cells in regulating anti-tumor immune responses.

6.2 Diversity of Tumor Microenvironments and Tumor Tissue Factors

The tumor microenvironment is highly heterogeneous, depending on tumor types and tissue sites. Together with tumor cells, fibroblasts, myofibroblasts, adipocytes, neuronal cells, endothelial cells, mast cells, and other tissue cells make up tumors. Moreover, immune cells are an important component of tumors and are mainly composed of T-cells, B-cells, innate lymphoid cells, and myeloid cells. Tumor-associated myeloid cells are heterogeneous as well and contain immature and mature myeloid cells. Myeloid-derived suppressor cells (MDSC) are highly heterogeneous and enriched in tumors [11]. MDSC are composed of multiple myeloid cell lineages at various different stages. Compared to mature myelocytes such as dendritic cells (DCs) and macrophages, MDSC do not highly express cytokines, co-stimulatory molecules, and MHC class molecules. Therefore, they poorly support anti-tumor effector T-cell responses. Moreover, MDSC express various molecules that dampen immune responses. MDSC produce peroxynitrite for nitration and nitrosylation of many proteins in the tumor environment [12, 13]. A major target protein for nitration and nitrosylation is TCR, which becomes ineffective at activating T-cells after the modifications [14]. They also express Arg1, inducible nitric oxide synthase (iNOS), and TGF-β1, among others [15]. Tumors also harbor many macrophages, which can be made from MDSC or myeloid progenitor cells [16]. Dendritic cells express indoleamine 2,3-dioxygenase (IDO) to regulate available tryptophan in tissue environments [17]. Other immune cells such as mast cells, NK cells, $CD8^+$ T-cells, and B-cells are frequently found in many tumor types.

The tumor environment is low in both oxygen and pH. Tumor cells rapidly divide and therefore vigorously consume oxygen supplied via blood vessels. Tumor cells mainly utilize the aerobic glycolysis pathway to generate energy [18]. This can accumulate lactic acid and protons, leading to low extracellular pH [19]. The most common pH range in tumors is 6–6.5. The low acidic tumor environment leads to immune cell anergy. For example, cytotoxicity and cytokine secretion by $CD8^+$ T-cells are impaired at the low pH range [20]. In addition to lowering pH, lactate plays an important role in fueling cancer cells and modulating immune cell phenotype by inducing M2 tumor-associated macrophages and inhibiting effector T-cell activity. This may be mediated in part through direct binding to N-myc downstream-regulated gene 3 (NDRG3) and activation of a hypoxia-inducible factor 1a (HIF-1a). In addition, many tumor-associated metabolites can control the metabolic milieus of tumors.

Cells in the tumor microenvironment can produce various cytokines and growth factors [21]. Some of these factors are drained into lymphatic vessels and form tumor-associated microenvironmental milieus in lymph nodes. Tumor-specific or tumor-associated antigens and dendritic cells harboring these antigens are drained or transported into lymph nodes for presentation to T-cells. Effector and regulatory T-cells can be made following this antigen priming process. The cytokine milieu is critical in determining the fate of differentiating T-cells in tumor-draining lymph nodes. Again, the type and amount of cytokines and other factors produced in tumors are thought to be highly variable among tumor types. Expression of IL-1α, IL-1β, IL-6, IL-11, and TNF-α was observed in colon carcinoma, colon adenoma, ovarian cancer, and gastric cancer [22–28]. IL-2 and IL-15 are expressed in melanoma. IL-10 and TGF-β are expressed in myeloma, colon cancer, lung cancer, and mammary carcinoma [29, 30]. Expression of IL-17, IFN-γ and IL-4 has been observed in certain tumor types [31–33]. Expression of M-CSF, GM-CSF, and IL-3 has been observed as well [34–36]. These tumor-derived hematopoietic cytokines regulate myeloid cell-mediated inflammation and affect T-cell activity in tumors. Chemokines such as CXCL chemokines (CXCL1, 3, 6, 8, 10, and 12) and CCL chemokines (CCL1, 2, 5, 17, 25, and 28) are expressed in various tumor types [37–40]. Growth and angiogenic factors such as vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF), epidermal growth factor (EGF), and hepatocyte growth factor (HGF) are broadly expressed in a number of cancer types [41, 42]. The cell types producing these factors are not limited to tumor cells but can be from vari-

ous cell types in tumors. For example, tumor-associated macrophages produce both inflammatory and immunosuppressive cytokines such as IL-1, IL-6, IL-10, and TGF-β [43].

T-cell receptor (TCR) activation signals are modified by the signals from co-stimulatory and co-inhibitory molecules, which are expressed by tumor cells and tumor-associated antigen-presenting cells (APC) [44]. These molecules include B7-1, B7-2, programmed cell death-1 ligand (PD-L1), PD-L2, ICOS-L, B7-H2, B7-H3, B7-H4, and B7-H6. Among these, PD-L1-PD and B7-1/2-CTLA-4 pairs play important roles in the formation of Tregs in tumor microenvironments [45–47]. Moreover, TNF receptor family members such as OX40, GITR, 4-1BB, and CD40 are expressed in tumors and regulate anti-tumor immune responses [48, 49].

Inflammatory mediators are produced in tumors. Cyclooxygenase-2 (COX-2) is highly expressed in malignant tumors [50, 51]. COX-2 expression is induced in hypoxic conditions or by cytokines and growth factors [52]. COX-2 generates prostaglandin H2 from arachidonic acid, which is processed to generate major inflammatory mediators such as prostaglandin D2 (PGD2), prostaglandin E2 (PGE2), prostaglandin I2 (PGI2), and thromboxane A2 (TXA2). These mediators regulate angiogenesis and various aspects of inflammatory responses in tumors [50].

Some tumor types are under the influence of microbe-associated molecular pattern (MAMP) receptor ligands if tumors are formed in barrier tissues such as the intestine or in patients infected with pathogens. In mucosal tissues, decreased barrier functions due to tumorigenesis or pre-existing inflammation can lead to bacterial invasion and induction of inflammatory responses. Furthermore, tumors that are associated with infection by papillomavirus (uterine cervical carcinoma), hepatitis B virus (hepatocellular carcinoma), Epstein-Barr virus (Burkitt's lymphoma), human T-cell leukemia virus (adult T-cell leukemia), or herpes virus (Kaposi's sarcoma) would be influenced by viral MAMPs. MAMPs and DAMPs activate toll-like receptors (TLRs) [53]. TLR activation can induce tissue inflammation that promotes cancer [54]. MYD88 signaling is also required for activation of dendritic cells for proper formation of effector T-cells. Without proper MYD88 signaling, Th2 cells that are ineffective in anti-tumor immunity can be made [55]. TLR signaling can work together with STAT3 and notch pathways to activate MAPK and NF-kB, which promote the survival and proliferation of tumor cells [56].

Retinoic acid is an anticancer agent. Retinoic acids such as all-trans retinoic acid (ATRA) and 9-cis RA are produced from retinol (vitamin A) by retinol-metabolizing enzymes such as ADH and RALDH [57]. Epithelial cells and APCs in the intestine highly express these enzymes [58]. In addition, tissue cells in many other organs express RALDHs and produce RAs. RALDH2 expression is induced during immune responses to increase the concentration of RA available in local tissue environments. Inflamed tissues or tumors express RA-producing RALDHs at low levels but highly express RA-catabolizing CYP26 enzymes [59, 60]. In sum, the tumor microenvironment is made of highly diverse factors. Some are from tumor cells, while others are from tissue cells and immune cells. These factors have profound effects on immune cells in tumors and associated lymphoid tissues as discussed in detail later in this chapter. Another important characteristic of tumor microenvironments is high levels of ATP metabolites such as AMP and adenosine. Tumor-infiltrating T-cells such as Tregs express CD39 and CD73. CD39 is an enzyme that degrades ATP into AMP, and CD73 is an ecto-5′-nuclease that degrades AMP into adenosine [61]. Through the action of these enzymes, extracellular ATP is converted to AMP and then to adenosine, which activates adenosine receptors (A_1, A_{2A}, A_{2B}, and A_3) on endothelial cells to produce angiogenic factors [62]. This can result in immunosuppression to dampen anti-tumor immune responses.

6.3 Generation of Tregs and Th17 Cells

FoxP3$^+$ Tregs are made in the thymus as natural FoxP3$^+$ T-cells. They are also induced in the periphery from naïve CD4$^+$ T-cells. In addition, IL-10-producing Tregs (Tr1 cells) are made from naïve

$CD4^+$ T-cells. Tregs produce suppressive cytokines such as IL-10, IL-35, and TGF-β [63–65]. These Tregs play critical roles in preventing autoimmune diseases. Tregs are generally made whenever effector T-cells are formed during immune responses. This is important to limit the potentially inflammatory activities of effector T-cells.

Induction of effector T-cells and Tregs occurs mainly in secondary lymphoid tissues. One reason for this is that naive $CD4^+$ T-cells that become effector T-cells and Tregs migrate mainly to secondary lymphoid tissues. However, memory/effector T-cells can trans-differentiate into each other at any tissue sites upon antigen priming (Fig. 6.1a). Th1 cells are the most readily made effector T-cells from naïve $CD4^+$ T-cells. IL-12, a cytokine produced from DCs, promotes the generation of Th1 cells. Th2 cells are made when IL-4 is abundant. Th17 cells are generated when IL-6, TGF-β, and other inflammatory cytokines are present during T-cell priming. MAMPs and TLR activation in tissues promote the generation of Th17 cells. Th1 cells are efficient in promoting cell-mediated immunity through production of IFN-γ. Th17 cells are effective at inducing inflammatory conditions through producing IL-17. A number of inflammatory cytokines, neutrophil-attracting chemokines, and inflammatory mediators are induced by IL-17 [66]. IL-2 is required for the induction of T-cell proliferation. IL-7 and IL-15 drive T-cell proliferation in an antigen-independent manner in lymphopenic conditions [67, 68]. IL-2 suppresses the formation of Th17 cells [69]. IL-4, while inducing Th2 cells, suppresses the formation of induced $FoxP3^+$ T-cells and Th1 cells [70, 71]. IL-27 promotes the generation of Tr1 cells [72, 73]. Expression or activation of specific transcription factors is required for the generation of specialized effector T-cells and Tregs. For example, RORγt, STAT3, and aryl hydrocarbon receptor (AHR) are important for Th17 cells. FoxP3 and STAT5 are important for the formation of induced Tregs. c-Maf and aryl hydrocarbon receptor (AHR) are important for formation of Tr1 cells [63, 64, 74]. Beyond cytokines, many other factors can modulate the generation of Tregs and Th17 cells. This subject has been exhaustively discussed elsewhere and therefore will not be covered in detail.

6.4 Impact of Tumor-Derived Factors on T-Cell Differentiation

Most T-cells in tumors are memory T-cells [75]. Both antigen-specific and nonspecific bystander T-cells would be present in tumors. In general, the presence of memory T-cells and $CD8^+$ T-cells is linked to positive prognosis in cancer patients. This indicates that it is beneficial to have these T-cells in tumors. About 30–50% of $CD4^+$ T-cells in various tumors formed in animals are $FoxP3^+$ T-cells [75]. Th17 cells are also found in tumors, particularly tumors formed in mucosal tissues [8, 76, 77]. In contrast, Th17 cells are hard to find in transplanted tumors in animal models at ectopic sites [75]. Many factors of the tumor microenvironment can promote the generation of $FoxP3^+$ T-cells. First, APCs in tumor environments are prone to generate $FoxP3^+$ T-cells. During infection, DCs uptake antigens and undergo maturation in response to TLR and cytokine receptor activation. Activated DCs emigrate tissue sites of infection and migrate into secondary lymphoid tissues through lymphatic vessels. Only mature DCs express MHC molecules and co-stimulatory molecules such as B7-1 and B7-2 at high levels. In tumors, the signals to maturate DCs are diverse and not as apparent as those in infection. Thus, APCs maturated in tumor microenvironment do not highly express the co-stimulatory molecules [78]. Moreover, tumor-associated APCs express co-inhibitory receptor ligands such as PD-L1 and PD-L2 [79, 80]. This negatively affects T-cell activation and differentiation. Therefore, DCs in or from tumors have low activation potentials for T-cells. This condition typically generates induced $FoxP3^+$ T-cells but not effector T-cells. Other APCs in tumors, such as macrophages and MDSC, are also ineffective in generating effector T-cells but are prone to induce Tregs [81].

As mentioned, the hypoxic condition in the tumors is another regulatory factor for T-cells [82]. It is expected that draining lymph nodes or tertiary lymphoid tissues within tumors have low oxygen levels. T-cells become $FoxP3^+$ T-cells when they are activated in hypoxia [83]. This is in part mediated by a transcription factor called HIF-1α The high glycolytic activity in tumors leads to accumulation of lactic acid [84–86]. This

promotes the generation of FoxP3+ T-cells. TGF-β1 is a characteristic cytokine produced in the tumor environment [87–89]. TGF-β1 is the most efficient cytokine which induces FoxP3+ T-cells in the periphery. Along with TGF-β1, IL-10 acts to suppress anti-tumor immune responses and the promotion of Tregs [90, 91]. IL-10 is produced by various cell types, including T-cells, myeloid cells, B-cells, and tumor cells.

The prostaglandin inflammatory mediator PGE2 is highly produced in the tumor environment. PGE2 induces FoxP3+ T-cells. This induction is mediated by EP4 and EP2 receptors [92, 93]. In this regard, inhibition of cyclooxygenase-2 (COX-2) decreased FoxP3 expression in tumors and reduced tumor burden [94]. Interestingly, FoxP3+ Tregs express COX-2 and produce PGE2 [95]. The PGE2 produced by Tregs suppresses effector T-cells. In addition, prostaglandin D2 (PGD2) acts on DCs to induce FoxP3+ T-cells [96]. This effect is mediated through the D prostanoid receptor and cyclic AMP-dependent protein kinase A. In this regard, enforced expression of COX-2 in head and neck squamous cell carcinoma led to expansion of IL-10+ FoxP3+ T-cells [97].

Commensal bacterial products that activate TLR2 are implicated in selectively promoting FoxP3+ T-cells and Th17 cells. Segmented filamentous bacteria (SFB) promote Th17 cells in the small intestine [98]. Certain bacterial groups such as *Clostridium* and *Bacteroides fragilis* promote the generation of FoxP3+ T-cells in the intestine [99, 100]. Tumors, formed in the intestine, female reproductive tract, and skin, are expected to be heavily influenced by commensal bacteria. In these tumors, bacterial MAMPs would activate APC and T-cells to regulate the generation of FoxP3+ T-cells and Th17 cells. Thus, depending on the bacterial group that is dominant in the tumor environment, FoxP3+ T-cells and Th17 cells can be differentially generated. In addition, short-chain fatty acids, such as acetate, propionate, and butyrate, are produced from dietary fibers by gut commensal bacteria [101]. These metabolites can regulate T-cells and epithelial cells and have anti-tumor activity in the colon [102–104].

As mentioned, retinoic acid is an important tumor factor. Retinoic acid affects the phenotype and numbers of T-cells and the growth and differentiation status of tumor cells. Retinoic acid promotes the generation of FoxP3+ T-cells but suppresses that of Th17 cells [105, 106]. Retinoic acid affects the development of DCs and generates tolerogenic DCs expressing Arg1 [107]. These DCs promote the generation of FoxP3+ T-cells but suppress the formation of Th17 cells. This function seems to be mediated through RARα. It is also reported that retinoic acid at low concentrations (i.e., 0.5–5 nM) is required for normal function of effector T-cells [108, 109]. Low concentrations of RA are found in the blood and bodily fluids in most tissues. In vitamin A deficiency, the migration and function of effector T-cells are severely impaired. As mentioned, tumor cells express CYP26 A1/B1/C1 enzymes and can decrease retinoic acid concentrations in tumors and associated tissues [59]. This hypo-retinoic acid condition would significantly affect the T-cell profile in tumors and associated lymphoid tissues. Moreover, retinoic acid can promote differentiation of tumor-associated MDSC into dendritic cells and macrophages [110]. In this regard, increased RA levels by inhibiting CYP26 enzymes had anti-tumor effects in experimental colon cancer formation [104].

6.5 Migration of Tregs and Th17 Cells into Tumors

Migration of T-cells, including Tregs and Th17 cells, is regulated by trafficking receptors such as chemokine receptors and adhesion molecules [111, 112]. Adhesion molecules such as selectins and integrins mediate rolling and firm adhesion of leukocytes on endothelial cell vessels [113, 114]. Chemokines induce integrin activation between rolling and firm adhesion of immune cells on endothelial cells. Chemokines also induce chemotaxis for migration of immune cells within tissues. Organs and tissues express distinct and overlapping chemokines and adhesion molecules for regulation of immune cell migration [115]. Since tumors are formed within specialized organs and tissues, there are similarities in expression of trafficking signals between normal tissues

and tumors formed within the tissues. Compared to normal tissues, however, tumors have altered expression of chemokines and adhesion molecules [116]. The trafficking signals and receptors required for T-cell migration into the intestine are well established. In the intestine, CCL20 and CCL25 are, respectively, expressed in the subepithelial cell dome (SED) of Peyer's patches and by small intestinal epithelial cells [117–120]. Endothelial cells in the intestine, Peyer's patches, and mesenteric lymph nodes express mucosal addressin cell adhesion molecule-1 (MAdCAM-1) [121]. T-cells migrating to the small intestine express CCR9 and α4β7 [122–124]. Memory T-cells migrating to the Peyer's patches express CCR6 [125, 126]. Naïve T-cells migrating to Peyer's patches, MLN, and PLN express CCR7, α4β7, and CD62L [127]. Memory T-cells migrating to other tissues or inflamed tissues variably express CCR1-6, CCR8, CCR9, CCR10, CXCR3, CXCR5, and CXCR6 [115]. Effector T-cells frequently express P-selectin glycoprotein ligand-1 (PSGL-1), E-selectin ligand-1 (ESL-1), CXCR3, CCR5, and CCR4 [112, 127].

The trafficking receptors of Tregs and Th17 cells have been determined. FoxP3$^+$ T-cells that are made in the thymus express CCR7, CXCR4, and CD62L [128, 129]. FoxP3$^+$ T-cells activated or induced in the periphery express memory-type trafficking receptors that are frequently expressed by Th1 or Th2 cells. Th17 cells express most memory-type chemokine receptors [130, 131]. CCR6 is a characteristic chemokine receptor expressed by most Th17 cells. In general, FoxP3$^+$ Tregs and Th17 cells follow the trafficking pattern of conventional naïve and memory/effector T-cells. Conventional naïve CD4$^+$ T-cells expressing CCR7 and CD62L lose these receptors upon T-cell activation in the secondary lymphoid tissues and migrate into non-lymphoid or inflamed tissues. Various tissue factors influence the expression of trafficking receptors on FoxP3$^+$ T-cells and Th17 cells [132, 133]. For example, retinoic acid acts on T-cells undergoing activation to induce gut homing receptors such as CCR9 and α4β7. FoxP3$^+$ T-cells and Th17 cells express these gut homing receptors and migrate to the intestine [105, 134]. In vitamin A deficiency, the number of FoxP3$^+$ T-cells and Th17 cells in the gut is significantly decreased in part because most T-cells do not migrate to the small intestine [135]. In addition, TGF-β1 is a major cytokine that induces the expression of CCR6 on FoxP3$^+$ T-cells and Th17 cells [130]. Moreover, IL-2 is a cytokine that effectively downregulates CCR6 expression induced by TGF- β1. Thus, cytokines and tissue factors can co-regulate the expression of trafficking receptors on T-cells.

Researchers have been searching for chemokines that regulate immune cell trafficking and anti-tumor immune responses [136–140]. Chemokines such as CCL3-5, CCL20, and CXCL10, often expressed in inflamed tissues, are also expressed in tumors [141–146]. Chemokines induce chemotaxis of immune cells and tumor cells. They can co-stimulate T-cells and promote angiogenesis [147, 148]. CCR2-10 and CXCR3-5 regulate T-cell trafficking in various tumors [139]. Most of these receptors are highly expressed by FoxP3$^+$ T-cells and Th17 cells in mice and humans [112, 128–131, 149]. CCL17 and CCL22 are highly expressed in gastric cancer with CCR4-expressing FoxP3$^+$ T-cells [138]. CCR7 is expressed by some T-cells in colorectal cancers and is predictive of positive prognosis [150]. CXCR4$^+$ T-cells are increased in lung adenocarcinoma [151]. Chemokines expressed in tumors also attract hematopoietic progenitors, myeloid cells, NK cells, and CD8$^+$ T-cells [11, 143, 152]. Chemokine signals are highly heterogeneous among different tumors. They are shaped by tissue-specific and inflammatory microenvironments in tumors. Therefore, it is difficult to find universal trafficking signals which govern T-cell trafficking in many tumors.

Our group investigated the trafficking receptors expressed by tumor-infiltrating FoxP3$^+$ T-cells [75]. FoxP3$^+$ T-cells account for 25–50% of CD4$^+$ T-cells infiltrating A20, CT26, 4T1, and B16 tumors. Most of these FoxP3$^+$ T-cells are memory CD44$^+$ CD62$^-$ T-cells, which are downregulated for CD62L and CCR7. Downregulation of CCR7 was critical for the migration of FoxP3$^+$ T-cells into tumors, as CCR7^{high} FoxP3$^+$ T-cells were not efficient at migrating into tumors [75]. Downregulation of CCR7 and CD62L occurs in tumor-draining lymph nodes during antigen priming. Therefore, migration of T-cells into secondary lymphoid tissues is required to acquire a

proper trafficking receptor phenotype for migration into tumors. While downregulated for CCR7 and CD62L, tumor-infiltrating FoxP3⁺ T-cells express CCR8 and CXCR4 at high levels [75]. This trafficking receptor phenotype reflects the differentiation status of the tumor-infiltrating T-cells and/or the trafficking receptor requirement for FoxP3⁺ T-cell migration into the tumors. Induction of FoxP3⁺ T-cells from FoxP3⁻ T-cells in tumors is not efficient [75]. Thus, the tumor-infiltrating FoxP3⁺ T-cells in these tumors are largely from the FoxP3⁺ T-cells made in the thymus or secondary lymphoid tissues rather than FoxP3⁺ T-cells induced directly in tumors. However, this can be quite different in other types of tumors where the tumor microenvironment is more conducive in priming T-cells for differentiation into Tregs. For example, TGF-β cytokines are expressed in many tumors and efficient in inducing Tregs [89]. However, this depends on migration of naïve T-cells into tumors which is not likely in most tumor types. In this regard,

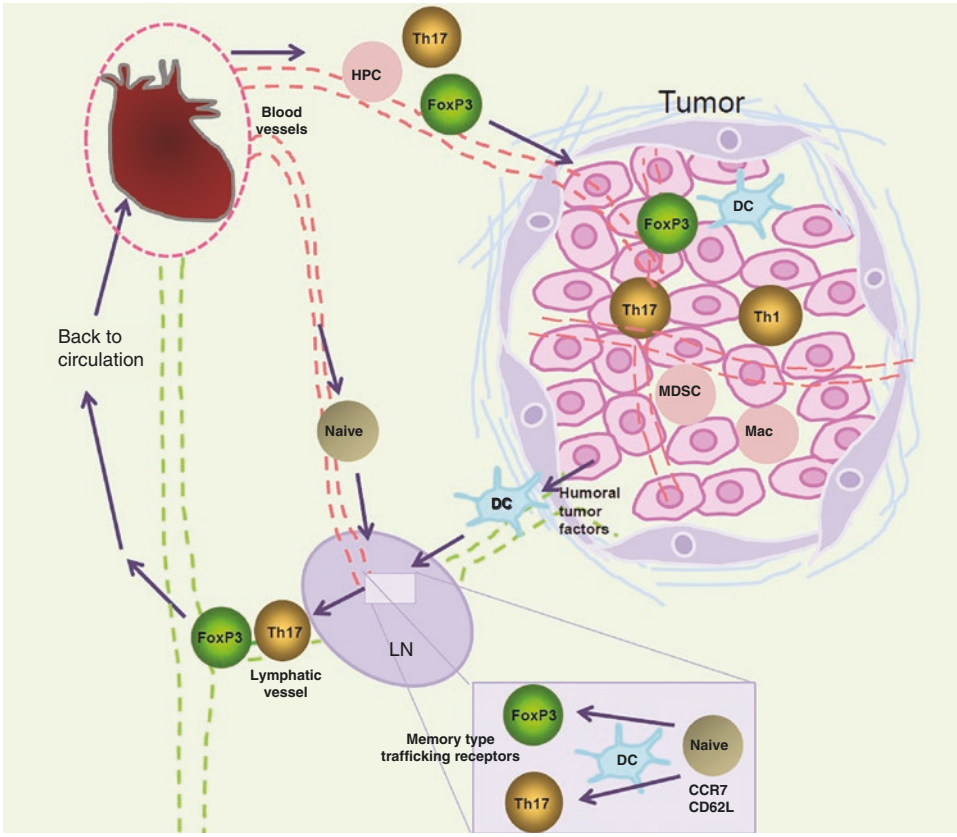


Fig. 6.2 Migration of FoxP3⁺ T-cells and Th17 cells into tumors. Natural FoxP3⁺ T-cells made in the thymus can migrate into lymph nodes, but cannot migrate directly into tumors unless tumors are formed in lymphoid tissues. FoxP3⁺ T-cells can migrate into tumors after they are antigen-primed in secondary lymphoid tissues and gain the memory-/effector-type trafficking receptors. Loss of CCR7 and CD62L occurs during antigen priming and is required for migration of antigen-primed FoxP3⁺ T-cells into tumors. Induced FoxP3⁺ T-cells in the tumor-draining lymph nodes can migrate into tumors, as they decrease the expression of CCR7 and CD62L but upregulate memory-/effector-type trafficking receptors such as CCR4, CCR5, CCR8, CCR10, and/or CXCR4. Dendritic cells (DCs) transport and present tumor antigens and play important roles in generating FoxP3⁺ T-cells and Th17 cells in lymph nodes. Soluble tumor-derived factors are collected in draining lymph nodes, and some of these factors affect T-cell priming and differentiation. In tumors, macrophages (Mac), DCs, and MDSC suboptimally activate T-cells in tumors. These APCs play potentially important roles in maintaining the phenotype of FoxP3⁺ T-cells and Th17 cells in tumors. There is no such thing as tumor-specific trafficking receptors. Instead, T-cells variably use conventional trafficking receptors to migrate into different tumors

generation of Tregs from non-Treg effector cells such as Th17 and Th1 cells is a potentially important pathway to generate Tregs in tumors [153, 154]. In tumors, FoxP3$^+$ T-cells appear highly stable in maintaining their FoxP3 expression. Th17 cells would probably utilize the same tissue- or inflammation-associated trafficking signals utilized by Th17 cells.Th17 cells are prevalent in the gastrointestinal (GI) tract and other mucosal tissues. High numbers of Th17 cells were observed in aggressive forms of GI cancers [8, 76, 77]. Thus, these tumors would have trafficking and cytokine signals appropriate for recruitment and maintenance of Th17 cells or their progenitors. For example, CCL20 is expressed by cervical cancer and recruits Th17 cells [155]. Migration of FoxP3$^+$ T-cells and Th17 cells into tumors and draining lymph nodes is summarized in Fig. 6.2.

6.6 Impact of Tregs and Th17 Cells on Anti-Tumor Immune Responses

The presence of T-cells in tumors is a highly reliable prognostic factor for survival of cancer patients [156, 157]. There is a strong positive correlation between patient survival and frequencies of memory CD4$^+$ T-cells and CD8$^+$ T-cells in many cancer types. Tumorigenesis is increased in pan-T cell- or γδT cell-deficient animals or humans [158]. Strikingly, αβ T-cells have a small negative effect on tumor numbers, but exert a greater positive effect on tumor size. This implies that αβ T-cells are composed of heterogeneous subsets with different functions, and some of these T-cells may even promote tumor growth. FoxP3$^+$ T-cells and other regulatory T-cells are likely the T-cells that suppress anti-tumor immune responses. FoxP3$^+$ T-cells can inhibit anti-tumor immune responses and promote tumor growth [159]. Many FoxP3$^+$ T-cells are self-reactive and effective in preventing autoimmune diseases. The same function can be used to promote tumor growth. This is because tumor cells basically express self-antigens and FoxP3$^+$ T-cells can effectively suppress immune responses to self-antigens [160]. In line with this, the frequencies of FoxP3$^+$ T-cells in many tumor types are inversely correlated with patient survival rates [157, 161]. However, lack of correlation or positive correlation has been noticed as well [162, 163]. A good example is colorectal carcinoma, in which high frequencies of FoxP3$^+$ T-cells are associated with a favorable prognosis [6]. It is expected that FoxP3$^+$ T-cells can even prevent the formation of some tumors by suppressing tissue inflammation at early stages of tumorigenesis. Therefore, FoxP3$^+$ T-cells have the potential to either promote or suppress tumorigenesis depending on tumor types, tissue sites, and immune responses. The potentially complex functions of Tregs in tumorigenesis are depicted in Fig. 6.1.

It has been observed that Th17 cells can promote CD8$^+$ T-cell-mediated anti-tumor immune responses in a mouse model [164]. Moreover, polarization of CD8$^+$ T-cells into Tc17 cells increased their anti-tumor immunity [165]. Th17 cells may become Th1 cells or activate CD8$^+$ T-cells to increase anti-tumor immunity. Paradoxically, Th17 cells can cause inflammation to initiate development of inflammatory tumors at early stages of tumorigenesis. In colorectal cancer, Th17 cells are linked to poor prognosis, whereas Th1 cells are positively linked to patient survival [166]. The major cytokine product of Th17 cells, IL-17, can induce tissue inflammation and the expression of certain angiogenic factors, including CXCL8, MMP-2, MMP-9, and VEGF [167]. For example, colon cancer-derived Th17 cells triggered the production of the aforementioned tumor-promoting factors by tumor-associated stroma. On the other hand, they recruit beneficial neutrophils through IL-8 secretion and drive cytotoxic T-cells into tumor tissues by producing chemokines [168]. The function of Th17 cells in cancer can be complex

and appears to be determined again by cancer type, stage, and site. The potentially complex functions of Th17 cells in tumorigenesis are depicted in Fig. 6.1.

Apart from their effector functions, the frequencies of FoxP3$^+$ T-cells and Th17 cells reflect the context of the tumor microenvironment. Non-

inflammatory tumors with low expression of IL-6 and other inflammatory cytokines would have high numbers of FoxP3+ T-cells, whereas inflammatory tumors with high expression of inflammatory cytokines would harbor high numbers of Th17 cells. Tumors are heterogeneous in the tumor microenvironment even within the same group of cancers, and not all tumors fit into the inflammatory vs. non-inflammatory tumor model. While there is an inverse correlation between FoxP3+ T-cells and Th17 cells, both T-cell subsets can be increased or decreased depending on the balance of cytokines and other tissue factors. An example for this situation is invasive ductal breast carcinoma [167].

As discussed throughout this article, FoxP3+ T-cells and Th17 cells play both positive and negative roles in regulating anti-tumor immune responses (Fig. 6.1). Despite the presence of these T-cells, some tumors still develop and grow. Thus, these T-cells by themselves may not effectively mount anti-tumor immune responses. More detailed studies on FoxP3+ T-cells and Th17 cells in various tumors can provide systematic information regarding the tumor microenvironment and therapeutic interventions. It is important to develop novel strategies to boost the beneficial effects of the T-cell subsets and to suppress their tumor-promoting effects. The key is to alter tumor microenvironment to regulate these T-cell subsets. This is expected to be achieved through control of antigen-presenting cells, metabolism, cytokines, chemokines, co-stimulatory/inhibitory receptors, inflammatory mediators, and nuclear hormone receptor ligands such as retinoic acid. Regulation of multiple factors at the same time would provide more effective strategies in tipping the T-cell balance toward tumor-eradicating immune responses. A

one-size-fits-all approach is not likely to be effective in changing the microenvironment and T-cell activity in all tumors. In this regard, another point is that anti-tumor therapy strategies should be tailor-made based on cancer type, tissue site, and tumor microenvironment. Chimeric antigen receptor (CAR)-based or PD-1-based therapies utilizing or targeting these T-cells would be also promising strategies [169]. It is expected that application of wrong immunotherapy strategies to regulate the T-cell subsets would even exacerbate malignant diseases in cancer patients.

Acknowledgments The author thanks Kim Lab members for their inputs. CHK is the Keneth and Judy Betz endowed professor at the University of Michgian.

References

1. Rolle CE, Sengupta S, Lesniak MS. Mechanisms of immune evasion by gliomas. Adv Exp Med Biol. 2012;746:53–76.
2. Morse MA, Hall JR, Plate JM. Countering tumor-induced immunosuppression during immunotherapy for pancreatic cancer. Expert Opin Biol Ther. 2009;9(3):331–9.
3. Balkwill F, Mantovani A. Inflammation and cancer: back to Virchow? Lancet. 2001;357(9255):539–45.
4. Sims GP, Rowe DC, Rietdijk ST, Herbst R, Coyle AJ. HMGB1 and RAGE in inflammation and cancer. Annu Rev Immunol. 2010;28:367–88.
5. Di Virgilio F, Sarti AC, Falzoni S, De Marchi E, Adinolfi E. Extracellular ATP and P2 purinergic signalling in the tumour microenvironment. Nat Rev Cancer. 2018;18:601–18.
6. Ladoire S, Martin F, Ghiringhelli F. Prognostic role of FOXP3+ regulatory T cells infiltrating human carcinomas: the paradox of colorectal cancer. Cancer Immunol Immunother. 2011;60(7):909–18.
7. Kryczek I, Wu K, Zhao E, Wei S, Vatan L, Szeliga W, et al. IL-17+ regulatory T cells in the microenvironments of chronic inflammation and cancer. J Immunol. 2011;186(7):4388–95.
8. Kryczek I, Banerjee M, Cheng P, Vatan L, Szeliga W, Wei S, et al. Phenotype, distribution, generation, and functional and clinical relevance of Th17 cells in the human tumor environments. Blood. 2009;114(6):1141–9.
9. Sfanos KS, Bruno TC, Maris CH, Xu L, Thoburn CJ, DeMarzo AM, et al. Phenotypic analysis of prostate-infiltrating lymphocytes reveals TH17 and Treg skewing. Clin Cancer Res. 2008;14(11):3254–61.
10. Maruyama T, Kono K, Mizukami Y, Kawaguchi Y, Mimura K, Watanabe M, et al. Distribution of Th17 cells and FoxP3(+) regulatory T cells in tumor-infiltrating lymphocytes, tumor-draining lymph nodes and peripheral blood lymphocytes in patients with gastric cancer. Cancer Sci. 2010;101(9):1947–54.
11. Umansky V, Sevko A. Tumor microenvironment and myeloid-derived suppressor cells. Cancer Microenviron. 2012;6(2):169–77.
12. Cobbs CS, Whisenhunt TR, Wesemann DR, Harkins LE, Van Meir EG, Samanta M. Inactivation of wild-

type p53 protein function by reactive oxygen and nitrogen species in malignant glioma cells. Cancer Res. 2003;63(24):8670–3.
13. Bentz BG, Haines GK 3rd, Radosevich JA. Increased protein nitrosylation in head and neck squamous cell carcinogenesis. Head Neck. 2000;22(1):64–70.
14. Nagaraj S, Gupta K, Pisarev V, Kinarsky L, Sherman S, Kang L, et al. Altered recognition of antigen is a mechanism of CD8+ T cell tolerance in cancer. Nat Med. 2007;13(7):828–35.
15. Peranzoni E, Zilio S, Marigo I, Dolcetti L, Zanovello P, Mandruzzato S, et al. Myeloid-derived suppressor cell heterogeneity and subset definition. Curr Opin Immunol. 2010;22(2):238–44.
16. Kusmartsev S, Gabrilovich DI. STAT1 signaling regulates tumor-associated macrophage-mediated T cell deletion. J Immunol. 2005;174(8):4880–91.
17. Ikemoto T, Shimada M, Komatsu M, Yamada S, Saito Y, Mori H, et al. Indoleamine 2,3-dioxygenase affects the aggressiveness of intraductal papillary mucinous neoplasms through Foxp3+CD4+CD25+ T cells in peripheral blood. Pancreas. 2013;42(1):130–4.
18. Cairns RA, Harris IS, Mak TW. Regulation of cancer cell metabolism. Nat Rev Cancer. 2011;11(2):85–95.
19. Bellone M, Calcinotto A, Filipazzi P, De Milito A, Fais S, Rivoltini L. The acidity of the tumor microenvironment is a mechanism of immune escape that can be overcome by proton pump inhibitors. Oncoimmunology. 2013;2(1):e22058.
20. Calcinotto A, Filipazzi P, Grioni M, Iero M, De Milito A, Ricupito A, et al. Modulation of microenvironment acidity reverses anergy in human and murine tumor-infiltrating T lymphocytes. Cancer Res. 2012;72(11):2746–56.
21. Shurin MR, Shurin GV, Lokshin A, Yurkovetsky ZR, Gutkin DW, Chatta G, et al. Intratumoral cytokines/chemokines/growth factors and tumor infiltrating dendritic cells: friends or enemies? Cancer Metastasis Rev. 2006;25(3):333–56.
22. Kawakami Y, Nagai N, Ota S, Ohama K, Yamashita U. Interleukin-1 as an autocrine stimulator in the growth of human ovarian cancer cells. Hiroshima J Med Sci. 1997;46(1):51–9.
23. Ito R, Kitadai Y, Kyo E, Yokozaki H, Yasui W, Yamashita U, et al. Interleukin 1 alpha acts as an autocrine growth stimulator for human gastric carcinoma cells. Cancer Res. 1993;53(17):4102–6.
24. Song X, Voronov E, Dvorkin T, Fima E, Cagnano E, Benharroch D, et al. Differential effects of IL-1 alpha and IL-1 beta on tumorigenicity patterns and invasiveness. J Immunol. 2003;171(12):6448–56.
25. Alberti L, Thomachot MC, Bachelot T, Menetrier-Caux C, Puisieux I, Blay JY. IL-6 as an intracrine growth factor for renal carcinoma cell lines. Int J Cancer. 2004;111(5):653–61.
26. Lu C, Kerbel RS. Interleukin-6 undergoes transition from paracrine growth inhibitor to autocrine stimulator during human melanoma progression. J Cell Biol. 1993;120(5):1281–8.
27. Szlosarek PW, Balkwill FR. Tumour necrosis factor alpha: a potential target for the therapy of solid tumours. Lancet Oncol. 2003;4(9):565–73.
28. Putoczki T, Ernst M. More than a sidekick: the IL-6 family cytokine IL-11 links inflammation to cancer. J Leukoc Biol. 2010;88(6):1109–17.
29. Kim J, Modlin RL, Moy RL, Dubinett SM, McHugh T, Nickoloff BJ, et al. IL-10 production in cutaneous basal and squamous cell carcinomas. A mechanism for evading the local T cell immune response. J Immunol. 1995;155(4):2240–7.
30. Chen C, Wang XF, Sun L. Expression of transforming growth factor beta (TGFbeta) type III receptor restores autocrine TGFbeta1 activity in human breast cancer MCF-7 cells. J Biol Chem. 1997;272(19):12862–7.
31. Tartour E, Fossiez F, Joyeux I, Galinha A, Gey A, Claret E, et al. Interleukin 17, a T-cell-derived cytokine, promotes tumorigenicity of human cervical tumors in nude mice. Cancer Res. 1999;59(15):3698–704.
32. Portier M, Zhang XG, Caron E, Lu ZY, Bataille R, Klein B. Gamma-interferon in multiple myeloma: inhibition of interleukin-6 (IL-6)-dependent myeloma cell growth and downregulation of IL-6-receptor expression in vitro. Blood. 1993;81(11):3076–82.
33. Maeurer MJ, Martin DM, Castelli C, Elder E, Leder G, Storkus WJ, et al. Host immune response in renal cell cancer: interleukin-4 (IL-4) and IL-10 mRNA are frequently detected in freshly collected tumor-infiltrating lymphocytes. Cancer Immunol Immunother. 1995;41(2):111–21.
34. Lin EY, Gouon-Evans V, Nguyen AV, Pollard JW. The macrophage growth factor CSF-1 in mammary gland development and tumor progression. J Mammary Gland Biol Neoplasia. 2002;7(2):147–62.
35. Bayne LJ, Beatty GL, Jhala N, Clark CE, Rhim AD, Stanger BZ, et al. Tumor-derived granulocyte-macrophage colony-stimulating factor regulates myeloid inflammation and T cell immunity in pancreatic cancer. Cancer Cell. 2012;21(6):822–35.
36. Sawada H, Sugimoto K, Aramaki K, Mori KJ. Hemopoietic features of splenectomized mice bearing IL-3 producing T cell leukemia. Leuk Res. 1989;13(12):1131–8.
37. Bachelder RE, Wendt MA, Mercurio AM. Vascular endothelial growth factor promotes breast carcinoma invasion in an autocrine manner by regulating the chemokine receptor CXCR4. Cancer Res. 2002;62(24):7203–6.
38. Sun YX, Wang J, Shelburne CE, Lopatin DE, Chinnaiyan AM, Rubin MA, et al. Expression of CXCR4 and CXCL12 (SDF-1) in human prostate cancers (PCa) in vivo. J Cell Biochem. 2003;89(3):462–73.
39. Ghia P, Transidico P, Veiga JP, Schaniel C, Sallusto F, Matsushima K, et al. Chemoattractants MDC and TARC are secreted by malignant B-cell precursors following CD40 ligation and support the migration of leukemia-specific T cells. Blood. 2001;98(3):533–40.

40. Dimberg J, Hugander A, Wagsater D. Protein expression of the chemokine, CCL28, in human colorectal cancer. Int J Oncol. 2006;28(2):315–9.
41. Weigand M, Hantel P, Kreienberg R, Waltenberger J. Autocrine vascular endothelial growth factor signalling in breast cancer. Evidence from cell lines and primary breast cancer cultures in vitro. Angiogenesis. 2005;8(3):197–204.
42. Toi M, Kondo S, Suzuki H, Yamamoto Y, Inada K, Imazawa T, et al. Quantitative analysis of vascular endothelial growth factor in primary breast cancer. Cancer. 1996;77(6):1101–6.
43. Ruffell B, Affara NI, Coussens LM. Differential macrophage programming in the tumor microenvironment. Trends Immunol. 2012;33(3):119–26.
44. Greaves P, Gribben JG. The role of B7 family molecules in hematologic malignancy. Blood. 2013;121(5):734–44.
45. Blank C, Brown I, Peterson AC, Spiotto M, Iwai Y, Honjo T, et al. PD-L1/B7H-1 inhibits the effector phase of tumor rejection by T cell receptor (TCR) transgenic CD8+ T cells. Cancer Res. 2004;64(3):1140–5.
46. Peggs KS, Quezada SA, Allison JP. Cell intrinsic mechanisms of T-cell inhibition and application to cancer therapy. Immunol Rev. 2008;224:141–65.
47. Gao Q, Wang XY, Qiu SJ, Yamato I, Sho M, Nakajima Y, et al. Overexpression of PD-L1 significantly associates with tumor aggressiveness and postoperative recurrence in human hepatocellular carcinoma. Clin Cancer Res. 2009;15(3):971–9.
48. Moran AE, Kovacsovics-Bankowski M, Weinberg AD. The TNFRs OX40, 4-1BB, and CD40 as targets for cancer immunotherapy. Curr Opin Immunol. 2013;25(2):230–7.
49. Avogadri F, Yuan J, Yang A, Schaer D, Wolchok JD. Modulation of CTLA-4 and GITR for cancer immunotherapy. Curr Top Microbiol Immunol. 2011;344:211–44.
50. Salvado MD, Alfranca A, Haeggstrom JZ, Redondo JM. Prostanoids in tumor angiogenesis: therapeutic intervention beyond COX-2. Trends Mol Med. 2012;18(4):233–43.
51. Sminia P, Kuipers G, Geldof A, Lafleur V, Slotman B. COX-2 inhibitors act as radiosensitizer in tumor treatment. Biomed Pharmacother. 2005;59(Suppl 2):S272–5.
52. Milas L. Cyclooxygenase-2 (COX-2) enzyme inhibitors as potential enhancers of tumor radioresponse. Semin Radiat Oncol. 2001;11(4):290–9.
53. Takeuchi O, Akira S. Pattern recognition receptors and inflammation. Cell. 2010;140(6):805–20.
54. Zambirinis CP, Miller G. Signaling via MYD88 in the pancreatic tumor microenvironment: a double-edged sword. Oncoimmunology. 2013;2(1):e22567.
55. Kapsenberg ML. Dendritic-cell control of pathogen-driven T-cell polarization. Nat Rev Immunol. 2003;3(12):984–93.
56. Ochi A, Graffeo CS, Zambirinis CP, Rehman A, Hackman M, Fallon N, et al. Toll-like receptor 7 regulates pancreatic carcinogenesis in mice and humans. J Clin Invest. 2012;122(11):4118–29.
57. Kumar S, Sandell LL, Trainor PA, Koentgen F, Duester G. Alcohol and aldehyde dehydrogenases: retinoid metabolic effects in mouse knockout models. Biochim Biophys Acta. 2012;1821(1):198–205.
58. Iwata M. Retinoic acid production by intestinal dendritic cells and its role in T-cell trafficking. Semin Immunol. 2009;21(1):8–13.
59. Sonneveld E, van den Brink CE, van der Leede BM, Schulkes RK, Petkovich M, van der Burg B, et al. Human retinoic acid (RA) 4-hydroxylase (CYP26) is highly specific for all-trans-RA and can be induced through RA receptors in human breast and colon carcinoma cells. Cell Growth Differ. 1998;9(8):629–37.
60. Collins CB, Aherne CM, Kominsky D, McNamee EN, Lebsack MD, Eltzschig H, et al. Retinoic acid attenuates ileitis by restoring the balance between T-helper 17 and T regulatory cells. Gastroenterology. 2011;141(5):1821–31.
61. Antonioli L, Pacher P, Vizi ES, Haskó G. CD39 and CD73D in immunity and inflammation. Trend Mol Med. 2013;19:355–67.
62. Jackson SW, Hoshi T, Wu Y, Sun X, Enjyoji K, Cszimadia E, Sundberg C, Robson SC. Disordered purinergic signaling inhibits pathological angiogenesis in cd39/Entpd1-null mice. Am J Pathol. 2007;171:1395–404.
63. Zhou L, Chong MM, Littman DR. Plasticity of CD4+ T cell lineage differentiation. Immunity. 2009;30(5):646–55.
64. Pot C, Apetoh L, Kuchroo VK. Type 1 regulatory T cells (Tr1) in autoimmunity. Semin Immunol. 2011;23(3):202–8.
65. Witte E, Witte K, Warszawska K, Sabat R, Wolk K. Interleukin-22: a cytokine produced by T, NK and NKT cell subsets, with importance in the innate immune defense and tissue protection. Cytokine Growth Factor Rev. 2010;21(5):365–79.
66. Miossec P, Korn T, Kuchroo VK. Interleukin-17 and type 17 helper T cells. N Engl J Med. 2009;361(9):888–98.
67. Carrette F, Surh CD. IL-7 signaling and CD127 receptor regulation in the control of T cell homeostasis. Semin Immunol. 2012;24(3):209–17.
68. Hong C, Luckey MA, Park JH. Intrathymic IL-7: the where, when, and why of IL-7 signaling during T cell development. Semin Immunol. 2012;24(3):151–8.
69. Muranski P, Restifo NP. Essentials of Th17 cell commitment and plasticity. Blood. 2013;121(13):2402–14.
70. Dardalhon V, Awasthi A, Kwon H, Galileos G, Gao W, Sobel RA, et al. IL-4 inhibits TGF-beta-induced Foxp3+ T cells and, together with TGF-beta, generates IL-9+ IL-10+ Foxp3(−) effector T cells. Nat Immunol. 2008;9(12):1347–55.
71. Nagase H, Jones KM, Anderson CF, Noben-Trauth N. Despite increased CD4+Foxp3+ cells within the infection site, BALB/c IL-4 receptor-deficient mice reveal CD4+Foxp3-negative T cells as a source of

IL-10 in Leishmania major susceptibility. J Immunol. 2007;179(4):2435–44.
72. Batten M, Kljavin NM, Li J, Walter MJ, de Sauvage FJ, Ghilardi N. Cutting edge: IL-27 is a potent inducer of IL-10 but not FoxP3 in murine T cells. J Immunol. 2008;180(5):2752–6.
73. Awasthi A, Carrier Y, Peron JP, Bettelli E, Kamanaka M, Flavell RA, et al. A dominant function for interleukin 27 in generating interleukin 10-producing anti-inflammatory T cells. Nat Immunol. 2007;8(12):1380–9.
74. Korn T, Bettelli E, Oukka M, Kuchroo VK. IL-17 and Th17 cells. Annu Rev Immunol. 2009;27:485–517.
75. Wang C, Lee JH, Kim CH. Optimal population of FoxP3+ T cells in tumors requires an antigen priming-dependent trafficking receptor switch. PLoS One. 2012;7(1):e30793.
76. Chen D, Hu Q, Mao C, Jiao Z, Wang S, Yu L, et al. Increased IL-17-producing CD4(+) T cells in patients with esophageal cancer. Cell Immunol. 2012;272(2):166–74.
77. Yamada Y, Saito H, Ikeguchi M. Prevalence and clinical relevance of Th17 cells in patients with gastric cancer. J Surg Res. 2012;178(2):685–91.
78. Chaux P, Favre N, Martin M, Martin F. Tumor-infiltrating dendritic cells are defective in their antigen-presenting function and inducible B7 expression in rats. Int J Cancer. 1997;72(4):619–24.
79. Dowlatshahi M, Huang V, Gehad AE, Jiang Y, Calarese A, Teague JE, et al. Tumor-specific T cells in human Merkel cell carcinomas: a possible role for Tregs and T-cell exhaustion in reducing T-cell responses. J Invest Dermatol. 2013;133(7):1879–89.
80. Blank C, Kuball J, Voelkl S, Wiendl H, Becker B, Walter B, et al. Blockade of PD-L1 (B7-H1) augments human tumor-specific T cell responses in vitro. Int J Cancer. 2006;119(2):317–27.
81. Hoechst B, Ormandy LA, Ballmaier M, Lehner F, Kruger C, Manns MP, et al. A new population of myeloid-derived suppressor cells in hepatocellular carcinoma patients induces CD4(+)CD25(+)Foxp3(+) T cells. Gastroenterology. 2008;135(1):234–43.
82. Chouaib S, Messai Y, Couve S, Escudier B, Hasmim M, Noman MZ. Hypoxia promotes tumor growth in linking angiogenesis to immune escape. Front Immunol. 2012;3:21.
83. Clambey ET, McNamee EN, Westrich JA, Glover LE, Campbell EL, Jedlicka P, et al. Hypoxia-inducible factor-1 alpha-dependent induction of FoxP3 drives regulatory T-cell abundance and function during inflammatory hypoxia of the mucosa. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2012;109(41):E2784–93.
84. Newell K, Franchi A, Pouyssegur J, Tannock I. Studies with glycolysis-deficient cells suggest that production of lactic acid is not the only cause of tumor acidity. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 1993;90(3):1127–31.
85. Arany I, Rady P, Kertai P. Regulation of glycolysis and oxygen consumption in lymph-node cells of normal and leukaemic mice. Br J Cancer. 1981;43(6):804–8.
86. Bustamante E, Pedersen PL. High aerobic glycolysis of rat hepatoma cells in culture: role of mitochondrial hexokinase. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 1977;74(9):3735–9.
87. Kalkhoven E, Kwakkenbos-Isbrucker L, Mummery CL, de Laat SW, van den Eijnden-van Raaij AJ, van der Saag PT, et al. The role of TGF-beta production in growth inhibition of breast-tumor cells by progestins. Int J Cancer. 1995;61(1):80–6.
88. Arteaga CL, Hurd SD, Winnier AR, Johnson MD, Fendly BM, Forbes JT. Anti-transforming growth factor (TGF)-beta antibodies inhibit breast cancer cell tumorigenicity and increase mouse spleen natural killer cell activity. Implications for a possible role of tumor cell/host TGF-beta interactions in human breast cancer progression. J Clin Invest. 1993;92(6):2569–76.
89. Moo-Young TA, Larson JW, Belt BA, Tan MC, Hawkins WG, Eberlein TJ, et al. Tumor-derived TGF-beta mediates conversion of CD4+Foxp3+ regulatory T cells in a murine model of pancreas cancer. J Immunother. 2009;32(1):12–21.
90. Mullins DW, Martins RS, Burger CJ, Elgert KD. Tumor cell-derived TGF-beta and IL-10 dysregulate paclitaxel-induced macrophage activation. J Leukoc Biol. 2001;69(1):129–37.
91. Sica A, Saccani A, Bottazzi B, Polentarutti N, Vecchi A, van Damme J, et al. Autocrine production of IL-10 mediates defective IL-12 production and NF-kappa B activation in tumor-associated macrophages. J Immunol. 2000;164(2):762–7.
92. Sharma S, Yang SC, Zhu L, Reckamp K, Gardner B, Baratelli F, et al. Tumor cyclooxygenase-2/prostaglandin E2-dependent promotion of FOXP3 expression and CD4+ CD25+ T regulatory cell activities in lung cancer. Cancer Res. 2005;65(12):5211–20.
93. Baratelli F, Lin Y, Zhu L, Yang SC, Heuze-Vourc'h N, Zeng G, et al. Prostaglandin E2 induces FOXP3 gene expression and T regulatory cell function in human CD4+ T cells. J Immunol. 2005;175(3):1483–90.
94. Bresalier RS. Prevention of colorectal cancer: tumor progression, chemoprevention, and COX-2 inhibition. Gastroenterology. 2000;119(1):267–8.
95. Mahic M, Yaqub S, Johansson CC, Tasken K, Aandahl EM. FOXP3+CD4+CD25+ adaptive regulatory T cells express cyclooxygenase-2 and suppress effector T cells by a prostaglandin E2-dependent mechanism. J Immunol. 2006;177(1):246–54.
96. Hammad H, Kool M, Soullie T, Narumiya S, Trottein F, Hoogsteden HC, et al. Activation of the D prostanoid 1 receptor suppresses asthma by modulation of lung dendritic cell function and induction of regulatory T cells. J Exp Med. 2007;204(2):357–67.
97. Bergmann C, Strauss L, Zeidler R, Lang S, Whiteside TL. Expansion of human T regulatory type 1 cells in the microenvironment of cyclooxygenase 2 overexpressing head and neck squamous cell carcinoma. Cancer Res. 2007;67(18):8865–73.

98. Ivanov II, Atarashi K, Manel N, Brodie EL, Shima T, Karaoz U, et al. Induction of intestinal Th17 cells by segmented filamentous bacteria. Cell. 2009;139(3):485–98.
99. Atarashi K, Honda K. Microbiota in autoimmunity and tolerance. Curr Opin Immunol. 2011;23(6):761–8.
100. Round JL, Mazmanian SK. Inducible Foxp3+ regulatory T-cell development by a commensal bacterium of the intestinal microbiota. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2010;107(27):12204–9.
101. Kim CH, Park J, Kim M. Gut microbiota-derived short-chain fatty acids, T cells, and inflammation. Immune Netw. 2014;14(6):277–88.
102. Tang Y, Chen Y, Jiang H, Robbins GT, Nie D. G-protein-coupled receptor for short-chain fatty acids suppresses colon cancer. Int J Cancer. 2011;128(4):847–56.
103. Sivaprakasam S, Gurav A, Paschall AV, Coe GL, Chaudhary K, Cai Y, et al. An essential role of Ffar2 (Gpr43) in dietary fibre-mediated promotion of healthy composition of gut microbiota and suppression of intestinal carcinogenesis. Oncogene. 2016;5(6):e238.
104. Bhattacharya N, Yuan R, Prestwood TR, Penny HL, DiMaio MA, Reticker-Flynn NE, et al. Normalizing microbiota-induced retinoic acid deficiency stimulates protective CD8(+) T cell-mediated immunity in colorectal cancer. Immunity. 2016;45(3):641–55.
105. Kang SG, Lim HW, Andrisani OM, Broxmeyer HE, Kim CH. Vitamin A metabolites induce gut-homing FoxP3+ regulatory T cells. J Immunol. 2007;179(6):3724–33.
106. Mucida D, Park Y, Kim G, Turovskaya O, Scott I, Kronenberg M, et al. Reciprocal TH17 and regulatory T cell differentiation mediated by retinoic acid. Science. 2007;317(5835):256–60.
107. Chang J, Thangamani S, Kim MH, Ulrich B, Morris SM Jr, Kim CH. Retinoic acid promotes the development of Arg1-expressing dendritic cells for the regulation of T-cell differentiation. Eur J Immunol. 2013;43(4):967–78.
108. Pino-Lagos K, Guo Y, Brown C, Alexander MP, Elgueta R, Bennett KA, et al. A retinoic acid-dependent checkpoint in the development of CD4+ T cell-mediated immunity. J Exp Med. 2011;208(9):1767–75.
109. Hall JA, Cannons JL, Grainger JR, Dos Santos LM, Hand TW, Naik S, et al. Essential role for retinoic acid in the promotion of CD4(+) T cell effector responses via retinoic acid receptor alpha. Immunity. 2011;34(3):435–47.
110. Hemdan NY. Anti-cancer versus cancer-promoting effects of the interleukin-17-producing T helper cells. Immunol Lett. 2013;149(1–2):123–33.
111. Ding Y, Xu J, Bromberg JS. Regulatory T cell migration during an immune response. Trends Immunol. 2012;33(4):174–80.
112. Kim CH. Migration and function of Th17 cells. Inflamm Allergy Drug Targets. 2009;8(3):221–8.
113. Alon R, Feigelson S. From rolling to arrest on blood vessels: leukocyte tap dancing on endothelial integrin ligands and chemokines at sub-second contacts. Semin Immunol. 2002;14(2):93–104.
114. Laudanna C, Kim JY, Constantin G, Butcher E. Rapid leukocyte integrin activation by chemokines. Immunol Rev. 2002;186:37–46.
115. Kim CH. The greater chemotactic network for lymphocyte trafficking: chemokines and beyond. Curr Opin Hematol. 2005;12(4):298–304.
116. Ohshima K, Hamasaki M, Makimoto Y, Yoneda S, Fujii A, Takamatsu Y, et al. Differential chemokine, chemokine receptor, cytokine and cytokine receptor expression in pulmonary adenocarcinoma: diffuse down-regulation is associated with immune evasion and brain metastasis. Int J Oncol. 2003;23(4):965–73.
117. Sugaya M. Chemokines and cutaneous lymphoma. J Dermatol Sci. 2010;59(2):81–5.
118. Waugh DJ, Wilson C. The interleukin-8 pathway in cancer. Clin Cancer Res. 2008;14(21):6735–41.
119. Payne AS, Cornelius LA. The role of chemokines in melanoma tumor growth and metastasis. J Invest Dermatol. 2002;118(6):915–22.
120. Smith RE, Strieter RM, Zhang K, Phan SH, Standiford TJ, Lukacs NW, et al. A role for C-C chemokines in fibrotic lung disease. J Leukoc Biol. 1995;57(5):782–7.
121. Shaw SK, Brenner MB. The beta 7 integrins in mucosal homing and retention. Semin Immunol. 1995;7(5):335–42.
122. Papadakis KA, Prehn J, Nelson V, Cheng L, Binder SW, Ponath PD, et al. The role of thymus-expressed chemokine and its receptor CCR9 on lymphocytes in the regional specialization of the mucosal immune system. J Immunol. 2000;165(9):5069–76.
123. Kunkel EJ, Campbell JJ, Haraldsen G, Pan J, Boisvert J, Roberts AI, et al. Lymphocyte CC chemokine receptor 9 and epithelial thymus-expressed chemokine (TECK) expression distinguish the small intestinal immune compartment: epithelial expression of tissue-specific chemokines as an organizing principle in regional immunity. J Exp Med. 2000;192(5):761–8.
124. Wurbel MA, Philippe JM, Nguyen C, Victorero G, Freeman T, Wooding P, et al. The chemokine TECK is expressed by thymic and intestinal epithelial cells and attracts double- and single-positive thymocytes expressing the TECK receptor CCR9. Eur J Immunol. 2000;30(1):262–71.
125. McDonald KG, McDonough JS, Wang C, Kucharzik T, Williams IR, Newberry RD. CC chemokine receptor 6 expression by B lymphocytes is essential for the development of isolated lymphoid follicles. Am J Pathol. 2007;170(4):1229–40.
126. Tanaka Y, Imai T, Baba M, Ishikawa I, Uehira M, Nomiyama H, et al. Selective expression of liver and activation-regulated chemokine (LARC) in intestinal epithelium in mice and humans. Eur J Immunol. 1999;29(2):633–42.

127. Kim CH. Migration and function of FoxP3+ regulatory T cells in the hematolymphoid system. Exp Hematol. 2006;34(8):1033–40.
128. Lee JH, Kang SG, Kim CH. FoxP3+ T cells undergo conventional first switch to lymphoid tissue homing receptors in thymus but accelerated second switch to nonlymphoid tissue homing receptors in secondary lymphoid tissues. J Immunol. 2007;178(1):301–11.
129. Lim HW, Broxmeyer HE, Kim CH. Regulation of trafficking receptor expression in human forkhead box P3+ regulatory T cells. J Immunol. 2006;177(2):840–51.
130. Wang C, Kang SG, Lee J, Sun Z, Kim CH. The roles of CCR6 in migration of Th17 cells and regulation of effector T-cell balance in the gut. Mucosal Immunol. 2009;2(2):173–83.
131. Lim HW, Lee J, Hillsamer P, Kim CH. Human Th17 cells share major trafficking receptors with both polarized effector T cells and FOXP3+ regulatory T cells. J Immunol. 2008;180(1):122–9.
132. Iwata M, Hirakiyama A, Eshima Y, Kagechika H, Kato C, Song SY. Retinoic acid imprints gut-homing specificity on T cells. Immunity. 2004;21(4):527–38.
133. Sigmundsdottir H, Pan J, Debes GF, Alt C, Habtezion A, Soler D, et al. DCs metabolize sunlight-induced vitamin D3 to 'program' T cell attraction to the epidermal chemokine CCL27. Nat Immunol. 2007;8(3):285–93.
134. Wang C, Kang SG, HogenEsch H, Love PE, Kim CH. Retinoic acid determines the precise tissue tropism of inflammatory Th17 cells in the intestine. J Immunol. 2010;184(10):5519–26.
135. Kang SG, Wang C, Matsumoto S, Kim CH. High and low vitamin a therapies induce distinct FoxP3+ T-cell subsets and effectively control intestinal inflammation. Gastroenterology. 2009;137(4):1391–402.. e1-6
136. Milliken D, Scotton C, Raju S, Balkwill F, Wilson J. Analysis of chemokines and chemokine receptor expression in ovarian cancer ascites. Clin Cancer Res. 2002;8(4):1108–14.
137. de Chaisemartin L, Goc J, Damotte D, Validire P, Magdeleinat P, Alifano M, et al. Characterization of chemokines and adhesion molecules associated with T cell presence in tertiary lymphoid structures in human lung cancer. Cancer Res. 2011;71(20):6391–9.
138. Mizukami Y, Kono K, Kawaguchi Y, Akaike H, Kamimura K, Sugai H, et al. CCL17 and CCL22 chemokines within tumor microenvironment are related to accumulation of Foxp3+ regulatory T cells in gastric cancer. Int J Cancer. 2008;122(10):2286–93.
139. Franciszkiewicz K, Boissonnas A, Boutet M, Combadiere C, Mami-Chouaib F. Role of chemokines and chemokine receptors in shaping the effector phase of the antitumor immune response. Cancer Res. 2012;72(24):6325–32.
140. Balkwill F. Cancer and the chemokine network. Nat Rev Cancer. 2004;4(7):540–50.
141. Fushimi T, Kojima A, Moore MA, Crystal RG. Macrophage inflammatory protein 3alpha transgene attracts dendritic cells to established murine tumors and suppresses tumor growth. J Clin Invest. 2000;105(10):1383–93.
142. Luster AD, Leder P. IP-10, a -C-X-C- chemokine, elicits a potent thymus-dependent antitumor response in vivo. J Exp Med. 1993;178(3):1057–65.
143. Bonecchi R, Locati M, Mantovani A. Chemokines and cancer: a fatal attraction. Cancer Cell. 2011;19(4):434–5.
144. Lazennec G, Richmond A. Chemokines and chemokine receptors: new insights into cancer-related inflammation. Trends Mol Med. 2010;16(3):133–44.
145. Waugh DJ, Wilson C, Seaton A, Maxwell PJ. Multifaceted roles for CXC-chemokines in prostate cancer progression. Front Biosci. 2008;13:4595–604.
146. Zlotnik A. Chemokines and cancer. Int J Cancer. 2006;119(9):2026–9.
147. Strieter RM, Burdick MD, Mestas J, Gomperts B, Keane MP, Belperio JA. Cancer CXC chemokine networks and tumour angiogenesis. Eur J Cancer. 2006;42(6):768–78.
148. Molon B, Gri G, Bettella M, Gomez-Mouton C, Lanzavecchia A, Martinez AC, et al. T cell costimulation by chemokine receptors. Nat Immunol. 2005;6(5):465–71.
149. Lim HW, Hillsamer P, Kim CH. Regulatory T cells can migrate to follicles upon T cell activation and suppress GC-Th cells and GC-Th cell-driven B cell responses. J Clin Invest. 2004;114(11):1640–9.
150. Correale P, Rotundo MS, Botta C, Del Vecchio MT, Tassone P, Tagliaferri P. Tumor infiltration by chemokine receptor 7 (CCR7)(+) T-lymphocytes is a favorable prognostic factor in metastatic colorectal cancer. Oncoimmunology. 2012;1(4):531–2.
151. Wald O, Izhar U, Amir G, Avniel S, Bar-Shavit Y, Wald H, et al. CD4+CXCR4highCD69+ T cells accumulate in lung adenocarcinoma. J Immunol. 2006;177(10):6983–90.
152. Albertsson PA, Basse PH, Hokland M, Goldfarb RH, Nagelkerke JF, Nannmark U, et al. NK cells and the tumour microenvironment: implications for NK-cell function and anti-tumour activity. Trends Immunol. 2003;24(11):603–9.
153. Downs-Canner S, Berkey S, Delgoffe GM, Edwards RP, Curiel T, Odunsi K, et al. Suppressive IL-17A(+) Foxp3(+) and ex-Th17 IL-17A(neg)Foxp3(+) Treg cells are a source of tumour-associated Treg cells. Nat Commun. 2017;8:14649.
154. Levine AG, Medoza A, Hemmers S, Moltedo B, Niec RE, Schizas M, et al. Stability and function of regulatory T cells expressing the transcription factor T-bet. Nature. 2017;546(7658):421–5.
155. Yu Q, Lou XM, He Y. Preferential recruitment of Th17 cells to cervical cancer via CCR6-CCL20 pathway. PLoS One. 2015;10(3):e0120855.
156. Clark WH Jr, Elder DE, Guerry D, Braitman LE, Trock BJ, Schultz D, et al. Model predicting survival

in stage I melanoma based on tumor progression. J Natl Cancer Inst. 1989;81(24):1893–904.
157. Curiel TJ, Coukos G, Zou L, Alvarez X, Cheng P, Mottram P, et al. Specific recruitment of regulatory T cells in ovarian carcinoma fosters immune privilege and predicts reduced survival. Nat Med. 2004;10(9):942–9.
158. Girardi M, Oppenheim DE, Steele CR, Lewis JM, Glusac E, Filler R, et al. Regulation of cutaneous malignancy by gammadelta T cells. Science. 2001;294(5542):605–9.
159. Pedroza-Gonzalez A, Verhoef C, Ijzermans JN, Peppelenbosch MP, Kwekkeboom J, Verheij J, et al. Activated tumor-infiltrating CD4+ regulatory T cells restrain antitumor immunity in patients with primary or metastatic liver cancer. Hepatology. 2013;57(1):183–94.
160. Nishikawa H, Kato T, Tawara I, Takemitsu T, Saito K, Wang L, et al. Accelerated chemically induced tumor development mediated by CD4+CD25+ regulatory T cells in wild-type hosts. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2005;102(26):9253–7.
161. Kobayashi N, Hiraoka N, Yamagami W, Ojima H, Kanai Y, Kosuge T, et al. FOXP3+ regulatory T cells affect the development and progression of hepatocarcinogenesis. Clin Cancer Res. 2007;13(3):902–11.
162. Hasselblom S, Sigurdadottir M, Hansson U, Nilsson-Ehle H, Ridell B, Andersson PO. The number of tumour-infiltrating TIA-1+ cytotoxic T cells but not FOXP3+ regulatory T cells predicts outcome in diffuse large B-cell lymphoma. Br J Haematol. 2007;137(4):364–73.
163. Tzankov A, Meier C, Hirschmann P, Went P, Pileri SA, Dirnhofer S. Correlation of high numbers of intratumoral FOXP3+ regulatory T cells with improved survival in germinal center-like diffuse large B-cell lymphoma, follicular lymphoma and classical Hodgkin's lymphoma. Haematologica. 2008;93(2):193–200.
164. Martin-Orozco N, Muranski P, Chung Y, Yang XO, Yamazaki T, Lu S, et al. T helper 17 cells promote cytotoxic T cell activation in tumor immunity. Immunity. 2009;31(5):787–98.
165. Hinrichs CS, Kaiser A, Paulos CM, Cassard L, Sanchez-Perez L, Heemskerk B, et al. Type 17 CD8+ T cells display enhanced antitumor immunity. Blood. 2009;114(3):596–9.
166. Tosolini M, Kirilovsky A, Mlecnik B, Fredriksen T, Mauger S, Bindea G, et al. Clinical impact of different classes of infiltrating T cytotoxic and helper cells (Th1, th2, Treg, th17) in patients with colorectal cancer. Cancer Res. 2011;71(4):1263–71.
167. Benevides L, Cardoso CR, Tiezzi DG, Marana HR, Andrade JM, Silva JS. Enrichment of regulatory T cells in invasive breast tumor correlates with the upregulation of IL-17A expression and invasiveness of the tumor. Eur J Immunol. 2013;43(6):1518–28.
168. Amicarella F, Muraro MG, Hirt C, Cremonesi E, Padovan E, Mele V, et al. Dual role of tumour-infiltrating T helper 17 cells in human colorectal cancer. Gut. 2017;66(4):692–704.
169. Golubovskaya V, Wu L. Different subsets of T cells, memory, effector functions, and CAR-T immunotherapy. Cancers (Basel). 2016;8(3):36.

7 T-Cell Metabolism and Its Dysfunction Induced by Cancer

Heriberto Prado-Garcia, Rosa Sandoval-Martinez, and Susana Romero-Garcia

Contents

7.1 Introduction

During its life, T-cell goes across several stages of development that takes place in different organs or tissues. These dissimilar microenvironments, where T-cell differentiation takes place, will require different metabolic processes and metabolic demands. Immunometabolism refers to the integrative study of the biochemical reactions that provide building blocks and energy to fulfill the varying demands in the life of immune cells and particularly T-cells.

7.2 T-Cell Life

The development of a T-cell response begins when circulating naive T-cells (T_N) encounter an antigen presented by an antigen-presenting cell such as dendritic cells, macrophages, or B-cells. In the proper context (co-stimulatory molecules and cytokines), the antigen-specific T-cell is activated. Then, after TCR interaction with the cognate antigen, a cascade of intracellular events

H. Prado-Garcia · R. Sandoval-Martinez
S. Romero-Garcia (✉)
Departamento de Enfermedades Cronico-Degenerativas, Instituto Nacional de Enfermedades Respiratorias "Ismael Cosío Villegas", Mexico City, Mexico

N. Rezaei (ed.), *Cancer Immunology*, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-30845-2_7

occurs that leads to activation, proliferation, and differentiation. Effector T-cells (T_{EFF}) produce cytokines or, in the case of $CD8^+$ T-cells, granzymes and perforin to control the infection and to kill pathogen-infected cells or transformed cells. After the infection or inflammatory process is controlled, T-cells undergo a contraction process, where most effector T-cells die by apoptosis, but the others establish a pool of memory T-cells (T_M), including different subsets, such as effector memory T-cells (T_{EM}), central memory T-cells (T_{CM}), and stem cell memory T-cells (T_{SCM}), conferring long-term protection [1]. However, if the source persists (i.e., chronic infection), T-cell response will become progressively exhausted because of the continued TCR signaling with the persistent antigen. Exhausted T-cells (T_{exh}) have poor effector functions and overexpress multiple inhibitor receptors, such as PD-1, that attenuate signaling downstream of the TCR [2].

The subsets of antigen-experienced T-cells are heterogeneous and differ in their function, localization, and phenotype. T_N are T-cells that have not yet encountered their cognate antigen, have a high proliferative potential, and are located in the blood and lymph nodes. T_{EFF} are short-lived, and they produce cytokines, or molecules involved in cytolysis, and have a low proliferative potential. T_{EFF} are considered as terminally differentiated T-cells. Memory T-cells have been divided in at least two subsets, based on the expression of homing and chemokine receptors, their localization, proliferative capacity, and on their function. T_{CM} cells, similar to T_N cells, are also located in the blood and migrate to secondary lymph nodes. T_{CM} cells produce low levels of inflammatory cytokines, such as interferon-gamma (IFN-γ), and they can secrete high levels of IL-2. T_{EM} cells have the potential to home into non-lymphoid tissues, they produce high levels of inflammatory cytokines, and their cytotoxic potential is higher with respect to T_{CM}; thus, T_{EM} cells have similar effector functions compared to T_{EFF}; nevertheless, the proliferative potential of T_{EM} cells is lower compared to T_{CM} and T_N cells [3–6].

The characterization of the different subsets of T-cells is still a matter of debate; because, among other things, the differentiation of T-cells is a process exquisitely regulated, where metabolism has an essential role. Several metabolic pathways have been recently described that modulate and participate in the differentiation process of T-cells.

7.3 Catabolism and Anabolism of T-Cells Throughout the Different States of Maturation: Naive, Effector, and Memory Cell

7.3.1 Naive

Quiescent T-cells (T_N and T_M cells) have energetic demands relatively smaller than activated T-cells. Resting T-cells have a low rate of nutrient consumption; thus, the catabolic pathways for ATP production favor the highest ATP yield, using fatty acid oxidation (FAO) and the mitochondrial tricarboxylic acid cycle (TCA or Krebs cycle) [7–9]. Alternatively, glucose or amino acids may fuel TCA [7].

Quiescent T-cells have the ability to persist for long periods and to respond to the antigen-presenting cell. However, T_N cells exhibit a greater clonal expansion than T_M cells. Also T_M cells differ from T_N cells in that they have relatively fewer requirements of co-stimulating signals for their activation, proliferation, and function [10], possibly because, among other factors, T_N cells have less mitochondria than T_M cells [11].

7.3.2 Activation

Upon antigen presentation, naive $CD8^+$ T-cells are activated. The activation of T-cells requires the TCR receptor and other co-stimulatory molecules, such as CD28 and CD27; during this process activation markers are expressed on the surface of T-cell, for instance, CD137 and CD69 among others (Fig. 7.1). Co-stimulation is followed by a fast peak of glucose consumption and the enhancement of glycolytic metabolism [7]. Thus, activation is accompanied by increased

expression of the glucose transporter Glut1 and a significant immediate increase in glycolytic flux in both human $CD4^+$ and $CD8^+$ T-cells. Undergoing a "Warburg-like" switch allows to increase the glycolytic metabolism upon activation of $CD4^+$ and $CD8^+$ T-cells, though, $CD4^+$ T-cells exhibit higher basal levels of glycolysis, possibly because hexokinase II (HKII), pyruvate kinase (PKM2), and lactate dehydrogenase (LDH) levels are all increased in $CD4^+$ T-cells in comparison to $CD8^+$ subset [12]. Interestingly, cytokines production in $CD8^+$ T-cell is dependent on mitochondrial metabolism [12]. In another study, Yin et al. showed that in vitro activation of $CD4^+$ T-cell increases both glucose and glutamine metabolism, where pyruvate might be oxidized by the mitochondria or reduced into lactate. Interestingly, the production of pro-inflammatory cytokine IL-17A is dependent on both last processes, and the IFN-γ production is dependent only on pyruvate oxidation [13], suggesting that the metabolism of Th17 cells differs from Th1 cells.

When T-cells are activated, anabolic processes such as protein and lipid synthesis are increased, whereas catabolic processes like beta-oxidation are suppressed [7]. Also the synthesis of metabolites such as polyamines, cholesterol via fatty acid (FA) synthase, and the pentose phosphate intermediates enhances T-cell activation [12].

After T-cell activation via TCR and CD28, phosphatidylinositol-3,4,5-trisphosphate (PIP3) is produced via phosphoinositide 3-kinase (PI3K) activation. The oxidative phosphorylation (OXPHOS) rate might be increased when calcium is introduced into the mitochondria after being released from endoplasmic reticulum via PIP3 promotion [7]. PIP3 activates downstream signaling components, AKT being the most notable. mTOR and AKT are at the center of a conserved mechanism that permits eukaryotes to integrate nutrient and growth factor signals and, in turn, control proliferation and cell growth [14]. A continuous stimulation of TCR depletes calcium in the endoplasmic reticulum allowing the extracellular calcium entrance. The permanent aperture of the calcium release-activated channels (CRACs) allows the extracellular flux of calcium supporting an effective activation of T-cell [7]. Recent studies suggest that the entrance of

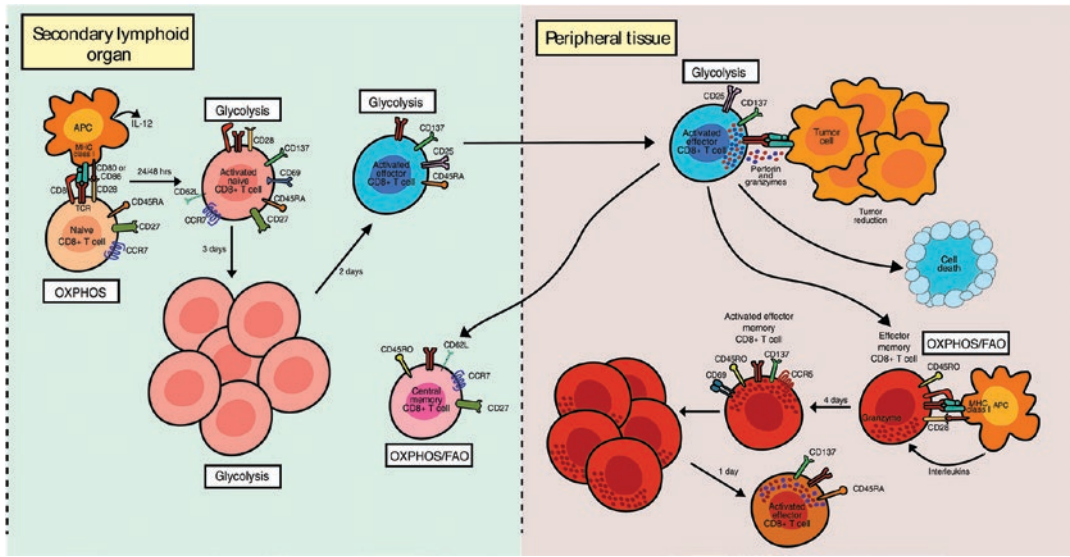


Fig. 7.1 Activation, differentiation, and metabolic profile of T-cells. After activation, naive T-cells proliferate and differentiate in the lymph nodes until they acquire effector functions; then effector T-cells migrate to peripheral tissues. When the infection or inflammatory process is resolved, most of the effector T-cells undergo cell death, and a small proportion differentiate into memory T-cells. During this different maturation stages, the metabolism must change in order to fulfill the nutritional and energetic requirements of T-cells

calcium through the CRACs induces mobilization of the mitochondria into the immune synapses, where the accumulation of CRACs has been found. High levels of cytosolic calcium activate transcription factors that regulate the T-cell response, such as NFAT1 and NF-$_{\kappa}$B, the last being involved in IL-2 production [15].

T-cells undergo metabolic conversion from OXPHOS to glycolysis when they are activated. Nevertheless, in the presence of rapamycin, antigen-stimulated CD8^{+} T-cells increase both OXPHOS and glycolysis. Rapamycin inhibits the mammalian target of rapamycin (mTOR) pathway. Rapamycin treatment also augments the formation of memory cell precursors, and their progenies live longer than memory cells. Interestingly, rapamycin-treated cells endure glucose and IL-2 withdrawal in vitro. Nevertheless, oligomycin inhibition of OXPHOS in rapamycin-treated T-cells causes mitochondrial hyperpolarization, decreased ATP, and increased reactive oxygen species (ROS) formation [16].

7.3.3 Proliferation

The frequency of specific T-cells for any given antigen is low before activation (1/100,000). Following antigen presentation in an appropriate context, antigen-specific T-cells undergo a process of massive proliferation, increasing up to 10,000- to 50,000-fold in their number [1, 17]. For sustaining this massive proliferation, it is necessary that several biosynthetic metabolic pathways become activated, and the mitochondria play an important role in these processes.

The mitochondria of proliferative T-cells take a biosynthetic role where pyruvate and glutamine are intermediary molecules of other biosynthetic pathways. Pyruvate is the last product of glycolysis and is imported into the mitochondria; there, pyruvate is transformed in acetyl-CoA, which will be converted into citrate. The latter can continue through Krebs cycle possibly supporting amino acid and fatty acid (FA) synthesis. Although T-cells could import extracellular lipids, they rather produce de novo lipids to synthesize new membranes during cell growth and proliferation. Amino acids such as aspartic acid, asparagine, arginine, glutamine, and proline are synthesized from Krebs cycle intermediaries. Additionally, glutamine is the amine donor for purine base synthesis during the proliferation of T-cells [18].

The upregulation of the calcium-dependent dehydrogenases supports higher levels of NADH that are used for maintaining mitochondrial respiration. The reduced cofactors (NADH and FADH) produced from this cycle will feed OXPHOS, which will maintain the mitochondrial membrane potential (ψ), thus suppressing apoptosis of proliferative lymphocytes [7]. The persistent saturation of the OXPHOS might increase the production of ROS, which might stimulate the biosynthesis of nucleotides and in consequence might promote T-cells that enter into the S-phase of the cell cycle. In this case, ROS would act as second messenger indicating suitable energetic conditions to support T-cell proliferation [7].

7.3.4 Effector

Although effector T-cells (T_{EFF}) change their metabolic program from OXPHOS to aerobic glycolysis allowing the macromolecular synthesis [2], both energetic metabolisms might fuel T-cell proliferation [19]. However, it has been reported that only aerobic glycolysis is required to support the effector function of CD4^{+} T-cells, like the ability to produce IFN-γ. In this regard, GAPDH binds to AU-rich elements within the 3'UTR of IFN-γ mRNA as a posttranscriptional control, reducing protein translation. This GAPDH-mediated inhibition may be controlled by its metabolic function or by the expression level of GAPDH within CD4^{+} T-cells [19]. On the other hand, Tripmacher et al. reported that the cytokine synthesis is not affected by the myxothiazol inhibition of OXPHOS or by the absence of glucose; instead CD4^{+} T-cell proliferation strongly depends on glucose availability [20]. T_{EFF} cells that fulfill this energetic change are rendered

dependent on glucose and possibly lose the ability to obtain energy from other substrates.

Alternatively, it has also been described that T_{EFF} cells can acquire external FA and store the excess in cytoplasmic lipid droplets [21]. The reduction in glycolytic flux in pro-inflammatory T-cells from rheumatoid arthritis (RA) leads to deficiencies in ATP and pyruvate, which triggers fatty acid biosynthesis and the formation of lipid droplets. This metabolic phenotype is associated with the tissue migration of RA T-cells in vivo [22]. Recently, it has been shown that regulatory T-cells (T_{reg}, $CD4^+$ $Foxp3^+$) uptake FA at a higher rate than T_{EFF} cell subsets, supporting the role of FA metabolism for T_{reg} function [23].

It has been reported that effector memory $CD8^+$ T-cells that re-express CD45RA exhibit multiple characteristics of senescence. Although $CD8^+$ T_{EM} cells have potent functional activity, these cells can accumulate nonfunctional giant mitochondria increasing the mitochondrial mass [24]. On the other hand, Van der Windt et al. found that T_{EFF} cells have less mitochondria than T_M cells possibly because after Ag presentation, the latter proliferates while infection is present and eventually outpaces its own mitochondrial biogenesis; other possibility might be that the mitochondria is unequally segregated during T-cell division. Interestingly, the secondary T_{EFF} expansion is more prolonged than primary T_{EFF} [11].

7.3.5 Memory

After antigen stimulation, T-cells might follow different fates where the levels of glycolysis can act as a metabolic rheostat determining the fate of the immune response. Whereas low levels of glycolysis favor the long-term response with the establishment of memory cells (T_{CM}, T_{EM}, T_{SCM}) and the upregulation of transcription factors (such as *Tcf7*, *Lef1*, and *Bcl6*) associated with this phenomenon, a high glycolytic metabolism supports a T_{EFF} cell profile. This profile is characterized by short-lived cells with strong effective responses, accompanied by a high expression of transcription factors such as *Blimp-1* [9].

A substantial spare respiratory capacity (SRC) is maintained in the mitochondria of $CD8^+$ T_M cells to produce energy under conditions of increased activation or stress; this extra mitochondrial capacity is thought to be important for long-term cellular survival and function [25]. It has been shown that the SRC of $CD8^+$ T_M cells is dependent on the ability of the mitochondria to promote fatty acid oxidation, because FAO, at least partly, provides substrates (long-chain fatty acids, medium- or short-chain fatty acids) for OXPHOS, showing the link between lipid metabolism (burning fat) and cellular longevity in the immune system [11]. In addition, glutamine might also contribute to OXPHOS in T_M cells [11].

As it has been already mentioned, in the differentiation to memory cells, a shift back to mitochondrial OXPHOS is fueled at least in part by FAO [2]. The overexpression of carnitine palmitoyltransferase 1a (Cpt1a), a rate-limiting in FAO, results in increased numbers of $CD8^+$ T_M cells [25]. The pharmacological modulation of FAO can also enhance $CD8^+$ T_M development after vaccination; nonetheless, deletion of tumor necrosis factor (TNF) receptor-associated factor 6 (TRAF6), which is a molecule that downregulates T-cell activation and is an important signal for promoting (inducing) FAO, impairs the development of T_M cells [8]. Additionally, O'Sullivan et al. reported that T_M cells use extracellular glucose to support OXPHOS and FAO, based on their finding that $CD8^+$ T_M cells acquire substantially fewer long-chain FA from the microenvironment than $CD8^+$ T_{EFF} cells. These same authors suggest that lipids must be first synthesized to generate substrates needed for FAO; accordingly, the lysosomal acid lipase (LAL) is expressed in T_M cells sustaining lysosomal lipolysis and boosting memory T-cell development after infection. LAL hydrolyzes triacylglycerol (TAG) and cholesterol esters (CE) to generate cholesterol and free FA in cell lysosomes and participates in mobilization of FA for FAO and T_M cell development, suggesting a futile cycle that allows T_M cells to preserve

glycolytic and lipogenic machinery and maintaining mitochondrial health over long periods of quiescence [21].

Additionally, IL-15, a cytokine that favors survival and self-renewal of T_M cells, promotes the mitochondrial biogenesis favoring the T_M phenotype and enhancing SRC [25]. One characteristic of $CD8^+$ T_M cells is the ability to mount a stronger and faster response to reinfection, supported by mitochondrial ATP production that also facilitates the activity of the glycolytic enzyme hexokinase (HK). It has been shown that this enzyme can be bound to the mitochondrial outer membrane of $CD8^+$ T-cells. HK is quickly recruited to the mitochondria in response to Akt response upon activation. This configuration allows the rapid function of this first enzyme of glycolysis, increasing its accessibility to mitochondrial ATP. This process facilitates the rapid activation of glycolysis that supports proliferation. Mitochondrial HK dissociation impairs proliferation and the rapid engagement of glycolysis, decreasing the secondary effector T-cell response [11]. In contrast, the overexpression of the glycolytic enzyme phosphoglycerate mutase-1 (Pgam1) does not allow the differentiation to long-term memory $CD8^+$ T-cells [9].

Also because AMPK has emerged as an important regulator of memory $CD8^+$ T-cells, a pharmacologic activation of AMPK with metformin might result in enhanced differentiation to $CD8^+$ T memory cells [8].

Recently, the key role of Opa1 in the T_M cell generation has been studied; this protein participates in joining the mitochondrial inner membranes allowing the mitochondrial fusion. Tight mitochondrial cristae organization in T_M cells maintains closely associated electron transport complexes (ETC), which makes the activity of ETC more efficient, favoring a redox balance and allowing continuous entrance of pyruvate into the mitochondria. Survival of Opa1-deficient T_M cells is severely impaired, possibly because FAO cannot be efficiently engaged [26]. T_M cells ensure that any generated pyruvate will efficiently feed into the TCA cycle; in consequence the mitochondrial cristae are tightly configured maximizing the performance of OXPHOS [26].

7.4 Metabolism of T-Cell Is Modified in the Tumor Microenvironment

Cancer cells inhibit anti-tumor immunity through both immunomodulatory receptors and the creation of an immunosuppressive microenvironment. Development and effective function of T-cells are also affected by both nutrient deficiencies, and the excess of waste products of tumor cell metabolism favors acidosis, such as lactate and other metabolites.

7.4.1 Glucose Limitation

Glucose limitation is one of the most important traits of tumor microenvironment. Competition for glucose occurs between tumor cells and tumor-infiltrating lymphocytes (TILs) in the tumor microenvironment, where the nutritional state is crucial in the functionality of TILs. Under nutrient restrictions T-cells can become hyporesponsive; when nutrient deprivation of T-cells is prolonged, even if tumors are highly antigenic, cytokine production is dampened and becomes relatively irreversible [27].

Schurich et al. compared the metabolic profile of $CD8^+$ T-cells originated from subjects affected by two chronic virus infections, CMV and HBV. While CMV-specific T-cells supply their energetic demands by the use of both glycolysis and OXPHOS to exert effector functions, the HBV-specific $CD8^+$ T-cells, which show an exhausted phenotype, characterized by expression of inhibitory molecules like Tim-3 and CTLA-4, do not use OXPHOS and show a dependence on glycolysis [28]. These exhausted cells also present a higher Glut1 expression. When these T_{exh} cells are forced to use OXPHOS, they present a decrease in cytokine production and an increase in the expression of co-inhibitory molecule PD-1. Interestingly, the pro-inflammatory

cytokine IL-12 can stimulate a recovery of HBV-specific effector function and a reduction of PD-1 expression on $CD8^+$ T-cells [28].

Glucose limitation in the early stages of differentiation of the $CD8^+$ T_{EFF} cells promotes T-cell exhaustion, but if there is a recovery of glucose levels after the antigen presentation, the development of T_M cells can be completed. However, if the glucose limitation persists, the exhausted phenotype will be promoted and supported by PD-1 expression [2]. PD-1 signaling reduces glycolysis and promotes FAO in total $CD4^+$ T-cells [29]. PD-1 signaling suppresses Akt/mTOR and aerobic glycolysis and also inhibits PGC-1α and mitochondrial depolarization [27, 30]. On the other hand, mTOR signaling has been shown to contribute to mitochondrial depolarization in early T_{exh} cells. A possible explanation for this apparent contradictory phenomenon is that, mTOR signaling might be activated by other pathways such as Ras, PI3K, PTEN, or p53, which has been reported to occur in cancer pathogenesis [14, 31]. The blockade of the PD-1 pathway reverts the metabolic depression in T_{exh} cells that has an intermediate expression of inhibitory receptor PD-1, whereas limiting mTOR activity by rapamycin improves the mitochondrial fitness of early T_{exh} cells [2]. In a study by Chang et al., the blockade of CTLA-4, PD-1, or PD-L1 with antagonist antibodies in transplanted mice with progressing tumors (D42m1-T3 cells) increases glucose levels in the extracellular tumor milieu, allowing TILs to restore their glycolytic capacity and their effector function. The authors also noted that this checkpoint blockade might be most effective against tumors with higher glycolytic rates [27].

Several $Ca2^+$ channels expressed on plasma membrane (PMCA), mitochondrial membrane (MCU), and ER membrane (SERCA) modulate cytosolic $Ca2^+$ levels. Glycolysis also suppresses SERCA-mediated $Ca2^+$ reuptake activity, allowing the activation of nuclear factor of activated T-cell (NFAT) signaling and anti-tumor responses. In contrast under glucose deprivation, levels of phosphoenolpyruvate (PEP, a glycolytic metabolite) diminish, allowing the $Ca2^+$ reuptake activity of SERCA. These low levels of $Ca2^+$ lead to defective NFAT signaling and effector functions [10]. Reprogramming TILs through phosphoenolpyruvate carboxykinase 1 (PCK-1) overexpression in T-cells increases PEP production, yielding stronger anti-tumor responses in glucose-deprived cells. Lactic acid and FAs might be replenishing Krebs cycle for PEP production [10].

Effector functions of T-cells are affected by low levels of glucose or high lactate conditions, loss of glycolysis impairs the ability to produce IFN-γ and maintain intracellular calcium in T_{EFF} cells. Nonetheless, Angelin et al. found that T_{reg} cells were not affected by low glucose and high lactate conditions. In these cells, Foxp3 negatively regulates Myc, and as a consequence, glycolysis diminishes. Foxp3 also promotes OXPHOS regenerating NAD^+ that reduced to NADH by LDH. GAPDH activity in T_{EFF} cells, which is a key role enzyme of glycolysis, is inhibited by high levels of NADH; in contrast, T_{reg} cells are less dependent on glycolysis. This T_{reg} metabolic phenotype might be deleterious when the immune response is needed to destroy cancer cells [32].

7.4.2 Hypoxia

Hypoxia is an important characteristic of the tumor microenvironment, and there are some reports that show the presence of infiltrating lymphocytes in solid tumors, such as lung, breast, esophageal, and colorectal carcinoma, among others [33–36]. However, the efficiency of their effector capacity has been questioned. Remarkably, during the development of the $CD8^+$ T-cells in the lymphoid organs, lymphocytes are exposed to low oxygen tensions, where pO_2 in the spleen and thymus is around 0.5–4.5 kPa (0.5–4.5%) and 0–2.3 kPa (0–2.3%), respectively. pO_2 in the skin epidermis and the hematopoietic stem cell niche is frequently <1 kPa (<1%) [37].

Caldwell et al. reported that in $CD8^+$ T-cells cultured under hypoxia (2.5% O_2), the expression of vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF), which contains hypoxia-responding elements, is induced, and the expression of IL-2

and IFN-γ (hypoxia-independent gene products) is suppressed. Nevertheless, the effector capacity (Fas Ligand- and perforin-dependent lethal hit delivery) of differentiated $CD8^+$ T-cells was not affected by this condition. Also, $CD8^+$ T-cells express high cell surface density of TCR/CD3 complex and cell adhesion of LFA-1 under hypoxia [38]. In contrast, Nakawama et al. found that low oxygen concentration (3–4% O_2) enhances the induction of antigen-specific $CD8^+$ T-cells, but the combination of hypoxia and acidosis abrogates this enhancement. Remarkably, the mechanism of the hypoxia-associated induction of antigen-specific $CD8^+$ T-cells is not associated with HIF-1α expression [37].

On the other hand, glucose metabolism has particular patterns among the different subtypes of T-cells in hypoxia. The levels of expression of the glucose transporter Glut1 allow to distinguish among different subtypes of $CD4^+$ and $CD8^+$ T lymphocytes. The levels of Glut1 also correlate with proliferation under normoxic conditions; in contrast, under hypoxia, higher Glut1 levels are found but with diminished proliferation rates. Under both conditions, lymphocytes conserved the capacity to produce IL-2. T-cells with high expression of Glut1 show an increased ratio of $CD8^+/CD4^+$ lymphocytes [39].

7.4.3 Lactate and Acidosis

Immune signature database analyses have denoted a negative correlation between LDHA expression and T-cell activation markers in human melanoma patients [40]. High levels of lactic acid in the microenvironment contribute to T-cell and NK cell metabolic dysfunction preventing upregulation of NFAT and diminishing IFN-γ production [40]. Lactic acid also reduces proliferation and cytokine production by PMA-stimulated $CD8^+$ T-cells up to 95% and 50%, respectively. After replacement with new lactate-free medium for 24h, $CD8^+$ T-cells restore their function [41].

In human renal cell carcinoma, the levels of intra-tumoral interstitial lactate are elevated. Although glucose levels do not diminish, TILs from human renal cell carcinoma are unable to efficiently consume and metabolize glucose. TILs also present small and fragmented mitochondria that are hyperpolarized and produce large amounts of ROS [42].

Sodium lactate inhibits $CD4^+$ T-cell motility via glycolysis interference; it also induces a switch to Th17 cell differentiation, which produces the pro-inflammatory cytokine IL-17. On the other hand, lactic acidosis affects $CD8^+$ T-cell motility, and this phenomenon is independent of glycolysis control. Lactic acidosis also decreases cytolytic activity of $CD8^+$ T-cells in vitro [43].

Finally, acidosis has been shown to have protumoral effects per se, and low pH culture promotes inhibition of cytotoxic activity on $CD8^+$ T-cells against target tumor cells. Acidosis also inhibits cytolytic degranulation and cytokine production and blocks the induction of antigen-specific $CD8^+$ T-cells in vitro [37].

7.5 Concluding Remarks

The study of the immune response was traditionally focused on the characterization of effector function, cytokine regulation, and differentiation process of the immune cells, whereas metabolism was overlooked. Nowadays, the study of immunometabolism has become increasingly relevant, because it has emerged that the nutritional levels found in the microenvironment can affect the differentiation process and effector functions of immune cells. Some diseases, like cancer, can alter the microenvironment where immune cells will try to exert their function. Therefore, in order to reach success in the distinct forms of immunotherapy, it will be necessary to understand first how metabolism affects these immune cells. Using this approach, the study of immunometabolism has revealed some clues in regard to how diminishing the exhausted phenotype or reinforcing the immunologic memory boosts an anti-tumor T-cell response. Thus, the knowledge in this field is now opening novel therapeutic approaches.

Acknowledgements This work was supported by the Consejo Nacional de Ciencia y Tecnología (CONACYT), grant CB-2013-219932.

References

1. Cui W, Kaech SM. Generation of effector CD8+ T cells and their conversion to memory T cells. Immunol Rev. 2010;236:151–66. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1600-065X.2010.00926.x.
2. Bengsch B, Johnson AL, Kurachi M, et al. Bioenergetic insufficiencies due to metabolic alterations regulated by the inhibitory receptor PD-1 are an early driver of CD8(+) T cell exhaustion. Immunity. 2016;45:358–73. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.immuni.2016.07.008.
3. Lefrancois L. Development, trafficking, and function of memory T-cell subsets. Immunol Rev. 2006;211:93–103. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.0105-2896.2006.00393.x.
4. Appay V, van Lier RA, Sallusto F, Roederer M. Phenotype and function of human T lymphocyte subsets: consensus and issues. Cytometry A. 2008;73:975–83. https://doi.org/10.1002/cyto.a.20643.
5. Belz GT, Kallies A. Effector and memory CD8+ T cell differentiation: toward a molecular understanding of fate determination. Curr Opin Immunol. 2010;22:279–85. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.coi.2010.03.008.
6. Mahnke YD, Brodie TM, Sallusto F, Roederer M, Lugli E. The who's who of T-cell differentiation: human memory T-cell subsets. Eur J Immunol. 2013;43:2797–809. https://doi.org/10.1002/eji.201343751.
7. Jones RG, Thompson CB. Revving the engine: signal transduction fuels T cell activation. Immunity. 2007;27:173–8. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.immuni.2007.07.008.
8. Pearce EL, Walsh MC, Cejas PJ, Harms GM, Shen H, Wang LS, Jones RG, Choi Y. Enhancing CD8 T-cell memory by modulating fatty acid metabolism. Nature. 2009;460:103–7. https://doi.org/10.1038/nature08097.
9. Sukumar M, Liu J, Ji Y, et al. Inhibiting glycolytic metabolism enhances CD8+ T cell memory and antitumor function. J Clin Invest. 2013;123:4479–88. https://doi.org/10.1172/jci69589.
10. Ho PC, Bihuniak JD, Macintyre AN, et al. Phosphoenolpyruvate is a metabolic checkpoint of anti-tumor T-cell responses. Cell. 2015;162:1217–28. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.cell.2015.08.012.
11. van der Windt GJ, O'Sullivan D, Everts B, et al. CD8 memory T cells have a bioenergetic advantage that underlies their rapid recall ability. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2013;110:14336–41. https://doi.org/10.1073/pnas.1221740110.
12. Jones N, Cronin JG, Dolton G, et al. Metabolic adaptation of human CD4(+) and CD8(+) T-cells to T-cell receptor-mediated stimulation. Front Immunol. 2017;8:1516. https://doi.org/10.3389/fimmu.2017.01516.
13. Yin Y, Choi SC, Xu Z, Zeumer L, Kanda N, Croker BP, Morel L. Glucose oxidation is critical for CD4+ T cell activation in a mouse model of systemic lupus erythematosus. J Immunol. 2016;196:80–90. https://doi.org/10.4049/jimmunol.1501537.
14. Feng Z, Zhang H, Levine AJ, Jin S. The coordinate regulation of the p53 and mTOR pathways in cells. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2005;102:8204–9. https://doi.org/10.1073/pnas.0502857102.
15. Tomida T, Hirose K, Takizawa A, Shibasaki F, Iino M. NFAT functions as a working memory of Ca2+ signals in decoding Ca2+ oscillation. EMBO J. 2003;22:3825–32. https://doi.org/10.1093/emboj/cdg381.
16. He S, Kato K, Jiang J, Wahl DR, Mineishi S, Fisher EM, Murasko DM, Glick GD, Zhang Y. Characterization of the metabolic phenotype of rapamycin-treated CD8+ T cells with augmented ability to generate long-lasting memory cells. PLoS One. 2011;6:e20107. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0020107.
17. Williams MA, Bevan MJ. Effector and memory CTL differentiation. Annu Rev Immunol. 2007;25:171–92. https://doi.org/10.1146/annurev.immunol.25.022106.141548.
18. D'Souza AD, Parikh N, Kaech SM, Shadel GS. Convergence of multiple signaling pathways is required to coordinately up-regulate mtDNA and mitochondrial biogenesis during T cell activation. Mitochondrion. 2007;7:374–85. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.mito.2007.08.001.
19. Chang CH, Curtis JD, Maggi LB Jr, et al. Posttranscriptional control of T cell effector function by aerobic glycolysis. Cell. 2013;153:1239–51. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.cell.2013.05.016.
20. Tripmacher R, Gaber T, Dziurla R, et al. Human CD4(+) T cells maintain specific functions even under conditions of extremely restricted ATP production. Eur J Immunol. 2008;38:1631–42. https://doi.org/10.1002/eji.200738047.
21. O'Sullivan D, van der Windt GJ, Huang SC, et al. Memory CD8(+) T cells use cell-intrinsic lipolysis to support the metabolic programming necessary for development. Immunity. 2014;41:75–88. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.immuni.2014.06.005.
22. Shen Y, Wen Z, Li Y, Matteson EL, Hong J, Goronzy JJ, Weyand CM. Metabolic control of the scaffold protein TKS5 in tissue-invasive, proinflammatory T cells. Nat Immunol. 2017;18:1025–34. https://doi.org/10.1038/ni.3808.
23. Muroski ME, Miska J, Chang AL, Zhang P, Rashidi A, Moore H, Lopez-Rosas A, Han Y, Lesniak MS. Fatty acid uptake in T cell subsets using a quantum dot fatty acid conjugate. Sci Rep. 2017;7:5790. https://doi.org/10.1038/s41598-017-05556-x.
24. Henson SM, Lanna A, Riddell NE, et al. p38 signaling inhibits mTORC1-independent autophagy in senescent human CD8(+) T cells. J Clin Invest. 2014;124:4004–16. https://doi.org/10.1172/jci75051.
25. van der Windt GJ, Everts B, Chang CH, Curtis JD, Freitas TC, Amiel E, Pearce EJ, Pearce EL. Mitochondrial respiratory capacity is a critical regulator of CD8+ T cell memory development.

Immunity. 2012;36:68–78. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.immuni.2011.12.007.
26. Buck MD, O'Sullivan D, Klein Geltink RI, et al. Mitochondrial dynamics controls T cell fate through metabolic programming. Cell. 2016;166:63–76. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.cell.2016.05.035.
27. Chang CH, Qiu J, O'Sullivan D, et al. Metabolic competition in the tumor microenvironment is a driver of cancer progression. Cell. 2015;162:1229–41. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.cell.2015.08.016.
28. Schurich A, Pallett LJ, Jajbhay D, et al. Distinct metabolic requirements of exhausted and functional virus-specific CD8 T cells in the same host. Cell Rep. 2016;16:1243–52. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.celrep.2016.06.078.
29. Patsoukis N, Bardhan K, Chatterjee P, et al. PD-1 alters T-cell metabolic reprogramming by inhibiting glycolysis and promoting lipolysis and fatty acid oxidation. Nat Commun. 2015;6:6692. https://doi.org/10.1038/ncomms7692.
30. Parry RV, Chemnitz JM, Frauwirth KA, Lanfranco AR, Braunstein I, Kobayashi SV, Linsley PS, Thompson CB, Riley JL. CTLA-4 and PD-1 receptors inhibit T-cell activation by distinct mechanisms. Mol Cell Biol. 2005;25:9543–53. https://doi.org/10.1128/mcb.25.21.9543-9553.2005.
31. Duvel K, Yecies JL, Menon S, et al. Activation of a metabolic gene regulatory network downstream of mTOR complex 1. Mol Cell. 2010;39:171–83. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.molcel.2010.06.022.
32. Angelin A, Gil-de-Gomez L, Dahiya S, et al. Foxp3 reprograms T cell metabolism to function in low-glucose, high-lactate environments. Cell Metab. 2017;25:1282–93.e7. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.cmet.2016.12.018.
33. Aguilar-Cazares D, Meneses-Flores M, Prado-Garcia H, Islas-Vazquez L, Rojo-Leon V, Romero-Garcia S, Rivera-Rosales RM, Lopez-Gonzalez JS. Relationship of dendritic cell density, HMGB1 expression, and tumor-infiltrating lymphocytes in non-small cell lung carcinomas. Appl Immunohistochem Mol Morphol. 2014;22:105–13. https://doi.org/10.1097/PAI.0b013e3182849808.
34. Denkert C, von Minckwitz G, Darb-Esfahani S, et al. Tumour-infiltrating lymphocytes and prognosis in different subtypes of breast cancer: a pooled analysis of 3771 patients treated with neoadjuvant therapy. Lancet Oncol. 2017;19(1):P40–50. https://doi.org/10.1016/s1470-2045(17)30904-x.
35. Jakubowska K, Kisielewski W, Kanczuga-Koda L, Koda M, Famulski W. Stromal and intraepithelial tumor-infiltrating lymphocytes in colorectal carcinoma. Oncol Lett. 2017;14:6421–32. https://doi.org/10.3892/ol.2017.7013.
36. Yagi T, Baba Y, Ishimoto T, Iwatsuki M, Miyamoto Y, Yoshida N, Watanabe M, Baba H. PD-L1 expression, tumor-infiltrating lymphocytes, and clinical outcome in patients with surgically resected esophageal cancer. Ann Surg. 2019;269(3):471–8. https://doi.org/10.1097/sla.0000000000002616.
37. Nakagawa Y, Negishi Y, Shimizu M, Takahashi M, Ichikawa M, Takahashi H. Effects of extracellular pH and hypoxia on the function and development of antigen-specific cytotoxic T lymphocytes. Immunol Lett. 2015;167:72–86. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.imlet.2015.07.003.
38. Caldwell CC, Kojima H, Lukashev D, Armstrong J, Farber M, Apasov SG, Sitkovsky MV. Differential effects of physiologically relevant hypoxic conditions on T lymphocyte development and effector functions. J Immunol. 2001;167:6140–9.
39. Cretenet G, Clerc I, Matias M, et al. Cell surface Glut1 levels distinguish human CD4 and CD8 T lymphocyte subsets with distinct effector functions. Sci Rep. 2016;6:24129. https://doi.org/10.1038/srep24129.
40. Brand A, Singer K, Koehl GE, et al. LDHA-associated lactic acid production blunts tumor immunosurveillance by T and NK cells. Cell Metab. 2016;24:657–71. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.cmet.2016.08.011.
41. Fischer K, Hoffmann P, Voelkl S, et al. Inhibitory effect of tumor cell-derived lactic acid on human T cells. Blood. 2007;109:3812–9. https://doi.org/10.1182/blood-2006-07-035972.
42. Siska PJ, Beckermann KE, Mason FM, et al. Mitochondrial dysregulation and glycolytic insufficiency functionally impair CD8 T cells infiltrating human renal cell carcinoma. JCI Insight. 2017;2:93411. https://doi.org/10.1172/jci.insight.93411.
43. Haas R, Smith J, Rocher-Ros V, et al. Lactate regulates metabolic and pro-inflammatory circuits in control of T cell migration and effector functions. PLoS Biol. 2015;13:e1002202. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pbio.1002202.

8 The Role of Exhaustion in Tumor-Induced T-Cell Dysfunction in Cancer

Heriberto Prado-Garcia
and Susana Romero-Garcia

Contents

8.1 Introduction

T lymphocytes are essential components of the immune system and are divided into two major functional types: helper and cytotoxic T-cells. Helper T-cells ($CD4^+$) release an array of cytokines and orchestrate diverse immune responses, which integrate both adaptive and innate effector mechanisms. Cytotoxic T-cells ($CD8^+$ effector T-cells) are primarily involved in the recognition and elimination of body cells compromised by intracellular pathogens or oncogenic transformation.

H. Prado-Garcia (✉) · S. Romero-Garcia
Departamento de Enfermedades Cronico-Degenerativas, Instituto Nacional de Enfermedades Respiratorias "Ismael Cosío Villegas", Mexico City, Mexico

A major focus of immunotherapeutic strategies to boost endogenous antitumor immunity has been the stimulation of T-cells. However, despite homing to tumor sites, infiltrating T-cells seldom control tumor growth, because the tumor microenvironment contains a wide array of suppressive mechanisms that allow tumors to escape T-cell effector functions.

Induction of tolerance by T-cell anergy has been regarded as a mechanism responsible for T-cell hyporesponsiveness in cancer patients. However, cancer is also regarded as a chronic disease, similar to chronic viral infections, where T-cells are continuously stimulated. Thus, with chronic stimulation, tumor-specific T-cells gradually become less functional, until they undergo cell death, a phenomenon known as

N. Rezaei (ed.), *Cancer Immunology*, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-30845-2_8

T-cell exhaustion. This chapter will focus on the latter mechanism and its role in cancer-induced T-cell dysfunction.

8.2 T-Cell Activation

T-cell activation requires two signals delivered by antigen-presenting cells (APCs). The first signal involves the presentation of the antigen by APCs, in the form of peptides bound to MHC class I or class II molecules, to the T-cell receptor (TCR), expressed on the surface of the T-cell. The second signal, or costimulatory signal, stimulates T-cells in conjunction with the antigen. The molecules expressed on APCs engage their corresponding costimulatory receptors on the surface of T-cells. CD80 (B7-1) and CD86 (B7-2) are well-characterized costimulatory signal molecules, which interact with CD28 expressed on the T-cell membrane [1] (Fig. 8.1). CD28 is the primary costimulatory molecule for naïve T-cells; this molecule is essential for initiating T-cell responses. The interaction of CD80 and CD86 with CD28, together with TCR signaling, promotes the expansion, along with differentiation of antigen-stimulated T-cells into effector and memory cells. The interaction of CD28 with its ligands (1) enhances the production of interleukin (IL-) 2, as well as other cytokines, (2) promotes energetic metabolism, (3) induces the cell cycle progression, (4) promotes T-cell survival, and (5) maintains T-cell responsiveness upon subsequent restimulation [2].

Although costimulatory molecules were initially identified as stimulators of T-cell responses, some of these receptors inhibit T-cell function [1]. For example, cytotoxic T-lymphocyte-associated antigen-4 (CTLA-4) is a CD28 homolog that also binds to CD80 or CD86. CTLA-4 expression is inducible after T-cell activation and is involved in the induction, along with maintenance of tolerance, as its ligation inhibits IL-2 production, thus blocking cell cycle progression [1].

After the discovery of homologs of CD28/CTLA-4 and their ligands, many other coinhibitory molecules have been identified, some of which include the inducible T-cell costimulator (ICOS or CD278) with its ligand CD275 (ICOS-L, B7h, B7-RP), the inhibitory programmed death-1 (PD-1, CD279) with its ligands PD-L1 (B7-H1, CD274) as well as PD-L2 (B7-DC, CD273), and the B- and T-lymphocyte attenuator (BTLA, CD272) which binds the herpes virus entry mediator (HVEM). BTLA is an additional receptor of the immunoglobulin superfamily that negatively regulates T-cell activation. In addition, HVEM interacts with another negative regulator of T-cells, CD160. Recent studies of the lymphocyte activation gene-3 (LAG-3, CD223) suggest that this molecule also plays an important role in the regulation of T-cell responses. Moreover, the T-cell immunoglobulin domain and mucin domain-3 (TIM-3), with its ligand galectin-9, are involved in terminating Th1 cell responses and establishing tolerance [3, 4].

T-cells that recognize antigens in the absence of costimulation either fail to respond and undergo cell death or enter a state of unresponsiveness. Thus, costimulation is a key factor in the outcome of T-cell interactions with the antigen. Significant efforts have been undertaken to characterize costimulatory molecules in order to augment antitumor responses; recent evidence has demonstrated the importance of coinhibitory molecules in the inhibition of immune responses. Thus, interference with these regulatory pathways has gained interest as a potential strategy for cancer therapy [1].

8.3 T-Cell Anergy

Tolerance is a mechanism that renders antigen-specific T-cells (self-tolerance) hyporesponsive and prevents autoimmunity. Central and peripheral tolerance are two mechanisms involved in T-cells' unresponsiveness to self. Peripheral tolerance is a mechanism that promotes T-cell functional inactivation after antigen encounter [5]. Central tolerance is not part of the objective of this review and is comprehensively covered elsewhere [6]. Peripheral tolerance protects the host from autoimmune diseases and has been suggested to play an important role in the induction of T-cell dysfunction in cancer patients.

Anergy is one of the mechanisms for inducing peripheral tolerance in which, subsequent to anti-

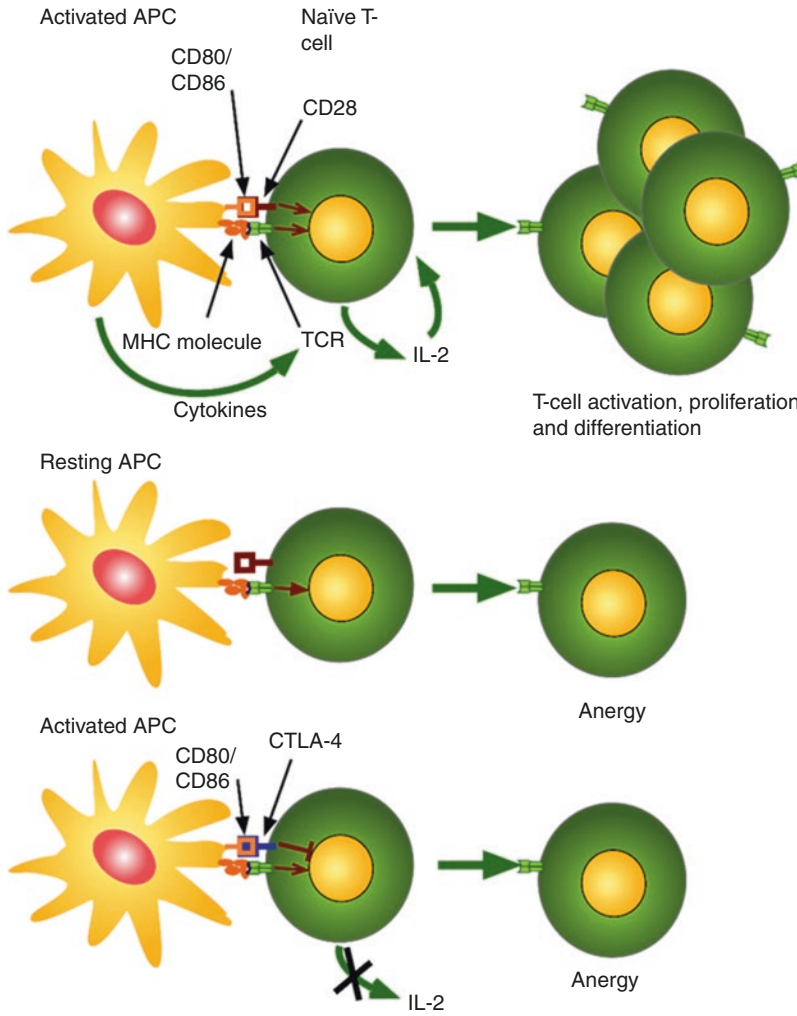


Fig. 8.1 T-cell activation requires recognition of the antigen and costimulatory signals. Inflammation generated by tissue damage or infections activates antigen-presenting cells (*APCs*) and stimulates the expression of costimulatory molecules, such as CD80/CD86. Presentation of the antigen to the T-cell receptor (*TCR*), in the context of major histocompatibility complex (*MHC*) molecules and CD80/CD86 that interact with CD28, stimulates the expansion and differentiation of naïve T-cells (*top panel*). Resting APCs express few or no costimulatory molecules and fail to activate T-cells, and this leads to anergy (*middle panel*). CTLA-4 is a coinhibitory molecule that binds CD80 and CD86 and is upregulated on activated T-cells. CD80/CD86-CTLA-4 interactions inhibit T-cell responses and also mediate anergy

gen encounter, the T-cell is intrinsically and functionally inactivated [5]. The cell remains alive in this hyporesponsive state for an extended period of time. Anergic T-cells neither produce nor respond to proliferative signals and are unable to exert effector functions, such as cytolysis or cytokine secretion. As there are many mechanisms that induce T-cell hyporesponsiveness, each one has its own characteristics, as well as mechanisms that maintain this state [7]; hence, the use of the term anergy has been controversial. In this chapter we will refer to anergy as a state of hyporesponsiveness resulting from stimulation by an antigen without costimulatory and inflammatory signals. A characteristic of anergy is that it must be cell autonomous, which distinguishes this process from immunoregulation mediated through other regulatory cells, such as regulatory T-cells (Tregs) [8, 9].

There are at least five distinct sets of circumstances that lead to T-cell anergy [5, 7]: (1) TCR ligation in the absence of full costimulation, (2) exposure to partial agonists and peptides with minor sequence differences from native agonist antigenic peptides that exhibit reduced avidity for TCR ligation, (3) full signaling without IL-2 receptor-driven cell division, (4) TCR ligation in the presence of IL-10 or transforming growth factor-β (TGF-β), and (5) anergy induced through CTLA-4 or other coinhibitory molecules (Fig. 8.1).

Thus, anergy is the consequence of factors that negatively regulate proximal TCR-coupled signal transduction, together with active transcriptional silencing, which is reinforced through epigenetic modifications [10]. This state of nonresponsiveness is molecularly distinct from T-cell exhaustion. T-cell anergy is induced upon the first encounter with the antigen and is quickly initiated, in contrast with T-cell exhaustion, which is progressive. Gene expression profiles show that anergy is partially distinct to exhaustion. Genes, such as Rnf128 (Grail), Egr2, Egr3, Dgka, and Cb1b, are upregulated in anergic (but not in exhausted) T-cells, whereas NFAT is upregulated under both conditions [11–13]. The detailed characterization of the differences between anergy and T-cell exhaustion will have important implications for therapeutic interventions in immune-mediated diseases and chronic infections.

8.3.1 T-Cell Anergy in Cancer

Anergy has been proposed to play a role in the impairment of T-cell function in human cancers. For starters, tumor cells are poor APCs, as these cells express antigens on MHC class I molecules but do not express costimulatory molecules to provide a second signal for full T-cell activation; thus, tumor-infiltrating lymphocytes (TILs) are rendered anergic [14]. In addition, immature myeloid-derived dendritic cells (iDCs), plasmacytoid dendritic cells (pDCs), and myeloid-derived suppressor cells (MDSCs), together with tumor-associated macrophages (TAMs) potentially induce anergy in TILs [10, 15, 16]. Several studies have shown that human tumor cells, iDCs, pDCs, MDSCs, and TAMs, express high levels of coinhibitory molecules, such as PD-L1, PD-L2, ICOS-L (B7-H2, CD275), and B7-H3 (CD276), indicating a poor costimulatory, as well as a high inhibitory anergy-promoting environment. Evidence that cancer induces T-cell anergy comes from studies where the transfection of CD80 in tumor cells or the blockage of the B7 family coinhibitory molecules results in reduced tumor growth or tumor rejection in mouse models [3, 15–17].

Analysis of the functional state of TILs has shown that these cells are characterized by impairment of cytolytic activity, decreased cytokine secretion, reduced expression of IL-2Rα (CD25), and diminished activation of extracellular signal-regulated kinase (ERK) after TCR activation. Thus, T-cell anergy occurs in the tumor microenvironment of some human cancers [18–20]. Nevertheless, direct evidence of anergic T-cells has been difficult to obtain due to the lack of surface markers to identify this state [10].

Based on mouse tumor models, the induction of antigen-specific T-cell anergy has been suggested to be an early event in the progression of tumors, which occurs in the equilibrium phase of immunoediting, before immunosuppression takes place in advanced tumors (escape phase) [14, 21]. However, Klein et al. showed that highly immunogenic tumors evade immunosurveillance due to antigen overload and an insufficient number of tumor-specific T-cells, resulting in the exhaustion of the immune cells [22]. Thus, from a temporal perspective, T-cell anergy may predominantly occur during the early stages of tumor progression, whereas T-cell exhaustion might play a crucial role in T-cell dysfunction during the late stages of cancer [14].

8.4 T-Cell Exhaustion

T-cell exhaustion has been defined as a stage of T-cell differentiation where T-cells have poor effector functions and sustained coinhibitory receptor expression, along with a transcriptional state distinct from that of functional effector or memory T-cells [23]. Originally, this phenomenon was identified in chronic viral infections in mice

and later in chronic viral infections in humans, e.g., human immunodeficiency virus (HIV), hepatitis B virus (HBV), and hepatitis C virus (HCV) [23–26]. Chronic bacterial and parasitic infections have been demonstrated to promote T-cell exhaustion; also, cancer has been suggested to induce a similar phenomenon [24, 27, 28].

During chronic infections, antigen-specific $CD8^+$ T-cells initially acquire effector functions, but gradually become less functional as the infection progresses. The dysfunction of exhausted T-cells is hierarchical, showing the initial loss of properties, such as cytotoxic activity and proliferative potential, together with IL-2 synthesis; followed by diminished tumor necrosis factor-alpha (TNF-α) secretion; and subsequent loss of interferon-gamma (IFN-γ) production during the late stages of exhaustion. Finally, during the most extreme stages of exhaustion, deletion of T-cells occurs through apoptosis [23, 29] (Fig. 8.2). Like $CD8^+$ T-cells, $CD4^+$ T-cells also lose function during chronic infections; however, there is little information about the mechanisms of exhaustion in this T-cell subpopulation [23, 30].

Exhausted T-cells possess a molecular profile that is distinct from those of memory, effector, and anergic T-cells [12]. First, many membrane inhibitory receptors are upregulated, for instance, PD-1, LAG-3, and TIM-3. Second, transcription of gene encoding molecules involved in TCR signaling (such as Lck and NFAT), along with cytokine receptors (IL-7 and IL-15 receptors) is downregulated. Third, the pattern of genes involved in chemotaxis, migration, as well as adhesion is changed. Fourth, there is an altered pattern of differentiation compared with memory or effector T-cells. Finally, exhausted T-cells present deficiencies in translational, metabolic, and bioenergetic processes, such as the Krebs cycle [12].

8.4.1 Mechanisms for Inducing T-Cell Exhaustion

Coinhibitory receptors play a key role in many aspects of adaptive immunity, including self-tolerance, prevention of autoimmunity, as well as cancer. The mechanisms of regulation through coinhibitory receptors have not been characterized in detail; nevertheless, several studies suggest that these receptors attenuate T-cell responses in many ways. Accumulating evidence highlights the pivotal role of the PD-1/PD-L1 pathway in maintaining an immunosuppressive tumor microenvironment. This pathway has been proposed to be the most important coinhibitory signal involved in T-cell exhaustion [31, 32].

PD-1 (CD279) is a transmembrane receptor of the Ig superfamily, which is upregulated in mice chronically infected with lymphocytic choriomeningitis virus (LCMV) [31, 33]. PD-1 interacts with its ligands PD-L1 (B7-H1, CD274) or PD-L2 (B7-DC, CD273), which are members of the B7 family [32]. PD-1 is rapidly upregulated on activated T-cells; then, after antigen clearance, the expression of this receptor is reduced on effector T-cells. Upon subsequent antigen stimulation, effector T-cells show upregulated PD-1 expression. Thus, the continuous stimulation of T-cells during chronic infections induces the accumulation of $PD\text{-}1^+$ T-cells [23]. High levels of PD-L1 expression on APCs (or tumor cells) might sustain PD-1 expression on T-cells and impair T-cell effector maturation, which allows the progression of chronic infection [34–36]. PD-L1 interaction with PD-1 induces inhibition of the PI3K/AKT pathway, by increasing PTEN phosphatase activity [33]. Moreover, signaling through PD-1 inhibits glycolytic metabolism and promotes metabolism of lipids, which inhibits T-cell metabolic reprogramming, consequently preventing differentiation to effector T-cells [37].

Studies in mouse tumor models show that the inhibition of PD-L1 or PD-1 using blocking monoclonal antibodies (mAbs) increases the cytolytic activity of $CD8^+$ T-cells and reverses T-cell dysfunction [38, 39]. Subsequently, Barber et al. showed that the inhibition of PD-1 using anti-PD-1 mAbs in chronically infected mice enhances the proliferation, as well as effector functions of exhausted T-cells [31]. Since the publication of these seminal reports, many other studies have shown that the interaction of PD-1 with its ligand (PD-L1) is crucially involved in T-cell exhaustion in chronic human pathogen infections and cancer [25–27, 40–42].

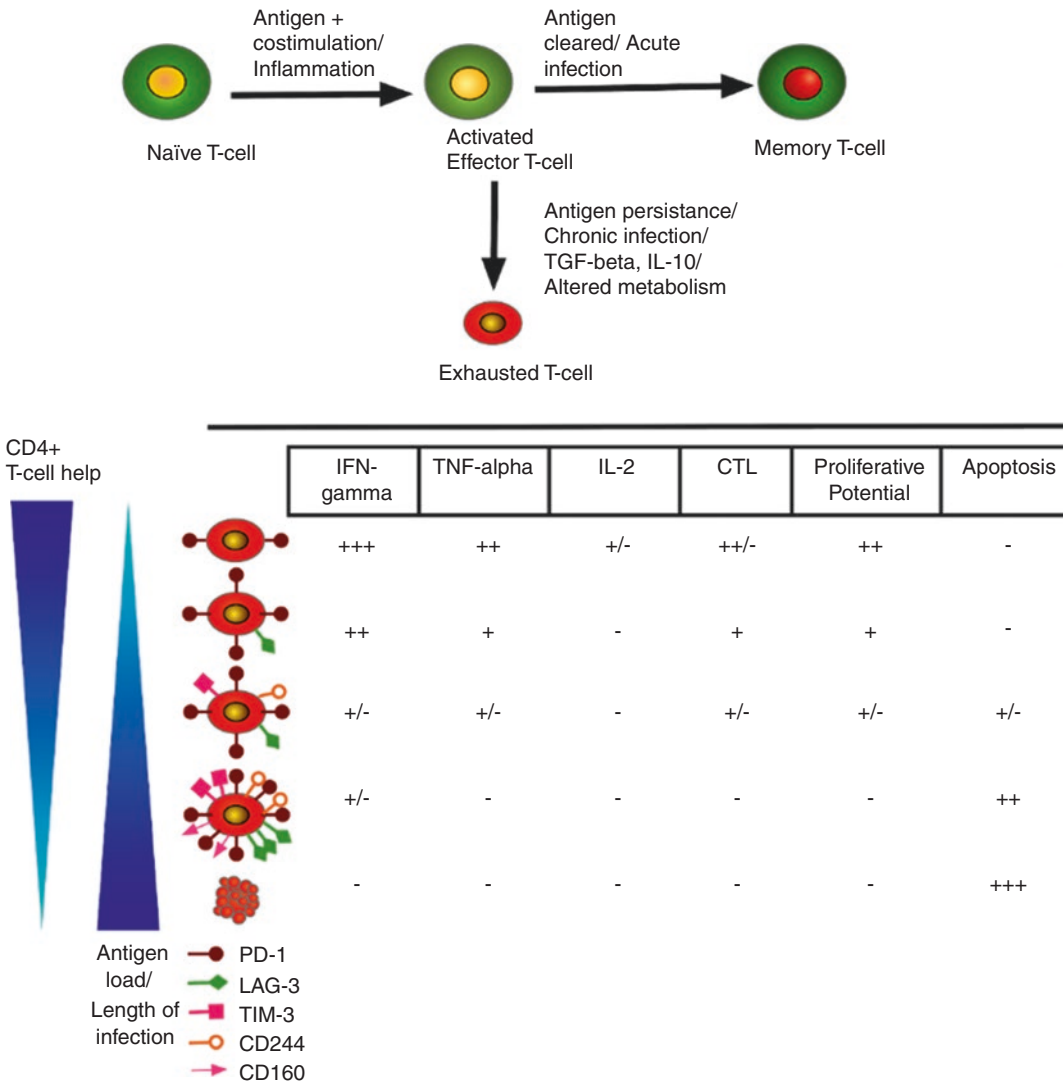


Fig. 8.2 T-cell exhaustion during chronic inflammation. In an acute inflammatory process, naïve T-cells are primed by an antigen, costimulatory molecules, and cytokines that promote differentiation into effector T-cells. After clearance of the antigen and once inflammation is resolved, a subset of effector T-cells differentiate to become memory cells. During chronic processes, such as viral infections, the antigen persists, and T-cells go through several stages of dysfunction, losing effector functions (cytolysis and secretion of cytokines) and proliferative potential in a hierarchical manner. Finally, deletion of T-cells by apoptosis occurs. As antigen load increases or $CD4^+$ T helper subpopulation decreases, T-cells become more exhausted. Expression of coinhibitory receptors is correlated with the level of exhaustion. The scale of each activity is presented from high (+++) to low (−)

In addition to PD-1, many other cell surface inhibitory receptors also participate in T-cell exhaustion. These coinhibitory receptors regulate distinct T-cell functions. For instance, PD-1 pathway affects survival, together with proliferation, whereas LAG-3 affects cell cycle progression, calcium flux, and cytokine production but has less influence on apoptosis [23]. LAG-3 is structurally analogous to the CD4 molecule, is upregulated on activated T-cells, and binds MHC class II molecules. In addition to activated effector $CD4^+$ T-cells, Tregs can also express LAG-3 and is involved in the suppressor function. Nevertheless, the pathway(s) involved for inducing T-cell inhibition are not clear [43].

TIM-3 is an inhibitory molecule that downregulates effector Th1 responses. This molecule has several ligands, such as galectin-9 and phosphatidylserine, along with the high mobility group protein B1 (HMGB1). The latter two molecules have more relevant roles in innate immune cells. The cytoplasmic tail of TIM-3 may interact with different TCR components. When galectin-9 binds to TIM-3, two sites of the cytoplasmic tail (Y256 and Y263) are phosphorylated, which favors the release of HLA-B-associated transcript 3 (Bat-3) from the cytoplasmic tail. This process promotes T-cell inhibition by allowing binding of SH2 domain-containing Src kinases to the tail and subsequent downregulation of TCR signaling [43]. TIM-3 targets signaling pathways involved in T-cell metabolism, such as PI3K/Akt/mTOR; thus, it has been hypothesized that, similar to PD-1, TIM-3 alters the metabolism of effector T-cells [44]. Upregulation of TIM-3 molecule has been found in HIV-specific and HCV-specific $CD8^+$ T-cells in patients with progressive HIV and HCV infections, respectively. Importantly, the co-expression of TIM-3, together with PD-1, has been associated with severe $CD8^+$ T-cell exhaustion in terms of the proliferation as well as secretion of effector cytokines, such as IFN-γ, TNF-α, and IL-2 [23]. Interestingly, $CD8^+$ T-cells expressing both coinhibitory receptors also produce the suppressive cytokine IL-10 [45]. Other receptors belonging to the tumor necrosis receptor family are upregulated in exhausted T-cells, such as Fas, TNF-R, as well as tumor necrosis factor-related apoptosis-inducing ligand (TRAIL) receptors; hence, these death receptors have been implicated in the induction of exhaustion, as T-cells might become prone to activation-induced cell death (AICD) [23, 46, 47].

The increased and sustained expression of multiple coinhibitory receptors is a key feature of CD4+ and CD8+ T-cell exhaustion. However, exhausted T-cells do not necessarily co-express all of the coinhibitory molecules. The pattern as well as the level of expression of coinhibitory receptors simultaneously expressed in the same CD8+ T-cell might considerably influence the severity of dysfunction [48]. Remarkably, functional effector T-cells express coinhibitory receptors during activation [49].

Several factors, such as the duration of the infection, the level of antigen exposure, and the availability of $CD4^+$ T-cell help, in addition to the type of APCs that present the antigen, have been implicated in the severity of T-cell exhaustion. Metabolic pathways that depend on Akt/mTOR signaling, which is essential for the activation of T-cell metabolism, may be affected by coinhibitory molecules such as PD-1 or CTLA-4 [37, 50]. Ligand availability for coinhibitory receptors could also influence the degree of exhaustion, as well as environmental factors such as the presence of immunoregulatory cytokines or metabolites [30]. In chronic viral infections, IL-10 expression is associated with T-cell dysfunction [48, 51]. In addition, TGF-β has also been linked to exhaustion in chronic infections in humans [52, 53]; nevertheless, the mechanisms underlying IL-10 and TGF-β-mediated T-cell exhaustion are unclear. Remarkably, both cytokines are secreted by several human tumors [54, 55].

Dysfunction of T-cell metabolism has been associated with exhaustion [37, 56]. Recently, interferon regulatory factor 4 (Irf4), which is a TCR-responsive transcription factor, has been shown to be highly expressed in exhausted T-cells in a murine model of LCMV. IRF4 represses anabolic metabolism, as well as mitochondrial function; increases the expression of coinhibitory receptors, such as PD-1 and TIM-3; and impairs the effector functions of LCMV glycoprotein-derived epitope gp33-specific CD8+ T-cells [56]. Lysine/histone acetyltransferase 2B (KAT2B) is a transcriptional co-activator that has anti-apoptotic functions when cells are under metabolic stress. This molecule has been recently shown to be upregulated in activated Th1 cells and is a marker of patients with HCV, malaria, or influenza that responds to therapy [57]. Thus, expression of KAT2B may be downregulated in exhausted T-cells.

8.4.2 Identification of Exhausted T-Cells

Genomic studies support the notion that T-cell exhaustion represents a particular state of differentiation, different from that of effector or

memory T-cells; hence exhausted T-cells have a particular molecular and phenotypical profile [12, 30]. Exhausted T-cells show a poorly differentiated phenotype ($CD27^{hi}CD28^{lo}CD57^{lo}CD127^{lo}CCR7^{-}CD45RA^{+}$ or $CD27^{+}CD45RO^{+}$) that correlates with dysfunction. Although PD-1 upregulation in T-cells was initially considered as a hallmark of T-cell exhaustion, this molecule is upregulated along with activation markers, such as CD38 or HLA-DR [58]. In healthy adults, the percentage of PD-1^{+} cells varies from 40 to 80% of ($CCR7^{+/-}CD45RA^{-}$) memory T-cells; remarkably, these cells do not exhibit characteristics of exhaustion [59]. Thus, PD-1 is associated with T-cell activation in addition to T-cell differentiation [49].

Many cell surface coinhibitory receptors are expressed in exhausted T-cells. LAG-3, TIM-3, CD244 (2B4), CD160, CTLA-4, and B- and T-lymphocyte attenuator (BTLA) are co-expressed in antigen-specific $CD8^{+}$ T-cells during chronic infection. The pattern and the level of coinhibitory receptors simultaneously expressed in the same $CD8^{+}$ T-cell considerably influence the severity of dysfunction [48]. However, depending on the chronic infection or cancer, exhausted T-cells may express a different pattern of coinhibitory molecules.

Several transcriptional pathways have been associated with T-cell exhaustion. Basic leucine zipper transcriptional factor ATF-like (BATF), is upregulated upon ligation of PD-1. BATF has been shown to reduce proliferation and IL-2 secretion albeit it does not increase the expression of other coinhibitory receptors (CD244 or CD160) [60]. Also, increased expression of transcriptional repressor Blimp-1 is associated with upregulation of coinhibitory receptors such as PD-1, LAG-3, CD160, and CD244. In addition, the expression of transcription factor NFATc1 (NFAT2) is also increased, but shows a dysregulated function [12, 61]. On the other hand, the transcription factor T-bet plays a role in protection against T-cell exhaustion, as T-bet promotes terminal differentiation after acute infection. Besides, the increased expression of this transcription factor inhibits the expression of coinhibitory receptors during chronic viral infection. T-bet expression is downregulated through persistent antigenic stimulation, resulting in exhaustion [62]. Paley reported that two subsets of exhausted T-cells can be found in chronic LCMV infection, based on the expression of T-bet, Eomesodermin (Eomes), as well as PD-1. T-cells identified as $T\text{-}bet^{high}$ $Eomes^{low}$ $PD\text{-}1^{int}$ have some proliferative potential and produce IFN-γ along with TNF-α; these cells are located in the spleen and blood. On the other hand, cells that express the phenotype $T\text{-}bet^{low}$ $Eomes^{high}$ $PD\text{-}1^{high}$ have a lower proliferative potential, secrete lower levels of cytokines in comparison to the former subset, and express higher levels of other coinhibitory molecules; these cells have cytolytic activity and are located in peripheral tissues [63].

8.5 T-Cell Exhaustion in Cancer

Cancer and chronic viral infections have been thought to share similar mechanisms in establishing high antigen load together with an immunosuppressive environment. However, there is a fundamental difference between these two diseases: viral antigens are exogenous and extremely immunogenic, whereas tumor antigens are self-molecules that are weakly immunogenic. Thus, compared with tumor-specific T-cells, virus-specific T-cells are more frequent and easily detectable, facilitating identification, phenotypic characterization, as well as their isolation [14].

Some of the phenotypic, functional, and molecular changes that occur in T-cells during chronic infections are exhibited in TILs as well as peripheral blood T-cells from several cancer types. The initial aim of tumor immunotherapy was to prevent anergy, in addition to tolerance toward tumor antigens. However, the efficacy of this strategy is potentially limited by T-cell exhaustion [14]. Accordingly, Hailemichael et al. showed that in mice vaccinated with gp100 melanoma peptide, the persisting tumor antigen at vaccination sites induces the sequestration of $CD8^{+}$ T-cells, resulting in the dysfunction, as well as death of these cells [64].

In the tumor microenvironment, infiltrating T-cells become dysfunctional and show reduced effector functions. Several reports suggest that PD-L1 expression on tumor cells plays an important role in tumor-induced T-cell dysfunction. PD-L1 membrane expression has been observed using immunohistochemistry on many human tumors, such as melanoma, lung, larynx, colon, breast, cervix, and stomach [32]. In breast, esophageal, gastric, as well as renal carcinomas, the increased expression of PD-L1 on the surface of tumor cells is strongly associated with poor prognosis [32, 65]. Thus, T-cell exhaustion has been proposed as a mechanism for inducing dysfunction through the PD-L1/PD-1 pathway. However, as previously indicated, PD-1 expression cannot be viewed as the sole marker of T-cell exhaustion in chronic diseases and cancer; hence, other markers, as well as functional assays must be considered [66].

In metastatic melanoma lesions, TILs show upregulation of PD-1 expression, accompanied with reduced production of IFN-γ and TNF-α, along with IL-2. Both tumor-infiltrating $CD8^+$ T-cells, particularly MART-1-specific, and tumor-infiltrating $CD4^+$ T-cells show significantly higher levels of PD-1 expression than $CD8^+$ and $CD4^+$ T-cells from peripheral blood and normal tissues from cancer patients. In addition, a large proportion of $CD8^+$ T-cells from TILs were $PD\text{-}1^+CTLA\text{-}4^+$ cells compared with normal tissues, as well as blood. $PD\text{-}1^+CD8^+$ cells from TILs lacked CD25 together with CD127 expression, suggesting that these cells were unable to proliferate, produce effect or cytokines, and differentiate into memory cells [67]. $PD\text{-}1^+$NY-ESO-1-specific $CD8^+$ T-cells, from patients with advanced melanoma, upregulate TIM-3 expression and are more dysfunctional than $TIM\text{-}3^-PD\text{-}1^+$ or $TIM\text{-}3^-PD\text{-}1^-$NY-ESO-1-specific $CD8^+$ T-cells, producing less IFN-γ and TNF-α, along with IL-2 [68].

Derré et al. showed that tumor antigen (Melan-A/Mart-1)-specific $CD8^+$ T-cells express high levels of BTLA and are susceptible to functional inhibition through its ligand HVEM [69]. In addition, Baitsch et al. showed that in melanoma, tumor antigen-specific $CD8^+$ T-cells with effector phenotypes simultaneously express four or more of the coinhibitory receptors BTLA, TIM-3, LAG-3, KRLG-1, 2B4, CD160, PD-1, or CTLA-4 [70]. Moreover, tumor antigen-specific $CD8^+$ T-cells present a large variety of genes with a similar genetic profile to that of exhausted T-cells from chronic viral infections [71]. Taken together, these reports show that in melanoma patients tumor antigen-specific $CD8^+$ T-cells undergo exhaustion.

Additional evidence for T-cell exhaustion in other cancers comes from studies in patients with ovarian cancer. Matsusaki et al. reported that NY-ESO-1-specific $CD8^+$ T-cells from the peripheral blood of patients with ovarian cancer show impaired effector functions, along with co-expression of the inhibitory molecules LAG-3 and PD-1. The expression of LAG-3 and PD-1 on the surface of $CD8^+$ T-cells is upregulated through IL-10, IL-6, as well as tumor-derived APCs. In addition, $LAG\text{-}3^+PD\text{-}1^+CD8^+$ T-cells are deficient in IFN-γ/TNF-α secretion compared with $LAG\text{-}3^+PD\text{-}1^-$ or $LAG\text{-}3^-PD\text{-}1^-$ subsets [72].

PD-L1 expression is upregulated in Hodgkin's lymphoma (HL), as well as several T-cell lymphomas, but not in B-cell lymphomas. In addition, PD-1 is upregulated in TILs, as well as peripheral blood T-cells from HL patients, and the blockade of the PD-1 pathway restores IFN-γ production in T-cells [73]. Moreover, LAG-3 is expressed on TILs from patients with this malignancy [74]. Hence, these reports suggest that TILs from patients with HL are exhausted.

In patients with chronic lymphocytic leukemia (CLL), $CD8^+$ and $CD4^+$ effector T-cells show increased expression of CD244, CD160, and PD-1 molecules; in addition to expansion of the $PD\text{-}1^+$ $Blimp^{hi}$ subset $CD8^+$ T-cells from CLL patients show defects in proliferation and cytotoxicity, but with increased production of IFN-γ, as well as TNF-α, normal production of IL-2, and increased expression of T-bet. Thus, although $CD8^+$ T-cells show features of T-cell exhaustion, these cells retain the ability to produce cytokines [75]. In addition, it has been shown that, in B-cell non-Hodgkin's lymphoma, TGF-β upregulates

the expression of the costimulatory molecule CD70 on memory, as well as effector T-cells, which in turn increases the expression of PD-1 and TIM-3 molecules in these T-cell subsets. These $CD70^+$ T-cells are deficient in cytokine production and are prone to apoptosis. Also, a higher frequency of $CD70^+$ T-cells is associated with a poor outcome in patients with follicular B-cell lymphoma [76].

On the other hand, head and neck cancers that are positive for human papillomavirus (HPV) present a high infiltration of $PD\text{-}1^+$ T-cells, and their number is positively associated with a favorable clinical outcome. These $PD\text{-}1^+$ T-cells express activation markers, and 50% of this population lack TIM-3 expression and are functional after the blockade of the PD-1/PD-L1 pathway, suggesting that $PD\text{-}1^+$ T-cells are activated rather than exhausted [77]. Accordingly, Lechner et al. showed that PD-1, PD-L1, and CTLA-4 are highly expressed on T-cells from head and neck squamous cell carcinoma tumor tissue [78], which would reflect an immunosuppressive microenvironment, but not exhaustion.

In hepatocellular carcinoma, the frequency of $PD\text{-}1^+CD8^+$ T-cells is higher in tumor tissues than in non-tumor tissues, presenting decreased proliferative capacity, in addition to diminished effector functions, as demonstrated by reduced granule and cytokine expression compared with $PD\text{-}1^-CD8^+$ T-cells, although no other marker of T-cell exhaustion was analyzed in this study [79]. Interestingly, low tumor expression of PD-L1, as well as galectin-9, which is a ligand for TIM-3, is a predictor of poor hepatocellular carcinoma survival. Also, low $CD8^+$ TIL count has been shown to be a poor predictor of survival for this type of cancer [80]. Thus, $CD8^+$ T-cells from hepatocellular carcinoma are not rendered exhausted; instead, they may be activated in those patients that show a better survival.

In colorectal cancer, PD-1 expression has been shown to be upregulated on $CD8^+$ T-cells from tumor-draining lymph nodes and tumor tissue. $PD\text{-}1^+CD8^+$ T-cells are dysfunctional in tumors but not in tumor-free lymph nodes, because the former present a lower percentage of cytokine-producing cells [81]. However, this phenomenon would reflect an adverse microenvironment instead of exhaustion; moreover, as in other reports, the study of Wu et al. [81] only analyzed PD-1 expression as the marker of exhaustion. In another study, it was shown that TILs from colorectal patients present higher frequencies of $TIM\text{-}3^+CD8^+$ T-cells compared with para-cancerous tissues; this subset also produces lower levels of IFN-γ [82]. Even though the authors suggest that CD8+ T-cells are exhausted, neither other coinhibitory receptors nor functional capacity were evaluated, and blockade of PD-1 pathway did not show a response in patients with this type of cancer. The latter phenomenon might be explained to the fact that PD-L1 expression has been reported in approximately 10% of tumors, mostly microsatellite unstable [83]. Prall and Hüns also reported that colorectal tumors with an immunoreactive microenvironment, which is characterized by a dense immune infiltrate, show a high number of $PD\text{-}1^+CD8^+$ cells as shown by sequential immunohistochemistry [83]. The authors suggest that PD-1 expression is a consequence of T-cell exhaustion; however, since only the PD-1 molecule was identified in this study, and no functional analysis was done, PD-1 expression might be the consequence of activation rather than exhaustion.

Interestingly, Haymaker et al. proposed that $PD\text{-}1^{high}$ $CD8^+$ T-cells in cancer patients are not exhausted [84]. This hypothesis is based on the observation that $CD8^+$ T-cells from the TILs of melanoma patients recover their proliferative potential ex vivo, despite expressing high levels of PD-1. These TILs mediate antitumor responses upon adoptive transfer into patients [85, 86]. Under this premise, infiltrating and peripheral blood $CD8^+$ T-cells, expressing PD-1, BTLA, and other coinhibitory receptors, are not exhausted. Instead, these cells are highly activated effector memory T-cells that can be stimulated through immunotherapy [84]. Nevertheless, these observations have been primarily achieved in melanomas. In other cancers, the reduced proliferative and effector capacities persist, even after stimulation, and immunotherapeutic strategies have failed to induce potent antitumoral responses [64, 75, 87].

8.5.1 A Particular Case: T-Cell Exhaustion in Lung Cancer Patients

Lung cancer is the leading cause of cancer-related mortality in developed countries and the second leading cause of death in countries with emerging economies. This disease is one of the most commonly diagnosed cancers worldwide, representing 13% of all cancer cases and approximately 18% of all cancer deaths [88]. Some reports indicate that the presence of TILs with memory phenotype is predictive of a favorable clinical outcome in lung cancer patients [89–91].

$CD8^+$ T-cells have been found in both TIL and the pleural compartment in lung cancer patients. These cells are functionally impaired and are poorly responsive or unresponsive to several T-cell-activating stimuli, even though memory cells infiltrate lung tumors. $CD8^+$ T-cells present low proliferation rate and diminished production of some Th1 cytokines, in addition to reduced cytotoxic potential, reviewed in [87]. Pleural effusion $CD8^+$ T-cells from lung cancer patients express cell markers associated with a memory phenotype ($CD45RA^-CD45RO^+CD27^+$granzyme-A^{low}perforin$^-$), similar to those markers found in $CD8^+$ T-cells from chronic viral infections. These phenotypical and functional dysfunctions suggest that $CD8^+$ T-cells have been rendered exhausted.

Zhang et al. reported that tumor-infiltrating $CD8^+$ T-cells from patients with non-small cell lung carcinoma (NSCLC) express increased levels of PD-1. These $CD8^+$ T-cells are impaired in cytokine production, as well as proliferative potential, which are partially restored after blockade of the PD-1/PD-L1 pathway [92]. In a study by Gao et al., TIM-3 was found to be highly upregulated on both $CD4^+$ and $CD8^+$ T-cells from lung tumor tissues, but almost undetectable on T-cells from peripheral blood samples. However, TIM-3 expression on $CD8^+$ T-cells was not associated with any clinical pathological parameter in lung cancer patients (e.g., tumor size, lymph node metastasis, or tumor stage) [93]. Recently, Thommen showed that cumulative expression of inhibitory receptors (PD-1, TIM-3, CTLA-4, LAG-3, in addition to BTLA) on T-cells from tumor tissues correlated with a progressively impaired capacity to respond to polyclonal activation and with a progression of NSCLC. Interestingly, $PD\text{-}1^+CD8^+$ T-cells were found to co-express low percentages of other inhibitory receptors analyzed, whereas $BTLA^+CD8^+$ T-cells expressed high levels of these receptors [94].

In the previous edition of the present chapter, PD-1 expression was reported to be higher in pleural effusion T-cells from lung cancer patients, compared to those from nonmalignant origin [95]. This observation was later confirmed by a more detailed study from our group; remarkably, a total of $CD8^+$, as well as $CD4^+$ T-cells, do not show co-expression of the coinhibitory receptors TIM-3 and LAG-3. To analyze whether tumor-specific $CD8^+$ T-cells show an exhausted phenotype, we used the surrogate marker CD137 for identifying T-cells responding to tumor antigens MAGE-3A or WT-1. With this strategy, it was shown that most tumor-responding T-cells showing a memory phenotype ($CD45RA^-CD27^+$) express PD-1 molecule but do not co-express TIM-3 (see Fig. 8.3 for representative data and [96]). Of note, the use of anti-PD-L1 blocking antibody increased the expression of granzyme-B along with perforin on polyclonal- and tumor-specific CD8+ T-cells [96]. Taken together, these studies suggest that T-cells from lung cancer patients are not exhausted; instead they are primed, but incompletely differentiated, leading to a deficiency in their effector functions of cytotoxic activity, as well as cytokine secretion.

Interestingly, the administration of PD-1 antibody as a blocking agent against PD-1 pathway has shown durable partial tumor regression in patients with lung cancer, which was long thought to be a "non-immunogenic" tumor [97]. Thus, reactivation of immune responses in lung cancer patients, via blocking PD-1, TIM-3, or other regulatory pathways, in combination with other therapeutic modalities, such as radiotherapy or chemotherapy, will provide major clinical benefits to patients with this disease.

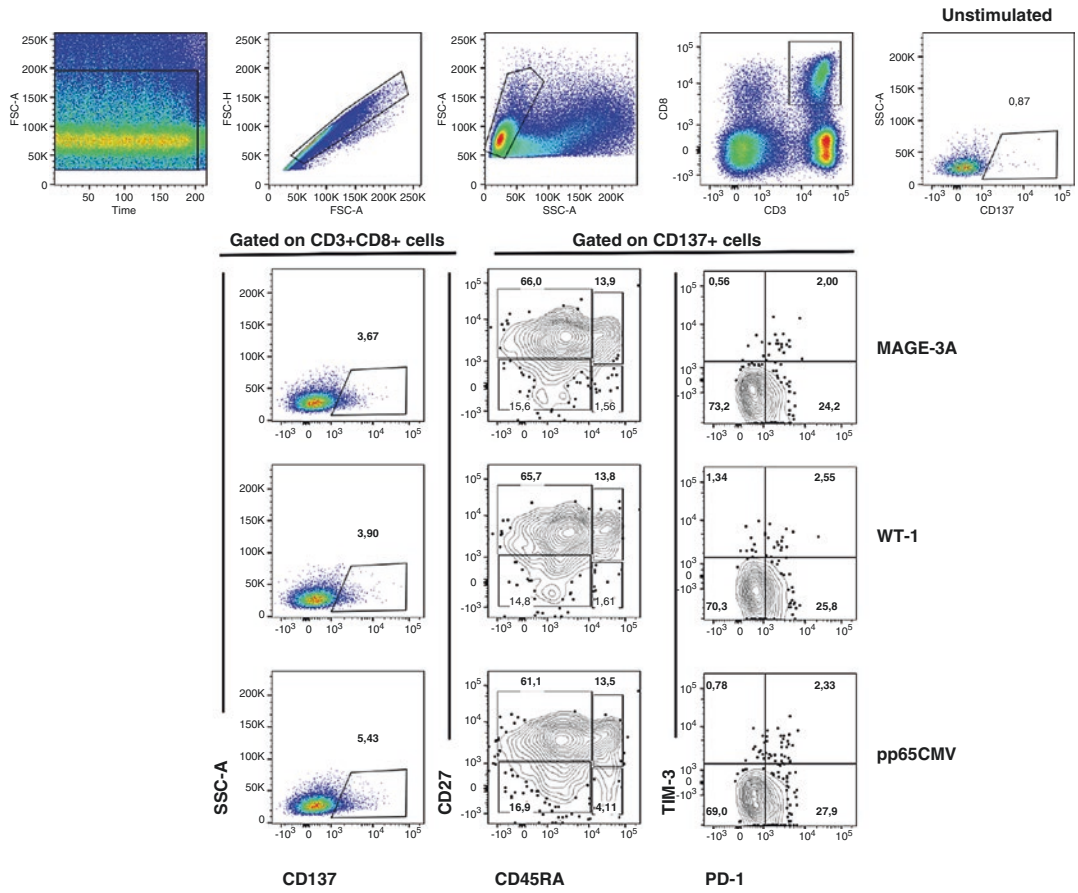


Fig. 8.3 Representative flow cytometric analysis for identification of markers of exhaustion in antigen-specific CD8+ T-cells of a lung cancer patient. Pleural effusion mononuclear cells were stimulated overnight with tumor peptides from MAGE-3A, WT-1, or CMV pp65 peptides (used as control), and cells were then immunophenotypified. Upper panel from left to right, time vs FSC-A graph was done to exclude artifacts (bubbles or clumps), then single cells were gated from FSC-A vs FSC-H graph, next lymphocytes were selected from a SSC-A vs FSC-A graph, and a CD3 vs CD8 graph was done to select CD3+CD8+ T-cells. To analyze antigen-responding CD8+T-cells, surrogate marker CD137 was used, and unstimulated CD8+ T-cells are shown. Lower panel, from CD137 vs SSC-A graphs, the frequency of CD137+ cells was quantified and further identified with CD45RA, CD27, PD-1, and TIM-3 markers. Most antigen-responding cells have a memory phenotype (CD45RA+CD27- and CD45RA-CD27-); however, tumor-responding cells do not co-express PD-1 and TIM-3; for details see Ref. [96]

8.6 Concluding Remarks

T-cell exhaustion is a stage of differentiation where T-cells show poor effector functions, sustained coinhibitory receptor expression, as well as a transcriptional state distinct from memory, effector, and even anergic T-cells. Some types of cancer have been shown to induce T-cell exhaustion, because the tumor microenvironment provides and maintains the required conditions for inducing this phenomenon. Among other conditions, the tumor mass is a source of antigens that chronically stimulate infiltrating T-cells. In most cancers, tumor cells expressing PD-L1 have been associated with a negative disease outcome. Many tumors also secrete IL-10 along with TGF-β, immunosuppressive cytokines that are associated with exhaustion in chronic viral infections. Also, metabolic reprogramming of tumor cells favors a protumoral microenvironment that nonetheless has deleteri-

ous effects on T-cell metabolism. From a temporal perspective, T-cell anergy possibly occurs during the early stages of tumor progression, whereas exhaustion might play a crucial role in T-cell dysfunction during the late stages of cancer.

Because the terms anergy and exhaustion have been used to describe dysfunctional T-cells, it is necessary to carefully evaluate not only surface markers but also the functionality of T-cells (proliferation, cytokine production, along with cytotoxic functions) in order to assign such terms. On the other hand, studies on T-cells from cancer patients are limited by the amount and quality of the sample, and it is not always feasible to make a detailed characterization; thus, the term "dysfunctional" should be used when describing T-cells with poor functional activity until further data is obtained.

The reduced functions of T-cell observed in vitro, the correlation of the clinical prognosis of cancer patients with the expression of PD-L1 in tumor cells, and the limited success of T-cell-based immunotherapy provide evidence that exhaustion plays an important role as a tumor evasion mechanism from the host immune system in some types of cancer.

Understanding the mechanisms of tumor-induced T-cell exhaustion will conduce to the development of vaccine-induced T-cells aimed at promoting tumor rejection. Clinical findings with blockers of immune-regulatory pathways, such as the PD-1/PD-L1 pathway, suggest that this strategy is promising for enhancing antitumor immunity with the potential to produce long-lasting clinical responses.

Acknowledgments The authors thank the partial financial support of the Consejo Nacional de Ciencia y Tecnología (CONACYT), grant CB-2013-219932.

References

1. Sharpe AH, Wherry EJ, Ahmed R, Freeman GJ. The function of programmed cell death 1 and its ligands in regulating autoimmunity and infection. Nat Immunol. 2007;8(3):239–45.
2. Sharpe AH, Abbas AK. T-cell costimulation — biology, therapeutic potential, and challenges. N Engl J Med. 2006;355(10):973–5.
3. Pentcheva-Hoang T, Corse E, Allison JP. Negative regulators of T-cell activation: potential targets for therapeutic intervention in cancer, autoimmune disease, and persistent infections. Immunol Rev. 2009;229(1):67–87.
4. Rodriguez-Manzanet R, DeKruyff R, Kuchroo VK, Umetsu DT. The costimulatory role of TIM molecules. Immunol Rev. 2009;229(1):259–70.
5. Schietinger A, Greenberg PD. Tolerance and exhaustion: defining mechanisms of T cell dysfunction. Trends Immunol. 2014;35(2):51–60.
6. Kyewski B, Klein L. A central role for central tolerance. Annu Rev Immunol. 2006;24:571–606.
7. Choi S, Schwartz RH. Molecular mechanisms for adaptive tolerance and other T cell anergy models. Semin Immunol. 2007;19(3):140–52.
8. Schwartz RH. T cell anergy. Annu Rev Immunol. 2003;21:305–34.
9. Driessens G, Kline J, Gajewski TF. Costimulatory and coinhibitory receptors in anti-tumor immunity. Immunol Rev. 2009;229(1):126–44.
10. Crespo J, Sun H, Welling TH, Tian Z, Zou W. T cell anergy, exhaustion, senescence, and stemness in the tumor microenvironment. Curr Opin Immunol. 2013;25(2):214–21.
11. Safford M, Collins S, Lutz MA, Allen A, Huang CT, Kowalski J, et al. Egr-2 and Egr-3 are negative regulators of T cell activation. Nat Immunol. 2005;6(5):472–80.
12. Wherry JE, Ha S-J, Kaech SM, Haining NW, Sarkar S, Kalia V, et al. Molecular signature of CD8+ T cell exhaustion during chronic viral infection. Immunity. 2007;27(4):670–84.
13. Collins S, Lutz MA, Zarek PE, Anders RA, Kersh GJ, Powell JD. Opposing regulation of T cell function by Egr-1/NAB2 and Egr-2/Egr-3. Eur J Immunol. 2008;38(2):528–36.
14. Kim PS, Ahmed R. Features of responding T cells in cancer and chronic infection. Curr Opin Immunol. 2010;22(2):223–30.
15. Curiel TJ, Wei S, Dong H, Alvarez X, Cheng P, Mottram P, et al. Blockade of B7-H1 improves myeloid dendritic cell-mediated antitumor immunity. Nat Med. 2003;9(5):562–7.
16. Zou W, Chen L. Inhibitory B7-family molecules in the tumour microenvironment. Nat Rev Immunol. 2008;8(6):467–77.
17. Wang S-FF, Fouquet S, Chapon M, Salmon H, Regnier F, Labroquère K, et al. Early T cell signalling is reversibly altered in PD-1+ T lymphocytes infiltrating human tumors. PLoS One. 2011;6(3):e17621.
18. Janikashvili N, Bonnotte B, Katsanis E, Larmonier N. The dendritic cell-regulatory T lymphocyte crosstalk contributes to tumor-induced tolerance. Clin Dev Immunol. 2011;2011:430394.
19. Calcinotto A, Filipazzi P, Grioni M, Iero M, De Milito A, Ricupito A, et al. Modulation of microenvironment acidity reverses anergy in human and murine tumor-infiltrating T lymphocytes. Cancer Res. 2012;72(11):2746–56.

20. Redmond WL, Linch SN. Combinatorial immunotherapeutic approaches to restore the function of anergic tumor-reactive cytotoxic CD8(+) T cells. Hum Vaccin Immunother. 2016;12(10):2519–22.
21. Blank C, Brown I, Peterson AC, Spiotto M, Iwai Y, Honjo T, et al. PD-L1/B7H-1 inhibits the effector phase of tumor rejection by T cell receptor (TCR) transgenic CD8+ T cells. Cancer Res. 2004;64(3):1140–5.
22. Klein L, Trautman L, Psarras S, Schnell S, Siermann A, Liblau R, et al. Visualizing the course of antigen-specific CD8 and CD4 T cell responses to a growing tumor. Eur J Immunol. 2003;33(3):806–14.
23. Wherry JE. T cell exhaustion. Nat Immunol. 2011;12(6):492–9.
24. Zajac AJ, Blattman JN, Murali-Krishna K, Sourdive DJ, Suresh M, Altman JD, et al. Viral immune evasion due to persistence of activated T cells without effector function. J Exp Med. 1998;188(12):2205–13.
25. Jeong HY, Lee YJ, Seo SK, Lee SW, Park SJ, Lee JN, et al. Blocking of monocyte-associated B7-H1 (CD274) enhances HCV-specific T cell immunity in chronic hepatitis C infection. J Leukoc Biol. 2008;83(3):755–64.
26. Nebbia G, Peppa D, Schurich A, Khanna P, Singh HD, Cheng Y, et al. Upregulation of the Tim-3/galectin-9 pathway of T cell exhaustion in chronic hepatitis B virus infection. PLoS One. 2012;7(10):e47648.
27. Joshi T, Rodriguez S, Perovic V, Cockburn IA, Stager S. B7-H1 blockade increases survival of dysfunctional CD8(+) T cells and confers protection against Leishmania donovani infections. PLoS Pathog. 2009;5(5):e1000431.
28. Ames RY, Ting LM, Gendlina I, Kim K, Macian F. The transcription factor NFAT1 participates in the induction of CD4+ T cell functional exhaustion during Plasmodium yoelii infection. Infect Immun. 2017;85(9):e00364–17.
29. Freeman GJ, Wherry JE, Ahmed R, Sharpe AH. Reinvigorating exhausted HIV-specific T cells via PD-1–PD-1 ligand blockade. J Exp Med. 2006;203(10):2223–7.
30. Wherry EJ, Kurachi M. Molecular and cellular insights into T cell exhaustion. Nat Rev Immunol. 2015;15(8):486–99.
31. Barber DL, Wherry EJ, Masopust D, Zhu B, Allison JP, Sharpe AH, et al. Restoring function in exhausted CD8 T cells during chronic viral infection. Nature. 2006;439(7077):682–7.
32. Blank C, Mackensen A. Contribution of the PD-L1/PD-1 pathway to T-cell exhaustion: an update on implications for chronic infections and tumor evasion. Cancer Immunol Immunother. 2007;56(5):739–45.
33. Boussiotis VA. Molecular and biochemical aspects of the PD-1 checkpoint pathway. N Engl J Med. 2016;375(18):1767–78.
34. Dong H, Chen L. B7-H1 pathway and its role in the evasion of tumor immunity. J Mol Med (Berl). 2003;81(5):281–7.
35. Trabattoni D, Saresella M, Biasin M, Boasso A, Piacentini L, Ferrante P, et al. B7-H1 is up-regulated in HIV infection and is a novel surrogate marker of disease progression. Blood. 2003;101(7):2514–20.
36. Geng L, Jiang G, Fang Y, Dong S, Xie H, Chen Y, et al. B7-H1 expression is upregulated in peripheral blood CD14+ monocytes of patients with chronic hepatitis B virus infection, which correlates with higher serum IL-10 levels. J Viral Hepat. 2006;13(11):725–33.
37. Patsoukis N, Bardhan K, Chatterjee P, Sari D, Liu B, Bell LN, et al. PD-1 alters T-cell metabolic reprogramming by inhibiting glycolysis and promoting lipolysis and fatty acid oxidation. Nat Commun. 2015;6:6692.
38. Strome SE, Dong H, Tamura H, Voss SG, Flies DB, Tamada K, et al. B7-H1 blockade augments adoptive T-cell immunotherapy for squamous cell carcinoma. Cancer Res. 2003;63(19):6501–5.
39. Hirano F, Kaneko K, Tamura H, Dong H, Wang S, Ichikawa M, et al. Blockade of B7-H1 and PD-1 by monoclonal antibodies potentiates cancer therapeutic immunity. Cancer Res. 2005;65(3):1089–96.
40. Petrovas C, Casazza JP, Brenchley JM, Price DA, Gostick E, Adams WC, et al. PD-1 is a regulator of virus-specific CD8+ T cell survival in HIV infection. J Exp Med. 2006;203(10):2281–92.
41. Trautmann L, Janbazian L, Chomont N, Said EA, Gimmig S, Bessette B, et al. Upregulation of PD-1 expression on HIV-specific CD8+ T cells leads to reversible immune dysfunction. Nat Med. 2006;12(10):1198–202.
42. Brahmer JR, Drake CG, Wollner I, Powderly JD, Picus J, Sharfman WH, et al. Phase I study of single-agent anti-programmed death-1 (MDX-1106) in refractory solid tumors: safety, clinical activity, pharmacodynamics, and immunologic correlates. J Clin Oncol. 2010;28(19):3167–75.
43. Anderson AC, Joller N, Kuchroo VK. Lag-3, Tim-3, and TIGIT: co-inhibitory receptors with specialized functions in immune regulation. Immunity. 2016;44(5):989–1004.
44. Patsoukis N, Weaver JD, Strauss L, Herbel C, Seth P, Boussiotis VA. Immunometabolic regulations mediated by coinhibitory receptors and their impact on T cell immune responses. Front Immunol. 2017;8:330.
45. Jin H-TT, Anderson AC, Tan WG, West EE, Ha S-JJ, Araki K, et al. Cooperation of Tim-3 and PD-1 in CD8 T-cell exhaustion during chronic viral infection. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2010;107(33):14733–8.
46. Zhou S, Ou R, Huang L, Moskophidis D. Critical role for perforin-, Fas/FasL-, and TNFR1-mediated cytotoxic pathways in down-regulation of antigen-specific T cells during persistent viral infection. J Virol. 2002;76(2):829–40.
47. Bucks CM, Norton JA, Boesteanu AC, Mueller YM, Katsikis PD. Chronic antigen stimulation alone is sufficient to drive CD8+ T cell exhaustion. J Immunol. 2009;182(11):6697–708.
48. Blackburn SD, Shin H, Haining NW, Zou T, Workman CJ, Polley A, et al. Coregulation of CD8+ T cell exhaustion by multiple inhibitory receptors during chronic viral infection. Nat Immunol. 2009;10(1):29–37.

49. Legat A, Speiser DE, Pircher H, Zehn D, Marraco SA. Inhibitory receptor expression depends more dominantly on differentiation and activation than "exhaustion" of human CD8 T cells. Front Immunol. 2013;4:455.
50. Delgoffe GM, Powell JD. Feeding an army: the metabolism of T cells in activation, anergy, and exhaustion. Mol Immunol. 2015;68(2 Pt C):492–6.
51. Brooks DG, Trifilo MJ, Edelmann KH, Teyton L, McGavern DB, Oldstone MBA. Interleukin-10 determines viral clearance or persistence in vivo. Nat Med. 2006;12(11):1301–9.
52. Garba ML, Pilcher CD, Bingham AL, Eron J, Frelinger JA. HIV antigens can induce TGF-beta(1)-producing immunoregulatory CD8+ T cells. J Immunol. 2002;168(5):2247–54.
53. Alatrakchi N, Graham CS, van der Vliet HJ, Sherman KE, Exley MA, Koziel MJ. Hepatitis C virus (HCV)-specific CD8+ cells produce transforming growth factor beta that can suppress HCV-specific T-cell responses. J Virol. 2007;81(11):5882–92.
54. Bierie B, Moses HL. Transforming growth factor beta (TGF-beta) and inflammation in cancer. Cytokine Growth Factor Rev. 2010;21(1):49–59.
55. Sato T, Terai M, Tamura Y, Alexeev V, Mastrangelo MJ, Selvan SR. Interleukin 10 in the tumor microenvironment: a target for anticancer immunotherapy. Immunol Res. 2011;51(2–3):170–82.
56. Man K, Gabriel SS, Liao Y, Gloury R, Preston S, Henstridge DC, et al. Transcription factor IRF4 promotes CD8+ T cell exhaustion and limits the development of memory-like T cells during chronic infection. Immunity. 2017;47(6):1129–41.
57. McKinney EF, Lee JC, Jayne DR, Lyons PA, Smith KG. T-cell exhaustion, co-stimulation and clinical outcome in autoimmunity and infection. Nature. 2015;523(7562):612–6.
58. Sauce D, Almeida JR, Larsen M, Haro L, Autran B, Freeman GJ, et al. PD-1 expression on human CD8 T cells depends on both state of differentiation and activation status. AIDS (London, England). 2007;21(15):2005–13.
59. Duraiswamy J, Ibegbu CC, Masopust D, Miller JD, Araki K, Doho GH, et al. Phenotype, function, and gene expression profiles of programmed death-1(hi) CD8 T cells in healthy human adults. J Immunol. 2011;186(7):4200–12.
60. Quigley M, Pereyra F, Nilsson B, Porichis F, Fonseca C, Eichbaum Q, et al. Transcriptional analysis of HIV-specific CD8+ T cells shows that PD-1 inhibits T cell function by upregulating BATF. Nat Med. 2010;16(10):1147–51.
61. Shin H, Blackburn SD, Intlekofer AM, Kao C, Angelosanto JM, Reiner SL, et al. A role for the transcriptional repressor Blimp-1 in CD8(+) T cell exhaustion during chronic viral infection. Immunity. 2009;31(2):309–20.
62. Kao C, Oestreich KJ, Paley MA, Crawford A, Angelosanto JM, Ali MA, et al. Transcription factor T-bet represses expression of the inhibitory receptor PD-1 and sustains virus-specific CD8+ T cell responses during chronic infection. Nat Immunol. 2011;12(7):663–71.
63. Paley MA, Kroy DC, Odorizzi PM, Johnnidis JB, Dolfi DV, Barnett BE, et al. Progenitor and terminal subsets of CD8+ T cells cooperate to contain chronic viral infection. Science. 2012;338(6111):1220–5.
64. Hailemichael Y, Dai Z, Jaffarzad N, Ye Y, Medina MA, Huang X-FF, et al. Persistent antigen at vaccination sites induces tumor-specific $CD8^+$ T cell sequestration, dysfunction and deletion. Nat Med. 2013;19(4):465–72.
65. Thompson RH, Kuntz SM, Leibovich BC, Dong H, Lohse CM, Webster WS, et al. Tumor B7-H1 is associated with poor prognosis in renal cell carcinoma patients with long-term follow-up. Cancer Res. 2006;66(7):3381–5.
66. Apetoh L, Smyth MJ, Drake CG, Abastado J-PP, Apte RN, Ayyoub M, et al. Consensus nomenclature for CD8(+) T cell phenotypes in cancer. Oncoimmunology. 2015;4(4):e998538.
67. Ahmadzadeh M, Johnson LA, Heemskerk B, Wunderlich JR, Dudley ME, White DE, et al. Tumor antigen-specific CD8 T cells infiltrating the tumor express high levels of PD-1 and are functionally impaired. Blood. 2009;114(8):1537–44.
68. Fourcade J, Sun Z, Benallaoua M, Guillaume P, Luescher IF, Sander C, et al. Upregulation of Tim-3 and PD-1 expression is associated with tumor antigen–specific CD8+ T cell dysfunction in melanoma patients. J Exp Med. 2010;207(10):2175–86.
69. Derre L, Rivals JP, Jandus C, Pastor S, Rimoldi D, Romero P, et al. BTLA mediates inhibition of human tumor-specific CD8+ T cells that can be partially reversed by vaccination. J Clin Invest. 2010;120(1):157–67.
70. Baitsch L, Legat A, Barba L, Marraco SA, Rivals J-P, Baumgaertner P, et al. Extended co-expression of inhibitory receptors by human CD8 T-Cells depending on differentiation, antigen-specificity and anatomical localization. PLoS One. 2012;7(2):e30852.
71. Baitsch L, Baumgaertner P, Devevre E, Raghav SK, Legat A, Barba L, et al. Exhaustion of tumor-specific CD8(+) T cells in metastases from melanoma patients. J Clin Invest. 2011;121(6):2350–60.
72. Matsuzaki J, Gnjatic S, Mhawech-Fauceglia P, Beck A, Miller A, Tsuji T, et al. Tumor-infiltrating NY-ESO-1-specific CD8+ T cells are negatively regulated by LAG-3 and PD-1 in human ovarian cancer. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2010;107(17):7875–80.
73. Yamamoto R, Nishikori M, Kitawaki T, Sakai T, Hishizawa M, Tashima M, et al. PD-1-PD-1 ligand interaction contributes to immunosuppressive microenvironment of Hodgkin lymphoma. Blood. 2008;111(6):3220–4.
74. Gandhi MK, Lambley E, Duraiswamy J, Dua U, Smith C, Elliott S, et al. Expression of LAG-3 by tumor-infiltrating lymphocytes is coincident with the suppression of latent membrane antigen-specific

CD8+ T-cell function in Hodgkin lymphoma patients. Blood. 2006;108(7):2280–9.
75. Riches JC, Davies JK, McClanahan F, Fatah R, Iqbal S, Agrawal S, et al. T cells from CLL patients exhibit features of T-cell exhaustion but retain capacity for cytokine production. Blood. 2013;121(9):1612–21.
76. Yang ZZ, Grote DM, Xiu B, Ziesmer SC, Price-Troska TL, Hodge LS, et al. TGF-β upregulates CD70 expression and induces exhaustion of effector memory T cells in B-cell non-Hodgkin's lymphoma. Leukemia. 2014;28(9):1872–84.
77. Badoual C, Hans S, Merillon N, Van Ryswick C, Ravel P, Benhamouda N, et al. PD-1-expressing tumor-infiltrating T cells are a favorable prognostic biomarker in HPV-associated head and neck cancer. Cancer Res. 2013;73(1):128–38.
78. Lechner A, Schlößer H, Rothschild SI, Thelen M, Reuter S, Zentis P, et al. Characterization of tumor-associated T-lymphocyte subsets and immune checkpoint molecules in head and neck squamous cell carcinoma. Oncotarget. 2017;8(27):44418–33.
79. Wu K, Kryczek I, Chen L, Zou W, Welling TH. Kupffer cell suppression of CD8+ T cells in human hepatocellular carcinoma is mediated by B7-H1/programmed death-1 interactions. Cancer Res. 2009;69(20):8067–75.
80. Sideras K, Biermann K, Verheij J, Takkenberg BR, Mancham S, Hansen BE, et al. PD-L1, Galectin-9 and CD8+ tumor-infiltrating lymphocytes are associated with survival in hepatocellular carcinoma. Oncoimmunology. 2017;6(2):e1273309.
81. Wu X, Zhang H, Xing Q, Cui J, Li J, Li Y, et al. PD-1(+) CD8(+) T cells are exhausted in tumours and functional in draining lymph nodes of colorectal cancer patients. Br J Cancer. 2014;111(7):1391–9.
82. Zhang Y, Cai P, Li L, Shi L, Chang P, Liang T, et al. Co-expression of TIM-3 and CEACAM1 promotes T cell exhaustion in colorectal cancer patients. Int Immunopharmacol. 2017;43:210–8.
83. Prall F, Hühns M. The PD-1 expressing immune phenotype of T cell exhaustion is prominent in the 'immunoreactive' microenvironment of colorectal carcinoma. Histopathology. 2017;71(3):366–74.
84. Haymaker C, Wu R, Bernatchez C, Radvanyi L. PD-1 and BTLA and CD8(+) T-cell "exhaustion" in cancer: "exercising" an alternative viewpoint. Oncoimmunology. 2012;1(5):735–8.
85. Inozume T, Hanada K, Wang QJ, Ahmadzadeh M, Wunderlich JR, Rosenberg SA, et al. Selection of CD8+PD-1+ lymphocytes in fresh human melanomas enriches for tumor-reactive T cells. J Immunother. 2010;33(9):956–64.
86. Wu R, Forget MA, Chacon J, Bernatchez C, Haymaker C, Chen JQ, et al. Adoptive T-cell therapy using autologous tumor-infiltrating lymphocytes for metastatic melanoma: current status and future outlook. Cancer J. 2012;18(2):160–75.
87. Prado-Garcia H, Romero-Garcia S, Aguilar-Cazares D, Meneses-Flores M, Lopez-Gonzalez JS. Tumor-induced CD8+ T-cell dysfunction in lung cancer patients. Clin Dev Immunol. 2012;2012:741741.
88. Torre LA, Bray F, Siegel RL, Ferlay J, Lortet-Tieulent J, Jemal A. Global cancer statistics, 2012. CA Cancer J Clin. 2015;65(2):87–108.
89. Dieu-Nosjean MC, Antoine M, Danel C, Heudes D, Wislez M, Poulot V, et al. Long-term survival for patients with non-small-cell lung cancer with intratumoral lymphoid structures. J Clin Oncol. 2008;26(27):4410–7.
90. Kawai O, Ishii G, Kubota K, Murata Y, Naito Y, Mizuno T, et al. Predominant infiltration of macrophages and CD8(+) T cells in cancer nests is a significant predictor of survival in stage IV nonsmall cell lung cancer. Cancer. 2008;113(6):1387–95.
91. Ruffini E, Asioli S, Filosso PL, Lyberis P, Bruna MC, Macri L, et al. Clinical significance of tumor-infiltrating lymphocytes in lung neoplasms. Ann Thorac Surg. 2009;87(2):365–71. discussion 71-2
92. Zhang Y, Huang S, Gong D, Qin Y, Shen Q. Programmed death-1 upregulation is correlated with dysfunction of tumor-infiltrating CD8+ T lymphocytes in human non-small cell lung cancer. Cell Mol Immunol. 2010;7(5):389–95.
93. Gao X, Zhu Y, Li G, Huang H, Zhang G, Wang F, et al. TIM-3 expression characterizes regulatory T cells in tumor tissues and is associated with lung cancer progression. PLoS One. 2012;7(2):e30676.
94. Thommen DS, Schreiner J, Muller P, Herzig P, Roller A, Belousov A, et al. Progression of lung cancer is associated with increased dysfunction of T cells defined by coexpression of multiple inhibitory receptors. Cancer Immunol Res. 2015;3(12):1344–55.
95. Prado-Garcia H, Romero-Garcia S, Lopez-Gonzalez JS. The role of exhaustion in tumor-induced T cell dysfunction in cancer. In: Rezaei N, editor. Cancer immunology: a translational medicine context. Berlin: Springer; 2015. p. 61–75.
96. Prado-Garcia H, Romero-Garcia S, Puerto-Aquino A, Rumbo-Nava U. The PD-L1/PD-1 pathway promotes dysfunction, but not "exhaustion", in tumor-responding T cells from pleural effusions in lung cancer patients. Cancer Immunol Immunother. 2017;66(6):765–76.
97. Brahmer JR, Tykodi SS, Chow LQ, Hwu WJ, Topalian SL, Hwu P, et al. Safety and activity of anti-PD-L1 antibody in patients with advanced cancer. N Engl J Med. 2012;366(26):2455–65.

The Role of NK Cells in Cancer

9

Vladimir Jurišić, Ana Vuletić,
Katarina Mirjačić Martinović,
and Gordana Konjević

Contents

V. Jurišić (✉)
Faculty of Medical Sciences,
University of Kragujevac, Kragujevac, Serbia

A. Vuletić · K. M. Martinović
Institute of Oncology and Radiology,
Belgrade, Serbia

G. Konjević
Institute of Oncology and Radiology,
Belgrade, Serbia

School of Medicine, University of Belgrade,
Belgrade, Serbia

9.1 Introduction

Human NK cells were defined and shown to be important effectors of the innate immune system with a unique ability to directly lyse transformed, virus infected cells as well as cells that have undergone physical or chemical injures, i.e., stressed cells, without prior sensitization or MHC class restriction. Human NK cells were initially described as non-adherent, non-phagocytic,

N. Rezaei (ed.), *Cancer Immunology*, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-30845-2_9

CD16 (low affinity FcγRc^{+}), large granular lymphocytes [1]. Today, human NK cells are defined as CD3^{-}16^{+}CD56^{+} and NKp46 natural cytotoxicity receptor (NCR) positive lymphocytes [2]. According to the density of expression of these receptors NK cells are divided into two subsets, one of which is cytotoxic (CD56^{dim}CD16^{bright}), while the other is regulatory (CD56 ^{bright}CD16b$^{dim/-}$) and produces abundant cytokines (IFN-γ, TNF-α, IL-10, IL-13, and GM-CSF) [3–5].

To date human NK cells are subject to intense study because of their ability to directly lysis tumor cells as well as to participate in the immunomodulation of the tumor response [6, 7].

9.2 Discovery and Basic Characteristics

NK cells were first described in 1975 as a peripheral blood lymphocyte subset capable of cytotoxicity against mouse Moloney leukemia cells by Kiessling who named them natural killer (NK) cells [8] and in parallel by Herberman [9]. Although initially regarded as an "experimental artifact" in T-cell cytotoxicity with the identification of the NK1.1 receptors [10] it became possible to define the murine NK cells and describe them as large granular lymphocytes distinct from T and B-cells. Moreover, recently NK cells have been designated as first members of the novel innate immune cell family (ILC) with distinct patterns of cytokine production that closely resembles the heterogeneity of T helper cell subsets. According to cytokine production and lineage specific master transcription factors ILC are grouped into three functionally distinct groups and NK cells are the main population of ILC group 1 (ILC1) [11]. Furthermore, although NK cells are innate immune cells, novel evidence also indicates that NK cells might mediate long-lived memory-like response after reactivation in some viral infections and following cytokine stimulation, an attribute considered to be inherent to adaptive immune system [12].

9.2.1 Origin and Maturation of NK Cells

NK cells are derived from CD34^{+} hematopoietic progenitor cells (HPCs) within the bone marrow still considered as the primary site for NK cell development, while recent studies show that common lymphoid progenitor cells with NK cell commitment potential traffic from BM to other tissues, mainly secondary lymphoid organs (SLOs), which also serve as putative sites of human NK cell development [13] indicating that maturation from NK progenitors, as well as shaping of NK cell function is guided by a particular environment with its unique combinations of developmental conditions [14–16].

It has recently been shown that NK cells develop through five successive stages, from "stage I" or pro-NK cells characterized as CD34^{+} and c-Kit cytokine receptor positive that acquire IL-2/15Rβ cytokine receptor [14, 17] and are able to give rise to IL-15 responsive, "stage II" pre-NK cells and differentiate from pre-NK cells to "stage III" immature NK cells (iNK) that represent committed NK cell lineage. Stage III iNK cells no longer express CD34 and are c-Kit$^{+/-}$ but lack features of mature NK cells as they are not able to produce interferon γ (IFN-γ) and lack cytotoxicity. iNK cells subsequently differentiate to "stage IV" NK cells, also defined as CD56^{bright} NK cells [14, 17, 18] that represents immunoregulatory NK cell subset capable of producing abundant cytokines (IFN-γ, TNF), but expresses very low amounts of cytolytic granules and displays poor cytotoxic capability. These CD56^{bright} NK cells show low expression of cytotoxic CD16 receptor and are positive for inhibitory CD94/NKG2A receptor, while still low or negative for the main inhibitory KIR receptors. Finally, CD56^{bright} NK cells downregulate the expression of CD94 inhibitory receptor while upregulating the expression of KIRs, CD16 receptor as well as cytotoxic molecules (perforin and granzymes) and differentiate into "stage V" mature cytotoxic CD56^{dim} NK cells. These terminally differentiated NK cells are accompanied by the progressive loss of their proliferative capacity and the acquisition of more efficient cytolytic activity characterized by CD57 expression [19, 20].

The functional maturation of NK cells includes a process of education, also referred to as licencing, arming, or tuning, by which NK cells acquire effector functions [21]. In addition to its well-known role in the regulation of NK cell effector functions MHC I recognition by NK cell inhibitory receptors is also involved in NK cell education. This model conceptualizes that signaling from inhibitory receptors licenses or arms functional activation of NK cells, which are by default unresponsive or unlicenced. It also relies on an instructive role for inhibitory receptors and implies that inhibitory receptor signaling might trigger the activation signals that are needed for stimulating NK cells. Therefore, in the process of NK cell maturation interaction of NK cell inhibitory receptors with self MHC class I molecules renders NK cells not only tolerant to self but licenses them for functional activation due to activating receptor movement into plasma membrane nanodomains that represents their optimal localization for interaction with target cells with stress-induced NK cell stimulating ligands [22].

In case of MHC class I deficient organisms or in case that NK cells do not express inhibitory receptors for particular self MHC class I molecules, that occurs in a small percent in normal organisms, NK cells do not undergo the process of education and they are hyporesponsive to generate cytotoxicity or cytokine production. In spite of this, hyporesponsive NK cells might also play important roles to viral infections and in neuroblastoma because self-inhibitory receptor-deficient NK cells respond more strongly than inhibitory receptor-positive NK cells owing to their recognition of specific activating ligands on target cells that in the absence of inhibitory signals favors activation signaling. Cytokines at sites of infection and tumors may functionally activate hyporesponsive NK cells to respond even toward MHC I-expressing target cells [23]. Furthermore, it has recently been shown that NK cells can switch from a hyporesponsive to a competent status upon recognition of cognate MHC in a different setting, i.e., reeducation, which indicates the possibility of NK cell adjustment to its surrounding environment [24, 25].

Following NK cell education for their full activation they need to undergo "priming" with dendritic cells (DC), CD4+ T-cells, and neutrophils, as well as in the presence of cytokines such as IL-2, IL-12, IL-15, IL-18, or IL-21 [26]. The most important NK cell priming occurs with DCs and includes transpresentation of IL-15 by DC IL-15 receptors.

NK cell-mediated antitumor response is regulated by the balance of signals mediated by various activating and inhibitory receptors and their ligands on tumor cells [27]. However, in malignancies tumor-derived immunosuppressive factors often affect NK cell receptor expression that together with cytolitic molecule dysregulation lead to inhibition of NK cell function [28–31] (Fig. 9.1). In this sense, better understanding of NK cell biology would give better insight into the interaction of NK and tumor cells in order to better harness NK cell antitumor potential.

9.2.2 NK Cell Receptors

NK cell expresses various activating and inhibitory receptors that bind cognate ligands on tumor cells that allow NK cell-mediated antitumor response [27]. NK cell inhibitory receptors include the killer cell inhibitory, i.e., immunoglobulin, receptors (KIR) that are type I membrane glycoproteins responsible for the inhibition of NK cell-mediated lysis of normal cells in the organism that express MHC class I molecules. Another NK cell inhibitory receptor is a c-type lectin that consists of CD94-NKG2A heterodimer. Furthermore, leukocyte Ig-like receptors, LIR, is another family of NK cell inhibitory receptors.

On the other hand, NK cell activating receptors include natural cytotoxicity receptors family (NCR), the activating C-type lectin family receptors a homodimeric NKG2D, and heterodimeric CD94/NKG2C, CD94/NKG2E, CD94/NKG2H, FcγRc IIIA (CD16), activating killer immunoglobulin receptors, KIR2DS1, KIR2DS4, and KIR2DL4 that belong to the KIR family and costimulatory receptor DNAM1 that cooperate with other cytotoxic and inhibitory receptors to determine NK cell cytotoxicity against transformed cells [32].

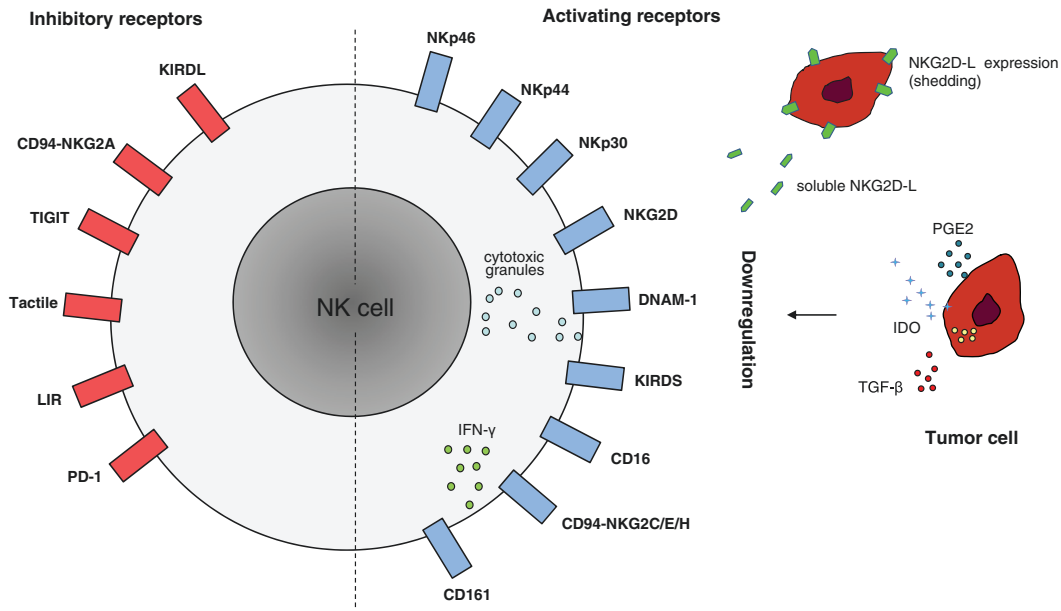


Fig. 9.1 NK cell interaction with tumor cells. Expression of major activating (blue) and inhibitory (red) receptors by NK cells determines NK cell cytotoxicity and IFN-γ production directed against tumor cells. NK cell activating receptors are downregulated in tumors by suppressive factors such as immunosuppressive cytokines, TGF-β, enzymes, IDO, and mediators of inflammation, PGE2. Chronic engagement of NK cell activating receptors with either tumor cell surface-expressed or shed NK cell ligands, e.g. NKG2D-L, represents another most common mechanism of inhibition of NK cell activity. These alterations lead to anergic NK cells and allow tumor immune escape

9.2.3 Killer Cell Immunoglobulin-Like Receptors (KIR)

The human killer cell immunoglobulin-like receptor (KIR) family comprises polymorphic molecules expressed on NK cells and a small subset of αβ and γδ T-cells. They are type I membrane glycoproteins that may express in their extracellular domain two (KIR2D) or three (KIR3D) immunoglobulin domains, while based on the length of their intracellular domain they are designated as activating with short (S) intracellular domains and inhibitory KIRs with long (L) intracellular domains [33].

There are 15 KIR genes that reside in a single complex on chromosome 19.

KIR receptors are specific for MHC class I antigens and are divided into haplotype A and B, with A being more frequent and including inhibitory receptors compared to B that includes both types of receptors with predominance of activating receptors. NK cell KIR repertoire depends on both KIR and HLA polymorphisms [34]. Consequently, differential expression of these inhibitory receptors by subsets of human NK cells allows them to carefully monitor self (and foreign) MHC molecules and uniquely regulate cytotoxicicity when pathological processes perturb MHC expression [35, 36].

Each KIR has a subgroup of HLA class I allotype ligands with HLA-C being dominant HLA class I locus. All HLA-C allotypes carry valine at positions 76, while position 80 displays dimorphism, either asparagine or lysine. Nearly half of the HLA-C allotypes (Cw2, 4–6 and 15) carry lysine at position 80 (conventionally termed C2 epitope) that binds inhibitory and activating receptors KIR2DL1/KIR2DS1. The remaining HLA-C allotypes (Cw1, 3, 7, 8) carry asparagines at the position 80 (termed C1 epitope) and bind inhibitory and activating receptors KIR2DL2/3 and KIR2DS2/3 [34–37].

Activating and inhibitory KIRs may have identical or different HLA, although inhibitory KIRs have a higher binding affinity. In this sense, inhib-

itory KIRs suppress NK cell activity through a receptor-associated immune tyrosine based inhibitory motif (ITIM) by recruiting protein tyrosine phosphatases (SHP-1 and SHP-2) responsible for dephosphorylation of tyrosine kinases associated with NK cell activating receptors. Contrary to this, activating KIRs associate with unique ITAM containing adaptor originally designated as DAP12 that are phosphoryled by Src family kinases and deliver activation signals through recruitment of Syk/ZAP-70 tyrosine kinases to mediate downstream activation signaling [38].

Clinical studies have correlated KIR gene content with infection, cancer, autoimmunity, pregnancy syndromes, and transplant outcome [35, 39, 40]. Regarding cancer, upregulation of inhibitory KIRs may dampen NK cell-mediated antitumor response and are associated with disease progression in different malignancies. Our studies of CD158a (KIR2DL1) and CD158b (KIR2DL2/3) KIR receptor expression on NK cells in MM patients [5] show that they have an increase in the expression of CD158b receptor that shows negative correlation with NK cell cytotoxicity [41].

9.2.4 NKG2D Receptors

Calcium-dependent lectin-like receptor, NKG2D, is an activating receptor expressed on NK cells and most NKT, γδ, and CD8+ T-cells. It belongs to NK group 2 receptors (NKG2) as member D. Contrary to the other members of NKG2 family that form heterodimers, NKG2D forms only homodimers and recognizes a number of MHC-class-I-related molecules, MICA/MICB and UL16-binding protein (ULBP) [42] expressed on cells in dangerous situations such as transformation, infection, heat shock, or genotoxic stress [43, 44].

NKG2D as pivotal activating receptor that upon binding stress-induced ligands and phosphorylation of intracellular domain (YINM) of DAP10 induces cytotoxicity by recruiting, p85 subunit of PI3K and Grb-2-Vav1 that can activate MAPK and Jak/STAT signaling pathways [45].

It has been shown that downregulation of NKG2D receptor on NK cells impairs NK cell-mediated antitumor cytotoxicity and is associated with breast, lung, colorectal, cerviacval, pancreatic, gastric cancer, and melanoma [5, 30, 41]. Decreased expression of NKG2D is mediated by immunosuppressive cytokines (TGFβ and IL-10) produced by tumors and different immunosuppressive cells (MDSC and Tregs). NKG2D downregulation on NK cells has been observed in experimental settings with tumor cells that have high expression of NKG2D specific ligands such as MICA/B [46]. For this reason, activating NKG2D receptor has a role in tumor immunosurveillance, as well as in immune-mediated rejection of tumor cells to prevent tumor progression [47].

9.2.5 NKG2 C-Type Lectin Heterodimers

This family of C-type lectin NK cell receptors includes inhibitory CD94-NKG2A heterodimer that downregulates NK cell activity, as well as several NK cell activating CD94-C/E/H heterodimer receptors. The ligands for these receptors are non-classical MHC class I molecules, HLA-E. The expression of HLA-E in malignant cells reflects aberrant overall biogenesis of MHC class I proteins as it is formed from peptides derived from the leader peptides of HLA-A, B, C, and G that cannot be properly assembled [48]. In humans the expression of these receptors may be related to *KIR* gene expression, as NK cell clones lacking expression of inhibitory KIR were shown to express an inhibitory CD94-NKG2 heterodimer, inhibit NK cell activation. CD94-NKG2A NK cell inhibitor is expressed early, in stage 3, of NK cell development prior to inhibitory KIR expression and in the absence of inhibitory KIRs they may overtake their role in NK cell education [49].

The inhibitory function of CD94/NKG2A is mediated by intracellular ITIM (immunoreceptor tyrosine-based inhibition) domain [50] that recruits protein tyrosine phosphatases and dephosphorylates surrounding tyrosine kinases and adaptor proteins.

Activating CD94-NKG2C and E heterodimer receptors that also bind HLA-E have been shown to associate with DAP12 and have a role in NK cell antitumor response [51].

In breast and colorectal cancer the increased expression of inhibitory activity of NKG2A receptor is associated with poor disease prognosis [52]. Contrary to this, decreased expression of NKG2C activating receptor in acute myeloid leukemia (AML) results in NK cell dysfunction [53].

9.2.6 Natural Cytotoxic Receptors: NCR

The NCRs are NK cell activation receptors that have immunoglobulin structural motives and associate with ITAM-bearing adaptor molecule, DAP12. They were identified on NK cells and are present on T-cells and NK-like cells. NCR include NKp46, NKp30, and NKp44 [54, 55]. NKp46 and NKp30 are constitutively expressed on all activated and resting NK cells thus making them the only NK-specific markers known today, whereas NKp44 expression is restricted only to activated NK cells.

The reported ligand for NKp46 is haemagglutinins, while ligands for NKp30 are BAT3 (the nuclear factor HLA-B-associated transcript 3) and B7-H6 from the B7-family [56, 57]. Three different isoforms of NKp30, NKp30a, b, and c were described. The final outcome of NKp30 activation depends on the NKp30 isoform expressed on the surface of NK cells that results in quantitatively and qualitatively different antitumor response [58].

Another member of the NCR family, NKp44, was primarily defined as an activating receptor that binds haemagglutinins and a recently defined ligand expressed on cancer cells named mixed lineage leukemia-5 (MLL5) [59]. However, recently, Rosenthal et al. reported its inhibitory properties regarding NK cells upon binding proliferating cell nuclear antigen (PCNA) on tumor cells [60]. Expression of PCNA was associated with shorter overall survival of breast cancer patients [61] and might be involved in tumor immune evasion.

Upon ligation NKp46 and p44 activate ITAM containing adaptor proteins. NKp46 binds CD3 FcγR heterodimers, NKp30 to CD3ζ homodimer, and NKp44 binds directly to DAP12. Upon ligation the tyrosinases in the ITAM domain become phosphorylated and recruit SH2 domains of Syc/ZAP70 kinase. Activation of Syc/ZAP70 ultimately leads to ERK activation and granule mobilization [62]. The full effector cytotoxic potential of NK cells is mainly achieved upon simultaneous engagement of several activating NCRs [63].

NCR can also mediate the production of proinflammatory cytokines by NK cells. Early experiments showed that cross-linking of NKp46, NKp44, and NKp30a and b resulted in the production of IFNγ and TNFα and potentiation of adaptive immune antitumor responses. In particular binding of NKp30 expressed on NK cells to its ligands on the surface of immature DCs by producing high amounts of these cytokines trigger autologous DC maturation. Contrary to this, NKp30c induces production of IL-10 and is associated with reducing NK cell effector functions [58].

NCR expression on NK cells is negatively regulated by inhibitory cytokines including TGF-β [64] and IL-10, as well as by metabolites such as L-kynurenine a product of tryptophane degradation induced by tumor-derived indolamin-2,3-dioxygenase (IDO). Decreased expression of NKp46, NKp44, and NKp30 has been reported in various hematological and solid malignancies [7, 65]. NKp44 activating receptor expressing ILC3 cells have been shown to have tumor protective role [11].

9.3 Nectin and Nectin-Like Binding Receptors

This is another family of NK cell receptors that are adhesion molecules and members of Ig-superfamily that has recently been shown to have a role in the recognition of tumor cells and NK cell-mediated responses to tumors. These receptors have similar ligands that have been recently identified on the surface of target cells as crucial regulators of NK cell function, i.e., nec-

tin-2 (CD112) and poliovirus receptors (CD155), although they may have activating or inhibitory functions [66]. This is an important family of receptors that aside from best characterized CD226 (DNAM1-DNAX Accessory Molecule-1) also includes CD96 (TACTILE—T-cell-activated increased late expression) and TIGIT (T cell immunoreceptor with Ig) and ITIM domains receptors. These receptors are important in settings in which the tumor is mainly non-immunogenic, as it does not express stress ligands or costimulatory molecules, which is a common situation for many epithelial cell malignancies.

The most prominent member of this family DNAM1 is an NK cell activating receptor that by binding to PVR and nectin-2 on tumor cells recruits the tyrosine kinase Fyn and PKC that transduce activating signals. Moreover, DNAM1 upon interaction with its ligands induces actin polymerization and together with activation of other surface receptors contributes to more stable NK cell and target cell interaction. Aside from its involvement in the NK cell-mediated responses to tumors DNAM-1 has a role in migration of NK cells into secondary tumor deposits [48, 67].

The importance of DNAM1 in NK cell antitumor recognition has been shown in solid tumors and AML [7, 53, 68, 69] and illustrated in melanoma by inhibition of NK cell function after DNAM1 downmodulation by tumor associated fibroblasts (TAF) [28]. Also, DNAM1 ligand CD155 upregulation on multiple myeloma (MM) cells has been reported and resulted in increased sensitivity to NK cell-mediated lysis [70].

However, the other two members of this family, TIGIT and TACTILE receptors counteract DNAM-mediated activation as they contain an ITIM motive and inhibit NK cell antitumor activity [71]. TIGIT is strongly expressed on tumor-infiltrating lymphocytes in a wide range of tumors. For this reason, these molecules may be promising therapeutic targets for antibody therapy directed against these and similar inhibitory receptors, i.e., immune checkpoint inhibitors, for the treatment of malignancies [66].

9.3.1 Leukocyte Ig-Like Receptors (LIR)

The family of leukocyte Ig-like receptors (LILR/LIR/ILT) or CD85 includes members that are primarily inhibitory (LILRB), although some are activating (LILRA), as well as soluble receptors that regulate a broad range of cells in the immune response. These receptors bind a broad spectrum of MHC class I molecules, HLA-A, B, C, the non-classical HLA-G, and MHC-like molecules including human cytomegalovirus (HCMV) encoded protein UL-18. Inhibitory LIRs (CD85d and j) contain ITIM motives in their cytoplasmic region, while activating LIRs (CD85i, h and e) with short cytoplasmic tail were proved to recruit the ITAM motive of FcεRIγ. However, the effects, mechanisms, and structure of many activating LIR receptors remain unknown [72].

LIR1 (ILT2), CD85j, is the primary type of inhibitory receptor expressed on mature NK cells. LIR1 has been identified in the context of human cytomegalovirus (HCMV) infection as a receptor for viral encoded protein UL-18 and may lead to the suppression of NK cell-mediated antiviral responses [72]. LIR1 represses the activation of NK cells and plays a key role in immune escape in gastric cancer and MM upon binding its ligands on tumor cells, that include classical and non-classical MHC class I molecules, especially membrane-bound and soluble HLA-G, overexpressed in cancer patients [73]. Although LIR1 inhibits NK cell activation, inhibitory KIR and CD94/NKG2 receptors are thought to be more dominant.

9.3.2 CD16 (Fc γ Receptor IIIA)

This activating NK cell receptor is involved in antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity (ADCC) and direct cytotoxicity against tumor cells [74, 75], proliferation and post-activational NK cells apoptotic death, as well as in cytokine production [76]. CD16 receptor contains a cytoplasmatic domain consisting of ITAM structural motive that is comprised of FcεRIγ or TCRζ chains that upon ligand-binding become phos-

phorylated and induce signal transduction by activation of non-receptor tyrosine kineses Syk and ZAP-70 [77].

The expression CD16 receptor has been reported to be decreased on NK cells in breast cancer and MM patients [68, 78] due to post-activational receptor internalization and MMP-mediated receptor shedding following contact with target cells [79, 80]. In this sense, as CD16 defines the two functionally different NK cell subsets its decreased expression leads to the loss $CD16^{bright}$ cytotoxic subset, a finding that has been detected in numerous malignancies such as breast cancer, MM, and melanoma [78, 81, 82].

9.3.3 Natural Killer Receptor-P1 (NKR-P1)

This is a human homologue of rodent NK1.1 receptor which is a prototypical NK cell marker. CD161 is encoded by NKR-P1 gene family and is type 2 membrane glycoprotein receptor that belongs to the C-type lectin family. Five receptors NKR-P1A, -B, -C, -D, and -F have been identified in which NKR-P1-B and D both contain an ITIM suggesting inhibitory function; however, it was found that NKR-P1-C, analogous to rodent NK1.1 receptor, associates with ITAM containing FcεRI to induce NK cell activation although the biological relevance of this remains unclear [30, 41, 81]. NKR-P1A (CD161) receptor has been shown to appear early during NK cell development and its activating function may be confined to immature NK cells. The signaling of NKR-P1A has not been fully characterized, although it may activate acid sphingomyelinase which was suggested to result in NK cell resistance to apoptosis.

Ligands for NKR-P1-B and D have been identified as Ocil-Clr-b, glycoprotein expressed on hematopoetic cells and Clr-g, a c-type lectin expressed on activated NK cells. These receptors may be involved in NK cell antitumor responses, as expression of Ocil-Clr-b can be downregulated on tumor cells in some form of "missing self" recognition of target cells. Cross-linking NKR-P1A (CD161) receptor to lectin-like transcript 1 (LLT1) inhibits NK cell cytotoxicity [83, 84].

However, the biological relevance of CD161 expression in malignant tumors remains unclear, as its detected decreased expression does not correlate with decrease NK cell cytotoxicity in metastatic melanoma [5].

9.4 NK Cell Effector Functions

Unlike adaptive T and B lymphocytes, NK cells do not rearrange their receptor genes somatically, but rather rely on fixed number of inhibitory and activating NK cell receptors that are capable of recognizing MHC class I (HLA-C) and MHC class I-like molecules (MICA/B, ULBP), as well as other ligands. Downregulation of MHC class I molecules or loss of its expression during viral infection or carcinogenesis releases the inhibitory signal to NK cells and permits their activation. NK cell effector function can be triggered by the engagement of activating NK cell receptors with stress-induced cell surface ligands expressed by transformed or infected cells. NK cell triggering is the result of a complex balance between inhibitory and activating signals and requires not only the deficient MHC I expression on target cells, but also the expression of inducible ligands of activating NK cell receptors [85, 86]. NK cells exert their biological functions by various means that includes cytotoxicity and cytokine and chemokine production [29].

9.4.1 Cytotoxic NK Cell Function

NK cells exert their cytotoxic function using two main pathways: direct cytotoxicity (receptor-independent) based on degranulation of lytic granules containing perforin and granzymes and indirect cytotoxicity (receptor-dependent) based on expression of death ligands, such as FAS ligand (FasL) or tumor necrosis factor related apoptosis-inducing ligand (TRAIL).

9.4.2 Lytic Granule Cytotoxicity

Upon recognition of the NK cells with its target via specific receptor ligand interaction, subse-

quent adhesion molecule interaction (LFA-1, ICAM-1) initiate immunological synapse formation. At this point within the activated NK cell, lytic granules are mobilized toward the immune synapse via polarization of microtubule organizing center (MTOC) and drastic cytoskeletal rearrangement. Upon fusion of granular vesicles with the plasma membrane, the lytic components, namely the pore forming protein perforin and serine proteases or granzymes are released into intercellular space. Perforin monomers are exposed to extracellular levels of free Ca ions (Ca^{++}) in the synaptic space, which elicits simultaneous unfolding, polymerization and insertion into opposing target cell plasma membrane. The resulting perforin pores lead to transient Ca^{2+} influx and endocytosis of granzymes and other lytic granule components. The most important effect of granzymes is ignition of programmed cell death by both caspase-dependent and caspase-independent pathways. Aside from this perforin mediated membrane damage leads to colloid osmotic lysis due to the presence of pores in the membrane [87, 88].

Perforin was first characterized as a component present in dense cytoplasmic granules of both NK and CTL [89] that causes rapid killing upon granule exocytosis. NK cells have been shown to have preformed perforin [15, 90]. Upon cytokine stimulation transcription of perforin gene in NK cells is regulated by STAT1, 4 and 5 [15, 91–99]. Impaired STAT1 signaling is associated with low NK cell cytotoxicity and low production of IFNγ in patients with malignancies [98, 100]. Loss-of-function mutations in the gene coding perforin (PRF1) markedly reduce the ability of NK cells to kill target cells, causing immunosuppression and impairing immune regulation as seen in melanoma, lymphoma, colorectal carcinoma or ovarian cancer [101, 102].

Five granzymes have been identified in humans: A, B, H, M and tryptase-2/granzyme 3 [103] that belong to the family of serine proteases with a wide range of substrate specificities. While granzyme B induces apoptotic death in a caspase-like fashion [104], granzyme A, aside from inducing non-apoptotic cell death, targets nuclear proteins and directly in a noncaspase-like fashion induces DNA fragmentation [105].

9.4.3 Death Receptor Mediated Cytotoxicity

Death ligands, Fas ligand (FasL) or TRAIL can induce target cell apoptosis by interacting with their respective receptors on target tumor cells [106, 107]. FasL is a type II membrane protein and it is expressed constitutively by NK cells. FasL recognizes and causes aggregation of death domains in cytoplasmyc region of its receptor on target cells. Following endocytosis of the receptor ligand complex the adaptor molecule FADD (Fas associated death domain) binds the death domains of the complex and the classical apoptotic signaling cascade is initiated. In an apparent mechanism to thwart the antitumor response, a variety of tumor cells also express FasL which by counter-attack has been shown to result in NK cell apoptosis and depletion [108]. TRAILs on NK cells induce signaling through their functional receptors on target tumor cells and also integrate on the FADD-dependent signaling apoptotic cascade. This apoptotic mechanism is slower (several hours) and often less efficient than granule-mediated cytotoxicity.

9.5 Regulatory NK Cell Function

Beside their spontaneous capacity to mediate natural cytotoxicity towards tumor or virus infected cells, NK cells are also able to produce cytokines, such as Th1 cytokine and IFN, as well as both proinflamatory and immunosuppressive cytokines, such as TNFα and IL-10, respectively, and growth factors such as GM-CSF and IL-3. NK cells also secrete many chemokines including CCL2 (MCP-1), CCL3 (MIP1-α), CCL4 (MIP1-β), CCL5 (RANTES), and IL-8 which are key for NK cell co-localization and interaction with other cells of the innate and adaptive immune system in areas of inflammation and tumors [109].

Although, it was considered that regulatory CD3-CD56^{bright} NK cells are the main producers of IFNγ, it has recently been shown that after target recognition and cytokine activation cytotoxic CD3-CD56^{dim} NK cells show after short stimulation, 4–6 h, rapid production of IFNγ that is transient and not detectable after 24 h [7, 97]. It is after this period that the regulatory CD3-CD56^{bright} NK cell subset continues to consistently produce IFNγ [110].

These beneficial primary biological activities of IFNγ in the tumors present in early inflammatory response, has recently been shown to change to pro-tumorigenic effects in chronic tumor-related inflammation. This immunosuppressive effect of IFNγ is based on its ability to adversely affect the protective role of neutrophils and myeloid cells and to induce mediators (prostaglandine E2) and enzymes (indoleamine 2,3-dioxygenase-IDO) that suppresses NK cell function by downregulation of their activating receptors [111]. Furthermore, NK cell produced IFNγ induces non-classical, HLA-G expression on tumor cells that by binding inhibitory NK cell receptors (KIR, LIR) negatively affect not only NK, but T-cell responses. Moreover, IFNγ by the induction of PD-L1 on tumor cells that bind inhibitory checkpoint PD-1 receptors on NK and CTLs, further suppresses their function [112].

9.6 Conclusion

The comprehension of NK cells function has extremely grown in last period and involved better characterization of activating and inhibitory NK cell receptors, their ligands and signaling pathways, as well as identification of novel NK cell receptors. However, in malignancies many immunossuppressive mediators and cytokines contributes to functionally impaired NK cells by affecting receptor repertoire that eventually leads to tumor immune evasion and disease progression. Better understanding of alterations associated with diminished NK cell activity in cancer patients may represent useful biomarkers of the course of disease and may assist in selection of immunotherapy to restore and sustain NK cell antitumor response.

Acknowledgements This work was supported by grant of the Ministry of Education, Science and Technological Development of the Republic of Serbia, number 175056.

References

1. Trinchieri G. Biology of natural killer cells. Adv Immunol. 1989;47:187–376.
2. Caligiuri MA. Human natural killer cells. Blood. 2008;112:461–49.
3. Cooper MA, Fehniger TA, Turner SC, Chen KS, Ghaheri BA, Ghayur T, et al. Human natural killer cells: a unique innate immunoregulatory role for the CD56(bright) subset. Blood. 2001;97:3146–51.
4. Konjević G, Jović V, Jurisić V, Radulović S, Jelić S, Spuzić I. IL-2-mediated augmentation of NK-cell activity and activation antigen expression on NK- and T-cell subsets in patients with metastatic melanoma treated with interferon-alpha and DTIC. Clin Exp Metastasis. 2003;20:647–55.
5. Konjević G, Mirjacić Martinović K, Jurisić V, Babović N, Spuzić I. Biomarkers of suppressed natural killer (NK) cell function in metastatic melanoma: decreased NKG2D and increased CD158a receptors on CD3-CD16+ NK cells. Biomarkers. 2009;14:258–70.
6. Jurisic V, Colovic N, Konjevic G, Minic I, Colovic M. An aggressive extramedullary cutaneous plasmacytoma associated with extreme alterations in the innate immune system. Onkologie. 2010;33:113.
7. Mirjačić Martinović KM, NLj B, Džodić RR, Jurišić VB, Tanić NT, Konjević GM. Decreased expression of NKG2D, NKp46, DNAM-1 receptors, and intracellular perforin and STAT-1 effector molecules in NK cells and their dim and bright subsets in metastatic melanoma patients. Melanoma Res. 2014;24:295–304.
8. Kiessling R, Klein E, Wigzell H. "Natural" killer cells in the mouse. I. Cytotoxic cells with specificity for mouse Moloney leukemia cells. Specificity and distribution according to genotype. Eur J Immunol. 1975;5:112–7.
9. Herberman RB, Nunn ME, Holden HT, Lavrin DH. Natural cytotoxic reactivity of mouse lymphoid cells against syngeneic and allogeneic tumors. II. Characterization of effector cells. Int J Cancer. 1975;16:230–9.
10. Ryan JC, Turck J, Niemi EC, Yokoyama WM, Seaman WE. Molecular cloning of the NK1.1 antigen, a member of the NKR-P1 family of natural killer cell activation molecules. J Immunol. 1992;149:1631–5.
11. Montaldo E, Vacca P, Vitale C, Moretta F, Locatelli F, Mingari MC, et al. Human innate lymphoid cells. Immunol Lett. 2016;179:2–8.
12. Min-Oo G, Kamimura Y, Hendricks DW, Nabekura T, Lanier LL. Natural killer cells: walking three

paths down memory lane. Trends Immunol. 2013;34:251–8.
13. Freud AG, Yokohama A, Becknell B, Lee MT, Mao HC, Ferketich AK, et al. Evidence for discrete stages of human natural killer cell differentiation in vivo. J Exp Med. 2006;203:1033–43.
14. Eissens DN, Spanholtz J, van der Meer A, van Cranenbroek B, Dolstra H, Kwekkeboom J, et al. Defining early human NK cell developmental stages in primary and secondary lymphoid tissues. PLoS One. 2012;7:e30930.
15. Konjevic G, Jurisic V, Jovic V, Vuletic A, Mirjacic Martinovic K, Radenkovic S, et al. Investigation of NK cell function and their modulation in different malignancies. Immunol Res. 2012;52:139–56.
16. Vuletić A, Jurišić V, Jovanić I, Milovanović Z, Nikolić S, Konjević G. Distribution of several activating and inhibitory receptors on CD3(−)CD56(+) NK cells in regional lymph nodes of melanoma patients. J Surg Res. 2013;183:860–8.
17. Mujaj SA, Spanevello MM, Gandhi MK, Nourse JP. Molecular mechanisms influencing NK cell development: implications for NK cell malignancies. Am J Blood Res. 2011;1:34–45.
18. Luetke-Eversloh M, Killig M, Romagnani C. Signatures of human NK cell development and terminal differentiation. Front Immunol. 2013;4:499.
19. Norris PJ, Nixon DF, Lanier LL. CD57 defines a functionally distinct population of mature NK cells in the human CD56dimCD16+ NK-cell subset. Blood. 2010;116:3865–74.
20. Lopez-Vergès S, Milush JM, Pandey S, York VA, Arakawa-Hoyt J, Pircher H, et al. Signatures of human NK cell development and terminal differentiation. Front Immunol. 2013;4:499.
21. Jaeger BN, Vivier E. When NK cells overcome their lack of education. J Clin Invest. 2012;122:3053–6.
22. Guia S, Jaeger BN, Piatek S, Mailfert S, Trombik T, Fenis A, et al. Confinement of activating receptors at the plasma membrane controls natural killer cell tolerance. Sci Signal. 2011;4:ra21.
23. Campbell KS, Purdy AK. Structure/function of human killer cell immunoglobulin-like receptors: lessons from polymorphisms, evolution, crystal structures and mutations. Immunology. 2011;132:315–25.
24. Elliott JM, Wahle JA, Yokoyama WM. MHC class I-deficient natural killer cells acquire a licensed phenotype after transfer into an MHC class I-sufficient environment. J Exp Med. 2010;207:2073–9.
25. Joncker NT, Shifrin N, Delebecque F, Raulet DH. Mature natural killer cells reset their responsiveness when exposed to an altered MHC environment. J Exp Med. 2010;207:2065–72.
26. Stojanovic A, Correia MP, Cerwenka A. Shaping of NK cell responses by the tumor microenvironment. Cancer Microenviron. 2013;6:135–46.
27. Farag SS, Caligiuri MA. Human natural killer cell development and biology. Blood Rev. 2006;20:123–37.
28. Balsamo M, Scordamaglia F, Pietra G, Manzini C, Cantoni C, Boitano M, et al. Melanoma-associated fibroblasts modulate NK cell phenotype and antitumor cytotoxicity. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2009;106:20847–52.
29. Jurisić V, Spuzić I, Konjević G. A comparison of the NK cell cytotoxicity with effects of TNF-alpha against K-562 cells, determined by LDH release assay. Cancer Lett. 1999;138:67–72.
30. Konjević G, Mirjacić Martinović K, Vuletić A, Jović V, Jurisić V, Babović N, et al. Low expression of CD161 and NKG2D activating NK receptor is associated with impaired NK cell cytotoxicity in metastatic melanoma patients. Clin Exp Metastasis. 2007;24:1–11.
31. Jurisic V, Srdic T, Konjevic G, Markovic O, Colovic M. Clinical stage-depending decrease of NK cell activity in multiple myeloma patients. Med Oncol. 2007;24:312–7.
32. Campbell KS, Hasegawa J. Natural killer cell biology: an update and future directions. J Allergy Clin Immunol. 2013;132:536–44.
33. Thielens A, Vivier E, Romagné F. NK cell MHC class I specific receptors (KIR): from biology to clinical intervention. Curr Opin Immunol. 2012;24:239–45.
34. Uhrberg M, Valiante NM, Shum BP, Shilling HG, Lienert-Weidenbach K, Corliss B, et al. Human diversity in killer cell inhibitory receptor genes. Immunity. 1997;7:753–63.
35. Trowsdale J, Parham P. Mini-review: defense strategies and immunity-related genes. Eur J Immunol. 2004;34:7–17.
36. Yawata M, Yawata N, Draghi M, Partheniou F, Little AM, Parham P. MHC class I-specific inhibitory receptors and their ligands structure diverse human NK-cell repertoires toward a balance of missing self-response. Blood. 2008;112:2369–80.
37. Rajalingam R. Overview of the killer cell immunoglobulin-like receptor system. Methods Mol Biol. 2012;882:391–414.
38. Purdy AK, Campbell KS. Natural killer cells and cancer: regulation by the killer cell Ig-like receptors (KIR). Cancer Biol Ther. 2009;8:2211–20.
39. Boyton RJ, Altmann DM. Natural killer cells, killer immunoglobulin-like receptors and human leucocyte antigen class I in disease. Clin Exp Immunol. 2007;149:1–8.
40. Martin MP, Carrington M. KIR locus polymorphisms: genotyping and disease association analysis. Methods Mol Biol. 2008;415:49.
41. Mirjačić Martinović K, Konjević G, Babović N, Inić M. The stage dependent changes in NK cell activity and the expression of activating and inhibitory NK cell receptors in melanoma patients. J Surg Res. 2011;17:637–49.
42. Stern-Ginossar N, Mandelboim O. An integrated view of the regulation of NKG2D ligands. Immunology. 2009;128:1–6.
43. López-Larrea C, Suárez-Alvarez B, López-Soto A, López-Vázquez A, Gonzalez S. The NKG2D

receptor: sensing stressed cells. Trends Mol Med. 2008;14:179–89.
44. Zafirova B, Wensveen FM, Gulin M, Polić B. Regulation of immune cell function and differentiation by the NKG2D receptor. Cell Mol Life Sci. 2011;68:3519–29.
45. Wu J, Song Y, Bakker AB, Bauer S, Spies T, Lanier LL, et al. An activating immunoreceptor complex formed by NKG2D and DAP10. Science. 1999;285:730–2.
46. Konjevic G, Vuletic A, Mirjacic Martinovic K, Krivokuca A, Jankovic R, Babovic N. Evaluation of the functional capacity of NK cells of melanoma patients in an in vitro model of NK cell contact with K562 and FemX tumor cell lines. J Membr Biol. 2017;250(5):507–16.
47. Hayakawa Y, Smyth MJ. NKG2D and cytotoxic effector function in tumor immune surveillance. Semin Immunol. 2006;18:176–85.
48. Pegram HJ, Andrews DM, Smyth MJ, Darcy PK, Kershaw MH. Activating and inhibitory receptors of natural killer cells. Immunol Cell Biol. 2011;89:216–24.
49. Höglund P, Brodin P. Current perspectives of natural killer cell education by MHC class I molecules. Nat Rev Immunol. 2010;10:724–34.
50. Iwaszko M, Bogunia-Kubik K. Clinical significance of the HLA-E and CD94/NKG2 interaction. Arch Immunol Ther Exp. 2011;59:353–67.
51. Braud VM, Allan DS, O'Callaghan CA, Söderström K, D'Andrea A, Ogg GS, et al. HLA-E binds to natural killer cell receptors CD94/NKG2A, B and C. Nature. 1998;391:795–9.
52. Bossard C, Bezieau S, Matysiak-Budnik T, Volteau C, Laboisse CL, Jotereau F, et al. HLA-E/b2 microglobulin overexpression in colorectal cancer is associated with recruitment of inhibitory immune cells and tumor progression. Int J Cancer. 2012;131:855–63.
53. Sanchez-Correa B, Morgado S, Gayoso I, Bergua JM, Casado JG, Arcos MJ, et al. Human NK cells in acute myeloid leukaemia patients: analysis of NK cell-activating receptors and their ligands. Cancer Immunol Immunother. 2011;60:1195–205.
54. Pessino A, Sivori S, Bottino C, Malaspina A, Morelli L, Moretta L, et al. Molecular cloning of NKp46: a novel member of the immunoglobulin superfamily involved in triggering of natural cytotoxicity. J Exp Med. 1998;188:953–60.
55. Vitale M, Bottino C, Sivori S, Sanseverino L, Castriconi R, Marcenaro E, et al. NKp44, a novel triggering surface molecule specifically expressed by activated natural killer cells, is involved in non-major histocompatibility complex-restricted tumor cell lysis. J Exp Med. 1998;187:2065–72.
56. Brandt CS, Baratin M, Yi EC, Kennedy J, Gao Z, Fox B, et al. The B7 family member B7-H6 is a tumor cell ligand for the activating natural killer cell receptor NKp30 in humans. J Exp Med. 2009;206:1495–503.
57. Pogge von Strandmann E, Simhadri VR, von Tresckow B, Sasse S, Reiners KS, Hansen HP, et al. Human leukocyte antigen-B-associated transcript 3 is released from tumor cells and engages the NKp30 receptor on natural killer cells. Immunity. 2007;27:965–74.
58. Delahaye NF, Rusakiewicz S, Martins I, Menard C, Roux S, Lyonnet L, et al. Alternatively spliced NKp30 isoforms affect the prognosis of gastrointestinal stromal tumors. Nat Med. 2011;17:700–7.
59. Baychelier F, Sennepin A, Ermonval M, Dorgham K, Debré P, Vieillard V. Identification of a cellular ligand for the natural cytotoxicity receptor NKp44. Blood. 2013;122:2935–42.
60. Narni-Mancinelli E, Jaeger BN, Bernat C, Fenis A, Kung S, De Gassart A, et al. Tuning of natural killer cell reactivity by NKp46 and Helios calibrates T cell responses. Science. 2012;335:344–38.
61. Rosental B, Brusilovsky M, Hadad U, Oz D, Appel MY, Afergan F, et al. Proliferating cell nuclear antigen is a novel inhibitory ligand for the natural cytotoxicity receptor NKp44. J Immunol. 2011;187:5693–702.
62. Hudspeth K, Silva-Santos B, Mavilio D. Natural cytotoxicity receptors: broader expression patterns and functions in innate and adaptive immune cells. Front Immunol. 2013;4:69.
63. Stuart-Harris R, Caldas C, Pinder SE, Pharoah P. Proliferation markers and survival in early breast cancer: a systematic review and meta-analysis of 85 studies in 32,825 patients. Breast. 2008;17:323–34.
64. Regis S, Caliendo F, Dondero A, Casu B, Romano F, Loiacono F, Moretta A, Bottino C, Castriconi R. TGF-β1 Downregulates the expression of CX_3CR1 by inducing miR-27a-5p in primary human NK cells. Front Immunol. 2017;8:868.
65. Konjević G, Vuletić A, Mirjačić MK. Natural killer cell receptors: alterations and therapeutic targeting in malignancies. Immunol Res. 2016;64:25–35.
66. Martinet L, Smyth MJ. Balancing natural killer cell activation through paired receptors. Nat Rev Immunol. 2015;15:243–54.
67. Lakshmikanth T, Burke S, Ali TH, Kimpfler S, Ursini F, Ruggeri L, et al. NCRs and DNAM-1 mediate NK cell recognition and lysis of human and mouse melanoma cell lines in vitro and in vivo. J Clin Invest. 2009;119:1251–63.
68. Mamessier E, Sylvain A, Bertucci F, Castellano R, Finetti P, Houvenaeghel G, et al. Human breast tumor cells induce self-tolerance mechanisms to avoid NKG2D-mediated and DNAM-mediated NK cell recognition. Cancer Res. 2011;71:6621–32.
69. Zhang Z, Su T, He L, Wang H, Ji G, Liu X, et al. Identification and functional analysis of ligands for natural killer cell activating receptors in colon carcinoma. Tohoku J Exp Med. 2012;226:59–68.
70. Morisaki T, Onishi H, Katano M. Cancer immunotherapy using NKG2D and DNAM-1systems. Anticancer Res. 2012;32:2241–7.

71. Xu F, Sunderland A, Zhou Y, Schulick RD, Edil BH, Zhu Y. Blockade of CD112R and TIGIT signaling sensitizes human natural killer cell functions. Cancer Immunol Immunother. 2017;66:1367–75.
72. Colonna M, Nakajima H, Cella M. Inhibitory and activating receptors involved in immune surveillance by human NK and myeloid cells. J Leukoc Biol. 1999;66:718–22.
73. Heidenreich S, ZuEulenburg C, Hildebrandt Y, Stubig T, Sierich H, Badbaran A, et al. Impact of the NK cell receptor LIR-1 (ILT-2/CD85j/LILRB1) on cytotoxicity against multiple myeloma. Clin Dev Immunol. 2012;2012:652130.
74. Warren HS, Kinnear BF. Quantitative analysis of the effect of CD16 ligation on human NK cell proliferation. J Immunol. 1999;162:735–42.
75. Lanier LL. Natural killer cell receptor signaling. Curr Opin Immunol. 2003;15:308–14.
76. Vivier E, Nunes JA, Vely F. Natural killer cell signaling pathways. Science. 2004;306:1517–9.
77. Gryzwacz B, Kataria N, Verneris MR. CD56dimCD16 + NK cells downregulate CD16 following target cell induced activation of matrix metalloproteinases. Leukemia. 2007;21:356–9.
78. Konjević G, Vuletić A, Mirjačić Martinović K, Colović N, Čolović M, Jurišić V. Decreased CD161 activating and increased CD158a inhibitory receptor expression on NK cells underlies impaired NK cell cytotoxicity in patients with multiple myeloma. J Clin Pathol. 2016;pii:jclinpath-2016-203614.
79. Jewett A, Tseng HC. Tumor induced inactivation of natural killer cell cytotoxic function; implication in growth, expansion and differentiation of cancer stem cells. J Cancer. 2011;2:443–57.
80. Romee R, Foley B, Lenvik T, Wang Y, Zhang B, Ankarlo D, et al. NK cell CD16 surface expression and function is regulated by a disintegrin and metalloproteinase-17 (ADAM17). Blood. 2013;121:3599–608.
81. Konjević G, Mirjacić Martinović K, Vuletić A, Jurisić V, Spuzić I. Distribution of several activating and inhibitory receptors on CD3-CD16+ NK cells and their correlation with NK cell function in healthy individuals. J Membr Biol. 2009;230:113–23.
82. Konjević G, Jović V, Vuletić A, Radulović S, Jelić S, Spuzić I. CD69 on $CD56^+$ NK cells and response to chemoimmunotherapy in metastatic melanoma. Eur J Clin Investig. 2007;37:887–96.
83. Rosen DB, Bettadapura J, Alsharifi M, Mathew PA, Warren HS, Lanier LL. Cutting edge: lectin-like transcript-1 is a ligand for the inhibitory human NKR-P1A receptor. J Immunol. 2005;175:7796–9.
84. Aldemir H, Prod'homme V, Dumaurier MJ, Retiere C, Poupon G, Cazareth J, et al. Cutting edge: lectin-like transcript 1 is a ligand for the CD161 receptor. J Immunol. 2005;175:7791–5.
85. Lanier LL. NK cell recognition. Annu Rev Immunol. 2005;23:225–74.
86. Langers I, Renoux VM, Thiry M, Delvenne P, Jacobs N. Natural killer cells:role in local tumor growth and metastasis. Biologics. 2012;6:73–82.
87. Podack ER. How to induce involuntary suicide: the need for dipeptidyl peptidase I. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 1999;96:8312–4.
88. Keefe D, Shi L, Feske S, Massol R, Navarro F, Kirchhausen T, et al. Perforin triggers a plasma membrane-repair response that facilitates CTL induction of apoptosis. Immunity. 2005;23:249–62.
89. Podack ER, Dennert G. Assembly of two types of tubules with putative cytolytic function by cloned natural killer cells. Nature. 1983;302:442–5.
90. Konjević G, Schlesinger B, Cheng L, Olsen KJ, Podack ER, Spuzic I. Analysis of perforin expression in human peripheral blood lymphocytes, CD56+ natural killer cell subsets and its induction by interleukin-2. Immunol Investig. 1995;24:499–507.
91. Konjević G, Mirjačić Martinović K, Vuletić A, Babović N. In-vitro IL-2 or IFN-α-induced NKG2D and CD161 NK cell receptor expression indicates novel aspects of NK cell activation in metastatic melanoma patients. Melanoma Res. 2010;20:459–67.
92. Konjević G, Mirjačić Martinović K, Vuletić A, Radenković S. Novel aspects of in vitro IL-2 or IFN-α enhanced NK cytotoxicity of healthy individuals based on NKG2D and CD161 NK cell receptor induction. Biomed Pharmacother. 2010;64:663–71.
93. Konjevic G, Mirjacic-Martinovic K, Vuletic A, Babovic N. In vitro increased natural killer cell activity of metastatic melanoma patients with interferon-α alone as opposed to its combination with 13-cis retinoic acid is associated with modulation of NKG2D and CD161 activating receptor expression. J BUON. 2012;17:761–9.
94. Cichocki F, Miller JS, Anderson SK, Bryceson YT. Epigenetic regulation of NK cell differentiation and effector functions. Front Immunol. 2013;4:55.
95. Konjević G, Radenković S, Vuletić A, Mirjačić Martinović K, Jurišić V, Srdić T. STAT transcription factors in tumor development and targeted therapy of malignancies. In: Siregar Y, editor. Oncogene and cancer - from bench to clinic. Rijeka: Intech; 2013. p. 455–86.
96. Mirjačić Martinović K, Babović N, Džodić R, Jurišić V, Matković S, Konjević G. Favorable in vitro effects of combined IL-12 and IL-18 treatment on NK cell cytotoxicity and CD25 receptor expression in metastatic melanoma patients. J Transl Med. 2015;13:120.
97. Vuletić AM, Jovanić IP, Jurišić VB, Milovanović ZM, Nikolić SS, Spurnić I, et al. Decreased interferon γ production in $CD3^+$ and CD3- $CD56^+$ lymphocyte subsets in metastatic regional lymph nodes of melanoma patients. Pathol Oncol Res. 2015;21:1109–14.
98. Mirjačić Martinović K, Srdić-Rajić T, Babović N, Džodić R, Jurišić V, Konjević G. Decreased expression of pSTAT, IRF-1 and DAP10 signalling molecules in peripheral blood lymphocytes of patients with metastatic melanoma. J Clin Pathol. 2016;69:300–6.

99. Mirjačić Martinović KM, Vuletić AM, Lj Babović N, Džodić RR, Konjević GM, Jurišić VB. Attenuated in vitro effects of IFN-α, IL-2 and IL-12 on functional and receptor characteristics of peripheral blood lymphocytes in metastatic melanoma patients. Cytokine. 2017;96:30–40.
100. Konjević G, Radenković S, Srdić T, Jurišic V, Lj S, Milović M. Association of decreased NK cell activity and IFNγ expression with pSTAT dysregulation in breast cancer patients. J BUON. 2011;16:219–26.
101. Jović V, Konjević G, Radulović S, Jelić S, Spuzić I. Impaired perforin-dependent NK cell cytotoxicity and proliferative activity of peripheral blood T cells is associated with metastatic melanoma. Tumori. 2001;87:324–9.
102. Trapani JA, Thia KY, Andrews M, Davis ID, Gedye C, Parente P, Svobodova S, Chia J, et al. Human perforin mutations and susceptibility to multiple primary cancers. Oncoimmunology. 2013;2:e24185.
103. Hameed A, Lowrey DM, Lichtenheld M, Podack ER. Characterization of three serine esterases isolated from human IL-2 activated killer cells. J Immunol. 1988;141:3142–7.
104. Trapani JA, Sutton VR. Granzyme B: pro-apoptotic, antiviral and antitumor functions. Curr Opin Immunol. 2003;15:533–43.
105. Beresford PJ, Xia Z, Greenberg AH, Lieberman J. Granzyme A loading induces rapid cytolysis and a novel form of DNA damage independently of caspase activation. Immunity. 1999;10:585–94.
106. Jurisić V, Bogdanovic G, Srdic T, Jakimov D, Mrdjanovic J, Baltic M, et al. Modulation of TNF-alpha activity in tumor PC cells using anti-CD45 and anti-CD95 monoclonal antibodies. Modulation of TNF-alpha activity in tumor PC cells using anti-CD45 and anti-CD95 monoclonal antibodies. Cancer Lett. 2004;214:55–61.
107. Jurisic V, Srdic-Rajic T, Konjevic G, Bogdanovic G, Colic M. TNF-α induced apoptosis is accompanied with rapid CD30 and slower CD45 shedding from K-562 cells. J Membr Biol. 2011;239:115–22.
108. Khar A, Varalakshmi C, Pardhasaradhi BV, Mubarak Ali A, Kumari AL. Depletion of the natural killer cell population in the peritoneum by AK-5 tumor cell overexpressing fas-ligand: a mechanism of immune evasion. Cell Immunol. 1998;189:85–91.
109. Vivier E, Raulet DH, Moretta A, Caligiuri MA, Zitvogel L, Lanier LL, et al. Innate or adaptive immunity? The example of natural killer cells. Science. 2011;331:44–9.
110. De Maria A, Bozzano F, Cantoni C, Moretta L. Revisiting human natural killer cell subset function revealed cytolytic CD56(dim)CD16+ NK cells as rapid producers of abundant IFN-gamma on activation. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2011;108:728–32.
111. Pietra G, Manzini C, Rivara S, Vitale M, Cantoni C, Petretto A, et al. Melanoma cells inhibit natural killer cell function by modulating the expression of activating receptors and cytolytic activity. Cancer Res. 2012;72:1407–15.
112. Chiossone L, Vienne M, Kerdiles YM, Vivier E. Natural killer cell immunotherapies against cancer: checkpoint inhibitors and more. Semin Immunol. 2017;31:55–63.

Role of Plasmacytoid Dendritic Cells in Cancer

10

Michela Terlizzi, Chiara Colarusso, Aldo Pinto, and Rosalinda Sorrentino

Contents

M. Terlizzi · A. Pinto
Department of Pharmacy (DIFARMA), University of Salerno, Salerno, Italy

C. Colarusso
Department of Pharmacy (DIFARMA), University of Salerno, Fisciano, Italy

PhD Program in Drug Discovery and Development, Department of Pharmacy, University of Salerno, Fisciano, SA, Italy

R. Sorrentino (✉)
Department of Pharmacy (DIFARMA), University of Salerno, Fisciano, Italy

Cancer Immunology Project (CIP), Universal Scientific Education of Research Network (USERN), Salerno, Italy
e-mail: rsorrentino@unisa.it

N. Rezaei (ed.), *Cancer Immunology*, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-30845-2_10

10.1 Introduction

Dendritic cells (DCs) are highly specialized antigen-presenting cells (APCs) essential in order to generate immune responses [1], recognizing, processing, and presenting "danger signals" to the adaptive immune system. It is clear that DCs are not a unique homogeneous cell population, but rather a pool of subsets with different origins, phenotypes, and functions [2, 3]. However, two of these are of greater importance: myeloid-derived dendritic cells (mDCs) and plasmacytoid dendritic cells (pDCs). mDCs reside in an immature state in peripheral tissues where they behave as sentinels to actively capture and process antigens (Ags). Following exposure to proinflammatory cytokines or pathogen-derived products (pathogen-associated molecular patterns, PAMPs), they undergo a maturation process and migrate to draining local lymph nodes via the afferent lymphatics [4]. In contrast, pDCs do not reside in peripheral tissues during homeostasis, but are encountered in the peripheral blood and lymphoid organs [1, 5]. They were first identified in human blood and tonsils [6]. Unlike mDCs, they do not express myeloid antigens (i.e., CD11c); rather they are characterized by CD123; CLEC9A, the receptor for actin exposed during cell necrosis [7]; the cell adhesion molecule CADM1 (NECL2); the antigen BTLA; and high levels of intracellular indoleamine 2,3-dioxygenase (IDO) [8]. The hallmark of pDCs is their unique capability to produce large amounts of interferon-α and interferon-β (type I IFN) in response to viruses [9]. Furthermore, pDCs can differentiate into mature DCs when stimulated by viruses [10, 11]. Thus, pDCs are key effectors in innate immunity and act as the ideal cell population in connecting innate and adaptive immunity [9]. This discovery dates back to more than 50 years ago when Lennert and Remmele [12] identified a previously unrecognized rare cell type with plasma cell-like morphology in the paracortical area of reactive lymph nodes. Later data revealed that these cells express both T-cell and monocyte markers and were therefore designated as plasmacytoid T-cells or plasmacytoid monocytes [2, 3, 13]. In the 1980s, pathologists became increasingly aware of this enigmatic cell, and its tissue accumulation was shown to be restricted to lymphoid organs afflicted by reactive or neoplastic disorders [3, 4], as well as skin-associated lymphoid tissue [14, 15]. However, despite an increasing interest in these cells, their functional significance has still remained enigmatic.

10.2 Localization and Trafficking Patterns of Plasmacytoid Dendritic Cells (pDCs)

The development and molecular regulation of pDCs is still under investigation. FMS-like tyrosine kinase 3 ligand (Flt3L) is the main growth factor that induces the differentiation of common myeloid progenitor cells into both mDCs and pDCs [16]; however, the E2-2 transcription factor is uniquely required for pDC differentiation [17]. During steady-state conditions, mouse pDCs reside in lymphoid organs and blood, as well as the liver, lung, and skin; nonetheless, their proliferation rate is very low [18]. Human pDCs reside in primary, secondary, and tertiary lymphoid organs (aggregates/follicles—lymph nodes (LNs), tonsils, spleen, thymus, bone marrow, and Peyer's patches) [19], in addition to the liver and blood [20]. They can migrate from lymphoid organs toward T-cell-rich areas of secondary lymphoid tissues through high endothelial venules (HEV) and toward the marginal zone of the spleen [21]. In contrast, during pathological conditions, pDCs leave the bone marrow or the circulation and infiltrate inflamed tissues where they can "sense" danger signals, both PAMPs and endogenous danger signals (danger-associated molecular patterns, DAMPs), leading to the release of large amounts of type I IFNs [19, 21]. In this scenario they generate protective immunity as type I IFNs can activate mDCs, B, T, and NK cells [19, 21]. In particular, pDCs accumulate in inflammatory sites, e.g., lymphoid hyperplasia of the skin [14], cutaneous systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE), psoriasis vulgaris (basal epidermis and papillary dermis, but not normal skin), contact dermatitis, and allergic mucosa

[22]. pDCs also infiltrate ascites associated with primary and malignant melanoma [23, 24], head and neck carcinoma [25], and ovarian carcinoma [26]. Recruitment into these sites suggests that pDCs may contribute to the ongoing inflammatory response through the release of cytokines and chemokines and lead to the activation of lymphocytes [27] or, alternatively, to the induction of tolerogenic responses [28].

An intriguing question is how do pDCs enter LNs and inflammatory sites? Chemokines are important regulators of DC trafficking in vivo. Similar to mDCs, blood pre-pDCs (an immediate precursor of pDCs) undergo maturation and upregulate functional CCR7 after activation with microbial stimuli or CD40 ligation, thereby acquiring responsiveness toward CCL19 and CCL21 expressed by HEVs and LN constituents [29, 30]. Furthermore, pDCs express L-selectin (CD62L), which recognizes corresponding ligands (peripheral lymph node addressin [PNAd]) on HEVs [21]. These observations may account for the localization of pDCs around HEVs and in T-cell-rich areas of LNs during pathological conditions. pDCs also express ligands for VCAM-1, an inducible molecule on endothelial cells which may enhance migration to draining LNs [28]. Pre-pDCs express several additional chemokine receptors, e.g., CCR2, CCR5, and CXCR3 [31, 32]. Nevertheless, unlike mDCs, they marginally respond to the corresponding ligands (MCP-1; RANTES, MIP-1α, and MIP-1β; Mig [CXCL9], IP-10 [CXCL10], and I-TAC [CXCL11], respectively). Instead, they migrate efficiently following the recognition of CXCR4 ligand SDF-1/CXCL12, which is expressed on dermal endothelial cells, in LN-derived HEVs, and in malignant cells [28]. Although relatively inactive on their own, CXCR3 ligands produced by Th1 cells can enhance the responsiveness of pre-pDCs to SDF-1 by 20- to 50-fold [29, 32]. During microbial infection or inflammation, the induction of CXCR3 ligands may drive the recruitment of immature pDCs to tissues responsible for SDF-1 production. In tonsils and in psoriatic skin, epithelial cells expressing SDF-1 have been associated with the expression of CXCR3 ligands [32]. However, pDCs lose their responsiveness to SDF-1 once differentiated [31]. Interestingly, pDCs express cutaneous lymphocyte-associated antigen (CLA), which binds to E-selectin on dermal endothelial cells and which may enhance their recruitment to cutaneous inflammatory lesions [33].

Adenosine has recently been identified as a potent chemotactic factor for immature pDCs via an A1 receptor-mediated mechanism [34]. Upon maturation, the receptor is downregulated, resulting in loss of migratory function. In turn, the A2a receptor is upregulated, through which adenosine reduces the production of proinflammatory cytokines [34]. Thus, adenosine, as a resultant of tissue injury from the degradation of the increased release of ATP, as well as SDF-1 and CXCR3 ligands, facilitates the recruitment of immature pDCs from blood to inflammatory sites, but subsequently limits their contribution to an inflammatory response upon maturation after an encounter with virus, bacteria, or activated T-cells [34].

"Local" maturation upregulates CCR7, allowing pDCs to migrate to LNs in response to CCL19 and CCL21 and resist apoptosis [35]. At this site, pDCs could potentially present peripherally acquired Ags to T-cells. Recently, IL-18 produced by mDCs in inflamed sites was shown to attract pre-pDCs and modulate their function to skew Th cells toward Th1 cells [36].

10.3 Plasmacytoid Dendritic Cells (pDCs) Phenotype

pDCs are a rare cell type representing only 0.5% of circulating cells in healthy individuals [19]. They are round-shaped cells characterized by a prominent endoplasmic reticulum [21]. Mouse pDCs manifest most of the morphological and phenotypical features of their human counterpart [19, 21, 37]. Human pDCs are $CD4^+$, $CD45RA^+$, IL-3αR $(CD123)^+$, immunoglobulin-like transcript factor (ILT)-3^+, ILT-$1^{low/-}$, Siglec-H^+, and $CD11c^{low/-}$ cells (Table 10.1) [21]. Two additional surface markers for human pDCs are represented by BDCA-2 and BDCA-4 that correspond to the murine mPDCA-1, restricted to the

Table 10.1 Markers currently identified on pDCs

Marker	Structure/function	Ligand	Effect of activation
BDCA-2/ BDCA-4	Associated with FcεRIγ to form a signaling receptor complex	ITAM	Upon ligation, they inhibit TLR activation and release of type I IFN
CD4	A glycoprotein expressed on the surface of T-helper cells, monocytes, macrophages, and dendritic cells	It recognizes the TCR-MHC class II complex and is required together with the CD3 zeta chain for the recognition of antigens	Activation of pDCs
CD123	The IL-3 receptor (70KD) is composed of a ligand-specific alpha subunit and a signal-transducing beta subunit shared by the receptors for interleukin 3 (IL-3), colony-stimulating factor 2 (CSF2/GM-CSF), and interleukin 5 (IL-5)	IL-3	Amplification of inflammation
IL-T3	Characterized by its cytoplasmic ITIM domain	Fc receptor	Tolerance induction
IL-T7	Characterized by its cytoplasmic ITIM domain and is also expressed on B, T, and NK cells	IFN-I	Inhibition of release of type I IFN (negative feedback)
CD11c	A heterodimeric integral membrane protein composed of an alpha chain and a beta chain. It is present only on mouse, but not human, pDCs	ICAM-2 and VCAM-1	Induces cell activation; it is an adhesion receptor that is implicated in phagocytosis of latex beads and bacteria in the absence of complement. It plays an important role in the inflammatory response and can lead to the production of proinflammatory cytokines after an APC response
TLR7	An intracellular endosomal pattern recognition receptor	Single-stranded RNA	Upregulation of CD40, CD80, CD86, and CCR7. Induction of high levels of type I IFN. Does not induce IL-12p70 production
TLR9	An intracellular endosomal pattern recognition receptor	Unmethylated CpG oligonucleotides from bacterial DNA	Upregulation of CD40, CD80, CD86, CD83, HLA-DR, and CCR7. Upregulation of type I IFN, IL-6, TNF-α, IL-8, and IP-10. Does not induce IL-10 secretion
PD-L1	Ligand of PD-1 (programmed cell death-1) receptor (also known as CD279) expressed on the surface of activated T-cells		PD-1 and PD-L1 belong to the family of immune checkpoint proteins that act as co-inhibitory factors, which can halt or limit the development of the T-cell response. PD-1/PD-L1 interaction ensures that the immune system is activated only at the appropriate time in order to minimize the possibility of chronic autoimmune inflammation
CD80	A type 1 transmembrane protein expressed mainly on APCs and members of the B7 co-signaling molecule family. It is constituted by two extracellular domains: a membrane distal variable-like domain (IgV) and a membrane proximal Ig constant-like domain (IgC) along with an intracellular domain	CTLA-4	CD80/CTLA-4 interaction has effect on the two major subsets of CD4+ T-cells: downmodulation of helper T-cell activity and enhancement of regulatory T-cells (Treg)

Table 10.1 (continued)

Marker	Structure/function	Ligand	Effect of activation
CLEC9A	The C-type lectin (CTL) 9A, also known as DC NK lectin group receptor-1 (DNGR-1), is a protein consisting of a single extracellular CTL domain connected to the transmembrane domain by a stalk region and an intracellular cytoplasmic tail with potential signaling motifs	Unknown	Recognizes necrotic cell-associated epitopes and plays an important role in cross-presentation of dead cell-derived antigens
CADM1	A protein that belongs to immunoglobulin superfamily; is a homophilic, transmembrane Ig domain-containing protein with intracellular PDZ protein-binding motifs. It is a ligand of class I-restricted T-cell-associated molecule (CRTAM)		Acts as a major receptor for the adhesion of mast cells (MCs) to fibroblasts, human airway smooth muscle cells (HASMCs), and neurons
BTLA	A type I transmembrane co-signaling receptor belonging to the CD28 Ig superfamily. BTLA binds to the TNFR family member herpes virus entry mediator (HVEM)		HVEM/BTLA interaction recruits the protein tyrosine phosphatases SHP-1 and SHP-2, thus inhibiting signaling cascade downstream of the TCR and BCR
CD2	A member of the immunoglobulin superfamily with two immunoglobulin-like domains in its extracellular portion; is a specific marker for T-cells and NK cells	CD58, CD48, CD59, and CD15	Its activation results in augmentation of factor tyrosine phosphorylation (as PLCγ1); increases specific signaling through the TCR; T-cell activation and release of cytokines and induction of apoptosis
CD5	A glycoprotein receptor expressed on the surface of all T-cells and at lower density on a minor population of murine and human B-cells	CD72	Ligation of CD5 modulates the TCR and BCR signaling pathway
CD81	A surface protein composed of four transmembrane (TM) and two extracellular (EC) domains; expressed on T- and B-cells, NK cells, monocytes, dendritic cells, thymocytes, endothelial cells, and fibroblasts	E2 envelope glycoprotein of HCV, bona fide HCV particles	Induces B-cell adhesion via VLA-4 integrin and is involved in early T-cell development. CD81/CD19 association regulates B-cell signaling; interactions with CD3 and ICAM-1 regulate the integrity of the immune synapse during T-cell activation. CD81 is involved in hepatitis C virus (HCV) and *Plasmodium* sporozoite invasion of hepatocytes and also contributes to the assembly and budding of human immunodeficiency virus and influenza A virus
AXL	A member of a receptor tyrosine kinase (RTK) family that shares a conserved intracellular tyrosine kinase domain and an extracellular domain similar to those seen in cell adhesion molecules	Gas6 (vitamin K-dependent protein growth-arrest-specific 6)	AXL/Gas6 interaction leads to PI3K activation and its downstream targets Akt and S6K, as well as NF-κB. Gas6/Axl signaling is involved in cell growth and survival in normal and cancer cell
SIGLEC	A type I transmembrane protein with N-terminal portion in the extracellular space and the C-terminal in the cytosol. Each SIGLEC contains an N-terminal V-type immunoglobulin domain (Ig domain) which acts as the binding receptor for sialic acid	Sialic acid	Cell adhesion and cell signaling

peripheral blood and bone marrow-derived pDCs [21]. BDCA-2 is a C-type lectin transmembrane glycoprotein which can internalize Ags for presenting to T-cells. Some data show that triggering BDCA-2 can potently inhibit in vitro induction of IFN-α/IFN-β expression in pDCs by viruses [38]. On the other hand, BDCA-4 does not have a substantial effect on pDC function, but can be used for the purification of pDCs by magnetic selection (Table 10.1). Recently, a previously unknown population of pDCs has been discovered in human blood, bone marrow, and tonsil, which are morphologically, phenotypically, and genetically distinct from most pDCs [39]. These cells express CD2, CD5, and CD81 on their surface and fail to produce type I IFN upon CpG oligonucleotide stimulation due to substantially less IRF7 mRNA expression. Higher levels of IRF5 than $CD5^{-}CD81^{-}$ pDCs induce transcription of proinflammatory cytokines, chemokines, and costimulatory molecules, as well as IFN-α/IFN-β, more abundant production of IL-6, and elevated expression of CD40, CD80, and CD86. The role of this subset of pDCs is to strongly activate B and T lymphocytes, playing an important role in the immune response in physiological conditions [39]. To date, recent findings have shown a new population named AS (AXL^{+} and $SIGLEC^{+}$) DCs characterized by the expression of *AXL*, *SIGLEC1*, and *SIGLEC6* antigens sharing properties with pDCs, but more potently activate T-cells. This finding suggests that pDCs, originally described as "natural" interferon-producing cells (IPCs), have lower capability to induce T-cell proliferation [40].

In addition, recent evidence has demonstrated that $CD9^{+}$ Siglec-H^{low} pDCs secrete IFN-α when stimulated with TLR agonists, induce CTLs, and promote protective antitumor immunity. By contrast, $CD9^{neg}$ Siglec-H^{high} pDCs secrete negligible amounts of IFN-α, induce $Foxp3^{+}$ $CD4^{+}$ T-cells, and fail to promote antitumor immunity [41]. Although newly formed pDCs in the bone marrow are $CD9^{+}$ and are capable of producing IFN-α after aggregating in peripheral tissues, they lose CD9 expression and the ability to produce IFN-α. Therefore, recognition of pDC surface markers is actually very important, not only to distinguish pDCs from mDCs and other myeloid cells but also to identify their function and to allow researchers to isolate them.

BDCA-2-DTR [42] and Siglec-H-DTR models [43] are the recently developed murine models used to study the role of pDCs in the pathogenesis of various diseases. These mouse models allow the study of pDCs in pathophysiological conditions through the depletion of pDCs by diphtheria toxin (DT) using the human diphtheria toxin receptor (DTR) that is driven by the BDCA-2 promoter, as the mouse receptor for DTR binds DT with a lower affinity. However, many studies have also been conducted by using specific depleting antibodies (Abs), such as 120G8 Ab [44], BST-2 Ab [45], and mPDCA-1 [46] in vivo. All these Abs bind to the same surface marker (BST-2 or CD317). Ab depletion models seem to be less specific than DTR models, but are still very efficient in pDC depletion, thus allowing the investigation of the role of pDCs during steady-state and pathological conditions. The limitation of Ab-mediated pDC depletion stands on the role of some molecules, such as BST-2, which is also expressed by stromal and other immune cells after an inflammatory stimulus [45].

10.4 Activation of pDCs

Plasmacytoid dendritic cells are highly specialized for sensing nucleic acids via the intracellular pattern recognition receptors, Toll-like receptors (TLR) 7 and TLR9 [19, 37]. pDCs and mDCs have a different repertoire of TLR expression [19, 21, 37]. Human and mouse mDCs can express TLR1, TLR2, TLR4, TLR5, TLR7, and TLR8, while pDCs selectively express high levels of TLR7 and TLR9 [47]. TLRs are a family of receptors associated with the innate immune response [48]. In particular, TLR7 recognizes single-stranded RNA enriched with guanosine or uridine from viruses, synthetic imidazoquinolines, and guanosine analogs [48]. On the other hand, TLR9 is activated by unmethylated CpG oligodeoxynucleotide (CpG-ODN) motifs typical of viruses and bacteria [48]. Interestingly,

the response of human pDCs is dependent upon the class of synthetic CpG-ODN used to stimulate them. Stimulation with CpG-A (D)/2216 ODN induces sustained high IFN-α production by pDCs, but minimal upregulation of cell surface maturation markers including CD80, CD86, and major histocompatibility complex class II (MHC-II) [49, 50]. CpG-A has no effect on B-cells (which also express TLR9). On the other hand, stimulation with CpG-B (K)/2006, a strong B-cell activator, results in increased expression of costimulatory and Ag-presenting molecules and higher IL-8 and TNF-α secretion, but lower levels of IFN-α production by pDCs. Two distinct pathways of IFN-α/IFN-β production have been identified regarding stimulation with CpG-A vs CpG-B [50]. pDCs constitutively express IRF7 and synthesize high levels of IFN-α in response to CpG-A, which also triggers an autocrine feedback loop involving the IFN receptor-dependent pathway [47]. In contrast, IFN-α/IFN-β induction by CpG-B is independent of the IFN-α/IFN-β receptor loop [50, 51]. Recently, CpG-C, a new class of CpG-ODN in which structural elements of CpG-A and CpG-B have been combined, has emerged. This sequence activates B-cells and induces IFN-α production by pDCs [52]. Furthermore, non-CpG-containing ODNs have been shown to bind human TLR9 [52, 53] and to stimulate pDCs [54].

TLR7 and TLR9 are very sensitive to different stimuli; the first triggers ssRNA viruses, and the latter responds to DNA viruses [55]. TLR7 and TLR9 activation recruits a cytoplasmic adaptor, myeloid differentiation primary response gene 88 (MyD88), which is able to assemble a multiprotein signal-transducing complex inducing interferon regulatory factor 7 (IRF7) activation [48]. MyD88 also leads to TRAF-6-mediated NF-κB and MAP-kinase (MAPK) activation, essential for the transcription of proinflammatory cytokines, chemokines, and costimulatory molecules [48, 56].

The exposure of pDCs to TLR7 or TLR9 ligands can lead to the production of type I IFN and proinflammatory cytokines, such as TNF-α, and chemokines, such as IL-8 (CXCL8) [1, 19, 21]. Constitutive expression of IRF7, which is different from mDCs in which induction is needed, renders pDCs high producers of type I IFN [1, 19, 21], regulating T-cell immunity and leading toward Th1 and cytotoxic T lymphocyte polarization and activation of mDCs, NK cells, and B-cells [1, 19, 21]. Remarkably, IFN-α modulates several aspects of the immune system, including pDC survival [57], mDC differentiation, modulation of Th1 and $CD8^+$ T-cell responses, cross-presentation, upregulation of MHC and costimulatory molecules, activation of NK cells, and induction of primary Ab responses [58]. However, a recent study found that type I IFN negatively controls pDC turnover, in that an overproduction of type I IFNs can lead to the death of pDCs during steady-state conditions and viral infections [55]. pDC activation can also lead to the production of IL-12p70, IL-1β, and IL-6 [59]. Furthermore, a recent discovery found that pDCs may mediate the release of IL-10 [29]; however, another group [60] showed that these cells do not directly produce IL-10 (Fig. 10.1).

Moreover, it has recently been demonstrated that pDCs produce high amounts of granzyme B [61], which is effective only in combination with perforins mainly produced by cytotoxic T lymphocytes (CTLs). This further connects pDCs to the adaptive immunity. Additionally, in the absence of an "efficient" adaptive CTL immunity, pDCs can behave as killing DCs due to the release of tumor necrosis factor-related apoptosis-inducing ligand (TRAIL) and the induction of DR5 expression, a TRAIL receptor, on the cell target [42, 61].

A diversity of C-type lectin receptors (CLRs) has been identified on DC subsets, including DC-SIGN (CD209), DEC-205 (CD205), langerin (CD207), mannose receptor (CD206), BDCA-2, and dectin-1. CLRs typically recognize carbohydrate-rich structures on microbes and self-antigens [38]. They have been implicated in cell adhesion and regulation of signaling events (e.g., BDCA-2), migration and homing (e.g., DC-SIGN), Ag uptake and processing for MHC-II presentation to T-cells (e.g., DC-SIGN, BDCA-2, langerin, and mannose receptor), cell-cell transmission of pathogens (e.g., DC-SIGN), and tolerance to self-antigens (e.g., DEC-205). pDCs express BDCA-2 and BDCA-4, dectin-1, and possibly DEC-205

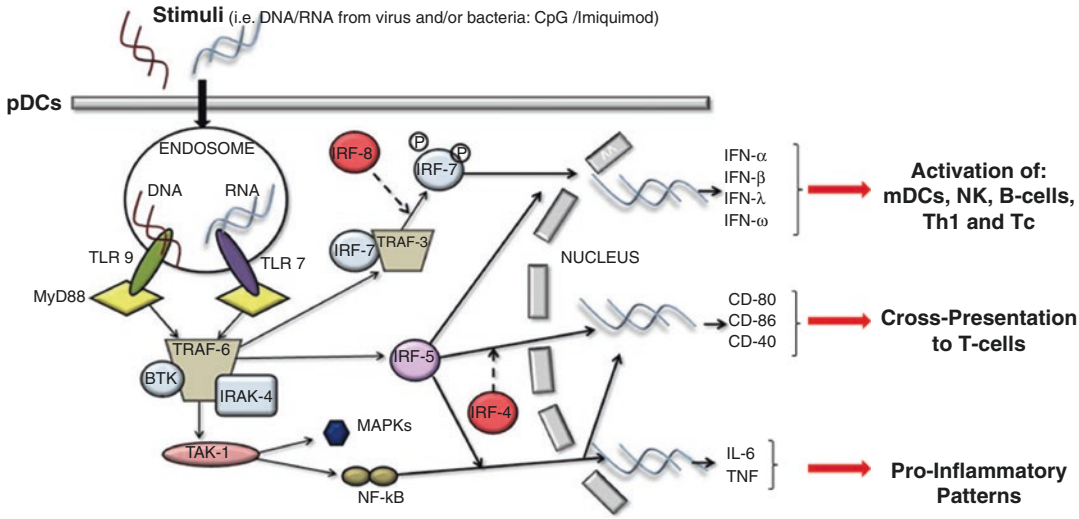


Fig. 10.1 The recognition of stimuli, such as DNA or RNA motifs from viruses and bacteria, by pDCs via TLR7 and/or TLR9, induces the activation of MyD88-dependent signaling pathways that lead to the expression of cytokines such as IL-6 and TNF-α, costimulatory molecules such as CD80, and the synthesis/release of type I IFN

but lack DC-SIGN and langerin, found on $CD34^+$ and monocyte-derived DCs and Langerhans cells (LCs), respectively [62]. The physiologic function of CLRs on pDCs remains unknown. Anti-BDCA-2 Abs are rapidly internalized and efficiently presented to T-cells, suggesting a role in Ag capture and presentation [38]. Interesting relationships between CLRs and TLRs have been documented. In mDCs, interaction of DC-SIGN with lipoarabinomannan secreted by mycobacteria inhibits lipopolysaccharide (LPS)-induced DC activation through TLR4 [63]. This mechanism may permit pathogens to evade immune responses and perpetuate tolerance to self-antigens in the face of TLR activation by microbes. On the other hand, it has been shown that dectin-1 collaborates with TLR2 in inducing proinflammatory cytokine secretion in murine macrophages and DCs [64]. Whether BDCA-2 has any connection to TLRs in pDCs remains to be elucidated. However, early reports have shown that secretion of type I IFNs by pDCs in response to the influenza virus (most likely triggering TLR7/TLR8) or to complexes of plasmid DNA and anti-DNA Abs (possibly stimulating both FcR and TLR9) is significantly inhibited by ligation of BDCA-2 with anti-BDCA-2 Ab [38]. It is worth noting that BDCA-2 is downregulated after pDCs' maturation and that mature pDCs secrete less IFN-α/IFN-β in response to viral stimuli than immature pDCs do [65, 66]. BDCA-2 has an intracellular domain of 21 amino acids without known motifs implicated in signal transduction; however, ligation induces Src family protein-tyrosine kinase-dependent intracellular calcium mobilization and protein-tyrosine phosphorylation of intracellular proteins [38]. BDCA-4 (neuropilin-1) is also upregulated in blood mDCs after overnight culture and may participate in DC-lymphocyte interactions [67].

Furthermore, a recent study shows that a microbial or cytokine stimulus can lead pDCs to multiple activated statuses, specialized in several innate and adaptive immune functions. In particular, Alculumbre et al. found that the stimulation of pDCs with influenza virus led to three stable pDC subpopulations: P1-pDCs ($PD\text{-}L1^+CD80^-$) which displayed a plasmacytoid morphology and were specialized for type I IFN production, P2-pDCs ($PD\text{-}L1^+CD80^+$) which displayed both innate and adaptive functions, and P3-pDCs ($PD\text{-}L1^-CD80^+$) which encountered a DC morphology and adaptive immune function in promoting T-cell activation and Th2 differentiation [68]. These results propose a new model of immune cell differentiation opening new possibilities for generating specialized cellular

populations through pharmacological manipulation. Moreover, these data further highlight that according to the environment they encounter, pDCs can behave differently and achieve differential immunological activity.

10.5 pDCs: Bridging the Gap Between Innate and Adaptive Immunity

The production of type I IFNs by pDCs represents the bridge between the innate and adaptive immune system. Type I IFN (IFN-α and IFN-β) is an important component of the innate immunity, especially during viral infections [19, 21]. In contrast to mDCs, pDCs produce high amounts of type I IFNs upon activation [19, 21], which both amplify their own production in an autocrine manner and induce the release of other proinflammatory cytokines such as IL-12p70 from mDCs and NK cells [69] (Fig. 10.2a). Activation of mDCs diverts the immune environment toward a Th1-like bias, during which IFN-γ production facilitates Th1 differentiation [19, 21, 69], long-term T-cell immunity [21, 69], and a CTL-mediated response [70], as well as proliferation and survival of T-cells [69, 70]. Moreover,

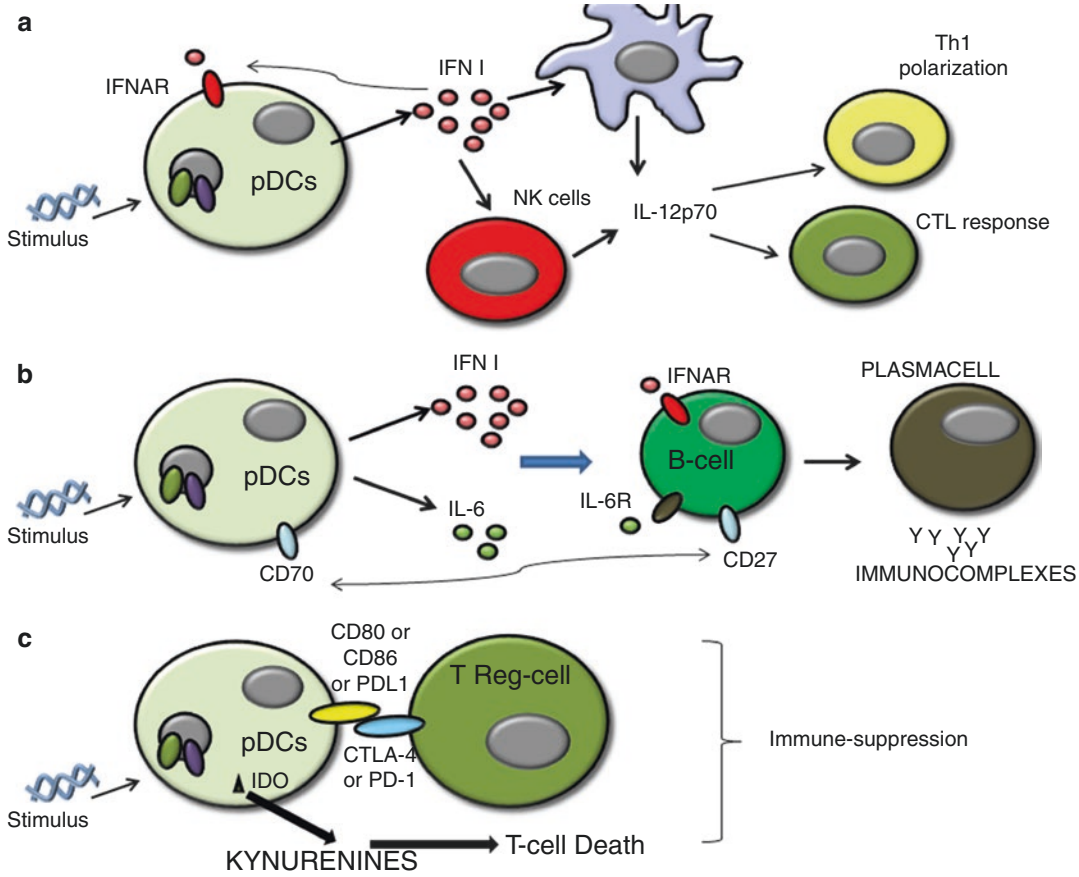


Fig. 10.2 (**a**) Activated pDCs produce high amounts of type I IFNs which both amplify their own production in an autocrine manner via the expression of IFNAR on themselves and induce the release of other proinflammatory cytokines such as IL-12p70 from mDCs and NK cells that lead to Th1 and CTL polarization; (**b**) pDCs induce B-cells to differentiate into plasma cells via the activation of IFNAR and IL-6R and the interaction of CD70-CD27 on B-cells; (**c**) pDCs can lead to immunosuppression via both direct interaction with Treg (CD80 or $CD86^{+}$CTLA-4 or $PD\text{-}L1^{+}$PD-1) and the release of IDO-induced kynurenine metabolites which induce Th1 cell death

through the production of IL-6 and type I IFNs, pDCs induce B-cells to differentiate into plasma cells which are immunoglobulin-producing cells (preferentially IgG and IgM) (Fig. 10.2b). In the process of B-cell activation, a key role is played by the CD70 receptor expressed on pDCs, as it can induce the differentiation and proliferation of IgG-producing B-cells [71] (Fig. 10.2b).

In addition, activated pDCs can undergo other important phenotypic changes that induce them to change their phenotype toward an mDC phenotype [1]. The upregulation of MHC and T-cell costimulatory molecules enables pDCs to engage and activate naïve T-cells [72–74]. There have been many controversies regarding the role of pDCs to prime T-cells and cross-present Ags [74]. The expression of MHC and T-cell costimulatory molecules is not as high as in mDCs, and that is why pDCs are less efficient than mDCs at priming T-cells [75]. Moreover, the repertoire of Ags that can be presented by pDC-derived MHC molecules is more restricted than that of mDCs, since not all of these Ags reach the endocytic compartment inside pDCs [74, 75]. However, some pDC receptors such as BDCA-2, Siglec-H, and DCIR are able to bind Ags, mediate endocytosis, and process and present to T-cells [74, 75].

Interestingly, activated pDCs can also promote Th2-like immune responses [69] underlining their functional plasticity. There is evidence that IFN-α stimulates the differentiation of pDCs into Th1-polarizing pDCs, whereas in the absence of IFN-α (but only in the presence of proinflammatory signals), pDCs can also stimulate Th2 polarization/differentiation [76]. Moreover, some authors reported that CpG-activated pDCs exert a strong immunosuppression and induce the differentiation of allogeneic $CD4^+CD25^+$ T-cells into $CD4^+CD25^+$ regulatory T-cells in tumor conditions [55, 60]. Interestingly, pDCs can directly or indirectly recruit Treg cells via the PD-L1/PD-1 axis [77] (Fig. 10.2c), the release of immunosuppressive cytokines, such as IL-10 [60, 77], and the membrane tolerogenic inducible costimulator ligand (ICOS-L) [8].

pDCs can also synthesize large amounts of functional IDO, which requires autocrine release of type I IFN, upon TLR9 and CD200R ligands' stimulation [19]. IDO-derived metabolites promote T-cell death [60, 78] and suppress T-cell immunity in normal and pathological settings. In the same manner, reduced tryptophan amounts can lead to the release of regulatory cytokines, such as IL-10 [79], associated with a tolerogenic environment.

In this scenario, it was recently reported that pDCs could have inflammatory activities eluding T-cell-dependent immune response. The accumulation of pDCs in the intestinal lamina propria amplified the intestinal inflammation by recruiting inflammatory monocytes/macrophages and cDCs into the inflamed colon, leading to the initiation and exacerbation of a T-cell-independent acute colitis [80].

Taken together as a whole, these data suggest that pDCs are a key effector cell in both innate and adaptive immunity regulation [1].

10.6 pDCs and Human Diseases

A wide spectrum of human diseases such as infection, autoimmunity, and cancer are associated with the accumulation of pDCs in lymphoid and peripheral tissues and had a strict correlation with the reduction of these cells in the peripheral blood [24]. For many of these diseases, compelling evidence supports a pathogenic role of pDCs, mainly related to either the increase or reduction of proinflammatory or anti-inflammatory functions of pDCs. Alternatively, pDC accumulation might exert an adjuvant immune function, as in viral infection and in imiquimod-treated cancers, where they seem to encounter an antiviral and antitumor activity. In many other pathologies, available information is still limited, and pDC biology is largely unknown.

10.6.1 Role of pDCs in Human Infections

pDCs have been most extensively studied during HIV and chronic viral hepatitis, particularly hepatitis C virus (HCV) infections. The emerging picture suggests an important role for pDCs in

these infections; however, the exact mechanism and consequences of pDC activity are controversial at present [81]. pDCs can respond to HCV and particularly to HCV-infected hepatocytes which induce pDCs to signal via an endocytosis- and IRF7-dependent mechanism, but not via the NF-κB pathway, implying a non-full functional response of pDCs that contribute to the evasion of immune responses by HCV [82]. In contrast, other studies demonstrated normal pDC functionality in chronic HCV infection [83]. The resolution of this controversy would establish pDCs either as a weak link of anti-HCV immune response or as a potentially powerful effector type that can be harnessed for immunotherapy of chronic HCV.

Similarly, pDC dichotomy is observed in HIV infection, in which some authors assume that pDCs can be infected with HIV and/or respond to it with robust IFN secretion [84], while others reported impaired activity of pDCs in HIV-infected patients [85, 86]. Interestingly, pDCs are progressively depleted from the blood of infected patients, either through infection-induced death or due to redistribution to lymphoid organs. The key unresolved question is whether HIV-induced pDC activation is beneficial or harmful for the host. On one hand, IFN secretion by pDCs was shown to inhibit viral replication in T-cells and promote pDC and cDC maturation, leading to the killing of infected T-cells. In this context, it is likely that HIV may have evolved mechanisms to suppress pDC activation, e.g., through BDCA-2 ligation [87], which disables pDC functions as APCs and type I IFN-producing cells. On the other hand, the same functions of pDCs may exacerbate T-cell depletion, e.g., by disseminating HIV to uninfected $CD4^+$ T-cells or by bystander T-cell killing. Most importantly, elevated IFN response by pDCs may contribute to chronic immune activation and faster T-cell depletion [88]. It is plausible that the function of pDCs in HIV infection changes from protective to pathogenic as the disease progresses. In the early stages of infection, IFN production and virus cross-presentation by pDCs may help limit virus spread and mount cytotoxic T lymphocyte responses, whereas as virus replication escapes control, IFN secretion may drive polyclonal T-cell hyperactivation and depletion [83]. The eventual loss, redistribution, or functional impairment of pDCs in the late stages of infection would contribute to immunodeficiency.

A recent study identified T-cell immunoglobulin (Ig) and mucin domain-containing molecule-3 (Tim-3) as a novel biomarker of pDC dysfunction in HIV infection. Tim-3 was upregulated on pDCs during HIV infection, a sign of pDC abnormalities, even after combined anti-retroviral therapy (cART). The frequency of Tim-3-expressing pDCs inversely correlated with $CD4^+$ T-cell counts and positively with HIV viral loads and disease progression, implying a favorable role of pDCs for HIV-related disease probably due to the lower expression of IRF7 [89]. In contrast, a lower frequency of Tim-3 on pDCs led to higher levels of IFN-α and TNF-α in response to imiquimod and Sendai virus, TLR7 agonists, and to CpG, a TLR9 agonist. Furthermore, intracellular Tim-3 colocalized with p85 and IRF7 within LAMP1+ lysosomes, suggestive of a role in degradation. Thus, the role of pDCs in HIV and HCV infections highlights the power and danger of pDC activation and reveals another strategy of immune system subversion by these viruses.

Another aspect to take into consideration is the antifungal activity of pDCs. Indeed, pDCs express receptors involved in fungal recognition, such as CTL receptors including dectin-1, dectin-2, dectin-3, and mannose receptor and TLR9 that are deputed to recognize, signal, and respond to a wide variety of fungal pathogens, including *Aspergillus fumigatus, Cryptococcus neoformans, Candida albicans*, and *Pneumocystis jirovecii* [90]. The cellular responses of pDCs to fungal recognition are still under investigation, but recent studies found that human pDCs directly inhibited the growth of *A. fumigatus* hyphae and were able to produce IFN-α and TNF-α in response to in vitro hyphal stimulation [91]. The depletion of pDCs in mice subjected to *A. fumigatus* infection led to decreased survival rate, implying a role for pDCs in the antifungal immune response. However, further studies are needed to better understand and clarify the response of pDCs against fungi.

10.6.2 Role of pDCs in Autoimmune Diseases

Several autoimmune diseases are associated with elevated levels of type I IFNs, implying a potential role for pDCs in cytokine production [92]. To date, the strongest evidence for pDC involvement has been accumulated from the study of two diseases: psoriasis and systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE) [93]. In psoriasis, early skin lesions are highly infiltrated by activated pDCs, corresponding with decreased numbers of circulating pDCs [94]. Blocking IFN production by pDCs using anti-BDCA-2 Ab inhibited the development of skin lesions in a xenograft mouse model, providing causal proof of pDC function in the disease [94]. Gilliet's group [95] identified the activating stimulus for pDCs as complexes of self-DNA with the antimicrobial peptide LL-37. This and possibly other homologous proteins promote the aggregation of released cellular DNA and RNA into large complexes that efficiently activate pDCs [95, 96]. Although the origin of these immunostimulatory complexes and the consequences of pDC activation remain to be elucidated, the major role of pDCs in psoriasis is well established. Interestingly, recently a role for pDCs has been described in "paradoxical psoriasis," a condition characterized by inflammatory skin lesions observed in 2–5% of patients receiving anti-TNF therapy. Anti-TNFs directly prolong the ability of pDCs to produce type I IFN. The resulting overexpression of type I IFNs is sufficient to drive the development of the psoriatic skin phenotype. Unlike classical psoriasis, which is a T-cell-mediated autoimmune disease, development of "paradoxical psoriasis" is independent of T-cells, and it is likely that it is due to a pDC-driven innate immune response [97].

Similarly to psoriasis, lupus patients show a decrease in circulating pDCs and the accumulation of activated, IFN-producing pDCs in affected tissues such as the skin [98]. The hallmark of lupus is the production of antinuclear Abs and immune complexes of such Abs with endogenous nucleic acids, which were shown to activate pDCs through TLR7/TLR9 [99, 100]. These complexes may be delivered into the endosomal compartment of pDCs via Fc receptor II (FcγRII) [99, 101], and their stimulatory capacity can be augmented by the nuclear DNA-binding protein HMGB1 [102]. In addition, self-DNA forms complexes with LL-37 and other antimicrobial peptides released by neutrophils, and the resulting complexes induce IFN secretion in pDCs through TLR9 [102]. Notably, TLR-activated pDCs become resistant to glucocorticoids, which could underlie the limited efficacy of these drugs in lupus [103, 104]. The direct causal relationship between pDC-derived IFN and lupus progression/severity is hard to establish in the human system and should await elucidation in animal models.

An important study carried on lupus-prone BXSB.DTR mice showed that pDCs control the early threshold activation of adaptive immune cells accelerating lupus progression. In this mouse model, the depletion of pDCs led to reduced autoimmunity, in that lower autoantibody production and less severe glomerulonephritis were found during the early stage of the disease, implying not only the crucial role of pDCs in this autoimmune disease but also that even a transient depletion of these cells was able/sufficient to ameliorate disease symptoms [105].

Nevertheless, the likely connection between the formation of nucleic acid-containing immune complexes, pDC activation, and IFN secretion and the pronounced IFN signature of the disease makes a strong case for pDC as a major player in lupus pathogenesis [83]. Overall, the aberrant conversion of self-nucleic acids into ligands for TLR7/TLR9 on pDCs (via immune complex formation, antimicrobial peptide binding, and other mechanisms to be discovered) may represent a common pathogenesis step in psoriasis, lupus, and possibly other autoimmune diseases such as Sjögren's syndrome [106].

The activity of pDCs in viral and autoimmune diseases may teach us how and why pDCs highly populate cancerous masses, playing a pivotal role for the tumor immune microenvironment.

10.6.3 Role of pDCs in Cancer

Recent studies have shown that the density and location of immune cells in primary tumors can predict patient survival [107], supporting the notion that monitoring local immune responses may represent a critical step in predicting patient prognosis and likely response to antitumor strategies [108]. pDCs have been found in a variety of neoplasms; nonetheless their function is still unknown. Solid tumors, such as head and neck, breast, ovarian, lung, and skin, are populated by non-active pDCs [108]. Clinical studies have suggested a direct correlation between reduced numbers of circulating pDCs and higher presence of these cells in malignant masses [1, 108]. Although the causal relationship is still under investigation, recent results from mouse models are starting to define the specific role(s) of pDCs in tumor masses. The mechanism that induces the recruitment of pDCs to the tumor site is not clear. Circulating pDCs express multiple chemotactic receptors such as CXCR4 and ChemR23, being the only biological active receptors in healthy donors [31]. CXCR4 binds CXCL12, widely expressed in tissues and which most likely represents the main axis for pDC accumulation in human tumors [28]. CXCL9, CXCL10, and CXCL11, which bind CXCR3, present on pDCs, are all IFN-inducible proteins and might be involved in pDC infiltration [109]. In addition, cytokines, such as CXCL10 and CXCL12, and chemokines, such as CCL2, are released by tumor and stromal tumor-associated cells, such as cancer-associated fibroblasts (CAFs), allowing pDCs to migrate from the circulation to the injured tissue [26]. Accordingly, Drobits et al. demonstrated that CCL2 produced in the inflamed skin of tumor-bearing mice facilitated pDC recruitment [61].

Once recruited, pDCs seem to be important players in cancer immunoediting due to their capacity to bring together the innate and the adaptive immunity. In particular, it seems that a critical role is played by type I IFNs. Endogenously produced IFN-α/IFN-β was required for the prevention of the growth of primary carcinogen-induced sarcoma [110]. In this study, host hematopoietic cells were critical targets of IFN-α/IFN-β during the development of protective antitumor responses [110]. pDCs have been widely described as professional type I IFN-producing cells; therefore, the higher presence of pDCs in the tumor mass might directly link pDCs to cancer immunoediting in that pDCs may behave as antitumor cells. However, other reports showed opposite activities of pDCs in cancer. Animal studies demonstrated that tumor-associated pDCs (TApDCs) are defective in type I IFN production but instead secrete immunosuppressive factors responsible for tumor progression [111, 112]. In support, we found that lung tumor masses are highly populated by pDCs [113, 114]. We found that tumor masses presented a higher percentage of pDCs than healthy tissues. In particular, pDCs were in their immunosuppressive phenotype, as determined by higher levels of CD33 and PD-L1. Despite higher HLA-A and HLA-D expression, cancerous pDCs did not exert cytotoxic activity against tumor cells but instead promoted their proliferation. In this scenario, cancerous pDCs were able to produce high levels of IL-1α, which was strictly correlated to the activation of the inflammasome absent in melanoma 2 (AIM2), which led to higher cytoplasmic calcium release responsible for calpain activation. The blockade of type I interferon receptors and of AIM2 via the addition of LL-37 significantly reduced the release of IL-1α. Our data demonstrated for the first time that lung tumor-associated pDCs are responsive to the activation of AIM2 inflammasome, facilitating tumor cell proliferation in the lung.

It is clear that similar to viral infections and autoimmune diseases, the dichotomy of pDCs in cancer might underlie their phenotype and maturation state and might teach us how to provide personalized therapy for patients.

10.6.3.1 Antitumor Activity of pDCs

Type I IFNs are pleiotropic cytokines with a demonstrated clinical benefit to cancer patients and have recently emerged as the connection bridge between tumor cells and the immune system

[115]. pDCs produce large amounts of type I IFNs upon TLR7 and TLR9 stimulation. Drobits et al. showed that the intratumoral stimulation of pDCs with imiquimod renders these cells cytotoxic and contributes to tumor regression independently from conventional adaptive immune mechanisms, via the production of TRAIL and granzyme B secretion by pDCs via IFNAR1 signaling [61]. A recent study showed that activated pDCs can kill HER2-/Neu-positive breast cancer cells, obtained from BALB/c mice, through the release of TRAIL and granzyme B, which are known to activate NK and $CD8^+$ T-cells. In this study the authors showed that CpG activates the TLR9 signaling pathway and inhibits tumor growth in breast cancer mouse models [116].

However, the role of TApDC-derived granzyme B in the absence of perforins not produced by pDCs still remains to be elucidated.

Another mechanism that may underlie the antitumor activity of TApDCs is their antigen-presenting activity. Although in their immature state, TApDCs are still capable to internalize Ags in vivo and to activate $CD4^+$ T-cells [117]. The immature state of pDCs is reflected in that they have altered cytokine production in response to TLR9 ligands in vitro while preserving unaltered response to TLR7 ligands [118], which instead seem to have potential antitumor activity. To date, imiquimod is in phase III clinical trial against melanoma. In contrast to these results, systemic administration of CpG favored pDC-induced lung tumor progression [119], as also observed in a mouse model of breast cancer [118]. Similar to the data shown by Drobits et al., Le Mercier et al. proved that, although CpG did not alter TApDC activity, the intratumoral administration of a TLR7 ligand led to TApDC activation and displayed a potent curative effect in a type I IFN-dependent manner [61, 118], which seems to underlie the subsequent inhibition of tumor metastasis [120]. In addition, Liu et al. [121] demonstrated that the intratumoral activation of pDCs via CpG could induce NK cell-dependent tumor regression in a melanoma animal model. It is remarkable that TLR9 expression and responsiveness is impaired by tumor-derived components [122]. Similarly, in vitro differentiated pDCs exhibit an increased capacity to induce NK cells to kill acute lymphoblastic leukemia cells due to the production of higher amounts of IFN-λ2, known to play a critical role in the induction of antitumoral NK cells [123].

ILT7 on pDCs binds BST-2 expressed by tumor cells, and their interaction inhibits type I IFN production by pDCs, disabling TLR9-dependent signaling pathways [124]. Moreover, tumor-derived TGF-β and TNF-α have been identified as the main in vivo mechanisms blocking type I IFN production by pDC in tumors through inhibition of the IRF7 signaling complex, leading to a negative impact of defective pDCs in breast cancer through Treg expansion [125].

Taken together, these data supported the rationale to use TLR7 ligands to restore TApDC activation in both breast and skin cancer. However, it still remains to be determined how the activation of TLR7 and TLR9, which are MyD88-dependent, on pDCs, can differ based on tissue specificity and on the route of administration.

10.6.3.2 Pro-tumor Activity of pDCs

Several evidences have shown the prevailing immunosuppressive activity of pDCs due to both the impairment in type I IFN production and the release of pro-tumor factors [1]. Stimulation of lung tumor-bearing mice with systemic CpG, a TLR9 ligand, did not lead to the same results as observed by Liu et al. [121]. Activation of pDCs through CpG had the opposite effect in that pDC activation increased the recruitment of Tregs and limited the inflammatory cell influx to the lung, thereby establishing an immunosuppressive environment enabling tumor growth [1, 119, 125]. The same was observed in another mouse model of breast cancer in which in vivo depletion of pDCs delayed tumor growth showing that TApDC provides an immune-subversive environment, most likely through Treg activation, thus favoring breast tumor progression [126]. The discrepancy in these data and the one from Liu et al. [121] could be a result of tissue specificity and route of CpG administration which is very important in determining the tumor microenvironment, which in turn strongly influences immune cell phenotype. Moreover, in the absence of a spe-

cific stimulus, pDCs in the tumor mass have been associated with the development and maintenance of the immunosuppressive microenvironment [127]. Similar to mice, human pDCs in tumor masses are in their immature phenotype; nonetheless, a thorough study has never been conducted on the role of these cells in human tumor microenvironment. Nevertheless, it is clear that pDCs play a fundamental role in the tumor microenvironment. The specific depletion of pDCs induced lung tumor regression with a concomitant Th1 polarization that arrested tumor progression [119]. On the other hand, stimulation of TLR7, rather than TLR9, can subvert the immunosuppressive activity of TApDCs. TLR7-dependent pathway induced melanoma regression in mice [61] through the transformation of pDCs into tumor-killing cells able to produce granzyme B and TRAIL. Likewise, another group revealed that human pDCs can kill melanoma cells in vitro under imiquimod and IFN-α stimulation [128]. While pDCs can produce high levels of granzyme B, their role as cytotoxic immune cells remains to be determined as they lack the pore-forming perforin [128]. On the other hand, it has been proposed that under IL-3 and IL-10 exposure, pDCs release abundant granzyme B, which in turn is capable of blocking T-cell proliferation, thus suggesting a new potential mechanism for tumor-immune evasion [128]. Moreover, recent studies have demonstrated that peripheral pDCs from patients with hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC) exposed to tumor-derived factors would enhance IL-10 production by $CD4^+$ Tregs, through upregulation of ICOSL, favoring tumor cells to escape the immune system [129].

Several mechanisms have been postulated for the immunosuppressive nature of tumor-associated pDCs: (1) release of tolerogenic factors, (2) ILT-7 expression, (3) PD-L1 expression, (4) Siglec-H activity, and (5) induction of a Th2-like environment. Tolerogenic factors produced by tumor cells, such as PGE2 [130] and TGF-β [125], can alter type I IFN signaling pathway. Tumor-derived PGE2 and TGF-β act synergistically to block IFN-α and TNF-α secretion by pDCs [19, 125]. Opposite to IFN-α and TNF-α, IL-6 and IL-8 production are enhanced in PGE2- and TGF-β-treated pDCs [131]. Both IL-6 and IL-8 promote immune cell survival and chemotaxis but also enhance tumor cell proliferation and angiogenesis [132, 133]. Moreover, PGE2 is crucial for the secretion of other immunomodulatory factors such as SDF-1, the ligand for CXCR4, which is upregulated on both human pDCs and tumor environment [134]. Thus, pDCs can be retained in the tumor tissue via PGE2-induced sensitization for SDF-1 [32]. In further support, PGE2- and TGF-β-mediated retention of pDCs in the tumor tissue is accompanied by the suppression of the lymph node-homing receptor, CCR7 [130]. PGE2-exposed pDCs are unlikely to present Ags and to prime T-cells in the regional LNs. Concomitantly, suppression of CD40 expression and the overexpression of CD80/CD86 on pDCs enhance and even promote Treg activation via the negative regulatory receptor cytotoxic T lymphocyte antigen-4 (CTLA-4) [135, 136] (Fig. 10.2c).

Another potential mechanism for pDCs favoring tumor immune escape is the release of IDO-derived metabolites [136] from both pDCs (Fig. 10.2c) and tumor cells, inducing Treg differentiation and Th1 cell apoptosis [60, 79]. Most human tumors overexpress IDO [137], explaining the elevated tryptophan catabolism in cancer patients. Interestingly, the activation of IDO in either cancerous cells or regulatory DCs can be sufficient to promote tumor immune escape [138]. Some cancer cells, such as lung cancer-derived cells, highly express ILT7L, which can bind to the ILT7 that is on pDCs [139]. ILT7L is induced by IFN-γ and inhibits IFN-α production by human pDCs, indicating that the ILT7L-ILT7 interaction between cancer cells and pDCs may cause impairment of pDCs in the tumor microenvironment, possibly leading to immunosuppression and poor prognosis of cancer patients as observed in preclinical studies [136]. Moreover, under tumoral conditions, pDCs can also direct mDC phenotype toward a more immature state, as already reported for human lung cancer [19, 76, 119]. However, the underlying mechanism is still not defined.

To date, pDCs can directly interact with Treg via the PD-1/PD-L1 axis [60] (Fig. 10.2c), paving the road to another mechanism of action

of the newly approved monoclonal Ab, anti-PD-1 for cancer immunotherapy. In addition, IDO inhibitors have been added to the actual immune checkpoint inhibitors (ICI) [140]. IDO and PD-L1 are highly expressed by pDCs, and the current success of the ICIs allows us to suppose that the putative inhibition of PD-L1/IDO signaling from pDCs underlies the multifaceted mechanisms of the therapeutical successes of ICIs in melanoma, prostate, and breast cancer (NCT01560923; NCT01042535-phase II part).

Moreover, Ag targeting to pDCs via Siglec-H inhibits Th1 cell-dependent immunity [117]. The administration of CpG increased Siglec-H expression on pDCs recruited to the lung of tumor-bearing mice, further supporting their implication in the inhibition of Th1 cell expansion [119].

pDCs activated by IL-3 and CD40 ligand (CD40L) promote the differentiation of naïve $CD4^+$ and $CD8^+$ T-cells into Th2 cells and anergic IL-10-producing $CD8^+$ regulatory T-cells, respectively [141]. This state of anergy is mediated by IL-10, either directly (by interaction with cytotoxic T lymphocytes, CTLs) or indirectly (by inhibition of DCs) [131]. Since the tumor microenvironment is Th2-like, pDCs participate in this scenario by further augmenting immunosuppression.

Another important result is demonstrated in our study published on human lung cancer samples. The higher presence of pDCs in the tumor masses was associated with AIM2 and IL-1α production, implying that the therapeutic modulation of AIM2 activity in TApDC in the tumor site might prove to be novel and effective to limit tumor cell proliferation in lung cancer, which represents a big killer [113].

Overall, these effects may allow pDCs to establish a reduced inflammatory pattern but, at the same time, to favor tumor progression/establishment, as observed in asthma [142], virus infection [143], and cigarette smoke exposure [76]. To note, the aforementioned studies describe the role of pDCs which are not activated by a specific stimulus; then, it seems obvious that the activation of pDCs at the tumor site is a limiting step in tumor regression. Therefore, the dichotomy of pDCs in cancer may rely on the stimulation/activation of pDCs with specific stimuli as in the case of imiquimod.

10.7 Potential Therapies: Clinical Significance

Secreted factors by tumor cells, such as TGF-β, VEGF, and IL-10, may inhibit pDC functions, with the resulting suppressive immune response dictated by the same pDCs and adaptive immune cells. On the contrary, other studies reported tumor-infiltrating pDCs as functional and fully competent APCs. Production of IFN-α renders TApDCs as antitumor cells. In this context, the activation of intratumoral pDCs by means of imiquimod (TLR7 ligand) and/or CpG (TLR9 ligand) has been successfully used in the clinic to treat basal cell carcinoma and melanoma [1]. TLR signaling on pDCs can be used to induce type I IFNs and possibly protect pDCs from tumor-derived inhibitory factors (such as TGF-β and IL-10), as well as to support T-cell-mediated antitumor immune response. However, this practice can only refer to the activation of TApDCs in loco, as mouse models showed that systemic administration of CpG rendered pDCs immunosuppressive, favoring lung and breast tumor progression [1, 112, 119, 125, 126].

Many therapeutic trials have been designed to potentiate CTL responses. Myeloid-derived dendritic cell-based vaccines succeeded in inducing specific T-cells in patients, but without sufficient clinical efficacy [144]. A potential explanation of this failure may underlie the role of pDCs in modulating tumor immune-environment and, more specifically, mDC activity [119]. Animal studies on several diseases, such as asthma, virus infection, and cigarette-exposed and lung cancer models, revealed that pDCs can hamper the activity of mDCs [119]. In particular, the presence of high levels of pDCs in tumor masses was associated with immature mDCs incapable of mounting an effective adaptive immune response against cancer. Specific ablation of pDCs rendered mDCs active and prone to induction of a CTL response against tumor cell proliferation [119]. Therefore,

we speculate that pharmacological manipulation of pDC phenotype could result in successful antitumor therapy together with conventional strategies. In support, our published data showed that doxorubicin or oxaliplatin—drugs that are highly used in the clinical antitumor practice—had a much effective activity against lung tumor progression due to the induction of proinflammatory pDCs, activated by tumor cell death [114]. This latter study was conducted on mouse models. Therefore, clinical correspondence could prove the potential antitumor activity of proinflammatory pDCs resulting in tumor regression. In addition, previous studies on the role of pDCs as antitumor cells only after intratumoral activation of these cells by means of imiquimod and CpG could underlie the same mechanism of action. In other words, several endogenous molecules (DAMPs) that participate in sterile inflammation have been described as potential TLR ligands. Similarly, we could speculate that tumor cell death can induce the release of DAMPs which activate pDCs in a TLR7- or TLR9-dependent manner leading to type I IFN production by pDCs. This prevails and allows the gap between the innate and the adaptive immunity to overcome tumor-mediated immunosuppression. In this scenario, Aspord et al. demonstrated that stimulation of PBMCs from HLA-A∗0201^{+} donors by HLA-A∗0201 matched allogeneic pDCs pulsed with tumor-derived peptides triggered high levels of antigen-specific and functional cytotoxic T lymphocyte responses; this resulted in melanoma regression in a humanized mouse model [145]. This semi-allogeneic pDC vaccine was more effective than conventional mDC-based vaccines, endowing a strong potential for clinical application in cancer treatment [145].

10.8 Concluding Remarks

In the last decade, several studies have provided evidence that pDCs actively participate in a wide spectrum of human diseases including infection, autoimmunity, and cancer. In particular, human neoplasms are populated by pDCs, whose presence is related to a poor prognosis. However, the role of tumor-associated pDCs (TApDCs) remains controversial. Various studies indicate that pDCs play an immunosuppressive role and facilitate tumor progression in both animal models and humans. In contrast, others found that the presence of activated pDCs results in tumor regression in mice. Given these findings, it is clear that pDC function plays a critical role in tumor biology. However, due to the great therapeutical success of anti-PD-1/PD-L1 inhibitors in melanoma, breast, and lung cancer, it is likely that the interference with pDC activity in the tumor microenvironment could be targeted in a more specific manner with a better clinical outcome. Nevertheless, pDC biology in cancer still needs further elucidation, especially to understand the controversial data in the literature.

We believe that understanding pDC biology represents an important necessity and will pave the road to novel therapeutic strategies to fight malignancies.

References

1. Pinto A, Rega A, Crother TR, Sorrentino R. Plasmacytoid dendritic cells and their therapeutic activity in cancer. Oncoimmunology. 2012;1(5):726–34. https://doi.org/10.4161/onci.20171.
2. Muller-Hermelink HK, Stein H, Steinmann G, Lennert K. Malignant lymphoma of plasmacytoid T-cells. Morphologic and immunologic studies characterizing a special type of T-cell. Am J Surg Pathol. 1983;7(8):849–62.
3. Facchetti F, De Wolf-Peeters C, van den Oord JJ, De Vos R, Desmet VJ. Plasmacytoid T-cells. A cell population normally present in the reactive lymph node. An immunohistochemical and electron microscopic study. Hum Pathol. 1988;19(9):1085–92.
4. Beiske K, Langholm R, Godal T, Marton PF. T-zone lymphoma with predominance of "plasmacytoid T-cells" associated with myelomonocytic leukaemia-a distinct clinicopathological entity. J Pathol. 1986;150(4):247–55. https://doi.org/10.1002/path.1711500404.
5. Sozzani S, Vermi W, Del Prete A, Facchetti F. Trafficking properties of plasmacytoid dendritic cells in health and disease. Trends Immunol. 2010;31(7):270–7. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.it.2010.05.004.
6. Colonna M, Trinchieri G, Liu YJ. Plasmacytoid dendritic cells in immunity. Nat Immunol. 2004;5(12):1219–26. https://doi.org/10.1038/ni1141.
7. Collin M, Bigley V. Human dendritic cell subsets: an update. Immunology. 2018;154(1):3–20. https://doi.org/10.1111/imm.12888. Review.

8. Sorrentino R, Gray P, Chen S, Shimada K, Crother TR, Arditi M. Plasmacytoid dendritic cells prevent cigarette smoke and chlamydophila pneumoniae-induced Th2 inflammatory responses. Am J Respir Cell Mol Biol. 2010;43(4):422–31. https://doi.org/10.1165/rcmb.2009-0224OC.
9. McKenna K, Beignon AS, Bhardwaj N. Source. Plasmacytoid dendritic cells: linking innate and adaptive immunity. J Virol. 2005;79(1):17–27. https://doi.org/10.1128/JVI.79.1.17-27.2005.
10. Lui G, Manches O, Angel J, Molens JP, Chaperot L, Plumas J. Plasmacytoid dendritic cells capture and cross-present viral antigens from influenza-virus exposed cells. PLoS One. 2009;4(9):e7111. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0007111.
11. Basner-Tschakarjan E, Gaffal E, O'Keeffe M, Tormo D, Limmer A, Wagner H, et al. Adenovirus efficiently transduces plasmacytoid dendritic cells resulting in TLR9-dependent maturation and IFN-alpha production. J Gene Med. 2006;8(11):1300–6. https://doi.org/10.1002/jgm.964.
12. Lennert K, Remmele W. Karyometrische Untersuchungen an Lymphkotenzellen des Menschen. I. Mitteilung. Germinoblasten. Lymphoblasten and lymphocyten. Acta Haematol. 1958;19:99–113. https://doi.org/10.1159/000205419.
13. Facchetti F, De Wolf-Peeters C, Mason DY, Pulford K, van den Oord JJ, Desmet VJ. Plasmacytoid T-cells. Immunohistochemical evidence for their monocyte/macrophage origin. Am J Pathol. 1988;133(1):15–21.
14. Eckert F, Schmid U. Identification of plasmacytoid T-cells in lymphoid hyperplasia of the skin. Arch Dermatol. 1989;125(11):1518–24.
15. Toonstra J, van der Putte SC. Plasmacytoid monocytes in Jessner's lymphocytic infiltration of the skin. A valuable clue for the diagnosis. Am J Dermatopathol. 1991;13(4):321–8.
16. Maraskovsky E, Daro E, Roux E, Teepe M, Maliszewski CR, Hoek J, et al. In vivo generation of human dendritic cell subsets by Flt3 ligand. Blood. 2000;96:878–84.
17. Cisse B, Caton ML, Lehner M, Maeda T, Scheu S, Locksley R, et al. Transcription factor E2-2 is an essential and specific regulator of plasmacytoid dendritic cell development. Cell. 2008;135(1):37–48. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.cell.2008.09.016.
18. Swiecki M, Colonna M. Accumulation of plasmacytoid DC: roles in disease pathogenesis and targets for immunotherapy. Eur J Immunol. 2010;40(8):2094–8. https://doi.org/10.1002/eji.201040602.
19. Sorrentino R, Morello S, Pinto A. Role of plasmacytoid dendritic cells in lung-associated inflammation. Recent Patents Inflamm Allergy Drug Discov. 2010;4(2):138–43.
20. Yoneyama H, Matsuno K, Zhang Y, Nishiwaki T, Kitabatake M, Ueha S, et al. Evidence for recruitment of plasmacytoid dendritic cell precursors to inflamed lymph nodes through high endothelial venules. Int Immunol. 2004;16:915–28. https://doi.org/10.1093/intimm/dxh093.
21. Colonna M, Trinchieri G, Liu YJ. Plasmacytoid dendritic cells in immunity. Nat Immunol. 2004;5:1219–26. https://doi.org/10.1038/ni1141.
22. Wollenberg A, Wagner M, Gunther S, Towarowski A, Tuma E, Moderer M, et al. Plasmacytoid dendritic cells: a new cutaneous dendritic cell subset with distinct role in inflammatory skin diseases. J Invest Dermatol. 2002;119:1096–102. https://doi.org/10.1046/j.1523-1747.2002.19515.x.
23. Salio M, Cella M, Vermi W, Facchetti F, Palmowski MJ, Smith CL, et al. Plasmacytoid dendritic cells prime IFN-gamma-secreting melanoma-specific CD8 lymphocytes and are found in primary melanoma lesions. Eur J Immunol. 2003;33:1052–62. https://doi.org/10.1002/eji.200323676.
24. Vermi W, Bonecchi R, Facchetti F, Bianchi D, Sozzani S, Festa S, et al. Recruitment of immature plasmacytoid dendritic cells (plasmacytoid monocytes) and myeloid dendritic cells in primary cutaneous melanomas. J Pathol. 2003;200:255–68. https://doi.org/10.1002/path.1344.
25. Hartmann E, Wollenberg B, Rothenfusser S, Wagner M, Wellisch D, Mack B, et al. Identification and functional analysis of tumor-infiltrating plasmacytoid dendritic cells in head and neck cancer. Cancer Res. 2003;63:6478–87.
26. Kryczek I, Wei S, Keller E, Liu R, Wiping Z. Stroma-derived factor (SDF-1/CXCL12) and human tumor pathogenesis. Am J Phys. 2006;292(3):C987–95. https://doi.org/10.1152/ajpcell.00406.2006.
27. Yoneyama H, Narumi S, Zhang Y, Murai M, Baggiolini M, Lanzavecchia A, et al. Pivotal role of dendritic cell-derived CXCL10 in the retention of T helper cell 1 lymphocytes in secondary lymph nodes. J Exp Med. 2002;195:1257–66.
28. Zou W, Machelon V, Coulomb-L'Hermin A, Borvak J, Nome F, Isaeva T, et al. Stromal-derived factor-1 in human tumors recruits and alters the function of plasmacytoid precursor dendritic cells. Nat Med. 2001;7:1339–46. https://doi.org/10.1038/nm1201-1339.
29. Cella M, Jarrossay D, Facchetti F, Alebardi O, Nakajima H, Lanzavecchia A, et al. Plasmacytoid monocytes migrate to inflamed lymph nodes and produce large amounts of type I interferon. Nat Med. 1999;5:919–23. https://doi.org/10.1038/11360.
30. Jahnsen FL, Lund-Johansen F, Dunne JF, Farkas L, Haye R, Brandtzaeg P. Experimentally induced recruitment of plasmacytoid (CD123high) dendritic cells in human nasal allergy. J Immunol. 2000;165:4062–8.
31. Penna G, Sozzani S, Adorini L. Cutting edge: selective usage of chemokine receptors by plasmacytoid dendritic cells. J Immunol. 2001;167:1862–6.
32. Vanbervliet B, Bendriss-Vermare N, Massacrier C, Homey B, de Bouteiller O, Briere F, et al. The inducible CXCR3 ligands control plasmacytoid dendritic cell responsiveness to the constitutive chemokine stromal cell-derived factor 1 (SDF-1)/CXCL12. J Exp Med. 2003;198:823–30. https://doi.org/10.1084/jem.20020437.

33. Bangert C, Friedl J, Stary G, Stingl G, Kopp T. Immunopathologic features of allergic contact dermatitis in humans: participation of plasmacytoid dendritic cells in the pathogenesis of the disease? J Invest Dermatol. 2003;121:1409–18. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1523-1747.2003.12623.x.
34. Schnurr M, Toy T, Shin A, Hartmann G, Rothenfusser S, Soellner J, et al. Role of adenosine receptors in regulating chemotaxis and cytokine production of plasmacytoid dendritic cells. Blood. 2004;103(4):1391–7. https://doi.org/10.1182/blood-2003-06-1959.
35. Sanchez-Sanchez N, Riol-Blanco L, de la Rosa G, Puig-Kroger A, Garcia-Bordas J, Martin D, et al. Chemokine receptor CCR7 induces intracellular signaling that inhibits apoptosis of mature dendritic cells. Blood. 2004;104:619–25. https://doi.org/10.1182/blood-2003-11-3943.
36. Kaser A, Kaser S, Kaneider NC, Enrich B, Wiedermann CJ, Tilg H. Interleukin-18 attracts plasmacytoid dendritic cells (DC2s) and promotes Th1 induction by DC2s through IL-18 receptor expression. Blood. 2004;103:648–55. https://doi.org/10.1182/blood-2002-07-2322.
37. GeurtsvanKessel CH, Lambrecht BN. Division of labor between dendritic cell subsets of the lung. Mucosal Immunol. 2008;1:442–50. https://doi.org/10.1038/mi.2008.39.
38. Dzionek A, Sohma Y, Nagafune J, Cella M, Colonna M, Facchetti F, et al. BDCA-2 a novel plasmacytoid dendritic cell-specific type II C-type of lectin, mediates antigen capture and is a potent inhibitor of interferon α/β induction. J Exp Med. 2001;194:1823–34.
39. Zhang H, Gregorio JD, Iwahori T, Zhang X, Choi O, Tolentino LL, et al. A distinct subset of plasmacytoid dendritic cells induces activation and differentiation of B and Tlymphocytes. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2017;114(8):1988–93. https://doi.org/10.1073/pnas.1610630114.
40. Villani AC, Satija R, Reynolds G, Sarkizova S, Shekhar K, Fletcher J, et al. Single-cell RNA-seq reveals new types of human blood dendritic cells, monocytes, and progenitors. Science. 2017;356(6335):eaah4573. https://doi.org/10.1126/science.aah4573.
41. Bjorck P, Leong XH, Engleman EG. Plasmacytoid dendritic cell dichotomy. Identification of IFN-a producing cells as a phenotypically and functionally distinct subset. J Immunol. 2011;186:1477–85. https://doi.org/10.4049/jimmunol.1000454.
42. Swiecki M, Gilfillan S, Vermi W, Wang Y, Colonna M. Plasmacytoid dendritic cell ablation impacts early interferon responses and antiviral NK and CD8(+) T-cell accrual. Immunity. 2010;33(6):955–66. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.immuni.2010.11.020.
43. Takagi H, Fukaya T, Eizumi K, Sato Y, Sato K, Shibazaki A, et al. Plasmacytoid dendritic cells are crucial for the initiation of inflammation and T-cell immunity in vivo. Immunity. 2011;35(6):958–71. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.immuni.2011.10.014.
44. Asselin-Paturel C, Brizard G, Pin JJ, Brière F, Trinchieri G. Mouse strain differences in plasmacytoid dendritic cell frequency and function revealed by a novel monoclonal antibody. J Immunol. 2003;171(12):6466–77.
45. Blasius AL, Giurisato E, Cella M, Schreiber RD, Shaw AS, Colonna M. Bone marrow stromal cell antigen 2 is a specific marker of type I IFN-producing cells in the naive mouse, but a promiscuous cell surface antigen following IFN stimulation. J Immunol. 2006;177(5):3260–5.
46. Krug A, French AR, Barchet W, Fischer JA, Dzionek A, Pingel JT, et al. TLR9-dependent recognition of MCMV by IPC and DC generates coordinated cytokine responses that activate antiviral NK cell function. Immunity. 2004;21(1):107–19. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.immuni.2004.06.007.
47. Xu H, Zhang GX, Ciric B, Rostami A. IDO: a double-edged sword for T(H)1/T(H)2 regulation. Immunol Lett. 2008;121(1):1–6. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.imlet.2008.08.008.
48. Akira S. Toll-like receptors and innate immunity. Adv Immunol. 2001;78:1–56.
49. Hemmi H, Kaisho T, Takeda K, Akira S. The roles of toll-like receptor 9, MyD88, and DNA-dependent protein kinase catalytic subunit in the effects of two distinct CpG DNAs on dendritic cell subsets. J Immunol. 2003;170:3059–64.
50. Kerkmann M, Rothenfusser S, Hornung V, Towarowski A, Wagner M, Sarris A, et al. Activation with CpG-A and CpG-B oligonucleotides reveals two distinct regulatory pathways of type I IFN synthesis in human plasmacytoid dendritic cells. J Immunol. 2003;170:4465–74.
51. Takauji R, Iho S, Takatsuka H, Yamamoto S, Takahashi T, Kitagawa H, et al. CpG-DNA-induced IFN-alpha production involves p38 MAPK-dependent STAT1 phosphorylation in human plasmacytoid dendritic cell precursors. J Leukoc Biol. 2002;72:1011–9.
52. Hartmann G, Battiany J, Poeck H, Wagner M, Kerkmann M, Lubenow N, et al. Rational design of new CpG oligonucleotides that combine B-cell activation with high IFN-alpha induction in plasmacytoid dendritic cells. Eur J Immunol. 2003;33:1633–41. https://doi.org/10.1002/eji.200323813.
53. Latz E, Schoenemeyer A, Visintin A, Fitzgerald KA, Monks BG, Knetter CF, et al. TLR9 signals after translocating from the ER to CpG DNA in the lysosome. Nat Immunol. 2004;5:190–8. https://doi.org/10.1038/ni1028.
54. Elias F, Flo J, Lopez RA, Zorzopulos J, Montaner A, Rodriguez JM. Strong cytosine-guanosine-independent immunostimulation in humans and other primates by synthetic oligodeoxynucleotides with PyNTTTTGT motifs. J Immunol. 2003;171:3697–704.
55. Kassner N, Krueger M, Yagita H, Dzionek A, Hutloff A, Kroczek R, et al. Cutting edge: plasmacytoid dendritic cells induce IL-10 production in T-cells via the delta-like-4/notch axis. J Immunol. 2010;184(2):550–4. https://doi.org/10.4049/jimmunol.0903152.
56. Bjorck P. Dendritic cells exposed to herpes simplex virus in vivo do not produce IFN-alpha after rechallenge

with virus in vitro and exhibit decreased T-cell alloreactivity. J Immunol. 2004;172:5396–404.
57. Swiecki M, Wang Y, Vermi W, Gilfillan S, Schreiber RD, Colonna M. Type I interferon negatively controls plasmacytoid dendritic cell numbers in vivo. J Exp Med. 2011;208(12):2367. https://doi.org/10.1084/jem.20110654.
58. Blasius AL, Colonna M. Sampling and signaling in plasmacytoid dendritic cells: the potential roles of Siglec-H. Trends Immunol. 2006;27(6):255–60. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.it.2006.04.005.
59. Boonstra A, Rajsbaum R, Holman M, Marques R, Asselin-Paturel C, Pereira JP, et al. Macrophages and myeloid dendritic cells, but not plasmacytoid dendritic cells, produce IL-10 in response to MyD88- and TRIF-dependent TLR signals, and TLR-independent signals. J Immunol. 2006;177(11):7551–8.
60. Sharma MD, Baban B, Chandler P, Hou DY, Singh N, Yagita H, et al. Plasmacytoid dendritic cells from mouse tumor-draining lymph nodes directly activate mature Tregs via indoleamine 2,3-dioxygenase. J Clin Invest. 2007;117(9):2570–82. https://doi.org/10.1172/JCI31911.
61. Drobits B, Holcmann M, Amberg N, Swiecki M, Grundtner R, Hammer M, et al. Imiquimod clears tumors in mice independent of adaptive immunity by converting pDCs into tumor-killing effector cells. J Clin Invest. 2012;122:575–85. https://doi.org/10.1172/JCI61034.
62. van Kooyk Y, Geijtenbeek TB. DC-SIGN: escape mechanism for pathogens. Nat Rev Immunol. 2003;3:697–9. https://doi.org/10.1038/nri1182.
63. Geijtenbeek TBH, van Vliet SJ, Koppel EA, Sanchez-Hernandez M, Vandenbroucke-Grauls CMJE, Appelmelk B, et al. Mycobacteria target DC-SIGN to suppress dendritic cell function. J Exp Med. 2003;197:7–17.
64. Gantner B, Simmons R, Canavera S, Underhill D. Collaborative induction of inflammatory responses by dectin-1 and toll-like receptor 2. J Exp Med. 2003;197:1107–17. https://doi.org/10.1084/jem.20021787.
65. Dzionek A, Inagaki Y, Okawa K, Nagafune J, Rock J, Sohma Y, et al. Plasmacytoid dendritic cells: from specific surface markers to specific cellular functions. Hum Immunol. 2002;63:1133–48.
66. Siegal FP, Kadowaki N, Shodell M, Fitzgerald-Bocarsly PA, Shah K, Ho S, et al. The nature of the principal type 1 interferon-producing cells in human blood. Science. 1999;284:1835–7.
67. Tordjman R, Lepelletier Y, Lemarchandel V, Cambot M, Gaulard P, Hermine O, et al. A neuronal receptor, neuropilin-1, is essential for the initiation of the primary immune response. Nat Immunol. 2002;3:477–82. https://doi.org/10.1038/ni789.
68. Alculumbre SG, Saint-André V, Di Domizio J, Vargas P, Sirven P, Bost P, et al. Diversification of human plasmacytoid predendritic cells in response to a single stimulus. Nat Immunol. 2018;19(1):63–75. https://doi.org/10.1038/s41590-017-0012-z.
69. Liu YJ. IPC: professional type 1 interferon-producing cells and plasmacytoid dendritic cell precursors. Annu Rev Immunol. 2005;23:275–6. https://doi.org/10.1146/annurev.immunol.23.021704.115633.
70. Asselin-Paturel C, Trinchieri G. Production of type I interferons: plasmacytoid dendritic cells and beyond. J Exp Med. 2005;202(4):461–5. https://doi.org/10.1084/jem.20051395.
71. Shaw J, Wang YH, Ito T, Arima K, Liu YJ. Plasmacytoid dendritic cells regulate B-cell growth and differentiation via CD70. Blood. 2010;115(15):3051–7. https://doi.org/10.1182/blood-2009-08-239145.
72. Asselin-Paturel C, Boonstra A, Dalod M, Durand I, Yessaad N, Dezutter-Dambuyant C, et al. Mouse type I IFN-producing cells are immature APCs with plasmacytoid morphology. Nat Immunol. 2001;2:1144–50. https://doi.org/10.1038/ni736.
73. Björck P. Isolation and characterization of plasmacytoid dendritic cells from Flt3 ligand and granulocyte-macrophage colony-stimulating factor-treated mice. Blood. 2001;98(13):3520–6.
74. Villadangos JA, Young L. Antigen-presentation properties of plasmacytoid dendritic cells. Immunity. 2008;29(3):352–61.
75. Wilson NS, Villadangos JA. Regulation of antigen presentation and cross-presentation in the dendritic cell network: facts, hypothesis, and immunological implications. Adv Immunol. 2005;86:241–5. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0065-2776(04)86007-3.
76. Tokita D, Mazariegos GV, Zahorchak AF, Chien N, Abe M, Raimondi G, et al. High PD-L1/CD86 ratio on plasmacytoid dendritic cells correlates with elevated T-regulatory cells in liver transplant tolerance. Transplantation. 2008;85(3):369–77. https://doi.org/10.1097/TP.0b013e3181612ded.
77. Puccetti P, Fallarino F. Generation of T-cell regulatory activity by plasmacytoid dendritic cells and tryptophan catabolism. Blood Cells Mol Dis. 2008;40(1):101–5. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.bcmd.2007.06.026.
78. Lee SM, Lee YS, Choi JH, Park SG, Choi IW, Joo YD, et al. Tryptophan metabolite 3-hydroxyanthranilic acid selectively induces activated T-cell death via intracellular GSH depletion. Immunol Lett. 2010;132(1–2):53–60. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.imlet.2010.05.008.
79. Munn DH, Sharma MD, Baban B, Harding HP, Zhang Y, Ron D, et al. GCN2 kinase in T-cells mediates proliferative arrest and anergy induction in response to indoleamine 2,3-dioxygenase. Immunity. 2005;22:633–42. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.immuni.2005.03.013.
80. Arimura K, Takagi H, Uto T, Fukaya T, Nakamura T, Choijookhuu N, et al. Crucial role of plasmacytoid dendritic cells in the development of acute colitis through the regulation of intestinal inflammation. Mucosal Immunol. 2017;10(4):957–70. https://doi.org/10.1038/mi.2016.96.
81. Albert ML, Decalf J, Pol S. Plasmacytoid dendritic cells move down on the list of suspects: in search of the immune pathogenesis of chronic hepatitis C. J

Hepatol. 2008;49:1069–78. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jhep.2008.09.002.
82. Dental C, Florentin J, Aouar B, Gondois-Rey F, Durantel D, Baumert TF, et al. Hepatitis C virus fails to activate NF-κB signaling in plasmacytoid dendritic cells. J Virol. 2012;86(2):1090–6. https://doi.org/10.1128/JVI.05444-11.
83. Reizis B, Bunin A, Ghosh HS, Lewis KL, Sisirak V. Plasmacytoid dendritic cells: recent progress and open questions. Annu Rev Immunol. 2011;29:163–83. https://doi.org/10.1146/annurev-immunol-031210-101345.
84. Schmidt B, Ashlock BM, Foster H, Fujimura SH, Levy JA. HIV-infected cells are major inducers of plasmacytoid dendritic cell interferon production, maturation, and migration. Virology. 2005;343(2):256–66. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.virol.2005.09.059.
85. Hosmalin A, Lebon P. Type I interferon production in HIV-infected patients. J Leukoc Biol. 2006;80(5):984–93. https://doi.org/10.1189/jlb.0306154.
86. Reitano KN, Kottilil S, Gille CM, Zhang X, Yan M, O'Shea MA, et al. Defective plasmacytoid dendritic cell-NK cell cross-talk in HIV infection. AIDS Res Hum Retrovir. 2009;25(10):1029–37. https://doi.org/10.1089/aid.2008.0311.
87. Martinelli E, Cicala C, Van Ryk D, Goode DJ, Macleod K, Arthos J, et al. HIV-1 gp120 inhibits TLR9-mediated activation and IFN-α secretion in plasmacytoid dendritic cells. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2007;104(9):3396–401. https://doi.org/10.1073/pnas.0611353104.
88. Mandl JN, Barry AP, Vanderford TH, Kozyr N, Chavan R, Klucking S, et al. Divergent TLR7 and TLR9 signaling and type I interferon production distinguish pathogenic and nonpathogenic AIDS virus infections. Nat Med. 2008;14:1077–87. https://doi.org/10.1038/nm.1871.
89. Schwartz JA, Clayton KL, Mujib S, Zhang H, Rahman AK, Liu J, et al. Tim-3 is a marker of plasmacytoid dendritic cell dysfunction during HIV infection and is associated with the recruitment of IRF7 and p85 into lysosomes and with the submembrane displacement of TLR9. J Immunol. 2017;198(8):3181–94. https://doi.org/10.4049/jimmunol.1601298.
90. Maldonado S, Fitzgerald BP. Antifungal activity of plasmacytoid dendritic cells and the impact of chronic HIV infection. Front Immunol. 2017;8:1705. https://doi.org/10.3389/fimmu.2017.01705.
91. Ramirez-Ortiz ZG, Lee CK, Wang JP, Boon L, Specht CA, Levitz SM. A nonredundant role for plasmacytoid dendritic cells in host defense against the human fungal pathogen Aspergillus fumigatus. Cell Host Microbe. 2011;9(5):415–24. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.chom.2011.04.007.
92. Ronnblom L, Alm GV. A pivotal role for the natural interferon α-producing cells (plasmacytoid dendritic cells) in the pathogenesis of lupus. J Exp Med. 2001;194:F59–63.
93. Ronnblom L, Alm GV, Eloranta ML. Type I interferon and lupus. Curr Opin Rheumatol. 2009;21:471–7. https://doi.org/10.1097/BOR.0b013e32832e089e.
94. Nestle FO, Conrad C, Tun-Kyi A, Homey B, Gombert M, Boyman O, et al. Plasmacytoid predendritic cells initiate psoriasis through interferon- α production. J Exp Med. 2005;202:135–43. https://doi.org/10.1084/jem.20050500.
95. Lande R, Gregorio J, Facchinetti V, Chatterjee B, Wang YH, Homey B, et al. Plasmacytoid dendritic cells sense self-DNA coupled with antimicrobial peptide. Nature. 2007;449:564–9. https://doi.org/10.1038/nature06116.
96. Ganguly D, Chamilos G, Lande R, Gregorio J, Meller S, Facchinetti V, et al. Self-RNA-antimicrobial peptide complexes activate human dendritic cells through TLR7 and TLR8. J Exp Med. 2009;206:1983–94. https://doi.org/10.1084/jem.20090480.
97. Conrad C, Di Domizio J, Mylonas A, Belkhodja C, Demaria O, Navarini AA, et al. TNF blockade induces a dysregulated type I interferon response without autoimmunity in paradoxical psoriasis. Nat Commun. 2018;9(1):25. https://doi.org/10.1038/s41467-017-02466-4.
98. Farkas L, Beiske K, Lund-Johansen F, Brandtzaeg P, Jahnsen FL. Plasmacytoid dendritic cells (natural interferon- α/β-producing cells) accumulate in cutaneous lupus erythematosus lesion. Am J Pathol. 2011;159:237–43.
99. Bave U, Magnusson M, Eloranta ML, Peters A, Alm GV, Ronnblom L. Fc gamma RIIa is expressed on natural IFN-alpha-producing cells (plasmacytoid dendritic cells) and is required for the IFN-alpha production induced by apoptotic cells combined with lupus IgG. J Immunol. 2003;171:3296–302.
100. Barrat FJ, Meeker T, Gregorio J, Chan JH, Uematsu S, Akira S, et al. Nucleic acids of mammalian origin can act as endogenous ligands for toll-like receptors and may promote systemic lupus erythematosus. J Exp Med. 2005;202:1131–9. https://doi.org/10.1084/jem.20050914.
101. Means TK, Latz E, Hayashi F, Murali MR, Golenbock DT, Luster AD. Human lupus autoantibody-DNA complexes activate DCs through cooperation of CD32 and TLR9. J Clin Invest. 2005;115:407–17. https://doi.org/10.1172/JCI23025.
102. Tian J, Avalos AM, Mao SY, Chen B, Senthil K, Wu H, et al. Toll-like receptor 9-dependent activation by DNA-containing immune complexes is mediated by HMGB1 and RAGE. Nat Immunol. 2007;8:487–96. https://doi.org/10.1038/ni1457.
103. Lepelletier Y, Zollinger R, Ghirelli C, Raynaud F, Hadj-Slimane R, Cappuccio A, et al. Toll-like receptor control of glucocorticoid- induced apoptosis in human plasmacytoid pre-dendritic cells (pDCs). Blood. 2010;107:15181–6. https://doi.org/10.1182/blood-2010-05-282913.
104. Guiducci C, Gong M, Xu Z, Gill M, Chausssabel D, Meeker T, et al. TLR recognition of self nucleic acids hampers glucocorticoid activity in lupus. Nature. 2010;465:937–41. https://doi.org/10.1038/nature09102.

105. Rowland SL, Riggs JM, Gilfillan S, Bugatti M, Vermi W, Kolbeck R, et al. Early, transient depletion of plasmacytoid dendritic cells ameliorates autoimmunity in a lupus model. J Exp Med. 2014;211(10):1977–91. https://doi.org/10.1084/jem.20132620.
106. Bave U, Nordmark G, Loygren T, Ronnelid J, Cajander S, Eloranta ML, et al. Activation of the type I interferon system in primary Sjogren's syndrome: a possible etiopathogenic mechanism. Arthritis Rheum. 2005;52:1185–95. https://doi.org/10.1002/art.20998.
107. Jochems C, Schlom J. Tumor-infiltrating immune cells and prognosis: the potential link between conventional cancer therapy and immunity. Exp Biol Med. 2011;236(5):567–79. https://doi.org/10.1258/ebm.2011.011007.
108. Vermi W, Soncini M, Melocchi L, Sozzani S, Facchetti F. Plasmacytoid dendritic cells and cancer. J Leukoc Biol. 2011;236(5):567–79. https://doi.org/10.1189/jlb.0411190.
109. Stary G, Bangert C, Tauber M, Strohal R, Kopp T, Stingl G. Tumoricidal activity of TLR7/8-activated inflammatory dendritic cells. J Exp Med. 2007;204:1441–51. https://doi.org/10.1084/jem.20070021.
110. Dunn GP, Bruce AT, Sheehan KCF, Shankaran V, Uppaluri R, Bui JD, et al. A critical function for type I interferons in cancer immunoediting. Nat Immunol. 2005;6(7):722–8. https://doi.org/10.1038/ni1213.
111. Demoulin S, Herfs M, Delvenne P, Hubert P. Tumor microenvironment converts plasmacytoid dendritic cells into immunosuppressive/tolerogenic cells: insight into the molecular mechanisms. J Leukoc Biol. 2013;93(3):343–52. https://doi.org/10.1189/jlb.0812397.
112. Rega A, Terlizzi M, Luciano A, Forte G, Crother TR, Arra C, et al. Plasmacytoid dendritic cells play a key role in tumor progression in lipopolysaccharide-stimulated lung tumor-bearing mice. J Immunol. 2013;190(5):2391–402. https://doi.org/10.4049/jimmunol.1202086.
113. Sorrentino R, Terlizzi M, Di Crescenzo VG, Popolo A, Pecoraro M, Perillo G, et al. Human lung cancer-derived immunosuppressive plasmacytoid dendritic cells release IL-1α in an AIM2 inflammasome-dependent manner. Am J Pathol. 2015;185(11):3115–24. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ajpath.2015.07.009.
114. Terlizzi M, Popolo A, Pinto A, Sorrentino R. Plasmacytoid dendritic cells contribute to doxorubicin-induced tumor arrest in a mouse model of pulmonary metastasis. J Immunother. 2014;37(4):214–24. https://doi.org/10.1097/CJI.0000000000000026.
115. Belardelli F, Ferrantini M, Proietti E, Kirkwood JM. Interferon-alpha in tumor immunity and immunotherapy. Cytokine Growth Factor Rev. 2002;13(2):119–34.
116. Wu J, Li S, Yang Y, Zhu S, Zhang M, Qiao Y, et al. TLR-activated plasmacytoid dendritic cells inhibit breast cancer cell growth in vitro and in vivo. Oncotarget. 2017;8(7):11708–18. https://doi.org/10.18632/oncotarget.14315.
117. Loschko J, Schlitzer A, Dudziak D, Drexler I, Sandholzer N, Bourquin C, et al. Antigen delivery to plasmacytoid dendritic cells via BST2 induces protective T-cell-mediated immunity. J Immunol. 2011;186(12):6718–25. https://doi.org/10.4049/jimmunol.1004029.
118. Le Mercier I, Poujol D, Sanlaville A, Sisirak V, Gobert M, Durand I, et al. Tumor promotion by intratumoral plasmacytoid dendritic cells is reversed by TLR7 ligand treatment. Cancer Res. 2013;73(15):4629–40. https://doi.org/10.1158/0008-5472.CAN-12-3058.
119. Sorrentino R, Morello S, Luciano A, Crother TR, Maiolino P, Bonavita E, et al. Plasmacytoid dendritic cells alter the antitumor activity of CpG-oligodeoxynucleotides in a mouse model of lung carcinoma. J Immunol. 2010;185(8):4641–50. https://doi.org/10.4049/jimmunol.1000881.
120. Dovedi SJ, Melis MH, Wilkinson RW, Adlard AL, Stratford IJ, Honeychurch J, et al. Systemic delivery of a TLR7 agonist in combination with radiation primes durable antitumor immune responses in mouse models of lymphoma. Blood. 2013;121(2):251–9. https://doi.org/10.1182/blood-2012-05-432393.
121. Liu C, Lou Y, Lizée G, Qin H, Liu S, Rabinovich B, et al. Plasmacytoid dendritic cells induce NK cell-dependent, tumor antigen-specific T-cell cross-priming and tumor regression in mice. J Clin Invest. 2008;118:1165–75. https://doi.org/10.1172/JCI33583.
122. Hirsch I, Caux C, Hasan U, Bendriss-Vermare N, Olive D. Impaired toll-like receptor 7 and 9 signaling: from chronic viral infections to cancer. Trends Immunol. 2010;31(10):391–7. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.it.2010.07.004.
123. Díaz-Rodríguez Y, Cordeiro P, Belounis A, Herblot S, Duval M. In vitro differentiated plasmacytoid dendritic cells as a tool to induce anti-leukemia activity of natural killer cells. Cancer Immunol Immunother. 2017;66(10):1307–20. https://doi.org/10.1007/s00262-017-2022-y.
124. Zhang L, Jiang Q, Guangming L, Jeffrey J, Kovalev GI, Su L. Efficient infection, activation, and impairment of pDCs in the BM and peripheral lymphoid organs during early HIV-1 infection in humanized rag2$^{-/-}\gamma C^{-/-m}$ice in vivo. Blood. 2011;117(23):6184–92. https://doi.org/10.1182/blood-2011-01-331173.
125. Sisirak V, Vey N, Goutagny N, Renaudineau S, Malfroy M, Thys S, et al. Breast cancer-derived TGF-b and TNF-a compromise IFN-a production by tumor associated plasmacytoid dendritic cells. Int J Cancer. 2013;133(3):771–8. https://doi.org/10.1002/ijc.28072.
126. Sisirak V, Faget J, Gobert M, Goutagny N, Vey N, Treilleux I, et al. Impaired IFN-α production by plasmacytoid dendritic cells favors regulatory T-cell

expansion that may contribute to breast cancer progression. Cancer Res. 2012;72(20):5188–97.
127. Lande R, Gilliet M. Plasmacytoid dendritic cells: key players in the initiation and regulation of immune responses. Ann N Y Acad Sci. 2010;1183:89–103. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1749-6632.2009.05152.x.
128. Kalb ML, Glaser A, Stary G, Koszik F, Stingl G. TRAIL(+) human plasmacytoid dendritic cells kill tumor cells in vitro: mechanisms of imiquimod- and IFN-α-mediated antitumor reactivity. J Immunol. 2012;188(4):1583–91. https://doi.org/10.4049/jimmunol.1102437.
129. Pedroza-Gonzalez A, Zhou G, Vargas-Mendez E, Boor PP, Mancham S, Verhoef C, et al. Tumor-infiltrating plasmacytoid dendritic cells promote immunosuppression by Tr1 cells in human liver tumors. Oncoimmunology. 2015;4(6):e1008355. https://doi.org/10.1080/2162402X.2015.1008355.
130. Bekeredjian-Ding I, Schäfer M, Hartmann E, Pries R, Parcina M, Schneider P, et al. Tumour-derived prostaglandin E and transforming growth factor-β synergize to inhibit plasmacytoid dendritic cell-derived interferon-α. Immunology. 2009;128:439–50. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1365-2567.2009.03134.x.
131. Battaglia M, Gianfrani C, Gregori S, Roncarolo MG. IL-10-producing T regulatory type 1 cells and oral tolerance. Ann N Y Acad Sci. 2004;1029:142–53. https://doi.org/10.1196/annals.1309.031.
132. Bellocq A, Antoine M, Flahault A, Philippe C, Crestani B, Bernaudin JF, et al. Neutrophil alveolitis in bronchioloalveolar carcinoma: induction by tumor-derived interleukin-8 and relation to clinical outcome. Am J Pathol. 1998;152:83–92.
133. Voorzanger N, Touitou R, Garcia E, Delecluse HJ, Rousset F, Joab I, et al. Interleukin (IL)-10 and IL-6 are produced in vivo by non-Hodgkin's lymphoma cells and act as cooperative growth factors. Cancer Res. 1996;56:5499–505.
134. Yagi H, Soto-Gutierrez A, Kitagawa Y, Tilles AW, Tompkins RG, Yarmush ML. Bone marrow mesenchymal stromal cells attenuate organ injury induced by LPS and burn. Cell Transplant. 2010;19(6):823–30. https://doi.org/10.3727/096368910X508942.
135. Kurtz J, Raval F, Vallot C, Der J, Sykes M. CTLA-4 on alloreactive CD4 T-cells interacts with recipient CD80/86 to promote tolerance. Blood. 2009;113:3475–84. https://doi.org/10.1182/blood-2008-01-133736.
136. Pallotta MT, Orabona C, Volpi C, Vacca C, Belladonna ML, Bianchi R, et al. Indoleamine 2,3-dioxygenase is a signaling protein in long-term tolerance by dendritic cells. Nat Immunol. 2011;12:870–8. https://doi.org/10.1038/ni.2077.
137. Uyttenhove C, Pilotte L, Théate I, Stroobant V, Colau D, Parmentier N, et al. Evidence for a tumoral immune resistance mechanism based on tryptophan degradation by indoleamine 2,3-dioxygenase. Nat Med. 2003;9:1269–74. https://doi.org/10.1038/nm934.
138. Katz JB, Muller AJ, Prendergast GC. Indoleamine 2,3-dioxygenase in T-cell tolerance and tumoral immune escape. Immunol Rev. 2008;222:206–21. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1600-065X.2008.00610.x.
139. Cao W, Bover L. Signaling and ligand interaction of ILT7. Receptor-mediated regulatory mechanisms for plasmacytoid dendritic cells. Immunol Rev. 2010;234(1):163–76. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.0105-2896.2009.00867.x.
140. Zarour HM. Reversing T-cell dysfunction and exhaustion in cancer. Clin Cancer Res. 2016;22:1856–64. https://doi.org/10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-15-1849.
141. Bratke K, Klein C, Kuepper M, Lommatzsch M, Virchow JC. Differential development of plasmacytoid dendritic cells in Th1- and Th2-like cytokine milieus. Allergy. 2011;66:386–95. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1398-9995.2010.02497.x.
142. de Heer HJ, Hammad H, Soullié T, Hijdra D, Vos N, Willart MA, et al. Essential role of lung plasmacytoid dendritic cells in preventing asthmatic reactions to harmless inhaled antigen. J Exp Med. 2004;200:89–98. https://doi.org/10.1084/jem.20040035.
143. Smit JJ, Lindell DM, Boon L, Kool M, Lambrecht BN, Lukacs NW. The balance between plasmacytoid DC versus conventional DC determines pulmonary immunity to virus infections. PLoS One. 2008;3:e1720. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0001720.
144. Zhi-Iong Ma J, Yang J, Qin JS, Richter A, Perret R, El-Deiry WS, et al. Inefficient boosting of antitumor CD8(+) T-cells by dendritic-cell vaccines is rescued by restricting T-cell cytotoxic functions. Oncoimmunology. 2012;1(9):1507–16. https://doi.org/10.4161/onci.22128.
145. Aspord C, Charles J, Leccia MT, Laurin D, Richard MJ, Chaperot L, et al. A novel cancer vaccine strategy based on HLA-A∗0201 matched allogeneic plasmacytoid dendritic cells. PLoS One. 2010;5(5):e10458. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0010458.

The CD95/CD95L Signaling Pathway: A Role in Carcinogenesis

11

Amélie Fouqué and Patrick Legembre

Contents

11.1 Introduction

Apoptosis, or programmed cell death, plays a pivotal role in development, organ homeostasis, and immunosurveillance. The term apoptosis was coined by Kerr et al. in 1972 [1] to describe the process of cell death associated with morphological changes, including nucleus and cytoplasm condensation and protuberances from the plasma membrane producing apoptotic bodies, so-called blebs, which are rapidly phagocytosed [1, 2].

A. Fouqué
Université de Rennes-1, Rennes, France

INSERM U1242, Equipe Labellisée Ligue Contre Le Cancer, Rennes, France

P. Legembre (✉)
Université de Rennes-1, Rennes, France

INSERM U1242, Equipe Labellisée Ligue Contre Le Cancer, Rennes, France

CLCC Centre Eugéne Marquis, Rennes, France
e-mail: patrick.legembre@inserm.fr

N. Rezaei (ed.), *Cancer Immunology*, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-30845-2_11

Inhibition of this cellular process is observed in different pathologies, such as cancer and autoimmunity, while amplification of the apoptotic signal was reported in neurodegenerative disorders including Alzheimer's and Parkinson's diseases [3, 4], as well as infection by human immunodeficiency virus (HIV).

The origin of the apoptotic signal has been used to distinguish two main signaling pathways. The intrinsic pathway stems from accumulation of DNA damage, deregulation of mitochondrial function, or virus infection and induces the release of proapoptotic factors from the mitochondria, whereas extrinsic signals are transmitted by the binding of apoptotic ligands to death receptors present at the cell surface. Interconnections exist between these two signaling pathways: both leading to the activation of a family of cysteine proteases specific for aspartic acid residues, called caspases [5]. The apoptotic role of mitochondria is associated with reduction in its transmembrane potential and the loss of its extracellular membrane integrity, leading to the release of different apoptogenic factors in the cytosol. Among them, cytochrome c associates with the caspase-9/APAF-1 complex to form the apoptosome and trigger apoptosis [6].

These two signaling pathways share common features, and both require the aggregation of initiator caspases as their preliminary events. During interactions with respective ligands, members of the death receptor superfamily recruit adaptor proteins such as Fas-associated protein with a death domain (FADD) [7, 8] or tumor necrosis factor (TNF) receptor 1-associated death domain protein (TRADD) [9], resulting in the aggregation and activation of the initiators caspase-8 and caspase-10 to form the death-inducing signaling complex (DISC) [10]. In a similar manner, release of cytochrome c and ATP by mitochondria promotes the formation of the apoptosome with the cytosolic APAF-1, thereby aggregating and activating the initiator caspase-9, which in turn cleaves caspase-3 [11].

It should be kept in mind that death receptors CD95 [12], TNFR1 [13], DR4 [14], DR5 [15], and DR6 [16] have been cloned based on their ability to elicit apoptosis. Although studies have revealed the ability of Fas/CD95, DR4, and DR5 in triggering non-apoptotic signaling pathways even immediately after their cloning [17, 18], most, if not all, studies have been focused on characterizing the molecular events leading to cell death. Accordingly, several agonistic molecules were developed in order to kill cancer cells, neglecting the impact of non-apoptotic signals in pathophysiological contexts. More recent data changed this vision by evaluating the biological role of death receptor-mediated non-apoptotic signaling pathways in chronic inflammatory disorders and carcinogenesis.

In this chapter, apoptotic signaling pathways induced by death receptors are discussed. Moreover, recent evidences pointing to the non-apoptotic signals transmitted by the same receptors are brought up, which may imply their tremendous impact on tumor progression and the design of therapeutic tools.

11.2 TNF Receptor Family

Death receptors TNFR1, Fas, DR3, DR4, DR5, and DR6 belong to the tumor necrosis factor receptor (TNFR) superfamily. These type I transmembrane proteins share common features, such as extracellular amino-terminal cysteine-rich domains (CRDs) [19, 20], which contribute to ligand specificity [21], and pre-association of the receptor at the plasma membrane [22–24] and a conserved 80-amino acid sequence located in their cytoplasmic tail called death domain (DD), which is necessary for DISC formation and initiation of the apoptotic signal [25, 26].

11.2.1 TNFR1 Signaling Pathways

TNF-α exerts its effects by binding to two receptors, TNFR1 and TNFR2 [20]. Recently, progranulin was identified as a ligand of TNFR with a higher affinity than TNF-α. Progranulin antagonizes TNF-α signaling and plays a critical role in the pathogenesis of inflammatory arthritis in mice [27]. TNFR1, a 55 kDa protein expressed in almost all cell types, presents a DD in its

intracellular region, whereas TNFR2, a 75 kDa protein, is mainly detected in oligodendrocytes, astrocytes, T-cells, myocytes, thymocytes, endothelial cells, and human mesenchymal stem cells [28]. Uncertainty remains on the TNFR2 signaling pathway, which has been previously reviewed [28]. The CRD1 of CD95, TNFR1, and TNFR2 is involved in homotypic interactions, leading to pre-association of the receptor as a homotrimer in the absence of ligand [23, 24, 29]. This domain has been designated as the pre-ligand binding assembly domain (PLAD) [29]. Receptors of the TNFR superfamily do not possess any enzymatic activity on their own and rely on the recruitment of adaptor proteins for signaling. Among these adaptor proteins, TRADD or FADD is instrumental in the implementation of cell death processes [7–10].

TNF is synthesized as a 26 kDa transmembrane type II protein (m-TNF) of 233 amino acids [30] which can be cleaved by the metalloprotease TACE [31, 32] to release the 17 kDa soluble form of the cytokine (cl-TNF). In contrast to cl-TNF, which only activates TNFR1, m-TNF can bind and activate both TNFR1 and TNFR2 [33].

Activation of TNFR1 leads to the induction of cellular processes ranging from cell death (apoptosis or necroptosis) to cell proliferation, migration, and differentiation; the implementation of such different cellular responses reflects the formation of different molecular complexes after receptor activation [28]. Binding of TNF to TNFR1 causes the formation of two consecutive complexes. While the plasma membrane complex (complex I) elicits a non-apoptotic signaling pathway, a second, internalized complex (complex II or DISC) triggers cell death [2]. In the presence of TNF, the adaptor protein TRADD interacts with TNFR1 and recruits other proteins involved in the signaling of the receptor, such as TRAF2, cIAP1, cIAP2, and RIP1, to form complex I. At the plasma membrane, this complex activates the NF-κB signaling pathway, which in turn promotes the transcription of antiapoptotic genes such as cIAP1, cIAP2, and c-FLIP [34]. The linear ubiquitin chain assembly complex (LUBAC) is also recruited to complex I via cIAP-generated ubiquitin chains [35]. HOIL-1, HOIP, and sharpin constitute the LUBAC complex. HOIL-1 and HOIP add a linear ubiquitin chain by catalyzing the head-to-tail ligation of ubiquitin [36] to RIP1 and NEMO (IKK-γ) in complex I [37], thereby activating NF-κB.

TNF-induced caspase activation is mediated by a second, intracellular complex II, which is formed when complex I dissociates from the receptor, along with FADD and caspase-8 recruitment [2]. NF-κB activation leads to c-FLIP overexpression, preventing formation of complex II. Contrariwise, when NF-κB activation is blocked, c-FLIP, whose protein half-life is short [38], is absent, and cells experience death [2]. RIP1 is deubiquitinated by enzymes such as Cezanne [39] and CYLD [40], and the complex composed of TRADD and RIP1 moves to the cytosol to form complex II. FADD is recruited to TRADD by DD-DD interaction and binds caspase-8 [2]. Noteworthy, when caspase-8 activity is inhibited or its expression is extinguished, DISC is unable to trigger the apoptotic signaling pathway; but TNFR1 or CD95 stimulation leads to the activation of another cell death signal, namely, necroptosis [41, 42]. To prevent the induction of the necroptotic signal, caspase-8 cleaves and inactivates RIP1 and RIP3 [43]. The fine-tuned control of necroptosis by members of the apoptotic signaling pathway in the organism has been elegantly confirmed by experiments showing that the embryonic lethality of mice harboring the single KO of caspase-8 or FADD is rescued by an additional KO of the RIP3 gene [44–46].

11.2.2 TNF/TNFR: A Gold Mine for Therapeutic Tools

Many studies on TNF demonstrated its pivotal role in fueling inflammation, a multistep process that promotes autoimmunity (e.g., rheumatoid arthritis, ankylosing spondylitis, Crohn's disease, psoriasis, and refractory asthma) and cancer. Many TNF inhibitors, such as neutralizing monoclonal antibodies (mAbs) (e.g., infliximab, adalimumab, and golimumab), have been developed to treat these chronic inflammatory disorders,

demonstrating that altering ligand/receptor interactions with neutralizing mAbs is an invaluable opportunity to treat certain chronic inflammatory disorders. Other TNF-α antagonists, such as etanercept, a TNFR2-immunoglobulin Fc fusion protein, can improve the clinical course of rheumatoid arthritis [47].

While findings accumulate to decipher the molecular mechanisms involved in the induction of apoptotic and non-apoptotic signaling pathways by TNFR1 and to elucidate how the receptor can switch from one signal to the other, the mechanistic links involved in the implementation of non-apoptotic signaling pathways by CD95 remain elusive. However, recent findings have revealed its proinflammatory effects [48–54].

11.3 CD95: A Death Receptor?

In 1989, identification of the mAb APO-1 by Peter Krammer et al. revealed the existence of a 52 kDa protein whose aggregation was able to transmit an apoptotic signal in cancer cells [55]. This receptor was identified in 1991 by Nagata and colleagues and called Fas (CD95 or APO-1) [12]. Its ligand, FasL, was cloned in 1993 by the same group and was found to be mainly expressed at the surface of activated T-lymphocytes [56] and natural killer (NK) cells [57]; however, its expression was also detected in different tissues in which the presence of acute or chronic inflammation is undesirable including the eyes [58] and testes [59]. In addition, two mouse models, in which either the level of CD95 expression was downregulated (due to an insertion of a retrotransposon in intron 2 of the receptor gene, these mice are called *lymphoproliferation* (Lpr) [60–62]) or the CD95L affinity for CD95 was reduced (due to the germ line mutation F273L in CD95L, called *generalized lymphoproliferative disease* (*gld*), which decreases CD95L binding to CD95 [63, 64]), have provided some insight into the pivotal role played by this interaction in immunosurveillance and immune tolerance [65].

11.3.1 Structure/Function

The CD95 gene (*APT-1*) consists of nine exons, with exon 6 encoding the transmembrane domain [66] (Fig. 11.1). CD95 can be resolved under denaturing conditions between 40 and 50 kDa by SDS-PAGE. The receptor is a type I transmembrane protein harboring three CRDs. Similar to the TNF receptor [29], CD95 is pre-associated at the plasma membrane as a homotrimer, and this quaternary structure is mandatory for transmission of the apoptotic signals in the presence of CD95L [23, 24]. Homotrimerization of CD95 occurs mainly through homotypic interactions of the CD95-CRD1 [22–24]. Binding of CD95L or agonistic anti-CD95 mAbs to CD95 alters both the conformation and the extent to which the receptor is multimerized at the plasma membrane. The intracellular region of CD95 encompasses an 80-amino acid stretch designated as the DD (Fig. 11.1), which consists of six antiparallel α-helices [67]. Upon addition of CD95L, CD95 undergoes conformational modification of its DD, which induces a shift of helix 6 and fusion with helix 5, promoting both oligomerization of the receptor and recruitment of the adaptor protein FADD [68]. A consequence of the opening of the globular structure of CD95 is that the receptor becomes connected through this bridge, which

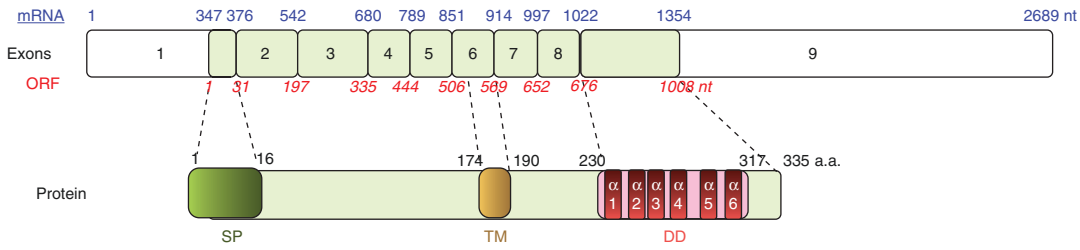


Fig. 11.1 CD95: mRNA to protein

increases the magnitude of its homo-aggregation. This long helix allows the stabilization of the complex by recruiting FADD. Overall, the CD95-DD/FADD-DD crystal structure provides some insights into the formation of the large CD95 clusters observed using imaging or biochemical methods in cells stimulated with CD95L. In addition, it also confirms that alteration in the CD95 conformation plays an instrumental role during signal induction [68]. However, this elongated C-terminal α-helix favoring the *cis*-dimerization of CD95-DD was challenged by Driscoll et al. who did not observe the fusion of the last two helices at a more neutral pH (pH 6.2), compared to the acidic condition (pH 4) used in the initial study to resolve the CD95-DD/FADD-DD structure [68]. Consequently, at pH 6.2, association of CD95 with FADD predominantly consisted of a 5:5 complex, which occurred via a polymerization mechanism involving three types of asymmetric interactions but without major alteration of the DD globular structure [69, 70]. It is likely that the low pH condition used in the study performed by Scott et al. altered CD95 conformation and resulted in the formation of nonphysiological CD95/FADD oligomers [68]. Nonetheless, it cannot be excluded that a local decrease in the intracellular pH affects the initial steps of the CD95 signaling pathway in vivo, through promoting the opening of the CD95-DD and eventually contributing to the formation of a complex eliciting a sequence of events different from the one occurring at physiologic pH.

Once docked on CD95-DD, FADD self-associates [71] and binds procaspase-8 and procaspase-10, which are auto-processed and released in the cytosol as active caspases, which cleave many substrates leading to the execution of the apoptotic program and cell death. The complex CD95/FADD/caspase-8/caspase-10 is called DISC (Fig. 11.2) [10]. Due to the importance of DISC formation in

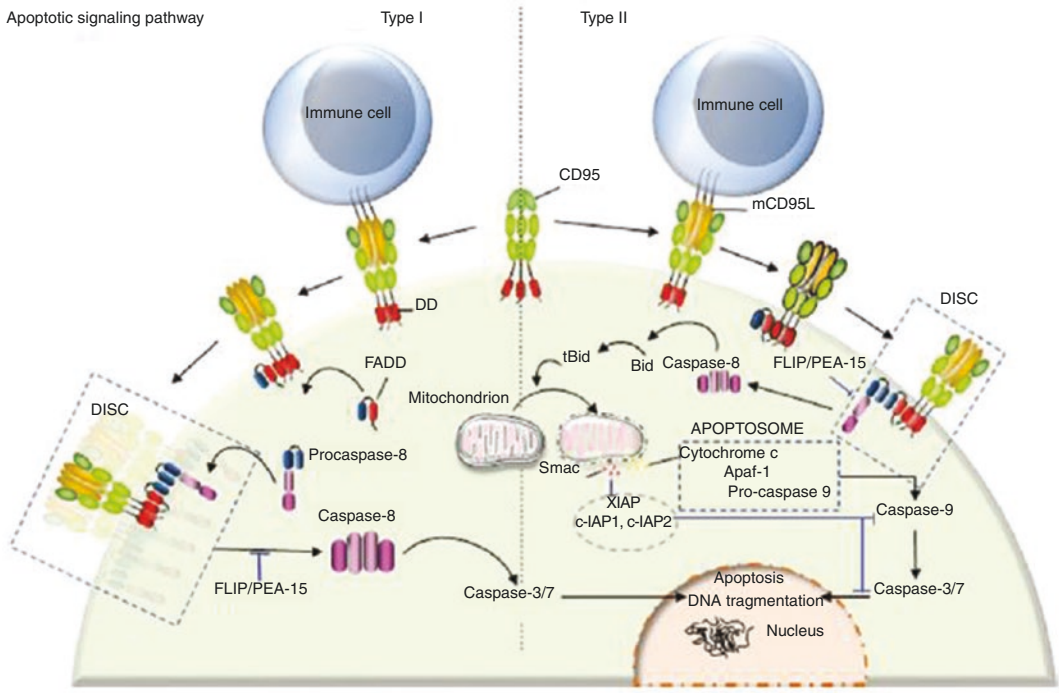


Fig. 11.2 Type I/II cells. Binding of transmembrane CD95L to CD95 leads to DISC formation. DISC consists of FADD and procaspase-8. c-FLIP and PEA-15 bind to FADD and prevent caspase-8 recruitment. At the DISC level, aggregation of procaspase-8 promotes its auto-cleavage and activation. Cleaved caspase-8 is then released in the cytosol where it promotes the cascade of caspase activation leading to apoptosis. Type I cells are characterized by an efficient DISC formation, which releases sufficient caspase-8 to directly activate caspase-3. By contrast, type II cells present a weak DISC formation, and the low amount of released caspase-8 activates the mitochondrion-dependent apoptotic pathway to amplify death signal

the fate of cells, it is not surprising that numerous cellular and viral proteins were reported to hamper the formation of this structure, such as FLIP [72, 73] and PED/PEA-15 [74], which interfere with the recruitment of caspase-8/caspase-10 (Fig. 11.2).

11.3.2 Type I/II Signaling Pathways

Following the discovery of CD95 and the first steps of its signaling pathway, Peter and colleagues described that cells can be divided in two groups with regard to the kinetics through which they respond to CD95-mediated apoptotic signals, the magnitude of DISC formation, and the role played by the mitochondrion in this pathway [75]. DISC formation occurs rapidly and efficiently in type I cells releasing a large amount of activated caspase-8 in the cytosol, while type II cells have difficulty forming this complex, and the amount of active caspase-8 is insufficient to directly activate the effectors caspase-3 and caspase-7 [75]. Nonetheless, type II cells experience cell death upon CD95 engagement and are even more sensitive to the CD95-mediated apoptotic signal compared to type I cells [75–77]. This discrepancy can be partly explained by the fact that the low amount of activated caspase-8 in type II cells is sufficient to cleave BID, a BH3-only protein, which constitutes the molecular link between caspase-8 activation and the apoptotic activity of mitochondria. Indeed, after cleavage by caspase-8, truncated BID (tBID) translocates to mitochondria, where it triggers the release of proapoptotic factors (Fig. 11.2) [78, 79]. Although CD95 stimulation activates the mitochondrion-dependent apoptotic signal in type I and type II cells, it seems that only type II cells are addicted to this signal as they display a higher amount of the caspase-3 inhibitor XIAP compared to type I cells [80]. Among the inhibitor of apoptosis protein (IAP) family, XIAP, cIAP1, and cIAP2 inhibit caspase-3, caspase-7 [81, 82], and procaspase-9 [83] activity by direct binding, thereby preventing access to substrates. Furthermore, XIAP can function as an E3 ligase whose activity is involved in the ubiquitination of active caspase-3 and its subsequent degradation through the proteasome [84]. To detach XIAP from caspase-3 and restore the apoptotic signal, cells require the release of SMAC/DIABLO (second mitochondria-derived activator of caspase/direct IAP-binding protein with low PI) by the mitochondrion [85, 86], explaining why type II cells are more addicted to this organelle compared to type I cells (Fig. 11.2).

To summarize, DISC formation and IAP amount are two cellular markers allowing a clear discrimination between type I and type II cells. Even though IAP overexpression can account for the mitochondrion dependency observed in type II cells, it remains unclear why DISC formation is hampered in type II cells and/or enhanced in their type I counterparts. Recently, high activity of the lipid kinase phosphoinositide 3-kinase (PI3K) or downregulation of its neutralizing phosphatase, phosphatase and tensin homologue on chromosome 10 (PTEN), was found in type II cells, while this signal is blocked in type I cell lines [87, 88]. The PI3K signaling pathway was reported to prevent the aggregation of CD95 [89], probably by retaining the receptor outside of lipid rafts [87, 90]. PEA-15, also known as PED, is a protein containing a death effector domain (DED) that has been shown to inhibit the CD95 and TNFR1 apoptotic signals (Fig. 11.2) [74]. Activation of PI3K and its downstream effector, serine-threonine kinase Akt, leads to phosphorylation of PEA-15 at serine 116 [87, 90]; this posttranslational modification promotes its interaction with FADD, ultimately inhibiting DISC formation [91, 92].

Notably, the existence of type I and type II cells is not only an in vitro observation, but has been identified physiologically in the human body. CD95-mediated apoptotic signal cannot be altered in thymocytes or activated T-cells expressing a Bcl-2 transgene, conferring to their type I nature [93], whereas hepatocytes expressing the same transgene resist CD95-induced apoptosis and thus behave as type II cells [94, 95].

11.3.3 What Can We Learn from CD95 Mutations?

Germinal mutations in *APT-1* have been reported in patients developing a syndrome termed autoimmune lymphoproliferative syndrome type Ia (ALPS, also called Canale-Smith syndrome) [96–98]. ALPS patients show chronic lymphadenopathy and splenomegaly, expanded populations of double-negative α/β-T-lymphocytes ($CD3^+CD4^-CD8^-$), and often develop autoimmunity [96, 97, 99, 100]. In agreement with the notion that CD95 behaves as a tumor suppressor, ALPS patients display an increased risk of Hodgkin and non-Hodgkin lymphoma [101]. Predominance of post-germinal center (GC) lymphomas in patients exhibiting either germ line or somatic CD95 mutations can be explained by the fact that, inside germinal centers of the secondary lymphoid follicles, the CD95 signal plays a pivotal role in the deletion of self-reactive maturating B-lymphocytes [102], in addition to the fact that *APT-1* belongs to a set of rare genes (i.e., PIM1, c-myc, PAX5, RhoH/TTF, and Bcl-6) subject to somatic hypermutation [103, 104], which may affect biological function. In addition to post-GC lymphomas, significant amounts of mutations in the CD95 gene were found in tumors of various histological origins (reviewed in [54]). Extensive analysis of CD95 mutations and their distribution in *APT-1* reveals that, with some exceptions, most are gathered in exons 8 and 9 encoding the CD95 intracellular region (Fig. 11.3) [105]. Remarkably, most of these mutations are heterozygous, mainly localized in CD95-DD, and lead to inhibition of the CD95-mediated apoptotic signal. Indeed, in agreement with the notion that CD95 is expressed at the plasma membrane as

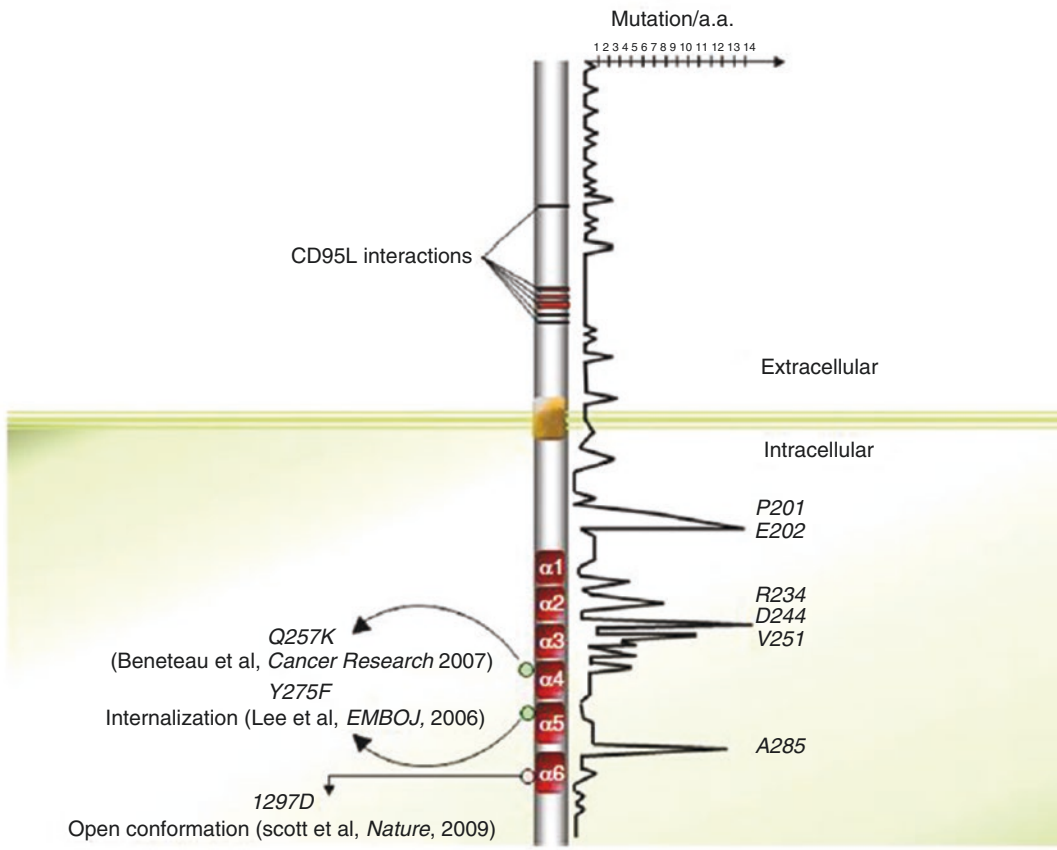


Fig. 11.3 Distribution of somatic and germinal mutations within CD95 protein sequence

a pre-associated homotrimer [23, 24], formation of heterocomplexes containing wild-type and mutated CD95 prevents FADD recruitment and abrogates the ignition of the apoptotic signal in a dominant manner.

Extensive analysis and positioning of various CD95 mutations described in the literature seem to highlight mutation "hot spots" in the CD95 sequence (Fig. 11.3). Among these hot spots, arginine 234, aspartic acid 244, and valine 251 account for a significant amount of the documented CD95 mutations. Indeed, among the 189 mutations annotated in the 335 amino acids of CD95, 30 (~16%) are localized on these three amino acids (Fig. 11.3). Strikingly, the pivotal role played by these amino acids in stabilization or formation of intra- and inter-bridges between CD95 and FADD may explain these hot spots. For instance, both R234 and D244 contribute to the homotypic aggregation of the receptor and FADD recruitment [67]. Nevertheless, the observation of death domain hot spots is in contradiction with the study of Scott and colleagues demonstrating that the region of the CD95-DD interacting with the FADD-DD extends over a disperse surface through weak binding affinity [68].

Most ALPS type Ia patients affected by malignancies do not undergo loss of heterozygosity (LOH), which formed the hypothesis that preservation of a wild-type allele may contribute to carcinogenesis [106, 107]. In the same line, it was demonstrated that expression of a unique mutated CD95 allele blocks the induction of apoptotic signals, while it fails to prevent non-apoptotic signals such as NF-κB and MAPK [106, 107], whose induction promotes invasiveness in tumor cells [105, 108]. In addition, mutations found in the intracellular CD95-DD exhibit a higher penetrance of ALPS phenotype features in mutation-bearing relatives compared to extracellular mutations. These results suggest that unlike DD mutations, CD95 mutations localized outside the DD somehow prevent the apoptotic signal but may fail to promote non-apoptotic pathways, which may contribute to disease aggressiveness.

11.3.4 Regulation of the Initial Steps of CD95-Mediated Signaling

11.3.4.1 Lipid Rafts

In addition to CD95 downregulation or expression of the mutated allele of the receptor, the plasma membrane distribution of CD95 represents an additional pathway for tumor cells to develop resistance to CD95L-expressing immune cells. Indeed, the plasma membrane is a heterogeneous lipid bilayer comprising compacted or liquid-ordered domains, called microdomains, lipid rafts, or detergent-resistant microdomains (DRMs). These domains are described as floating in a more fluid or liquid-disordered 2D lipid bilayer and are enriched in ceramides [109]. It has been elegantly shown that while CD95 is mostly excluded from lipid rafts in activated T-lymphocytes, TCR-dependent reactivation of these cells leads to rapid distribution of the death receptor into lipid rafts [110]. This CD95 compartmentalization contributes to reducing the apoptotic threshold leading to the clonotypic elimination of activated T-lymphocytes through activation of the CD95-mediated apoptotic signal [110]. Similarly, the reorganization of CD95 into DRMs can occur independent from ligand upon addition of certain chemotherapeutic drugs (e.g., rituximab [111], resveratrol [112, 113], edelfosine [87, 114, 115], aplidin [116], perifosine [115], cisplatin [117]). The molecular cascades that underlie this process remain elusive. Nevertheless, a growing body of evidence leads us to postulate that alteration of intracellular signaling pathway(s), such as the aforementioned PI3K signal [87, 90], may change biophysical properties of the plasma membrane, such as membrane fluidity, which in turn may facilitate CD95 clustering into large lipid raft-enriched platforms, favoring DISC formation and induction of the apoptotic program [118].

11.3.4.2 Posttranslational Modifications

Accumulation of CD95 mutations is not the only mechanism by which malignant cells inhibit the extrinsic signaling pathway. Posttranslational

modifications in the intracellular tail of CD95, such as reversible oxidation or covalent attachment of a palmitic acid, were reported to alter the plasma membrane distribution of CD95 and thereby its subsequent signaling pathway. For instance, S-glutathionylation of mouse CD95 at cysteine 294 promotes clustering of CD95 and its distribution into lipid rafts [119]. This amino acid is conserved in the human CD95 sequence and corresponds to cysteine 304 (or C288 when subtraction of the 16-amino acid signal peptide is taken into consideration [12, 120]). Interestingly, Janssen-Heininger and colleagues emphasize that death receptor glutathionylation occurs downstream of caspase-8 and caspase-3 activation whose catalytic activity damages the thiol-transferase glutaredoxin 1 (Grx1), an enzyme implicated in the denitrosylation of proteins [119]. The consequence of Grx1 inactivation is the accumulation of glutathionylated CD95, which clusters into lipid rafts, sensitizing cells to the CD95-mediated apoptotic signal. Based on these findings, caspase-8 activation occurs prior to aggregation of CD95 and redistribution into lipid rafts, both of which are requisite to form the DISC and subsequently activate larger amounts of caspase-8. In agreement with these observations, activation of caspase-8 was reported to occur in a two-step process. That is, an immediate and small amount of activated caspase-8 (<1%) is generated when CD95L interacts with CD95 that orchestrates acid sphingomyelinase (ASM) activation, ceramide production, and CD95 clustering, which in turn promote DISC formation and the outburst of caspase-8 processing essential to mount the apoptotic signal [121].

S-Glutathionylation consists in a bond between a reactive Cys-thiol and reduced glutathione (GSH), a tripeptide consisting of glycine, cysteine, and glutamate; its attachment to the protein will alter its structure and function in a manner similar to the addition of a phosphate [122]. S-Glutathionylation is not the only post-translational modification of CD95 on a cysteine. S-Nitrosylation of cysteine 199 (corresponding to C183 after subtraction of signal peptide sequence) and 304 (C288) in colon and breast tumor cells also promotes the redistribution of CD95 into DRMs, the formation of the DISC, and the transmission of the apoptotic signal [123].

Two reports have brought into light that covalent coupling of a 16-carbon fatty acid (palmitic acid) to cysteine 199 (C183) elicits the redistribution of CD95 into DRMs, the formation of SDS-stable CD95 microaggregates resistant to denaturing and reducing treatments, and the internalization of the receptor [124, 125]. Although their order remains to be fine-tuned, these molecular steps play a critical role in the implementation of apoptotic signals.

Of note, similar to S-nitrosylation, both the aforementioned S-glutathionylation at C304 (C288) and palmitoylation at C199 (C183) promote the partition of CD95 into lipid rafts and enhance the subsequent apoptotic signal. Further investigation is required to address whether these posttranslational modifications are redundant and occur simultaneously in dying cells or are elicited in a cell-specific and/or in a microenvironment-specific manner. Understanding the molecular mechanisms controlling these posttranslational modifications would be of great interest in order to identify the mechanism by which tumor cells block them, leading to their resistance to the extrinsic signaling pathway.

11.3.4.3 CD95 Internalization

Using a powerful magnetic method to isolate receptor-containing endocytic vesicles, it has been shown that CD95 promptly associates with endosomal and lysosomal markers when incubated with an agonistic anti-CD95 mAb [126]. In addition, expression of a CD95 mutant in which the DD-located tyrosine 291 (Y275) is changed to phenylalanine does not seem to alter the capacity to bind FADD but compromises CD95L-mediated CD95 internalization occurring through an AP2/clathrin-driven endocytic pathway [126]. More strikingly, expression of the internalization-defective CD95 mutant Y291F abrogates the transmission of apoptotic signals, but fails to alter the non-apoptotic signaling pathways (i.e., NF-κB and ERK), and even promotes them (Fig. 11.3). These findings provide insight into the presence of a region in the DD, interacting with AP2 and promoting a clathrin-dependent

endocytic pathway in a FADD-independent manner. Regarding the role of palmitoylation in receptor internalization, the interplay between lipid alteration and the AP2/clathrin-driven internalization of CD95 remains to be elucidated.

11.3.4.4 Ca^{2+} Response

It has been recently demonstrated that CD95 engagement evokes a rapid and transient Ca^{2+} signaling, which stimulates the recruitment of protein kinase C-β2 (PKC-β2) from the cytosol to the DISC [127]. This kinase transiently brakes DISC formation, providing a checkpoint before the irreversible commitment to cell death [128]. These findings raised the following questions: what are the Ca^{2+}-dependent molecular mechanisms transiently inhibiting DISC formation, and do tumor cells use this signal to escape the immune response and/or resist chemotherapy?

11.3.5 Programmed Necrosis also known as Necroptosis

In 1998, inhibition of caspase activity was shown to sensitize fibroblastic L929 cell line to TNF-mediated necrotic cell death [42]. With respect to CD95 signal, Tschopp et al. showed that FADD and RIP1 participate in the implementation of a non-apoptotic signaling pathway, which leads to a necrotic morphology without chromatin condensation and with loss of plasma membrane integrity [41]. Of note, BID cleavage was not observed in this necrotic signal. While FADD plays a crucial role in both apoptotic and necrotic pathways, RIP1 recruitment to CD95 occurs independently of this adaptor protein. Indeed, yeast two-hybrid experiments showed that RIP1 can bind directly to the CD95-DD, while this interaction is lost when a bait corresponding to mutated CD95-DD (replacement of Val 238 to Asn) is used [129]. In addition, RIP3 (RIPK3, a member of the RIP kinase family) is an indispensable factor for the induction of the necrotic signaling pathway [78–80]. A growing body of evidence supports the existence of necroptosis (programmed necrosis). In addition, identification of necrostatin, a chemical inhibitor of necroptosis [130], which specifically inhibits RIP1 kinase activity [131], has accelerated the pace of discovery in this field of cell death. Interplays exist between apoptosis and necroptosis; for instance, caspase-8, a potent inhibitor of necroptosis for both CD95 and TNFR1 [132], plays a critical role in necroptosis by its ability to process and inactivate RIP1 and RIP3 [133, 134]. At least for TNF signaling, the necrotic signal relies on the activity of CYLD, a deubiquitinating enzyme that is also cleaved and inactivated by caspase-8 [135].

Overall, these findings suggest that the apoptotic machinery controls the necrotic one. This concept has been recently established in vivo by double-KO experiments [44–46, 136]. The KO of FADD or caspase-8 is deleterious in mice mainly by the fact that these two apoptotic factors are beneficial in inhibiting a RIP1-/RIP3-dependent necrotic signal; thus, their loss unleashes the necroptotic program and leads to embryonic lethality. Yet, most studies on necroptosis have focused on the TNF signaling pathway, whereas the mechanism by which CD95 can elicit this cell death pathway, and how the switch in this receptor occurs between non-apoptotic, apoptotic, and necroptotic signals remains unclear. Importantly, the impact of each cell death on antigen presentation, and on the efficiency of immune response after elimination of infected or transformed cells, remains unclear.

11.3.6 CD95L, an Inflammatory/Oncogenic Cytokine?

11.3.6.1 A Ligand to Create Immune Privileges

The transmembrane CD95L (CD178/FasL) is present at the surface of activated lymphocytes [64] and NK cells [137] where it orchestrates the elimination of transformed and infected cells. In addition, CD95L is expressed on the surface of neurons [138], corneal epithelia and endothelia [58, 139], and Sertoli cells [59] to prevent the infiltration of immune cells and thus to prohibit the spread of inflammation in these sensitive organs (i.e., brain, eyes, and testis, respectively), commonly called “immune-privileged” sites.

The description of physiological immune privilege was followed by tumor-mediated immune privilege, since two groups reported that the ectopic expression of CD95L by malignant cells participated in the elimination of infiltrating T-lymphocytes and thus could play a role in the establishment of a tumor site whose access was denied to immune cells [140, 141]. However, these observations are controversial since ectopic expression of CD95L in allogenic transplant of β-islets [142, 143] and in tumor cell lines [144] led to a more rapid elimination of these cells than control cells, due to increased infiltration of neutrophils and macrophages endowed with antitumor activity.

11.3.6.2 At Least Two Different Ligands and Two Different Signals

Among the weapons at the disposal of immune cells, transmembrane CD95L contributes to the elimination of pre-tumor cells. Therefore, pre-tumor cells that escape the immunosurveillance will be shaped to develop resistance to CD95, a process termed immunoediting [145]. In other words, imprinting of the immune system on pre-tumor cells will select malignant cells with increased resistance toward the CD95L-induced signal. As previously mentioned, these alterations of the CD95 signal not only block the CD95-mediated apoptotic signal but also promote the transmission of non-apoptotic signals by CD95L, which may play a critical role in carcinogenesis [106–108, 146]. In agreement with this hypothesis, a complete loss of CD95 expression is rarely observed in malignant cells [147].

Accumulating evidence indicates that the apoptotic ligand CD95L behaves as a chemoattractant for neutrophils, macrophages [50, 143, 144], T-lymphocytes [53], and malignant cells in which the CD95-mediated apoptotic signal is nonproductive [108, 148]. Nonetheless, the biological role of CD95L has to be clarified due to the fact that pathophysiologically the ligand is present in at least two forms with different stoichiometries. Indeed, CD95L is a transmembrane cytokine whose ectodomain can be cleaved by metalloproteases such as MMP3 [149], MMP7 [150], MMP9 [151], and ADAM-10 (a disintegrin and metalloproteinase 10) [152, 153] and released as a soluble ligand in the bloodstream. Based on the data demonstrating that a hexameric CD95L represents the minimal level of self-association required to signal apoptosis [154] and that cleavage by metalloproteases releases an homotrimeric ligand [154, 155], this soluble ligand has long been considered as an inert ligand competing with its membrane-bound counterpart for CD95 binding, thus acting as an antagonist of the death signal [155, 156]. It has been recently demonstrated that this metalloprotease-cleaved CD95L (cl-CD95L) actively participates in the aggravation of inflammation and autoimmunity in patients affected by systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE) by inducing the non-apoptotic NF-κB and PI3K [51, 53] signaling pathways (Fig. 11.4). Unlike transmembrane CD95L, induction of the PI3K signaling pathway by its metalloprotease-cleaved counterpart occurs through the formation of a complex devoid of FADD and caspase-8 which recruits the src kinase c-yes instead [53, 148]; this unconventional receptosome was designated motility-inducing signaling complex (MISC) [53, 157] (Fig. 11.4). Even though experiments by the authors did not detect any trace of caspase-8 in the MISC, this enzyme has been shown to participate in cell migration. The protease activity of caspase-8 can be abolished by its phosphorylation at tyrosine 380 by src kinase [158]. This posttranslational modification was observed in cells stimulated with EGF and in colon cancer cells exhibiting constitutive activation of src; from a molecular standpoint, this modification does not alter caspase homodimerization or recruitment in DISC [158]. Moreover, the EGFR-driven phosphorylation of caspase-8 at Y380 turns out to be a potent inducer of the PI3K signaling pathway by recruiting the PI3K adaptor p85 alpha subunit [159]. Ultimately, caspase-8 phosphorylation triggers cell migration. Nonetheless, it is noteworthy that CD95-induced migration and invasion do not appear to require an intact DD (reviewed in [160]), suggesting that either the caspase-8-dependent mode of cell migration occurs as an alternative signal for death receptors or that it only participates in non-death

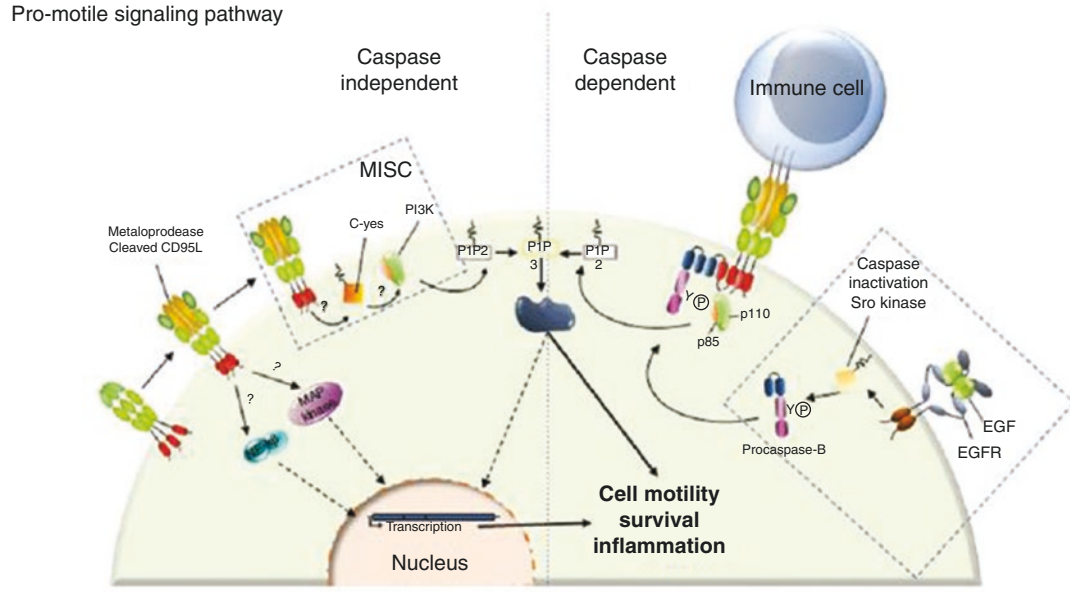


Fig. 11.4 CD95 triggers an unconventional PI3K signaling pathway. *Left panel*: In the presence of cl-CD95L, CD95 triggers MISC formation. This complex is devoid of FADD and caspase-8, but, instead, recruits the src kinase c-yes that implements the PI3K signaling pathway. CD95 engagement is also capable of NF-κB and MAPK activations through a yet unknown mechanism. *Right panel*: It was reported that procaspase-8 can be phosphorylated by the tyrosine kinase src upon EGFR stimulation. This posttranslational modification not only blocks the catalytic activity of caspase-8 but also promotes the recruitment of the p85 subunit of PI3K. We surmise that this caspase-8 phosphorylation may favor the non-apoptotic signals induced by CD95

receptor-induced cell motility. It would be interesting to address this question in the future. To date, it can only be surmised that phosphorylation of caspase-8 at Y380 upon EGFR stimulation may prime certain cancer cells to become unresponsive to the apoptotic signal triggered by cytotoxic CD95L and meanwhile promote cell migration, an essential event in the course of cancer cell metastasis (Fig. 11.4).

It is noteworthy that in a similar manner, a decrease in the plasma membrane level of CD95 or expression of a mutated CD95 allele, as observed in ALPS patients and malignant cells, inhibits the implementation of the apoptotic signal but does not affect the transmission of non-apoptotic signals, such as NF-κB, MAPK, and PI3K [106, 107, 147], suggesting that these signals may stem from a different domain than CD95-DD or rely on different thresholds to be elicited. In summary, although the CD95/CD95L interaction can eliminate malignant cells by implementation of the DISC or can promote carcinogenesis by sustaining inflammation and/or by inducing metastatic dissemination [50, 51, 53, 108, 147, 148, 161], the molecular mechanisms underlying the switch between these different signaling pathways remain enigmatic. An important question to be addressed is how the magnitude of CD95 aggregation controls the formation of "death"- vs. "motility"-ISCs. Addressing these questions will lead to the development of new therapeutic agents with the ability to contain the spread of inflammation or impede carcinogenesis at least in pathologies involving increased soluble CD95L such as cancers (e.g., pancreatic cancer [162], large granular lymphocytic leukemia, breast cancer [157], and NK cell lymphoma [163]) or autoimmune disorders (e.g., rheumatoid arthritis and osteoarthritis [164], graft-versus-host-disease (GVHD) [165, 166], or SLE [53, 167]). Altogether, these studies support the notion that the death function of CD95 may correspond to its "day job," while the receptor may act as "a night killer"

by fueling inflammation in certain pathophysiological contexts.

Strikingly, while the soluble form of CD95L generated by MMP7 (cleavage site inside the ^{113}ELR^{115} sequence, Fig. 11.5) induces apoptosis [150], its counterpart processed between serine 126 and leucine 127 does not [51, 53, 155]. To explain this discrepancy, one may speculate that the different quaternary structures of the naturally processed CD95L underlie the implementation of "death"- vs. "non-death"-inducing signaling complexes and downstream signals. In agreement with this notion, soluble CD95L bathed in the bronchoalveolar lavage (BALs) of patients suffering from acute respiratory distress syndrome (ARDS) undergoes oxidation at methionines 224 and 225 (Fig. 11.5), which enhances the aggregation level of the soluble ligand followed by its cytotoxic activity [168]. The same authors observed that the stalk region of CD95L, corresponding to amino acids 103–136 and encompassing the metalloprotease cleavage sites (Fig. 11.5), participates in the multimerization of CD95L, which accounts for the damage of the lung epithelium in ARDS [168]. Of note, in ARDS BALs, additional oxidation occurs at methionine 121 (Fig. 11.5), which in turn prevents the processing of CD95L by MMP7, and explains why this cytotoxic ligand keeps its stalk region [168]. Nonetheless, preservation of this region in soluble CD95L raises the question that whether an unidentified MMP7-independent cleavage site exists in the juxtamembrane region of CD95L, near the plasma membrane, or the ligand detected in ARDS patients corresponds to the full-length CD95L embedded in exosomes [169, 170]. Indeed, this peculiar exosome-bound CD95L can be expressed by human prostate cancer cells (i.e., LNCaP) and evokes apoptosis in activated T-lymphocytes [171].

Overall, these findings emphasize that it will be of great interest in the future to finely characterize the quaternary structure of the naturally processed CD95L from the sera of patients affected by cancers or chronic/acute inflammatory disorders, to better understand the molecular mechanisms implemented by this ligand and thus predict its subsequent biological functions.

11.4 Concluding Remarks

Apoptosis is a fundamental process contributing to tissue homeostasis, immune response, and development. CD95, also called Fas, is a member of the tumor necrosis factor receptor (TNFR) superfamily. Its ligand, CD95L, was initially detected at the plasma membrane of activated T-lymphocytes and natural killer (NK) cells where it contributes to the elimination of transformed and infected cells. Given its implication in immune homeostasis and immune surveillance combined with the fact that

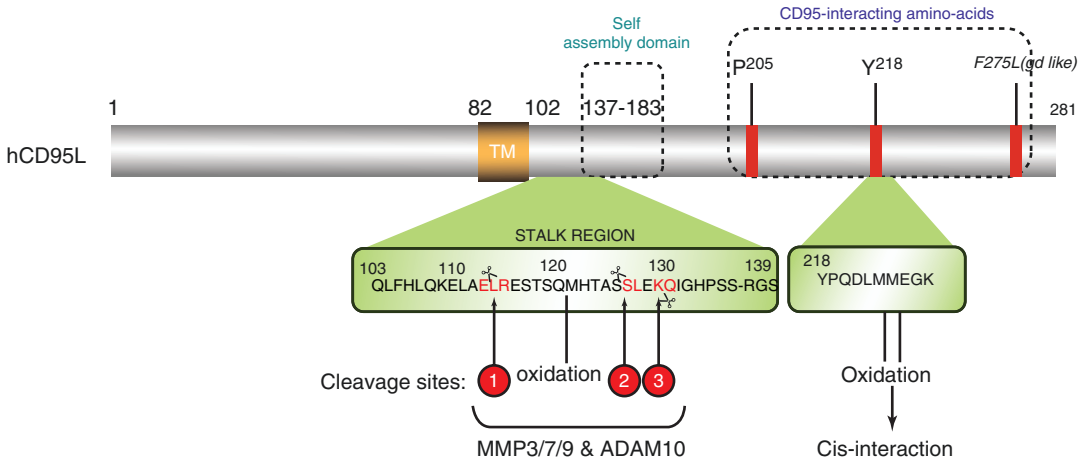


Fig. 11.5 CD95L: metalloprotease cleavage sites and domains

various lineages of malignant cells exhibit loss-of-function mutations, CD95 was initially classified as a tumor suppressor gene. Nonetheless, in different pathophysiological contexts, this receptor is able to transmit non-apoptotic signals and promote inflammation and carcinogenesis. Although the different non-apoptotic signaling pathways (NF-κB, MAPK, and PI3K) triggered by CD95 are known, the initial molecular events leading to these signals, the mechanisms by which the receptor switches from an apoptotic function to an inflammatory role, and, more importantly, the biological functions of these signals remain elusive.

References

1. Kerr JF, Wyllie AH, Currie AR. Apoptosis: a basic biological phenomenon with wide-ranging implications in tissue kinetics. Br J Cancer. 1972;26(4):239–57.
2. Micheau O, Tschopp J. Induction of TNF receptor I-mediated apoptosis via two sequential signaling complexes. Cell. 2003;114(2):181–90.
3. Shimohama S. Apoptosis in Alzheimer's disease – an update. Apoptosis. 2000;5(1):9–16.
4. Tatton WG. Apoptosis in Parkinson's disease: signals for neuronal degradation. Ann Neurol. 2003;53 Suppl 3:S61–70. discussion S70–2
5. Alnemri ES, et al. Human ICE/CED-3 protease nomenclature. Cell. 1996;87(2):171.
6. Hengartner MO. The biochemistry of apoptosis. Nature. 2000;407(6805):770–6.
7. Boldin MP, et al. A novel protein that interacts with the death domain of Fas/APO1 contains a sequence motif related to the death domain. J Biol Chem. 1995;270(14):7795–8.
8. Chinnaiyan AM, et al. FADD, a novel death domain-containing protein, interacts with the death domain of Fas and initiates apoptosis. Cell. 1995;81(4):505–12.
9. Hsu H, Xiong J, Goeddel DV. The TNF receptor 1-associated protein TRADD signals cell death and NF-kappa B activation. Cell. 1995;81(4):495–504.
10. Kischkel FC, et al. Cytotoxicity-dependent APO-1 (Fas/CD95)-associated proteins form a death-inducing signaling complex (DISC) with the receptor. EMBO J. 1995;14(22):5579–88.
11. Li P, et al. Cytochrome c and dATP-dependent formation of Apaf-1/caspase-9 complex initiates an apoptotic protease cascade. Cell. 1997;91(4):479–89.
12. Itoh N, et al. The polypeptide encoded by the cDNA for human cell surface antigen Fas can mediate apoptosis. Cell. 1991;66(2):233–43.
13. Loetscher H, et al. Molecular cloning and expression of the human 55 kd tumor necrosis factor receptor. Cell. 1990;61(2):351–9.
14. Pan G, et al. The receptor for the cytotoxic ligand TRAIL. Science. 1997;276(5309):111–3.
15. Walczak H, et al. TRAIL-R2: a novel apoptosis-mediating receptor for TRAIL. EMBO J. 1997;16(17):5386–97.
16. Pan G, et al. Identification and functional characterization of DR6, a novel death domain-containing TNF receptor. FEBS Lett. 1998;431(3):351–6.
17. Alderson MR, et al. Fas transduces activation signals in normal human T lymphocytes. J Exp Med. 1993;178(6):2231–5.
18. Schulze-Osthoff K, Krammer PH, Droge W. Divergent signalling via APO-1/Fas and the TNF receptor, two homologous molecules involved in physiological cell death. EMBO J. 1994;13(19):4587–96.
19. Smith CA, Farrah T, Goodwin RG. The TNF receptor superfamily of cellular and viral proteins: activation, costimulation, and death. Cell. 1994;76(6):959–62.
20. Locksley RM, Killeen N, Lenardo MJ. The TNF and TNF receptor superfamilies: integrating mammalian biology. Cell. 2001;104(4):487–501.
21. Bodmer JL, Schneider P, Tschopp J. The molecular architecture of the TNF superfamily. Trends Biochem Sci. 2002;27(1):19–26.
22. Edmond V, et al. Precise mapping of the CD95 pre-ligand assembly domain. PLoS One. 2012;7(9):e46236.
23. Papoff G, et al. Identification and characterization of a ligand-independent oligomerization domain in the extracellular region of the CD95 death receptor. J Biol Chem. 1999;274(53):38241–50.
24. Siegel RM, et al. Fas preassociation required for apoptosis signaling and dominant inhibition by pathogenic mutations. Science. 2000;288(5475):2354–7.
25. Itoh N, Nagata S. A novel protein domain required for apoptosis. Mutational analysis of human Fas antigen. J Biol Chem. 1993;268(15):10932–7.
26. Tartaglia LA, et al. A novel domain within the 55 kd TNF receptor signals cell death. Cell. 1993;74(5):845–53.
27. Tang W, et al. The growth factor progranulin binds to TNF receptors and is therapeutic against inflammatory arthritis in mice. Science. 2011;332(6028):478–84.
28. Cabal-Hierro L, Lazo PS. Signal transduction by tumor necrosis factor receptors. Cell Signal. 2012;24(6):1297–305.
29. Chan FK, et al. A domain in TNF receptors that mediates ligand-independent receptor assembly and signaling. Science. 2000;288(5475):2351–4.
30. Pennica D, et al. Human tumour necrosis factor: precursor structure, expression and homology to lymphotoxin. Nature. 1984;312(5996):724–9.
31. Black RA, et al. A metalloproteinase disintegrin that releases tumour-necrosis factor-alpha from cells. Nature. 1997;385(6618):729–33.

32. Moss ML, et al. Cloning of a disintegrin metalloproteinase that processes precursor tumour-necrosis factor-alpha. Nature. 1997;385(6618):733–6.
33. Grell M, et al. The transmembrane form of tumor necrosis factor is the prime activating ligand of the 80 kDa tumor necrosis factor receptor. Cell. 1995;83(5):793–802.
34. Wang CY, et al. NF-kappaB antiapoptosis: induction of TRAF1 and TRAF2 and c-IAP1 and c-IAP2 to suppress caspase-8 activation. Science. 1998;281(5383):1680–3.
35. Haas TL, et al. Recruitment of the linear ubiquitin chain assembly complex stabilizes the TNF-R1 signaling complex and is required for TNF-mediated gene induction. Mol Cell. 2009;36(5):831–44.
36. Kirisako T, et al. A ubiquitin ligase complex assembles linear polyubiquitin chains. EMBO J. 2006;25(20):4877–87.
37. Gerlach B, et al. Linear ubiquitination prevents inflammation and regulates immune signalling. Nature. 2011;471(7340):591–6.
38. Poukkula M, et al. Rapid turnover of c-FLIPshort is determined by its unique C-terminal tail. J Biol Chem. 2005;280(29):27345–55.
39. Enesa K, et al. NF-kappaB suppression by the deubiquitinating enzyme Cezanne: a novel negative feedback loop in pro-inflammatory signaling. J Biol Chem. 2008;283(11):7036–45.
40. Green DR, et al. RIPK-dependent necrosis and its regulation by caspases: a mystery in five acts. Mol Cell. 2011;44(1):9–16.
41. Holler N, et al. Fas triggers an alternative, caspase-8-independent cell death pathway using the kinase RIP as effector molecule. Nat Immunol. 2000;1(6):489–95.
42. Vercammen D, et al. Inhibition of caspases increases the sensitivity of L929 cells to necrosis mediated by tumor necrosis factor. J Exp Med. 1998;187(9):1477–85.
43. Cho YS, et al. Phosphorylation-driven assembly of the RIP1-RIP3 complex regulates programmed necrosis and virus-induced inflammation. Cell. 2009;137(6):1112–23.
44. Kaiser WJ, et al. RIP3 mediates the embryonic lethality of caspase-8-deficient mice. Nature. 2011;471(7338):368–72.
45. Oberst A, et al. Catalytic activity of the caspase-8-FLIP(L) complex inhibits RIPK3-dependent necrosis. Nature. 2011;471(7338):363–7.
46. Welz PS, et al. FADD prevents RIP3-mediated epithelial cell necrosis and chronic intestinal inflammation. Nature. 2011;477(7364):330–4.
47. Feldmann M, Maini RN. Lasker clinical medical research award TNF defined as a therapeutic target for rheumatoid arthritis and other autoimmune diseases. Nat Med. 2003;9(10):1245–50.
48. Desbarats J, et al. Fas engagement induces neurite growth through ERK activation and p35 upregulation. Nat Cell Biol. 2003;5(2):118–25.
49. Desbarats J, Newell MK. Fas engagement accelerates liver regeneration after partial hepatectomy. Nat Med. 2000;6(8):920–3.
50. Letellier E, et al. CD95-ligand on peripheral myeloid cells activates Syk kinase to trigger their recruitment to the inflammatory site. Immunity. 2010;32(2):240–52.
51. O'Reilly LA, et al. Membrane-bound Fas ligand only is essential for Fas-induced apoptosis. Nature. 2009;461(7264):659–63.
52. Ruan W, Lee CT, Desbarats J. A novel juxtamembrane domain in tumor necrosis factor receptor superfamily molecules activates Rac1 and controls neurite growth. Mol Biol Cell. 2008;19(8):3192–202.
53. Tauzin S, et al. The naturally processed CD95L elicits a c-yes/calcium/PI3K-driven cell migration pathway. PLoS Biol. 2011;9(6):e1001090.
54. Tauzin S, et al. CD95-mediated cell signaling in cancer: mutations and post-translational modulations. Cell Mol Life Sci. 2012;69(8):1261–77.
55. Trauth BC, et al. Monoclonal antibody-mediated tumor regression by induction of apoptosis. Science. 1989;245(4915):301–5.
56. Suda T, et al. Molecular cloning and expression of the Fas ligand, a novel member of the tumor necrosis factor family. Cell. 1993;75(6):1169–78.
57. Oshimi Y, et al. Involvement of Fas ligand and Fas-mediated pathway in the cytotoxicity of human natural killer cells. J Immunol. 1996;157(7):2909–15.
58. Griffith TS, et al. Fas ligand-induced apoptosis as a mechanism of immune privilege. Science. 1995;270(5239):1189–92.
59. Bellgrau D, et al. A role for CD95 ligand in preventing graft rejection. Nature. 1995;377(6550):630–2.
60. Watanabe-Fukunaga R, et al. Lymphoproliferation disorder in mice explained by defects in Fas antigen that mediates apoptosis. Nature. 1992;356(6367):314–7.
61. Adachi M, Watanabe-Fukunaga R, Nagata S. Aberrant transcription caused by the insertion of an early transposable element in an intron of the Fas antigen gene of lpr mice. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 1993;90(5):1756–60.
62. Chu JL, et al. The defect in Fas mRNA expression in MRL/lpr mice is associated with insertion of the retrotransposon, ETn. J Exp Med. 1993;178(2):723–30.
63. Kimura M, Matsuzawa A. Autoimmunity in mice bearing lprcg: a novel mutant gene. Int Rev Immunol. 1994;11(3):193–210.
64. Takahashi T, et al. Generalized lymphoproliferative disease in mice, caused by a point mutation in the Fas ligand. Cell. 1994;76(6):969–76.
65. Strasser A, Jost PJ, Nagata S. The many roles of FAS receptor signaling in the immune system. Immunity. 2009;30(2):180–92.
66. Behrmann I, Walczak H, Krammer PH. Structure of the human APO-1 gene. Eur J Immunol. 1994;24(12):3057–62.
67. Huang B, et al. NMR structure and mutagenesis of the Fas (APO-1/CD95) death domain. Nature. 1996;384(6610):638–41.
68. Scott FL, et al. The Fas-FADD death domain complex structure unravels signalling by receptor clustering. Nature. 2009;457(7232):1019–22.

69. Esposito D, et al. Solution NMR investigation of the CD95/FADD homotypic death domain complex suggests lack of engagement of the CD95 C terminus. Structure. 2010;18(10):1378–90.
70. Wang L, et al. The Fas-FADD death domain complex structure reveals the basis of DISC assembly and disease mutations. Nat Struct Mol Biol. 2010;17(11):1324–9.
71. Muppidi JR, et al. Homotypic FADD interactions through a conserved RXDLL motif are required for death receptor-induced apoptosis. Cell Death Differ. 2006;13(10):1641–50.
72. Irmler M, et al. Inhibition of death receptor signals by cellular FLIP. Nature. 1997;388(6638):190–5.
73. Thome M, et al. Viral FLICE-inhibitory proteins (FLIPs) prevent apoptosis induced by death receptors. Nature. 1997;386(6624):517–21.
74. Condorelli G, et al. PED/PEA-15: an anti-apoptotic molecule that regulates FAS/TNFR1-induced apoptosis. Oncogene. 1999;18(31):4409–15.
75. Scaffidi C, et al. Two CD95 (APO-1/Fas) signaling pathways. EMBO J. 1998;17(6):1675–87.
76. Algeciras-Schimnich A, et al. Two CD95 tumor classes with different sensitivities to antitumor drugs. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2003;100(20):11445–50.
77. Chaigne-Delalande B, et al. CD95 engagement mediates actin-independent and -dependent apoptotic signals. Cell Death Differ. 2009;16(12):1654–64.
78. Yin XM. Signal transduction mediated by bid, a pro-death Bcl-2 family proteins, connects the death receptor and mitochondria apoptosis pathways. Cell Res. 2000;10(3):161–7.
79. Yin XM, et al. Bid-deficient mice are resistant to Fas-induced hepatocellular apoptosis. Nature. 1999;400(6747):886–91.
80. Jost PJ, et al. XIAP discriminates between type I and type II FAS-induced apoptosis. Nature. 2009;460(7258):1035–9.
81. Roy N, et al. The c-IAP-1 and c-IAP-2 proteins are direct inhibitors of specific caspases. EMBO J. 1997;16(23):6914–25.
82. Deveraux QL, et al. X-linked IAP is a direct inhibitor of cell-death proteases. Nature. 1997;388(6639):300–4.
83. Deveraux QL, et al. IAPs block apoptotic events induced by caspase-8 and cytochrome c by direct inhibition of distinct caspases. EMBO J. 1998;17(8):2215–23.
84. Suzuki Y, Nakabayashi Y, Takahashi R. Ubiquitin-protein ligase activity of X-linked inhibitor of apoptosis protein promotes proteasomal degradation of caspase-3 and enhances its anti-apoptotic effect in Fas-induced cell death. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2001;98(15):8662–7.
85. Du C, et al. Smac, a mitochondrial protein that promotes cytochrome c-dependent caspase activation by eliminating IAP inhibition. Cell. 2000;102(1):33–42.
86. Sun XM, et al. Bcl-2 and Bcl-xL inhibit CD95-mediated apoptosis by preventing mitochondrial release of Smac/DIABLO and subsequent inactivation of X-linked inhibitor-of-apoptosis protein. J Biol Chem. 2002;277(13):11345–51.
87. Beneteau M, et al. Localization of Fas/CD95 into the lipid rafts on down-modulation of the phosphatidylinositol 3-kinase signaling pathway. Mol Cancer Res. 2008;6(4):604–13.
88. Peacock JW, et al. PTEN loss promotes mitochondrially dependent type II Fas-induced apoptosis via PEA-15. Mol Cell Biol. 2009;29(5):1222–34.
89. Varadhachary AS, et al. Phosphatidylinositol 3′-kinase blocks CD95 aggregation and caspase-8 cleavage at the death-inducing signaling complex by modulating lateral diffusion of CD95. J Immunol. 2001;166(11):6564–9.
90. Pizon M, et al. Actin-independent exclusion of CD95 by PI3K/AKT signalling: implications for apoptosis. Eur J Immunol. 2011;41(8):2368–78.
91. Renganathan H, et al. Phosphorylation of PEA-15 switches its binding specificity from ERK/MAPK to FADD. Biochem J. 2005;390(Pt 3):729–35.
92. Trencia A, et al. Protein kinase B/Akt binds and phosphorylates PED/PEA-15, stabilizing its antiapoptotic action. Mol Cell Biol. 2003;23(13):4511–21.
93. Strasser A, et al. Bcl-2 and Fas/APO-1 regulate distinct pathways to lymphocyte apoptosis. EMBO J. 1995;14(24):6136–47.
94. Lacronique V, et al. Bcl-2 protects from lethal hepatic apoptosis induced by an anti-Fas antibody in mice. Nat Med. 1996;2(1):80–6.
95. Rodriguez I, et al. A bcl-2 transgene expressed in hepatocytes protects mice from fulminant liver destruction but not from rapid death induced by anti-Fas antibody injection. J Exp Med. 1996;183(3):1031–6.
96. Drappa J, et al. Fas gene mutations in the Canale-Smith syndrome, an inherited lymphoproliferative disorder associated with autoimmunity. N Engl J Med. 1996;335(22):1643–9.
97. Fisher GH, et al. Dominant interfering Fas gene mutations impair apoptosis in a human autoimmune lymphoproliferative syndrome. Cell. 1995;81(6):935–46.
98. Rieux-Laucat F, et al. Mutations in Fas associated with human lymphoproliferative syndrome and autoimmunity. Science. 1995;268(5215):1347–9.
99. Canale VC, Smith CH. Chronic lymphadenopathy simulating malignant lymphoma. J Pediatr. 1967;70(6):891–9.
100. Rieux-Laucat F, et al. Lymphoproliferative syndrome with autoimmunity: a possible genetic basis for dominant expression of the clinical manifestations. Blood. 1999;94(8):2575–82.
101. Straus SE, et al. The development of lymphomas in families with autoimmune lymphoproliferative syndrome with germline Fas mutations and defective lymphocyte apoptosis. Blood. 2001;98(1):194–200.
102. Hennino A, et al. FLICE-inhibitory protein is a key regulator of germinal center B cell apoptosis. J Exp Med. 2001;193(4):447–58.

103. Montesinos-Rongen M, et al. Primary diffuse large B-cell lymphomas of the central nervous system are targeted by aberrant somatic hypermutation. Blood. 2004;103(5):1869–75.
104. Muschen M, et al. The origin of CD95-gene mutations in B-cell lymphoma. Trends Immunol. 2002;23(2):75–80.
105. Peter ME, Legembre P, Barnhart BC. Does CD95 have tumor promoting activities? Biochim Biophys Acta. 2005;1755(1):25–36.
106. Legembre P, Barnhart BC, Peter ME. The relevance of NF-kappaB for CD95 signaling in tumor cells. Cell Cycle. 2004;3(10):1235–9.
107. Legembre P, et al. Induction of apoptosis and activation of NF-kappaB by CD95 require different signalling thresholds. EMBO Rep. 2004;5(11):1084–9.
108. Barnhart BC, et al. CD95 ligand induces motility and invasiveness of apoptosis-resistant tumor cells. EMBO J. 2004;23(15):3175–85.
109. Grassme H, et al. CD95 signaling via ceramide-rich membrane rafts. J Biol Chem. 2001;276(23):20589–96.
110. Muppidi JR, Siegel RM. Ligand-independent redistribution of Fas (CD95) into lipid rafts mediates clonotypic T cell death. Nat Immunol. 2004;5(2):182–9.
111. Stel AJ, et al. Fas receptor clustering and involvement of the death receptor pathway in rituximab-mediated apoptosis with concomitant sensitization of lymphoma B cells to fas-induced apoptosis. J Immunol. 2007;178(4):2287–95.
112. Delmas D, et al. Resveratrol-induced apoptosis is associated with Fas redistribution in the rafts and the formation of a death-inducing signaling complex in colon cancer cells. J Biol Chem. 2003;278(42):41482–90.
113. Delmas D, et al. Redistribution of CD95, DR4 and DR5 in rafts accounts for the synergistic toxicity of resveratrol and death receptor ligands in colon carcinoma cells. Oncogene. 2004;23(55):8979–86.
114. Gajate C, et al. Intracellular triggering of Fas aggregation and recruitment of apoptotic molecules into Fas-enriched rafts in selective tumor cell apoptosis. J Exp Med. 2004;200(3):353–65.
115. Gajate C, Mollinedo F. Edelfosine and perifosine induce selective apoptosis in multiple myeloma by recruitment of death receptors and downstream signaling molecules into lipid rafts. Blood. 2007;109(2):711–9.
116. Gajate C, Mollinedo F. Cytoskeleton-mediated death receptor and ligand concentration in lipid rafts forms apoptosis-promoting clusters in cancer chemotherapy. J Biol Chem. 2005;280(12):11641–7.
117. Lacour S, et al. Cisplatin-induced CD95 redistribution into membrane lipid rafts of HT29 human colon cancer cells. Cancer Res. 2004;64(10):3593–8.
118. Segui B, Legembre P. Redistribution of CD95 into the lipid rafts to treat cancer cells? Recent Pat Anticancer Drug Discov. 2010;5(1):22–8.
119. Anathy V, et al. Redox amplification of apoptosis by caspase-dependent cleavage of glutaredoxin 1 and S-glutathionylation of Fas. J Cell Biol. 2009;184(2):241–52.
120. Oehm A, et al. Purification and molecular cloning of the APO-1 cell surface antigen, a member of the tumor necrosis factor/nerve growth factor receptor superfamily. Sequence identity with the Fas antigen. J Biol Chem. 1992;267(15):10709–15.
121. Grassme H, et al. Ceramide-mediated clustering is required for CD95-DISC formation. Oncogene. 2003;22(35):5457–70.
122. Chen CA, et al. S-glutathionylation uncouples eNOS and regulates its cellular and vascular function. Nature. 2010;468(7327):1115–8.
123. Leon-Bollotte L, et al. S-nitrosylation of the death receptor fas promotes fas ligand-mediated apoptosis in cancer cells. Gastroenterology. 2011;140(7):2009–18, 2018 e1–4.
124. Chakrabandhu K, et al. Palmitoylation is required for efficient Fas cell death signaling. EMBO J. 2007;26(1):209–20.
125. Feig C, et al. Palmitoylation of CD95 facilitates formation of SDS-stable receptor aggregates that initiate apoptosis signaling. EMBO J. 2007;26(1):221–31.
126. Lee KH, et al. The role of receptor internalization in CD95 signaling. EMBO J. 2006;25(5):1009–23.
127. Khadra N, et al. CD95 triggers Orai1-mediated localized Ca2+ entry, regulates recruitment of protein kinase C (PKC) beta2, and prevents death-inducing signaling complex formation. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2011;108(47):19072–7.
128. Penna A, et al. The CD95 signaling pathway: to not die and fly. Commun Integr Biol. 2012;5(2):190–2.
129. Stanger BZ, et al. RIP: a novel protein containing a death domain that interacts with Fas/APO-1 (CD95) in yeast and causes cell death. Cell. 1995;81(4):513–23.
130. Degterev A, et al. Chemical inhibitor of nonapoptotic cell death with therapeutic potential for ischemic brain injury. Nat Chem Biol. 2005;1(2):112–9.
131. Degterev A, et al. Identification of RIP1 kinase as a specific cellular target of necrostatins. Nat Chem Biol. 2008;4(5):313–21.
132. Lee EW, et al. The roles of FADD in extrinsic apoptosis and necroptosis. BMB Rep. 2012;45(9):496–508.
133. Lin Y, et al. Cleavage of the death domain kinase RIP by caspase-8 prompts TNF-induced apoptosis. Genes Dev. 1999;13(19):2514–26.
134. Feng S, et al. Cleavage of RIP3 inactivates its caspase-independent apoptosis pathway by removal of kinase domain. Cell Signal. 2007;19(10):2056–67.
135. O'Donnell MA, et al. Caspase 8 inhibits programmed necrosis by processing CYLD. Nat Cell Biol. 2011;13(12):1437–42.
136. Peter ME. Programmed cell death: apoptosis meets necrosis. Nature. 2011;471(7338):310–2.
137. Montel AH, et al. Fas involvement in cytotoxicity mediated by human NK cells. Cell Immunol. 1995;166(2):236–46.

138. Saas P, et al. Fas ligand expression by astrocytoma in vivo: maintaining immune privilege in the brain? J Clin Invest. 1997;99(6):1173–8.
139. Stuart PM, et al. CD95 ligand (FasL)-induced apoptosis is necessary for corneal allograft survival. J Clin Invest. 1997;99(3):396–402.
140. Hahne M, et al. Melanoma cell expression of Fas(Apo-1/CD95) ligand: implications for tumor immune escape. Science. 1996;274(5291):1363–6.
141. O'Connell J, et al. The Fas counterattack: Fas-mediated T cell killing by colon cancer cells expressing Fas ligand. J Exp Med. 1996;184(3):1075–82.
142. Allison J, et al. Transgenic expression of CD95 ligand on islet beta cells induces a granulocytic infiltration but does not confer immune privilege upon islet allografts. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 1997;94(8):3943–7.
143. Kang SM, et al. Fas ligand expression in islets of Langerhans does not confer immune privilege and instead targets them for rapid destruction. Nat Med. 1997;3(7):738–43.
144. Chen JJ, Sun Y, Nabel GJ. Regulation of the proinflammatory effects of Fas ligand (CD95L). Science. 1998;282(5394):1714–7.
145. Bui JD, Schreiber RD. Cancer immunosurveillance, immunoediting and inflammation: independent or interdependent processes? Curr Opin Immunol. 2007;19(2):203–8.
146. Beneteau M, et al. Dominant-negative Fas mutation is reversed by down-expression of c-FLIP. Cancer Res. 2007;67(1):108–15.
147. Chen L, et al. CD95 promotes tumour growth. Nature. 2010;465(7297):492–6.
148. Kleber S, et al. Yes and PI3K bind CD95 to signal invasion of glioblastoma. Cancer Cell. 2008;13(3):235–48.
149. Matsuno H, et al. Stromelysin-1 (MMP-3) in synovial fluid of patients with rheumatoid arthritis has potential to cleave membrane bound Fas ligand. J Rheumatol. 2001;28(1):22–8.
150. Vargo-Gogola T, et al. Identification of novel matrix metalloproteinase-7 (matrilysin) cleavage sites in murine and human Fas ligand. Arch Biochem Biophys. 2002;408(2):155–61.
151. Kiaei M, et al. Matrix metalloproteinase-9 regulates TNF-alpha and FasL expression in neuronal, glial cells and its absence extends life in a transgenic mouse model of amyotrophic lateral sclerosis. Exp Neurol. 2007;205(1):74–81.
152. Kirkin V, et al. The Fas ligand intracellular domain is released by ADAM10 and SPPL2a cleavage in T-cells. Cell Death Differ. 2007;14(9):1678–87.
153. Schulte M, et al. ADAM10 regulates FasL cell surface expression and modulates FasL-induced cytotoxicity and activation-induced cell death. Cell Death Differ. 2007;14(5):1040–9.
154. Holler N, et al. Two adjacent trimeric Fas ligands are required for Fas signaling and formation of a death-inducing signaling complex. Mol Cell Biol. 2003;23(4):1428–40.
155. Schneider P, et al. Conversion of membrane-bound Fas(CD95) ligand to its soluble form is associated with downregulation of its proapoptotic activity and loss of liver toxicity. J Exp Med. 1998;187(8):1205–13.
156. Suda T, et al. Membrane Fas ligand kills human peripheral blood T lymphocytes, and soluble Fas ligand blocks the killing. J Exp Med. 1997;186(12):2045–50.
157. Malleter M, et al. CD95L cell surface cleavage triggers a pro-metastatic signaling pathway in triple negative breast cancer. Cancer Res. 2013;73(22):6711–21.
158. Cursi S, et al. Src kinase phosphorylates Caspase-8 on Tyr380: a novel mechanism of apoptosis suppression. EMBO J. 2006;25(9):1895–905.
159. Senft J, Helfer B, Frisch SM. Caspase-8 interacts with the p85 subunit of phosphatidylinositol 3-kinase to regulate cell adhesion and motility. Cancer Res. 2007;67(24):11505–9.
160. Steller EJ, Borel Rinkes IH, Kranenburg O. How CD95 stimulates invasion. Cell Cycle. 2011;10(22):3857–62.
161. Bivona TG, et al. FAS and NF-kappaB signalling modulate dependence of lung cancers on mutant EGFR. Nature. 2011;471(7339):523–6.
162. Bellone G, et al. Production and pro-apoptotic activity of soluble CD95 ligand in pancreatic carcinoma. Clin Cancer Res. 2000;6(6):2448–55.
163. Tanaka M, et al. Fas ligand in human serum. Nat Med. 1996;2(3):317–22.
164. Hashimoto H, et al. Soluble Fas ligand in the joints of patients with rheumatoid arthritis and osteoarthritis. Arthritis Rheum. 1998;41(4):657–62.
165. Das H, et al. Levels of soluble FasL and FasL gene expression during the development of graft-versus-host disease in DLT-treated patients. Br J Haematol. 1999;104(4):795–800.
166. Kanda Y, et al. Increased soluble Fas-ligand in sera of bone marrow transplant recipients with acute graft-versus-host disease. Bone Marrow Transplant. 1998;22(8):751–4.
167. Tomokuni A, et al. Serum levels of soluble Fas ligand in patients with silicosis. Clin Exp Immunol. 1999;118(3):441–4.
168. Herrero R, et al. The biological activity of FasL in human and mouse lungs is determined by the structure of its stalk region. J Clin Invest. 2011;121(3):1174–90.
169. Alonso R, et al. Diacylglycerol kinase alpha regulates the formation and polarisation of mature multivesicular bodies involved in the secretion of Fas ligand-containing exosomes in T lymphocytes. Cell Death Differ. 2011;18(7):1161–73.
170. Bianco NR, et al. Modulation of the immune response using dendritic cell-derived exosomes. Methods Mol Biol. 2007;380:443–55.
171. Abusamra AJ, et al. Tumor exosomes expressing Fas ligand mediate CD8+ T-cell apoptosis. Blood Cells Mol Dis. 2005;35(2):169–73.

12 MHC Class I Molecules and Cancer Progression: Lessons Learned from Preclinical Mouse Models

Irene Romero, Ignacio Algarra, and Angel M. Garcia-Lora

Contents

12.1 Introduction

The major histocompatibility complex (MHC) is composed of a set of molecules that play a pivotal role in the immune response against different pathogens and tumor cells. These molecules were described in mice for the first time by Gorer while performing transplantation studies with tumor cell lines injected in inbred strains of mice [1]. In the middle of the 1950s, Jean Dausset described the HLA system in humans which is equivalent to the mouse H-2 complex [2]. MHC class I (MHC-I)

I. Romero · A. M. Garcia-Lora (✉)
Servicio de Analisis Clinicos & Inmunologia, UGC Laboratorio Clinico, Hospital Universitario Virgen de las Nieves, ibs.Granada, Granada, Spain
e-mail: angel.miguel.exts@juntadeandalucia.es

I. Algarra
Departamento de Ciencias de la Salud, Facultad de Ciencias Experimentales, Universidad de Jaen, Jaen, Spainialgarra@ujaen.es

N. Rezaei (ed.), *Cancer Immunology*, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-30845-2_12

molecules comprise the classical (class Ia) HLA-A, HLA-B, and HLA-C antigens in humans and H-2 K, H-2 D, and H-2 L in mice and the nonclassical (class Ib) HLA-E, HLA-F, and HLA-G in humans and Qa and Tla antigens in mice [3]. Their structure is quite similar in humans and mice, forming a trimolecular complex consisting of a 45 kDa highly polymorphic heavy chain, a peptide antigen, and the nonpolymorphic 12 kDa β_2-microglobulin (β2m) light chain [4]. HLA/H-2 class I molecules are expressed on the surface of nucleated cells [5]. It is estimated that there are up to 250,000 of each MHC-I molecule on the surface of a somatic cell [6].

MHC-I molecules bind antigens in the form of peptides, generated from endogenous proteins, present on the cell surface to $CD8^+$ T-cells. In tumor cells, MHC-I molecules present tumor-associated antigens (TAAs) to cytotoxic T-lymphocytes (CTLs) activating cell proliferation, cytokine production, and target cell lysis. These TAAs are generated from degraded foreign endogenous proteins by the antigen presentation machinery (APM). This process is carried out by a large number of proteins and accessory molecules [7–9]. Correct functioning of these APM components gives rise to cells with normal surface expression of the MHC-I molecules [10, 11]. Any defect in these processes will lead to nonexpression of MHC-I molecules on the cell surface. These MHC-I-deficient tumor cells might be recognized by natural killer (NK) cells [12].

In this chapter, we will focus on analyzing the role of MHC-I antigens in cancer immunosurveillance in murine tumor models without obviating the great contributions done in human tumor models; the authors' laboratory is the reference to the findings described.

12.2 MHC-I Cell Surface Expression on Tumor Cells and Primary Tumor Growth

For over 30 years, our group of investigators has worked on human and mouse preclinical tumor models in an attempt to define the mechanisms through which tumor cells evade the immune system. We have found that tumor cells develop sophisticated molecular and biological mechanisms which allow them to escape immunosurveillance. Among the mechanisms studied, MHC alteration is one of the most important and frequent mechanisms, possibly playing a relevant role in the tumor-host scenario [13–15]. Any alteration affecting the surface expression of MHC-I molecules, the expression and function of APM components, and the expression of MHC-I heavy chains or β2m in tumor cells will have a profound effect on the recognition and killing of those tumor cells by T-lymphocytes [16, 17]. In this context, a new phase has been proposed into the tumor evolution, called the *immunoblindness* phase, which comes after the three phases of the immunoediting process [18]. During this phase, CTLs lose control over tumor cells, since losing MHC-I surface expression makes them invisible.

Our research group has a long and well-established history identifying and defining the HLA class I altered phenotypes present in human tumors. In fact, the data accumulated indicate that alterations in HLA class I expression are commonly found in most human tumors [19, 20]. Seven different altered HLA class I phenotypes have been defined in a large variety of human tumors, and the molecular mechanisms that have been found to underlie these alterations in MHC-I expression are multiple [21]. These defects can occur at any step required for MHC synthesis, assembly, transport, or expression on the cell surface. Only some of these defects can be recovered by cytokines or other agents, while others remain unrecovered. Thus, MHC alterations can be classified into two main groups: reversible defects (regulatory or soft) and irreversible defects (structural or hard) [22, 23].

Many studies in human and experimental tumors have reported variations in MHC-I antigen cell surface expression [24–27]. These variations have been associated with important changes in tumor behavior and metastatic colonization [28, 29]. The crucial role of MHC-I in local tumor growth and metastasis has also been demonstrated in many different murine tumor models. The first detection of MHC-I lack in mouse tumors was described in 1976; loss of

one H-2 K^k private specificity was reported in Gardener lymphoma derived from a C3H mouse [25]. Following these studies, different groups reported altered expression of MHC molecules in other tumors, i.e., the absence of some H-2^d molecules in a methylcholanthrene-induced sarcoma (MCG4) in a BALB/c mouse [30], loss of K^k antigen (Ag) expression in a particular AKR tumor cell line designated K36.16 (this tumor cell line showed resistance to killing by AKR anti-MuLV CTLs in vitro) [31], loss of the products of the H-2 L^d locus in a BALB/c fibrosarcoma [32], and absence of H-2 Ds Ags in SJL/J lymphomas [33].

Another field in the study of MHC-I Ags in murine tumors originates from transfection of MHC-I molecules in MHC-I-deficient murine tumors. The transfection and cell surface expression of one *H-2*^{k} gene product in the AKR lymphoma cell line K36.16, a subline of K36 (H-2 K^k-negative) lymphoma, inhibited the syngeneic growth of this tumor [34, 35]. Studies with the methylcholanthrene (MCA)-induced T10 sarcoma demonstrated that the transfection of K^k or K^b gene into H-2 K-negative parental cells reduced tumorigenicity and abolished the formation of metastasis in syngeneic mice [36]. Similar results were obtained in other experimental models [37]. In all these studies, absence of MHC-I molecules has been interpreted as a factor which selects immunodeficient variants and represents a major escape mechanism from T-cell recognition. The reconstitution of H-2 class I expression has demonstrated that even MHC-I molecules on tumor cells are responsible for regulation of NK susceptibility. Restoration of these molecules by transfection with *β2m* gene resulted in a strong decrease in susceptibility to NK lysis in the S3 cell line, a negative variant for H-2 D^b and K^b of the murine thymoma EL4 [38].

The differential expression of H-2 class I K, H-2 class I D, and H-2 class I L molecules is another event present in some tumors. Studies on AKR-derived B-cell lymphomas (H-2^k) have shown that D^k molecules are processed slower than K^k molecules, with a half-time of 4–5 h [39]. Other studies have shown that L^d Ags are expressed at levels three to four times lower than D^d or K^d Ags [40]. This is in line with the studies that show that in BALB/c S49 lymphoma sublines, there is a locus-specific regulation for K^d, D^d, and L^d surface molecules [41]. The differential expression of these molecules on the cell surface could be a mechanism used by the tumor cells to escape from immunosurveillance. Therefore, these studies all together could add to our knowledge about tumor biology [39]. Some examples of this locus-specific regulation have been documented in other tumor models. Green and coworkers have studied an MuLV-induced AKR tumor in which the expressed H-2 K and H-2 D Ags are differentially induced by IFN-γ [42]. In the spontaneous BALB/c line 1 murine carcinoma, it has been shown that the inductions of MHC-I antigen expression by IFN-γ and DMSO differ at the molecular level. A point mutation in the D1 region of the D^d promoter diminished IFN-γ responsiveness, but did not alter induction of D^d molecule by DMSO. Thus, DMSO appears to regulate MHC-I transcription through multiple regions of the MHC-I heavy-chain promoter by mechanisms distinct from IFN-γ [43]. Studies with mutant phenotypes have led to the description of factors controlling the folding, the intracellular transport, and the surface expression of class I molecules [44].

Components of APM are important elements in the MHC-I cell surface expression. Alteration in the Ag presentation pathway may serve as an evasive mechanism rendering tumors unrecognizable by host immunosurveillance mechanisms. Certain murine tumor cell lines, such as the chemical-induced CMS-5, EL4, MCA102, and MCA205 cells, with deficient expression and/or function of multiple APM components, in particular the peptide transporters (TAPs) and tapasin, show reduced levels of MHC-I surface expression accompanied by low immunogenicity, hence evading T-cell-mediated immune recognition in vivo [45]. In the B16 melanoma, MHC-I-deficient phenotype has been attributed to the downregulation or loss of the expression and function of multiple APM components [46]. In other studies, it has been shown that inoculation of C57BL/6 mice with a mixture of TAP-1-positive and TAP-1-negative tumor cell lines, generated from a transformed murine fibroblast

line, produced tumors exclusively composed of TAP-1-negative cells, indicating an in vivo selection for TAP-deficient cells. Thus, loss of TAP function can allow tumor cells to avoid T-cell immunity producing tumor cells with increased tumorigenicity [16]. In the APM-deficient mouse lung carcinoma cell line CMT.64, reexpression of TAP-1 after infection with TAP-1 adenovirus vector led to an increase of MHC-I cell surface expression and increased susceptibility to specific CTLs [47].

In addition, there are examples of tumor progression associated with increased expression of MHC Ags. For instance, one H-2 class I-deficient cell line from RBL-5 lymphoma (RMA-S), isolated after mutagenization and several cycles of selection by lysis of MHC-I-positive cells, was rejected in syngeneic C57BL/6 mice. In contrast, the H-2-positive wild-type cell line (RMA) was highly tumorigenic [48]. The transfection of this H-2 class I-deficient mutant (RMA-S) with *TAP-2* gene led to a marked increase in tumor outgrowth potential in vivo. This occurred despite restored antigen presentation and sensitivity to CTLs and was found to be due to escape from NK cell-mediated rejection. These data suggest that a defect in the machinery responsible for processing and loading of peptides into MHC-I molecules is sufficient to render cells sensitive to elimination by NK cells [49]. These data are in accordance with the *missing self-hypothesis* [12] in which NK cells are able to distinguish class I-expressing and class I-deficient tumor cells. These cells are able to kill TAP-deficient RMA-S cells (H-2 class I negative) more efficiently compared to RMA cells (MHC-I positive). NK cells refrain from killing when target cells express self-MHC-I molecules [50]. Similar results have been obtained after IFN-γ treatment in murine H-2-negative YAC-1 lymphoma cell line. In this case, reexpression of H-2 antigens abrogated NK lysis of the cells [51]. In other tumors including EL4 lymphoma [12, 48] and murine tumor cell lines expressing human papilloma virus (HPV) 16-derived E6/E7 oncoproteins TC-1 (MHC-I-positive) and MK16 (MHC-I-negative) variants, NK cells appear to be an effective tool against MHC-I-deficient cells [52, 53]. In this case, immunization with the MHC-I-negative (MK16), but not with TC-1 (MHC-I-positive), cell line inhibits the growth of MHC-I-negative tumors. NK cells are responsible for this immunity, although IFN-γ production by $CD4^+$ and $CD8^+$ T-cells cannot be excluded [54]. The heterogeneity of MHC-I expression in tumor cell population and the balance of the MHC-restricted CTL and MHC-unrestricted NK cell immune mechanisms determine the final outcome of the MHC-I expression in the primary tumor [55].

12.2.1 Studies in GR9 Tumor Model: H-2 Antigen Surface Expression and Tumorigenic Capacity

Since the generation of the GR9 tumor model in the 1980s, our knowledge about the role of MHC-I molecules in the tumor scene has increased dramatically [28, 29, 56, 57, 58]. GR9 tumor model is a subcutaneously induced methylcholanthrene (MCA) fibrosarcoma in BALB/c. The original tumor mass was directly adapted to tissue culture without any in vivo passage in syngeneic or allogeneic mice to avoid immunoselection [56]. Forty-three cell lines were obtained after cloning using a phase-contrast microscope and limiting dilution, adapted to tissue culture and cryopreserved. The GR9 fibrosarcoma tumor and the GR9-derived clones have been extensively studied and characterized by our group. The H-2 class I phenotype of the different cell lines was analyzed (Fig. 12.1) [13, 56, 59]. GR9 cell line presents surface expression of the three H-2 class I molecules (K^d, D^d, and L^d), and it is composed of tumor clones with a great heterogeneity in H-2 phenotype which could be classified in four groups: highly positive clones (D8, A7, G2), middle positive clones (B10, B7, B3), low positive clones (B6, C11, C5, G10), and very low/negative clones (B9, B11) (Fig. 12.1) [13, 56, 59]. Transcriptional analysis of the H-2 class I heavy chain, β2m, and APM component genes showed a correlation between the expression of these genes and the surface expression of MHC-I molecules [59]. A coordinated transcrip-

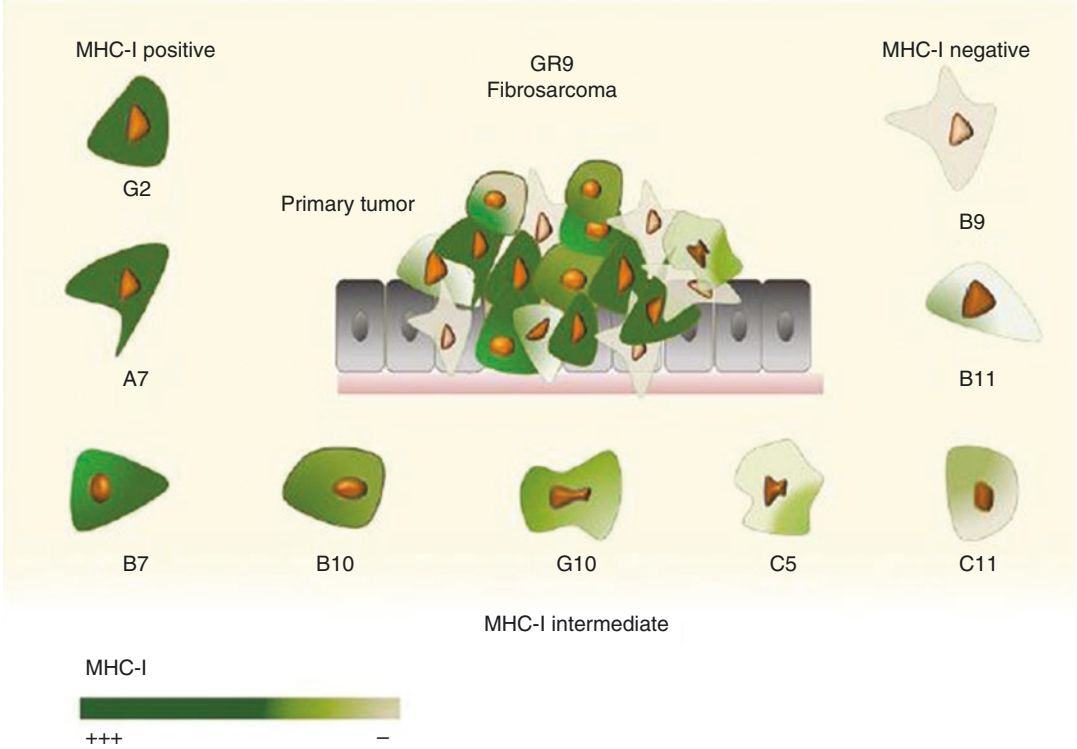


Fig. 12.1 GR9 fibrosarcoma tumor model. Cell clones are adapted to tissue culture from the primary tumor and classified according to MHC-I surface expression

tional downregulation of H-2 L^d heavy chain, calreticulin, LMP-2, and TAP-1 has been found in B11, B7, and C5 clones in comparison with A7 clone. In all instances, H-2 class I K^d, D^d, and L^d molecules of all tumor cell lines could be recovered after IFN-γ treatment [59]. This data indicates that tumor cells have reversible (soft) defects underlying MHC alterations [23, 60]. More recently, we have shown that the tumor suppressor gene *Fhit* is involved in the coordinated transcriptional regulation of various APM components and/or MHC-I heavy chains [58]. Transcriptional levels of Fhit are significantly lower in tumor clones with low expression of MHC-I molecules. Results have shown that the transcriptional level of *Fhit* in A7 clone is 1.4 higher than those found in B7 clones and 3.6 and 3.2 times higher than those expressed in C5 and B11 clones [59].

The intratumoral heterogeneity in H-2 class I expression presented in GR9 cell lines is not an unusual case since other MCA-induced tumors obtained in our laboratory (GRB7.1, GRB7.2, and GRIR5) presented similar levels of H-2 class I heterogeneity. These differences have a strong influence on in vivo tumor behavior in immunocompetent mice [13]. Local tumor growth of different clones of GR9 in syngeneic immunocompetent BALB/c mice showed an inverse correlation between the MHC-I phenotype of tumor clones and their local tumorigenic capacity [59, 61]. Comparing local tumor growth after subcutaneous injection of 6.25×10^5 cells of A7, B7, C5, and B11, we found that all cell lines grew in vivo locally. A7 and B7 showed similar growth rate, but different from C5 and B11. Thus, local tumors of mice injected with C5 and B11 cell clones began to grow at day 8 and were removed at days 23 and 28, respectively. In contrast, the other two clones, A7 and B7 cells, began to grow later at days 14 and 16 postinjection, respectively; the primary tumor was removed at day

39. Clones with high MHC-I expression are very immunogenic in local tumor growth experiments; in contrast, clones with decreased MHC-I expression grew rapidly in vivo when injected subcutaneously. The behavior is totally opposite in spontaneous metastatic capacity (see the following section). In brief, results clearly show that in this tumor model, an inverse correlation between MHC-I surface expression on tumor clones and local tumorigenic capacity exists. Moreover, these differences in local tumor growth were associated with an immune response, since the clones progressed similarly in irradiated syngeneic BALB/c mice [61].

12.3 MHC-I Expression and Metastatic Progression

Metastatic progression is a complex process during which cancer cells leave the heterogeneous primary tumor to spread to secondary sites. Thus, pathogenesis of cancer metastases involves a set of sequential events initiated when tumor cells acquire an invasive phenotype [62–64]. These invasive tumor cells detach from the matrix, invade the tissue, and migrate toward the blood or lymphatic vessels to finally get access to the systemic circulation. However, most tumor cells are destroyed after extravasation into circulation by the immune system or hemodynamic forces, and only a small proportion eventually extravasate and arrive at the new site [65, 66]. This last step requires complex interactions between tumor cells and distant tissue microenvironment [67, 68]. Some in vitro model systems have contributed to the study of individual steps of the metastatic cascade [69, 70]. However, the major limitation of these models is that they do not incorporate the complex interplay between the host and tumor cells; therefore, it is necessary to work with in vivo models. One of the most common problems about cancer research and treatment is difficulty reproducing metastatic human disease using in vivo models. Preclinical tumor models must mimic the fundamental steps associated with the metastatic cascade [71, 72]. Three main types of models in vivo have been employed to approximate the situation observed in patients with advanced metastatic disease: genetically engineered mouse models (GEMM), transplantable tumor model systems (GRAFT) or spontaneous metastasis assays, and experimental metastasis assays. At first, an oncogenic alteration is introduced (deletion or overexpression) in a specific tissue [63, 73–75]. The other alternative extensively used, GRAFTs, recapitulates all steps of secondary colonization by spontaneous visceral metastasis. In these models, tumors or tumor cell lines are transplanted into mouse, generating a primary tumor that will be excised to prolong survival of the host, thus increasing the possibility of distant spontaneous metastases [76–79]. Experimental metastasis assay also is the other common test to investigate biological behavior of tumor cells in vivo. In experimental metastasis assays, tumor cells are directly injected into blood circulation to spread to organs. We considered that spontaneous metastasis assay resembles all sequential steps associated with the metastatic cascade, from primary local tumor to secondary colonization. In contrast, experimental metastasis assay is a bypass in the metastatic cascade, evading the first steps: local primary tumor growth, migration, and extravasation into the blood and/or lymphatic vessels. Our research group has compared the behavior of different tumor cell lines in experimental and spontaneous metastasis assays, finding that it is opposite. Tumor cell lines with high spontaneous metastatic ability showed very low experimental metastatic capacity [59]. In consequence, we think that experimental metastasis assays should not be used as a model for studying metastatic advanced disease.

12.3.1 MHC Class I Expression on Primary Tumor Cells May Determine Spontaneous Metastatic Capacity

During the late 1970s, heterogeneity in metastatic potential of tumor populations was demonstrated by Fidler and Kripke, using a mouse malignant melanoma [80]. Great difference

between the abilities of clones from the B16 cell line was observed in terms of developing metastatic colonies in vivo. This fact suggests that a heterogeneous population composed the primary tumor where there were nonmetastatic and metastatic tumor cells. Later research on various cell lines including clones with different metastatic potentials isolated in tumor cell populations of BALB/cfC3H mammary adenocarcinoma or [81] methylcholanthrene- [82] or ultraviolet light-induced fibrosarcomas [83, 84] supported these findings. However, Haywood and McKhann were the first to suggest the possible influence of the MHC-I genes on metastatic capacities of tumor cell populations [85]. They compared metastatic capacity of five methylcholanthrene-induced sarcomas, finding that more metastatic tumors had quantitatively more H-2 surface expression. These results, as well as later evidences observed by other groups, showed that the level of MHC-I expression was implicated in the metastatic capacity of the tumor cells. Three different spontaneous tumors originated in mouse, Lewis lung carcinoma (3LL), B16 melanoma, and BW T lymphoma, have been used by Eisenbach's research group to show whether metastasis disease is influenced by MHC-associated mechanisms. They worked with different tumor cell variants of these tumors, finding that metastatic ability directly correlated with surface expression levels of the H-2 D Ags and inversely of the H-2 K Ags [86–89]. Moreover, H-2 K-negative/D-positive clones with high metastatic ability reverted their metastatic phenotype, inducing H-2 K-restricted CTLs when transfected with the *H-2 K* gene [87, 90, 91, 92]. In brief, these results support that the metastatic phenotype is associated with H-2 D surface expression and loss of H-2 K surface expression in primary tumor cells. In this context, Kazav et al. using T10 sarcoma (H-2 b × H-2 k) [induced by methylcholanthrene in a (C57BL/6J X C3HeB/-FeJ) mouse] reported that expression of MHC-I increased the metastatic capacity of tumor cells [93, 94]. Several clones of T10 sarcoma presented differential expression of H-2^b and H-2^k haplotypes: H-2^b × H-2^k positive and only H-2^b positive. Metastatic clones characterized to express both parental haplotypes and nonmetastatic clones only showed expression of H-2^b haplotype [95]. Furthermore, metastatic potential in this tumor system was only acquired when H-2 D^k-Ags were expressed on the surface of tumor clones. Moreover, T10 clones expressing only H-2 D^k-Ags were more metastatic than clones expressing both H-2 D^b and H-2 D^k-Ags, while clones merely expressing H-2 D^b Ag were nonmetastatic [95, 96].

12.3.2 Different MHC-I Surface Expressions on GR9 Tumor Clones Determine Their Spontaneous Metastatic Capacity

In our laboratory, the GR9 fibrosarcoma murine model was used to assess whether levels of MHC-I surface expression on primary tumor cells exert influence on their spontaneous metastatic capacity. Four cell clones (A7, B7, C5, and B11) with different MHC-I surface expressions were chosen for spontaneous metastasis assays (Fig. 12.1). Results showed significant differences in metastatic capacity between these clones [59]. For example, A7 clone with a strong H-2 class I surface expression was highly metastatic, generating metastases in 90% of the hosts and resulting in 1–50 metastases per animal. Clones with intermediate or low H-2 class I expression, as B7 or C5, presented lower metastatic capacity, 50 and 20%, respectively. In contrast, MHC-I-negative B11 clone did not present spontaneous metastatic capacity, and the B11 tumor-bearing mice remained free of overt metastasis at the end of the assays for more than 24 months. However, when these immunocompetent hosts were immunodepleted of T- or NK lymphocytes, overt pulmonary metastases appeared in the immunodepleted hosts. These data show that hosts injected with B11 clone presented micrometastases in permanent immunodormancy [97]. In brief, cell clones with high surface expression of H-2 class I molecules were also highly metastatic, but those clones with low or negative H-2 class I expression were weakly metastatic or nonmetastatic (Fig. 12.2). Our experimental evidences support

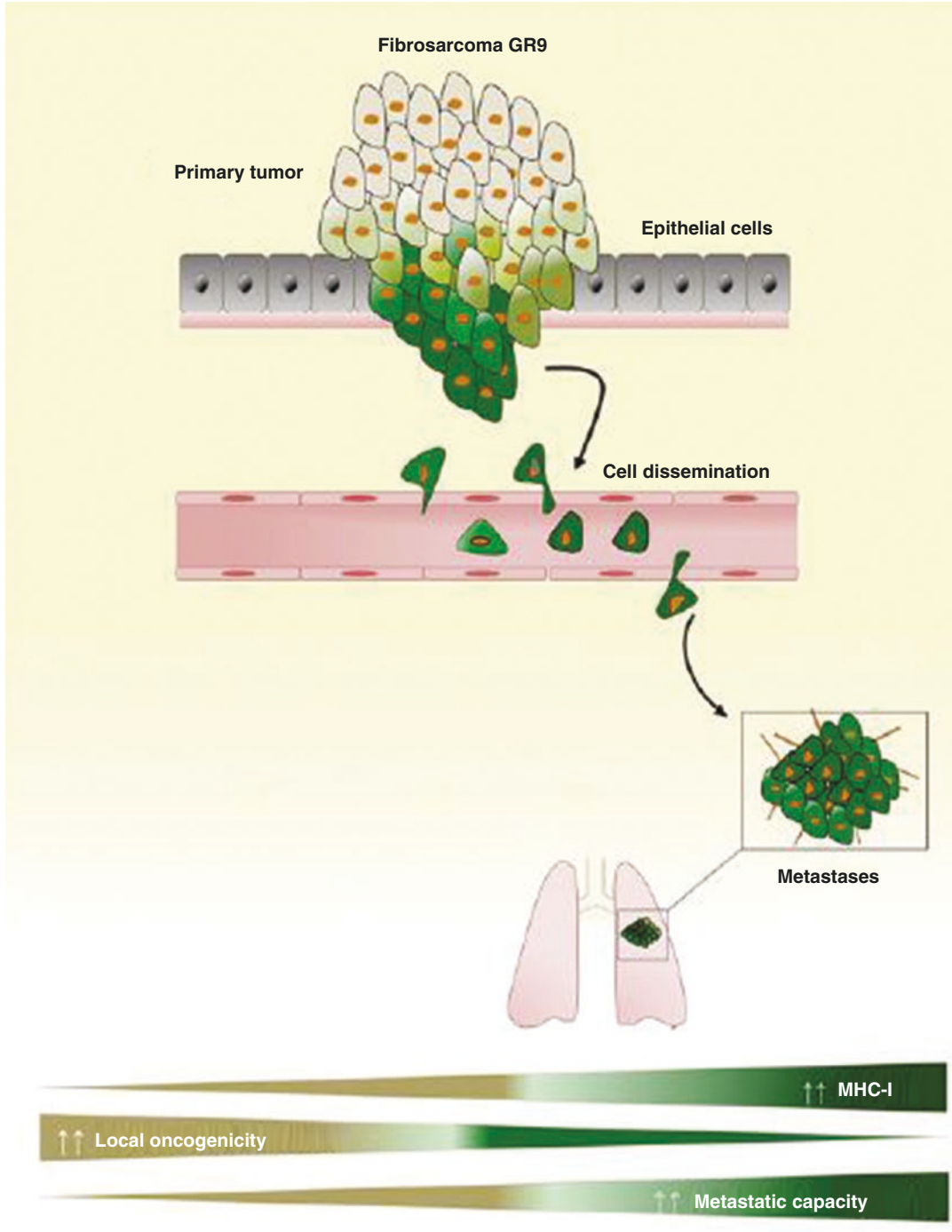


Fig. 12.2 Schematic representation of the dissemination and invasion of GR9 primary tumor cells. MHC-I-positive tumor cells from GR9 primary tumor presented a high spontaneous metastatic capacity, whereas MHC-I-negative tumor cells presented a weak spontaneous metastatic capacity

the idea that levels of MHC-I surface expression of primary tumor cells directly correlated with spontaneous metastasis ability and inversely with local oncogenicity, as it was shown above [59] (Fig. 12.2). Consequently, extrapolation of oncogenic and metastatic behavior of tumor cells in vivo is not always possible, because they may be completely opposite.

Analysis of MHC-I cell surface expression on spontaneous metastases derived from these fibrosarcoma clones displayed that in all cases the metastases presented the same or lower MHC-I surface expression than the original clone [59]. In consequence, metastatic progression promoted a downregulation in MHC-I surface expression. Analysis of leukocyte subpopulations in tumor-bearing mice revealed a distinct behavior among different clones. A7 and B7 produced immunosuppression characterized by decrease in T-lymphocytes and increase in Treg cells [29]. In contrast, B11 tumor-bearing mice developed a strong immunostimulation characterized by an increase in T-lymphocytes, dendritic cells, and macrophages cells [97]. In brief, A7 and B7 cells progressed to metastatic disease suppressing the immune response, whereas the B11 clone promoted an immune response which avoided metastatic progression. The other GR9 tumor clone studied was B9, with H-2-negative surface expression and with weak spontaneous metastatic capacity (zero to one metastasis per mouse). In contrast, this clone is highly metastatic using nu/nu BALB/c mice, ranging from five to seven per mouse [28, 98]. Moreover, metastases were H-2 class I negative in immunocompetent hosts and H-2 positive in immunodeficient hosts. Thus, we observed that H-2 phenotype of spontaneous metastases was influenced by the immunological state of the hosts.

The GR9 fibrosarcoma cell line, composed of different cell clones, presented intermediate levels of H-2 K^d, H-2 D^d, and H-2 L^d molecules. Analysis of spontaneous metastasis assay with GR9 tumor cells revealed that GR9 cells have high spontaneous metastatic capacity; 90% of tumor-bearing mice develop metastases, ranging from one to nine per animal. GR9 produced strong immunosuppression in tumor-bearing mice. Interestingly, 96% of metastases derived from GR9 clone showed downregulation of MHC-I surface expression. These results suggest that MHC-I-positive clones, as A7 or B7, produced immunosuppression, favoring the growth of MHC-I low or negative clones.

Other experimental evidences from our tumor model also support the idea that in GR9 fibrosarcoma tumor, the amount of MHC-I Ags also affects NK cell cytotoxicity [99]. Since NK cells have been recognized as one of the main host immunological mechanisms against metastasis disease, this notion seems imperative [100]. In our system, tumor clones with no or low expression of MHC-I molecules were found to be sensitive to NK-mediated lysis, while clones with high levels of MHC-I expression were relatively resistant [99].

12.4 Immunotherapy as a Treatment Against Cancers with Different MHC-I Surface Expressions

12.4.1 Immunotherapy as a Treatment Against Primary Tumors with Different Levels of MHC-I Expression

As mentioned above, MHC-I molecules present TAAs to CTLs; therefore, MHC-I surface expression on tumor cells may play an important role in the outcome of immunotherapies as anticancer treatments. During treatment with vaccines containing peptides derived from TAAs, MHC-I-positive surface expression on tumor cells presenting these TAAs is crucial to make this immunotherapy effective. As a consequence, before the application of immunotherapies, MHC-I surface expression on tumor cells must be analyzed. Furthermore, two immunosuppressive mechanisms have been described recently showing evasion of tumor cells from CTL attack, mediated by expression of noncognate MHC-I molecules or by myeloid-derived suppressor cells (MDSCs) [101, 102].

Several murine tumor models have been used to evaluate the application of different immunotherapies to recover MHC-I surface expression in MHC-I-deficient tumor cells, in order to promote an antitumor immune response. In MHC-I-negative B16 melanoma cells, intratumoral electroporation of IL-12 cDNA promoted an increase in their MHC-I surface expression, mediated by IFN-γ, leading to the eradication of established melanomas by activation of CTLs [103]. In cervical carcinoma cells, administration of synthetic oligodeoxynucleotide-bearing CpG motifs (CpG-ODNs) upregulated MHC-I surface expression causing tumor regression mediated by CTLs [104]. Other studies also have reported that CpG-ODN immunotherapies delayed the growth or inhibited minimal residual tumor disease of both MHC-deficient and MHC-positive tumors [105, 106]. Moreover, combination of dendritic cell-based vaccines with CpG generated inhibition of tumor growth in MHC-positive and MHC-negative tumors [107]. CpG-ODN 1585 only produced regression of MHC-deficient tumors, principally activating NK cells [106]. In other assays, depletion of T(reg) cells avoided the growth of recurrent tumors after surgery of MHC-negative and MHC-positive tumors [108]. In all these assays, the action against MHC-I-deficient tumors was mediated by NK or NK1.1$^+$ cells [109]. Previous to the application of immunotherapy, MHC-I-deficient tumor cells may be treated with agents to upregulate MHC-I surface expression. Epigenetic mechanisms are frequently implicated in MHC-I downregulation of tumor cells; as a result, application of agents as 5-azacytidine (5AC) or trichostatin A could increase MHC-I surface expression [110, 111]. Treatment of 5AC with CpG-ODN or with IL-12 showed additive effect against MHC-I-deficient tumors, being the immune response mediated by CD8$^+$ T-cells [112]. Other chemoimmunotherapies, based on ifosfamide derivative CBM-4A together with IL-12, also led to significant inhibition in the growth of MHC-I-deficient tumors [113].

12.4.2 Immunotherapy as a Treatment Against Metastatic Progression Derived from Primary Tumors with Different MHC-I Expressions

Immunotherapy has also been used as an antimetastatic treatment against spontaneous metastasis derived from primary tumors with different MHC-I expressions. As mentioned above, studies performed by Eisenbach et al. showed an inverse correlation between H-2 K tumor cell surface expression and spontaneous metastatic capacity [86, 89, 90, 114]. Tumor cell lines derived from H-2 K-low or H-2 K-deficient primary tumors presented high spontaneous metastatic capacity, which was reverted by transfection of tumor cells with *H-2 K* gene [86, 115, 116]. Moreover, injection of the H-2 K-transfected tumor cells that protect against metastatic disease originated from H-2 K-low or H-2 K-deficient tumors. Furthermore, therapy with IFN-γ-treated tumor cells or with H-2 K-transfected tumor cells promoted upregulation of H-2 K surface expression and protected against metastatic dissemination from parental tumor cells [114, 116]. An additional effect was reached when tumor cells were jointly transfected with IFN-γ and allogeneic *MHC class I* genes [117].

In GR9 murine tumor model, the influence of MHC-I cell surface expression on primary tumors has been investigated with respect to the success of immunotherapy as antimetastatic treatment. A7 is a fibrosarcoma clone with strong spontaneous metastatic capacity. Four treatments were used: two immunotherapies (CpG + irradiated autologous A7 cells and PSK) [118], one chemotherapy (docetaxel), and one chemoimmunotherapy (PSK + docetaxel). A7 tumor clone was injected subcutaneously in BALB/c mice, and the primary tumor was excised when the large tumor diameter reached 10 mm. Treatment began 1 week after tumor removal, on a weekly basis during 6 weeks; 1 week after the last dose, mice were euthanized, and autopsy

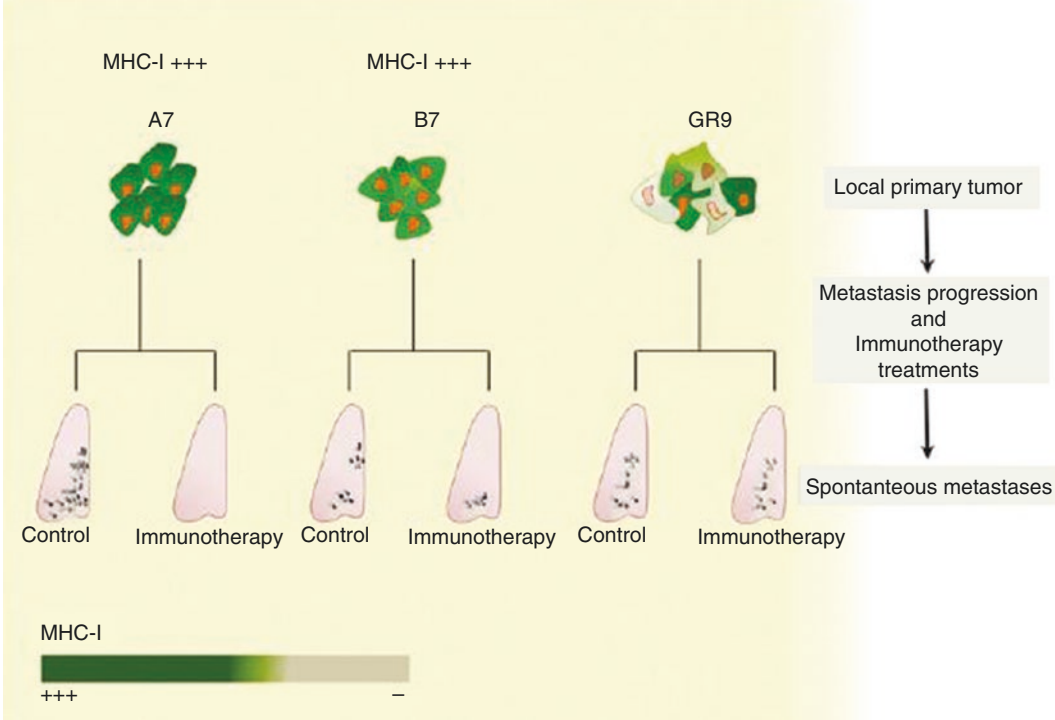


Fig. 12.3 Immunotherapy as an antimetastatic treatment against tumors with different MHC-I expressions. Immunotherapy was completely effective in inhibiting spontaneous metastatic progression in A7 tumor clone (MHC-I highly positive). For B7 tumor clone (intermediate level of MHC-I expression), immunotherapy accomplished partial reduction in the number of spontaneous metastases. In the case of GR9 fibrosarcoma, immunotherapy had no antimetastatic effect

was performed. Interestingly, all mice treated with each immunotherapy or chemo-immunotherapy appeared metastasis-free (Fig. 12.3) [29]. In contrast, partial reduction in the number of metastases occurred in the mice treated with chemotherapy. In the control group, mice injected with A7 tumor cells and treated with saline solution, a high number of spontaneous metastases in all mice were observed (Fig. 12.3) [29]. In brief, the two immunotherapy protocols and the one chemo-immunotherapy protocol eradicated metastasis completely and cured the mice, whereas chemotherapy treatment reduced the number of metastases partially. When the same four treatment protocols were applied against spontaneous metastases generated from B7 fibrosarcoma clone (intermediate MHC-I expression level and with lower spontaneous metastatic capacity than A7 clone), the antimetastatic effect was not as effective (Fig. 12.3). PSK, PSK + docetaxel, and docetaxel promoted partial reduction in the number of metastases, whereas that CpG + irradiated autologous B7 cell treatment did not produce any antimetastatic effect [119]. In the case of spontaneous metastases derived from GR9 fibrosarcoma, neither treatment had any antimetastatic effect [119]. Analysis of lymphocyte subpopulations in different assays showed that growth of local tumors promotes strong immunosuppression in the three cases. However, this immunosuppression was completely reverted by immunotherapies in the case of A7-injected mice, was partially reverted for B7-injected mice, and remained unchanged in GR9-injected mice [29, 119]. All these results suggest that immunotherapies may be potential antimetastatic treatments against primary tumors with high MHC-I cell surface expression.

12.5 Concluding Remarks

In tumor cells, MHC-I molecules may present peptides derived from tumor-associated antigens, which are new proteins expressed or overexpressed in tumor cells. Presentation of these new peptides may allow recognition and destruction of tumor cells by CD8+ T-lymphocytes. Loss of MHC-I expression on tumor cells is a widespread and frequent mechanism developed to escape from immunosurveillance. Alteration in MHC-I in both human and murine experimental tumors has been widely reported. Results show an inverse correlation between MHC-I expression on tumor cells and primary tumor growth, i.e., MHC-I-negative tumors grew more rapidly compared to MHC-I-positive tumors. In contrast, a direct correlation was found between MHC-I expression on primary tumors and spontaneous metastatic capacity. Immunotherapy as an antimetastatic treatment was completely effective against MHC-I highly positive tumors and was partially effective on tumors with an intermediate level of MHC-I expression.

Acknowledgements The authors would like to thank I. Linares, A. B. Rodriguez, and E. Arias for technical advice. This study was supported by grants from the ISCIII-FEDER (PI15/00528, CP03/0111, PI12/02031, PI 08/1265, PI11/01022, RETIC RD 06/020), Worldwide Cancer Research grant 15/1166, Junta de Andalucía (Group CTS-143 and CTS-695, CTS-3952, CVI-4740 grants), and European Community (LSHC-CT-2004-503306, OJ 2004/c158, 18234). A. M. G. L. was supported by Miguel Servet Contract CP03/0111 and Contract I3 from ISCIII and FPS and I. R. by Rio-Hortega Contract CM12/00033 from ISCIII.

References

1. Gorer PA. The significance of studies with transplanted tumours. Br J Cancer. 1948;2(2):103–7.
2. Dausset J. The agglutination mechanism of trypsin modified red cells. Blood. 1952;7(8):816–25.
3. Bjorkman PJ, Saper MA, Samraoui B, Bennett WS, Strominger JL, Wiley DC. Structure of the human class I histocompatibility antigen, HLA-A2. Nature. 1987;329(6139):506–12.
4. Bjorkman PJ, Parham P. Structure, function, and diversity of class I major histocompatibility complex molecules. Annu Rev Biochem. 1990;59:253–88.
5. Le Bouteiller P. HLA class I chromosomal region, genes, and products: facts and questions. Crit Rev Immunol. 1994;14(2):89–129.
6. Parham P, Ohta T. Population biology of antigen presentation by MHC class I molecules. Science. 1996;272(5258):67–74.
7. Grandea AG 3rd, Van Kaer L. Tapasin: an ER chaperone that controls MHC class I assembly with peptide. Trends Immunol. 2001;22(4):194–9.
8. Maffei A, Papadopoulos K, Harris PE. MHC class I antigen processing pathways. Hum Immunol. 1997;54(2):91–103.
9. van Endert PM. Genes regulating MHC class I processing of antigen. Curr Opin Immunol. 1999;11(1):82–8.
10. Koopmann JO, Hammerling GJ, Momburg F. Generation, intracellular transport and loading of peptides associated with MHC class I molecules. Curr Opin Immunol. 1997;9(1):80–8.
11. Pamer E, Cresswell P. Mechanisms of MHC class I–restricted antigen processing. Annu Rev Immunol. 1998;16:323–58.
12. Ljunggren HG, Karre K. In search of the 'missing self': MHC molecules and NK cell recognition. Immunol Today. 1990;11(7):237–44.
13. Algarra I, Gaforio JJ, Garrido A, Mialdea MJ, Perez M, Garrido F. Heterogeneity of MHC-class-I antigens in clones of methylcholanthrene-induced tumors. Implications for local growth and metastasis. Int J Cancer Suppl. 1991;6:73–81.
14. Garrido F, Cabrera T, Concha A, Glew S, Ruiz-Cabello F, Stern PL. Natural history of HLA expression during tumour development. Immunol Today. 1993;14(10):491–9.
15. Garrido F, Ruiz-Cabello F, Cabrera T, Perez-Villar JJ, Lopez-Botet M, Duggan-Keen M, et al. Implications for immunosurveillance of altered HLA class I phenotypes in human tumours. Immunol Today. 1997;18(2):89–95.
16. Johnsen AK, Templeton DJ, Sy M, Harding CV. Deficiency of transporter for antigen presentation (TAP) in tumor cells allows evasion of immune surveillance and increases tumorigenesis. J Immunol. 1999;163(8):4224–31.
17. Seliger B. Molecular mechanisms of MHC class I abnormalities and APM components in human tumors. Cancer Immunol Immunother. 2008;57(11):1719–26.
18. Garrido C, Algarra I, Maleno I, Stefanski J, Collado A, Garrido F, et al. Alterations of HLA class I expression in human melanoma xenografts in immunodeficient mice occur frequently and are associated with higher tumorigenicity. Cancer Immunol Immunother. 2010;59(1):13–26.
19. Cabrera T, Maleno I, Lopez-Nevot MA, Redondo M, Fernandez MA, Collado A, et al. High frequency of HLA-B44 allelic losses in human solid tumors. Hum Immunol. 2003;64(10):941–50.
20. Garrido F, Algarra I. MHC antigens and tumor escape from immune surveillance. Adv Cancer Res. 2001;83:117–58.

21. Garcia-Lora A, Algarra I, Garrido F. MHC class I antigens, immune surveillance, and tumor immune escape. J Cell Physiol. 2003;195(3):346–55.
22. Garrido F, Cabrera T, Aptsiauri N. "Hard" and "soft" lesions underlying the HLA class I alterations in cancer cells: implications for immunotherapy. Int J Cancer. 2010;127(2):249–56.
23. Garrido F, Algarra I, Garcia-Lora AM. The escape of cancer from T lymphocytes: immunoselection of MHC class I loss variants harboring structural-irreversible "hard" lesions. Cancer Immunol Immunother. 2010;59(10):1601–6.
24. Napolitano LA, Vogel J, Jay G. The role of major histocompatibility complex class I antigens in tumorigenesis: future applications in cancer therapy. Biochim Biophys Acta. 1989;989(2):153–62.
25. Garrido F, Festenstein H, Schirrmacher V. Further evidence for depression of H-2 and Ia-like specificities of foreign haplotypes in mouse tumour cell lines. Nature. 1976;261(5562):705–7.
26. Pellegrino MA, Ferrone S, Reisfeld RA, Irie RF, Golub SH. Expression of histocompatibility (HLA) antigens on tumor cells and normal cells from patients with melanoma. Cancer. 1977;40(1):36–41.
27. Koopman LA, Corver WE, van der Slik AR, Giphart MJ, Fleuren GJ. Multiple genetic alterations cause frequent and heterogeneous human histocompatibility leukocyte antigen class I loss in cervical cancer. J Exp Med. 2000;191(6):961–76.
28. Garcia-Lora A, Martinez M, Algarra I, Gaforio JJ, Garrido F. MHC class I-deficient metastatic tumor variants immunoselected by T lymphocytes originate from the coordinated downregulation of APM components. Int J Cancer. 2003;106(4):521–7.
29. Garrido C, Romero I, Berruguilla E, Cancela B, Algarra I, Collado A, et al. Immunotherapy eradicates metastases with reversible defects in MHC class I expression. Cancer Immunol Immunother. 2011;60(9):1257–68.
30. Garrido F, Perez M, Torres MD. Absence of four H-2d antigenic specificities in an H-2d sarcoma. J Immunogenet. 1979;6(2):83–6.
31. Festenstein H, Schmidt W, Testorelli C, Marelli O, Simpson S. Biologic effects of the altered MHS profile on the K36 tumor, a spontaneous leukemia of AKR. Transplant Proc. 1980;12(1):25–8.
32. Ballinari D, Pierotti MA, Sensi ML, Parmiani G. Lack of H-2Ld locus products on a BALB/c fibrosarcoma expressing H-2k-like alien antigens. J Immunogenet. 1983;10(2):115–25.
33. Rosloniec EF, Kuhn MH, Genyea CA, Reed AH, Jennings JJ, Giraldo AA, et al. Aggressiveness of SJL/J lymphomas correlates with absence of H-2Ds antigens. J Immunol. 1984;132(2):945–52.
34. Hui KM, Sim T, Foo TT, Oei AA. Tumor rejection mediated by transfection with allogeneic class I histocompatibility gene. J Immunol. 1989;143(11):3835–43.
35. Hui K, Grosveld F, Festenstein H. Rejection of transplantable AKR leukaemia cells following MHC DNA-mediated cell transformation. Nature. 1984;311(5988):750–2.
36. Wallich R, Bulbuc N, Hammerling GJ, Katzav S, Segal S, Feldman M. Abrogation of metastatic properties of tumour cells by de novo expression of H-2K antigens following H-2 gene transfection. Nature. 1985;315(6017):301–5.
37. Tanaka K, Gorelik E, Watanabe M, Hozumi N, Jay G. Rejection of B16 melanoma induced by expression of a transfected major histocompatibility complex class I gene. Mol Cell Biol. 1988;8(4):1857–61.
38. Sturmhofel K, Hammerling GJ. Reconstitution of H-2 class I expression by gene transfection decreases susceptibility to natural killer cells of an EL4 class I loss variant. Eur J Immunol. 1990;20(1):171–7.
39. Schmidt W, Henseling U, Bevec D, Alonzo AD, Festenstein H. Control of synthesis and expression of H-2 heavy chain and beta-2 microglobulin in AKR leukemias. Immunogenetics. 1985;22(5):483–94.
40. Beck JC, Hansen TH, Cullen SE, Lee DR. Slower processing, weaker beta 2-M association, and lower surface expression of H-2Ld are influenced by its amino terminus. J Immunol. 1986;137(3):916–23.
41. Keeney JB, Hansen TH. Cis-acting elements determine the locus-specific shutoff of class I major histocompatibility genes in murine S49 lymphoma sublines. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 1989;86(16):6288–92.
42. Green WR, Rich RF, Beadling C. Differential induction of H-2K versus H-2D class I major histocompatibility antigens by recombinant gamma interferon. Lack of Kk augmentation in a leukemia virus-induced tumor is due to a cis-dominant effect. J Exp Med. 1988;167(5):1616–24.
43. Cerosaletti KM, Woodward JG, Lord EM, Frelinger JG. Two regions of the H-2 Dd promoter are responsive to dimethylsulfoxide in line 1 cells by a mechanism distinct from IFN-gamma. J Immunol. 1992;148(4):1212–21.
44. Rubocki RJ, Connolly JM, Hansen TH, Melvold RW, Kim BS, Hildebrand WH, et al. Mutation at amino acid position 133 of H-2Dd prevents beta 2m association and immune recognition but not surface expression. J Immunol. 1991;146(7):2352–7.
45. Seliger B, Wollscheid U, Momburg F, Blankenstein T, Huber C. Coordinate downregulation of multiple MHC class I antigen processing genes in chemical-induced murine tumor cell lines of distinct origin. Tissue Antigens. 2000;56(4):327–36.
46. Seliger B, Wollscheid U, Momburg F, Blankenstein T, Huber C. Characterization of the major histocompatibility complex class I deficiencies in B16 melanoma cells. Cancer Res. 2001;61(3):1095–9.
47. Lou Y, Vitalis TZ, Basha G, Cai B, Chen SS, Choi KB, et al. Restoration of the expression of transporters associated with antigen processing in lung carcinoma increases tumor-specific immune responses and survival. Cancer Res. 2005;65(17):7926–33.
48. Ljunggren HG, Karre K. Host resistance directed selectively against H-2-deficient lymphoma

variants. Analysis of the mechanism. J Exp Med. 1985;162(6):1745–59.
49. Franksson L, George E, Powis S, Butcher G, Howard J, Karre K. Tumorigenicity conferred to lymphoma mutant by major histocompatibility complex-encoded transporter gene. J Exp Med. 1993;177(1):201–5.
50. Karre K. Express yourself or die: peptides, MHC molecules, and NK cells. Science. 1995;267(5200):978–9.
51. Piontek GE, Taniguchi K, Ljunggren HG, Gronberg A, Kiessling R, Klein G, et al. YAC-1 MHC class I variants reveal an association between decreased NK sensitivity and increased H-2 expression after interferon treatment or in vivo passage. J Immunol. 1985;135(6):4281–8.
52. Reinis M, Stepanek I, Simova J, Bieblova J, Pribylova H, Indrova M, et al. Induction of protective immunity against MHC class I-deficient, HPV16-associated tumours with peptide and dendritic cell-based vaccines. Int J Oncol. 2010;36(3):545–51.
53. Reinis M, Simova J, Indrova M, Bieblova J, Pribylova H, Moravcova S, et al. Immunization with MHC class I-negative but not -positive HPV16-associated tumour cells inhibits growth of MHC class I-negative tumours. Int J Oncol. 2007;30(4):1011–7.
54. van Hall T, Wolpert EZ, van Veelen P, Laban S, van der Veer M, Roseboom M, et al. Selective cytotoxic T-lymphocyte targeting of tumor immune escape variants. Nat Med. 2006;12(4):417–24.
55. Fruci D, Benevolo M, Cifaldi L, Lorenzi S, Lo Monaco E, Tremante E, et al. Major histocompatibility complex class i and tumour immuno-evasion: how to fool T-cells and natural killer cells at one time. Curr Oncol. 2012;19(1):39–41.
56. Garrido A, Perez M, Delgado C, Garrido ML, Rojano J, Algarra I, et al. Influence of class I H-2 gene expression on local tumor growth. Description of a model obtained from clones derived from a solid BALB/c tumor. Exp Clin Immunogenet. 1986;3(2):98–110.
57. Perez M, Algarra I, Ljunggren HG, Caballero A, Mialdea MJ, Gaforio JJ, et al. A weakly tumorigenic phenotype with high MHC class-I expression is associated with high metastatic potential after surgical removal of the primary murine fibrosarcoma. Int J Cancer. 1990;46(2):258–61.
58. Romero I, Martinez M, Garrido C, Collado A, Algarra I, Garrido F, et al. The tumour suppressor Fhit positively regulates MHC class I expression on cancer cells. J Pathol. 2012;227(3):367–79.
59. Romero I. Heterogeneidad intratumoral en la expresión de moléculas MHC en el tumor murino GR9: mecanismos moleculares implicados y comportamiento biológico in vivo. Doctoral thesis, Universidad de Granada; 2012.
60. Aptsiauri N, Carretero R, Garcia-Lora A, Real LM, Cabrera T, Garrido F. Regressing and progressing metastatic lesions: resistance to immunotherapy is predetermined by irreversible HLA class I antigen alterations. Cancer Immunol Immunother. 2008;57(11):1727–33.
61. Garrido ML, Perez M, Delgado C, Rojano J, Algarra I, Garrido A, et al. Immunogenicity of H-2 positive and H-2 negative clones of a mouse tumour, GR9. J Immunogenet. 1986;13(2–3):159–67.
62. Sahai E. Illuminating the metastatic process. Nat Rev Cancer. 2007;7(10):737–49.
63. Talmadge JE. Models of metastasis in drug discovery. Methods Mol Biol. 2010;602:215–33.
64. Talmadge JE, Fidler IJ. AACR centennial series: the biology of cancer metastasis: historical perspective. Cancer Res. 2010;70(14):5649–69.
65. Fidler IJ. Metastasis: quantitative analysis of distribution and fate of tumor emboli labeled with 125 I-5-iodo-2′-deoxyuridine. J Natl Cancer Inst. 1970;45(4):773–82.
66. Weiss L. Metastatic inefficiency. Adv Cancer Res. 1990;54:159–211.
67. Joyce JA, Pollard JW. Microenvironmental regulation of metastasis. Nat Rev Cancer. 2009;9(4):239–52.
68. Guise T. Examining the metastatic niche: targeting the microenvironment. Semin Oncol. 2010;37(Suppl 2):S2–14.
69. Ghajar CM, Bissell MJ. Extracellular matrix control of mammary gland morphogenesis and tumorigenesis: insights from imaging. Histochem Cell Biol. 2008;130(6):1105–18.
70. Menon MB, Ronkina N, Schwermann J, Kotlyarov A, Gaestel M. Fluorescence-based quantitative scratch wound healing assay demonstrating the role of MAPKAPK-2/3 in fibroblast migration. Cell Motil Cytoskeleton. 2009;66(12):1041–7.
71. Bos PD, Nguyen DX, Massague J. Modeling metastasis in the mouse. Curr Opin Pharmacol. 2010;10(5):571–7.
72. Francia G, Cruz-Munoz W, Man S, Xu P, Kerbel RS. Mouse models of advanced spontaneous metastasis for experimental therapeutics. Nat Rev Cancer. 2011;11(2):135–41.
73. Jonkers J, Berns A. Conditional mouse models of sporadic cancer. Nat Rev Cancer. 2002;2(4):251–65.
74. Van Dyke T, Jacks T. Cancer modeling in the modern era: progress and challenges. Cell. 2002;108(2):135–44.
75. Podsypanina K, Politi K, Beverly LJ, Varmus HE. Oncogene cooperation in tumor maintenance and tumor recurrence in mouse mammary tumors induced by Myc and mutant Kras. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2008;105(13):5242–7.
76. Poste G, Doll J, Hart IR, Fidler IJ. In vitro selection of murine B16 melanoma variants with enhanced tissue-invasive properties. Cancer Res. 1980;40(5):1636–44.
77. Morikawa K, Walker SM, Nakajima M, Pathak S, Jessup JM, Fidler IJ. Influence of organ environment on the growth, selection, and metastasis of human colon carcinoma cells in nude mice. Cancer Res. 1988;48(23):6863–71.

78. Kubota T. Metastatic models of human cancer xenografted in the nude mouse: the importance of orthotopic transplantation. J Cell Biochem. 1994;56(1):4–8.
79. Kiguchi K, Iwamori M, Mochizuki Y, Kishikawa T, Tsukazaki K, Saga M, et al. Selection of human ovarian carcinoma cells with high dissemination potential by repeated passage of the cells in vivo into nude mice, and involvement of Le(x)-determinant in the dissemination potential. Jpn J Cancer Res. 1998;89(9):923–32.
80. Fidler IJ, Kripke ML. Metastasis results from preexisting variant cells within a malignant tumor. Science. 1977;197(4306):893–5.
81. Dexter DL, Kowalski HM, Blazar BA, Fligiel Z, Vogel R, Heppner GH. Heterogeneity of tumor cells from a single mouse mammary tumor. Cancer Res. 1978;38(10):3174–81.
82. Wang N, Yu SH, Liener IE, Hebbel RP, Eaton JW, McKhann CF. Characterization of high- and low-metastatic clones derived from a methylcholanthrene-induced murine fibrosarcoma. Cancer Res. 1982;42(3):1046–51.
83. Fidler IJ. Tumor heterogeneity and the biology of cancer invasion and metastasis. Cancer Res. 1978;38(9):2651–60.
84. Nicolson GL, Brunson KW, Fidler IJ. Specificity of arrest, survival, and growth of selected metastatic variant cell lines. Cancer Res. 1978;38(11 Pt 2):4105–11.
85. Haywood GR, McKhann CF. Antigenic specificities on murine sarcoma cells. Reciprocal relationship between normal transplantation antigens (H-2) and tumor-specific immunogenicity. J Exp Med. 1971;133(6):1171–87.
86. VandenDriessche T, Geldhof A, Bakkus M, Toussaint-Demylle D, Brijs L, Thielemans K, et al. Metastasis of mouse T lymphoma cells is controlled by the level of major histocompatibility complex class I H-2Dk antigens. Int J Cancer. 1994;58(2):217–25.
87. VandenDriessche T, Bakkus M, Toussaint-Demylle D, Thielemans K, Verschueren H, De Baetselier P. Tumorigenicity of mouse T lymphoma cells is controlled by the level of major histocompatibility complex class I H-2Kk antigens. Clin Exp Metastasis. 1994;12(1):73–83.
88. Eisenbach L, Segal S, Feldman M. MHC imbalance and metastatic spread in Lewis lung carcinoma clones. Int J Cancer. 1983;32(1):113–20.
89. Eisenbach L, Hollander N, Greenfeld L, Yakor H, Segal S, Feldman M. The differential expression of H-2K versus H-2D antigens, distinguishing high-metastatic from low-metastatic clones, is correlated with the immunogenic properties of the tumor cells. Int J Cancer. 1984;34(4):567–73.
90. Feldman M, Eisenbach L. MHC class I genes controlling the metastatic phenotype of tumor cells. Semin Cancer Biol. 1991;2(5):337–46.
91. Plaksin D, Gelber C, Feldman M, Eisenbach L. Reversal of the metastatic phenotype in Lewis lung carcinoma cells after transfection with syngeneic H-2Kb gene. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 1988;85(12):4463–7.
92. De Giovanni C, Nicoletti G, Sensi M, Santoni A, Palmieri G, Landuzzi L, et al. H-2Kb and H-2Db gene transfections in B16 melanoma differently affect non-immunological properties relevant to the metastatic process. Involvement of integrin molecules. Int J Cancer. 1994;59(2):269–74.
93. Katzav S, De Baetselier P, Tartakovsky B, Feldman M, Segal S. Alterations in major histocompatibility complex phenotypes of mouse cloned T10 sarcoma cells: association with shifts from non-metastatic to metastatic cells. J Natl Cancer Inst. 1983;71(2):317–24.
94. Katzav S, De Baetselier P, Gorelik E, Feldman M, Segal S. Immunogenetic control of metastasis formation by a methylcholanthrene-induced tumor (T10) in mice: differential expression of H-2 gene products. Transplant Proc. 1981;13(1 Pt 2):742–6.
95. Katzav S, Segal S, Feldman M. Metastatic capacity of cloned T10 sarcoma cells that differ in H-2 expression: inverse relationship to their immunogenic potency. J Natl Cancer Inst. 1985;75(2):307–18.
96. Katzav S, Segal S, Feldman M. Immuno-selection in vivo of H-2D phenotypic variants from a metastatic clone of sarcoma cells results in cell lines of altered metastatic competence. Int J Cancer. 1984;33(3):407–15.
97. Romero I, Garrido C, Algarra I, Collado A, Garrido F, Garcia-Lora AM. T lymphocytes restrain spontaneous metastases in permanent dormancy. Cancer Res. 2014 Apr 1;74(7):1958–68.
98. Garcia-Lora A, Algarra I, Gaforio JJ, Ruiz-Cabello F, Garrido F. Immunoselection by T lymphocytes generates repeated MHC class I-deficient metastatic tumor variants. Int J Cancer. 2001;91(1):109–19.
99. Algarra I, Ohlen C, Perez M, Ljunggren HG, Klein G, Garrido F, et al. NK sensitivity and lung clearance of MHC-class-I-deficient cells within a heterogeneous fibrosarcoma. Int J Cancer. 1989;44(4):675–80.
100. Smyth MJ, Crowe NY, Godfrey DI. NK cells and NKT cells collaborate in host protection from methylcholanthrene-induced fibrosarcoma. Int Immunol. 2001;13(4):459–63.
101. Cho HI, Lee YR, Celis E. Interferon gamma limits the effectiveness of melanoma peptide vaccines. Blood. 2010;117(1):135–44.
102. Lu SM, Tremblay ME, King IL, Qi J, Reynolds HM, Marker DF, et al. HIV-1 tat-induced microgliosis and synaptic damage via interactions between peripheral and central myeloid cells. PLoS One. 2011;6(9):e23915.
103. Sin JI, Park JB, Lee IH, Park D, Choi YS, Choe J, et al. Intratumoral electroporation of IL-12 cDNA eradicates established melanomas by Trp2(180–188)-specific CD8+ CTLs in a perforin/granzyme-mediated and IFN-gamma-dependent manner: application of Trp2(180–188) peptides. Cancer Immunol Immunother. 2012;61(10):1671–82.

104. Baines J, Celis E. Immune-mediated tumor regression induced by CpG-containing oligodeoxynucleotides. Clin Cancer Res. 2003;9(7):2693–700.
105. Reinis M, Simova J, Indrova M, Bieblova J, Bubenik J. CpG oligodeoxynucleotides are effective in therapy of minimal residual tumour disease after chemotherapy or surgery in a murine model of MHC class I-deficient, HPV16-associated tumours. Int J Oncol. 2007;30(5):1247–51.
106. Reinis M, Simova J, Bubenik J. Inhibitory effects of unmethylated CpG oligodeoxynucleotides on MHC class I-deficient and -proficient HPV16-associated tumours. Int J Cancer. 2006;118(7):1836–42.
107. Reinis M. Immunotherapy of MHC class I-deficient tumors. Future Oncol. 2010;6(10):1577–89.
108. Simova J, Bubenik J, Bieblova J, Rosalia RA, Fric J, Reinis M. Depletion of T(reg) cells inhibits minimal residual disease after surgery of HPV16-associated tumours. Int J Oncol. 2006;29(6):1567–71.
109. Indrova M, Simova J, Bieblova J, Bubenik J, Reinis M. NK1.1+ cells are important for the development of protective immunity against MHC I-deficient, HPV16-associated tumours. Oncol Rep. 2011;25(1):281–8.
110. Manning J, Indrova M, Lubyova B, Pribylova H, Bieblova J, Hejnar J, et al. Induction of MHC class I molecule cell surface expression and epigenetic activation of antigen-processing machinery components in a murine model for human papilloma virus 16-associated tumours. Immunology. 2008;123(2):218–27.
111. Bao L, Dunham K, Lucas K. MAGE-A1, MAGE-A3, and NY-ESO-1 can be upregulated on neuroblastoma cells to facilitate cytotoxic T lymphocyte-mediated tumor cell killing. Cancer Immunol Immunother. 2011;60(9):1299–307.
112. Simova J, Pollakova V, Indrova M, Mikyskova R, Bieblova J, Stepanek I, et al. Immunotherapy augments the effect of 5-azacytidine on HPV16-associated tumours with different MHC class I-expression status. Br J Cancer. 2011;105(10):1533–41.
113. Indrova M, Bieblova J, Jandlova T, Vonka V, Pajtasz-Piasecka E, Reinis M. Chemotherapy, IL-12 gene therapy and combined adjuvant therapy of HPV 16-associated MHC class I-proficient and -deficient tumours. Int J Oncol. 2006;28(1):253–9.
114. Porgador A, Brenner B, Vadai E, Feldman M, Eisenbach L. Immunization by gamma-IFN-treated B16-F10.9 melanoma cells protects against metastatic spread of the parental tumor. Int J Cancer Suppl. 1991;6:54–60.
115. Mandelboim O, Feldman M, Eisenbach L. H-2K double transfectants of tumor cells as antimetastatic cellular vaccines in heterozygous recipients. Implications for the T-cell repertoire. J Immunol. 1992;148(11):3666–73.
116. Porgador A, Bannerji R, Watanabe Y, Feldman M, Gilboa E, Eisenbach L. Antimetastatic vaccination of tumor-bearing mice with two types of IFN-gamma gene-inserted tumor cells. J Immunol. 1993;150(4):1458–70.
117. Lim YS, Kang BY, Kim EJ, Kim SH, Hwang SY, Kim TS. Augmentation of therapeutic antitumor immunity by B16F10 melanoma cells transfected by interferon-gamma and allogeneic MHC class I cDNAs. Mol Cells. 1998;8(5):629–36.
118. Fisher M, Yang LX. Anticancer effects and mechanisms of polysaccharide-K (PSK): implications of cancer immunotherapy. Anticancer Res. 2002;22(3):1737–54.
119. Romero I, Garrido C, Algarra I, Chamorro V, Collado A, Garrido F, Garcia-Lora AM. MHC intratumoral heterogeneity may predict cancer progression and response to immunotherapy. Front Immunol. 2018 Jan 29;9:102.

13 Role of Cytokines in Tumor Immunity and Immune Tolerance to Cancer

Lucien P. Garo and Murugaiyan Gopal

Contents

L. P. Garo · M. Gopal (✉)
Department of Neurology, Ann Romney Center for Neurologic Diseases, Brigham and Women's Hospital, Harvard Medical School, Boston, MA, USA
e-mail: mgopal@rics.bwh.harvard.edu

N. Rezaei (ed.), *Cancer Immunology*, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-30845-2_13

13.1 Introduction

Strong evidence has been accumulated demonstrating that cancer cells in humans and animals are recognized in general as "non-self" by the immune system [1, 2]; both innate and adaptive immune reactions to cancer have been described. In cancer patients, many cases of spontaneous tumor have been reported following infection. Moreover, immunosuppressed patients are at increased risk for virally-induced tumors [3]. In fact, the presence of highly adaptive immune cell infiltrates within the tumors can be a positive prognostic indicator of patient survival [4]. Murine models of spontaneous and chemically-induced tumors have also been useful in demonstrating that the immune system naturally surveys for aberrant cells and has an important role in preventing tumor formation [2].

An antitumor immune response is initiated when innate immune cells are alerted to the presence of a growing tumor, at least in part owing to local tissue damage from stromal remodeling processes integral to basic solid tumor development [2, 5]. Once solid tumors reach a critical mass, they grow invasively and require an enhanced blood supply, which they induce via production of angiogenic proteins [6]. Invasive growth causes minor disruptions in surrounding tissues that induces inflammatory cytokines and chemokines, leading to the recruitment of innate immune cells. The innate response includes several cellular factors, such as natural killer (NK) cells, natural killer T (NKT) cells, γδ T-cells, macrophages, dendritic cells (DCs), and neutrophils [7]. These cells can reject tumors, either by directly killing tumor cells or by inhibiting angiogenesis. Innate immunity relies on pattern recognition receptors and other cell surface molecules to detect tumor cells. Cancer cells express families of stress-related genes, such as MHC class I-related stress-inducible surface glycoprotein A and B (MICA and MICB), which function as ligands for NKG2D receptors expressed on NK cells [8]. In addition, NK cells can be triggered for cytolytic activity by DCs depending on direct cell contact through their expression of cell surface molecules, such as CD48 and CD70, which are ligands for the NK cell-activating receptors, 2B4 and CD27, respectively [8]. DCs recruited to the tumor site become activated either by exposure to the cytokine milieu created during the ongoing attack by the innate immune system or by interacting with NK cells. Once activated, DCs can acquire tumor antigens directly by ingestion of tumor cell debris, or potentially through indirect mechanisms involving the transfer of tumor cell-derived heat shock protein/tumor antigen complexes [9]. Activated antigen-bearing DCs can then migrate to the draining lymph nodes, where they trigger the activation of tumor antigen-specific $CD4^+$ Th1 cells. In addition, DCs activate $CD8^+$ cytotoxic T lymphocytes (CTLs) via cross-presentation of tumor antigenic peptides on MHC class I molecules [10]. Activated tumor-specific $CD4^+$ and $CD8^+$ T-cells home to the tumor site where they kill tumor cells. Accordingly, mice lacking adaptive immunity (RAG-2 gene-deficient mice lacking T-cells) are more susceptible to carcinogen-induced and spontaneous primary tumor formation [2]. It appears adaptive immunity could possibly provide the host with the capacity to completely eliminate developing tumors. However, clinically evident cancers indicate that these innate and adaptive immune responses are not always suffi-

cient to prevent disease progression in patients, as cancer cells clearly manage to escape host-tumor immunity.

Tumors use several mechanisms to facilitate immune escape and avoid elimination, including impairment of antigen presentation, activation of negative co-stimulatory signals, and elaboration of immunosuppressive factors [11]. In addition, tumor cells may promote the expansion and/or recruitment of regulatory immune cell populations which can contribute to the immunosuppressive network; these populations include regulatory T-cells (Tregs), myeloid-derived suppressor cells (MDSCs), and distinct subsets of immature and mature regulatory DCs [12]. All of these host-derived immune cell populations can impair antitumor effector cell responses, both locally in the tumor microenvironment and systemically in the lymphoid organs [11]. In fact, both tumor-promoting and inhibiting immune cell populations can be seen in cancer patients [2]. Several recent studies have found correlations between particular immune cell infiltrates in tumors and patient prognoses. For example, infiltration of $CD8^+$ T-cells and mature DCs is associated with favorable outcomes [13, 14]. However, extensive macrophage infiltration correlates with poor patient prognoses in most cancers [15, 16]. The complexity of these tumor infiltrates, with both synergistic and oppositional effects, may influence tumor growth differentially, depending on their cytokine secretion. A number of immune-modulating cytokines have been shown to promote or inhibit antitumor immunity in multiple experimental models and in cancer patients. This chapter reviews the role of the antitumor cytokines (IL-12 and IL-27) in tumor immunity and immunotherapy while discussing the role of pro-tumor cytokines (TGF-β, IL-17, IL-23, IL-35, and IL-10) with pathogenic contributions to cancer progression.

13.2 Cytokine Regulation of Antitumor Immunity

Cytokines comprise a large family of intercellular communicating molecules that play important roles in immunity, inflammation, and repair, as well as general tissue homeostasis [17]. Cytokine functions also extend to many other aspects of biology, including cancer [17, 18]. In the tumor microenvironment, cytokines are produced by host stromal and immune cells, in response to molecules secreted by cancer cells [17]. In addition, cancer cells themselves can produce cytokines [18]. Increased levels of circulating cytokines and their receptors have been found in patients with various types of cancer, both at diagnosis of the primary disease and in metastases [17, 19, 20]. The cytokine repertoire present at the tumor site determines the type of host immune response directed against the tumor [18, 21]. Immunosuppressive cytokines secreted by tumor cells or tolerogenic tumor-infiltrating immune cells can impair the host antitumor response, whereas cytokines promoting T-cell-mediated immunity can induce or enhance antitumor responses [17, 21]. Studies using cytokine-deficient mice have revealed the dual role for the immune system in modulating tumor growth [17].

13.2.1 IL-12

13.2.1.1 Overview

IL-12 is a heterodimeric cytokine containing a 35 kD and a 40 kD subunit that signals through a receptor of the type I family of cytokine receptors [22]. The principal source of IL-12 are APCs, such as DCs and macrophages [22]. Secretion of IL-12 is generally activated via the physiological stimuli of CD40 along with toll-like receptors (TLRs), which recognize structurally conserved molecules derived from microbes [22]. IL-12 plays a major role in the development of antitumor immune responses [23]. Numerous studies report that IL-12 promotes effective destruction of cancer cells via induction of innate and adaptive arms of antitumor immunity [23–25]. In addition, IL-12 has potent antiangiogenic activity [23, 24]. Due to these features, IL-12 has been tried as a systemic cancer therapeutic agent, but clinical development has been hindered by its significant toxicity and disappointing antitumor effects observed in cancer patients [25]. However, emerging studies suggest that IL-12, in combination with other cytokines and checkpoint inhibi-

tors, could boost antitumor immunity and promote NK cells and CTLs with minimal toxic side effects [25, 26].

13.2.1.2 IL-12: Linking Innate and Adaptive Antitumor Immunity

IL-12 plays an essential role in the interaction between the innate and adaptive arms of antitumor immunity (Fig. 13.1). For example, it induces IFN-γ production by NK cells and T-cells. In fact, NK cells and T-cells were the first cells shown to express high-affinity receptors for IL-12 [27]. Tumor eradication via vaccination supported by IL-12 is dependent on NK cells in several animal models [28–30]. IL-12 enhances *in vitro* lysis of both NK cell-sensitive and NK cell-resistant tumor cells [31]. Consistent with animal studies, in patients with cancer, IL-12 enhances the cytolytic activity of NK cells and increases the expression of CD2, lymphocyte function-associated antigen-1 (LFA-1), and CD56, molecules which mediate NK cell migration [32]. Moreover, IL-12 has been shown to

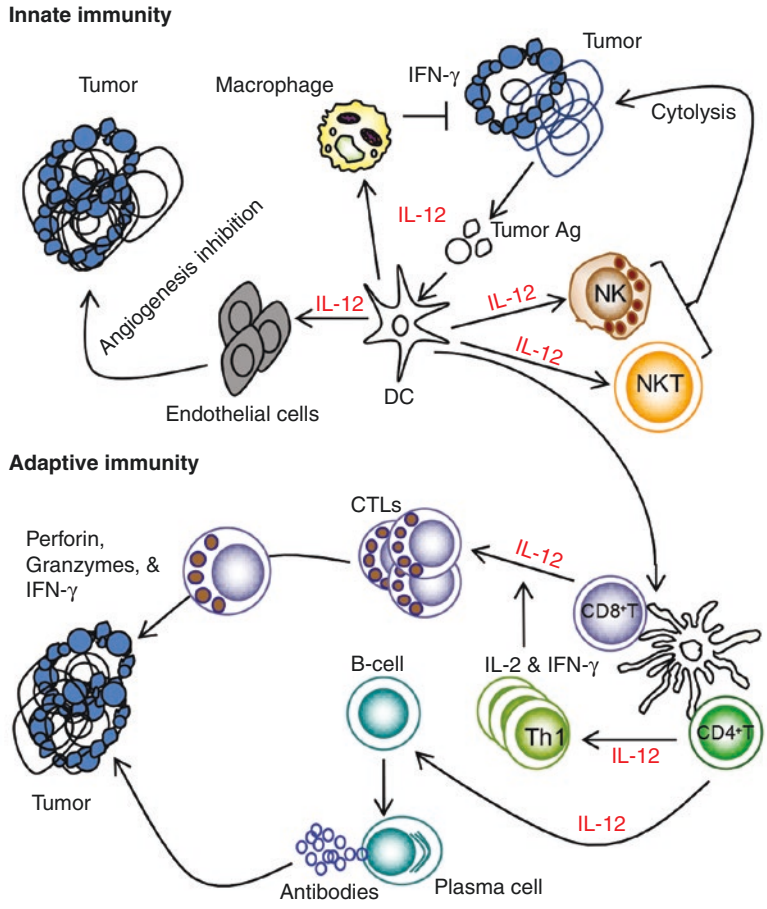


Fig. 13.1 IL-12 links innate and adaptive antitumor immunity. IL-12 utilizes several mechanisms to induce antitumor effects. IL-12 activates innate effectors, such as NK cells, NKT cells, and γδ T-cells, promoting their cytolytic activity and cytokine production. In macrophages, IL-12 induces IFN-γ production that can have cytotoxic effects on tumor cells. In endothelial cells, IL-12 induces the production of antiangiogenic molecules. In addition, IL-12 has a direct toxic effect on some tumor cells. Furthermore, IL-12 secretion by DCs can induce adaptive arms of antitumor immunity. For example, IL-12 can augment Th1 responses necessary for cellular immune responses. Il-12 also stimulates the differentiation and lytic capacity of CTLs and promotes immune memory. Finally, IL-12 can mediate antibody-mediated tumor clearance via B-cell activation

enhance the cytotoxicity mediated by NK cells from healthy donors against cancer cells derived from cancer patients [32].

In addition to its effect on NK cell cytotoxicity, IL-12 enhances $CD8^+$ T-cell-mediated cytotoxicity [33]. Crucial to this process are DCs, which facilitate the interaction between $CD4^+$ T-cells and antigen-specific $CD8^+$ T-cells. Priming of CTLs is enabled by the ligation of CD40 on DC and its ligand, CD154 or CD40L, on activated $CD4^+$ T-cells [34, 35]. The induction of IL-12 synthesis that occurs as a result of CD40 ligation suggests an important role for IL-12 in the molecular mechanisms responsible for CTL priming [36]. Indeed, it has been shown that IL-12, in the presence of antigen, acts directly on naive $CD8^+$ T-cells to promote clonal expansion and differentiation [37]. In fact, priming $CD8^+$ T-cells in the absence of IL-12 renders them unresponsive to the same antigen [38]. In murine models of T-cell-mediated immunity, agonistic CD40 antibodies (Abs) have been shown to substitute the function of $CD4^+$ T-cells, resulting in the rapid expansion of CTLs that can clear established lymphomas and provide long-term protection against tumor rechallenge [39, 40]. These observations provide an explanation for impaired tumor antigen-specific CTL activation in CD40-deficient mice and confirm a key role of the CD40-IL-12 pathway in the regulation of antitumor immunity. Moreover, a series of experiments, conducted by different groups, including ours, have indicated that injection of IL-12 systemically or directly into subcutaneous tumors results in CTL responses against the tumors in mice [41–43]. IL-12 also plays an important role in the establishment of memory $CD8^+$ T-cells [44]. After administration of IL-12, a strong antigen-specific CTL response has been observed in patients with advanced melanoma, including increased tumor-specific CTLs in circulation, and an influx of specific memory $CD8^+$ T-cells into metastasized lesions [45].

Tumor rejection requires $CD8^+$ T-cells, whose activation and maintenance depends on IL-12-mediated $CD4^+$ T-cells [35]. Upon stimulation, naïve $CD4^+$ T-cells differentiate into different lineages of T helper subsets, including Th1, Th2, Th17, and Tregs [46]. In the presence of IL-12, naïve $CD4^+$ T-cells differentiate into IFN-γ-secreting Th1 cells [22]. In contrast, IL-12 exhibits a strong inhibitory effect on Th2 differentiation [47]. These distinct $CD4^+$ T-cell subsets have varied impacts on tumor growth. While Th1 cells promote $CD8^+$ T-cell-mediated immunity to tumors, Th2 cells and Tregs negatively regulate $CD8^+$ T-cell function. Th1 cytokines, IL-2 and IFN-γ, stimulate the cytolytic activity of NK cells to clear tumor cells [8]. (Interestingly, autocrine IL-12 has been shown to promote DC activation and induce IFN-γ from DCs.) Th2 cytokines have been shown to accelerate tumor growth in multiple experimental models [48]. In fact, a shift from Th1 to Th2 cytokine production has been reported in progressive cancer patients, and a vaccine-inducing Th2 to Th1 shift in a murine tumor model has been shown to induce tumor rejection [49]. By altering the balance between Th1 and Th2 cytokines, IL-12 plays a critically important role in antitumor immune responses. Enhanced production of IFN-γ by $CD8^+$ T-cells, along with a Th2 to Th1 shift in the cytokine secretion profile of $CD4^+$ T-cells, has been observed in IL-12-treated mice [50]. Although IL-12 has been shown to inhibit Th2 differentiation, a major activator of B-cell responses, IL-12 also directly triggers a cascade of events that are known to activate B-cells and stimulate humoral immunity [51]. In a model of colon carcinoma, vaccination with IL-12-transduced tumor cells cures 40% of tumor-bearing mice. Favorable antitumor responses are related to the synthesis of Abs against tumor antigens, inducing tumor cell lysis in a complement-dependent cytotoxicity assay [52].

As discussed above, the ability of IL-12 to facilitate cell-mediated immune responses, including enhancement of NK cytotoxicity, generation of CTLs, and activation of DCs, suggests its role in both the innate and adaptive immunity resistance mechanisms against tumors [24, 23]. Experimental studies of systemic administration of the cytokine have indicated that IL-12 exerts potent antitumor activity against a variety of metastatic tumors, and can even prevent spontaneous tumor development in HER-2/

neu transgenic mice [53]. In addition, models based on intra-tumor cytokine delivery or *in vivo* transfer of cytokine-secreting tumors have indicated that IL-12 has significant dose-dependent antitumor activity against a wide spectrum of murine tumors, including melanoma, breast, ovarian, and bladder tumors [24, 54, 25]. All of these studies have demonstrated that IL-12 can inhibit tumor growth and improve survival of tumor-bearing animals, which are dependent on its ability to activate the innate and adaptive arms of antitumor immunity.

13.2.1.3 IL-12 in Angiogenesis Inhibition

Accumulating evidence indicates that the antitumor effects of IL-12 are mediated, at least in part, through mechanisms involving angiogenesis and its direct effects on tumors. Angiogenesis is an essential process for tumor growth and metastases; the balance between angiogenic and angiostatic molecules in the tumor microenvironment can determine tumor growth and progression. The antiangiogenic properties of IL-12 were first observed by Voest et al., who demonstrated that IL-12 treatment almost completely inhibits neovascularization in immunocompetent mice, severe combined immunodeficient mice, and T-cell-deficient nude mice [55]. This suppression of angiogenesis by IL-12 is dependent on its ability to induce IFN-γ expression. Accordingly, administration of IFN-γ reproduces the antiangiogenic effects of IL-12. Moreover, it has been shown that inhibition of tumor growth by IL-12 or IFN-γ requires intact signaling from IFN-γ receptors expressed by cancer cells [55]. This indicates that IL-12 can inhibit tumor growth by inducing cancer cells to produce antiangiogenic factors. Two of the most relevant factors identified are the IFN-γ-inducible chemokine genes, IFN-inducible protein 10 (IP-10) and monokine induced by interferon-γ [56]. Local and systemic treatment with IL-12 is associated with intratumoral expression of IFN-γ, IP-10, and MIG [57, 58]. In addition, subcutaneous intratumoral delivery of MIG in nude mice leads to tumor necrosis, associated with vascular damage [59]. Administration of neutralizing Abs to IP-10 and MIG substantially reduces the antitumor effects of IL-12 [59]. IP-10 and MIG interact with their receptor CXCR3 to mediate their angiostatic activity [59]. Together, these findings support that these CXCR3 ligands contribute to the antitumor effects of IL-12 via inhibition of tumor vasculature. In addition to IFN-γ stimulation, IL-12 promotes the expression of interferon regulatory factors 1 (IRF-1) and 4 (IRF-4), which are necessary for Th1 cell differentiation [60]. IRF-1 has tumor suppressor activities in cancer cells *in vitro* and decreases the tumorigenicity of cells inoculated into athymic nude mice [61, 62]. Similarly, IRF-4 suppresses c-Myc-induced leukemia in animal models and inhibits BCR/ABL-induced B-cell acute lymphoblastic leukemia [63, 64].

Emerging evidence indicates the involvement of lymphocyte-endothelial cell crosstalk at the beginning of angiogenesis inhibition by IL-12. It has been shown that neutralization of NK cell function reverses IL-12 inhibition of angiogenesis in athymic nude mice [65]. Neovascularization inhibited by IL-12 displays accumulation of NK cells and IP-10-positive cells. In addition, experimental Burkitt lymphomas treated locally with IL-12 present with tumor necrosis, vascular damage, and NK cell infiltration surrounding small vessels [65]. These studies document that NK cell cytotoxicity of endothelial cells is a potential mechanism by which IL-12 can suppress neovascularization. The antiangiogenic program activated in lymphocytes by IL-12 can also directly affect gene expression in neoplastic cells. In fact, upregulation of signal transducers and activators of transcription-1 (STAT-1) and angiopoietin 2, together with downmodulation of vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF), has been observed in neoplastic cells exposed to soluble factors released by IL-12-stimulated lymphocytes [66]. In addition, IL-12 treatment reduces the production of metalloproteases, which play a role in matrix remodeling required for neoangiogenesis [67]. Moreover, the activation of integrin αVβ3 on endothelial cells is limited by IL-2-induced IFN-γ, which leads to decreased endothelial cell adhesion and survival [68]. IL-12-induced secretion of IFN-γ causes an increase in p53 activity, which subsequently results in tumor suppression due to apoptosis induction in cancer cells [69]. Furthermore, IL-12 dramatically decreases the

tumor-supportive activities of tumor-associated macrophages (TAMs), which are involved in tumor angiogenesis and metastasis [70]. The antiangiogenic mechanisms modulated by IL-12 are complex; they depend not only on direct effects on endothelial cells by the cytokines/chemokines induced by IL-12, but are also mediated via the recruitment of immune effector cells, such as NK and T-cells.

13.2.1.4 Regulation of IL-12 in the Tumor Microenvironment

Although controlled Th1 and CTL responses can exert significant antitumor immunity, the same responses, if exaggerated, may result in host-tissue destruction and autoimmunity. To maintain immune homeostasis, IL-12-mediated inflammatory responses need to be counter-regulated. Cancer manipulates these counter-regulatory mechanisms to limit the availability of IL-12 in the tumor microenvironment. In general, Tregs play a major role in controlling unwanted immune responses to self-antigens [71]. Treg functions are mediated in part through secretion of the immunosuppressive cytokines IL-10 and TGF-β. Both TGF-β and IL-10 can inhibit DC antigen presentation, IL-12 secretion, and effector functions in $CD4^+$ and $CD8^+$ T-cells [11]. Studies have revealed a significant role for Treg induction by cancer cells in immune tolerance to tumor antigens [72]. As an immunosuppressive tumor microenvironment develops, IL-12-secreting DCs may become scarce due to a variety of factors, including absence of DC activation signals, CD40, and inhibition of activated $CD4^+$ T-cells which could themselves activate DCs [73]. Consistent with the idea, we have shown that the CD40-CD40L interactions between DCs and T-cells lead to the induction of not only IL-12, but also IL-10, a pro-tumor cytokine that may act in an autocrine or a paracrine manner to down-regulate IL-12 secretion from DCs [74, 75]. Indeed, reduced CD40 expression on DCs or CD40L on T-cells from tumor-bearing hosts may explain the reduced levels of IL-12 observed in cancer patients [73]. Other factors present in the tumor microenvironment can also downregulate IL-12 production; for example, prostaglandin E2 (PGE2), produced by tumor cells or tumor-associated host cells (e.g., macrophages, endothelial cells, and stromal cells), is known to inhibit IL-12 [76]. Reduced expression of IL-12 has been observed in patients with advanced cancer types including glioblastoma, renal cell carcinoma, head and neck squamous cell carcinoma, gastric cancer, melanoma, colorectal cancer (CRC), hepatocellular carcinoma, and gastric cancer [20]. Moreover, IL-12 production by stimulated peripheral blood mononuclear cells decreases significantly in patients with advanced gastric or colorectal cancer [20].

13.2.1.5 IL-12 in Clinical Studies

Following provocative preclinical studies, IL-12 has been evaluated in patients with different malignancies. To date, more than 58 clinical trials testing IL-12-based therapies in various types of cancer have been reported, reviewed in [26]. Here, we outline some of the earliest and most recent studies. Early work with IL-12 administration in patients with advanced CRC, melanoma, and renal cell carcinoma resulted in only one partial response (renal cell carcinoma) and one transient complete response (melanoma), among 40 enrolled patients. Common signs and symptoms of toxicity such as fever/chills, nausea, vomiting, fatigue, and headache were also observed [77]. In another study, IL-12 resulted in stabilization of disease in several renal cancer patients, and partial regression of a metastatic lesion, but did not proceed in clinical development again due to toxicity [78]. In patients with B-cell non-Hodgkin's lymphoma (NHL), initial trials of IL-12 treatment in combination with rituximab did not result in a clinical response [79]. However, subsequent clinical studies have revealed positive results with IL-12 treatment. In one study, 21% of NHL patients had a partial or complete response without major side effects [80]. Similarly, subcutaneous IL-12 treatment resulted in complete response in 56% of patients with T-cell lymphoma with minor toxicity [81]. Furthermore, clinical trials on metastatic melanoma revealed that IL-12 administration induced tumor shrinkage, accompanied with increased frequency of circulating antitumor CTLs [45]. The poor efficacy of IL-12 in the abovemen-

tioned early clinical trials may be due to several factors, including an immunosuppressive microenvironment in advanced tumors. IL-12 may also self-limit its own therapeutic efficacy by inducing IL-10 and other suppressive factors. For example, IFN-γ induced by IL-12 can activate immunoregulatory molecules, such as programmed death ligand-1 (PD-L1) and indoleamine 2,3 dioxygenase (IDO), in a variety of cells (e.g., DCs, T-cells, and endothelial cells) [82]. Both PD-L1 and IDO can abrogate antitumor immunity through various mechanisms. Other factors, such as environment and diet, may also alter the effectiveness of IL-12-mediated antitumor immunity.

Multiple IL-12 treatment strategies are being pursued to overcome these limitations. Although systemic administration of IL-12 in patients is limited due to toxicity, emerging studies in animal models indicate that IL-12, in combination with other cytokines, can boost antitumor immunity without toxic side effects. Most recently, IL-12 and anti-PDL1 combination has been shown to be more effective to either monotherapy in preclinical tumor models [83]. Combining IL-12 with PD-1-blocking antibody is currently being tested in a phase II study in patients with melanoma (NCT03132675). To overcome toxic side effects, recent clinical trials have been performed with local intratumoral delivery of IL-12 [26]. Along this line, intratumoral injections of adenovirus expressing IL-12 have been tested in patients with advanced stage III and IV melanoma. Clinical responses were observed in 5 out of 7 patients (*NCT01397708*). Thus, selective targeted delivery of IL-12 to tumors, and/or reducing the dose of IL-12 while combining it with other therapeutics, may yield improved outcomes.

13.2.2 IL-27

13.2.2.1 Overview

IL-27 is a member of the IL-12 cytokine family that exhibits potent antitumor activity via different mechanisms, depending on the tumor [84]. Unlike IL-12, IL-27-mediated antitumor functions are more independent of IFN-γ, and IL-27-treated mice do not manifest potent toxic side effects. IL-27 is mainly produced by activated APCs, including DCs and macrophages. DCs secrete IL-27 upon exposure to physiological stimuli, such as type I and type II interferons (INF) and CD40 [85–87]. In addition, IL-27 expression is induced in APCs via stimulation by various TLR ligands, such as poly(I:C), lipopolysaccharide (LPS), and CpG-DNA, which are agonists of toll-like receptor (TLR)3, TLR4, and TLR9, respectively [88–90].

13.2.2.2 IL-27 in Antitumor Immunity

IL-27 performs a wide array of functions necessary for antitumor immune responses. For example, IL-27 has been shown to act on NK cells to enhance their cytotoxic activity both *in vitro* and *in vivo* as described below. Therapeutic administration of IL-27 increases NK cell susceptibility of tumors [91]. By activating NK cells, IL-27 might also enhance adaptive immunity to tumors. The killing of tumor targets by NK cells could in turn provide DCs with increased access to tumor antigens, thereby promoting T-cell responses. In addition to NK cell activation, IL-27 acts on $CD8^+$ T-cells and induces CTLs by enhancing the expression of cytotoxic effector molecules, such as granzyme B and perforin [92]. Similar to mice, IL-27 promotes IFN-γ and granzyme B production from human $CD8^+$ T-cells [93]. In highly immunogenic murine tumor cells, the overexpression of IL-27 facilitates CTL development with enhanced IFN-γ production [94, 95]. In line with these observations, $IL\text{-}27R^{-/-}$ mice fail to regulate tumor growth *in vivo*, reiterating the importance of IL-27 signaling in the generation of antitumor immunity [96]. Recently, DC-derived IL-27 has been shown to induce NK and NKT-cell-dependent antitumor immunity against methylcholanthrene-induced fibrosarcoma and transplanted B16 melanoma [97]. Moreover, IL-27 in combination with other cytokines, such as IL-2 and IL-12, further boosts antitumor immunity by contributing to the development of CTLs and NK cells [98].

In addition to the direct effect of IL-27 on $CD8^+$ T-cell activation, the influence of IL-27 on $CD4^+$ T-cell responses might provide further ther-

apeutic opportunities. Initial studies on IL-27 have indicated that it leads to the differentiation of Th1 cells [99]. IL-27 synergizes with IL-12 to enhance IFN-γ production [100]. Moreover, it has been shown that IL-27 inhibits Th2 polarization of naïve $CD4^+$ T-cells and suppresses Th2 cytokine production *in vitro* [101–103]. By altering the balance between Th1 and Th2 cytokines, IL-27 plays a critical role in antitumor immunity. Accordingly, a recent study has confirmed IL-27's ability to reverse Th2 polarization of *in vivo*-primed lymphocytes from pancreatic cancer patients [104]. IL-27-dependent enhancement of preexisting antigen-specific Th1 responses has also been demonstrated [101]. Furthermore, IL-27 may promote tumor regression through the inhibition of Tregs. IL-27 inhibits the generation of $Foxp3^+$ Tregs both *in vitro* and *in vivo*, possibly by inhibiting IL-2, a cytokine necessary for Treg development [105–107]. Correspondingly, in a murine model of neuroblastoma, IL-27 has been shown to limit IL-2-induced intratumoral Treg expansion, promoting antitumor immunity [95]. IL-27 also induces tumor-specific Ab responses which cooperatively elicit antibody-dependent cell-mediated cytotoxicity (ADCC) activity [108].

13.2.2.3 IL-27 in Angiogenesis Inhibition and Regulation of IL-27 in the Tumor Microenvironment

Similar to IL-12, IL-27 possesses multiple antitumor effects mediated by mechanisms involving angiogenesis and its direct effects on tumors. For example, IL-27 has been found to have antiproliferative activities which inhibit tumor growth and metastasis in murine melanoma [109]. A major antitumor role for IL-27 relies on its antiangiogenic effects in surrounding endothelial cells and fibroblasts. IL-27 significantly inhibits tumor growth in SCID mice through the induction of antiangiogenic factors, such as IP-10 and MIG, from endothelial cells [110]. Similarly, IL-27 has been shown to directly act on human umbilical cord endothelial cells and induce production of these antiangiogenic chemokines [111]. IL-27 also strongly inhibits tumor growth of primary multiple myeloma (MM) [112] cells through angiogenesis inhibition [113]. Along with a concomitant upregulation of the angiostatic chemokines, IP-10 and MIG, IL-27 has been shown to downregulate a wide panel of proangiogenic genes, including matrix metalloproteinase-9 (MMP-9), TGF-β, and VEGF [113]. IL-27 may further promote tumor regression through the inhibition of the proangiogenic cytokine, IL-17. IL-27 suppresses the Th17 key transcription factor, RAR-related orphan receptor gamma (RORγt), inhibiting expression of IL-17 by T-cells in both humans and mice [114]. Accordingly, mice which are deficient in either the IL-27 subunit, EBI3, or deficient in IL-27R, have increased levels of IL-17 [115]. Among the Th17-suppressive molecules found in the tumor microenvironment, IL-27 is one of the most potent inhibitors.

IL-27 can be induced in tumor-infiltrating DCs by galactin-1, IFN-γ, and apoptotic tumor cells in the tumor microenvironment [85, 116, 117]. However, the proangiogenic molecules which dominate the microenvironment in advanced tumors can limit the availability of IL-27. Osteopontin (OPN), a proinflammatory cytokine, inhibits the expression of IL-27 in DCs while inducing Th17 differentiation [85]. OPN promotes tumor growth through mechanisms involving angiogenesis and tumor metastasis [118], suggesting that OPN may release the brake on Th17 cell responses by suppressing IL-27 in DCs. Both OPN and IL-27 are expressed in DCs and macrophages; thus, Th17 accumulation in the tumor microenvironment may depend on the balance of these and other myeloid cell populations.

13.2.2.4 Advantages of IL-27 (over IL-12) in Antitumor Therapy

IL-27-mediated antitumor mechanisms are complex [84, 119]. Similar to IL-12, IL-27 utilizes effector mechanisms of innate and adaptive immunity to mediate antitumor immunity [84]. Specifically, IL-27 promotes tumor immunity through the induction of Th1 and CTL responses while inhibiting immunosuppressive Th2 cells and Tregs [84]. Unlike IL-12, IL-27-mediated antiangiogenic functions are more independent of IFN-γ. Therefore, IL-27-treated mice are not

observed with any toxic side effects [120]. The central role of IL-27 in orchestrating both innate and adaptive arms of immunity, together with multiple antiangiogenic functions, explains the essential contribution of this molecule to the development of antitumor immunity against both high and poor immunogenic tumors. Considering the lack of toxicity observed *in vivo* in preclinical trials with IL-27 treatment, there appears to be meaningful therapeutic potential for this approach. However, to the best of our knowledge, no clinical trials involving IL-27 have yet been pursued.

13.3 Cytokine Regulation of Immune Tolerance to Cancer

Although certain cytokines produced in the tumor microenvironment can function to inhibit tumor growth, others promote tumor progression [17]. Several cytokines have been found to serve as growth and survival factors that act on premalignant cells, stimulate angiogenesis and metastasis, and maintain tumor-promoting immunosuppression and inflammation [17].

13.3.1 TGF-β

13.3.1.1 Overview

Transforming growth factor-β (TGF-β) is a pleiotropic cytokine with broad tissue distribution that plays critical roles during embryonic development, normal tissue homeostasis, and cancer [121]. Elevated TGF-β serum concentrations have been observed in patients with different malignancies and associated with poor prognosis. TGF-β is released by a variety of cells in the tumor microenvironment, including T-cells, macrophages, and DCs, as well as tumor cells themselves [122]. Almost all human cell types are responsive to TGF-β, which signals through type I and type II TGF-β receptors. Upon binding of TGF-β to TGF-βRII, TGF-βRI is recruited and activated to phosphorylate the downstream mediators, SMAD2 and SMAD3. Phosphorylated SMAD2 and SMAD3 combine with SMAD4 to enter the nucleus and modulate gene transcription [123].

The function of TGF-β in cancer is complex; TGF-β can act as a tumor suppressor or promoter depending on the stage of tumor development. Initially, TGF-β acts as a tumor suppressor, since it induces apoptosis and inhibits the growth of normal and premalignant tumor cells [124]. At later stages of tumor progression, TGF-β acts as a tumor promoter. It has been proposed that cancer cells may protect themselves and acquire resistance to TGF-β inhibitory growth signals. In fact, cancer cells eventually start secreting nonphysiological levels of TGF-β in an autocrine and paracrine manner, which may affect the differentiation of tumor cells and the surrounding cellular environment, leading to tumor progression [124]. Notably, TGF-β induces epithelial–mesenchymal transition (EMT), whereby epithelial tumor cells acquire an invasive, mesenchymal-like phenotype accompanied by changes in the expression of cell–cell adhesion molecules and secretion of metalloproteinases, leading to metastasis [125, 126]. In addition to tumor cell-intrinsic growth promotion, the potent regulatory activity of TGF-β on immune cells represents an important mechanism of immune tolerance to tumors. The presence of TGF-β in the microenvironment of the developing tumor disables effective immunosurveillance by multiple mechanisms, most of which converge on the impairment of tumor cell-killing by innate and adaptive immune cells (Fig. 13.2).

13.3.1.2 TGF-β in Innate Immune Tolerance to Tumors

TGF-β is known to compromise antitumor immunity mediated by a variety of innate immune cells. For example, TGF-β is an important regulator of NK cell function, being a potent antagonist of IL-12-induced IFN-γ production by NK cells [127]. In addition, TGF-β inhibits NK cell activity by limiting expression of activating receptors, such as NKG2D, NKp30, and DNAM-1 [128]. In fact, reduced expression of NKG2D is associated with elevated levels of TGF-β in cancer patients [128]. Surface-bound TGF-β on MDSCs has also

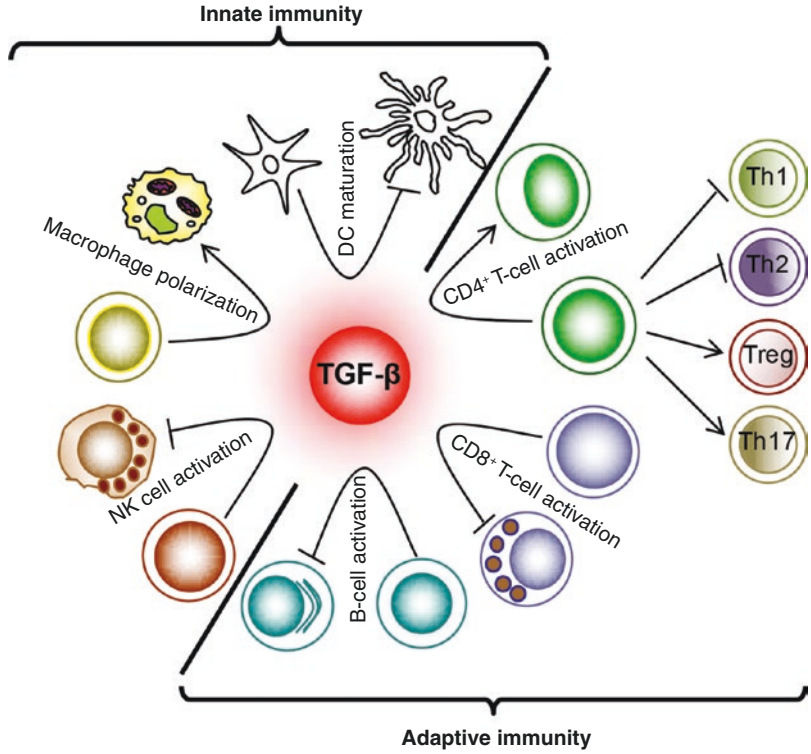


Fig. 13.2 TGF-β-mediated immunosuppression. TGF-β affects components of both innate and adaptive immune systems. TGF-β inhibits NK cell activation and effector functions. In addition, TGF-β inhibits DC maturation and antigen presentation while promoting polarization of M2-like macrophages. TGF-β inhibits $CD8^+$ T-cell-mediated antitumor immune responses. TGF-β also has a significant impact on $CD4^+$ T-cell differentiation and function; TGF-β induces Treg and Th17 differentiation while inhibiting Th1 and Th2 differentiation. Furthermore, TGF-β inhibits B-cell proliferation and antibody secretion

been found to inhibit NK cell cytolytic activity against mammary adenocarcinoma [129, 130]. Moreover, TGF-β suppresses MHC class I and MHC class II expression in a number of cell populations [131–133]. Importantly, the TGF-β-dependent decrease of MHC-I in tumor cells has been shown to result in reduced tumor cell lysis by NK cells [133].

Although NK cells are the major innate effectors, they also require activation by DCs. Numerous reports demonstrate TGF-β impairs DC function both *in vitro* and *in vivo*. Specifically, TGF-β inhibits upregulation of critical co-stimulatory molecules on the surface of DCs, and reduces cytokine production and antigen-presenting capacity [134, 135]. TGF-β can immobilize DCs, thereby interfering with their migration and the transport of antigen to draining lymph nodes for presentation to T-cells. TGF-β can also induce DC apoptosis [136]. In recent years, more correlative clinical data has supported the role of TGF-β and DCs in immunodefects in cancer. Increased serum TGF-β in human colorectal cancer correlates with reduced circulating DCs [137]. Moreover, tumor-infiltrating DCs both secrete and respond to TGF-β, in either an autocrine or a paracrine manner.

In addition to DCs, TGF-β can suppress or alter the activation and function of other innate immune cells such as NKT cells, neutrophils, and macrophages [122]. Macrophages, the predominant form of leukocytes, are key players in tumor growth; however, the role of tumor-associated macrophages (TAMs) in tumors is controversial [138]. TAMs originate from myeloid cells, such as blood monocytes or MDSCs, and are recruited

by a number of chemoattractants produced by tumor and stromal cells. The tumor-derived chemokine, CCL2, is particularly critical for this recruitment [139]. Macrophages can exhibit various phenotypes, characterized by differential cytokine production, when polarized under distinct conditions [140–142]. If stimulated with IFN-γ, M1 macrophages secrete high levels of IL-12, but low levels of IL-10 [140–142]. In contrast, M2 macrophages express high levels of IL-10, but low levels of IL-12 [140, 141]. Each possesses unique functions. For example, IL-12 produced by M1 macrophages can promote the differentiation of Th1 cells, which improves antigen phagocytosis and contributes to antitumor immunity. In M2 macrophages, IL-10 expression can promote the production of IL-4 and IL-13 by Th2 cells, both of which have been shown to impair antitumor T-cell responses [140, 141]. TGF-β pushes tumor-associated macrophage polarization toward an M2 vs. M1 phenotype, which further promotes TGF-β production and deepens immunosuppression [140]. In most tumors, infiltrating macrophages are considered to be of the M2 phenotype. These mostly tumor-supportive TAMs orchestrate various aspects of cancer, such as tumor progression, angiogenesis, metastasis, and immunosuppression. Other innate immune subsets, such as NKT cells, can suppress CTL responses through mechanisms involving TGF-β [122]. Therefore, blockade of TGF-β signaling not only enhances the frequency of antitumor CTLs, but also restores cytolytic machinery and prevents NKT-cell-mediated immunosuppression [143]. In addition, TGF-β has been shown to inhibit effector functions and induce regulatory phenotypes in γδ T-cells during cancer [122, 144]. Across various cell types, such TGF-β-mediated dampened innate immune responses lead to poor adaptive immunity, further resulting in tumor persistence.

13.3.1.3 TGF-β in Adaptive Immune Tolerance to Tumors

The presence of TGF-β in the tumor microenvironment can have a profound impact upon antitumor activity by T-cells. It has been shown that TGF-β can suppress CTL differentiation and CTL-mediated lysis of tumor cells [145, 146]. Specifically, TGF-β acts on CTLs to repress the expression of different cytolytic effector molecules, such as perforin, granzyme A, granzyme B, Fas ligand (FasL), and IFN-β, which are collectively responsible for tumor killing [147]. Blockade of TGF-β in tumor models has been shown to reduce tumor burden by improving $CD8^+$ T-cell-mediated tumor immunity [147]. Correspondingly, we have shown that anti-LAP antibody, which targets the LAP/TGF-β complex on a variety of immune cells, including $CD8^+$ T-cells, enhances antitumor immune responses and reduces tumor growth in multiple preclinical models [148]. Furthermore, TGF-β can suppress IL-2 production and IL-2-induced T-cell proliferation [149]. Tumor cells transfected with TGF-β have been found to attenuate the efficacy of DC-based tumor vaccines [134]. In addition, TGF-β functionally regulates the differentiation of T helper cell subpopulations both *in vitro* and *in vivo*. TGF-β inhibits Th1 and Th2 cells, whereas it promotes Treg and Th17 cell differentiation [150]. Recently, TGF-β has also been shown to play an important role in the development of IL-9-secreting Th9 cells [151, 152].

Although there are many sources of TGF-β in the tumor microenvironment, Tregs provide a significant source of the TGF-β responsible for attenuation of tumor antigen-expanded CTLs [122]. Tregs hamper the functions of Th1 cells, $CD8^+$ T-cells, NK cells, DCs, and other key effector cells of antitumor immunity [122]. Consequently, Treg accumulation and Treg-mediated immunosuppression have been proposed as key mechanisms underlying tumor immune evasion, and therefore are obstacles to successful immunotherapy [71]. The frequency of Tregs present in the peripheral blood of patients with various cancers is measurably higher than that of the normal population [153]. These Tregs, isolated from either peripheral blood or solid tumors, remain suppressive to T-cell activation *in vitro* [154]. Accordingly, Tregs from tumor-bearing mice inhibit tumor rejection, indicating that Treg cells suppress tumor-specific immunity and limit antitumor resistance. In contrast, depletion of Tregs with

anti-CD25 Ab in animal models enhances antitumor immunity and tumor regression. Furthermore, when tumor-specific $CD8^+$ T-cells are adoptively transferred with either Tregs or non-Tregs ($CD4^+CD25^-$ T-cells) into tumor-bearing hosts, $CD8^+$ T-cell-mediated immunity is abolished in those receiving Tregs, but not non-Tregs [72, 155]. Collectively, these studies provide strong evidence that the Treg-TGF-β axis can attenuate antitumor immunity by downregulating antitumor immune responses, ultimately facilitating the development of cancer.

13.3.1.4 TGF-β in Angiogenesis and Treg Promotion, and Treg Inhibition in Clinical Trials

Accumulating evidence suggests that TGF-β promotes tumor growth not only via mechanisms involving immunosuppression, but also angiogenesis. In fact, angiogenesis and tumor-associated immunosuppression are hallmarks of tumorigenesis [5]. This association is related to hypoxia, which induces both angiogenesis and immunosuppression via activation of hypoxia-induced factor 1 (HIF-1) [156]. HIF-1 induces vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF), which then recruits various proangiogenic bone marrow-derived cells, including endothelial progenitors and myeloid cells [156]. Tregs also migrate to tumors from the periphery following hypoxia-induced chemokines in the tumor microenvironment, specifically chemokine CCL28 [157]. Consequently, forced expression of CCL28 in murine tumor cells results in accelerated tumor growth and Treg accumulation, associated with increased VEGF levels and angiogenesis. In addition, Tregs have been shown to express CCR4, the receptor for CCL22, and can therefore migrate to CCL22 present in the tumor microenvironment [158, 159]. Beyond recruitment of Tregs through chemokines, the TGF-β-enriched tumor microenvironment promotes the continued expansion of Tregs [72].

Within the tumor microenvironment, Tregs are one of multiple cell types with established roles in immunosuppression that have also been shown to promote angiogenesis. Treg accumulation in tumors has been correlated with VEGF overexpression and increased angiogenesis, providing evidence for a link between Tregs and angiogenesis [160, 161]. In fact, Tregs have been shown to contribute to tumor angiogenesis through different mechanisms. For example, they can promote angiogenesis indirectly by suppressing Th1 cells that release the angiostatic cytokine, IFN-γ, as well as interferon-induced chemokines, such as CXCL9 and CXCL10. Furthermore, Tregs can contribute to the direct promotion of tumor angiogenesis through the induction of VEGF and endothelial cell proliferation [161].

Additional therapeutic opportunities may be provided by accounting for these Treg abilities using well-planned manipulations, including Treg depletion, blocking Treg trafficking into tumors, and limiting Treg differentiation and suppressive mechanisms, in combination with current therapeutic approaches. For example, in an early phase I clinical trial in patients with metastatic breast cancer, the anti-CD25 Ab, daclizumab, significantly depleted Tregs and enhanced the immunogenicity of a cancer vaccine [162]. In addition, blocking Treg functions using Abs targeted against glucocorticoid-induced tumor necrosis factor receptor-related protein (GITR), and cytotoxic T-lymphocyte antigen 4 (CTLA-4), are under clinical evaluation in cancer patients [163]. In fact, CTLA-4 was one of the first immunotherapeutic antibodies to be approved for the treatment of cancer. Importantly, blocking PD-1-PDL1 interaction with Abs has been shown to promote antitumor immunity in part via Treg inhibition [164]. PD-1-PDL1 blocking antibodies have made great progress in cancer treatment; so far, at least five different monoclonal antibodies targeting PD-1-PDL1 pathway have been approved [165].

13.3.1.5 TGF-β in Clinical Trials

Because of the wide array of effects of TGF-β on tumorigenesis, blockade of TGF-β and its signaling pathways could be a potent approach to improve tumor immunity. Indeed, mice with fully or partially disrupted TGF-β function have severe self-reactive immune responses, suggesting such responses could be harnessed to promote tumor

reactivity [166, 167]. There are numerous TGF-β signaling antagonists under development in both preclinical and clinical stages, as reviewed in [168]. Ongoing clinical trials in cancer patients include monoclonal Abs against TGF-β molecules, or small molecule inhibitors that interfere with TGF-β receptor signaling. Fresolimumab, a monoclonal antibody that neutralizes all isoforms of TGF-β, including TGF-β1, TGF-β2, and TGF-β3, was one of the first monoclonal antibody tested in cancer patients. Fresolimumab was initially tested in malignant melanoma and subsequently in malignant pleural mesothelioma. Of the 29 melanoma patients included in the trial, one patient achieved a partial response and six presented with stable disease [169]. Of the 13 patients with malignant pleural mesothelioma, 3 had stable disease for 3 months [170]. In phase I/II clinical trials, intratumoral administration of AP-12009, an antisense oligonucleotide to TGF-β, resulted in a significant increase of survival time [171]. In addition, a vaccine containing allogeneic tumor cells modified to express antisense TGF-β has been tested in a phase I/II clinical trial. Using this approach, a meaningful response rate of 30% was reported in non-small cell lung carcinoma (NSCLC), with no serious toxicity observed [172]. Galunisertib (LY2157299), a small molecule inhibitor selective for the kinase domain of the type 1 TGF-β receptor, is currently being evaluated in patients with hepatocellular carcinoma and metastatic malignancies (NCT01246986). In addition, a combination therapy combining Galunisertib with anti-PDL1 is also being tested in metastatic pancreatic cancer (NCT02734160).

13.3.2 IL-17

13.3.2.1 Overview

IL-17 is a proinflammatory cytokine produced by Th17 cells [173]. In addition, IL-17 can also be produced by other populations, such as iNKT, $CD8^+$ T, γδ T-cells, and innate lymphoid cells (ILCs) [174–177]. Since Th17 cells produce large quantities of IL-17A, most Th17-mediated effects are attributed to this cytokine. Many factors are required for the induction and stabilization of Th17 cells. TGF-β and IL-6 are the most crucial cytokines for initial Th17 differentiation [178]. IL-6 induces production of IL-21, which subsequently favors Th17 differentiation in an autocrine manner [179]. To maintain the Th17 phenotype *in vivo*, Th17 cells require CD40 and/or TLR ligand-induced IL-23 [180]. Importantly, the differentiation of Th17 cells into IL-17-secreting cells requires the expression of the transcription factor ROR-γt [181]. Many factors released by tumor cells, and molecules secreted by tumor-infiltrating immune cells, such as TGF-β, IL-6, prostaglandin E2 (PGE2), IL-21, IL-23, osteopontin, IL-1β, and TNF-α, can play major roles in the induction of IL-17 [182–185]. Interestingly, Th17 cells are increased in the tumor microenvironment and have been found across patients with different tumors [180]. The association between elevated IL-17 and negative prognoses links increased systemic IL-17 concentrations with cancer development.

13.3.2.2 Th17 Differentiation in the Tumor Microenvironment

There are multiple sources of Th17 cells in the tumor microenvironment. Preexisting Th17 cells can either migrate from the periphery or differentiate from naïve T-cells under the influence of tumor microenvironmental factors. Th17 cells that traffic to tumors do so under the influence of tumor microenvironmental chemokines, such as regulated upon activation normal T-cell-expressed and secreted (RANTES) and monocyte chemotactic protein-1 (MCP-1) [186]. In addition, high levels of the chemokines, CXCL12 and CCL20, further facilitate Th17 cell migration to tumor sites [187]. Once present, Th17 cells can clonally expand following appropriate stimulation, including by tumor-associated macrophages [188]. Th17 cells can also be induced and differentiate in the tumor microenvironment [180]. It has become clear that IL-17-producing Th17 cells and Tregs have overlapping origins. Although TGF-β favors the differentiation of naïve T-cells into Tregs, the simultaneous presence of both TGF-β and IL-6 promotes the dif-

ferentiation of Th17 cells [178]. Given the tight association of TGF-β and IL-6 with tumor incidence and progression, naïve T-cells entering an established tumor are more likely to be exposed to conditions favoring Th17 differentiation [182–185]. Interestingly, upon stimulation with TGF-β and IL-6, $CD8^+$ T-cells not only lose their cytotoxic ability, but are also induced to secrete IL-17 [189]. In contrast to IL-17, IFN-γ expressed by Th1 or $CD8^+$ T-cells inhibits angiogenesis and induces MHC-I in tumor cells, favoring immune recognition and subsequent arrest of tumor growth [190]. Because IL-17 favors angiogenesis and tumor growth, replacing IFN-γ with IL-17 in the tumor microenvironment may have severe consequences for immune recognition and surveillance.

13.3.2.3 IL-17 in Tumor Promotion

Multiple functions of IL-17 contribute to tumor progression. A major tumorigenic role relies on its proangiogenic effects within tumor cells and surrounding endothelial cells and fibroblasts. IL-17-overexpressing human cervical cancer cells and NSCLC cells show greater tumor development in immunocompromised mice compared to control cells with no IL-17 expression, which is thought to be mediated by enhanced angiogenesis [191, 192]. IL-17 overexpression in fibrosarcoma cells also enhances tumorigenic growth in syngenic mice, primarily owing to the proangiogenic activity of IL-17. In fact, Th17 cells levels positively correlate with microvessel density in tumors [191]. By acting on stromal cells and fibroblasts, IL-17 induces a wide range of angiogenic mediators, including VEGF [193, 194]. IL-17 upregulation of VEGF production by fibroblasts promotes fibroblast-induced new vessel formation in the tumor microenvironment [195]. The IL-17-VEGF loop in turn induces TGF-β, another angiogenic factor, followed by additional VEGF-mediated angiogenesis [196]. TGF-β can enhance the VEGF receptivity of endothelial cells by increasing VEGF receptor expression [197]. IL-17 also induces IL-6 and PGE2, and enhances intercellular adhesion molecule (ICAM)-1 expression in fibroblasts, all of which are known to play a major role in angiogenesis and tumor invasion [195]. In addition, IL-17 appears to stimulate the production of IL-8 [198]. IL-8 signaling promotes angiogenic responses in endothelial cells, increases proliferation and survival of endothelial and cancer cells, and potentiates the migration of cancer cells and infiltrating neutrophils at the tumor site. Moreover, IL-17 has been found to induce IL-1β and TNF-α in macrophages, cytokines which can further synergize with IL-17 to activate neutrophil-specific chemokines, thereby recruiting neutrophils to the site of inflammation [199]. Chemokines can stimulate or inhibit proliferation and chemotaxis of the blood vessel endothelial cells which serve the tumor. IL-17 has been shown to selectively enhance the production of angiogenic chemokines such as CXCL1, CXCL5, CXCL6, and CXCL8 from tumor cells and epithelial cells [191, 200]. In addition, IL-17 is also known to inhibit angiostatic chemokine secretion by fibroblasts [191]. Thus, IL-17 may shift the balance between angiogenic and angiostatic chemokines toward a predominance of angiogenic chemokines, in order to enhance net angiogenic activity.

One of the most important mechanisms underlying IL-17 orchestration of inflammation in the tumor microenvironment is through NF-κB, the master regulator of inflammation [201]. IL-17R signaling results in the activation of NF-κB and regulates the activity of several mitogen activate protein kinases (MAPKs) [202], including extracellular-regulated kinase 1 (ERK1), ERK2, c-Jun N-terminal kinase, and p38 mitogen-activated protein kinases [203]. Within tumor cells, IL-17 has been shown to modulate these pathways to promote tumor growth and survival. For example, IL-17R signaling within transformed colonic epithelial cells promotes colon cancer development by inducing NF-κB and MAPKs [204]. Accordingly, blocking IL-17 activity with Abs ameliorates both colitis-associated and sporadic colon cancer [205, 206]. While IL-17-mediated cytokine expression is regulated by NF-κB, the same cytokines can further stimulate NF-κB-mediated transcription themselves in tumor cells and tumor-associated stromal cells, thereby creating a sustained chronic

inflammatory state within the tumor microenvironment. In support of this notion, enhanced cervical cancer growth elicited by IL-17 has associated with increased IL-6 and macrophage recruitment to tumor sites [192]. Therefore, IL-17 might also function through IL-6 to promote tumor development. Correspondingly, IL-17-induced IL-6 has been shown to promote tumor growth via STAT-3 activation [207].

13.3.2.4 IL-17 in Antitumor Immunity

Although IL-17 seems to be a potential tumor-promoting cytokine, a considerable number of reports have described tumor-inhibitory effects of IL-17. Th17-polarized cells have been found to appear more effective than Th1 cells in eliminating large established tumors [208]. However, Th17-mediated antitumor responses are highly dependent on IFN-γ-based mechanisms; the effects of Th17-polarized cells are completely abrogated by the administration of IFN-γ-depleting Abs, but not by IL-17- or IL-23-depleting Abs. Nonetheless, more clear antitumor IL-17 functions have been documented. Adoptively transferred IL-17-secreting $CD8^+$ T-cells enhance antitumor immunity, resulting in regression of B16 melanoma [209]. In addition, IL-17 has been shown to inhibit the growth of hematopoietic tumors, such as mastocytoma and plasmacytoma, by enhancing CTL activity [210]. Different mechanisms have been proposed for the IL-17 enhancement of tumor-specific CTLs. IL-17 has been shown to induce IL-6 from a variety of cells. Moreover, IL-17 stimulation can induce IL-12 production from macrophages [211]. Both IL-6 and IL-12 have been associated with the induction of tumor-specific CTL [44, 212]. In addition, IL-17 promotes the maturation of DC progenitors, as indicated by increased expression of co-stimulatory molecules, MHC-II antigens, and allostimulatory capacity [213]. This may lead to further improvement in T-cell priming by tumor cells producing IL-17. Indeed, IL-17-transduced fibrosarcoma cells induce tumor-specific antitumor immunity by augmenting the expression of MHC class I and class II antigens [214]. Another recent demonstration studying IL-17-deficient mice, rather than exogenous IL-17 in established mouse lines, shows tumor growth in subcutaneous and lung tumor metastasis is enhanced by IL-17-deficiency [215]. This effect is accompanied by reduced IFN-γ levels in tumor-infiltrating NK cells and T-cells.

The evidence reviewed here demonstrates that IL-17-secreting cells can either stimulate or inhibit tumor growth and progression. The beneficial effects of IL-17 on upregulating host immune responses may be present early in inflammation, but appears to be eventually overcome by increasing tumor burden. This shift from beneficial inflammatory functions of IL-17 likely depends on the tumor type and inflammatory mediators in the tumor microenvironment.

13.3.3 IL-23

13.3.3.1 Overview

IL-23 is a heterodimeric protein composed of two subunits: IL-23p19 and IL-12p40 [216]. IL-23 is secreted by activated DCs and macrophages. Binding of IL-23 to the IL-23R complex, composed of IL-12Rβ1 and IL-23R, marks the beginning of the IL-23 signal-transduction cascade [217]. Because IL-23 plays an important role in bridging innate and adaptive responses, it has been described as a key cytokine promoting inflammation in peripheral tissues. The activity of IL-23 in the regulation of tumor immunity is just beginning to be elucidated [218].

13.3.3.2 IL-23 in Tumor Promotion and Inhibition

Despite belonging to the IL-12 family, IL-23 performs both pro- and antitumor functions. IL-23 is spontaneously produced by TAMs in several murine tumor models. Tumor-secreted PGE2 enhances the production of IL-23 and IL-1β in macrophages and DCs while downregulating IL-12 production [56, 219, 220]. Following this pattern, IL-12 production is decreased, and IL-23 increased, in tumors [221]. Together with IL-23, PGE2 favors the expansion of human Th17 cells

from PBMCs; PGE2 also enhances IL-17 production from memory $CD4^+$ cells induced by IL-23 [185]. Although IL-23 is not necessary in the initial differentiation of Th17 cells, it is crucial for the function, survival, and propagation of this T-cell population in the inflamed environment [173]. In contrast to the antitumor role of IL-12, IL-23 promotes inflammatory processes, including matrix metalloproteinase expression and angiogenesis, and reduces CTL infiltration and function, thus contributing to tumor growth [222]. Indeed, mice lacking IL-23/p19 are completely resistant to carcinogen-induced tumors. The lack of cancer in these mice correlates with the absence of various markers indicative of tumor-associated inflammation, including IL-17, GR-1^+, and $CD11b^+$ myeloid cells [222]. Recently, tumor-secreted lactic acid has been shown to activate the IL-23/Th17 pathway [183].

In contrast, IL-23-overexpressing tumors show reduced growth and metastasis [223–226]. These antitumor effects of IL-23 have been found to be mediated through enhancement of $CD8^+$ T-cell responses. In addition, intratumoral injection of IL-23-overexpressing DCs results in a similar phenotype [225]. Artificial overexpression of IL-23 could induce potent antitumor immunity through various mechanisms. IL-23 can mediate myeloid infiltration, including DCs, macrophages, and granulocytes, which instead may contribute to the inhibition of tumor growth and boost immune reactions to immune-sensitive tumors. In addition, overexpression of IL-23 is likely to increase systemic IL-23 levels that could in turn lead to the growth and survival of memory $CD8^+$ T-cells.

13.3.4 IL-35

13.3.4.1 Overview

IL-35 is a recently discovered IL-12 family cytokine composed of an IL-12 p35 subunit and an IL-12 p40-related protein subunit, EBI3 [216]. Not constitutively expressed in tissues, IL-35 is produced mainly by Tregs and DCs. IL-35 induces the transformation of $CD4^+$ effector T-cells into Tregs, which in turn express IL-35 (Treg35 cells) but lack the expression of conventional Treg marker, Foxp3 [227]. Treg35 cells generated *in vitro* can prevent the development of autoimmunity in various mouse models [228–231]. Most recently, it has been shown that human Tregs express and require IL-35 for maximal suppressive function. Substantial upregulation of EBI3 and IL-12A, but not IL-10 and TGF-β, has been observed in activated human Tregs compared with conventional T-cells [232].

13.3.4.2 IL-35 in Immune Tolerance to Tumors

Evidence of the role of IL-35 in immune tolerance to tumors is beginning to emerge. The IL-35 subunit, EBI3, is expressed in Hodgkin's lymphoma cells, acute myeloid leukemia cells, and lung cancer cells [233–235]. Small interfering RNA silencing of EBI3 in lung cancer cells inhibits cancer cell proliferation, whereas stable expression of EBI3 confers growth-promoting activity *in vitro* [235]. Accordingly, high EBI3 expression in human lung cancer cells is associated with poor prognosis [235]. Recently, IL-35-secreting Ag-specific Tregs have been observed in patients with prostate cancer [236]. A number of studies have demonstrated the functional role of Treg-derived IL-35 in limiting antitumor T-cell responses. For example, *in vitro*-generated Treg35 cells accelerate the development of B16 melanoma and prevent the generation of antitumor $CD8^+$ T-cell responses [227]. In addition, T-cells that secrete IL-35 and have suppressive functions can be induced in the tumor beds of melanoma and colorectal adenocarcinoma [237]. Blockade of this IL-35 relieves suppression mediated by Tregs [237]. Similarly, forced expression of IL-35 leads to significantly increased tumorigenesis in mice. This IL-35 upregulation increases the number of $CD11b^+Gr1^+$ myeloid cells in tumors, which promotes angiogenesis, and also renders tumor target cells more resistant to CTL destruction [237]. Most recently, neutralization with IL-35-specific Abs, or Treg restricted production of IL-35, has been shown to limit tumor growth in multiple models of human cancer [238].

13.3.5 IL-10

13.3.5.1 Overview

IL-10 is an important immunoregulatory cytokine produced by many cell populations. Due to its role in inhibiting the production of IL-2 and IFN-γ by murine and human Th1 cells, IL-10 was initially named as a cytokine synthesis inhibitory factor [239]. The function of IL-10 in cancer is enigmatic. Depending on the experimental model, IL-10 displays both immunosuppressive and immunostimulating activities. On the one hand, IL-10 promotes an antitumor CTL response leading to tumor regression; however, IL-10 can also induce immunosuppression and assist in escape from tumor immune surveillance, promoting tumor growth.

13.3.5.2 IL-10 in Immune Tolerance to Tumors

The cellular sources of IL-10 include Th2, Treg, Tr1, and Th17 cells; however, cytotoxic $CD8^+$ T-cells can also produce IL-10, as can some subsets of DCs, macrophages, B-cells, granulocytes, mast cells, keratinocytes, and epithelial cells. In addition, various cancer cells produce IL-10; among those are multiple myeloma, melanoma, human colon carcinoma, lung cancer, oral squamous cell carcinoma, renal cell carcinoma, non-Hodgkin's lymphoma, and chronic lymphocytic leukemia [240]. Circulating concentrations of IL-10 have been found to be raised in patients with different cancer types, and associated with adverse disease stages or with negative prognoses. For example, serum levels of IL-10 positively correlate with clinical disease progression in patients with metastatic melanoma, as well as colon cancer [240]. In addition, preoperative serum levels of IL-10 predict the likelihood of colon cancer recurrence [240, 241]. IL-10 can be induced and sustained in the tumor microenvironment by a variety of cytokines. Macrophage-derived IL-6 has been shown to induce production of IL-10 by cancer cells. Similarly, IL-6, in association with TGF-β, can induce IL-10 production in Th17 cells. However, TGF-β alone can induce IL-10, allowing IL-10 to enhance the expression of TGF-β in a positive feedback circuit. While promoting inflammatory responses in macrophages and monocytes, TNF-α also upregulates IL-10 as negative feedback, thereby terminating the inflammation [242]. In addition, IL-12 and IL-27 can induce IL-10 production from T-cells [114, 239].

IL-10 can act as a negative regulator in the crosstalk between innate and adaptive antitumor immunity (Fig. 13.3): One of the major mechanisms by which cancer cells escape immune attack is by avoiding detection [243]. IL-10 has been shown to prevent NK and $CD8^+$ T-cell detection of tumor antigens. IL-10 inhibits NKG2D ligand expression on tumor cells and suppresses cytotoxicity mediated by NK cells. In addition, IL-10 induces HLA-G molecules that prevent attack by NK cells [244]. IL-10 pretreatment can also convert tumor cells to a CTL-resistant phenotype by decreasing the expression of HLA class I molecules on their surface [245]. These changes allow tumor cells to survive from immunological attack by NK cells and to grow exponentially.

IL-10 acts on DCs and macrophages to inhibit the differentiation and antigen-presenting properties of these cells. Specifically, IL-10 inhibits essential steps required for immune detection, such as the expression of HLA-DR, and the costimulatory molecules, CD80 and CD86, on DCs. IL-10 also prevents the production of the Th1-polarizing cytokines, IL-12 and IFN-γ, from DCs [246]. Administration of IL-10 before and immediately after DC cancer vaccine results in immune suppression and tumor progression, in line with the predominantly inhibitory activity of IL-10 on DC-mediated antigen presentation [74]. Accordingly, we have shown that IL-10-deficient DCs are more effective at inducing protective antitumor immune response in mice [74]. Exposure of DCs to tumor cell lysates results in increased IL-10 production and expansion of regulatory Tr1 cells. Tr1 cells have been shown to downmodulate immune responses through the production of IL-10 [247]. In addition, IL-10 has been shown to mediate the immunosuppressive activity of Tregs. Therefore, DCs that encounter

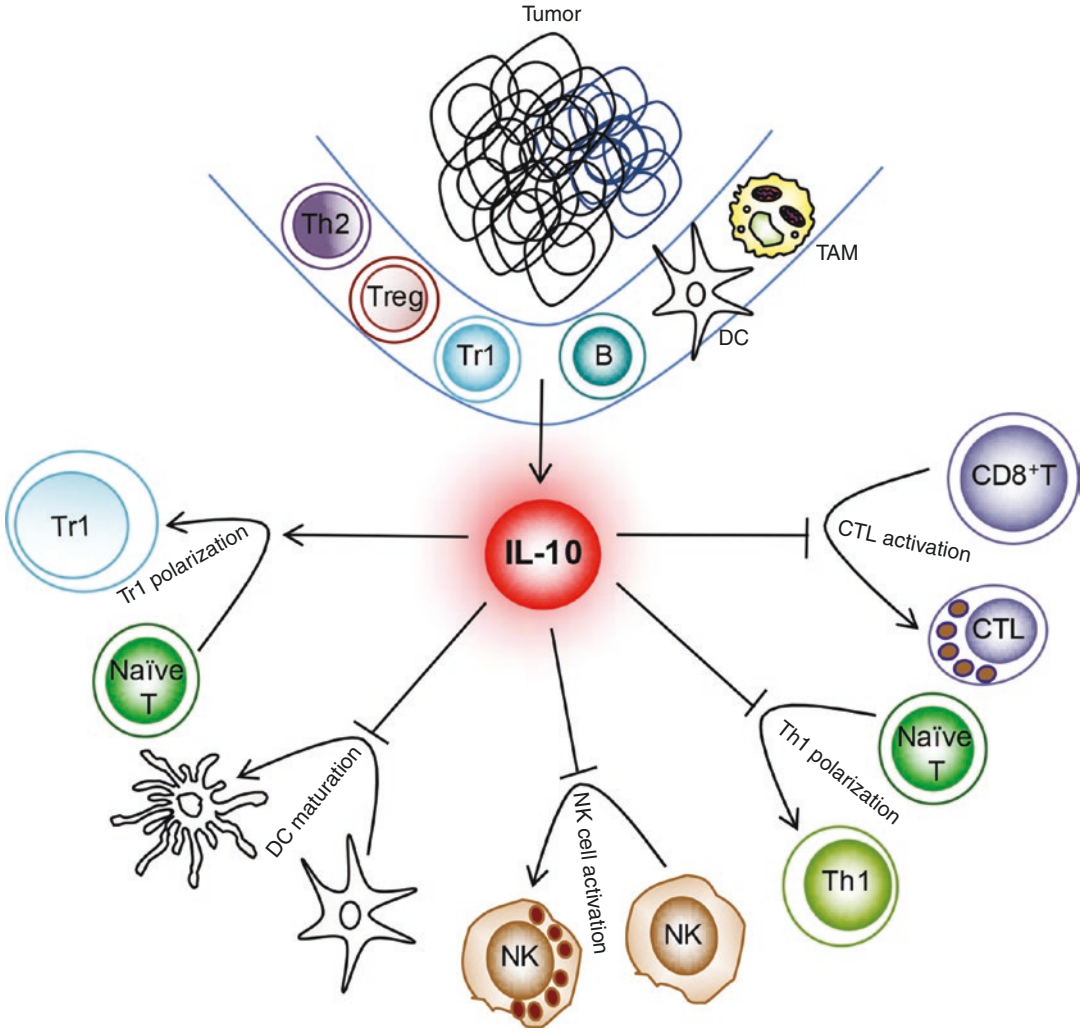


Fig. 13.3 IL-10-mediated tumor immunosuppression. IL-10 can be induced in the tumor microenvironment by many cell types, including Th2 cells, Tr1 cells, Tregs, DCs, TAMs, and tumor cells. IL-10 has a multitude of suppressive effects on the antitumor immune response. For example, IL-10 can inhibit the maturation of DCs and disrupt the differentiation of CTLs and Th1 cells. IL-10 can also inhibit the cytolytic activity of NK cells. On the other hand, IL-10 can promote tumor growth through the promotion of IL-10-producing Tr1 cells

tumor antigens in the presence of IL-10 *in vivo* acquire tolerogenic properties and subsequently induce T-cell tolerance to tumor antigens. In addition, IL-10 significantly suppresses other inflammatory cytokines such as IL-1β, IL-6, and TNFα, in DCs. Consistent with these observations, inhibition of IL-10 production by T-cells or malignant cells using anti-IL-10-/IL-10R-blocking Abs, or anti-IL-10 antisense oligonucleotides, improves antitumor immune responses in animal models [240].

13.3.5.3 IL-10 in Antitumor Immunity

Data from experimental models suggest that IL-10 may also possess some immunostimulating and antitumor properties. For example, overexpression of IL-10 in tumor cells leads to the loss of tumorigenicity, concomitant with increased immunogenicity accompanied by a strong antitumor immune response. IL-10 has been shown to increase $CD8^+$ T-cell numbers, IFN-γ secretion, and cytotoxicity in established tumors. Accordingly, overexpression of IL-10 in tumor

cells transplanted in mice leads to tumor rejection [246, 248]. Such observations suggest that IL-10 might maintain the number of antigen-specific CTLs. Therapeutic administration of recombinant IL-10 induces antitumor immunity against fibrosarcomas in mice [249]. However, as previously mentioned, higher expression of IL-10 correlates with tumor progression and metastasis in patients with cancer, indicating that IL-10 production in the clinical setting is detrimental [240]. To conclude, the pleiotropic activity of IL-10 on different immune cell populations and the variability of cancer models used to address the role of IL-10 in tumor immunity are likely responsible for the controversial findings reported in the literature.

13.4 Concluding Remarks

Coordinated, effective development of both innate and adaptive antitumor immune responses is necessary to keep cancer at bay. While certain cytokines produced in the tumor microenvironment can function to limit tumor growth, others can promote tumor progression. A more thorough understanding of tumor-cytokine and immune cell interactions in the tumor microenvironment, and thoughtful manipulation of the balance of pro- vs. anti-tumor cytokines, may pave the way for more effective cancer immunotherapeutic strategies.

References

1. Schreiber RD, Old LJ, Smyth MJ. Cancer immunoediting: integrating immunity's roles in cancer suppression and promotion. Science. 2011;331(6024):1565–70.
2. Pardoll D. Does the immune system see tumors as foreign or self? Annu Rev Immunol. 2003;21:807–39.
3. Vesely MD, Kershaw MH, Schreiber RD, Smyth MJ. Natural innate and adaptive immunity to cancer. Annu Rev Immunol. 2011;29:235–71.
4. Pages F, Galon J, Dieu-Nosjean MC, Tartour E, Sautes-Fridman C, Fridman WH. Immune infiltration in human tumors: a prognostic factor that should not be ignored. Oncogene. 2010;29(8):1093–102.
5. Hanahan D, Weinberg RA. The hallmarks of cancer. Cell. 2000;100(1):57–70.
6. Carmeliet P, Jain RK. Angiogenesis in cancer and other diseases. Nature. 2000;407(6801):249–57.
7. Mattarollo SR, Smyth MJ. A novel axis of innate immunity in cancer. Nat Immunol. 2010;11(11):981–2.
8. Wu J, Lanier LL. Natural killer cells and cancer. Adv Cancer Res. 2003;90:127–56.
9. Srivastava P. Interaction of heat shock proteins with peptides and antigen presenting cells: chaperoning of the innate and adaptive immune responses. Annu Rev Immunol. 2002;20:395–425.
10. Shurin MR. Dendritic cells presenting tumor antigen. Cancer Immunol Immunother. 1996;43(3):158–64.
11. Rabinovich GA, Gabrilovich D, Sotomayor EM. Immunosuppressive strategies that are mediated by tumor cells. Annu Rev Immunol. 2007;25:267–96.
12. Gabrilovich DI, Ostrand-Rosenberg S, Bronte V. Coordinated regulation of myeloid cells by tumours. Nat Rev Immunol. 2012;12(4):253–68.
13. Gooden MJ, de Bock GH, Leffers N, Daemen T, Nijman HW. The prognostic influence of tumour-infiltrating lymphocytes in cancer: a systematic review with meta-analysis. Br J Cancer. 2011;105(1):93–103.
14. Ladanyi A, Kiss J, Somlai B, Gilde K, Fejos Z, Mohos A, et al. Density of DC-LAMP(+) mature dendritic cells in combination with activated T lymphocytes infiltrating primary cutaneous melanoma is a strong independent prognostic factor. Cancer Immunol Immunother. 2007;56(9):1459–69.
15. Aras S, Zaidi MR. TAMeless traitors: macrophages in cancer progression and metastasis. Br J Cancer. 2017;117(11):1583–91.
16. Panni RZ, Linehan DC, DeNardo DG. Targeting tumor-infiltrating macrophages to combat cancer. Immunotherapy. 2013;5(10):1075–87.
17. Dranoff G. Cytokines in cancer pathogenesis and cancer therapy. Nat Rev Cancer. 2004;4(1):11–22.
18. Smyth MJ, Cretney E, Kershaw MH, Hayakawa Y. Cytokines in cancer immunity and immunotherapy. Immunol Rev. 2004;202:275–93.
19. Seruga B, Zhang H, Bernstein LJ, Tannock IF. Cytokines and their relationship to the symptoms and outcome of cancer. Nat Rev Cancer. 2008;8(11):887–99.
20. Lippitz BE. Cytokine patterns in patients with cancer: a systematic review. Lancet Oncol. 2013;14(6):e218–28.
21. Belardelli F, Ferrantini M. Cytokines as a link between innate and adaptive antitumor immunity. Trends Immunol. 2002;23(4):201–8.
22. Trinchieri G. Interleukin-12 and its role in the generation of TH1 cells. Immunol Today. 1993;14(7):335–8.
23. Trinchieri G. Interleukin-12: a proinflammatory cytokine with immunoregulatory functions that bridge innate resistance and antigen-specific adaptive immunity. Annu Rev Immunol. 1995;13:251–76.

24. Colombo MP, Trinchieri G. Interleukin-12 in anti-tumor immunity and immunotherapy. Cytokine Growth Factor Rev. 2002;13(2):155–68.
25. Weiss JM, Subleski JJ, Wigginton JM, Wiltrout RH. Immunotherapy of cancer by IL-12-based cytokine combinations. Expert Opin Biol Ther. 2007;7(11):1705–21.
26. Lasek W, Zagozdzon R, Jakobisiak M. Interleukin 12: still a promising candidate for tumor immunotherapy? Cancer Immunol Immunother. 2014;63(5):419–35.
27. Presky DH, Yang H, Minetti LJ, Chua AO, Nabavi N, Wu CY, et al. A functional interleukin 12 receptor complex is composed of two beta-type cytokine receptor subunits. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 1996;93(24):14002–7.
28. Jyothi MD, Khar A. Regulation of CD40L expression on natural killer cells by interleukin-12 and interferon gamma: its role in the elicitation of an effective antitumor immune response. Cancer Immunol Immunother. 2000;49(10):563–72.
29. Kodama T, Takeda K, Shimozato O, Hayakawa Y, Atsuta M, Kobayashi K, et al. Perforin-dependent NK cell cytotoxicity is sufficient for anti-metastatic effect of IL-12. Eur J Immunol. 1999;29(4):1390–6.
30. Smyth MJ, Crowe NY, Godfrey DI. NK cells and NKT cells collaborate in host protection from methylcholanthrene-induced fibrosarcoma. Int Immunol. 2001;13(4):459–63.
31. Mariani E, Meneghetti A, Tarozzi A, Cattini L, Facchini A. Interleukin-12 induces efficient lysis of natural killer-sensitive and natural killer-resistant human osteosarcoma cells: the synergistic effect of interleukin-2. Scand J Immunol. 2000;51(6):618–25.
32. Robertson MJ, Cameron C, Atkins MB, Gordon MS, Lotze MT, Sherman ML, et al. Immunological effects of interleukin 12 administered by bolus intravenous injection to patients with cancer. Clin Cancer Res. 1999;5(1):9–16.
33. Chouaib S, Chehimi J, Bani L, Genetet N, Tursz T, Gay F, et al. Interleukin 12 induces the differentiation of major histocompatibility complex class I-primed cytotoxic T-lymphocyte precursors into allospecific cytotoxic effectors. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 1994;91(26):12659–63.
34. Chiodoni C, Paglia P, Stoppacciaro A, Rodolfo M, Parenza M, Colombo MP. Dendritic cells infiltrating tumors cotransduced with granulocyte/macrophage colony-stimulating factor (GM-CSF) and CD40 ligand genes take up and present endogenous tumor-associated antigens, and prime naive mice for a cytotoxic T lymphocyte response. J Exp Med. 1999;190(1):125–33.
35. Toes RE, Schoenberger SP, van der Voort EI, Offringa R, Melief CJ. CD40-CD40Ligand interactions and their role in cytotoxic T lymphocyte priming and anti-tumor immunity. Semin Immunol. 1998;10(6):443–8.
36. Cella M, Scheidegger D, Palmer-Lehmann K, Lane P, Lanzavecchia A, Alber G. Ligation of CD40 on dendritic cells triggers production of high levels of interleukin-12 and enhances T cell stimulatory capacity: T-T help via APC activation. J Exp Med. 1996;184(2):747–52.
37. Curtsinger JM, Johnson CM, Mescher MF. CD8 T cell clonal expansion and development of effector function require prolonged exposure to antigen, costimulation, and signal 3 cytokine. J Immunol. 2003;171(10):5165–71.
38. Curtsinger JM, Lins DC, Mescher MF. Signal 3 determines tolerance versus full activation of naive CD8 T cells: dissociating proliferation and development of effector function. J Exp Med. 2003;197(9):1141–51.
39. van Mierlo GJ, den Boer AT, Medema JP, van der Voort EI, Fransen MF, Offringa R, et al. CD40 stimulation leads to effective therapy of CD40(-) tumors through induction of strong systemic cytotoxic T lymphocyte immunity. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2002;99(8):5561–6.
40. Schoenberger SP, Toes RE, van der Voort EI, Offringa R, Melief CJ. T-cell help for cytotoxic T lymphocytes is mediated by CD40-CD40L interactions. Nature. 1998;393(6684):480–3.
41. Brunda MJ, Luistro L, Warrier RR, Wright RB, Hubbard BR, Murphy M, et al. Antitumor and antimetastatic activity of interleukin 12 against murine tumors. J Exp Med. 1993;178(4):1223–30.
42. Nastala CL, Edington HD, McKinney TG, Tahara H, Nalesnik MA, Brunda MJ, et al. Recombinant IL-12 administration induces tumor regression in association with IFN-gamma production. J Immunol. 1994;153(4):1697–706.
43. Hill HC, Conway TF Jr, Sabel MS, Jong YS, Mathiowitz E, Bankert RB, et al. Cancer immunotherapy with interleukin 12 and granulocyte-macrophage colony-stimulating factor-encapsulated microspheres: coinduction of innate and adaptive antitumor immunity and cure of disseminated disease. Cancer Res. 2002;62(24):7254–63.
44. Xiao Z, Casey KA, Jameson SC, Curtsinger JM, Mescher MF. Programming for CD8 T cell memory development requires IL-12 or type I IFN. J Immunol. 2009;182(5):2786–94.
45. Mortarini R, Borri A, Tragni G, Bersani I, Vegetti C, Bajetta E, et al. Peripheral burst of tumor-specific cytotoxic T lymphocytes and infiltration of metastatic lesions by memory CD8+ T cells in melanoma patients receiving interleukin 12. Cancer Res. 2000;60(13):3559–68.
46. Zhu J, Yamane H, Paul WE. Differentiation of effector CD4 T cell populations. Annu Rev Immunol. 2010;28:445–89.
47. Kaplan MH, Sun YL, Hoey T, Grusby MJ. Impaired IL-12 responses and enhanced development of Th2 cells in Stat4-deficient mice. Nature. 1996;382(6587):174–7.
48. Ellyard JI, Simson L, Parish CR. Th2-mediated antitumour immunity: friend or foe? Tissue Antigens. 2007;70(1):1–11.

49. Liao D, Luo Y, Markowitz D, Xiang R, Reisfeld RA. Cancer associated fibroblasts promote tumor growth and metastasis by modulating the tumor immune microenvironment in a 4T1 murine breast cancer model. PLoS One. 2009;4(11):e7965.
50. Noguchi Y, Jungbluth A, Richards EC, Old LJ. Effect of interleukin 12 on tumor induction by 3-methylcholanthrene. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 1996;93(21):11798–801.
51. Durali D, de Goer de Herve MG, Giron-Michel J, Azzarone B, Delfraissy JF, Taoufik Y. In human B cells, IL-12 triggers a cascade of molecular events similar to Th1 commitment. Blood. 2003;102(12):4084–9.
52. Adris S, Chuluyan E, Bravo A, Berenstein M, Klein S, Jasnis M, et al. Mice vaccination with interleukin 12-transduced colon cancer cells potentiates rejection of syngeneic non-organ-related tumor cells. Cancer Res. 2000;60(23):6696–703.
53. Boggio K, Nicoletti G, Di Carlo E, Cavallo F, Landuzzi L, Melani C, et al. Interleukin 12-mediated prevention of spontaneous mammary adenocarcinomas in two lines of Her-2/neu transgenic mice. J Exp Med. 1998;188(3):589–96.
54. Robertson MJ, Ritz J. Interleukin 12: basic biology and potential applications in cancer treatment. Oncologist. 1996;1(1 & 2):88–97.
55. Voest EE, Kenyon BM, O'Reilly MS, Truitt G, D'Amato RJ, Folkman J. Inhibition of angiogenesis in vivo by interleukin 12. J Natl Cancer Inst. 1995;87(8):581–6.
56. Kocieda VP, Adhikary S, Emig F, Yen JH, Toscano MG, Ganea D. Prostaglandin E2-induced IL-23p19 subunit is regulated by cAMP-responsive element-binding protein and C/AATT enhancer-binding protein beta in bone marrow-derived dendritic cells. J Biol Chem. 2012;287(44):36922–35.
57. Angiolillo AL, Sgadari C, Taub DD, Liao F, Farber JM, Maheshwari S, et al. Human interferon-inducible protein 10 is a potent inhibitor of angiogenesis in vivo. J Exp Med. 1995;182(1):155–62.
58. Angiolillo AL, Sgadari C, Tosato G. A role for the interferon-inducible protein 10 in inhibition of angiogenesis by interleukin-12. Ann N Y Acad Sci. 1996;795:158–67.
59. Kanegane C, Sgadari C, Kanegane H, Teruya-Feldstein J, Yao L, Gupta G, et al. Contribution of the CXC chemokines IP-10 and Mig to the antitumor effects of IL-12. J Leukoc Biol. 1998;64(3):384–92.
60. Lehtonen A, Lund R, Lahesmaa R, Julkunen I, Sareneva T, Matikainen S. IFN-alpha and IL-12 activate IFN regulatory factor 1 (IRF-1), IRF-4, and IRF-8 gene expression in human NK and T cells. Cytokine. 2003;24(3):81–90.
61. Bouker KB, Skaar TC, Riggins RB, Harburger DS, Fernandez DR, Zwart A, et al. Interferon regulatory factor-1 (IRF-1) exhibits tumor suppressor activities in breast cancer associated with caspase activation and induction of apoptosis. Carcinogenesis. 2005;26(9):1527–35.
62. Bowie ML, Ibarra C, Seewalt VL. IRF-1 promotes apoptosis in p53-damaged basal-type human mammary epithelial cells: a model for early basal-type mammary carcinogenesis. Adv Exp Med Biol. 2008;617:367–74.
63. Acquaviva J, Chen X, Ren R. IRF-4 functions as a tumor suppressor in early B-cell development. Blood. 2008;112(9):3798–806.
64. Pathak S, Ma S, Trinh L, Eudy J, Wagner KU, Joshi SS, et al. IRF4 is a suppressor of c-Myc induced B cell leukemia. PLoS One. 2011;6(7):e22628.
65. Yao L, Sgadari C, Furuke K, Bloom ET, Teruya-Feldstein J, Tosato G. Contribution of natural killer cells to inhibition of angiogenesis by interleukin-12. Blood. 1999;93(5):1612–21.
66. Cavallo F, Quaglino E, Cifaldi L, Di Carlo E, Andre A, Bernabei P, et al. Interleukin 12-activated lymphocytes influence tumor genetic programs. Cancer Res. 2001;61(8):3518–23.
67. Mitola S, Strasly M, Prato M, Ghia P, Bussolino F. IL-12 regulates an endothelial cell-lymphocyte network: effect on metalloproteinase-9 production. J Immunol. 2003;171(7):3725–33.
68. Ruegg C, Yilmaz A, Bieler G, Bamat J, Chaubert P, Lejeune FJ. Evidence for the involvement of endothelial cell integrin alphaVbeta3 in the disruption of the tumor vasculature induced by TNF and IFN-gamma. Nat Med. 1998;4(4):408–14.
69. Takaoka A, Hayakawa S, Yanai H, Stoiber D, Negishi H, Kikuchi H, et al. Integration of interferon-alpha/beta signalling to p53 responses in tumour suppression and antiviral defence. Nature. 2003;424(6948):516–23.
70. Watkins SK, Egilmez NK, Suttles J, Stout RD. IL-12 rapidly alters the functional profile of tumor-associated and tumor-infiltrating macrophages in vitro and in vivo. J Immunol. 2007;178(3):1357–62.
71. Colombo MP, Piconese S. Regulatory-T-cell inhibition versus depletion: the right choice in cancer immunotherapy. Nat Rev Cancer. 2007;7(11):880–7.
72. Zou W. Regulatory T cells tumour immunity and immunotherapy. Nat Rev Immunol. 2006;6(4):295–307.
73. Murugaiyan G, Martin S, Saha B. Levels of CD40 expression on dendritic cells dictate tumour growth or regression. Clin Exp Immunol. 2007;149(1):194–202.
74. Murugaiyan G, Agrawal R, Mishra GC, Mitra D, Saha B. Functional dichotomy in CD40 reciprocally regulates effector T cell functions. J Immunol. 2006;177(10):6642–9.
75. Murugaiyan G, Agrawal R, Mishra GC, Mitra D, Saha B. Differential CD40/CD40L expression results in counteracting antitumor immune responses. J Immunol. 2007;178(4):2047–55.
76. Mitsuhashi M, Liu J, Cao S, Shi X, Ma X. Regulation of interleukin-12 gene expression and its anti-tumor activities by prostaglandin E2 derived from mammary carcinomas. J Leukoc Biol. 2004;76(2):322–32.

77. Atkins MB, Robertson MJ, Gordon M, Lotze MT, DeCoste M, DuBois JS, et al. Phase I evaluation of intravenous recombinant human interleukin 12 in patients with advanced malignancies. Clin Cancer Res. 1997;3(3):409–17.
78. Portielje JE, Kruit WH, Schuler M, Beck J, Lamers CH, Stoter G, et al. Phase I study of subcutaneously administered recombinant human interleukin 12 in patients with advanced renal cell cancer. Clin Cancer Res. 1999;5(12):3983–9.
79. Ansell SM, Geyer SM, Maurer MJ, Kurtin PJ, Micallef IN, Stella P, et al. Randomized phase II study of interleukin-12 in combination with rituximab in previously treated non-Hodgkin's lymphoma patients. Clin Cancer Res. 2006;12(20 Pt 1):6056–63.
80. Younes A, Pro B, Robertson MJ, Flinn IW, Romaguera JE, Hagemeister F, et al. Phase II clinical trial of interleukin-12 in patients with relapsed and refractory non-Hodgkin's lymphoma and Hodgkin's disease. Clin Cancer Res. 2004;10(16):5432–8.
81. Rook AH, Wood GS, Yoo EK, Elenitsas R, Kao DM, Sherman ML, et al. Interleukin-12 therapy of cutaneous T-cell lymphoma induces lesion regression and cytotoxic T-cell responses. Blood. 1999;94(3):902–8.
82. Wilke CM, Wei S, Wang L, Kryczek I, Kao J, Zou W. Dual biological effects of the cytokines interleukin-10 and interferon-gamma. Cancer Immunol Immunother. 2011;60(11):1529–41.
83. Fallon JK, Vandeveer AJ, Schlom J, Greiner JW. Enhanced antitumor effects by combining an IL-12/anti-DNA fusion protein with avelumab, an anti-PD-L1 antibody. Oncotarget. 2017;8(13):20558–71.
84. Murugaiyan G, Saha B. IL-27 in tumor immunity and immunotherapy. Trends Mol Med. 2013;19(2):108–16.
85. Murugaiyan G, Mittal A, Weiner HL. Identification of an IL-27/osteopontin axis in dendritic cells and its modulation by IFN-gamma limits IL-17-mediated autoimmune inflammation. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2010;107(25):11495–500.
86. Shinohara ML, Kim JH, Garcia VA, Cantor H. Engagement of the type I interferon receptor on dendritic cells inhibits T helper 17 cell development: role of intracellular osteopontin. Immunity. 2008;29(1):68–78.
87. Schnurr M, Toy T, Shin A, Wagner M, Cebon J, Maraskovsky E. Extracellular nucleotide signaling by P2 receptors inhibits IL-12 and enhances IL-23 expression in human dendritic cells: a novel role for the cAMP pathway. Blood. 2005;105(4):1582–9.
88. Pirhonen J, Siren J, Julkunen I, Matikainen S. IFN-alpha regulates Toll-like receptor-mediated IL-27 gene expression in human macrophages. J Leukoc Biol. 2007;82(5):1185–92.
89. Remoli ME, Gafa V, Giacomini E, Severa M, Lande R, Coccia EM. IFN-beta modulates the response to TLR stimulation in human DC: involvement of IFN regulatory factor-1 (IRF-1) in IL-27 gene expression. Eur J Immunol. 2007;37(12):3499–508.
90. Schuetze N, Schoeneberger S, Mueller U, Freudenberg MA, Alber G, Straubinger RK. IL-12 family members: differential kinetics of their TLR4-mediated induction by Salmonella enteritidis and the impact of IL-10 in bone marrow-derived macrophages. Int Immunol. 2005;17(5):649–59.
91. Liu L, Wang S, Shan B, Shao L, Sato A, Kawamura K, et al. IL-27-mediated activation of natural killer cells and inflammation produced antitumour effects for human oesophageal carcinoma cells. Scand J Immunol. 2008;68(1):22–9.
92. Morishima N, Owaki T, Asakawa M, Kamiya S, Mizuguchi J, Yoshimoto T. Augmentation of effector CD8+ T cell generation with enhanced granzyme B expression by IL-27. J Immunol. 2005;175(3):1686–93.
93. Schneider R, Yaneva T, Beauseigle D, El-Khoury L, Arbour N. IL-27 increases the proliferation and effector functions of human naive CD8+ T lymphocytes and promotes their development into Tc1 cells. Eur J Immunol. 2011;41(1):47–59.
94. Hisada M, Kamiya S, Fujita K, Belladonna ML, Aoki T, Koyanagi Y, et al. Potent antitumor activity of interleukin-27. Cancer Res. 2004;64(3):1152–6.
95. Salcedo R, Stauffer JK, Lincoln E, Back TC, Hixon JA, Hahn C, et al. IL-27 mediates complete regression of orthotopic primary and metastatic murine neuroblastoma tumors: role for CD8+ T cells. J Immunol. 2004;173(12):7170–82.
96. Shinozaki Y, Wang S, Miyazaki Y, Miyazaki K, Yamada H, Yoshikai Y, et al. Tumor-specific cytotoxic T cell generation and dendritic cell function are differentially regulated by interleukin 27 during development of anti-tumor immunity. Int J Cancer. 2009;124(6):1372–8.
97. Wei J, Xia S, Sun H, Zhang S, Wang J, Zhao H, et al. Critical role of dendritic cell-derived IL-27 in antitumor immunity through regulating the recruitment and activation of NK and NKT cells. J Immunol. 2013;191(1):500–8.
98. Salcedo R, Hixon JA, Stauffer JK, Jalah R, Brooks AD, Khan T, et al. Immunologic and therapeutic synergy of IL-27 and IL-2: enhancement of T cell sensitization, tumor-specific CTL reactivity and complete regression of disseminated neuroblastoma metastases in the liver and bone marrow. J Immunol. 2009;182(7):4328–38.
99. Takeda A, Hamano S, Yamanaka A, Hanada T, Ishibashi T, Mak TW, et al. Cutting edge: role of IL-27/WSX-1 signaling for induction of T-bet through activation of STAT1 during initial Th1 commitment. J Immunol. 2003;170(10):4886–90.
100. Kamiya S, Owaki T, Morishima N, Fukai F, Mizuguchi J, Yoshimoto T. An indispensable role for STAT1 in IL-27-induced T-bet expression but not proliferation of naive CD4+ T cells. J Immunol. 2004;173(6):3871–7.

101. Lucas S, Ghilardi N, Li J, de Sauvage FJ. IL-27 regulates IL-12 responsiveness of naive CD4+ T cells through Stat1-dependent and -independent mechanisms. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2003;100(25):15047–52.
102. Artis D, Villarino A, Silverman M, He W, Thornton EM, Mu S, et al. The IL-27 receptor (WSX-1) is an inhibitor of innate and adaptive elements of type 2 immunity. J Immunol. 2004;173(9):5626–34.
103. Yoshimoto T, Yoshimoto T, Yasuda K, Mizuguchi J, Nakanishi K. IL-27 suppresses Th2 cell development and Th2 cytokines production from polarized Th2 cells: a novel therapeutic way for Th2-mediated allergic inflammation. J Immunol. 2007;179(7):4415–23.
104. Tassi E, Braga M, Longhi R, Gavazzi F, Parmiani G, Di Carlo V, et al. Non-redundant role for IL-12 and IL-27 in modulating Th2 polarization of carcinoembryonic antigen specific CD4 T cells from pancreatic cancer patients. PLoS One. 2009;4(10):e7234.
105. Huber M, Steinwald V, Guralnik A, Brustle A, Kleemann P, Rosenplanter C, et al. IL-27 inhibits the development of regulatory T cells via STAT3. Int Immunol. 2008;20(2):223–34.
106. Wojno ED, Hosken N, Stumhofer JS, O'Hara AC, Mauldin E, Fang Q, et al. A role for IL-27 in limiting T regulatory cell populations. J Immunol. 2011;187(1):266–73.
107. Villarino AV, Stumhofer JS, Saris CJ, Kastelein RA, de Sauvage FJ, Hunter CA. IL-27 limits IL-2 production during Th1 differentiation. J Immunol. 2006;176(1):237–47.
108. Matsui M, Kishida T, Nakano H, Yoshimoto K, Shin-Ya M, Shimada T, et al. Interleukin-27 activates natural killer cells and suppresses NK-resistant head and neck squamous cell carcinoma through inducing antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity. Cancer Res. 2009;69(6):2523–30.
109. Yoshimoto T, Morishima N, Mizoguchi I, Shimizu M, Nagai H, Oniki S, et al. Antiproliferative activity of IL-27 on melanoma. J Immunol. 2008;180(10):6527–35.
110. Shimizu M, Shimamura M, Owaki T, Asakawa M, Fujita K, Kudo M, et al. Antiangiogenic and antitumor activities of IL-27. J Immunol. 2006;176(12):7317–24.
111. Feng XM, Chen XL, Liu N, Chen Z, Zhou YL, Han ZB, et al. Interleukin-27 upregulates major histocompatibility complex class II expression in primary human endothelial cells through induction of major histocompatibility complex class II transactivator. Hum Immunol. 2007;68(12):965–72.
112. Diveu C, McGeachy MJ, Boniface K, Stumhofer JS, Sathe M, Joyce-Shaikh B, et al. IL-27 blocks RORc expression to inhibit lineage commitment of Th17 cells. J Immunol. 2009;182(9):5748–56.
113. Cocco C, Giuliani N, Di Carlo E, Ognio E, Storti P, Abeltino M, et al. Interleukin-27 acts as multifunctional antitumor agent in multiple myeloma. Clin Cancer Res. 2010;16(16):4188–97.
114. Murugaiyan G, Mittal A, Lopez-Diego R, Maier LM, Anderson DE, Weiner HL. IL-27 is a key regulator of IL-10 and IL-17 production by human CD4+ T cells. J Immunol. 2009;183(4):2435–43.
115. Stumhofer JS, Laurence A, Wilson EH, Huang E, Tato CM, Johnson LM, et al. Interleukin 27 negatively regulates the development of interleukin 17-producing T helper cells during chronic inflammation of the central nervous system. Nat Immunol. 2006;7(9):937–45.
116. Sekar D, Hahn C, Brune B, Roberts E, Weigert A. Apoptotic tumor cells induce IL-27 release from human DCs to activate Treg cells that express CD69 and attenuate cytotoxicity. Eur J Immunol. 2012;42(6):1585–98.
117. Ilarregui JM, Croci DO, Bianco GA, Toscano MA, Salatino M, Vermeulen ME, et al. Tolerogenic signals delivered by dendritic cells to T cells through a galectin-1-driven immunoregulatory circuit involving interleukin 27 and interleukin 10. Nat Immunol. 2009;10(9):981–91.
118. Shevde LA, Samant RS. Role of osteopontin in the pathophysiology of cancer. Matrix Biol. 2014;37:131–41.
119. Fabbi M, Carbotti G, Ferrini S. Dual roles of IL-27 in cancer biology and immunotherapy. Mediators Inflamm. 2017;2017:3958069.
120. Oniki S, Nagai H, Horikawa T, Furukawa J, Belladonna ML, Yoshimoto T, et al. Interleukin-23 and interleukin-27 exert quite different antitumor and vaccine effects on poorly immunogenic melanoma. Cancer Res. 2006;66(12):6395–404.
121. Massague J. TGFbeta in cancer. Cell. 2008;134(2):215–30.
122. Flavell RA, Sanjabi S, Wrzesinski SH, Licona-Limon P. The polarization of immune cells in the tumour environment by TGFbeta. Nat Rev Immunol. 2010;10(8):554–67.
123. Shi Y, Massague J. Mechanisms of TGF-beta signaling from cell membrane to the nucleus. Cell. 2003;113(6):685–700.
124. Ikushima H, Miyazono K. TGFbeta signalling: a complex web in cancer progression. Nat Rev Cancer. 2010;10(6):415–24.
125. Miettinen PJ, Ebner R, Lopez AR, Derynck R. TGF-beta induced transdifferentiation of mammary epithelial cells to mesenchymal cells: involvement of type I receptors. J Cell Biol. 1994;127(6 Pt 2):2021–36.
126. Meulmeester E, Ten Dijke P. The dynamic roles of TGF-beta in cancer. J Pathol. 2011;223(2):205–18.
127. Bellone G, Aste-Amezaga M, Trinchieri G, Rodeck U. Regulation of NK cell functions by TGF-beta 1. J Immunol. 1995;155(3):1066–73.
128. Castriconi R, Cantoni C, Della Chiesa M, Vitale M, Marcenaro E, Conte R, et al. Transforming growth factor beta 1 inhibits expression of NKp30 and NKG2D receptors: consequences for the NK-mediated killing of dendritic cells. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2003;100(7):4120–5.

129. Liu C, Yu S, Kappes J, Wang J, Grizzle WE, Zinn KR, et al. Expansion of spleen myeloid suppressor cells represses NK cell cytotoxicity in tumor-bearing host. Blood. 2007;109(10):4336–42.
130. Crane CA, Han SJ, Barry JJ, Ahn BJ, Lanier LL, Parsa AT. TGF-beta downregulates the activating receptor NKG2D on NK cells and CD8+ T cells in glioma patients. Neuro Oncol. 2010;12(1):7–13.
131. Ruscetti F, Varesio L, Ochoa A, Ortaldo J. Pleiotropic effects of transforming growth factor-beta on cells of the immune system. Ann N Y Acad Sci. 1993;685:488–500.
132. Czarniecki CW, Chiu HH, Wong GH, McCabe SM, Palladino MA. Transforming growth factor-beta 1 modulates the expression of class II histocompatibility antigens on human cells. J Immunol. 1988;140(12):4217–23.
133. Bierie B, Moses HL. Tumour microenvironment: TGFbeta: the molecular Jekyll and Hyde of cancer. Nat Rev Cancer. 2006;6(7):506–20.
134. Kobie JJ, Wu RS, Kurt RA, Lou S, Adelman MK, Whitesell LJ, et al. Transforming growth factor beta inhibits the antigen-presenting functions and antitumor activity of dendritic cell vaccines. Cancer Res. 2003;63(8):1860–4.
135. Fainaru O, Woolf E, Lotem J, Yarmus M, Brenner O, Goldenberg D, et al. Runx3 regulates mouse TGF-beta-mediated dendritic cell function and its absence results in airway inflammation. EMBO J. 2004;23(4):969–79.
136. Ito M, Minamiya Y, Kawai H, Saito S, Saito H, Nakagawa T, et al. Tumor-derived TGFbeta-1 induces dendritic cell apoptosis in the sentinel lymph node. J Immunol. 2006;176(9):5637–43.
137. Huang A, Gilmour JW, Imami N, Amjadi P, Henderson DC, Allen-Mersh TG. Increased serum transforming growth factor-beta1 in human colorectal cancer correlates with reduced circulating dendritic cells and increased colonic Langerhans cell infiltration. Clin Exp Immunol. 2003;134(2):270–8.
138. De Palma M, Lewis CE. Macrophage regulation of tumor responses to anticancer therapies. Cancer Cell. 2013;23(3):277–86.
139. Goede V, Brogelli L, Ziche M, Augustin HG. Induction of inflammatory angiogenesis by monocyte chemoattractant protein-1. Int J Cancer. 1999;82(5):765–70.
140. Hao NB, Lu MH, Fan YH, Cao YL, Zhang ZR, Yang SM. Macrophages in tumor microenvironments and the progression of tumors. Clin Dev Immunol. 2012;2012:948098.
141. Mantovani A, Sozzani S, Locati M, Allavena P, Sica A. Macrophage polarization: tumor-associated macrophages as a paradigm for polarized M2 mononuclear phagocytes. Trends Immunol. 2002;23(11):549–55.
142. Lamagna C, Aurrand-Lions M, Imhof BA. Dual role of macrophages in tumor growth and angiogenesis. J Leukoc Biol. 2006;80(4):705–13.
143. Terabe M, Matsui S, Noben-Trauth N, Chen H, Watson C, Donaldson DD, et al. NKT cell-mediated repression of tumor immunosurveillance by IL-13 and the IL-4R-STAT6 pathway. Nat Immunol. 2000;1(6):515–20.
144. Fleming C, Morrissey S, Cai Y, Yan J. Gammadelta T cells: unexpected regulators of cancer development and progression. Trends Cancer. 2017;3(8):561–70.
145. Smyth MJ, Strobl SL, Young HA, Ortaldo JR, Ochoa AC. Regulation of lymphokine-activated killer activity and pore-forming protein gene expression in human peripheral blood CD8+ T lymphocytes. Inhibition by transforming growth factor-beta. J Immunol. 1991;146(10):3289–97.
146. Ranges GE, Figari IS, Espevik T, Palladino MA Jr. Inhibition of cytotoxic T cell development by transforming growth factor beta and reversal by recombinant tumor necrosis factor alpha. J Exp Med. 1987;166(4):991–8.
147. Thomas DA, Massague J. TGF-beta directly targets cytotoxic T cell functions during tumor evasion of immune surveillance. Cancer Cell. 2005;8(5):369–80.
148. Gabriely G, da Cunha AP, Rezende RM, Kenyon B, Madi A, Vandeventer T, et al. Targeting latency-associated peptide promotes antitumor immunity. Sci Immunol. 2017;2(11).
149. McKarns SC, Schwartz RH, Kaminski NE. Smad3 is essential for TGF-beta 1 to suppress IL-2 production and TCR-induced proliferation, but not IL-2-induced proliferation. J Immunol. 2004;172(7):4275–84.
150. Li MO, Flavell RA. TGF-beta: a master of all T cell trades. Cell. 2008;134(3):392–404.
151. Kaplan MH. Th9 cells: differentiation and disease. Immunol Rev. 2013;252(1):104–15.
152. Dardalhon V, Awasthi A, Kwon H, Galileos G, Gao W, Sobel RA, et al. IL-4 inhibits TGF-beta-induced Foxp3+ T cells and, together with TGF-beta, generates IL-9+ IL-10+ Foxp3(-) effector T cells. Nat Immunol. 2008;9(12):1347–55.
153. Facciabene A, Motz GT, Coukos G. T-regulatory cells: key players in tumor immune escape and angiogenesis. Cancer Res. 2012;72(9):2162–71.
154. Woo EY, Yeh H, Chu CS, Schlienger K, Carroll RG, Riley JL, et al. Cutting edge: regulatory T cells from lung cancer patients directly inhibit autologous T cell proliferation. J Immunol. 2002;168(9):4272–6.
155. Curiel TJ. Regulatory T cells and treatment of cancer. Curr Opin Immunol. 2008;20(2):241–6.
156. Liao D, Corle C, Seagroves TN, Johnson RS. Hypoxia-inducible factor-1alpha is a key regulator of metastasis in a transgenic model of cancer initiation and progression. Cancer Res. 2007;67(2):563–72.
157. Facciabene A, Peng X, Hagemann IS, Balint K, Barchetti A, Wang LP, et al. Tumour hypoxia promotes tolerance and angiogenesis via CCL28 and T(reg) cells. Nature. 2011;475(7355):226–30.
158. Curiel TJ, Coukos G, Zou L, Alvarez X, Cheng P, Mottram P, et al. Specific recruitment of regula-

tory T cells in ovarian carcinoma fosters immune privilege and predicts reduced survival. Nat Med. 2004;10(9):942–9.
159. Gobert M, Treilleux I, Bendriss-Vermare N, Bachelot T, Goddard-Leon S, Arfi V, et al. Regulatory T cells recruited through CCL22/CCR4 are selectively activated in lymphoid infiltrates surrounding primary breast tumors and lead to an adverse clinical outcome. Cancer Res. 2009;69(5):2000–9.
160. Giatromanolaki A, Bates GJ, Koukourakis MI, Sivridis E, Gatter KC, Harris AL, et al. The presence of tumor-infiltrating FOXP3+ lymphocytes correlates with intratumoral angiogenesis in endometrial cancer. Gynecol Oncol. 2008;110(2):216–21.
161. Motz GT, Coukos G. The parallel lives of angiogenesis and immunosuppression: cancer and other tales. Nat Rev Immunol. 2011;11(10):702–11.
162. Rech AJ, Vonderheide RH. Clinical use of anti-CD25 antibody daclizumab to enhance immune responses to tumor antigen vaccination by targeting regulatory T cells. Ann N Y Acad Sci. 2009;1174:99–106.
163. Callahan MK, Wolchok JD. At the bedside: CTLA-4- and PD-1-blocking antibodies in cancer immunotherapy. J Leukoc Biol. 2013;94(1):41–53.
164. Chen L, Han X. Anti-PD-1/PD-L1 therapy of human cancer: past, present, and future. J Clin Invest. 2015;125(9):3384–91.
165. Liu B, Song Y, Liu D. Recent development in clinical applications of PD-1 and PD-L1 antibodies for cancer immunotherapy. J Hematol Oncol. 2017;10(1):174.
166. Kulkarni AB, Huh CG, Becker D, Geiser A, Lyght M, Flanders KC, et al. Transforming growth factor beta 1 null mutation in mice causes excessive inflammatory response and early death. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 1993;90(2):770–4.
167. Shull MM, Ormsby I, Kier AB, Pawlowski S, Diebold RJ, Yin M, et al. Targeted disruption of the mouse transforming growth factor-beta 1 gene results in multifocal inflammatory disease. Nature. 1992;359(6397):693–9.
168. Herbertz S, Sawyer JS, Stauber AJ, Gueorguieva I, Driscoll KE, Estrem ST, et al. Clinical development of galunisertib (LY2157299 monohydrate), a small molecule inhibitor of transforming growth factor-beta signaling pathway. Drug Des Devel Ther. 2015;9:4479–99.
169. Morris JC, Tan AR, Olencki TE, Shapiro GI, Dezube BJ, Reiss M, et al. Phase I study of GC1008 (fresolimumab): a human anti-transforming growth factor-beta (TGFbeta) monoclonal antibody in patients with advanced malignant melanoma or renal cell carcinoma. PLoS One. 2014;9(3):e90353.
170. Stevenson JP, Kindler HL, Papasavvas E, Sun J, Jacobs-Small M, Hull J, et al. Immunological effects of the TGFbeta-blocking antibody GC1008 in malignant pleural mesothelioma patients. Oncoimmunology. 2013;2(8):e26218.
171. Bogdahn U, Hau P, Stockhammer G, Venkataramana NK, Mahapatra AK, Suri A, et al. Targeted therapy for high-grade glioma with the TGF-beta2 inhibitor trabedersen: results of a randomized and controlled phase IIb study. Neuro Oncol. 2011;13(1):132–42.
172. Nemunaitis J, Jahan T, Ross H, Sterman D, Richards D, Fox B, et al. Phase 1/2 trial of autologous tumor mixed with an allogeneic GVAX vaccine in advanced-stage non-small-cell lung cancer. Cancer Gene Ther. 2006;13(6):555–62.
173. Korn T, Bettelli E, Oukka M, Kuchroo VK. IL-17 and Th17 cells. Annu Rev Immunol. 2009;27:485–517.
174. Michel ML, Mendes-da-Cruz D, Keller AC, Lochner M, Schneider E, Dy M, et al. Critical role of ROR-gammat in a new thymic pathway leading to IL-17-producing invariant NKT cell differentiation. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2008;105(50):19845–50.
175. Ciric B, El-behi M, Cabrera R, Zhang GX, Rostami A. IL-23 drives pathogenic IL-17-producing CD8+ T cells. J Immunol. 2009;182(9):5296–305.
176. O'Brien RL, Roark CL, Born WK. IL-17-producing gammadelta T cells. Eur J Immunol. 2009;39(3):662–6.
177. Kim HY, Lee HJ, Chang YJ, Pichavant M, Shore SA, Fitzgerald KA, et al. Interleukin-17-producing innate lymphoid cells and the NLRP3 inflammasome facilitate obesity-associated airway hyperreactivity. Nat Med. 2014;20(1):54–61.
178. Bettelli E, Carrier Y, Gao W, Korn T, Strom TB, Oukka M, et al. Reciprocal developmental pathways for the generation of pathogenic effector TH17 and regulatory T cells. Nature. 2006;441(7090):235–8.
179. Nurieva R, Yang XO, Martinez G, Zhang Y, Panopoulos AD, Ma L, et al. Essential autocrine regulation by IL-21 in the generation of inflammatory T cells. Nature. 2007;448(7152):480–3.
180. Murugaiyan G, Saha B. Protumor vs antitumor functions of IL-17. J Immunol. 2009;183(7):4169–75.
181. Ivanov II, McKenzie BS, Zhou L, Tadokoro CE, Lepelley A, Lafaille JJ, et al. The orphan nuclear receptor RORgammat directs the differentiation program of proinflammatory IL-17+ T helper cells. Cell. 2006;126(6):1121–33.
182. Nam JS, Terabe M, Kang MJ, Chae H, Voong N, Yang YA, et al. Transforming growth factor beta subverts the immune system into directly promoting tumor growth through interleukin-17. Cancer Res. 2008;68(10):3915–23.
183. Shime H, Yabu M, Akazawa T, Kodama K, Matsumoto M, Seya T, et al. Tumor-secreted lactic acid promotes IL-23/IL-17 proinflammatory pathway. J Immunol. 2008;180(11):7175–83.
184. Murugaiyan G, Mittal A, Weiner HL. Increased osteopontin expression in dendritic cells amplifies IL-17 production by CD4+ T cells in experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis and in multiple sclerosis. J Immunol. 2008;181(11):7480–8.
185. Chizzolini C, Chicheportiche R, Alvarez M, de Rham C, Roux-Lombard P, Ferrari-Lacraz S, et al. Prostaglandin E2 synergistically with interleukin-23 favors human Th17 expansion. Blood. 2008;112(9):3696–703.

186. Su X, Ye J, Hsueh EC, Zhang Y, Hoft DF, Peng G. Tumor microenvironments direct the recruitment and expansion of human Th17 cells. J Immunol. 2010;184(3):1630–41.
187. Hirota K, Yoshitomi H, Hashimoto M, Maeda S, Teradaira S, Sugimoto N, et al. Preferential recruitment of CCR6-expressing Th17 cells to inflamed joints via CCL20 in rheumatoid arthritis and its animal model. J Exp Med. 2007;204(12):2803–12.
188. Kryczek I, Banerjee M, Cheng P, Vatan L, Szeliga W, Wei S, et al. Phenotype, distribution, generation, and functional and clinical relevance of Th17 cells in the human tumor environments. Blood. 2009;114(6):1141–9.
189. Liu SJ, Tsai JP, Shen CR, Sher YP, Hsieh CL, Yeh YC, et al. Induction of a distinct CD8 Tnc17 subset by transforming growth factor-beta and interleukin-6. J Leukoc Biol. 2007;82(2):354–60.
190. Blankenstein T, Qin Z. The role of IFN-gamma in tumor transplantation immunity and inhibition of chemical carcinogenesis. Curr Opin Immunol. 2003;15(2):148–54.
191. Numasaki M, Watanabe M, Suzuki T, Takahashi H, Nakamura A, McAllister F, et al. IL-17 enhances the net angiogenic activity and in vivo growth of human non-small cell lung cancer in SCID mice through promoting CXCR-2-dependent angiogenesis. J Immunol. 2005;175(9):6177–89.
192. Tartour E, Fossiez F, Joyeux I, Galinha A, Gey A, Claret E, et al. Interleukin 17, a T-cell-derived cytokine, promotes tumorigenicity of human cervical tumors in nude mice. Cancer Res. 1999;59(15):3698–704.
193. Numasaki M, Lotze MT, Sasaki H. Interleukin-17 augments tumor necrosis factor-alpha-induced elaboration of proangiogenic factors from fibroblasts. Immunol Lett. 2004;93(1):39–43.
194. Takahashi H, Numasaki M, Lotze MT, Sasaki H. Interleukin-17 enhances bFGF-, HGF- and VEGF-induced growth of vascular endothelial cells. Immunol Lett. 2005;98(2):189–93.
195. Honorati MC, Neri S, Cattini L, Facchini A. Interleukin-17, a regulator of angiogenic factor release by synovial fibroblasts. Osteoarthr Cartil. 2006;14(4):345–52.
196. Jeon SH, Chae BC, Kim HA, Seo GY, Seo DW, Chun GT, et al. Mechanisms underlying TGF-beta1-induced expression of VEGF and Flk-1 in mouse macrophages and their implications for angiogenesis. J Leukoc Biol. 2007;81(2):557–66.
197. Huang X, Lee C. Regulation of stromal proliferation, growth arrest, differentiation and apoptosis in benign prostatic hyperplasia by TGF-beta. Front Biosci. 2003;8:s740–9.
198. Kehlen A, Thiele K, Riemann D, Rainov N, Langner J. Interleukin-17 stimulates the expression of IkappaB alpha mRNA and the secretion of IL-6 and IL-8 in glioblastoma cell lines. J Neuroimmunol. 1999;101(1):1–6.
199. Aggarwal S, Gurney AL. IL-17: prototype member of an emerging cytokine family. J Leukoc Biol. 2002;71(1):1–8.
200. Lee JW, Wang P, Kattah MG, Youssef S, Steinman L, DeFea K, et al. Differential regulation of chemokines by IL-17 in colonic epithelial cells. J Immunol. 2008;181(9):6536–45.
201. Karin M, Greten FR. NF-kappaB: linking inflammation and immunity to cancer development and progression. Nat Rev Immunol. 2005;5(10):749–59.
202. Subramaniam SV, Cooper RS, Adunyah SE. Evidence for the involvement of JAK/STAT pathway in the signaling mechanism of interleukin-17. Biochem Biophys Res Commun. 1999;262(1):14–9.
203. Shalom-Barak T, Quach J, Lotz M. Interleukin-17-induced gene expression in articular chondrocytes is associated with activation of mitogen-activated protein kinases and NF-kappaB. J Biol Chem. 1998;273(42):27467–73.
204. Wang K, Kim MK, Di Caro G, Wong J, Shalapour S, Wan J, et al. Interleukin-17 receptor a signaling in transformed enterocytes promotes early colorectal tumorigenesis. Immunity. 2014;41(6):1052–63.
205. Chae WJ, Gibson TF, Zelterman D, Hao L, Henegariu O, Bothwell AL. Ablation of IL-17A abrogates progression of spontaneous intestinal tumorigenesis. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2010;107(12):5540–4.
206. Zhang X, Wei L, Wang J, Qin Z, Wang J, Lu Y, et al. Suppression colitis and colitis-associated colon cancer by anti-S100a9 antibody in mice. Front Immunol. 2017;8:1774.
207. Wang L, Yi T, Kortylewski M, Pardoll DM, Zeng D, Yu H. IL-17 can promote tumor growth through an IL-6-Stat3 signaling pathway. J Exp Med. 2009;206(7):1457–64.
208. Muranski P, Boni A, Antony PA, Cassard L, Irvine KR, Kaiser A, et al. Tumor-specific Th17-polarized cells eradicate large established melanoma. Blood. 2008;112(2):362–73.
209. Hinrichs CS, Kaiser A, Paulos CM, Cassard L, Sanchez-Perez L, Heemskerk B, et al. Type 17 CD8+ T cells display enhanced antitumor immunity. Blood. 2009;114(3):596–9.
210. Benchetrit F, Ciree A, Vives V, Warnier G, Gey A, Sautes-Fridman C, et al. Interleukin-17 inhibits tumor cell growth by means of a T-cell-dependent mechanism. Blood. 2002;99(6):2114–21.
211. Jovanovic DV, Di Battista JA, Martel-Pelletier J, Jolicoeur FC, He Y, Zhang M, et al. IL-17 stimulates the production and expression of proinflammatory cytokines, IL-beta and TNF-alpha by human macrophages. J Immunol. 1998;160(7):3513–21.
212. Gagnon J, Ramanathan S, Leblanc C, Cloutier A, McDonald PP, Ilangumaran S. IL-6, in synergy with IL-7 or IL-15, stimulates TCR-independent proliferation and functional differentiation of CD8+ T lymphocytes. J Immunol. 2008;180(12):7958–68.
213. Antonysamy MA, Fanslow WC, Fu F, Li W, Qian S, Troutt AB, et al. Evidence for a role of IL-17 in

organ allograft rejection: IL-17 promotes the functional differentiation of dendritic cell progenitors. J Immunol. 1999;162(1):577–84.
214. Hirahara N, Nio Y, Sasaki S, Minari Y, Takamura M, Iguchi C, et al. Inoculation of human interleukin-17 gene-transfected Meth-A fibrosarcoma cells induces T cell-dependent tumor-specific immunity in mice. Oncology. 2001;61(1):79–89.
215. Kryczek I, Wei S, Szeliga W, Vatan L, Zou W. Endogenous IL-17 contributes to reduced tumor growth and metastasis. Blood. 2009;114(2):357–9.
216. Vignali DA, Kuchroo VK. IL-12 family cytokines: immunological playmakers. Nat Immunol. 2012;13(8):722–8.
217. Kastelein RA, Hunter CA, Cua DJ. Discovery and biology of IL-23 and IL-27: related but functionally distinct regulators of inflammation. Annu Rev Immunol. 2007;25:221–42.
218. Langowski JL, Kastelein RA, Oft M. Swords into plowshares: IL-23 repurposes tumor immune surveillance. Trends Immunol. 2007;28(5):207–12.
219. Qian X, Gu L, Ning H, Zhang Y, Hsueh EC, Fu M, et al. Increased Th17 cells in the tumor microenvironment is mediated by IL-23 via tumor-secreted prostaglandin E2. J Immunol. 2013;190(11):5894–902.
220. Poloso NJ, Urquhart P, Nicolaou A, Wang J, Woodward DF. PGE2 differentially regulates monocyte-derived dendritic cell cytokine responses depending on receptor usage (EP2/EP4). Mol Immunol. 2013;54(3-4):284–95.
221. Kortylewski M, Xin H, Kujawski M, Lee H, Liu Y, Harris T, et al. Regulation of the IL-23 and IL-12 balance by Stat3 signaling in the tumor microenvironment. Cancer Cell. 2009;15(2):114–23.
222. Langowski JL, Zhang X, Wu L, Mattson JD, Chen T, Smith K, et al. IL-23 promotes tumour incidence and growth. Nature. 2006;442(7101):461–5.
223. Wang YQ, Ugai S, Shimozato O, Yu L, Kawamura K, Yamamoto H, et al. Induction of systemic immunity by expression of interleukin-23 in murine colon carcinoma cells. Int J Cancer. 2003;105(6):820–4.
224. Shimozato O, Ugai S, Chiyo M, Takenobu H, Nagakawa H, Wada A, et al. The secreted form of the p40 subunit of interleukin (IL)-12 inhibits IL-23 functions and abrogates IL-23-mediated antitumour effects. Immunology. 2006;117(1):22–8.
225. Shan BE, Hao JS, Li QX, Tagawa M. Antitumor activity and immune enhancement of murine interleukin-23 expressed in murine colon carcinoma cells. Cell Mol Immunol. 2006;3(1):47–52.
226. Lo CH, Lee SC, Wu PY, Pan WY, Su J, Cheng CW, et al. Antitumor and antimetastatic activity of IL-23. J Immunol. 2003;171(2):600–7.
227. Collison LW, Chaturvedi V, Henderson AL, Giacomin PR, Guy C, Bankoti J, et al. IL-35-mediated induction of a potent regulatory T cell population. Nat Immunol. 2010;11(12):1093–101.
228. McNamee EN, Masterson JC, Jedlicka P, McManus M, Grenz A, Collins CB, et al. Interleukin 37 expression protects mice from colitis. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2011;108(40):16711–6.
229. Bulau AM, Fink M, Maucksch C, Kappler R, Mayr D, Wagner K, et al. In vivo expression of interleukin-37 reduces local and systemic inflammation in concanavalin A-induced hepatitis. ScientificWorldJournal. 2011;11:2480–90.
230. Wirtz S, Billmeier U, McHedlidze T, Blumberg RS, Neurath MF. Interleukin-35 mediates mucosal immune responses that protect against T-cell-dependent colitis. Gastroenterology. 2011;141(5):1875–86.
231. Kochetkova I, Golden S, Holderness K, Callis G, Pascual DW. IL-35 stimulation of CD39+ regulatory T cells confers protection against collagen II-induced arthritis via the production of IL-10. J Immunol. 2010;184(12):7144–53.
232. Chaturvedi V, Collison LW, Guy CS, Workman CJ, Vignali DA. Cutting edge: human regulatory T cells require IL-35 to mediate suppression and infectious tolerance. J Immunol. 2011;186(12):6661–6.
233. Niedobitek G, Pazolt D, Teichmann M, Devergne O. Frequent expression of the Epstein-Barr virus (EBV)-induced gene, EBI3, an IL-12 p40-related cytokine, in Hodgkin and Reed-Sternberg cells. J Pathol. 2002;198(3):310–6.
234. Poleganov MA, Bachmann M, Pfeilschifter J, Muhl H. Genome-wide analysis displays marked induction of EBI3/IL-27B in IL-18-activated AML-derived KG1 cells: critical role of two kappaB binding sites in the human EBI3 promotor. Mol Immunol. 2008;45(10):2869–80.
235. Nishino R, Takano A, Oshita H, Ishikawa N, Akiyama H, Ito H, et al. Identification of Epstein-Barr virus-induced gene 3 as a novel serum and tissue biomarker and a therapeutic target for lung cancer. Clin Cancer Res. 2011;17(19):6272–86.
236. Olson BM, Jankowska-Gan E, Becker JT, Vignali DA, Burlingham WJ, McNeel DG. Human prostate tumor antigen-specific CD8+ regulatory T cells are inhibited by CTLA-4 or IL-35 blockade. J Immunol. 2012;189(12):5590–601.
237. Wang Z, Liu JQ, Liu Z, Shen R, Zhang G, Xu J, et al. Tumor-derived IL-35 promotes tumor growth by enhancing myeloid cell accumulation and angiogenesis. J Immunol. 2013;190(5):2415–23.
238. Turnis ME, Sawant DV, Szymczak-Workman AL, Andrews LP, Delgoffe GM, Yano H, et al. Interleukin-35 limits anti-tumor immunity. Immunity. 2016;44(2):316–29.
239. Saraiva M, Christensen JR, Veldhoen M, Murphy TL, Murphy KM, O'Garra A. Interleukin-10 production by Th1 cells requires interleukin-12-induced STAT4 transcription factor and ERK MAP kinase activation by high antigen dose. Immunity. 2009;31(2):209–19.
240. Sato T, Terai M, Tamura Y, Alexeev V, Mastrangelo MJ, Selvan SR. Interleukin 10 in the tumor microenvironment: a target for anticancer immunotherapy. Immunol Res. 2011;51(2-3):170–82.

241. Galizia G, Orditura M, Romano C, Lieto E, Castellano P, Pelosio L, et al. Prognostic significance of circulating IL-10 and IL-6 serum levels in colon cancer patients undergoing surgery. Clin Immunol. 2002;102(2):169–78.
242. Li MO, Flavell RA. Contextual regulation of inflammation: a duet by transforming growth factor-beta and interleukin-10. Immunity. 2008;28(4):468–76.
243. Seo N, Hayakawa S, Tokura Y. Mechanisms of immune privilege for tumor cells by regulatory cytokines produced by innate and acquired immune cells. Semin Cancer Biol. 2002;12(4):291–300.
244. Huang S, Ullrich SE, Bar-Eli M. Regulation of tumor growth and metastasis by interleukin-10: the melanoma experience. J Interferon Cytokine Res. 1999;19(7):697–703.
245. Kurte M, Lopez M, Aguirre A, Escobar A, Aguillon JC, Charo J, et al. A synthetic peptide homologous to functional domain of human IL-10 down-regulates expression of MHC class I and transporter associated with antigen processing 1/2 in human melanoma cells. J Immunol. 2004;173(3):1731–7.
246. Mocellin S, Marincola FM, Young HA. Interleukin-10 and the immune response against cancer: a counterpoint. J Leukoc Biol. 2005;78(5):1043–51.
247. Roncarolo MG, Gregori S, Battaglia M, Bacchetta R, Fleischhauer K, Levings MK. Interleukin-10-secreting type 1 regulatory T cells in rodents and humans. Immunol Rev. 2006;212:28–50.
248. Teng MW, Darcy PK, Smyth MJ. Stable IL-10: a new therapeutic that promotes tumor immunity. Cancer Cell. 2011;20(6):691–3.
249. Berman RM, Suzuki T, Tahara H, Robbins PD, Narula SK, Lotze MT. Systemic administration of cellular IL-10 induces an effective, specific, and long-lived immune response against established tumors in mice. J Immunol. 1996;157(1):231–8.

14

Role of Chemokines and Chemokine Receptors in Cancer

Pierre-Louis Loyher, Mathieu Paul Rodero, Christophe Combadière, and Alexandre Boissonnas

Contents

P.-L. Loyher · M. P. Rodero · C. Combadière
A. Boissonnas (✉)
Sorbonne Universités, UPMC Univ Paris 06, CR7, Centre d'Immunologie et des Maladies Infectieuses CIMI-Paris, Institut National de la, Santé et de la Recherche Médicale (INSERM), U1135, Centre National de la Recherche Scientifique (CNRS), ERL 8255, Institut Universitaire de Cancérologie (UPMC-IUC), CHU Pitié-Salpêtrière, Paris, France
e-mail: alexandre.boissonnas@upmc.fr

N. Rezaei (ed.), *Cancer Immunology*, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-30845-2_14

14.1 Introduction

Living tissues are highly organized and dynamic structures at the cellular level. Tissue renewal, remodeling, and repair, immunosurveillance, and cell-to-cell interaction and communication are examples of physiological processes relying on the fine recruitment and displacement of numerous cell types. This equilibrium is strictly dependent on the principle of "recruiting the right cell at the right place and the right moment." One major component of this principle is the chemokine and chemokine receptor system. Chemokines (CKs) for chemoattractant cytokines are small, secreted molecules historically defined on the basis of their functional chemotactic activity [1–3]. They constitute a family of over 50 members which interact with about 20 defined corresponding/cognate receptors (CKRs). This discrepancy highlights the complexity of this system as several CKs can bind to a single receptor. Conversely, one receptor can bind several different CKs. This redundancy associated with differential avidity of the CK for their CKR and the specific expression by the different cell population contributes to the fine-tuning of cell migration (Fig. 14.1) and explains that a modest deregulation of the system can lead to severe pathological conditions. In addition, there is overwhelming evidence describing alternative functions of the CK/CKR couple in hematopoiesis, reproduction, angiogenesis, and immune-associated functions such as cell activation, proliferation, effector function, and

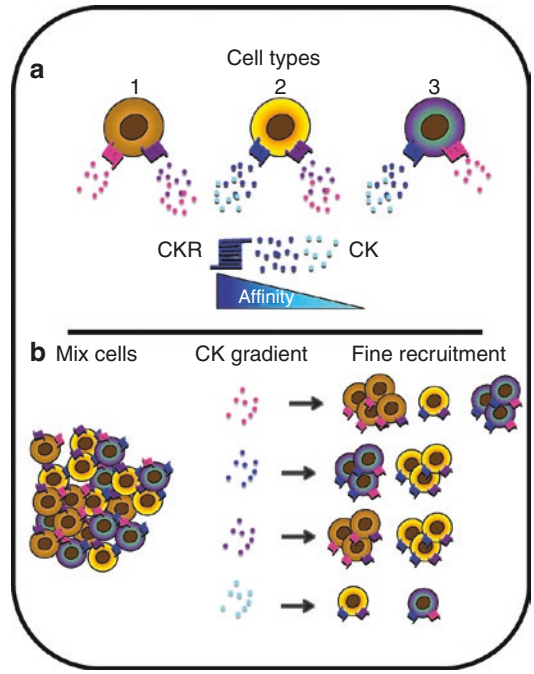


Fig. 14.1 Fine modulation of cellular recruitment by chemokines. The chemokine network is organized around several levels of complexity. (**a**) Most of the cell types (1, 2, 3) express several chemokine receptors, and a same receptor is found on several cell types. Moreover, different chemokines can bind to a same receptor, and most of the receptors can bind several chemokines with distinct affinity (color gradient represents differential affinity). This apparent complexity allows for the fine control of cell population recruitment. (**b**) The schematic representation illustrates the selective recruitment of cell populations according to the respective colored CK gradient. The number of cells recruited is related to the affinity of the respective CK for its receptor

survival [4, 5]. Numerous reports from the past two decades have validated the importance of the CK/CKR network with its diverse range of physiological properties and its involvement in various physiopathological disorders [6–8].

Cancer constitutes a very complex pathology in many aspects. Neoplastic cells result from the environmental, viral-induced, or inherited deregulation of genes known as "oncogenes" or "tumor suppressor genes." This primary modification often leads to uncontrolled expansion of undifferentiated cells for which the transcriptome and the proteome are highly modified in comparison with the original cell. Nevertheless, it is important to note that tumor development does not result from the simple expansion of neoplastic cell. Indeed, solid tumors (primary tumor as well as metastasis) are also constituted by a wide variety of stromal cells. The stroma is composed of nonhematopoietic cells, such as "healthy" cells of the affected tissue, fibroblasts, or endothelial cells, as well as hematopoietic cells. Hematopoietic cell populations are mainly composed of innate immune cells, such as tumor-associated macrophages (TAMs), dendritic cells (DCs), natural killer cells (NK cells), neutrophils, and partners of the adaptive immune response such as T- and B-lymphocytes.

The relative importance of the stroma compared to tumor cells depends on the type of cancer [9], but it is now well described that several stromal cells are important predictive markers of cancer evolution (macrophages, regulatory T-cells (Treg cells), and endothelial progenitor cells). Even though the stroma cannot be characterized properly in circulating hematological tumors, leukocytes will have an important impact on the expansion, survival, and potential homing of tumor cells to the specific tissue. This phenomenon is distinguishable from the metastatic process where the tumor cells need to cross the endothelial barrier from a primary tumor site and home to a distant tissue. The stroma contributes to the global organization and progression of the tumor known as "tumor microenvironment" through the production of growth factors, cytokines, and CKs, exchange of nutrients, and tissue remodeling and repair. In contrast, immune cells are responsible for the control of tumor growth. The concept of immunosurveillance proposed by Burnet et al. [10] in the early 1970s has been widely debated. Recently, Schreiber and colleagues provided experimental evidence for the clinical emergence of cancer as a result of strong selection and modeling of tumors by the immune system in a process termed as "tumor editing" [11]. In this process, neoplastic transformation occurs, and tumor cell expansion is detected by the innate and adaptive immune systems, which either succeed in complete tumor elimination or maintain a state of equilibrium between tumor cell expansion and elimination. This phase leads to the immune selection of tumor cell variants that develop immune resistance and immunosuppressive mechanisms resulting in tumor escape and cancer progression to a clinical outcome.

Cancer is a complex process whereby undifferentiated tumor cells expand locally in specialized tissues, migrate in an active manner by leaving the primary tumor site through the endothelial barrier, establish in a distant and different specialized tissue, and finally generate metastases. Inflammation generated by neoplastic transformation contributes to the recruitment of protumoral population and the production of growth factors as well as the recruitment of immune component with antitumor activity. Thus, tumorigenesis is a dynamic process involving important tissue remodeling and angiogenesis, recruitment and local migratory mechanisms, and survival and cell death for both tumor and stromal cells in which the CK/CKR network has major implication.

The CK/CKR network appears to be a promising target in cancer therapy and has already been used in standard therapeutic approaches, as well as in immunotherapy. Numerous basic and clinical interventions rely on the development of agonist or antagonist CKR in order to manipulate their critical biological function toward antitumor activity.

In this chapter, the role of the CK/CKR network in these aspects of cancer development, as well as its potential application in the improvement of cancer therapy, is described in detail.

14.2 Chemokines and Chemokine Receptors

Chemokines are small cytokines initially described for their chemotactic properties on leukocytes. During cell recruitment from the blood to inflamed tissues, CKs initiate the activation of circulating cells, promoting cell rolling, adhesion to activated endothelium, and extravasation (Fig. 14.2). In tissues, CKs determine cell directional migration, by establishing a concentration gradient (Fig. 14.3). Evidence from previous studies has shown that the control of cell mobility by CKs is implicated in developmental mechanisms and cell homeostasis, as well as in the induction and tuning of acute and chronic inflammation and control of the immune response. Numerous reviews have extensively described the CK classification, structural organization, and their associated biological properties [12, 13]. CKs are subdivided in four subfamilies based on the number of and spacing between conserved cysteines in the primary amino acid sequence [14]. CKRs are seven-transmembrane G-protein-coupled receptors classified according to the CK family they bind. As previously mentioned, most CKs bind to several receptors, and most of the receptors can bind several CKs with different affinities. Additionally, one cell subset can express different CKRs, and the

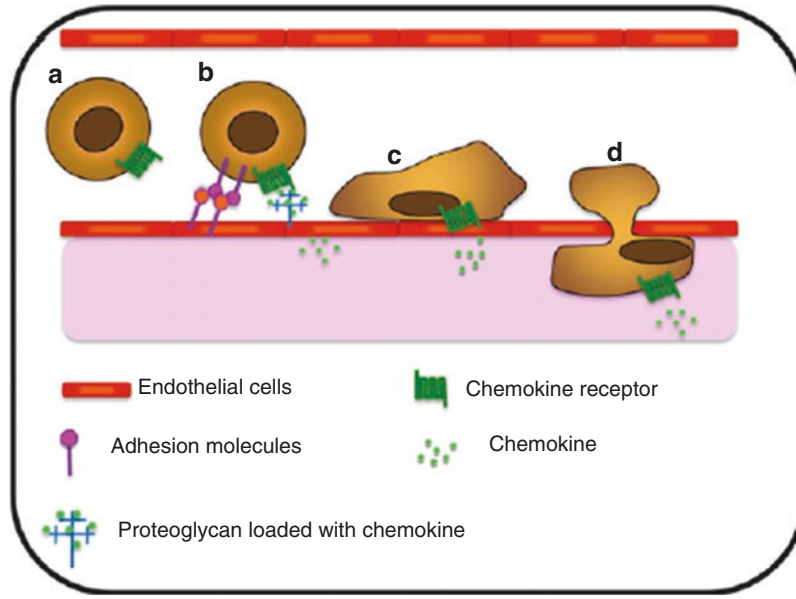


Fig. 14.2 Chemokine-associated extravasation process. (**a**) Circulating cell within the bloodstream. (**b**) Chemokine presented by proteoglycan on activated endothelial cells induces the expression of adhesion molecules implicated in the slow rolling and the capture process. (**c**) Once stuck to the endothelium, cell exerts crawling behavior on the luminal side of the blood vessel and (**d**) extravasates and migrates through the tissue toward a chemokine gradient

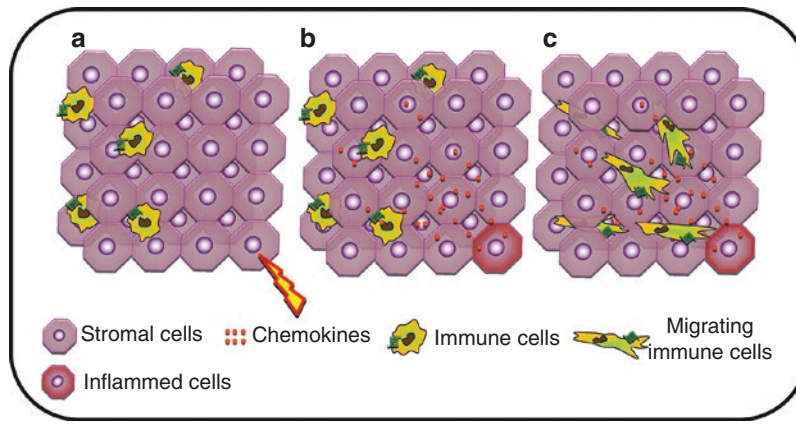


Fig. 14.3 Interstitial migration. (**a**) Upon activation, (**b**) stromal cells will produce chemokines forming a gradient within the tissue. (**c**) Tissue-infiltrated immune cells will migrate through the tissue toward the higher concentration of chemokine

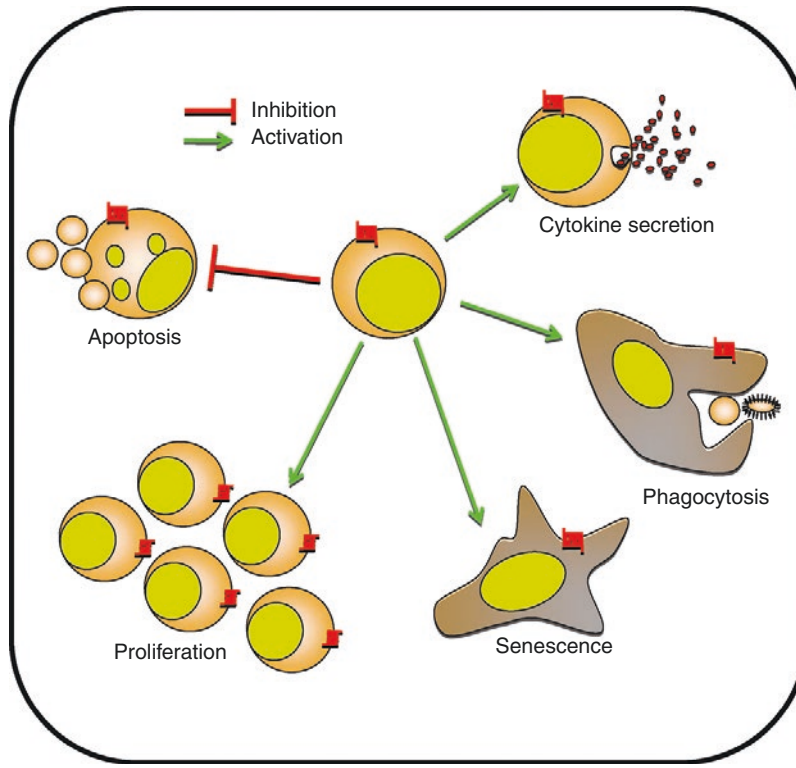


Fig. 14.4 Control of cell biology by chemokines. Besides cell migration, chemokines are implicated in multiple cellular functions including apoptosis, proliferation, and senescence. Chemokines are also directly implicated in cell activation, cytokine secretion, or phagocytosis

same CKR is expressed by different cell subsets. This apparent redundancy is in reality a tool to tightly regulate leukocyte, stem cell, and other cell types' migrations during physiological and pathological conditions.

It is now well established that CK function is not limited to cell migration. It has been clearly demonstrated that CKs directly control cell proliferation, survival, and senescence, as well as cytokine secretion and phagocytic properties (Fig. 14.4). It is the balance between these migratory, secretion, phagocytic, survival, and proliferation signals which explains the central roles of CK in development, tissue homeostasis, repair, inflammation, and immunity.

14.3 Control of Tumor Cell Behavior

The biological property controlled by the CK/CKR recognition system is not restricted to chemotactism. Several important processes involved in the behavior of tumor cells will be affected by these axes. In this section, the effect of CK/CKR expression on tumor cell behavior and cancer progression is discussed.

14.3.1 Chemokines and Chemokine Receptor Alterations During Neoplastic Transformation

Primary neoplastic transformation leads to strong modification of the transcriptome and proteome which is mainly shaped by immune selection of resistant tumor variants. CK and CKR are not oncogenes per se; however, modulation in the production of CKs or their receptors by tumor cells is often the result of oncogenic modifications and immune selection (Fig. 14.5). The first evidence came from a human papillary thyroid cancer. The authors showed that RET (rearranged during transfection) tyrosine kinase rearrangement promotes the secretion of numerous inflammatory cytokines, including CCL2, CCL20, and

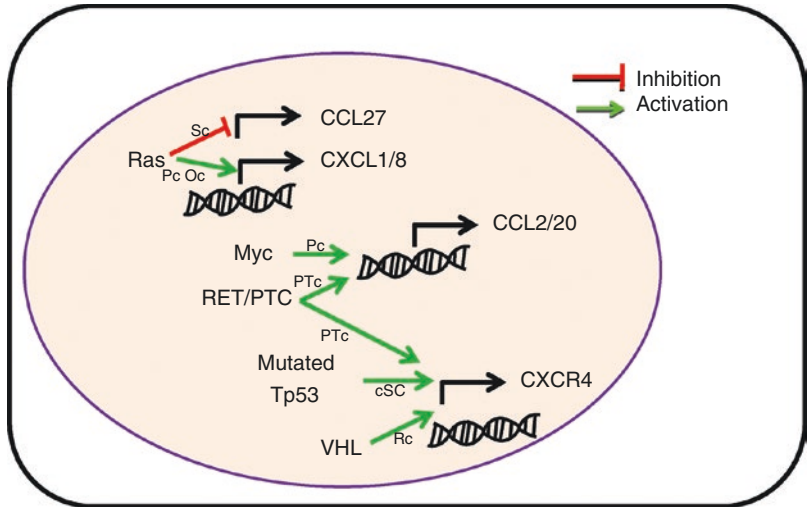


Fig. 14.5 Oncogenes induce altered chemokine and chemokine receptor expression by tumor cells. Common oncogene mutations are associated with modification of chemokine or chemokine receptor transcription, resulting in tumor promotion. *RET/PTC* rearranged RET tyrosine kinase, *VHL* Von Hippel-Lindau tumor suppressor gene, *Sc* skin cancer, *Pc* pancreatic cancer, *Oc* ovarian cancer, *HPTc* human papillary thyroid cancer, *cSC* cancer stem cell, *Rc* renal cancer

CXCL12, and increases the expression of CXCR4 [15]. Later studies have shown that Myc overexpression in pancreatic cancer has been associated with increased CK expression [16, 17]. Nevertheless, the predictive outcome of oncogenic modifications on the regulation of CK and CKR expression is difficult to assess. While RAS-RAF signaling pathway promotes CXCL8 and CXCL1 transcription in pancreatic and ovarian cancer, it inhibits CCL27 transcription in skin cancer [18–20]. Similarly, Von Hippel-Lindau tumor suppressor mutation in renal cancer [21] and TP53 mutation in cancer stem cells promote CXCR4 expression [22] while downregulating its expression in breast cancer cells [23].

Through modification in the profile of CKR expression, tumor cells will change their sensitivity to the microenvironment and acquire new migratory and homing capabilities.

14.3.2 Metastasis/Homing

The metastasis index is undoubtedly the major factor of prognosis and determines the therapeutic attitude. Metastasis defines the process through which tumor cells leave a primary site to settle in a distant location and create a new colony. This phenomenon is characteristic of tumor malignancy including tumor invasion, intravasation, and homing to different sites. This has to be distinguished from the potential secondary localization of circulating tumor cells which only involves the homing mechanism.

14.3.2.1 Tumor Invasion

The first step of metastasis spreading relies on either tumor cell- or stromal cell-mediated fibrosis activity and the ability of tumor cells to acquire migration and intravasation capabilities, in order to leave the primary tumor site and reach the bloodstream. Chemotaxis of tumor cells is well characterized [24]. This process requires a paracrine loop between tumor cells and stromal cells, such as macrophages shaping the microenvironment to favor metastasis [25]. Different chemical gradients may induce tumor cell chemotaxis, but the direct implication of CKs in this specific process is poorly documented. We can distinguish the indirect contribution of CK to the chemotaxis activity of cancer cells through angiogenesis, fibrogenesis, and matrix remodeling mediated by stromal cells.

CXCL12/CXCR4 is the major axis directly involved in tumor cell metastases. Overexpression of CXCR4 in rat mammary adenocarcinoma enhances the motility of tumor cells in the primary tumor [26]. This receptor is widely involved in the epithelial-to-mesenchymal transition (EMT) process, which is a major step leading to metastasis [27, 28]. Few studies have reported the implication of other CKs and CKRs such as CCL18, CCL2, or CXCR7 [29–31] through the activation of EMT-implicated signaling pathways. Interestingly, the integration of multiple CKR axes adds complexity to the tumor invasion process. Indeed, overexpression of CXCR4 promotes invasion. However, coexpression of CXCR7 which binds the same ligand CXCL12 impairs invasion but favors angiogenesis and primary tumor growth [26]. IL8/IL8R axis might also favor maintenance of the mesenchymal status of the tumor cell [32]. IL8 binding to CXCR1 or CXCR2 has been shown to promote tumor cell migration and EMT transition via inflammatory mediators and activation of MAPK/ERK-NF-kappaB in head and neck squamous carcinoma [33] and AKT signaling in renal cell carcinoma [34].

14.3.2.2 Homing

Once in the bloodstream, the tumor cell needs to migrate to a site that will allow its engraftment, survival, and proliferation. In 2001, Muller et al. demonstrated for the first time that the expression of specific CKRs by tumor cells could predict the implantation of malignant cells in tissues expressing high levels of the receptor ligands [35]. Since then, several other studies have established associations between metastases, CKR expression, and implantation sites for various cancer types (Table 14.1). Consistently with their homeostatic functions, CCR7 expression by tumor cells is associated with lymph node (LN) metastases; CCR10 with skin metastasis; CX3CR1 with brain, liver, and bone metastases; CCR9 with intestine metastases; and CXCR4 with bone and liver metastases [35–38].

Overall, these observations show that CK axes generate a complex relationship between tumor cell and the environment and deserve further attention in preclinical studies as it represents an important target with clinical application.

14.3.3 Senescence, Proliferation, and Survival

Tumor expansion results in the capacity of tumor cells to proliferate infinitely without developing senescent mechanisms. Several CKs have demonstrated the ability to activate signaling pathways in favor of this goal.

Cellular senescence is generally defined as an irreversible state of G1 cell cycle arrest in which the cell is refractory to growth factor stimulation. Activation of CXCR2 by either CXCL1 or CXCL8 can result in senescence induction [39]. CXCR2 activation is thus able to act as a suppressor of malignancy in prostate and breast cancer [40, 41].

Table 14.1 Metastasis implantation of various cancer types based on their chemokine receptor expression

		Primary tumor				
		Melanoma	Breast cancer	Non-small cell lung cancer (NSCLC)	Colon cancer	Leukemia
Metastases implantation site	Skin		CCR10/CCR7/CXCR4			
	Intestine	CCR9				
	Bone		CX3CR1			
	Lymph node		CXCR4/CCR7	CCR7	CXCR3	CCR7
	Liver		CXCR4	CX3CR1	CCR6	
	Brain	CCR4	CX3CR1	CX3CR1/CXCR4	CXCR4	CCR7
	Lung	CXCR4/CXCR2				

Inhibition of tumor proliferation by CXCR2 ligand is probably limited to tumor models and to early stages of tumor development. Indeed, the same CK axes display opposite effects in other tumor models. CXCR1 and CXCR2 activation by CXCL8 promotes the proliferation of gastric cancer, esophageal cancer, non-small cell lung cancer, and melanoma cell lines [42–45]. Other receptors of the CXC receptor family are involved in tumor cell proliferation. CXCR6 is involved in cell proliferation of pancreatic cancer cells [46], and CXCR4 is associated with tumor proliferation in numerous models, including ovarian, melanoma, glioma, renal, lung, and thyroid cancer cells [27, 47]. Few studies have investigated the implication of CCRs in the control of tumor cell proliferation. CCR6 favors colon tumor cell proliferation upon CCL20 activation [48], and CCR9 favors pancreatic cancer cell proliferations upon CCL25 activation [49].

Another role of CK in tumor cell biology is the ability to control tumor cell survival, essentially mediated through the CC receptor family. CCR10 activation promotes phosphatidylinositol-3-kinase-mediated protection from apoptosis of melanoma cells [50]. The same mechanisms are observed in squamous cell carcinoma of the head and neck after CCR7 activation [51]. CCR7 engagement by CCL21 is also implicated in the prevention of apoptosis in NSCLC, through ERK-dependent activation pathways [52].

CK direct promotion of tumor cell survival is not limited to CC chemokines; CXCL12 through CXCR4 activation promotes hepatoma, ovarian cancer, and chronic leukemia tumor cell survival [53], and CXCR7 activation increases cell survival by reducing apoptosis [54].

Overall, these observations highlight extended functional contributions of the CK system to tumor development and reveal that they are not merely restrained to chemotaxis.

14.4 Control of Immune Cell Behaviors

As described previously, the immune system is known to shape the tumor through the "tumor editing" phenomenon. In this context, CKs are directly or indirectly implicated in the control of immune cell activation, migration to the priming site, and immune response induction. It is now clear that in most cases, the CK network is shunted by the tumor, favoring its escape from immunosurveillance and tumor progression. Nevertheless, the production of some CKs promotes the antitumor immune response and has been associated with improved patient outcome, including lower recurrence rate or increased patient survival [55].

14.4.1 Chemokines Involved in T-Cell Antitumor Immune Response

Induction of antigen (Ag)-specific antitumor immune response requires the uptake of tumor Ag by professional antigen-presenting cells (APCs) and migration from the tumor site to the corresponding draining lymph node, in order to present the processed tumor Ag to T-lymphocytes. The same APCs represent key modulators of tumor-infiltrating lymphocyte (TIL) infiltration and activation within the tumor niche. These major immune functions can be divided into different steps for which the CKR network has important regulatory implications [56].

14.4.1.1 Regulation of CK and CKR Expression by Tumor APCs

In mouse and human tumors, cells capable of phagocytic activity, and subsequently presenting tumor antigen, include tumor-associated macrophages (TAMs), tumor dendritic cells (TuDCs), immature myeloid-derived suppressor cells (MDSCs), and monocytes [57–59]. TAMs and MDSCs have mostly been implicated in dampening the T-cell response during tumor progression as we will see below. TuDCs are composed of different subsets within tumors. Monocyte-derived TuDCs are prominent in tumor antigen uptake, but lack strong T-cell stimulatory capacity due to NO-mediated immunosuppression. Pre-cDC-derived TuDCs have lymph node migratory potential, whereby cDC1s ($CD11b^{-}$ $CD103^{+}$) efficiently activate $CD8^{+}$ T-cells and cDC2s ($CD11b^{+}$ $CD103^{-}$) induce Th17 cells [60]. cDC1 APCs are very low in number but are capable of

physically engaging T-cells in tumor distal regions and to a lesser extent in the tumor proximal regions, as shown by in vivo imaging. These DCs express CD103 (CD141 in humans) and are required for T-cell-mediated tumor rejection. Moreover, the expression of CD103 DC-related transcripts in human tumors predicts survival [61]. Encounter with tumor Ag induces maturation of APCs present in the tumor environment. One feature of this maturation is the downregulation of peripheral tissue-associated CKR like CCR1, CCR5, and CCR6 and the upregulation of CCR7. Due to the constitutive expression of CCR7 ligand, CCL19, and CCL21 by peripheral lymph nodes, this switch of CKR expression by APCs promotes their migration toward the priming site. Once in the draining lymph node, APCs will locate in the preferential area to present the tumor Ag to the CCR7-expressing naive lymphocytes. CD103+ DC or cDC1 bearing CCR7 has been subsequently demonstrated to play a critical role in tumor antigen trafficking to lymph nodes (LNs), priming of T-cell immunity, and induction of antitumor cytotoxic T-lymphocytes (CTLs) [60, 62]. These effects are dependent upon CCR7 expression by cDC1, which allows their migration to LN. Loss of CCR7 and of migratory properties of cDC1 results in defective LN T-cell priming and increased tumor outgrowth. CCR7 expression in humans correlates with the cDC1 signature and better clinical outcome. Tumor cDC1 production of the chemokines CXCL9 and CXCL10 is required for effector T-cell trafficking and adoptive T-cell therapy efficacy [63] (Fig. 14.6). Expansion and activation of $CD103^+$ DC progenitors at the tumor site also enhances tumor response to therapeutic PD-L1 and Braf inhibition [64]. Altogether, these data suggest that $CD103^+$ $CCR7^+$ cDC1 are at the forefront of anticancer immunity.

14.4.1.2 Ag Presentation to T-Lymphocytes

Despite the fact that APCs display low dynamic activity, naïve lymphocytes have a high basal mobility favoring scanning of thousand APCs per hour [65, 66]. This behavior requires CCR7 expression by T-lymphocytes [67]. An additional CKR-dependent mechanism favors the probability of encounter between APCs and T-lymphocytes. Encounter of Ag-specific $CD4^+$ or $CD8^+$ T-cells with an APC bearing their cognate Ag induces the secretion of CC chemokines by the conjugate, namely CCL19, CCL5, CCL3,

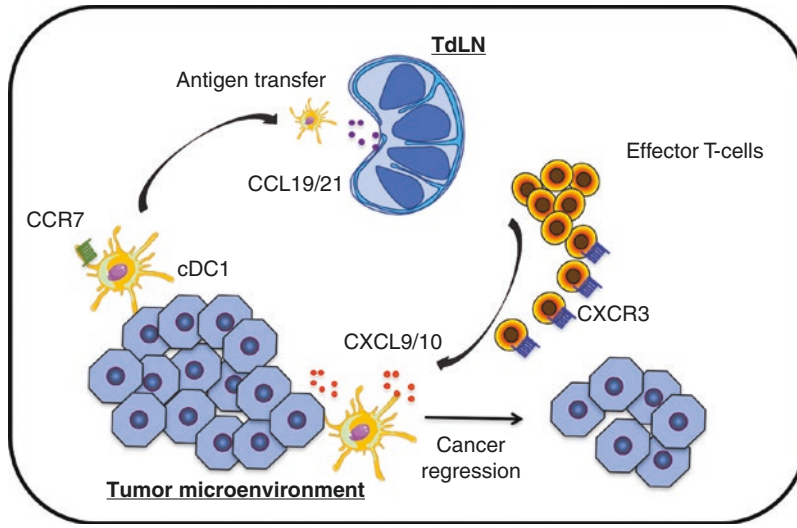


Fig. 14.6 Regulation of CK and CKR expression by tumor APCs. $CD11b^-$ $CD103^+$ cDC1 are a discrete subset of APCs usually located at the periphery of solid tumors. cDC1 expresses CCR7 which allows them to transfer tumor antigens to the tumor-draining lymph nodes (TdLNs) and to stimulate antitumor immunity. CCR7 expressing cDC1 in the tumor is capable of robust production of CXCL9/ CXCL10 which binds CXCR3 expressed on T-cells and participates in the efficacy of classical and immune-based anticancer therapies

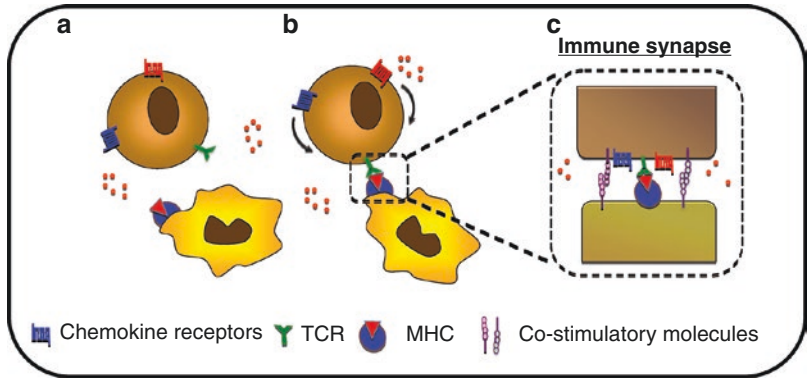


Fig. 14.7 Control of cell polarization toward immune synapse. (**a**) T-cell scan for their cognate antigen-presenting cell. (**b**) Upon recognition, T-cell will polarize chemokine receptors toward the immune synapse. (**c**) This sequestration of CKR leads to reduced sensitivity to distant CK gradient and may participate in the stabilization of the immune synapse

and CCL4. These CKs will promote naïve T-cell scanning behaviors and attraction toward the conjugate [57–59], which is known to favor the establishment of memory immune response, in addition to the induction of polyclonal responses against different tumor Ags [68].

CKs are also implicated in the improvement of APC/T-cell adhesion mechanism as well as in immunological synapse stabilization, promoting T-cell priming (Fig. 14.7). CCR7 ligands secreted in the lymph node promote immunological synapse formation by T-cells [69]. CXCR4 and CCR5 expressed by T-cells are recruited toward the immunological synapses made with the APC. This polarization results in desensitization of T-cells from external sources of CKs and improves synapse stability. A similar mechanism is observed during the interaction between tumor-infiltrating lymphocytes (TILs) and tumor cells. Indeed, the recruitment of CCR5 at the immune synapse formed between the TIL and the tumor cell results in defective responses to TIL toward a CCR5 gradient [70]. This mechanism allows for the modulation of the "GO" signals generated by CKs, competing with the "STOP" signals mediated by the TCR-MHC interaction [71].

14.4.1.3 Migration of Effector T-Lymphocytes to the Tumor

Naive T-cells, after clonal expansion and differentiation into effector T-cells, migrate toward the tumor site, implying that T-cells downregulate the expression of the CKRs implicated in the retention at the priming site like CCR7. In addition, they upregulate various CKRs including CCR1, CCR3, CCR5, and CXCR3 allowing their movement toward the tumor site [72]. Cytotoxic T-lymphocyte (CTL) recruitment to the tumor site is consistent with this pattern of CKR expression and is mainly mediated by CCL3, CCL5, CCL20, CXCL9, and CXCL10 [56]. Expression of membrane-anchored CKs such as CXCL16 and CX3CL1 has also been shown to correlate with greater numbers of tumor-infiltrating lymphocytes and improved prognosis in colorectal cancer [73, 74]. The antitumor effect of the membrane-bound CK form vs. the soluble form is yet to be clearly established.

The control of TIL localization within the tumor is ill-defined. It is obvious that in most cases, TILs are mainly found at the tumor periphery; however, the underlying mechanisms remain unclear. Several clues could help us speculate on the mechanism of trapping the TILs at the tumor periphery. The recent contribution of real-time imaging showed that dense peripheral extracellular matrix (ECM) might restrain TILs' access to the tumor parenchyma [75]. Whether specific niches of CKs are expressed on collagen fibers is unclear and needs further investigation. In addition, dynamic analysis showed that Ag-specific CTLs are trapped in the network of

tumor-associated APCs restraining their infiltration and probably favoring immunosuppression [76, 77]. The role of CKs in this trapping is not defined, but Ag expression by APC at least induces stable engagement between the CTL and the APC. In addition, experimental evidences showed that non-tumor Ag-specific TIL cannot infiltrate the tumor deeply without the prior tumor cells' destruction by Ag-specific CTL. These results suggest that deep infiltration of the tumor by TIL might be favored by chemotactic agents secreted upon tumor cell destruction by CTL or on extensive ECM remodeling to allow their interstitial migration [78].

Overall, considering the numerous CKs expressed by the various cell subsets of the tumor microenvironment, it is very difficult to address specific contributions of the CK/CKR couple in the interstitial migration and positioning of T-lymphocytes within the tumor parenchyma. The various properties of these molecules have demonstrated that this positioning is controlled by sensitivity to the chemotactic gradient and the subsequent desensitization upon polarization toward the synapse or the downregulation of the expression of CKRs.

14.4.2 Chemokines in Innate Immune Components

Innate immune cells constitute a first barrier against tumor development. However, due to their plasticity and capacity to produce a myriad of cytokines, chronically activated innate immune cells are key modulators of cell activation and survival, as well as regulators of the ECM metabolism. Several physiological processes necessary for tumor development, such as increased cell survival, tissue remodeling, angiogenesis, and suppression of antitumor adaptive immune responses, are regulated by innate immune cell infiltrates in the tumor.

Macrophages are the main stromal cell population present in the tumor parenchyma. They can account for more than 50% of the tumor mass. The role of TAMs in tumor development is critical, as these cells, depending on their state of activation, can display antitumor properties associated with the production of Th1 cytokine, high quantity of reactive oxygen species, phagocytosis and efficient Ag presentation; or they could display protumor properties mediated by the secretion of Th2 cytokine, proangiogenic factors, growth factors that support tumor survival, and proliferation and the secretion of MMP which promote tumor invasion and metastases. Consistently, the impact of TAMs on tumor development and metastases will depend on the balance between antitumor macrophages and protumor macrophages.

Tissue-resident macrophages originate from the self-renewal of yolk sac or fetal liver derived macrophages while a small proportion, depending on the tissue, may derive from the recruitment of circulating monocytes assuring immunosurveillance [79]. Within neoplastic tissues, it is suggested that TAMs are mostly recruited from the periphery [80]. Nonetheless, knowledge of the relative proportion of native resident macrophages within tumors remains poor in the field of oncology. CCL2, also called MCP-1 for monocyte chemoattractant protein-1, is probably the most frequently found CC-CK in tumors involving recruitment of circulating classical monocytes ($CCR2^{high}$ $Ly6C^{+}$ in mouse, $CCR2^{high}$ $CD14^{++}$ $CD16^{-}$ in human) [81]. A subpopulation of early-evolved cancer cells requires macrophages for early dissemination. CCL2 produced in the premalignant region attracts these macrophages which induce Wnt-1 upregulation that in turn downregulates E-cadherin junctions in early cancer cells, ultimately increasing metastatic burden at end stage of cancer progression [82]. TAMs are also capable of inducing the directional migration and the invasion of tumor cells. One described mechanism is that CSF1 produced by the tumor cells creates a feedback loop leading to EGF production by macrophages and subsequent accumulation of tumor cells around blood vessels [25]. TAMs are also capable of directly promoting the intravasation of tumor cells into the circulations [83]. Classical monocytes recruited via CCL2 promote perineural invasion of cancer cells via cathepsin B expression [84]. Recently, embryonically derived tissue-resident macrophages have been demon-

strated to co-exist with bone-marrow-derived macrophages recruited via CCR2 in pancreatic and brain malignancies and to display distinct functions [85, 86]. Similarly, in the context of lung carcinoma and breast cancer pulmonary metastases, both monocyte-derived macrophages and CCR2-independent tissue-resident interstitial macrophages densely colonize the tumors and promote their development. These two macrophage subsets display distinct transcriptomic signatures, anatomic distributions, and functions after anticancer therapies. On the other hand, alveolar macrophages, which are the most abundant tissue-resident macrophages in the alveolar lumen, decrease in number and seem to be excluded from pulmonary tumor nodules [87].

Tissue-resident macrophages are present in most tissues and have distinct transcriptional programs initiated in embryonic progenitors [88] compared to recruited macrophages. The relative proportion and specific features of tissue-resident macrophages might explain the heterogeneity of different tumor microenvironments according to the anatomical site of tumor development. One needs to further investigate whether it could serve as a prognostic factor of tumor growth and response to therapies. Moreover, one has to consider the co-existence within the tumor niches of TAMs from different ontogenies. This aspect is crucial considering the described roles of the CKRs in the accumulation of these subsets so far. Beyond their action in cell recruitment, their action in local proliferation and survival of resident macrophages should be considered.

Interestingly, in a melanoma system where tumorigenesis is dependent on an external growth factor CCL2, there is a biphasic effect depending on its secreted quantity. High amounts are associated with a massive recruitment of TAMs into the tumor with dominant antitumor activity, while lower amounts induce lower infiltration into the tumor resulting in tumor promotion through the secretion of growth factor by the macrophages [89]. Through CCR2 activation by CCL2, metastasis-associated macrophages (MAMs) can secrete CCL3 acting as an amplification loop to accumulate MAMs in a CCR1-dependent manner [90]. As we will see in Sect. 14.5.2, TAMs are important protagonists of tumor-associated fibrosis or ECM remodeling. These results point out the importance of the ratio between protumor and antitumor activities of macrophages of different origins within tumors.

Other CKRs implicated in TAM recruitment are CX3CR1 and CCR1. In human glioblastoma, the level of tumor infiltration by microglial cells is dependent on CX3CR1. Patients with a functional mutation in the CX3CR1 gene associated with impaired monocyte migration have a reduced TAM infiltration into the tumor [91]. Injection of a thymoma tumor cell line (EL4) with a liver tropism to mice results in an increased infiltration of the liver by immune cells, including macrophages. In CCR1 KO mice, this recruitment during the first stage of the tumor development is massively reduced [92].

CXC chemokine receptors could also be implicated in TAM recruitment. In humans, IL-4 and IL-13, two cytokines secreted in the tumor environment, sensitize monocytes to CXCL1 and CXCL8 by upregulating their receptors (CXCR1 and CXCR2). Thus, these cytokines indirectly promote the recruitment of TAM into the tumor through CXC chemokine receptors [93].

As previously discussed, CKs not only control leukocyte recruitment into the tumor but also organize their localization within the tumor. Lack of proper vascularization at the center of the tumor induces the secretion of several hypoxic factors like hypoxia-inducible factors (HIFs). HIFs promote the expression of CXCR4 by macrophages, favoring their recruitment toward tumor hypoxic areas [94].On the other hand, the tumor environment decreases CKR expression on monocytes. Indeed, macrophages from tumor sites express low levels of CKR [95]. Time-lapse imaging of TAMs in the experimental murine model revealed that TAMs display reduced displacement but intense protrusive activity [76, 77]. Downregulation of CKR might explain this retention at the tumor site.

CKs do not only act on leukocyte attraction but are also implicated in their activation. Induction of copper/zinc superoxide dismutase by CCL5/CCR5 activation causes tumor necrosis factor-alpha and reactive oxygen species pro-

duction by macrophages [96], promoting tumor destruction. Inversely, in human monocytes, CC chemokines induce the transcription of metalloproteinase, implicated in tumor invasion and spreading. The fact that both TAM recruitment and activation are regulated by CK increases the potential interest of targeting TAM for antitumor therapies. Nonclassical or patrolling monocytes ($CX3CR1^{high}$ $Ly6C^{low}$ in mouse, $CX3CR1^{high}$ $CD14^{+}CD16^{+}$ in human) are localized in the capillaries of different organs where they patrol and scavenge cellular debris via the CX3CR1-CX3CL1 axis [97]. These cells have been associated with antitumor functions in different models of murine metastasis. Patrolling monocytes establish early interactions with metastasizing tumor cells and scavenge tumor material from the lung vasculature. The detection of tumor material by patrolling monocytes is dependent upon CX3CR1 and promotes the recruitment and activation of NK cells to the lung tumor environment [98]. Exosomes from melanoma cells or from patients with nonmetastatic melanomas have the capacity to stimulate the expansion of patrolling monocytes via induction of the Nr4a1 transcription factor, causing cancer cell clearance [99].

NK cells represent another component of the innate immune system highly involved in antitumor immune responses. NK cell recruitment to the tumor is mainly mediated through the CXCL10-CXCR3, CX3CL1/CX3CR1, and CCL3-CCL4-CCL5/CCR5 axes. High CX3CL1 quantity is associated with increased NK cell recruitment into the tumor in both humans and mice [100, 101].

A similar phenomenon is observed with increased CCL5 and CCL3 expression by tumor cells in mouse models [102, 103]. CXCR3 is implicated in the recruitment of human NK cells to breast cancer tumor, which is mediated by CXCL10 secretion from tumor cells in response to IFN-γ produced by the NK cells themselves [104, 105]. Thus, CKs not only control NK cell recruitment but also regulate their antitumor properties. CX3CR1 activation by CX3CL1 results in improved antitumor cytotoxicity of NK cells [106, 107]. CCL3, CCL4, and CCL5 have been shown to activate NK cytotoxicity through induction of degranulation [108, 109].

14.4.3 Chemokine and Tumor-Induced Tolerance

Recruitment of tolerogenic cells such as regulatory T-cells or immunosuppressive myeloid subsets is a feature of immune escape. Tumor cells secrete ligands of CKRs expressed by immature, regulatory, or Th2 polarized cells. CCL22 and CCL17 produced by tumor cells recruit monocytes, as well as Th2 lymphocytes and regulatory T-cells (Treg cells) through CCR4 signaling [110]. This strategy of immune escape has been also selected in the viral-induced oncogenesis process. HHV8 virus, the pathogen of Kaposi's sarcoma, encodes three viral CKs which bind to CCR3, CCR4, and CCR8 involved in the recruitment of Th2 and Treg cells [111]. Treg cells recruited through CCL22/CCR4 are selectively activated by mature DCs though tumor-associated antigen presentations and lead to an adverse clinical outcome in breast tumors [112]. The tumor cell-derived cytokine IL-1α has been identified as a major inducer of the Treg-attracting chemokine CCL22 in human cancer cells. Silencing IL-1α prevents CCL22 induction by tumor or myeloid cells, resulting in suppression of Treg migration toward the tumor [113]. Blockade of the CCL22/CCR4 axis is thus a promising therapeutic strategy to inhibit tumor-induced immunosuppression [114].

Stromal cells produce CKs which promote the recruitment of protumoral cells. Among others, TAM produces CCL18 which is induced by IL-10 [115]. CCL18 favors the recruitment of naïve T-cells through activation of an unknown receptor. It is proposed that these naïve T-cells acquired tolerogenic properties in contact with the tumor environment. $CCR6^{+}$ immature lymphoid DC recruitment into the tumor is favored by the secretion of CCL20 from both tumor cells and TAMs [116]. CCL5 recruits immature DCs as well by binding CCR1 and CCR5 [117]. Immature DCs acquire tolerogenic properties in the tumor environment and participate in the

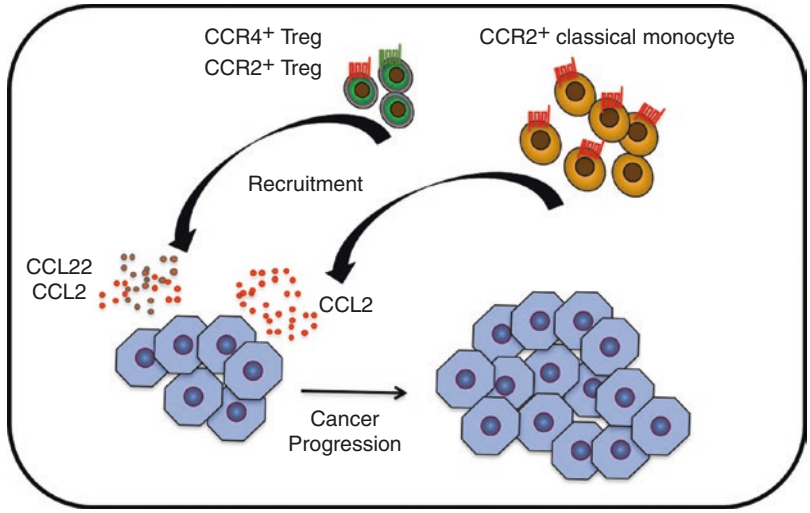


Fig. 14.8 Role of chemokines in the recruitment of immunosuppressive cells to tumors. The chemokines CCL2 and CCL22 are commonly secreted in both mouse and human tumors of different types and direct cancer immunity toward immune tolerance. CCL22 drives the enrichment of CCR4+ Treg cells, which can be targeted therapeutically. CCL2 production in tumor microenvironment is linked to the recruitment of CCR2+ classical monocytes and CCR2+ Treg cells. Monocytes can display immunosuppressive properties per se (MDSCs) but can also differentiate into TAMs upon extravasation into tumors. CCR2+ Treg cells represent a tumor antigen-specific and highly immunosuppressive subset

immune tolerance loops against tumor Ags [118]. CCR2, a chemokine receptor highly expressed by inflammatory monocytes, is crucial for the recruitment of the latter from the bone marrow to inflamed tissues but also displays chemotactic properties for T-cells. The major CCR2 ligand (CCL2) is highly secreted by both the tumor and tumor stromal cells in both human and mouse models. In cancer context, the CCR2-CCL2 axis has been largely implicated in the development and progression of cancer metastasis via the recruitment of MDSCs [119] and TAMs [90, 120]. MDSCs promote immune escape by limiting the activation of CD8 T-cell infiltration into tumors, whereas macrophages promote metastatic seeding of cancer cells, thereby amplifying the pathology. Beyond myeloid cells, CCR2 is also expressed by a subset of activated tumor antigen-specific, suppressive Treg cells in the LN. Given the lower frequency of CCR2-expressing Th cells, CCL2 production during tumor development represents a nonredundant mechanism of preferential recruitment of CCR2+ Treg cells and contributes to immune escape (Fig. 14.8). Depletion of CCR2+ Treg or CCL2 blockade enhances priming of tumor-specific CD8+ T-cells [121] and augments cancer immunotherapy [122, 123]. The recruitment of both monocytes and Treg cells via CCR2-CCL2 could favor the co-localization of these immunosuppressive cells and further indicates that this CK axis is an important mechanistic marker of tumor development, predicting clinical benefit after cancer therapy.

Subversion of tumor immune component is a central point of tumor outcome. The above-described implication of CK in cellular mechanisms should provide the basis to better understanding the clinical implication of CK network in cancer pathology. The regulation of the balance between immunogenic and tolerogenic components has deserved major attention for a long time and is the basis of immunotherapy which represents an apparent inexhaustible field of innovative anticancer strategies. Targeting the CK system in this goal is in the course of important investigation through the development of pharmaceutical compounds able to stimulate or antagonize CKR axes.

14.5 Alternative Tumor-Associated Physiological Functions of Chemokines

14.5.1 Angiogenesis

One of the features of CKs is their dual role in the angiogenic process. In the tumor environment, there is increased production of proangiogenic CK, while angiostatic CKs are downregulated. In addition to a direct angiogenic effect of CKs, this activity is indirectly potentialized by the CK-induced recruitment of leukocytes displaying angiogenic properties such as neutrophils or macrophages [124].

CKs from the CXC family are probably the most described for their direct implication in tumor-associated angiogenesis. CXCLs 1, 2, 3, 5, 6, 7, and 8 display angiogenic properties. All these CKs contain a specific amino acid sequence of glutamic acid-leucine-arginine (or ELR for short) immediately before the first cysteine of the CXC motif (ELR positive). This ELR sequence absence from the other CXC chemokines is responsible for the proangiogenic properties of most of the CXC chemokines [125].

ELR^+ chemokines mediate angiogenesis through binding to the CXCR2 receptor.

ELR^+ chemokines are able to recruit endothelial precursor cells, induce cell proliferation, and promote maturation. These mechanisms could be negatively regulated by a decoy CKR expressed by endothelial cells called duffy antigen receptor for CK (DARC). Unlike most of the other CKRs, DARC is not linked to G-protein, and its activation does not induce calcium flux. DARC reduces angiogenesis by sequestering all the ELR^+ CKs.

One specificity within ELR^- chemokines is attributed to CXCL12 which is the only ELR chemokine with proangiogenic activity. CXCL12 mediates its proangiogenic effect by directly promoting the recruitment of endothelial progenitor cells [126, 127] or indirectly by promoting tumor angiogenesis through the recruitment of $CXCR4^+$ $TIE2^+$ proangiogenic monocyte [94, 128] and through the secretion of vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF) after CXCR7 activation [129] or WNT7B signaling [130]. Interfering pharmacologically with the CXCL12/CXCR4 axis or depleting $TIE2^+$ monocytes/macrophages increases the efficacy of vascular-disrupting agent based therapies [131]. Chemotherapy induces the upregulation of HMOX-1 which in turn upregulates CXCL12 in perivascular area of tumors. In this context, CXCL12 subsequently induces the clustering of tumor-relapse-promoting TAM population around tumor blood vessels. Perivascular TAMs promote tumor revascularization and relapse partly via their production of VEGF [132]. Signaling via VEGF-R1 in metastasis-associated macrophages regulates a set of inflammatory response and macrophage regulator genes which promote breast tumor metastases [133]. Moreover, anti-angiogenic therapy targeting VEGF-R2 has been reported to upregulate both CXCL12 and CXCR4, leading to the recruitment of neutrophils and $Ly6C^{low}$ monocytes with immunosuppressive action in experimental murine models of colorectal cancer [134].

In contrast, ELR^- chemokine secretion is often associated with attenuation of angiogenesis. ELR^- CXC chemokines are described by their angiostatic properties. ELR^- CXC chemokine secretion is induced by IFN-α and IFN-β. Through CXCR3 binding, these CKs mediate their angiostatic properties by inhibition of ELR^+ chemokine, VEGF-α, and β-FGF proangiogenic effects in vitro [135]. Interestingly, the expression of CXCR3 is dependent on the cell cycle phase, limiting the angiostatic properties of ELR^- CXC chemokines to the S/G2-M phase [136].

This important association of CKs and angiogenesis within the tumor environment sets the inhibition of ELR^+ chemokine as a robust antitumor therapy.

14.5.2 Fibrosis and Extracellular Matrix Remodeling

The association of CKs with EMT leading to fibrosis activity has been previously suggested by studies; however, there is no clear evidence that CKs play a direct role in this process.

Fibrosis and extracellular matrix remodeling are continuous processes present in the tumor

parenchyma reflecting the intense dynamic and migratory activity of the neoplastic tissue. Two different types of migratory activity are defined, namely the amoeboid and mesenchymal migrations. The amoeboid migration does not require extracellular matrix (ECM) remodeling through matrix metalloproteinase (MMP) activity due to the ability of the cell to squeeze through the ECM. The mesenchymal migration relies on previous proteolysis and degradation of the ECM to generate sufficient space for cell displacement. CK-mediated induction of MMP is mostly mediated by CC chemokines; CCL5 and CCL9 produced by mesenchymal stem cells promote tumor cell invasion in a MMP-dependent manner [137, 138]. CCL25 promotes MMP secretion in ovarian cancer cells through CCR9 binding and favors tumor cell invasion [139]. CCL21/CCR7 interaction favors MMP-9 secretion, tumor invasion, and metastases in colon cancer cells and in B-cell chronic lymphocytic leukemia cells [140, 141]. At least, one CXC chemokine has been related to MMP activity; thus, CXCL12 is implicated in increased MMP-2 activation and increased cell invasion in a pancreatic cancer cell line [142].

Studies have suggested that the extracellular matrix promotes tumor escape from the immune system by trapping antitumor leukocytes at a distance from tumor cell niches [143]. However, tumor progression and metastases require degradation of this extracellular matrix surrounding the tumor. Mesenchymal stem cell (MSC)-derived cell populations and TAMs are important protagonists of these physiological activities. CXCL12 is implicated in the recruitment of mesenchymal stem cells (MSCs) from the bone marrow. Bone marrow-derived MSCs can account for up to 25% of cancer-associated fibroblasts, the main source of fibrosis within the tumor [144]. Cancer-associated fibroblasts and MSCs have been shown to share protumorigenic activities with MSCs in neuroblastomas [145]. TAMs have also been shown to actively participate in the construction and assembly of the tumor-associated ECM by secreting collagen types I, IV, and XVI and factors enhancing fibroblast activities [146]. Production of proteases such as cathepsin by macrophages or MMP can also liberate growth factors sequestered in the ECM [147]. Overexpression of CCL2 in the mammary epithelium was associated with increased expression of matrix remodeling enzymes and higher density of the stroma and collagen without directly affecting mammary epithelial cell proliferation or death. Nevertheless, this CCL2-driven inflammation contributed to the increased risk of breast cancer in both mouse models and humans [148]. Comparison of TAM functions according to their ontogeny suggests that while tissue-resident macrophages directly promote tumor progression, partly via their pro-fibrotic activities [85, 86], TAMs derived from circulating $CCR2^{+}$ monocytes degrade collagen though cellular uptake [149].

There is ongoing evidence that targeting proteolysis activity in combination with chemotaxis would provide promising results in the strategy to inhibit tumor cell invasion and metastasis.

14.6 Clinical Aspect

CKs are implicated in several aspects of tumor development. Due to these pivotal roles in tumor biology, CKs have been frequently associated with tumor evolution and clinical outcomes and have been highlighted for their potential use as prognostic or diagnostic markers. Therefore, they represent a promising target with a potential for a diverse range of therapeutic strategies.

14.6.1 Prognosis

Due to its importance across a wide range of physiological mechanisms, CK/CKR network alteration could impact tumor development. Correlative studies using genetic polymorphisms provide essential information for prognosis. Several functional polymorphisms in CKs or CKRs have been studied in order to establish correlation between functional variants and tumor risk or progression (Table 14.2).

The paragraphs below focus on the most commonly described polymorphisms, their functional

Table 14.2 Association between chemokines and chemokine receptor polymorphisms and tumor risk and/or progression

		CCL2-2518 A<G	CCL5-403 G>A	CXCL8-251T>A	CXCL12 801G<A	CCR2 64I	CCR5 Delta 32	CX3CR1 V249I
Breast	Risk	–		–∗	=/–∗	–		
	Prog	–		–				
Hepatocellular	Risk	=			=/–	=/–	=	=
	Prog	=			=/–	=	=	
Gastric	Risk	–	+	–∗/=∗				
	Prog							
Glioblastoma	Risk	=						=
	Prog	=						+
Prostate	Risk	=	–	+∗	–	–	–	
	Prog							
Oro-/nasopharyngeal	Risk			–∗	–	–∗		
	Prog	–		–				
Melanoma	Risk	=					=	=
	Prog	–					=/–	=
Pancreatic	Risk		–					
	Prog							
Leukemia	Risk		+					
	Prog				–			
Colorectal	Risk			+/=				–
	Prog			=	–			
Bladder	Risk			=		–∗	–	
	Prog			=				
Lung	Risk			=	–∗			
	Prog							
Cervix	Risk					–∗		
	Prog					–		

Prog prognosis, + good indicator, – poor indicator, = no association, ∗ meta-analysis

relevancies, and their subsequent prognostic value in tumor risk and/or progression.

14.6.2 CC Chemokines/Chemokine Receptors

14.6.2.1 CCL2

A single-nucleotide polymorphism (SNP) in the CCL2 promoter, based on the substitution of an adenine by a guanine in position −2518 (A < −2518 < G), is associated with increased CCL2 secretion [150]. This polymorphism with an allelic frequency close to 30% is associated with an increased susceptibility to the development of breast, gastric, and oral squamous cancer. However, it is not associated with an increased risk of developing hepatocellular and prostate cancer, glioblastoma, and melanoma. Despite this lack of association with the development of melanoma, CCL2 polymorphism is associated with increased Breslow index, suggesting its link with melanoma progression [151]. CCL2-2518G variant is also associated with increased metastasis development in nasopharyngeal and breast cancer. In the former case, the deleterious effect of the polymorphism is observed only after radiotherapy [152]. Overall, the deleterious effect of the CCL2-2518G allele-associated increase of CCL2 expression is consistent with the protumoral effect of TAM in most tumors, as previously described above.

14.6.2.2 CCL5

Conflicting data arise from the study of the CCL5 G < −403 < A polymorphism on cancer

risk. This mutation is thought to be responsible for the decreased secretion of CCL5 and is associated with decreased risk of leukemia and gastric cancer in women [153], as well as an increased risk of prostate and pancreatic cancer [154]. This discrepancy could reflect the balance between the antitumor effects of CCL5 through recruitment of CTL and the protumoral effect of CCL5 through recruitment of immature DC. Nonetheless, there is no evidence supporting an association between CCL5 polymorphism and tumor progression.

14.6.2.3 CCR5

CCL5 main receptor (*CCR5*) is also subject to another relevant polymorphism. A deletion of 32 base pairs named CCR5 delta 32 results in a reading frame shift, associated with complete defect in receptor expression. The impact of the polymorphism in tumor risk and progression is not well documented. Most studies conclude a lack of association; however, one report suggests that CCR5Δ32 could be associated with higher risks of the development of gallbladder cancer [155]. In melanoma, CCR5Δ32 is associated with reduced survival of patients with grade 4 tumor treated by immunotherapy strategies [156]. These observations might reflect the role of CCR5 in the induction of T-cell priming and memory.

14.6.2.4 CCR2

CCR2 V64I polymorphism has also been studied for its implication in tumor risk and progression. There is no known effect of the genetic variation on the CCR2/CCL2-signaling pathway, but it is associated with CCR5 instability, which could be explained by stability alteration of the CCR2/CCR5 dimer. Most of the studies conclude that there is an increased risk for people carrying the rare variant. This is the case for cervical, oral, bladder, prostate, and endometrial cancer. A recent meta-analysis with 2661 cancer patients and 5801 healthy controls found an overall significant association between the CCR2-V64I polymorphism and cancer risk [157]. In the subgroup analysis stratified by cancer types, there was a significant association between this polymorphism and the risk of bladder, cervical, and oral cancer.

14.6.3 CXC Chemokines

Two CXC chemokines, CXCL8 (also referred as interleukin-8) and CXCL12 (SDF-1), have been intensively investigated for their association between polymorphisms and tumor risk and development.

14.6.3.1 CXCL8

CXCL8 T < −251 < A polymorphism is probably one of the most studied CK polymorphisms in cancer. Its physiological effect and its impact on CXCL8 expression remain to be elucidated. There is an apparent discrepancy between studies on these effects; however, this may reflect specificity depending on the cell type or the cell activation status. The implication of CXCL8 polymorphism in cancer risk and outcome remains unclear. Unfortunately, controversies in the literature make any interpretation challenging. Several meta-analyses have been performed in order to gain some clarity, and despite some variation in the conclusion, it appears likely that the rare variant of CXCL8 promoter region is associated with increased risk of gastric and oral cancer [158–160].

14.6.3.2 CXCL12

CXCL12 is subject to a polymorphism in a 3′ untranslated region named CXCL12 3′ G801A. The rare variant is associated with increased secretion of CXCL12. Consistent with the protumoral effect of CXCL12 mentioned above, studies essentially report that CXCL12 801A variant is associated with an increased risk of several cancers (lung, breast, oral, prostate, hepatocellular, and colorectal cancers). It is also thought to favor tumor progression or metastases in lung cancer, hepatocellular carcinoma, colorectal cancer, and myeloid leukemia. The only three meta-analyses performed to date conclude that there is an increased risk of breast and lung cancer, without any significant effect on other cancer types [161–163].

14.6.4 CX3C Chemokine Receptors

The only receptor for the CX3C chemokine family is CX3CR1, which is also subject to polymorphisms associated with cancer outcome. Substitution of a valine by an isoleucine in position 249 results in increased adhesion of the couple CX3CR1/CX3CL1 and defective migration of $CX3CR1^+$ cells. The rare variant is associated with increased risk of colorectal cancer, but not hepatocellular cancer, melanoma, and glioblastoma. In this last case, the rare variant is associated with improved patient survival after tumor biopsies and decreased infiltration of the tumor by microglial cells [91]. This is consistent with the promotion of glioblastoma invasion by microglial cells [164].

14.6.5 Chemokine Circulating Expression

CK circulating levels have also been related to cancer progression. A high concentration of CCL17 is associated with the progression of Hodgkin's lymphoma (HL) after treatment [165]. Interestingly, opposite effects are observed in melanoma, where high *CCL17* expression is associated with progression-free survival in patients with immunotherapeutic treatment [166]. Elevated concentrations of CXCL10 in the serum before treatment (monoclonal antibody therapy together with combination chemotherapy) are associated with an increased likelihood of clinical relapse and an inferior survival in patients with diffuse large B-cell lymphoma [167]. Elevated serum levels of CCL2 have been described in patients with breast, colon, gastric, prostate, ovarian, or skin cancers [168–171]; and a meta-analysis of gene expression databases identified CCL2 as an independent factor favoring the development of prostate cancer [172].

Despite numerous promising results, CK and CKR genes and molecules are not currently used in clinical settings to evaluate a patient's risk of developing cancer or to predict tumor progression. This could be explained in part by the nonhomogeneous distribution of the polymorphism variants among ethnic communities. Additionally, in most cases, *CK* and *CKR* gene polymorphisms are not singularly powerful predictive tools. Their clinical utility is most likely to be dependent on their association with other markers.

14.6.6 Therapeutic Strategies

As discussed throughout this chapter, CKs are implicated in all steps of the tumor development, invasion, and dissemination. Several tools have been developed to target CKs or CKRs as innovative strategies in cancer treatment. To date, there is no molecule targeting macrophage release; however, multiple clinical trials from phase I to phase III are recorded at clinicaltrials.gov (Table 14.3). Some strategies aim to promote the production of CKs implicated in the recruitment of immune-competent cells to the tumor by injection of IFN, "celecoxib," and "rintatolimod" (NCT01545141). In another trial, patients with lung adenocarcinoma were directly injected with CKs implicated in the recruitment of antitumor effector T-cells, in combination with vaccination approach (NCT01433172). Inversely, another trial aimed to inhibit the recruitment of protumoral leukocyte using an Ab against CCL2 (carlumab) in order to control metastatic castrate-resistant prostate cancer (MCRPC) (NCT00992186). However, this strategy failed as all the patients were removed from the study, due to progression of the tumor despite anti-CCL2 treatment. Although well tolerated, treatment with carlumab only inhibits CCL2 initially, but the levels of CCL2 in patients are rapidly increased above those seen before treatment (NCT00537368). It was concluded that carlumab is not efficient for a long-term inhibition of CCL2 in patients, but other strategies have been used to target the CCR2/CCL2 axis in clinical trials. An antibody against CCR2 (MLN1202) has been demonstrated to be safe and well tolerated in patients with different types of cancers with bone metastasis (NCT01015560). Finally, other inhibitors of CCR2 (BMS-681 and CCR2-RA[R]) have been developed [173, 174] occupying different orthosteric and allosteric pockets of

Table 14.3 Clinical trials evaluating the benefits of targeting chemokine or chemokine receptor cancer therapies

Inclusion criteria	Phase	Treatment
Colorectal cancer	Phase I/II	Chemokine-modulatory regimen
Stage IV adenocarcinoma of the lung	Phase I/II	GM.CD40L and CCL21
Metastatic castrate-resistant prostate cancer	Phase II	Anti-CCL2 carlumab
Solid tumors	Phase I	Human monoclonal antibody against CCL2 (CNTO 888)
Patients with bone metastasis	Phase II	Anti-CCR2 monoclonal antibody (MLN1202)
Colorectal cancer patients with hepatic liver metastases	Phase I	CCR5 antagonist (maraviroc)
Previously treated peripheral T-cell lymphoma	Phase II	Anti-CCR4 monoclonal antibody KW-0761 (mogamulizumab)
CCR4-positive adult T-cell leukemia-lymphoma	Phase II	Anti-CCR4 (KW-0761)
Solid tumors	Phase I	Anti-CCR4 (KW-0761)
High-grade glioma	Phase I	CXCR4 antagonist (plerixafor/AMD3100) and bevacizumab
Multiple myeloma previously treated with lenalidomide	Phase III	Filgrastim with or without CXCR4 antagonist (plerixafor/AMD3100)
Non-Hodgkin's lymphoma	Phase III	CXCR4 antagonist (plerixafor/AMD3100) and G-CSF
Multiple myeloma	Phase Ib	Anti-CXCR4 (BMS-936564) alone or plus lenalidomide/dexamethasone or bortezomib/dexamethasone
Multiple myeloma	Phase I/IIa	CXCR4 antagonist (BKT-140)
Solid tumors	Phase I	CXCR4 antagonist (plerixafor/AMD3100)

the receptor. These two inhibitors also present different mechanisms of CCR2 inhibition, suggesting that combined inhibition could potentiate therapeutic efficacy [175].

Multiple preclinical models have demonstrated the induction of antitumor immunity by targeting Treg cells via CCR4 inhibition in preclinical models of solid tumors [176–178] and patients [179]. As a result, the immunoregulatory activities of KW-0761 are now being evaluated in patients with advanced and/or metastatic solid tumors (NCT02281409).

Another approach aimed to directly target *CKR* expressed by neoplastic cells in order to control tumor or metastasis development. The CCR5 antagonist, named "maraviroc," originally commercialized for AIDS treatment, is under evaluation for its antitumor property in colorectal cancer (NCT01736813). Promising results have been obtained with an anti-CCR4 Ab named "KW-0761." Injection of KW-0761 in subjects with CCR4-positive adult T-cell leukemia-lymphoma resulted in the stabilization of tumor progression in half of them. This molecule is now under evaluation in cutaneous T-cell lymphoma (NCT01728805) and in second-phase treatment for peripheral T-cell lymphoma (NCT01611142).

CXCR4 antagonists are probably the most widely used molecules in trials targeting the CK network. "Plerixafor" is an FDA-approved CXCR4 antagonist for use in patients with non-Hodgkin's lymphoma (NHL) and multiple myeloma. It is used as a preconditioning regimen for its ability to mobilize bone marrow resident hematopoietic stem cells and tumor stem cells toward circulation before chemotherapy. Plerixafor and other molecules targeting CXCR4 are now evaluated in several clinical trials from grades I to III in combination with other treatments, in various forms of leukemia and myeloma. Evaluation of CXCR4 targeting in cancer therapies is not limited to blood tumors. Plerixafor is currently being evaluated in a phase I trial in conjunction with "bevacizumab" for patients with high-grade glioma (NCT01339039). Plerixafor is also studied by continuous adminis-

tration in patients with advanced pancreatic, ovarian, and colorectal cancers (NCT02179970).

14.7 Concluding Remarks

The advantages of targeting the CK network, through distinct strategies, have already been demonstrated as well as its limitations. A new generation of clinical trials based on a combination of approaches from standard chemotherapies to innovative immunotherapies offer new perspectives in CK network targeting strategies.

The 10 years following the discovery of the majority of CKs were characterized by extensive investigations in the involvement of these molecules in the control of cellular trafficking, specifically leukocytes. Later on, scientists demonstrated that CKs do not only control cell migration but also cell proliferation, survival, and activation state. It is now obvious that CKs act on a wider range of cell types rather than only leukocytes for which they were primarily characterized. The complex physiological processes in which CKs are involved such as tissue homeostasis, immune system maturation and surveillance, and tissue remodeling functions like angiogenesis or fibrosis are shunted in most cases toward tumor promotion. The central role of the CK network in these processes positions the CK system as an attractive target against tumor development, progression, and dissemination. Clinically, *CK* and *CKR* polymorphisms or serum levels are already associated with susceptibility or prognostic markers. Current investigations aiming at controlling tumor development by targeting the CK network are not limited to the direct effect on tumor cells. For instance, it is proposed that CKs could modulate the involvement of TAMs in tumor eradication or protection after chemotherapy suggesting that chemoattractant molecules could be used in combination with standard chemical chemotherapies to favor tumor eradication through modulation of the TAM activity. Despite numerous promising results, few molecules targeting CKRs have received FDA approval. The CXCL12 antagonism is already being used in patients with leukemia or myeloma to promote tumor cell mobilization toward the bloodstream before treatment, and the CCR5 antagonist maraviroc is currently being evaluated in colorectal cancer. These low numbers of molecules targeting CKs in the market could be explained by the relatively recent discovery and characterization of the CKs. In addition, the central role of CKs in most biological functions would lead to potential numerous side effects. Given the phenomenal amount of progress made by the scientific and the medical community, it is most likely that these challenges will be overcome. Several innovative technologies allowing for more efficient and specific delivery of chemical compounds have been proposed and optimized during the last few years, such as Ab-coupled treatment and encapsulated or viral delivered constructs. Targeting the CK network using these tools will probably constitute the next step in the development of a cancer therapy with minimal side effect.

Acknowledgments The authors wish to thank Neelam Malik for the editorial assistance. PL. L. was supported by ARC. This project has received funding from the European Union's Seventh Programme for research, technological development, and demonstration under grant agreement no. 304810.

References

1. Yoshimura T, Matsushima K, Oppenheim JJ, Leonard EJ. Neutrophil chemotactic factor produced by lipopolysaccharide (LPS)-stimulated human blood mononuclear leukocytes: partial characterization and separation from interleukin 1 (IL 1). J Immunol. 1987;139(3):788–93.
2. Baggiolini M, Dewald B, Moser B. Interleukin-8 and related chemotactic cytokines--CXC and CC chemokines. Adv Immunol. 1994;55:97–179.
3. Kunkel SL, Lukacs N, Strieter RM. Chemokines and their role in human disease. Agents Actions Suppl. 1995;46:11–22.
4. Kunkel SL. Through the looking glass: the diverse in vivo activities of chemokines. J Clin Invest. 1999;104(10):1333–4.
5. Taub DD, Ortaldo JR, Turcovski-Corrales SM, Key ML, Longo DL, Murphy WJ. Beta chemokines costimulate lymphocyte cytolysis, proliferation, and lymphokine production. J Leukoc Biol. 1996;59(1):81–9.

6. Luster AD. Chemokines--chemotactic cytokines that mediate inflammation. N Engl J Med. 1998;338(7):436–45.
7. Mackay CR. Chemokines: immunology's high impact factors. Nat Immunol. 2001;2(2):95–101.
8. Charo IF, Ransohoff RM. The many roles of chemokines and chemokine receptors in inflammation. N Engl J Med. 2006;354(6):610–21.
9. Sounni NE, Noel A. Targeting the tumor microenvironment for cancer therapy. Clin Chem. 2013;59(1):85–93.
10. Burnet FM. The concept of immunological surveillance. Prog Exp Tumor Res. 1970;13:1–27.
11. Zhou G, Lu Z, McCadden JD, Levitsky HI, Marson AL. Reciprocal changes in tumor antigenicity and antigen-specific T cell function during tumor progression. J Exp Med. 2004;200(12):1581–92.
12. Kelner GS, Zlotnik A. Cytokine production profile of early thymocytes and the characterization of a new class of chemokine. J Leukoc Biol. 1995;57(5):778–81.
13. Zlotnik A, Yoshie O. The chemokine superfamily revisited. Immunity. 2012;36(5):705–16.
14. Zlotnik A, Yoshie O. Chemokines: a new classification system and their role in immunity. Immunity. 2000;12(2):121–7.
15. Borrello MG, Alberti L, Fischer A, Degl'innocenti D, Ferrario C, Gariboldi M, et al. Induction of a proinflammatory program in normal human thyrocytes by the RET/PTC1 oncogene. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2005;102(41):14825–30.
16. Soucek L, Lawlor ER, Soto D, Shchors K, Swigart LB, Evan GI. Mast cells are required for angiogenesis and macroscopic expansion of Myc-induced pancreatic islet tumors. Nat Med. 2007;13(10):1211–8.
17. Balkwill FR. The chemokine system and cancer. J Pathol. 2011;226(2):148–57.
18. Sparmann A, Bar-Sagi D. Ras-induced interleukin-8 expression plays a critical role in tumor growth and angiogenesis. Cancer Cell. 2004;6(5):447–58.
19. Yang G, Rosen DG, Zhang Z, Bast RC Jr, Mills GB, Colacino JA, et al. The chemokine growth-regulated oncogene 1 (Gro-1) links RAS signaling to the senescence of stromal fibroblasts and ovarian tumorigenesis. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2006;103(44):16472–7.
20. Pivarcsi A, Muller A, Hippe A, Rieker J, van Lierop A, Steinhoff M, et al. Tumor immune escape by the loss of homeostatic chemokine expression. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2007;104(48):19055–60.
21. Staller P, Sulitkova J, Lisztwan J, Moch H, Oakeley EJ, Krek W. Chemokine receptor CXCR4 downregulated by von Hippel-Lindau tumour suppressor pVHL. Nature. 2003;425(6955):307–11.
22. Katoh M. Integrative genomic analyses of CXCR4: transcriptional regulation of CXCR4 based on TGFbeta, Nodal, Activin signaling and POU5F1, FOXA2, FOXC2, FOXH1, SOX17, and GFI1 transcription factors. Int J Oncol. 2010;36(2):415–20.
23. Mehta SA, Christopherson KW, Bhat-Nakshatri P, Goulet RJ Jr, Broxmeyer HE, Kopelovich L, et al. Negative regulation of chemokine receptor CXCR4 by tumor suppressor p53 in breast cancer cells: implications of p53 mutation or isoform expression on breast cancer cell invasion. Oncogene. 2007;26(23):3329–37.
24. Roussos ET, Condeelis JS, Patsialou A. Chemotaxis in cancer. Nat Rev Cancer. 2011;11(8):573–87.
25. Wyckoff J, Wang W, Lin EY, Wang Y, Pixley F, Stanley ER, et al. A paracrine loop between tumor cells and macrophages is required for tumor cell migration in mammary tumors. Cancer Res. 2004;64(19):7022–9.
26. Hernandez L, Magalhaes MA, Coniglio SJ, Condeelis JS, Segall JE. Opposing roles of CXCR4 and CXCR7 in breast cancer metastasis. Breast Cancer Res. 2011;13(6):R128.
27. Teicher BA, Fricker SP. CXCL12 (SDF-1)/CXCR4 pathway in cancer. Clin Cancer Res. 2010;16(11):2927–31.
28. Ramsey DM, McAlpine SR. Halting metastasis through CXCR4 inhibition. Bioorg Med Chem Lett. 2013;23(1):20–5.
29. Ploenes T, Scholtes B, Krohn A, Burger M, Passlick B, Muller-Quernheim J, et al. CC-chemokine ligand 18 induces epithelial to mesenchymal transition in lung cancer A549 cells and elevates the invasive potential. PLoS One. 2013;8(1):e53068.
30. Lee SH, Kang HY, Kim KS, Nam BY, Paeng J, Kim S, et al. The monocyte chemoattractant protein-1 (MCP-1)/CCR2 system is involved in peritoneal dialysis-related epithelial-mesenchymal transition of peritoneal mesothelial cells. Lab Investig. 2012;92(12):1698–711.
31. Hao M, Zheng J, Hou K, Wang J, Chen X, Lu X, et al. Role of chemokine receptor CXCR7 in bladder cancer progression. Biochem Pharmacol. 2012;84(2):204–14.
32. Palena C, Hamilton DH, Fernando RI. Influence of IL-8 on the epithelial-mesenchymal transition and the tumor microenvironment. Future Oncol. 2012;8(6):713–22.
33. Chang MC, Lee JJ, Chen YJ, Lin SI, Lin LD, Jein-Wen Liou E, et al. Lysophosphatidylcholine induces cytotoxicity/apoptosis and IL-8 production of human endothelial cells: related mechanisms. Oncotarget. 2017;8(63):106177–89.
34. Zhou N, Lu F, Liu C, Xu K, Huang J, Yu D, et al. IL-8 induces the epithelial-mesenchymal transition of renal cell carcinoma cells through the activation of AKT signaling. Oncol Lett. 2016;12(3):1915–20.
35. Muller A, Homey B, Soto H, Ge N, Catron D, Buchanan ME, et al. Involvement of chemokine receptors in breast cancer metastasis. Nature. 2001;410(6824):50–6.
36. Andre F, Cabioglu N, Assi H, Sabourin JC, Delaloge S, Sahin A, et al. Expression of chemokine receptors predicts the site of metastatic relapse in patients with

axillary node positive primary breast cancer. Ann Oncol. 2006;17(6):945–51.
37. Amersi FF, Terando AM, Goto Y, Scolyer RA, Thompson JF, Tran AN, et al. Activation of CCR9/CCL25 in cutaneous melanoma mediates preferential metastasis to the small intestine. Clin Cancer Res. 2008;14(3):638–45.
38. Zlotnik A, Burkhardt AM, Homey B. Homeostatic chemokine receptors and organ-specific metastasis. Nat Rev Immunol. 2011;11(9):597–606.
39. Acosta JC, O'Loghlen A, Banito A, Guijarro MV, Augert A, Raguz S, et al. Chemokine signaling via the CXCR2 receptor reinforces senescence. Cell. 2008;133(6):1006–18.
40. Ruan JW, Liao YC, Lua I, Li MH, Hsu CY, Chen JH. Human pituitary tumor-transforming gene 1 overexpression reinforces oncogene-induced senescence through CXCR2/p21 signaling in breast cancer cells. Breast Cancer Res. 2012;14(4):R106.
41. Benelli R, Stigliani S, Minghelli S, Carlone S, Ferrari N. Impact of CXCL1 overexpression on growth and invasion of prostate cancer cell. Prostate. 2013;73(9):941–51.
42. Kitadai Y, Haruma K, Mukaida N, Ohmoto Y, Matsutani N, Yasui W, et al. Regulation of disease-progression genes in human gastric carcinoma cells by interleukin 8. Clin Cancer Res. 2000;6(7):2735–40.
43. Wang B, Hendricks DT, Wamunyokoli F, Parker MI. A growth-related oncogene/CXC chemokine receptor 2 autocrine loop contributes to cellular proliferation in esophageal cancer. Cancer Res. 2006;66(6):3071–7.
44. Luppi F, Longo AM, de Boer WI, Rabe KF, Hiemstra PS. Interleukin-8 stimulates cell proliferation in non-small cell lung cancer through epidermal growth factor receptor transactivation. Lung Cancer. 2007;56(1):25–33.
45. Gabellini C, Trisciuoglio D, Desideri M, Candiloro A, Ragazzoni Y, Orlandi A, et al. Functional activity of CXCL8 receptors, CXCR1 and CXCR2, on human malignant melanoma progression. Eur J Cancer. 2009;45(14):2618–27.
46. Darash-Yahana M, Gillespie JW, Hewitt SM, Chen YY, Maeda S, Stein I, et al. The chemokine CXCL16 and its receptor, CXCR6, as markers and promoters of inflammation-associated cancers. PLoS One. 2009;4(8):e6695.
47. Balkwill F. Cancer and the chemokine network. Nat Rev Cancer. 2004;4(7):540–50.
48. Rubie C, Frick VO, Ghadjar P, Wagner M, Grimm H, Vicinus B, et al. CCL20/CCR6 expression profile in pancreatic cancer. J Transl Med. 2010;8:45.
49. Shen X, Mailey B, Ellenhorn JD, Chu PG, Lowy AM, Kim J. CC chemokine receptor 9 enhances proliferation in pancreatic intraepithelial neoplasia and pancreatic cancer cells. J Gastrointest Surg. 2009;13(11):1955–62; discussion 62
50. Murakami T, Cardones AR, Finkelstein SE, Restifo NP, Klaunberg BA, Nestle FO, et al. Immune evasion by murine melanoma mediated through CC chemokine receptor-10. J Exp Med. 2003;198(9):1337–47.
51. Wang J, Zhang X, Thomas SM, Grandis JR, Wells A, Chen ZG, et al. Chemokine receptor 7 activates phosphoinositide-3 kinase-mediated invasive and prosurvival pathways in head and neck cancer cells independent of EGFR. Oncogene. 2005;24(38):5897–904.
52. Xu Y, Liu L, Qiu X, Liu Z, Li H, Li Z, et al. CCL21/CCR7 prevents apoptosis via the ERK pathway in human non-small cell lung cancer cells. PLoS One. 2012;7(3):e33262.
53. Mukaida N, Baba T. Chemokines in tumor development and progression. Exp Cell Res. 2011;318(2):95–102.
54. Burns JM, Summers BC, Wang Y, Melikian A, Berahovich R, Miao Z, et al. A novel chemokine receptor for SDF-1 and I-TAC involved in cell survival, cell adhesion, and tumor development. J Exp Med. 2006;203(9):2201–13.
55. Coussens LM, Zitvogel L, Palucka AK. Neutralizing tumor-promoting chronic inflammation: a magic bullet? Science. 2013;339(6117):286–91.
56. Franciszkiewicz K, Boissonnas A, Boutet M, Combadiere C, Mami-Chouaib F. Role of chemokines and chemokine receptors in shaping the effector phase of the antitumor immune response. Cancer Res. 2012;72(24):6325–32.
57. Castellino F, Huang AY, Altan-Bonnet G, Stoll S, Scheinecker C, Germain RN. Chemokines enhance immunity by guiding naive CD8+ T cells to sites of CD4+ T cell-dendritic cell interaction. Nature. 2006;440(7086):890–5.
58. Castellino F, Germain RN. Chemokine-guided CD4+ T cell help enhances generation of IL-6RalphahighIL-7Ralpha high prememory CD8+ T cells. J Immunol. 2007;178(2):778–87.
59. Kaiser A, Donnadieu E, Abastado JP, Trautmann A, Nardin A. CC chemokine ligand 19 secreted by mature dendritic cells increases naive T cell scanning behavior and their response to rare cognate antigen. J Immunol. 2005;175(4):2349–56.
60. Laoui D, Keirsse J, Morias Y, Van Overmeire E, Geeraerts X, Elkrim Y, et al. The tumour microenvironment harbours ontogenically distinct dendritic cell populations with opposing effects on tumour immunity. Nat Commun. 2016;7:13720.
61. Broz ML, Binnewies M, Boldajipour B, Nelson AE, Pollack JL, Erle DJ, et al. Dissecting the tumor myeloid compartment reveals rare activating antigen-presenting cells critical for T cell immunity. Cancer Cell. 2014;26(5):638–52.
62. Roberts EW, Broz ML, Binnewies M, Headley MB, Nelson AE, Wolf DM, et al. Critical role for CD103(+)/CD141(+) dendritic cells bearing CCR7 for tumor antigen trafficking and priming of T cell immunity in melanoma. Cancer Cell. 2016;30(2):324–36.
63. Spranger S, Dai D, Horton B, Gajewski TF. Tumor-residing Batf3 dendritic cells are required for effector

T cell trafficking and adoptive T cell therapy. Cancer Cell. 2017;31(5):711–23 e4.
64. Salmon H, Idoyaga J, Rahman A, Leboeuf M, Remark R, Jordan S, et al. Expansion and activation of CD103(+) dendritic cell progenitors at the tumor site enhances tumor responses to therapeutic PD-L1 and BRAF inhibition. Immunity. 2016;44(4):924–38.
65. Miller MJ, Hejazi AS, Wei SH, Cahalan MD, Parker I. T cell repertoire scanning is promoted by dynamic dendritic cell behavior and random T cell motility in the lymph node. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2004;101(4):998–1003.
66. Bousso P, Robey E. Dynamics of CD8+ T cell priming by dendritic cells in intact lymph nodes. Nat Immunol. 2003;4(6):579–85.
67. Asperti-Boursin F, Real E, Bismuth G, Trautmann A, Donnadieu E. CCR7 ligands control basal T cell motility within lymph node slices in a phosphoinositide 3-kinase-independent manner. J Exp Med. 2007;204(5):1167–79.
68. Hugues S, Scholer A, Boissonnas A, Nussbaum A, Combadiere C, Amigorena S, et al. Dynamic imaging of chemokine-dependent CD8+ T cell help for CD8+ T cell responses. Nat Immunol. 2007;8(9):921–30.
69. Friedman RS, Jacobelli J, Krummel MF. Surface-bound chemokines capture and prime T cells for synapse formation. Nat Immunol. 2006;7(10):1101–8.
70. Franciszkiewicz K, Le Floc'h A, Jalil A, Vigant F, Robert T, Vergnon I, et al. Intratumoral induction of CD103 triggers tumor-specific CTL function and CCR5-dependent T-cell retention. Cancer Res. 2009;69(15):6249–55.
71. Dustin ML. Stop and go traffic to tune T cell responses. Immunity. 2004;21(3):305–14.
72. Moser B, Loetscher P. Lymphocyte traffic control by chemokines. Nat Immunol. 2001;2(2):123–8.
73. Hojo S, Koizumi K, Tsuneyama K, Arita Y, Cui Z, Shinohara K, et al. High-level expression of chemokine CXCL16 by tumor cells correlates with a good prognosis and increased tumor-infiltrating lymphocytes in colorectal cancer. Cancer Res. 2007;67(10):4725–31.
74. Ohta M, Tanaka F, Yamaguchi H, Sadanaga N, Inoue H, Mori M. The high expression of Fractalkine results in a better prognosis for colorectal cancer patients. Int J Oncol. 2005;26(1):41–7.
75. Salmon H, Franciszkiewicz K, Damotte D, Dieu-Nosjean MC, Validire P, Trautmann A, et al. Matrix architecture defines the preferential localization and migration of T cells into the stroma of human lung tumors. J Clin Invest. 2012;122(3):899–910.
76. Boissonnas A, Licata F, Poupel L, Jacquelin S, Fetler L, Krumeich S, et al. CD8+ tumor-infiltrating T cells are trapped in the tumor-dendritic cell network. Neoplasia. 2013;15(1):85–94.
77. Engelhardt JJ, Boldajipour B, Beemiller P, Pandurangi P, Sorensen C, Werb Z, et al. Marginating dendritic cells of the tumor microenvironment cross-present tumor antigens and stably engage tumor-specific T cells. Cancer Cell. 2012;21(3):402–17.
78. Boissonnas A, Fetler L, Zeelenberg IS, Hugues S, Amigorena S. In vivo imaging of cytotoxic T cell infiltration and elimination of a solid tumor. J Exp Med. 2007;204(2):345–56.
79. Yona S, Kim KW, Wolf Y, Mildner A, Varol D, Breker M, et al. Fate mapping reveals origins and dynamics of monocytes and tissue macrophages under homeostasis. Immunity. 2013;38(1):79–91.
80. Franklin RA, Li MO. The ontogeny of tumor-associated macrophages: a new understanding of cancer-elicited inflammation. Oncoimmunology. 2014;3(9):e955346.
81. Conti I, Rollins BJ. CCL2 (monocyte chemoattractant protein-1) and cancer. Semin Cancer Biol. 2004;14(3):149–54.
82. Linde N, Casanova-Acebes M, Sosa MS, Mortha A, Rahman A, Farias E, et al. Macrophages orchestrate breast cancer early dissemination and metastasis. Nat Commun. 2018;9(1):21.
83. Wyckoff JB, Wang Y, Lin EY, Li JF, Goswami S, Stanley ER, et al. Direct visualization of macrophage-assisted tumor cell intravasation in mammary tumors. Cancer Res. 2007;67(6):2649–56.
84. Bakst RL, Xiong H, Chen CH, Deborde S, Lyubchik A, Zhou Y, et al. Inflammatory monocytes promote perineural invasion via CCL2-mediated recruitment and cathepsin B expression. Cancer Res. 2017;77(22):6400–14.
85. Zhu Y, Herndon JM, Sojka DK, Kim KW, Knolhoff BL, Zuo C, et al. Tissue-resident macrophages in pancreatic ductal adenocarcinoma originate from embryonic hematopoiesis and promote tumor progression. Immunity. 2017;47(2):323–38 e6.
86. Bowman RL, Klemm F, Akkari L, Pyonteck SM, Sevenich L, Quail DF, et al. Macrophage ontogeny underlies differences in tumor-specific education in brain malignancies. Cell Rep. 2016;17(9):2445–59.
87. Loyher PL, Hamon P, Laviron M, Meghraoui-Kheddar A, Goncalves E, Deng Z, et al. Macrophages of distinct origins contribute to tumor development in the lung. J Exp Med. 2018;215(10):2536–53.
88. Mass E, Ballesteros I, Farlik M, Halbritter F, Gunther P, Crozet L, et al. Specification of tissue-resident macrophages during organogenesis. Science. 2016;353(6304):aaf4238.
89. Nesbit M, Schaider H, Miller TH, Herlyn M. Low-level monocyte chemoattractant protein-1 stimulation of monocytes leads to tumor formation in nontumorigenic melanoma cells. J Immunol. 2001;166(11):6483–90.
90. Kitamura T, Qian BZ, Soong D, Cassetta L, Noy R, Sugano G, et al. CCL2-induced chemokine cascade promotes breast cancer metastasis by enhancing retention of metastasis-associated macrophages. J Exp Med. 2015;212(7):1043–59.
91. Rodero M, Marie Y, Coudert M, Blondet E, Mokhtari K, Rousseau A, et al. Polymorphism in the microglial cell-mobilizing CX3CR1 gene is associated with

survival in patients with glioblastoma. J Clin Oncol. 2008;26(36):5957–64.
92. Rodero MP, Auvynet C, Poupel L, Combadiere B, Combadiere C. Control of both myeloid cell infiltration and angiogenesis by CCR1 promotes liver cancer metastasis development in mice. Neoplasia. 2013;15(6):641–8.
93. Bonecchi R, Facchetti F, Dusi S, Luini W, Lissandrini D, Simmelink M, et al. Induction of functional IL-8 receptors by IL-4 and IL-13 in human monocytes. J Immunol. 2000;164(7):3862–9.
94. Schioppa T, Uranchimeg B, Saccani A, Biswas SK, Doni A, Rapisarda A, et al. Regulation of the chemokine receptor CXCR4 by hypoxia. J Exp Med. 2003;198(9):1391–402.
95. Sica A, Saccani A, Bottazzi B, Bernasconi S, Allavena P, Gaetano B, et al. Defective expression of the monocyte chemotactic protein-1 receptor CCR2 in macrophages associated with human ovarian carcinoma. J Immunol. 2000;164(2):733–8.
96. Qiu L, Ding L, Huang J, Wang D, Zhang J, Guo B. Induction of copper/zinc-superoxide dismutase by CCL5/CCR5 activation causes tumour necrosis factor-alpha and reactive oxygen species production in macrophages. Immunology. 2009;128(1 Suppl):e325–34.
97. Auffray C, Fogg D, Garfa M, Elain G, Join-Lambert O, Kayal S, et al. Monitoring of blood vessels and tissues by a population of monocytes with patrolling behavior. Science. 2007;317(5838):666–70.
98. Hanna RN, Cekic C, Sag D, Tacke R, Thomas GD, Nowyhed H, et al. Patrolling monocytes control tumor metastasis to the lung. Science. 2015;350(6263):985–90.
99. Plebanek MP, Angeloni NL, Vinokour E, Li J, Henkin A, Martinez-Marin D, et al. Pre-metastatic cancer exosomes induce immune surveillance by patrolling monocytes at the metastatic niche. Nat Commun. 2017;8(1):1319.
100. Park MH, Lee JS, Yoon JH. High expression of CX3CL1 by tumor cells correlates with a good prognosis and increased tumor-infiltrating CD8+ T cells, natural killer cells, and dendritic cells in breast carcinoma. J Surg Oncol. 2012;106(4):386–92.
101. Lavergne E, Combadiere B, Bonduelle O, Iga M, Gao JL, Maho M, et al. Fractalkine mediates natural killer-dependent antitumor responses in vivo. Cancer Res. 2003;63(21):7468–74.
102. Lavergne E, Combadiere C, Iga M, Boissonnas A, Bonduelle O, Maho M, et al. Intratumoral CC chemokine ligand 5 overexpression delays tumor growth and increases tumor cell infiltration. J Immunol. 2004;173(6):3755–62.
103. Crittenden M, Gough M, Harrington K, Olivier K, Thompson J, Vile RG. Expression of inflammatory chemokines combined with local tumor destruction enhances tumor regression and long-term immunity. Cancer Res. 2003;63(17):5505–12.
104. Kajitani K, Tanaka Y, Arihiro K, Kataoka T, Ohdan H. Mechanistic analysis of the antitumor efficacy of human natural killer cells against breast cancer cells. Breast Cancer Res Treat. 2012;134(1):139–55.
105. Wendel M, Galani IE, Suri-Payer E, Cerwenka A. Natural killer cell accumulation in tumors is dependent on IFN-gamma and CXCR3 ligands. Cancer Res. 2008;68(20):8437–45.
106. Yu YR, Fong AM, Combadiere C, Gao JL, Murphy PM, Patel DD. Defective antitumor responses in CX3CR1-deficient mice. Int J Cancer. 2007;121(2):316–22.
107. Zhang X, Wei H, Wang H, Tian Z. Involvement of interaction between Fractalkine and CX3CR1 in cytotoxicity of natural killer cells against tumor cells. Oncol Rep. 2006;15(2):485–8.
108. Maghazachi AA, Al-Aoukaty A, Schall TJ. CC chemokines induce the generation of killer cells from CD56+ cells. Eur J Immunol. 1996;26(2):315–9.
109. Taub DD, Sayers TJ, Carter CR, Ortaldo JR. Alpha and beta chemokines induce NK cell migration and enhance NK-mediated cytolysis. J Immunol. 1995;155(8):3877–88.
110. van den Berg A, Visser L, Poppema S. High expression of the CC chemokine TARC in Reed-Sternberg cells. A possible explanation for the characteristic T-cell infiltrate in Hodgkin's lymphoma. Am J Pathol. 1999;154(6):1685–91.
111. Iellem A, Colantonio L, D'Ambrosio D. Skin-versus gut-skewed homing receptor expression and intrinsic CCR4 expression on human peripheral blood CD4+CD25+ suppressor T cells. Eur J Immunol. 2003;33(6):1488–96.
112. Gobert M, Treilleux I, Bendriss-Vermare N, Bachelot T, Goddard-Leon S, Arfi V, et al. Regulatory T cells recruited through CCL22/CCR4 are selectively activated in lymphoid infiltrates surrounding primary breast tumors and lead to an adverse clinical outcome. Cancer Res. 2009;69(5):2000–9.
113. Wiedemann GM, Knott MM, Vetter VK, Rapp M, Haubner S, Fesseler J, et al. Cancer cell-derived IL-1alpha induces CCL22 and the recruitment of regulatory T cells. Oncoimmunology. 2016;5(9):e1175794.
114. Martinenaite E, Munir Ahmad S, Hansen M, Met O, Westergaard MW, Larsen SK, et al. CCL22-specific T cells: modulating the immunosuppressive tumor microenvironment. Oncoimmunology. 2016;5(11):e1238541.
115. Schutyser E, Struyf S, Proost P, Opdenakker G, Laureys G, Verhasselt B, et al. Identification of biologically active chemokine isoforms from ascitic fluid and elevated levels of CCL18/pulmonary and activation-regulated chemokine in ovarian carcinoma. J Biol Chem. 2002;277(27):24584–93.
116. Bell D, Chomarat P, Broyles D, Netto G, Harb GM, Lebecque S, et al. In breast carcinoma tissue, immature dendritic cells reside within the tumor, whereas mature dendritic cells are located in peritumoral areas. J Exp Med. 1999;190(10):1417–26.
117. Scarpino S, Stoppacciaro A, Ballerini F, Marchesi M, Prat M, Stella MC, et al. Papillary carcinoma of the

thyroid: hepatocyte growth factor (HGF) stimulates tumor cells to release chemokines active in recruiting dendritic cells. Am J Pathol. 2000;156(3):831–7.
118. Mapara MY, Sykes M. Tolerance and cancer: mechanisms of tumor evasion and strategies for breaking tolerance. J Clin Oncol. 2004;22(6):1136–51.
119. Lesokhin AM, Hohl TM, Kitano S, Cortez C, Hirschhorn-Cymerman D, Avogadri F, et al. Monocytic CCR2(+) myeloid-derived suppressor cells promote immune escape by limiting activated CD8 T-cell infiltration into the tumor microenvironment. Cancer Res. 2012;72(4):876–86.
120. Qian BZ, Li J, Zhang H, Kitamura T, Zhang J, Campion LR, et al. CCL2 recruits inflammatory monocytes to facilitate breast-tumour metastasis. Nature. 2011;475(7355):222–5.
121. Loyher PL, Rochefort J, Baudesson de Chanville C, Hamon P, Lescaille G, Bertolus C, et al. CCR2 influences T regulatory cell migration to tumors and serves as a biomarker of cyclophosphamide sensitivity. Cancer Res. 2016;76(22):6483–94.
122. Fridlender ZG, Buchlis G, Kapoor V, Cheng G, Sun J, Singhal S, et al. CCL2 blockade augments cancer immunotherapy. Cancer Res. 2010;70(1):109–18.
123. Fridlender ZG, Kapoor V, Buchlis G, Cheng G, Sun J, Wang LC, et al. Monocyte chemoattractant protein-1 blockade inhibits lung cancer tumor growth by altering macrophage phenotype and activating CD8+ cells. Am J Respir Cell Mol Biol. 2011;44(2):230–7.
124. Tazzyman S, Niaz H, Murdoch C. Neutrophil-mediated tumour angiogenesis: subversion of immune responses to promote tumour growth. Semin Cancer Biol. 2013;23(3):149–58.
125. Strieter RM, Polverini PJ, Kunkel SL, Arenberg DA, Burdick MD, Kasper J, et al. The functional role of the ELR motif in CXC chemokine-mediated angiogenesis. J Biol Chem. 1995;270(45):27348–57.
126. Mohle R, Bautz F, Rafii S, Moore MA, Brugger W, Kanz L. The chemokine receptor CXCR-4 is expressed on CD34+ hematopoietic progenitors and leukemic cells and mediates transendothelial migration induced by stromal cell-derived factor-1. Blood. 1998;91(12):4523–30.
127. Wong D, Korz W. Translating an antagonist of chemokine receptor CXCR4: from bench to bedside. Clin Cancer Res. 2008;14(24):7975–80.
128. Kozin SV, Kamoun WS, Huang Y, Dawson MR, Jain RK, Duda DG. Recruitment of myeloid but not endothelial precursor cells facilitates tumor regrowth after local irradiation. Cancer Res. 2010;70(14):5679–85.
129. Zheng K, Li HY, Su XL, Wang XY, Tian T, Li F, et al. Chemokine receptor CXCR7 regulates the invasion, angiogenesis and tumor growth of human hepatocellular carcinoma cells. J Exp Clin Cancer Res. 2010;29:31.
130. Yeo EJ, Cassetta L, Qian BZ, Lewkowich I, Li JF, Stefater JA 3rd, et al. Myeloid WNT7b mediates the angiogenic switch and metastasis in breast cancer. Cancer Res. 2014;74(11):2962–73.
131. Welford AF, Biziato D, Coffelt SB, Nucera S, Fisher M, Pucci F, et al. TIE2-expressing macrophages limit the therapeutic efficacy of the vascular-disrupting agent combretastatin A4 phosphate in mice. J Clin Invest. 2011;121(5):1969–73.
132. Hughes R, Qian BZ, Rowan C, Muthana M, Keklikoglou I, Olson OC, et al. Perivascular M2 macrophages stimulate tumor relapse after chemotherapy. Cancer Res. 2015;75(17):3479–91.
133. Qian BZ, Zhang H, Li J, He T, Yeo EJ, Soong DY, et al. FLT1 signaling in metastasis-associated macrophages activates an inflammatory signature that promotes breast cancer metastasis. J Exp Med. 2015;212(9):1433–48.
134. Jung K, Heishi T, Incio J, Huang Y, Beech EY, Pinter M, et al. Targeting CXCR4-dependent immunosuppressive Ly6C(low) monocytes improves antiangiogenic therapy in colorectal cancer. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2017;114(39):10455–60.
135. Strieter RM, Burdick MD, Mestas J, Gomperts B, Keane MP, Belperio JA. Cancer CXC chemokine networks and tumour angiogenesis. Eur J Cancer. 2006;42(6):768–78.
136. Romagnani P, Annunziato F, Lasagni L, Lazzeri E, Beltrame C, Francalanci M, et al. Cell cycle-dependent expression of CXC chemokine receptor 3 by endothelial cells mediates angiostatic activity. J Clin Invest. 2001;107(1):53–63.
137. Long H, Xie R, Xiang T, Zhao Z, Lin S, Liang Z, et al. Autocrine CCL5 signaling promotes invasion and migration of CD133+ ovarian cancer stem-like cells via NF-kappaB-mediated MMP-9 upregulation. Stem Cells. 2012;30(10):2309–19.
138. Swamydas M, Ricci K, Rego SL, Dreau D. Mesenchymal stem cell-derived CCL-9 and CCL-5 promote mammary tumor cell invasion and the activation of matrix metalloproteinases. Cell Adhes Migr. 2013;7(3):315.
139. Johnson EL, Singh R, Singh S, Johnson-Holiday CM, Grizzle WE, Partridge EE, et al. CCL25-CCR9 interaction modulates ovarian cancer cell migration, metalloproteinase expression, and invasion. World J Surg Oncol. 2010;8:62.
140. Li J, Sun R, Tao K, Wang G. The CCL21/CCR7 pathway plays a key role in human colon cancer metastasis through regulation of matrix metalloproteinase-9. Dig Liver Dis. 2011;43(1):40–7.
141. Redondo-Munoz J, Jose Terol M, Garcia-Marco JA, Garcia-Pardo A. Matrix metalloproteinase-9 is up-regulated by CCL21/CCR7 interaction via extracellular signal-regulated kinase-1/2 signaling and is involved in CCL21-driven B-cell chronic lymphocytic leukemia cell invasion and migration. Blood. 2008;111(1):383–6.
142. Pan F, Ma S, Cao W, Liu H, Chen F, Chen X, et al. SDF-1alpha upregulation of MMP-2 is mediated by p38 MAPK signaling in pancreatic cancer cell lines. Mol Biol Rep. 2013;40(7):4139–46.
143. Peranzoni E, Rivas-Caicedo A, Bougherara H, Salmon H, Donnadieu E. Positive and nega-

tive influence of the matrix architecture on antitumor immune surveillance. Cell Mol Life Sci. 2013;70(23):4431–48.
144. Franco OE, Shaw AK, Strand DW, Hayward SW. Cancer associated fibroblasts in cancer pathogenesis. Semin Cell Dev Biol. 2010;21(1):33–9.
145. Borriello L, Nakata R, Sheard MA, Fernandez GE, Sposto R, Malvar J, et al. Cancer-associated fibroblasts share characteristics and protumorigenic activity with mesenchymal stromal cells. Cancer Res. 2017;77(18):5142–57.
146. Afik R, Zigmond E, Vugman M, Klepfish M, Shimshoni E, Pasmanik-Chor M, et al. Tumor macrophages are pivotal constructors of tumor collagenous matrix. J Exp Med. 2016;213(11):2315–31.
147. Quail DF, Joyce JA. Microenvironmental regulation of tumor progression and metastasis. Nat Med. 2013;19(11):1423–37.
148. Sun X, Glynn DJ, Hodson LJ, Huo C, Britt K, Thompson EW, et al. CCL2-driven inflammation increases mammary gland stromal density and cancer susceptibility in a transgenic mouse model. Breast Cancer Res. 2017;19(1):4.
149. Madsen DH, Jurgensen HJ, Siersbaek MS, Kuczek DE, Grey Cloud L, Liu S, et al. Tumor-associated macrophages derived from circulating inflammatory monocytes degrade collagen through cellular uptake. Cell Rep. 2017;21(13):3662–71.
150. Rovin BH, Lu L, Saxena R. A novel polymorphism in the MCP-1 gene regulatory region that influences MCP-1 expression. Biochem Biophys Res Commun. 1999;259(2):344–8.
151. Rodero M, Rodero P, Descamps V, Lebbe C, Wolkenstein P, Aegerter P, et al. Melanoma susceptibility and progression: association study between polymorphisms of the chemokine (CCL2) and chemokine receptors (CX3CR1, CCR5). J Dermatol Sci. 2007;46(1):72–6.
152. Tse KP, Tsang NM, Chen KD, Li HP, Liang Y, Hsueh C, et al. MCP-1 promoter polymorphism at 2518 is associated with metastasis of nasopharyngeal carcinoma after treatment. Clin Cancer Res. 2007;13(21):6320–6.
153. Liou JM, Lin JT, Huang SP, Wu CY, Wang HP, Lee YC, et al. RANTES-403 polymorphism is associated with reduced risk of gastric cancer in women. J Gastroenterol. 2008;43(2):115–23.
154. Duell EJ, Casella DP, Burk RD, Kelsey KT, Holly EA. Inflammation, genetic polymorphisms in proinflammatory genes TNF-A, RANTES, and CCR5, and risk of pancreatic adenocarcinoma. Cancer Epidemiol Biomark Prev. 2006;15(4):726–31.
155. Srivastava A, Pandey SN, Choudhuri G, Mittal B. CCR5 Delta32 polymorphism: associated with gallbladder cancer susceptibility. Scand J Immunol. 2008;67(5):516–22.
156. Ugurel S, Schrama D, Keller G, Schadendorf D, Brocker EB, Houben R, et al. Impact of the CCR5 gene polymorphism on the survival of metastatic melanoma patients receiving immunotherapy. Cancer Immunol Immunother. 2008;57(5):685–91.
157. Huang Y, Chen H, Wang J, Bunjhoo H, Xiong W, Xu Y, et al. Relationship between CCR2-V64I polymorphism and cancer risk: a meta-analysis. Gene. 2013;524(1):54–8.
158. Wang J, Pan HF, Hu YT, Zhu Y, He Q. Polymorphism of IL-8 in 251 allele and gastric cancer susceptibility: a meta-analysis. Dig Dis Sci. 2010;55(7):1818–23.
159. Huang Q, Wang C, Qiu LJ, Shao F, Yu JH. IL-8-251A>T polymorphism is associated with breast cancer risk: a meta-analysis. J Cancer Res Clin Oncol. 2011;137(7):1147–50.
160. Wang N, Zhou R, Wang C, Guo X, Chen Z, Yang S, et al. -251 T/A polymorphism of the interleukin-8 gene and cancer risk: a HuGE review and meta-analysis based on 42 case-control studies. Mol Biol Rep. 2012;39(3):2831–41.
161. Gong H, Tan M, Wang Y, Shen B, Liu Z, Zhang F, et al. The CXCL12 G801A polymorphism and cancer risk: evidence from 17 case-control studies. Gene. 2012;509(2):228–31.
162. Ma XY, Jin Y, Sun HM, Yu L, Bai J, Chen F, et al. CXCL12 G801A polymorphism contributes to cancer susceptibility: a meta-analysis. Cell Mol Biol (Noisy-le-Grand). 2012;58(Suppl):OL1702–8.
163. Shen W, Cao X, Xi L, Deng L. CXCL12 G801A polymorphism and breast cancer risk: a meta-analysis. Mol Biol Rep. 2012;39(2):2039–44.
164. Coniglio SJ, Eugenin E, Dobrenis K, Stanley ER, West BL, Symons MH, et al. Microglial stimulation of glioblastoma invasion involves epidermal growth factor receptor (EGFR) and colony stimulating factor 1 receptor (CSF-1R) signaling. Mol Med. 2012;18:519–27.
165. Sauer M, Plutschow A, Jachimowicz RD, Kleefisch D, Reiners KS, Ponader S, et al. Baseline serum TARC levels predict therapy outcome in patients with Hodgkin lymphoma. Am J Hematol. 2013;88(2):113–5.
166. Cornforth AN, Lee GJ, Fowler AW, Carbonell DJ, Dillman RO. Increases in serum TARC/CCL17 levels are associated with progression-free survival in advanced melanoma patients in response to dendritic cell-based immunotherapy. J Clin Immunol. 2009;29(5):657–64.
167. Ansell SM, Maurer MJ, Ziesmer SC, Slager SL, Habermann TM, Link BK, et al. Elevated pretreatment serum levels of interferon-inducible protein-10 (CXCL10) predict disease relapse and prognosis in diffuse large B-cell lymphoma patients. Am J Hematol. 2012;87(9):865–9.
168. Lim SY, Yuzhalin AE, Gordon-Weeks AN, Muschel RJ. Targeting the CCL2-CCR2 signaling axis in cancer metastasis. Oncotarget. 2016;7(19):28697–710.
169. Saji H, Koike M, Yamori T, Saji S, Seiki M, Matsushima K, et al. Significant correlation of monocyte chemoattractant protein-1 expression with neovascularization and progression of breast carcinoma. Cancer. 2001;92(5):1085–91.

170. Valkovic T, Lucin K, Krstulja M, Dobi-Babic R, Jonjic N. Expression of monocyte chemotactic protein-1 in human invasive ductal breast cancer. Pathol Res Pract. 1998;194(5):335–40.
171. Zhang J, Patel L, Pienta KJ. Targeting chemokine (C-C motif) ligand 2 (CCL2) as an example of translation of cancer molecular biology to the clinic. Prog Mol Biol Transl Sci. 2010;95:31–53.
172. Tsaur I, Noack A, Makarevic J, Oppermann E, Waaga-Gasser AM, Gasser M, et al. CCL2 chemokine as a potential biomarker for prostate cancer: a pilot study. Cancer Res Treat. 2015;47(2):306–12.
173. Carter PH, Brown GD, Cherney RJ, Batt DG, Chen J, Clark CM, et al. Discovery of a potent and orally bioavailable dual antagonist of CC chemokine receptors 2 and 5. ACS Med Chem Lett. 2015;6(4):439–44.
174. Doyon J, Coesemans E, Boeckx S, Buntinx M, Hermans B, Van Wauwe JP, et al. Discovery of potent, orally bioavailable small-molecule inhibitors of the human CCR2 receptor. ChemMedChem. 2008;3(4):660–9.
175. Zheng Y, Qin L, Zacarias NV, de Vries H, Han GW, Gustavsson M, et al. Structure of CC chemokine receptor 2 with orthosteric and allosteric antagonists. Nature. 2016;540(7633):458–61.
176. Berlato C, Khan MN, Schioppa T, Thompson R, Maniati E, Montfort A, et al. A CCR4 antagonist reverses the tumor-promoting microenvironment of renal cancer. J Clin Invest. 2017;127(3):801–13.
177. Sugiyama D, Nishikawa H, Maeda Y, Nishioka M, Tanemura A, Katayama I, et al. Anti-CCR4 mAb selectively depletes effector-type FoxP3+CD4+ regulatory T cells, evoking antitumor immune responses in humans. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2013;110(44):17945–50.
178. Sun W, Li WJ, Wei FQ, Wong TS, Lei WB, Zhu XL, et al. Blockade of MCP-1/CCR4 signaling-induced recruitment of activated regulatory cells evokes an antitumor immune response in head and neck squamous cell carcinoma. Oncotarget. 2016;7(25):37714–27.
179. Kurose K, Ohue Y, Wada H, Iida S, Ishida T, Kojima T, et al. Phase Ia study of FoxP3+ CD4 Treg depletion by infusion of a humanized anti-CCR4 antibody, KW-0761, in cancer patients. Clin Cancer Res. 2015;21(19):4327–36.

Role of the Inflammasome in Cancer

15

Michela Terlizzi, Chiara Colarusso, Aldo Pinto, and Rosalinda Sorrentino

Contents

FARB 2017 in favor of RS from the University of Salerno, Italy.

M. Terlizzi · A. Pinto
Department of Pharmacy (DIFARMA), University of Salerno, Fisciano, Italy

C. Colarusso
Department of Pharmacy (DIFARMA), University of Salerno, Fisciano, Italy

Program in Drug Discovery and Development, Department of Pharmacy, University of Salerno, Fisciano, SA, Italy

R. Sorrentino (✉)
Department of Pharmacy (DIFARMA), University of Salerno, Fisciano, Italy

Cancer Immunology Project (CIP), Universal Scientific Education of Research Network (USERN), Salerno, Italy
e-mail: rsorrentino@unisa.it

15.1 Introduction

Inflammation is the seventh hallmark for cancer establishment and progression and represents the link between intrinsic (oncogenes, genome instability) and extrinsic (immune and stromal components) factors [1]. Essential to the development of cancer is the accumulation of genetic lesions in cells [2]. However, while these autonomous cell properties are necessary for tumorigenesis, they are not sufficient. Research over the last two decades has solidified the concept that tumor development and malignancy is the result of processes involving both cancer cells themselves and non-cancer cells, many of which compose the heterocellular tumor compartment [1–3]. Many tumors are associated with the infiltration

N. Rezaei (ed.), *Cancer Immunology*, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-30845-2_15

of inflammatory cells that in most cases, due to their immune-suppressive nature, are related to a bad prognosis [4, 5].

Cancer-associated inflammatory responses play roles in many aspects of cancer biology including tumor initiation, progression, metastasis, and treatment [4, 6, 7].

Inflammation is a physiological response to protect the host against pathogen-associated molecular patterns (PAMPs) derived by invading microorganisms, and damage-associated molecular patterns (DAMPs) that derive by "sterile" endogenous threats [7]. Inflammation can be characterized by acute and chronic responses. Acute inflammation can be induced by tissue damage due to trauma, noxious, and/or microbial insults which facilitate the recruitment of immune cells to the inflamed site where they cooperate in order to isolate and eradicate the damage. In contrast, chronic inflammation represents an ongoing inflammatory response, during which immune cells are recruited, but the inflammatory stimulus is not eradicated, rather, it keeps on inducing tissue damage and destruction, manifesting as tissue fibrosis. In both cases, damaged tissues represent the alarm to restore homeostasis. In the case of a tumor mass establishment and progression, the inflammatory pattern plays a key role in that it can on one side "control," limiting the neoplastic development, but on the other the immune failure to eliminate the danger signal may result in ongoing inflammation or persistent damage that can promote the development of chronic inflammation, highly associated to cancer [8].

Epidemiology studies relate the incidence of tumors to chronic infections, dietary factors, obesity, inhaled pollutants, tobacco, and autoimmunity [3, 9, 10]. In support, higher incidence of tumor development is reported in tissues/organs exposed to both external and commensal pathogens, such as the lung, the intestine, and, to a lower extent, the liver [3, 11]. In particular, the exposure to air pollution, tobacco [12, 13], and chronic infections [14] induces the activation of inflammatory processes that render the subjects higher susceptible to malignancies. In this context, in our laboratory we proved that the stimulation of cells with air pollutants made smokers higher susceptible to the release of IL-1-like cytokines (i.e., IL-1α, IL-18) [12]. Of note, pro-inflammatory cytokines, such as IL-1β and IL-18, are detected at high levels in cancer patients, and while their pathophysiological role is still elusive, a number of studies document their ability to promote an immune-suppressive tumor microenvironment that facilitates tumor establishment and progression [1, 15, 16]. Moreover, according to the "sterile inflammation" theory, noninfectious insults, such as reactive oxygen species (ROS), oxidized and/or methylated DNA, high-mobility group box 1 (HMGB1), heat-shock proteins (HSPs), and adenosine triphosphate (ATP), generally identified as DAMPs, can independently induce chronic inflammation [17, 18]. Such endogenous stimuli, induced after the exposure to noxious as well as after microbial stimuli, can behave as tumor promoters via the induction of chronic inflammation that, rather than providing a protective response to loss of tissue homeostasis, can aberrantly facilitate tumor development. All these insults are sensed by the intracellular multimeric complex called inflammasome [19].

The inflammasome is composed of several proteins that promote caspase-1 activation (Fig. 15.1). Its activation follows engagement of Toll-like receptors (TLRs) and NOD-like receptors (NLRs), two classes of sentinel receptors that are pivotal for the detection of PAMPs and DAMPs (Table 15.1) [19]. The cooperation between these two systems allows to "sense" and respond to a large number of infectious and sterile insults. While most TLRs, except for TLR3, TLR7, and TLR9, are membrane receptors, NLRs are intracellular and, together with the adapter protein, apoptosis-associated speck-like protein containing a CARD (ASC), can assemble to form the active components of the inflammasome complexes. The recognition of PAMPs or DAMPs by TLRs can accompany or strengthen the activation of inflammasome complexes composed of specific NLRs, depending on the stimulus, leading to the activation of caspase-1 [20] (Fig. 15.1). Initially, NLRs were proposed to regulate inflammation through apoptosis, but nowadays this concept has been modified in that, while NLRs may serve as sentinels for cellular distress, their activity in the inflammasome com-

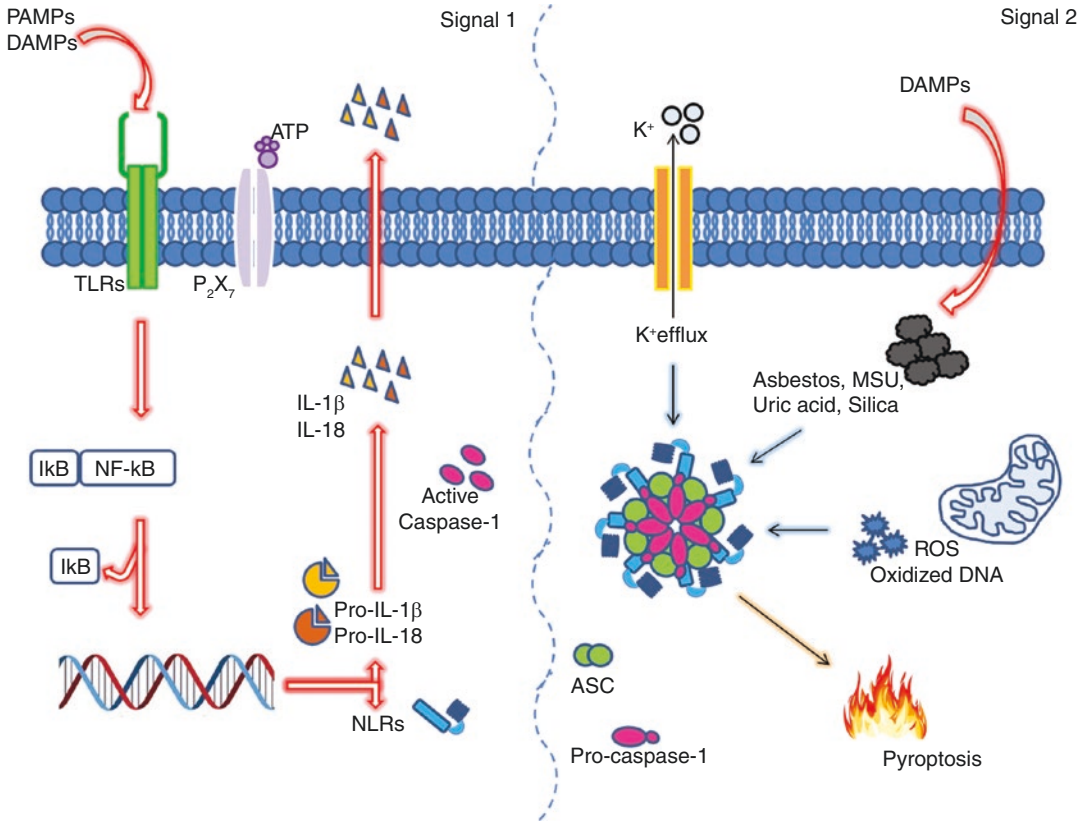


Fig. 15.1 Two-signal model of inflammasome activation. The recognition of PAMPs and/or DAMPs by extracellular or cytoplasmic TLRs leads to the activation of NF-κB (signal 1), which in turn promotes the transcription of pro-IL-1β/IL-18 or some NLRs (e.g., NLRP3). NLRs assemble into the inflammasome complex which via ASC can recruit pro-caspase-1 and promote its autocatalytic cleavage (signal 2). Caspase-1 can lead to a cascade of pro-inflammatory events via the activation of pro-IL-1β and pro-IL-18, which then interact with their own membrane receptors amplifying the inflammatory response. Furthermore, ROS, potassium efflux, changes in cell volume, calcium signaling, and lysosomal disruption have all been proposed as critical upstream signals required for inflammasome activation (signal 2). On the other hand, active caspase-1 can lead to cell pyroptosis with the consequence of membrane rupture and release of such alarmins as IL-1α and HMGB1. *PAMPs* pathogen-associated molecular patterns, *DAMPs* damage-associated molecular patterns, *TLRs* Toll-like receptors, *NLRs* Nod-like receptors, *ASC* apoptosis-associated speck-like protein containing, caspase recruitment domain (CARD), *MSU* monosodium urate, *ROS* reactive oxygen species

plex is not necessarily conducive to cell death [19, 21]. Several NLRs have so far been identified in both humans and mice, i.e., NLRP1, NLRP3, NLRP6, NLRC4, and the HIN200 protein AIM2 [22]. These proteins recognize distinct signals (Table 15.1) and, most importantly, are expressed at different levels in hematopoietic and stromal cell lineages. The expression of some NLRs is induced after the recognition of an insult (e.g., LPS) that triggers NF-κB-dependent gene expression (Fig. 15.1). In contrast, NLRC4 and AIM2 are constitutively expressed in hematopoietic cells and are directly activated by flagellin-like molecules and double-stranded DNA (dsDNA), respectively [22]. NLRP1 can sense muramyl dipeptide, *Toxoplasma gondii* and *Bacillus anthracis* lethal toxin; the identity of the ligand for NLRP6 was elusive until a recent study identified taurine, a microbial metabolite, as NLRP6 activator [23]. NLRC4, constitutively expressed in hematopoietic cells, is activated by flagellin and by the PrgJ protein from *Salmonella typhimurium*, *Pseudomonas*, *Legionella pneumophila*, and bacterial type III secretion apparatus from Gram-negative bacteria such as *Salmonella typhimurium* [24]. NLRP12 recog-

Table 15.1 The NLR species and the HIN200 protein, AIM2, are activated by specific exogenous (PAMPs) and endogenous (DAMPs) stimuli

	NLRP1	NLRP3	NLRC4	NLRP6	NLRP12	AIM2
PAMPs	*Bacillus Anthracis Toxoplasma gondii*	Fungi *Candida albicans* *Aspergillus fumigatus* *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* Viruses *Influenza, Sendai Adenovirus, Varicella zoster* Bacteria *Staphylococcus aureus* *Vibrio cholerae* *Streptococcus pyogenes, Chlamydia pneumonia* *Neisseria gonorrhea* *M. Tuberculosis, Listeria monocytogenes, Salmonella typhimurium, Shigella flexneri* *Escherichia coli*	Bacteria *Mycobacterium Tuberculosis* *Listeria monocytogenes, Salmonella typhimurium* *Shigella flexneri, Pseudomonas aeruginosa* *L. pneumophila*	Taurine	*Yersinia pestis* *Plasmodium*	Bacteria *Listeria monocytogenes, Francisella tularensis* Viruses *Cytomegalovirus* *Vaccinia virus*
DAMPs	?	Extracellular ATP Ions: K^+ and Ca^{2+} Lysosomal cathepsins Mitochondrial DNA ROS Cholesterol Ox-LDL Hyaluronan acid Uric acid Monosodium urate (MSU) Amyloid β protein Cardiolipin Asbestos and silica	?	?	?	DNA

The exposure of cells to fungi, bacteria, and viruses leads to common cellular responses that alter ion fluxes and promotes the cytosolic release of lysosomal proteases, mitochondrial dysfunction, and the generation of ROS, which have all been reported as NLRP3 stimuli. In addition, endogenous noninfectious stimuli, such as cholesterol, oxidized LDL, urate crystals, asbestos, and silica, can lead to NLRP3 inflammasome assembly. NLRP1 is activated by the cytosolic *Bacillus anthracis* lethal toxin and *Toxoplasma gondii*. NLRC4 is activated by flagellin and by the PrgJ protein from *Salmonella typhimurium*, *Pseudomonas*, and *Legionella pneumophila*, bacteria that follow type III secretion system. NLRP12 recognizes PAMPs from *Yersinia pestis* and *Plasmodium*. AIM2 binds double-stranded DNA of cells infected with *Listeria* and *Francisella* or viruses such as *Cytomegalovirus* and *Vaccinia*. NLRP6 ligand is still elusive; however, a recent study identifies taurine as a microbial metabolite NLRP6 activator

nizes PAMPs from *Yersinia* and *Plasmodium* infection [25, 26]. AIM2 is constitutively expressed in hematopoietic cells and is directly activated by dsDNA of cells infected with *Listeria* and *Francisella* or viruses such as *Cytomegalovirus* and *Vaccinia* or endogenous DNA released during cellular damage [27]. IFI16 is able to sense DNA from Kaposi

sarcoma-associated herpes virus [27]. NLRP3 inflammasome is the most characterized member of NLR and responds to various activators, a broad spectrum of microorganisms as well as their derived products, endogenous danger signals, and environmental insults. NLRP3 can be exogenously activated by *Sendai virus*, *Influenza virus*, *Adenovirus*, *Candida albicans*, *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*, *Staphylococcus aureus*, and even bacterial pore-forming toxins [28]. DAMPs like extracellular ATP (eATP), hyaluronan, monosodium urate (MSU), amyloid-β, and environmental crystalline pollutants like silica and asbestos endogenously induce NLRP3 activation [7, 28]. ROS, potassium efflux, changes in cell volume, calcium signaling, and lysosomal disruption have all been proposed as critical upstream signals required for NLRP3 activation (Table 15.1) [29]. NLRP3 inflammasome contains the adapter protein ASC, which, acting as a zipper, binds NLRP3 with pro-caspase-1, which in turn undergoes self-cleavage to form an active form of caspase-1, able to activate pro-IL-1β and pro-IL-18 into their active forms [7, 30]. So far, the activation of the canonical pathway that involved the inflammasome has proposed a two-signal model: the first signal induces the expression of NLRs, e.g., NLRP3, along with the synthesis of pro-IL-1β/IL-18 [19, 21, 22]. The first signal, defined as *priming*, mediates NF-κB activation in a TLR-dependent but also TNF receptor (TNFR)-, IL-1 receptor (IL-1R)-, and P_2X_7-dependent manner upon PAMPs or DAMPs sensing [7, 22]. The second signal involves the intracellular recognition of PAMPs or DAMPs by NLRs themselves and their assembly with ASC, which, through its CARD domain, mediates the recruitment of pro-caspase-1 and its autocatalytic cleavage (Fig. 15.1) [7, 22]. Differences exist in the activation and function of distinct NLRs and among species. In particular, it was proved that the two-signal model does not occur in human monocytes compared to murine macrophages [31]. In addition, the two-signal model seems to occur in the case of NLRP3, but not for all other NLRs, such as NLRC4 and AIM2, which do not require the *priming* for their gene expression [22].

The common function of all NLRs is the activation of caspase-1 (canonical pathway), which converts pro-IL-1β and pro-IL-18 into their active isoforms (Fig. 15.1). The third effector mechanism of the activated inflammasome, besides the release of active IL-1β and IL-18, is the induction of pyroptosis, a cell death process that requires the activity of caspase-1 and a critical mechanism by which inflammasomes contribute to host responses against Gram-negative and Gram-positive bacteria [21]. Pyroptotic cell death has been well described in cells of the hematopoietic lineage but can also occur in stromal cells, as shown in the central nervous system and in the cardiovascular system in response to ischemic and autoimmune insults [32]. The main executor of inflammasome-induced cell death is Gasdermin D (GSDMD), which can promote the formation of pores into the membrane leading to the release of intracellular content to the extracellular matrix, amplifying the inflammatory response characterized by immune infiltrates (Fig. 15.2) [33].

Alternative, noncanonical inflammasomes have also been described. This pathway engages caspase-11 (known as caspase-4 in humans) [34] or caspase-8 [35]. The activation of caspase-11 induces inflammasome-dependent caspase-1 activation and inflammasome-independent, pyroptosis-like cell death, via the release of such "alarmins" as IL-1α and HMGB1 [36]. Caspase-8, conversely, critically contributes to inhibiting receptor-interacting protein kinase 3 (RIP3)-dependent necroptosis [37] and can be involved in both apoptosis and cell survival, depending on the levels of the long and short segment of FLICE-like inhibitory protein (c-FLIP) [38]. Recent evidence suggests that noncanonical caspase-8-dependent activation of the inflammasome is required for caspase-1 function and release of IL-1β from LPS-primed macrophages [39] and dendritic cells (DCs) [40].

Because IL-1α, IL-1β, IL-18, and pyroptosis have the potential to damage the host and are strictly correlated to poor prognosis of cancer patients [41], tight control of these effector path-

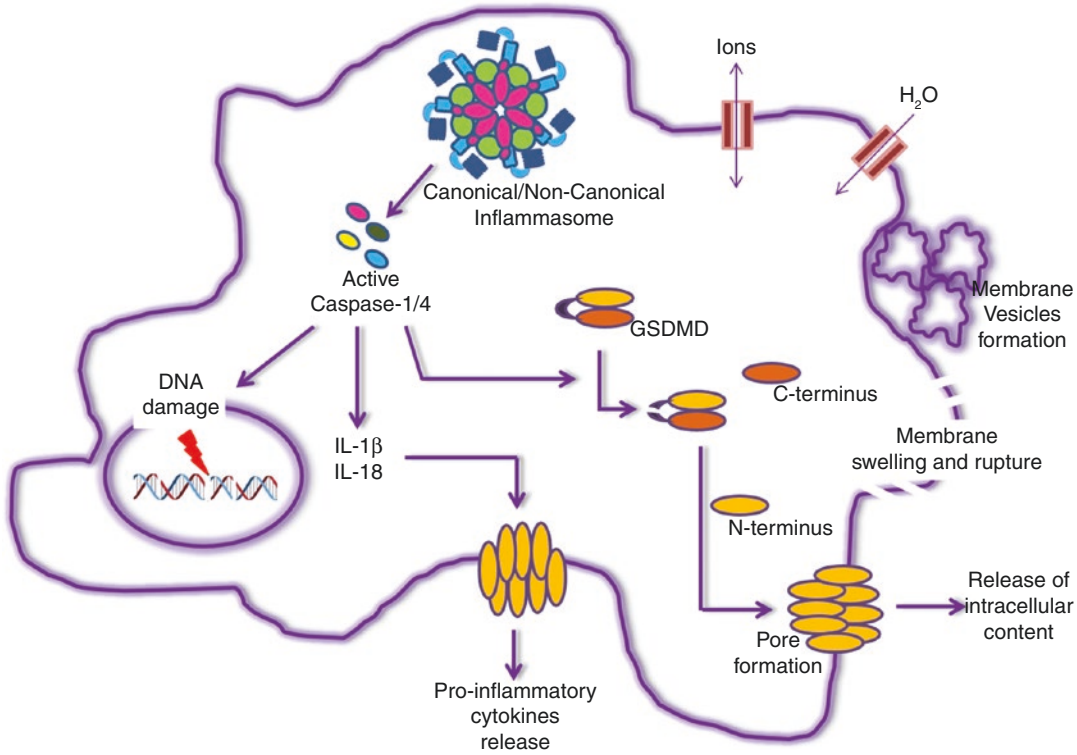


Fig. 15.2 Inflammasome-dependent pyroptotic cell death**.** Pyroptosis is induced by the canonical caspase-1 inflammasomes or by activation of caspase-4, caspase-5, and caspase-11. The activation of the above caspases cleaves gasdermin D (GSDMD) in its middle linker to release its gasdermin-N domain, which executes pyroptosis via its pore-forming activity. Caspase-1-dependent plasma-membrane pores dissipate cellular ionic gradients, producing a net increased osmotic pressure, water influx, cell swelling, and, eventually, osmotic lysis and release of inflammatory intracellular contents. DNA damage also occurs during pyroptosis

ways is critical for the prevention of chronic inflammation. These processes are key steps for the regulation of programmed cell death, differentiation, and proliferation [32], three aspects that in the context of cancer represent the rheostat for tumor proliferation versus tumor arrest/regression.

15.2 Pro-tumorigenic Role of NF-κB and STAT-3 and Their Link to the Inflammasome Complex in Cancer

NF-κB and signal transducer and activator of transcription 3 (STAT-3) have been widely described as over-activated in cancer and, more importantly, as the main transcription factors involved in tumor progression [3].

Constitutive activation of NF-κB exerts a pro-tumorigenic effect; indeed, patients with chronic inflammatory diseases have higher risk to develop cancer [42]. The continuous activation of NF-κB in the tumor microenvironment is related to the higher levels of cytokines released by both infiltrated and resident immune cells in the tumor mass [42]. In particular, IL-1β, as well as IL-1α, binds to IL-1R, which signaling pathway leads to NF-κB activation [43]. In support, conditional ablation of NF-κB in a colon and liver carcinoma mouse model resulted in reduced tumor size [44]. According to the two-signal model of inflammasome induction, the first signal primes NF-κB activation that leads to NLRs and pro-IL-1β expres-

sion (Fig. 15.1). The second signal is required for the activation of caspase-1 and IL-1β/IL-18 and for the regulation of transcriptional and posttranscriptional mechanisms that underlie NF-κB activity. While on one side the activation of NF-κB can amplify IL-1-like cytokine release, on the other it can also fuel the activity of oncogenes, such as K-Ras, in an IL-1α-, IL-1R-, and MyD88-dependent manner [45]. Besides activating NF-κB, pro-inflammatory cytokines involved in inflammation-driven carcinogenesis and tumor progression converge at the level of the transcription factor STAT-3 [3]. STAT3 and NF-κB work together in a network, by regulating a set of genes encoding chemokines and cytokines and by controlling various target genes including cell cycle control and antiapoptotic genes [3]. Active phospho-STAT-3 is detected in both mouse models and human samples of gastric, colon, liver, lung, and pancreatic cancers [3, 9, 46, 47]. Activation of STAT-3 by IL-6, TNF-α, IL-10, IL-22, IL-23, and epidermal growth factor (EGF) increases malignant cell proliferation by upregulating the expression of cell cycle regulators cyclin D1, cyclin D2, and cyclin B, of the proto-oncogene MYC, of the antiapoptotic genes, BCL-2 and BCL2-like 1, which encodes BCL-xl [3], K-Ras, the proto-oncogene tyrosine-protein (Src), and Abelson murine leukemia viral oncogene homolog 1 (Abl1) [28]. IL-6 release can be induced by IL-1-like cytokines [48]. In addition, STAT-3 signaling in epithelial cells drives K-Ras-dependent neoplastic development in a mouse model of pancreatic adenocarcinoma, even in the absence of an inflammatory insult [46]. Therefore, because NF-κB activation and the amplification of the NF-κB-IL-6-STAT-3 signaling cascade occur in most malignancies and facilitate pro-inflammatory and pro-survival gene expression, and because NF-κB activity is a critical first signal for inflammasome activation, the inflammasome complex may represent the rheostat for tumor-associated chronic inflammation. In fact, the tumor microenvironment is an important source of pro-tumorigenic inflammatory cytokines, such as IL-1-like cytokines, that are induced by and are in turn potent inducers of NF-κB and STAT-3 in a direct and indirect manner. Chronic inflammation can also increase cell susceptibility to genomic destabilization via the downregulation of DNA repair pathways and the accumulation of genetic mutations and instability [49].

As mentioned above, TLRs are the major sentinel receptors for the recognition of microbial PAMPs and endogenous DAMPs. Signaling through TLRs, except for TLR3, is MyD88-dependent and induces the activation of NF-κB, the first signal required for inflammasome activation [32]. MyD88, an adapter protein located downstream of TLR and IL-1R signaling, contributes to carcinogenesis in mouse models of skin, liver, pancreas, and colon cancers [3]. The genetic absence of MyD88 prevented dextran sodium sulfate (DSS)-azoxymethane (AOM)-induced colon [50], methylcolantrene (MCA)-induced skin [51], and diethylnitrosamine (DEN)-induced liver carcinogenesis [52]. The activation of a K-Ras/IL-1α autocrine loop has been shown to depend on MyD88 signaling [46]. However, divergent roles of MyD88 in carcinogenesis have been reported. In the DSS/AOM model of colitis-associated colon cancer, MyD88 has also been described as protective against tumor initiation/progression [50]. We have shown that TLR stimulation can result in either tumor cell survival or apoptosis depending on the activity of type I IFN, released via engagement of TIR-domain-containing adapter-inducing interferon-β (TRIF) subsequent to TLR4 and TLR3 signaling [5, 53, 54]. Hasan et al. reported that tumor cell proliferation is antagonized by type I IFN in favor of tumor cell apoptosis [55]. However, depending on the levels of type I IFN, both STAT-3 and STAT-1 can be induced, the former promoting a pro-carcinogenic, immune-suppressive environment and the latter inducing a Th1-biased, tumor-suppressive environment [56]. As an additional level of complexity, type I IFN is known to inhibit NLRP3 activity [21] but can also be the first signal for AIM2 and caspase-11 activation, which function in cancer is still under-investigated [32, 57, 58]. Type I IFN restricts NLRP3-

dependent inflammasome activity by both inducing STAT-3, leading to the release of the immune-suppressive cytokine IL-10, and hence favoring tumor immune escape by promoting, via STAT-1, the release of nitric oxide and NLRP3 nitrosylation [21]. It is likely then that STAT-1-dependent inhibition of the NLRP3 inflammasome could explain the anti-tumor activity of type I IFN. Other studies reported that IFN-γ mediated the anticancer activity of T lymphocytes that had been primed in a P_2X_7-NLRP3-ASC-caspase1-IL-1β-dependent fashion. In particular, the stimulation of P_2X_7 on DCs with ATP activated the NLRP3 inflammasome with the ensuing IL-1β release, which triggered IFN-γ-producing, tumor antigen-specific $CD8^+$ T-cells with consequent tumor regression/arrest [59]. On the other hand, though, oxidized DNA, produced during tumor initiation/progression, potentiates stimulator of IFN I genes (STING)-dependent signaling pathways [60], responsible for immune-regulatory/suppressive responses via the activity of indoleamine-2,3-dioxygenase (IDO) in DCs [60] and for the recruitment and differentiation of Treg in tumor masses [61]. Therefore, tumor cells interfere with anti-tumor immune editing and reprogram immune cells to a suppressive phenotype by tightly controlling anti-tumor inflammatory responses.

Given these premises, the production of IL-1-like cytokines via the canonical and noncanonical inflammasomes seems to be a critical step upstream of other inflammatory signaling pathways, including those depending on STAT-3 and NF-κB activation. Agents that specifically block inflammasome-dependent IL-1-like cytokines are deemed to be critically needed for cancer treatment and are under intensive investigation [41].

15.3 Role of NLRs in Carcinogenesis

NLRs play a crucial role in both promoting and dampening inflammation associated with tumors. While recent studies demonstrated that inflammasomes promote cancer development and progression in certain types of tumor, such as skin and breast cancer [27], others proved a protective effect in other cancers, such as colorectal cancer. Therefore, the role of NLRs, and thus of the inflammasome in cancer, is still ill defined. The conflicting findings reviewed here may be accounted for by specific tissue microenvironments and/or the differential involvement of NLRs in cancer initiation and progression.

Pro-tumorigenic Role of NLRP3 NLRP3 is certainly the most studied NLR. NLRP3 polymorphism is associated to higher susceptibility to melanoma [62] and to poor survival rate for colorectal cancer [63] and myeloma [64] patients. Similarly, NLRP1 genetic alterations were observed in patients exposed to asbestos that developed mesothelioma [65]. The alteration of NLRP3 and/or NLRP1 expression/activity is in line with reports of high levels of plasma and tissue IL-1β and IL-18 as bad prognostic biomarkers in cancer patients [66]. Several studies have focused on the pro-carcinogenic activity of NLRP3. It has been demonstrated that NLRP3 may suppress natural killer (NK) and T-cell-mediated anti-tumor actions and immune editing in a mouse model of carcinogen-induced sarcoma and metastatic melanoma [67]; in support, NLRP3, but not caspase-1/caspase-11 or IL-1R knockout (KO) mice, had a substantially reduced number of lung metastases compared with wild-type (wt) mice when injected intravenously with B16-F10 melanoma cells or RM-1 prostate carcinoma cells [67]. This phenomenon was mediated by IL-1β-dependent recruitment of immune suppressive cells, such as myeloid-derived suppressor cells (MDSCs) and Treg. Consistently, NLRP3-deficient mice had reduced pulmonary metastases in an orthotopic transplant mouse model of mammary adenocarcinoma [67] and reduced skin papilloma lesions [67]. One potential mechanism was associated to NLRP3-promoted expansion of immunosuppressive macrophages in pancreatic ductal adenocarcinoma (PDA), with the inhibition of an anti-tumor T-cell response [68]. Moreover, cellular distress, accompanied by higher fluxes of potassium and calcium ions, a higher level of oxidative stress

and related ROS, and mitochondrial dysfunction, is nowadays recognized as the main endogenous stimulus for NLRP3 activation [58] (Table 15.1). Release of ROS by neutrophils and other inflammatory cell types can be mutagenic and/or promote signaling events leading to proliferation and transformation of lung cells [69]. Together with other growth factors, ROS release can also contribute to promote oncogene activation, genomic instability, and matrix degradation. Inhalation of environmental pollutants, such as asbestos and silica, is at the basis of lung inflammation that can lead to both fibrosis and lung cancer [12, 13, 70]. The production of ROS triggered by the phagocytosis of asbestos and silica or other environmental pollutants by macrophages/monocytes leads to the activation of the NLRP3 inflammasome [71]. Exposure of a human monocyte cell line (THP-1) to asbestos and silica induced the release of IL-1β to levels comparable to those elicited by the addition of MSU crystals, an established inflammasome activator (Table 15.1). Similarly, smokers were more susceptible to IL-1-like cytokine production in a NLRP3-dependent manner [12, 72]. The genetic absence of NLRP3, ASC, and caspase-1 reduced IL-1β levels in the supernatants collected from asbestos- and silica-treated THP-1 cells. In contrast, the absence of MyD88-, TLR-, and IL-1R-dependent signaling did not affect IL-1β release, implying the exclusive involvement of the inflammasome in this model. The mechanism of inflammasome activation by ROS in particulate-activated monocytes is under investigation. ROS can induce cell distress subsequent to mitochondrial dysfunction and the oxidation of many cell targets, among which the mitochondrial (mt) DNA, which binds to and activates NLRP3 [73, 74]. These mechanisms underlie K-Ras-induced tumorigenicity in the lung [75]. In a model of *Chlamydia pneumoniae* infection, it was shown that the oxidation of mtDNA leads to apoptosis of bone-marrow-derived macrophages (BMDMs) via the induction of IL-1β and the reduction of BCL-2 levels [74]. In this model the induction of apoptosis was viewed as a protective host mechanism against bacteria dissemination. In contrast, the overproduction of ROS and thus of IL-1β facilitates the proliferation rate of tumor cells in a mouse model of melanoma and in human mesothelioma cells [76–78]. It can be inferred, then, that NLRP3 pro-carcinogenic activity is the result of combined effects on tumor cell proliferation and survival and the induction of apoptotic pathways in innate immune cells, which would prevent these cells from instructing the adaptive immunity on how to immune survey the tumor microenvironment.

Recent evidence suggests that NLRP3 inflammasome in tumor microenvironments support tumor growth and metastases in breast cancer [79]. In an orthotopic mammary gland tumor model with EO771 murine breast cancer cells, caspase-1 and NLRP3 KO mice had significantly fewer primary tumor growth, correlated to lower mature IL-1β and caspase-1 levels. This study highlighted that the NLRP3 inflammasome modulated the tumor microenvironment in that NLRP3 activation enhanced the infiltration of myeloid cells, including MDSCs and tumor-associated macrophages (TAMs) which facilitated tumor immune evasion [79]. Similarly, NLRP3 was involved in melanoma growth following P_2X_7 and PANX1, ATP-dependent iron channels, activation [28].

Anti-carcinogenic Role of NLRP3 Despite mounting clinical and experimental evidence of the pro-carcinogenic activities of NLRP3, its role in cancer is still controversial. The genetic absence of NLRP3 increased the susceptibility to cancer and the number of colon polyps in a DSS-AOM mouse model of colon carcinoma, suggesting that NLRP3 may have a protective role in tumor formation in the colon [80]. In support, Wei et al. found that NLRP3 inflammasome might suppress the development of human liver cancer as the expression of NLRP3 was significantly decreased or completely lost in cancerous samples of hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC) patients [81]. In a model of liver metastasis, the activation of NLRP3 inflammasome was able to suppress the metastasis by priming NK cells to enhance immunosurveillance [28]. However, despite it was shown an association of

increased NLRP3 with the promotion and metastasis of gastric cancer and colitis-associated colon cancer [82], recently it was observed that NLRP3 expression was heterogeneous in stromal, benign, and cancerous prostate tissues with no distinction between the adjacent benign and cancer tissues [83]. In an elegant study of epithelial skin carcinogenesis, ASC, a main component/adaptor of the inflammasomes, could behave as pro-inflammatory in infiltrating immune cells, favoring tumor development; in contrast, its activity in keratinocytes limits tumor cell proliferation through the activation of p53 [17]. It was shown that mice specifically deficient for ASC in keratinocytes developed more tumors than to WT mice [84]; however, the same authors demonstrated that the genetic absence of ASC in myeloid cells had protective action in cancer development, focusing on its potential as pro-carcinogenesis biomarker and potential therapeutic target.

It is feasible that NLRP3 exerts different functions in hematopoietic versus structural cells. Bone marrow chimera studies have identified that signaling through the NLRP3 inflammasome in the hematopoietic, but not in the stromal compartment, is essential for mediating protection against tumorigenesis [85]. The activation of NLRP3 in DCs induces IL-1β-dependent adaptive immunity against EG7 or EL4 cell-implanted thymoma [59]. This protective phenotype was observed after anthracycline treatment, which induced ATP release from dying tumor cells, "sensed" by the P_2X_7 purinergic receptor on DCs, triggering a downstream NLRP3/caspase-1/IL-1β-dependent anti-tumor mechanism. IL-1β and IL-18 released after ATP-induced NLRP3 inflammasome activation promoted γδT-cell-induced secretion of IL-17, which recruited $CD8^+$ αβ T-cells able to produce IFN-γ which damaged therapy-resistant tumor cells [28]. The administration of interleukin-1 receptor antagonist (IL-1RA) in this model restored tumor progression [59]. However, it was also demonstrated that NLRP3 dampened the effectiveness of a DC-based anti-tumor vaccine by promoting the recruitment of immune-suppressive MDSCs [86]. The depletion of MDSCs, which also express NLRP3, rescued WT mice but not NLRP3 KO mice [86], confirming that the protective activity of NLRP3 is strictly correlated to the cell lineage involved [87].

Taken together, these findings characterize NLRP3 as a problematic therapeutic target.

Pro- and Anti-carcinogenic Roles of Other NLRs NLRC4 recognizes a number of Gram-negative bacteria, including *Salmonella* and *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* [88] (Table 15.1). Apart from NLRP3, also NAIP/NLRC4 is crucial for the integrity of intestinal epithelium; indeed, NAIP/NLRC4/caspase-1 axis activation by intestinal epithelial cells increased the secretion of IL-18 to activate protective gut immune responses [28]. NLRC4- and caspase-1-deficient mice developed increased colonic inflammation, responsible for higher colon adenocarcinoma burden, in a DSS-AOM mouse model [24]. NLRC4 and caspase-1 were inferred to exert a protective function in that model via a direct effect on epithelial cell proliferation, which, in a non-hematopoietic compartment, is thought to play a more prominent role than colonic inflammation [24]. Consistently, EL4 thymoma and B16 cells expressing flagellin, recognized by NLRC4 and TLR5, were unable to induce tumor implantation and progression due to the activation of onco-suppressive pathways [89]. Interestingly, a recent study highlighted a causal link between obesity, inflammasome activation, and breast cancer progression [90]. The authors showed that the activation of the NLRC4 inflammasome by obesity, one of risk factors for tumor development, contributed to breast cancer progression and that tumor growth was depended on caspase-1. Caspase-1 KO mice had significantly reduced tumor growth under experimental obesity conditions, characterized by NLRC4-induced IL-1β production in myeloid cells, which augmented vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF) levels and angiogenesis [90].

Other NLRs sensors, including NLRP12, NLRP1, and NLRP6, mediate protection against tumorigenesis [85]. NLRP12, like NLRP3,

NLRP6, and NLRC4, plays a protective role in the DSS-AOM mouse model [91]. The absence of NLRP12 in this model increased pro-inflammatory cytokine levels, extracellular signal-regulated kinase (ERK), NF-κB, and STAT-3 activation [92]. The expression of NLRP12 was significantly higher in malignant prostate cancer compared to adjacent benign tissues, while ASC and pro-caspase-1 were confined to aggressive prostate cancer cells, suggesting that an increased expression of these inflammasome sensors could underlie inflammation and pro-inflammatory cytokines release in prostate cancer [83].

NLRP6, required for the maintenance of both composition and distribution of commensal bacteria in the gut [27], confers protection against colon tumorigenesis; in fact, NLRP6 KO mice had increased propensity to develop colorectal cancer due to increased expression of pro-inflammatory cytokines (i.e., IL-18) after caspase-1 activation in response to AOM and DSS treatment [85]. Moreover, the deficiency of NLRP6 led to the alteration of microbiota compositions in the gut [28]. Nevertheless, although the expression of NLRP6 was higher in the intestinal epithelium than hematopoietic cells, its activity in the hematopoietic compartment was more important for host defense against the colitis-associated cancer (CAC) development [28].

Mutation in NLRP1, the most expressed inflammasome in human skin, increased susceptibility to skin cancer. Indeed, keratinocytes from patients with skin cancer displayed NLRP1 inflammasome activation and release of IL-1 family cytokines [93], contrary to what was observed in mice [94].

Pro- and Anti-carcinogenic Role of AIM2 in Cancer Despite its involvement in host defense against infections, the role of AIM2 in carcinogenesis is less clear. Controversial data have been reported for both tumor-suppressive and tumor-promoting functions of AIM2. The DNA-sensing inflammasome sensor AIM2, initially identified as a tumor suppressor in melanoma, suppressed colon cancer development inhibiting overproliferation of intestinal stem cells [95]. AIM2 can inhibit AOM-DSS-induced and spontaneous colorectal tumorigenesis via an inflammasome-independent mechanism and is associated with lower risk of colorectal cancer [95]. In contrast, AIM2 appears downregulated in hepatocarcinoma with an ensuing higher susceptibility to cancer progression [96].

Exogenous AIM2 expression was as well related to reduced breast cancer cell proliferation in humans [97]. Its activity was correlated to the inhibition of NF-κB transcriptional activity and to mammary tumor arrest in a mouse model [97].

Moreover, to evaluate the correlation between IFN type I signaling and AIM2 inflammasome, a research group studied the association of benign prostate hyperplasia (BPH) and prostate cancer, a type of tumor characterized by loss of type I IFN signaling [98]. The authors demonstrated that IFNs (α, β, or γ) induced AIM2 expression in human prostate epithelial cells (PrECs). The levels of AIM2 mRNA were higher in BPH than in normal prostate tissue, but significantly lower in clinical tumor specimens [98], implying that AIM2 may contribute earlier to tumor progression during the chronic inflammatory phase that leads to hyperplasia and then to the tumor mass.

More recently it was shown that AIM2 was specifically upregulated and involved in cutaneous squamous cell carcinoma (cSCC), the most common metastatic skin cancer [99]; indeed, AIM2 knockdown resulted in decreased cSCC cell viability and invasion, suppression of growth, and vascularization of cSCC xenografts in vivo.

In support to the pro-carcinogenic role of the AIM2 inflammasome, we found that lung tumor masses were highly populated by plasmacytoid dendritic cells (pDCs) [100, 101], able to produce high levels of IL-1α under AIM2 activation. In particular, we found that the activation of AIM2 in lung tumor-associated pDCs promoted calcium efflux leading to calpain activation and high levels of IL-1α, which facilitated tumor cell proliferation in the lung.

15.4 Role of Inflammasome-Dependent Cytokines in Cancer

High serum concentrations of inflammasome-related IL-1-like cytokines are found in malignancies with low-rate survival from the time of diagnosis [41]. These cytokines, directly or via the induction of TNF-α and IL-6 [102], are involved in cell proliferation and survival [103], as well as cell adhesion and migration [3, 24], all features of tumor progression and invasiveness.

In the tumor microenvironment, IL-1-like cytokines can be secreted by both malignant and infiltrated immune cells [104]. Tumorigenesis, tumor progression, dissemination, and tumor immune editing are affected by the presence or not of these cytokines which can mediate a variety of local and systemic activities.

IL-1β and IL-18 These cytokines represent the main effectors of inflammasome-mediated pathways. Both pro-IL-1β and pro-IL-18 are converted into their active forms mainly by caspase-1, and, in fact, caspase-1-deficient mice produce low IL-1β and IL-18 levels [22]. Moreover, caspase-11 may promote IL-1β and IL-18 maturation via the induction of caspase-1 activity [32, 57, 58]. However, pro-IL-1β can be processed by other enzymes, such as neutrophil serine proteinase-3 and granzyme A in humans [32, 105, 106]. In addition, caspase-8 can cleave pro-IL-1β and pro-IL-18 into their active forms following Fas ligand (FasL) activation in a caspase-1- and ASC-independent manner in LPS-primed macrophages [107]. In this study, the activation of Fas, a TNF family receptor, induced caspase-8 to cleave IL-1β and IL-18 independently of inflammasomes or RIP3, the latter involved in necrosis-induced cell death [35]. It has been recently shown that, following NLRP3 activation, caspase-8, rather than caspase-1, is mainly involved in IL-1β and IL-18 activation in DCs [40] and macrophages [39]. Hence, novel noncanonical inflammasome-dependent IL-1β/IL-18 activation pathways may exist in myeloid cells. While it is felt that these cytokine-dependent signaling pathways are crucial for inflammatory processes, their role in tumor immune surveillance is still debated.

IL-1β and IL-18 have contrasting functions in the tumor milieu. IL-1β induces fever, promotes T-cell survival, contributes to the polarization of Th1, Th2, and Th17 clones, and mediates leukocyte migration [108]. IL-18 can cooperate with IL-12 in Th1 polarization and the activation of NK cells and can promote Th17 responses in the presence of IL-23 [16]. In the absence of IL-12 and IL-23, IL-18 can vice versa promote a Th2-biased response [16]. Therefore, depending on the microenvironment, IL-1β and IL-18 can have contrasting effects on tumor-associated inflammation and tumor surveillance. These cytokines can exert a direct pro-carcinogenic activity via the release of trophic factors, such as fibroblast growth factor (FGF) 2 and VEGF, which allow malignant cells, cancer-associated fibroblasts (CAFs), and endothelial cells to fuel and foster tumor cell survival and invasiveness [1]. In addition, IL-1β induces IL-6, whose pro-tumorigenic activity is mediated through the activation of STAT-3 [109]. IL-1β can also induce the synthesis/release of TNF-α, which in some circumstances can act as an anti-tumor factor [110] but in others can participate to the recruitment of immune-suppressive cells, such as MDSCs, which favor neoplastic growth and progression [111]. In support of the pro-tumorigenic potential of IL-1β, the inoculation of lung cancer cells engineered to express higher levels of this cytokine resulted in higher aggressiveness and dissemination [112]. More importantly, elevated IL-1β levels are detected in human lung, colon breast carcinoma, stomach, and in melanoma [41]. Furthermore, reduced tumor growth is reported in mice given anakinra, an IL-1RA [41]. The association of anakinra and corticosteroids, these latter known to inhibit pro-IL-β gene expression and to upregulate the endogenous IL-1RA, resulted in lower-rate myeloma cell proliferation [113]. Therefore, IL-1R antagonists or neutralizing antibodies for IL-1β may represent novel anti-tumor therapies that can subvert both tumor

proliferation and tumor immune escape. Several clinical trials are actually being performed to prove the beneficial anti-tumor activity of anakinra [41]. In support, Guo et al. demonstrated that blocking IL-1R signaling with an IL-1RA or anti-IL-1R antibody inhibited breast tumor growth and metastasis accompanied by decreased myeloid cell recruitment [79]. Similarly, in our recent study we found that lung TAMs, critical components of tumor microenvironment, were able to release higher levels IL-1β than macrophages derived by the lung of naïve mice, implying that the release of IL-1β by TAMs favors lung carcinogenesis in a mouse model of carcinogen-induced lung cancer [114]. We proved that IL-1β release was caspase-11- and NLRP3/caspase-1-dependent and that IL-1β-producing TAMs were able to favor lung tumorigenesis after the activation of TLR4/caspase-1 and caspase-11 axis involved in NLRP3 inflammasome [114]. However, it has to be pointed out that in the same mouse model and in human samples of non-small cell lung cancer (NSCLC), we found that caspase-8 was involved in lung cancer in that its pharmacological inhibition by means of z-IETD-FMK significantly reduced lung tumor burden, accompanied by lower levels of IL-6, TNF-α, IL-18, IL-1α, IL-33, but not IL-1β, innate immune suppressive cells (i.e., MDSCs) [115]. These two latter studies confirm the involvement of the inflammasome and its related cytokines to tumor growth in the lung but point at the specific enzymes/cytokines according to the tissue/site of activation.

IL-18 levels correlate with cancer-related morbidity in patients with ovarian, head and neck, lung, and colon carcinoma [19]. Experimental mouse models of metastatic melanoma showed that IL-18 acts as an immunosuppressive cytokine by contrasting NK cell cytotoxic activity [116]. Further evidence of the pro-tumorigenic function of IL-18 come from studies of animals administered IL-18-binding protein (IL-18BP), an IL-18 soluble ligand that neutralizes its activity [117].

While clinical and experimental evidence strongly supports the pro-tumorigenic activities of IL-1β and IL-18, their established roles in Th1 and cytotoxic T lymphocytes (CTL) polarization would make these cytokines well suited to combat tumor immune evasion. Indeed, the anti-tumoral properties of IL-1β and IL-18 have been described in different stages of tumor progression [118]. In addition, the genetic absence of IL-18 increased the susceptibility to colitis and polyp formation in a mouse model of AOM-DSS-induced colon carcinoma [119]. In support to the importance of IL-18 in suppressing colorectal cancer development, studies suggested that IL-18 produced during inflammasome activation was critical for the homeostasis of the epithelial barrier in the intestinal tissue repair and remodeling [27]. Along this line, it is interesting to note that these cytokines are produced at high levels during classical chemotherapy protocols and are known to foster DC activity against tumor cells [59]. In sharp contrast, we found that human peripheral blood mononuclear cells (PBMCs) obtained from smokers and COPD patients, subjects at high risk for lung cancer were highly susceptible to IL-18 release under air pollution exposure [12, 13], implying that based on to the tissue/organ encountered, the inflammatory response could accordingly lead to differential phenomena.

IL-1α IL-1α is an alarmin that, like IL-1β and IL-18, can be activated from a precursor form [48]. However, while IL-1β/IL-18 maturation requires caspase-1 activation, the release of IL-1α is not strictly dependent on caspase-1 but can also be processed by caspase-11 and calpain [17, 32, 120, 121] and critically depends on the levels of the decoy receptor, IL-1R2 [120]. Active IL-1α can also be present on the plasma membrane to "instruct" the adaptive immunity and can be processed and activated in the extracellular milieu by granzyme B [122]. In addition, it has been recently discovered that the precursor form (previously referred to as non-active form) of IL-1α can also trigger sterile inflammation [48].

In models of DEN-induced liver carcinoma [52], skin papillomas [123], and gastric carcinoma [44], IL-1α is released by dying cells,

which stimulate oxidative stress pathways, responsible of local inflammation and in some cases of cell rescue from death to provide tissue regeneration and subsequent accumulation of mutations leading to tumor initiation/progression [64]. In support of these findings, IL-1α-induced IL-6 activates STAT-3 and promotes liver as well as gastric tumorigenesis [44, 52, 123]. An indirect evidence for IL-1α-dependent tumor outgrowth is provided in studies of IL-1R1- and MyD88-deficient mice, which are less prone to developing skin [51], colon [50], and liver [124] tumor lesions. Besides its role in tumor-associated inflammation, IL-1α activity was also associated to the activity of mutated K-Ras, one of the main oncogenes, that induces constitutive activation of NF-κB and AP-1, which on one side can promote an autocrine loop for further IL-1α expression/secretion and on the other increase tumor burden. These processes were well characterized in a mouse model of pancreatic carcinoma [125]. In contrast, in a model of MCA-induced fibrosarcoma, IL-1α KO mice had similar tumor lesions as WT mice [64]. This implied that IL-1α was not implicated in tumor outgrowth but that, rather, cell-membrane exposed IL-1α would promote anti-tumor surveillance via the activation of NK, $CD4^+$, and $CD8^+$ T-cells [64]. Of note, some cancer cells can express membrane IL-1α, which can increase their immunogenicity and promote anti-tumor immune surveillance and tumor regression. However, high levels of IL-1α in the tumor microenvironment can favor angiogenesis and invasiveness [120]. In support, IL-1RA administration inhibited IL-1α-induced angiogenesis in gastric cancer, suggesting that it may be a potential target in the clinical treatment of gastric cancer patients, possibly alone or in combination with an anti-VEGF antibody or with other chemotherapy agents [126].

Similarly, in our lab we found that IL-1α is one of the predominant cytokines in lung tumor microenvironment after inflammasome activation. Both human tumor-associated immunosuppressive plasmacytoid dendritic cells (TApDCs) and mouse TAMs produced high levels of IL-1α in an AIM2-dependent manner, favoring lung carcinogenesis [100, 114].

IL-33 Interleukin-33 (IL-33) is a member of the IL-1 family, which, in contrast to IL-1β and IL-18, is inactivated upon caspase cleavage but is biologically active as full-length IL-33. Additionally, its activity is enhanced approximately tenfold upon cleavage by neutrophil serine proteases cathepsin G and elastase [127]. Recent findings have revealed an important contribution of IL-33 to several cancers, where it may exert pro- and anti-tumorigenic functions [128]. It was demonstrated that CAFs in head and neck squamous cancer (HNSCC) microenvironment were able to release IL-33, which in turn triggered epithelial mesenchymal transition (EMT) of cancer cells, thereby supporting their ability for migration and invasion; in support to the protumor effect of IL-33, this cytokine in HNSCC patients was associated to lower survival rate [129].

Similarly, IL-33 is highly present in tumor lesions of NSCLC patients, associated with the disease clinical stage [130]. Moreover, the protumorigenic role of IL-33/ST2 signaling was also proved in breast cancer [127], in that the genetic absence of ST2, also known as interleukin-1 receptor-like 1 (IL1RL1), showed decreased tumor cell proliferation and reduced metastatic potential to the lung and liver in a syngeneic 4T1 breast cancer mouse model due to less accumulation of suppressor cells MDSCs and immunosuppressive TGF-β strictly correlated to reduced tumor growth [131]. Some data indicate that IL-33 is highly present in the serum of HCC patients [127] although another research group did not find differences in IL-33 serum levels in HCC compared to liver cirrhosis patients and healthy controls [132].

Furthermore, IL-33 appears to exert a procarcinogenic function in gastric cancer. A recent study reported a dose-dependent increase in cancer cell invasion and migration of human gastric cancer cell lines stimulated with IL-33; this effect, which was linked to ERK1/2 activation, a pathway known to be important for tumor invasion and metastasis, was abrogated by knocking down IL1RL1 [133].

Other Cytokines/Growth Factors Another mechanism by which the inflammasome may contribute to tumor immune escape is the secretion of other pro-inflammatory cytokines, such as HMGB1, and the induction of growth factors such as FGF2 [134], via as yet unclear biochemical mechanisms. Caspase-1 is essential for FGF2 secretion by macrophages [135]. However, unlike IL-1β and IL-18, HMGB1 and FGF2 are not processed by caspase-1 [66, 135, 136], suggesting an indirect mechanism of inflammasome-dependent regulation of these unconventional proteins. It is important to note, though, that secretion of these proteins might directly depend on caspase-1-mediated pyroptosis. In this context, an intriguing role was recently identified for caspase-11, which is engaged in noncanonical inflammasome molecular pathways [34]. While caspase-11 is not critical for caspase-1 activation upon LPS stimulation, it can mediate the activation of the NLRP3 inflammasome during endotoxemia [36, 57] and lead to caspase-1 maturation and IL-1β release from infected macrophages. The interplay between caspase-1 and caspase-11 in cancer is still underinvestigated, but it is felt that a more thorough investigation of these pathways in carcinogenesis may help reconcile some of the discrepancies in the field. Understanding the regulation and function of noncanonical inflammasome-dependent pathways, involving caspase-11 and caspase-8, may, therefore, help clarify the significance of the inflammasome and its effectors in cancer.

IL-27 is another cytokine with both pro- and anti-inflammatory properties associated to NLRP3 inflammasome activation in monocytes [137]. The effects of IL-27 on the immune response may be dual, resulting in tumor-promoting effects in vivo, as suggested by increased IL-27 expression in some human cancers [138]. Despite poor reports, IL-27 was found high in the serum of gastroesophageal cancer [139] and in breast cancer patients in correlation with VEGF and the clinical stage [140]. IL-27 was highly expressed in invasive cutaneous melanoma, particularly at advanced stages of progression, whereas no expression was found in benign nevi and in situ melanomas. Moreover, IL-27 expression was correlated with PD-L1 and IL-10 in melanoma samples [141]. Similarly, IL-27 was found to induce the expression of immune-regulatory molecules such as IL-18BP and PD-L1 and IDO in human ovarian cancer cells [138]. Evidence support a role of IL-27 in adult acute myeloid leukemia (AML), but not in pediatric AML, because it was able to promote the proliferation and survival of adult AML cell lines coexpressing IL-27Rα (WSX1) and gp130 [142]. IL-27-mediated signaling pathway activated STAT-1/-3 and ERK1/2 in leukemic cells [142].

Nevertheless, IL-27 has shown anti-tumor activity in several tumor models in vitro and in vivo, acting through multiple mechanisms such as activation of anti-tumor immune responses and direct inhibition of tumor cell proliferation, survival, and angiogenic and invasive properties [138].

IL-37 is another member of IL-1 family cytokines which has shown anti-inflammatory activities. It is able to suppress the production of pro-inflammatory cytokines such as IL-1α and TNF-α, without altering anti-inflammatory cytokines, such as IL-10; it blocks DCs activation, and is also involved in the adaptive immunity [143]. This cytokine is expressed by macrophages, epithelial cells, and PBMCs [144]. It was reported that caspase-1 is involved in IL-37 protein processing after LPS, TNF, other TLR agonists and IL-1 stimulation [144].

The anti-tumor effects of IL-37 have been studied in HCC [145], renal carcinoma [146], NSCLC [147], fibrosarcoma, and cervical and breast cancer [143]; these studies reported that IL-37 was well correlated to positive prognosis of patients.

15.5 Third Effector Mechanism of the Inflammasome: Pyroptosis

Besides cytokines, pyroptosis is the third effector mechanism following inflammasome activation. Although the molecular and cellular mechanisms

underlying pyroptosis induction still remain elusive, it is clear that this cell death process takes place independently of the secretion of IL-1β and IL-18 [32] (Fig. 15.2). Pyroptosis was first observed by Zychlinsky and his colleagues in macrophages infected with *Shigella flexneri* [148], but it can occur in several other cell types and be activated by a variety of stimuli other than the presence of infection [149]. It was initially recognized as apoptosis, but later, it was confirmed as a lytic form of cell death and revised as caspase-1-dependent cell death identified as pyroptosis. Pyroptosis is defined as a pro-inflammatory cell death process, critical for host defense against the invasion of pathogens. It differs from apoptosis in that it is characterized by cytoplasmic swelling and early plasma membrane rupture, as in the case of necrosis. Therefore, because of the release of the cytoplasmic content into the extracellular matrix, pyroptosis is considered a pro-inflammatory process. In particular, it can be induced by the canonical caspase-1 inflammasomes or by activation of caspase-4, caspase-5, and caspase-11 by cytosolic lipopolysaccharide. The activation of the above caspases cleaves GSDMD in its middle linker to release its gasdermin-N domain, which executes pyroptosis via its pore-forming activity (Fig. 15.2) [33]. Caspase-1-dependent plasma-membrane pores dissipate cellular ionic gradients, producing a net increased osmotic pressure, water influx, cell swelling, and, eventually, osmotic lysis and release of inflammatory intracellular contents. Indeed, cells dying by pyroptosis undergo a measurable size increase. Cleavage of chromosomal DNA is a fatal event that is often assumed to indicate apoptotic cell death; however, DNA damage also occurs during pyroptosis, and it is accompanied by marked nuclear condensation, but unlike apoptosis, nuclear integrity is maintained [150], and the cleavage of ICAD, the inhibitor of caspase-activated DNase, is not present. Like apoptosis, necrosis, and autophagy, pyroptosis results in the release of DAMPs, i.e., HMGB1, IL-1α, and ATP [151]. It is likely that these molecules, involved in several types of cancer, contribute to the tumorigenic potential of the inflammasome activation. On the other hand, the products of pyroptosis-induced cell death may limit malignant cell survival and sustain, via the immunogenic cell death-derived signals, the activation of the innate immune response against cancer development/progression [1]. In fact, increasing evidence highlights the role of pyroptosis in DC priming during conventional anti-tumor chemotherapy [59]. An emerging therapeutic area is exploring the ability of oncolytic viruses to induce cell death and the possibility to combine oncolytic virotherapies with further immunomodulation by cyclophosphamide and other immunotherapeutic agents, which can foster DC-mediated induction of anti-tumor immunity [152].

Recently, Wang and colleagues showed that chemotherapeutics induce pyroptosis through caspase-3 cleavage of gasdermin E (GSDME) [153]. Their findings are consistent with the idea that GSDME specifically requires caspase-3 to switch TNF-induced apoptosis to pyroptosis. This concept changes the understanding of programmed cell death, as caspase-3 has long been regarded as the hallmark of apoptosis. The explanation could be that the expression levels of GSDME determine the form of cell death in caspase-3-activated cells; in particular, $GSDME^{High}$ cells undergo pyroptosis upon "apoptotic stimulation" by chemotherapy, while cells lacking sufficient GSDME develop secondary necrosis after apoptosis [153].

The apparent inconsistencies in studies on the role of pyroptosis in cancer may reflect differences in the redox status of cells and specifically of molecules involved in this process. Given the role of the oxidative stress in the induction of the inflammasome [154, 155], the presence of oxidized DAMPs may discriminate pyroptosis-like cell death from apoptosis. For example, the reduced form of HMGB1, released from dying cells, triggers DCs via a TLR4-dependent pathway to induce an anti-tumor immune response [156]. In contrast, the oxidized form of HMGB1 released during apoptosis fails to activate immune responses [157]. While a strict relationship exists between caspase-1 activation and pyroptosis, it is still unclear if pyroptosis requires the same signal-1 that leads to inflammasome

activation. Nystrom and collaborators suggested that pyroptosis does not involve mitochondrial membrane depolarization as is the case of inflammasome-dependent caspase-1 activation. This implied that cell death may occur independently of mitochondrial dysfunction in non-primed, NLRC4-activated macrophages [158]. It still remains to be determined, though, if this model of pyroptosis involves other inflammasome complexes, such as those containing NLRP3 or AIM2.

In the context of carcinogenesis, one would be prompted to define pyroptosis as a protective mechanism. Impaired pyroptosis is currently proposed as a potential mechanism linking chronic inflammation to the development of colon carcinoma [3]. Colon epithelial cells from caspase-1-, NLRP3-, and NLRC4-KO mice are resistant to apoptosis and show greater rates of proliferation. On the other hand, oxidative stress, mitochondrial dysfunction, and alarmin release are all features of carcinogenesis, but, rather than tumor cell death and subsequent tumor arrest/regression, tumor progression occurs. Possibly, the role of pyroptosis in cancer progression would critically depend on the cell type undergoing this process. For instance, pyroptosis of innate immune cells, while being acknowledged as a host defense mechanism against pathogen infections, might have detrimental consequences in the context of tumor immunoediting. In addition, contrasting findings may be expected in different types of cancer.

To support the pyroptosis protective role, further studies demonstrate that GSDMD might protect against gastric cancer proliferation. The downregulation of GSDMD might contribute to the tumorigenesis and proliferation of cancerous cells by accelerating cell phase S/G2 transition, by activating ERK, STAT-3, and phosphatidylinositol 3 kinase/protein kinase B (PI3K/AKT) signaling pathways and regulating cell cycle-related proteins in gastric cancer [159].

Furthermore, it was also hypothesized that pyroptosis activation could represent a new anticancer mechanism in triple-negative breast cancer cells MDA-MB-231. In this study, the scientists demonstrated that docosahexaenoic acid (DHA) induced pyroptosis by activating some inflammasome-dependent pathways, associated to NF-κB translocation, caspase-1 and GSDMD activation, IL-1β secretion, HMGB1 translocation from the nucleus toward the cytoplasm, pore membrane formation, and loss of membrane integrity in MDA-MB-231 cells, shedding new light on the anticancer effect of DHA, which may have an important role in omega-3 supplementation in cancer therapy [149].

Further findings indicate that pyroptosis process is inactivated in human hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC) [160].

Further studies are needed to better define the role of pyroptosis and its correlation to the inflammasome activation. In particular, the protective or not role of pyroptosis in cancer may find scientific bases once reliable experimental tools to identify pyroptotic cells in vivo and in vitro will be developed.

15.6 Randomized Clinical Trials Targeting Inflammasome-Dependent Effectors

Despite the scientific progress on the role of the inflammasome in cancer, there is an urgent need to develop novel drugs that target inflammasome-related effectors.

One of the most important strategies to affect the inflammasome pathway in cancer treatment is to inhibit the IL-1β signaling activity by using monoclonal antibodies and recombinant derivatives of IL-1RN, which neutralizes both IL-1α and IL-1β [161]. As reported in ClinicalTrials.gov, Mayo Clinic in collaboration with National Cancer Institute (NCI) launched a Phase II study (NCT00635154) to evaluate the effect of anakinra with or without dexamethasone in treating patients with smoldering myeloma or indolent multiple myeloma (https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT00635154?term=NCT00635154&rank=1). Anti-tumorigenic activity of anakinra may originate from blocking IL-1β-mediated production of IL-6, which is a key factor for inflammation-associated cancer. The results of

this study showed that treatment with IL-1 inhibitors triggered a decrease of IL-6 production and decreased myeloma proliferative rate and high-sensitivity C-reactive protein (hs-CRP) levels in responsive patients with enhanced progression-free survival (Table 15.2) (https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT00635154?term=NCT00635154&rank=1). Nowadays, other clinical trials evaluating the efficacy of anakinra in different cancer types have been initiated, but their results are still not available.

Among anti-IL-1β antibodies, Novartis Pharmaceuticals launched (September 2016) a randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial (NCT01327846) to evaluate the effect of canakinumab (50 mg, 150 mg, and 300 mg, subcutaneously every 3 months versus placebo) in lung cancer in patients with atherosclerosis in order to establish whether the inhibition of IL-1β might alter cancer incidence (Table 15.2) [162]. This study showed that lung cancer mortality was significantly less in the group of subjects treated with canakinumab (300 mg) than in the placebo group, suggesting canakinumab as a potential therapeutic tool to reduce lung cancer incidence and mortality.

Besides IL-1β, IL-1α is another effector correlated to the inflammasome activation. As reported in ClinicalTrials.gov from 2013 to 2017, XBiotech sponsored a Phase III (NCT01767857) double-blinded versus placebo study to determine if Xilonix (a human monoclonal antibody targeting IL-1α) could prolong the lifetime of colorectal carcinoma patients (Table 15.2) (https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT01767857?term=NCT01767857&rank=1). Although the study is terminated, final results are not available yet.

Another study involved IL-18 (SB-485232 developed by GlaxoSmithKline; NCT00659178) (Table 15.2) [163]; the purpose of this Phase I dose escalation study was to assess safety, tolerability, and biological activity of SB-485232 administered by four infusions in combination with pegylated liposomal doxorubicin (Doxil) in patients with advanced-stage epithelial ovarian cancer [163]. The study reported no positive drug interactions; however, to date, no results were

Table 15.2 Randomized clinical trials targeting inflammasome-dependent effectors

Drug	Phase	NCT number	Results	References
Anakinra	2	NCT00635154	Decrease of IL-6 production, the myeloma proliferative rate and hs-CRP levels in smoldering myeloma or indolent multiple myeloma patients; increase of progress-free survival	ClinicalTrials.gov
Canakinumab	3	NCT01327846	Mortality was significantly lower in treated than placebo lung cancer patients	Ridker et al. [162]; ClinicalTrials.gov
Xilonix (a human monoclonal antibody targeting IL-1α)	3	NCT01767857	NA	ClinicalTrials.gov
SB-485232	1	NCT00659178	No positive drug interactions was observed in combination with Doxil in patients with advanced-stage epithelial ovarian cancer No final results were posted	Robertson et al. [163]; ClinicalTrials.gov
IFN-α, 13-cis-retinoic acid and paclitaxel combination	1	NCT00062010	After the combination these three drugs in patients with SCLC, values of OS, and progression-free survival are 6.2 and 2 months, respectively	ClinicalTrials.gov
5-FU and IFN combination	2	NCT01658813	Progression-free survival, in treated metastatic gastrointestinal, kidney, or lung cancer patients, is 2 months	ClinicalTrials.gov
Bortezomib	2	NCT01633645	Increase IL-1β release correlated to poor prognosis in lung cancer patients with advanced-stage (III-IV) NSCLC	ClinicalTrials.gov

posted. Based on the capability of IL-18 to induce IFN-γ, promoting Th1 cells, memory cytotoxic $CD8^+$ T lymphocytes, and NK cells activity [164], the investigation of recombinant IL-18 in the treatment of cancer may open news perspectives in that it may increase the activity of tumor-infiltrating immune cells.

Between 2013 and 2015, a Phase I study was registered on ClinicalTrials.gov (NCT00062010) evaluating the effect of co-treatment with IFN-α and isotretinoin (13-cis-retinoic acid) together with paclitaxel in patients with recurrent small cell lung cancer (SCLC) (Table 15.2) (https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT00062010?term=NCT00062010&rank=1). The study reported that IFN-α and 13-cis-retinoic acid given on days 1 and 2, and paclitaxel given on day 2 for 6 weeks of an 8-week cycle, were associated to an OS (assessed every 3 months for 1 year and then every 6 months) and progression-free survival (assessed every 6 weeks) of 6.2 and 2 months, respectively.

Another Phase II trial (NCT01658813) was launched to test the combination of 5-fluorouracil (5-FU) and IFN-α2b in previously treated metastatic gastrointestinal, kidney, or lung cancer; this study reported that the value of progression-free survival, assessed up to 2 years, was only of 2 months (Table 15.2) (https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT01658813?term=NCT01658813&rank=1).

As previously reported, because the amplification of the NF-κB-IL-6-STAT-3 signaling cascade and NF-κB activation occur in most malignancies, and its activity is a critical first signal for inflammasome activation, NF-κB may represent a possible therapeutic target to act on inflammasome pathway in cancer therapy. Nevertheless, nowadays the failure of drugs targeting NF-κB could be justified by the fact that myeloid-specific inhibition of NF-κB triggered the augmentation of pro-IL-1β processing by cathepsin G in neutrophils, leading to increased IL-1β and enhanced epithelial cell proliferation [165]. However, the combination of bortezomib, a proteasome inhibitor that blocks NF-κB activation, and anakinra reduced tumor formation and growth in vivo compared to monotherapy with bortezomib or anakinra which did not affect tumor growth. Moreover, in lung cancer patients with advanced-stage (III–IV) NSCLC (protocol NCT01633645), it was found that treatment with bortezomib significantly increased IL-1β release, but not IL-8, TNFα, or IL-6, and that plasma IL-1β levels were correlated with poor prognosis (Table 15.2). This evidence supports a causative role for neutrophil-derived IL-1β in lung tumorigenesis [165].

So far, no clinical trials are reported to inhibit the activity of NLRP3 and AIM2, further confirming that the role of these receptors in cancer may be pro-carcinogenic, rather than anti-tumor.

15.7 Conclusions

Carcinogenesis, tumor cell proliferation, and patient survival are strictly correlated to the presence of IL-1α, IL-1β, and IL-18. For instance, K-Ras-driven oncogenesis in pancreas, lung, and skin carcinoma is associated to the presence/activity of IL-1-like cytokines and MyD88-dependent signaling, which is in turn correlated to tumor proliferation without tumor cell death [118]. Besides the role of the inflammasome complex involved and of the cell type undergoing pyroptosis, a complex relationship exists between cancer establishment, progression, inflammation-induced pyroptosis, and oncogene activity. Inflammasome-dependent cell death may represent one of the potential therapeutic targets in cancer; however, cell death is a desirable achievement in structural tumor cells but not in innate immune cells, whose activity tightly regulates the anti-tumor adaptive response. While innate immune cell death induced by the activation of canonical and noncanonical inflammasomes is indispensable to defend the host against infections, the induction of pyroptosis in the context of systemic infections can contribute to sepsis-like disease and mortality [57].

Pharmacologists have long pursued anti-tumor agents able to induce tumor cell death; however, sterile insults from dying cells can contribute to further inflammasome activation in both structural and hematopoietic cells. Doxorubicin,

widely used in current anti-tumor protocols, induces tumor cell death but cannot be used alone and, more importantly, can induce inflammasome activation [166], possibly explaining why cumulative doses of glucocorticoids are needed for cancer patients who receive this treatment [167, 168].

The current assumption is that apoptosis is tolerogenic whereas necrosis is immunogenic. Therefore, the impact of dying cells on immune-competent cells depends on the type of cell death. The release of alarmins (immunogenic danger signals) from pyroptotic cells can fuel pro-inflammatory cascades that direct carcinogenesis and tumor progression.

Intriguingly, caspases are not only involved in cell death but can also coordinate pro-inflammatory signals delivered by cell death-derived alarmins. For example, caspase-1 and caspase-11-induced activation of IL-33 can polarize T-cells toward a Th2 phenotype [169], which in the context of the tumor microenvironment can facilitate malignant cell survival [5]. In contrast, the activity of IL-33 can be "neutralized" by caspase-3 and caspase-7 [170], as has been seen in the case of HMGB1, highly detected in tumor samples and implicated in cancer progression. Therefore, besides the immunogenic versus tolerogenic impact of caspases, the involvement of these caspases and of the upstream NLRs must be evaluated in the context of the specific microenvironment. The production of ROS and subsequent oxidation of cellular targets and the activation of proliferative K-Ras-dependent signaling pathways and pyroptosis are all processes that involve caspase-1, caspase-8, and caspase-11/4. These may serve as inflammation rheostats, acting as pro- or anti-inflammatory pathways that can impact on tumor development/progression. Therefore, to our opinion, the role of the inflammasome and its related cytokines in cancer is complex. Hence, it is not possible to make a general principle of the involvement of the inflammasome in oncogenesis, especially because it is strictly correlated to the nature/function of the tissue/organ that is affected by the malignancy.

Conflict of Interest Statement The authors declare that there are no conflicts of interest.

References

1. Zitvogel L, Kepp O, Galluzzi L, Kroemer G. Inflammasomes in carcinogenesis and anticancer immune responses. Nat Immunol. 2012;13:343–51. https://doi.org/10.1038/ni.2224.
2. Hanahan D, Weinberg RA. Hallmarks of cancer: the next generation. Cell. 2011;144:646–74. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.cell.2011.02.013.
3. Elinav E, Nowarski R, Thaiss CA, Hu B, Jin C, Flavell RA. Inflammation-induced cancer: crosstalk between tumours, immune cells and microorganisms. Nat Rev Cancer. 2013;13:759–71. https://doi.org/10.1038/nrc3611.
4. Balkwill FR, Mantovani A. Cancer-related inflammation: common themes and therapeutic opportunities. Semin Cancer Biol. 2012;22:33–40. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.semcancer.2011.12.005.
5. Pinto A, Morello S, Sorrentino R. Lung cancer and toll-like receptors. Cancer Immunol Immunother. 2011;60:1211–20. https://doi.org/10.1007/s00262-011-1057-8.
6. Coussens LM, Zitvogel L, Palucka AK. Neutralizing tumor-promoting chronic inflammation: a magic bullet? Science. 2013;339:286–91. https://doi.org/10.1126/science.1232227.
7. Terlizzi M, Casolaro V, Pinto A, Sorrentino R. Inflammasome: cancer's friend or foe? Pharmacol Ther. 2014;143(1):24–33. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.pharmthera.2014.02.002.
8. Korniluk A, Koper O, Kemona H, Dymicka-Piekarska V. From inflammation to cancer. Ir J Med Sci. 2017;186(1):57–62. https://doi.org/10.1007/s11845-016-1464-0.
9. Jemal A, Siegel R, Xu J, Ward E. Cancer statistics, 2010. CA Cancer J Clin. 2010;60:277–300. https://doi.org/10.3322/caac.20073.
10. Siegel R, Naishadham D, Jemal A. Cancer statistics, 2012. CA Cancer J Clin. 2012;62:10–29. https://doi.org/10.3322/caac.20138.
11. Kamada N, Seo S-U, Chen GY, Núñez G. Role of the gut microbiota in immunity and inflammatory disease. Nat Rev Immunol. 2013;13:321–35. https://doi.org/10.1038/nri3430.
12. De Falco G, Terlizzi M, Sirignano M, Commodo M, D'Anna A, Aquino RP, et al. Human peripheral blood mononuclear cells (PBMCs) from smokers release higher levels of IL-1-like cytokines after exposure to combustion-generated ultrafine particles. Sci Rep. 2017;7:43016. https://doi.org/10.1038/srep43016.
13. De Falco G, Colarusso C, Terlizzi M, Popolo A, Pecoraro M, Commodo M, et al. Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease-derived circulating cells release IL-18 and IL-33 under ultrafine particulate matter exposure in a caspase-1/8-independent manner. Front Immunol. 2017;8:1415. https://doi.org/10.3389/fimmu.2017.01415.

14. Grivennikov SI, Greten FR, Karin M. Immunity, inflammation, and cancer. Cell. 2010;140(6):883–99. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.cell.2010.01.025.
15. Dinarello CA. Immunological and inflammatory functions of the interleukin-1 family. Annu Rev Immunol. 2009;27:519–50. https://doi.org/10.1146/annurev.immunol.021908.132612.
16. Novick D, Kim S, Kaplanski G, Dinarello CA. Interleukin-18, more than a Th1 cytokine. Semin Immunol. 2013;25(6):439–48. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.smim.2013.10.014.
17. Drexler SK, Yazdi AS. Complex roles of inflammasomes in carcinogenesis. Cancer J Sudbury Mass. 2013;19:468–72. https://doi.org/10.1097/PPO.0000000000000004.
18. Rider P, Carmi Y, Guttman O, Braiman A, Cohen I, Voronov E, et al. IL-1α and IL-1β recruit different myeloid cells and promote different stages of sterile inflammation. J Immunol. 2011;187:4835–43. https://doi.org/10.4049/jimmunol.1102048.
19. Gross O, Thomas CJ, Guarda G, Tschopp J. The inflammasome: an integrated view. Immunol Rev. 2011;243:136–51. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1600-065X.2011.01046.x.
20. Stutz A, Horvath GL, Monks BG, Latz E. ASC speck formation as a readout for inflammasome activation. Methods Mol Biol. 2013;1040:91–101. https://doi.org/10.1007/978-1-62703-523-1_8.
21. Rathinam VAK, Vanaja SK, Fitzgerald KA. Regulation of inflammasome signaling. Nat Immunol. 2012;13:333–2. https://doi.org/10.1038/ni.2237.
22. Schroder K, Tschopp J. The inflammasomes. Cell. 2010;140:821–32. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.cell.2010.01.040.
23. Levy M, Thaiss CA, Zeevi D, Dohnalova L, Zilberman-Schapira G, Mahdi JA, et al. Microbiota-modulated metabolites shape the intestinal microenvironment by regulating NLRP6 inflammasome signaling. Cell. 2015;163:1428–43. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.cell.2015.10.048.
24. Hu B, Elinav E, Huber S, Booth CJ, Strowig T, Jin C, et al. Inflammation-induced tumorigenesis in the colon is regulated by caspase-1 and NLRC4. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2010;107(50):21635–40. https://doi.org/10.1073/pnas.1016814108.
25. Vladimer GI, Weng D, Paquette SW, Vanaja SK, Rathinam VA, Aune MH, et al. The NLRP12 inflammasome recognizes Yersinia pestis. Immunity. 2012;37(1):96–107. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.immuni.2012.07.006.
26. Ataide MA, Andrade WA, Zamboni DS, Wang D, Souza Mdo C, Franklin BS, et al. Malaria-induced NLRP12/NLRP3-dependent caspase-1 activation mediates inflammation and hypersensitivity to bacterial superinfection. PLoS Pathog. 2014;10(1):e1003885. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.ppat.1003885.
27. Kantono M, Guo B. Inflammasomes and cancer: the dynamic role of the inflammasome in tumor development. Front Immunol. 2017;8:1132. https://doi.org/10.3389/fimmu.2017.01132.
28. Lin C, Zhang J. Inflammasomes in inflammation induced cancer. Front Immunol. 2017;8:271. https://doi.org/10.3389/fimmu.2017.00271.
29. Sharma D, Kanneganti TD. The cell biology of inflammasomes: mechanisms of inflammasome activation and regulation. J Cell Biol. 2016;213(6):617–29. https://doi.org/10.1083/jcb.201602089.
30. Guo H, Callaway JB, Ting JP. Inflammasomes: mechanism of action, role in disease, and therapeutics. Nat Med. 2015;21(7):677–87. https://doi.org/10.1038/nm.3893.
31. Gaidt MM, Ebert TS, Chauhan D, Schmidt T, Schmid-Burgk JL, Rapino F, et al. Human monocytes engage an alternative inflammasome pathway. Immunity. 2016;44(4):833–46. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.immuni.2016.01.012.
32. Lamkanfi M, Dixit VM. Inflammasomes and their roles in health and disease. Annu Rev Cell Dev Biol. 2012;28:137–61. https://doi.org/10.1146/annurev-cellbio-101011-155745.
33. Liu X, Zhang Z, Ruan J, Pan Y, Magupalli VG, Wu H, et al. Inflammasome-activated gasdermin D causes pyroptosis by forming membrane pores. Nature. 2016;535(7610):153–8. https://doi.org/10.1038/nature18629.
34. Viganò E, Mortellaro A. Caspase-11: the driving factor for noncanonical inflammasomes. Eur J Immunol. 2013;43:2240–5. https://doi.org/10.1002/eji.201343800.
35. Dupaul-Chicoine J, Saleh M. A new path to IL-1β production controlled by caspase-8. Nat Immunol. 2012;13:211–2. https://doi.org/10.1038/ni.2241.
36. Kayagaki N, Warming S, Lamkanfi M, Vande Walle L, Louie S, Dong J, et al. Non-canonical inflammasome activation targets caspase-11. Nature. 2011;479:117–21. https://doi.org/10.1038/nature10558.
37. Kaiser WJ, Upton JW, Long AB, Livingston-Rosanoff D, Daley-Bauer LP, Hakem R, et al. RIP3 mediates the embryonic lethality of caspase-8-deficient mice. Nature. 2011;471:368–72. https://doi.org/10.1038/nature09857.
38. Oberst A, Green DR. It cuts both ways: reconciling the dual roles of caspase 8 in cell death and survival. Nat Rev Mol Cell Biol. 2011;12:757–63. https://doi.org/10.1038/nrm3214.
39. Gurung P, Anand PK, Malireddi RKS, Vande Walle L, Van Opdenbosch N, Dillon CP, et al. FADD and Caspase-8 mediate priming and activation of the canonical and noncanonical Nlrp3 inflammasomes. J Immunol. 2014;192(4):1835–46. https://doi.org/10.4049/jimmunol.1302839.
40. Antonopoulos C, El Sanadi C, Kaiser WJ, Mocarski ES, Dubyak GR. Proapoptotic chemotherapeutic drugs induce noncanonical processing and release of IL-1β via caspase-8 in dendritic cells. J Immunol. 2013;191:4789–803. https://doi.org/10.4049/jimmunol.1300645.

41. Dinarello CA. Why not treat human cancer with interleukin-1 blockade? Cancer Metastasis Rev. 2010;29:317–29. https://doi.org/10.1007/s10555-010-9229-0.
42. Hoesel B, Schmid JA. The complexity of NF-κB signaling in inflammation and cancer. Mol Cancer. 2013;12:86. https://doi.org/10.1186/1476-4598-12-86.
43. Hai Ping P, Feng Bo T, Li L, Nan Hui Y, Hong Z. IL-1β/NF-kb signaling promotes colorectal cancer cell growth through miR-181a/PTEN axis. Arch Biochem Biophys. 2016;604:20–6. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.abb.2016.06.001.
44. Shibata W, Takaishi S, Muthupalani S, Pritchard DM, Whary MT, Rogers AB, et al. Conditional deletion of IkappaB-kinase-beta accelerates helicobacter-dependent gastric apoptosis, proliferation, and preneoplasia. Gastroenterology. 2010;138:1022–34. https://doi.org/10.1053/j.gastro.2009.11.054.
45. Grivennikov SI, Karin M. Inflammation and oncogenesis: a vicious connection. Curr Opin Genet Dev. 2010;20:65–71. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.gde.2009.11.004.
46. Corcoran RB, Contino G, Deshpande V, Tzatsos A, Conrad C, Benes CH, et al. STAT3 plays a critical role in KRAS-induced pancreatic tumorigenesis. Cancer Res. 2011;71:5020–9. https://doi.org/10.1158/0008-5472.CAN-11-0908.
47. Ernst M, Putoczki TL. Stat3: linking inflammation to (gastrointestinal) tumourigenesis. Clin Exp Pharmacol Physiol. 2012;39:711–8. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1440-1681.2011.05659.x.
48. Kim B, Lee Y, Kim E, Kwak A, Ryoo S, Bae SH, et al. The interleukin-1α precursor is biologically active and is likely a key alarmin in the IL-1 family of cytokines. Front Immunol. 2013;4:391. https://doi.org/10.3389/fimmu.2013.00391.
49. Colotta F, Allavena P, Sica A, Garlanda C, Mantovani A. Cancer-related inflammation, the seventh hallmark of cancer: links to genetic instability. Carcinogenesis. 2009;30:1073–81. https://doi.org/10.1093/carcin/bgp127.
50. Rakoff-Nahoum S, Medzhitov R. Regulation of spontaneous intestinal tumorigenesis through the adaptor protein MyD88. Science. 2007;317:124–7. https://doi.org/10.1126/science.1140488.
51. Cataisson C, Salcedo R, Hakim S, Moffitt BA, Wright L, Yi M, et al. IL-1R-MyD88 signaling in keratinocyte transformation and carcinogenesis. J Exp Med. 2012;209:1689–702. https://doi.org/10.1084/jem.20101355.
52. Sakurai T, He G, Matsuzawa A, Yu GY, Maeda S, Hardiman G, et al. Hepatocyte necrosis induced by oxidative stress and IL-1 alpha release mediate carcinogen-induced compensatory proliferation and liver tumorigenesis. Cancer Cell. 2008;14:156–65. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ccr.2008.06.016.
53. Forte G, Rega A, Morello S, Luciano A, Arra C, Pinto A, et al. Polyinosinic-polycytidylic acid limits tumor outgrowth in a mouse model of metastatic lung cancer. J Immunol. 2012;188:5357–64. https://doi.org/10.4049/jimmunol.1103811.
54. Rega A, Terlizzi M, Luciano A, Forte G, Crother TR, Arra C, et al. Plasmacytoid dendritic cells play a key role in tumor progression in lipopolysaccharide-stimulated lung tumor-bearing mice. J Immunol. 2013;190:2391–402. https://doi.org/10.4049/jimmunol.1202086.
55. Hasan UA, Caux C, Perrot I, Doffin AC, Menetrier-Caux C, Trinchieri G, et al. Cell proliferation and survival induced by Toll-like receptors is antagonized by type I IFNs. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2007;104:8047–52. https://doi.org/10.1073/pnas.0700664104.
56. Huang L, Li L, Lemos H, Chandler PR, Pacholczyk G, Baban B, et al. Cutting edge: DNA sensing via the STING adaptor in myeloid dendritic cells induces potent tolerogenic responses. J Immunol. 2013;191:3509–13. https://doi.org/10.4049/jimmunol.1301419.
57. Kayagaki N, Wong MT, Stowe IB, Ramani SR, Gonzalez LC, Akashi-Takamura S, et al. Noncanonical inflammasome activation by intracellular LPS independent of TLR4. Science. 2013;341:1246–9. https://doi.org/10.1126/science.1240248.
58. Latz E, Xiao TS, Stutz A. Activation and regulation of the inflammasomes. Nat Rev Immunol. 2013;13:397–411. https://doi.org/10.1038/nri3452.
59. Ghiringhelli F, Apetoh L, Tesniere A, Aymeric L, Ma Y, Ortiz C, et al. Activation of the NLRP3 inflammasome in dendritic cells induces IL-1beta-dependent adaptive immunity against tumors. Nat Med. 2009;15:1170–8. https://doi.org/10.1038/nm.2028.
60. Gehrke N, Mertens C, Zillinger T, Wenzel J, Bald T, Zahn S, et al. Oxidative damage of DNA confers resistance to cytosolic nuclease TREX1 degradation and potentiates STING-dependent immune sensing. Immunity. 2013;39:482–95. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.immuni.2013.08.004.
61. Stewart CA, Metheny H, Iida N, Smith L, Hanson M, Steinhagen F, et al. Interferon-dependent IL-10 production by Tregs limits tumor Th17 inflammation. J Clin Invest. 2013;123(11):4859–74. https://doi.org/10.1172/JCI65180.
62. Verma D, Bivik C, Farahani E, Synnerstad I, Fredrikson M, Enerbäck C, et al. Inflammasome polymorphisms confer susceptibility to sporadic malignant melanoma. Pigment Cell Melanoma Res. 2012;25:506–13. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1755-148X.2012.01008.x.
63. Ungerbäck J, Belenki D, Jawad ul-Hassan A, Fredrikson M, Fransén K, Elander N, et al. Genetic variation and alterations of genes involved in NFκB/TNFAIP3- and NLRP3-inflammasome signaling affect susceptibility and outcome of colorectal cancer. Carcinogenesis. 2012;33:2126–34. https://doi.org/10.1093/carcin/bgs256.

64. Voronov E, Dotan S, Krelin Y, Song X, Elkabets M, Carmi Y, et al. Unique versus redundant functions of IL-1α and IL-1β in the tumor microenvironment. Front Immunol. 2013;4:177. https://doi.org/10.3389/fimmu.2013.00177.
65. Girardelli M, Maestri I, Rinaldi RR, Tognon M, Boldorini R, Bovenzi M, et al. NLRP1 polymorphisms in patients with asbestos-associated mesothelioma. Infect Agent Cancer. 2012;7:25. https://doi.org/10.1186/1750-9378-7-25.
66. Dinarello CA. Interleukin-1beta and the autoinflammatory diseases. N Engl J Med. 2009;360:2467–70. https://doi.org/10.1056/NEJMe0811014.
67. Chow MT, Sceneay J, Paget C, Wong CSF, Duret H, Tschopp J, et al. NLRP3 suppresses NK cell-mediated responses to carcinogen-induced tumors and metastases. Cancer Res. 2012;72:5721–32. https://doi.org/10.1158/0008-5472.CAN-12-0509.
68. Daley D, Mani VR, Mohan N, Akkad N, Pandian GSDB, Savadkar S, et al. NLRP3 signaling drives macrophage-induced adaptive immune suppression in pancreatic carcinoma. J Exp Med. 2017;214(6):1711–24. https://doi.org/10.1084/jem.20161707.
69. Sayan M, Mossman BT. The NLRP3 inflammasome in pathogenic particle and fibre-associated lung inflammation and diseases. Part Fibre Toxicol. 2016;13(1):51. https://doi.org/10.1186/s12989-016-0162-4.
70. Balmes JR. Asbestos and lung cancer: what we know. Am J Respir Crit Care Med. 2013;188:8–9. https://doi.org/10.1164/rccm.201305-0885ED.
71. Dostert C, Pétrilli V, Van Bruggen R, Steele C, Mossman BT, Tschopp J. Innate immune activation through Nalp3 inflammasome sensing of asbestos and silica. Science. 2008;320:674–7. https://doi.org/10.1126/science.1156995.
72. Colarusso C, Terlizzi M, Molino A, Pinto A, Sorrentino R. Role of the inflammasome in chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD). Oncotarget. 2017;8(47):81813–24. https://doi.org/10.18632/oncotarget.17850.
73. Nakahira K, Haspel JA, Rathinam VAK, Lee SJ, Dolinay T, Lam HC, et al. Autophagy proteins regulate innate immune responses by inhibiting the release of mitochondrial DNA mediated by the NALP3 inflammasome. Nat Immunol. 2011;12:222–30. https://doi.org/10.1038/ni.1980.
74. Shimada K, Crother TR, Karlin J, Dagvadorj J, Chiba N, Chen S, et al. Oxidized mitochondrial DNA activates the NLRP3 inflammasome during apoptosis. Immunity. 2012;36:401–14. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.immuni.2012.01.009.
75. Kamp DW, Shacter E, Weitzman SA. Chronic inflammation and cancer: the role of the mitochondria. Oncology. 2011;25(5):400–10.
76. Barbi de Moura M, Vincent G, Fayewicz SL, Bateman NW, Hood BL, Sun M, et al. Mitochondrial respiration--an important therapeutic target in melanoma. PLoS One. 2012;7(8):e40690. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0040690.
77. Tomasetti M, Neuzil J, Dong L. MicroRNAs as regulators of mitochondrial function: role in cancer suppression. Biochim Biophys Acta. 2014;1840(4):1441–53. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.bbagen.2013.09.002.
78. Xiao K, Jiang J, Wang W, Cao S, Zhu L, Zeng H, et al. Sirt3 is a tumor suppressor in lung adenocarcinoma cells. Oncol Rep. 2013;30:1323–8. https://doi.org/10.3892/or.2013.2604.
79. Guo B, Fu S, Zhang J, Liu B, Li Z. Targeting inflammasome/IL-1 pathways for cancer immunotherapy. Sci Rep. 2016;6:36107. https://doi.org/10.1038/srep36107.
80. Allen IC, TeKippe EM, Woodford RMT, Uronis JM, Holl EK, Rogers AB, et al. The NLRP3 inflammasome functions as a negative regulator of tumorigenesis during colitis-associated cancer. J Exp Med. 2010;207:1045–56. https://doi.org/10.1084/jem.20100050.
81. Wei Q, Mu K, Li T, Zhang Y, Yang Z, Jia X, et al. Deregulation of the NLRP3 inflammasome in hepatic parenchymal cells during liver cancer progression. Lab Investig. 2014;94(1):52–62. https://doi.org/10.1038/labinvest.2013.126.
82. Xu Y, Li H, Chen W, Yao X, Xing Y, Wang X, et al. Mycoplasma hyorhinis activates the NLRP3 inflammasome and promotes migration and invasion of gastric cancer cells. PLoS One. 2013;8(11):e77955. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0077955.
83. Karan D, Tawfik O, Dubey S. Expression analysis of inflammasome sensors and implication of NLRP12 inflammasome in prostate cancer. Sci Rep. 2017;7(1):4378. https://doi.org/10.1038/s41598-017-04286-4.
84. Drexler SK, Bonsignore L, Masin M, Tardivel A, Jackstadt R, Hermeking H, et al. Tissue-specific opposing functions of the inflammasome adaptor ASC in the regulation of epithelial skin carcinogenesis. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2012;109(45):18384–9. https://doi.org/10.1073/pnas.1209171109.
85. Karki R, Man SM, Kanneganti TD. Inflammasomes and cancer. Cancer Immunol Res. 2017;5(2):94–9. https://doi.org/10.1158/2326-6066.CIR-16-0269.
86. Van Deventer HW, Burgents JE, Wu QP, Woodford RMT, Brickey WJ, Allen IC, et al. The inflammasome component NLRP3 impairs antitumor vaccine by enhancing the accumulation of tumor-associated myeloid-derived suppressor cells. Cancer Res. 2010;70:10161–9. https://doi.org/10.1158/0008-5472.CAN-10-1921.
87. Bruchard M, Mignot G, Derangère V, Chalmin F, Chevriaux A, Végran F, et al. Chemotherapy-triggered cathepsin B release in myeloid-derived suppressor cells activates the Nlrp3 inflammasome and promotes tumor growth. Nat Med. 2013;19:57–64. https://doi.org/10.1038/nm.2999.

88. Bauernfeind F, Hornung V. Of inflammasomes and pathogens--sensing of microbes by the inflammasome. EMBO Mol Med. 2013;5:814–26. https://doi.org/10.1002/emmm.201201771.
89. Garaude J, Kent A, van Rooijen N, Blander JM. Simultaneous targeting of toll- and nod-like receptors induces effective tumor-specific immune responses. Sci Transl Med. 2012;4(120):120ra16. https://doi.org/10.1126/scitranslmed.3002868.
90. Kolb R, Phan L, Borcherding N, Liu Y, Yuan F, Janowski AM, et al. Obesity-associated NLRC4 inflammasome activation drives breast cancer progression. Nat Commun. 2016;7:13007. https://doi.org/10.1038/ncomms13007.
91. Allen IC, Wilson JE, Schneider M, Lich JD, Roberts RA, Arthur JC, et al. NLRP12 suppresses colon inflammation and tumorigenesis through the negative regulation of non-canonical NF-? B signaling and MAP kinase activation. Immunity. 2012;36:742–54. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.immuni.2012.03.012.
92. Zaki MH, Vogel P, Malireddi RKS, Body-Malapel M, Anand PK, Bertin J, et al. The NOD-like receptor NLRP12 attenuates colon inflammation and tumorigenesis. Cancer Cell. 2011;20:649–60. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ccr.2011.10.022.
93. Zhong FL, Mamaï O, Sborgi L, Boussofara L, Hopkins R, Robinson K, et al. Germline NLRP1 mutations cause skin inflammatory and cancer susceptibility syndromes via inflammasome activation. Cell. 2016;167(1):187–202. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.cell.2016.09.001.
94. Williams TM, Leeth RA, Rothschild DE, Coutermarsh-Ott SL, McDaniel DK, Simmons AE, et al. The NLRP1 inflammasome attenuates colitis and colitis-associated tumorigenesis. J Immunol. 2015;194(7):3369–80. https://doi.org/10.4049/jimmunol.1402098.
95. Man SM, Zhu Q, Zhu L, Liu Z, Karki R, Malik A, et al. Critical role for the DNA sensor AIM2 in stem cell proliferation and cancer. Cell. 2015;162(1):45–58. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.cell.2015.06.001.
96. Ma X, Guo P, Qiu Y, Mu K, Zhu L, Zhao W, et al. Loss of AIM2 expression promotes hepatocarcinoma progression through activation of mTOR-S6K1 pathway. Oncotarget. 2016;7(24):36185–97. https://doi.org/10.18632/oncotarget.9154.
97. Chen IF, Ou-Yang F, Hung JY, Liu JC, Wang H, Wang SC, et al. AIM2 suppresses human breast cancer cell proliferation in vitro and mammary tumor growth in a mouse model. Mol Cancer Ther. 2006;5:1–7. https://doi.org/10.1158/1535-7163.MCT-05-0310.
98. Ponomareva L, Liu H, Duan X, Dickerson E, Shen H, Panchanathan R, et al. AIM2, an IFN-inducible cytosolic DNA sensor, in the development of benign prostate hyperplasia and prostate cancer. Mol Cancer Res. 2013;11(10):1193–202. https://doi.org/10.1158/1541-7786.MCR-13-0145.
99. Farshchian M, Nissinen L, Siljamäki E, Riihilä P, Piipponen M, Kivisaari A, et al. Tumor cell-specific AIM2 regulates growth and invasion of cutaneous squamous cell carcinoma. Oncotarget. 2017;8(28):45825–36. https://doi.org/10.18632/oncotarget.17573.
100. Sorrentino R, Terlizzi M, Di Crescenzo VG, Popolo A, Pecoraro M, Perillo G, et al. Human lung cancer-derived immunosuppressive plasmacytoid dendritic cells release IL-1α in an AIM2 inflammasome-dependent manner. Am J Pathol. 2015;185(11):3115–24. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ajpath.2015.07.009.
101. Terlizzi M, Popolo A, Pinto A, Sorrentino R. Plasmacytoid dendritic cells contribute to doxorubicin-induced tumor arrest in a mouse model of pulmonary metastasis. J Immunother. 2014;37(4):214–24. https://doi.org/10.1097/CJI.0000000000000026.
102. Van den Berghe W, Vermeulen L, De Wilde G, De Bosscher K, Boone E, Haegeman G. Signal transduction by tumor necrosis factor and gene regulation of the inflammatory cytokine interleukin-6. Biochem Pharmacol. 2000;60:1185–95.
103. Park EJ, Lee JH, Yu GY, He G, Ali SR, Holzer RG, et al. Dietary and genetic obesity promote liver inflammation and tumorigenesis by enhancing IL-6 and TNF expression. Cell. 2010;140:197–208. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.cell.2009.12.052.
104. Dinarello CA. Overview of the interleukin-1 family of ligands and receptors. Semin Immunol. 2013;25(6):389–93. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.smim.2013.10.001.
105. Guma M, Ronacher L, Liu-Bryan R, Takai S, Karin M, Corr M. Caspase 1-independent activation of interleukin-1beta in neutrophil-predominant inflammation. Arthritis Rheum. 2009;60:3642–50. https://doi.org/10.1002/art.24959.
106. Joosten LAB, Netea MG, Fantuzzi G, Koenders MI, Helsen MMA, Sparrer H, et al. Inflammatory arthritis in caspase 1 gene-deficient mice: contribution of proteinase 3 to caspase 1-independent production of bioactive interleukin-1beta. Arthritis Rheum. 2009;60:3651–62. https://doi.org/10.1002/art.25006.
107. Bossaller L, Chiang PI, Schmidt-Lauber C, Ganesan S, Kaiser WJ, Rathinam VAK, et al. Cutting edge: FAS (CD95) mediates noncanonical IL-1β and IL-18 maturation via caspase-8 in an RIP3-independent manner. J Immunol. 2012;189:5508–12. https://doi.org/10.4049/jimmunol.1202121.
108. Joosten LAB, Netea MG, Dinarello CA. Interleukin-1β in innate inflammation, autophagy and immunity. Semin Immunol. 2013;25(6):416–24. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.smim.2013.10.018.
109. Grivennikov SI, Karin M. Inflammatory cytokines in cancer: tumour necrosis factor and interleukin 6 take the stage. Ann Rheum Dis. 2011;70(Suppl 1):i104–8. https://doi.org/10.1136/ard.2010.140145.
110. Waters JP, Pober JS, Bradley JR. Tumour necrosis factor and cancer. J Pathol. 2013;230:241–8. https://doi.org/10.1002/path.4188.

111. Sade-Feldman M, Kanterman J, Ish-Shalom E, Elnekave M, Horwitz E, Baniyash M. Tumor necrosis factor-α blocks differentiation and enhances suppressive activity of immature myeloid cells during chronic inflammation. Immunity. 2013;38:541–54. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.immuni.2013.02.007.
112. Kimura YN, Watari K, Fotovati A, Hosoi F, Yasumoto K, Izumi H, et al. Inflammatory stimuli from macrophages and cancer cells synergistically promote tumor growth and angiogenesis. Cancer Sci. 2007;98:2009–18. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1349-7006.2007.00633.x.
113. Lust JA, Lacy MQ, Zeldenrust SR, Dispenzieri A, Gertz MA, Witzig TE, et al. Induction of a chronic disease state in patients with smoldering or indolent multiple myeloma by targeting interleukin 1{beta}-induced interleukin 6 production and the myeloma proliferative component. Mayo Clin Proc. 2009;84:114–22. https://doi.org/10.4065/84.2.114.
114. Terlizzi M, Colarusso C, Popolo A, Pinto A, Sorrentino R. IL-1α and IL-1β-producing macrophages populate lung tumor lesions in mice. Oncotarget. 2016;7(36):58181–92. https://doi.org/10.18632/oncotarget.11276.
115. Terlizzi M, Di Crescenzo VG, Perillo G, Galderisi A, Pinto A, Sorrentino R. Pharmacological inhibition of caspase-8 limits lung tumour outgrowth. Br J Pharmacol. 2015;172(15):3917–28. https://doi.org/10.1111/bph.13176.
116. Terme M, Ullrich E, Aymeric L, Meinhardt K, Desbois M, Delahaye N, et al. IL-18 induces PD-1-dependent immunosuppression in cancer. Cancer Res. 2011;71:5393–9. https://doi.org/10.1158/0008-5472.CAN-11-0993.
117. Carbone A, Vizio B, Novarino A, Mauri FA, Geuna M, Robino C, et al. IL-18 paradox in pancreatic carcinoma: elevated serum levels of free IL-18 are correlated with poor survival. J Immunother. 2009;32(9):920–31. https://doi.org/10.1097/CJI.0b013e3181b29168.
118. Salcedo R, Cataisson C, Hasan U, Yuspa SH, Trinchieri G. MyD88 and its divergent toll in carcinogenesis. Trends Immunol. 2013;34:379–89. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.it.2013.03.008.
119. Salcedo R, Worschech A, Cardone M, Jones Y, Gyulai Z, Dai RM, et al. MyD88-mediated signaling prevents development of adenocarcinomas of the colon: role of interleukin 18. J Exp Med. 2010;207(8):1625–36. https://doi.org/10.1084/jem.20100199.
120. Rider P, Carmi Y, Voronov E, Apte RN. Interleukin-1α. Semin Immunol. 2013;25(6):430–8. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.smim.2013.10.005.
121. Di Paolo NC, Shayakhmetov DM. Interleukin-1 receptor 2 keeps the lid on interleukin-1α. Immunity. 2013;38:203–5. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.immuni.2013.02.001.
122. Afonina IS, Tynan GA, Logue SE, Cullen SP, Bots M, Lüthi AU, et al. Granzyme B-dependent proteolysis acts as a switch to enhance the proinflammatory activity of IL-1α. Mol Cell. 2011;44:265–78. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.molcel.2011.07.037.
123. Arwert EN, Lal R, Quist S, Rosewell I, van Rooijen N, Watt FM. Tumor formation initiated by nondividing epidermal cells via an inflammatory infiltrate. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2010;107(46):19903–8. https://doi.org/10.1073/pnas.1007404107.
124. Liang B, Chen R, Wang T, Cao L, Liu Y, Yin F, et al. Myeloid differentiation factor 88 promotes growth and metastasis of human hepatocellular carcinoma. Clin Cancer Res. 2013;19(11):2905–16. https://doi.org/10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-12-1245.
125. Tjomsland V, Bojmar L, Sandström P, Bratthäll C, Messmer D, Spångeus A, et al. IL-1α expression in pancreatic ductal adenocarcinoma affects the tumor cell migration and is regulated by the p38MAPK signaling pathway. PLoS One. 2013;8(8):e70874. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0070874.
126. Gong Z, Ma J, Su H, Guo T, Cai H, Chen Q, et al. Interleukin-1 receptor antagonist inhibits angiogenesis in gastric cancer. Int J Clin Oncol. 2018;23(4):659–70. https://doi.org/10.1007/s10147-018-1242-2.
127. Wasmer MH, Krebs P. The role of IL-33-dependent inflammation in the tumor microenvironment. Front Immunol. 2017;7:682. https://doi.org/10.3389/fimmu.2016.00682.
128. Lu B, Yang M, Wang Q. Interleukin-33 in tumorigenesis, tumor immune evasion, and cancer immunotherapy. J Mol Med. 2016;94(5):535–43. https://doi.org/10.1007/s00109-016-1397-0.
129. Chen SF, Nieh S, Jao SW, Wu MZ, Liu CL, Chang YC, et al. The paracrine effect of cancer-associated fibroblast-induced interleukin-33 regulates the invasiveness of head and neck squamous cell carcinoma. J Pathol. 2013;231(2):180–9. https://doi.org/10.1002/path.4226.
130. Wang C, Chen Z, Bu X, Han Y, Shan S, Ren T, et al. IL-33 signaling fuels outgrowth and metastasis of human lung cancer. Biochem Biophys Res Commun. 2016;479(3):461–8. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.bbrc.2016.09.081.
131. Jovanovic IP, Pejnovic NN, Radosavljevic GD, Pantic JM, Milovanovic MZ, Arsenijevic NN, et al. Interleukin-33/ST2 axis promotes breast cancer growth and metastases by facilitating intratumoral accumulation of immunosuppressive and innate lymphoid cells. Int J Cancer. 2014;134(7):1669–82. https://doi.org/10.1002/ijc.28481.
132. Bergis D, Kassis V, Ranglack A, Koeberle V, Piiper A, Kronenberger B, et al. High serum levels of the interleukin-33 receptor soluble ST2 as a negative prognostic factor in hepatocellular carcinoma. Transl Oncol. 2013;6(3):311–8.
133. Yu XX, Hu Z, Shen X, Dong LY, Zhou WZ, Hu WH. IL-33 promotes gastric cancer cell invasion and migration via ST2-ERK1/2 pathway. Dig Dis Sci. 2015;60(5):1265–72. https://doi.org/10.1007/s10620-014-3463-1.

134. Lamkanfi M. Emerging inflammasome effector mechanisms. Nat Rev Immunol. 2011;11(3):213–20. https://doi.org/10.1038/nri2936.
135. Keller M, Rüegg A, Werner S, Beer HD. Active caspase-1 is a regulator of unconventional protein secretion. Cell. 2008;132:818–31. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.cell.2007.12.040.
136. Lamkanfi M, Sarkar A, Vande Walle L, Vitari AC, Amer AO, Wewers MD, et al. Inflammasome-dependent release of the alarmin HMGB1 in endotoxemia. J Immunol. 2010;185:4385–92. https://doi.org/10.4049/jimmunol.1000803.
137. Petes C, Wynick C, Guzzo C, Mehta D, Logan S, Banfield BW, et al. IL-27 enhances LPS-induced IL-1β in human monocytes and murine macrophages. J Leukoc Biol. 2017;102(1):83–94. https://doi.org/10.1189/jlb.3A0316-098R.
138. Fabbi M, Carbotti G, Ferrini S. Dual roles of IL-27 in cancer biology and immunotherapy. Mediat Inflamm. 2017;2017:3958069. https://doi.org/10.1155/2017/3958069.
139. Diakowska D, Lewandowski A, Markocka-Maczka K, Grabowski K. Concentration of serum interleukin-27 increase in patients with lymph node metastatic gastroesophageal cancer. Adv Clin Exp Med. 2013;22(5):683–91.
140. Lu D, Zhou X, Yao L, Liu C, Jin F, Wu Y. Clinical implications of the interleukin 27 serum level in breast cancer. J Investig Med. 2014;62(3):627–31. https://doi.org/10.2310/JIM.0000000000000046.
141. Gonin J, Carlotti A, Dietrich C, Caignard A, Avril MF, Vacher-Lavenu MC, et al. Expression of IL-27 by tumor cells in invasive cutaneous and metastatic melanomas. PLoS ONE. 2013;8(10):e75694. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0075694.
142. Jia H, Dilger P, Bird C, Wadhwa M. IL-27 promotes proliferation of human leukemic cell lines through the MAPK/ERK signaling pathway and suppresses sensitivity to chemotherapeutic drugs. J Interferon Cytokine Res. 2016;36(5):302–16. https://doi.org/10.1089/jir.2015.0091.
143. Ding VA, Zhu Z, Xiao H, Wakefield MR, Bai Q, Fang Y. The role of IL-37 in cancer. Med Oncol. 2016;33(7):68. https://doi.org/10.1007/s12032-016-0782-4.
144. Nold MF, Nold-Petry CA, Zepp JA, Palmer BE, Bufler P, Dinarello CA. IL-37 is a fundamental inhibitor of innate immunity. Nat Immunol. 2010;11(11):1014–22. https://doi.org/10.1038/ni.1944.
145. Zhao JJ, Pan Q-Z, Pan K, Weng DS, Wang QJ, Li JJ, et al. Interleukin-37 mediates the antitumor activity in hepatocellular carcinoma: role for CD57+ NK cells. Sci Rep. 2014;4:5177. https://doi.org/10.1038/srep05177.
146. Jiang Y, Wang Y, Liang L, Gao Y, Chen J, Sun Y, et al. IL-37 mediates the antitumor activity in renal cell carcinoma. Med Oncol. 2015;32(11):1–10. https://doi.org/10.1007/s12032-015-0695-7.
147. Ge G, Wang A, Yang J, Chen Y, Yang J, Li Y, et al. Interleukin-37 suppresses tumor growth through inhibition of angiogenesis in non-small cell lung cancer. J Exp Clin Cancer Res. 2016;35(1):1. https://doi.org/10.1186/s13046-016-0293-3.
148. Zychlinsky A, Prevost MC, Sansonetti PJ. Shigella flexneri induces apoptosis in infected macrophages. Nature. 1992;358(6382):167–9. https://doi.org/10.1038/358167a0.
149. Pizato N, Luzete BC, Kiffer LFMV, Corrêa LH, de Oliveira SI, Assumpção JAF, et al. Omega-3 docosahexaenoic acid induces pyroptosis cell death in triple-negative breast cancer cells. Sci Rep. 2018;8(1):1952. https://doi.org/10.1038/s41598-018-20422-0.
150. Bergsbaken T, Fink SL, Cookson BT. Pyroptosis: host cell death and inflammation. Nat Rev Microbiol. 2009;7(2):99–109. https://doi.org/10.1038/nrmicro2070.
151. Inoue H, Tani K. Multimodal immunogenic cancer cell death as a consequence of anticancer cytotoxic treatments. Cell Death Differ. 2014;21:39–49. https://doi.org/10.1038/cdd.2013.84.
152. Li QX, Liu G, Wong-Staal F. Oncolytic virotherapy as a personalized cancer vaccine. Int J Cancer. 2008;123(3):493–9. https://doi.org/10.1002/ijc.23692.
153. Wang Y, Gao W, Shi X, Ding J, Liu W, He H, et al. Chemotherapy drugs induce pyroptosis through caspase-3 cleavage of a gasdermin. Nature. 2017;547(7661):99–103. https://doi.org/10.1038/nature22393.
154. Martinon F. Signaling by ROS drives inflammasome activation. Eur J Immunol. 2010;40:616–9. https://doi.org/10.1002/eji.200940168.
155. Ogura Y, Sutterwala FS, Flavell RA. The inflammasome: first line of the immune response to cell stress. Cell. 2006;126:659–62. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.cell.2006.08.002.
156. Apetoh L, Ghiringhelli F, Tesniere A, Obeid M, Ortiz C, Criollo A, et al. Toll-like receptor 4-dependent contribution of the immune system to anticancer chemotherapy and radiotherapy. Nat Med. 2007;13(9):1050–9.
157. Kazama H, Ricci JE, Herndon JM, Hoppe G, Green DR, Ferguson TA. Induction of immunological tolerance by apoptotic cells requires caspase-dependent oxidation of high-mobility group box-1 protein. Immunity. 2008;29:21–32. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.immuni.2008.05.013.
158. Nyström S, Antoine DJ, Lundbäck P, Lock JG, Nita AF, Högstrand K, et al. TLR activation regulates damage-associated molecular pattern isoforms released during pyroptosis. EMBO J. 2013;32:86–99. https://doi.org/10.1038/emboj.2012.328.
159. Wang W, Chen D, Jiang M, Xu B, Li X, Chu Y, et al. Downregulation of GSDMD promotes gastric cancer proliferation by regulating cell cycle-related

proteins. J Dig Dis. 2018;19(2):74–83. https://doi.org/10.1111/1751-2980.12576.
160. Chu Q, Jiang Y, Zhang W, Xu C, Du W, Tuguzbaeva G, et al. Pyroptosis is involved in the pathogenesis of human hepatocellular carcinoma. Oncotarget. 2016;7(51):84658–65. https://doi.org/10.18632/oncotarget.12384.
161. Dinarello CA. Interleukin-1 in the pathogenesis and treatment of inflammatory diseases. Blood. 2011;117(14):3720–32. https://doi.org/10.1182/blood-2010-07-273417.
162. Ridker PM, MacFadyen JG, Thuren T, Everett BM, Libby P, Glynn RJ. Effect of interleukin-1β inhibition with canakinumab on incident lung cancer in patients with atherosclerosis: exploratory results from a randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial. Lancet. 2017;390(10105):1833–42. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0140-6736(17)32247-X.
163. Robertson MJ, Kirkwood JM, Logan TF, Koch KM, Kathman S, Kirby LC, et al. A dose-escalation study of recombinant human interleukin-18 using two different schedules of administration in patients with cancer. Clin Cancer Res. 2008;14(11):3462–9. https://doi.org/10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-07-4740.
164. Dinarello CA, Novick D, Kim S, Kaplanski G. Interleukin-18 and IL-18 binding protein. Front Immunol. 2013;4:289. https://doi.org/10.3389/fimmu.2013.00289.
165. McLoed AG, Sherrill TP, Cheng DS, Han W, Saxon JA, Gleaves LA, et al. Neutrophil-derived IL-1β impairs the efficacy of NF-κB inhibitors against lung cancer. Cell Rep. 2016;16(1):120–32. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.celrep.2016.05.085.
166. Sauter KAD, Wood LJ, Wong J, Iordanov M, Magun BE. Doxorubicin and daunorubicin induce processing and release of interleukin-1β through activation of the NLRP3 inflammasome. Cancer Biol Ther. 2011;11(12):1008–16.
167. Naqi N, Ahmad S, Shah I, Khattak J. A multicentre phase-II feasibility study evaluating gemcitabine/vinorelbine/prednisolone combination chemotherapy in relapsed/refractory Hodgkin's lymphoma. J Coll Physicians Surg Pak. 2013;23(6):397–400.
168. Worth LJ, Dooley MJ, Seymour JF, Mileshkin L, Slavin MA, Thursky KA. An analysis of the utilisation of chemoprophylaxis against Pneumocystis jirovecii pneumonia in patients with malignancy receiving corticosteroid therapy at a cancer hospital. Br J Cancer. 2005;92:867–72. https://doi.org/10.1038/sj.bjc.6602412.
169. Kobayashi T, Iijima K, Checkel JL, Kita H. IL-1 family cytokines drive Th2 and Th17 cells to innocuous airborne antigens. Am J Respir Cell Mol Biol. 2013;49:989–98. https://doi.org/10.1165/rcmb.2012-0444OC.
170. Ali S, Nguyen DQ, Falk W, Martin MU. Caspase 3 inactivates biologically active full length interleukin-33 as a classical cytokine but does not prohibit nuclear translocation. Biochem Biophys Res Commun. 2010;391:1512–6. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.bbrc.2009.12.107.

16 Cancer Immunoediting: Immunosurveillance, Immune Equilibrium, and Immune Escape

Alka Bhatia and Yashwant Kumar

Contents

16.1 Introduction

The immune system's regulation of the cancerous process is a long-known fact. However, the role played by it in malignancies has been a matter of debate. The history of cancer immunity dates back to 1909 when Paul Ehrlich proposed the concept of immunosurveillance in cancers for the first time [1]. However, due to lack of experimental evidence, this concept fell into disrepute. In 1957 Burnet and Thomas argued that indeed the immune system fights and eliminates certain cancers and the frequency of malignancy would have been much higher if immunity was not there [2]. In the 1970s, several experiments were conducted in athymic mice to prove immunosurveillance in cancers; however, the results were not as expected, which was thought to be due to the presence of residual immunity in the animals used for these studies [3–5]. Consequently, the experiments done again on animal models with specific molecular immune defects revealed more frequent development of carcinogen-induced

A. Bhatia (✉)
Department of Experimental Medicine and Biotechnology, Post Graduate Institute of Medical Education and Research, Chandigarh, India

Y. Kumar
Department of Immunopathology, Post Graduate Institute of Medical Education and Research, Chandigarh, India

N. Rezaei (ed.), *Cancer Immunology*, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-30845-2_16

tumors in these immunodeficient animals [6]. However, more recently, the recognition of the dual nature of the part played by immune system in malignancies has led to the modern concept of cancer immunoediting. Since then, immunoediting in cancer has served as the foundation stone of most of the work being carried out in cancer immunity [7, 8].

16.2 Cancer Immunoediting with Its Three Es: Reflection of the Dual Role of Immunity in Cancer

The cancer immunoediting theory states that tumors are sculpted by the immune system, resulting in the selective growth of the variants which are better equipped to fight the immune system (Fig. 16.1). This selective growth advantage conferred on tumors is a consequence of a number of genetic and epigenetic events occurring within the tumors. The clue to the tumor-editing role of the immune system came from the experiments of Robert Schreiber's group on spontaneous and 3′-methylcholanthrene (MCA)-induced tumors in 129/SvEv mice (Fig. 16.2) [6]. The concept of immunoediting was introduced by Dunn et al. in 2002 to explain the antitumor as well as pro-tumor features of our immune response at different stages of cancer [3]. Since then, many studies conducted over a period of time have demonstrated the editing of tumors by host adoptive cells, leading to their complete reprogramming. A more recent study has linked processes such as epithelial mesenchymal transition in tumor cells, which result in an invasive phenotype, to the immunoediting process through the involvement of cytokines such as TNF-α and TGF-β [9]. Cancer immunoediting is a broad concept which includes three "Es" of elimination, equilibrium, and escape which together sum up to all the events occurring during an immune response to cancer [3].

16.2.1 Immune Elimination: Evidences for and Against

The immune elimination phase of cancer immunoediting is sine qua non of the original immunosurveillance process. It envisages the destruction or eradication of cancer by the host immune system and is believed to occur when a cell gets transformed by overcoming its intrinsic tumor suppressor mechanisms, before being able to establish a full-blown tumor. Although the existence of such a phenomenon has been hypothesized since long, the early experiments carried out on nude mice models which are only partially immunodeficient failed to prove it. The definitive experimental proof to its presence came from the work of Shankaran et al. in the last decade (Table 16.1, Fig. 16.2) [6]. However, despite the experimental evidence of its presence in mice, it has been difficult to demonstrate it in the clinical scenario. Still, the data obtained from various cancer registries wherein a higher cancer incidence especially of viral etiology has been observed in immunosuppressed transplant recipients suggests its existence in human subjects as well. Currently, a similar trend has been noticed in the setting of acquired immunodeficiency syndrome [13, 14]. The proponents of this stage in cancer immunity state that many of the cell transformation events occurring in our body may be removed quietly by the immune system without us ever being aware about it. Spontaneous regression has been reported in some tumors including cutaneous melanoma, retinoblastoma, osteosarcoma, etc., in humans [15]. Studies have shown that both innate and adaptive immune response contribute to fighting off the cancer from our body.

16.2.1.1 The Key Players in Anticancer Immunity

The key players responsible for launching an effective immune response against cancer include the immune cells and soluble molecules secreted into the tumor milieu (Fig. 16.3). In case the

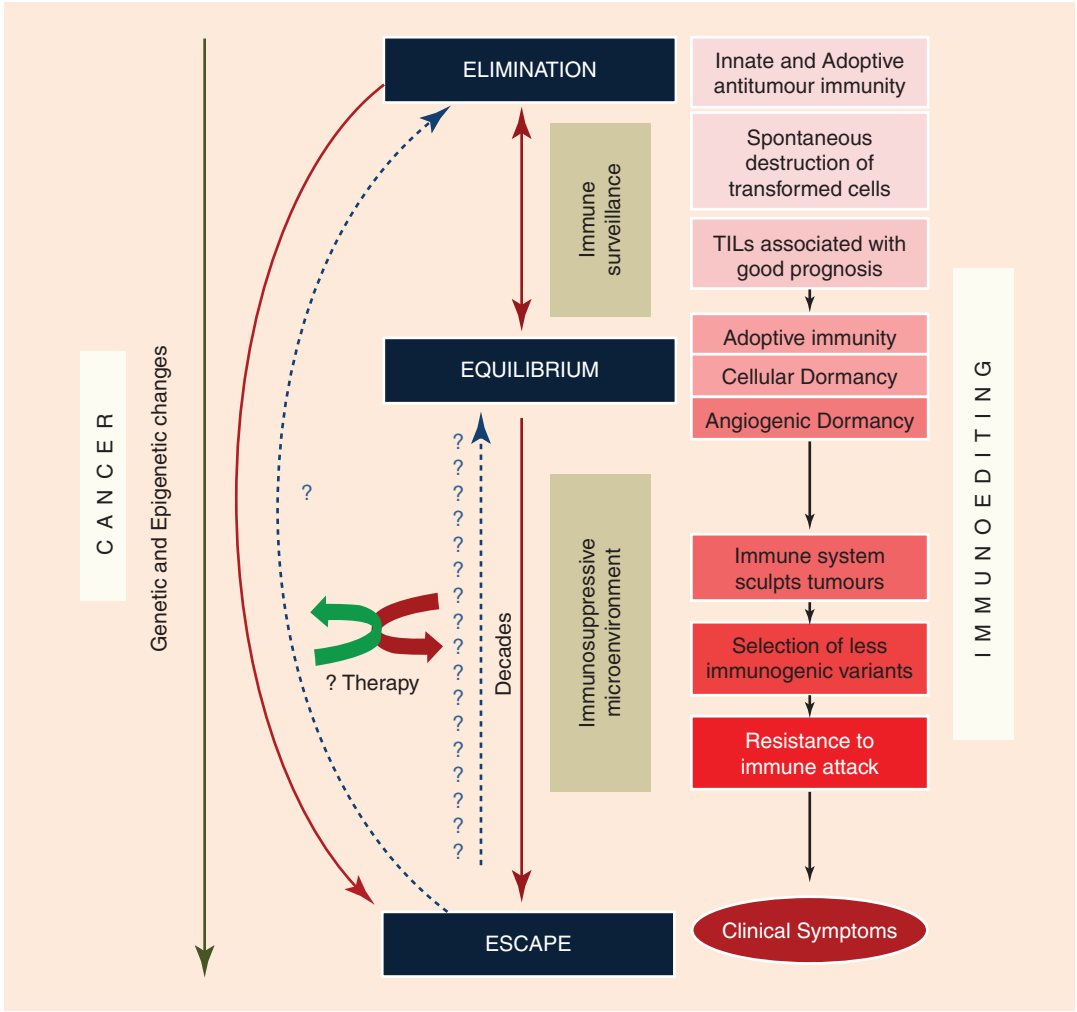


Fig. 16.1 Cancer immunoediting process with its three Es of elimination, equilibrium, and escape. Please note that although in many cases the sequence is followed, in others one or the other phase may be skipped. Although the events from equilibrium phase may proceed either toward escape or back to the elimination phase, the reversibility of the escape phase with or without therapy to other two phases is questionable

tumor exhibits high immunogenicity, a specific immune response occurs against it. However, if tumor immunogenicity is low, the nonspecific effector responses gain importance.

The major cell types involved in an antitumor immune response are adoptive T-cells, which not only kill tumor cells directly with the help of TNF-α but are also essential for the activation of other components of the immune machinery. The $CD8^+$ cytotoxic lymphocytes (CTLs) are able to directly recognize tumor cells which express MHC I and can also be activated by $CD4^+$ T-helper cells. They may cause lysis of the tumor cells via perforin- and granzyme-dependent mechanisms. The $CD4^+$ T-cells also secrete factors to induce proliferation of B-cells and to promote their differentiation to antibody (Ab)-secreting plasma cells. The latter may contribute

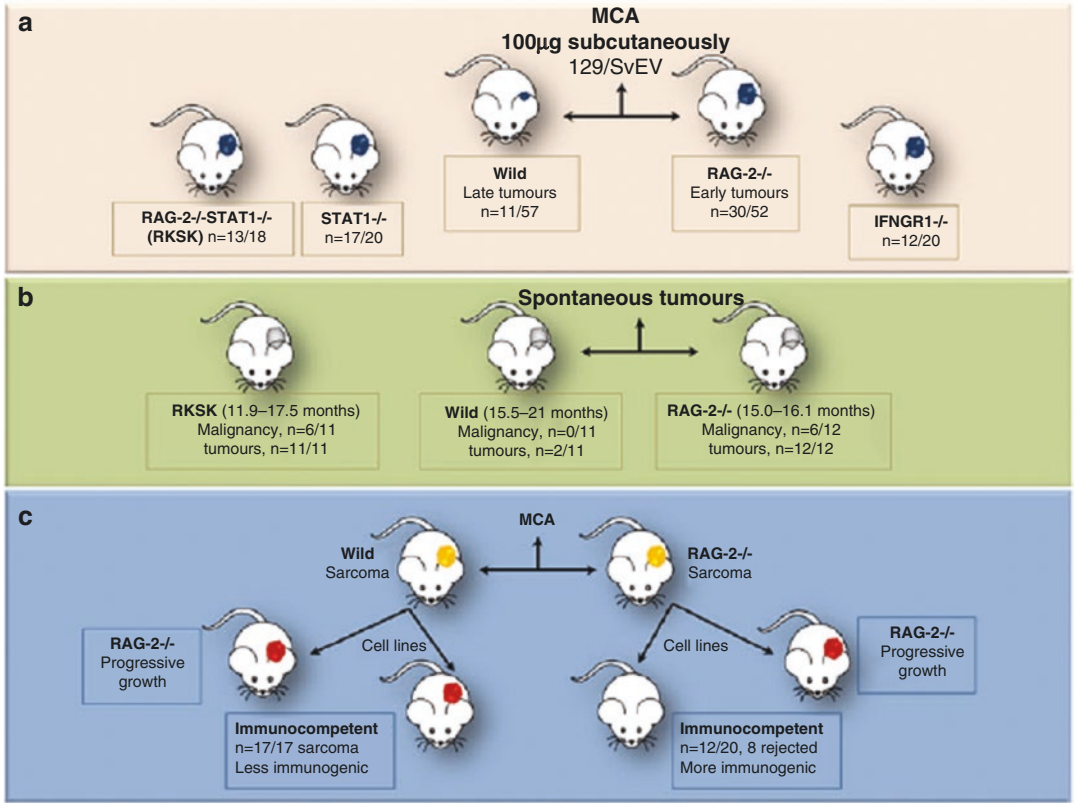


Fig. 16.2 Mice experiments by Shankaran et al. [6] demonstrating surveillance and sculpting roles of immune system. (**a**) Immunodeficient (RAG-2−/−/IFNGR1/STAT1−/− or combined RAG-2−/− STAT1−/−, RkSk) mice developed tumors earlier than wild type and with greater frequency on subcutaneous injection of MCA, thus necessitating the presence of intact T, NKT, and B-cells for prevention of chemically induced tumors. (**b**) Spontaneous tumor development was also observed to be higher in RAG-2−/− and RkSk mice as compared to unmanipulated 129/SvEv wild-type mice. Moreover, the latter merely developed benign tumors, and no malignancy was noted. (**c**) Furthermore, cells were taken from MCA-induced tumors in wild and RAG-2−/− mice and were injected into immunocompetent and RAG-2−/− mice. Progressive tumor growth was noted in immunodeficient mice transplanted with sarcoma cells derived from wild or RAG-2−/− mice. The immunocompetent mice transplanted with sarcoma cells from wild mice also showed progressive tumor growth; however, many mice transplanted with sarcoma cells derived from RAG-2−/− mice rejected the transplanted tumor cells. This occurred due to sculpting of sarcoma by the immune system in wild mice, thus rendering it less immunogenic. Tumors from the immunodeficient mice which were not edited were more immunogenic and thus were rejected by immunocompetent mice

to antitumor immunity by complement-mediated lysis or by antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity (ADCC). The $CD4^+$ T-helper cells also activate macrophages by secreting IFN-γ, TNF, IL-4, and granulocyte-macrophage colony-stimulating factor (GM-CSF). The activated macrophages may phagocytize tumor cells and kill them by releasing toxic free radicals including O_2^- and NO_2^- or by becoming antigen-presenting cells (APCs) which present tumor antigens to $CD4^+$ T-cells such as dendritic cells (DCs). Natural killer (NK) cells also have the potential to directly recognize and destroy tumor cells via tumor necrosis factor-related apoptosis-inducing ligand (TRAIL) and IFN-γ-dependent mechanisms. Loss of MHC class I as commonly observed in tumors may be responsible for their increased susceptibility to NK-cell-mediated lysis. In addition, NK-cell activity may also be enhanced by IL-2 and IFN-γ produced by the $CD4^+$ T-helper

Table 16.1 Timeline of events depicting evolution of cancer immunity from immunosurveillance to immunoediting

Study	Hypothesis/observation/experimental evidence	Results
Coley [10]	Injected cultures of heat-inactivated bacteria or bacterial culture supernatants into cancer patients	Demonstrated marked regression of tumors and prolonged survival after the treatment
Paul Ehrlich [1]	Immune system protects the host from malignancy	Gave birth to the idea of immune control of malignancies
Burnet and Thomas [2]	Immune system must be removing the carcinogenic events arising out of ongoing evolutionary genetic remodeling taking place in an individual	Formal emergence of immunosurveillance hypothesis
Several groups (1965–1973)	Induced immunodeficiency by thymectomy or heterologous antilymphocyte serum or pharmacological agents. Immunodeficient animals are more prone to develop cancers	No consensus regarding immunosurveillance
Stutman [11]	The methylcholanthrene (MCA)-induced cancer incidence in immunodeficient nude athymic mice was not higher than the control mice	Rejection of immunosurveillance hypothesis
Kaplan et al. [12]	IFN-γ- and perforin-deficient animals were more prone to MCA-induced tumors as compared to controls	Resurrection of immunosurveillance in cancer
Shankaran et al. [6]	Experiments in RAG-2 null mice (lacking T, B, and NKT cells) revealed higher incidence of both MCA-induced sarcomas and spontaneous epithelial tumors in these animals	Definitive evidence of existence of cancer immunosurveillance
Dunn et al. [3]	Concept of cancer immunoediting to explain the tumor sculpting role of immune system	Coined the term immune elimination as a part of broader concept of cancer immunoediting with three Es of elimination, equilibrium, and escape

cells. NKT and γδ T-cells also recognize the danger signals released from the tumors and become activated. The NKT cells especially the invariant or the type I NKT, which are $CD4^-$ $CD8^-$ and mainly recognize the lipid/glycolipid antigens (Ags) via CD1d molecule, have been recognized to protect against certain cancers. The protective role is however supposed to be indirectly exerted via secretion of IFN-γ and subsequent activation of NK and $CD8^+$ T-cells. The γδ T-cells which represent 1–5% of peripheral blood T-cells are also reported to infiltrate and cause lysis of tumors, both in vitro and in vivo [16–20].

In various clinical studies on different cancers including colon, ovary, lung carcinomas, and melanoma, the tumor-infiltrating lymphocytes (TILs) have been associated with increased time to disease recurrence, an enhanced 5-year survival, and an overall good prognosis. Also, in a study on metastatic colorectal cancer, TIL density at the invasive margin was linked to a better chemotherapeutic response. Similarly, increased infiltration by $CD3^+$ and $CD8^+$ T-cells, NK cells, and γδT cells has been correlated with improved outcomes in epithelial ovarian cancers. Some of the above studies have done quantitative assessment of the TILs in tumors, thus impressed upon the need to have a scoring system for TILs in order to determine the exact tumor behavior [21, 22].

16.2.2 The Equilibrium Phase: The Most Controversial and the Least Understood Phase

This phase represents an intermediate stage of immune response in cancer. During this phase, the cancer and the immune system both coexist without allowing each other to dominate. The immune system cannot eliminate the cancer during this phase; however, it does not allow it to expand or metastasize. The cancer in turn is sculpted by the immune system, thus leading to the emergence of variants resistant to the immunological attack [3].

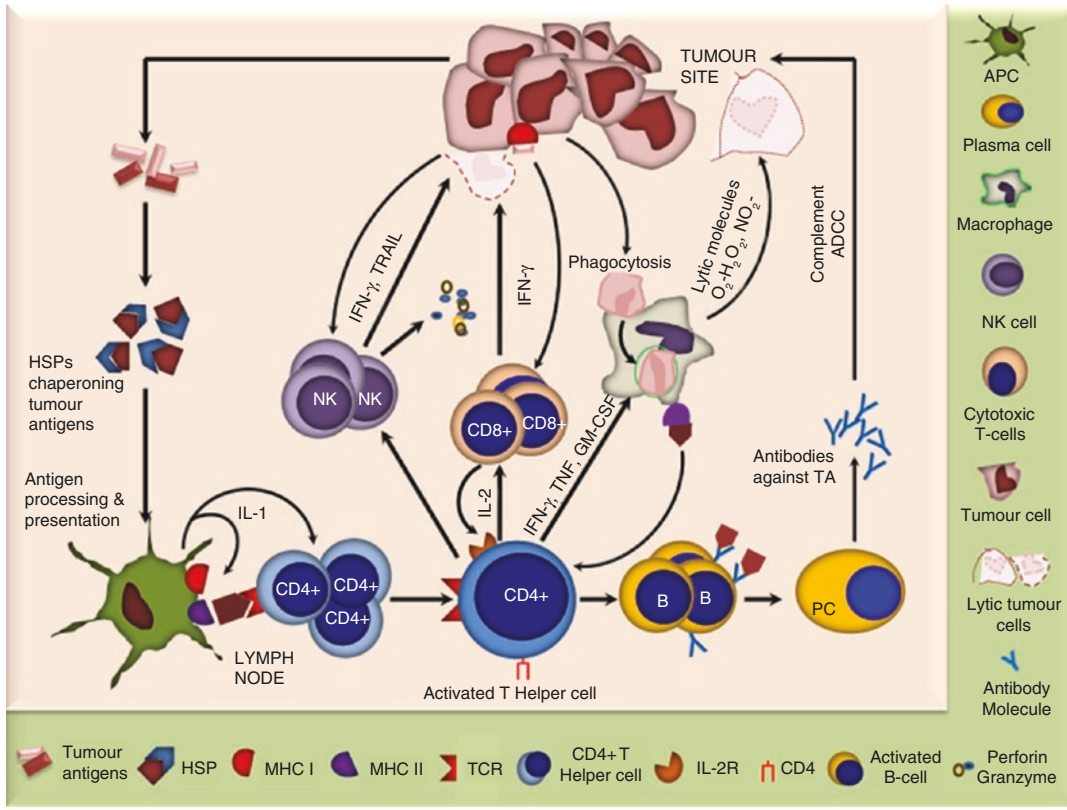


Fig. 16.3 Diagram showing key players involved in anti-tumor immune response. The tumor releases Ags which are chaperoned by heat-shock proteins and taken up by the APCs which process them and present to CD4⁺ T-cells. The latter being the central point of immune response activate various other cells including NK cells, CD8⁺ cells, macrophages, and B-cells which act in various ways to counteract the tumors. In addition, tumors may directly activate the cytotoxic cells including CD8⁺ and NK cells and phagocytic cells. While the former two can cause direct tumor lysis primarily via perforin and granzymes, the latter may engulf tumor cells and kill them by releasing lytic molecules or may process and present tumor Ags to CD4⁺ T-cells

Various studies in mice have pointed toward the occurrence of the equilibrium phase in cancer immunity. In experiments on MCA-induced tumors in mice, Koebel et al. demonstrated the presence of inert lesions in healthy mice, which grew when subjected to immunological oppression (Fig. 16.4) [23]. The study served to be an important milestone in proving the existence of the equilibrium phase in cancers. Likewise, the tumors have been observed to stay dormant for decades after remission in human cancer patients, which is believed to be due to the fact that the immune system keeps them in check. The immune system is believed to synergize with chemoradiotherapy in treatment-induced remission which renders the tumors silent. However, they relapse promptly after any kind of immune insult, thereby, further proving the presence of immune dormancy. The minimal residual disease commonly observed in hematological malignancies and the emerging donor-derived malignancies in immunosuppressed transplant recipients are considered two examples of the equilibrium phase in humans. Even though the immune system prevents monoclonal gammopathy of unknown significance (MGUS) from progressing to myeloma, it fails to eliminate the MGUS cells [24, 25].

Adoptive T-cells, both CD4⁺ and CD8⁺, have been observed to play a pivotal role in cancer immune equilibrium. Immune-sufficient mice with inert tumors are shown to develop into full-fledged tumors only upon depletion of T-cells/IFN-γ/IL-12. However, the depletion of innate immune cells was not found to result in the devel-

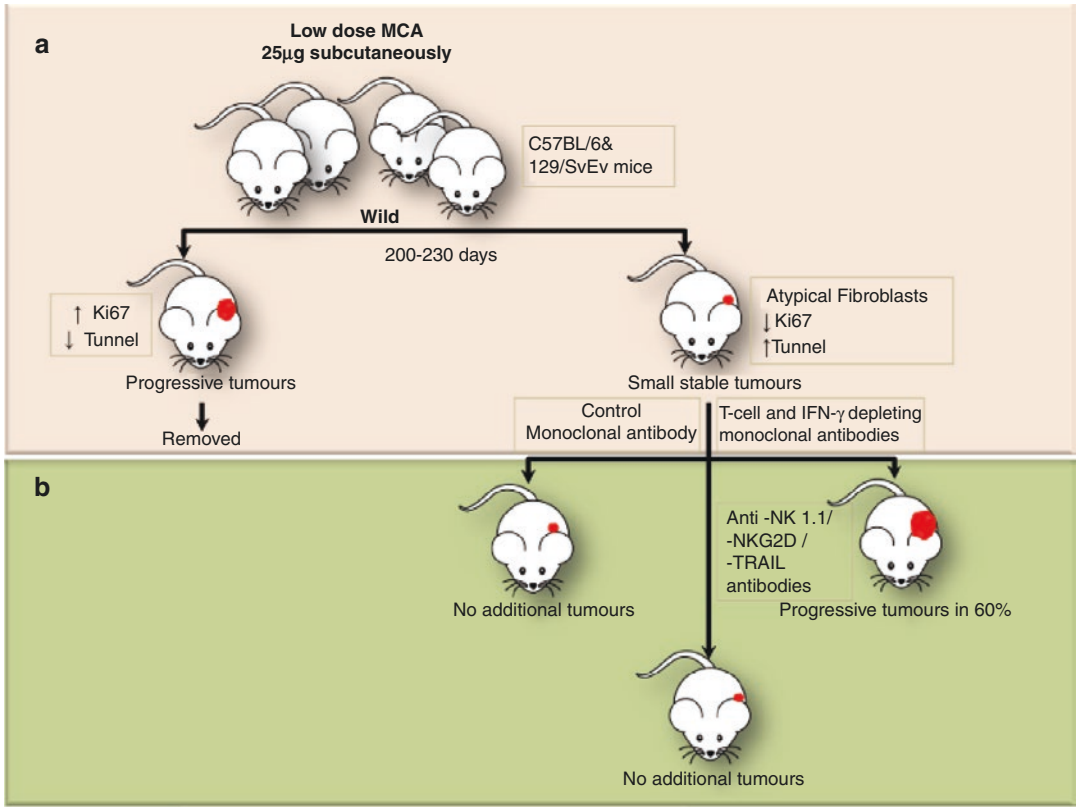


Fig. 16.4 Experiments conducted in mice by Koebel et al. demonstrating the presence of equilibrium phase in tumorigenesis. (**a**) Groups of wild-type C57BL/6 or 129/SvEv mice were injected with a single low dose of MCA. After monitoring for 200–230 days, the mice with rapidly growing sarcomas were set aside. (**b**) The remaining mice displaying small stable masses at injection site were injected with control Ab or mAbs depleting specific components of innate and adoptive immunity. The mice in former two groups did not develop any additional tumors; however, those in the last group (T-cell and IFN-γ depleted) showed rapid tumor growth. This could only be explained by cancer immune equilibrium in which the tumors were not removed but restricted by the immune process. However, on suppression of adoptive immunity, progressive tumor growth was observed

opment of tumors. Moreover, tumor cells were found to be highly immunogenic during the equilibrium phase, as they are unedited by the immune system and become less immunogenic at the end of this phase [23, 26, 27].

In addition, the mechanisms including cellular and angiogenic dormancy also complement the immune system in maintaining cancer cells in the dormant state. In the former, the tumor cells hide themselves in specialized niches, become quiescent, and wait for the opportunity to regrow. In the latter condition, expansion is not possible, due to the lack of adequate vascularization. When faced with favorable conditions, tumor cells come out of their slumber and undergo a series of genetic and epigenetic modifications which increase their immune resistance, eventually leading to the next phase of cancer immunity, known as immune escape. Studies are being conducted to identify the genetic and molecular signatures of dormant tumor cells which allow them to retain their dormant status or facilitate their escape [23, 26–29].

16.2.3 Immune Escape: The Best Studied Phase

The escape phase represents the final and most extensively studied phase of the immunoediting process. The unleashing of mechanisms underlying the escape phase has formed the basis for the development of various therapeutic agents with

the aim to stop the progress of the neoplastic process. Due to increasing genomic instability, cancer cells acquire various characteristics enabling them to ward off the immune process or to modify it in such a way which is beneficial to tumor cells. Tumors utilize a number of strategies to evade an effective immune response (Fig. 16.5). The basis of an effective immune response against any Ag is its recognition as a nonself and its presentation to immune effector cells. Tumors escape recognition by either presenting self Ags to which the immune system is already tolerized or by modulating their antigenicity. The latter involves the shedding of tumor Ags into the circulation from where they may be removed [30]. The next line of defense adopted by tumor cells is the modulation of APCs, rendering them incapable of effectively presenting cancer Ags to immune cells. The APCs like DCs are either deleted or functionally compromised in response to the factors secreted by malignant cells [31]. Tumor-induced co-inhibition of the second signal of the Ag presentation and consequent immunosuppression has now been recognized in several cancer types [32]. In addition, the tumors alter MHC molecules especially MHC class I and other components of Ag processing machinery in the APCs, so as to further incapacitate the presentation of its Ags to the immune system [33]. Besides, tumor cells plunge into an active battle against the immune process by attacking its adoptive and innate immune cells. Tumor cells subvert T-cells and render them anergic through co-inhibitory molecules including cytotoxic T-lymphocyte antigen-4 (CTLA-4) and PD-L1 [34]. Anergic T-cells are unable to produce cytokines such as IL-2 and IFN-γ. Therefore, the autocrine and paracrine activation of $CD4^+$ cells and other immune cells including B-cells, macrophages, and $CD8^+$ cells are blocked, leading to further suppression of the immune cascade [35]. Moreover, tumors also express Fas ligands on

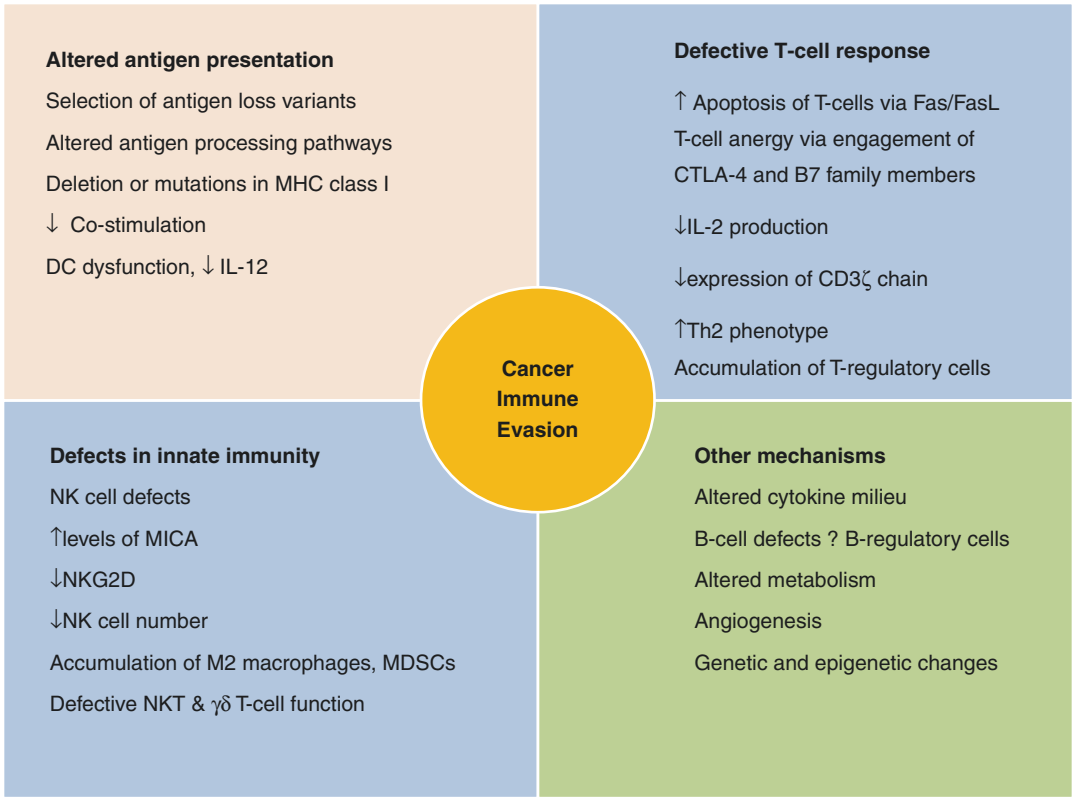


Fig. 16.5 Mechanisms of immune evasion by the cancer

Table 16.2 Mechanisms of immunosuppression induced by T-regulatory cells and myeloid-derived suppressor cells

T-regulatory cells
Secretion of immunosuppressive molecules like IL-10, IL-35, and TGFβ
Polarization of DCs toward tolerogenic phenotypes
Direct cytolysis of effector T-cells via granzyme B, TRAIL, and galectin-1
Metabolic changes like increased IDO in DCs and increased conversion of ATP to adenosine promoting immunosuppression
Stimulation of tumoral angiogenesis via VEGF secretion
Myeloid-derived suppressor cells
Inhibition of effector T-cell proliferation and function via L-arginine-dependent mechanisms
T-cell inhibition via production of ROS and TGFβ
Reduced T-cell homing via depletion of L-selectin
Promotion of Th2 and T-regulatory phenotypes via IL-10 secretion
Inhibition of DC function via IL-10
Promotion of angiogenesis via secretion of VEGF, basic fibroblast growth factor, HIF-1, etc.

T-cells, leading to lymphocyte apoptosis [36]. Not only do they suppress $CD4^+$ and $CD8^+$ cells but also promote the suppressor T-cell phenotype such as $CD25^+Foxp3^+$ T-regulatory cells. These cells secrete IL-10, TGF-β, and VEGF which suppress the antitumor response and promote tumoral angiogenesis (Table 16.2) [37]. Besides, tumors also inhibit innate immune response by induction of quantitative and qualitative defects in NK cells, macrophages, and neutrophils. NK cells have been found to exhibit decreased cytotoxic potentiality due to the presence of tumor-secreted factors including TGF-β in the tumor microenvironment (TME) [38]. The latter along with other cytokines (IL-4, IL-13, etc.) present in the tumor bed favors the accumulation of M2 macrophages, which also induce immunosuppression [39]. Recruitment of immature myeloid cells like myeloid-derived suppressor cells (MDSCs) further complements the tumor-immunodeficient environment by reducing T-cell and NK-cell activation and promoting neovascularization via factors like VEGF [40].

Other mechanisms such as anaerobic glycolysis, hypoxia, and acidity of the TME along with the existent defects in tryptophan metabolism induced by increased expression of the enzyme indoleamine 2,3-dioxygenase (IDO) further depress the antitumor immunity, thereby leading to cancer progression and metastasis [41–43].

16.3 Tumor Antigens and Cancer Immunoediting

Antigenicity of tumors has always been a matter of discussion. In the past, it was believed that since tumors are derived from self cells, the immune system is more receptive to their Ags. However, it was subsequently noticed that tumors may express Ags which are quantitatively or qualitatively different from self-Ags, thus rendering them sensitive to the immune attack. Quantitative differences include significantly increased expression of Ags, which are less expressed in normal or benign conditions or reexpression of Ags only expressed at a specific stage of embryonic development (Table 16.3). Moreover, the lineage-specific Ags expressed normally in specific tissues may be expressed aberrantly in tumor cells. Qualitative differences are produced due to mutational events occurring during carcinogenesis. Over the years, several efforts have been made for the identification and mapping of the Ags expressed on tumor cells; various nomenclatures have been used to characterize them such as tumor-associated Ags and tumor-specific Ags. Antigens capable of evoking a tumor-specific immune response have also been designated as tumor rejection Ags in some textbooks, e.g., tyrosinase, MUC-1, Her-2/neu, β-catenin, caspase-8, etc. [44]. Previous studies on tumor antigens (TAs) have mainly focused on the discovery of new Ags and their classification into two subclasses, a group which can evoke a protective immune response and another group serving as potential therapeutic targets. However, the advent of cancer immunoediting theory has changed our insight on TAs, as they are now considered to be one of the prime targets of the above process. Currently, ongoing studies are attempting to differentiate between the antigenicity of the original or unedited tumors and those sculpted by the immune system [17, 45,

Table 16.3 Examples of common categories of antigens present in tumors [44]

Antigen type	Antigen class	Antigen	Characteristics of antigens	Tumor
Tumor-associated antigens	Oncofetal antigens	CEA	Expressed in fetal tissues, reexpressed in tumors	Colon cancer
		AFP		Germ cell tumors, HCC
	Differentiation and lineage-specific antigens	CD5	Normally in T-cell but aberrantly in B-cells in CLL	CLL
		Melan A, tyrosinase	Melanocyte lineage	Melanoma
		Gp 100		Prostate carcinoma
		PSA		
	Cancer testes antigens	MAGE 1	Expressed in germinal tissues and reexpressed in malignancies	Melanoma
		NY-ESO-1		
	Heat-shock proteins	Gp 96		Fibrosarcoma, colon cancer
		HSP70		
	Gene amplification	Her-2/neu	Receptor tyrosine kinase	Breast cancer
				Ovarian cancer
	Aberrant posttranslational modification	MUC1	Under glycosylated mucin	Breast
				Pancreas
Tumor-specific antigens	Mutated oncogenes or proteins	Mutated p53	Point mutations	Many tumors
		BCR-ABL	Translocation 9;22	CML
		β-Catenin	Signal transduction pathway	Melanoma
		Caspase-8	Apoptosis regulation	Squamous cell carcinoma
Oncoviral proteins	HPV 16, E6, and E7 proteins		Viral transforming gene products	Carcinoma cervix

46]. Differences between the immunogenicity of tumors derived from carcinogen MCA (more immunogenic) and those arising spontaneously (less immunogenic) in mice have been described by DuPage et al. [47]. They also showed that primary sarcomas are edited by the immune system and, hence, become less immunogenic in order to escape the T-cell response. In the same line, Matsushita et al. obtained similar results in their study on tumor exomes [48]. A recent study has revealed the presence of anti-inflammatory antibodies to tumor-associated Ags like NY-ESO-1, thereby suggesting the importance of humoral immune system in cancer immunoediting [49]. Novel genetic-based approaches including exome sequencing, in silico analysis, and $CD8^+$ T-cell cloning are likely to further help in understanding the alterations in tumor antigenicity occurring during different phases of cancer immunity [48].

CEA carcinoembryonic antigen, *AFP* alpha fetoprotein, *Gp* glycoprotein, *PSA* prostate-specific antigen, *MAGE-1* melanoma-associated antigen 1, *NY-ESO-1* New York-ESO-1, *BCR-ABL* breakpoint cluster region-Abelson, *HPV* human papilloma virus

16.4 The Tumor Microenvironment During Cancer Immunoediting

The microenvironment surrounding the tumor plays a critical role in determining cancer behavior. TME is composed of cells (tumor as well as immune), various factors secreted by them, and the stroma. The TME is a dynamic system switching from host protective to tumor friendly during different phases of the immunoediting process. During the elimination phase, the milieu of the tumor comprises of factors which promote its eradication. Collaboration of factors including IFN-γ and lymphocytes has been found to help in regulating the development of tumors. In different studies, IFN-γ- and perforin-deficient mice together with T-cell and NK-cell defects are

found to exhibit a greater propensity for tumor development. Cytokines like IL-2, IL-12, and IL-7 have been found to promote antitumor immunity, suppress recruitment of suppressor cells, and inhibit tumor angiogenesis.

During the equilibrium phase, TME assumes the role of a niche, concealing relatively dormant cancer cells. The niche environment allows cancer cells to thrive without progression by maintaining a balance between the cytostasis and cytolysis. However, molecules which precisely maintain this balance during the immune equilibrium state remain to be defined.

During the escape phase, the tumor bed gets packed with factors and cells which promote immune suppression. Factors like IL-6, TGF-β, IL-8, and IL-10 help in generalized subversion of an effective anticancer immune response. Growth factors like VEGF not only promote angiogenesis but also facilitate the recruitment of T-regulatory cells and MDSCs to the tumor site. Besides, tumor cells induce downregulation of antitumor cytokines including IL-12 and IFN-γ. In addition, the abundant presence of other factors within the TME including prostaglandin E2, reactive oxygen and nitrogen species, phosphatidylserine, etc. aids cancer cells to evade the immune response. Furthermore, the stroma including cancer-associated fibroblasts, chemokines, matrix metalloproteinases, and adhesion molecules also participates in cancer's conquest over antitumor immunity.

Although the above few paragraphs have tried to provide a simplified view of the events occurring during various phases of the immunoediting process, there are several paradoxes involved. One set of factors may play an immunostimulatory and antitumor role under particular conditions, whereas they may exert an immune inhibitory and pro-tumor role under other circumstances. For example, IFN-γ which is a potent cytokine responsible for antitumor immunity is now emerging as an important player in cancer immune evasion. The pro-tumor effects of IFN-γ are believed to be related to an increase in T-regulatory cells and MDSCs and a decrease in neutrophilic infiltrate in the TME [50–53].

16.5 Clinical Relevance of the Immunoediting Process in Cancer

The introduction of immunoediting concept has added a new insight to understanding of cancer immunity. A clear understanding of the mechanisms underlying the three phases of cancer immunity is vital for designing the immunotherapeutic strategies to prevent, stop the progression, or treat cancers. In addition, it has contributed to the development of new markers for the diagnosis and prognostication of malignancies. Identification and manipulation of various molecules involved in different phases of the immune response to cancer has emerged as a promising approach for the development of novel immunotherapeutic strategies for cancer treatment and eradication. Table 16.4 provides examples of the immunotherapeutic approaches directed toward the three phases of the immunoediting process.

PBMCs peripheral blood mononuclear cells, *APCs* antigen-presenting cells, *DC* dendritic cell, *GM-CSF* granulocyte macrophage colony-stimulating factor, *EGFR* epidermal growth factor receptor, *CTLA-4* cytotoxic T-lymphocyte antigen-4, *mAb* monoclonal antibody, *MDSCs* myeloid-derived suppressor cells, *IDO* indoleamine-2, 3 dioxygenase, *VEGF* vascular endothelial growth factor

Deciphering the nature of the cellular infiltrate and secretory molecules produced in response to the transformation events and characterization of the mechanisms involved in the elimination of tumor cells at early stages has led to the development of novel cancer therapeutics. Moreover, quantitative as well as qualitative assessment of the immune cells present in TME may contribute to the development of algorithms demonstrating tumors' response to chemoradiotherapy. In vivo or in vitro expansion of tumor-specific effector cells is being applied as a strategy to boost up the antitumor immune response. Recognition of TAs which evoke an effective antitumor immune response has served as the basis for the development of different types of cancer vaccines. Monoclonal antibodies (mAbs) targeting diverse

Table 16.4 Examples of therapeutic approaches targeting different phases of cancer immunoediting

Phases of immunoediting	Approaches	Outcome
Elimination	In vivo or in vitro expansion of immune effector cells and using them for therapy	Sipuleucel T (autologous PBMCs, APCs, and recombinant fusion protein, i.e., PA2024, PA, PAP fused to a GM-CSF), FDA approved for prostate cancer [54]
	DC-based approaches	
	Tumor antigen-based vaccines	
	Tumor-specific monoclonal antibodies	Trastuzumab (Her2/neu), rituximab (CD20), cetuximab (EGFR) [55–57]
	Immunostimulatory cytokines	IL-2, IL-7, IL-15 [58–60]
Equilibrium	Adoptive transfer of cancer-reactive T-cells	Monitored for establishment of equilibrium phase [61]
Escape	Anti-CTLA-4	Ipilimumab approved for melanoma [62]
	Blockade of T-cell co-inhibition	mAb against B7-H1 [63]
	Depletion of T-regulatory cells	Denileukin diftitox [64]
		Lenalidomide [65]
	Inhibition of MDSCs	Sunitinib [66]
	Inhibition of IDO	1-methyl tryptophan [67]
	Blockade of VEGF	Bevacizumab [68]

TAs have entered clinical trials for several cancer types. Besides, TAs such as CEA have also been used as biomarkers for early detection and for determining tumor prognosis. The concept of immunogenic chemotherapy which stimulates adaptive immunity is also gaining impetus in recent years.

The equilibrium phase has also emerged as a potential target to immunotherapists, as maintaining cancer cells in the equilibrium phase indicates prevention or delay in cancer progression and fatality. In cases treated with mAbs which exert their effect via NK cells, an adoptive T-cell response was also found to be evoked, leading to the maintenance of tumors in equilibrium phase [69]. Furthermore, development of sensitive techniques to seek out the occult tumor cells in various organs may help in their specific targeting, resulting in their complete eradication. Identification and targeting of immune or nonimmune events shifting the balance from equilibrium to the elimination or to the escape phase may lead to tumor removal or at least progression restriction.

As discussed in earlier sections, tumor cells apply a variety of tactics to combat with the host immune system. The assessment of factors involved in the escape mechanism served as the mainstay for the discovery of many anticancer immunotherapeutic agents. Some developed agents like ipilimumab (anti-CTLA-4) are now being used clinically along with other forms of therapy, whereas many other agents have entered different phases of clinical trials, and a large number are still in experimental stages (Table 16.4).

16.6 Concluding Remarks

In conclusion, it could be stated that enough proof is available to establish the presence of cancer immunoediting in animals as well as in humans. Understanding the sequence of events occurring during the immunoediting process and recognition of the cellular and molecular mechanisms underlying its different phases has led to a spurt in cancer immunotherapeutic approaches. Further knowledge on the genetic and epigenetic features characterizing the three Es of cancer immunoediting are warranted for the development of more precise cancer immunotherapeutic approaches in the future.

References

1. Ehrlich P. Ueber den jetzigen stand der karzinomforschung. Ned Tijdschr Geneeskd. 1909;5:273–90.
2. Burnet FM. Cancer a biological approach. Br Med J. 1957;1:841–7.
3. Dunn GP, Bruce AT, Ikeda H, Old LJ, Schreiber RD. Cancer immunoediting: from immunosurveillance to tumor escape. Nat Immunol. 2002;3:991–8.
4. Dunn GP, Old LJ, Schreiber RD. The three Es of cancer immunoediting. Annu Rev Immunol. 2004;22:329–60.
5. Dunn GP, Old LJ, Schreiber RD. The immunobiology of cancer immunosurveillance and immunoediting. Immunity. 2004;21:137–48.
6. Shankaran V, Ikeda H, Bruce AT, White JM, Swanson P, Old LJ. IFN-γ and lymphocytes prevent primary tumour development and shape tumour immunogenicity. Nature. 2001;410:1107–11.
7. Smyth MJ, Dunn GP, Schreiber RD. Cancer immunosurveillance and immunoediting: the roles of immunity in suppressing tumor development and shaping tumor immunogenicity. Adv Immunol. 2006;90:1–50.
8. Schreiber RD, Old LJ, Smyth MJ. Cancer immunoediting: integrating immunity's roles in cancer suppression and promotion. Science. 2011;331:1565–70.
9. Knutson KL, Lu H, Stone B, Reiman JM, Behrens MD, Prosperi CM, et al. Immunoediting of cancers may lead to epithelial to mesenchymal transition. J Immunol. 2006;177(3):1526–33.
10. Coley WB. The treatment of malignant tumors by repeated inoculations of erysipelas: with a report of ten original cases. Am J Med Sci. 1893;10:487–511.
11. Stutman O. Tumor development after 3-methylcholanthrene in immunologically deficient athymic-nude mice. Science. 1974;183:534–6.
12. Kaplan DH, Shankaran V, Dighe AS, Stockert E, Aguet M, Old LJ, et al. Demonstration of an interferon gamma-dependent tumor surveillance system in immunocompetent mice. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 1998;95:7556–61.
13. Vajdic CM, McDonald SP, McCredie MR, Van LT, Stewart JH, Law M, et al. Cancer incidence before and after kidney transplantation. JAMA. 2006;296:2823–31.
14. Frisch M, Biggar RJ, Engels EA, Goedert JJ. Association of cancer with AIDS-related immunosuppression in adults. JAMA. 2001;285:1736–45.
15. Aris M, Barrio MM, Mordoh J. Lessons from cancer immunoediting in cutaneous melanoma. Clin Dev Immunol. 2012;2012:1–14.
16. Vesely MD, Kershaw MH, Schreiber RD, Smyth MJ. Natural innate and adaptive immunity to cancer. Annu Rev Immunol. 2011;29:235–71.
17. Greenberg PD. Mechanisms of tumour immunology. In: Parslow TG, Stites DP, Terr AI, Imboden JB, editors. Medical immunology. 10th ed. New York: McGraw-Hill; 2001. p. 568–77.
18. Pilones KA, Aryankalayil J, Demaria S. Invariant NKT cells as novel targets for immunotherapy in solid tumors. Clin Dev Immunol. 2012;2012:1–11.
19. Berzofsky JA, Terabe M. The contrasting roles of NKT cells in tumor immunity. Curr Mol Med. 2009;9(6):667–72.
20. Marquez-Medina D, Salla-Fortuny J, Salud-Salvia A. Role of gamma-delta T-cells in cancer: another opening door to immunotherapy. Clin Transl Oncol. 2012;14(12):891–5.
21. Halama N, Michel S, Kloor M, Zoernig I, Benner A, Spille A, et al. Localization and density of immune cells in the invasive margin of human colorectal cancer liver metastases are prognostic for response to chemotherapy. Cancer Res. 2011;71:5670–7.
22. Thedrez A, Lavoué V, Dessarthe B, Daniel P, Henno S, Jaffre I, et al. A quantitative deficiency in peripheral blood Vλ9 VΔ2 cells is a negative prognostic biomarker in ovarian cancer patients. PLoS One. 2013;8(5):e63322.
23. Koebel CM, Vermi W, Swann JB, Zerafa N, Rodig SJ, Old LJ, et al. Adaptive immunity maintains occult cancer in an equilibrium state. Nature. 2007;450:903–7.
24. Myron KH, McBride MA, Cherikh WS, Spain PC, Marks WH, Roza AM. Transplant tumor registry: donor related malignancies. Transplantation. 2002;74:358–62.
25. Kyle RA, Therneau TM, Rajkumar SV, Offord JR, Larson DR, Plevak MF, et al. A long-term study of prognosis in monoclonal gammopathy of undetermined significance. N Engl J Med. 2002;346:564–9.
26. Teng MWL, Swann JB, Koebel MC, Schreiber RD, Smyth JM. Immune-mediated dormancy: an equilibrium with cancer. J Leukoc Biol. 2008;84:988–93.
27. Bhatia A, Kumar Y. Cancer-immune equilibrium: questions unanswered. Cancer Microenviron. 2011;4(2):209–17.
28. Arum CJ, Anderssen E, Viset T, Kodama Y, Lundgren S, Chen D, et al. Cancer immunoediting from immunosurveillance to tumor escape in microvillus-formed niche: a study of syngeneic orthotopic rat bladder cancer model in comparison with human bladder cancer. Neoplasia. 2010;12(6):434–42.
29. Roepman P, Wessels LF, Kettelarij N, Kemmeren P, Miles AJ, Lijnzaad P, et al. An expression profile for diagnosis of lymph node metastases from primary head and neck squamous cell carcinomas. Nat Genet. 2005;37:182–6.
30. Kontani K, Taguchi O, Narita T, Izawa M, Hiraiwa N, Zenita K, et al. Modulation of MUC1 mucin as an escape mechanism of breast cancer cells from autologous cytotoxic T-lymphocytes. Br J Cancer. 2001;84(9):1258–64.
31. Ma Y, Shurin GV, Peiyuan Z, Shurin MR. Dendritic cells in the cancer microenvironment. J Cancer. 2013;4:36–44.
32. Zang X, Allison JP. The B7 family and cancer therapy: costimulation and coinhibition. Clin Cancer Res. 2007;13:5271–9.

33. Garrido F, Ruiz-Cabello F, Cabrera T, Perez-Villar JJ, Lopez-Botet M, Duggan-Keen M, et al. Implications for immunosurveillance of altered HLA class I phenotypes in human tumours. Immunol Today. 1997;18(2):89–95.
34. Barach YS, Lee JS, Zang X. T-cell coinhibition in prostate cancer: new immune evasion pathways and emerging therapeutics. Trends Mol Med. 2011;17:47–9.
35. Freeman GJ, Long AJ, Iwai Y, Bourque K, Chernova T, Nishimura H, et al. Engagement of the PD-1immunoinhibitory receptor by a novel B7 family member leads to negative regulation of lymphocyte activation. J Exp Med. 2000;192:1027–34.
36. Strand S, Hofmann WJ, Hug H, Muller M, Otto G, Strand D, et al. Lymphocyte apoptosis induced by CD95 (APO-1/Fas) ligand-expressing tumour cells: a mechanism of immune evasion? Nat Med. 1996;2:1361–6.
37. Facciabene A, Motz GT, Coukos G. T-regulatory cells: key players in tumor immune escape and angiogenesis. Cancer Res. 2012;72:2162–71.
38. Mamessier E, Sylvain A, Thibult ML, Houvenaeghel G, Jacquemier J, Castellano R, et al. Human breast cancer cells enhance self tolerance by promoting evasion from NK cell antitumour immunity. J Clin Invest. 2011;121:3609–22.
39. Hao N, Lü M, Fan Y, Cao YL, Zhang ZR, Yang SM, et al. Macrophages in tumor microenvironments and the progression of tumors. Clin Dev Immunol. 2012;2012:1–11.
40. Ostrand-Rosenberg S, Sinha P. Myeloid-derived suppressor cells: linking inflammation and cancer. J Immunol. 2009;182:4499–506.
41. Bellone M, Calcinotto A, Filipazzi P, De Milito A, Fais S, Rivoltini L. The acidity of the tumour microenvironment is a mechanism of immune escape that can be overcome by proton pump inhibitors. Oncoimmunology. 2013;1:e22058.
42. Barsoum IB, Hamilton TK, Li X, Cotechini T, Miles EA, Siemens DR, et al. Hypoxia induces escape from innate immunity in cancer cells via increased expression of ADAM10: role of nitric oxide. Cancer Res. 2011;71:7433–41.
43. Uyttenhove C, Pilotte L, Theate I, Colau D, Parmentier N, Boon T, et al. Evidence for a tumoral immune resistance mechanism based on tryptophan degradation by indoleamine 2, 3-dioxygenase. Nat Med. 2003;9:1269–74.
44. Murphy K, Travers P, Walport M. Janeway's immunobiology. 7th ed. New York: Garland Science; 2008. p. 675–87.
45. Hewitt HB, Blake ER, Walder AS. A critique of the evidence for active host defence against cancer, based on personal studies of 27 murine tumours of spontaneous origin. Br J Cancer. 1976;33:241–59.
46. Vesely MD, Schreiber RD. Cancer immunoediting: antigens, mechanisms, and implications to cancer immunotherapy. Ann N Y Acad Sci. 2013;1284:1–5.
47. DuPage M, Mazumdar C, Schmidt LM, Cheung AF, Jacks T. Expression of tumour-specific antigens underlies cancer immunoediting. Nature. 2012;482:405–10.
48. Matsushita H, Vesely MD, Koboldt DC, Rickert CG, Uppaluri R, Magrini VJ, et al. Cancer exome analysis reveals a T-cell-dependent mechanism of cancer immunoediting. Nature. 2012;482:400–6.
49. Oaks M, Taylor S, Shaffer J. Autoantibodies targeting tumor-associated antigens in metastatic cancer Sialylated IgGs as candidate anti-inflammatory antibodies. Oncoimmunology. 2013;2(6):e24841.
50. Brocker EB, Zwadlo G, Holzmann B, Macher E, Sorg C. Inflammatory cell infiltrates in human melanoma at different stages of tumor progression. Int J Cancer. 1988;41:562–7.
51. Chew V, Toh VC, Abastado JP. Immune microenvironment in tumor progression: characteristics and challenges for therapy. J Oncol. 2012;2012:1–10.
52. Dunn GP, Koebel CM, Schreiber RD. Interferons, immunity and cancer immunoediting. Nat Rev Immunol. 2006;6:836–48.
53. Zaidi MR, Merlino G. The two faces of interferon-? In cancer. Clin Cancer Res. 2011;17(19):1–7.
54. Kantoff PW, Higano CS, Shore ND, Berger R, Small EJ, Penson DF, et al. Sipuleucel-T immunotherapy for castration-resistant prostate cancer. N Engl J Med. 2010;363:411–22.
55. Hudis CA. Trastuzumab-mechanism of action and use in clinical practice. N Engl J Med. 2007;357:39–51.
56. Weiner GJ. Rituximab: mechanism of action. Semin Hematol. 2010;47:115–23.
57. Van CE, Kohne CH, Hitre E, Zaluski J, Chang CCR, Makhson A, et al. Cetuximab and chemotherapy as initial treatment for metastatic colorectal cancer. N Engl J Med. 2009;360:1408–17.
58. Van PL, Refaeli Y, Lord JD, Nelson BH, Abbas AK, Baltimore D. Uncoupling IL-2 signals that regulate T cell proliferation, survival, and Fas-mediated activation-induced cell death. Immunity. 1999;11:281–8.
59. Caserta S, Alessi P, Basso V, Mondino A. IL-7 is superior to IL-2 for ex vivo expansion of tumour-specific CD4(+) T cells. Eur J Immunol. 2010;40:470–9.
60. Teague RM, Sather BD, Sacks JA, Huang MZ, Dossett ML, Morimoto A, et al. Interleukin-15 rescues tolerant CD8+ T cells for use in adoptive immunotherapy of established tumors. Nat Med. 2006;12:335–41.
61. Morgan RA, Dudley ME, Wunderlich JR, Hughes MS, Yang JC, Sherry RM, et al. Cancer regression in patients after transfer of genetically engineered lymphocytes. Science. 2006;314:126–9.
62. Tarhini A, Lo E, Minor DR. Releasing the brake on the immune system: ipilimumab in melanoma and other tumors. Cancer Biother Radiopharm. 2010;25(6):601–13.
63. Mocellin S, Benna C, Pilati P. Coinhibitory molecules in cancer biology and therapy. Cytokine Growth Factor Rev. 2013;24:147–61.

64. Ruter J, Barnett BG, Kryczek I, Brumlik MJ, Daniel BJ, Coukos G, et al. Altering regulatory T-cell function in cancer immunotherapy: a novel means to boost the efficacy of cancer vaccines. Front Biosci. 2009;14:1761–70.
65. Galustian C, Meyer B, Labarthe MC, Dredge K, Klaschka D, Henry J, et al. The anti-cancer agents lenalidomide and pomalidomide inhibit the proliferation and function of T regulatory cells. Cancer Immunol Immunother. 2009;58:1033–45.
66. Finke JH, Rini B, Ireland J, Raymond P, Richmond A, Golshayan A, et al. Sunitinib reverses type-1 immune suppression and decreases T-regulatory cells in renal cell carcinoma patients. Clin Cancer Res. 2008;14:6674–82.
67. Soliman HH, Antonia S, Sullivan D, Vanahanian N, Link C. Overcoming tumour antigen anergy in human malignancies using the novel indoleamine 2,3-dioxygenase (IDO) enzyme inhibitor, 1-methyl-D-tryptophan (1MT). J Clin Oncol. 2009;27:15s.
68. Scott AM, Wolchok JD, Old LJ. Antibody therapy of cancer. Nat Rev Cancer. 2012;12:278–87.
69. Abès R, Gélizé E, Fridman WH, Teillaud JL. Long-lasting antitumor protection by anti-CD20 antibody through cellular immune response. Blood. 2010;116:926–34.

Apoptosis and Cancer

17

Mei Lan Tan, Shahrul Bariyah Sahul Hamid, Muhammad Asyraf Abduraman, and Heng Kean Tan

Contents

17.1 Introduction

Life and death are essential parts of a natural cycle of all multicellular organisms. Cell division, cell death, shape modification, and cell rearrangements form critical processes on which tissues are shaped and organs are made. Cell death, in particular, plays an important role in the development and homeostasis of normal tissues [1, 2]. Cell death phenomenon was first reported

M. L. Tan (✉)
Advanced Medical and Dental Institute (Institut Perubatan dan Pergigian Termaju), Universiti Sains Malaysia, SAINS@BERTAM, Kepala Batas 13200, Pulau Pinang, Malaysia

School of Pharmaceutical Sciences, Universiti Sains Malaysia, Minden 11700, Pulau Pinang, Malaysia
e-mail: tanml@usm.my

S. B. Sahul Hamid · M. A. Abduraman
Advanced Medical and Dental Institute (Institut Perubatan dan Pergigian Termaju), Universiti Sains Malaysia , SAINS@BERTAM, Kepala Batas 13200, Pulau Pinang, Malaysia

H. K. Tan
Malaysian Institute of Pharmaceuticals and Nutraceuticals (IPharm), NIBM, Ministry of Energy, Science, Technology, Environment and Climate Change (MESTECC), Halaman Bukit Gambir 11700, Pulau Pinang, Malaysia

N. Rezaei (ed.), *Cancer Immunology*, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-30845-2_17

in 1842 by Carl Vogt [3, 4]. Subsequently, the term programmed cell death (PCD) was coined by Lockshin and Williams in 1965 to describe the phenomenon of coordinated deaths of certain larval muscles during transformation into adult moths [5]. Kerr and coworkers later described a series of similar morphological characteristics following the death of a variety of tissue sources, which was named as "apoptosis" [6]. About the same time, Horvitz and colleagues started a systematic search for genes controlling PCD in the nematode worms, *Caenorhabditis elegans*. The discovery of cell death defective genes such as *ced-3*, *ced-4*, and *ced-9* suggests that PCD is a process with strict genetic program [7]. This was quickly followed by the identification of substrates and homologous genes in mammals and realization that mutations of some of these cell death genes were contributing factors in various cancers. The 2002 Nobel Prize in Physiology or Medicine was awarded jointly to Sydney Brenner, H. Robert Horvitz, and John E. Sulston for their extensive work and discoveries on genetic regulation of organ development and PCD.

An imbalance between cell growth and cell death is implicated in a variety of human diseases including cancer, autoimmune diseases, neurodegenerative disorders, viral infections, and AIDS [8–12]. Cell death has a profound effect on cancer growth and progression [13–15]. Malfunction of the cell death machinery, as a direct consequence of mutations of the signaling molecules involved either directly or indirectly in the cell death pathways, has long been identified as an important contributing factor in cancer. Continuous efforts in deciphering the mechanisms and signaling pathways of these cell deaths have also brought forward a new paradigm of which cancer may be efficiently targeted. Novel and specific cancer therapeutics and techniques directed at members of the cell death signaling pathways have been developed, and newer generation of drugs are currently being tested in clinical trials.

Based on the cell death classifications by the Nomenclature Committee on Cell Death (NCCD), the use of the term "programmed" is now limited to regulated cell death which occurs in the absence of any exogenous environmental perturbation and irrespective of the modality by which they are executed and in the context of embryonic and post-embryonic development and tissue homeostasis [16, 17]. On the other hand, other types of regulated cell death indicate cases of cell death whose initiation and/or execution is mediated by a dedicated molecular machinery and can be inhibited by targeted pharmacologic and/or genetic interventions [16]. Regulated cell deaths can originate from perturbations of the intracellular or extracellular environment and when such perturbations are too intense or prolonged for adaptive responses to cope with stress or restore cellular homeostasis [17]. Apoptosis is a form of regulated cell death and is implicated in the pathogenesis of cancer [17]. Its roles in tumorigenesis and some of the novel antitumor strategies and therapeutics will be discussed in this chapter.

17.2 Mechanisms of Apoptosis

The term "apoptosis" was introduced by Kerr and coworkers in 1972 and derived from a Greek term meaning "dropping off" of leaves or petals from trees or flowers [6]. Earlier methods to define cell death rely much on morphological criteria and the use of microscopes [4]. The earliest recognized morphological changes in apoptosis involve compaction and segregation of nuclear chromatin and condensation of the cytoplasm [6, 18]. The process is followed by the convolution of the plasma membrane and cell blebbing in a florid manner, producing fragments of cells known as apoptotic bodies. These fragments are membrane bounded and contain nuclear components [18, 19]. Apoptotic bodies are quickly taken up by nearby cells, and degraded within their lysosomes, usually with no associated inflammation [6, 18].

Biochemically, apoptosis is universally characterized by the double-stranded cleavage at the linker regions between nucleosomes, resulting in the formation of multiple DNA fragments [19], phosphatidylserine externalization [20], and is accompanied by a series of genes and proteins

expressions. According to the NCCD, apoptosis is functionally classified into extrinsic or intrinsic apoptosis [16, 21]. Extrinsic apoptosis is categorized depending on source of trigger, whereas intrinsic apoptosis is characterized by widespread mitochondrial outer membrane permeabilization (MOMP).

17.2.1 Extrinsic Apoptosis Pathway

Extrinsic apoptosis is a regulated cell death modality initiated by perturbations of the extracellular microenvironment [17]. It is essentially caspase dependent and is induced by extracellular stress signals which are mediated by specific transmembrane receptors such as death receptors or dependence receptors. In extrinsic apoptosis induced by death receptors, the signaling pathway is mediated by receptors belonging to the tumor necrosis factor (TNF) receptor superfamily which is characterized by extracellular cysteine-rich domains (CRDs) and intracellular death domain (DD). Ligands such as TNF ligand, TNF ligand superfamily member 10 (TNFSF10), FAS ligand, and TNF-related apoptosis-inducing ligand (TRAIL) interact with their respective death receptors [FAS/CD95, TNF-α receptor 1 (TNFR1), or TRAIL receptor (TRAIL-R1 or TRAIL-R2)], recruit Fas-associated death domain adapter protein (FADD), and form the death inducing signaling complex (DISC) [22, 23]. This complex recruits pro-caspase-8 and pro-caspase-10, leading to the activation of the executioner caspase-3, caspase-6, and caspase-7 [24, 25]. The molecular mechanisms regulating caspase-8 activity upon death receptor stimulation involves a cascade of events initiated by the binding of caspase-8 to FADD at the DISC [17]. The homodimerization and consequent activation by autoproteolytic cleavage of caspase-8 are thought to be mediated by c-FLIP. Both c-FLIP isoforms and caspase-8 are recruited at the DISC, and there are evidences that suggest that c-FLIP isoforms can either inhibit or activate caspase-8 and modulate its oligomerization [26]. The enzymatic activity of caspase-8 may be controlled by additional posttranslational mechanisms including phosphorylation at Y380 which inhibits the autoproteolytic activity of caspase-8, phosphorylation at T273 which promotes caspase-8 apoptotic functions, and deubiquitination which decreases caspase-8 activity and interrupts extrinsic activity [17].

Extrinsic apoptotic signals can be alternatively mediated by dependence receptors such as UNC-5 homolog family receptors (UNC-5A, UNC-B, UNC-C, and UNC-D) and deleted in colorectal cancer (DCC) family receptors. These receptors are activated by netrins, a family of extracellular proteins that direct cell and axon migration during embryogenesis [27]. Netrins are members of the laminin superfamily and contribute to the regulation of cell-cell adhesion and tissue organization [28]. Netrin-1 has been identified to be an anti-apoptotic survival factor in tumorigenesis [29]. DCC and UNC-5 homologs mediate cell death in the absence of netrin-1, and the binding of the ligand to these receptors switches between a pro-apoptotic signal and the promotion of survival and motility [29]. UNC-5B (also known as UNC-5H2) complex responds to the withdrawal of netrin-1 by recruiting a signaling complex consisting of protein phosphatase 2A (PP2A) and death-associated protein kinase 1 (DAPK1) [30]. In the presence of netrin-1, the PP2A complex is repressed by the recruitment of cancerous inhibitor of PP2A (CIP2A) into the UNC-5B/DAPK1 complex, of which DAPK1 is autophosphorylated and remained inactive. Conversely, netrin-1 withdrawal is associated with a conformational change in UNC-5B, resulting in the exposure of the death domain, releasing of CIP2A, and the recruitment of PP2A to the UNC-5B-DAPK1 complex. PP2A-mediated dephosphorylation of DAPK1 results in the activation of downstream apoptotic pathway. PP2A-like activity has been linked to the formation of DISC and is known to inhibit B-cell lymphoma 2 (Bcl-2) phosphorylation, leading to apoptotic cell death [31, 32]. In certain cell types, where the extrinsic apoptotic pathway is triggered but lower levels of DISC followed by lower levels of active caspase-8 are formed, amplification of the death signal is possible through the cleavage of Bid by caspase-8, which directly mediates Bak/Bax

oligomerization and triggers the release of cytochrome (Cyt) *c* [33, 34].

Another signaling pathway mediated by dependence receptors are the DCC and the Patched dependence receptor (Ptc). DCC encodes an approximately 200 kDa type I membrane protein, which displays homology with cell adhesion molecules in its extracellular domain, suggesting that DCC may play a role in cell-cell or cell-matrix interactions [35, 36]. DCC appears to drive apoptosis independent of both mitochondrial-dependent and death receptor/caspase-8 pathways. DCC interacts and drives the activation of caspase-3 through caspase-9 without requiring Cyt *c* or Apaf-1 [37]. Ptc, identified as a tumor suppressor, induces apoptosis but is suppressed by its ligand, sonic hedgehog (Shh) [38, 39]. Ptc interacts with the adapter protein DRAL/FHL2 in the absence of Shh and recruits a protein complex that includes DRAL/FHL2, the CARD-containing domain protein TUCAN, and apical caspase-9. It triggers caspase-9 activation and enhances cell death via a caspase-9-dependent mechanism [40, 41].

The death receptor and dependence receptor pathways converge at the activation of caspase-3, followed by cleavage and activation of downstream caspases. Caspases or cysteine aspartic acid-specific proteases are synthesized as inactive zymogens (or proenzymes) and are usually cleaved to form active enzymes or undergo autoproteolysis in a cascade manner. Initiator caspases such as caspase-8, caspase-9, and caspase-10 couple cell death stimuli to the downstream effector caspases such as caspase-3, caspase-6, and caspase-7. The major proteolysis activity that takes place during apoptosis is carried out by effector caspases. Caspase-3 appears to be the major executioner caspase during the demolition phase of apoptosis [42, 43]. Caspase-3 cleaves a number of structural proteins such as fodrin, gelsolin, rabaptin, nuclear lamin B, and vimentin [43–45]. On the other hand, caspase-6 appears to merely cleave the nuclear lamin A during apoptosis [43]. Caspase-3 also cleaves diverse regulatory proteins and enzymes, including focal adhesion kinase (FAK), protein kinase C delta, retinoblastoma protein (Rb) (a protein involved in cell survival), p21-activated kinase (PAK), U1 small nuclear ribonucleoprotein (U1snRNP), DNA fragmentation factor 45 (DFF45), inhibitor of caspase-activated DNase (ICAD), receptor interacting protein (RIP), X-linked inhibitor of apoptosis protein (X-IAP), signal transducer and activator of transcription-1 (STAT1), and topoisomerase I [43, 44, 46]. Initially, poly (ADP-ribose) polymerase (PARP) is reported to be an exclusive substrate for caspase-7 [43], but a later study proved that it is cleaved by both caspase-3 and caspase-7 [47].

Caspase-mediated cleavage of structural proteins is essential for the apoptosis-associated morphological changes. For example, cleavage of gelsolin in multiple cell types causes cells to round up, detach from the plate, and undergo nuclear fragmentation [48]. Inactivation of rabaptin-5 causes fragmentation of endosomes during the execution phase of apoptosis [49]. Fodrin is a major component of the cortical cytoskeleton of most eukaryotic cells; it has binding sites for actin, calmodulin, and microtubules [50]. Its proteolysis contributes to structural rearrangements including blebbing during apoptosis [51]. FAK is a tyrosine kinase of which its phosphorylation state and activity are linked to cell adhesion to the extracellular matrix through integrin receptors. It has a direct influence on the cytoskeleton, structures of cell adhesion sites, and membrane protrusions, leading to regulation of cell movement [52, 53]. Caspase-mediated cleavage of FAK is known to contribute to the morphological changes in apoptosis. On the other hand, PAK, a serine-threonine kinase, regulates morphological and cytoskeletal changes in a variety of cell types [54, 55]. Blocking PAK function during Fas-induced apoptosis inhibits the morphological changes but accelerates the phosphatidylserine externalization in the membrane. Stable Jurkat cell lines that express a dominant-negative PAK mutant are resistant to Fas-induced formation of apoptotic bodies and cleavage of PAK [56].

PARP cleavage is believed to attenuate the cell's ability to carry out DNA repair [44, 57]. Caspase-8 is also found to cleave PARP-2, a member of the PARP family involved in DNA

repair, suggesting that caspase-8 is both an initiator and effector caspase [58]. Active caspase-3 or caspase-7 proteolytically cleaves DFF45, which subsequently releases active DFF40, the inhibitor's associated endonuclease. It is responsible for the degradation of chromosomes into nucleosomal fragments, producing the characteristic hallmark of apoptosis [59, 60]. Cleavage of both structural and regulatory proteins is essential for the apoptotic-associated chromatin condensation, DNA fragmentation, nuclear collapse and morphological changes such as cell shrinkage and detachment, membrane blebbing, and formation of apoptotic bodies. Figure 17.1 illustrates the extrinsic apoptosis signaling pathway.

17.2.2 Intrinsic Apoptosis Pathway

Intrinsic apoptosis is a form of regulated cell death which is centrally mediated by the mitochondria. Intrinsic apoptosis can be triggered by DNA damage, γ-irradiation, oxidative stress, cytosolic Ca^{2+} overload, serum deprivation, and many other intracellular stress conditions. Upon stimulation, various molecules are released into the cytoplasm including Cyt *c* [25, 61], second mitochondria-derived activator of caspases/direct IAP-binding protein with low pI (Smac/DIABLO) [62, 63], apoptosis-inducing factor (AIF, promotes chromatin condensation) [64], endonuclease G (EndoG, facilitates chromatin degradation) [65, 66], and high-temperature requirement protein A2 (HtrA2/Omi) [67]. Cyt *c* binds to and activates Apaf-1 protein in the cytoplasm, inducing the formation of apoptosome which subsequently recruits the initiator procaspase-9, yielding activated caspase-9 and finally mediating the activation of caspase-3 and caspase-7 [34]. Loss of Cyt *c* from the mitochondria also results in the inhibition of the respiratory chain. The condition elicits and aggravates reactive oxygen species (ROS) overproduction and is thought to activate a feed-forward circuit for the amplification of the apoptotic signal [68]. The function of Cyt *c* and its role in apoptosis is widely reviewed and discussed elsewhere [69–71].

Bcl-2 family of proteins plays an important role in the regulation of mitochondrial-linked apoptosis [72]. Bcl-2 subfamilies such as Bax, Bak, and Bcl-2 homolog (BH)3-only subfamily proteins (e.g., Bid) play a pro-apoptotic role, while Bcl-2 and Bcl-X_L are functionally anti-apoptotic. Activated Bax and Bak form homo-oligomer which creates pores on the mitochondrial membrane and releases toxic proteins from the mitochondria. Bcl-2 and Bcl-X_L inhibit the action by blocking the activation of Bax and Bak and prevent the release of pro-apoptotic proteins [73]. Nevertheless, the activation of Bax and Bak can be restored with the presence of pro-apoptotic BH3-only proteins. BH3-only proteins function as antagonists of specific subsets of their pro-survival relatives [74, 75]. The pore-forming activities of Bax and Bak trigger a condition known as mitochondrial outer membrane permeabilization (MOMP). MOMP can also be triggered by the opening of a multiprotein complex known as permeability transition pore complex (PTPC) [76, 77]. MOMP causes generalized and irreversible inner mitochondrial transmembrane potential (ΔΨm) dissipation. In the inner mitochondrial membrane (IM) of a healthy cell, the frontier between the intermembrane/intercristae space and the matrix is nearly impermeable to all ions, including protons which help create the proton gradient required for oxidative phosphorylation [68]. The charge imbalance that results from the generation of an electrochemical gradient across the IM forms the basis of the ΔΨm [68]. A loss of the ΔΨm or long-lasting or permanent ΔΨm dissipation can lead to cell death [78]. Pro-apoptotic Bcl-2 proteins appear to cause the release of Cyt *c*, Smac/DIABLO, and HtrA2/Omi but not EndoG and AIF [79]. On the other hand, BH3-only protein Bid cleavage by caspase-8 serves to engage a mitochondrial amplification loop during extrinsic apoptosis. Caspase-8 cleaves Bid, generating a truncated fragment known as truncated Bid (tBid) that can permeabilize the mitochondrion, resulting in MOMP [80].

Inhibitors of apoptosis proteins (IAPs) play an important role in the regulation of apoptosis. Eight human IAPs have been identified consisting of X-IAP, IAP-like protein-2 (ILP-2), cIAP-1,

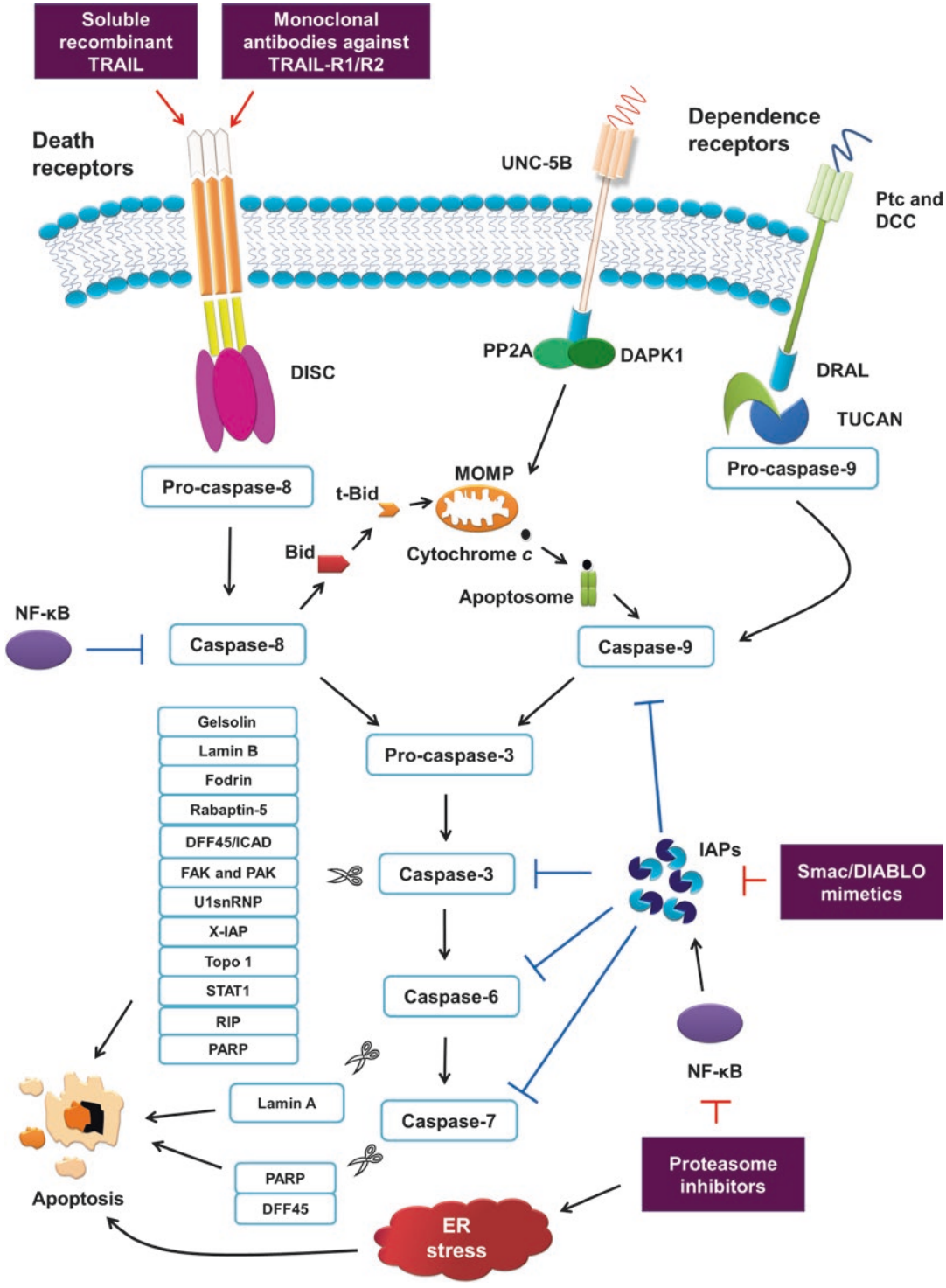


Fig. 17.1 Extrinsic apoptosis signaling pathway and therapeutic targets

cIAP-2, melanoma inhibitor of apoptosis protein (ML-IAP), neuronal apoptosis inhibitory protein (NAIP), survivin, and apollon [81]. Human IAP family members such as X-IAP, cIAP-1, and cIAP-2 are potent caspase inhibitors [82, 83]. X-IAP, cIAP-1, and cIAP-2 block Cyt *c*-induced activation of caspase-9, thus preventing the activation of caspase-3, caspase-6, and caspase-7. Furthermore, these IAPs bind to and inhibit the enzymatic activity of caspase-3 following its activation by caspase-8, thereby arresting the proteolytic cascade initiated by the initiator caspase [84]. X-IAP primarily inhibits caspase by disrupting the conformation of the active caspase and masking the substrate binding active site [81].

Smac/DIABLO and HtrA2/Omi inhibit the anti-apoptotic function of several members of the IAP family [85, 86]. Smac/DIABLO and HtrA2/Omi are two nuclear-encoded mitochondrial proteins functioning as IAP antagonists, identified in mammals [67, 87–90]. After their release into the cytosol stimulated by apoptotic triggers, Smac/DIABLO and HtrA2/Omi competitively bind to the BIR domains of IAPs via the IAP-binding motif, so that the BIR-bound caspases are released and reactivated [91–93]. Smac/DIABLO and HtrA2/Omi manifest distinct physical characteristics and biochemical activities, of which the active Smac/DIABLO is a homodimer, whereas HtrA2/Omi is a homotrimer [85, 94]. HtrA2/Omi is a mitochondrial serine protease and has diverse roles, including maintenance of mitochondrial homeostasis and regulation of cellular apoptosis [95–97]. A comprehensive proteome-wide analysis of Jurkat cell lysates leads to the identification of potential HtrA2/Omi substrates, for example, the cytoskeleton-associated proteins such as actin, α- and β-tubulin, and vimentin further suggest its role in the caspase-independent pathway [98].

EndoG and AIF function in a caspase-independent manner by relocating to the nucleus, where they mediate large-scale DNA fragmentation, independent of caspases [99, 100]. Mammalian EndoG is a nuclear-encoded protein targeted to mitochondria, compartmentalized in the intermembrane space (IMS), and is known to possess DNase/RNase activity [101]. It is implicated in the mitochondrial DNA replication and is shown to be involved in apoptotic DNA degradation [100]. In isolated non-apoptotic nuclei, EndoG first generates large fragments of DNA (> 50 kb) and then cleaves at inter- and intra-nucleosomal sites [102]. Although EndoG apoptotic activity appears to occur in the absence of caspase activation, the pathway leading to EndoG-dependent DNA damage remains controversial [103, 104].

AIF was originally discovered as an IMS component capable of inducing chromatin condensation and DNA loss in the nuclei isolated from healthy cells [102, 105]. AIF is a flavoprotein, which was first proposed to act as a protease or protease activator [106] and its apoptogenic activity is not affected by z-VAD-fmk [107]. Contribution of AIF to apoptosis depends on the cell types and death triggers [102]. Both endogenous and recombinant AIF are found to trigger peripheral chromatin condensation and large-scale DNA fragmentation in a caspase-independent manner [108, 109]. AIF is not known to possess nuclease activity; thus, AIF is postulated to directly interact with DNA and disrupt/collapse chromatin structure by displacing chromatin-associated proteins and/or by recruiting proteases and nucleases to form DNA-degrading complexes or degradosomes [102, 110].

Another important signaling pathway affecting the regulation of apoptosis is the nuclear factor of κB (NF-κB). NF-κB is a sequence-specific transcription factor known to be involved in the inflammatory and innate immune responses. Under normal conditions, NF-κB becomes activated only upon stimulation and subsequently upregulates the transcription of its target genes. NF-κB is activated by many divergent stimuli, including pro-inflammatory cytokines such as TNF-α, TRAIL, interleukin-1β (IL-1β), epidermal growth factor (EGF), T- and B-cell mitogens, bacteria and lipopolysaccharides (LPS), viral proteins, double-stranded RNA, drugs, and a variety of physical and chemical stresses [111]. However, in tumor cells, molecular alterations result in impaired regulation of NF-κB and

become constitutively activated in such cases, leading to deregulated expression of NF-κB-controlled genes [112]. Some genes targeted by NF-κB include cytokines/chemokines and their modulators, immunoreceptors, transcription factors, and regulators of apoptosis such as Bcl-X_L, Fas, FasL, and IAPs [111].

NF-κB is also known to play a pro-apoptotic role, in addition to its more common anti-apoptotic role. Examples of its pro-apoptotic effects in cells include those found in B-cells [113], T-cells [114, 115], and neuronal cells [116, 117]. The anti-apoptotic effects of NF-κB appeared to be cell-type specific and/or dependent on the inducing signal. Normally, NF-κB is transcriptionally inactive in the cytoplasm of most cells as it is bound to its cytoplasmic inhibitor IκBα. Upon stimulation with pro-inflammatory cytokines, such as TNF-α or IL-1, IκBα protein is phosphorylated, ubiquitinated, and subsequently degraded by the proteasome (the role of proteasome is further discussed under proteasome inhibitors). This process exposes the previously masked nuclear localization signal of NF-κB, allowing it to translocate into the nucleus upon IκBα proteolysis and subsequently activate the expression of important target genes involved in cell growth, survival, and adhesion [118, 119]. Activated NF-κB leads to the activation of A1/Bfl-1, a member of the Bcl-2 family, which suppresses Cyt *c* release from the mitochondria [120]. NF-κB activation blocks caspase-8 cleavage and Cyt *c* release, indicating that NF-κB suppresses the earliest signaling components of the caspase cascade. The IAP family genes (*cIAP-1* and *cIAP-2*) and TRAF family genes (*TRAF1* and *TRAF2*) are positively regulated by NF-κB with rapid kinetics following TNF addition [121, 122]. Another member of the IAP family, X-IAP, has been shown to be activated by NF-κB in endothelial cells [123, 124]. Thus, NF-κB activation functions to suppress apoptosis at multiple levels.

The NCCD initially defines "intrinsic apoptosis" as cell death mediated by MOMP and associated with generalized and irreversible ΔΨm dissipation, release of IMS proteins, and respiratory chain inhibition [16]. However, in their latest recommendation, it was proposed that intrinsic apoptosis to be defined as a form of regulated cell death initiated by perturbations of the intracellular or extracellular microenvironment, demarcated by MOMP, and precipitated by executioner caspases, mainly caspase-3 [17]. Figure 17.2 illustrates the intrinsic apoptosis pathway.

17.3 Apoptosis and Cancer

Apoptosis is an essential developmental process to maintain tissue homeostasis, and defects in apoptosis regulation play an important role in cancer development. Deregulation in the apoptosis pathway is one of the reasons why neoplastic cells gain extended life span, develop genetic mutations capable of growth under stress conditions, and undergo angiogenesis [9]. Several key pathways controlling apoptosis are commonly altered in cancer [125]. Tumor resistance to apoptotic cell death is often a hallmark of cancer and contributes to chemoresistance [9]. Alteration of many proteins involved in both intrinsic and extrinsic signaling pathways has been described. For example, overexpression of certain anti-apoptotic proteins, such as Bcl-2, Bcl-X_L, Akt, NF-κB, and IAP protein family, is found in various human tumors [126].

The apoptotic pathway of Fas, one of the TNF receptor family members, is frequently blocked by several mechanisms in cancer, one of which is *Fas* gene mutation [127–129]. *Fas* mutations have been detected in several types of human cancers with frequent allelic losses of chromosome 10q24, where the gene resides [128–130]. Both *TRAIL-R1* and *TRAIL-R2* genes are mapped on chromosome 8p21-22, and allelic losses of the chromosome 8p21-22 have been reported as a frequent event in several cancers, including non-Hodgkin's lymphoma (NHL), lung cancer, breast cancer, colon cancer, prostate cancer, hepatocellular carcinoma, and head and neck cancer [131–137]. Mutations

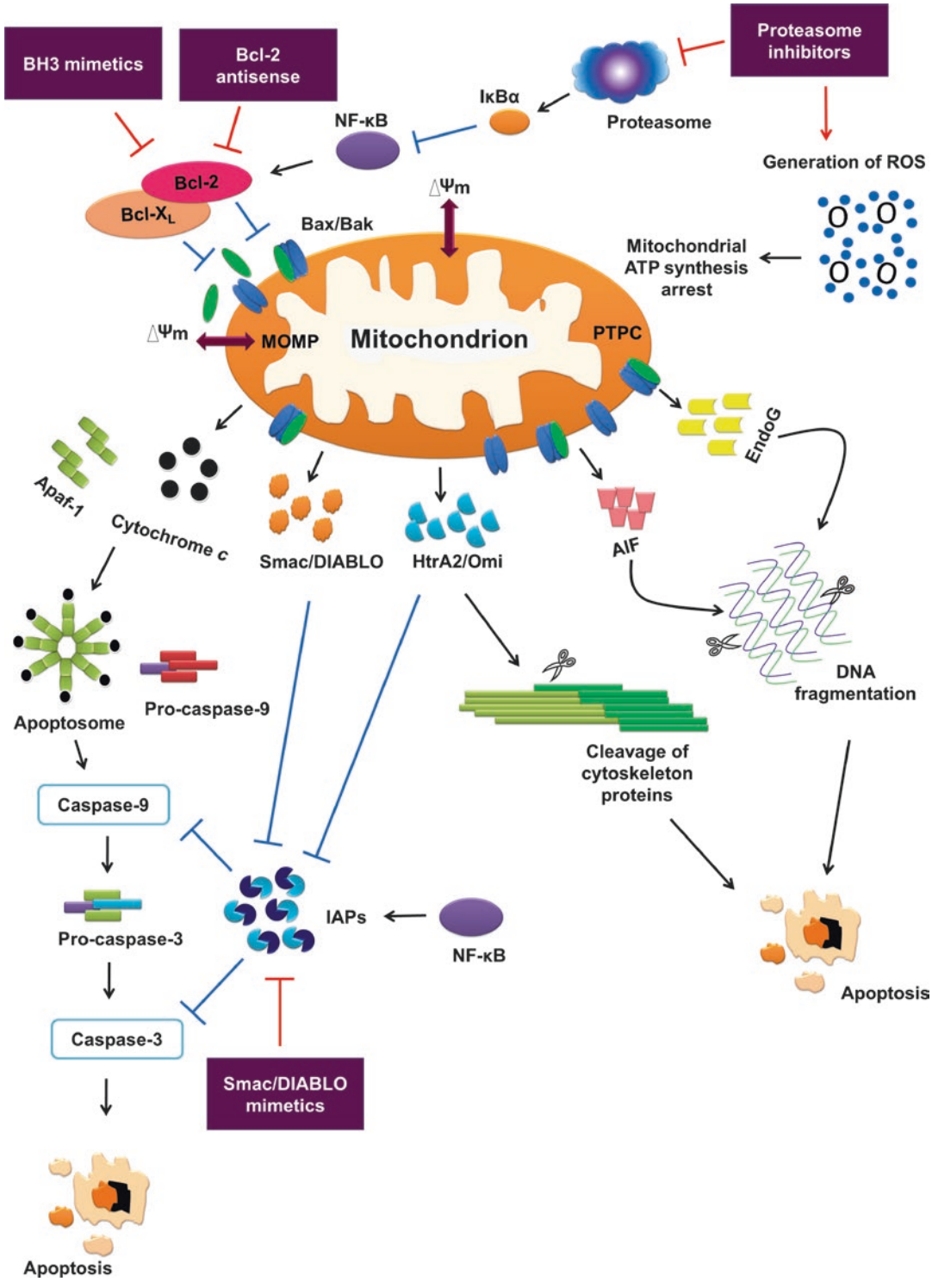


Fig. 17.2 Intrinsic apoptosis signaling pathway and therapeutic targets

of *TRAIL-R2* gene have been reported in head and neck cancer [138] and non-small cell lung cancer (NSCLC) [139]. In addition, somatic mutations of *TRAIL-R1* and *TRAIL-R2* genes are found in NHL [140] and breast cancer [141]. The number of pancreatic tumor tissues with positive membrane staining for TRAIL-R1 and TRAIL-R2 is lower than non-tumor tissues [142]. Loss of TRAIL-R2 expression is associated with poorer prognosis in patients [142]. A significant association is also observed between lower expression of *TNF* genes and poor prognosis in childhood adrenocortical tumors [143].

On the other hand, PP2A inactivation in cancer occurs frequently through the upregulation of CIP2A, a PR65 interactor and PP2A inhibitor [144]. PR65β, a scaffold protein which interacts with the catalytic subunit of PP2A, appears to play a key regulatory role in cancer. This scaffold protein is decreased or mutated in a large fraction of human cancers and has been recently linked to cancer development [145]. On the other hand, Ptc is a tumor suppressor, and mutations of Ptc are associated with neoplasia, especially in basal cell carcinoma and medulloblastoma [38, 39]. DCC expression is shown to be markedly reduced in more than 50% of colorectal tumors. The loss of DCC is not restricted to colon carcinoma but has been observed in other tumor types, including carcinoma of the stomach, pancreas, esophagus, prostate, bladder, breast, male germ tumors, neuroblastomas, gliomas, and some leukemias [35, 146, 147].

Members of the Bcl-2 family of proteins as prominent regulators of apoptosis signaling are often deregulated in many cancers, including lung carcinoma, lymphoma, and glioblastoma [148–152]. Aberrant expression of Bcl-2 is common in chronic lymphocytic leukemia (CLL) and is associated with poor response to chemotherapy and decreased overall survival [153]. *Bcl-2* gene amplification is reported in diffuse large B-cell lymphomas (DLBCL), and overexpression of Bcl-2 protein has been associated with poor prognosis in some forms of NHL [154–156]. Myc/Bcl-2 co-expression in DLBCL is associated with aggressiveness, is more common in the unfavorable activated B-cell (ABC)-like subtypes, and contributes to the overall inferior prognosis of patients with ABC-DLBCL [157]. Single-nucleotide polymorphisms of Bcl-2 are found to have an association with survival in advanced-stage NSCLC patients who received chemotherapy [158]. Furthermore, mutations that inactivate the pro-apoptotic *Bax* gene have been observed in solid tumors and hematological malignancies [159, 160]. Higher Bcl-2 to Bax ratios have been associated with progression of CLL, shorter remission duration, and shorter survival [161, 162]. Therefore, cancer therapeutics that specifically inhibits the anti-apoptotic proteins or activates the pro-apoptotic members of the Bcl-2 family proteins is an attractive strategy to reverse the intrinsic or acquired resistance of cancer cells to apoptosis [163].

Studies have reported that polymorphic variants of the *caspase-8* gene are associated with risk of multiple cancers [164–168]. For example, a six-nucleotide insertion-deletion variant polymorphism (6 N ins/del) of *caspase-8* promoter is linked to a significant decreased risk of bladder and lung cancer in Chinese populations [167, 168]. Since cancer cells are highly dependent on these genetic changes in the apoptotic pathways for survival, designing novel anticancer drugs that selectively kill cancer cells while sparing normal cells seems appealing [169]. Survivin, a member of the IAP family, is undetectable in terminally differentiated adult tissues but abundantly expressed in human cancers such as lung, colon, pancreas, prostate, and breast [163]. Increased survivin mRNA is associated with decreased overall survival in colon cancer patients [170]. Furthermore, increased levels of cIAPs in malignant cells are associated with a shorter relapse-free survival in patients with prostate cancer [171]. Livin or ML-IAP, another member of the IAP family of proteins, is found to be expressed in tumor cells [172, 173]. Thus, the possibility of IAP inactivation through therapeutic intervention is attractive and has gained much interest over the years.

Another important pathway linked to the apoptosis cell death is the p53 pathway, which is often inactivated and deregulated in human cancers [174, 175]. The p53 protein is a transcription

factor with tumor suppressor activities. Its role in tumor suppression relies partly on its ability to regulate the transcription of genes important in cell cycle arrest and in apoptosis. The p53 protein upregulates the expression of a number of genes in response to genotoxic stress, including the pro-apoptotic Bax [176]. It is also found to inhibit the expression of the *Bcl-2* gene [177]. Studies have also shown that Bid is a p53-responsive chemosensitivity gene, which may enhance the cell death response to chemotherapy [178]. The fact that a majority of human cancers harbor mutations in the *p53* gene suggests that such mutations would have contributed to the apoptosis resistance environment. However, the p53 network and the mechanism by which p53 determines the fate of cells remain to be explored.

17.4 Apoptosis Signaling Pathways and Therapeutic Targets in Cancer

17.4.1 TRAIL (TRAIL ligands, Monoclonal Antibodies Against TRAIL-R1 and TRAIL-R2)

TRAIL (Apo2 ligand) induces cell death via the extrinsic pathway by recruiting and activating caspase-8 and caspase-10 to its R1 and R2 receptors [179]. It activates the intrinsic pathway via the TRAIL-caspase-8-tBid-Bax cascade, through the cleavage of Bid, which promotes Bax and Bak oligomerization, leading to Cyt *c* release and activation of caspase-9 [180]. These processes collectively amplify the activities of the related executioner caspases. TRAIL is a promising cancer therapeutic agent, known to induce apoptosis in a wide variety of tumor cells while sparing normal cells [181, 182]. TRAIL activity is also known to be independent of the p53 status, making it potentially effective against chemotherapy-resistant tumors [183]. Many clinical trials have been initiated in cancer patients, using soluble recombinant TRAIL (rhApo2L, codeveloped by Genentech and Amgen; circularly permuted TRAIL (CPT) developed by Beijing Sunbio Biotech) [184–187], monoclonal antibodies (mAbs) (agonists) targeting TRAIL-R1, such as mapatumumab [HGS-ERT1 is developed by Human Genome Sciences (HGS)], and anti-TRAIL-R2 agents such as lexatumumab (HGS-ETR2 is developed by HGS), conatumumab (developed by Amgen), and apomab (developed by Genentech) [188].

Early Phase I/Ib trials of rhApo2L (dulanermin) in advanced cancer [189], advanced NSCLC [190], and NHL [191] reported that this drug was well tolerated by patients and no anti-rhApo2L Abs were detected. A Phase Ib study of dulanermin in combination with modified FOLFOX6 plus bevacizumab in patients with metastatic colorectal cancer was also well tolerated with similar adverse reactions that would be expected from FOLFOX plus bevacizumab [192]. However, only partial response was observed in less than half of the patients, and the median progression-free survival (PFS) was 9.9 months. Dulanermin in combination with rituximab in an open-label Phase Ib/II randomized study revealed that the addition of dulanermin to rituximab in patients with indolent B-cell non-Hodgkin lymphoma was tolerable but did not lead to increased objective responses [193]. Similarly, a recent trial to evaluate the efficacy and safety of dulanermin combined with vinorelbine and cisplatin (NP) as the first-line treatment for patients with advanced non-small cell lung cancer (NSCLC) produced unremarkable results. The median PFS was just 6.4 months in the dulanermin arm versus 3.5 months in the placebo arm. Objective response rate (ORR) was 46.78%, and median OS was 14.6 months in the dulanermin arm versus 13.9 months in the placebo arm [194]. Although these TRAIL-R agonists have been shown to be safe and well tolerated in patients, their respective anticancer activities have been largely disappointing [189, 195–197]. The lack of response may be due to the fact that most primary tumor cells are intrinsically resistant to TRAIL or may acquire resistance during the course of treatment [197].

Circularly permuted TRAIL (CPT) is a recombinant human mutant of Apo2L/TRAIL and is currently undergoing clinical development for the

treatment of multiple myeloma (MM) and other hematologic malignancies [186, 187, 198]. The primary molecular structure difference between CPT and the wild-type Apo2L/TRAIL is that the N-terminus of amino acid 121–135 sequence of Apo2L/TRAIL is connected to the C-terminus of the amino acids 135–281 sequence of Apo2L/TRAIL by a flexible linker. This structure forms stable homotrimers and has potent apoptosis-inducing activity via interaction with DR4/DR5 [198]. CPT apparently has better stability and displays better antitumor activity without significant toxicity against normal cells [199]. Results from a multicenter, open-label, Phase II clinical trial designed to determine the safety, efficacy, and the optimal dose of CPT in combination with thalidomide in patients with relapsed and thalidomide-refractory multiple myeloma (RRMM) were rather unremarkable. Although the addition of thalidomide to CPT was well tolerated with no occurrence of dose-limiting toxicities, the overall response rate (ORR) of 41 efficacy-evaluable patients was just 22.0% (2 complete response; 3 near complete response; 4 partial response) [198]. On the other hand, CPT as single-agent therapy for patients with RRMM produced an overall response rate of just 33.3% with one near-complete response (nCR) and eight partial responses (PRs) [187]. In another Phase 2 study where the safety and efficacy of CPT in combination with thalidomide and dexamethasone (CPT + TD) were evaluated in patients with pretreated RRMM, the median PFS time was 6.7 months for the CPT + TD group versus 3.1 months for the TD group. Serious adverse reactions were reported in 19.7% of the patients [186].

Mapatumumab, a fully human agonistic mAb targeting TRAIL-R1, either used alone or in combination with other chemotherapy drugs in Phase I or Phase II trial has not produced impressive trial outcomes, as in most cases, few patients ended with partial response or stable disease [200–203]. Despite its favorable safety profile, mapatumumab demonstrated limited or no clinical activity in Phase I and II trials in advanced solid malignancies [204, 205], NHL [206], NSCLC [207, 208], refractory colorectal cancer [209], and advanced hepatocellular carcinoma [210]. In a recent randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled, Phase II study to evaluate the efficacy and safety of mapatumumab in combination with sorafenib in patients with advanced hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC), the results were clearly disappointing [211]. In this large study, a total of 101 patients were recruited, where treatment with mapatumumab and sorafenib was compared with placebo and sorafenib in patients with advanced HCC and was conducted at 29 sites in 6 countries. Both primary endpoint and secondary efficacy endpoints did not demonstrate a mapatumumab-related benefit beyond that achieved with sorafenib alone. These results demonstrated that patients with HCC are unlikely to benefit from adding mapatumumab to their sorafenib-based therapy [211].

Lexatumumab, apomab, and conatumumab are agonistic human mAbs against TRAIL-R2. Generally, the percentage of patients developed partial response or stable disease in several early Phase I trials involving these novel drugs is low, despite being well tolerated. In a Phase I trial and pharmacokinetic study of lexatumumab in pediatric patients with solid tumors, where 24 patients received a total of 56 cycles of lexatumumab over all four planned dose levels, none of the patients experienced complete or partial response [212]. On the other hand, objective activity of apomab was also not demonstrated in a Phase II study among patients with NHL [213], despite some evidence of activity in a Phase I study in patients with advanced malignancies [214]. In a Phase II trial, the addition of apomab to paclitaxel/carboplatin/bevacizumab combination did not improve overall efficacy while increasing the rate of some adverse effects in patients with NSCLC [196, 215]. Unsurprisingly, there are no recent published trial results and ongoing active trials involving both lexatumumab and apomab.

As for conatumumab, a Phase I study in advanced solid tumors showed that this drug is generally well tolerated [216, 217]. Conatumumab in combination with gemcitabine shows evidence of an improved 6-month survival rate and tolerable toxicity in Phase Ib and II metastatic pancreatic cancer trials [218, 219]. In metastatic

colorectal cancer, conatumumab improves progression-free survival (PFS) when combined with FOLFIRI [220], but limited activity when combined with modified FOLFOX6 and bevacizumab [221, 222], and no activity when combined with panitumumab [223]. The effect of conatumumab in NSCLC is similar as compared with rhApo2L [190, 196], of which combination of this drug with paclitaxel and carboplatin did not produce promising results [224, 225]. Combination of conatumumab with other chemotherapy drugs also produced no evidence of activity in soft tissue sarcomas [226]. Ganitumab, an agent targeting the insulin-like growth factor receptor type 1 (IGF1R), and conatumumab were used in a recent Phase Ib/II trial in patients with advanced solid tumors. The study was conducted in six cohorts of advanced non-small cell lung cancer (squamous or non-squamous histology), colorectal cancer, sarcoma, pancreatic cancer, or ovarian cancer patients [227]. Although no dose-limiting toxicities were observed and drugs were well-tolerated, there were no objective responses in all the population tested.

Generally, these trials lacked data on the correlation between patient's TRAIL status and response to therapy. Preferential TRAIL sensitivity and presence of TRAIL-R1 and TRAIL-R2 expression in certain cancers may be crucial factors in patient's response. As such, rhApo2L and agonistic anti-TRAIL-R therapies may be limited to patients with TRAIL-sensitive tumors. The efficacy of TRAIL targeting therapies may be improved if diagnostic methods determining TRAIL sensitivity of clinically detectable human cancers are available [188]. Although there are no more active trials involving most of the drugs in this group, studies involving the combination of conatumumab and other chemotherapy drugs are still ongoing.

17.4.2 Bcl-2 Family Proteins (BH3 Mimetics and Bcl-2 Antisense)

Bcl-2 family proteins can regulate apoptosis both positively and negatively. The Bcl-2 family members consist of anti-apoptotic (Bcl-2, Bcl-X_L, Bcl-W, Bag-1, Mcl-1, and A1/Bfl-1) as well as pro-apoptotic (Bad, Bax, Bak, Bcl-xs, Bid, Bik, and Hrk) molecules [228, 229]. The balance and interaction between Bcl-2 gene family members and posttranslational modifications of Bcl-2-related proteins have been demonstrated to play important roles in regulating cell survival and death. The Bcl-2 family is characterized by specific regions of homology termed Bcl-2 homology (BH1, BH2, BH3, and BH4) domains. Anti-apoptotic proteins have BH1–BH4 domains (e.g., Bcl-2 and Bcl-X_L). On the other hand, pro-apoptotic proteins have either BH1–BH3 domains (e.g., Bax and Bak) or BH3-only domains (e.g., Bid, Bim, Puma, Bad, Noxa, Hrk, Bik) [75, 230, 231]. These domains are critical to the function of these proteins, especially their impact on cell survival and cell death and their ability to interact with other family members and regulatory proteins. The molecular surface of the multidomain anti-apoptotic Bcl-2 protein contains a BH3-binding groove, which accommodates BH3 domain from pro-apoptotic Bcl-2 protein family members. The BH3-only proteins are known to function as antagonists of anti-apoptotic Bcl-2 family proteins and act as tumor suppressors [75]. This forms the basis or platform for subsequent drug discovery strategies based on mimicking BH3 peptides with chemical compounds that bind to the same groove [232].

The earlier observation that apoptosis deregulation in cancer cells primarily affects the upstream of the signaling pathways of Bax/Bak and mitochondria, leaving the downstream core of the apoptotic machinery mostly intact, has led to a therapeutic strategy of which manipulation of the equilibrium between the pro- and anti-apoptotic Bcl-2 family members could possibly restore apoptosis [126, 169]. Since pro-apoptotic BH3 domains directly bind to the hydrophobic grooves of pro-survival proteins with high affinity, and are necessary and sufficient for initiation of apoptosis, agents mimicking the BH3 domains may provide some degree of selectivity against cancer cells. This is mainly because cancer cells are postulated to be more sensitive to inhibition of pro-survival proteins compared with their normal counterparts [9]. Cancer cells often express

high levels of Bcl-2-like anti-apoptotic proteins to evade the apoptotic fate imposed by aberrant cell proliferation, activation of oncogenes, or DNA damage [233]. Therefore, it is possible to design BH3 mimetics to target specific anti-apoptotic proteins that are overexpressed in a particular type of cancer for improved specificity [169]. Several chemicals mimicking BH3 peptides exclusively targeting the Bcl-2 anti-apoptotic proteins have since been described [232, 234, 235]. Another antitumor strategy is direct inhibition of Bcl-2 mRNA, in the form of antisense.

One of the earliest small-molecule BH3 mimetics or more accurately Bcl-2 and Bcl-X_L inhibitor that went through several Phase I/II clinical trials is gossypol, an orally available compound derived from cottonseed extracts [236]. It binds to the BH3-binding grooves of Bcl-2, Bcl-X_L, and Mcl-1 [237]. However, several past clinical trials have not indicated this compound as an effective anticancer agent. Either used alone or in combination, patients treated with gossypol failed to show evidence of tumor regression or any therapeutic responses in several clinical trials [238–240]. A semisynthetic analog of gossypol with improved pharmacologic properties, such as apogossypolone (ApoG2), is found to inhibit the growth of diffuse large cell lymphoma cells in vitro and in vivo [241]. However, this compound has yet to proceed to clinical trials.

A derivative of R-(-)-gossypol (AT-101) is found to be well tolerated in a Phase I trial involving CLL patients [242]. Disappointingly, later studies showed that AT-101 is either not active in patients or the response rates are too low that it did not meet the criteria for additional enrollment in further trials for small cell lung cancer (SCLC) [243, 244]. In NSCLC, patients did not meet the primary endpoint of improved PFS when given a combination of AT-101 and docetaxel [245]. However, AT-101 added to cisplatin and etoposide in another small cohort of patients with SCLC was reported to be encouraging [246]. The slight efficacy gains from AT-101 were probably a result of its role in delaying and/or overcoming chemotherapy resistance, and, as such, it would yield optimal results in the setting of combination cytotoxic therapy [246]. As first-line therapy for metastatic castration-resistant prostate cancer, AT-101 was tolerable but did not extend OS when combined with docetaxel and prednisone in these patients [247]. In another Phase II multicenter study, where men with castration-sensitive metastatic prostate cancer were treated with AT-101 and androgen deprivation therapy, the combination did not meet the pre-specified level of activity [248]. Similarly, the addition of AT-101 to docetaxel in patients with recurrent or distantly metastatic head and neck squamous cell carcinoma did not appear to demonstrate evidence of efficacy [249]. Surprisingly, based on its lack of good efficacy in recent studies, several clinical trials involving combination with lenalidomide and other chemotherapy drugs are currently recruiting patients with multiple myeloma, CLL, and advanced laryngeal cancer. Biological therapies, such as lenalidomide, may stimulate the immune system, and addition to AT-101 may be an effective treatment for relapsed or refractory B-CLL [250].

Obatoclax mesylate (GX15-070) is an indole derivative and a broad-spectrum inhibitor of pro-survival Bcl-2 family proteins, and it has been extensively evaluated in clinical trials. Early Phase I clinical trial of obatoclax mesylate in patients with refractory leukemia and myelodysplasia has demonstrated that the drug is well tolerated up to the highest dose. However, only a single patient with acute myeloid leukemia (AML) with mixed lineage leukemia t(9;11) rearrangement achieved complete remission [251]. In another Phase I trial, where obatoclax was administered to patients with advanced CLL, even though activation of Bax and Bak was demonstrated, it had modest single-agent activity in heavily pretreated patients [252]. In advanced solid tumor and lymphoma, of 35 patients given obatoclax infusions, only 1 patient with relapsed NHL achieved partial response [253]. In both Phase I and II studies in patients with relapsed SCLC, obatoclax added to topotecan produced no difference in response rates as compared to topotecan alone, even though the drug was generally well tolerated [254, 255]. In patients with

extensive-stage small cell lung cancer (ES-SCLC), obatoclax failed to significantly improve ORR, PFS, or OS [256]. In addition, response to this drug in combination with docetaxel is also reported to be minimal in patients with NSCLC [257]. Obatoclax has also showed limited clinical activity in heavily pretreated patients with classic Hodgkin's lymphoma (HL) [258]. Single-agent obatoclax is also not associated with an objective response in patients with acute myeloid leukemia (AML) [259] and has limited first-line activity in patients with myelodysplastic syndromes [260]. Obatoclax appears to have limited efficacy as a single agent or even in combination with some of the more common anticancer drugs.

Another BH3 mimetic, navitoclax (ABT-263) is a selective, potent, and orally bioavailable small-molecule Bcl-2 inhibitor. It has high affinity for the anti-apoptotic Bcl-2 family proteins and kills cancer cells in a Bax/Bak-dependent manner [261]. In a Phase II clinical study, navitoclax exhibited limited single-agent activity against advanced and recurrent SCLC [262]. Navitoclax in combination with either carboplatin and paclitaxel or paclitaxel alone produced significant hematological and non-hematological toxicity and had limited efficacy in the treatment of patients with solid tumors [263]. Similarly, there is lack of objective responses in patients given a regimen of navitoclax combined with gemcitabine or irinotecan with solid tumors [264, 265]. However, when combined with rituximab, moderate response rates are observed in patients with follicular lymphoma and CLL. The combination demonstrated higher response rates for low-grade lymphoid cancers than observed for either agent alone in previous Phase 1 trials [266]. In another similar study, navitoclax in combination with rituximab yielded higher response rates than rituximab alone and resulted in prolonged progression-free survival with treatment beyond 12 weeks [267]. Clinical trials of navitoclax as a single agent or as combination therapy with signaling pathway inhibitors in a variety of cancers such as leukemia, non-small cell lung cancer, melanoma, and other solid tumors are currently ongoing.

Venetoclax (ABT-199) is the first FDA-approved treatment that targets the BCL-2 protein for use in patients with 17p-deleted CLL. Venetoclax is an oral medication, taken daily with food. As a single agent, it is most effective in patients with relapsed CLL and mantle cell lymphoma, where response rates of 80% and complete remission rates of 20% are observed [268]. However, single-agent response rates are modest in follicular lymphoma, diffuse large B-cell lymphoma, multiple myeloma, and AML. Venetoclax is highly selective and known to be more potent than navitoclax [269]. Prior to its approval in 2016, several major studies were carried out for venetoclax in patients with relapsed or refractory CLL or SLL or with non-Hodgkin's lymphoma [270, 271]. These trials showed the potential of BCL-2 antagonism effects of venetoclax across a range of doses and its ability in producing major reductions in tumor burden in all tissue compartments. Side effects were generally limited to low-grade nausea and diarrhea, and the most important toxic effect noted was the tumor lysis syndrome, which the risk can be reduced by a slow-dose ramp-up, careful monitoring, and adequate prophylaxis [272]. Venetoclax has also demonstrated promising clinical activity and favorable tolerability in cohorts of patients with CLL, whose disease progressed during or after B-cell receptor pathway inhibitors (BCRi) (idelalisib or ibrutinib) therapy [273, 274]. In addition to CLL, it has acceptable safety profile and has shown evidence of single-agent antimyeloma activity in patients with relapsed/refractory MM, predominantly in patients with t(11;14) abnormality and those with a favorable BCL-2 family profile [275]. Venetoclax with bortezomib and dexamethasone has an acceptable safety profile and promising efficacy in patients with relapsed/refractory MM [276]. Venetoclax in combination with hypomethylating agents such as decitabine or azacitidine in elderly patients with previously untreated AML is also well tolerated and has shown promising results with the number of patients who achieved remission or complete remission [277].

Randomized trials of combination therapy and Phase III trials in both CLL and AML are underway in all these diseases.

Oblimersen sodium is an 18-mer nuclease-resistant phosphorothioate antisense oligonucleotide designed to bind to the first six codons of the human Bcl-2 mRNA [278]. The use of oblimersen in combination with chemotherapy in a variety of cancers has shown diverse response rates with good tolerability. In the Oblimersen Melanoma Study Group, the addition of oblimersen to dacarbazine improved the multiple clinical outcomes in patients with advanced melanoma and increased overall patient's survival [279]. However, in a later prospective double-blind, placebo-controlled study, this combination did not significantly improve overall survival or progression-free survival in patients with advanced melanoma [280]. In another Phase III trial, the addition of oblimersen to fludarabine and cyclophosphamide significantly increased the complete response/nodular partial response rate in patients with relapsed or refractory CLL [281]. In the same study, a significant 5-year survival benefit was observed with oblimersen in combination with fludarabine and cyclophosphamide. Among patients with fludarabine-sensitive disease who had previously demonstrated maximum benefit with the same treatment, a 50% reduction in the risk of death was observed [282]. However, not all combination therapies produce desirable outcomes. In the Cancer and Leukemia Group B study 10107 (CALGB), although the combination of oblimersen and imatinib was safe and feasible, no clinical benefits were observed in imatinib-resistant chronic myeloid leukemia (CML) patients [283]. In a randomized Phase II study of carboplatin and etoposide with or without oblimersen for extensive-stage SCLC (CALGB 30103), the addition of oblimersen to a standard regimen did not improve any clinical outcome measure [284]. A randomized study of dexamethasone with or without oblimersen sodium in patients with advanced multiple myeloma (MM) demonstrated no significant differences in time to tumor progression or objective response rate [285].

Interestingly, in another Phase I study, the combination of oblimersen, temozolomide, and albumin-bound paclitaxel was well tolerated and demonstrated encouraging activity in patients with advanced melanoma, with objective response rate and disease control rate at 40.6% and 75%, respectively [286]. Some of the common adverse effects associated with oblimersen sodium administration include fatigue, transaminase elevation, and hematological disorders [287, 288]. So far, the FDA has not approved this drug as there was lack of evidence that oblimersen inhibits Bcl-2 in CLL patients or that altering Bcl-2 is beneficial to them. In addition, adding oblimersen to standard chemotherapy has not provided significant improvement in time to progression, overall survival, or secondary endpoints although toxicity was increased [289]. Currently, there are no more new trials involving oblimersen listed in the NIH ClinicalTrials.gov website.

17.4.3 Proteasome Inhibitors

The proteasome is a multicatalytic enzyme complex that degrades intracellular proteins by a targeted and controlled mechanism. The 26S proteasome, a large protein complex, composes approximately 50 subunits that function as a highly specific molecular shredder by hydrolyzing ubiquitinated proteins into small peptides [290]. The 26S proteasome can be further divided into two sub-complexes, a central 20S proteolytic core particle (CP) that is capped at either end by one or two 19S regulatory particles (19S RP). The 20S CP is the degradation unit and contains the active sites required to hydrolyze proteins into peptides [290]. On the other hand, the 19S RP controls the degradation of ubiquitin-tagged substrates by acting as a receptor for poly-ubiquitinated proteins and facilitating their ATP-dependent translocation into the catalytic chamber of the 20S CP [290].

The ubiquitin-proteasome pathway (UPP) is responsible for proteolytic degradation of the majority of damaged and misfolded proteins within the eukaryotic cell. The UPP is essentially

important for controlled degradation of key regulatory proteins involved in a wide variety of cellular functions such as apoptosis [291], cell cycle control, proliferation [292], and transcriptional regulation [293]. However, overactivity of the UPP results in an accelerated turnover of proteins that regulate the cell cycle, leading to a deregulated mitosis, thereby supporting cancer growth [294]. A defect in the proteasome function is associated with the development of different diseases such as neurodegenerative disorders, cardiovascular and rheumatoid diseases, and cachexia, but not cancer, suggesting that cancer cells use the proteasome for their survival [295]. In humans, three deubiquitinases (DUBs) are associated with the 19S RP. Two of these (UCHL5/Uch37 and USP14/Ubp6) are cysteine proteases and members of the ubiquitin C-terminal hydrolases (UCH) and ubiquitin-specific proteases (USP) families, respectively. The expression of the cysteine DUBs UCHL5 and USP14 is also deregulated in cancer. Activities of UCHL5 (along with several other DUBs) are found to be enhanced in tumor biopsies of cervical carcinoma when compared to adjacent normal tissues [296].

The transcription factor NF-κB is inactive in the cytoplasm under normal conditions and is activated when its binding partner, IκBα, is degraded by the proteasome. Constitutive NF-κB activity has been observed in a variety of tumors including MM; sustained activity of NF-κB may lead to aberrant expression of target genes promoting tumor cell proliferation and survival [297]. Bcl-2 is identified as a key target of NF-κB in B-cell lymphoma [298]. NF-κB, a centrally important transcription factor involved in immune and inflammatory cellular responses affecting both cell growth and survival, appears to be pivotally involved in the pathogenesis of aggressive lymphoid malignancies [299]. As a result, the inhibition of proteasome function serves as an important mechanism in anticancer therapy. Proteasome inhibitors have recently emerged as an interesting and potentially new group of chemotherapeutic agents for various human cancers, including breast, prostate, and lung carcinomas, which function in part by stabilizing the IκBα protein and, finally, inhibiting NF-κB activation [119, 300]. Preclinical studies have shown that the proteasome inhibitor, bortezomib, decreases proliferation, induces apoptosis, enhances the activity of chemotherapy and radiation, and reverses chemoresistance in a variety of hematologic and solid malignancy models in vitro and in vivo [301]. Bortezomib is a novel synthetic dipeptide boronic acid that reversibly inhibits the chymotryptic-like activity, and to a lesser extent, the caspase-like activity of the β5- and β1-subunits, of the 20S CP [302].

However, the role of NF-κB as a key determinant of bortezomib-induced cytotoxicity is rather controversial, as several studies have shown that direct inhibition of NF-κB signaling is insufficient to induce apoptosis in bortezomib-sensitive cells [303–305]. Recent studies also found that bortezomib exerts no inhibition of constitutive NF-κB activity in MM or mantle cell lymphoma cells [306, 307]. Results of the genome-wide siRNA screen performed by Chen and coworkers showed that bortezomib induces cell death by interfering with ribosome function and DNA damage pathways and through deregulation of Myc signaling [308]. A separate screen by Zhu and coworkers demonstrates that knockdown of cyclin-dependent kinase 5 (CDK5), as well as a number of other genes, potentiated bortezomib-induced cytotoxicity in MM cells [309]. In addition, proteasome inhibitors are also potent inducers of endoplasmic reticulum (ER) stress [304, 310]. Acute ER stress response caused by proteasome inhibition results in apoptosis [310]. In addition to ER stress, several reports indicate that proteasome inhibitors induce the rapid production of ROS, known to be involved in apoptotic signaling [304, 311, 312].

Bortezomib (Velcade®; Millennium Pharmaceuticals, Inc., Cambridge, MA, and Johnson & Johnson Pharmaceutical Research and Development, L.L.C.) is the first proteasome inhibitor approved by the U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA) in 2005 for the treatment of progressive MM in patients who have received at least one prior therapy [313].

The drug was later approved for the treatment of mantle cell lymphoma, a lymphoid malignancy derived from mature B-cells [314–316]. The regulatory approval of bortezomib was based on its efficacy and safety in a large, international, multicenter Phase III prospective study [313]. This randomized, open-label trial compared single-agent bortezomib with single agent, high-dose dexamethasone in patients with progressive MM after at least one prior therapy [317]. Bortezomib manifested significant efficacy and safety, supported by an improved response rate, including achieving near complete responses [313, 317]. Subsequently, further Phase I and II trial results produced encouraging prospects. In a retrospective study [based on data from Phase II (SUMMIT or CREST) or Phase III (APEX) registration studies] to clarify the utility of bortezomib as a repeat therapy, bortezomib retreatment was safe and effective in patients with relapsed MM [318]. In a separate Phase I/II trial, weekly bortezomib plus oral cyclophosphamide and prednisone produced more than 50% complete response rate and an encouraging 1-year survival in relapsed/refractory patients with MM [319]. A regimen consisting of bortezomib, cyclophosphamide, and dexamethasone as induction therapy in previously untreated MM patients is also proven to be effective and tolerable, suggesting that this drug combination induces high response rates independently of cytogenetic risk status [320]. The survival benefit with bortezomib induction/maintenance compared with classical cytotoxic agents in MM is also demonstrated in the Dutch-Belgian Cooperative Trial Group for Hematology Oncology Group-65/German-speaking Myeloma Multicenter Group-HD4 (HOVON-65/GMMG-HD4) Phase III trial [321].

Updated results of a multicenter Phase II PINNACLE study of bortezomib in patients with relapsed or refractory mantle cell lymphoma indicate that single-agent bortezomib is associated with lengthy responses and notable survival in these patients [315]. On the other hand, bortezomib in combination with rituximab, cyclophosphamide, bortezomib, and dexamethasone is also proven to be an effective regimen in relapsed low-grade and mantle cell lymphoma [322]. In addition, combination with cladribine and rituximab was demonstrated to be effective in both advanced relapsed or refractory mantle cell lymphoma and indolent non-Hodgkin lymphoma [323]. However, clinical trials using bortezomib in combination with other chemotherapy drugs in cancers such as HL [324], advanced solid tumors such as breast, ovarian and prostate [325], and metastatic gastroesophageal cancer [326] lacked favorable outcomes. In a recent trial, although daily subcutaneous dose-dense daily regimen of bortezomib showed a dose-dependent plasma exposure with evidence of target inhibition and preliminary signs of clinical activity in solid tumors, the study outcome was limited by cumulative neurological toxicity such as asthenia, anorexia, or ataxia [327]. In another study to evaluate the impact of the addition of bortezomib to rituximab, cyclophosphamide, doxorubicin, vincristine, and prednisone (R-CHOP) on previously untreated patients with non-germinal center B-cell-like (non-GCB) diffuse large B-cell lymphoma (DLBCL), clinical outcomes were not significantly improved by adding bortezomib [328]. Interestingly, a Phase II trial which evaluated the efficacy of bendamustine, bortezomib, and rituximab in patients with previously untreated low-grade lymphoma revealed that the treatment regimen was well tolerated and produced high response rates [329].

It is clear that although bortezomib has potent anti-multiple myeloma activity, not all patients responded to bortezomib, and most responders ultimately relapsed [330, 331]. To date, however, no marker(s) has been identified and validated in a manner that would allow clinical use and distinguish patients likely to respond to bortezomib treatment from those who would not [330]. The most common adverse events are gastrointestinal symptoms, fatigue, thrombocytopenia, and sensory neuropathy, which comprised a major reason of treatment discontinuation [332]. Despite the clinical success of bortezomib in MM and

mantle cell lymphoma, resistance to this drug remains a clinically significant problem. For example, in studies of bortezomib in relapsed refractory patients [331, 332], almost all responding patients ultimately experienced disease progression. Even when bortezomib was used as a single agent in newly diagnosed patients, 52% did not achieve a partial response or a better outcome [333]. Furthermore, the clinical responses to bortezomib in other hematologic malignancies and solid tumors remain low [331, 334]. Currently there are over a hundred clinical trials involving bortezomib either as a single agent or in combination with other chemotherapy drugs in the stage of recruiting, and about a quarter of those trials are Phase III trials.

There are accumulating evidences which support the potential of proteasome inhibitors as immunosuppressants. Proteasome inhibitors are found to interfere with antigen processing and presentation, as well as with the signaling cascades involved in immune cell function and survival, and these agents can be used to reduce antibody production and thus prevent antibody-induced tissue damage. Although several clinical studies have explored the potential of bortezomib for treating immune disorders, such as antibody-mediated organ rejection and graft-versus-host disease (GVHD), and systemic lupus erythematosus, study outcomes were often limited by either bortezomib toxicity or lack of improvement [335–338].

Carfilzomib (previously known as PR-171) is a tetrapeptide epoxyketone-based irreversible proteasome inhibitor, more potent and selective and produces more sustained inhibition of the proteasome [339, 340]. It has been approved by the FDA in 2012 for the treatment of MM. This inhibitor differs structurally and mechanistically from bortezomib. Carfilzomib functions by irreversibly inhibiting chymotrypsin-like activity of the proteasome, whereas bortezomib, a boronic acid dipeptide, inhibits the chymotrypsin-like activity of the 26S proteasome in a reversible manner [341]. The pivotal efficacy study was PX-171-009 (ASPIRE), a randomized, multicenter, Phase III study to compare the efficacy and safety of carfilzomib with lenalidomide and dexamethasone versus lenalidomide and dexamethasone alone in patients with relapsed MM [342]. The ASPIRE study found that the addition of carfilzomib to lenalidomide and dexamethasone (carfilzomib group) significantly improved progression-free survival (PFS) and has a favorable benefit-risk profile as compared with lenalidomide and dexamethasone alone (control group) in patients with relapsed MM [343]. Similar efficacy was reported in Japanese patients with MM [344]. The addition of carfilzomib to the reference regimen has shown efficacy, clinically meaningful and statistically significant improvement in the primary endpoint of PFS [341]. Carfilzomib and dexamethasone regimen is also reported to be more cost-effective as compared with bortezomib and dexamethasone for relapsed/refractory multiple myeloma [345]. A head-to-head comparison of these two proteasome inhibitors in a Phase 3, open-label, randomized controlled trial in patients with relapsed or refractory multiple myeloma (ENDEAVOR trial) indicated that carfilzomib produces clinically meaningful reduction in the risk of death as compared with bortezomib [346]. The carfilzomib-dexamethasone regimen is also found to be superior to bortezomib-dexamethasone regardless of cytogenetic risk [347]. Combination of carfilzomib with alkylating agent such as cyclophosphamide is found to be effective in patients with transplant-ineligible myeloma as well as newly diagnosed MM [348, 349]. Currently various combinations of carfilzomib with other chemotherapy agents such as irinotecan in irinotecan-sensitive malignancies and isatuximab in MM in different phases of trials are ongoing. Other clinical studies are currently exploring the potential benefit of this drug in patients with relapsed AML or acute lymphoblastic leukemia (ALL).

The development of carfilzomib, a second-generation protease inhibitor, represented significant progress toward a less neurotoxic and potentially more efficacious treatment as compared with bortezomib. While the incidence of grade 3 peripheral neuropathy is markedly dimin-

ished with carfilzomib, other aspects of the bortezomib toxicity, including thrombocytopenia, lymphopenia, and fatigue, persisted [350]. However, the dosing frequency and the need for parenteral delivery undoubtedly increase the degree of inconvenience when incorporating these two agents into treatment plans [350]. Ixazomib is the first orally bioavailable option for the treatment of refractory/relapsed MM. The results of the TOUMALINE-MM1 trial paved the way for the approval of ixazomib by the US FDA in November 2015 for the treatment of RRMM in combination with lenalidomide and dexamethasone [351]. However, there is limited direct evidence that ixazomib retains the improved outcomes bortezomib has produced in high-risk disease associated with del(17p) and t(4;14) mutations [350]. The exact role for ixazomib remains to be established, although there are indications that it may be the ideal choice for maintenance regimens.

17.4.4 Inhibitor of Apoptosis Protein (IAP) Antagonists

During apoptosis, natural IAP antagonists such as Smac/DIABLO and HtrA2/Omi translocate from the mitochondria and inactivate IAPs to facilitate caspase activation and cell death. Smac/DIABLO and HtrA2/Omi promote apoptosis by antagonizing the IAPs, such as X-IAP, cIAP-1, and cIAP-2, which are often upregulated in many cancer cells [352]. X-IAP is a potent direct inhibitor of caspase-3, caspase-7, and caspase-9 [353]. Smac/DIABLO contains an IAP-binding motif which forms the basis for the design of the novel class of anticancer drugs named Smac mimetics [354]. Peptides that mimic Smac/DIABLO functions are capable of inducing death or increasing the apoptotic effect of chemotherapeutic agents [62, 352]. In a preclinical study, the synthesized Smac/DIABLO-N7 peptides are found to increase the apoptosis-inducing potential of chemotherapeutic drugs (paclitaxel, doxorubicin, and tamoxifen) and irradiation; in addition, they sensitize TRAIL-resistant cells to undergo apoptosis [355].

Currently, there are several Smac mimetics undergoing evaluation in early clinical trials as cancer therapeutics, including both monovalent compounds, which contain one Smac-mimicking moiety (i.e., LCL161, GDC-0917/CUDC-427, and AT-406/Debio1143) and bivalent agents that are composed of Smac-mimicking elements connected via a chemical linker (i.e., TL32711/birinapant and HGS1029). Monovalent and bivalent Smac mimetics differ in their pharmacologic properties; bivalent compounds are administered intravenously, whereas monovalent compounds are orally bioavailable [356]. AEG35156, an X-IAP antisense oligonucleotide, is the first IAP antagonist that has advanced to human clinical trial. In a randomized Phase II trial of patients with primary refractory AML, the addition of AEG35156 to idarubicin and cytarabine did not improve the rate of remission as compared with the control arm consisting of cytarabine and idarubicin alone [357, 358]. The mRNA level of X-IAP was not determined in this study; therefore, whether efficient knockdown of X-IAP mRNA was achieved in this Phase II trial remains unknown [357]. Later studies on metastatic pancreatic ductal adenocarcinoma also did not produce significant clinical activity [359]. In combination with sorafenib in patients with advanced hepatocellular carcinoma, benefit on PFS was moderate [360]. Some trials were terminated due to toxicity and failure to reach endpoints.

A Phase I report of another novel IAP antagonist, LCL161, indicated that this orally bioavailable agent was well tolerated in patients with advanced cancer. However, no objective responses were observed, despite the fact that LCL161 treatment resulted in target inhibition, as shown by cIAP-1 degradation and cytokine induction [361]. Cytokine release syndrome, including increased levels of TNF-α in the circulation of patients that were treated with LCL161, was identified in a recent Phase I study as a dose-limiting toxicity [362]. Several Phase I/II studies of LCL161 in combination with paclitaxel or topotecan in advanced solid tumors have been completed but are yet to be published. New studies involving combination therapies with other

chemotherapeutic drugs in MM and solid tumors are currently recruiting patients. Two other small-molecule IAP antagonists, HGS1029 and TL32711, were also reported to be well tolerated in Phase I studies and have produced some evidence of antitumor activity as well as suppression of cIAP-1 level [363, 364]. However, dose-limiting toxicity after administration of HGS1029 was observed in about one-third of patients, including elevations of aspartate transaminase, amylase, or lipase, and fatigue [363]. TL32711 or birinapant in two published trials was reported to be well tolerated and exhibited some evidence of antitumor activity [365].

Survivin is a dual functional protein acting as a critical inhibitor of apoptosis (IAP) and key regulator of cell cycle progression [366]. Survivin is overexpressed in many human tumors and has been recognized as a biomarker. Increased survivin usually correlates with poor clinic outcome, tumor recurrence, and therapeutic resistance [367–370]. Survivin is an unconventional drug target, and several indirect approaches have been explored to manipulate its function and the phenotype of survivin-expressing cells. Interference with the expression of the survivin gene, the utilization of its messenger RNA, its intracellular localization, its interaction with binding partners, its protein stability, and the induction of survivin-specific immune responses are some of the strategies. Some of the therapeutics under investigation to target survivin are the low molecular weight molecules, antisense oligonucleotides, siRNA, ribozymes, and immunotherapy [371]. Examples include the use of the low molecular weight molecule inhibitor sepantronium bromide (YM155), the antisense oligonucleotide LY2181308, and survivin-directed autologous cytotoxic T lymphocytes (CTL). The optimum use of survivin inhibitors in the treatment of cancer is thought to be likely in combination with conventional cancer therapies for different cancers [372].

Sepantronium bromide (YM-155) is a novel small molecule which suppresses transactivation of survivin through direct binding to its promoter and selectively suppresses expression of survivin and induces apoptosis [373]. This drug has demonstrated to be safe and to possess antitumor activity in Phase 1 studies [374, 375]. However, Phase II trials reported modest and limited single-agent activity of sepantronium in NSCLC and refractory diffuse large B-cell lymphoma, respectively [376, 377]. In patients with stage III or IV melanoma, pre-specified primary endpoint was not achieved in a Phase II trial [378]. Unfortunately, combination of sepantronium with other chemotherapeutic drugs such as paclitaxel and carboplatin or docetaxel in various cancers also did not produce clinically significant results [379–382].

Gataparsen sodium (LY2181308), a novel 2'-O-methoxymethyl modified antisense oligonucleotide (2-MOE-ASO), is a specific inhibitor of survivin mRNA and is being investigated for efficacy in clinical trials in various groups of cancer patients [383]. It has been reported to be safe in the first-in-human Phase I study, although further studies would be needed to assess its activities [384]. In the most recent studies, adding this drug to standard therapy in patients with NSCLC or prostate cancer failed to elicit a clinically significant efficacy [385, 386]. Table 17.1 summarizes the various drugs targeting the apoptosis pathways and the most recent clinical trial stages based on published reports as well as ongoing trials listed in the NIH ClinicalTrials.gov website.

The crosstalk between apoptosis, ER stress, and autophagy signaling pathway and future directions of cancer therapeutics will be discussed in Chap. 18.

17.5 Concluding Remarks

Apoptosis-targeted therapy has been a critical and important approach in treating and managing cancer. Development of drugs that act either by harnessing the TRAIL pathway, by blocking the action of anti-apoptotic proteins, such as IAPs, small-molecule inhibitors (antisense oligonucleotides), or small interfering RNA and BH3 mimetic, or by targeting the proteasomes are robust strategies for use in cancer therapy. Although some of these drugs have not shown favorable trial outcomes, newer drug candidates such as navitoclax and CPT are potentially useful

Table 17.1 Current therapeutic target in the apoptosis signaling pathway and selected recent clinical trial stages

Pathway	Therapeutic targets	Current drugs	Clinical trial stages (published reports)/type of cancer	Combined with	References
TRAIL	TRAIL-R1 and TRAIL-R2	rhApo2L (Dulanermin)	Phase Ib: Metastatic colorectal cancer	FOLFOX6 and bevacizumab	[192]
			Phase Ib/II: Relapsed indolent B-cell lymphoma	Rituximab	[193]
			Phase III: Advanced non-small-cell lung cancer (NSCLC)	Vinorelbine and cisplatin	[194]
			None active or recruiting		https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/home
		Circulatory permuted TRAIL (CPT)	Phase II: Relapsed and refractory multiple myeloma	Thalidomide	[198]
			Phase II: Relapsed and refractory multiple myeloma	–	[187]
			Phase Ib: Relapsed and refractory multiple myeloma	–	[387]
			Phase II: Relapsed and refractory multiple myeloma	Thalidomide and dexamethasone	[186]
			None registered		https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/home
	TRAIL-R1	Mapatumumab	Phase II: Advanced non-small cell lung cancer	Paclitaxel and carboplatin	[208]
			Phase II: Advanced hepatocellular carcinoma	Sorafenib	[211]
			None active or recruiting		https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/home
	TRAIL-R2	Lexatumumab	Phase I: Solid tumor	–	[212]
			None active or recruiting		https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/home
		Apomab (Drozitumab; PRO95780)	Phase I: Advanced cancer	–	[214]
			Phase II: NSCLC	Paclitaxel, carboplatin, and bevacizumab	[215]
			Phase II: NHL	Rituximab	[213]
			None active or recruiting		https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/home
		Conatumumab (AMG655)	Phase II: Pancreatic cancer	Gemcitabine	[218]
			Phase Ib/II: Metastatic colorectal cancer	Modified FOLFOX6 and bevacizumab	[222]

			Phase II: Colorectal cancer	FOLFIRI	[220]
			Phase II: Advanced NSCLC	Paclitaxel and carboplatin	[225]
			Phase Ib/II: Advanced solid tumors	Ganitumab	[227]
			Phase Ib: Relapsed ovarian cancer (completed/unpublished)	Birinapant	https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT01940172
			Phase II: Advanced solid tumors (active, not recruiting)	FOLFOX6, ganitumab, and bevacizumab	https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT01327612
Bcl-2 family proteins	Anti-apoptotic Bcl-2 family members	AT-101	Phase II: Castration-resistant prostate cancer	Docetaxel and prednisone	[247]
			Phase I: Advanced solid tumors and extensive-stage small cell lung cancer	Cisplatin and etoposide	[246]
			Phase II: Castration-sensitive metastatic prostate cancer	Androgen deprivation therapy	[248]
			Phase II: Recurrent, locally advanced, or metastatic head and neck cancer	Docetaxel	[249]
			Phase I: Solid tumors (completed/unpublished)	Paclitaxel and carboplatin	https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT00891072
			Phase II: CLL (completed, unpublished)	Rituximab	https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT00286780
			Phase II: Recurrent glioblastoma multiforme (completed/unpublished)	–	https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT00540722
			Phase III: Advanced non-small cell lung cancer (completed/unpublished)	Docetaxel and cisplatin	https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT01977209
			Phase I/II: Relapsed symptomatic multiple myeloma (recruiting)	Lenalidomide and dexamethasone	https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT02697344

(continued)

Table 17.1 (continued)

Pathway	Therapeutic targets	Current drugs	Clinical trial stages (published reports)/type of cancer	Combined with	References
			Phase I/II: Relapsed B-cell CLL (B-CLL) (recruiting)	Lenalidomide	https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT01003769
			Phase II: Advanced laryngeal cancer (recruiting)	Docetaxel, cisplatin, and carboplatin	https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT01633541
		Obatoclax mesylate (GX15-070)	Phase I: Extensive-stage small cell lung cancer	Carboplatin and etoposide	[388]
			Phase I/II: Relapsed or refractory mantle cell lymphoma	Bortezomib	[389]
			Phase I/II: Acute myeloid leukemia	–	[259]
			Phase II: Untreated myelodysplastic syndromes	–	[260]
			Phase II: Extensive-stage small cell lung cancer	Carboplatin and etoposide	[256]
			Phase I: Relapsed CLL	Fludarabine and rituximab	[390]
			None active or recruiting		https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/home
		Navitoclax (ABT-263)	Phase I: Solid tumors	Carboplatin and paclitaxel	[263]
			Phase I: Solid tumors	Gemcitabine	[264]
			Phase I: Relapsed or refractory lymphoid malignancies	Rituximab	[266]
			Phase I: Advanced solid tumors	Irinotecan	[265]
			Phase II: B-cell CLL	Rituximab	[267]
			Phase I: Relapsed acute lymphoblastic leukemia (recruiting)	Chemotherapy	https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT03181126
			Phase I: Relapsed or refractory solid tumors (recruiting)	Sorafenib	https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT02143401
			Phase I: Advanced or metastatic non-small cell lung cancer (recruiting)	Osimertinib	https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT02520778
			Phase I/II: Relapsed or refractory lymphoid malignancies (completed/unpublished)	–	https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT0040680

			Phase I/II: Relapsed small cell lung cancer and other solid tumors (recruiting)	Vistusertib	https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT03366103
			Phase I/II: Advanced or metastatic solid tumors	Trametinib	https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT02079740
			Phase I/II: BRAF mutant melanoma or solid tumors	Dabrafenib and trametinib	https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT01989585
			Phase II: Myelofibrosis (recruiting)	Ruxolitinib	https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT03222609
		Venetoclax (ABT-199)	Approved by FDA for CLL (2016)		[391]
			Phase I: Relapsed or refractory CLL or small lymphocytic lymphoma (SLL)	–	[270]
			Phase II: Relapsed or refractory CLL with 17p deletion	–	[271]
			Phase I: Relapsed/refractory t(11;14) multiple myeloma	–	[275]
			Phase Ib: Relapsed/refractory multiple myeloma	Bortezomib and dexamethasone	[276]
			Phase II: CLL who progressed during or after idelalisib therapy	Idelalisib	[273]
			Phase II: CLL progressing after ibrutinib	Ibrutinib	[274]
			Phase II: Relapsed/refractory acute myeloid leukemia (AML) and relapsed high-risk myelodysplastic syndrome (recruiting)	Decitabine	https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT03404193
			Phase II: Relapsed or refractory CLL in the presence of 17p deletion (recruiting)	–	https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT02966756
			Phase II: CLL (recruiting)	Ibrutinib	https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT02756897
			Phase III: CLL whose cancer has come back or who had no response to previous cancer treatments including subjects missing part of their chromosome 17 or TP53 gene mutation or who received prior treatment with a B-cell receptor inhibitor (recruiting)	–	https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT02980731

(continued)

Table 17.1 (continued)

Pathway	Therapeutic targets	Current drugs	Clinical trial stages (published reports)/type of cancer	Combined with	References
			Phase III: AML who are ineligible for standard induction therapy (recruiting)	Azacitidine	https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT02993523
			Phase III: Mantle cell lymphoma (recruiting)	Ibrutinib	https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT03112174
			Phase III: AML (recruiting)	Cytarabine	https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT03069352
			Phase III: CLL (recruiting)	Fludarabine, cyclophosphamide, rituximab, bendamustine, obinutuzumab, and ibrutinib	https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT02950051
	Bcl-2 mRNA	Oblimersen sodium	Phase III: CLL	Fludarabine and cyclophosphamide	[282]
			Phase III: MM	Dexamethasone	[285]
			Phase I: Advanced melanoma	Temozolomide and albumin-bound paclitaxel	[286]
			Phase II: Chemotherapy-naive patients with advanced melanoma	Dacarbazine	[280]
			None active or recruiting		https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/home)
Proteasome		Bortezomib	Approved by FDA for multiple myeloma (MM) (2005)	–	[313]
			Approved by FDA for mantle cell lymphoma (2006)	–	[316]
			Phase I: Advanced solid tumors	–	[327]
			Phase II: Induction therapy in multiple myeloma	Cyclophosphamide and dexamethasone	[320]
			Phase II: Non-germinal center B-cell-like diffuse large B-cell lymphoma	Rituximab, cyclophosphamide, doxorubicin, and vincristine	[328]
			Phase III:MM	Classical cytotoxic agents prior and thalidomide	[321]
			Phase I: Relapsed/refractory non-Hodgkin lymphoma	Everolimus	[392]
			Phase II: Relapsed low grade and mantle cell lymphoma	Rituximab, cyclophosphamide and dexamethasone	[322]
			Phase II: Previously untreated, low-grade lymphoma	Bendamustine and rituximab	[329]

			Phase II: Advanced, newly diagnosed, and relapsed/refractory mantle cell and indolent lymphoma	Cladribine and rituximab	[323]
			Phase III: Cholangiocellular carcinoma (recruiting)	–	https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT03345303
			Phase III: MM (recruiting)	Selinexor and dexamethasone	https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT03110562
			Phase III: MM (recruiting)	Dexamethasone	https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT02811978
			Phase III: Previously untreated MM (recruiting)	Melphalan, prednisone, and daratumumab	https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT03217812
			Phase III: Relapsed or refractory multiple myeloma (recruiting)	Daratumumab and dexamethasone	https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT0323497
			Phase III: MM (up to 65 years) (recruiting)	Lenalidomide, dexamethasone, and autologous stem cell transplant	https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT01208662
		Carfilzomib (PR-171)	Approved by FDA for multiple myeloma (MM) (2012)		[341]
			Phase I: Heavily pretreated MM	Lenalidomide and dexamethasone	[344]
			Phase Ib: Newly diagnosed MM	Cyclophosphamide and dexamethasone	[348]
			Phase Ib: Lung cancer and other irinotecan-sensitive malignancies	Irinotecan	[393]
			Phase I/II: Newly diagnosed transplant-ineligible MM	Weekly carfilzomib, cyclophosphamide, and dexamethasone	[349]
			Phase III: Relapsed or refractory MM	Bortezomib	[346]
			Phase III: Relapsed MM	Lenalidomide and dexamethasone	[343]
			Phase III: Relapsed or refractory MM	Bortezomib and dexamethasone	[347]

(continued)

Table 17.1 (continued)

Pathway	Therapeutic targets	Current drugs	Clinical trial stages (published reports)/type of cancer	Combined with	References
			Phase III: Relapsed and refractory MM (recruiting)	Dexamethasone	https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT03029234
			Phase III: Plasma cell myeloma (recruiting)	Isatuximab and dexamethasone	https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT03275285
			Phase III: MM (recruiting)	Lenalidomide and dexamethasone	https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT02659293
			Phase III: Relapsed or refractory MM (recruiting)	Daratumumab and dexamethasone	https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT03158688
			Phase III: Plasma cell myeloma (recruiting)	Bortezomib, dexamethasone, lenalidomide, and other quality of life assessment	https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT01863550
		Ixazomib	Approved by FDA for multiple myeloma (MM) (2015)		[350]
			Phase I: Advanced solid tumors	–	[394]
			Phase I: Relapsed/refractory MM	Lenalidomide-dexamethasone	[395]
			Phase I/II: Relapsed/refractory MM	Pomalidomide and dexamethasone	[396]
			Phase II: Relapsed/refractory cutaneous or peripheral T-cell lymphomas	–	[397]
			Phase III: Relapsed/refractory MM	Lenalidomide and dexamethasone	[398]
			Phase II: Indolent B-cell non-Hodgkin lymphoma (recruiting)	Rituximab	https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT02339922
			Phase II: MM (recruiting)	Maintenance ixazomib or lenalidomide	https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT02253316
			Phase III: Newly diagnosed MM not treated with stem cell transplantation (recruiting)	Maintenance	https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT02312258
			Phase III: Solitary plasmacytoma of bone (recruiting)	Lenalidomide, dexamethasone, and zoledronic acid	https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT02516423

			Phase III: Relapsed/refractory MM (recruiting)	Pomalidomide and dexamethasone	https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT03170882
IAP	X-IAP mRNA	AEG35156	Phase I: Advanced cancer	–	[399]
			Phase I/II: AML	Idarubicin and cytarabine	[358]
			Phase II: AML	Idarubicin and cytarabine	[357]
			Phase I: Metastatic pancreatic ductal adenocarcinoma	Gemcitabine	[359]
			Phase II: Advanced hepatocellular carcinoma	Sorafenib	[360]
			None active or recruiting		https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/home)
	Pan-IAP	LCL161	Phase I: Advanced cancer	–	[361]
			Phase I: Advanced solid tumor	Paclitaxel	[400]
			Phase I: Advanced solid tumor	–	[362]
			Phase I: Advanced solid tumor (completed/unpublished)	–	https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT01968915
			Phase I: Advanced solid tumor (completed/unpublished)	Paclitaxel	https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT01240655
			Phase I: Triple negative breast cancer (completed/unpublished)	Paclitaxel	https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT01617668
			Phase I/II: Relapsed/refractory small cell lung cancer and selected gynecologic malignancies (recruiting)	Topotecan	https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT02649673
			Phase II: Relapsed/refractory MM (recruiting)	Cyclophosphamide	https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT01955434
			Phase I: MM (recruiting)	PDR001 and CJM112	https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT03111992
			Phase I: Colorectal cancer, non-small cell lung carcinoma, and triple negative breast cancer (recruiting)	PDR001, everolimus, and panobinostat	https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT02890069
		HGS1029	Phase I: Advanced solid tumor	–	[363]

(continued)

Table 17.1 (continued)

Pathway	Therapeutic targets	Current drugs	Clinical trial stages (published reports)/type of cancer	Combined with	References
			Phase I: Advanced solid tumor (completed/unpublished)	–	https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT00708006
			None active or recruiting		https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/home)
		Birinapant (TL32711)	Phase I: Advanced solid tumor and lymphoma	–	[364]
			Phase I: Refractory solid tumors or lymphoma	–	[401]
			Phase II: Relapsed platinum-resistant or refractory epithelial ovarian cancer	–	[365]
			Phase I: Relapsed ovarian cancer (completed/unpublished)	Conatumumab	https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT0194017
			Phase I/II: Advanced or metastatic solid tumors (completed/unpublished)	Chemotherapy	https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT01188499
			Phase I/II: Myelodysplastic syndrome (completed/unpublished)	5-Azacitidine	https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT01828346
			Phase I/II: Acute myelogenous leukemia, myelodysplastic syndrome, and acute lymphoblastic leukemia (active)	–	https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT01486784
			Phase I/II: Solid tumors (recruiting)	Pembrolizumab	https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT02587962
	Survivin	Sepantronium bromide (YM155)	Phase I: Advanced solid tumor or lymphoma	–	[374]
			Phase I: Advanced solid tumor	–	[375]
			Phase II: NSCLC	–	[376]
			Phase II: Melanoma	–	[378]
			Phase II: Refractory diffuse large B-cell lymphoma	–	[377]
			Phase I/II: Advanced non-small cell lung cancer	Paclitaxel and carboplatin	[379]
			Phase II: Stage III (unresectable) or stage IV melanoma	Docetaxel	[380]
			Phase II: HER2-negative metastatic breast cancer	Docetaxel	[381]
			Phase II: Relapsed aggressive B-cell non-Hodgkin lymphoma	Rituximab	[382]

			None active or recruiting		https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/home)
		Gataparsen sodium (LY2181308)	Phase I: Advanced solid tumors	–	[402]
			Phase I: Relapsed AML	Idarubicin and cytarabine	[403]
			Phase II: Castration-resistant prostate cancer	Docetaxel and prednisone	[386]
			Phase II: NSCLC	Docetaxel	[385]
			None active or recruiting		https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/home)

and need to be explored further. Further understanding the underlying molecular events regulating not just apoptosis but concurrently with autophagy and ER stress may uncover novel targeted interference of these cell death pathways.

Acknowledgments The authors would like to acknowledge the Ministry of Energy, Science, Technology, Environment and Climate Change (MESTECC) for the Smartfund grant and USM for the Bridging Grant.

References

1. Bellamy CO, Malcomson RD, Harrison DJ, Wyllie AH. Cell death in health and disease: the biology and regulation of apoptosis. Semin Cancer Biol. 1995;6(1):3–16.
2. Lockshin RA, Zakeri Z. Programmed cell death and apoptosis: origins of the theory. Nat Rev Mol Cell Biol. 2001;2(7):545–50.
3. Clarke PG, Clarke S. Nineteenth century research on naturally occurring cell death and related phenomena. Anat Embryol (Berl). 1996;193(2):81–99.
4. Clarke PG, Clarke S. Nineteenth century research on cell death. Exp Oncol. 2012;34(3):139–45.
5. Lockshin RA, Williams CM. Programmed cell death--I. Cytology of degeneration in the intersegmental muscles of the pernyi silkmoth. J Insect Physiol. 1965;11:123–33.
6. Kerr JF, Wyllie AH, Currie AR. Apoptosis: a basic biological phenomenon with wide-ranging implications in tissue kinetics. Br J Cancer. 1972;26(4):239–57.
7. Horvitz HR. Nobel lecture. Worms, life and death. Biosci Rep. 2003;23(5–6):239–303.
8. Green DR, Evan GI. A matter of life and death. Cancer Cell. 2002;1(1):19–30.
9. Hanahan D, Weinberg RA. The hallmarks of cancer. Cell. 2000;100(1):57–70.
10. Thompson CB. Apoptosis in the pathogenesis and treatment of disease. Science. 1995;267(5203):1456–62.
11. Vaux DL, Flavell RA. Apoptosis genes and autoimmunity. Curr Opin Immunol. 2000;12(6):719–24.
12. Yuan J, Yankner BA. Apoptosis in the nervous system. Nature. 2000;407(6805):802–9.
13. Kerr JF, Searle J. A suggested explanation for the paradoxically slow growth rate of basal-cell carcinomas that contain numerous mitotic figures. J Pathol. 1972;107(1):41–4.
14. Steel GG. Cell loss as a factor in the growth rate of human tumours. Eur J Cancer. 1967;3(4):381–7.
15. Iversen OH. Kinetics of cellular proliferation and cell loss in human carcinomas. A discussion of methods available for in vivo studies. Eur J Cancer. 1967;3(4):389–94.
16. Galluzzi L, Vitale I, Abrams JM, Alnemri ES, Baehrecke EH, Blagosklonny MV, et al. Molecular definitions of cell death subroutines: recommendations of the Nomenclature Committee on Cell Death 2012. Cell Death Differ. 2012;19(1):107–20.
17. Galluzzi L, Vitale I, Aaronson SA, Abrams JM, Adam D, Agostinis P, et al. Molecular mechanisms of cell death: recommendations of the Nomenclature Committee on Cell Death. Cell Death Differ. 2018;25(3):486–541.
18. Kerr JF, Winterford CM, Harmon BV. Apoptosis. Its significance in cancer and cancer therapy. Cancer. 1994;73(8):2013–26.
19. Wyllie AH, Kerr JF, Currie AR. Cell death: the significance of apoptosis. Int Rev Cytol. 1980;68:251–306.
20. Martin SJ, Reutelingsperger CP, McGahon AJ, Rader JA, van Schie RC, LaFace DM, et al. Early redistribution of plasma membrane phosphatidylserine is a general feature of apoptosis regardless of the initiating stimulus: inhibition by overexpression of Bcl-2 and Abl. J Exp Med. 1995;182(5):1545–56.
21. Kroemer G, Galluzzi L, Vandenabeele P, Abrams J, Alnemri ES, Baehrecke EH, et al. Classification of cell death: recommendations of the Nomenclature Committee on Cell Death 2009. Cell Death Differ. 2009;16(1):3–11.
22. Wajant H. The Fas signaling pathway: more than a paradigm. Science. 2002;296(5573):1635–6.
23. Schutze S, Tchikov V, Schneider-Brachert W. Regulation of TNFR1 and CD95 signalling by receptor compartmentalization. Nat Rev Mol Cell Biol. 2008;9(8):655–62.
24. Schulze-Osthoff K, Ferrari D, Los M, Wesselborg S, Peter ME. Apoptosis signaling by death receptors. Eur J Biochem. 1998;254(3):439–59.
25. Hengartner MO. The biochemistry of apoptosis. Nature. 2000;407(6805):770–6.
26. Hughes MA, Powley IR, Jukes-Jones R, Horn S, Feoktistova M, Fairall L, et al. Co-operative and hierarchical binding of C-FLIP and caspase-8: a unified model defines how c-flip isoforms differentially control cell fate. Mol Cell. 2016;61(6):834–49.
27. Ishii N, Wadsworth WG, Stern BD, Culotti JG, Hedgecock EM. UNC-6, a laminin-related protein, guides cell and pioneer axon migrations in C. elegans. Neuron. 1992;9(5):873–81.
28. Rajasekharan S, Kennedy TE. The netrin protein family. Genome Biol. 2009;10(9):239.
29. Mehlen P, Furne C. Netrin-1: when a neuronal guidance cue turns out to be a regulator of tumorigenesis. Cell Mol Life Sci. 2005;62(22):2599–616.
30. Guenebeaud C, Goldschneider D, Castets M, Guix C, Chazot G, Delloye-Bourgeois C, et al. The dependence receptor UNC5H2/B triggers apoptosis via PP2A-mediated dephosphorylation of DAP kinase. Mol Cell. 2010;40(6):863–76.
31. Chatfield K, Eastman A. Inhibitors of protein phosphatases 1 and 2A differentially prevent intrinsic and extrinsic apoptosis pathways. Biochem Biophys Res Commun. 2004;323(4):1313–20.

32. Deng X, Gao F, May WS. Protein phosphatase 2A inactivates Bcl2's antiapoptotic function by dephosphorylation and up-regulation of Bcl2-p53 binding. Blood. 2009;113(2):422–8.
33. Letai A, Bassik MC, Walensky LD, Sorcinelli MD, Weiler S, Korsmeyer SJ. Distinct BH3 domains either sensitize or activate mitochondrial apoptosis, serving as prototype cancer therapeutics. Cancer Cell. 2002;2(3):183–92.
34. Scaffidi C, Schmitz I, Zha J, Korsmeyer SJ, Krammer PH, Peter ME. Differential modulation of apoptosis sensitivity in CD95 type I and type II cells. J Biol Chem. 1999;274(32):22532–8.
35. Cho KR, Fearon ER. DCC: linking tumor suppressor genes and altered cell surface interactions in cancer? Curr Opin Genet Dev. 1995;5(1):72–8.
36. Hedrick L, Cho KR, Fearon ER, Wu TC, Kinzler KW, Vogelstein B. The DCC gene product in cellular differentiation and colorectal tumorigenesis. Genes Dev. 1994;8(10):1174–83.
37. Forcet C, Ye X, Granger L, Corset V, Shin H, Bredesen DE, et al. The dependence receptor DCC (deleted in colorectal cancer) defines an alternative mechanism for caspase activation. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2001;98(6):3416–21.
38. Hahn H, Wicking C, Zaphiropoulous PG, Gailani MR, Shanley S, Chidambaram A, et al. Mutations of the human homolog of Drosophila patched in the nevoid basal cell carcinoma syndrome. Cell. 1996;85(6):841–51.
39. Goodrich LV, Milenkovic L, Higgins KM, Scott MP. Altered neural cell fates and medulloblastoma in mouse patched mutants. Science. 1997;277(5329):1109–13.
40. Mille F, Thibert C, Fombonne J, Rama N, Guix C, Hayashi H, et al. The Patched dependence receptor triggers apoptosis through a DRAL-caspase-9 complex. Nat Cell Biol. 2009;11(6):739–46.
41. Fombonne J, Bissey PA, Guix C, Sadoul R, Thibert C, Mehlen P. Patched dependence receptor triggers apoptosis through ubiquitination of caspase-9. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2012;109(26):10510–5.
42. Stennicke HR, Salvesen GS. Biochemical characteristics of caspases-3, -6, -7, and -8. J Biol Chem. 1997;272(41):25719–23.
43. Slee EA, Adrain C, Martin SJ. Executioner caspase-3, -6, and -7 perform distinct, non-redundant roles during the demolition phase of apoptosis. J Biol Chem. 2001;276(10):7320–6.
44. Janicke RU, Ng P, Sprengart ML, Porter AG. Caspase-3 is required for alpha-fodrin cleavage but dispensable for cleavage of other death substrates in apoptosis. J Biol Chem. 1998;273(25):15540–5.
45. Janicke RU, Sprengart ML, Wati MR, Porter AG. Caspase-3 is required for DNA fragmentation and morphological changes associated with apoptosis. J Biol Chem. 1998;273(16):9357–60.
46. Ferreira KS, Kreutz C, Macnelly S, Neubert K, Haber A, Bogyo M, et al. Caspase-3 feeds back on caspase-8, Bid and XIAP in type I Fas signaling in primary mouse hepatocytes. Apoptosis. 2012;17(5):503–15.
47. Walsh JG, Cullen SP, Sheridan C, Luthi AU, Gerner C, Martin SJ. Executioner caspase-3 and caspase-7 are functionally distinct proteases. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2008;105(35):12815–9.
48. Kothakota S, Azuma T, Reinhard C, Klippel A, Tang J, Chu K, et al. Caspase-3-generated fragment of gelsolin: effector of morphological change in apoptosis. Science. 1997;278(5336):294–8.
49. Cosulich SC, Horiuchi H, Zerial M, Clarke PR, Woodman PG. Cleavage of rabaptin-5 blocks endosome fusion during apoptosis. EMBO J. 1997;16(20):6182–91.
50. Bennett V. Spectrin-based membrane skeleton: a multipotential adaptor between plasma membrane and cytoplasm. Physiol Rev. 1990;70(4):1029–65.
51. Martin SJ, O'Brien GA, Nishioka WK, McGahon AJ, Mahboubi A, Saido TC, et al. Proteolysis of Fodrin (Non-erythroid Spectrin) during Apoptosis. J Biol Chem. 1995;270(12):6425–8.
52. Mitra SK, Hanson DA, Schlaepfer DD. Focal adhesion kinase: in command and control of cell motility. Nat Rev Mol Cell Biol. 2005;6(1):56–68.
53. Wen L-P, Fahrni JA, Troie S, Guan J-L, Orth K, Rosen GD. Cleavage of focal adhesion kinase by caspases during apoptosis. J Biol Chem. 1997;272(41):26056–61.
54. Sells MA, Knaus UG, Bagrodia S, Ambrose DM, Bokoch GM, Chernoff J. Human p21-activated kinase (Pak1) regulates actin organization in mammalian cells. Curr Biol. 1997;7(3):202–10.
55. Brzeska H, Knaus UG, Wang Z-Y, Bokoch GM, Korn ED. p21-activated kinase has substrate specificity similar to Acanthamoeba myosin I heavy chain kinase and activates Acanthamoeba myosin I. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 1997;94(4):1092–5.
56. Rudel T, Bokoch GM. Membrane and morphological changes in apoptotic cells regulated by caspase-mediated activation of PAK2. Science. 1997;276(5318):1571–4.
57. Porter AG, Ng P, Janicke RU. Death substrates come alive. BioEssays. 1997;19(6):501–7.
58. Benchoua A, Couriaud C, Guegan C, Tartier L, Couvert P, Friocourt G, et al. Active caspase-8 translocates into the nucleus of apoptotic cells to inactivate poly(ADP-ribose) polymerase-2. J Biol Chem. 2002;277(37):34217–22.
59. Wolf BB, Schuler M, Echeverri F, Green DR. Caspase-3 is the primary activator of apoptotic DNA fragmentation via DNA fragmentation factor-45/inhibitor of caspase-activated DNase inactivation. J Biol Chem. 1999;274(43):30651–6.
60. Widlak P, Garrard WT. Discovery, regulation, and action of the major apoptotic nucleases DFF40/CAD and endonuclease G. J Cell Biochem. 2005;94(6):1078–87.
61. Antonsson B, Martinou JC. The Bcl-2 protein family. Exp Cell Res. 2000;256(1):50–7.

62. Martinez-Ruiz G, Maldonado V, Ceballos-Cancino G, Grajeda JP, Melendez-Zajgla J. Role of Smac/DIABLO in cancer progression. J Exp Clin Cancer Res. 2008;27:48.
63. James D, Parone PA, Terradillos O, Lucken-Ardjomande S, Montessuit S, Martinou JC. Mechanisms of mitochondrial outer membrane permeabilization. Novartis Found Symp. 2007;287:170–6; discussion 6–82.
64. Lipton SA, Bossy-Wetzel E. Dueling activities of AIF in cell death versus survival: DNA binding and redox activity. Cell. 2002;111(2):147–50.
65. Low RL. Mitochondrial Endonuclease G function in apoptosis and mtDNA metabolism: a historical perspective. Mitochondrion. 2003;2(4):225–36.
66. David KK, Sasaki M, Yu SW, Dawson TM, Dawson VL. EndoG is dispensable in embryogenesis and apoptosis. Cell Death Differ. 2006;13(7):1147–55.
67. Hegde R, Srinivasula SM, Zhang Z, Wassell R, Mukattash R, Cilenti L, et al. Identification of Omi/HtrA2 as a mitochondrial apoptotic serine protease that disrupts inhibitor of apoptosis protein-caspase interaction. J Biol Chem. 2002;277(1):432–8.
68. Kroemer G, Galluzzi L, Brenner C. Mitochondrial membrane permeabilization in cell death. Physiol Rev. 2007;87(1):99–163.
69. Kulikov AV, Shilov ES, Mufazalov IA, Gogvadze V, Nedospasov SA, Zhivotovsky B. Cytochrome c: the Achilles' heel in apoptosis. Cell Mol Life Sci. 2012;69(11):1787–97.
70. Ow YP, Green DR, Hao Z, Mak TW. Cytochrome c: functions beyond respiration. Nat Rev Mol Cell Biol. 2008;9(7):532–42.
71. Scorrano L. Opening the doors to cytochrome c: changes in mitochondrial shape and apoptosis. Int J Biochem Cell Biol. 2009;41(10):1875–83.
72. Tsujimoto Y. Stress-resistance conferred by high level of bcl-2 alpha protein in human B lymphoblastoid cell. Oncogene. 1989;4(11):1331–6.
73. Tsujimoto Y. Role of Bcl-2 family proteins in apoptosis: apoptosomes or mitochondria? Genes Cells. 1998;3(11):697–707.
74. Uren RT, Dewson G, Chen L, Coyne SC, Huang DC, Adams JM, et al. Mitochondrial permeabilization relies on BH3 ligands engaging multiple prosurvival Bcl-2 relatives, not Bak. J Cell Biol. 2007;177(2):277–87.
75. Levine B, Sinha S, Kroemer G. Bcl-2 family members: dual regulators of apoptosis and autophagy. Autophagy. 2008;4(5):600–6.
76. Tait SW, Green DR. Mitochondria and cell death: outer membrane permeabilization and beyond. Nat Rev Mol Cell Biol. 2010;11(9):621–32.
77. Brenner C, Grimm S. The permeability transition pore complex in cancer cell death. Oncogene. 2006;25(34):4744–56.
78. Zamzami N, Larochette N, Kroemer G. Mitochondrial permeability transition in apoptosis and necrosis. Cell Death Differ. 2005;12(Suppl 2):1478–80.
79. Arnoult D, Gaume B, Karbowski M, Sharpe JC, Cecconi F, Youle RJ. Mitochondrial release of AIF and EndoG requires caspase activation downstream of Bax/Bak-mediated permeabilization. EMBO J. 2003;22(17):4385–99.
80. Kaufmann T, Strasser A, Jost PJ. Fas death receptor signalling: roles of Bid and XIAP. Cell Death Differ. 2012;19(1):42–50.
81. Salvesen GS, Duckett CS. IAP proteins: blocking the road to death's door. Nat Rev Mol Cell Biol. 2002;3(6):401–10.
82. Deveraux QL, Takahashi R, Salvesen GS, Reed JC. X-linked IAP is a direct inhibitor of cell-death proteases. Nature. 1997;388(6639):300–4.
83. Roy N, Deveraux QL, Takahashi R, Salvesen GS, Reed JC. The c-IAP-1 and c-IAP-2 proteins are direct inhibitors of specific caspases. EMBO J. 1997;16(23):6914–25.
84. Deveraux QL, Roy N, Stennicke HR, Van Arsdale T, Zhou Q, Srinivasula SM, et al. IAPs block apoptotic events induced by caspase-8 and cytochrome c by direct inhibition of distinct caspases. EMBO J. 1998;17(8):2215–23.
85. Chai J, Du C, Wu JW, Kyin S, Wang X, Shi Y. Structural and biochemical basis of apoptotic activation by Smac/DIABLO. Nature. 2000;406(6798):855–62.
86. Yang QH, Church-Hajduk R, Ren J, Newton ML, Du C. Omi/HtrA2 catalytic cleavage of inhibitor of apoptosis (IAP) irreversibly inactivates IAPs and facilitates caspase activity in apoptosis. Genes Dev. 2003;17(12):1487–96.
87. Verhagen AM, Ekert PG, Pakusch M, Silke J, Connolly LM, Reid GE, et al. Identification of DIABLO, a mammalian protein that promotes apoptosis by binding to and antagonizing IAP proteins. Cell. 2000;102(1):43–53.
88. Suzuki Y, Imai Y, Nakayama H, Takahashi K, Takio K, Takahashi R. A serine protease, HtrA2, is released from the mitochondria and interacts with XIAP, inducing cell death. Mol Cell. 2001;8(3):613–21.
89. Martins LM, Iaccarino I, Tenev T, Gschmeissner S, Totty NF, Lemoine NR, et al. The serine protease Omi/HtrA2 regulates apoptosis by binding XIAP through a reaper-like motif. J Biol Chem. 2002;277(1):439–44.
90. van Loo G, van Gurp M, Depuydt B, Srinivasula SM, Rodriguez I, Alnemri ES, et al. The serine protease Omi/HtrA2 is released from mitochondria during apoptosis. Omi interacts with caspase-inhibitor XIAP and induces enhanced caspase activity. Cell Death Differ. 2002;9(1):20–6.
91. Liu Z, Sun C, Olejniczak ET, Meadows RP, Betz SF, Oost T, et al. Structural basis for binding of Smac/DIABLO to the XIAP BIR3 domain. Nature. 2000;408(6815):1004–8.
92. Wu G, Chai J, Suber TL, Wu JW, Du C, Wang X, et al. Structural basis of IAP recognition by Smac/DIABLO. Nature. 2000;408(6815):1008–12.

93. Srinivasula SM, Hegde R, Saleh A, Datta P, Shiozaki E, Chai J, et al. A conserved XIAP-interaction motif in caspase-9 and Smac/DIABLO regulates caspase activity and apoptosis. Nature. 2001;410(6824):112–6.
94. Li W, Srinivasula SM, Chai J, Li P, Wu JW, Zhang Z, et al. Structural insights into the pro-apoptotic function of mitochondrial serine protease HtrA2/Omi. Nat Struct Biol. 2002;9(6):436–41.
95. Faccio L, Fusco C, Chen A, Martinotti S, Bonventre JV, Zervos AS. Characterization of a novel human serine protease that has extensive homology to bacterial heat shock endoprotease HtrA and is regulated by kidney ischemia. J Biol Chem. 2000;275(4):2581–8.
96. Gray CW, Ward RV, Karran E, Turconi S, Rowles A, Viglienghi D, et al. Characterization of human HtrA2, a novel serine protease involved in the mammalian cellular stress response. Eur J Biochem. 2000;267(18):5699–710.
97. Srinivasula SM, Gupta S, Datta P, Zhang Z, Hegde R, Cheong N, et al. Inhibitor of apoptosis proteins are substrates for the mitochondrial serine protease Omi/HtrA2. J Biol Chem. 2003;278(34):31469–72.
98. Vande Walle L, Van Damme P, Lamkanfi M, Saelens X, Vandekerckhove J, Gevaert K, et al. Proteome-wide identification of HtrA2/Omi substrates. J Proteome Res. 2007;6(3):1006–15.
99. Joza N, Susin SA, Daugas E, Stanford WL, Cho SK, Li CY, et al. Essential role of the mitochondrial apoptosis-inducing factor in programmed cell death. Nature. 2001;410(6828):549–54.
100. Li LY, Luo X, Wang X. Endonuclease G is an apoptotic DNase when released from mitochondria. Nature. 2001;412(6842):95–9.
101. Gerschenson M, Houmiel KL, Low RL. Endonuclease G from mammalian nuclei is identical to the major endonuclease of mitochondria. Nucleic Acids Res. 1995;23(1):88–97.
102. Sevrioukova IF. Apoptosis-inducing factor: structure, function, and redox regulation. Antioxid Redox Signal. 2011;14(12):2545–79.
103. van Loo G, Schotte P, van Gurp M, Demol H, Hoorelbeke B, Gevaert K, et al. Endonuclease G: a mitochondrial protein released in apoptosis and involved in caspase-independent DNA degradation. Cell Death Differ. 2001;8(12):1136–42.
104. Zhang J, Ye J, Altafaj A, Cardona M, Bahi N, Llovera M, et al. EndoG links Bnip3-induced mitochondrial damage and caspase-independent DNA fragmentation in ischemic cardiomyocytes. PLoS One. 2011;6(3):e17998.
105. Zamzami N, Susin SA, Marchetti P, Hirsch T, Gomez-Monterrey I, Castedo M, et al. Mitochondrial control of nuclear apoptosis. J Exp Med. 1996;183(4):1533–44.
106. Susin SA, Zamzami N, Castedo M, Daugas E, Wang HG, Geley S, et al. The central executioner of apoptosis: multiple connections between protease activation and mitochondria in Fas/APO-1/CD95- and ceramide-induced apoptosis. J Exp Med. 1997;186(1):25–37.
107. Susin SA, Lorenzo HK, Zamzami N, Marzo I, Brenner C, Larochette N, et al. Mitochondrial release of caspase-2 and -9 during the apoptotic process. J Exp Med. 1999;189(2):381–94.
108. Cregan SP, Fortin A, MacLaurin JG, Callaghan SM, Cecconi F, Yu SW, et al. Apoptosis-inducing factor is involved in the regulation of caspase-independent neuronal cell death. J Cell Biol. 2002;158(3):507–17.
109. Park YC, Jeong JH, Park KJ, Choi HJ, Park YM, Jeong BK, et al. Sulindac activates nuclear translocation of AIF, DFF40 and endonuclease G but not induces oligonucleosomal DNA fragmentation in HT-29 cells. Life Sci. 2005;77(16):2059–70.
110. Susin SA, Daugas E, Ravagnan L, Samejima K, Zamzami N, Loeffler M, et al. Two distinct pathways leading to nuclear apoptosis. J Exp Med. 2000;192(4):571–80.
111. Pahl HL. Activators and target genes of Rel/NF-kappaB transcription factors. Oncogene. 1999;18(49):6853–66.
112. Prasad S, Ravindran J, Aggarwal BB. NF-kappaB and cancer: how intimate is this relationship. Mol Cell Biochem. 2010;336(1–2):25–37.
113. Abbadie C, Kabrun N, Bouali F, Smardova J, Stehelin D, Vandenbunder B, et al. High levels of c-rel expression are associated with programmed cell death in the developing avian embryo and in bone marrow cells in vitro. Cell. 1993;75(5):899–912.
114. Dumont A, Hehner SP, Hofmann TG, Ueffing M, Droge W, Schmitz ML. Hydrogen peroxide-induced apoptosis is CD95-independent, requires the release of mitochondria-derived reactive oxygen species and the activation of NF-kappaB. Oncogene. 1999;18(3):747–57.
115. Kasibhatla S, Brunner T, Genestier L, Echeverri F, Mahboubi A, Green DR. DNA damaging agents induce expression of Fas ligand and subsequent apoptosis in T lymphocytes via the activation of NF-kappa B and AP-1. Mol Cell. 1998;1(4):543–51.
116. Schneider A, Martin-Villalba A, Weih F, Vogel J, Wirth T, Schwaninger M. NF-kappaB is activated and promotes cell death in focal cerebral ischemia. Nat Med. 1999;5(5):554–9.
117. Qin ZH, Chen RW, Wang Y, Nakai M, Chuang DM, Chase TN. Nuclear factor kappaB nuclear translocation upregulates c-Myc and p53 expression during NMDA receptor-mediated apoptosis in rat striatum. J Neurosci. 1999;19(10):4023–33.
118. Karin M, Ben-Neriah Y. Phosphorylation meets ubiquitination: the control of NF-[kappa]B activity. Annu Rev Immunol. 2000;18:621–63.
119. Pham LV, Tamayo AT, Yoshimura LC, Lo P, Ford RJ. Inhibition of constitutive NF-κB activation in mantle cell lymphoma B Cells leads to induction of cell cycle arrest and apoptosis. J Immunol. 2003;171(1):88–95.

120. Wang CY, Guttridge DC, Mayo MW, Baldwin AS Jr. NF-kappaB induces expression of the Bcl-2 homologue A1/Bfl-1 to preferentially suppress chemotherapy-induced apoptosis. Mol Cell Biol. 1999;19(9):5923–9.
121. Chu ZL, McKinsey TA, Liu L, Gentry JJ, Malim MH, Ballard DW. Suppression of tumor necrosis factor-induced cell death by inhibitor of apoptosis c-IAP2 is under NF-kappaB control. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 1997;94(19):10057–62.
122. Wang CY, Mayo MW, Korneluk RG, Goeddel DV, Baldwin AS Jr. NF-kappaB antiapoptosis: induction of TRAF1 and TRAF2 and c-IAP1 and c-IAP2 to suppress caspase-8 activation. Science. 1998;281(5383):1680–3.
123. Deveraux QL, Reed JC. IAP family proteins--suppressors of apoptosis. Genes Dev. 1999;13(3):239–52.
124. Stehlik C, de Martin R, Kumabashiri I, Schmid JA, Binder BR, Lipp J. Nuclear factor (NF)-kappaB-regulated X-chromosome-linked iap gene expression protects endothelial cells from tumor necrosis factor alpha-induced apoptosis. J Exp Med. 1998;188(1):211–6.
125. Vogelstein B, Kinzler KW. Cancer genes and the pathways they control. Nat Med. 2004;10(8):789–99.
126. Reed JC. Apoptosis-targeted therapies for cancer. Cancer Cell. 2003;3(1):17–22.
127. Gronbaek K, Straten PT, Ralfkiaer E, Ahrenkiel V, Andersen MK, Hansen NE, et al. Somatic Fas mutations in non-Hodgkin's lymphoma: association with extranodal disease and autoimmunity. Blood. 1998;92(9):3018–24.
128. Shin MS, Park WS, Kim SY, Kim HS, Kang SJ, Song KY, et al. Alterations of Fas (Apo-1/CD95) gene in cutaneous malignant melanoma. Am J Pathol. 1999;154(6):1785–91.
129. Lee SH, Shin MS, Park WS, Kim SY, Dong SM, Pi JH, et al. Alterations of Fas (APO-1/CD95) gene in transitional cell carcinomas of urinary bladder. Cancer Res. 1999;59(13):3068–72.
130. Lee SH, Shin MS, Park WS, Kim SY, Kim HS, Han JY, et al. Alterations of Fas (Apo-1/CD95) gene in non-small cell lung cancer. Oncogene. 1999;18(25):3754–60.
131. El-Naggar AK, Coombes MM, Batsakis JG, Hong WK, Goepfert H, Kagan J. Localization of chromosome 8p regions involved in early tumorigenesis of oral and laryngeal squamous carcinoma. Oncogene. 1998;16(23):2983–7.
132. Emi M, Fujiwara Y, Nakajima T, Tsuchiya E, Tsuda H, Hirohashi S, et al. Frequent loss of heterozygosity for loci on chromosome 8p in hepatocellular carcinoma, colorectal cancer, and lung cancer. Cancer Res. 1992;52(19):5368–72.
133. Kagan J, Stein J, Babaian RJ, Joe YS, Pisters LL, Glassman AB, et al. Homozygous deletions at 8p22 and 8p21 in prostate cancer implicate these regions as the sites for candidate tumor suppressor genes. Oncogene. 1995;11(10):2121–6.
134. Mitelman F, Mertens F, Johansson B. A breakpoint map of recurrent chromosomal rearrangements in human neoplasia. Nat Genet. 1997;15:417–74.
135. Monni O, Joensuu H, Franssila K, Knuutila S. DNA copy number changes in diffuse large B-cell lymphoma--comparative genomic hybridization study. Blood. 1996;87(12):5269–78.
136. Yaremko ML, Kutza C, Lyzak J, Mick R, Recant WM, Westbrook CA. Loss of heterozygosity from the short arm of chromosome 8 is associated with invasive behavior in breast cancer. Genes Chromosomes Cancer. 1996;16(3):189–95.
137. Wistuba II, Behrens C, Virmani AK, Milchgrub S, Syed S, Lam S, et al. Allelic losses at chromosome 8p21-23 are early and frequent events in the pathogenesis of lung cancer. Cancer Res. 1999;59(8):1973–9.
138. Pai SI, Wu GS, Ozoren N, Wu L, Jen J, Sidransky D, et al. Rare loss-of-function mutation of a death receptor gene in head and neck cancer. Cancer Res. 1998;58(16):3513–8.
139. Lee SH, Shin MS, Kim HS, Lee HK, Park WS, Kim SY, et al. Alterations of the DR5/TRAIL receptor 2 gene in non-small cell lung cancers. Cancer Res. 1999;59(22):5683–6.
140. Lee SH, Shin MS, Kim HS, Lee HK, Park WS, Kim SY, et al. Somatic mutations of TRAIL-receptor 1 and TRAIL-receptor 2 genes in non-Hodgkin's lymphoma. Oncogene. 2001;20(3):399–403.
141. Shin MS, Kim HS, Lee SH, Park WS, Kim SY, Park JY, et al. Mutations of tumor necrosis factor-related apoptosis-inducing ligand receptor 1 (TRAIL-R1) and receptor 2 (TRAIL-R2) genes in metastatic breast cancers. Cancer Res. 2001;61(13):4942–6.
142. Gallmeier E, Bader DC, Kriegl L, Berezowska S, Seeliger H, Goke B, et al. Loss of TRAIL-receptors is a recurrent feature in pancreatic cancer and determines the prognosis of patients with no nodal metastasis after surgery. PLoS One. 2013;8(2):e56760.
143. Lorea CF, Moreno DA, Borges KS, Martinelli CE Jr, Antonini SR, de Castro M, et al. Expression profile of apoptosis-related genes in childhood adrenocortical tumors: low level of expression of BCL2 and TNF genes suggests a poor prognosis. Eur J Endocrinol. 2012;167(2):199–208.
144. Junttila MR, Puustinen P, Niemela M, Ahola R, Arnold H, Bottzauw T, et al. CIP2A inhibits PP2A in human malignancies. Cell. 2007;130(1):51–62.
145. Eichhorn PJ, Creyghton MP, Bernards R. Protein phosphatase 2A regulatory subunits and cancer. Biochim Biophys Acta. 2009;1795(1):1–15.
146. Fearon ER, Cho KR, Nigro JM, Kern SE, Simons JW, Ruppert JM, et al. Identification of a chromosome 18q gene that is altered in colorectal cancers. Science. 1990;247(4938):49–56.
147. Fearon ER. DCC: is there a connection between tumorigenesis and cell guidance molecules? Biochim Biophys Acta. 1996;1288(2):M17–23.
148. Andrews GA, Xi S, Pomerantz RG, Lin CJ, Gooding WE, Wentzel AL, et al. Mutation of p53 in head and

neck squamous cell carcinoma correlates with Bcl-2 expression and increased susceptibility to cisplatin-induced apoptosis. Head Neck. 2004;26(10):870–7.
149. Ikegaki N, Katsumata M, Minna J, Tsujimoto Y. Expression of bcl-2 in small cell lung carcinoma cells. Cancer Res. 1994;54(1):6–8.
150. Monni O, Joensuu H, Franssila K, Klefstrom J, Alitalo K, Knuutila S. BCL2 overexpression associated with chromosomal amplification in diffuse large B-cell lymphoma. Blood. 1997;90(3):1168–74.
151. Fels C, Schafer C, Huppe B, Bahn H, Heidecke V, Kramm CM, et al. Bcl-2 expression in higher-grade human glioma: a clinical and experimental study. J Neuro-Oncol. 2000;48(3):207–16.
152. Kouri FM, Jensen SA, Stegh AH. The role of Bcl-2 family proteins in therapy responses of malignant astrocytic gliomas: Bcl2L12 and beyond. ScientificWorldJournal. 2012;2012:838916.
153. Schimmer AD, Munk-Pedersen I, Minden MD, Reed JC. Bcl-2 and apoptosis in chronic lymphocytic leukemia. Curr Treat Options in Oncol. 2003;4(3):211–8.
154. Rao PH, Houldsworth J, Dyomina K, Parsa NZ, Cigudosa JC, Louie DC, et al. Chromosomal and gene amplification in diffuse large B-cell lymphoma. Blood. 1998;92(1):234–40.
155. Hermine O, Haioun C, Lepage E, d'Agay MF, Briere J, Lavignac C, et al. Prognostic significance of bcl-2 protein expression in aggressive non-Hodgkin's lymphoma. Groupe d'Etude des Lymphomes de l'Adulte (GELA). Blood. 1996;87(1):265–72.
156. Hill ME, MacLennan KA, Cunningham DC, Vaughan Hudson B, Burke M, Clarke P, et al. Prognostic significance of BCL-2 expression and bcl-2 major breakpoint region rearrangement in diffuse large cell non-Hodgkin's lymphoma: a British National Lymphoma Investigation Study. Blood. 1996;88(3):1046–51.
157. Hu S, Xu-Monette ZY, Tzankov A, Green T, Wu L, Balasubramanyam A, et al. MYC/BCL2 protein co-expression contributes to the inferior survival of activated B-cell subtype of diffuse large B-cell lymphoma and demonstrates high-risk gene expression signatures: a report from The International DLBCL Rituximab-CHOP Consortium Program Study. Blood. 2013;121(20):4021–31; quiz 4250.
158. Masago K, Togashi Y, Fujita S, Nagai H, Sakamori Y, Okuda C, et al. Effect of the BCL2 gene polymorphism on survival in advanced-stage non-small cell lung cancer patients who received chemotherapy. Oncology. 2013;84(4):214–8.
159. Brimmell M, Mendiola R, Mangion J, Packham G. BAX frameshift mutations in cell lines derived from human haemopoietic malignancies are associated with resistance to apoptosis and microsatellite instability. Oncogene. 1998;16(14):1803–12.
160. Rampino N, Yamamoto H, Ionov Y, Li Y, Sawai H, Reed JC, et al. Somatic frameshift mutations in the BAX gene in colon cancers of the microsatellite mutator phenotype. Science. 1997;275(5302):967–9.
161. McConkey DJ, Chandra J, Wright S, Plunkett W, McDonnell TJ, Reed JC, et al. Apoptosis sensitivity in chronic lymphocytic leukemia is determined by endogenous endonuclease content and relative expression of BCL-2 and BAX. J Immunol. 1996;156(7):2624–30.
162. Pepper C, Bentley P, Hoy T. Regulation of clinical chemoresistance by bcl-2 and bax oncoproteins in B-cell chronic lymphocytic leukaemia. Br J Haematol. 1996;95(3):513–7.
163. Fadeel B, Orrenius S. Apoptosis: a basic biological phenomenon with wide-ranging implications in human disease. J Intern Med. 2005;258(6):479–517.
164. Son JW, Kang HK, Chae MH, Choi JE, Park JM, Lee WK, et al. Polymorphisms in the caspase-8 gene and the risk of lung cancer. Cancer Genet Cytogenet. 2006;169(2):121–7.
165. Bethke L, Sullivan K, Webb E, Murray A, Schoemaker M, Auvinen A, et al. The common D302h variant of CASP8 is associated with risk of glioma. Cancer Epidemiol Biomarkers Prev. 2008;17(4):987–9.
166. Cox A, Dunning AM, Garcia-Closas M, Balasubramanian S, Reed MW, Pooley KA, et al. A common coding variant in CASP8 is associated with breast cancer risk. Nat Genet. 2007;39(3):352–8.
167. Sun T, Gao Y, Tan W, Ma S, Shi Y, Yao J, et al. A six-nucleotide insertion-deletion polymorphism in the CASP8 promoter is associated with susceptibility to multiple cancers. Nat Genet. 2007;39(5):605–13.
168. Wang M, Zhang Z, Tian Y, Shao J, Zhang Z. A six-nucleotide insertion-deletion polymorphism in the CASP8 promoter associated with risk and progression of bladder cancer. Clin Cancer Res. 2009;15(7):2567–72.
169. Zhang L, Ming L, Yu J. BH3 mimetics to improve cancer therapy; mechanisms and examples. Drug Resist Updat. 2007;10(6):207–17.
170. Sarela AI, Macadam RC, Farmery SM, Markham AF, Guillou PJ. Expression of the antiapoptosis gene, survivin, predicts death from recurrent colorectal carcinoma. Gut. 2000;46(5):645–50.
171. Krajewska M, Krajewski S, Banares S, Huang X, Turner B, Bubendorf L, et al. Elevated expression of inhibitor of apoptosis proteins in prostate cancer. Clin Cancer Res. 2003;9(13):4914–25.
172. Kasof GM, Gomes BC. Livin, a novel inhibitor of apoptosis protein family member. J Biol Chem. 2001;276(5):3238–46.
173. Vucic D, Stennicke HR, Pisabarro MT, Salvesen GS, Dixit VM. ML-IAP, a novel inhibitor of apoptosis that is preferentially expressed in human melanomas. Curr Biol. 2000;10(21):1359–66.
174. Lane DP. Cancer. p53, guardian of the genome. Nature. 1992;358(6381):15–6.
175. Lane DP, Goh AM. How p53 wields the scales of fate: arrest or death? Transcription. 2012;3(5):240–4.
176. Miyashita T, Reed JC. Tumor suppressor p53 is a direct transcriptional activator of the human bax gene. Cell. 1995;80(2):293–9.

177. Miyashita T, Harigai M, Hanada M, Reed JC. Identification of a p53-dependent negative response element in the bcl-2 gene. Cancer Res. 1994;54(12):3131–5.
178. Sax JK, Fei P, Murphy ME, Bernhard E, Korsmeyer SJ, El-Deiry WS. BID regulation by p53 contributes to chemosensitivity. Nat Cell Biol. 2002;4(11):842–9.
179. Kischkel FC, Lawrence DA, Chuntharapai A, Schow P, Kim KJ, Ashkenazi A. Apo2L/TRAIL-dependent recruitment of endogenous FADD and caspase-8 to death receptors 4 and 5. Immunity. 2000;12(6):611–20.
180. Deng Y, Lin Y, Wu X. TRAIL-induced apoptosis requires Bax-dependent mitochondrial release of Smac/DIABLO. Genes Dev. 2002;16(1):33–45.
181. Ashkenazi A, Pai RC, Fong S, Leung S, Lawrence DA, Marsters SA, et al. Safety and antitumor activity of recombinant soluble Apo2 ligand. J Clin Invest. 1999;104(2):155–62.
182. Walczak H, Miller RE, Ariail K, Gliniak B, Griffith TS, Kubin M, et al. Tumoricidal activity of tumor necrosis factor-related apoptosis-inducing ligand in vivo. Nat Med. 1999;5(2):157–63.
183. El-Deiry WS. Insights into cancer therapeutic design based on p53 and TRAIL receptor signaling. Cell Death Differ. 2001;8(11):1066–75.
184. Herbst RS, Mendolson DS, Ebbinghaus S, Gordon MS, O'Dwyer P, Lieberman G, et al. A phase I safety and pharmacokinetic (PK) study of recombinant Apo2L/TRAIL, an apoptosis-inducing protein in patients with advanced cancer. ASCO Meet Abstr. 2006;24(18_suppl):3013.
185. Ling J, Herbst RS, Mendelson DS, Eckhardt SG, O'Dwyer P, Ebbinghaus S, et al. Apo2L/TRAIL pharmacokinetics in a phase 1a trial in advanced cancer and lymphoma. ASCO Meet Abstr. 2006;24(18_suppl):3047.
186. Leng Y, Hou J, Jin J, Zhang M, Ke X, Jiang B, et al. Circularly permuted TRAIL plus thalidomide and dexamethasone versus thalidomide and dexamethasone for relapsed/refractory multiple myeloma: a phase 2 study. Cancer Chemother Pharmacol. 2017;79(6):1141–9.
187. Leng Y, Qiu L, Hou J, Zhao Y, Zhang X, Yang S, et al. Phase II open-label study of recombinant circularly permuted TRAIL as a single-agent treatment for relapsed or refractory multiple myeloma. Chin J Cancer. 2016;35(1):86.
188. Johnstone RW, Frew AJ, Smyth MJ. The TRAIL apoptotic pathway in cancer onset, progression and therapy. Nat Rev Cancer. 2008;8(10):782–98.
189. Herbst RS, Eckhardt SG, Kurzrock R, Ebbinghaus S, O'Dwyer PJ, Gordon MS, et al. Phase I dose-escalation study of recombinant human Apo2L/TRAIL, a dual proapoptotic receptor agonist, in patients with advanced cancer. J Clin Oncol. 2010;28(17):2839–46.
190. Soria JC, Smit E, Khayat D, Besse B, Yang X, Hsu CP, et al. Phase 1b study of dulanermin (recombinant human Apo2L/TRAIL) in combination with paclitaxel, carboplatin, and bevacizumab in patients with advanced non-squamous non-small-cell lung cancer. J Clin Oncol. 2010;28(9):1527–33.
191. Yee L, Fanale M, Dimick K, Calvert S, Robins C, Ing J, et al. A phase IB safety and pharmacokinetic (PK) study of recombinant human Apo2L/TRAIL in combination with rituximab in patients with low-grade non-Hodgkin lymphoma. ASCO Meet Abstr. 2007;25(18_suppl):8078.
192. Wainberg ZA, Messersmith WA, Peddi PF, Kapp AV, Ashkenazi A, Royer-Joo S, Portera CC, et al. A phase 1B study of dulanermin in combination with modified FOLFOX6 plus bevacizumab in patients with metastatic colorectal cancer. Clin Colorectal Cancer. 2013;12(4):248–54.
193. Cheah CY, Belada D, Fanale MA, Janikova A, Czucman MS, Flinn IW, et al. Dulanermin with rituximab in patients with relapsed indolent B-cell lymphoma: an open-label phase 1b/2 randomised study. Lancet Haematol. 2015;2(4):e166–74.
194. Ouyang X, Shi M, Jie F, Bai Y, Shen P, Yu Z, et al. Phase III study of dulanermin (recombinant human tumor necrosis factor-related apoptosis-inducing ligand/Apo2 ligand) combined with vinorelbine and cisplatin in patients with advanced non-small-cell lung cancer. Investig New Drugs. 2018;36(2):315–22.
195. Micheau O, Shirley S, Dufour F. Death receptors as targets in cancer. Br J Pharmacol. 2013;169(8):1723–44.
196. Soria JC, Mark Z, Zatloukal P, Szima B, Albert I, Juhasz E, et al. Randomized phase II study of dulanermin in combination with paclitaxel, carboplatin, and bevacizumab in advanced non-small-cell lung cancer. J Clin Oncol. 2011;29(33):4442–51.
197. de Miguel D, Lemke J, Anel A, Walczak H, Martinez-Lostao L. Onto better TRAILs for cancer treatment. Cell Death Differ. 2016;23(5):733–47.
198. Geng C, Hou J, Zhao Y, Ke X, Wang Z, Qiu L, et al. A multicenter, open-label phase II study of recombinant CPT (Circularly Permuted TRAIL) plus thalidomide in patients with relapsed and refractory multiple myeloma. Am J Hematol. 2014;89(11):1037–42.
199. Fang F, Wang AP, Yang SF. Antitumor activity of a novel recombinant mutant human tumor necrosis factor-related apoptosis-inducing ligand. Acta Pharmacol Sin. 2005;26(11):1373–81.
200. Greco FA, Bonomi P, Crawford J, Kelly K, Oh Y, Halpern W, et al. Phase 2 study of mapatumumab, a fully human agonistic monoclonal antibody which targets and activates the TRAIL receptor-1, in patients with advanced non-small cell lung cancer. Lung Cancer. 2008;61(1):82–90.
201. Hotte SJ, Hirte HW, Chen EX, Siu LL, Le LH, Corey A, et al. A phase 1 study of mapatumumab (fully human monoclonal antibody to TRAIL-R1) in patients with advanced solid malignancies. Clin Cancer Res. 2008;14(11):3450–5.

202. Le LH, Hirte HW, Hotte SJ, Maclean M, Iacobucci A, Corey A, et al. Phase I study of a fully human monoclonal antibody to the tumor necrosis factor-related apoptosis-inducing ligand death receptor 4 (TRAIL-R1) in subjects with advanced solid malignancies or non-Hodgkin's lymphoma (NHL). ASCO Meet Abstr. 2004;22(14_suppl):2533.
203. Chow LQ, Eckhardt SG, Gustafson DL, O'Bryant C, Hariharan S, Diab S, et al. HGS-ETR1, an antibody targeting TRAIL-R1, in combination with paclitaxel and carboplatin in patients with advanced solid malignancies: results of a phase 1 and PK study. ASCO Meet Abstr. 2006;24(18_suppl):2515.
204. Leong S, Cohen RB, Gustafson DL, Langer CJ, Camidge DR, Padavic K, et al. Mapatumumab, an antibody targeting TRAIL-R1, in combination with paclitaxel and carboplatin in patients with advanced solid malignancies: results of a phase I and pharmacokinetic study. J Clin Oncol. 2009;27(26):4413–21.
205. Mom CH, Verweij J, Oldenhuis CN, Gietema JA, Fox NL, Miceli R, et al. Mapatumumab, a fully human agonistic monoclonal antibody that targets TRAIL-R1, in combination with gemcitabine and cisplatin: a phase I study. Clin Cancer Res. 2009;15(17):5584–90.
206. Younes A, Vose JM, Zelenetz AD, Smith MR, Burris HA, Ansell SM, et al. A Phase 1b/2 trial of mapatumumab in patients with relapsed/refractory non-Hodgkin's lymphoma. Br J Cancer. 2010;103(12):1783–7.
207. Von Pawel J, Harvey JH, Spigel DR, Dediu M, Reck M, Cebotaru CL, et al. A randomized phase II trial of mapatumumab, a TRAIL-R1 agonist monoclonal antibody, in combination with carboplatin and paclitaxel in patients with advanced NSCLC. ASCO Meet Abstr. 2010;28(18_suppl):LBA7501.
208. von Pawel J, Harvey JH, Spigel DR, Dediu M, Reck M, Cebotaru CL, et al. Phase II trial of mapatumumab, a fully human agonist monoclonal antibody to tumor necrosis factor-related apoptosis-inducing ligand receptor 1 (TRAIL-R1), in combination with paclitaxel and carboplatin in patients with advanced non-small-cell lung cancer. Clin Lung Cancer. 2014;15(3):188–196.e2.
209. Trarbach T, Moehler M, Heinemann V, Kohne CH, Przyborek M, Schulz C, et al. Phase II trial of mapatumumab, a fully human agonistic monoclonal antibody that targets and activates the tumour necrosis factor apoptosis-inducing ligand receptor-1 (TRAIL-R1), in patients with refractory colorectal cancer. Br J Cancer. 2010;102(3):506–12.
210. Sun W, Nelson D, Alberts SR, Poordad F, Leong S, Teitelbaum UR, et al. Phase Ib study of mapatumumab in combination with sorafenib in patients with advanced hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC) and chronic viral hepatitis. ASCO Meet Abstr. 2011;29(4_suppl):261.
211. Ciuleanu T, Bazin I, Lungulescu D, Miron L, Bondarenko I, Deptala A, et al. A randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled phase II study to assess the efficacy and safety of mapatumumab with sorafenib in patients with advanced hepatocellular carcinoma. Ann Oncol. 2016;27(4):680–7.
212. Merchant MS, Geller JI, Baird K, Chou AJ, Galli S, Charles A, et al. Phase I trial and pharmacokinetic study of lexatumumab in pediatric patients with solid tumors. J Clin Oncol. 2012;30(33):4141–7.
213. Wittebol S, Ferrant A, Wickham NW, Fehrenbacher L, Durbin-Johnson B, Bray GL. Phase II study of PRO95780 plus rituximab in patients with relapsed follicular non-Hodgkin's lymphoma (NHL). ASCO Meet Abstr. 2010;28(15_suppl):e18511.
214. Camidge DR, Herbst RS, Gordon MS, Eckhardt SG, Kurzrock R, Durbin B, et al. A phase I safety and pharmacokinetic study of the death receptor 5 agonistic antibody PRO95780 in patients with advanced malignancies. Clin Cancer Res. 2010;16(4):1256–63.
215. Karapetis CS, Clingan PR, Leighl NB, Durbin-Johnson B, O'Neill V, Spigel DR. Phase II study of PRO95780 plus paclitaxel, carboplatin, and bevacizumab (PCB) in non-small cell lung cancer (NSCLC). ASCO Meet Abstr. 2010;28(15_suppl):7535.
216. Herbst RS, Kurzrock R, Hong DS, Valdivieso M, Hsu CP, Goyal L, et al. A first-in-human study of conatumumab in adult patients with advanced solid tumors. Clin Cancer Res. 2010;16(23):5883–91.
217. Doi T, Murakami H, Ohtsu A, Fuse N, Yoshino T, Yamamoto N, et al. Phase 1 study of conatumumab, a pro-apoptotic death receptor 5 agonist antibody, in Japanese patients with advanced solid tumors. Cancer Chemother Pharmacol. 2011;68(3):733–41.
218. Kindler HL, Richards DA, Garbo LE, Garon EB, Stephenson JJ Jr, Rocha-Lima CM, et al. A randomized, placebo-controlled phase 2 study of ganitumab (AMG 479) or conatumumab (AMG 655) in combination with gemcitabine in patients with metastatic pancreatic cancer. Ann Oncol. 2012;23(11):2834–42.
219. Kindler HL, Garbo L, Stephenson J, Wiezorek J, Sabin T, Hsu M, et al. A phase Ib study to evaluate the safety and efficacy of AMG 655 in combination with gemcitabine (G) in patients (pts) with metastatic pancreatic cancer (PC). ASCO Meet Abstr. 2009;27(15S):4501.
220. Cohn AL, Tabernero J, Maurel J, Nowara E, Sastre J, Chuah BY, et al. A randomized, placebo-controlled phase 2 study of ganitumab or conatumumab in combination with FOLFIRI for second-line treatment of mutant KRAS metastatic colorectal cancer. Ann Oncol. 2013;24(7):1777–85.
221. Saltz L, Infante J, Schwartzberg L, Stephenson J, Rocha-Lima C, Galimi F, et al. Safety and efficacy of AMG 655 plus modified FOLFOX6 (mFOLFOX6) and bevacizumab (B) for the first-line treatment of patients (pts) with metastatic colorectal cancer (mCRC). ASCO Meet Abstr. 2009;27(15S):4079.
222. Fuchs CS, Fakih M, Schwartzberg L, Cohn AL, Yee L, Dreisbach L, et al. TRAIL receptor agonist conatumumab with modified FOLFOX6 plus bevacizumab for first-line treatment of metastatic

colorectal cancer: a randomized phase 1b/2 trial. Cancer. 2013;119(24):4290–8.
223. Rougier P, Infante J, Van Laethem J, Stephenson JJ, Uronis H, Schwartzberg L, et al. A phase Ib/II trial of AMG 655 and panitumumab (pmab) for the treatment (tx) of metastatic colorectal cancer (mCRC): safety results. ASCO Meet Abstr. 2009;27(15S):4130.
224. Paz-Ares L, Sanchez Torres JM, Diaz-Padilla I, Links M, Reguart N, Boyer M, et al. Safety and efficacy of AMG 655 in combination with paclitaxel and carboplatin (PC) in patients with advanced non-small cell lung cancer (NSCLC). ASCO Meet Abstr. 2009;27(15S):e19048.
225. Paz-Ares L, Balint B, de Boer RH, van Meerbeeck JP, Wierzbicki R, De Souza P, et al. A randomized phase 2 study of paclitaxel and carboplatin with or without conatumumab for first-line treatment of advanced non-small-cell lung cancer. J Thorac Oncol. 2013;8(3):329–37.
226. Demetri GD, Le Cesne A, Chawla SP, Brodowicz T, Maki RG, Bach BA, et al. First-line treatment of metastatic or locally advanced unresectable soft tissue sarcomas with conatumumab in combination with doxorubicin or doxorubicin alone: a phase I/II open-label and double-blind study. Eur J Cancer. 2012;48(4):547–63.
227. Tabernero J, Chawla SP, Kindler H, Reckamp K, Chiorean EG, Azad NS, et al. Anticancer activity of the type I insulin-like growth factor receptor antagonist, ganitumab, in combination with the death receptor 5 agonist, conatumumab. Target Oncol. 2015;10(1):65–76.
228. Chao DT, Korsmeyer SJ. BCL-2 family: regulators of cell death. Annu Rev Immunol. 1998;16:395–419.
229. Reed JC. Double identity for proteins of the Bcl-2 family. Nature. 1997;387(6635):773–6.
230. Adams JM, Cory S. The Bcl-2 apoptotic switch in cancer development and therapy. Oncogene. 2007;26(9):1324–37.
231. Yip KW, Reed JC. Bcl-2 family proteins and cancer. Oncogene. 2008;27(50):6398–406.
232. Oltersdorf T, Elmore SW, Shoemaker AR, Armstrong RC, Augeri DJ, Belli BA, et al. An inhibitor of Bcl-2 family proteins induces regression of solid tumours. Nature. 2005;435(7042):677–81.
233. Kirkin V, Joos S, Zornig M. The role of Bcl-2 family members in tumorigenesis. Biochim Biophys Acta. 2004;1644(2–3):229–49.
234. Kitada S, Kress CL, Krajewska M, Jia L, Pellecchia M, Reed JC. Bcl-2 antagonist apogossypol (NSC736630) displays single-agent activity in Bcl-2-transgenic mice and has superior efficacy with less toxicity compared with gossypol (NSC19048). Blood. 2008;111(6):3211–9.
235. Nguyen M, Marcellus RC, Roulston A, Watson M, Serfass L, Murthy Madiraju SR, et al. Small molecule obatoclax (GX15-070) antagonizes MCL-1 and overcomes MCL-1-mediated resistance to apoptosis. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2007;104(49):19512–7.
236. Pellecchia M, Reed JC. Inhibition of anti-apoptotic Bcl-2 family proteins by natural polyphenols: new avenues for cancer chemoprevention and chemotherapy. Curr Pharm Des. 2004;10(12):1387–98.
237. Kitada S, Leone M, Sareth S, Zhai D, Reed JC, Pellecchia M. Discovery, characterization, and structure-activity relationships studies of proapoptotic polyphenols targeting B-cell lymphocyte/leukemia-2 proteins. J Med Chem. 2003;46(20):4259–64.
238. Stein RC, Joseph AE, Matlin SA, Cunningham DC, Ford HT, Coombes RC. A preliminary clinical study of gossypol in advanced human cancer. Cancer Chemother Pharmacol. 1992;30(6):480–2.
239. Bushunow P, Reidenberg MM, Wasenko J, Winfield J, Lorenzo B, Lemke S, et al. Gossypol treatment of recurrent adult malignant gliomas. J Neuro-Oncol. 1999;43(1):79–86.
240. Van Poznak C, Seidman AD, Reidenberg MM, Moasser MM, Sklarin N, Van Zee K, et al. Oral gossypol in the treatment of patients with refractory metastatic breast cancer: a phase I/II clinical trial. Breast Cancer Res Treat. 2001;66(3):239–48.
241. Sun Y, Wu J, Aboukameel A, Banerjee S, Arnold AA, Chen J, et al. Apogossypolone, a nonpeptidic small molecule inhibitor targeting Bcl-2 family proteins, effectively inhibits growth of diffuse large cell lymphoma cells in vitro and in vivo. Cancer Biol Ther. 2008;7(9):1418–26.
242. James DF, Castro JE, Loria O, Prada CE, Aguillon RA, Kipps TJ. AT-101, a small molecule Bcl-2 antagonist, in treatment naive CLL patients (pts) with high risk features; Preliminary results from an ongoing phase I trial. J Clin Oncol (Meet Abstr). 2006;24(18_suppl):6605.
243. Baggstrom MQ, Qi Y, Koczywas M, Argiris A, Johnson EA, Millward MJ, et al. A phase II study of AT-101 (Gossypol) in chemotherapy-sensitive recurrent extensive-stage small cell lung cancer. J Thorac Oncol. 2011;6(10):1757–60.
244. Heist RS, Fain J, Chinnasami B, Khan W, Molina JR, Sequist LV, et al. Phase I/II study of AT-101 with topotecan in relapsed and refractory small cell lung cancer. J Thorac Oncol. 2010;5(10):1637–43.
245. Ready N, Karaseva NA, Orlov SV, Luft AV, Popovych O, Holmlund JT, et al. Double-blind, placebo-controlled, randomized phase 2 study of the proapoptotic agent AT-101 plus docetaxel, in second-line non-small cell lung cancer. J Thorac Oncol. 2011;6(4):781–5.
246. Schelman WR, Mohammed TA, Traynor AM, Kolesar JM, Marnocha RM, Eickhoff J, et al. A phase I study of AT-101 with cisplatin and etoposide in patients with advanced solid tumors with an expanded cohort in extensive-stage small cell lung cancer. Investig New Drugs. 2014;32(2):295–302.
247. Sonpavde G, Matveev V, Burke JM, Caton JR, Fleming MT, Hutson TE, et al. Randomized phase II trial of docetaxel plus prednisone in combination with placebo or AT-101, an oral small molecule Bcl-2 family antagonist, as first-line therapy for

metastatic castration-resistant prostate cancer. Ann Oncol. 2012;23(7):1803–8.
248. Stein MN, Hussain M, Stadler WM, Liu G, Tereshchenko IV, Goodin S, et al. A phase ii study of AT-101 to overcome Bcl-2--mediated resistance to androgen deprivation therapy in patients with newly diagnosed castration-sensitive metastatic prostate cancer. Clin Genitourin Cancer. 2016;14(1):22–7.
249. Swiecicki PL, Bellile E, Sacco AG, Pearson AT, Taylor JM, Jackson TL, et al. A phase II trial of the BCL-2 homolog domain 3 mimetic AT-101 in combination with docetaxel for recurrent, locally advanced, or metastatic head and neck cancer. Investig New Drugs. 2016;34(4):481–9.
250. Cui Q, Wen S, Huang P. Targeting cancer cell mitochondria as a therapeutic approach: recent updates. Future Med Chem. 2017;9(9):929–49.
251. Schimmer AD, O'Brien S, Kantarjian H, Brandwein J, Cheson BD, Minden MD, et al. A phase I study of the pan Bcl-2 family inhibitor obatoclax mesylate in patients with advanced hematologic malignancies. Clin Cancer Res. 2008;14(24):8295–301.
252. O'Brien SM, Claxton DF, Crump M, Faderl S, Kipps T, Keating MJ, et al. Phase I study of obatoclax mesylate (GX15-070), a small molecule pan-Bcl-2 family antagonist, in patients with advanced chronic lymphocytic leukemia. Blood. 2009;113(2):299–305.
253. Hwang JJ, Kuruvilla J, Mendelson D, Pishvaian MJ, Deeken JF, Siu LL, et al. Phase I dose finding studies of obatoclax (GX15-070), a small molecule pan-BCL-2 family antagonist, in patients with advanced solid tumors or lymphoma. Clin Cancer Res. 2010;16(15):4038–45.
254. Paik PK, Rudin CM, Pietanza MC, Brown A, Rizvi NA, Takebe N, et al. A phase II study of obatoclax mesylate, a Bcl-2 antagonist, plus topotecan in relapsed small cell lung cancer. Lung Cancer. 2011;74(3):481–5.
255. Paik PK, Rudin CM, Brown A, Rizvi NA, Takebe N, Travis W, et al. A phase I study of obatoclax mesylate, a Bcl-2 antagonist, plus topotecan in solid tumor malignancies. Cancer Chemother Pharmacol. 2010;66(6):1079–85.
256. Langer CJ, Albert I, Ross HJ, Kovacs P, Blakely LJ, Pajkos G, et al. Randomized phase II study of carboplatin and etoposide with or without obatoclax mesylate in extensive-stage small cell lung cancer. Lung Cancer. 2014;85(3):420–8.
257. Chiappori A, Williams C, Northfelt DW, Adams JW, Malik S, Edelman MJ, et al. Obatoclax mesylate, a pan-bcl-2 inhibitor, in combination with docetaxel in a phase 1/2 trial in relapsed non-small-cell lung cancer. J Thorac Oncol. 2014;9(1):121–5.
258. Oki Y, Copeland A, Hagemeister F, Fayad LE, Fanale M, Romaguera J, et al. Experience with obatoclax mesylate (GX15-070), a small molecule pan–Bcl-2 family antagonist in patients with relapsed or refractory classical Hodgkin lymphoma. Blood. 2012;119(9):2171–2.
259. Schimmer AD, Raza A, Carter TH, Claxton D, Erba H, DeAngelo DJ, et al. A multicenter phase I/II study of obatoclax mesylate administered as a 3- or 24-hour infusion in older patients with previously untreated acute myeloid leukemia. PLoS One. 2014;9(10):e108694.
260. Arellano ML, Borthakur G, Berger M, Luer J, Raza A. A phase II, multicenter, open-label study of obatoclax mesylate in patients with previously untreated myelodysplastic syndromes with anemia or thrombocytopenia. Clin Lymphoma Myeloma Leuk. 2014;14(6):534–9.
261. Wilson WH, O'Connor OA, Czuczman MS, LaCasce AS, Gerecitano JF, Leonard JP, et al. Navitoclax, a targeted high-affinity inhibitor of BCL-2, in lymphoid malignancies: a phase 1 dose-escalation study of safety, pharmacokinetics, pharmacodynamics, and antitumour activity. Lancet Oncol. 2010;11(12):1149–59.
262. Rudin CM, Hann CL, Garon EB. Ribeiro de Oliveira M, Bonomi PD, Camidge DR et al. Phase II study of single-agent navitoclax (ABT-263) and biomarker correlates in patients with relapsed small cell lung cancer. Clin Cancer Res. 2012;18(11):3163–9.
263. Vlahovic G, Karantza V, Wang D, Cosgrove D, Rudersdorf N, Yang J, et al. A phase I safety and pharmacokinetic study of ABT-263 in combination with carboplatin/paclitaxel in the treatment of patients with solid tumors. Investig New Drugs. 2014;32(5):976–84.
264. Cleary JM, Lima CM, Hurwitz HI, Montero AJ, Franklin C, Yang J, et al. A phase I clinical trial of navitoclax, a targeted high-affinity Bcl-2 family inhibitor, in combination with gemcitabine in patients with solid tumors. Investig New Drugs. 2014;32(5):937–45.
265. Tolcher AW, LoRusso P, Arzt J, Busman TA, Lian G, Rudersdorf NS, et al. Safety, efficacy, and pharmacokinetics of navitoclax (ABT-263) in combination with irinotecan: results of an open-label, phase 1 study. Cancer Chemother Pharmacol. 2015;76(5):1041–9.
266. Roberts AW, Advani RH, Kahl BS, Persky D, Sweetenham JW, Carney DA, et al. Phase 1 study of the safety, pharmacokinetics, and antitumour activity of the BCL2 inhibitor navitoclax in combination with rituximab in patients with relapsed or refractory CD20+ lymphoid malignancies. Br J Haematol. 2015;170(5):669–78.
267. Kipps TJ, Eradat H, Grosicki S, Catalano J, Cosolo W, Dyagil IS, et al. A phase 2 study of the BH3 mimetic BCL2 inhibitor navitoclax (ABT-263) with or without rituximab, in previously untreated B-cell chronic lymphocytic leukemia. Leuk Lymphoma. 2015;56(10):2826–33.
268. Roberts AW. Venetoclax: a primer. Blood Adv. 2017;1(7):467.
269. Souers AJ, Leverson JD, Boghaert ER, Ackler SL, Catron ND, Chen J, et al. ABT-199, a potent and selective BCL-2 inhibitor, achieves antitu-

mor activity while sparing platelets. Nat Med. 2013;19(2):202–8.
270. Roberts AW, Davids MS, Pagel JM, Kahl BS, Puvvada SD, Gerecitano JF, et al. Targeting Bcl2 with venetoclax in relapsed chronic lymphocytic leukemia. N Engl J Med. 2016;374(4):311–22.
271. Stilgenbauer S, Eichhorst B, Schetelig J, Coutre S, Seymour JF, Munir T, et al. Venetoclax in relapsed or refractory chronic lymphocytic leukaemia with 17p deletion: a multicentre, open-label, phase 2 study. Lancet Oncol. 2016;17(6):768–78.
272. Gentile M, Petrungaro A, Uccello G, Vigna E, Recchia AG, Caruso N, et al. Venetoclax for the treatment of chronic lymphocytic leukemia. Expert Opin Investig Drugs. 2017;26(11):1307–16.
273. Coutre S, Choi M, Furman RR, Eradat H, Heffner L, Jones JA, et al. Venetoclax for patients with chronic lymphocytic leukemia who progressed during or after idelalisib therapy. Blood. 2018;131(15):1704–11.
274. Jones JA, Mato AR, Wierda WG, Davids MS, Choi M, Cheson BD, et al. Venetoclax for chronic lymphocytic leukaemia progressing after ibrutinib: an interim analysis of a multicentre, open-label, phase 2 trial. Lancet Oncol. 2018;19(1):65–75.
275. Kumar S, Kaufman JL, Gasparetto C, Mikhael J, Vij R, Pegourie B, et al. Efficacy of venetoclax as targeted therapy for relapsed/refractory t(11;14) multiple myeloma. Blood. 2017;130(22):2401–9.
276. Moreau P, Chanan-Khan A, Roberts AW, Agarwal AB, Facon T, Kumar S, et al. Promising efficacy and acceptable safety of venetoclax plus bortezomib and dexamethasone in relapsed/refractory MM. Blood. 2017;130(22):2392–400.
277. DiNardo CD, Pratz KW, Letai A, Jonas BA, Wei AH, Thirman M, et al. Safety and preliminary efficacy of venetoclax with decitabine or azacitidine in elderly patients with previously untreated acute myeloid leukaemia: a non-randomised, open-label, phase 1b study. Lancet Oncol. 2018;19(2):216–28.
278. Moreira JN, Santos A, Simoes S. Bcl-2-targeted antisense therapy (Oblimersen sodium): towards clinical reality. Rev Recent Clin Trials. 2006;1(3):217–35.
279. Bedikian AY, Millward M, Pehamberger H, Conry R, Gore M, Trefzer U, et al. Bcl-2 antisense (oblimersen sodium) plus dacarbazine in patients with advanced melanoma: the Oblimersen Melanoma Study Group. J Clin Oncol. 2006;24(29):4738–45.
280. Bedikian AY, Garbe C, Conry R, Lebbe C, Grob JJ. Dacarbazine with or without oblimersen (a Bcl-2 antisense oligonucleotide) in chemotherapy-naive patients with advanced melanoma and low-normal serum lactate dehydrogenase: 'The AGENDA trial'. Melanoma Res. 2014;24(3):237–43.
281. O'Brien S, Moore JO, Boyd TE, Larratt LM, Skotnicki A, Koziner B, et al. Randomized phase III trial of fludarabine plus cyclophosphamide with or without oblimersen sodium (Bcl-2 antisense) in patients with relapsed or refractory chronic lymphocytic leukemia. J Clin Oncol. 2007;25(9):1114–20.
282. O'Brien S, Moore JO, Boyd TE, Larratt LM, Skotnicki AB, Koziner B, et al. 5-year survival in patients with relapsed or refractory chronic lymphocytic leukemia in a randomized, phase III trial of fludarabine plus cyclophosphamide with or without oblimersen. J Clin Oncol. 2009;27(31):5208–12.
283. Wetzler M, Donohue KA, Odenike OM, Feldman EJ, Hurd DD, Stone RM, et al. Feasibility of administering oblimersen (G3139; Genasense) with imatinib mesylate in patients with imatinib resistant chronic myeloid leukemia--Cancer and leukemia group B study 10107. Leuk Lymphoma. 2008;49(7):1274–8.
284. Rudin CM, Salgia R, Wang X, Hodgson LD, Masters GA, Green M, et al. Randomized phase II Study of carboplatin and etoposide with or without the bcl-2 antisense oligonucleotide oblimersen for extensive-stage small-cell lung cancer: CALGB 30103. J Clin Oncol. 2008;26(6):870–6.
285. Chanan-Khan AA, Niesvizky R, Hohl RJ, Zimmerman TM, Christiansen NP, Schiller GJ, et al. Phase III randomised study of dexamethasone with or without oblimersen sodium for patients with advanced multiple myeloma. Leuk Lymphoma. 2009;50(4):559–65.
286. Ott PA, Chang J, Madden K, Kannan R, Muren C, Escano C, et al. Oblimersen in combination with temozolomide and albumin-bound paclitaxel in patients with advanced melanoma: a phase I trial. Cancer Chemother Pharmacol. 2013;71(1):183–91.
287. Morris MJ, Tong WP, Cordon-Cardo C, Drobnjak M, Kelly WK, Slovin SF, et al. Phase I trial of BCL-2 antisense oligonucleotide (G3139) administered by continuous intravenous infusion in patients with advanced cancer. Clin Cancer Res. 2002;8(3):679–83.
288. Marshall J, Chen H, Yang D, Figueira M, Bouker KB, Ling Y, et al. A phase I trial of a Bcl-2 antisense (G3139) and weekly docetaxel in patients with advanced breast cancer and other solid tumors. Ann Oncol. 2004;15(8):1274–83.
289. Fromer MJ. FDA encourages ODAC to reject genasense as CLL treatment. Oncol Times. 2006;28(18):22.
290. D'Arcy P, Linder S. Proteasome deubiquitinases as novel targets for cancer therapy. Int J Biochem Cell Biol. 2012;44(11):1729–38.
291. Naujokat C, Hoffmann S. Role and function of the 26S proteasome in proliferation and apoptosis. Lab Investig. 2002;82(8):965–80.
292. Wolf DH, Hilt W. The proteasome: a proteolytic nanomachine of cell regulation and waste disposal. Biochim Biophys Acta. 2004;1695(1–3):19–31.
293. Muratani M, Tansey WP. How the ubiquitin-proteasome system controls transcription. Nat Rev Mol Cell Biol. 2003;4(3):192–201.
294. Burger AM, Seth AK. The ubiquitin-mediated protein degradation pathway in cancer: therapeutic implications. Eur J Cancer. 2004;40(15):2217–29.
295. Hoeller D, Dikic I. Targeting the ubiquitin system in cancer therapy. Nature. 2009;458(7237):438–44.

296. Rolen U, Kobzeva V, Gasparjan N, Ovaa H, Winberg G, Kisseljov F, et al. Activity profiling of deubiquitinating enzymes in cervical carcinoma biopsies and cell lines. Mol Carcinog. 2006;45(4):260–9.
297. Gilmore TD. Multiple myeloma: lusting for NF-kappaB. Cancer Cell. 2007;12(2):95–7.
298. Tracey L, Perez-Rosado A, Artiga MJ, Camacho FI, Rodriguez A, Martinez N, et al. Expression of the NF-kappaB targets BCL2 and BIRC5/Survivin characterizes small B-cell and aggressive B-cell lymphomas, respectively. J Pathol. 2005;206(2):123–34.
299. Baldwin AS. Control of oncogenesis and cancer therapy resistance by the transcription factor NF-kappaB. J Clin Invest. 2001;107(3):241–6.
300. Hideshima T, Richardson P, Chauhan D, Palombella VJ, Elliott PJ, Adams J, et al. The proteasome inhibitor PS-341 inhibits growth, induces apoptosis, and overcomes drug resistance in human multiple myeloma cells. Cancer Res. 2001;61(7):3071–6.
301. Ludwig H, Khayat D, Giaccone G, Facon T. Proteasome inhibition and its clinical prospects in the treatment of hematologic and solid malignancies. Cancer. 2005;104(9):1794–807.
302. Crawford LJ, Walker B, Irvine AE. Proteasome inhibitors in cancer therapy. J Cell Commun Signal. 2011;5(2):101–10.
303. Hideshima T, Chauhan D, Richardson P, Mitsiades C, Mitsiades N, Hayashi T, et al. NF-kappa B as a therapeutic target in multiple myeloma. J Biol Chem. 2002;277(19):16639–47.
304. Fribley A, Zeng Q, Wang CY. Proteasome inhibitor PS-341 induces apoptosis through induction of endoplasmic reticulum stress-reactive oxygen species in head and neck squamous cell carcinoma cells. Mol Cell Biol. 2004;24(22):9695–704.
305. Obeng EA, Carlson LM, Gutman DM, Harrington WJ Jr, Lee KP, Boise LH. Proteasome inhibitors induce a terminal unfolded protein response in multiple myeloma cells. Blood. 2006;107(12):4907–16.
306. Yang DT, Young KH, Kahl BS, Markovina S, Miyamoto S. Prevalence of bortezomib-resistant constitutive NF-kappaB activity in mantle cell lymphoma. Mol Cancer. 2008;7:40.
307. Markovina S, Callander NS, O'Connor SL, Kim J, Werndli JE, Raschko M, et al. Bortezomib-resistant nuclear factor-kappaB activity in multiple myeloma cells. Mol Cancer Res. 2008;6(8):1356–64.
308. Chen S, Blank JL, Peters T, Liu XJ, Rappoli DM, Pickard MD, et al. Genome-wide siRNA screen for modulators of cell death induced by proteasome inhibitor bortezomib. Cancer Res. 2010;70(11):4318–26.
309. Zhu YX, Tiedemann R, Shi CX, Yin H, Schmidt JE, Bruins LA, et al. RNAi screen of the druggable genome identifies modulators of proteasome inhibitor sensitivity in myeloma including CDK5. Blood. 2011;117(14):3847–57.
310. Nawrocki ST, Carew JS, Dunner K Jr, Boise LH, Chiao PJ, Huang P, et al. Bortezomib inhibits PKR-like endoplasmic reticulum (ER) kinase and induces apoptosis via ER stress in human pancreatic cancer cells. Cancer Res. 2005;65(24):11510–9.
311. Ling YH, Liebes L, Zou Y, Perez-Soler R. Reactive oxygen species generation and mitochondrial dysfunction in the apoptotic response to Bortezomib, a novel proteasome inhibitor, in human H460 non-small cell lung cancer cells. J Biol Chem. 2003;278(36):33714–23.
312. Yu C, Rahmani M, Dent P, Grant S. The hierarchical relationship between MAPK signaling and ROS generation in human leukemia cells undergoing apoptosis in response to the proteasome inhibitor Bortezomib. Exp Cell Res. 2004;295(2):555–66.
313. Kane RC, Farrell AT, Sridhara R, Pazdur R. United States Food and Drug Administration approval summary: Bortezomib for the treatment of progressive multiple myeloma after one prior therapy. Clin Cancer Res. 2006;12(10):2955–60.
314. Fisher RI, Bernstein SH, Kahl BS, Djulbegovic B, Robertson MJ, de Vos S, et al. Multicenter phase II study of bortezomib in patients with relapsed or refractory mantle cell lymphoma. J Clin Oncol. 2006;24(30):4867–74.
315. Goy A, Bernstein SH, Kahl BS, Djulbegovic B, Robertson MJ, de Vos S, et al. Bortezomib in patients with relapsed or refractory mantle cell lymphoma: updated time-to-event analyses of the multicenter phase 2 PINNACLE study. Ann Oncol. 2009;20(3):520–5.
316. Kane RC, Dagher R, Farrell A, Ko C-W, Sridhara R, Justice R, et al. Bortezomib for the Treatment of Mantle Cell Lymphoma. Clin Cancer Res. 2007;13(18):5291–4.
317. Richardson PG, Sonneveld P, Schuster MW, Irwin D, Stadtmauer EA, Facon T, et al. Bortezomib or high-dose dexamethasone for relapsed multiple myeloma. N Engl J Med. 2005;352(24):2487–98.
318. Wolf J, Richardson PG, Schuster M, LeBlanc A, Walters IB, Battleman DS. Utility of bortezomib retreatment in relapsed or refractory multiple myeloma patients: a multicenter case series. Clin Adv Hematol Oncol. 2008;6(10):755–60.
319. Reece DE, Rodriguez GP, Chen C, Trudel S, Kukreti V, Mikhael J, et al. Phase I-II trial of bortezomib plus oral cyclophosphamide and prednisone in relapsed and refractory multiple myeloma. J Clin Oncol. 2008;26(29):4777–83.
320. Einsele H, Engelhardt M, Tapprich C, Muller J, Liebisch P, Langer C, et al. Phase II study of bortezomib, cyclophosphamide and dexamethasone as induction therapy in multiple myeloma: DSMM XI trial. Br J Haematol. 2017;179(4):586–97.
321. Goldschmidt H, Lokhorst HM, Mai EK, van der Holt B, Blau IW, Zweegman S, et al. Bortezomib before and after high-dose therapy in myeloma: long-term results from the phase III HOVON-65/GMMG-HD4 trial. Leukemia. 2018;32(2):383–90.
322. Sonbol MB, Hilal T, Dueck AC, Rosenthal AC, Conley CR, Kosiorek HE, et al. A phase 2 study of rituximab, cyclophosphamide, bortezomib and

dexamethasone (R-CyBorD) in relapsed low grade and mantle cell lymphoma. Leuk Lymphoma. 2018;59(9):2128–34.
323. Puvvada SD, Guillen-Rodriguez J, Kumar A, Inclan L, Heard K, Rivera XI, et al. Phase 2 open-label study of bortezomib, cladribine, and rituximab in advanced, newly diagnosed, and relapsed/refractory mantle-cell and indolent lymphomas. Clin Lymphoma Myeloma Leuk. 2018;18(1):58–64.
324. Mendler JH, Kelly J, Voci S, Marquis D, Rich L, Rossi RM, et al. Bortezomib and gemcitabine in relapsed or refractory Hodgkin's lymphoma. Ann Oncol. 2008;19(10):1759–64.
325. Cresta S, Sessa C, Catapano CV, Gallerani E, Passalacqua D, Rinaldi A, et al. Phase I study of bortezomib with weekly paclitaxel in patients with advanced solid tumours. Eur J Cancer. 2008;44(13):1829–34.
326. Jatoi A, Dakhil SR, Foster NR, Ma C, Rowland KM Jr, Moore DF Jr, et al. Bortezomib, paclitaxel, and carboplatin as a first-line regimen for patients with metastatic esophageal, gastric, and gastroesophageal cancer: phase II results from the North Central Cancer Treatment Group (N044B). J Thorac Oncol. 2008;3(5):516–20.
327. Bahleda R, Le Deley MC, Bernard A, Chaturvedi S, Hanley M, Poterie A, et al. Phase I trial of bortezomib daily dose: safety, pharmacokinetic profile, biological effects and early clinical evaluation in patients with advanced solid tumors. Investig New Drugs. 2018;36(4):619–28.
328. Leonard JP, Kolibaba KS, Reeves JA, Tulpule A, Flinn IW, Kolevska T, et al. Randomized phase II study of R-CHOP with or without bortezomib in previously untreated patients with non-germinal center B-cell-like diffuse large B-cell lymphoma. J Clin Oncol. 2017;35(31):3538–46.
329. Flinn IW, Thompson DS, Boccia RV, Miletello G, Lipman A, Flora D, et al. Bendamustine, bortezomib and rituximab produces durable complete remissions in patients with previously untreated, low grade lymphoma. Br J Haematol. 2018;180(3):365–73.
330. Laubach JP, Mitsiades CS, Roccaro AM, Ghobrial IM, Anderson KC, Richardson PG. Clinical challenges associated with bortezomib therapy in multiple myeloma and Waldenstroms Macroglobulinemia. Leuk Lymphoma. 2009;50(5):694–702.
331. Ruschak AM, Slassi M, Kay LE, Schimmer AD. Novel proteasome inhibitors to overcome bortezomib resistance. J Natl Cancer Inst. 2011;103(13):1007–17.
332. Richardson PG, Barlogie B, Berenson J, Singhal S, Jagannath S, Irwin D, et al. A phase 2 study of bortezomib in relapsed, refractory myeloma. N Engl J Med. 2003;348(26):2609–17.
333. Dispenzieri A, Jacobus S, Vesole DH, Callandar N, Fonseca R, Greipp PR. Primary therapy with single agent bortezomib as induction, maintenance and re-induction in patients with high-risk myeloma: results of the ECOG E2A02 trial. Leukemia. 2010;24(8):1406–11.
334. Cortes J, Thomas D, Koller C, Giles F, Estey E, Faderl S, et al. Phase I study of bortezomib in refractory or relapsed acute leukemias. Clin Cancer Res. 2004;10(10):3371–6.
335. Moran E, Carbone F, Augusti V, Patrone F, Ballestrero A, Nencioni A. Proteasome inhibitors as immunosuppressants: biological rationale and clinical experience. Semin Hematol. 2012;49(3):270–6.
336. Ishii T, Tanaka Y, Kawakami A, Saito K, Ichinose K, Fujii H, et al. Multicenter double-blind randomized controlled trial to evaluate the effectiveness and safety of bortezomib as a treatment for refractory systemic lupus erythematosus. Mod Rheumatol. 2018;28(6):986–92.
337. Eskandary F, Regele H, Baumann L, Bond G, Kozakowski N, Wahrmann M, et al. A randomized trial of Bortezomib in late antibody-mediated kidney transplant rejection. J Am Soc Nephrol. 2018;29(2):591–605.
338. Koreth J, Kim HT, Lange PB, Poryanda SJ, Reynolds CG, Chamling Rai S, et al. Bortezomib-based immunosuppression after reduced-intensity conditioning hematopoietic stem cell transplantation: randomized phase II results. Haematologica. 2018;103(3):522–30.
339. Parlati F, Lee SJ, Aujay M, Suzuki E, Levitsky K, Lorens JB, et al. Carfilzomib can induce tumor cell death through selective inhibition of the chymotrypsin-like activity of the proteasome. Blood. 2009;114(16):3439–47.
340. Kuhn DJ, Chen Q, Voorhees PM, Strader JS, Shenk KD, Sun CM, et al. Potent activity of carfilzomib, a novel, irreversible inhibitor of the ubiquitin-proteasome pathway, against preclinical models of multiple myeloma. Blood. 2007;110(9):3281–90.
341. Tzogani K, Camarero Jimenez J, Garcia I, Sancho-Lopez A, Martin M, Moreau A, et al. The European Medicines Agency review of carfilzomib for the treatment of adult patients with multiple myeloma who have received at least one prior therapy. Oncologist. 2017;22(11):1339–46.
342. Stewart AK, Rajkumar SV, Dimopoulos MA, Masszi T, Spicka I, Oriol A, et al. Carfilzomib, lenalidomide, and dexamethasone for relapsed multiple myeloma. N Engl J Med. 2015;372(2):142–52.
343. Dimopoulos MA, Stewart AK, Masszi T, Spicka I, Oriol A, Hajek R, et al. Carfilzomib, lenalidomide, and dexamethasone in patients with relapsed multiple myeloma categorised by age: secondary analysis from the phase 3 ASPIRE study. Br J Haematol. 2017;177(3):404–13.
344. Suzuki K, Ri M, Chou T, Sugiura I, Takezako N, Sunami K, et al. Carfilzomib, lenalidomide and dexamethasone in patients with heavily pretreated multiple myeloma: a phase 1 study in Japan. Cancer Sci. 2017;108(3):461–8.
345. Jakubowiak AJ, Houisse I, Majer I, Benedict A, Campioni M, Panjabi S, et al. Cost-effectiveness of carfilzomib plus dexamethasone compared with bortezomib plus dexamethasone for patients with

relapsed or refractory multiple myeloma in the United States. Expert Rev Hematol. 2017;10(12):1107–19.
346. Dimopoulos MA, Goldschmidt H, Niesvizky R, Joshua D, Chng WJ, Oriol A, et al. Carfilzomib or bortezomib in relapsed or refractory multiple myeloma (ENDEAVOR): an interim overall survival analysis of an open-label, randomised, phase 3 trial. Lancet Oncol. 2017;18(10):1327–37.
347. Chng WJ, Goldschmidt H, Dimopoulos MA, Moreau P, Joshua D, Palumbo A, et al. Carfilzomib-dexamethasone vs bortezomib-dexamethasone in relapsed or refractory multiple myeloma by cytogenetic risk in the phase 3 study ENDEAVOR. Leukemia. 2017;31(6):1368–74.
348. Boccia RV, Bessudo A, Agajanian R, Conkling P, Harb W, Yang H, et al. A multicenter, open-label, phase Ib study of carfilzomib, cyclophosphamide, and dexamethasone in newly diagnosed multiple myeloma patients (CHAMPION-2). Clin Lymphoma Myeloma Leuk. 2017;17(7):433–7.
349. Bringhen S, D'Agostino M, De Paoli L, Montefusco V, Liberati AM, Galieni P, et al. Phase 1/2 study of weekly carfilzomib, cyclophosphamide, dexamethasone in newly diagnosed transplant-ineligible myeloma. Leukemia. 2018;32(4):979–85.
350. Brayer J, Baz R. The potential of ixazomib, a second-generation proteasome inhibitor, in the treatment of multiple myeloma. Ther Adv Hematol. 2017;8(7):209–20.
351. Moreau P, Masszi T, Grzasko N, Bahlis NJ, Hansson M, Pour L, et al. Oral ixazomib, lenalidomide, and dexamethasone for multiple myeloma. N Engl J Med. 2016;374(17):1621–34.
352. Cossu F, Mastrangelo E, Milani M, Sorrentino G, Lecis D, Delia D, et al. Designing Smac-mimetics as antagonists of XIAP, cIAP1, and cIAP2. Biochem Biophys Res Commun. 2009;378(2):162–7.
353. Eckelman BP, Salvesen GS, Scott FL. Human inhibitor of apoptosis proteins: why XIAP is the black sheep of the family. EMBO Rep. 2006;7(10):988–94.
354. Imre G, Larisch S, Rajalingam K. Ripoptosome: a novel IAP-regulated cell death-signalling platform. J Mol Cell Biol. 2011;3(6):324–6.
355. Fandy TE, Shankar S, Srivastava RK. Smac/DIABLO enhances the therapeutic potential of chemotherapeutic drugs and irradiation, and sensitizes TRAIL-resistant breast cancer cells. Mol Cancer. 2008;7:60.
356. Fulda S. Promises and challenges of smac mimetics as cancer therapeutics. Clin Cancer Res. 2015;21(22):5030–6.
357. Schimmer AD, Herr W, Hanel M, Borthakur G, Frankel A, Horst HA, et al. Addition of AEG35156 XIAP antisense oligonucleotide in reinduction chemotherapy does not improve remission rates in patients with primary refractory acute myeloid leukemia in a randomized phase II study. Clin Lymphoma Myeloma Leuk. 2011;11(5):433–8.
358. Schimmer AD, Estey EH, Borthakur G, Carter BZ, Schiller GJ, Tallman MS, et al. Phase I/II trial of AEG35156 X-linked inhibitor of apoptosis protein antisense oligonucleotide combined with idarubicin and cytarabine in patients with relapsed or primary refractory acute myeloid leukemia. J Clin Oncol. 2009;27(28):4741–6.
359. Mahadevan D, Chalasani P, Rensvold D, Kurtin S, Pretzinger C, Jolivet J, et al. Phase I trial of AEG35156 an antisense oligonucleotide to XIAP plus gemcitabine in patients with metastatic pancreatic ductal adenocarcinoma. Am J Clin Oncol. 2013;36(3):239–43.
360. Lee FA, Zee BC, Cheung FY, Kwong P, Chiang CL, Leung KC, et al. Randomized phase II study of the x-linked inhibitor of apoptosis (XIAP) antisense AEG35156 in combination with sorafenib in patients with advanced hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC). Am J Clin Oncol. 2016;39(6):609–13.
361. Infante JR, Dees EC, Burris HA, Zawel L, Sager JA, Stevenson C, et al. Abstract 2775: a phase I study of LCL161, an oral IAP inhibitor, in patients with advanced cancer. Cancer Res. 2011;70(8 Supplement):2775.
362. Infante JR, Dees EC, Olszanski AJ, Dhuria SV, Sen S, Cameron S, et al. Phase I dose-escalation study of LCL161, an oral inhibitor of apoptosis proteins inhibitor, in patients with advanced solid tumors. J Clin Oncol. 2014;32(28):3103–10.
363. Sikic BI, Eckhardt SG, Gallant G, Burris HA, Camidge DR, Colevas AD, et al. Safety, pharmacokinetics (PK), and pharmacodynamics (PD) of HGS1029, an inhibitor of apoptosis protein (IAP) inhibitor, in patients (Pts) with advanced solid tumors: results of a phase I study. ASCO Meet Abstr. 2011;29(15_suppl):3008.
364. Amaravadi RK, Schilder RJ, Dy GK, Ma WW, Fetterly GJ, Weng DE, et al. Abstract LB-406: phase 1 study of the Smac mimetic TL32711 in adult subjects with advanced solid tumors and lymphoma to evaluate safety, pharmacokinetics, pharmacodynamics, and antitumor activity. Cancer Res. 2011;71(8 Supplement):LB-406.
365. Noonan AM, Bunch KP, Chen JQ, Herrmann MA, Lee JM, Kohn EC, et al. Pharmacodynamic markers and clinical results from the phase 2 study of the SMAC mimetic birinapant in women with relapsed platinum-resistant or -refractory epithelial ovarian cancer. Cancer. 2016;122(4):588–97.
366. Lyu H, Huang J, He Z, Liu B. Epigenetic mechanism of survivin dysregulation in human cancer. Sci China Life Sci. 2018;61(7):808–14.
367. Yano Y, Otsuka T, Hirano H, Uenami T, Satomi A, Kuroyama M, et al. Nuclear survivin expression in small cell lung cancer. Anticancer Res. 2015;35(5):2935–9.
368. Lee JY, Kuo CW, Tsai SL, Cheng SM, Chen SH, Chan HH, et al. Inhibition of HDAC3- and HDAC6-promoted survivin expression plays an important role in SAHA-induced autophagy and viability reduction in breast cancer cells. Front Pharmacol. 2016;7:81.
369. Renner G, Janouskova H, Noulet F, Koenig V, Guerin E, Bar S, et al. Integrin alpha5beta1 and p53

convergent pathways in the control of anti-apoptotic proteins PEA-15 and survivin in high-grade glioma. Cell Death Differ. 2016;23(4):640–53.
370. Zhang YC, Gao J, Xin T, Zheng ZM, Teng LZ. Expression of survivin in invasive pituitary adenoma. Saudi Med J. 2008;29(11):1589–92.
371. Ryan BM, O'Donovan N, Duffy MJ. Survivin: a new target for anti-cancer therapy. Cancer Treat Rev. 2009;35(7):553–62.
372. Jaiswal PK, Goel A, Mittal RD. Survivin: a molecular biomarker in cancer. Indian J Med Res. 2015;141(4):389–97.
373. Nakahara T, Kita A, Yamanaka K, Mori M, Amino N, Takeuchi M, et al. YM155, a novel small-molecule survivin suppressant, induces regression of established human hormone-refractory prostate tumor xenografts. Cancer Res. 2007;67(17):8014–21.
374. Tolcher AW, Mita A, Lewis LD, Garrett CR, Till E, Daud AI, et al. Phase I and pharmacokinetic study of YM155, a small-molecule inhibitor of survivin. J Clin Oncol. 2008;26(32):5198–203.
375. Satoh T, Okamoto I, Miyazaki M, Morinaga R, Tsuya A, Hasegawa Y, et al. Phase I study of YM155, a novel survivin suppressant, in patients with advanced solid tumors. Clin Cancer Res. 2009;15(11):3872–80.
376. Giaccone G, Zatloukal P, Roubec J, Floor K, Musil J, Kuta M, et al. Multicenter phase II trial of YM155, a small-molecule suppressor of survivin, in patients with advanced, refractory, non-small-cell lung cancer. J Clin Oncol. 2009;27(27):4481–6.
377. Cheson BD, Bartlett NL, Vose JM, Lopez-Hernandez A, Seiz AL, Keating AT, et al. A phase II study of the survivin suppressant YM155 in patients with refractory diffuse large B-cell lymphoma. Cancer. 2012;118(12):3128–34.
378. Lewis K, Samlowski W, Ward J, Catlett J, Cranmer L, Kirkwood J, et al. A multi-center phase II evaluation of the small molecule survivin suppressor YM155 in patients with unresectable stage III or IV melanoma. Investig New Drugs. 2011;29(1):161–6.
379. Kelly RJ, Thomas A, Rajan A, Chun G, Lopez-Chavez A, Szabo E, et al. A phase I/II study of sepantronium bromide (YM155, survivin suppressor) with paclitaxel and carboplatin in patients with advanced non-small-cell lung cancer. Ann Oncol. 2013;24(10):2601–6.
380. Kudchadkar R, Ernst S, Chmielowski B, Redman BG, Steinberg J, Keating A, et al. A phase 2, multicenter, open-label study of sepantronium bromide (YM155) plus docetaxel in patients with stage III (unresectable) or stage IV melanoma. Cancer Med. 2015;4(5):643–50.
381. Clemens MR, Gladkov OA, Gartner E, Vladimirov V, Crown J, Steinberg J, et al. Phase II, multicenter, open-label, randomized study of YM155 plus docetaxel as first-line treatment in patients with HER2-negative metastatic breast cancer. Breast Cancer Res Treat. 2015;149(1):171–9.
382. Papadopoulos KP, Lopez-Jimenez J, Smith SE, Steinberg J, Keating A, Sasse C, et al. A multicenter phase II study of sepantronium bromide (YM155) plus rituximab in patients with relapsed aggressive B-cell Non-Hodgkin lymphoma. Leuk Lymphoma. 2016;57(8):1848–55.
383. Talbot DC, Ranson M, Davies J, Lahn M, Callies S, Andre V, et al. Tumor survivin is downregulated by the antisense oligonucleotide LY2181308: a proof-of-concept, first-in-human dose study. Clin Cancer Res. 2010;16(24):6150–8.
384. Talbot DC, Davies J, Callies S, Andre V, Lahn M, Ang J, et al. First human dose study evaluating safety and pharmacokinetics of LY2181308, an antisense oligonucleotide designed to inhibit survivin. ASCO Meet Abstr. 2008;26(15_suppl):3518.
385. Natale R, Blackhall F, Kowalski D, Ramlau R, Bepler G, Grossi F, et al. Evaluation of antitumor activity using change in tumor size of the survivin antisense oligonucleotide LY2181308 in combination with docetaxel for second-line treatment of patients with non-small-cell lung cancer: a randomized open-label phase II study. J Thorac Oncol. 2014;9(11):1704–8.
386. Wiechno P, Somer BG, Mellado B, Chlosta PL, Cervera Grau JM, Castellano D, et al. A randomised phase 2 study combining LY2181308 sodium (survivin antisense oligonucleotide) with first-line docetaxel/prednisone in patients with castration-resistant prostate cancer. Eur Urol. 2014;65(3):516–20.
387. Hou J, Qiu L, Zhao Y, Zhang X, Liu Y, Wang Z, et al. A Phase1b Dose Escalation Study of Recombinant Circularly Permuted TRAIL in Patients With Relapsed or Refractory Multiple Myeloma. Am J Clin Oncol. 2018;41(10):1008–14.
388. Chiappori AA, Schreeder MT, Moezi MM, Stephenson JJ, Blakely J, Salgia R, et al. A phase I trial of pan-Bcl-2 antagonist obatoclax administered as a 3-h or a 24-h infusion in combination with carboplatin and etoposide in patients with extensive-stage small cell lung cancer. Br J Cancer. 2012;106(5):839–45.
389. Goy A, Hernandez-Ilzaliturri FJ, Kahl B, Ford P, Protomastro E, Berger M. A phase I/II study of the pan Bcl-2 inhibitor obatoclax mesylate plus bortezomib for relapsed or refractory mantle cell lymphoma. Leuk Lymphoma. 2014;55(12):2761–8.
390. Brown JR, Tesar B, Yu L, Werner L, Takebe N, Mikler E, et al. Obatoclax in combination with fludarabine and rituximab is well-tolerated and shows promising clinical activity in relapsed chronic lymphocytic leukemia. Leuk Lymphoma. 2015;56(12):3336–42.
391. Leverson JD, Sampath D, Souers AJ, Rosenberg SH, Fairbrother WJ, Amiot M, et al. Found in translation: how preclinical research is guiding the clinical development of the Bcl2-selective inhibitor venetoclax. Cancer Discov. 2017;7(12):1376–93.
392. Hill BT, Smith MR, Shelley M, Jagadeesh D, Dean RM, Pohlman B, et al. A phase I trial of bortezomib in combination with everolimus for treatment of

relapsed/refractory non-Hodgkin lymphoma. Leuk Lymphoma. 2018;59(3):690–4.
393. Arnold SM, Chansky K, Leggas M, Thompson MA, Villano JL, Hamm J, et al. Phase 1b trial of proteasome inhibitor carfilzomib with irinotecan in lung cancer and other irinotecan-sensitive malignancies that have progressed on prior therapy (Onyx IST reference number: CAR-IST-553). Investig New Drugs. 2017;35(5):608–15.
394. Gupta N, Zhang S, Pusalkar S, Plesescu M, Chowdhury S, Hanley MJ, et al. A phase I study to assess the mass balance, excretion, and pharmacokinetics of [(14)C]-ixazomib, an oral proteasome inhibitor, in patients with advanced solid tumors. Investig New Drugs. 2018;36(3):407–15.
395. Suzuki K, Handa H, Chou T, Ishizawa K, Takubo T, Kase Y. Phase 1 study of ixazomib alone or combined with lenalidomide-dexamethasone in Japanese patients with relapsed/refractory multiple myeloma. Int J Hematol. 2017;105(4):445–52.
396. Krishnan A, Kapoor P, Palmer JM, Tsai NC, Kumar S, Lonial S, et al. Phase I/II trial of the oral regimen ixazomib, pomalidomide, and dexamethasone in relapsed/refractory multiple myeloma. Leukemia. 2017; https://doi.org/10.1038/leu.2017.352.
397. Boonstra PS, Polk A, Brown N, Hristov AC, Bailey NG, Kaminski MS, et al. A single center phase II study of ixazomib in patients with relapsed or refractory cutaneous or peripheral T-cell lymphomas. Am J Hematol. 2017;92(12):1287–94.
398. Avet-Loiseau H, Bahlis NJ, Chng WJ, Masszi T, Viterbo L, Pour L, et al. Ixazomib significantly prolongs progression-free survival in high-risk relapsed/refractory myeloma patients. Blood. 2017;130(24):2610–8.
399. Dean E, Jodrell D, Connolly K, Danson S, Jolivet J, Durkin J, et al. Phase I trial of AEG35156 administered as a 7-day and 3-day continuous intravenous infusion in patients with advanced refractory cancer. J Clin Oncol. 2009;27(10):1660–6.
400. Dienstmann R, Vidal L, Dees E, Chia S, Mayer E, Porter D, et al. A phase Ib study of LCL161, an oral inhibitor of apoptosis (IAP) antagonist, in combination with weekly paclitaxel in patients with advanced solid tumors. Cancer Res. 2012;72(24 Supplement):P6-11-06.
401. Amaravadi RK, Schilder RJ, Martin LP, Levin M, Graham MA, Weng DE, et al. A phase I study of the Smac-mimetic birinapant in adults with refractory solid tumors or lymphoma. Mol Cancer Ther. 2015;14(11):2569–75.
402. Tanioka M, Nokihara H, Yamamoto N, Yamada Y, Yamada K, Goto Y, et al. Phase I study of LY2181308, an antisense oligonucleotide against survivin, in patients with advanced solid tumors. Cancer Chemother Pharmacol. 2011;68(2):505–11.
403. Erba HP, Sayar H, Juckett M, Lahn M, Andre V, Callies S, et al. Safety and pharmacokinetics of the antisense oligonucleotide (ASO) LY2181308 as a single-agent or in combination with idarubicin and cytarabine in patients with refractory or relapsed acute myeloid leukemia (AML). Investig New Drugs. 2013;31(4):1023–34.

18 Endoplasmic Reticulum Stress and Autophagy in Cancer

Mei Lan Tan, Heng Kean Tan,
and Tengku Sifzizul Tengku Muhammad

Contents

M. L. Tan (✉)
Advanced Medical and Dental Institute (Institut Perubatan dan Pergigian Termaju), Universiti Sains Malaysia, SAINS@BERTAM, Kepala Batas 13200, Pulau Pinang, Malaysia

School of Pharmaceutical Sciences, Universiti Sains Malaysia, Minden 11700, Pulau Pinang, Malaysia
e-mail: tanml@usm.my

H. K. Tan
Malaysian Institute of Pharmaceuticals and Nutraceuticals (IPharm), NIBM, Ministry of Energy, Science, Technology, Environment and Climate Change (MESTECC), Halaman Bukit Gambir 11700, Pulau Pinang, Malaysia

T. S. T. Muhammad
Institute of Marine Biotechnology, Universiti Malaysia Terengganu,
Kuala Terengganu, Terengganu, Malaysia

N. Rezaei (ed.), *Cancer Immunology*, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-30845-2_18

18.1 Introduction

The endoplasmic reticulum (ER) is an important organelle responsible for protein folding and modification and disturbances in the ER environment will lead to ER stress and subsequently causes accumulation of unfolded or misfolded proteins. Although ER stress activates the unfolded protein response (UPR) mechanism to reestablish ER homeostasis, unresolved ER stress can lead to cellular processes such as apoptosis or autophagy. In cancer, tumor cells are dependent on these processes to combat and neutralize the chronic stress and harsh conditions of the tumor microenvironment, leading to tumor survival and tumor expansion; hence, the ER stress response is thought to be cytoprotective. It is now known that ER stress, apoptosis, and autophagy share overlapping molecular pathways and can occur in parallel under similar conditions. Fundamental knowledge in these processes has also generated a great deal of insight into the pathophysiological aspects of cancer, and has provided important considerations in strategizing cancer pharmacotherapy. A number of drugs targeting these processes have been developed and were proven to be promising in both preclinical and clinical studies.

18.2 Endoplasmic Reticulum Stress (ER Stress)

The ER is an intracellular organelle that provides crucial biosynthetic, stress-sensing, and signaling functions in eukaryotic cells [1, 2]. It is the main subcellular compartment for the synthesis, folding, modification, and transport of proteins which are destined to be secreted or embedded in the plasma membrane [3, 4]. The ER is also the major site for the biosynthesis of steroid, cholesterol, and lipid. It is the major intracellular calcium (Ca^{2+}) storage organelle in the cell, and thus plays an important role in calcium homeostasis and calcium-mediated signaling pathways [5]. Nascent proteins are folded and modified correctly in the ER before being transported via the Golgi apparatus to the cell surface or other destination. It is an orchestrated process involving folding, assembly, modification, quality control, and recycling of proteins in a highly oxidizing and calcium-rich ER environment. Proteins translocated into the ER lumen are folded into their proper three-dimensional shapes and modified and assisted by ER-resident enzymes, such as chaperones, glycosylating enzymes, and oxidoreductases [6–8]. Incomplete or misfolded forms are eliminated by quality control systems, including the ER-associated degradation (ERAD) pathway and autophagy [7, 9, 10].

Physiological and pathological conditions such as hypoxia, nutrient fluctuations, altered ER-calcium levels, oxidative injury, inflammation, and viral infections may disrupt the protein folding environment in the ER, causing the accumulation of unfolded or misfolded proteins in the ER lumen [3]. This cellular condition is known as ER stress. ER stress leads to a complex intracellular signal transduction pathway, known as unfolded protein response (UPR), an adaptive mechanism to reestablish ER homeostasis [5, 11]. The UPR primarily aims at reestablishing ER homeostasis by coordinating temporal shut down in protein translation, upregulating ER chaperone genes to increase protein-folding capacity in the ER, and promoting ERAD pathway to remove misfolded proteins [4, 5]. However, when the initial cellular responses fail to restore ER homeostasis, persistent ER stress will elicit an alternative response called the "terminal UPR," which actively promotes cell death to eliminate the damaged cells [7, 12, 13]. Activation of the UPR represents the defining criterion of ER stress, although the terms UPR and ER stress are often used interchangeably [8].

18.3 Unfolded Protein Response (UPR)

The UPR in mammalian cells is governed by three transmembrane ER stress sensors, namely PERK (protein kinase RNA-like ER kinase), IRE1α (inositol-requiring enzyme 1α), and ATF6α (activating transcription factor 6α) [3]. In the absence of ER stress, the ER luminal domains of PERK,

IRE1α and ATF6α are associated with immunoglobulin heavy chain binding protein known as BIP (also known as GRP78), where this interaction maintains all three transmembrane proteins in their inactive state. BIP, a 78-kDa glucose-regulated protein, is well established as an ER chaperone that participates in protein folding and assembly and has been widely used as a marker for ER stress [14]. During ER stress, the accumulating misfolded or unfolded proteins cause BIP to dissociate from the three transmembrane ER stress sensors, and subsequently bind to these misfolded or unfolded proteins. This is due to higher natural affinity of BIP to unfolded proteins compared with the ER stress sensor luminal domains [4]. The release of BIP causes the homodimerization, trans-auto-phosphorylation, and activation of both IRE1α and PERK and translocation of ATF6α to the Golgi apparatus and subsequent activation [8, 12, 15].

Activated PERK phosphorylates eukaryotic translation initiator factor 2α (eIF2α) and attenuates general protein translation, thereby relieving the protein burden on the stressed ER by reducing new protein synthesis and preventing further accumulation of unfolded proteins. Phosphorylation of eIF2α also regulates translation via inhibition of rRNA synthesis [5, 8]. Paradoxically, eIF2α phosphorylation allows selective translation of activating transcription factor 4 (ATF4), a transcription factor that controls the expression of genes encoding ER chaperones (e.g., BIP and GRP94), autophagy, and apoptosis [16, 17]. ATF4 favors the expression of antioxidant response, amino acid biosynthesis, and transport genes to sustain cell survival [4]. Depending on the severity and duration of stress, PERK activation can lead to either survival or cell death [18, 19]. Figure 18.1 illustrates the UPR pathway upon exposure to moderate ER stress.

During prolonged ER stress, ATF4 stimulates the transcription of DNA-damage-inducible transcript 3 (DDIT3; also known as CHOP [CCAAT/enhancer binding protein homologous transcription factor] or GADD153 [growth arrest and DNA damage-inducible gene 153]), a transcription factor that is activated by all three arms of the UPR [5]. DDIT3 itself is a transcription factor that is critical in supporting the ER stress-induced apoptotic program [20]. In addition to its prodeath functions, DDIT3 participates in relieving the general block on translation via induction of

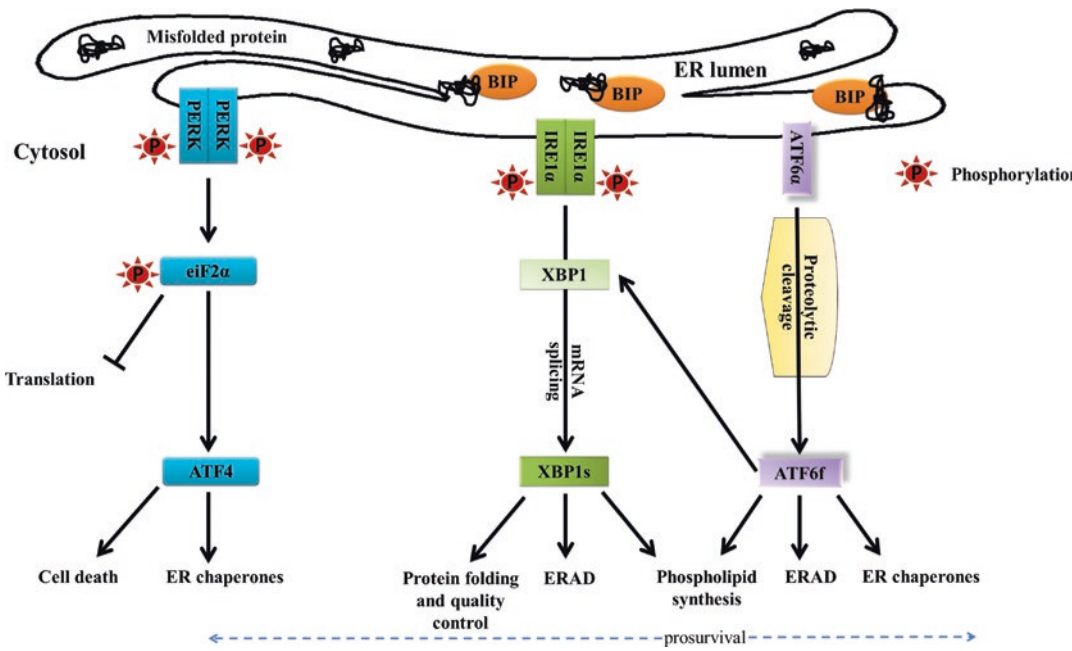


Fig. 18.1 The UPR pathway upon exposure to moderate ER stress

growth arrest and DNA damage-inducible protein 34 (GADD34). GADD34 activates protein phosphatase 1 alpha (PP1A) to dephosphorylate eIF2α and dephosphorylated eIF2α resumes its function in general translation. If the protein folding capacity of the ER has not been reestablished, a premature restoration of protein synthesis will increase protein load in the stressed ER, thus amplifying the damage [5, 8]. Although eIF2α phosphorylation is downregulated during prolonged ER stress, PERK signaling is sustained, possibly to sensitize cells to cell death via DDIT3 induction [17]. Figure 18.2 illustrates the UPR pathway during severe and prolonged ER stress.

Similar to PERK, the release of BIP allows IRE1α to undergo dimerization and autophosphorylation. IRE1α is a bifunctional molecule with serine/threonine protein kinase and endoribonuclease (RNase) activity in its cytosolic domain [8]. Hence, this process leads to the activation of its cytosolic RNase domain, which removes a 26-nucleotide intron from the mRNA encoding the transcription factor X box-binding protein 1 (XBP1), producing mature spliced XBP1 mRNA. The spliced XBP1 mRNA is subsequently translated into an active and stable transcription factor, termed spliced XBP1 (XBP1s). XBP1s regulates the transcription of

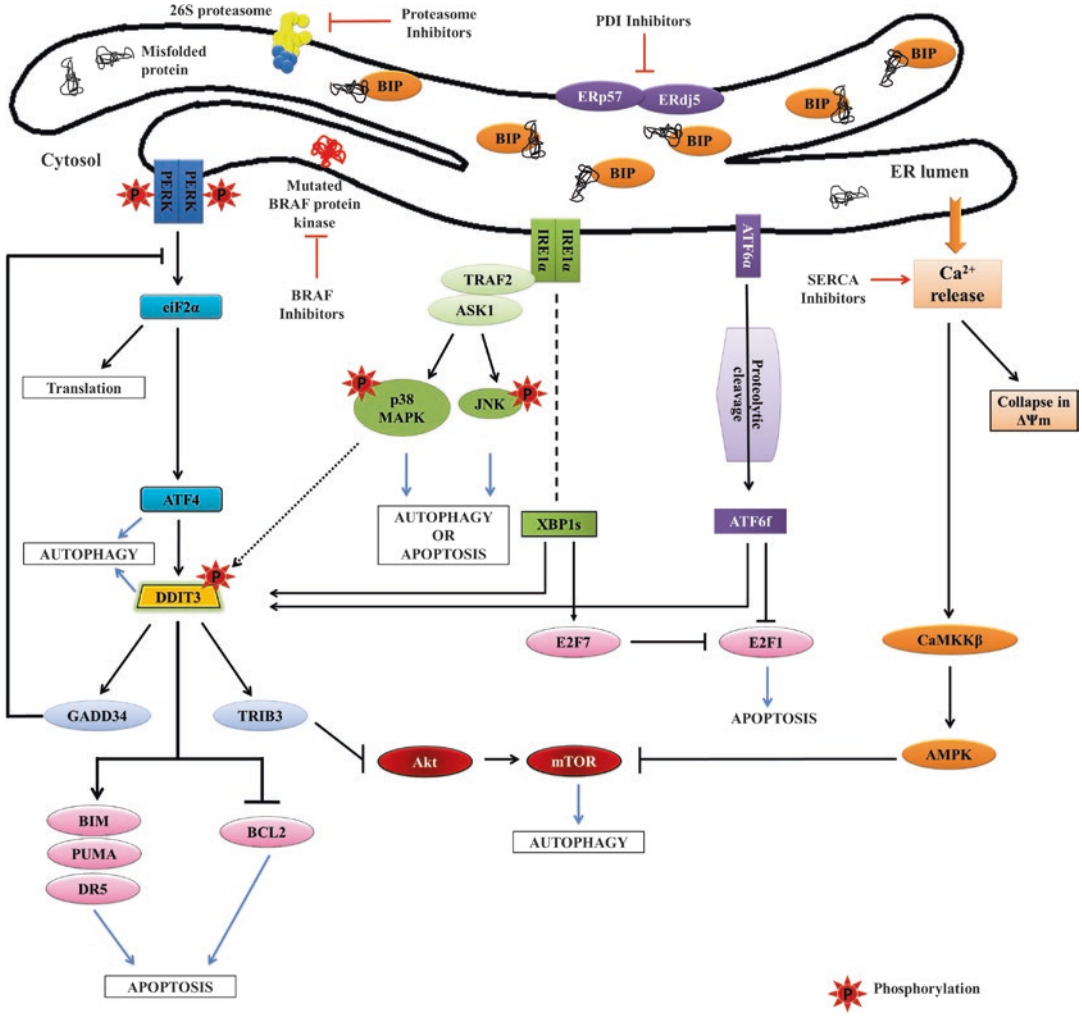


Fig. 18.2 The UPR pathway and ER stress-Ca^{2+} signaling during severe and prolonged ER stress and antitumor targets

several genes involved in protein folding and quality control, ERAD, and phospholipid synthesis [21, 22]. ERAD is a process where misfolded proteins are retro-translocated from ER to the cytosol to be degraded by the 26S proteasome. Meanwhile, phospholipid synthesis is required for ER membrane expansion during ER stress [5, 11]. Through a process known as regulated IRE1-dependent decay (RIDD) of mRNA, IRE1 RNase domain degrades a subset of mRNAs encoding certain proteins of the secretory pathways and proteins located in the ER [11, 16].

Upon severe ER stress, XBP1s upregulates the expression of DDIT3 [5]. On the other hand, prolonged activation of IRE1α recruits the adaptor molecule TNF receptor-associated factor 2 (TRAF2), which further recruits apoptosis signal regulating kinase 1 (ASK1). This leads to a mitogen-activated protein (MAP) kinase activation cascade that activates c-jun N-terminal kinase (JNK) and p38 mitogen-activated protein kinase (p38 MAPK) which further activates BIM and cause the inactivation of BCL-2 [3, 5, 23]. However, IRE1α is turned off upon prolonged ER stress, leading to ablation of the prosurvival XBP1s expression. Attenuation of IRE1α signaling is one possible mechanism to explain the transition from the adaptive UPR to prodeath events [11, 17] (Fig. 18.2).

ATF6α, a type II transmembrane protein, translocates to the Golgi apparatus once released from BIP, where it is proteolytically cleaved to generate a transcriptionally active fragment, termed ATF6f transcription factor. ATF6f mediates the adaptive response to ER protein misfolding by increasing the transcription of genes that increase ER capacity and the expression of *Xbp1* [24, 25]. The transcription target of ATF6f includes genes involved in ERAD, phospholipid synthesis, and ER chaperones, thereby enhancing cellular folding and degradation capacity [8, 16, 17] (Fig. 18.1). ATF6f also contributes to upregulation of DDIT3 during prolonged ER stress [5] (Fig. 18.2).

Taken together, the three UPR transcription factors, ATF4, XBP1s and ATF6f, regulate a large set of partially overlapping UPR target genes during ER stress which modulates adaptation to stress or the induction of cell death under severe conditions [11]. The mechanisms underlying the switch from adaptive phase to prodeath events are still unclear, although it could be possibly through programs that sense the duration of the ER stress condition [17]. If the UPR is successful to increase the protein folding capacity and reduce the amount of misfolded proteins in the ER, BIP reassociates with PERK, IRE1α, and ATF6α, thereby inactivating these signaling modules. However, in case of excessive or prolonged ER stress, signaling pathways leading to cell death, either as apoptosis or autophagy, would be initiated [5, 8]. In certain situations, UPR may upregulate the autophagy machinery to eliminate damaged ER and abnormal protein aggregates [11]. In this context, autophagy is activated as an adaptive mechanism to reestablish ER homeostasis. However, if autophagy reaches a point of no return, cell death will be triggered. Therefore, just like in the case of UPR, persistent ER stress switches the cytoprotective functions of autophagy to cell death-promoting mechanisms [5, 26].

18.4 ER Stress and Cell Death

Several signaling pathways leading to apoptosis and autophagy would be initiated if ER stress is too severe to be relieved [27]. DDIT3 plays an important role in ER stress-induced cellular death, as this factor is a target gene common to all three apical ER stress sensors/executioners [1]. Duration and/or strength of PERK signaling may determine whether prosurvival or prodeath outcome predominates. Transient PERK signaling protects cells by temporarily reducing protein synthesis and thus reducing misfolded protein levels in the ER, but may be insufficient to induce DDIT3 to threshold level, given DDIT3's inherent mRNA and protein instability. Since DDIT3 mRNA and protein have short half-lives, a strong and chronic activation of PERK is necessary to increase steady-state level of DDIT3 to promote cell death [28]. Persistent PERK signaling during prolonged ER stress is known to impair cell proliferation and promotes apoptosis via DDIT3 [29]. DDIT3 represses BCL-2 expression, upregulates BCL-2-interacting

mediator of cell death (BIM) transcription, and promotes translocation of BAX to mitochondria [30–32]. It is also known to bind and induce the promoters of p53 upregulated modulator of apoptosis (*PUMA*), lipocalin 2 (*LCN2*), tribbles homologue 3 (*TRIB3*), and death receptor 5 (*DR5*) [33–37].

As a mediator of the mitochondrial apoptotic pathway, PUMA is known to result in the displacement and activation of BAX/BAK through its binding to antiapoptotic BCL-2 proteins, leading to mitochondrial dysfunction and caspase activation, hence initiating apoptosis [38, 39]. LCN2 is known to exacerbate hypoxia-induced cytochrome c release from mitochondria and caspase-3 activation [40]. Meanwhile, TRIB3 induces both apoptosis and autophagy. It indirectly activates unc-51-like autophagy-activating kinase1 (ULK1) which augments autophagosome formation and reduces autophagy flux. TRIB3 levels inhibit the activity of the kinase Akt by interacting with it and activating forkhead box O1 (FoxO1), a transcription factor that is negatively regulated by Akt, where it is translocated to the nucleus, and induces the proapoptotic gene, *BIM* [41]. It is also noted that DDIT3-mediated DR5 induction is responsible for ER stress apoptosis via caspase 8 [42]. PERK-dependent activation of ATF4 and DDIT3 has been demonstrated to upregulate the transcription of a set of autophagy genes, which are implicated in the formation, elongation, and function of the autophagosome [43].

In addition, IRE1α promotes cell death by recruiting a TRAF2-ASK1 complex, leading to the activation of JNK and p38 MAPK cascades upon prolonged ER stress. JNK promotes apoptosis through the phosphorylation-mediated regulation of Bcl-2 family members [5, 31, 44]. JNK exerts its proapoptotic effect by activating proapoptotic BH3-only protein BIM and by suppressing the antiapoptotic BCL-2 [5]. The p38 MAPK also phosphorylates and suppresses the antiapoptotic BCL-2 protein [45]. BCL-2 not only functions as an antiapoptotic protein, but also acts as an antiautophagy protein via its inhibitory interaction with BECN1. Both JNK and p38 MAPK have been proposed to induce autophagy by promoting dissociation of BECN1 from BCL-2. BECN1 is an essential autophagy regulator that participates in autophagosome formation [5, 45, 46]. In addition, p38 MAPK is known to phosphorylate DDIT3 and enhances DDIT3's ability to function as a transcriptional activator [5, 47] (Fig. 18.2). The apoptosis-inducing activity of the third arm of UPR, ATF6α, has not been widely recognized. This is at least partly due to the fact that ATF6α does not induce apoptosis in cell lines commonly used in research. However, it has been shown that ATF6f mediates apoptosis via suppression of antiapoptotic protein, myeloid cell leukemia sequence 1 (Mcl-1) [48].

The mechanisms underlying the switch from adaptive phase to prodeath events remain elusive, although several hypotheses were suggested. The expression of the transcription factor DDIT3 is thought to be a decisive effector of the switch between adaptive UPR to cell death and the duration and amount of elevated DDIT3 level were hypothesized to be the decisive factor in determining the cell's fate [26]. Upon severe ER stress, ATF4, XBP1s, and ATF6f transcription factors induce the transcription of DDIT3. On the other hand, PERK/eiF2α/ATF4 branch is essential to upregulate DDIT3 protein expression. The transcriptional activity of DDIT3 is then enhanced through the phosphorylation by p38 MAPK [5, 31]. Prolonged high level of DDIT3 protein expression is considered an indicator of the switch to proapoptotic module [8]. DDIT3 alters the balance between prosurvival and proapoptotic Bcl-2 family members and thus promotes apoptosis through the mitochondrial pathway. In addition, a molecular switch to cell death events could also involve TRIB3, a downstream transcriptional target of DDIT3. TRIB3 binds directly to prosurvival Akt kinase, thereby preventing its phosphorylation and reducing its kinase activity. During severe or persistent ER stress, induction of TRIB3 would be more robust, leading to autophagy and apoptosis through TRIB3-mediated inhibition of Akt/mTOR axis [5, 31, 49, 50] (Fig. 18.2).

In fact, IRE1α activities, namely (1) XBP1 mRNA splicing, (2) regulated IRE1-dependent

decay of mRNAs, and (3) JNK/p38 MAPK activation, are also thought to be responsible for the life/death switch under prolonged ER stress conditions [51, 52]. Recently, the role of E2F1 has been described as a potential mechanistic survival/death switch under ER stress conditions [4, 53]. E2F1 is a member of the E2F family of transcription factors involved in several cellular functions such as proliferation, differentiation, and cell death [54, 55]. Upon ER stress induction, E2F7 as one of XBP1 target gene has been demonstrated to be positively regulated and the combined activity of E2F7 and activated ATF6 results in a specific but timely downregulation of E2F1 expression. This results in the removal of E2F1-dependent basal inhibition of both PUMA and NOXA that will induce the apoptotic program [4]. Timely and coordinated expression levels of E2F1 are crucial for determining the survival/death cell fate under ER stress conditions [4].

In addition to the three UPR branches, ER stress-Ca^{2+} signaling also leads to cell death during severe and prolonged ER stress. As ER is the major intracellular calcium storage organelle in the cell, ER stress activation is frequently accompanied by calcium release into the cytosol, causing an increase in cytosolic free calcium ions. Increases in cytosolic calcium concentration upon treatment with different ER stress inducers lead to calcium/calmodulin-dependent kinase kinase-β (CaMKKβ)-dependent activation of AMPK, that ultimately leads to inhibition of mTOR and stimulation of autophagy [5, 56]. In addition, mitochondrial intake of calcium ions following its release into the cytosol from the ER causes a collapse in the inner mitochondrial transmembrane potential (ΔΨm). A long-lasting or permanent ΔΨm dissipation is often associated with cell death [57, 58].

18.5 ER Stress in Cancer and Therapeutic Strategies

Tumor cells are often present within a hostile microenvironment and are confronted with chronic metabolic stress conditions. Following initiation of malignancy, poor vascularization of the tumor mass leads to stressful conditions in the tumor microenvironment, including low oxygen supply, nutrient deprivation, and pH changes. Therefore, many tumor types are thought to be dependent on an adaptive UPR to combat and neutralize the chronic stress and harsh conditions of the tumor microenvironment [5, 26, 44]. On the other hand, most normal cells are not subjected to stress and their UPR pathways are in an inactive state [44].

Both UPR activation and upregulation of BIP represent hallmark of several human cancers. UPR activation enables cancer cells to survive, adapts to adverse environmental conditions, and leads to growth arrest driving dormancy, which promotes resistance to conventional chemotherapy [59–62]. In addition, there are emerging evidences that linked mutations in three sensor genes such as ATF6α, IRE1α, and PERK in tumorigenesis [63–66]. The presence of missense, nonsense, and silent mutations in these genes seems to have tumor- or tissue-specific significance.

While BIP is generally too low to be detected in normal cells, many tumor cell lines display permanently elevated levels of BIP, which reflects the cancer cells' ongoing effort to neutralize the chronic stress within the cells [26]. Elevated BIP is among the critical prosurvival mechanisms of tumor cells to withstand and thrive under detrimental microenvironmental conditions [8]. Similar to BIP, IRE1α/XBP1 signaling pathway is important for tumor growth and survival under stress conditions. An increase in XBP1 expression and splicing has been demonstrated in various human cancers, including breast cancer. Moreover, sustained IRE1α signaling was shown to enhance cell survival and proliferation [44, 67]. PERK/eif2α/ATF4 pathway also plays a role in cancer progression during stress condition. Hypoxia induces activation of the PERK pathway in tumor cells as an adaptive response to promote survival under hypoxic conditions. ATF4 is overexpressed in many solid tumors and is involved in promoting proliferation and survival during nutrient deprivation and severe hypoxia [44, 67].

In addition, several ER stress-associated markers are specifically upregulated in both neuroblastoma and melanoma cells under ER stress

conditions [68]. DDIT3 and four other genes associated with ER stress were induced greater than twofold, namely ERdj5 (PDIA19; an ER-resident protein containing DnaJ and thioredoxin domains), ERp57 (GRP58; PDIA3; an ER-resident protein disulfide isomerase), calreticulin, and calnexin (both ER-resident chaperones) [68]. Protein disulfide isomerase (PDI) family members such as ERdj5 and ERp57 are consistently upregulated in neuroectodermal tumors and a generalized inhibition of PDI activity revealed a significant sensitization of tumor cells to ER-stress apoptosis. PDIs are endoplasmic reticulum chaperone proteins, catalyze disulfide bond breakage, formation, and rearrangement, and are required for protein folding in the endoplasmic reticulum (ER). The observation that knockdown of ERdj5 or ERp57 enhanced the extent of cell death induced by chemotherapeutic drugs suggests that downregulating ER stress responses may be therapeutically valuable; the ER resident proteins ERdj5 and ERp57 may thus be anticancer targets and PDI inhibition in general appears to be a novel therapeutic strategy [68–70]. Recently, there are a few synthetic small molecule PDI inhibitors such as PACMA31, 16F16, and CCF642 which have proven efficacy in cancer models, but have yet to progress to clinical studies [69, 71–73].

Since tumor cells engage adaptive UPR, only a small margin is left for the tumor cells to accommodate additional ER stress. Drugs that aggravate the preexisting ER stress condition in tumor cells may cause a shift from adaptive UPR to severe ER stress, leading to cell death. At the same time, exposure to ER stress-inducing agents causes activation of adaptive UPR in normal cells. Thus, moderate intensity ER stress inducers would be required to sufficiently aggravate ER stress in tumor cells, but at the same time, only modestly trigger ER stress in normal cells, in order to produce tumor-selective cytotoxic outcome. It was hypothesized that exceptionally potent pharmacologic triggers of ER stress might not be ideal in this situation [26].

A variety of distinct pharmacologic agents have been identified to trigger ER stress by different mechanisms. These agents include proteasome inhibitors and sarcoplasmic/endoplasmic reticulum calcium ATPase (SERCA) inhibitors, among others [26]. Although these compounds affect the UPR pathway, UPR may not be the primary mechanism of action of these drugs [44]. In the context of cancer research, thapsigargin (an inhibitor of SERCA), tunicamycin (an inhibitor of protein glycosylation), and brefeldin A (an inhibitor of protein transport from ER to Golgi) are frequently used in experiments as ER stress inducers to investigate the details of ER stress response [8].

The degradation of the majority of misfolded proteins is mediated by the 26S proteasome through the ERAD pathway [44]. Inactivation of the proteasome by proteasome inhibitors causes accumulation of misfolded proteins bound for the ERAD pathway, thereby triggering the UPR [26]. Bortezomib is a proteasome inhibitor and was approved by the US FDA in 2003 to treat multiple myeloma and mantle cell lymphoma [8]. Treatment of multiple myeloma cells with bortezomib causes rapid upregulation of the components in the UPR, including PERK, ATF4, and DDIT3, resulting in cell death. On the other hand, bortezomib sensitized pancreatic cancer cells to ER stress-induced apoptosis by induction of DDIT3, GADD34 and JNK, while PERK activation and eIF2α phosphorylation were not detected [44]. Several mechanisms have been proposed to explain the cytotoxicity of bortezomib, including effects on NF-kB, cell cycle proteins, apoptosis-regulatory proteins and caspases, as well as ER stress. Although ER stress represents only one of several processes associated with bortezomib-induced cell death, it is conceivable that it might indeed represent the key component, whereas other observed events might be orchestrated secondary to the aggravation of ER stress [8]. Bortezomib is further discussed in Chap. 17.

Inhibitors of human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) protease are known to inhibit the proteasome [26]. Two widely prescribed HIV protease inhibitors, namely nelfinavir and atazanavir, cause the accumulation of polyubiquitinated proteins, aggresome formation, and an increase in BIP and DDIT3 expression [74, 75]. In addition,

nelfinavir has been shown to induce ER stress, autophagy, and apoptosis in vitro and in vivo in nonsmall-cell lung carcinoma [76]. Nelfinavir is currently in clinical trials for repositioning as an anticancer agent [26]. A Phase II trial of nelfinavir in combination with chemoradiation for locally advanced inoperable pancreatic cancer (LAPC) revealed that nelfinavir showed acceptable toxicity and promising survival in pancreatic cancer [77]. The study reports the clinical outcome in 23 patients with LAPC treated with chemoradiotherapy plus nelfinavir which shows moderate median and 1-year overall survival at 17.4 months and 73.4%, respectively [77].

In another Phase II trial of nelfinavir in combination with the proteasome inhibitor bortezomib in 12 patients with advanced hematologic malignancies, promising activity in advanced, bortezomib-refractory multiple myeloma was noted [78]. Nelfinavir alone significantly upregulated the expression of proteins related to UPR in peripheral blood mononuclear cells and inhibited proteasome activity. Of ten evaluable patients in the dose escalation cohort, three achieved a partial response, four stable disease for two cycles or more, while three had progressive disease as best response [78]. Of nine patients given oral nelfinavir before and during radiation therapy for advanced rectal cancer, five patients exhibited good tumor regression on MRI assessed by tumor regression grade (mrTRG) [79]. Unfortunately, nelfinavir monotherapy does not result in a meaningful improvement in clinical outcomes among patients with recurrent adenoid cystic carcinoma [80]. Nelfinavir is currently in clinical trials for various cancers such as cervical intraepithelial neoplasia and advanced renal cancers (Table 18.1). However, atazanavir is not on any clinical trials involving cancer at this moment.

The SERCA is a transmembrane protein that actively imports calcium ions from the cytosol into the ER lumen, thereby establishing a steep calcium gradient between the ER lumen and cytosol. Inhibition of SERCA results in massive leakage of calcium ions from ER to the cytosol and thus efficiently triggers ER stress. Thapsigargin, a naturally occurring sesquiterpene lactone, is an exceptionally potent inhibitor of SERCA. However, its clinical usage is fraught with several challenges; it is quite toxic and not well tolerated by experimental animals. A prodrug of thapsigargin, also known as mipsagargin or G202, has been synthesized and was found to produce substantial tumor regression against a panel of human cancer xenografts in vivo at doses that were minimally toxic to the host [148]. Interestingly, mipsagargin demonstrated an acceptable tolerability and favorable pharmacokinetic profile in a phase I clinical trial in patients with refractory, advanced, or metastatic solid tumors [81].

Certain diaryl-substituted pyrazoles, for example, celecoxib, are another class of compound that has emerged as SERCA inhibitors [26]. Nevertheless, celecoxib might not attain sufficient level of ER stress in tumor tissues because it was initially developed as COX-2 inhibitor. However, celecoxib analogues with minimized COX-2 inhibitory function, but significantly increased ER stress-inducing ability have been developed [8]. AR-12/OSU-03012 is an antitumor celecoxib-derivative that has progressed to Phase I clinical trial as an anticancer agent and has activity against a number of infectious agents including fungi, bacteria, and viruses [149]. It has been shown to suppress tumor cell viability through multiple mechanisms including activation of endoplasmic reticulum stress, inhibition of PDK-1/Akt signaling and the induction of autophagy [150–152]. Although a Phase I clinical trial of AR-12 in adult patients with advanced or recurrent solid tumors or lymphoma has been completed, its overall outcome remain unpublished.

In both oncogenic BRAF melanoma cell lines and in patients who failed clinical treatment for skin melanomas, the presence of oncogenic BRAF was responsible for ER stress induction and cell survival [153, 154]. In particular, human skin melanoma is characterized by oncogenic BRAF mutations, such as $BRAF^{V600E}$. In addition, approximately 8–14% of colorectal cancers (CRC) in early and advanced stages exhibit the $BRAF^{V600E}$ mutation [155–158]. The BRAF serine/threonine protein kinase is a downstream signaling protein in the epidermal growth factor receptor-mediated

Table 18.1 Current therapeutic target in the ER stress and autophagy signaling pathways and clinical trial stages

Pathway	Therapeutic targets	Current drugs	Clinical trial stages/type of cancer	Combined with/versus	References
UPR pathway	SERCA	Mipsagargin	Phase I: Advanced metastatic solid tumors		[81]
			Phase II: Hepatocellular carcinoma (completed/unpublished)	Sorafenib	https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT01777594
			Phase II: Recurrent or progressive glioblastoma (completed/unpublished)		https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT02067156
		AR-12	Phase I: Advanced or recurrent solid tumors or lymphomas (completed/unpublished)		https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT00978523
ERAD	26S proteasome	Bortezomib	Approved by FDA for multiple myeloma (2005) Approved by FDA for mantle cell lymphoma (2006)		The U. S. Food and Drug Administration[a]
			Phase III: Multiple myeloma (recruiting)	Lenalidomide; dexamethasone	https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT01863550
			Phase III: Stem cell transplant in multiple myeloma (recruiting)	Lenalidomide; dexamethasone	https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/record/NCT01208662
			Phase III: T-cell acute lymphoblastic leukemia or stage II–IV T-cell lymphoblastic lymphoma (recruiting)	Combination chemotherapy	https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT02112916
			Phase III: Multiple myeloma (recruiting)	Selinexor; dexamethasone	https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT03110562
			Phase III: Untreated multiple myeloma (recruiting)	Daratumumab	https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT02541383
			Phase III: Relapsed and refractory multiple myeloma (recruiting)	Dexamethasone	https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT02811978
			Phase III: Newly diagnosed myeloma (recruiting)	Elotuzumab	https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT02495922
		Nelfinavir	Approved by FDA for HIV (1997)		The U. S. Food and drug Administration[a]
			Phase II: Pancreatic cancer	Chemoradiation	[77]
			Phase II: Multiple myeloma	Bortezomib	[78]
			Phase II: Advanced rectal cancer		[79]
			Phase II: Advanced melanoma, lung, or kidney cancer (recruiting)	Nivolumab, radiation therapy	https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT03050060
			Phase II: Cervical intraepithelial neoplasia (recruiting)		https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT01925378

			Phase II: Advanced pancreatic cancer (recruiting)	Oregovomab	https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT01959672
			Phase II: Localized pancreatic cancer (recruiting)		https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT02024009
			Phase II: Kaposi sarcoma (recruiting)		https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT0307745
			Phase II: Squamous cell carcinoma larynx (recruiting)	Chemoradiotherapy	https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT02207439
	BRAF	Vemurafenib	Approved by FDA for unresectable or metastatic melanoma with the $BRAF^{V600E}$ mutation (2011)		The U. S. Food and Drug Administration[a]
			Phase II: Colorectal cancer		[82]
			Phase III: Metastatic melanoma		[83]
			Phase II: Relapsed or refractory advanced solid tumors, non-Hodgkin lymphoma (recruiting)		https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT03220035
			Phase II: Tumors harboring BRAF genomic alterations (recruiting)		https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT02304809
			Phase II: Metastatic melanoma (recruiting)	Cobimetinib	https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT02414750
			Phase II: Metastatic melanoma (recruiting)	Adoptive T-cell therapy with tumor infiltrating lymphocytes	https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT02354690
			Phase II: $BRAF^{V600E}$ mutation positive craniopharyngioma (recruiting)	Cobimetinib	https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT03224767
			Phase II: BRAF mutated melanoma with brain metastasis (recruiting)	Cobimetinib	https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT02537600
			Phase III: Metastatic or unresectable locally advanced melanoma (recruiting)	Atezolizumab; cobimetinib	https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT02908672
			Phase IV: $BRAF^{V600E}$ mutation-positive malignancies (recruiting)		https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT01739764
		Dabrafenib	Approved by FDA for unresectable or metastatic melanoma with the $BRAF^{V600E}$ mutation (2014)		The U. S. Food and Drug Administration[a]
			Phase II: Melanoma, untreated brain metastases		[84]
			Phase III: BRAF-mutated metastatic melanoma		[85]
			Phase II: $BRAF^{V600E}$-mutant metastatic NSCLC	Trametinib	[86]
			Phase II: $BRAF^{V600E}$-mutant melanoma brain metastases	Trametinib	[87]

(continued)

Table 18.1 (continued)

Pathway	Therapeutic targets	Current drugs	Clinical trial stages/type of cancer	Combined with/versus	References
			Phase III: Metastatic $BRAF^{V600E/K}$-mutant melanoma	Trametinib; monotherapy	[88]
			Phase III: Metastatic $BRAF^{V600E/K}$-mutant melanoma	Trametinib; monotherapy	[89]
			Phase II: $BRAF^{V600E}$-mutated rare cancers (recruiting)	Trametinib	https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT02034110
			Phase II: BRAF-mutant melanoma or solid tumors (recruiting)	Trametinib; navitoclax	https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT01989585
			Phase II: BRAF-mutated ameloblastoma (recruiting)		https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT02367859
			Phase II: Stage III melanoma (recruiting)	Trametinib	https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT02231775
			Phase III: Stage III-IV $BRAF^{V600E}$ melanoma (recruiting)	Trametinib: Ipilimumab; nivolumab	https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT02224781
		Encorafenib	Phase I: Metastatic BRAF-mutant melanoma		[90]
			Phase I: Metastatic BRAF-mutant colorectal cancer	Cetuximab; alpelisib	[91]
			Phase II: Relapsed/refractory multiple myeloma	Binimetinib	https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT02834364
			Phase III: BRAF V600E-mutant metastatic colorectal cancer (recruiting)	Chemotherapy	https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT02928224
mTOR signaling pathway	mTOR	Rapamycin (Sirolimus)	Phase I: Relapsed and refractory solid tumors	Cyclophosphamide; topotecan	[92]
			Phase I: Refractory solid malignancies	Sunitinib	[93]
			Phase I: Invasive bladder cancer	Intravesical BCG	https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT02753309
			Phase II: Metastatic, RAI-refractory, differentiated thyroid cancer (recruiting)	Cyclophosphamide	https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT03099356
			Phase II: Metastatic hormone-resistant prostate cancer (recruiting)	Docetaxel; carboplatin	https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT02565901
			Phase II: Recurrent/refractory germ cell tumors (recruiting)	Erlotinib	https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT01962896
			Phase II: Advanced, radioactive iodine refractory Hurthle cell thyroid cancer (recruiting)	Sorafenib	https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT02143726

			Phase II: Recurrent/refractory solid and CNS tumors (recruiting)	Metronomic chemotherapy	https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT02574728
		Temsirolimus (CCI-779)	Approved by FDA for advanced RCC (2007)	–	The U. S. Food and Drug Administration[a]
			Phase I: Advanced solid tumors	Cetuximab	[94]
			Phase I: Recurrent pediatric solid tumors	Perifosine	[95]
			Phase I: Advanced NSCLC	Pemetrexed	[96]
			Phase II: Advanced endometrial cancer	Temsirolimus and alternating megestrol acetate; tamoxifen	[97]
			Phase II: Relapsed/refractory primary CNS lymphoma		[98]
			Phase II: Resistant ovarian cancer/advanced/recurrent endometrial carcinoma		[99]
			Phase I: Advanced cancers (recruiting)	Metformin	https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT01529593
			Phase I: Advanced cancers (recruiting)	Bevacizumab; valproic acid; cetuximab	https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT01552434
			Phase I: Advanced or metastatic solid tumors (recruiting)	Cetuximab	https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT02215720
			Phase I: Relapsed acute lymphoblastic leukemia and non-Hodgkin's lymphoma (recruiting)	Etoposide; cyclophosphamide	https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT01614197
		Everolimus (RAD001)	Approved by FDA for advanced RCC (2009), advanced pancreatic neuroendocrine tumor (2011), renal angiomyolipoma (2012) and hormone receptor-positive, HER2-negative breast cancer (2012)		The U. S. Food and Drug Administration[a]
			Phase I: Prostate cancer	Radiation	[100]
			Phase I: Triple-negative breast cancer	Doxorubicin; bevacizumab	[101]
			Phase I: Diffuse large B-cell lymphoma	R-CHOP-21	[102]
			Phase Ib: Metastatic gastroesophageal adenocarcinoma	mFOLFOX6	[103]
			Phase II: Elapsed estrogen receptor-positive high-grade ovarian cancers	Letrozole	[104]
			Phase II: Hormone receptor-positive, HER2-negative metastatic breast cancer	Dexamethasone	[105]

(continued)

Table 18.1 (continued)

Pathway	Therapeutic targets	Current drugs	Clinical trial stages/type of cancer	Combined with/versus	References
			Phase II: Relapsed or refractory indolent lymphoma		[106]
			Phase II: Metastatic clear cell renal cell cancer	Pazopanib	[107]
			Phase II: Advanced follicular-derived thyroid cancer		[108]
			Phase II: Castration-resistant prostate cancer	Bicalutamide	[109]
			Phase II: Peripheral T-cell lymphoma	CHOP	[110]
			Phase II: Metastatic non-clear cell renal cell carcinoma	Sunitinib	[111]
			Phase III: Estrogen receptor-positive metastatic breast		[112]
			Phase III: Hormone receptor positive metastatic breast cancer (recruiting)	Aromatase inhibitors	https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT02511639
			Phase III: High risk of relapse, ER+ and HER2− primary breast cancer (recruiting)	Adjuvant hormone therapy	https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT01805271
			Phase III: Metastatic breast cancer (recruiting)	Fulvestrant; exemestane	https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT02404051
			Phase IV: Progressive pancreatic neuroendocrine tumors (recruiting)		https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT02842749
			Phase IV: Liver cancer (recruiting)		https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT02081755
		Ridaforolimus (Deforolimus; AP23573)	Phase I: Solid tumor cancers	Paclitaxel; carboplatin	[113]
			Phase I: Advanced solid tumors		[114]
			Phase II: Advanced breast cancer	Dalotuzumab; exemestane	[115]
			Phase II: Estrogen receptor-positive breast cancer	Dalotuzumab; exemestane	[116]
	PI3K/mTOR	BEZ235	Phase II: Advanced pancreatic neuroendocrine tumors		[117]
			Phase II: Locally advanced or metastatic transitional cell carcinoma		[118]

			Phase I: Advanced solid tumors (completed/unpublished)		https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT01195376
			Phase I: Advanced solid tumors (completed/unpublished)		https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT01343498
			Phase Ib: Castration-resistant prostate cancer (completed/unpublished)	BKM120	https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT01634061
			Phase Ib/II: HER2 negative, locally advanced or metastatic breast cancer (completed/unpublished)	Paclitaxel	https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT01495247
			Phase I/II: Advanced breast cancer (completed/unpublished)		https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT00620594
Proautophagics		Temozolomide	Approved by FDA for glioblastoma (2005)	Radiotherapy	[119]
			Phase I: Recurrent malignant gliomas	Metronomic temozolomide	[120]
			Phase I/II: Glioblastoma	Immunotherapy	[121]
			Phase I/II: Recurrent malignant gliomas	Nimustine	[122]
			Phase I/II: Primary CNS lymphoma	Induction chemotherapy; whole-brain radiotherapy	[123]
			Phase II: Glioblastoma	Bevacizumab; Irinotecan	[124]
			Phase II: High-grade glioma	Radiotherapy; lomustine	[125]
			Phase II: NSCLC with brain metastases	Pemetrexed	[126]
			Phase II: Metastatic melanoma	Ipilimumab	[127]
			Phase II: Refractory or relapsed neuroblastoma	Irinotecan-temozolomide with temsirolimus or dinutuximab	[128]
			Phase II: Metastatic colorectal cancer		[129]
			Phase II: Refractory or relapsed neuroblastoma	Bevacizumab, irinotecan	[130]

(continued)

Table 18.1 (continued)

Pathway	Therapeutic targets	Current drugs	Clinical trial stages/type of cancer	Combined with/versus	References
			Phase II: Glioblastoma	Neoadjuvant temozolomide; hypofractionated accelerated radiation therapy	[131]
			Phase III: High-risk low-grade glioma	Radiotherapy	[132]
			Phase III: Glioblastoma (recruiting)	Radiotherapy; nivolumab	https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT02667587
			Phase III: Glioblastoma (recruiting)	Nivolumab	https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT02617589
			Phase III: Extensive stage small-cell lung cancer (recruiting)		https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT02772107
			Phase III: Recurrent glioblastoma (recruiting)	Bevacizumab	https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT03149575
			Phase III: High-grade gliomas (recruiting)	Interferon-alpha	https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT01765088
		Arsenic trioxide	Approved by FDA for acute promyelocytic leukemia (2000)		The U. S. Food and drug Administration1
			Phase II: Relapsed or refractory malignant lymphoma		[133]
			Phase II: Hepatocellular carcinoma	Locoregional therapy	[134]
			Phase II: Recurrent or refractory stage 4 neuroblastoma or metastatic paraganglioma/pheochromocytoma	(131)I-MIBG	[135]
			Phase II: Acute promyelocytic leukemia	All-trans retinoic acid; chemotherapy	[136]
			Phase II: Relapsed small-cell lung cancer		[137]
			Phase III: Acute promyelocytic leukemia	All-trans retinoic acid	[138]
			Phase III: Non-high-risk acute promyelocytic leukemia	All-trans retinoic acid	[139]
			Phase III: Acute promyelocytic leukemia	Anthracyclines	[140]
			Phase III: Untreated acute promyelocytic leukemia (recruiting)	Tretinoin; chemotherapy	https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT02339740
			Phase III: High-risk acute promyelocytic leukemia (recruiting)	Tretinoin; chemotherapy	https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT02688140

Autophagy inhibitors		Chloroquine	Phase I: Metastatic or unresectable pancreatic cancer		[141]
			Phase I: Stage IV small-cell lung cancer (completed/unpublished)	Gemcitabine	https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT00969306
			Phase I/II: Breast ductal carcinoma in situ (completed/unpublished)		https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT01023477
			Phase I: Advanced solid tumors (recruiting)	Carboplatin; gemcitabine	https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT0207153
			Phase I/II: IDH1/2-mutated solid tumors (recruiting)	Metformin	https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT02496741
			Phase II: Breast cancer (recruiting)		https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT02333890
			Phase II: Advanced or metastatic breast cancer (recruiting)	Taxane chemotherapy	https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT01446016
		Hydroxychloroquine	Phase I: Advanced solid tumors and melanoma	Temozolomide	[142]
			Phase I: Advanced solid tumors	Vorinostat	[143]
			Phase I: Relapsed/refractory myeloma	Bortezomib	[144]
			Phase I/II: Glioblastoma	Radiation; temozolomide	[145]
			Phase I/II: Pancreatic adenocarcinoma	Gemcitabine	[146]
			Phase II: Metastatic pancreatic adenocarcinoma		[147]
			Phase II: Colorectal cancer (recruiting)	Vorinostat; Regorafenib	https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT02316340
			Phase II: Recurrent breast cancer (recruiting)	Everolimus	https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT03032406
			Phase I/II: Pancreatic cancer	Gemcitabine; abraxane	https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT01506973
			Phase I/II: Advanced BRAF mutant melanoma	Dabrafenib; trametinib	https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT02257424
			Phase I/II: Renal cell carcinoma	Aldesleukin	https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT01550367

[a]https://www.accessdata.fda.gov/scripts/cder/daf/index.cfm

MAP kinase pathway, which activates MEK through its phosphorylation. $BRAF^{V600E}$ mutation leads to constitutive BRAF kinase activity, which sustains the MAP kinase signaling pathway. $BRAF^{V600E}$-mediated p38 MAPK activation stimulates both the IRE1α/ASK1/JNK and TRIB3 pathways. BCL-XL/BCL-2 phosphorylation by active JNK releases BECN1, whereas TRIB3 inhibits the Akt/mTOR axes, resulting in an increase in basal autophagy [154].

Vemurafenib and dabrafenib are BRAF inhibitors which have been approved by the USA FDA and EMA for the treatment of BRAF-mutated metastatic melanoma. In an open-label, multicenter 2-year follow-up of vemurafenib in 3219 patients with $BRAF^{V600}$ mutation-positive metastatic melanoma, data suggest that long-term vemurafenib treatment is effective and tolerable [83]. Although vemurafenib and dabrafenib demonstrated impressive antitumor activity in advanced melanoma with objective response rates around 50% [85, 159], disappointing results were seen for patients with $BRAF^{V600E}$-mutated colorectal cancer. In the Phase II study evaluating vemurafenib in patients with metastatic $BRAF^{V600E}$-mutated colorectal cancer, of 21 patients, only one patient had confirmed partial response (5%) and the median progression-free survival (PFS) was 2.1 months [82]. Dabrafenib monotherapy did not show meaningful clinical activity with only one confirmed partial response among the 11 patients with $BRAF^{V600E}$-mutated colorectal cancer included in the Phase I trial [84]. Encorafenib, another potent and selective oral BRAF inhibitor, showed signs of efficacy in patients with BRAF-mutant advanced melanoma but lack of objective response in patients with colorectal cancer [160]. All three drugs are currently in several clinical trials for other tumors (Table 18.1).

Treatment of tumor cells with drugs that trigger further ER stress might result in two desirable anticancer outcomes. First, the drugs by themselves might result in increased antitumor effects. Second, the overload and subsequent breakdown of the UPR adaptive system might increase the tumor cells' sensitivity toward conventional chemotherapeutic agents [26]. Targeting of alternative pathways is an attractive strategy to improve antitumor therapy in apoptosis-resistant cancer. In view of the fact that ER stress is basally activated in many cancers, aggravation of the preexisting ER stress condition and the subsequent activation of autophagy represent an alternative therapeutic target to improve cancer therapy [27].

18.6 Autophagy

The ubiquitin-proteasome system (UPS) and lysosomes are two primary intracellular protein degradation pathways recognized in eukaryotic cells. Differences between these two major protein degradation systems depend on their functional significance and the type of substrates taken in for degradation [161]. The UPS catalyzes the rapid degradation of abnormal proteins and short-lived regulatory proteins, leading to a control of a diversity of essential cellular processes [162]. In the lysosomal protein degradation pathway, degradation of extracellular materials is mediated by endocytosis, whereas degradation of intracellular long-lived cytoplasmic proteins and damaged organelles is mediated by three types of autophagy, macroautophagy, microautophagy, and chaperone-mediated autophagy (CMA), which are classified based on their transport of cytoplasmic materials into the lysosome for degradation [163, 164].

Autophagy literally means self-digestion in Greek [165]. Macroautophagy, usually refers to autophagy, is responsible for the turnover of unnecessary or dysfunctional organelles and proteins, such as damaged mitochondria [166]. These processes are important to maintain a well-controlled balance between anabolism and catabolism to facilitate normal cell growth and development. It is also a survival pathway, required during starvation or growth factor deprivation, as it provides an alternative energy source [167, 168]. Autophagy process provides catabolic intermediates for intracellular production of ATP when energy supplies are limited. It plays an essential role during starvation, cellular differentiation, cell death, cell survival, aging, and tumor prevention [164, 166, 169].

Autophagy pathway is a multistep process characterized by induction, vesicle nucleation, extension, and completion of an isolation membrane to form an organelle called autophagosome [170]. Briefly, the autophagy process begins with the formation of a preautophagosomal structure known as isolation membrane or phagophore [171]. The isolation membrane engulfs and elongates to form the autophagosome, surrounding the components destined to be recycled. The autophagosome, which is a double membrane-bounded structure, undergoes maturation, and fuses with both endosomal and lysosomal vesicles to form autolysosome [171–173]. The sequestered contents are subsequently degraded by lysosomal hydrolases and are recycled. Based on morphological features, the term "autophagic cell death" has been described in instances of cell death that are accompanied by massive cytoplasmic vacuolization.

The core autophagy machinery is composed of four major functional groups: (1) the unc-51-like kinases (ULKs) (ATG1-ATG13-ATG17 kinase complex), (2) the Class III phosphatidylinositol-3-kinase catalytic subunit type 3 (PI3KC3) complexes, including Class III PI3K (the mammalian orthologue of vascular protein sorting 34; VPS34), p150/VPS15 (the mammalian orthologue of Vps15), BECN-1 (the mammalian orthologue of ATG6/Vps30) and ATG14L (ATG14), (3) two ubiquitin-like conjugation systems: ATG12 and ATG8, and (4) ATG9 and its cycling system [174]. The ULKs (the mammalian orthologues of ATG1, which exist in a large complex with mammalian ATG13), focal adhesion kinase family interacting protein of 200 kDa (FIP200; the mammalian homologue of ATG17), and the recently identified ATG101 play a crucial role in autophagy induction [175–179]. ULK1 is part of a family of kinases in humans (ULK1–4). Isoform ULK1 is the most important component in autophagy and in some cells lines, blocking both ULK1 and ULK2 is necessary to completely shut down autophagy [180].

The ULK1 kinase regulates proautophagic signals by phosphorylating many substrate proteins [181]. The numerous substrates of ULK1 include itself and other subunits of the ULK1 complex; other elements of the core autophagy machinery, including PI3KC3–C1 subunits such as BECN1 and ATG9; and other autophagy-related proteins such as AMBRA1 [180, 181]. Autophosphorylation of the kinase domain's activation loop at Thr180 of ULK1 is essential for activation upon autophagy induction [182, 183]. Subsequently, phosphorylation of these downstream molecules by ULK1 is an important step in the initiation of autophagy.

The early stages of the phagophore membrane nucleation are dependent on the Class III PI3KC3 complex which consists of the Class III PI3KC3 protein, its regulatory protein kinase p150/VPS15, and BECN1 [184]. BECN1 is a 60-kDa tumor suppressor protein and is identified from a yeast two-hybrid screen as a BCL-2 interacting protein [185]. Several studies have demonstrated that several binding molecules positively regulate BECN1 activity and autophagosome formation and maturation. For example, ultraviolet radiation resistance-associated gene (UVRAG), ATG14L, and activated molecule in BECN1 regulated autophagy protein (AMBRA1) associate with BECN1 to activate autophagy [186–190].

The Class III PI3KC3 phosphorylates phosphatidylinositol to generate PI(3)P which is an essential early event in autophagy initiation, downstream of ULK1 [187, 191, 192]. PI3KC3 forms two distinct complexes, known as complexes I and II (PI3KC3–C1 and PI3KC3–C2) which contain the catalytic subunit VPS34/Vps34, the putative protein kinase VPS15/Vps15 and BECN1/ATG6 [187, 192]. PI3KC3–C1 contains ATG14L/ATG14, which directs the complex to phagophore initiation sites [186, 187, 193–196]. PI3KC3–C1 facilitates elongation meanwhile PI3KC3–C2, which contains UVRAG, directs endosome and autophagosome maturation [180].

The next stage of phagophore membrane elongation (expansion and closure of the autophagosome) requires two ubiquitin-like systems [197]. The ubiquitin-like protein ATG12 conjugates with ATG5 in an ATG7- and ATG10-dependent manner [161]. The ATG5–ATG12 complex interacts with ATG16 to form a stable and large multimeric complex called the ATG16L complex,

which localizes on the outer surface of the extending autophagosomal membrane [170]. This complex is important in the stimulation and localization of the microtubule-associated protein 1 light chain 3 (LC3) conjugation reactions. LC3 is first cleaved by ATG4 to expose a C-terminal glycine residue required for subsequent activation and conjugation reactions [198]. It is then conjugated to the lipid phosphatidylethanolamine (PE), also via ATG7 and E2-like ATG3, and is subsequently recruited to both outer and inner surfaces of the autophagosomal membrane [197, 199]. Actually, two forms of LC3 are produced posttranslationally in various cells; the unconjugated form (LC3-I) is in the cytosol, while the conjugated form (LC3-II) targets the autophagosomal membrane with the assistance of the ATG16L complex [199, 200]. ATG16L complex is a ubiquitin-protein ligase (E3)-like enzyme that functions as a scaffold for LC3-II lipidation by localizing to the source membranes during autophagosome formation [200, 201]. The association of LC3-II to the autophagosome is crucial for membrane elongation of the autophagosome and the final limitation of the membrane to form the vacuoles [161]. The ATG5–ATG12–ATG16 complex is recycled, while the LC3 complex stays on the membrane until it is degraded by the lysosome [161]. In mammalian autophagy, LC3-II protein is used as an index of autophagosome formation or as an autophagosomal marker [202]. These conjugation systems are considered to be uniquely important to the autophagosome formation and have been identified as possible drug targets in cancer [203].

ATG9 system is required for phagophore expansion. It is the only transmembrane protein in the autophagy core machinery and has been proposed to play a key role in directing membrane from donor organelles for autophagosome formation [204]. ATG9 trafficking from the plasma membrane and trans-Golgi network involves two conserved sorting signals for proper function in autophagy, namely ATG9 interaction with the AP1/2 clathrin adaptor complex and phosphorylation of ATG9 at Tyr8 by SRC kinase and at Ser14 by ULK1. SRC kinase directly phosphorylates Tyr8 of ATG9 and promotes the interaction of ATG9 with the AP1/2 complex and leads to the movement of ATG9 away from the juxtanuclear region [205]. As with Tyr8, phosphorylation at Ser14 enhances the binding of ATG9 with the AP2 complex and promotes ATG9-AP1 interaction. Zhou and co-workers showed that phosphorylation of ATG9 at both the Tyr8 and Ser14 sites is required for maintaining proper autophagy under both basal conditions and in response to starvation-induced stress [205]. Finally, ATG9 binds the small Rab GTPases (RABGAP) protein TBC1D5, and both TBC1D5 and the AP2 complex contribute to the correct sorting of ATG9-containing vesicles during the initiation of autophagy [206].

The completed autophagosome membrane subsequently fuses with lysosome via the actions of the lysosomal proteins including the lysosomal-associated membrane protein 1 (LAMP1), LAMP2, member of RAS oncogene family (Rab7), and UVRAG [207]. The eventual autolysosome is a single membrane-bound acidic vesicle where the contents are digested and recycled by lysosomal hydrolases such as cathepsins (CTS), and its nutrient and energy are recycled [208]. These single membrane autolysosomes filled with degraded cytoplasmic materials can be easily observed using transmission electron microscopy (TEM) [170]. In addition, the adapter protein sequestosome 1 (SQSTM1/p62), which targets specific substrates to autophagosomes and LC3II are degraded along with other cargo proteins and are used as a measure of autophagy flux [209]. The autophagy cargo receptor p62/SQSTM1 binds ubiquitin on cargo to deliver cargo proteins to autophagosomes by docking onto LC3 on autophagosomes. P62 itself is an autophagy substrate that accumulates when autophagy is inhibited [210].

The Nomenclature Committee on Cell Death (NCCD) recommends that the term “autophagic cell death” be used based on some biochemical and functional considerations, before indicating that a cell death is mediated by autophagy. Some of the considerations include making sure that the investigated cell death can be suppressed by the inhibition of the autophagic pathway using

chemicals and/or genetic means (e.g., gene knock-out or RNAi silencing of essential autophagy modulators such as AMBRA1, ATG5, ATG12, or BECN1) [211].

One of the most-studied and important pathways involved in autophagy regulation is the PI3K-Akt-mTOR signaling pathway. The mammalian target of rapamycin, commonly known as mTOR, is a serine/threonine kinase which belongs to the family of phosphatidylinositol 3-kinase-related kinases. It regulates translation and cell growth by its ability to phosphorylate both binding protein of eukaryotic translation inhibition factor eIF4E (4E-BP1) and p70 ribosomal S6 kinase (p70S6k). Upon stimulation by a variety of signals including cytokines, growth factors, cellular stress such as heat shock, hypoxia, and oxidative stress, PI3K is recruited to the inner cell membrane via phosphorylated receptor tyrosine kinases and catalyzes the phosphorylation of phosphatidylinositol-3,4-bisphosphate (PIP2) to phosphatidylinositol-3,4,5-triphosphate (PIP3). The recruitment of inactive Akt from the cytosol to the plasma membrane requires that the pleckstrin homology (PH) domain of Akt binds to PIP3 synthesized at the plasma membrane by PI3K. Akt is then phosphorylated at Thr308 by phosphatidylinositol-dependent kinase 1 (PDK1) [212, 213]. PTEN phosphatase antagonizes PI3K-Akt signaling by converting PIP3 back to PIP2 [212]. (Fig. 18.3).

Upstream PI3K and Akt activation by growth factors leads to the activation of mTOR and sub-

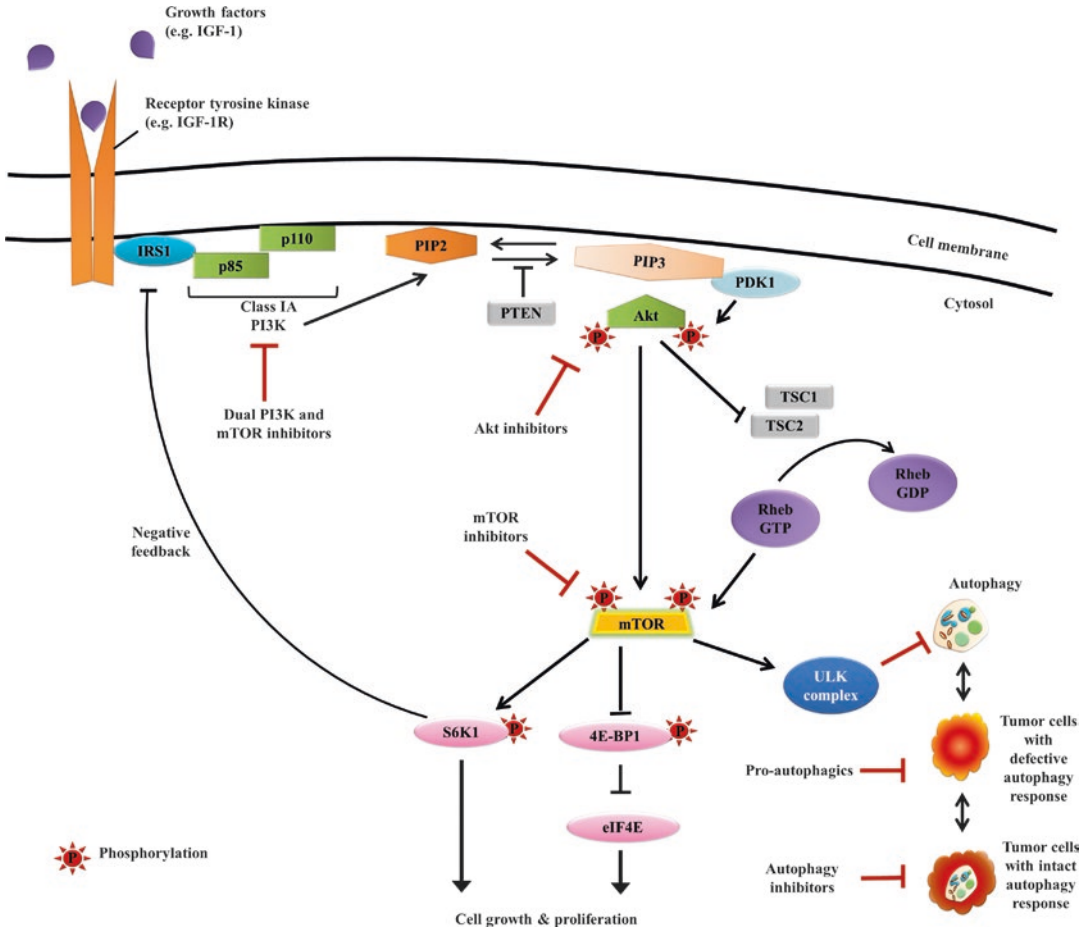


Fig. 18.3 Autophagy signaling pathway and antitumor targets

sequently phosphorylation of downstream substrates. Phosphorylation of p70S6k promotes ribosome biogenesis, and increases the capacity of the translational machinery for protein synthesis [214]. Phosphorylation of 4E-BP1 initiates the transcription of a subset of mRNAs important for cell growth and proliferation [214–216]. The mTOR kinase is a key regulatory component that controls the induction of autophagy [217]. Inhibition of mTOR (by nutrient depletion, starvation, or rapamycin) leads to cell cycle arrest, inhibition of cell proliferation, immunosuppression, and induction of autophagy. Increased levels of the mTOR kinase are found to inhibit the autophagy process, resulting in an increased in cell growth and tumor development [173]. Rapamycin, a specific mTOR inhibitor, complexes with the cytosolic receptor FK506-binding protein (FKBP12), and subsequently binds to a distinct region of mTOR upstream of the catalytic domain [218]. It induces autophagy and inhibits the proliferation of a variety of cells [219].

In eukaryotic cells, mTOR exists in two different complexes: mTORC1; a rapamycin-sensitive complex defined by its interaction with the supplementary protein Raptor (regulatory-associated protein of mTOR) and mTORC2; a rapamycin-insensitive complex defined by its interaction with Rictor (rapamycin-insensitive companion of mTOR) [220–222]. mTORC1 and mTORC2 accessorial complexes consist of mTOR, mammalian lethal with SEC13 protein 8 (mLST8) (also known as GßL) and DEP domain-containing mTOR-interacting protein (Deptor) [223]. mLST8 binds to the kinase domain of mTOR, and stabilizes the interaction of Raptor with mTOR in a rapamycin-sensitive pathway [224]. Raptor is the first protein shown to bind directly to mTOR that is required to mediate mTOR regulation of p70S6k and 4E-BP1 activities [221, 225]. On the other hand, PRAS40 and Deptor play roles as distinct negative regulators of mTORC1 [226, 227].

In a rapamycin-sensitive mTOR signaling pathway, much of the knowledge about mTORC1 function comes from the use of rapamycin, a bacterial macrolide antibiotic [228]. Upon entering the cell, rapamycin binds FK506-binding protein (FKBP12), its intracellular receptor, which subsequently binds to the FKBP12-rapamycin binding domain (FRB) of mTOR, thus inhibiting the mTORC1 functions [229, 230]. Rapamycin weakens the interaction between mTOR and Raptor [231]. However, the exact mechanism of how rapamycin and several rapamycin derivatives bind to FKBP12 to inhibit mTORC1 signaling is not completely understood [232]. Various conditions including starvation or lack of nutrients such as amino acids and/or glucose mimic rapamycin treatment, hence inhibit mTOR function in cultured cells, as indicated by rapid inactivation of p70S6k and hypophosphorylation of the 4E-BP1 [233].

Studies have shown that mTORC1 controls autophagy through the regulation of a protein complex consisting of ULK1, mAtg13, and FIP200 [176, 178, 234]. ULK complex is directly controlled by mTOR, leading to maintenance of the mAtg13 hyperphosphorylation state and suppression of autophagy induction [235]. A study has demonstrated that inhibition of mTOR by rapamycin leads to dephosphorylation of ULK1, ULK2, and mATG13, and activates ULKs to phosphorylate FIP200. These results suggested that the ULK-ATG13-FIP200 complexes are direct targets of mTOR and important regulators of autophagy in response to mTOR signaling [178]. One of the most important proteins involved in the regulation of mTORC1 activity is the tuberous sclerosis complex (TSC), which is a heterodimer of two proteins, TSC1 (also known as hamartin) and TSC2 (also known as tuberin) [230]. TSC1 and TSC2 function as a GAP (GTPase-activating protein) that negatively regulates a small GTPase called Rheb (Ras homologue-enriched in brain). TSC1 and TSC2 inhibit mTORC1 signaling by transforming Rheb into its inactive GDP-bound state [236, 237].

On the other hand, mTORC2 consists of mTOR, mLST8, Rictor, Deptor, mammalian stress-activated map kinase-interacting protein 1 (mSIN1; also known as MAPKAP1), and the recently identified protein observed with Rictor (PROTOR) [223, 238]. Rictor is defined as a novel mTOR-interacting protein defining a sec-

ond raptor-independent mTOR complex [220, 239]. Unlike mTOR-Raptor, the mTOR-Rictor complex does not bind to FKBP12-rapamycin, and is insensitive to rapamycin treatment [220, 222]. Therefore, rapamycin treatment does not represent a complete inhibition of mTOR function [240]. mTORC2 stimulates cell signaling through activation and phosphorylation of the proproliferative and prosurvival kinase Akt [241]. Akt regulates cellular processes such as metabolism, survival, apoptosis, growth, and proliferation by phosphorylating various effectors. mTORC2 activates Akt directly by phosphorylation at Ser473, which is a site needed for its maximal activation [242, 243].

In addition, mTORC2 controls various members of the AGC subfamily of kinases which includes serum and glucocorticoid-induced protein kinase 1 (SGK1) and several members of PKC family including PKCα [220], PKCε [244], PKCδ [245], and PKCζ [246]. mTORC2 is also known to phosphorylate mammalian Ste20-like kinases 1 (MST1) which is a core component kinase in the Hippo signaling pathway [247]. The Hippo pathway is composed of a group of evolutionarily conserved protein kinases that inhibit cellular growth and promote apoptosis [248, 249]. MST1 phosphorylates and activates large tumor suppressor (LATS) kinases, which in turn phosphorylate and inhibit Yes-associated protein 1 (YAP1), a co-transcription factor that promotes proliferation and survival [250]. mTORC2 is reported to be involved in the regulation of cytoskeletal organization through Rho GTPases and PKCα [220, 239]. Inhibitors of mTOR kinase domain have been developed to suppress the activity of both mTOR complexes (mTORC1 and mTORC2) [251, 252]. Figure 18.3 illustrates the simplified autophagy signaling pathways.

18.7 Autophagy and Cancer

The role of autophagy in cancer is rather perplexing. It is widely known that the autophagic pathway is deregulated in tumor cells. Several proteins and pathways related to autophagy signaling are deregulated during cancer development [189, 253]. Cell lines derived from hepatic, pancreatic, and breast carcinoma exhibit low autophagic activity, as compared with normal cells from the same origin [189, 254]. Autophagic capacity is known to increase during premalignant stages of pancreatic carcinogenesis, and then decreases during the transition of pancreatic adenoma into adenocarcinoma, suggesting that a decreased autophagic activity possibly contributes to the malignancy of pancreatic cancer [255, 256]. A decrease in autophagic capacity is also observed during animal experimental carcinogenesis, where cells from preneoplastic liver nodules or primary hepatocellular carcinomas induced by chemical carcinogens showed a decreased autophagic capacity as compared to normal liver cells [256, 257]. In addition, BECN1 is found to be mono-allelically deleted in a high percentage of ovarian, breast, and prostate cancers (based on the 17q21 and gene mapping studies). However, BECN1 is adjacent to the known tumor suppressor gene breast cancer 1 (BRCA1) on chromosome 17. Genomic analysis of BECN1 in The Cancer Genome Atlas (TCGA) demonstrated that allelic loss of BECN1 does not occur independently of codeletion with BRCA1, suggesting instead that BRCA1 loss is the driver mutation in hereditary and sporadic breast cancer [258–260].

There is a direct link between tumorigenesis and the disruption of the autophagy signaling pathways. PTEN deletions as well as the amplifications of both Class III PI3K and Akt are found in several cancers [261, 262]. The mTOR signaling pathway is constitutively activated in many tumor types. For example, the mTOR pathway is frequently found to be hyperactive in cancers such as breast cancer, suggesting that mTOR is an attractive target for cancer drug development and therapy [263–265]. The mTOR signaling network contains a number of tumor suppressor genes which includes *PTEN*, *LKB1* (liver kinase B1), *TSC1/2*, and a number of proto-oncogenes such as *PI3K*, *Akt,* and *eIF4E* genes [266]. Several alterations in genes such as *KRAS*, *EGFR*, *LKB1*, *PTEN*, *PIK3CA* (encoding the p110 catalytic subunit of PI3K), as well as *Akt1* mutations, *EGFR* and *PIK3CA* amplification, and *PTEN*

deletion have been described in NSCLC, which lead to uncontrolled mTOR pathway signaling [267]. In addition, dysregulation of the mTOR pathway appears to be more common in squamous lung carcinoma than adenocarcinoma [267, 268].

Cancer-related changes in pathways at the downstream of mTOR such as p70S6k and eIF4E are reported in breast carcinoma [269, 270]. In addition, malignant cell types undergo massive autophagosomes and eventually cell death when responding to anticancer agents and traditional herbs indicate the potential utility of autophagic cell death induction in cancer therapy [173, 271, 272]. Autophagic cell death characterized by an increase in the number of autophagic vacuoles in the cytoplasm, followed by cell demise has been observed in various diseases such as Alzheimer's disease [273], Huntington's disease [274–277], and Parkinson's disease [278]. Thus, manipulation of autophagy is considered an attractive strategy to increase the efficacy of cancer treatments, prevent cancer development, and limit tumor progression.

However, autophagy is divergent in nature in both tumor suppression and tumor progression [279]. Although the argument supports that if cells cannot activate autophagy, protein synthesis will predominate over protein degradation and cellular growth continues (typical characteristic of tumor cells), that was not the case for most. For example, a study in human epidermoid lung carcinoma cells revealed that the autophagic pathway in response to nutrient deprivation is not downregulated when compared to their normal counterparts [280]. Human colon cancer cells which are able to survive for long period of time in the absence of nutrients have a high rate of autophagic activity [281]. Studies in colorectal cancer cells revealed that these cancerous cells harbor functional autophagic machinery to prolong cell survival during shortages of nutrients [282]. A study by Fuji and coworkers has also shown that strong LC3 expression in the peripheral area of pancreatic cancer tissue is correlated with poor outcome and short disease-free period [283]. Activated autophagy observed in pancreatic cancer cells is thought to be a response to factors in the cancer microenvironment, such as hypoxia and poor nutrient supply. In addition, autophagy was found to be upregulated in RAS-transformed cancer cells to promote cancer cells growth, survival, tumorigenesis, invasion, and metastases [284–286]. Upregulation of autophagy in cancer cells is caused by direct activation of the transcription factors of the microphthalmia-associated transcription factor (MiTF)/TFE family that control autophagy and lysosomal biogenesis or by removal of a repressive phosphorylation on the autophagy initiation machinery [286–288].

In lung cancer, deletion of *Atg7* dramatically alters tumor pathology from carcinomas to that of benign oncocytomas [289, 290]. ATG7-deficient tumors accumulate dysfunctional mitochondria and prematurely induce p53 and proliferative arrest. As defective mitochondria is a major autophagy substrate, this indicates that benign human tumors manifest a phenotype of defective autophagy, perhaps explaining their benign status [286]. Autophagy has been identified as the key mechanism of cell survival in estrogen receptor-positive (ER+) breast cancer cells undergoing treatment with 4-hydroxytamoxifen (4-OHT) [291]. Antiestrogen therapy is the standard treatment for ER+ breast cancers which improves overall survival and provides chemoprevention [292, 293]. Unfortunately, approximately half of the women treated with antiestrogen therapy either do not respond or their breast cancer ultimately acquires resistance during treatment [294, 295]. Studies have shown that autophagic activity reduces the efficacy of chemotherapy and tamoxifen therapy in ER+ breast cancer cells [291, 296, 297], supporting the thesis that blocking autophagy signaling pathways may provide a new mechanism of anticancer therapy for resistant tumors.

In another example, electron microscopy examination of autophagic vesicles in melanoma tumors from 12 patients enrolled in a Phase II clinical trial of temozolomide and sorafenib therapy revealed that autophagic index (mean number of autophagic vacuoles per cell) is significantly higher in patients who derived little or no clinical

benefit from the combination of temozolomide and sorafenib treatment. Patients who had stable disease or responded to therapy had low levels of autophagy in their tumors. These findings further validate the preclinical evidence that autophagy plays a critical role in resistance to chemotherapy. Results of this study indicate that pretreatment levels of autophagy can predict resistance to therapy. Patients with aggressive melanoma are more likely to have higher levels of autophagy in their tumor and therefore may respond to autophagy inhibition as a therapeutic strategy [298]. Hence, the divergent nature of autophagy has resulted in strategies for using proautophagics or autophagy inhibitors depending on the inherent nature of the cancer involved.

18.8 Autophagy Signaling Pathways and Therapeutic Strategies in Cancer

18.8.1 mTOR Signaling Pathway Inhibitors

Rapamycin (Sirolimus) as the first prototype of an mTOR inhibitor has poor aqueous solubility and strong immunosuppressive properties. Therefore, its utilization at doses capable of exerting anticancer effects is rather limited [299]. Nevertheless, trials utilizing rapamycin as a single agent or combination therapy are still being carried out. In a Phase I study of rapamycin and sunitinib in patients with advanced NSCLC, combination of rapamycin and sunitinib is reported to be well tolerated and has warranted further investigation in Phase II trials [300]. However, the same was not observed in another recent study. Combination of sunitinib and rapamycin was observed to be quite toxic in all cohorts of patients with refractory solid malignancies [93]. The addition of rapamycin was thought to be able to decrease the sunitinib-induced VEGF production, but on the contrary, VEGF levels went further up along with sunitinib and rapamycin administration; it only came down during the sunitinib-off weeks [93]. However, in another recent Phase I trial, combination of oral rapamycin, topotecan, and cyclophosphamide was well tolerated in patients with relapsed/refractory solid tumors. Biomarker studies demonstrated modulation of angiogenic pathways with reduction of thrombospondin-1 and soluble vascular endothelial growth factor receptor-2 levels, respectively [92]. Several Phase II trials with rapamycin in combination therapy are currently recruiting patients with bladder, thyroid, prostate, and central nervous system (CNS) tumors (Table 18.1).

Various rapamycin analogues have since been developed. Temsirolimus (CCI-779) is the first mTOR inhibitor approved by the US FDA for cancer treatment, and is considered a first-line treatment for patients with advanced renal cell carcinoma (RCC) with poor prognostic features [301]. A number of clinical trials were carried out for this drug, mainly as combination therapy with other chemotherapy drugs. Moderate clinical activity was observed in patients with bone and soft-tissue sarcoma given a combination of temsirolimus and cixutumumab in a Phase II trial [302] and in patients with metastatic adrenocortical carcinoma, the same combination therapy resulted in 40% of patients achieving prolonged stable disease [303]. Similarly, in a recent Phase I study of temsirolimus in combination with cetuximab in patients with advanced solid tumours, both the median PFS and overall survival (OS) were <1 year and less than half of the patients had stable disease at the end of the trial, indicating modest clinical activity [94].

In another recent Phase I study combining perifosine (an Akt inhibitor) and temsirolimus, although stable disease was seen in 9 of 11 subjects with high-grade gliomas, no partial or complete responses were achieved [95]. However, the combination of these Akt and mTOR inhibitors was considered safe and feasible in patients with recurrent/refractory pediatric solid tumors [95]. When temsirolimus was tested as a single therapy in patients with relapsed or refractory primary CNS lymphoma in a Phase II trial, complete response was seen in five patients (13.5%), partial response in 12 patients (32.4%), and an overall response rate of just 54% [98]. In platinum-refractory/resistant ovarian cancer or

advanced/recurrent endometrial carcinoma, although temsirolimus treatment was well tolerated, it did not meet the predefined efficacy criteria [99]. Phase I and Phase II clinical trials with temsirolimus and sorafenib carried out in patients with metastatic melanoma did not produce sufficient activity to justify further use [304, 305]. Similarly, in a Phase II trial for metastatic colorectal cancer, temsirolimus had limited efficacy in chemotherapy-resistant KRAS mutant disease [306].

Everolimus is another rapamycin analogue which was already approved as an anticancer agent. Everolimus (RAD001; rapamycin derivative 001) is a hydroxyethyl ether derivative of rapamycin that has been developed for oral administration [307]. This drug was approved by FDA for use in a variety of cancers, including advanced renal cell carcinoma, advanced pancreatic neuroendocrine tumors, renal angiomyolipoma, and HER2-negative breast cancer. Everolimus is structurally similar to temsirolimus, binds to an intracellular protein, FKBP12, forming a complex that inhibits the mTOR kinase. In a recent Phase I trial to assess safety and efficacy of everolimus in combination with liposomal doxorubicin and bevacizumab in patients with advanced metaplastic triple negative breast cancer, only patients with the presence of PI3K pathway aberration were associated with a significant improvement in objective response rate, but not the clinical benefit rate [101]. A randomized Phase II study indicated that combination therapy of everolimus with tamoxifen increased the clinical benefit rate (defined as the percentage of all patients with complete or partial response or stable disease at 6 months), time to progression (TTP), and overall survival compared with tamoxifen alone in postmenopausal women with aromatase inhibitor-resistant metastatic breast cancer [308]. Further Phase III trials in combination therapy with aromatase inhibitors and adjuvant hormone therapy in hormone receptor positive metastatic cancer are currently underway.

Everolimus given for 14 days in combination with R-CHOP-21 (rituximab plus cyclophosphamide, doxorubicin, vincristine, and prednisone delivered in a 21-day cycle) in patients with diffuse large B-cell lymphoma was proven to be safe. A total 23 of 24 patients achieved an overall response, and all 23 attained a complete metabolic response by PET, suggesting that drugs that target the PI3K-mTORC pathway added benefit when combined with standard R-CHOP [102]. The combination of everolimus plus CHOP was also effective in patients who are newly diagnosed with peripheral T-cell lymphomas, with objective response rate up to 90% [110]. The combination of mFOLFOX6 and everolimus in patients with metastatic gastroesophageal adenocarcinoma was also considered to be an active regimen with 83% of the patients experiencing a partial response [103]. Everolimus as a single therapy has demonstrated clinically relevant antitumor activity in patients with advanced differentiated thyroid cancer; median PFS and OS were 9 and 18 months, respectively [108].

Ridaforolimus (deforolimus or AP23573) has been tested in Phase I and Phase II clinical trials, and has shown promising results in several tumor types including sarcoma [299, 309]. Ridaforolimus received fast track and orphan drug status from the US FDA, as well as orphan status from the European Medicines Agency. Latest Phase I trials indicate that ridaforolimus as single therapy or in combination with other chemotherapy drugs was safe and well-tolerated [113, 114]. However, in a previous Phase II trial study on the efficacy and safety of single-agent ridaforolimus in patients with relapsed or refractory hematologic malignancies, results were unremarkable. Of the 52 patients evaluated, partial responses were noted in five subjects, while hematologic improvement and stable disease were observed in less than half of the patients [310]. In addition, the combination of ridaforolimus and dalotuzumab was no more effective than exemestane in patients with advanced ER-positive breast cancer, and the incidence of adverse events was higher [116]. Thus, the combination was not further pursued.

PI3K/Akt/mTOR pathway is often constitutively activated in human tumor cells and thus has been considered as a promising drug target. BEZ235 is a potent imidazo (4,5-c) quinoline

derivative that inhibits PI3K and mTOR kinase activities by binding to the ATP-binding cleft of these enzymes, and induces G1 arrest [311]. Preclinical studies have suggested that BEZ235 is a potent dual PI3K/mTOR modulator with favorable pharmaceutical properties. For example, it inhibits VEGF-induced HUVEC cell proliferation and survival in vitro and VEGF-induced angiogenesis in vivo [312]. The compound also inhibits microvessel permeability in BN472 mammary carcinoma grown orthotopically in syngeneic rats, suggesting that this compound is potentially antiangiogenic [312]. Deregulated angiogenesis and high tumor vasculature permeability are known VEGF-mediated characteristics of human tumors. In addition, BEZ235 is found to produce significant tumor growth inhibition in xenograft models of pancreatic cancers and breast cancer cells [313, 314]. However, in a Phase II trial of the BEZ235 in patients with everolimus-resistant pancreatic neuroendocrine tumours, BEZ235 was poorly tolerated by patients. Although evidence of disease stability was observed, the study did not proceed to stage two [117]. Similarly, BEZ235 showed modest clinical activity and an unfavorable toxicity profile in patients with advanced and pretreated transitional cell carcinoma, with just a minority of patients experienced a clinical benefit [118]. Several Phase I/II clinical trials of BEZ235 in patients with advanced solid malignancies such as prostate and breast cancer were completed, but reports on the safety and efficacy of this drug have yet to be published.

18.8.2 Proautophagics

Temozolomide is the first proautophagic cytotoxic drug used to overcome apoptosis resistance in cancer cells, and was approved for use in glioblastoma multiforme (GBM) [119]. It has demonstrated therapeutic benefits in patients with glioblastoma, and has been evaluated for several types of apoptosis-resistant cancers [315]. Temozolomide is a prodrug, a monofunctional alkylating agent, and is chemically related to dacarbazine. It is the 3-methyl derivative of the experimental anticancer drug, mitozolomide. The ability of temozolomide in inducing autophagic cell death was reported in various preclinical studies [316–319]. In addition, temozolomide has demonstrated proapoptotic activities in malignant melanoma cells [320]. In a systematic assessment of three randomized controlled trials addressing whether temozolomide holds any advantage over conventional therapy for high-grade gliomas, it was shown that temozolomide is an effective therapy for GBM. The drug prolongs survival, delays disease progression, and has a low incidence of early adverse events [321]. Similar outcomes were observed in a Phase II study involving erlotinib in combination with radiation therapy and temozolomide to treat GBM and gliosarcoma. Patients treated with the combination of erlotinib and temozolomide during and following radiotherapy had better survival than historical controls [322].

In a later Phase II trial, patients with unresectable or multifocal glioblastoma, an upfront regimen of temozolomide and bevacizumab was well tolerated, and provided a significant level of disease stabilization [323]. In patients with recurrent glioblastoma, either used as a single agent in a dose-intense schedule or in combination with other chemotherapeutic agents, temozolomide was proven to be well tolerated and safe [324–326]. In pediatric patients with recurrent solid tumors or brain tumors, low-dose temozolomide improved tolerability and was convenient as outpatient therapy [327]. However, in a recent Phase II trial, bevacizumab plus irinotecan combination resulted in a superior PFS-6 rate and median PFS compared with temozolomide in patients with glioblastoma that harbors a nonmethylated O(6)-methylguanine DNA methyltransferase promoter [124]. Patients with an O(6)-methylguanine–DNA methyltransferase (MGMT) nonmethylated (nmMGMT) glioblastoma (GBM) have a particularly short median survival of 12.6 months and do not substantially benefit from temozolomide chemotherapy [124, 328].

The combination of adjuvant temozolomide and lomustine, an alkylating agent, was associated with a significant improvement in OS and event-free survival (EFS) compared with adju-

vant temozolomide alone in the Children's Oncology Group ACNS0126 study [125]. This effect was most apparent in patients whose tumors had MGMT overexpression, as well as those who did not undergo gross-total resection and in those with glioblastomas. In a current Phase II study, neoadjuvant temozolomide was associated with an encouraging favorable long-term survival with acceptable toxicity in patients with glioblastoma [131]. Temozolomide in combination with vorinostat was also well tolerated in children with recurrent CNS malignancies with myelosuppression [329]. Vorinostat is a broad inhibitor of histone deacetylase (HDAC) activity which induces apoptosis, inhibits angiogenesis, and downregulates immunosuppressive interleukins. Several Phase III trials using temozolomide in combination with targeted monoclonal antibodies or interferon-alpha in glioblastomas and high-grade gliomas are currently recruiting patients (Table 18.1).

However, poor therapeutic effects were observed in patients with NSCLC. In a current efficacy and safety study of temozolomide in a total of 31 pretreated patients with NSCLC, only two patients achieved partial response and three had stable disease [330]. Moreover, the researchers pointed out that prolonged low daily doses of temozolomide produce minimal activity in patients with advanced NSCLC. In a recent Phase II study, combination therapy of pemetrexed and temozolomide group achieved the same efficacy in PFS and OS as the pemetrexed and cisplatin group, but with less toxicity. High-dose pemetrexed plus temozolomide may be a better regimen for treating NSCLC with brain metastasis due to its better safety profile [126]. A further Phase III study in patients with extensive small-cell lung cancer is currently underway.

Arsenic trioxide (ATO) has recently been introduced as part of a regimen in the therapy and management of acute promyelocytic leukemia (APL) [331]. It is now considered to be "the most biologically active single drug in APL" by a panel of International Leukemia Experts for the European Leukemia Net. The North American Intergroup Study Cancer and Leukemia Group B (CALGB) 9710 demonstrated that adults with APL receiving two cycles of ATO consolidation had significantly improved OS and decreased relapse risk (RR) [332]. It also achieves great success as a single agent and in combination with all-trans retinoic acid (ATRA) in the treatment of APL.

Arsenic trioxide (ATO) is known to induce both autophagy and apoptosis depending on cell types; therefore, its role as an autophagy inducer remains largely uncertain. In some preclinical trials, ATO induces the autophagy pathway in ovarian carcinoma cells, and synergizes with everolimus to induce the cytotoxicity of ovarian cancer cells. The enhanced cytotoxicity is accompanied by the upregulation of ATG5-ATG12 conjugate and LC3-II, a hallmark of autophagy [333]. In another recent study, ATO induces the autophagic degradation of the BCR-ABL1 oncoprotein, known to cause chronic myeloid leukemia (CML) and Ph+ acute lymphoblastic leukemia (ALL) [334]. However in other studies, in the presence or absence of ionizing radiation and in specific low concentrations, ATO induces apoptosis in MTLn3 cells, known to be highly malignant and resistant to both radio- and chemotherapy [335]. Interestingly, in human glioma cells, ATO induces both autophagy and apoptosis in vitro and in vivo, mediated by the inhibition of PI3K/Akt and activation of MAPK signaling pathway [336].

In a Phase I clinical study, ATO given concomitantly with radiation therapy in children with newly diagnosed anaplastic astrocytoma, glioblastoma, or diffuse intrinsic pontine glioma, was safe and well tolerated by patients throughout the entire dose escalation [337]. ATO was also reported to be well tolerated when used in combination with temozolomide and radiotherapy in malignant gliomas [338], or when used in combination with bortezomib, high-dose melphalan, and ascorbic acid in multiple myeloma (MM) patients [339]. A Phase II study to evaluate the efficacy and feasibility of a sequential treatment consisting of induction and consolidation with ATO followed by autologous hematopoietic cell transplantation for relapsed APL revealed that ATO demonstrates outstanding efficacy. Of the 23 patients who underwent autologous hema-

topoietic cell transplantation with PML-RARα-negative PBSC graft, posttransplant relapse occurred only in three patients, and there was no transplant-related mortality. The 5-year event-free and overall survival rates were 65% and 77%, respectively [340].

A recent study showed that the combination of ATO and ATRA exerts at least equal and probably superior antileukemic efficacy compared with ATRA and standard chemotherapy in low- and intermediate-risk APL [136]. In a Phase III study in which a chemotherapy-free ATRA and ATO treatment regimen was compared with the standard chemotherapy-based regimen (ATRA and idarubicin) in both high-risk and low-risk patients with APL, ATRA and ATO have a high cure rate and less relapse and a lower incidence of liver toxicity [138]. Similarly, a recent Phase III trial showed that ATRA-ATO had an edge over ATRA-chemotherapy over time and that there was significantly greater and more sustained antileukemic efficacy in low- and intermediate-risk APL [139]. ATO consolidation cycles are well tolerated in pediatric patients with APL and allow significant reduction in cumulative anthracycline doses while maintaining excellent survival and a low relapse risk for both standard and high-risk patients with APL [140]. Other Phase III clinical trials using ATO as combination therapy with other chemotherapy drugs and/or tretinoin are currently ongoing for APL.

18.8.3 Autophagy Inhibitors

The knowledge that autophagy plays a role as a cell survival pathway in response to therapeutic and cellular stresses in the tumor microenvironment (which is highly acidic and hypoxic) implies that autophagy may work in favor of cancer cells. Therefore, inhibition of protective autophagy may break the resistance mechanism for survival of the harsh tumor microenvironment and lead to cell death [341]. Since autophagy activities are known to differ according to stages of cancer, modulation of autophagy is postulated to enhance efficacy of anticancer therapy. In a preclinical study, effects of imatinib, with or without different types of autophagy inhibitors, on human malignant glioma cells were investigated [342]. It was demonstrated that suppression of imatinib-induced autophagy by 3-methyladenine (3-MA) or siRNA against ATG5 (which inhibits autophagy at an early stage) attenuates the imatinib-induced cytotoxicity. On the other hand, inhibition of autophagy at a late stage by bafilomycin A1 or RTA 203 enhances imatinib-induced cytotoxicity through the induction of apoptosis [342]. The therapeutic efficiency of imatinib may be augmented by inhibition of autophagy at a late stage, which could help sensitize the glioma cells to anticancer therapy [342].

The current autophagy inhibitors used in trials for human cancer are chloroquine (CQ) and hydroxychloroquine (HCQ). Both drugs are widely used as antimalarial agents and have gained much attention as potential chemosensitizers in treating tumors when used in combination with cytotoxic chemotherapeutic agents [343–345]. CQ inhibits lysosomal acidification and prevents autophagy by blocking autophagosome fusion and degradation [344, 346, 347]. CQ also sensitizes cancer cells to chemotherapeutic agents through autophagy-independent mechanisms and has other anticancer effects that are independent of its effects on autophagy [348].

A number of clinical trials have revealed the promising role of CQ, an autophagy inhibitor, as a novel antitumor drug. In an early glioblastoma study, where patients were treated with CQ in conjunction with radiation and temozolomide, the results showed a significantly prolonged median survival compared with controls [349]. Addition of CQ to conventional treatment for GBM also improves mid-term survival of patients [350]. Gemcitabine–CQ combination as a first- or late-line treatment in patients with metastatic or unresectable pancreatic cancer is well tolerated and shows promising effects on the clinical response [141]. A number of Phase I/II trials in solid tumors such as breast cancer are currently recruiting patients.

Although initial glioblastoma studies that used CQ in combination with chemotherapy and radiation therapy revealed median survival greater than control, there was no significant

improvement in survival of patients with glioblastoma treated with HCQ [145]. A Phase II trial of HCQ as a single agent in patients with previously treated metastatic pancreatic cancer demonstrated no clinical benefit and provided inconsistent evidence of autophagy inhibition [147]. Since this study was carried out in patients with advance disease, thus, there was a limitation for HCQ to improve end-stage disease outcome [348]. The results appear to be similar to an earlier Phase I study involving patients with advanced NSCLC. Although HCQ, with or without erlotinib, was found to be safe and well tolerated, the overall response rate was as low as 5% [351]. In other Phase I/II trials, HCQ in combination therapy with other drugs such as temozolomide, vorinostat, bortezomib, and gemcitabine are proven to be safe and tolerable among patients with advanced solid tumors and myeloma [142–144, 146]. So far, clinical trials of CQ and HCQ as autophagy inhibitors have demonstrated the safety of targeting autophagy for cancer therapy. More potent and autophagy-specific inhibitors such as Lys05 and drugs that target ULK1, VPS34, and ATG4B are in development and early preclinical stage [348]. Table 18.1 summarizes the various drugs targeting the autophagy pathways and clinical trial stages based on published reports as well as other trials listed in the NIH ClinicalTrials.gov website.

18.9 Crosstalk in ER Stress, Autophagy, and Apoptosis

Many cellular processes including apoptosis, autophagy, translation, and energy metabolism are controlled by the ER stress and mTOR signaling pathway. However, the crosstalk among these three signaling pathways has been identified only recently. It has been shown that Akt inactivation mediates ER stress-induced cell death. Long-term exposure to ER stress dephosphorylates Akt, induces DDIT3 expression, and causes cell death. Treatment with PI3K inhibitor alone also decreases phosphorylation of Akt, upregulates DDIT3 expression, and causes cell death, suggesting that PI3K/Akt inhibition specifically induces DDIT3 expression. Thus, Akt inactivation is important in ER stress-induced DDIT3 expression and cell death [352]. In addition, ER stress-induced apoptosis has been reported to be partly mediated by reduced insulin signaling through reduced Akt phosphorylation and increased glycogen synthase kinase 3β (GSK3β) activity. GSK3β is a proapoptotic Akt substrate whose activity is inhibited by Akt phosphorylation [353]. Prolonged ER stress has been shown to inhibit Akt/TSC/mTOR pathway, induce DDIT3 expression, and trigger apoptosis cell death [354]. On the other hand, ER stress negatively regulates Akt/TSC/mTOR pathway to enhance autophagy-mediated cell death [355].

It has been suggested that ER stress promotes autophagy and/or apoptosis via TRIB3-dependent inhibition of Akt/mTOR pathway [49, 50]. It was also proposed that ATF4 negatively regulates mTOR via DNA damage inducible transcript 4 (DDIT4, also known as Redd1) expression in response to ER stress. DDIT4 is a cellular stress responsive gene that has been shown to inhibit mTOR activity [356, 357]. ER stress also leads to CaMKKβ-dependent activation of AMPK, which ultimately leads to inhibition of mTOR and stimulation of autophagy [358]. In addition, it has been demonstrated that ER stress induces BIP expression and promotes an interaction between BIP and Akt. The physical interaction between BIP and Akt at the plasma membrane of cells following induction of ER stress prevents Akt phosphorylation [359]. To sum up, these observations suggest that ER stress may negatively regulate Akt and/or mTOR activity via various pathways, and ultimately leads to cell death.

It is also widely accepted that reactive oxygen species (ROS) generation precedes downstream cellular cascades, including those that determine cell fate either survival (autophagy) or death (apoptosis). Excessive ROS production disrupts the electron transport chain and produces reactive oxygen molecules, leading to depolarization of the mitochondrial membrane and initiation of mitochondria-induced apoptosis. However, ROS generation has also been shown to occur downstream after apoptotic stimulation (TRAIL-induced), or autophagy inhibition [360–362]. However, cell

fate outcomes are largely dependent on the amount of ROS generated and the cell's antioxidant response. During starvation, reactive oxygen molecules are produced as a result of Class III PI3K activation that stimulates autophagy through oxidation of ATG4, ultimately increasing the formation of lipidated LC3-rich autophagosomes [363]. Both $O2^-$ and $H2O2^-$ induce autophagy through AMPK activation and subsequent mTOR inhibition, and by transcriptional regulation of autophagy genes such as SQSTM1 (p62) and BECN1 [364–366]. A number of studies have similarly demonstrated that exogenously applied ROS leads to autophagy induction or apoptosis.

Functional relationships between apoptosis and autophagy are gaining much interest, as both cell deaths are not mutually exclusive. Perturbations in the apoptotic machinery, such as caspase inhibition, have been reported to induce both autophagic cell death and necroptosis [367, 368]. Inhibition of autophagy in cancer cells results in an accelerated cell death that manifests the hallmarks of apoptosis including chromatin condensation, MOMP, and activation of caspases [369]. In some cases, mixed phenotypes of both autophagy and apoptosis are detected in response to common stimuli [346, 369]. Studies in a variety of experimental systems indicate that autophagic cell death is likely to be context- and cell type-dependent. Autophagy can delay the onset of apoptosis following starvation, DNA damage, and hemodynamic stress [173]. For example, 1-day fasting causes liver autophagy in rats, but when starvation is prolonged for a few days, hepatocytes succumb to apoptosis [370]. Similarly, hematopoietic cell lines withdrawn from growth factor first activate autophagy, and eventually apoptosis [167]. Studies have also demonstrated that certain compounds have the ability to trigger both apoptosis and autophagic cell deaths simultaneously in cancer cells [371, 372]. Blocking of one pathway will trigger the activation of another [373]. Researchers have also hypothesized that there are factors (either external or internal) that may affect the preferential shunting into either biochemical cascades that will ultimately result in either apoptosis or autophagic cell death [374].

Crosstalks between autophagy and apoptosis exist at multiple levels because both pathways share mediators and pathway regulators. Several signals and pathways involved in autophagy are in common with apoptosis. Starvation and oxidative stress can trigger both apoptosis and autophagy. BCL-2 proteins function to inhibit both apoptosis and autophagy, providing another clue to the interplay between both processes. BECN1, the essential autophagy protein and haploinsufficient tumor suppressor, interacts with several cofactors such as AMBRA1, BIF-1, and UVRAG to activate the lipid kinase Class III PI3K, and induce autophagy [375]. In normal conditions, BECN1 is bound to and inhibited by BCL-2 or the BCL-2 homologue BCL-X_L, well-characterized apoptosis regulators, which involve an interaction between the BH3 domain in BECN1 and the BH3 binding groove of BCL-2/BCL-X_L. BH3-only proteins can competitively disrupt the interaction between BECN1 and BCL-2/BCL-X_L to induce autophagy. Nutrient starvation can stimulate the dissociation of BECN1 from its inhibitors, either by activating BH3-only proteins (such as BAD) or by post-translational modifications of BCL-2 (such as phosphorylation) that may reduce its affinity for BECN1 and BH3-only proteins [375]. Antiapoptotic BCL-2 family members participate in the inhibition of autophagy, whereas the proapoptotic BH3-only proteins participate in the induction of autophagy.

A recent finding suggests a link between autophagy and the extrinsic apoptotic pathway mediated by p62/SQSTM1. Autophagy is recently known to be responsible in selective degradation of polyubiquitinated proteins via SQSTM1, which encodes for p62 protein. P62 interacts with LC3 via its LC3 interacting region (LIR). Recent studies indicate that p62 is recruited to damaged mitochondria via binding to ubiquitinated outer mitochondrial membrane proteins, suggesting that p62 may serve as an autophagy receptor for ubiquitinated proteins and damaged mitochondria [376–378]. In addition to its role in autophagy, p62 mediates a cell's decision to undergo apoptosis or survival through its organization of signaling complexes in the cyto-

plasm [377, 379, 380]. Upon cytokine stimulation, p62 activates the NF-κB pathway, which subsequently induces the prosurvival genes, such as antiapoptotic and cell proliferation genes, and induces the expression of inflammatory genes such as cytokines, chemokines, and adhesion molecules [380–383]. However, p62 is also found to activate caspase-8 in the extrinsic apoptosis pathway, resulting in the initiation of apoptosis and cell death [379].

The expression of Patched (Ptc) induces apoptosis, but this activity is suppressed by its ligand, sonic hedgehog (SHH). Interestingly, hedgehog inhibition is found to induce autophagy through upregulation of BNIP3, and is also found to increase apoptosis in hepatocellular carcinoma cells at the same time [384]. In a recent study, apoptosis suppressed by the knocking down of PP2A can be reversed by the administration of 3-MA, a known autophagy inhibitor. The elevated accumulation of LC3-II and the decline of the autophagy substrate p62 are also observed in PP2Ac-small interfering RNA transfected cells. However, overexpression of PP2Ac suppresses the accumulation of LC3-II and restores p62 [385]. Interestingly, 3-MA increases cell death induced by diamindichloridoplatin (DDP), which suggests the protective function of autophagy in DDP-induced cell death [385].

18.10 Future Directions

There are increasing evidences that three major processes, i.e., apoptosis, ER stress, and autophagy, share overlapping molecular pathways and can occur in parallel under similar conditions. Fundamental knowledge in apoptosis, ER stress, and autophagy has also generated a great deal of insight into the pathogenesis of cancer, and has provided important considerations in strategizing cancer pharmacotherapy. Much effort and investment have been devoted to experimental drugs modulating apoptosis, ER stress, and autophagy. A number of drugs have proven to be promising during preclinical and clinical studies, but these drugs appear to be effective in one type of cancer and not in other. The percentage of patients who totally responded or partially responded to these treatments, either as single agent or in combination therapies, is relatively low, even though the outcome of these trials suggests some potential. These unforeseen effects are probably due to the specific-targeted nature of the therapy, in addition to the interconnected relationships between these cell death pathways. The contradictory role of autophagy and the status of autophagy in the human tumors concerned remain speculative, and further complicate the response to conventional anticancer treatment.

Currently, modulating apoptosis, ER stress, and autophagy by various means may be an important strategy to fight against the disease. Cancers which are resistant to the apoptotic effects of certain chemotherapy drugs may be sensitive to drugs that evoke ER stress or autophagic cell deaths. An intact autophagy pathway has a role in promoting carcinogenesis as well as in suppressing it. It also has a role in the development of resistance to treatment. Therefore, if autophagy response and activity are normal in tumors, combining standard chemotherapy drugs with autophagy inhibitors may sensitize tumor cells to anticancer agents. Cancer cells which present defects in the autophagy pathway may be managed by replacement of autophagy-inducing signals, e.g., proautophagics, or by inhibiting mTOR kinase. In some other cases, utilizing both autophagy and apoptosis inducers may present a deadly strategy against highly resistant tumors. Thus, devising personalized pharmacotherapeutic strategy based on the autophagy status of the tumors has become an attractive option and offers significant potential to be translated into the clinic.

Combination of anticancer drugs of many different classes with autophagy inhibitors and inducers is underway but with little rationale for deciding or selecting patients who are most likely to benefit from these therapies. So far, targeted drugs like oblimersen, bortezomib, and mTOR inhibitors such as everolimus and ridaforolimus have shown to be useful in some clinical trials. These novel classes of drugs appear to work synergistically in combination with other chemotherapeutics, and have also shown specific

activities against certain cancers. Clinical trials of CQ or HCQ as autophagy inhibitors have also demonstrated the safety of targeting autophagy for cancer therapy. Since these drugs are specifically targeted against certain molecules or receptors in the pathway, further unveiling of the tumor's characteristics such as receptor or protein status may be critical in assessing patient's response and clinical trial success. Furthermore, a number of known genes that play a role in these cell death pathways are either activated or inactivated in several cancers. This will certainly affect not only the promotion and progression of cancer, but also their response to treatment. Therefore, to optimize and personalize treatment strategies, the genetic profile of the tumors is important.

For example, RAS- and BRAF-mutant tumours are often associated with high levels of autophagy and exhibit autophagy dependency. These would be good markers to select patients in which autophagy can be inhibited therapeutically [285, 348, 386–388]. Other markers include signal transducer and activator of transcription 3 (STAT3) and IL6 in breast cancer cells [389], JNK1 in colon cancer [390], and EGFR-mutated or amplified tumors [391]. Some clinical trials have already used these markers to evaluate efficacy and for validation. This may provide information on the optimal point in the pathway to be targeted, and can also be identified as prognostic markers. At the same time, the development of both robust tissue markers and relevant techniques that can be used in the clinical context needs to occur along with novel treatments, which will be another challenge.

Although recent studies have incorporated some predictive biomarkers by examining tumor status, the utility of such practice remains non-conclusive. For example, the expression of peptidyl O-glycosyltransferase GaLNT14 has been proposed to be a potential marker of dulanermin or Apo2L/TRAIL activity in NSCLC as high GaLNT14 mRNA and protein expression in tumor cell lines are associated with Apo2L/TRAIL sensitivity [392]. An increase in PFS and OS was observed in GaLNT14-positive patients with advanced NSCLC in the dulanermin arm, indicating the potential predictive response biomarker for Apo2L/TRAIL-based cancer therapy [393]. On the other hand, in a Phase Ib/II trial on mapatumumab, a humanized mAb against TRAIL-R1, strong expression of TRAIL-R1 (indicated by immunohistochemical staining) did not appear to be a prerequisite for the effectiveness of mapatumumab in patients with relapsed or refractory follicular lymphoma [394]. Noteworthy, in the two patients who experienced a partial or complete response, the TRAIL-R1 staining was either undetected or weak [394]. However, this could be an isolated case, and trials with bigger sample size should be carried out. Tumor profiling would remain as a good strategy to identify patients who may respond to the relevant treatment.

Fundamental knowledge of cell death pathways remains an area of major interest among scientists in the field of cancer. More studies to characterize these pathways and identify potential targets, and further evaluation of the efficacy of the current drugs in various cancers are certainly warranted.

Acknowledgments The authors would like to acknowledge the Ministry of Energy, Science, Technology, Environment and Climate Change (MESTECC) for the Smartfund grant and USM for the Bridging Grant.

References

1. Bhat TA, Chaudhary AK, Kumar S, O'Malley J, Inigo JR, Kumar R, et al. Endoplasmic reticulum-mediated unfolded protein response and mitochondrial apoptosis in cancer. Biochim Biophys Acta. 2017;1867(1):58–66.
2. Sasaki K, Yoshida H. Organelle autoregulation-stress responses in the ER, Golgi, mitochondria and lysosome. J Biochem. 2015;157(4):185–95.
3. Wang M, Kaufman RJ. The impact of the endoplasmic reticulum protein-folding environment on cancer development. Nat Rev Cancer. 2014;14(9):581–97.
4. Corazzari M, Gagliardi M, Fimia GM, Piacentini M. Endoplasmic reticulum stress, unfolded protein response, and cancer cell fate. Front Oncol. 2017;7:78.
5. Verfaillie T, Salazar M, Velasco G, Agostinis P. Linking ER stress to autophagy: potential implications for cancer therapy. Int J Cell Biol. 2010;2010:930509.
6. Tu BP, Weissman JS. Oxidative protein folding in eukaryotes. J Cell Biol. 2004;164(3):341.

7. Oakes SA. Endoplasmic reticulum proteostasis: a key checkpoint in cancer. Am J Physiol Cell Physiol. 2017;312(2):C93–C102.
8. Schonthal AH. Pharmacological targeting of endoplasmic reticulum stress signaling in cancer. Biochem Pharmacol. 2013;85(5):653–66.
9. McCracken AA, Brodsky JL. Evolving questions and paradigm shifts in endoplasmic-reticulum-associated degradation (ERAD). BioEssays. 2003;25(9):868–77.
10. Meusser B, Hirsch C, Jarosch E, Sommer T. ERAD: the long road to destruction. Nat Cell Biol. 2005;7(8):766–72.
11. Hetz C. The unfolded protein response: controlling cell fate decisions under ER stress and beyond. Nat Rev Mol Cell Biol. 2012;13(2):89–102.
12. Oakes SA, Papa FR. The role of endoplasmic reticulum stress in human pathology. Annu Rev Pathol. 2015;10:173–94.
13. Shore GC, Papa FR, Oakes SA. Signaling cell death from the endoplasmic reticulum stress response. Curr Opin Cell Biol. 2011;23(2):143–9.
14. Ni M, Zhang Y, Lee AS. Beyond the endoplasmic reticulum: atypical GRP78 in cell viability, signalling and therapeutic targeting. Biochem J. 2011;434(2):181–8.
15. Chen X, Shen J, Prywes R. The luminal domain of ATF6 senses endoplasmic reticulum (ER) stress and causes translocation of ATF6 from the ER to the Golgi. J Biol Chem. 2002;277(15):13045–52.
16. Hetz C, Chevet E, Harding HP. Targeting the unfolded protein response in disease. Nat Rev Drug Discov. 2013;12(9):703–19.
17. Woehlbier U, Hetz C. Modulating stress responses by the UPRosome: a matter of life and death. Trends Biochem Sci. 2011;36(6):329–37.
18. Ron D. Translational control in the endoplasmic reticulum stress response. J Clin Invest. 2002;110(10):1383–8.
19. Novoa I, Zeng H, Harding HP, Ron D. Feedback inhibition of the unfolded protein response by GADD34-mediated dephosphorylation of eIF2alpha. J Cell Biol. 2001;153(5):1011–22.
20. Nishitoh H. CHOP is a multifunctional transcription factor in the ER stress response. J Biochem. 2012;151(3):217–9.
21. Ron D, Hubbard SR. How IRE1 reacts to ER stress. Cell. 2008;132(1):24–6.
22. Shaffer AL, Shapiro-Shelef M, Iwakoshi NN, Lee AH, Qian SB, Zhao H, et al. XBP1, downstream of Blimp-1, expands the secretory apparatus and other organelles, and increases protein synthesis in plasma cell differentiation. Immunity. 2004;21(1):81–93.
23. Urano F, Wang X, Bertolotti A, Zhang Y, Chung P, Harding HP, et al. Coupling of stress in the ER to activation of JNK protein kinases by transmembrane protein kinase IRE1. Science. 2000;287(5453):664–6.
24. Wu J, Rutkowski DT, Dubois M, Swathirajan J, Saunders T, Wang J, et al. ATF6alpha optimizes long-term endoplasmic reticulum function to protect cells from chronic stress. Dev Cell. 2007;13(3):351–64.
25. Yoshida H, Matsui T, Yamamoto A, Okada T, Mori K. XBP1 mRNA is induced by ATF6 and spliced by IRE1 in response to ER stress to produce a highly active transcription factor. Cell. 2001;107(7):881–91.
26. Schonthal AH. Endoplasmic reticulum stress and autophagy as targets for cancer therapy. Cancer Lett. 2009;275(2):163–9.
27. Schleicher SM, Moretti L, Varki V, Lu B. Progress in the unraveling of the endoplasmic reticulum stress/autophagy pathway and cancer: implications for future therapeutic approaches. Drug Resist Updat. 2010;13(3):79–86.
28. Rutkowski DT, Arnold SM, Miller CN, Wu J, Li J, Gunnison KM, et al. Adaptation to ER stress is mediated by differential stabilities of pro-survival and pro-apoptotic mRNAs and proteins. PLoS Biol. 2006;4(11):e374.
29. Lin JH, Li H, Zhang Y, Ron D, Walter P. Divergent effects of PERK and IRE1 signaling on cell viability. PLoS One. 2009;4(1):e4170.
30. McCullough KD, Martindale JL, Klotz LO, Aw TY, Holbrook NJ. Gadd153 sensitizes cells to endoplasmic reticulum stress by down-regulating Bcl2 and perturbing the cellular redox state. Mol Cell Biol. 2001;21(4):1249–59.
31. Szegezdi E, Logue SE, Gorman AM, Samali A. Mediators of endoplasmic reticulum stress-induced apoptosis. EMBO Rep. 2006;7(9):880–5.
32. Puthalakath H, O'Reilly LA, Gunn P, Lee L, Kelly PN, Huntington ND, et al. ER stress triggers apoptosis by activating BH3-only protein Bim. Cell. 2007;129(7):1337–49.
33. Zou W, Yue P, Khuri FR, Sun SY. Coupling of endoplasmic reticulum stress to CDDO-Me-induced up-regulation of death receptor 5 via a CHOP-dependent mechanism involving JNK activation. Cancer Res. 2008;68(18):7484–92.
34. Yamaguchi H, Wang HG. CHOP is involved in endoplasmic reticulum stress-induced apoptosis by enhancing DR5 expression in human carcinoma cells. J Biol Chem. 2004;279(44):45495–502.
35. Galehdar Z, Swan P, Fuerth B, Callaghan SM, Park DS, Cregan SP. Neuronal apoptosis induced by endoplasmic reticulum stress is regulated by ATF4-CHOP-mediated induction of the Bcl-2 homology 3-only member PUMA. J Neurosci. 2010;30(50):16938–48.
36. Hsin IL, Hsiao YC, Wu MF, Jan MS, Tang SC, Lin YW, et al. Lipocalin 2, a new GADD153 target gene, as an apoptosis inducer of endoplasmic reticulum stress in lung cancer cells. Toxicol Appl Pharmacol. 2012;263(3):330–7.
37. Ohoka N, Yoshii S, Hattori T, Onozaki K, Hayashi H. TRB3, a novel ER stress-inducible gene, is induced via ATF4-CHOP pathway and is involved in cell death. EMBO J. 2005;24(6):1243–55.
38. Bouchet BP. Caron de Fromentel C, Puisieux A, Galmarini CM. p53 as a target for anti-cancer drug development. Crit Rev Oncol Hematol. 2006;58(3):190–207.
39. Yu J, Zhang L. PUMA, a potent killer with or without p53. Oncogene. 2008;27(Suppl 1):S71–83.
40. Sung HK, Chan YK, Han M, Jahng JWS, Song E, Danielson E, et al. Lipocalin-2 (NGAL) attenu-

ates autophagy to exacerbate cardiac apoptosis induced by myocardial ischemia. J Cell Physiol. 2017;232(8):2125–34.
41. Saleem S, Biswas SC. Tribbles pseudokinase 3 induces both apoptosis and autophagy in amyloid-beta-induced neuronal death. J Biol Chem. 2017;292(7):2571–85.
42. Lu M, Lawrence DA, Marsters S, Acosta-Alvear D, Kimmig P, Mendez AS, et al. Opposing unfolded-protein-response signals converge on death receptor 5 to control apoptosis. Science. 2014;345(6192):98–101.
43. B'Chir W, Maurin AC, Carraro V, Averous J, Jousse C, Muranishi Y, et al. The eIF2alpha/ATF4 pathway is essential for stress-induced autophagy gene expression. Nucleic Acids Res. 2013;41(16):7683–99.
44. Healy SJ, Gorman AM, Mousavi-Shafaei P, Gupta S, Samali A. Targeting the endoplasmic reticulum-stress response as an anticancer strategy. Eur J Pharmacol. 2009;625(1–3):234–46.
45. De Chiara G, Marcocci ME, Torcia M, Lucibello M, Rosini P, Bonini P, et al. Bcl-2 phosphorylation by p38 MAPK: identification of target sites and biologic consequences. J Biol Chem. 2006;281(30):21353–61.
46. Pattingre S, Tassa A, Qu X, Garuti R, Liang XH, Mizushima N, et al. Bcl-2 antiapoptotic proteins inhibit Beclin 1-dependent autophagy. Cell. 2005;122(6):927–39.
47. Wang XZ, Ron D. Stress-induced phosphorylation and activation of the transcription factor CHOP (GADD153) by p38 MAP kinase. Science. 1996;272(5266):1347–9.
48. Morishima N, Nakanishi K, Nakano A. Activating transcription factor-6 (ATF6) mediates apoptosis with reduction of myeloid cell leukemia sequence 1 (Mcl-1) protein via induction of WW domain binding protein 1. J Biol Chem. 2011;286(40):35227–35.
49. Salazar M, Carracedo A, Salanueva ÍJ, Hernández-Tiedra S, Lorente M, Egia A, et al. Cannabinoid action induces autophagy-mediated cell death through stimulation of ER stress in human glioma cells. J Clin Invest. 2009;119(5):1359–72.
50. Zou CG, Cao XZ, Zhao YS, Gao SY, Li SD, Liu XY, et al. The molecular mechanism of endoplasmic reticulum stress-induced apoptosis in PC-12 neuronal cells: the protective effect of insulin-like growth factor I. Endocrinology. 2009;150(1):277–85.
51. Chen Y, Brandizzi F. IRE1: ER stress sensor and cell fate executor. Trends Cell Biol. 2013;23(11):547–55.
52. Tam AB, Koong AC, Niwa M. Ire1 has distinct catalytic mechanisms for XBP1/HAC1 splicing and RIDD. Cell Rep. 2014;9(3):850–8.
53. Pagliarini V, Giglio P, Bernardoni P, De Zio D, Fimia GM, Piacentini M, et al. Downregulation of E2F1 during ER stress is required to induce apoptosis. J Cell Sci. 2015;128(6):1166–79.
54. Dyson N. The regulation of E2F by pRB-family proteins. Genes Dev. 1998;12(15):2245–62.
55. DeGregori J, Johnson DG. Distinct and overlapping roles for E2F family members in transcription, proliferation and apoptosis. Curr Mol Med. 2006;6(7):739–48.
56. Hoyer-Hansen M, Jaattela M. Connecting endoplasmic reticulum stress to autophagy by unfolded protein response and calcium. Cell Death Differ. 2007;14(9):1576–82.
57. Szegezdi E, Macdonald DC, Ni Chonghaile T, Gupta S, Samali A. Bcl-2 family on guard at the ER. Am J Physiol Cell Physiol. 2009;296(5):C941–53.
58. Kroemer G, Galluzzi L, Brenner C. Mitochondrial membrane permeabilization in cell death. Physiol Rev. 2007;87(1):99–163.
59. Fels DR, Koumenis C. The PERK/eIF2alpha/ATF4 module of the UPR in hypoxia resistance and tumor growth. Cancer Biol Ther. 2006;5(7):723–8.
60. Shuda M, Kondoh N, Imazeki N, Tanaka K, Okada T, Mori K, et al. Activation of the ATF6, XBP1 and grp78 genes in human hepatocellular carcinoma: a possible involvement of the ER stress pathway in hepatocarcinogenesis. J Hepatol. 2003;38(5):605–14.
61. Ranganathan AC, Adam AP, Zhang L, Aguirre-Ghiso JA. Tumor cell dormancy induced by p38SAPK and ER-stress signaling: an adaptive advantage for metastatic cells? Cancer Biol Ther. 2006;5(7):729–35.
62. Romero-Ramirez L, Cao H, Nelson D, Hammond E, Lee AH, Yoshida H, et al. XBP1 is essential for survival under hypoxic conditions and is required for tumor growth. Cancer Res. 2004;64(17):5943–7.
63. Wu X, Xin Z, Zhang W, Zheng S, Wu J, Chen K, et al. A missense polymorphism in ATF6 gene is associated with susceptibility to hepatocellular carcinoma probably by altering ATF6 level. Int J Cancer. 2014;135(1):61–8.
64. Greenman C, Stephens P, Smith R, Dalgliesh GL, Hunter C, Bignell G, et al. Patterns of somatic mutation in human cancer genomes. Nature. 2007;446(7132):153–8.
65. Jabouille A, Delugin M, Pineau R, Dubrac A, Soulet F, Lhomond S, et al. Glioblastoma invasion and cooption depend on IRE1alpha endoribonuclease activity. Oncotarget. 2015;6(28):24922–34.
66. Tang ZH, Su MX, Guo X, Jiang XM, Jia L, Chen X, et al. Increased expression of IRE1alpha associates with the resistant mechanism of osimertinib (AZD9291)-resistant non-small cell lung cancer HCC827/OSIR cells. Anti-Cancer Agents Med Chem. 2018;18(4):550–5.
67. Wang WA, Groenendyk J, Michalak M. Endoplasmic reticulum stress associated responses in cancer. Biochim Biophys Acta. 2014;1843(10):2143–9.
68. Corazzari M, Lovat PE, Armstrong JL, Fimia GM, Hill DS, Birch-Machin M, et al. Targeting homeostatic mechanisms of endoplasmic reticulum stress to increase susceptibility of cancer cells to fenretinide-induced apoptosis: the role of stress proteins ERdj5 and ERp57. Br J Cancer. 2007;96(7):1062–71.
69. Vatolin S, Phillips JG, Jha BK, Govindgari S, Hu J, Grabowski D, et al. Novel protein disulfide isomerase inhibitor with anticancer activity in multiple myeloma. Cancer Res. 2016;76(11):3340–50.
70. Yu SJ, Yoon JH, Yang JI, Cho EJ, Kwak MS, Jang ES, et al. Enhancement of hexokinase II inhibitor-induced apoptosis in hepatocellular carcinoma cells via aug-

menting ER stress and anti-angiogenesis by protein disulfide isomerase inhibition. J Bioenerg Biomembr. 2012;44(1):101–15.
71. Xu S, Butkevich AN, Yamada R, Zhou Y, Debnath B, Duncan R, et al. Discovery of an orally active small-molecule irreversible inhibitor of protein disulfide isomerase for ovarian cancer treatment. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2012;109(40):16348–53.
72. Won JK, Yu SJ, Hwang CY, Cho SH, Park SM, Kim K, et al. Protein disulfide isomerase inhibition synergistically enhances the efficacy of sorafenib for hepatocellular carcinoma. Hepatology. 2017;66(3):855–68.
73. Foster CK, Thorpe C. Challenges in the evaluation of thiol-reactive inhibitors of human protein disulfide Isomerase. Free Radic Biol Med. 2017;108:741–9.
74. Bruning A, Burger P, Vogel M, Rahmeh M, Gingelmaiers A, Friese K, et al. Nelfinavir induces the unfolded protein response in ovarian cancer cells, resulting in ER vacuolization, cell cycle retardation and apoptosis. Cancer Biol Ther. 2009;8(3):226–32.
75. Pyrko P, Kardosh A, Wang W, Xiong W, Schonthal AH, Chen TC. HIV-1 protease inhibitors nelfinavir and atazanavir induce malignant glioma death by triggering endoplasmic reticulum stress. Cancer Res. 2007;67(22):10920–8.
76. Gills JJ, Lopiccolo J, Tsurutani J, Shoemaker RH, Best CJ, Abu-Asab MS, et al. Nelfinavir, A lead HIV protease inhibitor, is a broad-spectrum, anticancer agent that induces endoplasmic reticulum stress, autophagy, and apoptosis in vitro and in vivo. Clin Cancer Res. 2007;13(17):5183–94.
77. Wilson JM, Fokas E, Dutton SJ, Patel N, Hawkins MA, Eccles C, et al. ARCII: a phase II trial of the HIV protease inhibitor Nelfinavir in combination with chemoradiation for locally advanced inoperable pancreatic cancer. Radiother Oncol. 2016;119(2):306–11.
78. Driessen C, Kraus M, Joerger M, Rosing H, Bader J, Hitz F, et al. Treatment with the HIV protease inhibitor nelfinavir triggers the unfolded protein response and may overcome proteasome inhibitor resistance of multiple myeloma in combination with bortezomib: a phase I trial (SAKK 65/08). Haematologica. 2016;101(3):346–55.
79. Hill EJ, Roberts C, Franklin JM, Enescu M, West N, MacGregor TP, et al. Clinical trial of oral nelfinavir before and during radiation therapy for advanced rectal cancer. Clin Cancer Res. 2016;22(8):1922–31.
80. Hoover AC, Milhem MM, Anderson CM, Sun W, Smith BJ, Hoffman HT, et al. Efficacy of nelfinavir as monotherapy in refractory adenoid cystic carcinoma: results of a phase II clinical trial. Head Neck. 2015;37(5):722–6.
81. Mahalingam D, Wilding G, Denmeade S, Sarantopoulas J, Cosgrove D, Cetnar J, et al. Mipsagargin, a novel thapsigargin-based PSMA-activated prodrug: results of a first-in-man phase I clinical trial in patients with refractory, advanced or metastatic solid tumours. Br J Cancer. 2016;114(9):986–94.
82. Kopetz S, Desai J, Chan E, Hecht JR, O'Dwyer PJ, Maru D, et al. Phase II pilot study of vemurafenib in patients with metastatic BRAF-mutated colorectal cancer. J Clin Oncol. 2015;33(34):4032–8.
83. Blank CU, Larkin J, Arance AM, Hauschild A, Queirolo P, Del Vecchio M, et al. Open-label, multicentre safety study of vemurafenib in 3219 patients with BRAFV600 mutation-positive metastatic melanoma: 2-year follow-up data and long-term responders' analysis. Eur J Cancer. 2017;79:176–84.
84. Falchook GS, Long GV, Kurzrock R, Kim KB, Arkenau TH, Brown MP, et al. Dabrafenib in patients with melanoma, untreated brain metastases, and other solid tumours: a phase 1 dose-escalation trial. Lancet. 2012;379(9829):1893–901.
85. Hauschild A, Grob JJ, Demidov LV, Jouary T, Gutzmer R, Millward M, et al. Dabrafenib in BRAF-mutated metastatic melanoma: a multicentre, open-label, phase 3 randomised controlled trial. Lancet. 2012;380(9839):358–65.
86. Planchard D, Smit EF, Groen HJM, Mazieres J, Besse B, Helland A, et al. Dabrafenib plus trametinib in patients with previously untreated BRAFV600E-mutant metastatic non-small-cell lung cancer: an open-label, phase 2 trial. Lancet Oncol. 2017;18(10):1307–16.
87. Davies MA, Saiag P, Robert C, Grob JJ, Flaherty KT, Arance A, et al. Dabrafenib plus trametinib in patients with BRAFV600-mutant melanoma brain metastases (COMBI-MB): a multicentre, multicohort, open-label, phase 2 trial. Lancet Oncol. 2017;18(7):863–73.
88. Long GV, Flaherty KT, Stroyakovskiy D, Gogas H, Levchenko E, de Braud F, et al. Dabrafenib plus trametinib versus dabrafenib monotherapy in patients with metastatic BRAF V600E/K-mutant melanoma: long-term survival and safety analysis of a phase 3 study. Ann Oncol. 2017;28(7):1631–9.
89. Long GV, Eroglu Z, Infante J, Patel S, Daud A, Johnson DB, et al. Long-term outcomes in patients with BRAF v600-mutant metastatic melanoma who received dabrafenib combined with trametinib. J Clin Oncol. 2018;36(7):667–73.
90. Delord JP, Robert C, Nyakas M, McArthur GA, Kudchakar R, Mahipal A, et al. Phase I dose-escalation and -expansion study of the BRAF inhibitor encorafenib (LGX818) in metastatic BRAF-mutant melanoma. Clin Cancer Res. 2017;23(18):5339–48.
91. van Geel R, Tabernero J, Elez E, Bendell JC, Spreafico A, Schuler M, et al. A phase ib dose-escalation study of encorafenib and cetuximab with or without alpelisib in metastatic BRAF-mutant colorectal cancer. Cancer Discov. 2017;7(6):610–9.
92. Vo KT, Karski EE, Nasholm NM, Allen S, Hollinger F, Gustafson WC, et al. Phase 1 study of sirolimus in combination with oral cyclophosphamide and topotecan in children and young adults with relapsed and refractory solid tumors. Oncotarget. 2017;8(14):23851–61.

93. Li J, Kluger H, Devine L, Lee JJ, Kelly WK, Rink L, et al. Phase I study of safety and tolerability of sunitinib in combination with sirolimus in patients with refractory solid malignancies and determination of VEGF (VEGF-A) and soluble VEGF-R2 (sVEGFR2) in plasma. Cancer Chemother Pharmacol. 2016;77(6):1193–200.
94. Hollebecque A, Bahleda R, Faivre L, Adam J, Poinsignon V, Paci A, et al. Phase I study of temsirolimus in combination with cetuximab in patients with advanced solid tumours. Eur J Cancer. 2017;81:81–9.
95. Becher OJ, Gilheeney SW, Khakoo Y, Lyden DC, Haque S, De Braganca KC, et al. A phase I study of perifosine with temsirolimus for recurrent pediatric solid tumors. Pediatr Blood Cancer. 2017;64(7):e26409.
96. Waqar SN, Baggstrom MQ, Morgensztern D, Williams K, Rigden C, Govindan R. A phase I trial of temsirolimus and pemetrexed in patients with advanced non-small cell lung cancer. Chemotherapy. 2016;61(3):144–7.
97. Myers AP, Filiaci VL, Zhang Y, Pearl M, Behbakht K, Makker V, et al. Tumor mutational analysis of GOG248, a phase II study of temsirolimus or temsirolimus and alternating megestrol acetate and tamoxifen for advanced endometrial cancer (EC): an NRG oncology/gynecologic oncology group study. Gynecol Oncol. 2016;141(1):43–8.
98. Korfel A, Schlegel U, Herrlinger U, Dreyling M, Schmidt C, von Baumgarten L, et al. Phase II trial of temsirolimus for relapsed/refractory primary CNS lymphoma. J Clin Oncol. 2016;34(15):1757–63.
99. Emons G, Kurzeder C, Schmalfeldt B, Neuser P, de Gregorio N, Pfisterer J, et al. Temsirolimus in women with platinum-refractory/resistant ovarian cancer or advanced/recurrent endometrial carcinoma. A phase II study of the AGO-study group (AGO-GYN8). Gynecol Oncol. 2016;140(3):450–6.
100. Narayan V, Vapiwala N, Mick R, Subramanian P, Christodouleas JP, Bekelman JE, et al. Phase 1 trial of everolimus and radiation therapy for salvage treatment of biochemical recurrence in prostate cancer patients following prostatectomy. Int J Radiat Oncol Biol Phys. 2017;97(2):355–61.
101. Basho RK, Gilcrease M, Murthy RK, Helgason T, Karp DD, Meric-Bernstam F, et al. Targeting the PI3K/AKT/mTOR pathway for the treatment of mesenchymal triple-negative breast cancer: evidence from a phase 1 trial of mTOR inhibition in combination with liposomal doxorubicin and bevacizumab. JAMA Oncol. 2017;3(4):509–15.
102. Johnston PB, LaPlant B, McPhail E, Habermann TM, Inwards DJ, Micallef IN, et al. Everolimus combined with R-CHOP-21 for new, untreated, diffuse large B-cell lymphoma (NCCTG 1085 [Alliance]): safety and efficacy results of a phase 1 and feasibility trial. Lancet Haematol. 2016;3(7):e309–16.
103. Chung V, Frankel P, Lim D, Yeon C, Leong L, Chao J, et al. Phase Ib trial of mFOLFOX6 and everolimus (NSC-733504) in patients with metastatic gastroesophageal adenocarcinoma. Oncology. 2016;90(6):307–12.
104. Colon-Otero G, Weroha SJ, Foster NR, Haluska P, Hou X, Wahner-Hendrickson AE, et al. Phase 2 trial of everolimus and letrozole in relapsed estrogen receptor-positive high-grade ovarian cancers. Gynecol Oncol. 2017;146(1):64–8.
105. Rugo HS, Seneviratne L, Beck JT, Glaspy JA, Peguero JA, Pluard TJ, et al. Prevention of everolimus-related stomatitis in women with hormone receptor-positive, HER2-negative metastatic breast cancer using dexamethasone mouthwash (SWISH): a single-arm, phase 2 trial. Lancet Oncol. 2017;18(5):654–62.
106. Bennani NN, LaPlant BR, Ansell SM, Habermann TM, Inwards DJ, Micallef IN, et al. Efficacy of the oral mTORC1 inhibitor everolimus in relapsed or refractory indolent lymphoma. Am J Hematol. 2017;92(5):448–53.
107. Cirkel GA, Hamberg P, Sleijfer S, Loosveld OJL, Dercksen MW, Los M, et al. Alternating treatment with pazopanib and everolimus vs continuous pazopanib to delay disease progression in patients with metastatic clear cell renal cell cancer: the ROPETAR randomized clinical trial. JAMA Oncol. 2017;3(4):501–8.
108. Schneider TC, de Wit D, Links TP, van Erp NP, van der Hoeven JJ, Gelderblom H, et al. Everolimus in patients with advanced follicular-derived thyroid cancer: results of a phase II clinical trial. J Clin Endocrinol Metab. 2017;102(2):698–707.
109. Chow H, Ghosh PM, deVere White R, Evans CP, Dall'Era MA, Yap SA, et al. A phase 2 clinical trial of everolimus plus bicalutamide for castration-resistant prostate cancer. Cancer. 2016;122(12):1897–904.
110. Kim SJ, Shin DY, Kim JS, Yoon DH, Lee WS, Lee H, et al. A phase II study of everolimus (RAD001), an mTOR inhibitor plus CHOP for newly diagnosed peripheral T-cell lymphomas. Ann Oncol. 2016;27(4):712–8.
111. Armstrong AJ, Halabi S, Eisen T, Broderick S, Stadler WM, Jones RJ, et al. Everolimus versus sunitinib for patients with metastatic non-clear cell renal cell carcinoma (ASPEN): a multicentre, open-label, randomised phase 2 trial. Lancet Oncol. 2016;17(3):378–88.
112. Niikura N, Ota Y, Hayashi N, Naito M, Kashiwabara K, Watanabe K, et al. Evaluation of oral care to prevent oral mucositis in estrogen receptor-positive metastatic breast cancer patients treated with everolimus (oral care-BC): randomized controlled phase III trial. Jpn J Clin Oncol. 2016;46(9):879–82.
113. Chon HS, Kang S, Lee JK, Apte SM, Shahzad MM, Williams-Elson I, et al. Phase I study of oral ridaforolimus in combination with paclitaxel and carboplatin in patients with solid tumor cancers. BMC Cancer. 2017;17(1):407.
114. Pearson AD, Federico SM, Aerts I, Hargrave DR, DuBois SG, Iannone R, et al. A phase 1 study of oral

ridaforolimus in pediatric patients with advanced solid tumors. Oncotarget. 2016;7(51):84736–47.
115. Rugo HS, Tredan O, Ro J, Morales SM, Campone M, Musolino A, et al. A randomized phase II trial of ridaforolimus, dalotuzumab, and exemestane compared with ridaforolimus and exemestane in patients with advanced breast cancer. Breast Cancer Res Treat. 2017;165(3):601–9.
116. Baselga J, Morales SM, Awada A, Blum JL, Tan AR, Ewertz M, et al. A phase II study of combined ridaforolimus and dalotuzumab compared with exemestane in patients with estrogen receptor-positive breast cancer. Breast Cancer Res Treat. 2017;163(3):535–44.
117. Fazio N, Buzzoni R, Baudin E, Antonuzzo L, Hubner RA, Lahner H, et al. A phase II study of BEZ235 in patients with everolimus-resistant, advanced pancreatic neuroendocrine tumours. Anticancer Res. 2016;36(2):713–9.
118. Seront E, Rottey S, Filleul B, Glorieux P, Goeminne JC, Verschaeve V, et al. Phase II study of dual phosphoinositol-3-kinase (PI3K) and mammalian target of rapamycin (mTOR) inhibitor BEZ235 in patients with locally advanced or metastatic transitional cell carcinoma. BJU Int. 2016;118(3):408–15.
119. Cohen MH, Johnson JR, Pazdur R. Food and Drug Administration drug approval summary: temozolomide plus radiation therapy for the treatment of newly diagnosed glioblastoma multiforme. Clin Cancer Res. 2005;11(19 Pt 1):6767–71.
120. Wong ET, Timmons J, Callahan A, O'Loughlin L, Giarusso B, Alsop DC. Phase I study of low-dose metronomic temozolomide for recurrent malignant gliomas. BMC Cancer. 2016;16(1):914.
121. Akasaki Y, Kikuchi T, Homma S, Koido S, Ohkusa T, Tasaki T, et al. Phase I/II trial of combination of temozolomide chemotherapy and immunotherapy with fusions of dendritic and glioma cells in patients with glioblastoma. Cancer Immunol Immunother. 2016;65(12):1499–509.
122. Aoki T, Arakawa Y, Ueba T, Oda M, Nishida N, Akiyama Y, et al. Phase I/II study of temozolomide plus nimustine chemotherapy for recurrent malignant gliomas: Kyoto neuro-oncology group. Neurol Med Chir (Tokyo). 2017;57(1):17–27.
123. Glass J, Won M, Schultz CJ, Brat D, Bartlett NL, Suh JH, et al. Phase I and II study of induction chemotherapy with methotrexate, rituximab, and temozolomide, followed by whole-brain radiotherapy and postirradiation temozolomide for primary CNS lymphoma: NRG oncology RTOG 0227. J Clin Oncol. 2016;34(14):1620–5.
124. Herrlinger U, Schafer N, Steinbach JP, Weyerbrock A, Hau P, Goldbrunner R, et al. Bevacizumab plus irinotecan versus temozolomide in newly diagnosed o6-methylguanine-DNA methyltransferase non-methylated glioblastoma: the randomized GLARIUS trial. J Clin Oncol. 2016;34(14):1611–9.
125. Jakacki RI, Cohen KJ, Buxton A, Krailo MD, Burger PC, Rosenblum MK, et al. Phase 2 study of concurrent radiotherapy and temozolomide followed by temozolomide and lomustine in the treatment of children with high-grade glioma: a report of the Children's Oncology Group ACNS0423 study. Neuro-Oncology. 2016;18(10):1442–50.
126. He Q, Bi X, Ren C, Wang Y, Zou P, Zhang H, et al. Phase II study of the efficacy and safety of high-dose pemetrexed in combination with cisplatin versus temozolomide for the treatment of non-small cell lung cancer with brain metastases. Anticancer Res. 2017;37(8):4711–6.
127. Patel SP, Kim DW, Bassett RL, Cain S, Washington E, Hwu WJ, et al. A phase II study of ipilimumab plus temozolomide in patients with metastatic melanoma. Cancer Immunol Immunother. 2017;66(10):1359–66.
128. Mody R, Naranjo A, Van Ryn C, Yu AL, London WB, Shulkin BL, et al. Irinotecan-temozolomide with temsirolimus or dinutuximab in children with refractory or relapsed neuroblastoma (COG ANBL1221): an open-label, randomised, phase 2 trial. Lancet Oncol. 2017;18(7):946–57.
129. Calegari MA, Inno A, Monterisi S, Orlandi A, Santini D, Basso M, et al. A phase 2 study of temozolomide in pretreated metastatic colorectal cancer with MGMT promoter methylation. Br J Cancer. 2017;116(10):1279–86.
130. Modak S, Kushner BH, Basu E, Roberts SS, Cheung NK. Combination of bevacizumab, irinotecan, and temozolomide for refractory or relapsed neuroblastoma: results of a phase II study. Pediatr Blood Cancer. 2017;64(8):e26448.
131. Shenouda G, Souhami L, Petrecca K, Owen S, Panet-Raymond V, Guiot MC, et al. A phase 2 trial of neoadjuvant temozolomide followed by hypofractionated accelerated radiation therapy with concurrent and adjuvant temozolomide for patients with glioblastoma. Int J Radiat Oncol Biol Phys. 2017;97(3):487–94.
132. Baumert BG, Hegi ME, van den Bent MJ, von Deimling A, Gorlia T, Hoang-Xuan K, et al. Temozolomide chemotherapy versus radiotherapy in high-risk low-grade glioma (EORTC 22033-26033): a randomised, open-label, phase 3 intergroup study. Lancet Oncol. 2016;17(11):1521–32.
133. Zhao H, Sun G, Kong D, Zhang Y, Shi W, Zhao M, et al. A phase II study of arsenic trioxide in patients with relapsed or refractory malignant lymphoma. Med Oncol. 2015;32(3):79.
134. Wang H, Liu Y, Wang X, Liu D, Sun Z, Wang C, et al. Randomized clinical control study of locoregional therapy combined with arsenic trioxide for the treatment of hepatocellular carcinoma. Cancer. 2015;121(17):2917–25.
135. Modak S, Zanzonico P, Carrasquillo JA, Kushner BH, Kramer K, Cheung NK, et al. Arsenic trioxide as a radiation sensitizer for 131i-metaiodobenzylguanidine therapy: results of a phase II study. J Nucl Med. 2016;57(2):231–7.
136. Cicconi L, Divona M, Ciardi C, Ottone T, Ferrantini A, Lavorgna S, et al. PML-RARalpha kinetics and impact of FLT3-ITD mutations in newly diagnosed

acute promyelocytic leukaemia treated with ATRA and ATO or ATRA and chemotherapy. Leukemia. 2016;30(10):1987–92.
137. Owonikoko TK, Zhang G, Kim HS, Stinson RM, Bechara R, Zhang C, et al. Patient-derived xenografts faithfully replicated clinical outcome in a phase II co-clinical trial of arsenic trioxide in relapsed small cell lung cancer. J Transl Med. 2016;14(1):111.
138. Burnett AK, Russell NH, Hills RK, Bowen D, Kell J, Knapper S, et al. Arsenic trioxide and all-trans retinoic acid treatment for acute promyelocytic leukaemia in all risk groups (AML17): results of a randomised, controlled, phase 3 trial. Lancet Oncol. 2015;16(13):1295–305.
139. Platzbecker U, Avvisati G, Cicconi L, Thiede C, Paoloni F, Vignetti M, et al. Improved outcomes with retinoic acid and arsenic trioxide compared with retinoic acid and chemotherapy in non-high-risk acute promyelocytic leukemia: final results of the randomized Italian-German APL0406 trial. J Clin Oncol. 2017;35(6):605–12.
140. Kutny MA, Alonzo TA, Gerbing RB, Wang YC, Raimondi SC, Hirsch BA, et al. Arsenic trioxide consolidation allows anthracycline dose reduction for pediatric patients with acute promyelocytic leukemia: report from the children's oncology group phase III historically controlled trial AAML0631. J Clin Oncol. 2017;35(26):3021–9.
141. Samaras P, Tusup M, Nguyen-Kim TDL, Seifert B, Bachmann H, von Moos R, et al. Phase I study of a chloroquine-gemcitabine combination in patients with metastatic or unresectable pancreatic cancer. Cancer Chemother Pharmacol. 2017;80(5):1005–12.
142. Rangwala R, Leone R, Chang YC, Fecher LA, Schuchter LM, Kramer A, et al. Phase I trial of hydroxychloroquine with dose-intense temozolomide in patients with advanced solid tumors and melanoma. Autophagy. 2014;10(8):1369–79.
143. Mahalingam D, Mita M, Sarantopoulos J, Wood L, Amaravadi RK, Davis LE, et al. Combined autophagy and HDAC inhibition: a phase I safety, tolerability, pharmacokinetic, and pharmacodynamic analysis of hydroxychloroquine in combination with the HDAC inhibitor vorinostat in patients with advanced solid tumors. Autophagy. 2014;10(8):1403–14.
144. Vogl DT, Stadtmauer EA, Tan KS, Heitjan DF, Davis LE, Pontiggia L, et al. Combined autophagy and proteasome inhibition: a phase 1 trial of hydroxychloroquine and bortezomib in patients with relapsed/refractory myeloma. Autophagy. 2014;10(8):1380–90.
145. Rosenfeld MR, Ye X, Supko JG, Desideri S, Grossman SA, Brem S, et al. A phase I/II trial of hydroxychloroquine in conjunction with radiation therapy and concurrent and adjuvant temozolomide in patients with newly diagnosed glioblastoma multiforme. Autophagy. 2014;10(8):1359–68.
146. Boone BA, Bahary N, Zureikat AH, Moser AJ, Normolle DP, Wu WC, et al. Safety and biologic response of pre-operative autophagy inhibition in combination with gemcitabine in patients with pancreatic adenocarcinoma. Ann Surg Oncol. 2015;22(13):4402–10.
147. Wolpin BM, Rubinson DA, Wang X, Chan JA, Cleary JM, Enzinger PC, et al. Phase II and pharmacodynamic study of autophagy inhibition using hydroxychloroquine in patients with metastatic pancreatic adenocarcinoma. Oncologist. 2014;19(6):637–8.
148. Denmeade SR, Mhaka AM, Rosen DM, Brennen WN, Dalrymple S, Dach I, et al. Engineering a prostate-specific membrane antigen-activated tumor endothelial cell prodrug for cancer therapy. Sci Transl Med. 2012;4(140):140ra86.
149. Koselny K, Green J, Favazzo L, Glazier VE, DiDone L, Ransford S, et al. Antitumor/antifungal celecoxib derivative ar-12 is a non-nucleoside inhibitor of the ANL-family adenylating enzyme acetyl CoA synthetase. ACS Infect Dis. 2016;2(4):268–80.
150. Gao M, Yeh PY, Lu YS, Hsu CH, Chen KF, Lee WC, et al. OSU-03012, a novel celecoxib derivative, induces reactive oxygen species-related autophagy in hepatocellular carcinoma. Cancer Res. 2008;68(22):9348–57.
151. Park MA, Yacoub A, Rahmani M, Zhang G, Hart L, Hagan MP, et al. OSU-03012 stimulates PKR-like endoplasmic reticulum-dependent increases in 70-kDa heat shock protein expression, attenuating its lethal actions in transformed cells. Mol Pharmacol. 2008;73(4):1168–84.
152. Kucab JE, Lee C, Chen CS, Zhu J, Gilks CB, Cheang M, et al. Celecoxib analogues disrupt Akt signaling, which is commonly activated in primary breast tumours. Breast Cancer Res. 2005;7(5):R796–807.
153. Giglio P, Fimia GM, Lovat PE, Piacentini M, Corazzari M. Fateful music from a talented orchestra with a wicked conductor: connection between oncogenic BRAF, ER stress, and autophagy in human melanoma. Mol Cell Oncol. 2015;2(3):e995016.
154. Corazzari M, Rapino F, Ciccosanti F, Giglio P, Antonioli M, Conti B, et al. Oncogenic BRAF induces chronic ER stress condition resulting in increased basal autophagy and apoptotic resistance of cutaneous melanoma. Cell Death Differ. 2015;22(6):946–58.
155. Roth AD, Tejpar S, Delorenzi M, Yan P, Fiocca R, Klingbiel D, et al. Prognostic role of KRAS and BRAF in stage II and III resected colon cancer: results of the translational study on the PETACC-3, EORTC 40993, SAKK 60-00 trial. J Clin Oncol. 2010;28(3):466–74.
156. Andre T, de Gramont A, Vernerey D, Chibaudel B, Bonnetain F, Tijeras-Raballand A, et al. Adjuvant fluorouracil, leucovorin, and oxaliplatin in stage II to III colon cancer: updated 10-year survival and outcomes according to BRAF mutation and mismatch repair status of the MOSAIC study. J Clin Oncol. 2015;33(35):4176–87.
157. Venderbosch S, Nagtegaal ID, Maughan TS, Smith CG, Cheadle JP, Fisher D, et al. Mismatch repair status and BRAF mutation status in metastatic colorectal cancer patients: a pooled analysis of the CAIRO,

CAIRO2, COIN, and FOCUS studies. Clin Cancer Res. 2014;20(20):5322–30.
158. Gavin PG, Colangelo LH, Fumagalli D, Tanaka N, Remillard MY, Yothers G, et al. Mutation profiling and microsatellite instability in stage II and III colon cancer: an assessment of their prognostic and oxaliplatin predictive value. Clin Cancer Res. 2012;18(23):6531–41.
159. Chapman PB, Hauschild A, Robert C, Haanen JB, Ascierto P, Larkin J, et al. Improved survival with vemurafenib in melanoma with BRAF V600E mutation. N Engl J Med. 2011;364(26):2507–16.
160. Gomez-Roca CA, Delord J, Robert C, Hidalgo M, von Moos R, Arance A, et al. 535pencorafenib (lgx818), an oral BRAF inhibitor, in patients (pts) with braf v600e metastatic colorectal cancer (mCRC): results of dose expansion in an open-label, phase 1 study. Ann Oncol. 2014;25(suppl_4):iv182–93.
161. Gao W, Kang J-H, Liao Y, Li M, Yin X-M. Autophagy and cell death. In: Yin X-M, Dong Z, editors. Essential of apoptosis. Pittsburgh: Humana Press; 2009. p. 671–88.
162. Ciechanover A. The ubiquitin-proteasome pathway: on protein death and cell life. EMBO J. 1998;17(24):7151–60.
163. de Duve C, Wattiaux R. Functions of lysosomes. Annu Rev Physiol. 1966;28:435–92.
164. Meijer AJ, Codogno P. Regulation and role of autophagy in mammalian cells. Int J Biochem Cell Biol. 2004;36(12):2445–62.
165. Lleo A, Invernizzi P, Selmi C, Coppel RL, Alpini G, Podda M, et al. Autophagy: highlighting a novel player in the autoimmunity scenario. J Autoimmun. 2007;29(2–3):61–8.
166. Levine B, Klionsky DJ. Development by self-digestion: molecular mechanisms and biological functions of autophagy. Dev Cell. 2004;6(4):463–77.
167. Lum JJ, Bauer DE, Kong M, Harris MH, Li C, Lindsten T, et al. Growth factor regulation of autophagy and cell survival in the absence of apoptosis. Cell. 2005;120(2):237–48.
168. Kuma A, Hatano M, Matsui M, Yamamoto A, Nakaya H, Yoshimori T, et al. The role of autophagy during the early neonatal starvation period. Nature. 2004;432(7020):1032–6.
169. Klionsky DJ. Autophagy: from phenomenology to molecular understanding in less than a decade. Nat Rev Mol Cell Biol. 2007;8(11):931–7.
170. Roy S, Debnath J. Autophagy and tumorigenesis. Semin Immunopathol. 2010;32(4):383–96.
171. Suzuki K, Ohsumi Y. Molecular machinery of autophagosome formation in yeast, Saccharomyces cerevisiae. FEBS Lett. 2007;581(11):2156–61.
172. Ferraro E, Cecconi F. Autophagic and apoptotic response to stress signals in mammalian cells. Arch Biochem Biophys. 2007;462(2):210–9.
173. Kondo Y, Kanzawa T, Sawaya R, Kondo S. The role of autophagy in cancer development and response to therapy. Nat Rev Cancer. 2005;5(9):726–34.
174. Yang Z, Klionsky DJ. Eaten alive: a history of macroautophagy. Nat Cell Biol. 2010;12(9):814–22.
175. Chan EY, Longatti A, McKnight NC, Tooze SA. Kinase-inactivated ULK proteins inhibit autophagy via their conserved C-terminal domains using an Atg13-independent mechanism. Mol Cell Biol. 2009;29(1):157–71.
176. Ganley IG, Lam du H, Wang J, Ding X, Chen S, Jiang X. ULK1.ATG13.FIP200 complex mediates mTOR signaling and is essential for autophagy. J Biol Chem. 2009;284(18):12297–305.
177. Parthasarathy S, Bin Azizi J, Ramanathan S, Ismail S, Sasidharan S, Said MI, et al. Evaluation of antioxidant and antibacterial activities of aqueous, methanolic and alkaloid extracts from Mitragyna speciosa (Rubiaceae family) leaves. Molecules. 2009;14(10):3964–74.
178. Jung CH, Jun CB, Ro SH, Kim YM, Otto NM, Cao J, et al. ULK-Atg13-FIP200 complexes mediate mTOR signaling to the autophagy machinery. Mol Biol Cell. 2009;20(7):1992–2003.
179. Mercer CA, Kaliappan A, Dennis PB. A novel, human Atg13 binding protein, Atg101, interacts with ULK1 and is essential for macroautophagy. Autophagy. 2009;5(5):649–62.
180. Hurley JH, Young LN. Mechanisms of autophagy initiation. Annu Rev Biochem. 2017;86:225–44.
181. Papinski D, Kraft C. Regulation of autophagy by signaling through the Atg1/ULK1 complex. J Mol Biol. 2016;428(9 Pt A):1725–41.
182. Bach M, Larance M, James DE, Ramm G. The serine/threonine kinase ULK1 is a target of multiple phosphorylation events. Biochem J. 2011;440(2):283–91.
183. Lazarus MB, Novotny CJ, Shokat KM. Structure of the human autophagy initiating kinase ULK1 in complex with potent inhibitors. ACS Chem Biol. 2015;10(1):257–61.
184. Simonsen A, Tooze SA. Coordination of membrane events during autophagy by multiple class III PI3-kinase complexes. J Cell Biol. 2009;186(6):773–82.
185. Liang XH, Kleeman LK, Jiang HH, Gordon G, Goldman JE, Berry G, et al. Protection against fatal Sindbis virus encephalitis by beclin, a novel Bcl-2-interacting protein. J Virol. 1998;72(11):8586–96.
186. Matsunaga K, Saitoh T, Tabata K, Omori H, Satoh T, Kurotori N, et al. Two Beclin 1-binding proteins, Atg14L and Rubicon, reciprocally regulate autophagy at different stages. Nat Cell Biol. 2009;11(4):385–96.
187. Itakura E, Kishi C, Inoue K, Mizushima N. Beclin 1 forms two distinct phosphatidylinositol 3-kinase complexes with mammalian Atg14 and UVRAG. Mol Biol Cell. 2008;19(12):5360–72.
188. Fimia GM, Stoykova A, Romagnoli A, Giunta L, Di Bartolomeo S, Nardacci R, et al. Ambra1 regulates autophagy and development of the nervous system. Nature. 2007;447(7148):1121–5.
189. Liang XH, Jackson S, Seaman M, Brown K, Kempkes B, Hibshoosh H, et al. Induction of

autophagy and inhibition of tumorigenesis by beclin 1. Nature. 1999;402(6762):672–6.
190. Takahashi Y, Coppola D, Matsushita N, Cualing HD, Sun M, Sato Y, et al. Bif-1 interacts with Beclin 1 through UVRAG and regulates autophagy and tumorigenesis. Nat Cell Biol. 2007;9(10):1142–51.
191. Backer JM. The intricate regulation and complex functions of the Class III phosphoinositide 3-kinase Vps34. Biochem J. 2016;473(15):2251–71.
192. Kihara A, Noda T, Ishihara N, Ohsumi Y. Two distinct Vps34 phosphatidylinositol 3-kinase complexes function in autophagy and carboxypeptidase Y sorting in *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*. J Cell Biol. 2001;152(3):519–30.
193. Kametaka S, Okano T, Ohsumi M, Ohsumi Y. Apg14p and Apg6/Vps30p form a protein complex essential for autophagy in the yeast, *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*. J Biol Chem. 1998;273(35):22284–91.
194. Obara K, Sekito T, Ohsumi Y. Assortment of phosphatidylinositol 3-kinase complexes--Atg14p directs association of complex I to the pre-autophagosomal structure in *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*. Mol Biol Cell. 2006;17(4):1527–39.
195. Sun Q, Fan W, Chen K, Ding X, Chen S, Zhong Q. Identification of Barkor as a mammalian autophagy-specific factor for Beclin 1 and class III phosphatidylinositol 3-kinase. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2008;105(49):19211–6.
196. Zhong Y, Wang QJ, Li X, Yan Y, Backer JM, Chait BT, et al. Distinct regulation of autophagic activity by Atg14L and Rubicon associated with Beclin 1-phosphatidylinositol-3-kinase complex. Nat Cell Biol. 2009;11(4):468–76.
197. Ohsumi Y, Mizushima N. Two ubiquitin-like conjugation systems essential for autophagy. Semin Cell Dev Biol. 2004;15(2):231–6.
198. Weidberg H, Shvets E, Shpilka T, Shimron F, Shinder V, Elazar Z. LC3 and GATE-16/GABARAP subfamilies are both essential yet act differently in autophagosome biogenesis. EMBO J. 2010;29(11):1792–802.
199. Kabeya Y, Mizushima N, Ueno T, Yamamoto A, Kirisako T, Noda T, et al. LC3, a mammalian homologue of yeast Apg8p, is localized in autophagosome membranes after processing. EMBO J. 2000;19(21):5720–8.
200. Fujita N, Itoh T, Omori H, Fukuda M, Noda T, Yoshimori T. The Atg16L complex specifies the site of LC3 lipidation for membrane biogenesis in autophagy. Mol Biol Cell. 2008;19(5):2092–100.
201. Hanada T, Noda NN, Satomi Y, Ichimura Y, Fujioka Y, Takao T, et al. The Atg12-Atg5 conjugate has a novel E3-like activity for protein lipidation in autophagy. J Biol Chem. 2007;282(52):37298–302.
202. Kabeya Y, Mizushima N, Yamamoto A, Oshitani-Okamoto S, Ohsumi Y, Yoshimori T. LC3, GABARAP and GATE16 localize to autophagosomal membrane depending on form-II formation. J Cell Sci. 2004;117(Pt 13):2805–12.
203. Rubinsztein DC, Gestwicki JE, Murphy LO, Klionsky DJ. Potential therapeutic applications of autophagy. Nat Rev Drug Discov. 2007;6(4):304–12.
204. Feng Y, Klionsky DJ. Autophagic membrane delivery through ATG9. Cell Res. 2017;27(2):161–2.
205. Zhou C, Ma K, Gao R, Mu C, Chen L, Liu Q, et al. Regulation of mATG9 trafficking by Src- and ULK1-mediated phosphorylation in basal and starvation-induced autophagy. Cell Res. 2017;27(2):184–201.
206. Popovic D, Dikic I. TBC1D5 and the AP2 complex regulate ATG9 trafficking and initiation of autophagy. EMBO Rep. 2014;15(4):392–401.
207. Liang C, Lee JS, Inn KS, Gack MU, Li Q, Roberts EA, et al. Beclin1-binding UVRAG targets the class C Vps complex to coordinate autophagosome maturation and endocytic trafficking. Nat Cell Biol. 2008;10(7):776–87.
208. Liu B, Cheng Y, Liu Q, Bao JK, Yang JM. Autophagic pathways as new targets for cancer drug development. Acta Pharmacol Sin. 2010;31(9):1154–64.
209. Klionsky DJ, Abdelmohsen K, Abe A, Abedin MJ, Abeliovich H, Acevedo Arozena A, et al. Guidelines for the use and interpretation of assays for monitoring autophagy (3rd edition). Autophagy. 2016;12(1):1–222.
210. Katsuragi Y, Ichimura Y, Komatsu M. p62/SQSTM1 functions as a signaling hub and an autophagy adaptor. FEBS J. 2015;282(24):4672–8.
211. Galluzzi L, Vitale I, Abrams JM, Alnemri ES, Baehrecke EH, Blagosklonny MV, et al. Molecular definitions of cell death subroutines: recommendations of the nomenclature committee on cell death 2012. Cell Death Differ. 2012;19(1):107–20.
212. Guertin DA, Sabatini DM. Defining the role of mTOR in cancer. Cancer Cell. 2007;12(1):9–22.
213. Miller TW, Rexer BN, Garrett JT, Arteaga CL. Mutations in the phosphatidylinositol 3-kinase pathway: role in tumor progression and therapeutic implications in breast cancer. Breast Cancer Res. 2011;13(6):224.
214. Jacinto E, Hall MN. Tor signalling in bugs, brain and brawn. Nat Rev Mol Cell Biol. 2003;4(2):117–26.
215. Martin KA, Blenis J. Coordinate regulation of translation by the PI 3-kinase and mTOR pathways. Adv Cancer Res. 2002;86:1–39.
216. Wang CW, Klionsky DJ. The molecular mechanism of autophagy. Mol Med. 2003;9(3–4):65–76.
217. Boulay A, Lane HA. The mammalian target of rapamycin kinase and tumor growth inhibition. Recent Results Cancer Res. 2007;172:99–124.
218. Sabers CJ, Martin MM, Brunn GJ, Williams JM, Dumont FJ, Wiederrecht G, et al. Isolation of a protein target of the FKBP12-rapamycin complex in mammalian cells. J Biol Chem. 1995;270(2):815–22.
219. Takeuchi H, Kondo Y, Fujiwara K, Kanzawa T, Aoki H, Mills GB, et al. Synergistic augmentation of rapamycin-induced autophagy in malignant glioma cells by phosphatidylinositol 3-kinase/protein kinase B inhibitors. Cancer Res. 2005;65(8):3336–46.

220. Sarbassov DD, Ali SM, Kim DH, Guertin DA, Latek RR, Erdjument-Bromage H, et al. Rictor, a novel binding partner of mTOR, defines a rapamycin-insensitive and raptor-independent pathway that regulates the cytoskeleton. Curr Biol. 2004;14(14):1296–302.
221. Hara K, Maruki Y, Long X, Yoshino K, Oshiro N, Hidayat S, et al. Raptor, a binding partner of target of rapamycin (TOR), mediates TOR action. Cell. 2002;110(2):177–89.
222. Loewith R, Jacinto E, Wullschleger S, Lorberg A, Crespo JL, Bonenfant D, et al. Two TOR complexes, only one of which is rapamycin sensitive, have distinct roles in cell growth control. Mol Cell. 2002;10(3):457–68.
223. Zoncu R, Efeyan A, Sabatini DM. mTOR: from growth signal integration to cancer, diabetes and ageing. Nat Rev Mol Cell Biol. 2011;12(1):21–35.
224. Kim DH, Sarbassov DD, Ali SM, Latek RR, Guntur KV, Erdjument-Bromage H, et al. GbetaL, a positive regulator of the rapamycin-sensitive pathway required for the nutrient-sensitive interaction between raptor and mTOR. Mol Cell. 2003;11(4):895–904.
225. Kim DH, Sarbassov DD, Ali SM, King JE, Latek RR, Erdjument-Bromage H, et al. mTOR interacts with raptor to form a nutrient-sensitive complex that signals to the cell growth machinery. Cell. 2002;110(2):163–75.
226. Peterson TR, Laplante M, Thoreen CC, Sancak Y, Kang SA, Kuehl WM, et al. DEPTOR is an mTOR inhibitor frequently overexpressed in multiple myeloma cells and required for their survival. Cell. 2009;137(5):873–86.
227. Sancak Y, Thoreen CC, Peterson TR, Lindquist RA, Kang SA, Spooner E, et al. PRAS40 is an insulin-regulated inhibitor of the mTORC1 protein kinase. Mol Cell. 2007;25:903–15.
228. Laplante M, Sabatini DM. mTOR signaling at a glance. J Cell Sci. 2009;122(Pt 20):3589–94.
229. Guertin DA, Kim D-H, Sabatini DM. Growth control through the mTOR network. In: Hall MN, et al., editors. Cell growth: control of cell size. New York: Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory Press; 2004. p. 193–234.
230. Hay N, Sonenberg N. Upstream and downstream of mTOR. Genes Dev. 2004;18(16):1926–45.
231. Kirken RA, Wang YL. Molecular actions of sirolimus: sirolimus and mTor. Transplant Proc. 2003;35(3 Suppl):227S–30S.
232. Dowling RJ, Topisirovic I, Fonseca BD, Sonenberg N. Dissecting the role of mTOR: lessons from mTOR inhibitors. Biochim Biophys Acta. 2010;1804(3):433–9.
233. Proud CG. Regulation of mammalian translation factors by nutrients. Eur J Biochem. 2002;269(22):5338–49.
234. Hosokawa N, Sasaki T, Iemura S, Natsume T, Hara T, Mizushima N. Atg101, a novel mammalian autophagy protein interacting with Atg13. Autophagy. 2009;5(7):973–9.
235. Galluzzi L, Vicencio JM, Kepp O, Tasdemir E, Maiuri MC, Kroemer G. To die or not to die: that is the autophagic question. Curr Mol Med. 2008;8(2):78–91.
236. Inoki K, Zhu T, Guan KL. TSC2 mediates cellular energy response to control cell growth and survival. Cell. 2003;115:577–90.
237. Tee AR, Manning BD, Roux PP, Cantley LC, Blenis J. Tuberous sclerosis complex gene products, Tuberin and Hamartin, control mTOR signaling by acting as a GTPase-activation protein complex toward Rheb. Curr Biol. 2003;13:1259–68.
238. Rosner M, Siegel N, Valli A, Fuchs C, Hengstschlager M. mTOR phosphorylated at S2448 binds to raptor and rictor. Amino Acids. 2010;38(1):223–8.
239. Jacinto E, Loewith R, Schmidt A, Lin S, Ruegg MA, Hall A, et al. Mammalian TOR complex 2 controls the actin cytoskeleton and is rapamycin insensitive. Nat Cell Biol. 2004;6(11):1122–8.
240. Guertin DA, Sabatini DM. An expanding role for mTOR in cancer. Trends Mol Med. 2005;11(8):353–61.
241. Sarbassov DD, Ali SM, Sengupta S, Sheen JH, Hsu PP, Bagley AF, et al. Prolonged rapamycin treatment inhibits mTORC2 assembly and Akt/PKB. Mol Cell. 2006;22(2):159–68.
242. Sarbassov DD, Guertin DA, Ali SM, Sabatini DM. Phosphorylation and regulation of Akt/PKB by the rictor-mTOR complex. Science. 2005;307(5712):1098–101.
243. Kaur A, Sharma S. Mammalian target of rapamycin (mTOR) as a potential therapeutic target in various diseases. Inflammopharmacology. 2017;25(3):293–312.
244. Ikenoue T, Inoki K, Yang Q, Zhou X, Guan KL. Essential function of TORC2 in PKC and Akt turn motif phosphorylation, maturation and signalling. EMBO J. 2008;27(14):1919–31.
245. Gan X, Wang J, Wang C, Sommer E, Kozasa T, Srinivasula S, et al. PRR5L degradation promotes mTORC2-mediated PKC-delta phosphorylation and cell migration downstream of Galpha12. Nat Cell Biol. 2012;14(7):686–96.
246. Li X, Gao T. mTORC2 phosphorylates protein kinase Czeta to regulate its stability and activity. EMBO Rep. 2014;15(2):191–8.
247. Sciarretta S, Zhai P, Maejima Y, Del Re DP, Nagarajan N, Yee D, et al. mTORC2 regulates cardiac response to stress by inhibiting MST1. Cell Rep. 2015;11(1):125–36.
248. Pan D. The hippo signaling pathway in development and cancer. Dev Cell. 2010;19(4):491–505.
249. Yu FX, Guan KL. The hippo pathway: regulators and regulations. Genes Dev. 2013;27(4):355–71.
250. Meng Z, Moroishi T, Guan KL. Mechanisms of hippo pathway regulation. Genes Dev. 2016;30(1):1–17.
251. Feldman ME, Apsel B, Uotila A, Loewith R, Knight ZA, Ruggero D, et al. Active-site inhibitors of mTOR target rapamycin-resistant outputs of mTORC1 and mTORC2. PLoS Biol. 2009;7(2):e38.

252. Thoreen CC, Kang SA, Chang JW, Liu Q, Zhang J, Gao Y, et al. An ATP-competitive mammalian target of rapamycin inhibitor reveals rapamycin-resistant functions of mTORC1. J Biol Chem. 2009;284(12):8023–32.
253. Shintani T, Klionsky DJ. Autophagy in health and disease: a double-edged sword. Science. 2004;306(5698):990–5.
254. Kisen GO, Tessitore L, Costelli P, Gordon PB, Schwarze PE, Baccino FM, et al. Reduced autophagic activity in primary rat hepatocellular carcinoma and ascites hepatoma cells. Carcinogenesis. 1993;14(12):2501–5.
255. Toth S, Nagy K, Palfia Z, Rez G. Changes in cellular autophagic capacity during azaserine-initiated pancreatic carcinogenesis. Acta Biol Hung. 2001;52(4):393–401.
256. Toth S, Nagy K, Palfia Z, Rez G. Cellular autophagic capacity changes during azaserine-induced tumour progression in the rat pancreas. Up-regulation in all premalignant stages and down-regulation with loss of cycloheximide sensitivity of segregation along with malignant transformation. Cell Tissue Res. 2002;309(3):409–16.
257. Schwarze PE, Seglen PO. Reduced autophagic activity, improved protein balance and enhanced in vitro survival of hepatocytes isolated from carcinogen-treated rats. Exp Cell Res. 1985;157(1):15–28.
258. Amaravadi R, Kimmelman AC, White E. Recent insights into the function of autophagy in cancer. Genes Dev. 2016;30(17):1913–30.
259. Laddha SV, Ganesan S, Chan CS, White E. Mutational landscape of the essential autophagy gene BECN1 in human cancers. Mol Cancer Res. 2014;12(4):485–90.
260. White E, Mehnert JM, Chan CS. Autophagy, metabolism, and cancer. Clin Cancer Res. 2015;21(22):5037–46.
261. Vivanco I, Sawyers CL. The phosphatidylinositol 3-Kinase AKT pathway in human cancer. Nat Rev Cancer. 2002;2(7):489–501.
262. Thompson JE, Thompson CB. Putting the rap on Akt. J Clin Oncol. 2004;22(20):4217–26.
263. Yu K, Toral-Barza L, Discafani C, Zhang WG, Skotnicki J, Frost P, et al. mTOR, a novel target in breast cancer: the effect of CCI-779, an mTOR inhibitor, in preclinical models of breast cancer. Endocr Relat Cancer. 2001;8(3):249–58.
264. Shor B, Gibbons JJ, Abraham RT, Yu K. Targeting mTOR globally in cancer: thinking beyond rapamycin. Cell Cycle. 2009;8(23):3831–7.
265. Chan S. Targeting the mammalian target of rapamycin (mTOR): a new approach to treating cancer. Br J Cancer. 2004;91(8):1420–4.
266. Law BK. Rapamycin: an anti-cancer immunosuppressant? Crit Rev Oncol Hematol. 2005;56(1):47–60.
267. Liu G, Pei F, Yang F, Li L, Amin AD, Liu S, et al. Role of autophagy and apoptosis in non-small-cell lung cancer. Int J Mol Sci. 2017;18(2):E367.
268. Fumarola C, Bonelli MA, Petronini PG, Alfieri RR. Targeting PI3K/AKT/mTOR pathway in non-small cell lung cancer. Biochem Pharmacol. 2014;90(3):197–207.
269. Sorrells DL, Meschonat C, Black D, Li BD. Pattern of amplification and overexpression of the eukaryotic initiation factor 4E gene in solid tumor. J Surg Res. 1999;85(1):37–42.
270. Easton JB, Houghton PJ. The mTOR pathway and its inhibitors. In: LaRochelle WJ, Shimkets RA, editors. Cancer drug discovery and development: the oncogenomics handbook. Totowa: Humana Press; 2005. p. 553–70.
271. Gozuacik D, Kimchi A. Autophagy as a cell death and tumor suppressor mechanism. Oncogene. 2004;23(16):2891–906.
272. Tan ML, Muhammad TS, Najimudin N, Sulaiman SF. Growth arrest and non-apoptotic programmed cell death associated with the up-regulation of c-myc mRNA expression in T-47D breast tumor cells following exposure to *Epipremnum pinnatum* (L.) Engl. hexane extract. J Ethnopharmacol. 2005;96(3):375–83.
273. Nixon RA. Autophagy, amyloidogenesis and Alzheimer disease. J Cell Sci. 2007;120(Pt 23):4081–91.
274. Kegel KB, Kim M, Sapp E, McIntyre C, Castano JG, Aronin N, et al. Huntingtin expression stimulates endosomal-lysosomal activity, endosome tubulation, and autophagy. J Neurosci. 2000;20(19):7268–78.
275. Qin ZH, Wang Y, Kegel KB, Kazantsev A, Apostol BL, Thompson LM, et al. Autophagy regulates the processing of amino terminal huntingtin fragments. Hum Mol Genet. 2003;12(24):3231–44.
276. Petersen A, Brundin P. Huntington's disease: the mystery unfolds? Int Rev Neurobiol. 2002;53:315–39.
277. Petersen A, Larsen KE, Behr GG, Romero N, Przedborski S, Brundin P, et al. Expanded CAG repeats in exon 1 of the Huntington's disease gene stimulate dopamine-mediated striatal neuron autophagy and degeneration. Hum Mol Genet. 2001;10(12):1243–54.
278. Anglade P, Vyas S, Javoy-Agid F, Herrero MT, Michel PP, Marquez J, et al. Apoptosis and autophagy in nigral neurons of patients with Parkinson's disease. Histol Histopathol. 1997;12(1):25–31.
279. Bialik S, Kimchi A. Autophagy and tumor suppression: recent advances in understanding the link between autophagic cell death pathways and tumor development. Adv Exp Med Biol. 2008;615:177–200.
280. Lee HK, Jones RT, Myers RA, Marzella L. Regulation of protein degradation in normal and transformed human bronchial epithelial cells in culture. Arch Biochem Biophys. 1992;296(1):271–8.
281. Houri JJ, Ogier-Denis E, De Stefanis D, Bauvy C, Baccino FM, Isidoro C, et al. Differentiation-dependent autophagy controls the fate of newly synthesized N-linked glycoproteins in the colon

adenocarcinoma HT-29 cell line. Biochem J. 1995;309(Pt 2):521–7.
282. Sato K, Tsuchihara K, Fujii S, Sugiyama M, Goya T, Atomi Y, et al. Autophagy is activated in colorectal cancer cells and contributes to the tolerance to nutrient deprivation. Cancer Res. 2007;67(20):9677–84.
283. Fujii S, Mitsunaga S, Yamazaki M, Hasebe T, Ishii G, Kojima M, et al. Autophagy is activated in pancreatic cancer cells and correlates with poor patient outcome. Cancer Sci. 2008;99(9):1813–9.
284. Lock R, Kenific CM, Leidal AM, Salas E, Debnath J. Autophagy-dependent production of secreted factors facilitates oncogenic RAS-driven invasion. Cancer Discov. 2014;4(4):466–79.
285. Lock R, Roy S, Kenific CM, Su JS, Salas E, Ronen SM, et al. Autophagy facilitates glycolysis during Ras-mediated oncogenic transformation. Mol Biol Cell. 2011;22(2):165–78.
286. Guo JY, White E. Autophagy, metabolism, and cancer. Cold Spring Harb Symp Quant Biol. 2016;81:73–8.
287. Perera RM, Stoykova S, Nicolay BN, Ross KN, Fitamant J, Boukhali M, et al. Transcriptional control of autophagy-lysosome function drives pancreatic cancer metabolism. Nature. 2015;524(7565):361–5.
288. Wong PM, Feng Y, Wang J, Shi R, Jiang X. Regulation of autophagy by coordinated action of mTORC1 and protein phosphatase 2A. Nat Commun. 2015;6:8048.
289. Guo JY, Karsli-Uzunbas G, Mathew R, Aisner SC, Kamphorst JJ, Strohecker AM, et al. Autophagy suppresses progression of K-ras-induced lung tumors to oncocytomas and maintains lipid homeostasis. Genes Dev. 2013;27(13):1447–61.
290. Strohecker AM, Guo JY, Karsli-Uzunbas G, Price SM, Chen GJ, Mathew R, et al. Autophagy sustains mitochondrial glutamine metabolism and growth of BrafV600E-driven lung tumors. Cancer Discov. 2013;3(11):1272–85.
291. Samaddar JS, Gaddy VT, Duplantier J, Thandavan SP, Shah M, Smith MJ, et al. A role for macroautophagy in protection against 4-hydroxytamoxifen-induced cell death and the development of antiestrogen resistance. Mol Cancer Ther. 2008;7(9):2977–87.
292. Fisher B, Costantino JP, Wickerham DL, Redmond CK, Kavanah M, Cronin WM, et al. Tamoxifen for prevention of breast cancer: report of the National Surgical Adjuvant Breast and Bowel Project P-1 Study. J Natl Cancer Inst. 1998;90(18):1371–88.
293. Veronesi U, Maisonneuve P, Rotmensz N, Costa A, Sacchini V, Travaglini R, et al. Italian randomized trial among women with hysterectomy: tamoxifen and hormone-dependent breast cancer in high-risk women. J Natl Cancer Inst. 2003;95(2):160–5.
294. Clarke R, Leonessa F, Welch JN, Skaar TC. Cellular and molecular pharmacology of antiestrogen action and resistance. Pharmacol Rev. 2001;53(1):25–71.
295. Ariazi EA, Ariazi JL, Cordera F, Jordan VC. Estrogen receptors as therapeutic targets in breast cancer. Curr Top Med Chem. 2006;6(3):181–202.
296. Abedin MJ, Wang D, McDonnell MA, Lehmann U, Kelekar A. Autophagy delays apoptotic death in breast cancer cells following DNA damage. Cell Death Differ. 2007;14(3):500–10.
297. Qadir MA, Kwok B, Dragowska WH, To KH, Le D, Bally MB, et al. Macroautophagy inhibition sensitizes tamoxifen-resistant breast cancer cells and enhances mitochondrial depolarization. Breast Cancer Res Treat. 2008;112(3):389–403.
298. Ma XH, Piao S, Wang D, McAfee QW, Nathanson KL, Lum JJ, et al. Measurements of tumor cell autophagy predict invasiveness, resistance to chemotherapy, and survival in melanoma. Clin Cancer Res. 2011;17(10):3478–89.
299. Mita M, Sankhala K, Abdel-Karim I, Mita A, Giles F. Deforolimus (AP23573) a novel mTOR inhibitor in clinical development. Expert Opin Investig Drugs. 2008;17(12):1947–54.
300. Waqar SN, Gopalan PK, Williams K, Devarakonda S, Govindan R. A phase I trial of sunitinib and rapamycin in patients with advanced non-small cell lung cancer. Chemotherapy. 2013;59(1):8–13.
301. Malizzia LJ, Hsu A. Temsirolimus, an mTOR inhibitor for treatment of patients with advanced renal cell carcinoma. Clin J Oncol Nurs. 2008;12(4):639–46.
302. Schwartz GK, Tap WD, Qin LX, Livingston MB, Undevia SD, Chmielowski B, et al. Cixutumumab and temsirolimus for patients with bone and soft-tissue sarcoma: a multicentre, open-label, phase 2 trial. Lancet Oncol. 2013;14(4):371–82.
303. Naing A, Lorusso P, Fu S, Hong D, Chen HX, Doyle LA, et al. Insulin growth factor receptor (IGF-1R) antibody cixutumumab combined with the mTOR inhibitor temsirolimus in patients with metastatic adrenocortical carcinoma. Br J Cancer. 2013;108(4):826–30.
304. Margolin KA, Moon J, Flaherty LE, Lao CD, Akerley WL 3rd, Othus M, et al. Randomized phase II trial of sorafenib with temsirolimus or tipifarnib in untreated metastatic melanoma (S0438). Clin Cancer Res. 2012;18(4):1129–37.
305. Davies MA, Fox PS, Papadopoulos NE, Bedikian AY, Hwu WJ, Lazar AJ, et al. Phase I study of the combination of sorafenib and temsirolimus in patients with metastatic melanoma. Clin Cancer Res. 2012;18(4):1120–8.
306. Spindler KL, Sorensen MM, Pallisgaard N, Andersen RF, Havelund BM, Ploen J, et al. Phase II trial of temsirolimus alone and in combination with irinotecan for KRAS mutant metastatic colorectal cancer: outcome and results of KRAS mutational analysis in plasma. Acta Oncol. 2013;52(5):963–70.
307. Mita MM, Mita A, Rowinsky EK. Mammalian target of rapamycin: a new molecular target for breast cancer. Clin Breast Cancer. 2003;4(2):126–37.
308. Bachelot T, Bourgier C, Cropet C, Ray-Coquard I, Ferrero JM, Freyer G, et al. Randomized phase II trial of everolimus in combination with tamoxifen in patients with hormone receptor-positive, human epidermal growth factor receptor 2-negative meta-

static breast cancer with prior exposure to aromatase inhibitors: a GINECO study. J Clin Oncol. 2012;30(22):2718–24.
309. Mita MM, Mita AC, Chu QS, Rowinsky EK, Fetterly GJ, Goldston M, et al. Phase I trial of the novel mammalian target of rapamycin inhibitor deforolimus (AP23573; MK-8669) administered intravenously daily for 5 days every 2 weeks to patients with advanced malignancies. J Clin Oncol. 2008;26(3):361–7.
310. Rizzieri DA, Feldman E, Dipersio JF, Gabrail N, Stock W, Strair R, et al. A phase 2 clinical trial of deforolimus (AP23573, MK-8669), a novel mammalian target of rapamycin inhibitor, in patients with relapsed or refractory hematologic malignancies. Clin Cancer Res. 2008;14(9):2756–62.
311. Maira SM, Stauffer F, Brueggen J, Furet P, Schnell C, Fritsch C, et al. Identification and characterization of NVP-BEZ235, a new orally available dual phosphatidylinositol 3-kinase/mammalian target of rapamycin inhibitor with potent in vivo antitumor activity. Mol Cancer Ther. 2008;7(7):1851–63.
312. Schnell CR, Stauffer F, Allegrini PR, O'Reilly T, McSheehy PM, Dartois C, et al. Effects of the dual phosphatidylinositol 3-kinase/mammalian target of rapamycin inhibitor NVP-BEZ235 on the tumor vasculature: implications for clinical imaging. Cancer Res. 2008;68(16):6598–607.
313. Cao P, Maira SM, Garcia-Echeverria C, Hedley DW. Activity of a novel, dual PI3-kinase/mTor inhibitor NVP-BEZ235 against primary human pancreatic cancers grown as orthotopic xenografts. Br J Cancer. 2009;100(8):1267.
314. Serra V, Markman B, Scaltriti M, Eichhorn PJ, Valero V, Guzman M, et al. NVP-BEZ235, a dual PI3K/mTOR inhibitor, prevents PI3K signaling and inhibits the growth of cancer cells with activating PI3K mutations. Cancer Res. 2008;68(19):8022–30.
315. Lefranc F, Facchini V, Kiss R. Proautophagic drugs: a novel means to combat apoptosis-resistant cancers, with a special emphasis on glioblastomas. Oncologist. 2007;12(12):1395–403.
316. Katayama M, Kawaguchi T, Berger MS, Pieper RO. DNA damaging agent-induced autophagy produces a cytoprotective adenosine triphosphate surge in malignant glioma cells. Cell Death Differ. 2007;14(3):548–58.
317. Yokoyama T, Iwado E, Kondo Y, Aoki H, Hayashi Y, Georgescu MM, et al. Autophagy-inducing agents augment the antitumor effect of telerase-selve oncolytic adenovirus OBP-405 on glioblastoma cells. Gene Ther. 2008;15(17):1233–9.
318. Milano V, Piao Y, LaFortune T, de Groot J. Dasatinib-induced autophagy is enhanced in combination with temozolomide in glioma. Mol Cancer Ther. 2009;8(2):394–406.
319. Kanzawa T, Germano IM, Komata T, Ito H, Kondo Y, Kondo S. Role of autophagy in temozolomide-induced cytotoxicity for malignant glioma cells. Cell Death Differ. 2004;11(4):448–57.
320. Naumann SC, Roos WP, Jost E, Belohlavek C, Lennerz V, Schmidt CW, et al. Temozolomide- and fotemustine-induced apoptosis in human malignant melanoma cells: response related to MGMT, MMR, DSBs, and p53. Br J Cancer. 2009;100(2):322–33.
321. Hart MG, Grant R, Garside R, Rogers G, Somerville M, Stein K. Temozolomide for high grade glioma. Cochrane Database Syst Rev. 2008;4:CD007415.
322. Prados MD, Chang SM, Butowski N, DeBoer R, Parvataneni R, Carliner H, et al. Phase II study of erlotinib plus temozolomide during and after radiation therapy in patients with newly diagnosed glioblastoma multiforme or gliosarcoma. J Clin Oncol. 2009;27(4):579–84.
323. Lou E, Peters KB, Sumrall AL, Desjardins A, Reardon DA, Lipp ES, et al. Phase II trial of upfront bevacizumab and temozolomide for unresectable or multifocal glioblastoma. Cancer Med. 2013;2(2):185–95.
324. Norden AD, Lesser GJ, Drappatz J, Ligon KL, Hammond SN, Lee EQ, et al. Phase 2 study of dose-intense temozolomide in recurrent glioblastoma. Neuro-Oncology. 2013;15(7):930–5.
325. Yust-Katz S, Liu D, Yuan Y, Liu V, Kang S, Groves M, et al. Phase 1/1b study of lonafarnib and temozolomide in patients with recurrent or temozolomide refractory glioblastoma. Cancer. 2013;119(15):2747–53.
326. Nghiemphu PL, Wen PY, Lamborn KR, Drappatz J, Robins HI, Fink K, et al. A phase I trial of tipifarnib with radiation therapy, with and without temozolomide, for patients with newly diagnosed glioblastoma. Int J Radiat Oncol Biol Phys. 2011;81(5):1422–7.
327. Wagner L, Turpin B, Nagarajan R, Weiss B, Cripe T, Geller J. Pilot study of vincristine, oral irinotecan, and temozolomide (VOIT regimen) combined with bevacizumab in pediatric patients with recurrent solid tumors or brain tumors. Pediatr Blood Cancer. 2013;60(9):1447–51.
328. Hegi ME, Diserens AC, Gorlia T, Hamou MF, de Tribolet N, Weller M, et al. MGMT gene silencing and benefit from temozolomide in glioblastoma. N Engl J Med. 2005;352(10):997–1003.
329. Hummel TR, Wagner L, Ahern C, Fouladi M, Reid JM, McGovern RM, et al. A pediatric phase 1 trial of vorinostat and temozolomide in relapsed or refractory primary brain or spinal cord tumors: a children's oncology group phase 1 consortium study. Pediatr Blood Cancer. 2013;60(9):1452–7.
330. Kouroussis C, Vamvakas L, Vardakis N, Kotsakis A, Kalykaki A, Kalbakis K, et al. Continuous administration of daily low-dose temozolomide in pretreated patients with advanced non-small cell lung cancer: a phase II study. Oncology. 2009;76(2):112–7.
331. Sanz MA, Grimwade D, Tallman MS, Lowenberg B, Fenaux P, Estey EH, et al. Management of acute promyelocytic leukemia: recommendations from an expert panel on behalf of the European LeukemiaNet. Blood. 2009;113(9):1875–91.

332. Powell BL, Moser B, Stock W, Gallagher RE, Willman CL, Stone RM, et al. Arsenic trioxide improves event-free and overall survival for adults with acute promyelocytic leukemia: North American Leukemia Intergroup Study C9710. Blood. 2010;116(19):3751–7.
333. Liu N, Tai S, Ding B, Thor RK, Bhuta S, Sun Y, et al. Arsenic trioxide synergizes with everolimus (Rad001) to induce cytotoxicity of ovarian cancer cells through increased autophagy and apoptosis. Endocr Relat Cancer. 2012;19(5):711–23.
334. Goussetis DJ, Gounaris E, Platanias LC. BCR-ABL1-induced leukemogenesis and autophagic targeting by arsenic trioxide. Autophagy. 2013;9(1):93–4.
335. Raja WK, Satti J, Liu G, Castracane J. Dose response of MTLn3 cells to serial dilutions of arsenic trioxide and ionizing radiation. Dose Response. 2013;11(1):29–40.
336. Chiu HW, Ho YS, Wang YJ. Arsenic trioxide induces autophagy and apoptosis in human glioma cells in vitro and in vivo through downregulation of survivin. J Mol Med (Berl). 2011;89(9):927–41.
337. Cohen KJ, Gibbs IC, Fisher PG, Hayashi RJ, Macy ME, Gore L. A phase I trial of arsenic trioxide chemoradiotherapy for infiltrating astrocytomas of childhood. Neuro-Oncology. 2013;15(6):783–7.
338. Grimm SA, Marymont M, Chandler JP, Muro K, Newman SB, Levy RM, et al. Phase I study of arsenic trioxide and temozolomide in combination with radiation therapy in patients with malignant gliomas. J Neuro-Oncol. 2012;110(2):237–43.
339. Sharma M, Khan H, Thall PF, Orlowski RZ, Bassett RL Jr, Shah N, et al. A randomized phase 2 trial of a preparative regimen of bortezomib, high-dose melphalan, arsenic trioxide, and ascorbic acid. Cancer. 2012;118(9):2507–15.
340. Yanada M, Tsuzuki M, Fujita H, Fujimaki K, Fujisawa S, Sunami K, et al. Phase 2 study of arsenic trioxide followed by autologous hematopoietic cell transplantation for relapsed acute promyelocytic leukemia. Blood. 2013;121(16):3095–102.
341. Dalby KN, Tekedereli I, Lopez-Berestein G, Ozpolat B. Targeting the prodeath and prosurvival functions of autophagy as novel therapeutic strategies in cancer. Autophagy. 2010;6(3):322–9.
342. Shingu T, Fujiwara K, Bogler O, Akiyama Y, Moritake K, Shinojima N, et al. Inhibition of autophagy at a late stage enhances imatinib-induced cytotoxicity in human malignant glioma cells. Int J Cancer. 2009;124(5):1060–71.
343. Sasaki K, Tsuno NH, Sunami E, Tsurita G, Kawai K, Okaji Y, et al. Chloroquine potentiates the anticancer effect of 5-fluorouracil on colon cancer cells. BMC Cancer. 2010;10:370.
344. Solomon VR, Lee H. Chloroquine and its analogs: a new promise of an old drug for effective and safe cancer therapies. Eur J Pharmacol. 2009;625(1–3):220–33.
345. Kimura T, Takabatake Y, Takahashi A, Isaka Y. Chloroquine in cancer therapy: a double-edged sword of autophagy. Cancer Res. 2013;73(1):3–7.
346. Boya P, Gonzalez-Polo RA, Casares N, Perfettini JL, Dessen P, Larochette N, et al. Inhibition of macroautophagy triggers apoptosis. Mol Cell Biol. 2005;25(3):1025–40.
347. Amaravadi RK, Lippincott-Schwartz J, Yin XM, Weiss WA, Takebe N, Timmer W, et al. Principles and current strategies for targeting autophagy for cancer treatment. Clin Cancer Res. 2011;17(4):654–66.
348. Levy JMM, Towers CG, Thorburn A. Targeting autophagy in cancer. Nat Rev Cancer. 2017;17(9):528–42.
349. Briceno E, Reyes S, Sotelo J. Therapy of glioblastoma multiforme improved by the antimutagenic chloroquine. Neurosurg Focus. 2003;14(2):e3.
350. Sotelo J, Briceno E, Lopez-Gonzalez MA. Adding chloroquine to conventional treatment for glioblastoma multiforme: a randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial. Ann Intern Med. 2006;144(5):337–43.
351. Goldberg SB, Supko JG, Neal JW, Muzikansky A, Digumarthy S, Fidias P, et al. A phase I study of erlotinib and hydroxychloroquine in advanced non-small-cell lung cancer. J Thorac Oncol. 2012;7(10):1602–8.
352. Hyoda K, Hosoi T, Horie N, Okuma Y, Ozawa K, Nomura Y. PI3K-Akt inactivation induced CHOP expression in endoplasmic reticulum-stressed cells. Biochem Biophys Res Commun. 2006;340(1):286–90.
353. Srinivasan S, Ohsugi M, Liu Z, Fatrai S, Bernal-Mizrachi E, Permutt MA. Endoplasmic reticulum stress-induced apoptosis is partly mediated by reduced insulin signaling through phosphatidylinositol 3-kinase/Akt and increased glycogen synthase kinase-3beta in mouse insulinoma cells. Diabetes. 2005;54(4):968–75.
354. Di Nardo A, Kramvis I, Cho N, Sadowski A, Meikle L, Kwiatkowski DJ, et al. Tuberous sclerosis complex activity is required to control neuronal stress responses in an mTOR-dependent manner. J Neurosci. 2009;29(18):5926–37.
355. Qin L, Wang Z, Tao L, Wang Y. ER stress negatively regulates AKT/TSC/mTOR pathway to enhance autophagy. Autophagy. 2010;6(2):239–47.
356. Jin H-O, Seo S-K, Woo S-H, Kim E-S, Lee H-C, Yoo D-H, et al. Activating transcription factor 4 and CCAAT/enhancer-binding protein-β negatively regulate the mammalian target of rapamycin via Redd1 expression in response to oxidative and endoplasmic reticulum stress. Free Radic Biol Med. 2009;46(8):1158–67.
357. Corradetti MN, Inoki K, Guan KL. The stress-induced proteins RTP801 and RTP801L are negative regulators of the mammalian target of rapamycin pathway. J Biol Chem. 2005;280(11):9769–72.
358. Hoyer-Hansen M, Bastholm L, Szyniarowski P, Campanella M, Szabadkai G, Farkas T, et al. Control of macroautophagy by calcium, calmodulin-

dependent kinase kinase-beta, and Bcl-2. Mol Cell. 2007;25(2):193–205.
359. Yung HW, Charnock-Jones DS, Burton GJ. Regulation of AKT phosphorylation at Ser473 and Thr308 by endoplasmic reticulum stress modulates substrate specificity in a severity dependent manner. PLoS One. 2011;6(3):e17894.
360. Lu Y, Zhang R, Liu S, Zhao Y, Gao J, Zhu L. ZT-25, a new vacuolar H+-ATPase inhibitor, induces apoptosis and protective autophagy through ROS generation in HepG2 cells. Eur J Pharmacol. 2016;771(Supplement C):130–8.
361. Chen J-J, Chou C-W, Chang Y-F, Chen C-C. Proteasome inhibitors enhance TRAIL-induced apoptosis through the intronic regulation of DR5: involvement of NF-κB and reactive oxygen species-mediated p53 activation. J Immunol. 2008;180(12):8030.
362. Hambright HG, Ghosh R. Autophagy: in the cROSshairs of cancer. Biochem Pharmacol. 2017;126:13–22.
363. Scherz-Shouval R, Shvets E, Fass E, Shorer H, Gil L, Elazar Z. Reactive oxygen species are essential for autophagy and specifically regulate the activity of Atg4. EMBO J. 2007;26(7):1749.
364. Son Y-O, Pratheeshkumar P, Roy RV, Hitron JA, Wang L, Divya SP, et al. Antioncogenic and oncogenic properties of nrf2 in arsenic-induced carcinogenesis. J Biol Chem. 2015;290(45):27090–100.
365. Park JS, Kang DH, Bae SH. p62 prevents carbonyl cyanide m-chlorophenyl hydrazine (CCCP)-induced apoptotic cell death by activating Nrf2. Biochem Biophys Res Commun. 2015;464(4):1139–44.
366. Mathew R, Karp CM, Beaudoin B, Vuong N, Chen G, Chen H-Y, et al. Autophagy suppresses tumorigenesis through elimination of p62. Cell. 2009;137(6):1062–75.
367. Madden DT, Egger L, Bredesen DE. A calpain-like protease inhibits autophagic cell death. Autophagy. 2007;3(5):519–22.
368. Xu Y, Kim SO, Li Y, Han J. Autophagy contributes to caspase-independent macrophage cell death. J Biol Chem. 2006;281(28):19179–87.
369. Gonzalez-Polo RA, Boya P, Pauleau AL, Jalil A, Larochette N, Souquere S, et al. The apoptosis/autophagy paradox: autophagic vacuolization before apoptotic death. J Cell Sci. 2005;118(Pt 14):3091–102.
370. Tessitore L, Tomasi C, Greco M. Fasting-induced apoptosis in rat liver is blocked by cycloheximide. Eur J Cell Biol. 1999;78(8):573–9.
371. McLean K, Vandeven NA, Sorenson DR, Daudi S, Liu JR. The HIV protease inhibitor saquinavir induces endoplasmic reticulum stress, autophagy, and apoptosis in ovarian cancer cells. Gynecol Oncol. 2009;112(3):623–30.
372. Liu B, Cheng Y, Bian HJ, Bao JK. Molecular mechanisms of Polygonatum cyrtonema lectin-induced apoptosis and autophagy in cancer cells. Autophagy. 2009;5(2):253–5.
373. Moad AI, Tengku Muhammad TS, Oon CE, Tan ML. Rapamycin induces apoptosis when autophagy is inhibited in t-47d mammary cells and both processes are regulated by Phlda1. Cell Biochem Biophys. 2013;66(3):567–87.
374. Moretti L, Cha YI, Niermann KJ, Lu B. Switch between apoptosis and autophagy: radiation-induced endoplasmic reticulum stress? Cell Cycle. 2007;6(7):793–8.
375. Levine B, Sinha S, Kroemer G. Bcl-2 family members: dual regulators of apoptosis and autophagy. Autophagy. 2008;4(5):600–6.
376. Williams JA, Thomas AM, Li G, Kong B, Zhan L, Inaba Y, et al. Tissue specific induction of p62/Sqstm1 by farnesoid X receptor. PLoS One. 2012;7(8):e43961.
377. Moscat J, Diaz-Meco MT, Wooten MW. Signal integration and diversification through the p62 scaffold protein. Trends Biochem Sci. 2007;32(2):95–100.
378. Narendra D, Kane LA, Hauser DN, Fearnley IM, Youle RJ. p62/SQSTM1 is required for Parkin-induced mitochondrial clustering but not mitophagy; VDAC1 is dispensable for both. Autophagy. 2010;6(8):1090–106.
379. Jin Z, Li Y, Pitti R, Lawrence D, Pham VC, Lill JR, et al. Cullin3-based polyubiquitination and p62-dependent aggregation of caspase-8 mediate extrinsic apoptosis signaling. Cell. 2009;137(4):721–35.
380. Sanz L, Diaz-Meco MT, Nakano H, Moscat J. The atypical PKC-interacting protein p62 channels NF-kappaB activation by the IL-1-TRAF6 pathway. EMBO J. 2000;19(7):1576–86.
381. Duran A, Linares JF, Galvez AS, Wikenheiser K, Flores JM, Diaz-Meco MT, et al. The signaling adaptor p62 is an important NF-kappaB mediator in tumorigenesis. Cancer Cell. 2008;13(4):343–54.
382. Sanz L, Sanchez P, Lallena MJ, Diaz-Meco MT, Moscat J. The interaction of p62 with RIP links the atypical PKCs to NF-kappaB activation. EMBO J. 1999;18(11):3044–53.
383. Perkins ND. The Rel/NF-kappa B family: friend and foe. Trends Biochem Sci. 2000;25(9):434–40.
384. Wang Y, Han C, Lu L, Magliato S, Wu T. Hedgehog signaling pathway regulates autophagy in human hepatocellular carcinoma cells. Hepatology. 2013;58(3):995–1010.
385. Yin X, Zhang N, Di W. Regulation of LC3-dependent protective autophagy in ovarian cancer cells by protein phosphatase 2A. Int J Gynecol Cancer. 2013;23(4):630–41.
386. Guo JY, Chen HY, Mathew R, Fan J, Strohecker AM, Karsli-Uzunbas G, et al. Activated Ras requires autophagy to maintain oxidative metabolism and tumorigenesis. Genes Dev. 2011;25(5):460–70.
387. Yang S, Wang X, Contino G, Liesa M, Sahin E, Ying H, Bause A, et al. Pancreatic cancers require autophagy for tumor growth. Genes Dev. 2011;25(7):717–29.
388. Levy JM, Thompson JC, Griesinger AM, Amani V, Donson AM, Birks DK, et al. Autophagy inhibition

improves chemosensitivity in BRAF(V600E) brain tumors. Cancer Discov. 2014;4(7):773–80.
389. Maycotte P, Jones KL, Goodall ML, Thorburn J, Thorburn A. Autophagy supports breast cancer stem cell maintenance by regulating IL6 secretion. Mol Cancer Res. 2015;13(4):651–8.
390. Vasilevskaya IA, Selvakumaran M, Roberts D, O'Dwyer PJ. JNK1 inhibition attenuates hypoxia-induced autophagy and sensitizes to chemotherapy. Mol Cancer Res. 2016;14(8):753–63.
391. Jutten B, Rouschop KM. EGFR signaling and autophagy dependence for growth, survival, and therapy resistance. Cell Cycle. 2014;13(1):42–51.
392. Wagner KW, Punnoose EA, Januario T, Lawrence DA, Pitti RM, Lancaster K, et al. Death-receptor O-glycosylation controls tumor-cell sensitivity to the proapoptotic ligand Apo2L/TRAIL. Nat Med. 2007;13(9):1070–7.
393. Soria JC, Mark Z, Zatloukal P, Szima B, Albert I, Juhasz E, et al. Randomized phase II study of dulanermin in combination with paclitaxel, carboplatin, and bevacizumab in advanced non-small-cell lung cancer. J Clin Oncol. 2011;29(33):4442–51.
394. Younes A, Vose JM, Zelenetz AD, Smith MR, Burris HA, Ansell SM, et al. A phase 1b/2 trial of mapatumumab in patients with relapsed/refractory non-Hodgkin's lymphoma. Br J Cancer. 2010;103(12):1783–7.

Prognostic Value of Innate and Adaptive Immunity in Cancers

19

Fabio Grizzi, Elena Monica Borroni, Daniel Yiu, Floriana Maria Farina, Ferdinando Carlo Maria Cananzi, and Luigi Laghi

Contents

19.1 Introduction

Human carcinogenesis is a dynamic process that depends on a large number of variables and is regulated at multiple *spatial* and *temporal* scales [1–4]. According to the theory of multistep carcinogenesis, cancer cells accumulate a number of molecular changes to eventually become fully malignant. The "reductionist" view of cancer expressed in myriads of molecular biology-based investigations stated that all the information necessary for a cell to transform itself into a neoplastic cell can be attributed to changes at the genomic level [5]. This is mainly based on the fact that the genome carries all of the information related to any cell process, and that any cellular transformation is due to a specific genomic change [6]. Cancer is recognized as a highly heterogeneous disease: more than 200 distinct types of human cancer have been described, and various tumor subtypes can be found within specific organs. In addition, tumors have somatic mutations and epigenetic changes, many of which are specific to

F. Grizzi (✉) · D. Yiu
Department of Immunology and Inflammation, Humanitas Clinical and Research Center, Milan, Italy
e-mail: fabio.grizzi@humanitasresearch.it

E. M. Borroni · F. M. Farina
Department of Biotechnology and Translational Medicine, University of Milan, Milan, Italy

F. C. M. Cananzi
Surgical Oncology Unit, Humanitas Clinical and Research Center, Milan, Italy

L. Laghi
Department of Gastroenterology, Humanitas Clinical and Research Center, Milan, Italy

N. Rezaei (ed.), *Cancer Immunology*, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-30845-2_19

the individual neoplasm [7]. This genetic and phenotypical variability primarily determines the self-progressive growth, invasiveness and metastatic potential of neoplastic disease, and its response or resistance to therapy, and it seems that the multilevel complexity of cancer explains the clinical diversity of histologically similar neoplasia [8–11]. Carcinogenesis might be depicted as a *nonlinear* process, the behavior of which does not follow clearly predictable and repeatable pathways. The behavior of a linear system changes progressively in response to an environmental factor. In contrast, the behavior of nonlinear complex systems may be perceived as surprising and unpredictable. Periods of inactivity may be punctuated by sudden change, apparent patterns of behavior may disappear, and new patterns may unexpectedly emerge [2, 12]. Moreover, nonlinear systems do not react proportionally to the magnitude of their inputs and depend on their initial conditions, i.e., small changes in the initial conditions may generate very different end points [13]. These characteristics are commonly highlighted by the frequency with which differences in progression or therapeutic response are seen in the same tumor type, and by the fact that cancer morphology does not always reveal a similar underlying biology [14]. Gliomas and glioblastoma, the most aggressive and most common of all primary malignant brain tumors, are genetically heterogeneous, are relatively less antigenic, and are less responsive to immunotherapy than other cancers [15]. It is now accepted that tumors grow in a complex network of epithelial and mesenchymal cells, vascular and lymphatic vessels, and inflammatory and immune cells [16–18]. The interactions of the neoplastic cells with their microenvironment are tortious, taking advantage of energy and nutriments carried by the blood vessels and growth factors produced by inflammatory and stromal cells and fighting for space to expand and escape the immune attack [19, 20]. Hypoxic conditions also affect the stromal compartment, where stromal cells are in close contact with the cancer cells [10]. When tumor cells metastasize in distant organs, the crosstalk starts again and the overall aggressiveness of a cancer, and therefore, the clinical outcome of the patient will greatly depend on these complex interactions.

19.2 Immune Infiltration as a Major Player of the Tumor Microenvironment

Among the various factors, which influence tumor establishment, growth, local invasion, and metastasis, the impact of immunity has been debated for a long time [21, 22]. While inflammation is now recognized as an enabling characteristic of human cancer [23, 24], the immune system is programmed to recognize tumors from their inception. Immune surveillance against the tumor is stimulated by the presence of tumor-associated antigens (TAA) and by stress-induced molecules [24]. It is known that tumor-associated antigen targets in solid tumors exhibit heterogeneity with regard to intensity and distribution, posing a challenge for chimeric antigen receptor (CAR) T-cell therapy. Novel CAR designs, such as dual TAA-targeted CARs, tandem CARs, and switchable CARs, in conjunction with inhibitory CARs, are being investigated as means to overcome antigen heterogeneity [24]. Only in the past decade, however, studies in murine models led to the understanding of the role of the immune system in cancer progression, a process termed cancer immunoediting [25]. Immunoediting is a process composed of three phases: first, the elimination of tumor cells by immune surveillance; then an equilibrium phase, during which the tumor is subjected to immune-mediated latency and the immune system is in balance with the tumor; and the last phase, during which tumor cells escape immune restraints and co-opt the immune system to promote malignancy. Tumor cells mediate a complex and dynamic immunoediting procedure that results in increased vascular efflux into the draining lymphatics, an immunosuppressive microenvironment rich in regulatory T lymphocytes, dysfunctional antigen presentation, and downregulation of normal effector lymphocyte responses [26]. Tumor cells employ diverse mechanisms to escape from

immune surveillance and manipulate the immune system and the microenvironment to facilitate the development of a malignant phenotype. These include mechanisms that promote escape, such as the downregulation of TAA and the decrease in expression/secretion of pro-inflammatory cytokines, as well as mechanisms that induce immune suppression, such as the production of immune suppressive cytokines, metabolites, and immune checkpoint molecules. Immunoediting enables tumor cells to evade immune system detection, disseminate from the initial niche, survive in the circulation, and settle at new metastatic sites.

Histopathological analyses of solid tumors reveal that they are infiltrated by cells of the innate and adaptive immunity (Fig. 19.1) [27–29]. Macrophages are heterogeneous, multifunctional, myeloid-derived leukocytes that are part of the innate immune system, playing wide-ranging critical roles in basic biological activities, including maintenance of tissue homeostasis involving clearance of microbial pathogens [30]. Macrophages represent a significant portion of the tumor mass, where they are commonly termed tumor-associated macrophages (TAMs) [31]. These cells are generated from blood monocytes

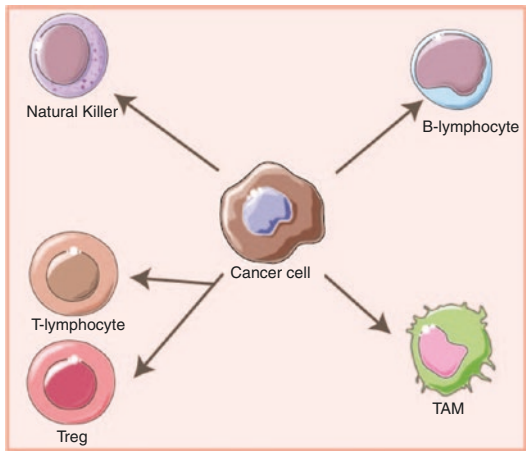


Fig. 19.1 Histopathological analyses of solid tumors reveal that they are infiltrated by cells of the innate and adaptive immunity. Cancer cells and unmodified genetic cells might be depicted as a "microunit" whose behavior is determined by complex relationships among the microenvironment components

[32], which differentiate into two distinct macrophage types, identified as M1 (or classically activated) and M2 (or alternatively activated). M1- and M2-polarized macrophages are endowed with opposite functional roles in terms of tumor suppression and immune stimulation. Several transcription factors, such as peroxisome proliferator-activated receptors, signal transducers and activators of transcription, CCAAT-enhancer-binding proteins, interferon regulatory factors, Kruppel-like factors, GATA-binding protein 3, nuclear transcription factor-κB, and c-MYC, were found to promote the expression of specific genes, which dictate the functional polarization of macrophages [33, 34]. Indeed, whereas M1 cells, by virtue of their ability to elicit Toll-like receptor (TLR) pathway, enhance immune responses and restrain tumor progression, M2 macrophages switch off the immune system and promote tumor development. Mast cells, myeloid-derived suppressor cells (i.e., the most abundant type of hematopoietic cells in the immune system) [35, 36], and neutrophils [37, 38] have also been reported to invade the intratumoral space. Dendritic cells (DCs) are found in different locations within a tumor, most immature Langerhans cell-type DCs home in the tumor nests and are tightly linked to malignant cells, whereas both immature interstitial DCs and plasmacytoid DCs are located in the stroma [39]. The ability to mount an effective antitumor immune response requires coordinate control of $CD4^+$T-cell and $CD8^+$T-cell function by antigen presenting cells, most importantly DCs. In some cases, tumors create an immunosuppressive microenvironment that helps protect tumor cells from immune recognition. In many cases, this defect can be traced back to a failure of DCs to recognize, process, and present tumor antigens to T-cells [40, 41]. Mature DCs concentrate in lymphoid islets adjacent to the tumor nests and some draining lymph nodes. NK cells are usually found in the stroma of most tumors [42, 43] but can be also found in close contact with tumor cells in renal cell carcinoma. The distribution of lymphocytes may be differently orchestrated depending on the tumoral spatial organization [44]. T lymphocytes are mainly located in the core, often referred as the center of

the tumor, its invasive margin [45], and in adjacent lymphoid islets. Among T lymphocytes, most of them have a memory phenotype, naïve cells being found mostly in adjacent lymphoid islets [46]. Some $CD8^+$ T lymphocytes contact malignant cells, whereas others are dispersed in the stromal compartment. Forkhead/winged helix transcription factor $(FoxP3)^+$ T lymphocytes, T-lymphocyte helper 17 (Th17), T-follicular cells help (TFH), and B lymphocytes concentrate in the stromal tissue and in lymphoid islets. A similar organization is found in metastatic sites, as in the primary tumors, although diversity is observed within tumors and between patients. Correlations between the levels of immune cell infiltration of tumors and clinical outcome have been investigated in several cancers of unrelated histological origin [47–50]. A strong lymphocytic infiltration has been reported to be associated with good clinical outcome in different tumor types and subtypes, including melanoma, head and neck, breast, bladder, ovarian, colorectal, renal, prostatic, and lung cancer [47, 48, 50–55]. The analysis of other T lymphocytes has also yielded apparently contradictory results. Th17 cells have been reported to be associated with poor prognosis in colorectal, lung, and hepatocellular carcinoma or have been reported to predict better survival in some esophageal and gastric cancers [56]. The effect of intratumoral B lymphocytes in cancer remains far from clear; B-cells have recently been appreciated as paracrine mediators of solid tumor development [57], although their capability to enhance T-cell activation might have a positive impact in the organization of the antitumor immune response [58]. Here, we discuss the role played by innate and adaptive immune system in the local progression and metastasis of human cancer of unrelated histological origin and the prognostic information that we can currently understand and exploit.

19.3 Cellular Players of the Innate Immunity in Cancer

Rudolf Virchow (1821–1902) first observed infiltrating leukocytes in tumors and proposed the inflammation as a primary site of cancer occurrence [59]. Later, epidemiological and experimental studies have associated chronic infections to about 15–20% of tumors [60, 61] and linked inflammation to tumorigenesis, by modulation of a variety of complex processes, including the increased cell proliferation, rate of mutagenesis, angiogenesis [62], and inhibition of apoptosis. For these reasons, inflammation has been acknowledged as a critical element in cancer occurrence and has been included as a new "hallmark of cancer" [23]. The inflammation is the protective response of the body against various harmful stimuli; however, the aberrant and inappropriate activation tends to become harmful [63].

19.3.1 Tumor-Associated Macrophages (TAM)

A number of studies appraised tumor-associated macrophages (TAM) as crucial mediators of the connection between inflammation and cancer occurrence [64–68]. TAMs secrete a plethora of cytokines and chemokine, which are the soluble mediators of inflammation and are mainly responsible to mediate such processes [69]. It is widely accepted that in the majority of cancers, TAMs have a pro-tumoral effect [70]. However, these cells are intrinsically "plastic" in their functions, and in the complexity of tumor microenvironment, they were shown to acquire antagonistic properties ranging from immune suppressive to immune-stimulatory properties. While the antitumor role of TAM has been previously linked to the orchestration of T-lymphocyte antitumor immune response, recent findings have shown that tumor immune surveillance can be firmly directed by TAMs when "educated" by specific treatments in a T-cell independent fashion [71]. The functional plasticity of macrophages is regulated by environmental stimuli; thus, their immune profile results in the identification of two distinct polarized functions, schematically simplified as M1/M2 classification. Macrophages are recruited at peripheral sites by locally secreted chemotactic factors and cytokines, including inflammatory chemokines and growth factors [i.e., vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF), platelet-derived growth factor (PDGF), and macrophage colony-stimulating factor (M-CSF)]

[72]. These cytokines can also promote macrophage survival and polarization. Although mobilization of the circulating pool of monocytes is the main mechanism of macrophage recruitment, local proliferation can contribute to macrophage accumulation at the tumor site [73]. In the tumor context, both tumor and stromal cells secrete a variety of chemo-attractants for blood circulating monocytes, including CCL-2, originally discovered as a tumor-derived chemotactic factor [74]. Molecular profiling analyses of both human and murine TAMs have evidenced a profile closer to that of M2 macrophages [75, 76], whose remodeling, immunosuppressive activities, and production of trophic factors for tumor and stromal cells functionally correlate to important pro-tumor activities [77], including proteolytic activity [78], remodeling of the extracellular matrix [79], and induction of angiogenesis [80]. Liu et al. have shown that M2-polarized TAMs increased fibroblastic morphology, upregulated mesenchymal markers (i.e., Vimentin and Snail) at the mRNA and protein levels, and increased proliferation, migration, and metalloproteinase MMP2 and MMP9 proteolytic activity in pancreatic cancer cells [81]. In addition, it has been shown that the inhibitor of MMP-9 has been associated with decreased survival in breast cancer [82]. Leifler et al. identified MMP-9 as a potent player in modulating the innate immune response into antitumor activities [82]. Notably, TAMs exert their pro-tumor functions both directly acting on tumor cells and indirectly, by orchestrating the suppression of the adaptive immune response. Macrophages, whether adequately activated, have the capability to both directly kill tumor cells [83, 84], a property mediated by contact dependent [85] as well as independent mechanisms [71], and orchestrate an antitumor adaptive immune response, through the activation of cytotoxic lymphocytes.

19.3.2 Tumor-Associated Neutrophils (TAN)

Although TAMs are the most prevalent innate cellular components of the tumor microenvironment, the role of tumor-associated neutrophils (TANs) on tumor progression has been reconsidered [86, 87]. Accordingly, TANs have been shown as a source of cytokines and chemokine and in different settings also anti-inflammatory mediators, thus likely to mediate a dual effect on tumor progression depending on their polarization state, i.e., N1 and N2 [88, 89]. TAMs and TANs functional polarization and prognostic value reflect the intrinsically plasticity as it varies along the tumor type, location in the tumor tissue (i.e., necrotic and hypoxic areas), and the tumor stage. Studies have demonstrated specific examples of tumor-mediated signals (such as transforming growth factor-β, TGF-β) that induce the formation of a pro-tumorigenic N2 phenotype capable of supporting tumor growth and suppressing the antitumor immune response. However, there are also studies showing that TAN can also have an antitumorigenic N1 phenotype [90]. Many patients with advanced cancer show high levels of neutrophilia, tumor neutrophils are connected to dismal prognosis, and the neutrophil-to-lymphocyte ratio has been introduced as a significant prognostic factor for survival in many types of cancer. Neutrophils constitute an important portion of the infiltrating immune cells in the tumor microenvironment, but controversy has long surrounded the function of these cells in the context of cancer. In particular, it remains unclear whether these different populations represent bona fide subsets or simply activation/polarization states in response to local cues [91, 92].

19.4 Cellular Players of the Adaptive Immunity in Cancer

It has been accepted that immune cells infiltrate the tumor stroma, and they are essential players of the tumor microenvironment. The cells of the adaptive immune system are mainly represented by $CD8^+$ cytotoxic T lymphocytes (CTLs) and $CD4^+$ T-helper lymphocytes. The main function of $CD4^+$ T lymphocytes is to sustain activation of other cells, including macrophages, B-cells, and CTLs, by release of several cytokines, such as interleukn-2 (IL-2), tumor necrosis factor alpha (TNFα), and interferon gamma (INFγ). Identification and specific elimination of tumor

cells are mediated by CTLs CD8+ T-cells [93, 94], which produce perforin and granzyme B [95]. The recognition by lymphocytes of antigens after first encounter is kept at a higher activation level compared to the baseline. Activated T lymphocytes have long life, are more reactive to stimulation than naïve T lymphocytes, and are detectable by specific surface molecules, suggesting that their presence in the context of solid tumors has important implications. Accordingly, antigen-experienced CTLs phenotypically switch CD45 isoform from CD45RA to CD45RO when they are activated [96].

T-lymphocyte activation is also modulated by a subpopulation of T lymphocytes indicated as T-regs, which suppress immune responses [97]. The transcription factor *FOXP3* is a specific T-reg cell marker [97, 98]. T-regulatory cells were discovered more than 20 years ago and have remained a topic of intense investigation by immunologists [99]. T-reg lymphocytes include different subpopulations, although the most investigated are CD4+ CD25+ [97, 100]. However, these markers are not completely specific for T-regs because CD25 and *FOXP3* might also be expressed by activated CTLs [96]. Accordingly, the specificity of tumor-infiltrating T-reg cell antigen has yet to be determined in humans. T-regs may exert different functions according to the tumor contexture, i.e., they might block anti-tumor immunity or decrease chronic pro-tumor inflammation [96].

In the clinical setting of some human cancers, the lymphocytic reaction can comprise different components beside dispersed tumor-infiltrating lymphocytes (TILs) and include discrete "lymphoid aggregates," resembling lymph-node-like structures. These aggregates are similar to those observed in chronic inflammatory conditions, where tissues harboring target antigens are infiltrated by cellular effectors of the adaptive immune system, which organize anatomically and functionally as in secondary lymphoid organs, with recruitment of B-cells and T-cells, follicular dendritic cells with germinal centers, and specialized vessels suited to mediate traffic of immune cells [101, 102]. Those structures are named tertiary lymphoid tissue (TLT) and might be involved in the organization of the immune response. Few reports exist that TLTs are present also in cancer [103, 104]. Moreover, the concept of ectopic lymphoid structures within solid tumors has only recently become appreciated, and it is still unclear whether these structures retain functional immune activities to mediate recruitment and activation of TILs.

19.5 Prognostic Value of Innate and Adaptive Cells of the Immune System in Cancer

The stromal compartment of solid tumors is infiltrated by immune and inflammatory cells expressing a wide array of specific markers and exerting critical effects on tumor outcome depending on their specific subset, density, spatial location [105] and the staging of tumor at diagnosis [106–108]. It is widely accepted that in preclinical studies, cellular mediators of the innate immunity favor tumor progression [23, 77, 109]. Accordingly, the quantification of the number of CD68+ TAMs was linked to a poor prognosis in pancreatic cancer and Hodgkin's lymphoma [110, 111]. Recently, it has been shown that tumor and stroma DC, NK cells, M1-polarized TAMs, CD8+ T-cells, and B-cells were associated with improved prognosis and tumor PD-L1, and stromal M2 TAMs and T-reg cells had poorer prognosis in non-small-cell lung cancer [112]. In the case of pancreatic cancer, expression of M1 markers of macrophage polarization was associated with better prognosis, while M2 markers were linked to worst prognosis [111]. In lung cancer, IL10+–CD68+ TAMs were associated with worst prognosis in patients with late-stage disease at diagnosis [113], while in a subsequent study, a high ratio of M1/M2 macrophages was a feature of patients with good outcome [114]. Thus, according to the simplified view of macrophage polarization provided by Mantovani et al., in clinical studies, macrophages infiltrate tumor nest as a heterogeneous population, which seem to retain different functional and molecular properties that may vary according to the instructions

provided by the tumor milieu. On the contrary, in colorectal cancer, it was shown a correlation of high number of TAMs with a better prognosis [85, 115], and in a later study, this correlation held true regardless of TAM polarization [116]. Discrepancies among clinical studies on prognostic abilities of innate immune cells underline the importance of the tumor type when trying to determine TAM's influence on tumor progression. Wu et al. found that TAMs identified only with CD68 have no significant correlation with the prognosis and clinicopathological parameters of bladder cancer patients. However, TAMs detected with CD163 could serve as a prognostic marker for bladder cancer patients. These findings invite further research on the role of TAM subsets in bladder cancer patients [117]. Beside the parenchymal cells, the liver also contains resident and infiltrating myeloid cells involved in immune responses to pathogens and much less is known about their interplay with hepatitis B virus (HBV). While it is still unclear if liver macrophages play a role in the establishment and persistence of HBV infection, several studies disclosed data suggesting that HBV would favor liver macrophage anti-inflammatory phenotypes and thereby increase liver tolerance. In addition, alternatively activated liver macrophages might also play in the long term a key role in hepatitis B-associated pathogenesis, especially through the activation of hepatic stellate cells [118]. Further clinical data are warranted to study whether TAM effect might differ along tumor progression and, in a clinical relevant scenario, with regard to chemotherapy treatments. Several retrospective clinical studies on colorectal, melanoma, ovarian, breast, and non-small-cell lung tumors generally underlined the adaptive immune cell tumor infiltration as a prognostic indicator of good patient's prognosis [103, 105, 119–123]. Variability with respect to prognostic potential of the markers employed relies on the specific population of T lymphocytes and the type of tumor settings investigated. In this view, colorectal cancer represents a paradigm since its *milieu* is highly permeated by adaptive immune cells with potential antitumor abilities. A seminal paper by Galon et al. claimed that concomitant local infiltration of $CD3^+$ lymphocytes at the tumor invasive margin and in the intratumoral location was a better predictor of survival than the tumor-node-metastasis (TNM) staging system [105]. However, TNM is still the gold standard to predict CRC patient prognosis, while TILs are not employed to date in clinical practice. A subsequent study from Laghi et al. raised doubts on previous claim and showed that while $CD3^+$ T-infiltrating lymphocytes (TILs) were not independent by TNM staging in predicting patient's prognosis, TILs were a strong prognostic factor only among lymph-node negative but not among lymph-node-positive CRCs [106]. Later, Mlecnik et al. showed that an immune score was reproposed, although represented by partly overlapping subpopulations of TILs (i.e., $CD8^+$ and $CD45RO^+$), which had to be concomitantly located at the tumor invasive margin and intratumoral in each CRC specimen [124]. By these means, these immune features identified a benchmarking population with a dismal prognosis and devoid of TILs, representing only 6.5% of the CRCs (stages I–III) [124]. This strategy fostered statistical analysis but might not provide proper clinical prognostic relevance when addressing surveillance strategies and allocation to chemotherapy in the overall population of CRC. The biological relevance of tumor lymph-node infiltration in the context of TIL prognostic abilities was previously shown in ovarian cancer in a study suggesting a negative interaction of nodal status with antitumor immunity [107]. In CRC, the density of activated $CD8^+$TILs decreased in patients with metastatic lymph nodes and advanced tumor staging, suggesting that immune escape might occur along CRC disease progression [125]. Accordingly, in a different study, the expression of *eomesodermin,* a transcription factor critically involved in the production of perforin, is inversely associated with tumor lymph-nodal involvement [126]. In melanoma, these observations were supported by the fact that a primary tumor devoid of TILs was shown to predict sentinel lymph node metastasis. These studies underline that the plasticity of TILs with regard to their recruitment and antitumor activity seems to differ along the clinical progression of

different solid cancers [108]. Therefore, future design of clinical trials aimed to employ TILs as diagnostic tools or novel immunotherapy strategies should take into account these considerations. Recruitment of T-reg cells to the tumor milieu is another mechanism of tumor immune evasion. In ovary cancer, recruitment of T regs decreased specific antitumor TILs and associated with a worst prognosis [127]. In hepatocellular, renal cell, and breast carcinomas, the number of $CD4^+CD25^+Foxp3^+$ cells was associated with worst patient's outcome [128–130], although not independently by other histopathological features in the case of breast cancer. Counterintuitively, different CRC studies showed that a high density of $Foxp3^+$ cells was independently associated with better prognosis [131–133]. This discrepancy might be explained by hypothesizing that $Foxp3^+$ cells instead of inhibiting antitumor immunity seem to decrease chronic pro-tumor inflammation. However, the biological basis explaining the differing roles of T-reg cells in tumor progression with respect to the tumor type is still unknown. New experimental models properly simulating tumor development will be helpful in better understanding T-reg activity on tumor. It is indubitable that the estimation of risk of recurrence for patients with CRC must be improved. A robust immune score quantification is needed to introduce immune parameters into cancer classification. Recently, an International Panel assessed the prognostic value of total tumor-infiltrating T-cell counts and cytotoxic tumor-infiltrating T-cell counts with the consensus Immunoscore assay in patients with stage I–III CRCs. The Immunoscore provides a reliable estimate of the risk of recurrence in patients with colon cancer. These results support the implementation of the consensus Immunoscore as a new component of a TNM-Immune classification of cancer [45].

19.6 Concluding Remarks

Solid tumors contain a heterogeneous mixture of malignant and nonmalignant cells within an extracellular matrix supported by an irregular vascular network [134, 135]. The cancer microenvironment makes up the stroma of the neoplasm and is the tissue that determines tumor growth, progression, and ability to initiate metastases. Because of the role that the cancer microenvironment plays in each stage of tumor development, better knowledge about the interactions of the tumor with its microenvironment would seem to be of the utmost importance for developing new treatment strategies [136, 137]. It has been ascertained that cancerous stroma coevolves alongside tumor progression, thereby promoting the malignant conversion of epithelial carcinoma cells [138]. However, tumor stroma is infiltrated by a variety of immune cells with the ability to influence tumor development and with a relevant impact on prognosis. The understanding that the immune system plays a dual role in cancer progression has led to the recent development of targeted immunotherapies [139]. Immune surveillance against the tumor is stimulated by the presence of TAA and by stress-induced molecules. Only in the past decade, however, have studies in murine models led to the understanding of immune system roles in cancer progression, a process termed cancer immunoediting [25].

It is indubitable that the analysis of the type, quantity, location, and the functions of the immune infiltrate becomes a primary step in understanding the history of cancer in a clinical relevant perspective. A comprehensive analysis of all components of the lymphocytic infiltrates in the context of their localization, organization, and impact at various steps of tumor progression remains largely, if not entirely, to be addressed in prospective studies [140, 141]. As recently reported by Hamada et al., further studies examining tumor molecular alterations and additional factors in the tumor microenvironment may inform development of immunoprevention and immunotherapy strategies [142]. In parallel, understanding the mechanisms of efficient immune reactions, the place where they are initiated, the cellular and molecular mediators involved, and their impact at different stages of the disease should provide new tools and goals for more effective and less toxic-targeted therapies.

References

1. Grizzi F, Di Ieva A, Russo C, Frezza EE, Cobos E, Muzzio PC, et al. Cancer initiation and progression: an unsimplifiable complexity. Theor Biol Med Model. 2006;3:37.
2. Enderling H, Hahnfeldt P, Hlatky L, Almog N. Systems biology of tumor dormancy: linking biology and mathematics on multiple scales to improve cancer therapy. Cancer Res. 2012;72(9):2172–5.
3. Deisboeck TS, Wang Z, Macklin P, Cristini V. Multiscale cancer modeling. Annu Rev Biomed Eng. 2011;13:127–55.
4. Chakrabarti A, Verbridge S, Stroock AD, Fischbach C, Varner JD. Multiscale models of breast cancer progression. Ann Biomed Eng. 2012;40(11):2488–500.
5. Anderson AR, Quaranta V. Integrative mathematical oncology. Nat Rev Cancer. 2008;8(3):227–34.
6. Brenner S. Biological computation. Novartis Found Symp. 1998;213:106–11. discussion 11-6.
7. Taddei ML, Giannoni E, Comito G, Chiarugi P. Microenvironment and tumor cell plasticity: an easy way out. Cancer Lett. 2013;341(1):80–96.
8. Grizzi F, Chiriva-Internati M. Cancer: looking for simplicity and finding complexity. Cancer Cell Int. 2006;6:4.
9. Wang E, Zou J, Zaman N, Beitel LK, Trifiro M, Paliouras M. Cancer systems biology in the genome sequencing era: part 2. Evolutionary dynamics of tumor clonal networks and drug resistance. Semin Cancer Biol. 2013;23(4):286–92.
10. Laitala A, Erler JT. Hypoxic signalling in tumour stroma. Front Oncol. 2018;8:189.
11. Sigston EAW, Williams BRG. An emergence framework of carcinogenesis. Front Oncol. 2017;7:198.
12. Salgia R, Mambetsariev I, Hewelt B, Achuthan S, Li H, Poroyko V, et al. Modeling small cell lung cancer (SCLC) biology through deterministic and stochastic mathematical models. Oncotarget. 2018;9(40):26226–42.
13. Jupp PW. A complex systems approach to cancer prevention. Med Hypotheses. 2018;112:18–23.
14. Almendro V, Marusyk A, Polyak K. Cellular heterogeneity and molecular evolution in cancer. Annu Rev Pathol. 2013;8:277–302.
15. Arrieta VA, Cacho-Diaz B, Zhao J, Rabadan R, Chen L, Sonabend AM. The possibility of cancer immune editing in gliomas. A critical review. Oncoimmunology. 2018;7(7):e1445458.
16. Brabek J, Mierke CT, Rosel D, Vesely P, Fabry B. The role of the tissue microenvironment in the regulation of cancer cell motility and invasion. Cell Commun Signal. 2010;8:22.
17. Schiavoni G, Gabriele L, Mattei F. The tumor microenvironment: a pitch for multiple players. Front Oncol. 2013;3:90.
18. Marsh T, Pietras K, McAllister SS. Fibroblasts as architects of cancer pathogenesis. Biochim Biophys Acta. 2013;1832(7):1070–8.
19. Cantor JR, Sabatini DM. Cancer cell metabolism: one hallmark, many faces. Cancer Discov. 2012;2(10):881–98.
20. Sundaram GM, Quah S, Sampath P. Cancer: the dark side of wound healing. FEBS J. 2018;285(24):4516–34.
21. Grivennikov SI, Greten FR, Karin M. Immunity, inflammation, and cancer. Cell. 2010;140(6):883–99.
22. Foucher ED, Ghigo C, Chouaib S, Galon J, Iovanna J, Olive D. Pancreatic ductal adenocarcinoma: a strong imbalance of good and bad immunological cops in the tumor microenvironment. Front Immunol. 2018;9:1044.
23. Hanahan D, Weinberg RA. Hallmarks of cancer: the next generation. Cell. 2011;144(5):646–74.
24. Yu LX, Ling Y, Wang HY. Role of nonresolving inflammation in hepatocellular carcinoma development and progression. NPJ Precis Oncol. 2018;2(1):6.
25. Vesely MD, Schreiber RD. Cancer immunoediting: antigens, mechanisms, and implications to cancer immunotherapy. Ann N Y Acad Sci. 2013;1284:1–5.
26. Murthy V, Minehart J, Sterman DH. Local immunotherapy of cancer: innovative approaches to harnessing tumor-specific immune responses. J Natl Cancer Inst. 2017;109(12):djx097.
27. Candido J, Hagemann T. Cancer-related inflammation. J Clin Immunol. 2013;33(Suppl 1):S79–84.
28. Fridman WH, Dieu-Nosjean MC, Pages F, Cremer I, Damotte D, Sautes-Fridman C, et al. The immune microenvironment of human tumors: general significance and clinical impact. Cancer Microenviron. 2012;6(2):117–22.
29. Mlecnik B, Bindea G, Pages F, Galon J. Tumor immunosurveillance in human cancers. Cancer Metastasis Rev. 2011;30(1):5–12.
30. Pham LV, Pogue E, Ford RJ. The role of macrophage/B-cell interactions in the pathophysiology of B-cell lymphomas. Front Oncol. 2018;8:147.
31. De Palma M, Lewis CE. Macrophage regulation of tumor responses to anticancer therapies. Cancer Cell. 2013;23(3):277–86.
32. Lee HW, Choi HJ, Ha SJ, Lee KT, Kwon YG. Recruitment of monocytes/macrophages in different tumor microenvironments. Biochim Biophys Acta. 2013;1835(2):170–9.
33. Li H, Jiang T, Li MQ, Zheng XL, Zhao GJ. Transcriptional regulation of macrophages polarization by MicroRNAs. Front Immunol. 2018;9:1175.
34. de Groot AE, Pienta KJ. Epigenetic control of macrophage polarization: implications for targeting tumor-associated macrophages. Oncotarget. 2018;9(29):20908–27.
35. Khaled YS, Ammori BJ, Elkord E. Myeloid-derived suppressor cells in cancer: recent progress and prospects. Immunol Cell Biol. 2013;91(8):493–502.
36. Taverna G, Giusti G, Seveso M, Hurle R, Colombo P, Stifter S, et al. Mast cells as a potential

prognostic marker in prostate cancer. Dis Markers. 2013;35(6):711–20.
37. Tazzyman S, Niaz H, Murdoch C. Neutrophil-mediated tumour angiogenesis: subversion of immune responses to promote tumour growth. Semin Cancer Biol. 2013;23(3):149–58.
38. Galdiero MR, Bianchi P, Grizzi F, Di Caro G, Basso G, Ponzetta A, et al. Occurrence and significance of tumor-associated neutrophils in patients with colorectal cancer. Int J Cancer. 2016;139(2):446–56.
39. Shurin GV, Ma Y, Shurin MR. Immunosuppressive mechanisms of regulatory dendritic cells in cancer. Cancer Microenviron. 2013;6(2):159–67.
40. Shey MS, Balfour A, Wilkinson KA, Meintjes G. Contribution of APCs to mucosal-associated invariant T-cell activation in infectious disease and cancer. Innate Immun. 2018;24(4):192–202.
41. Bandola-Simon J, Roche PA. Dysfunction of antigen processing and presentation by dendritic cells in cancer. Mol Immunol. 2018;113:31–7. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.molimm.2018.03.025.
42. Crome SQ, Lang PA, Lang KS, Ohashi PS. Natural killer cells regulate diverse T-cell responses. Trends Immunol. 2013;34(7):342–9.
43. Min-Oo G, Kamimura Y, Hendricks DW, Nabekura T, Lanier LL. Natural killer cells: walking three paths down memory lane. Trends Immunol. 2013;34(6):251–8.
44. Pages F, Galon J, Dieu-Nosjean MC, Tartour E, Sautes-Fridman C, Fridman WH. Immune infiltration in human tumors: a prognostic factor that should not be ignored. Oncogene. 2010;29(8):1093–102.
45. Pages F, Mlecnik B, Marliot F, Bindea G, Ou FS, Bifulco C, et al. International validation of the consensus immunoscore for the classification of colon cancer: a prognostic and accuracy study. Lancet. 2018;391(10135):2128–39.
46. Mueller SN, Gebhardt T, Carbone FR, Heath WR. Memory T-cell subsets, migration patterns, and tissue residence. Annu Rev Immunol. 2013;31:137–61.
47. Veeranki S. Role of inflammasomes and their regulators in prostate cancer initiation, progression and metastasis. Cell Mol Biol Lett. 2013;18(3):355.
48. Jiang X, Shapiro DJ. The immune system and inflammation in breast cancer. Mol Cell Endocrinol. 2013;382(1):673–82.
49. Sun B, Karin M. Inflammation and liver tumorigenesis. Front Med. 2013;7(2):242–54.
50. Maccio A, Madeddu C. Inflammation and ovarian cancer. Cytokine. 2012;58(2):133–47.
51. Neurath MF, Finotto S. The emerging role of T-cell cytokines in non-small cell lung cancer. Cytokine Growth Factor Rev. 2012;23(6):315–22.
52. Milara J, Cortijo J. Tobacco, inflammation, and respiratory tract cancer. Curr Pharm Des. 2012;18(26):3901–38.
53. Dunn JH, Ellis LZ, Fujita M. Inflammasomes as molecular mediators of inflammation and cancer: potential role in melanoma. Cancer Lett. 2012;314(1):24–33.
54. Saito K, Kihara K. Role of C-reactive protein in urological cancers: a useful biomarker for predicting outcomes. Int J Urol. 2013;20(2):161–71.
55. Baxevanis CN, Papamichail M, Perez SA. Immune classification of colorectal cancer patients: impressive but how complete? Expert Opin Biol Ther. 2013;13(4):517–26.
56. Fung KY, Nguyen PM, Putoczki T. The expanding role of innate lymphoid cells and their T-cell counterparts in gastrointestinal cancers. Mol Immunol. 2017;110:48–56.
57. Gunderson AJ, Coussens LM. B-cells and their mediators as targets for therapy in solid tumors. Exp Cell Res. 2013;319(11):1644–9.
58. Nelson BH. CD20+ B-cells: the other tumor-infiltrating lymphocytes. J Immunol. 2010;185(9):4977–82.
59. Mantovani A, Romero P, Palucka AK, Marincola FM. Tumour immunity: effector response to tumour and role of the microenvironment. Lancet. 2008;371(9614):771–83.
60. Kuper H, Adami HO, Trichopoulos D. Infections as a major preventable cause of human cancer. J Intern Med. 2000;248(3):171–83.
61. Parkin DM. The global health burden of infection-associated cancers in the year 2002. Int J Cancer. 2006;118(12):3030–44.
62. Albini A, Bruno A, Noonan DM, Mortara L. Contribution to tumor angiogenesis from innate immune cells within the tumor microenvironment: implications for immunotherapy. Front Immunol. 2018;9:527.
63. Qu X, Tang Y, Hua S. Immunological approaches towards cancer and inflammation: a cross talk. Front Immunol. 2018;9:563.
64. Mantovani A, Bottazzi B, Colotta F, Sozzani S, Ruco L. The origin and function of tumor-associated macrophages. Immunol Today. 1992;13(7):265–70.
65. Sica A, Mantovani A. Macrophage plasticity and polarization: in vivo veritas. J Clin Invest. 2012;122(3):787–95.
66. Malesci A, Bianchi P, Celesti G, Basso G, Marchesi F, Grizzi F, et al. Tumor-associated macrophages and response to 5-fluorouracil adjuvant therapy in stage III colorectal cancer. Oncoimmunology. 2017;6(12):e1342918.
67. Grizzi F, Basso G, Borroni EM, Cavalleri T, Bianchi P, Stifter S, et al. Evolving notions on immune response in colorectal cancer and their implications for biomarker development. Inflamm Res. 2018;67(5):375–89.
68. Porta C, Ippolito A, Consonni FM, Carraro L, Celesti G, Correale C, et al. Protumor steering of cancer inflammation by p50 NF-kappaB enhances

colorectal cancer progression. Cancer Immunol Res. 2018;6(5):578–93.
69. Terzic J, Grivennikov S, Karin E, Karin M. Inflammation and colon cancer. Gastroenterology. 2010;138(6):2101–14 e5.
70. Pollard JW. Tumour-educated macrophages promote tumour progression and metastasis. Nat Rev Cancer. 2004;4(1):71–8.
71. Beatty GL, Chiorean EG, Fishman MP, Saboury B, Teitelbaum UR, Sun W, et al. CD40 agonists alter tumor stroma and show efficacy against pancreatic carcinoma in mice and humans. Science (New York, NY). 2011;331(6024):1612–6.
72. Mantovani A, Germano G, Marchesi F, Locatelli M, Biswas SK. Cancer-promoting tumor-associated macrophages: new vistas and open questions. Eur J Immunol. 2011;41(9):2522–5.
73. Allavena P, Sica A, Garlanda C, Mantovani A. The yin-Yang of tumor-associated macrophages in neoplastic progression and immune surveillance. Immunol Rev. 2008;222:155–61.
74. Bottazzi B, Polentarutti N, Acero R, Balsari A, Boraschi D, Ghezzi P, et al. Regulation of the macrophage content of neoplasms by chemoattractants. Science (New York, NY). 1983;220(4593):210–2.
75. Biswas SK, Gangi L, Paul S, Schioppa T, Saccani A, Sironi M, et al. A distinct and unique transcriptional program expressed by tumor-associated macrophages (defective NF-kappaB and enhanced IRF-3/STAT1 activation). Blood. 2006;107(5):2112–22.
76. Solinas G, Schiarea S, Liguori M, Fabbri M, Pesce S, Zammataro L, et al. Tumor-conditioned macrophages secrete migration-stimulating factor: a new marker for M2-polarization, influencing tumor cell motility. J Immunol. 2010;185(1):642–52.
77. Mantovani A, Allavena P, Sica A, Balkwill F. Cancer-related inflammation. Nature. 2008;454(7203):436–44.
78. Verollet C, Charriere GM, Labrousse A, Cougoule C, Le Cabec V, Maridonneau-Parini I. Extracellular proteolysis in macrophage migration: losing grip for a breakthrough. Eur J Immunol. 2011;41(10):2805–13.
79. Joyce JA, Pollard JW. Microenvironmental regulation of metastasis. Nat Rev Cancer. 2009;9(4):239–52.
80. Murdoch C, Muthana M, Coffelt SB, Lewis CE. The role of myeloid cells in the promotion of tumour angiogenesis. Nat Rev Cancer. 2008;8(8):618–31.
81. Liu CY, Xu JY, Shi XY, Huang W, Ruan TY, Xie P, et al. M2-polarized tumor-associated macrophages promoted epithelial-mesenchymal transition in pancreatic cancer cells, partially through TLR4/IL-10 signaling pathway. Lab Investig. 2013;93(7):844–54.
82. Leifler KS, Svensson S, Abrahamsson A, Bendrik C, Robertson J, Gauldie J, et al. Inflammation induced by MMP-9 enhances tumor regression of experimental breast cancer. J Immunol. 2013;190(8):4420–30.
83. Mantovani A, Bar Shavit Z, Peri G, Polentarutti N, Bordignon C, Sessa C, et al. Natural cytotoxicity on tumour cells of human macrophages obtained from diverse anatomical sites. Clin Exp Immunol. 1980;39(3):776–84.
84. Mantovani A, Allavena P, Sessa C, Bolis G, Mangioni C. Natural killer activity of lymphoid cells isolated from human ascitic ovarian tumors. Int J Cancer. 1980;25(5):573–82.
85. Forssell J, Oberg A, Henriksson ML, Stenling R, Jung A, Palmqvist R. High macrophage infiltration along the tumor front correlates with improved survival in colon cancer. Clin Cancer Res. 2007;13(5):1472–9.
86. Galdiero MR, Garlanda C, Jaillon S, Marone G, Mantovani A. Tumor associated macrophages and neutrophils in tumor progression. J Cell Physiol. 2012;228(7):1404–12.
87. Jaillon S, Galdiero MR, Del Prete D, Cassatella MA, Garlanda C, Mantovani A. Neutrophils in innate and adaptive immunity. Semin Immunopathol. 2013;35(4):377–94.
88. Mantovani A, Cassatella MA, Costantini C, Jaillon S. Neutrophils in the activation and regulation of innate and adaptive immunity. Nat Rev Immunol. 2011;11(8):519–31.
89. Mantovani A. The yin-yang of tumor-associated neutrophils. Cancer Cell. 2009;16(3):173–4.
90. Fridlender ZG, Albelda SM. Tumor-associated neutrophils: friend or foe? Carcinogenesis. 2012;33(5):949–55.
91. Shaul ME, Fridlender ZG. Cancer related circulating and tumor-associated neutrophils - subtypes, sources and function. FEBS J. 2018;285(23):4316–42.
92. Deniset JF, Kubes P. Neutrophil heterogeneity: Bona fide subsets or polarization states? J Leukoc Biol. 2018;103(5):829–38.
93. Titu LV, Monson JR, Greenman J. The role of CD8(+) T-cells in immune responses to colorectal cancer. Cancer Immunol Immunother. 2002;51(5):235–47.
94. Dalerba P, Maccalli C, Casati C, Castelli C, Parmiani G. Immunology and immunotherapy of colorectal cancer. Crit Rev Oncol Hematol. 2003;46(1):33–57.
95. Shunyakov L, Ryan CK, Sahasrabudhe DM, Khorana AA. The influence of host response on colorectal cancer prognosis. Clin Colorectal Cancer. 2004;4(1):38–45.
96. Fridman WH, Pages F, Sautes-Fridman C, Galon J. The immune contexture in human tumours: impact on clinical outcome. Nat Rev Cancer. 2012;12(4):298–306.
97. Zou W. Regulatory T-cells, tumour immunity and immunotherapy. Nat Rev Immunol. 2006;6(4):295–307.
98. Hori S, Nomura T, Sakaguchi S. Control of regulatory T-cell development by the transcription factor Foxp3. Science (New York, NY). 2003;299(5609):1057–61.
99. Shevach EM. Foxp3(+) T regulatory cells: still many unanswered questions-a perspective after 20 years of study. Front Immunol. 2018;9:1048.

100. Whiteside TL. What are regulatory T-cells (Treg) regulating in cancer and why? Semin Cancer Biol. 2012;22(4):327–34.
101. Aloisi F, Pujol-Borrell R. Lymphoid neogenesis in chronic inflammatory diseases. Nat Rev Immunol. 2006;6(3):205–17.
102. Carragher DM, Rangel-Moreno J, Randall TD. Ectopic lymphoid tissues and local immunity. Semin Immunol. 2008;20(1):26–42.
103. Dieu-Nosjean MC, Antoine M, Danel C, Heudes D, Wislez M, Poulot V, et al. Long-term survival for patients with non-small-cell lung cancer with intratumoral lymphoid structures. J Clin Oncol. 2008;26(27):4410–7.
104. Bergomas F, Grizzi F, Doni A, Pesce S, Laghi L, Allavena P, et al. Tertiary intratumor lymphoid tissue in colorectal cancer. Cancer. 2012;4(1):1–10.
105. Galon J, Costes A, Sanchez-Cabo F, Kirilovsky A, Mlecnik B, Lagorce-Pages C, et al. Type, density, and location of immune cells within human colorectal tumors predict clinical outcome. Science (New York, NY). 2006;313(5795):1960–4.
106. Laghi L, Bianchi P, Miranda E, Balladore E, Pacetti V, Grizzi F, et al. CD3+ cells at the invasive margin of deeply invading (pT3-T4) colorectal cancer and risk of post-surgical metastasis: a longitudinal study. Lancet Oncol. 2009;10(9):877–84.
107. Piersma SJ, Jordanova ES, van Poelgeest MI, Kwappenberg KM, van der Hulst JM, Drijfhout JW, et al. High number of intraepithelial CD8+ tumor-infiltrating lymphocytes is associated with the absence of lymph node metastases in patients with large early-stage cervical cancer. Cancer Res. 2007;67(1):354–61.
108. Taylor RC, Patel A, Panageas KS, Busam KJ, Brady MS. Tumor-infiltrating lymphocytes predict sentinel lymph node positivity in patients with cutaneous melanoma. J Clin Oncol. 2007;25(7):869–75.
109. Mantovani A. Cancer: Inflaming metastasis. Nature. 2009;457(7225):36–7.
110. Steidl C, Lee T, Shah SP, Farinha P, Han G, Nayar T, et al. Tumor-associated macrophages and survival in classic Hodgkin's lymphoma. N Engl J Med. 2010;362(10):875–85.
111. Ino Y, Yamazaki-Itoh R, Shimada K, Iwasaki M, Kosuge T, Kanai Y, et al. Immune cell infiltration as an indicator of the immune microenvironment of pancreatic cancer. Br J Cancer. 2013;108(4):914–23.
112. Soo RA, Chen Z, Yan Teng RS, Tan HL, Iacopetta B, Tai BC, et al. Prognostic significance of immune cells in non-small cell lung cancer: meta-analysis. Oncotarget. 2018;9(37):24801–20.
113. Zeni E, Mazzetti L, Miotto D, Lo Cascio N, Maestrelli P, Querzoli P, et al. Macrophage expression of interleukin-10 is a prognostic factor in nonsmall cell lung cancer. Eur Respir J. 2007;30(4):627–32.
114. Ohri CM, Shikotra A, Green RH, Waller DA, Bradding P. Macrophages within NSCLC tumour islets are predominantly of a cytotoxic M1 phenotype associated with extended survival. Eur Respir J. 2009;33(1):118–26.
115. Zhou Q, Peng RQ, Wu XJ, Xia Q, Hou JH, Ding Y, et al. The density of macrophages in the invasive front is inversely correlated to liver metastasis in colon cancer. J Transl Med. 2010;8:13.
116. Edin S, Wikberg ML, Dahlin AM, Rutegard J, Oberg A, Oldenborg PA, et al. The distribution of macrophages with a M1 or M2 phenotype in relation to prognosis and the molecular characteristics of colorectal cancer. PLoS One. 2012;7(10):e47045.
117. Wu SQ, Xu R, Li XF, Zhao XK, Qian BZ. Prognostic roles of tumor associated macrophages in bladder cancer: a system review and meta-analysis. Oncotarget. 2018;9(38):25294–303.
118. Faure-Dupuy S, Durantel D, Lucifora J. Liver macrophages: friend or foe during hepatitis B infection? Liver Int. 2018;38(10):1718–29.
119. Clark WH Jr, Elder DE, Guerry D, Braitman LE, Trock BJ, Schultz D, et al. Model predicting survival in stage I melanoma based on tumor progression. J Natl Cancer Inst. 1989;81(24):1893–904.
120. Zhang L, Conejo-Garcia JR, Katsaros D, Gimotty PA, Massobrio M, Regnani G, et al. Intratumoral T-cells, recurrence, and survival in epithelial ovarian cancer. N Engl J Med. 2003;348(3):203–13.
121. Naito Y, Saito K, Shiiba K, Ohuchi A, Saigenji K, Nagura H, et al. CD8+ T-cells infiltrated within cancer cell nests as a prognostic factor in human colorectal cancer. Cancer Res. 1998;58(16):3491–4.
122. Nosho K, Baba Y, Tanaka N, Shima K, Hayashi M, Meyerhardt JA, et al. Tumour-infiltrating T-cell subsets, molecular changes in colorectal cancer, and prognosis: cohort study and literature review. J Pathol. 2010;222(4):350–66.
123. Mahmoud SM, Paish EC, Powe DG, Macmillan RD, Grainge MJ, Lee AH, et al. Tumor-infiltrating CD8+ lymphocytes predict clinical outcome in breast cancer. J Clin Oncol. 2011;29(15):1949–55.
124. Mlecnik B, Tosolini M, Kirilovsky A, Berger A, Bindea G, Meatchi T, et al. Histopathologic-based prognostic factors of colorectal cancers are associated with the state of the local immune reaction. J Clin Oncol. 2011;29(6):610–8.
125. Koch M, Beckhove P, Op den Winkel J, Autenrieth D, Wagner P, Nummer D, et al. Tumor infiltrating T lymphocytes in colorectal cancer: tumor-selective activation and cytotoxic activity in situ. Ann Surg. 2006;244(6):986–92. Discussion 92–3.
126. Atreya I, Schimanski CC, Becker C, Wirtz S, Dornhoff H, Schnurer E, et al. The T-box transcription factor eomesodermin controls CD8 T-cell activity and lymph node metastasis in human colorectal cancer. Gut. 2007;56(11):1572–8.
127. Curiel TJ, Coukos G, Zou L, Alvarez X, Cheng P, Mottram P, et al. Specific recruitment of regulatory T-cells in ovarian carcinoma fosters immune privilege and predicts reduced survival. Nat Med. 2004;10(9):942–9.

128. Sasaki A, Tanaka F, Mimori K, Inoue H, Kai S, Shibata K, et al. Prognostic value of tumor-infiltrating FOXP3+ regulatory T-cells in patients with hepatocellular carcinoma. Eur J Surg Oncol. 2008;34(2):173–9.
129. Siddiqui SA, Frigola X, Bonne-Annee S, Mercader M, Kuntz SM, Krambeck AE, et al. Tumor-infiltrating Foxp3-CD4+CD25+ T-cells predict poor survival in renal cell carcinoma. Clin Cancer Res. 2007;13(7):2075–81.
130. Mahmoud SM, Paish EC, Powe DG, Macmillan RD, Lee AH, Ellis IO, et al. An evaluation of the clinical significance of FOXP3+ infiltrating cells in human breast cancer. Breast Cancer Res Treat. 2011;127(1):99–108.
131. Frey DM, Droeser RA, Viehl CT, Zlobec I, Lugli A, Zingg U, et al. High frequency of tumor-infiltrating FOXP3(+) regulatory T-cells predicts improved survival in mismatch repair-proficient colorectal cancer patients. Int J Cancer. 2010;126(11):2635–43.
132. Salama P, Stewart C, Forrest C, Platell C, Iacopetta B. FOXP3+ cell density in lymphoid follicles from histologically normal mucosa is a strong prognostic factor in early stage colon cancer. Cancer Immunol Immunother. 2012;61(8):1183–90.
133. Salama P, Phillips M, Grieu F, Morris M, Zeps N, Joseph D, et al. Tumor-infiltrating FOXP3+ T regulatory cells show strong prognostic significance in colorectal cancer. J Clin Oncol. 2009;27(2):186–92.
134. Saggar JK, Yu M, Tan Q, Tannock IF. The tumor microenvironment and strategies to improve drug distribution. Front Oncol. 2013;3:154.
135. Young EW. Cells, tissues, and organs on chips: challenges and opportunities for the cancer tumor microenvironment. Integr Biol. 2013;5(9):1096–109.
136. Kazmierczak W, Dutsch-Wicherek M. Creation of a suppressive microenvironment by macrophages and cancer-associated fibroblasts. Front Biosci. 2013;18:1003–16.
137. Quante M, Varga J, Wang TC, Greten FR. The gastrointestinal tumor microenvironment. Gastroenterology. 2013;145(1):63–78.
138. Polanska UM, Orimo A. Carcinoma-associated fibroblasts: non-neoplastic tumour-promoting mesenchymal cells. J Cell Physiol. 2013;228(8):1651–7.
139. Zigler M, Shir A, Levitzki A. Targeted cancer immunotherapy. Curr Opin Pharmacol. 2013;13(4):504–10.
140. Galon J, Pages F, Marincola FM, Angell HK, Thurin M, Lugli A, et al. Cancer classification using the Immunoscore: a worldwide task force. J Transl Med. 2012;10:205.
141. Ascierto PA, Capone M, Urba WJ, Bifulco CB, Botti G, Lugli A, et al. The additional facet of immunoscore: immunoprofiling as a possible predictive tool for cancer treatment. J Transl Med. 2013;11:54.
142. Hamada T, Soong TR, Masugi Y, Kosumi K, Nowak JA, da Silva A, et al. TIME (tumor immunity in the MicroEnvironment) classification based on tumor CD274 (PD-L1) expression status and tumor-infiltrating lymphocytes in colorectal carcinomas. Oncoimmunology. 2018;7(7):e1442999.

Immunogenetics of Cancer

20

Armin Hirbod-Mobarakeh, Mahsima Shabani, Mahsa Keshavarz-Fathi, Farnaz Delavari, Ali Akbar Amirzargar, Behrouz Nikbin, Anton Kutikhin, and Nima Rezaei

Contents

A. Hirbod-Mobarakeh
Border of Immune Tolerance Education and Research Network (BITERN), Universal Scientific Education and Research Network (USERN), Tehran, Iran

M. Shabani
International Hematology/Oncology of Pediatrics Experts (IHOPE), Universal Scientific Education and Research Network (USERN), Tehran, Iran

M. Keshavarz-Fathi
Cancer Immunology Project (CIP), Universal Scientific Education and Research Network (USERN), Tehran, Iran

School of Medicine, Tehran University of Medical Sciences, Tehran, Iran

F. Delavari
Interactive Research Education and Training Association (IRETA), Universal Scientific Education and Research Network (USERN), Tehran, Iran

A. A. Amirzargar · B. Nikbin
Department of Immunology, School of Medicine, Tehran University of Medical Sciences, Tehran, Iran

A. Kutikhin
Department of Epidemiology, Kemerovo State Medical Academy, Kemerovo, Russian Federation

N. Rezaei (✉)
Research Center for Immunodeficiencies, Children's Medical Center, Pediatrics Center of Excellence, Tehran University of Medical Sciences, Tehran, Iran

Department of Immunology, School of Medicine, Tehran University of Medical Sciences, Tehran, Iran

Network of Immunity in Infection, Malignancy and Autoimmunity (NIIMA), Universal Scientific Education and Research Network (USERN), Tehran, Iran
e-mail: rezaei_nima@tums.ac.ir

N. Rezaei (ed.), *Cancer Immunology*, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-30845-2_20

20.1 Introduction

The influence of genes in the development of cancers can be very high, very well depicted in numerous hereditary cancers or very low in some cancers. Although the roles played by genes in the pathophysiology and prognosis of the malignant transformation are highly variable in different cancers, their role cannot be ignored. For sure, polymorphisms in immune-related genes, known as immune polymorphisms, have an undeniable role in shaping undeniable but complex interactions between the immune system and malignancies which can significantly influence the face of malignancy with respect to predisposition, nature, prognosis, and response to treatment in each individual.

20.2 Cancers: Why Are There Different Faces?

It has long been observed that individuals are different with respect to predisposition nature, prognosis, and response to treatment in cancer [1, 2]. Since the first observations, scientific minds have been preoccupied with the question that, what is the reason for this high interindividual variation. Nowadays, it is obvious that behind the ugly scene of cancers, there is a complex interplay between genes and environment and this question can be answered straightforwardly by the high variability of genetic and environmental factors for each individual [1]. Although it is estimated that less than 0.1% of the genome is different between any two individuals, this variability is equal to at least several million nucleotide differences per individual [3, 4]. Genetic effect in the development of cancers is investigated by analyzing the rate of heritability in twin studies with shared and unshared environment [5]. The influence of genes can be very high in melanoma, leukemia, and prostate cancer as well as numerous hereditary cancers like familial adenomatous polyposis, or it can be very low in some cancers like cancer of the cervix or head and neck [5, 6] (Fig. 20.1). Although the roles played by genes in the pathophysiology and prognosis of the malignant transformation are highly variable in different cancers, their role cannot be ignored [7, 8]. Malignant transformation is not just a result of a cell-autonomous process and is shaped by intrin-

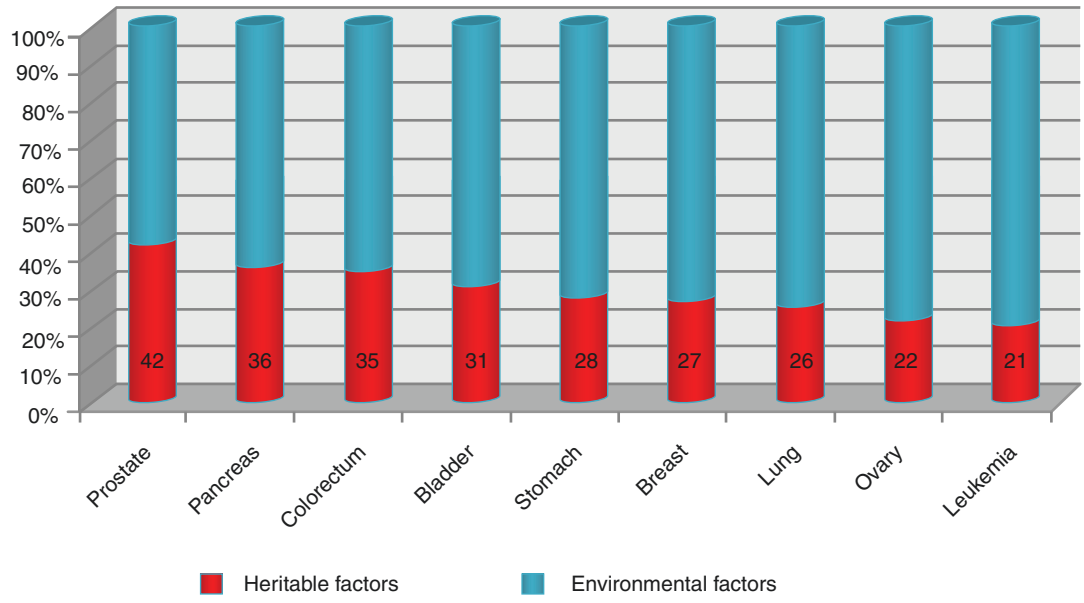


Fig. 20.1 Heritability of cancers in different sites based on the information available from twin studies

sic properties, but also its cross talk with microenvironment governed by the immune and endocrine systems, stroma, vascular system, and other systems [7]. Therefore, this heritability results from additive effects of low-penetrance genetic factors, each one contributing a small amount of risk [7].

20.3 Immune Polymorphism

The role of immune system in defense against malignancies was proposed in the early 1990s by Paul Ehrlich [9]. So far this book, page by page, has tried to show the undeniable but complex interactions between the immune system and malignancies. This complex interaction mostly results from the manipulation of the immune system by cancer cells evoluting to prevent self-destruction [9]. Four phenomena contribute to the escape of malignant cells from the immunosurveillance:

1. *Immunoedition*: Natural selection of malignant cells which are most successful in deceiving the immune system occurs by the pressure of the immune system itself. This pressure combined with the genetic instability of the cancers leads a somatic evolution toward variants proficient in immune escape in primary tumor lesions [10–12]. This struggle between cancer and immune cells is bidirectional wherein immune response is also programmed according to cancer antigen presentation.
2. *Downregulation of the local immune system:* Several tumors can manipulate the local defense by producing inhibitory molecules such as indoleamine 2,3-dioxygenase (IDO) and different cytokines or expression of apoptose-inducing ligands such as Fas-ligand [10, 13].
3. *Tolerance induction and losing immunogenicity*: The absence of costimulatory molecules, localization in natural environment of healthy cells and therefore absence of danger signals, losing human leukocyte antigen (HLA) class I molecules, and aberrant expression of immunomodulatory nonclassical HLA class I antigen (Ag) can all induce tolerance in the immune system [10, 13, 14].
4. *Host immunodeficiency*: Any deficiency in the immune status of individuals can predispose them to various malignancies.

In addition, once the immune escape occurred, the immune system can profoundly influence the

prognosis, natural history, and response to different therapies either by direct effects on malignant cells or indirect effects on angiogenesis and inflammation [10, 13–15].

The immune system of each individual is subject to variability due to different environments, different diets and nutritional status, and different antigenic exposures and most importantly due to an uncountable number of polymorphisms in genes governing the immune system elements and cells [16, 17].

Genetic polymorphisms are defined as variations in human genome present in at least 1% of the population [18]. These polymorphisms were beneficiary either in their cross talk with certain environmental factors alone or in combination with their associated polymorphisms, or they were at least neutral enough not to compromise the life of the individual bearing them; therefore, they were not erased by the evolutionary pressure [16, 18, 19]. Immune response-associated genes are not an exception, and they have an uncountable number of polymorphisms [16]. For example, HLA region includes the most polymorphic genes in the human genome [16]. This high variety in immune-associated genes is a product of a long interaction with an environment consisting of numerous ever-evolving pathogens [16]. In this context, the majority of polymorphisms had the chance to be beneficiary in defense against some pathogens [17, 20, 21].

Single nucleotide polymorphisms (SNPs), variable number of tandem repeats (VNTRs) (a repeat unit includes 15–100 nucleotides), and microsatellites are three important types of polymorphisms [22].

SNP is defined as a difference in a single nucleotide in the DNA sequence and is estimated to account for 90% of the human genome variations. Microsatellites, scattered through the genome with an average density of one in every 2000 pb, are variable tandem repeats of 2–8 bp, most commonly CA dinucleotide, and their alleles are differentiated by the number of repeats (Fig. 20.2) [22, 23].

Polymorphisms are able to change the immune function at several levels from expression patterns to posttranslational modifications:

1. Some polymorphisms might change DNA methylation and consequently chromatin structure and expression patterns [24, 25].
2. Some polymorphisms may disrupt transcription factor binding sites (TFBSs) and consequently influence the expression [22, 26, 27].
3. mRNAs splicing patterns can be modified by polymorphisms as a result of deletion of a splice site, creation of a new splice site, or modification of exon-splicing enhancers and silencers [26].
4. MicroRNAs (miRNAs) are important elements in gene regulation with various actions. Their binding sites might be disrupted as a result of polymorphisms [26].
5. Some polymorphisms can cause mRNA instability and its early destruction [22, 28].
6. Polymorphisms may create premature termination codons [26].
7. Exonic polymorphisms can substitute an amino acid in protein sequence, change protein structure, and consequently alter protein function [22, 27, 28].

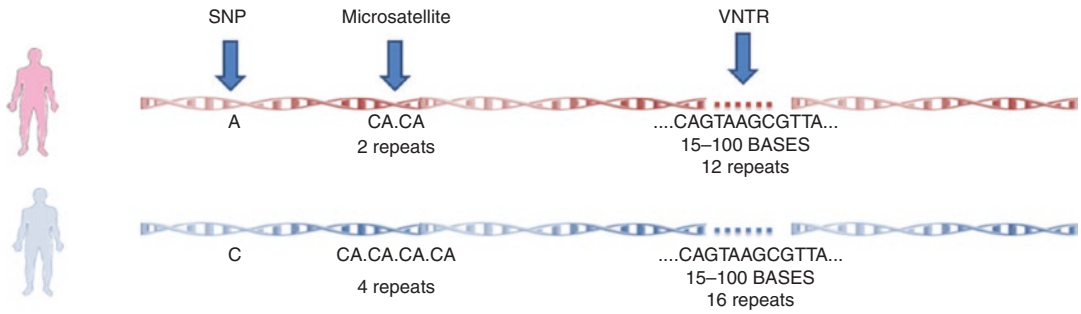


Fig. 20.2 Different types of polymorphisms in the human genome

8. Some polymorphisms may change posttranslational modification (PTM) site and consequently influence posttranslational modifications [26].

Therefore, it seems that this high genetic variability in immune response-associated genes known as immune polymorphism contributes to the observed interindividual differences [16, 21]. The aforementioned differences aside from cancer development contribute in various cancer manifestations, behavior, prognosis, and response to different treatment strategies [29–31].

20.4 Immunogenetics

20.4.1 Background

Immunogenetics, as the meeting point of two exciting fields of immunology and genetics, is a new but rapidly expanding field of science studying this immune polymorphism in order to understand the governance of genetics on the immune system [16, 32, 33].

Although the term "immunogenetics" was used earlier [34], the first milestone in the history of immunogenetics was coincident with the failed study of blood transfusion in 1952 [35]. This failure resulted in the discovery of HLA system [16, 36], which attracted the attention of biomedical researchers to interindividual differences in the immune system. From that point on, for decades, investigators tried to associate different complex diseases with various HLA types using serological methods [37, 38]. However, modern immunogenetics required more than one century of biomedical advances remarked by Mendel's laws of heredity in 1865 [18, 39], discovery of chromosomes as the cellular basis of heredity in 1902, discovery of DNA double helix as the molecular basis of heredity in 1953 [40], decoding the genetic codes, and last but not least the completion of Human Genome Project in April 2003 [18, 41, 42]. Human Genome Project not only contributed to the discovery of genetic polymorphisms but also provided an infrastructure for other large-scale projects like International HapMap Project and "1,000 Genomes Project" [43]. Discovery of approximately 25–35% of estimated nine to ten million SNPs is just one of the uncountable achievements of such projects [16, 42–44]. Genetic polymorphisms in the immune system contribute to a large part of the interindividual variation in immune response, and today, immunogenetic studies have provided a vast knowledge of the effects of immune polymorphism on the host defense. However, just the estimation that there is one SNP per every 290 bp shows that there is much more to be brought to light [43, 44].

20.4.2 Immunogenetic Tools

Along with the concert of conceptual advancements, tools employed in this field have changed in order to gather immunogenetic information more accurately, in less time and less cost [16]. Twin studies recruit twins in order to remark the importance of genetic component in susceptibility to traits and diseases [18, 45]. The result of such studies provides a rough estimation of genetic contribution to interindividual differences in immune system by comparison of concordance rates of immune traits between monozygotic and dizygotic twins [18, 38, 45]. The higher the concordance difference is, the greater the heritability [8, 18].

Upon introduction of immune polymorphism, several association studies tried to show the contribution of specific genes using the candidate gene approach or hypothesis-driven approach [18, 46]. This approach includes looking into the differences between patients and controls in allele frequencies of SNPs in genes selected based on the known pathophysiologic pathways of the disease. These studies at first employed restriction enzymes to identify specific SNPs called restriction fragment length polymorphisms (RFLPs) in the restriction site of the enzyme [47]. This approach is also known as a reductionist approach, since studies employing this approach investigate only a few genes and polymorphisms at a time [18, 46, 48].

In the early 1990s, discovery of hundreds of informative microsatellites provided the possibility of a dramatic change in the approach of

immunogenetic studies from a hypothesis-driven approach to positional approach [4, 18, 49]. The information from this project provided the immunogenetic scientists with the most suitable SNPs for genotyping in order to indirectly gather as much as information about the genome variation of an individual [18, 50]. These SNPs, which are representative of a block of SNPs, are known as tagSNPs. The extent of LD in a region determines the number of tagSNPs required to cover a region. The lower the LD is in a region, the higher number of tagSNPs is needed and therefore the higher the cost of genotyping the region is [51]. Nowadays, availability of high-throughput gene technologies such as gene chips or microarrays has enabled investigators to genotype cost-effectively, rapidly, and almost effortless hundreds of thousands to millions of SNPs at the same time [4, 38, 46, 49]; therefore, this approach is also known as "nonreductionist" approach [4]. These technological advancements were employed in community-based and large-scale GWASs in order to identify trait-associated regions with higher resolution. The results of such studies are trait-associated SNP (TAS) as a representative of the true casual variant which might be each of the known and unknown variants in whole TAS block. The TAS block is defined as all known and unknown polymorphisms in strong LD with the tagSNP [4, 18, 52]. Therefore, LD along with technological advances turned SNPs, the most common and more importantly the most stable genetic variations in human DNA, into application [53].

However, there are major limitations in GWASs to be overcome.

1. Generally, the genetic component of complex diseases originates from several major susceptibility loci and a component of as many as a dozen minor susceptibility loci known as polygenes (Fig. 20.3). These polygenes individually have small to medium impact on the overall genetic component; therefore, GWASs require a large study sample with homogenous ethnicity and phenotype to have enough high power to identify these polygenes [4, 23, 52, 54]. This is a major problem in immunogenetic studies of cancers as patients with cancers present with highly variable phenotypes. As a result, the odds ratio for each allele is typically below 1.5, and the *P* value should be less than 10^{-6} to show a significant association [7, 55].

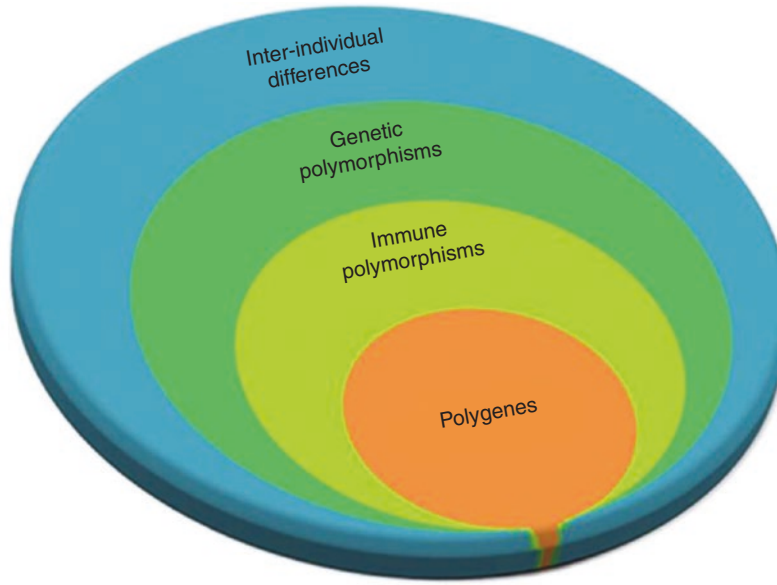


Fig. 20.3 Immune polymorphism component in interindividual differences

2. The genetic component and therefore effect of any risk allele decreases by increased exposure of populations to environmental risk factors which is the reason why some results could not be replicated in different populations [7]. For example, increased prevalence of acquired immune deficiency syndrome (AIDS) in some African populations predisposes population to different cancers disregarding their genetic background [56, 57]. This is also the case in regard to some extreme dietary patterns, smoking habits, and other environmental factors [58, 59].
3. Some cancer susceptibility variants have non-additive interactions with other genetic and environmental factors. It is possible that the effect of one variant depends on the presence of one or several specific alleles in another locus or even certain environmental risk factors. Therefore, such susceptibility variants can be detected only in GWASs with samples of patients with particular genetic and environmental background [7].
4. At least 10% of SNPs within a range of 1 kpb of hotspots are untaggable which means they do not have any LD with tagSNPs [51]. The presence of these numerous untaggable SNPs always limits the power of GWASs in finding all possible genetic associations [44]. Therefore, GWASs should employ additional sequencing within known recombination hotspots [44].
5. GWASs are less effective in some old population like African countries, since LD is generally lower in these populations due to the longer duration being affected by genetic recombination [4, 18, 52, 53].
6. The different LD, hotspots, and haplotype patterns in different populations might complicate replication studies in different populations [53]. For example, in some population, the causal variant may be separated from the associated TAS block by a hotspot.
7. Sometimes the associated TAS block does not include a causative allele but an allele beneficiary for the affected individuals with the disease, and therefore the natural selection has selected them instead of those affected individuals without the allele [16].
8. Population stratification is another source of bias in such studies as the association of the trait and TAS block may be due to an ancient branching of the population bearing both causal trait alleles and the TAS block; however, this bias can be minimized by the careful selection of the control group or by assessing population structure and correcting for it [18, 53, 60].
9. If certain alleles are associated with a more aggressive disease and lower survival, they are less presented in patients and may not be detected as a susceptibility allele [61].

After identification of associated TAS blocks by GWASs, the actual functional variant in the associated TAS block can be found by further genetic association studies employing more accurate low-throughput technologies and other SNP markers in order to finely map the associated genes and alleles in the associated TAS block [49]. In these studies, allele frequencies of polymorphisms are compared in groups of cases and controls. However, results of such association studies are often contradictory due to the heterogeneous nature of the cancers, numerous gene–gene and gene–environment interactions [62, 63]. In addition, another source of discrepancy between these studies is the limitation in study design. For example, using hospital-based controls can result in a serious selection bias since polymorphisms under investigation might have association with the diseases that hospital-based controls may have [64, 65]. Moreover, some association studies failed to consider other genetic and environmental risk factors such as socioeconomic status, nutritional statues, smoking patterns, etc. [60]. Lacking such information may cause serious confounding bias [66]. Therefore, in order to get the most benefit from results of genetic association studies and to systematize their findings, employing meta-analyses as a powerful statistical method is essential [28, 67]. Meta-analysis by pooling the results of old studies allows us to see the whole picture of the effect of a certain polymorphism [28].

Regardless of interspecies differences, there are similarities in cancer development between humans and rodents, and therefore mouse studies are a complementary tool for genetic association studies within human population [7, 68, 69]. Numerous genetically engineered mouse (GEM) models provide a simplified model of various cancers with controllable genetic and environmental background in which the effects of a unique polymorphism on the malignancy can be studied [7, 70].

Exact mechanism of action of polymorphisms can be identified using different bioinformatic tools and in vitro studies [26]. Numerous bioinformatic online and offline tools are available which can predict the effect of polymorphisms by considering amino acid biophysical properties, active site residues, metal and lipid binding sites of gene product, TFBSs, splice sites and its regulatory motifs, miRNA binding sites, and PTM sites (Table 20.1) [26]. However, bioinformatics is limited by the extent of our knowledge [24, 26].

Different in vitro methods are developed to identify functional polymorphisms. The most important ones are reporter gene assay and electrophoretic mobility shift assay (EMSA) (Figs. 20.4 and 20.5) [24]. The reporter gene

Table 20.1 A small example of different bioinformatic tools

Title	Address	Description
dbSNP	http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/SNP/	A database for SNP information
Ensembl	http://www.ensembl.org/	A database for genome information, comparative genomics, variation, and regulatory data
HapMap Consortium	http://www.hapmap.org/	A database for haplotype blocks
SNPper	http://snpper.chip.org/	Online tool available for SNP analysis
SNP3D	http://www.snps3d.org/	Online tool available for functional analysis of SNPs based on structure and sequence analysis
SNPeffect	http://snpeffect.vib.be/index.php	A database for phenotyping human SNPs and for finding information regarding SNPs effect on structure stability functional sites, structural features, and PTM sites
MutDB	http://www.mutdb.org/	Online database for human variation data with protein structural information and other functionally relevant information

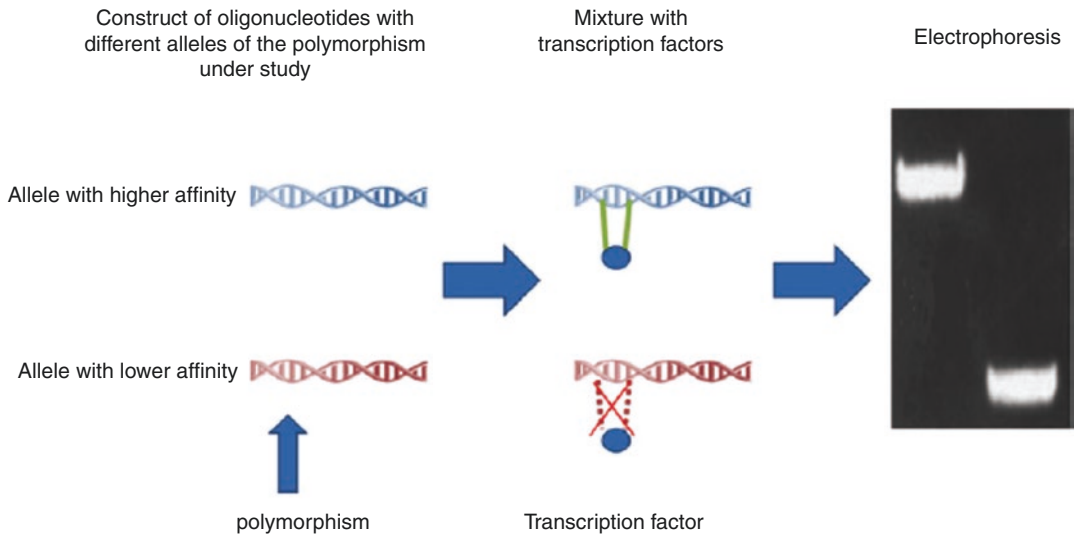


Fig. 20.4 EMSA, an in vitro experiment to measure binding affinities of different TFBS for transcription factors

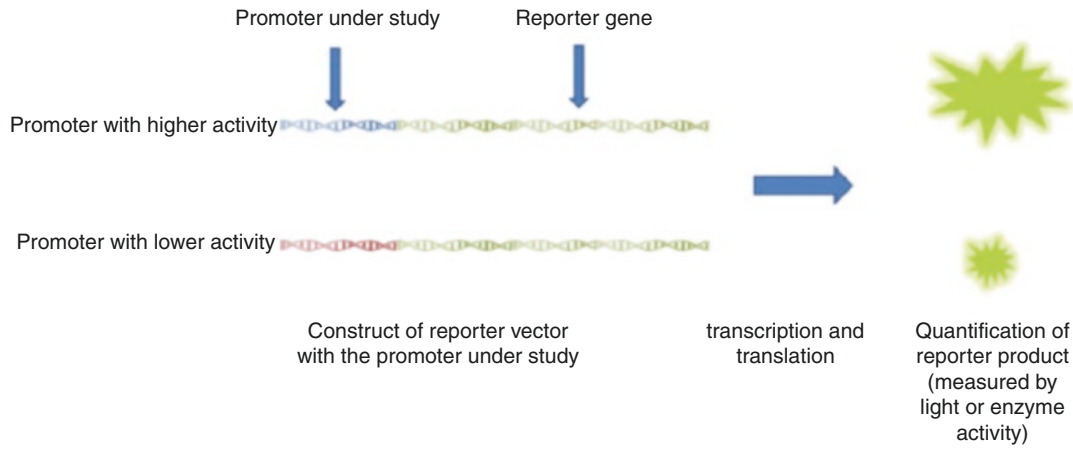


Fig. 20.5 Reporter gene assay, an in vitro tool to measure strength of different promoters

assay employs a reporter gene with a quantifiable product and clones the promoter of interest in its upstream [24, 71, 72]. Therefore, quantification of reporter gene product can provide information about the promoter strength [24, 71, 72]. On the other hand, EMSA can measure the effect of different polymorphisms on the affinity of TFBS sequence for different transcription factors. In these studies, double-stranded oligonucleotide containing the polymorphism of interest is mixed with nuclear extract with various transcription factors [24, 73, 74]. Higher affinity for these factors results in the formation of more protein–DNA complex resulting in retardation of mobility in electrophoresis [24, 73, 74].

The results from immunogenetic studies should always be interpreted with consideration of information from immunogenomics and immunoproteomics [38]. It should be noted that information from each type of study, i.e., GWASs, genetic association studies, in vitro and mouse studies, and bioinformatics, are just pieces of the complex puzzle of immunogenetics and cancer. No individual method is precise enough to see the final picture (Fig. 20.6).

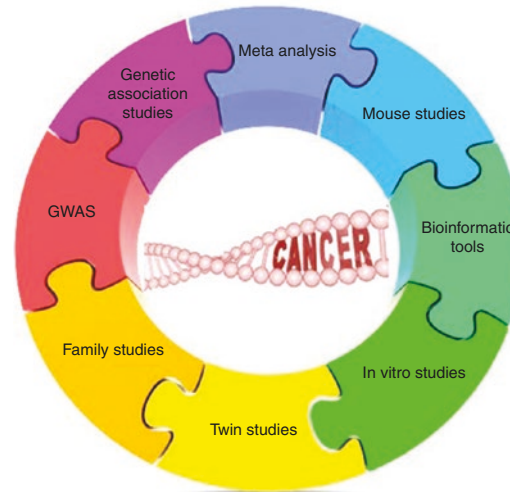


Fig. 20.6 Different methods in immunogenetic studies are pieces of a complex puzzle

20.5 Immunogenetics: A Champion in Fighting the Losing Battle Against Cancer

The application of immunogenetics in cancer is more than promising. Some variations in immune polymorphism reduce the immune capacity in

clearing either malignant transformations or cancer-inducing infectious agents and predispose bearing individuals to various cancers as exaggerated in case of most primary immunodeficiency diseases [4, 18, 21, 38]. Although each individual variant has a little informative potential for clinical application, understanding their interactions and therefore their cumulative effect is of high clinical importance [7].

Immunogenetic studies not only can help clinicians in risk assessment of individuals for susceptibility to certain cancers in order to employ preventive strategies but also may open new windows for treatment [4, 18, 21, 38, 52, 75–77]. GWASs might result in the identification of unexpected genes which in turn result in identification of new pathways in pathophysiology of cancers [52]. These new pathways not only provide a broader insight into how and why of the cancers but also may suggest new molecular targets for prevention and immunopharmacology and immunotherapy [4, 18, 38, 47, 52]. Keeping in mind that immune system provides the only antineoplastic reaction completely specific to cancer cells, it is vital to completely understand the genetic factors governing the immune system–cancer interactions and employ this knowledge in eliminating the cancers [4, 78]. In addition, this knowledge might begin a post-genomic era in individualized medicine [4, 38]. The presence of some variants in immune-associated genes might affect the success or failure in applying a particular therapy and immunogenetic information provides a way to predict toxicity and clinical effectiveness of different immune-based therapies [4, 16, 22, 38]. Therefore, employing the knowledge from immune polymorphism in prediction of treatment outcome may justify the application of an expensive partly effective treatment option [4, 16, 38, 79].

20.6 Human Leukocyte Antigen

20.6.1 Background

Human leukocyte antigens are specialized elements of the immune system in recognition of self from non-self. HLA is responsible for presenting Ags to T-cells and therefore serves as a door to the specific immune system. HLA class I Ags are on the surface of almost all nucleated cells and generally present processed endogenous antigens to $CD8^+$ cells [15, 80]. Presentation of abnormal Ags derived from intracellular pathogens or malignant transformations potentially initiates a cytotoxic T lymphocyte (CTL) response and consequently targets cell lysis [81]. By their interaction with killer cell immunoglobulin-like receptors (KIRs) on the surface of natural killer (NK) cells, HLA class I antigens regulate lytic activity of NK cells. Therefore, any change in either expression or structure of HLA class I profoundly influences T and NK cell mediated immunity [11].

On the other hand, HLA class II Ags are exclusively expressed on the surface of professional antigen-presenting cells (APC) and present processed exogenous Ags to T helper (Th) cells. Following presentation of unfamiliar Ags and in the presence of appropriate costimulatory molecules, Th cells activate effector elements of the immune system [15, 81].

Both classes of Ags comprise an intracellular, transmembrane, and an extracellular part which includes highly polymorphic antigen binding groove. From the evolutionary view, this high variety favors the chance of heterozygosity and consequently Ag presenting potential for each individual along with a significant increase in the general repertoire of the whole species for Ag presentation [16, 81].

20.6.2 Genes Behind HLA

HLA loci, located in 6p21.3 region, occupy only a small part of major histocompatibility complex (MHC) genetic system which is home to at least 220 genes [82, 83] (Fig. 20.7). MHC is divided into three classes of genes distributed from centromere to telomere. Class II with 0.9 mb is the nearest one to the centromere; class I with 1·9 Mb is near telomere, and class III with 0·7 Mb lies in between [84]. The first two classes encode for HLA class I and II and the third class consists of

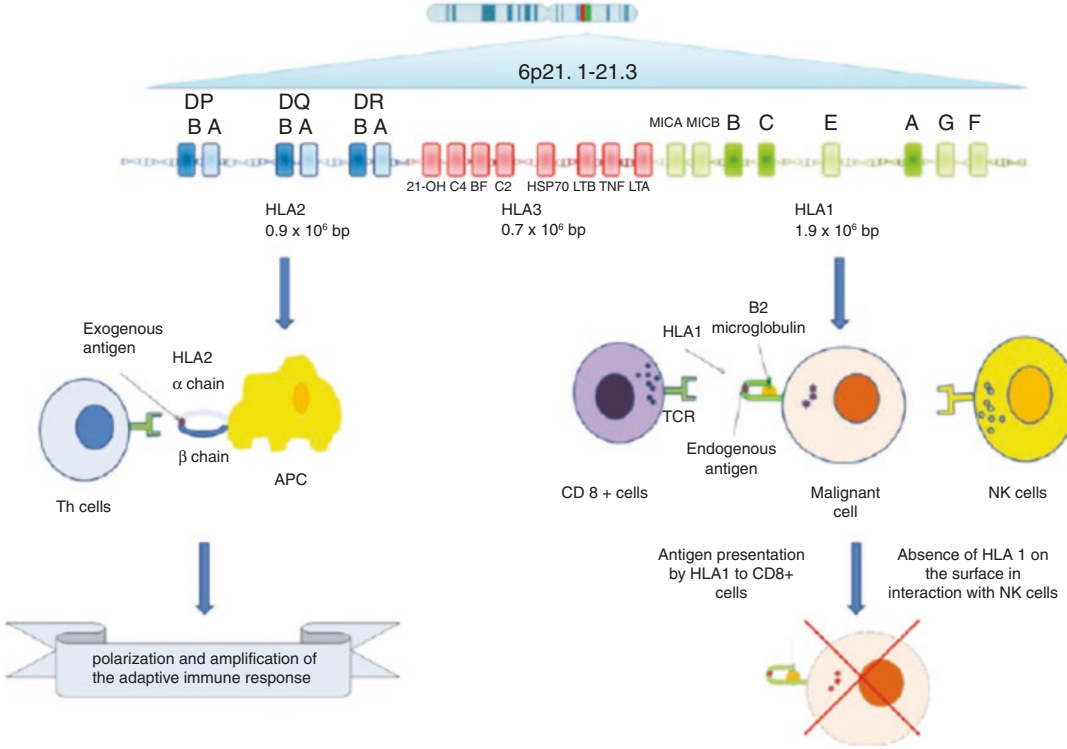


Fig. 20.7 HLA as the gate of adaptive immunity from genes to function

a group of genes encoding some members of the complement system, some cytokines like tumor necrosis factor alpha (TNF-α), heat shock proteins (HSP), and an enzyme called 21-OH hydroxylase [36, 84].

In class I, there are three highly polymorphic classic genes known as *HLA-A*, *HLA-B*, and *HLA-C*, while there are a number of nonclassical genes known as *HLA-E*, *HLA-F*, and *HLA-G* [85, 86]. Class I genes encode the highly polymorphic heavy chain of HLA class I (45 kDa) which later joins the non-polymorphic B2 microglobulin encoded by chromosome 15 [85, 86]. Classic genes consist of eight exons, but the most important exons are exons 2 and 3 encoding for peptide binding groove. Other exons encode for transmembrane region and cytoplasmic tail [36, 87]. There are two HLA haplotypes based on HLA-B leader peptide dimorphism, one that supplies the CD94/NKG2 ligands and the other that supplies KIR ligands. Genotypes harboring the first variant have more diverse and potent NK cells [88]. Beside these highly polymorphic classic HLA class I genes, there are three other HLA genes in class I known as *HLA-E*, *HLA-F*, and *HLA-G* which are more conserved. Most probably, they are not involved in Ag presentation but in interaction with more conserved parts of the immune system. For example, *HLA-E*, which is minimally polymorphic, regulates cytotoxic activity of NK cells by interacting with CD94/NKG2 lectin-like receptors. The conservation within this gene guarantees that there is a constant protection for healthy cells in most people and provides a minimum safeguard for autoimmunity [37, 89, 90]. Some of them like HLA-G are expressed on trophoblastic cells and placental chorionic endothelium and induce immune tolerance during pregnancy [85, 91–95].

Class II consists of classic genes called *DP*, *DQ*, and *DR* and nonclassic genes known as *DM* and *DO*. Classic genes encode for one highly polymorphic beta chain (26–28 kDa) and a less polymorphic alpha chain (33–35 kDa) [84].

Therefore, there are six classic *D* genes in this region. Genes for alpha chain consist of five exons, while beta chains are encoded by six exons. The exons 2 and 3 in both set of genes are responsible for encoding peptide binding domains [36].

HLA class I and *II* genes are the most polymorphic genes in the human genome with 2365, 3005, and 1848 alleles for *HLA-A*, *HLA-B*, and *HLA-C*, respectively, and 2156 alleles for class II genes (based on IMGT/HLA database, release 3.13 on July 2013) [96]. This high polymorphism is mostly clustered in several hypervariable blocks in exons 2 and 3 which are responsible for encoding antigen binding groove. Therefore, a unique combination of sequence motifs in these hypervariable regions determines each allele [15]. This genetic structure is accompanied by high LD not only between *HLA* genes but also non-HLA genes constituting extended haplotypes [97]. The majority of polymorphisms in hypervariable regions result in amino acid substitutions in peptide binding grooves, which in turn dramatically changes Ag binding affinity of the final product [15]; on the other hand, variants in noncoding regions influence transcription, translation, and splicing and thereby expression levels [81].

Nowadays, with a few exceptions, HLA alleles are named by six or even eight digits. The first two digits are representative of the serological family the allele belongs to, while the third and fourth digits distinguish between different sequences affecting amino acid sequences. The next two digits are identifiers of synonymous polymorphisms, and seventh and eighth digits are used to distinguish intronic polymorphisms or ones located into untranslated regions [98].

20.6.3 From Polymorphisms to Clinic

HLAs are involved in cancer immunity and therefore in susceptibility and prognosis mainly by presenting certain Ags known as tumor-associated antigens (TAAs). TAAs are the first contact of malignant cells with adaptive immunity. Since introduction of the first TAA in melanoma patients in 1991, a broad heterogeneous group of Ags was discovered and associated with different malignancies. This heterogeneous group can be divided into four classes of Ags [9, 99]:

1. Cancer–testis Ags are a result of epigenetic alterations leading to reactivation of silence genes. One of the famous examples is Ags from MAGE family. These Ags are not exclusive to just one type of cancer. The reason for this naming is that they are normally expressed in MHC-negative testicular germ cells and placental trophoblasts.
2. Differentiation Ags are normally expressed in the tissue of origin of the tumor, like melan-A, and tyrosinase in melanomas.
3. Unique tumor Ags are products of mutated tumor suppressor genes and oncogenes like abnormal product of RAS or p53. Fusion proteins as a result of chromosomal aberrations are also included in this group.
4. Infectious tumor Ags are expressed by oncogenic viruses associated with some malignancies. The examples are latent membrane proteins 1 and 2 (LMP-1 and LMP-2) in Epstein–Barr virus (EBV)-associated Hodgkin's lymphoma (HL) and E6 and E7 associated with human papillomavirus (HPV)-associated cervical cancer.

Nowadays, hundreds of HLA association studies prove that HLA alleles are important elements in predisposition to cancer. Seven mechanisms are suggested for complex relationship of HLA genotypes and susceptibility, prognosis, recurrence, and clinical response to immunotherapy and tumor vaccines:

1. *Efficiency in TAA presentation*: One of the major factors in Ag presenting ability of different HLA is the affinity of their Ag binding grooves to different epitopes. This affinity is highly dependent on the amino acid sequence in the hypervariable regions. Even one change in this sequence due to polymorphisms profoundly influences binding affinities to TAAs and Ags used in tumor vaccines and therefore susceptibility prognosis and response to tumor vaccines [37, 86, 100–102]. For instance, *HLA-*

A∗0207 is associated with susceptibility to EBV-associated lymphoma in East Asian population, while *HLA-A∗0201* is a protective factor; however, this huge difference at the clinical level is a result of a single amino acid change (Y99 to C) at the protein level [103, 104].

2. *Interaction with T-cells and NK cells*: Change in variable regions and constant regions involved in interaction with T-cells and NK cells can change HLA potential for inducing an effective immune response [101, 105]. This includes changes in cytokine profile, the other mainstay of immunity against cancers [106].
3. *Efficiency in inducing immune response to infectious agents*: Antigen binding abilities of different HLA alleles influence immune reaction to infectious agents associated with malignant transformation. For example, EBV is frequently emphasized as an important environmental factor in the pathogenesis of HL and nasopharyngeal carcinoma (NPC) [107]. Latent membrane protein-1 (LMP-1) and Epstein–Barr virus nuclear antigen (EBNA-4 and EBNA-6) proteins produced during latent infection by EBV are efficiently presented by A∗0201 and A∗1101, respectively [87]. Therefore, these alleles can induce a strong immune response which consequently results in resolving the infection and lower chance of malignant transformation. Another example is the protective effect of DQB1∗0301 allele on hepatitis C virus (HCV) infection, HCV-associated liver cirrhosis, and HCV-associated hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC). This allele can efficiently present majority of immunodominant epitopes of HCV [108]. Another supportive finding is that increased level of HLA-A expression is associated with uncontrolled HIV activity through blocking the NK cell mediated immunity [109]. Virus-induced cancers specifically HPV-associated cancers further induce somatic mutations in HLA genes and related gene families [110].
4. *Change in HLA expression patterns*: In some malignancies like melanoma, Burkitt's lymphoma, and carcinoma of the cervix and lung, HLA expression and Ag processing machinery are disturbed in order to prevent TAA presentation and consequently immune recognition of malignant cells. This mechanism is one of the major pathways for the immune escape of tumoral cells [11, 111]. Some polymorphisms within the noncoding regions can influence expression levels [37]. In addition, some HLA alleles are specifically lost during malignant transformation [112]. Loss of HLA-A2 in colorectal cancers, breast cancer, and cervical cancer or lower expression levels of HLA-DR4 and HLA-DR6 in melanoma is a good example for these phenomena [113, 114]. On the contrary, some alleles like HLA-B∗4405 are not dependent on some elements of the regular Ag processing machinery like transporter associated with Ag presentation (TAP) and therefore can present antigens without susceptibility to viral-induced diminished TAP function [115]. Moreover, the polymorphic nature of HLA is lost during the evolution of cancer cells. The loss of heterozygosity in HLA (LOHHLA) is a method to evaluate the prevalence of HLA loss in cancer clonal and subclonal microenvironments [116]. The increased HLA homozygosity leads to the loss of neoantigen identification and subsequent subclonal propagation of cancer cells.
5. *Increased susceptibility to chronic infections or autoimmunity*: Some HLA haplotypes and alleles are associated with various chronic inflammatory diseases which in turn predispose individuals to various cancers [79, 117]. Excess growth factors and prolonged proliferation in the background of chronic destruction increase the risk of malignant transformation [117]. In addition, chronic immune stimulation of B-cells and prolonged and repeated DNA double-strand breaks associated with somatic hypermutation (SHM) and class switch recombination (CSR) significantly increase the chance of malignant transformation, and therefore, autoimmunity and chronic infection are important risk factors for some hematological malignancies like non-Hodgkin's lymphoma (NHL) [117]. In these cases, HLA alleles can affect the extent of immune reaction and stimulation of B-cells [117]. For instance, *HLA-*

DRB1∗0301, *HLA-B∗0801 HLA-DRB1∗0101*, and *HLA-DRB1∗0401*, the susceptibility alleles of NHL are associated with autoimmune diseases such as systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE), rheumatoid arthritis (RA), Sjögren's syndrome, and celiac disease [102, 108, 118]. The more prominent example is the paradoxical relationship of DQB1∗0301 with HCV infection and HCV-related B-cell lymphoma. While DQB1∗0301 is associated with a better immunologic control of HCV and a self-limiting infection, it is a susceptibility factor for HCV-related NHL. In this case, efficient presentation of viral antigens by DQB1∗0301 in the context of persistent HCV infection results in $CD4^+$-dependent chronic stimulation of B-cells [108].

6. *Sensitivity to mutation*: It is suggested that some HLA alleles are more susceptible to mutations like rearrangements of the DNA material and crossover. Such dramatic alterations might influence the function of oncogenes or tumor suppressors in the proximity of HLA genes. An example of such an oncogene is Waf1/p21 gene, located in 6p21.1 [105].
7. *Linkage disequilibrium*: LD with non-HLA genes of class III or even nonclassical HLA in the form of extended haplotypes can justify some of the founded associations. LD with non-HLA genes like *TNF-α*, in context with extended haplotype, can influence the relationship between toxicity of immunotherapy and HLA alleles. For example, high TNF-α increases the IL-2 toxicity in patients with melanoma [119, 120].
8. *HLA subtypes naturally suppressing the immunity against tumors*: HLA-G and HLA-E are both involved in cancer development through inhibiting NK cell mediated cytotoxicity by immunoglobulin-like transcript 2 (ILT2) [121]. Thus, polymorphisms resulting in higher expression of these HLAs are associated with poor prognosis and high recurrence, as studied about HLA-G+3027 in HL [122]. Hypoxia-induced factor 1 (HIF-1) which is released in hypoxic conditions of cancer hypermetabolic states is a regulator of HLA-G expression [123].

20.6.4 HLA Typing and HLA Association Studies: Lessons from the Past

HLA has a history as long as immunogenetics itself. An observation of transfusion failures in 1952 paved the road to the discovery of the first HLA allele by Dausset [124]. Since 1958, there was a continuous international effort in order to share experimental data and HLA typing technologies, identify new HLA alleles and serotypes, and uncover the role of HLA system in pathogenesis of numerous diseases [36]. The result of such effort was the identification of over 9500 alleles for HLA class I and II over a short period of four decades [36]. Along with the discovery of new alleles, the first nomenclature committee was held in 1987 followed by several nomenclature committees to unify the nomenclature and classification [36].

Early studies employed low-resolution serological methods which detected HLA on T-cells or B-cells [125]. Although these serological methods were subject to huge development in detection methods from complement-dependent cytotoxicity test to ELISA method, flow cytometry, and Luminex technique, the real breakthrough in HLA association studies was the introduction of PCR and high resolution DNA-based typing methods [36]. This technology allowed not only detection of high HLA polymorphisms with higher sensitivity and specificity but also the detection of new alleles with more flexibility by simply adding new probes to the old panels [126]. Nowadays, the old DNA-based method employing PCR-RFLP has been replaced by more rapid tests [126]. Generally, they either identify PCR products containing hypervariable regions by hybridization with sequence-specific probes (SSO) or employ sequence-specific primers (SSP) to identify variants as part of PCR process itself [15, 36, 127]. The latter was extensively used back in mid-1990s [15, 36, 127]. Even though aberrant typing as a sign of new allele can be followed by direct DNA sequencing, both methods are ineffective in case there is a new allele [15]. Later this limitation was overcome by polymerase chain reaction-sequence-based

typing which can directly detect the sequence of alleles. In this method which is based on dye terminator chemistry, dye bounded 2,3 dideoxynucleotides are used as substrates for PCR process. Randomly addition of labeled dideoxynucleotides, and consequently, a stop in elongation of DNA chain result in the development of numerous DNA fragments with different sizes. These DNA fragments can easily be separated by capillary electrophoresis, and the ending dideoxynucleotides can be identified by specific fluorescence emitted from the related dye.

In parallel, huge efforts were made to understand the role of these alleles in etiology and natural history of several diseases. In oncology, the first association was found in HL in 1967 [37]. This finding triggered a series of HLA association studies on different cancers worldwide. The fruit of this global movement was finding association between HLA alleles and susceptibility to several hematological malignancy including HL, NHL, childhood acute lymphoblastic leukemia, Kaposi's sarcoma, chronic myeloid leukemia (CML), and also non-hematological malignancies including nasopharyngeal carcinoma, thyroid cancer, renal cell carcinoma (RCC), cervical cancer, and both melanoma and non-melanoma skin cancers [15, 128]. Moreover, investigations on natural history of cancers showed relationship of several alleles from both classes with mortality in ovarian cancer, non-small cell lung carcinoma, head and neck squamous carcinoma, and local recurrence in melanoma [77, 101, 105]. Several studies showed importance of HLA context in the outcome of immunotherapy and tumor vaccines in melanoma, RCC, cervical carcinoma, and CML [77, 100, 120, 129].

Although the result of such studies was inconsistent in some cases, most studies pointed to the undeniable role of HLA polymorphism in susceptibility, prognosis, natural history, and response to immunotherapy in different cancers [37].

These past experiences emphasize that a prestigious HLA association study is a complex art rather than a simple case–control study and several factors should be considered in interpreting their results. In this regard, results of meta-analysis of these association studies are more reliable (Table 20.2).

Table 20.2 Significant results from published meta-analysis of HLA associations with cancers

Alleles	Cancer site	Number of cases	Number of controls	OR ± 95% CI	Population included	References
DQB1∗03	Hepatocellular carcinoma	398	593	0.65 (0.48–0.89)	China, Italy, Spain, Egypt	Xin et al. [130]
	Cervical cancer	163	410	0.85 (0.74–0.97)	USA, England, Senegal, Sweden, Uppsala, Japan, Venezuela, China, Brazil, India, Mexico, Tunisia	Zhang et al. [131]
DQB1∗0301	Cervical cancer	917	2742	1.14 (1.06–1.23)	USA, England, Senegal, Sweden, Uppsala, Japan, Venezuela, China, Brazil, India, Mexico, Tunisia	Zhang et al. [131]
DQB1∗02	Hepatocellular carcinoma	398	593	1.78 (1.05–3.03)	China, Italy, Spain, Egypt	Xin et al. [130]
	Cervical cancer	441	1361	0.91 (0.82–0.99)	USA, England, Senegal, Sweden, Uppsala, Japan, Venezuela, China, Brazil, India, Mexico, Tunisia	Zhang et al. [131]
DQB1∗0402	Cervical cancer	142	1731	1.31 (1.04–1.64)	USA, England, Senegal, Sweden, Uppsala, Japan, Venezuela, China, Brazil, India, Mexico, Tunisia	Zhang et al. [131]
DQB1∗05	Cervical cancer	213	823	1.18 (1.01–1.38)	USA, England, Senegal, Sweden, Uppsala, Japan, Venezuela, China, Brazil, India, Mexico, Tunisia	Zhang et al. [131]

(continued)

Table 20.2 (continued)

Alleles	Cancer site	Number of cases	Number of controls	OR ± 95% CI	Population included	References
DQB1∗0502	Hepatocellular carcinoma	257	349	1.82 (1.14–2.92)	China, Spain	Xin et al. [130]
DQB1∗0602	Hepatocellular carcinoma	173	226	0.58 (0.36–0.95)	China, Spain	Xin et al. [130]
DQB1∗0603	Cervical cancer	236	3608	0.62 (0.53–0.72)	USA, England, Senegal, Sweden, Uppsala, Japan, Venezuela, China, Brazil, India, Mexico, Tunisia	Zhang et al. [131]
DRB1∗01	Hepatocellular carcinoma	2030	2817	0.53 (0.29–0.96)		Liu et al. [132]
	Nasopharyngeal carcinoma	786	1282	0.55 (0.39–0.78)	USA, China, Greece, Tunisia, Singapore	Yao et al. [133]
DRB1∗03	Nasopharyngeal carcinoma	1152	1600	1.55 (1.30–1.86)	USA, China, Greece, Tunisia, Singapore	Yao et al. [133]
	Cervical cancer	272	1352	0.74 (0.59–0.91)	China	Wei et al. [134]
DRB1∗07	Hepatocellular carcinoma	281	466	1.65 (1.08–2.51)	China, Italy, Spain, Egypt	Lin et al. [135]
		156	224	2.1 (1.06–4.14)	China	Lin et al. [135]
		125	242	1.41 (0.83–2.42)	Italy, Spain, Egypt	Lin et al. [135]
DRB1∗08	Nasopharyngeal carcinoma	786	1282	1.44 (1.08–1.92)	USA, China, Greece, Tunisia, Singapore	Yao et al. [133]
	Cervical cancer	87	967	0.68 (0.52–0.90)	China	Wei et al. [134]
DRB1∗09	Nasopharyngeal carcinoma	786	1282	1.33 (1.06–1.67)	USA, China, Greece, Tunisia, Singapore	Yao et al. [133]
DRB1∗10	Nasopharyngeal carcinoma	686	1123	1.82 (1.02–3.26)	USA, China, Greece, Tunisia	Yao et al. [133]
DRB1∗11	Hepatocellular carcinoma	2030	2817	0.58 (0.38–0.88)		Liu et al. [132]
	Nasopharyngeal carcinoma	786	1282	0.62 (0.42–0.91)	USA, China, Greece, Tunisia, Singapore	Yao et al. [133]
DRB1∗12	Hepatocellular carcinoma	281	516	1.59 (1.09–2.32)	China, Italy, Spain, Thailand	Lin et al. [135]
		206	324	1.73 (1.17–2.57)	China, Taiwan	Lin et al. [135]
		75	192	0.3 (0.04–2.47)	Spain, Italy	Lin et al. [135]
	Nasopharyngeal carcinoma	786	1282	0.62 (0.47–0.81)	USA, China, Greece, Tunisia, Singapore	Yao et al. [133]
		2030	2817	1.49 (1.08–2.07)		Liu et al. [132]
DRB1∗14	Hepatocellular carcinoma	2030	2817	1.89 (1.27–2.82)		Liu et al. [132]
DRB1∗15	Hepatocellular carcinoma	281	466	1.7 (0.8–3.59)	China, Italy, Spain, Egypt	Lin et al. [135]
		156	224	3.22 (1.63–6.37)	China	Lin et al. [135]
		125	242	0.8 (0.34–1.89)	Spain, Egypt, Italy	Lin et al. [135]
	Cervical cancer	362	1307	1.62 (1.36–1.93)	China	Wei et al. [134]

Table 20.2 (continued)

Alleles	Cancer site	Number of cases	Number of controls	OR ± 95% CI	Population included	References
DRB1∗0701	Cervical squamous cell carcinoma	1445	2206	1.59 (1.09–2.35)	Iran, USA, England, Sweden, France, Brazil	Yang et al. [136]
		1083	1248	1.29 (1.02–1.63)	Caucasians	Yang et al. [136]
DRB1∗1301	Cervical squamous cell carcinoma	2743	3904	0.63 (0.52–0.78)	Iran, USA, England, Sweden, France, Brazil	Yang et al. [136]
		2013	2360	0.61 (0.48–0.77)	Caucasians	Yang et al. [136]
DRB1∗1302	Cervical squamous cell carcinoma	1877	2966	0.49 (0.36–0.68)	Iran, USA, England, Sweden, France, Brazil	Yang et al. [136]
		2013	2360	0.75 (0.57–0.98)	Caucasians	Yang et al. [136]
DRB1∗1501	Cervical squamous cell carcinoma	1915	2628	1.42 (1.23–1.65)	Iran, USA, England, Sweden, France, Brazil	Yang et al. [136]
		2191	2628	1.22 (1.01–1.47)		Yang et al. [136]
DRB1∗1502	Cervical squamous cell carcinoma	1424	2184	1.87 (1.08–3.26)	Iran, USA, England, Sweden, France, Brazil	Yang et al. [136]
DRB1∗1503	Cervical squamous cell carcinoma	432	894	3.4 (1.69–6.87)	Iran, USA, England, Sweden, France, Brazil	Yang et al. [136]
DRB1∗1602	Cervical squamous cell carcinoma	1314	2234	0.61 (0.38–0.98)	Iran, USA, England, Sweden, France, Brazil	Yang et al. [136]
DRB1∗0403	Cervical squamous cell carcinoma	1796	2050	2.05 (1.02–4.12)	Caucasians	Yang et al. [136]
DRB1∗0405	Cervical squamous cell carcinoma	1496	1700	6.13 (1.03–36.33)	Caucasians	Yang et al. [136]
DRB1∗0407	Cervical squamous cell carcinoma	1796	2050	2.71 (1.11–6.61)	Caucasians	Yang et al. [136]
DRB1∗0901	Cervical squamous cell carcinoma	1796	2050	0.58 (0.34–0.99)	Caucasians	Yang et al. [136]

20.6.5 Typing Methods

Indeed, immunogenetic studies are deeply influenced by technological advances. Low-resolution serologic HLA typing was one of the major limitations in early studies [87]. Serologic typing is only enabled to identify the family of alleles. This family often comprises a heterogeneous group of alleles with different affinities and different potential for Ag presentation. Since distribution of alleles belonging to the same serotype is different in various populations, such studies often obtained conflicting results in different populations. One of the best historical examples is HLA association studies in nasopharyngeal carcinoma (NPC).

NPC, as an epithelial carcinoma of the head and neck origin, was one of the main focuses of early HLA association studies. Early serological studies showed an association between HLA-A2 and NPC in Chinese population, while studies in Caucasians found HLA-A2 as a protective allele for both NPC and EBV-associated HL [115, 137–141]. Later, higher-resolution studies showed

HLA-A∗02:07, a common allele in Chinese population but rare among Caucasians, as the main risk factor, while HLA-A∗02:01, a common allele in Caucasians, was shown to be the actual protective factor in this population [142, 143]. Further associations among DRB1 and DQB1 variants with cervical squamous cell and hepatocellular cancers were identified, which are depicted in Table 20.2. It is possible that future studies employing higher-resolution methods reveal even new causal variants within the current associations.

20.6.6 Environmental Factors

Various environmental and genetic factors play roles behind scenario of cancer, and malignant transformation is the result of a complex interaction between these factors. It is often the case that certain genetic factors need certain environmental factors to play their role in pathogenesis of cancer. The role of environmental factors in HLA association studies is more prominent in virus-associated malignancies like HL, NPC, and cervical cancer. Each virus has different strains with different Ags and the prevalence of these strains is not the same in different populations. Each strain is best presented by certain HLA alleles. Therefore, one HLA allele efficient for presenting Ags of one population's prevalent strain may not present Ags of another population's prevalent strain efficiently [87]. Such a phenomenon might be extended to other environmental factors like virus prevalence, viral load, diet, cigarette smoking, and socioeconomic status, all of which are highly dependent on the population under study [78, 144]. For instance, pathogenesis of cervical cancer is dependent on persistent infection with high-risk human papillomavirus (HPV) and this risk factor itself is highly related to socioeconomic status, sexual relationship, and prevalence of high-risk variants in the region [144, 145].

20.6.7 Linkage Disequilibrium

MHC region is home to more than 200 genes beside classic HLA genes. Due to the low recombination rates, these genes are often in strong linkage disequilibrium together [82]. This strong LD can complicate finding the actual causal allele. The problem gets worse when the causal allele is an unknown allele in strong LD with the associated allele. This limitation can be overcome by whole genome sequencing (WGS) of the region in close proximity of the associated allele [107]. One example is the association of NPC with HLA-A∗0207 and HLA-B∗4601 which are in strong LD. In this case, either allele, both of them, or even a third allele in LD with both of them might influence the pathogenesis of NPC [143].

Some studies reported extraordinary LD in MHC region between alleles from one class and alleles of other classes and even non-HLA genes. This extraordinary haplotypes are known as extended haplotypes [87]. Thus, in interpreting results of HLA association studies or design of one, non-HLA genes such as the *transporter associated with Ag processing (TAP) MHC class I chain-related A (MIC-A), heat shock proteins (HSP)*, and *TNF-α* which are located nearby or within the classic HLA genes should be considered [82, 87]. These extended haplotypes are especially of importance in immunogenetic studies of cancers, since numerous elements of the immune system are in the front line of defense against cancer.

For instance, the ancestral haplotype 8.1 (AH 8.1: HLA-A∗01-B∗08-Cw∗07-DRB1∗03-TNF-G308A), in which HLA alleles are in LD with TNF-α, is the most frequent extended MHC haplotype in Caucasian populations [119]. Primarily, this extended haplotype was associated with clinical course of NHL [79, 119]; however, later studies showed that polymorphism in *TNF-α* gene has a more prominent effect in this association compared to Cw∗07 and DRB1∗03 alleles [9, 79]. In this case, polymorphisms in TNF-α promoter influence TNF-α expression levels. TNF-α level consequently affects the extent of immune activation upon tumor challenge. In addition, increased TNF-α impairs Ag presentation potential of APCs and by its effect on cytokine profile results in a bias toward Th2 immune responses [79]. All these factors can contribute to the exacerbation of systemic symptoms, anemia, hypoalbuminemia, and poor outcome [9].

Another example is the association of HLA-A∗03 and chronic myeloid leukemia (CML) [82]. A translocation between *t*(9,22)(q34;q11) creating a truncated chromosome 22 known as Philadelphia chromosome is present in majority of patients with CML [146]. Depending on the precise location of the fusion, different fusion proteins are encoded. Keeping this in mind and the absence of costimulatory molecules on CML cells, it is improbable that the association of HLA-A∗03 is due to its efficiency in presenting fusion proteins and its ability to induce an effective immune response [82]. However, this allele is in LD with the C282Y mutation of the *hemochromatosis gene*, a susceptibility marker for CML [82].

In some cases, an optimal immune response is dependent on optimal Ag presentation by both HLA classes and the presence of certain alleles in non-HLA genes. An absence of one of these optimal alleles may result in anergy and immune escape. In some populations, these alleles might be in LD in form of an unknown extended haplotype, while in other populations this haplotype might be absent [61]. One of such associations has been reported between cervical squamous cell carcinoma and multi-locus haplotype of B∗4402-Cw∗0501-DRB1∗0401-DQB1∗0301 [61].

20.6.8 HLA and Cancer Diagnosis, Prognosis, and Treatment

HLA typing and studying their association with cancer development would be beneficial if utilized in improving the early diagnosis, defining the prognosis of cancers and their response to treatment strategies. Quantifying HLA-G expression level regardless of the HLA subtype may be a predictive tool in distinguishing benign and malignant lesions and determining the prognosis of cancerous lesions [147, 148]. Moreover, targeting HLA-G by siRNA and specific Abs has resulted in improved NK cell mediated cytolysis and Th2 related cytokine expression, preventing tumor progression [149, 150].

Not only considering certain HLA types which influence the response of cancer cells to different immunotherapy methods helps in predicting the efficacy of an immunotherapy method [151], but also this is used to reinforce development of specific cancer vaccines through determining HLA hotspots of neoantigen recognition [152].

T-cell mediated immunotherapy methods like anti-CTLA-4 and PD-1 inhibitors and checkpoint blockade therapies are strongly affected by HLA expression patterns [111]. Thus, restoring HLA expression patterns is one pivotal solution for improving the response to these treatments requiring T-cell activation. On the other hand, abnormal expression of certain biomolecules like SHP2 in prostate cancer is the main cause of HLA suppression [153]. Targeting these negative regulators readily increases T-cell mediated immunity.

20.7 The Cytokine Network

20.7.1 Background

Cytokines are a group of soluble regulatory factors by which the immune system controls and modulates different activities of its cells. Each cytokine triggers certain cascade of events in their target cells by binding to their receptors and activating intracellular signal transduction pathway [16, 22]. Cytokine network is responsible for coordination of effector actions of different elements of the immune system, as well as the differentiation and proliferation of different immune cells. In addition, secretion of antibodies and inflammation is tightly regulated by complex interaction between these cytokines [15, 25, 28].

Chronic inflammation, by inducing chronic tissue damage and compensatory cell proliferation, is considered a major promoter of malignant transformations. As an example, nitric oxide, produced during inflammation, might damage DNA structure in different tumor suppressor genes and oncogenes [154]. Therefore, any dysregulation in cytokine network can result in excessive production of tumor-inducing factors, DNA damage, angiogenesis, and dysplasia and consequent development of various inflammatory diseases including different cancers [28, 155]. Cytokine network is a determinant factor in the development of metastasis and natural history

of cancers [28]. In some cancers, malignant cells can manipulate cytokine network in order to escape immunosurveillance or promote their own proliferation [154, 156]. In addition, cytokine network can influence the outcome and toxicity of different immunotherapy methods [15, 22, 157]. Several cancers including hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC), oral squamous cell carcinoma, melanoma, the gastric, pancreatic, and prostate cancer were associated with high levels of certain proinflammatory or antiinflammatory cytokines [28].

Cytokine levels are not the same in all individuals. Interindividual differences in cytokine levels in both baseline and stimulated phases are a result of both genetic and environmental factors [157]. Since there is not an intracellular storage for cytokines, their secretion is dependent on the transcriptional and translational rates of their genes [16, 28]. Not surprisingly, genes responsible for encoding cytokines and their receptors are relatively polymorphic [15, 22, 25]. Several polymorphisms in their gene can affect their expression, structure, and activity [22, 25, 28, 154, 158]. Most of these polymorphisms are in noncoding regions including promoter or intronic sequences and exonic regions are usually highly conserved [15, 16]. So far, numerous genetic association studies have been suggested as associations of these SNPs with various cancers in different populations. However, results of such studies were often inconsistent, and the reported associations varied not only in different populations but also in different cancers and even in their different subtypes [155]. Therefore, a meta-analysis of these studies can show some more conclusive evidence of these associations.

In addition to polymorphisms of cytokine genes, there are other polymorphic elements such as various transcription factors and cytokine-specific receptors which are involved in actions of cytokine network [22, 28]. For instance, polymorphisms in the nuclear factor-kappa B (*NF-κB*) gene, one of the most important transcription factors, can result in extensive changes in the cytokine network by altering transcription of TNF-a, IL-1, IL-6, and IL-8 [22]. Although the exact roles of these polymorphisms in tumor immunology are less clear, the relevance of this role is becoming more and more apparent in recent years [22].

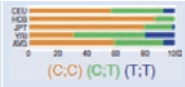
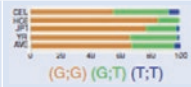
20.7.2 Interleukin-1 Superfamily

IL-1α and IL-1β and their antagonist IL-1Ra are members of this superfamily with pleiotropic effects on inflammation, immunity, and hemopoietic system. High levels of IL-1 are found in tumor sites; however, IL-1 family plays an ambivalent role in tumor immunity. IL-1 induces cytokine secretion from T-cells to potentiate the differentiation and function of immunosurveillance cells. On the other hand, IL-1 induces the expression of adhesion molecules, matrix metalloproteinases, growth factors, and angiogenic factors and promotes invasiveness and metastasis of malignant cells [159, 160].

20.7.2.1 Interleukin-1 α

IL-1α is encoded by seven exons of a gene located in 2q14. Variant −889C>T (rs1800587) is one of the common promoter variants of IL-1α gene (Table 20.3). Although the promoter containing T

Table 20.3 Genotype details for SNPs of IL-1

SNP	GMAF[a] [161]	Population diversity[b] [162]	Change at DNA level	Change at protein level	Effect on cytokine level
rs1800587	$T = 0.253$		−889C>T	NA[c]	T allele: ↑
rs17561	$T = 0.203$		+4845G>T	Ala114Ser	T allele: ↑

[a]GMAF: the minor allele frequency in 1094 worldwide individuals provided from 1000 genome phase 1 genotype data
[b]*CEU* European, *CHB* Han Chinese, *JPT* Japanese Tokyo, *YRI* Yoruba African, *AVG* Mathematical average of all samples
[c]*NA* not applicable

allele has been shown to result in a marginally higher level of expression, at the protein level, T allele was associated with significantly increased IL-1α levels which could not be justified by only different expression patterns. Further studies showed that this SNP has high LD with an exonic SNP in +4845G>T (rs17561) resulting in substitution of alanine with serine at the position of 114 which results in more efficient process of pre-IL-1α compared to Ala114 and consequently higher release of IL-1α [25].

20.7.2.2 Interleukin-1 β

High levels of IL-1β have been shown to be associated with increased risk of most human cancers and also poor prognosis in cancer patients [154, 156, 163]. IL-1β is encoded by a 7.5 kb gene with seven exons located on 2q14. Its expression is regulated by two distal and proximal promoter elements [164, 165]. So far, several polymorphisms have been identified in this gene. −511C>T (rs16944) and −31C>T (rs1143627) are two common variants in the promoter region, and +3954C>T (rs1143634) is a common synonymous polymorphism in coding region of IL-1β gene (Table 20.4) [28].

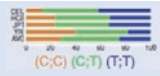
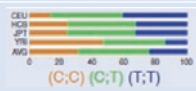
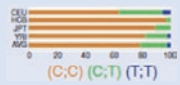
In northern and western European ancestry (CEU), −511C>T (rs16944) and −31C>T (rs1143627) had strong LD ($r^2 = 0.94$) [28, 156]. In vivo, −511T/−31T haplotype has been associated with higher IL-1β levels in the lungs and gastric mucosa. It is suggested that −31C>T (rs1143627) is the causal variant of this haplotype [25, 165]. In the same line, in vitro studies like luciferase reporter assay showed higher expression of luciferase gene with promoter containing T allele in −31C>T (rs1143627) [25]. Results of EMSA studies suggested that this higher expression is a result of higher affinity for several transcription factors as a result of a change in a TATA-box motif [25].

T allele in rs1143634 was associated with increased IL-1β secretion and several inflammatory diseases [156]. However, no evidence on the functionality of +3954C>T (rs1143634) is available, and it seems that +3954C>T (rs1143634) is just a marker for a functional polymorphism such as −31T>C (rs1143627) [25, 28].

A meta-analysis of 81 case–control studies with 19,547 patients with HCC, gastric, lung, blood, cervical, esophageal, prostate, breast, and skin cancers and 23,935 controls showed that, overall, −511C>T (rs16944) has no significant association with cancers [156], while another meta-analysis of 26 studies with 8083 patients with cancer and 9183 controls showed a significant association of +3954C>T (rs1143634) with increased risk of cancers in a dominant model which is in accordance with the results of another meta-analysis of 33 studies (Table 20.5) [156, 175].

Meta-analysis of the association between −511C>T and gastric cancer development among Chinese population reported a significant association under all genetic models [167]. Another meta-analysis of studies on associations between *IL-1β* gene polymorphisms and gastric cancer published from January 2000 to December 2009 (including 18 studies with 4111 controls and 3295 cases for −511C>T (rs16944), 21 studies with 5883 controls and 3786 cases for −31T>C

Table 20.4 Genotype details for SNPs of IL-1β

SNP	GMAF [161]	Population diversity [162]	Change at DNA level	Change at protein level	Effect on cytokine level
rs16944	*T* = 0.465		−511C>T	NA	T allele: ↑
rs1143627	*C* = 0.4808		−31C>T	NA	T allele: ↑
rs1143634	*T* = 0.146		+3954C>T	NA	UA[a]

[a]*UA* unavailable

Table 20.5 Significant results from published meta-analysis of associations of IL-1β polymorphisms with cancers

Alleles	Cancer site	Number of cases	Number of controls	Analysis type	OR ± 95% CI	Population included	References
rs16944	Gastric cancer	2041	2441	TT + CT vs. CC	1.23 (1.09–1.37)	Italy, Japan, China, Korea, Portugal, UK, mixed Asian	Vincenzi et al. [166]
		5136	5332	T vs. C	1.21 (1.07–1.37)	China	Chen et al. [167]
				TT vs. CC	1.41 (1.11–1.80)		
				CT vs. CC	1.26 (1.05–1.50)		
				TT + CT vs. CC	1.31 (1.08–1.58)		
				TT vs. CC + CT	1.24 (1.05–1.47)		
		9066	11,192	TT vs. CC + CT	1.15 (1.03–1.29)	Polish/Scotland, Portugal, Germany, China, USA, Taiwan, Brazil, Korea, Costa Rica, Italy, Japan, Honduras, Finland, Spain, Sweden, India, Romania	Park et al. [168]
	Cervical cancer	836	980	TT vs. CC	1.74 (1.28–2.36)	Egypt, Korea, India, China	Xu et al. [156]
				CT vs. CC	1.71 (1.32–2.23)		
				TT + CT vs. CC	1.74 (1.35–2.23)		
		1210	1388	TT vs. CC	1.56 (1.22–1.99)	Egypt, Korea, India, China	Wu et al. [169]
				CT vs. CC	1.61 (1.31–1.99)		
				TT + CT vs. CC	1.60 (1.31–1.95)		
		836	980	T vs. C	1.38 (1.05–1.82)	Korea, India, China, Egypt	Lee and Song [170]
				TT + CT vs. CC	1.72 (1.34–2.21)		
				TT vs. CC	1.74 (1.28–2.37)		
	Hepatocellular carcinoma	890	821	CT vs. CC	0.75 (0.60–0.94)	Japan, Taiwan, Thailand	Xu et al. [156]
				TT + CT vs. CC	0.68 (0.47–0.99)		
	Blood cancers	3839	3762	CC + CT vs. TT	1.19 (1.04–1.37)	Italy, Spain, Germany, USA, Canada, Greece	Xu et al. [156]
	Prostate cancer	1425	1563	T vs. C	0.86 (0.77–0.96)	Mixed population	Xu et al. [171]
				TT vs. CC	0.74 (0.58–0.94)		
				TT vs. CC+CT	0.79 (0.63–0.98)		

Table 20.5 (continued)

Alleles	Cancer site	Number of cases	Number of controls	Analysis type	OR ± 95% CI	Population included	References
rs1143627	Lung cancer	3435	4719	TT + TC vs. CC	1.23 (1.06–1.43)	China, Italy, mixed European, Denmark	Li and Wang [172], Peng et al. [173]
	Gastric cancer	1535	2585	TT + TC vs. CC	1.16 (1.01–1.33)	Korea, Mexico, China, Brazil, Italy, USA	Vincenzi et al. [166]
	Hepatocellular carcinoma	1039	1588	CC + CT vs. TT	1.31 (1.09–1.57)	Japan, Taiwan, Morocco	Jin et al. [174]
	Prostate cancer	787	771	CT vs. CC	1.35 (1.00–1.80)	Mixed population	Xu et al. [171]
rs1143634	Malignancy	8083	9183	TT + CT vs. CC	1.15 (1.01–1.30)	Sweden, Poland, China, UK, Germany, Tunisia, Costa Rica, Oman, USA, Greece, Netherlands, Norway, Japan	Xu et al. [156]
	Gastric cancer	2359	3613	CT vs. CC	1.16 (1.03–1.32)	USA, China, UK, Germany, Italy, Japan, India, Sweden, Oman	Zhang et al. [175]
	Oral cancer	346	417	CT vs. CC	0.65 (0.45–0.94)	Greece, China	Zhang et al. [175]
				TT + CT vs. CC	0.69 (0.49–0.98)		
	Lung cancer	8907	9760	CC + CT vs. TT	0.92 (0.86–0.99)	Norway, Japan, France, USA	Li and Wang [172]

(rs1143627) polymorphism, 10 studies with 3610 controls and 1559 cases for +3954C>T (rs1143634)) showed significantly increased risk of cancer in individuals with IL-1β −511T allele. In stratified analysis for different ethnicities, such an association was present in Caucasians but not in Asians or in Hispanics. This study also showed such an association for intestinal-subtype and noncardia gastric cancer [176, 177]. However, this study did not show any significant association between gastric cancer risk and −31T>C (rs1143627) and +3954C>T (rs1143634) [176]. Older studies conducted on 2005 and 2007 more or less showed such pattern for this SNP [166, 177]. However, a meta-analysis of five studies published up to September 2008 showed association of +3954C>T (rs1143634) and gastric cancer risk in Chinese and Japanese population [178]. Interestingly, a meta-analysis conducted on 6108 gastric cancer patients reported that although there was no significant association between −31T>C and gastric cancer, this polymorphism significantly increased gastric cancer risk in the presence of H. pylori infection [179]. In line with that, another study on 20,000 cases and controls found a significant association of −511C>T with gastric cancer, enhanced by H. pylori infection and Asian ethnicity [168].

Studies on cervical cancer patients have also reported significant association of −511C>T with cervical cancer development under allelic, homozygote, heterozygote, and dominant genetic models [169, 170]. Another systematic review evaluating associations of HCC with polymorphisms of IL-1 gene (reported up to September 2010) and a meta-analysis of 1279 patients with lung cancer and 2248 controls failed to support any significant increase in risk for −511C>T (rs16944) and −31C>T (rs1143627) [173, 180]. However, a meta-analysis of the association

between −31C>T, +3954C>T, and lung cancer resulted in significant association for both polymorphisms [172].

A comprehensive study on prostate cancer and different polymorphisms of IL-1β showed that there is a significant association between −511C>T and prostate cancer in allelic, homozygote, and recessive models and also between −31C>T and prostate cancer only in heterozygote model [171]. No significant association was detected between +3954C>T and prostate cancer.

20.7.2.3 Interleukin-1Ra (IL-1Ra)

IL-1RA has antiinflammatory properties by competing with IL-1 cytokines in binding to their receptors. This cytokine is encoded by *IL-1RN* gene located on 2q14.2. Its transcript may contain six, five, or four exons [25, 154]. There is an 86-bp variable number tandem repeat (VNTR) in intron 2 of this gene [25]. The short alleles of this VNTR contain only two repeats (IL-1RN∗2), while long alleles may have three to six repeats (IL-1RN L) [62, 176]. The more prevalent allele containing four repeats is named IL1RN∗1 [181]. In vitro and in vivo studies have shown extensive associations of this variant with the members of IL-1 superfamily. IL-1RN∗2 was associated with not only higher IL-1RA levels but also enhanced IL-1β production and decreased IL-1α production [182]. However, the final result of IL-1RN∗2 was decreased IL-1RA/IL-1β ratio, followed by prolonged proinflammatory immune response [25]. Although intronic VNTR contains potential binding sites for an interferon-α silencer, an interferon-β silencer, and an acute-phase response element, all leading to its functional importance, these associations are suggested to be a result of LD with other variants [164, 183]. Some authors suggested that the enhancing effect of IL-1RN∗2 on IL-1RA levels is dependent on the presence of −511T allele or the absence of +3954T in IL-1β [25].

A meta-analysis of 71 case–control studies (including 37 studies on gastric cancer, 6 studies on HCC, 4 on cervical cancer, 4 on breast cancer, 4 on lung cancer, and 16 studies on other cancers) with 14,854 cases and 19,337 controls showed that overall carriers of IL-1RN∗2 are significantly more susceptible to cancer (Table 20.6) [175].

A systematic review on 3322 prostate cancer patients and 2147 controls revealed no significant association between *IL-1RN* polymorphism and this cancer [171]. However, two studies on cervical cancer patients reported significant association between IL-1RN∗2 and cervical cancer [169, 170].

Table 20.6 Significant results from published meta-analysis of associations of IL-1RN VNTR with cancers

Cancer site	Number of cases	Number of controls	Analysis type	OR ± 95% CI	Population included	References
Malignancy	14,854	19,337	22 vs. LL	1.37 (1.07–1.75)	40 studies of Asian descendents, 29 of Caucasian descendents, and 2 with mixed ethnicity	Zhang et al. [175]
			2L vs. LL	1.19 (1.07–1.32)		
			22 + 2L vs. LL	1.25 (1.12–1.41)		
			2 vs. L	1.23 (1.10–1.38)		
Breast cancer	1145	1102	2L vs. LL	0.74 (0.58–0.93)	Japan, Germany, Korea, India	Zhang et al. [175]
			22 + 2L vs. LL	0.78 (0.62–0.97)		
Cervical cancer	782	762	2 vs. L	1.41 (0.98–2.03)	Portugal, China, India	Lee and Song [170]
	1663	1374	22 vs. LL	2.64 (1.29–5.40)	Portugal, China, India	Wu et al. [169]
			22 vs. 2L + LL	2.15 (1.06–4.38)		
			22 + 2L vs. LL	1.60 (1.07–2.38)		
Gastric cancer	3209	4856	2L vs. LL	1.22 (1.05–1.41)	Portugal, China, Germany, Brazil, Taiwan, Thailand, UK, Italy	Zhang et al. [175]
			22 + 2L vs. LL	1.25 (1.09–1.43)		
			2 vs. L	1.20 (1.05–1.38)		
	3418	5789	22 + 2L vs. LL	1.26 (1.06–1.51)	Arab, Brazil, Netherland, Korea, USA, China, Italy, Mexico, South Korea, Germany, Taiwan, Portugal, Poland	Xue et al. [176]
			22 vs. LL	2.64 (1.29–5.40)		
			22 vs. 2L + LL	2.15 (1.06–4.38)		

20.7.3 Interleukin-4

Interleukin-4 (IL-4) is a pleiotropic cytokine with major roles in regulation of humoral immunity by its various effects on production of several other cytokines and dedifferentiation of B-cells and promoting expression of class II MHC Ags [28, 154]. It also has potent antitumor activity against various tumors by its inhibitory effect on the growth of tumor cells and its growth stimulatory effect on lymphocytes [184, 185].

IL-4 gene is located on the long arm of chromosome 5 (5q31.1), and through recent years, many variants identified on this gene. Among these variants, two important polymorphisms are −589C>T (rs2243250) and −33C>T (rs2070874) which are both promoter SNPs of which T alleles are associated with increased production of IL-4 in in vivo studies [28, 186]. The other variant of this gene is a 70-bp VNTR at intron 3 (Table 20.7) [186].

A meta-analysis of 8715 patients with various cancers and 9532 controls presented in 23 case–control studies found no significant association between −589C>T (rs2243250) and overall cancer susceptibility. This study also did not find any significant relationship in stratified analysis for ethnicity or different cancer types [187]. In line with that, another study on 1317 colorectal cancer patients and 1659 controls did not report significant association of this SNP with colorectal cancers neither globally nor race-dependently [188]. Similarly, a systematic review on the association of IL-4 SNPs with risk of glioma did not result in a significant relation [189]. However, another meta-analysis of 14 studies involving 3562 cancer cases found that T allele in rs2243250 was significantly associated with decreased oral cancer risk and increased risk of RCC [190]. Another meta-analysis proposed an association between the same SNP with decreased risk of gastric cancer only in Caucasians [191]. Gastrointestinal cancers' association with IL-4 SNPs has been investigated in a meta-analysis regarding rs2243250 and rs2070874. The study stated that despite rs2243250, T allele carriers in rs2070874 are associated with increased risk of gastrointestinal cancers, especially gastric cancer and studies conducted outside Asia [192].

A recent meta-analysis on 10,873 cancer cases and 14,328 controls reported significant association of −589C>T (rs2243250) with all-type cancers with considerable heterogeneity among studies [193]. When analyzed stratifically, the association remained significant in gastric, breast, lung, prostate cancer, and leukemia. Also, in population-based subgroups, the risk of cancer development in Caucasians and Asians was in sig-

Table 20.7 Genotype details for SNPs of IL-4

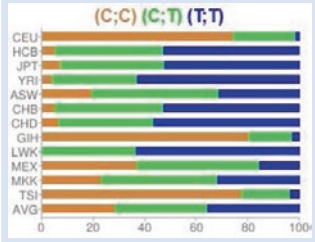
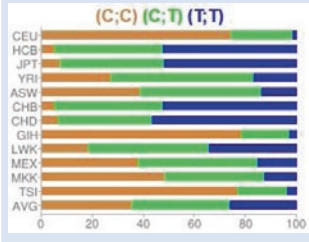
SNP	GMAF [161]	Population diversity [162]	Change at DNA level	Change at protein level	Effect on cytokine level
rs2243250	$T = 0.484$		−589C>T	NA	T allele: ↑
rs2070874	$T = 0.428$		−33C>T	NA	T allele: ↑

Table 20.8 Significant results from published meta-analysis of associations of −589C>T (rs2243250) in IL-4 gene with cancers

Cancer site	Number of cases	Number of controls	Analysis type	OR ± 95% CI	Population included	References
All-type	3334	4803	CT vs. TT	0.82 (0.68–0.98)	Caucasian	Jia et al. [193]
			CT vs. TT + CC	0.79 (0.66–0.96)		
All-type	5350	6731	CT vs. CC + TT	0.89 (0.82–0.97)	Asian	Jia et al. [193]
Oral cancer	270	225	TT vs. CC	0.40 (0.19–0.84)	China, India	Zhenzhen et al. [190]
			TT + CT vs. CC	0.45 (0.22–0.94)		
RCC	467	518	TT vs. CC	1.98 (1.06–3.69)	China, Spain	Zhenzhen et al. [190]
			TT vs. CC + CT	1.43 (1.05–1.95)		
Gastric cancer	1477	2412	CT vs. TT	0.75 (0.61–0.91)	Netherland, Scotland, Spain, Italy, China, Taiwan	Jia et al. [193]
			CT vs. TT + CC	0.77 (0.66–0.91)		
			C vs. T	1.15 (1.01–1.32)		
	1700	892	TT + CT vs. CC	0.80 (0.66–0.97)	Caucasian	Sun et al. [191]
			T vs. C	0.83 (0.70–0.98)		
Breast cancer	1001	1298	CC vs. CT	1.21 (1.00–1.46)	India, USA	Jia et al. [193]
			TT vs. CC	0.56 (0.33–0.97)		
			CC vs. CT + TT	1.25 (1.04–1.51)		
			C vs. T	1.25 (1.06–1.47)		
Lung cancer	1930	2342	CT vs. CC + TT	0.84 (0.75–0.97)	Taiwan, China	Jia et al. [193]
Prostate cancer	588	652	CT vs. TT	1.48 (1.14–1.92)	USA, China	Jia et al. [193]
			TT vs. CC	0.48 (0.31–0.74)		
			CT vs. CC + TT	1.33 (1.05–1.69)		
			TT vs. CC + CT	0.64 (0.50–0.82)		

nificant association with this SNP. Moreover, this study has evaluated the association of two other IL-4 polymorphisms. The rs2070874 was significantly associated with oral cancer and leukemia development and susceptibility of cancer in Asian population [193]. The association between rs79071878 polymorphism and cancer risk was also significant generally in all-type cancers and with a small sample size in bladder cancer and breast cancer (Tables 20.8, 20.9, and 20.10) [193].

20.7.4 Interleukin-6 (IL-6)

IL-6, a 23.7 kD proinflammatory cytokine, is involved in inducing acute-phase response, differentiation of monocytes to macrophages, proliferation of T-cells, and Th2 cytokine production [194]. It has been previously shown to be of importance in susceptibility, natural history, and prognosis of several malignancies including prostate cancer, colorectal carcinoma, and breast cancer [25, 28]. This cytokine is encoded by a gene on chromosome 7p21 with five exons [195]. Two common promoter variants of IL-6, −174G>C (rs1800795) and −572G>C (rs1800796), were extensively studied in different inflammatory diseases (Table 20.11). −174G>C (rs1800795) is the first identified common promoter variant of IL-6 [25]. C allele in both of these variants was associated with lower IL-6 levels in several studies [158, 162, 196–201]. However, such an effect on IL-6 levels was not confirmed by some studies on −174G>C

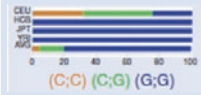
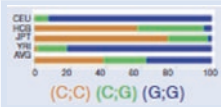
Table 20.9 Significant results from published meta-analysis of associations of −33C>T (rs2070874) in IL-4 gene with cancers

Cancer site	Number of cases	Number of controls	Analysis type	OR ± 95% CI	Population included	References
All-type	1535	1962	CT vs. CC + TT	0.85 (0.73–0.98)	Asian	Jia et al. [193]
Leukemia	30	40	CC vs. CT	3.27 (1.02–10.45)	Iran	Jia et al. [193]
			CT vs. TT	0.03 (0.00–0.57)		
			CT vs. CC + TT	0.24 (0.08–0.77)		
Oral cancer	140	120	CT vs. TT	1.93 (1.13–3.29)	India	Jia et al. [193]
			CT vs. CC + TT	1.67 (1.00–2.77)		
			TT vs. CC + CT	0.50 (0.31–0.82)		
			C vs. T	1.69 (1.16–2.48)		
Gastrointestinal cancer	2101	3318	T vs. C	1.11 (1.00–1.24)	China, Korea, Spain, European countries	Cho and Kim [192]
	1576	1889	T vs. C	1.28 (1.03–1.58)	Asian	Cho and Kim [192]
Gastric cancer	1367	2583	T vs. C	1.17 (1.03–1.34)	China, Korea, European countries	Cho and Kim [192]

Table 20.10 Significant results from published meta-analysis of associations of IL-4 VNTR (rs79071878) with cancers

Cancer site	Number of cases	Number of controls	Analysis type	OR ± 95% CI	Population included	Reference
All-type	1896	2526	23 vs. 22	1.40 (1.09–1.79)	Taiwan, Turkey, India, China	Jia et al. [193]
			33 vs. 22	0.62 (0.44–0.87)		
			33 vs. 22 + 23	0.69 (0.55–0.88)		
			22 vs. 33	1.26 (1.00–1.58)		

Table 20.11 Genotype details for SNPs of IL-6

SNP	GMAF [161]	Population diversity [162]	Change at DNA level	Change at protein level	Effect on cytokine level
rs1800795	*C* = 0.185		−174G>C	NA	C allele: ↑
rs1800796	*C* = 0.290		−572G>C	NA	C allele: ↑

(rs1800795) [158, 196–200]; therefore, this inconsistency might be the result of partial LD between this SNP and an actual functional SNP [25]. EMSA studies showed that −572G>C (rs1800796) is not in a TFBS; therefore, its influence on IL-6 serum levels probably results from strong LD with a functional variant such as −6331T>C (rs10499563) [196]. C allele in −572G>C (rs1800796) is highly associated with T allele in −6331T>C (rs10499563) [196]. Interestingly, T allele in this SNP is associated with higher expression of IL-6 gene [196]. −6331T>C (rs10499563) is near the distal promoter of IL-6 located between −5202 and −5307.

EMSA studies showed that T allele in −6331T>C (rs10499563) resulted in more affinity for Oct-1 of which binding changes the chromatin structure and locates the distal promoter to the transcription start site [25].

There is no systematic review reporting the significant association of these polymorphisms with increased risk of hematologic malignancies [202]. A systematic review of 12 case–control studies on breast cancer (published till December 2009) with 10,137 cases and 15,566 controls found no significant association between −174G>C (rs1800795) and susceptibility to breast cancer [158]. Another stratified study revealed a protective effect of the rs1800795 (OR:0.51) for breast cancer in Asians (378 cases and 432 controls), whereas this SNP was oppositely associated (OR:2.51) with genitourinary cancers in the same ethnicity (496 cases and 600 controls) [203]. Similar to a meta-analysis with 6481 patients with colorectal cancer and 7935 controls, another study of 7210 patients and 9467 controls did not show any significant association in any genetic model between −174G>C (rs1800795) and colorectal cancer [204, 205]. However, in stratified analysis in a subgroup of patients with the history of current or habitual use of NSAIDs (3061 cases and 4024 controls), carriers of C allele in −174G>C (rs1800795) had significantly lower risk for colorectal cancer (Table 20.12) [204]. This study did not show any significant association between colorectal cancer and −572G>C (rs1800796) in 2574 cases and 3344 controls [204]. In line with this, two recent meta-analyses on gastric cancer patients did not confirm any effect of these two SNPs on susceptibility to cancer [210, 211]. Whereby according to a stratified random effect meta-analysis −174G>C (rs1800795) SNP was associated with increased risk of colorectal cancers in European population with 4164 cases and 5469 controls [207].

Table 20.12 Significant results from published meta-analysis of associations of −174G>C (rs1800795) in IL-6 gene with cancers

Cancer site	Number of cases	Number of controls	Analysis type	OR ± 95% CI	Population included	References
Colorectal cancer	3061	4024	GC + CC vs. GG	0.75 (0.64–0.88)	Individuals from Denmark, USA, and Spain who regularly or currently took NSAIDs	Yu et al. [204]
Skin cancer	1130	1260	GC vs. GG	1.28 (1.06–1.54)	Spain, UK, Czech Republic, Sweden, Bulgaria, Denmark, USA	Wu et al. [206]
			CC + GC vs. GG	1.26 (1.05–1.50)		
Melanoma	530	596	C vs. G	1.19 (1.01–1.41)	USA, UK, Spain, Bulgaria	Wu et al. [206]
Colorectal cancer	4164	5469	C vs. G	1.07 (1.01–1.14)	Europe	Wang and Zhang [207]
Liver cancer	587	850	C vs. G	0.74 (0.61–0.89)	Caucasian, Asian, Mixed	Tian et al. [208]
			CC vs. GC + GG	0.59 (0.36–0.95)		
			CC + CG vs. GG	0.67 (0.52–0.88)		
Breast cancer	378	432	CC + CG vs. GG	0.51 (0.37–0.70)	Ancestral North Indians	Joshi et al. [203]
Genitourinary cancers	496	600	CC vs. CG + GG	2.51 (1.59–3.96)	Ancestral North Indians	Joshi et al. [203]
Hepatocellular carcinoma	1448	3160	CC vs. GG	0.36 (0.16–0.85)	Italy, USA, Japan	Liu et al. [209]
			GG + GC vs. CC	2.82 (1.26–6.28)		

Table 20.13 Significant results from published meta-analysis of associations of −572G>C (rs1800796) in IL-6 gene with cancers

Cancer site	Number of cases	Number of controls	Analysis type	OR ± 95% CI	Population included	References
Cancer	9985	13,045	CG + GG vs. CC	1.33 (1.09–1.63)	China, Korea, USA, Singapore, Japan, Sweden	Du et al. [215]
			CG vs. CC	1.32 (1.08–1.62)		
Prostate cancer			GG vs. CG + CC	1.26 (1.02–1.57)	Sweden, USA, China	Du et al. [215]
Prostate cancer	11,613	13,992	C vs. G	0.735 (0.61–0.89)	Asian, African, Caucasian	Magalhães et al. [216]
			CC vs. GC + GG	0.54 (0.34–0.87)		
			CC + CG vs. GG	0.78 (0.63–0.97)		

In addition, two systematic reviews of 2949 and 2801 patients with lung cancer and 3375 and 3234 controls considering −174G>C (rs1800795) SNP and one study with 2691 cases and 3067 controls on −572G>C (rs1800796) did not show any significant association between these SNPs and lung cancer [173, 212, 213]. The −174G>C (rs1800795) polymorphism was also significantly associated with increased risk of skin cancer and specifically melanoma due to a seven-study based meta-analysis (1130 cases and 1260 controls) [206]. In contrast to an insignificant association with cancer risk in a meta-analysis with a sample size of 3387 cases and 4529 controls [214], another meta-analysis on 19 case–control studies (9985 cases and 13,045 controls) demonstrated a significant association between −572G>C (rs1800796) and risk of all-type cancer [215]. When stratified by cancer type and ethnicity, the association remained significant for prostate cancer and Asians, respectively. Moreover, another systematic review supported the significant association of allele C in −572G>C SNP and prostate cancer within 11 vs. 992 controls [216].

Additionally, systematic reviews conducted on the association of IL-6 SNPs and risk of HCC reported a significant negative association between SNP rs1800795 and HCC, but there was no significant association with −572G>C (rs1800796) polymorphism [209]. A rather individual meta-analysis considering the Mendelian randomization analysis reported an association of decreased level of IL-6 due to −174G>C SNP and decreased risk of liver cancer, wherein for 1 pg/Ml reduction in IL-6 level, the risk of liver cancer is reduced by 12% [208] (Table 20.13).

20.7.5 Interleukin-8

IL-8, a member of human α-chemokine subfamily, has a major influence on tumor invasion and metastasis by its stimulatory properties on angiogenesis and inflammation [25, 28, 63, 217, 218]. A gene located on chromosome 4q13–q21 with four exons is responsible for encoding this cytokine [217]. Fifteen functional SNPs have been identified within this gene including –251A>T (rs4073), +396T>G (rs2227307), and +781C>T (rs2227306) (Table 20.14) [28]. –251A>T (rs4073), located in the promoter region, was identified in 2000. Although there was little evidence on the functionality of this SNP in vitro, several in vivo studies showed higher levels of IL-8 in carriers of A allele [25]. On the contrary, one study showed higher transcription for T allele in gastric carcinoma cell line [155, 219]. EMSA studies showed that T allele in +781C>T allele (rs2227306) is associated with higher binding ability for a transcription factor (C/EBPb) [25]. Several studies showed associations of –251A>T (rs4073) with lung, gastric, colorectal, bladder, and prostate cancer in different populations (Table 20.15) [186].

A meta-analysis of 13,189 patients with lung, prostate, breast, colorectal, and nasopharyngeal cancers and 16,828 controls showed that carriers of A allele in –251A>T (rs4073)

Table 20.14 Genotype details for SNPs of IL-8

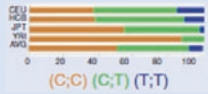
SNP	GMAF [161]	Population diversity [162]	Change at DNA level	Change at protein level	Effect on cytokine level
rs4073	*T* = 0.497	UA	–251A/T	NA	A allele: ↑
rs2227306	*T* = 0.294		+781C/T	NA	T allele: ↑
rs2227307	*G* = 0.422	UA	+396 T/G	NA	UA

Table 20.15 Significant results from published meta-analysis of associations of −251T/A (rs4073) in IL-8 gene with cancers

Cancer site	Number of cases	Number of controls	Analysis type	OR ± 95% CI	Population included	References
Malignancy	13,189	16,828	AA vs. TT	1.21 (1.08–1.36)	Tunisia, Iran, Denmark, UK, Croatia, Germany, USA, Greece, China, Japan, Portugal, Spain, Mexico, Finland, France, Norway, Poland, Korea, India, Netherlands	Wang et al. [155]
			AA + TA vs. TT	1.12 (1.03–1.23)		
	5633	8240	AA + TA vs. TT	0.90 (0.83–0.97)	Population-based studies	Gao et al. [219]
	12,917	17,689	A vs. T	1.07 (1.00–1.15)	Taiwan, Thailand, China, Japan, Korea, Tunisia, USA, UK, Iran, Denmark, Greece, Croatia, Spain, Sweden, Finland, Poland, Brazil, Mexico, Portugal	Wang et al. [220]
			AA vs. TT	1.15 (1.01–1.30)		
			AA vs. AT + TT	1.08 (1.02–1.14)		
Gastric cancer	3036	3082	AA vs. TT	1.48 (1.13–1.95)	Asia	Wang et al. [155]
			TA vs. TT	1.20 (1.04–1.40)		
			AA + TA vs. TT	1.27 (1.08–1.48)		
	4274	6498	AA vs. TT	1.28 (1.02–1.62)	Japan, Iran, China, Korea, Finland, Spain, Mexico, Poland	Wang et al. [155]
			AA + TA vs. TT	1.17 (1.01–1.36)		
Nasopharyngeal cancer	440	459	AA vs. TT	2.04 (1.38–2.99)	Tunisia, China	Wang et al. [155]
			TA vs. TT	1.59 (1.19–2.13)		
			AA + TA vs. TT	1.70 (1.30–2.24)		
	545	568	AA + TA vs. TT	1.48 (1.16–1.89)	Tunisia, China	Gao et al. [219]
	1293	652	AT vs. TT	1.33 (1.05–1.67)	Tunisia, China, Romania, Poland, Russia, Slovakia, Czech Republic	Wang et al. [220]
			AA + AT vs. TT	1.41 (1.13–1.75)		
			AA vs. AT + TT	1.40 (1.08–1.81)		
Oral cancer	1324	1879	AA vs. AA + TA	1.23 (1.03–1.46)	China, Taiwan, Thailand, Greece, Japan, France	Wang et al. [221]
			AT vs. TT	1.25 (1.07–1.47)		

Table 20.15 (continued)

Cancer site	Number of cases	Number of controls	Analysis type	OR ± 95% CI	Population included	References
Breast cancer	683	880	TA vs. AA	1.44 (1.09–1.91)	Iran, China	Huang et al. [222]
			AA vs. AA + TA	1.435 (1.11–1.86)		
	717	537	TA vs. AA	0.54 (0.40–0.74)	Tunisia	Huang et al. [222]
			AA vs. AA + TA	0.74 (0.57–0.95)		
	1262	1419	TT vs. AA + TA	0.69 (0.57–0.86)	Tunisia, China, UK	Huang et al. [222]
Lung cancer	309	312	A vs. T	1.48 (1.04–2.11)	China, India	Gao et al. [223], Wang et al. [224]
			AA vs. AT + TT	1.35 (1.02–1.92)		

were more susceptible to different cancers [155]. Another study reviewed results of 45 studies including 14,876 cases and 18,465 controls and showed such an association only among hospital-based studies and surprisingly showed significantly decreased risk of cancers for AA genotype among population-based studies [219].

Additionally, a systematic review of 12,917 cancer patients and 17,689 controls reported significant association between −251A>T (rs4073) and cancer in overall population. When analyzed in stratas, it was significantly associated with breast cancer, nasopharyngeal cancer, Asians, and hospital-based studies [220]. It should be noted that hospital-based studies have an increased chance of a selection bias since hospital-based controls might have disease conditions under the influence of the studied polymorphism [217].

Another systematic review of ten papers including 2195 gastric cancer patients and 3505 controls confirmed that AA genotype was a risk factor for gastric cancer in whole population and in Asian population. In stratified analysis for tumor location and histology, this association remained significant only in the cardia gastric cancer and diffused type [63]. A meta-analysis evaluating papers on gastric cancer published from January 2000 to January 2011 (18 papers including 6554 controls and 4163 cases) also found such an association in Asians but not in Caucasians. However, unlike the previous study, when stratifying for pathology types, the association remained significant only in intestinal-type cancer but not in the diffused type [225].

Although a systematic review of 1324 patients with oral cancer and 1879 controls reported in six studies (published till October 2012) showed higher risks of oral cancer in carriers of A allele in –251A>T (rs4073) [221], another systematic review with six studies did not support this association [226]. In subgroup analysis for ethnicity, there were only significant associations among Caucasians but not in Asians [221].

Meta-analyses on six case–control studies have also indicated significant association of −251T>A (rs4073) with lung cancer development in Asian population, but not among all populations [223, 224].

On the contrary, T allele in this SNP was associated with an increased risk of breast cancer in Asian and African populations. However, this study showed no significant associations between this SNP and breast cancer in 1880 breast cancer patients and 2013 controls [222]. There were no any significant associations between this SNP and colorectal cancer in a meta-analysis of nine case–control studies with 3019 cases and 3984 controls [227].

20.7.6 Interleukin-10

IL-10 is a pleiotropic, immunoregulatory cytokine which can affect both the innate and adaptive immune systems [228]. IL-10 has pleiotropic effects on tumor immunology. It plays an antiinflammatory role by inhibiting production of proinflammatory mediators such as IL-1α, IL-1β, IL-6, IL-8, IL-12, TNF-α, and IFN-γ [25, 67]; in addition, IL-10 inhibits presentation of tumor Ags by suppressing the expression of HLA molecules [154, 157]. On the other hand, IL-10 induces proliferation in B-cells and T-cells and regulates angiogenesis in various cancers [28, 229].

Twin studies demonstrated that IL-10 levels are significantly influenced by genetic factors with a heritability of 74% [25, 230]. IL-10 is encoded by five exons of a gene located on 1q31–1q32. At least 40 SNPs have been identified in this gene [66, 67, 231]. Several common variants including −1082 A>G (rs1800896), −819 C>T (rs1800871), and −592 A>C (also called −571 rs1800872) have been identified within the promoter region of this gene (Table 20.16) [229].

In vivo studies showed higher levels of IL-10 in individuals with GCC haplotype of these three SNPs, while ATA haplotype was associated with the lowest levels of IL-10 [25, 157]. It is suggested that −1082A>G (rs1800896) is the most functional SNP of these three variants and G allele in this SNP results in higher IL-10 levels [25]. EMSA studies showed different affinities of alleles of this SNP for a nuclear protein identified as poly ADP-ribose polymerase1 (PARP-1) which acts as a transcription repressor [25, 66]. So far, several studies have evaluated the associations of different IL-10 polymorphisms with various cancers including lung cancer, breast cancer, cervical cancer, gastric cancer, melanoma and nasopharyngeal cancer, and prostate cancer [66, 67]. A systematic review evaluated the association of −1082A>G (rs1800896) with risk of malignancy by reviewing results of 61 articles (published up to September 2010) with a total of 14,499 cancer patients and 16,967 controls. This study found no significant association between alleles of this SNP and overall susceptibility to cancers. However, carriers of G allele in Asian population had significantly more susceptibility to various cancers. In stratified analysis for cancer types, there was increased risk of lung cancer and NHL in carriers of G allele (Table 20.17) [66].

Table 20.16 Genotype details for SNPs of IL-10

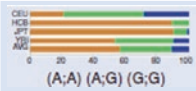
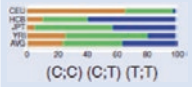
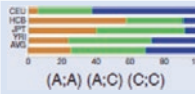
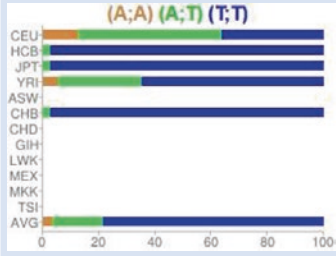
SNP	GMAF [161]	Population diversity [162]	Change at DNA level	Change at protein level	Effect on cytokine level
rs1800896	*G* = 0.303		−1082A>G	NA	G allele: ↑
rs1800871	*T* = 0.409		−819C>T	NA	UA
rs1800872	*C* = 0.409		−592A>C	NA	UA
rs1800890	*A* = 0.2259		−3575T>A	NA	A allele: ↑

Table 20.17 Significant results from published meta-analysis of associations of polymorphisms of IL-10 gene with cancers

Alleles	Cancer site	Number of cases	Number of controls	Analysis type	OR ± 95% CI	Population included	References
rs1800872	All-type	16,785	19,713	AA vs. CC	0.90 (0.83–0.98)	UK, Spain, Korea, USA, China, Taiwan, Turkey, France, Costa Rica, Australia, Scotland, Poland, Italy, Netherland, Germany, Finland, Mexico, Japan, Sweden, Denmark, Croatia, Norway	Ding et al. [232]
				AA vs. AC + CC	0.92 (0.86–0.98)		
	HCC	354	1683	CC vs. AA + AC	1.68 (1.25–2.26)	Taiwan, Korea, China, Japan	Wei et al. [67]
				C vs. A	1.29 (1.12–1.49)		
	Cervical cancer	2396	1388	A vs. C	1.16 (1.04–1.31)	Korea, Netherlands, Sweden, India, China	Ni et al. [233]
				AA + AC vs. CC	1.18 (1.01–1.39)		
	Gastric cancer	1526	2538	AA vs. CC + AC	0.81 (0.68–0.97)	(Asians) China, Korea, Japan	Xue et al. [225]
	Lung cancer	601	1008	CC + AC vs. AA	1.8 (1.28–2.54)	Chinese, Denmark, Germany	Xue et al. [225]
				CC vs. AA	2 (1.24–3.23)		
	DLBCL	719	1539	AA vs. CC + AC	0.63 (0.43–0.94)	USA, France	Cao et al. [234]
				AA vs. CC	0.64 (0.43–0.96)		
rs1800871	Gastric cancer	989	2350	TT vs. CT + CC	0.82 (0.7–0.96)	(Asians) China, Korea, Japan	Xue et al. [235]
		1960	3705	T vs. C	0.87 (0.77–0.97)	East Asian, Latinos, Caucasian	Cui et al. [236]
		1459	1770	T vs. C	0.85 (0.73–0.98)	East Asian	Cui et al. [236]
	Lung cancer	311	507	C vs. T	1.27 (1.01–1.58)	China, Denmark, Germany	Peng et al. [173]
				CC vs. TT	2.27 (1.32–3.89)		
	Head and neck cancers	1676	2230	C vs. T	1.15 (1.04–1.21)	Italy, China	Niu et al. [237]
				CC vs. TT	1.28 (1.03–1.59)		

Table 20.17 (continued)

Alleles	Cancer site	Number of cases	Number of controls	Analysis type	OR ± 95% CI	Population included	References
rs1800896	Gastric cancer	4289	5965	A vs. G	0.489 (0.335–0.713)	China, USA, Italy, Korea, Costa Rica, Honduras, Finland, Japan, Spain	Pan et al. [229]
		3631	6431	GG + GA vs. AA	1.41 (1.13–1.76)	China, USA, Italy, Korea, Costa Rica, Honduras, Finland, Japan, Spain, mixed European	Ni et al. [238]
	Head and neck cancers	2258	2887	G vs. A	1.56 (1.27–1.92)		Niu et al. [237]
				AG vs. AA	1.64 (1.32–2.05)		
				GG vs. AA	2.24 (1.69–2.97)		
				GG + GA vs. AA	1.7 (1.36–2.14)		
				GG vs. AG + AA	1.89 (1.23–2.9)		
	Nasopharyngeal carcinoma	623	1018	GG + GA vs. AA	1.77 (1.39–2.26)	Italy, China, Tunisia	Yu et al. [239]
				G vs. A	1.53 (1.06–2.20)		
				AG vs. AA	1.75 (1.38–2.21)		
	Oral cancer	1357	1509	G vs. A	1.76 (1.36–2.27)	China, Greece, Germany	Niu et al. [237]
				AG vs. AA	1.71 (1.15–2.54)		
				GG vs. AA	3.13 (2.06–4.77)		
				GG + GA vs. AA	1.83 (1.26–2.66)		
				GG vs. AG + AA	2.69 (1.77–4.09)		
	Lung cancer	315	507	GA vs. AA	3.16 (1.16–8.63)	Taiwan, Germany, Turkey	Peng et al. [173]
				GG vs. AA	2.07 (1.16–3.70)		
				GG + GA vs. AA	3.17 (1.31–7.68)		
	NHL	2338	1999	GA vs. AA	1.18 (1.02–1.36)	Australia, Maryland, Sweden, France, Athens, Germany	Wang et al. [66]
				GG + GA vs. AA	1.17 (1.02–1.35)		
	DLBCL	1191	1610	GG + GA vs. AA	1.30 (1.08–1.57)	Australia, France, Sweden, Germany, USA	Cao et al. [234]
				GA vs. AA	1.32 (1.08–1.61)		
	FL	10,226	12,215	G vs. A	1.12 (1.04–1.21)	Australia, France, Sweden, USA, Germany, Italy, Greece, Asia, Poland, Norway	Zhang et al. [240]
				GG vs. AG + AA	1.20 (1.06–1.37)		
				GG vs. AA	1.24 (1.06–1.45)		
	Malignancy	1733	2003	GA vs. AA	1.80 (1.17–2.76)	(Asian) China, Taiwan, Kentucky, Korea, Japan	Wang et al. [66]
				GG vs. AA	3.32 (1.62–6.82)		
				GG + GA vs. AA	1.67 (1.07–2.60)		
				GG vs. AA + GA	2.93 (1.43–6.03)		

rs1800890	Melanoma	377	371	AA + AT vs. TT	0.70 (0.52–0.95)	Germany, USA	Dai et al. [241]
				TA vs. TT	0.67 (0.49–0.92)		
	NHL	10,703	11,823	AA vs. TA + TT	1.13 (1.04–1.23)	USA, Germany, Norway, Poland, Denmark, Sweden, Asia, Australia	Zhang et al. [240]
	DLBCL	10,703	11,823	AA vs. TT	1.34 (1.19–1.52)	USA, Germany, Norway, Poland, Denmark, Sweden, Asia, Australia	Zhang et al. [240]
				AT vs. TT	1.12 (1.03–1.22)		
				AA vs. TA + TT	1.26 (1.13–1.41)		
				AA + AT vs. TT	1.17 (1.08–1.27)		
				A vs. T	1.15 (1.09–1.22)		
		9048	7773	AA vs. TT	1.29 (1.13–1.47)	USA, Germany, Sweden	Dai et al. [241]
				AA vs. TA + TT	1.21 (1.07–1.36)		
				AA vs. TA + TT	1.16 (1.06–1.28)		
				TA vs. TT	1.13 (1.02–1.24)		
		4020	13,316	A vs. T	1.16 (1.08–1.25)	Canada, Italy, Spain, UK	Cao et al. [234]
				AA + AT vs. TT	1.20 (1.08–1.33)		
				AA vs. TA + TT	1.25 (1.09–1.44)		
				AA vs. TT	1.34 (1.15–1.56)		
				AT vs. TT	1.15 (1.03–1.28)		
	FL	10,703	11,823	AA vs. TT	1.26 (1.08–1.46)	USA, Germany, Norway, Poland, Denmark, Sweden, Asia, Australia	Zhang et al. [240]
				AA vs. TA + TT	1.20 (1.04–1.37)		
				AA vs. TA + TT	1.15 (1.04–1.27)		
				A vs. T	1.13 (1.05–1.21)		

A HuGE review on 15,942 cancer patients and 22,336 controls found no significant relation between −819C>T and cancer development. Within subgroups, only a moderate decreased risk was reported in Asian population [242]. The first systematic review of gastric cancer studies showed significant association between −1082A>G (rs1800896) and gastric cancer not in overall population but only when the analysis was limited to the Asian populations [243]. This finding was supported by another review of studies regarding −1082A>G in digestive cancer patients [244]. However, another systematic review of 22 studies with 4289 patients and 5965 controls evaluated the association of −1082A>G (rs1800896) with susceptibility to gastric cancer. This meta-analysis showed that carriers of G allele have significantly increased the risk for gastric cancer especially in Caucasian populations [229]. Another meta-analysis with 3631 patients and 6431 controls showed similar results; nonetheless, results remained significant in Asian population but not in Caucasians. This study, in stratified analysis, showed that this association is significant in cardiac subtype and intestinal-type but not in noncardia subtype or diffuse-type cancer [238]. Moreover, a meta-analysis on 623 patients and 1018 controls showed that risk of nasopharyngeal carcinoma has a significant association with rs1800896 but not with the other two polymorphisms [239].

A large sample meta-analysis on multiple center studies showed a significant association of −592C>A with decreased risk of cancer development. When analyzed among subgroups, this negative association remained in smoking-related cancers, Asian population, and hospital-based studies [232].

Regarding −819C>T (rs1800871), a systematic review based on 11 studies and 4008 controls and 1490 cases showed significantly increased risk for carriers of C allele among Asians but not Caucasians. Such increased risk was also noted for diffuse-subtype cancer but not for intestinal-subtype [235]. Another meta-analysis supported the protective role of rs1800871 T allele in gastric cancer, especially in adenocarcinoma, Asian population, and population-based studies [236].

A systematic review of studies on −592A>C (rs1800872) found significantly increased risk of gastric cancer in carriers of C allele only in Asian populations but not in Caucasians and Latinos. In stratified analysis for noncardia and cardia subtypes or intestinal, diffuse, or mixed subtypes, no significant association was found [225]. The association of −592C>A with gastric cancer in Asian population was also confirmed in another study [245].

A meta-analysis of seven articles published on association of −1082A>G (rs1800896) and HCC with 1012 HCC cases and 2308 controls showed no association between this SNP and susceptibility to HCC. The same systematic review based on the results of four studies showed carriers of C allele in −592A>C (rs1800872) had an increased risk of HCC. This study also showed no significant association between −819C>T (rs1800871) and HCC based on results of three studies [67].

A meta-analysis reviewed the results of 13 studies with 9692 patients with prostate cancer and 10,488 healthy individuals as controls. However, this review did not show any significant association for the three SNPs which was in accordance with the results of an older review on the basis of ten studies [231, 246]. Another review which analyzed results of eight studies with 1636 breast cancer patients and 1670 controls did not show any altered risk of breast cancer for different alleles of −1082A>G (rs1800896). This review also showed no significant associations between −592A>C (rs1800872) and breast cancer in any genetic model [247].

In addition to its regulating effects on the immune system, IL-10 can induce transcription of one of the promoters of HPV [233]. Therefore, polymorphisms of this cytokine were under focus of researchers in the field of cervical cancer. However, no significant association was found between −1082G>A (rs1800896) and susceptibility to cervical cancer in two meta-analysis studies [248]. Also significantly increased susceptibility to cervical cancer was detected in carriers of A allele in −592A>C (rs1800872) [233].

A comprehensive systematic review on head and neck cancers with 2258 patients and 2887 controls revealed significant association of

−1082A>G with oral, nasopharyngeal, and head and neck cancers in general and in Asian and Caucasian race subgroups [237]. The same study did not find any significant relation with −592A>C but it showed significant association of head and neck cancers with −819C>T polymorphism [237].

Systematic review of 10,703 NHL patients and 11,823 controls indicated a significant association of −3575T>A polymorphism with NHL and likewise with DLBCL, FL, Caucasians, and hospital-based studies [240]. Association of −1082A>G with FL was also reported in this study, regardless of ethnicity [240]. Another meta-analysis on different cancer patients showed significant association of −3575T>A with reduced risk of melanoma and increased risk of DLBCL [241]. In line with that, a meta-analysis reported significant association of −3575T>A, −1082A>G, and −592C>A with the risk of DLBCL, while no association was detected for −819C>T [234].

20.7.7 Interleukin-12

Interleukin-12 (IL-12) is a proinflammatory cytokine with several functions including differentiation of Th1 pathway, the critical pathway involved in protection against malignancy [25]. It can also induce IFN-γ production by T and NK cells and therefore suppress angiogenesis. In addition, IL-12 has a major role in the reactivation and survival of memory $CD4^+$ T-cells which results in repolarization of $CD4^+$ T-cells from dysfunctional antitumor Th2 into Th1 cells [249, 250].

IL-12 is composed of two parts, a p35 unit which is encoded by *IL-12a* on 3q25.33 and a p40 unit encoded by *IL12b* on 5q33.3 [25]. One common variant in IL-12b gene, including +1188A>C (rs3212227) in 3′ UTR, and three common variants of IL-12a including +277G>A (rs568408) in 3′ UTR, IVS2 T>A (798T>A; rs582054), and −564T>G (rs2243115) in 5′UTR have been extensively studied previously (Table 20.18) [251]. In vitro and in vivo studies showed that A allele in +1188A>C (rs3212227) was associated with higher expression and greater mRNA stability [25, 252]. It is suggested that +277G>A (rs568408) may disrupt exon-splicing enhancers and miRNAs binding and therefore results in an unstable IL-12 mRNA and lower IL-12 secretion [253].

One meta-analysis of ten studies involving 2954 cancer patients and 3276 controls showed significant associations between +1188A>C (rs3212227) and susceptibility to cancer (Table 20.19). In addition, by stratified analysis for cancer type, this study showed significantly increased susceptibility to cervical cancer and nasopharyngeal cancer in C allele carriers [252].

A meta-analysis of 18 studies evaluated the associations of polymorphisms of both *IL-12* genes and cancer susceptibility. This study reviewed results of 13 studies on +1188A>C (rs3212227), including nine studies in Asians,

Table 20.18 Genotype details for SNPs of IL-12

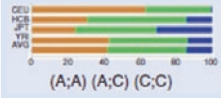
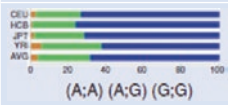
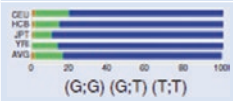
SNP	GMAF [161]	Population diversity [162]	Change at DNA level	Change at protein level	Effect on cytokine level
rs3212227	*C* = 0.338		+1188A>C	NA	A allele: ↑
rs568408	*A* = 0.128		+277G>A	NA	G allele: ↑
rs582054	*A* = 0.489	UA	+798T>A	NA	UA
rs2243115	*G* = 0.107		−564T>G	NA	UA

Table 20.19 Significant results from published meta-analysis of associations of 1188A>C (rs3212227) in IL-12b with cancers

Cancer site	Number of cases	Number of controls	Analysis type	OR ± 95% CI	Population included	References
Malignancy	2954	3276	CC + AC vs. AA	1.32 (1.06–1.63)	UK, Bulgaria, China, France	Chen et al. [252]
			AC vs. AA	1.30 (1.07–1.57)		
			CC vs. AA	1.39 (1.05–1.86)		
			CC vs. AC + AA	1.17 (1.02–1.33)		
	10,404	10,861	C vs. A	1.14 (1.02–1.27)	UK, USA, Italy, China, Russia, Korea, Bulgaria, Tunisia	Zhou et al. [251]
			AC + CC vs. AA	1.20 (1.01–1.15)		

three studies in Caucasians, and one in Africans, and showed increased risk of all cancers in C allele carriers. This association remained significant in Asian population but not in Caucasians [251]. This study like the previous one showed increased susceptibility to cervical and nasopharyngeal cancer in carriers of C allele. However, no significant association was found between cancer susceptibility and +277G>A (rs568408). Also, there was no significant association for +564T>G (rs2243115) and IVS2 T>A (rs582054) of IL-12a [251].

20.7.8 Tumor Necrosis Factor-α and Lymphotoxin-α

Tumor necrosis factor-α (TNF-α), by its triggering effect on the cytokine cascade of IL-1, IL-6 and other mediators, is one of the most important proinflammatory cytokines in the maintenance and homeostasis of the immune system, inflammation, and host defense [254]. TNF-α has both procarcinogenic and anticarcinogenic properties, and its importance in cancer is evidenced by previous studies which repeatedly reported high levels of TNF-α in cancer patients [255–257]. Some tumor cells can even produce TNF-α in an autocrine manner [154]. Consistent with its name, high levels of TNF-α result in tumor necrosis, but low levels of this cytokine impair antitumor immune response and induce tumor angiogenesis and therefore is associated with increased tumor growth, progression, invasion, and metastasis of tumor cells [255–258]. In addition, TNF-α levels can influence weight loss cachexia, and anemia in the host and also its response to treatment [259].

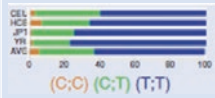
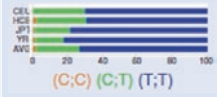
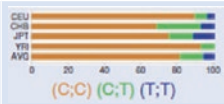
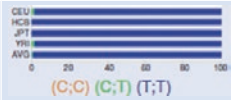
Lymphotoxin-α (LTA), another cytokine of the TNF family, is similar to TNF-α with respect to amino acid sequence, receptors, and biologic activities [255–258].

TNF-α is encoded by a gene located on chromosome 6 (region p21.3) and is a member of HLA class III. −308G>A (rs1800629) and −238G>A (rs361525) are two common promoter variants of *TNF-α* gene [25]. Other variants include −1031C>T (rs1799964), −863C>A (rs1800630), −857C>T (rs1799724), −376G>A (rs1800750), and IVS1 + 123G>A (rs1800610) (Table 20.20) [25]. The *LTA* gene is located in the same region and has an *Nco*I restriction fragment length polymorphism (+252A>G) in its first intron (rs909253).

A allele of −308G>A (rs1800629) is associated with higher levels of TNF-α [260]. While several in vitro studies did not show any functionality for this SNP, some authors suggested that this allele had more affinity for a transcriptional activator and another study showed that A allele disrupts a 10-bp binding region for activator protein-2 (AP-2) (a repressor protein) [25, 259]. Of interest, −308G>A (rs1800629) is in high LD with +252G>A, a functional SNP in *lymphotoxin alpha* gene, and other *HLA* genes within ancestral haplotype, *HLA A1-B8-DR3-DQ2-TNF_308A-LT_252A* [259, 261, 262].

An allele of −238G>A (rs361525) was associated with lower levels of TNF-α in peripheral blood mononuclear cells carrying TNF-α −238A allele [255]. However, several in vitro studies did

Table 20.20 Genotype details for SNPs of TNF-α and lymphotoxin-α

SNP	GMAF [161]	Population diversity [162]	Change at DNA level	Change at protein level	Effect on cytokine level
rs1800629	*A* = 0.096		−308G>A	NA	A allele: ↑
rs361525	*A* = 0.051	UA	−238G>A	NA	G allele: ↑
rs1799964	*C* = 0.200		−1031C>T	NA	C allele: ↑
rs1800630	*A* = 0.145		−863C>A	NA	A allele: ↑
rs1799724	*T* = 0.097		−857C>T	NA	T allele: ↑
rs1800610	*A* = 0.102	UA	IVS1 + 123G>A	NA	UA
rs1800750	*A* = 0.013		−376G>A	NA	A allele: ↑
rs909253	*C* = 0.398		+252 A>G	NA	G allele: ↑

not provide any evidence on the functionality of this SNP [25].

A Japanese in vitro study showed that C allele in rs1799964 is associated with higher production of TNF-α by concanavalin A (Con A)-activated peripheral blood mononuclear cells [263]. Reporter assays showed increased promoter activity for A allele of −376G>A (rs1800750), and EMSA studies showed more affinity of this allele for Oct-1 transcription factor compared to other allele [22, 25]. In vivo studies showed that individuals carrying at least one allele out of three (−1031C, −863A, −857T) had higher TNF-α production and higher transcriptional activity [22, 264]. In the same line, minor alleles of −863C>A (rs1800630) and −857C>T (rs1799724) were associated with higher promoter activity and more affinity for Oct-1 transcription factor [22, 25, 264]. On the contrary, one study showed that −863A allele had less affinity for NF-κB [22, 25, 265].

In vitro studies showed that phytohemagglutinin-activated mononuclear cells having +252G allele (rs909253) produce more LTA and interestingly TNF-α [266, 267].

Previously, several associations have been reported between TNF-α polymorphisms and susceptibility to NHL, gastric carcinoma, breast cancers, prostate, uterine endometrium, lung, cervix, and nasopharynx. However, a meta-analysis reviewed 34 studies (published up to March 2011) including 34,679 cancer patients and 41,186 controls and found no significant association between −238G>A (rs361525) polymorphism and susceptibility to cancer [268]. In line with this, a meta-analysis of 30,000 breast cancer cases and 30,000 controls from 30 studies of the breast cancer association consortium could not find any significant association between −238G>A (rs361525) and susceptibility to breast cancer [269].

Although no significant association was found between −308G>A and breast cancer and its subtypes, −308G>A was reported to be significantly associated with distant metastasis of triple negative breast cancers [270]. Similarly, a

meta-analysis on 12,360 cases and 15,310 controls revealed no significant association of −308G>A with breast cancer [271]. However, in stratified analysis, −308G>A was a protective factor in postmenopausal women while a risk factor in premenopausal women [271]. A review of 18 studies with 11,320 breast cancer patients and 14,112 controls found a significant relationship between −308G>A (rs1800629) polymorphism and breast cancer only in Caucasian population (Table 20.21) [254]. In addition, after excluding hospital-based studies a significant decreased risk in carriers of A allele was found. This study also reviewed 33,112 patients and 35,814 (reported in 35 studies) and found no significant association for −238G>A (rs361525). This study also did not find any significant association between breast cancer and −863C>A (rs1800630) and −857C>T (rs1799724), −1031 C>T (rs1799964) polymorphisms, which may be due to the fact that the overall sample analyzed for these polymorphisms was very small [254]. Consistent with the previous study, a meta-analysis of 11 studies on 10,184 patients with breast cancer and 12,911 controls found that G allele in −308G>A (rs1800629) is associated with significantly increased risk of breast cancer [258]. Another meta-analysis evaluated 10,236 breast cancer cases and 13,143 controls presented in 13 studies [293]. This study could confirm such a decreased breast cancer risk in carriers of −308A allele only in Caucasians [293]. However, no significant association between breast cancer susceptibility and other polymorphisms of TNF-α was found [293]. In accordance with previous studies, a recent systematic review on 37,257 patients and 39,564 controls supported the lack of association between rs361525 and breast cancer development [294]. A meta-analysis of 4625 breast cancer patients and 4373 controls for LTA −252A>G (results from seven studies published up to January 2012) did not find any significant association between genotypes of this polymorphism and breast cancer. However, in stratified analysis for ethnicity, carriers of G allele had significantly increased risk of breast cancer in Asian population [295].

A systematic review of 11 studies with 3094 cervical cancer cases and 3037 controls found that carriers of AA genotype for −308G>A (rs1800629) had 39% increased risk of cervical cancer compared with −308GA/GG genotypes [257]. In addition, in stratified analysis, such an association remained significant in Asian population [257]. This meta-analysis by its review on 1190 cases and 1784 controls showed decreased risk of cervical cancer in carriers of A allele in −238G>A (rs361525) [257]. In a similar way, significant association was detected between allelic model of −308G>A and −238G>A with cervical cancer in overall population and specifically in Caucasians [272]. In a meta-analysis of 13 studies reported up to October 2011 which involved 3294 cervical cancer patients and 3468 controls, no association was found between −308G>A (rs1800629) and cervical cancer [251]. However, in Caucasian and African population, significantly increased risk of cervical cancer was observed in carriers of A allele in this SNP. This study also meta-analyzed results of six studies on −238G>A (rs361525) (2416 cases and 2010 controls) and found that carriers of −238A allele had lower risk of cervical cancer which remained significant in Caucasian populations [251]. A recent meta-analysis reviewed results of 12 case–control studies including 1751 cases with upper aerodigestive tract (UADT) cancer and 3345 controls [280]. Oropharynx cancer was investigated in six of these studies, while five studies investigated esophagus cancer and one investigated larynx cancer. Squamous cell carcinoma and adenocarcinoma were investigated in nine and two studies, respectively, and one study investigated both cancer types. This study overall found a significant increase in risk of UADT cancer in carriers of AA genotype in −308G>A (rs1800629) compared to individuals who had GA or GG genotypes [280]. In addition, significantly increased risks were found in oropharynx cancer but not in esophagus cancer or larynx cancer. In the subgroup analysis for histologic type, this association remained significant only for squamous cell carcinoma, but not for adenocarcinoma [280]. Another meta-analysis with a sample size of 5617 reported no significant association

Table 20.21 Significant results from published meta-analysis of associations of polymorphisms of TNF-α with cancers

Alleles	Cancer site	Number of cases	Number of controls	Analysis type	OR ± 95% CI	Population included	References
rs1800629	Cervical cancer	2710	2877	AA vs. GG	2.09 (1.34–3.25)	(Caucasian) India, USA, Portugal, Costa Rica, Sweden	Zhou et al. [251]
				AA vs. GA + GG	2.09 (1.35–3.25)		
		3094	3037	AA vs. GG	1.41 (1.03–1.92)	Sweden, India, Costa Rica, South Africa, Mexico, Portugal, Zimbabwe, USA, South Korea	Liu et al. [257]
				AA vs. GA + GG	1.39 (1.02–1.90)		
		3769	3914	A vs. G	1.19 (1.02, 1.38)	USA, India, Sweden, Costa Rica, Argentina, Portugal, Korea, China, Zimbabwe, South Africa	Jin [272]
				AA + GA vs. GG	1.17 (1.00–1.38)		
	Breast cancer	10,184	12,911	G vs. A	1.08 (1.02–1.14)	Italy, Tunisia, UK, Iran, USA, Poland, Croatia, Russia, Germany	Fang et al. [258]
				AA vs. GA + GG	1.10 (1.04–1.17)		
		10,254	12,926	AA + AG vs. GG	0.91 (0.85–0.97)	(Caucasians) Italy, USA, Poland, UK, Russian, Croatia, Germany	Yang et al. [254]
	HCC	2357	3161	AA vs. GG	1.97 (1.01–3.83)	USA, Turkey, China, Japan, Thailand, Italy	Wei et al. [265]
				AG vs. GG	1.88 (1.23–2.88)		
				AA + AG vs. GG	1.80 (1.19–2.72)		
		1665	2177	AA + AG vs. GG	1.74 (1.12–2.72)	Israel, Turkey, China, Italy, Thailand, USA, Japan	Yang et al. [180]
		1385 (HBV-related)	3079	AA + AG vs. GG	1.38 (1.05–1.82)	Japan, India, China, USA, Tunisia, Thailand, Italy, Korea	Xiao et al. [273]
		2070	2468	AA + AG vs. GG	1.74 (1.20–2.54)	Turkey, USA, China, Thailand, Japan, Italy	Guo et al. [274]
				GA vs. GG	1.58 (1.05–2.39)		
	Gastric cancer	4399	6855	AA vs. GG	1.49 (1.11–1.99)	South Korea, Taiwan, USA, Portugal, Colombia, China, Germany, Japan, Mexico, Brazil, Italy, Honduras, Poland, Finland, Spain	Gorouhi et al. [275]
				GA vs. GG	1.14 (1.02–1.27)		
		7009	12,119	AA + GA vs. GG	1.20 (1.07–1.34)	Korea, Taiwan, USA, Portugal, China, Germany, Mexico, Italy, Brazil, Finland, Honduras, Spain, Poland, Japan, Australia, Romania, Europe	Yang et al. [276]

(continued)

Table 20.21 (continued)

Alleles	Cancer site	Number of cases	Number of controls	Analysis type	OR ± 95% CI	Population included	References
				A vs. G	1.18 (1.07–1.30)		
				AA vs. GG	1.29 (1.07–1.56)		
				AA vs. GG + GA	1.20 (1.00–1.45)		
		3335	5286	A vs. G	1.23 (1.11, 1.36)	USA, Spain, Korea, China, Finland, Germany, Mexico, Portugal, Honduras, Italy, Brazil, Japan	Zhang et al. [277]
				AA vs. GG	1.78 (1.28, 2.48)		
				AA vs. GG + GA	1.65 (1.21, 2.25)		
				AA + GA vs. GG	1.21 (1.08, 1.36)		
		2626	4801	A vs. G	1.32 (1.12–1.56)	Portugal, Romania, USA, Poland, Finland, Netherland, Italy, UK, Spain	Zhu et al. [278]
				AA vs. GG	1.76 (1.37–2.26)		
				AA vs. GG + GA	1.62 (1.27–2.07)		
				AA + GA vs. GG	1.35 (1.14–1.60)		
		3898	8885	AA + GA vs. GG	1.23 (1.12–1.34)	Romania, Portugal, Spain, USA, South Korea, China, Mexico, Germany, Honduras, Poland, Finland, Brazil, Colombia, Italy, Japan	Guo et al. [274]
	Colorectal cancer	2837	3601	AA vs. GG	1.46 (1.07–1.97)	Western countries	Min et al. [279]
				GA vs. GG	1.05 (0.93–1.19)		
	UADT cancer	1751	3345	AA vs. GA + GG	1.54 (1.07–2.21)	China, India, USA, Australia	Wang et al. [280]
	Oropharynx	944	1712	AA vs. GA + GG	2.68 (1.34–5.35)	China, India, USA	Wang et al. [280]
				AA vs. GG	2.70 (1.35–5.36)		
				AA vs. GA	2.59 (1.23–5.46)		
	Oral cancer	1280	1508	GG vs. AA	0.19 (0.04–1.00)	Taiwan, India, China, Greece, Germany, Thailand, USA	Chen et al. [281]
				GG + GA vs. AA	0.22 (0.06–0.82)		
	Urogenital cancers	11,613	12,542	A vs. G	1.18 (1.06–1.32)	Asian, Caucasian, African-American	Cai et al. [282]
				GA vs. GG	1.19 (1.04–1.37)		
				AA + GA vs. GG	1.20 (1.07–1.36)		
	Cervical cancer	4332	4337	A vs. G	1.28 (1.08–1.52)	Asian, Caucasian, African-American	Cai et al. [282]
				GA vs. GG	1.27 (1.02–1.60)		
				AA + GA vs. GG	1.29 (1.06–1.58)		

	NHL	9812	11,518	AA vs. GG	1.51 (1.26–1.80)	Tunisia, Germany, France, Sweden, UK, Japan, Austria, Poland, USA, Serbia, Greece, Denmark, Egypt, China, Iran, Poland, Norway, Australia	He et al. [283]
				AA vs. GA + GG	1.47 (1.23–1.75)		
	DLBCL	34,041	42,730	A vs. G	1.35 (1.27–1.44)	China	Yang et al. [284]
	SCC	2836	5235	AA vs. GG	1.62 (1.15–2.29)	China, Croatia, Thailand, USA, India, Serbia, Germany, Denmark, Poland, Australia	Liu et al. [285]
				AA vs. GA + GG	1.56 (1.10–2.20)		
	Lung cancer	2436	2573	A vs. G	1.13 (1.00–1.27)	Asian, Caucasian	Xie et al. [286]
	Prostate cancer	5757	6137	AA + AG vs. GG	1.53 (1.09–2.14)	Portugal, Finland, India, USA, Spain, China, UK	Ma et al. [287]
				AG vs. GG	1.48 (1.05–2.08)		
rs361525	Cervical cancer	2416	2010	A vs. G	0.61 (0.47–0.78)	South Korea, USA, India, Sweden, Costa Rica	Zhou et al. [251]
				GA vs. GG	0.59 (0.45–0.77)		
				GA + AA vs. GG	0.59 (0.46–0.77)		
		1190	1784	GA vs. GG	0.54 (0.40–0.73)	Costa Rica, Mexico, USA, India, Korea	Liu et al. [257]
				GA + AA vs. GG	0.55 (0.41–0.74)		
		2522	2253	A vs. G	0.64 (0.51–0.80)	USA, India, Costa Rica, Argentina, Korea	Jin [272]
				AA + AG vs. GG	0.62 (0.49–0.79)		
	HCC	1572	1875	A vs. G	1.32 (1.04–1.69)	China, Thailand, Italy, Taiwan, South Korea, China	Cheng et al. [288]
				AG vs. GG	1.32 (1.02–1.71)		
				AA + AG vs. GG	1.33 (1.03–1.72)		
		938	1370	AG vs. GG	1.63 (1.17–2.26)	China, Korea, Thailand, Italy, Japan	Wei et al. [265]
				AA + AG vs. GG	1.62 (1.18–2.22)		
		1572	1875	A vs. G	1.32 (1.04–1.69)	Asian, Caucasian	Cheng et al. [288]
				AG vs. GG	1.32 (1.02–1.71)		
				AA + AG vs. GG	1.33 (1.03–1.72)		
		608 (HBV-related)	1967	AA vs. GG	4.776 (1.28–17.819)	China, Tunisia, Thailand, Italy, Korea	Xiao et al. [273]
	GI cancers	4849	8567	AG vs. GG	1.19 (1.00–1.40)	Korea, China, Japan, Italy, Finland, Spain, Thailand, Netherland, USA, Iran, Australia	Hui et al. [289]
				A vs. G	1.19 (1.03–1.39)		
				AA + AG vs. GG	1.20 (1.02–1.41)		
	Gastric cancer	7795 (all)		A vs. G	1.32 (1.02–1.72)	Asian, Caucasian	Yu et al. [290]
				AG vs. GG	1.32 (1.01–1.72)		

(continued)

Table 20.21 (continued)

Alleles	Cancer site	Number of cases	Number of controls	Analysis type	OR ± 95% CI	Population included	References
				AA + AG vs. GG	1.34 (1.02–1.76)		
	Oral cancer	598	634	G vs. A	2.75 (1.25–6.04)	Taiwan, India, China, Thailand	Chen et al. [281]
				GG vs. GA + AA	2.23 (1.18–4.23)		
rs1800630	HCC	627	1004	AC vs. CC	1.72 (1.03–2.88)	China, Korea, Thailand, Italy, Japan	Wei et al. [265]
				AA + AC vs. CC	1.65 (1.06–2.57)		
		558 (HBV-related)	1422	AC vs. CC	1.89 (1.23–2.92)	China, Thailand, Korea, Italy	Xiao et al. [273]
rs1799724	Gastric cancer	1118	1591	T vs. C	1.17 (1.01–1.35)	China, Japan	Zhang et al. [277]
		1835	3219	T vs. C	1.19 (1.07–1.33)	Asian, Caucasian	Cen and Wu [291]
				TT vs. CC	1.44 (1.03–2.02)		
				TC vs. CC	1.19 (1.05–1.36)		
				TT/TC vs. CC	1.21 (1.07–1.38)		
		1897	3219	T vs. C	1.12 (1.01–1.25)	Brazil, Korea, Poland, Japan, Italy, China	Wang et al. [292]
				TC vs. CC	1.16 (1.02–1.33)		
				TT/TC vs. CC	1.16 (1.02–1.32)		
	HCC	807	1510	TT vs. CC	1.65 (1.06–2.57)	China, Korea, Japan	Wang et al. [292]
				TT vs. TC/CC	1.61 (1.04–2.49)		

of −308G>A with esophageal SCC and adenocarcinoma [296]. Moreover, another study reported that −308G>A was not significantly associated with head and neck cancers neither overall nor in subgroup analysis [297]. The association of Oral cancers with TNF-α polymorphisms was analyzed in a meta-analysis with 1280 cases for −308G>A and 598 cases for −238G>A [281]. This study revealed a significant association between both SNPs and risk of oral cancers [281].

A meta-analysis on 2436 cases and 2573 controls proposed a significant association between −308G>A and lung cancer. In stratified analysis the association remained significant in small cell lung cancer, non-small cell lung cancer, and in Asian subgroup [286].

A wide-spectrum meta-analysis on digestive system cancers overall revealed a significant association of −238G<A with all-type GI cancers worldwide and also individually in Asian subgroup [289]. The same results were achieved in another study on −308G>A and digestive system cancers [274]. This study also detected significant association in Caucasians, gastric cancer, and HCC subgroups. A meta-analysis on gastric cancer and −308G>A (rs1800629) reviewed 5225 patients and 8473 controls in 26 papers. This study found a significant increase in risk of gastric cancer in carriers of A allele in comparison with G allele [298]. Another meta-analysis on gastric cancer evaluated 4399 cases and 6855 controls presented in 24 studies published up to October 2007 [275]. This study found a significant increase in risk of gastric cancer in carriers of AA genotype in −308G>A (rs1800629) polymorphism. In stratified analysis, AA genotype was significantly associated with an increased risk of noncardia cancers and intestinal type of gastric cancer compared to the GG genotype [275]. Another meta-analysis on gastric cancer and −308G>A (rs1800629) polymorphism included 19 studies with 3335 gastric cancer patients and 5286 controls [277]. In addition, this study included five studies with 1118 gastric cancer patients and 1591 controls for −857C>T (rs1799724). This study also found a significant increase in risk of gastric cancer in carriers of A allele and AA genotype in −308G>A (rs1800629) compared with G allele in the whole population and in Caucasians but not in East Asian [277]. This study also found a weak but significant association between T allele of −857 C>T (rs1799724) and gastric cancer risk compared with the C allele [277]; whereas in another study a significant association of −857 C>T with gastric cancer was observed under four genetic models [291]. Similarly, two reviews on 7009 and 2626 gastric cancer patients reported a significant association of −308G>A with gastric cancer which also remained significant in Caucasians [276, 278]. Moreover, −238G>A has been observed to be significantly associated with gastric cancer, particularly in Asian population [290].

A meta-analysis on TNF-α SNPs in colorectal cancer patients suggested that while −308G>A is contributed to increased risk of colorectal cancers, −238G>A is not significantly associated with them [279].

Several systematic reviews have been published on the associations of TNF-α polymorphisms and susceptibility to HCC. The most recent one evaluated results of 11 case–control studies (reported up to July, 2012) with a total of 1572 HCC cases and 1875 controls revealed an increased risk of HCC in carriers of A allele in −238G>A (rs361525) [288]. In stratified analysis, this association remained significant only in Asian populations [288]. Another meta-analysis included 2357 cases and 3161 controls presented in 17 studies published till November 2010 [265]. This study showed that A allele in both −238G>A (rs361525) and −308G>A (rs1800629) was associated with an increased risk of HCC. In stratified analysis for ethnicity, these associations remained significant in Asians but not in Caucasians [265]. AA and AC genotypes in −863C>A (rs1800630) were also associated with increased HCC risk compared to CC genotype. However, this study did not find any significant association for −857C>T (rs1799724) and −1031C>T (rs1799964) polymorphisms [265]. The pattern for −238G>A (rs361525) and −308G>A (rs1800629) was also repeated in other systematic reviews [180, 299, 300]. The association of −238G>A with HCC was confirmed in another

review with 1.572 patients under allelic, heterozygote, and dominant models [288]. In addition, when a meta-analysis was restricted to HBV-related HCCs, significant association was revealed between −308G>A, −238G>A, −863C>A, and HBV-related HCC either when analyzed with healthy controls or when analyzed with HBV-carriers [273].

A recent meta-analysis exclusively on −857C>T revealed a significant association of this SNP with gastric cancer and hepatocellular cancer, while no significant association was found for colorectal, cervical, and prostate cancer development [292].

Urogenital cancers were also reported to be associated with −308G>A (rs1800629) in a meta-analysis with 11,613 patients and 12,542 controls. When analyzed in subgroups, the association remained significant in cervical cancer, urothelial cancer, and Caucasian population groups [282]. A meta-analysis of seven case–control studies with 1311 bladder cancer cases and 1436 controls found that carriers of A allele in −308G>A (rs1800629) had an increased risk of bladder cancer [301]. A multicenter study investigated associations between six polymorphisms of TNF-α (rs1799964, rs1800630, rs1799724, rs1800629, rs361525, rs1800610) and prostate cancer risk in 2321 cases and 2560 controls from two nested case–control studies within the Prostate, Lung, Colorectal, and Ovarian Cancer Screening Trials and the Cancer Prevention Study II Nutrition Cohort for [302]. Overall, this study found no significant association between these polymorphisms and prostate cancer risk. But this study found a significant decreased risk in carriers of T-C-T-G-A haplotype in rs1799964, rs1800630, rs1799724, rs1800629, and rs1800610 compared to the most frequent haplotype (T-C-C-G-G) [302]. In subgroup analysis, T allele in −1036 C>T (rs1799724) in individuals who did not regularly use NSAID was associated with significantly less susceptibility to prostate cancer compared to the CC genotype. In addition, when limiting analysis to non-advanced tumors, carriers of −1036T or A allele in IVS1+123G>A (rs1800610) had a significantly decreased chance for prostate cancer [302]. Another study on two TNF-α polymorphisms (rs1800629 and rs361525) reported a significant positive association of −308G>A (rs1800629) with risk of prostate cancer under dominant and heterozygote models; but no significant association was detected for −238C>T (rs361525) [287].

Another multicenter study evaluated associations of −308G>A (rs1800629) with NHL in 7999 cases and 8452 controls from participating studies from the InterLymph Consortium. Carriers of −308A allele had increased risk for NHL, B-cell NHL, diffuse large B-cell lymphoma (DLBCL), and other marginal zone lymphoma. However, no significant associations were found between −308G>A (rs1800629) and chronic small lymphocytic lymphoma CLL/SLL or T-cell NHL [303]. Although this study also did not find any significant association between LTA +252A>G (rs909253) and NHL, carriers of G allele in this SNP had increased risk to DLBCL and mycosis fungoides [303]. In addition, the dominant model of this SNP was associated with leukemia development in a meta-analysis with 1509 cases and 4075 controls, while no association was detected among TNF-α polymorphisms [304]. A study on Chinese Han population with 34,041 cases and 42,730 controls demonstrated a significant association of −308G>A with DLBCL under allelic genetic model [284]. In accordance with previous studies, another multicenter study supported the significant association of −308G>A with NHL [283]. In stratified analysis, the African and Caucasian population was shown to be associated with increased risk of NHL, while Asian population was associated with reduced risk of lymphoma [283]. This study did not report any significant association for the −238G>A and −857C>T SNPs. Interestingly another meta-analysis suggested that the association of −308G>A with NHL is population dependent, wherein −308G>A is a protective factor in Asians (OR = 0.75, 95% CI: 0.66–0.86, $p < 0.001$), but a risk factor in Caucasians (OR = 1.22, 95% CI: 1.06–1.40, $p = 0.007$) [305].

In a meta-analysis of 33 studies with 14,435 cancer patients and 10,583 healthy controls, statistically significant increase in risk of malignant transformation was found in carriers of G allele in +252A>G (rs909253) which remained signifi-

cant in both Asian population and Caucasians [306]. A meta-analysis on 11 individual case–control studies with 2270 cases and 4404 controls found that G allele of +252A>G (rs909253) is associated with a significant increase in risk of gastric cancer, but this risk was significant only in Asians, but not Caucasians [307]. An older study also showed such a risk only in Asians especially those with *H. pylori* infection [308].

A recent comprehensive systematic review on the association of SCCs and TNF-α SNPs with overall 2836 SCC patients and 5235 controls resulted in significant association of recessive and codominant models of rs1800629 polymorphism with lung and oral SCC and all-type SCC in Asian population [285]. The same study did not report significant association of rs361525 polymorphism with SCCs except for a reduced risk of lung SCC in only two studies with 196 patients [285]. Furthermore, no association was found between rs1800629 and risk of skin cancers [285].

20.7.9 Interferon Gamma (IFN-γ)

Interferon gamma (IFN-γ) is a proinflammatory cytokine of Th1 subset with major roles in antitumor immune response. This cytokine enhances differentiation of lymphocytes and their function and Ag presentation through inducing expression of HLA molecules [154]. In addition, it inhibits angiogenesis in various tumors [65, 309].

IFN-γ gene with four exons and a length of 5.4 kb is located on chromosome 12q24 [309]. Two common SNPs including an intronic SNP +874T>A (rs2430561) and a promoter variant in (−179T>G (rs2069707)) have been previously identified [25, 65, 309]. This promoter variant is adjacent to a HSF-binding motif. In addition, there is a CA repeat microsatellite within the first intron of the gene ranging from 12 to 15 repeats [25, 309]. It was shown that allele 2 of the microsatellite and T allele in +874T>A (rs2430561) are in complete LD [25].

In vitro studies showed that T allele of +874T>A (rs2430561) is associated with higher IFN-γ production. EMSA studies showed that this allele has higher affinity for NF-κB which is in accordance with the location of this SNP in the first intron of the gene, a region related to binding of NF-κB [65, 309] (Table 20.22).

A meta-analysis of 17 studies with 1929 cancer cases and 2830 controls showed a nonsignificant increase in risk of cancer in the presence of AA genotype for +874T>A (rs2430561). However, this study showed significantly increased susceptibility in individuals with AT genotype compared with TT genotype (Table 20.23) [309]. Another meta-analysis with 32 studies and 4524 cases and 5684 controls did not find a significant association either [65]. Interestingly, in stratified meta-analy-

Table 20.22 Genotype details for SNPs of IFN-γ

SNP	GMAF [161]	Population diversity [162]	Change at DNA level	Change at protein level	Effect on cytokine level
rs2430561	*G* = 0.2686	NA	+874T>A	NA	T allele: ↑

Table 20.23 Significant results from published meta-analysis of associations of +874T>A (rs2430561) in IFN-γ gene with cancers

Cancer site	Number of cases	Number of controls	Analysis type	OR ± 95% CI	Population included	References
Cervical cancer	661	835	AT vs. TT	1.10 (1.02–1.19)	India, South Africa	Mi et al. [309]
	1116	1290	TA vs. TT	1.47 (1.14–1.90)	Indonesia, India, China, Africa, Brazil	Sun et al. [310]
			TT + TA vs. AA	1.40 (1.10–1.78)		
Breast cancer	527	715	TT vs. AA	1.58 (1.10–2.27)	Iran, Italy, Turkey, China, USA	Liu et al. [65]
			TT vs. AT + AA	1.53 (1.14–2.06)		
HCC	859	1482	UA	1.38 (1.12–1.70)	Japan, China, Korea, India, USA, Tunisia, Brazil	Zhou et al. [311]

sis for ethnicity, carriers of T allele had significantly increased susceptibility to cancer in European and African population but not in Asian population [65]. This study also found that TT genotype significantly contributes to the risk of breast cancer in all ethnicities [65]. Similarly, a meta-analysis on 5630 cancer patients and 6096 controls did not result in any significant association except for the recessive model in African population [312]. Another meta-analysis on 859 HCC patients reported a significant association of rs2430561 with the risk of HCC development, especially with the background of HBV infection [311]. Moreover, a significant association of cervical cancer development with dominant and codominant genetic models of +874T>A polymorphism was found in a meta-analysis with 1116 cases and 1290 controls [310]. In a systematic review of 420 leukemia patients and 767 controls, +874T>A polymorphism was reported to be associated with chronic leukemias, albeit negatively in CLL patients [313]. The three latter studies were all significant when analyzed among Asian population [310, 311].

20.7.10 Transforming Growth Factor-β (TGF-β)

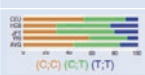
Transforming growth factor-β (TGF-β) is a functional mediator of epithelial and fibroblast cell proliferation and a regulator of immune cell populations [314]. In early stages of tumor progression, it acts as a tumor suppressor; however, in advanced cancers, TGF-β induces many activities that lead to growth, invasion, and metastasis of cancer cells [314–316].

TGF-β family consists of three isoforms with pleiotropic roles in cancer immunity [317–319]. TGF-β1 as the most common isoform of this family has enhancing effects on angiogenesis and its regulatory role in growth, differentiation, and apoptosis of different cells [64, 157, 319]. It also results in escape of malignant cells from immunosurveillance by suppressing expression of HLA molecules [154, 157, 318, 319].

TGF-β1 gene is located in the long arm of chromosome 19 (19q13.1). +869T>C (rs1800470; also called +29T>C, or rs1982037) is a common variant in the first exonic region of *TGF-β1* which results in substitution of leucine to proline at codon 10 in signal sequence [317]. +915G>C (also called +74 or rs1800471) is another exonic variant resulting in an arginine-to-proline substitution at codon 25. −509C>T (rs1800469) and −800G>A are two promoter variants in a proximal negative regulatory region (Table 20.24) [320, 321]. In vivo studies showed that T allele in −509C>T (rs1800469) was associated with higher levels of TGF-β1 in plasma and also higher expression [25, 75]. Despite some contrary results, C allele in +869T>C (rs1800470) was associated with higher secretion of TGF-β1 in in vitro studies [25, 318]. Arginine in +915G>C (rs1800471) was also associated with higher levels of TGF-β1 in in vivo studies [25]. In vitro studies showed that A allele in −1287G>A (rs11466314), another variant of this gene, is associated with higher expression of TGF-β1 [25]. EMSA studies showed that C allele in −387C>T (rs11466315) had greater affinity for Sp1 and Sp3 complexes [25].

Results of 40 case–control studies (including 3 studies with African population, 14 on Asian descendants, and 23 studies with European population) with 16,166 patients with various cancers and 19,126 controls were analyzed in a systematic review. Although this meta-analysis did not

Table 20.24 Genotype details for SNPs of TGF-β

SNP	GMAF [161]	Population diversity [162]	Change at DNA level	Change at protein level	Effect on cytokine level
rs1800470	*G* = 0.444	UA	+29T>C	Pro10Leu	C allele: ↑
rs1800471	*G* = 0.046	UA	+74G>C	Arg25Pro	G allele: ↑
rs1800469	*T* = 0.359		−509C>T	NA	T allele: ↑

find any significant association with overall risk of cancer, its result suggested that individuals with C allele in +869T>C (rs1800470) have significantly greater risk for prostate cancer. This finding was supported by another review with 2604 prostate cancer patients [322]. However, in subgroup analysis this allele was significantly associated with all-type cancers in Asian populations and prostate cancer in Caucasians [319, 322] (Table 20.25).

A meta-analysis of 30 studies including 20,401 patients with breast cancer and 27,416 controls showed increased risk of breast cancer in individuals with C allele in +869T>C (rs1800470). In stratified analysis, this association remained significant in Caucasian population and population-based studies [64, 327]. However, three other meta-analyses, one with a sample size of 24,021 cases and 31,820 controls and the others with almost half of this sample could not find such an association [327–329]. Another recent meta-analysis of 20,022 cases and 24,423 controls could find this increased risk for C allele just in Caucasians [321]. This study also reviewed results of eight studies with 10,633 cases and 13,648 controls for −509C>T (rs1800469) and did not find any significant association between alleles of this polymorphism and risk of breast cancer in accordance with another meta-analysis (including 10,197 patients with breast cancer and 13,382 healthy controls) [321, 330, 331]. Some authors suggested that the effect of TGF-β1 is different according to expression of estrogen receptor and progesterone receptor in breast cancer tumors, in a way that recessive and allelic models of −509C>T polymorphism are associated with ER-positive breast cancers [320, 332].

Meta-analysis of 1315 lung cancer patients and 1448 normal controls reported a significant association of lung cancer with dominant model of 1800470 polymorphism, overall and within

Table 20.25 Significant results from published meta-analysis of associations of SNPs of TGF-β gene with cancers

Alleles	Cancer site	Number of cases	Number of controls	Analysis type	OR ± 95% CI	Population included	References
rs1800470	Malignancy	5183	6524	CC vs. TT	1.26 (1.03–1.53)	(Asian) Korea, China, Japan	Wei et al. [319]
				CT vs. TT	1.20 (1.01–1.43)		
	Prostate cancer	2605	3129	CT vs. TT	1.28 (1.01–1.61)	USA, Germany, Brazil, Japan	Wei et al. [319]
				CC + CT vs. TT	1.24 (1.02–1.52)		
		2604	3129	C vs. T	1.08 (1.00–1.16)	Asian, Caucasian, African	Cai et al. [322]
	Breast cancer	20,401	27,416	CT vs. TT	1.05 (1.00–1.09)	Mixed from Asian, Caucasian, and African	Qiu et al. [64]
				CC + CT vs. TT	1.05 (1.01–1.09)		
	Lung cancer	1315	1448	TT + TC vs. CC	1.23 (1.03–1.47)	Asian, Caucasian	Fan et al. [323]
rs1800469	Gastric cancer	2130	2374	TT vs. CC + CT	1.35 (1.1–1.65)	India, China	Li et al. [75]
		2928	3480	TT vs. CC + CT	1.23 (1.09–1.38)	China, USA, India	Chang et al. [324]
	Colorectal cancer	994	2335	CC vs. TT	1.62 (1.30–2.02)	Iran, Germany, Korea, China	Fang et al. [325]
				TC + CC vs. TT	1.30 (1.08–1.58)		
				CC vs. TC + TT	1.48 (1.26–1.75)		
		4440	6785	CC + CT vs. TT	1.18 (1.06–1.32)	USA, UK, Iran, China, Korea, Germany	Wang et al. [326]
	Colon cancer	1760	2454	CC + CT vs. TT	1.31 (1.05–1.63)	UK, USA, China	Wang et al. [326]

Asian descendants [323]. This association remained significant in NSCLC subgroup. In spite of the previous study, a systematic review on 1167 lung cancer patients revealed no significant association of both 1800470 and 1800469 polymorphism with lung cancer development except for a subgroup analysis of +869T>C (rs1800470) among Caucasians [333].

A systematic review analyzed results of 55 studies with a total number of 21,639 cancer patients and 28,460 controls for associations of −509C>T (rs1800469) and susceptibility to different cancers. Although there was no a significant association between overall risk of cancer and genotypes of this SNP, this study found increased susceptibility of carriers of C allele to colorectal cancer particularly in Caucasians [334]. In addition, a meta-analysis of five studies with 994 colorectal cancer patients and 2335 controls found increased risk of colorectal cancer for C allele of −509C>T (rs1800469) which remained significant only in Asian population but not Caucasians in stratified analysis [325]. On the other hand, a systematic review of seven original articles with a total of 2130 patients with gastric cancer and 2374 controls found significantly increased susceptibility to gastric cancer in carriers of T allele in −509C>T (rs1800469) in a recessive model [75]. This association was supported by an updated review on 2928 cases and 3480 controls, while no association was detected for +869T>C and +915G>C [324]. Another meta-analysis pooled the results of 29 case–control studies with 8664 patients with digestive tract cancers and 12,532 controls. This study did not show any significant association with overall risk of digestive tract cancers. However, this study found that C allele in −509C>T (rs1800469) is significantly contributed to the risk of digestive tract cancers in Caucasians. In addition, carriers of C allele in the whole study sample had increased risk for colorectal cancer [335]. Another systematic review of 12 studies with 4440 colorectal cancer patients and 6785 controls could find such an association only in colon cancer [326].

20.8 Concluding Remarks

In the recent decades, a great scientific effort has uncovered the importance of immune polymorphisms in cancers. However, this uncovered part, although is promising, only reminds us that there is much more to reveal in this field. There comes a day that gathering immunogenetic data becomes one main part of every clinical trial in cancer. This information will help understand more about subgroups of patients, natural history of the cancers, responsiveness of cancer to treatment, or toxicity of treatment, all in relation to immune polymorphism [16]. One day, it might be possible to assess the degree of predisposition to different cancers for each individual and to employ preventive measurement, and in case of suffering from cancers, to efficiently choose between treatment options and predict their clinical effectiveness [28]. Although it seems a vague dream in the far future, it is becoming closer to reality everyday considering the pace of scientific advancements.

References

1. Wilson S, Jones L, Couseens C, et al. Cancer and the environment: gene-environment interaction. Washington, DC: National Academies Press (US); 2002.
2. Burgess DJ. Cancer genetics: initially complex, always heterogeneous. Nat Rev Cancer. 2011;11(3):153.
3. Abecasis GR, Altshuler D, Auton A, Brooks LD, Durbin RM, Gibbs RA, et al. A map of human genome variation from population-scale sequencing. Nature. 2010;467(7319):1061–73.
4. De La Vega FM, Dailey D, Ziegle J, Williams J, Madden D, Gilbert DA. New generation pharmacogenomic tools: a SNP linkage disequilibrium map, validated SNP assay resource, and high-throughput instrumentation system for large-scale genetic studies. BioTechniques. 2002;(Suppl):48–50, 52, 54.
5. Mucci LA, Hjelmborg JB, Harris JR, Czene K, Havelick DJ, Scheike T, et al. Familial risk and heritability of cancer among twins in Nordic countries. JAMA. 2016;315(1):68–76.
6. Fostira F, Thodi G, Konstantopoulou I, Sandaltzopoulos R, Yannoukakos D. Hereditary cancer syndromes. J BUON. 2007;12(Suppl 1):S13–22.

7. Perez-Losada J, Castellanos-Martin A, Mao JH. Cancer evolution and individual susceptibility. Integr Biol. 2011;3(4):316–28.
8. Lichtenstein P, Holm NV, Verkasalo PK, Iliadou A, Kaprio J, Koskenvuo M, et al. Environmental and heritable factors in the causation of cancer--analyses of cohorts of twins from Sweden, Denmark, and Finland. N Engl J Med. 2000;343(2):78–85.
9. Bremers AJ, Parmiani G. Immunology and immunotherapy of human cancer: present concepts and clinical developments. Crit Rev Oncol Hematol. 2000;34(1):1–25.
10. Wilczynski JR, Duechler M. How do tumors actively escape from host immunosurveillance? Arch Immunol Ther Exp. 2010;58(6):435–48.
11. Garcia-Lora A, Algarra I, Garrido F. MHC class I antigens, immune surveillance, and tumor immune escape. J Cell Physiol. 2003;195(3):346–55.
12. Andor N, Maley CC, Ji HP. Genomic instability in cancer: teetering on the limit of tolerance. Cancer Res. 2017;77(9):2179–85.
13. Poschke I, Mougiakakos D, Kiessling R. Camouflage and sabotage: tumor escape from the immune system. Cancer Immunol Immunother. 2011;60(8):1161–71.
14. Croci DO, Salatino M. Tumor immune escape mechanisms that operate during metastasis. Curr Pharm Biotechnol. 2011;12(11):1923–36.
15. Howell WM, Calder PC, Grimble RF. Gene polymorphisms, inflammatory diseases and cancer. Proc Nutr Soc. 2002;61(4):447–56.
16. Jin P, Wang E. Polymorphism in clinical immunology – from HLA typing to immunogenetic profiling. J Transl Med. 2003;1(1):8.
17. Simpson J, Roberts M. Modelling heterogeneous host immune response in a multi-strain system. J Theor Biol. 2012;304:60–5.
18. Strachan TR, Read AP. Human molecular genetics. 2nd ed. New York: Wiley-Liss; 1999.
19. Wills C. Rapid recent human evolution and the accumulation of balanced genetic polymorphisms. High Alt Med Biol. 2011;12(2):149–55.
20. Cobey S, Pascual M. Consequences of host heterogeneity, epitope immunodominance, and immune breadth for strain competition. J Theor Biol. 2011;270(1):80–7.
21. Wang E, Panelli MC, Monsurro V, Marincola FM. A global approach to tumor immunology. Cell Mol Immunol. 2004;1(4):256–65.
22. Jin P, Panelli MC, Marincola FM, Wang E. Cytokine polymorphism and its possible impact on cancer. Immunol Res. 2004;30(2):181–90.
23. Ho DWH, Chan D, Cheung KMC, Sham P, Song Y-Q. (ii) Family-based linkage and case control association studies. Curr Orthop. 2008;22(4):245–50.
24. Pampin S, Rodriguez-Rey JC. Functional analysis of regulatory single-nucleotide polymorphisms. Curr Opin Lipidol. 2007;18(2):194–8.
25. Smith AJ, Humphries SE. Cytokine and cytokine receptor gene polymorphisms and their functionality. Cytokine Growth Factor Rev. 2009;20(1):43–59.
26. Cline MS, Karchin R. Using bioinformatics to predict the functional impact of SNVs. Bioinformatics. 2011;27(4):441–8.
27. Mooney S. Bioinformatics approaches and resources for single nucleotide polymorphism functional analysis. Brief Bioinform. 2005;6(1):44–56.
28. Yuzhalin A. The role of interleukin DNA polymorphisms in gastric cancer. Hum Immunol. 2011;72(11):1128–36.
29. Tariman JD, Dhorajiwala S. Genomic variants associated with cancer-related fatigue: a systematic review. Clin J Oncol Nurs. 2016;20(5):537–46.
30. Liu XS, Mardis ER. Applications of immunogenomics to cancer. Cell. 2017;168(4):600–12.
31. Howell WM, Rose-Zerilli MJ. Cytokine gene polymorphisms, cancer susceptibility, and prognosis. J Nutr. 2007;137(1 Suppl):194s–9s.
32. Cano P, Klitz W, Mack SJ, Maiers M, Marsh SG, Noreen H, et al. Common and well-documented HLA alleles: report of the ad-hoc committee of the American society for histocompatibility and immunogenetics. Hum Immunol. 2007;68(5):392–417.
33. Middleton D, Marsh SG. 16th International HLA and Immunogenetics Workshop (IHIW) introduction. Int J Immunogenet. 2013;40(1):1.
34. Irwin MR, Cumley RW. Immunogenetic studies of species: qualitative differences in the serum of backcross progeny following a generic cross in birds. Genetics. 1942;27(2):228–37.
35. Discombe G. Blood Transfusion Accidents. Br Med J. 1953;2(4835):569.
36. Bontadini A. HLA techniques: typing and antibody detection in the laboratory of immunogenetics. Methods. 2012;56(4):471–6.
37. Bateman AC, Howell WM. Human leukocyte antigens and cancer: is it in our genes? J Pathol. 1999;188(3):231–6.
38. Hill AV. Immunogenetics and genomics. Lancet. 2001;357(9273):2037–41.
39. Weiling F. Historical study: Johann Gregor Mendel 1822–1884. Am J Med Genet. 1991;40(1):1–25.. discussion 6
40. Lederberg J. What the double helix (1953) has meant for basic biomedical science. A personal commentary. JAMA. 1993;269(15):1981–5.
41. Eaton L. Human genome project completed. BMJ. 2003;326(7394):838.
42. Lander ES, Linton LM, Birren B, Nusbaum C, Zody MC, Baldwin J, et al. Initial sequencing and analysis of the human genome. Nature. 2001;409(6822):860–921.
43. International HapMap Consortium. The International HapMap Project. Nature. 2003;426(6968):789–96.

44. Frazer KA, Ballinger DG, Cox DR, Hinds DA, Stuve LL, Gibbs RA, et al. A second generation human haplotype map of over 3.1 million SNPs. Nature. 2007;449(7164):851–61.
45. Boomsma D, Busjahn A, Peltonen L. Classical twin studies and beyond. Nat Rev Genet. 2002;3(11):872–82.
46. Mocellin S, Wang E, Panelli M, Pilati P, Marincola FM. DNA array-based gene profiling in tumor immunology. Clin Cancer Res. 2004;10(14):4597–606.
47. Nowotny P, Kwon JM, Goate AM. SNP analysis to dissect human traits. Curr Opin Neurobiol. 2001;11(5):637–41.
48. Cerhan JR. Host genetics in follicular lymphoma. Best Pract Res Clin Haematol. 2011;24(2):121–34.
49. Morton NE, Collins A. Toward positional cloning with SNPs. Curr Opin Mol Ther. 2002;4(3):259–64.
50. Collins FS, Green ED, Guttmacher AE, Guyer MS. A vision for the future of genomics research. Nature. 2003;422(6934):835–47.
51. Ke X, Taylor MS, Cardon LR. Singleton SNPs in the human genome and implications for genome-wide association studies. Eur J Hum Genet. 2008;16(4):506–15.
52. Hindorff LA, Sethupathy P, Junkins HA, Ramos EM, Mehta JP, Collins FS, et al. Potential etiologic and functional implications of genome-wide association loci for human diseases and traits. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2009;106(23):9362–7.
53. Palmer LJ, Cardon LR. Shaking the tree: mapping complex disease genes with linkage disequilibrium. Lancet. 2005;366(9492):1223–34.
54. Gogele M, Minelli C, Thakkinstian A, Yurkiewich A, Pattaro C, Pramstaller PP, et al. Methods for meta-analyses of genome-wide association studies: critical assessment of empirical evidence. Am J Epidemiol. 2012;175(8):739–49.
55. Manolio TA. Genomewide association studies and assessment of the risk of disease. N Engl J Med. 2010;363(2):166–76.
56. Brower V. AIDS-related cancers increase in Africa. J Natl Cancer Inst. 2011;103(12):918–9.
57. Tanon A, Jaquet A, Ekouevi DK, Akakpo J, Adoubi I, Diomande I, et al. The spectrum of cancers in West Africa: associations with human immunodeficiency virus. PLoS One. 2012;7(10):e48108.
58. Taioli E. Gene-environment interaction in tobacco-related cancers. Carcinogenesis. 2008;29(8):1467–74.
59. Wogan GN, Hecht SS, Felton JS, Conney AH, Loeb LA. Environmental and chemical carcinogenesis. Semin Cancer Biol. 2004;14(6):473–86.
60. Lander ES, Schork NJ. Genetic dissection of complex traits. Science (New York, NY). 1994;265(5181):2037–48.
61. Madeleine MM, Johnson LG, Smith AG, Hansen JA, Nisperos BB, Li S, et al. Comprehensive analysis of HLA-A, HLA-B, HLA-C, HLA-DRB1, and HLA-DQB1 loci and squamous cell cervical cancer risk. Cancer Res. 2008;68(9):3532–9.
62. Kamangar F, Cheng C, Abnet CC, Rabkin CS. Interleukin-1B polymorphisms and gastric cancer risk--a meta-analysis. Cancer Epidemiol Biomarkers Prev. 2006;15(10):1920–8.
63. Wang J, Pan HF, Hu YT, Zhu Y, He Q. Polymorphism of IL-8 in 251 allele and gastric cancer susceptibility: a meta-analysis. Dig Dis Sci. 2010;55(7):1818–23.
64. Qiu LX, Yao L, Mao C, Chen B, Zhan P, Xue K, et al. TGFB1 L10P polymorphism is associated with breast cancer susceptibility: evidence from a meta-analysis involving 47,817 subjects. Breast Cancer Res Treat. 2010;123(2):563–7.
65. Liu F, Li B, Wei YG, Chen X, Ma Y, Yan LN, et al. IFN-gamma+874 A/T polymorphism and cancer risk: an updated analysis based on 32 case-control studies. Cytokine. 2011;56(2):200–7.
66. Wang J, Ding Q, Shi Y, Cao Q, Qin C, Zhu J, et al. The interleukin-10-1082 promoter polymorphism and cancer risk: a meta-analysis. Mutagenesis. 2012;27(3):305–12.
67. Wei YG, Liu F, Li B, Chen X, Ma Y, Yan LN, et al. Interleukin-10 gene polymorphisms and hepatocellular carcinoma susceptibility: a meta-analysis. World J Gastroenterol. 2011;17(34):3941–7.
68. Balmain A, Harris CC. Carcinogenesis in mouse and human cells: parallels and paradoxes. Carcinogenesis. 2000;21(3):371–7.
69. Hunter KW, Crawford NP. The future of mouse QTL mapping to diagnose disease in mice in the age of whole-genome association studies. Annu Rev Genet. 2008;42:131–41.
70. Darvasi A. 'Dissecting complex traits: the geneticists' "Around the world in 80 days". Trends Genet. 2005;21(7):373–6.
71. Chen F, Xu Z, Lu J, Lu X, Mu WL, Wang YJ, et al. Gaussia luciferase reporter assay for assessment of gene delivery systems in vivo. Chin Med Sci J. 2010;25(2):95–9.
72. Uchiyama T, Miyazaki K. Product-induced gene expression, a product-responsive reporter assay used to screen metagenomic libraries for enzyme-encoding genes. Appl Environ Microbiol. 2010;76(21):7029–35.
73. Yaginuma K, Koike K. Technics in molecular biology for cancer research--electrophoretic mobility-shift assay. Gan To Kagaku Ryoho [Cancer Chemother]. 1989;16(3 Pt 1):435–41.
74. Kirigiti P, Machida CA. Electrophoretic mobility shift assay for detection of DNA binding proteins recognizing beta-adrenergic receptor gene sequences. Methods Mol Biol. 2000;126:431–51.
75. Li K, Xia F, Zhang K, Mo A, Liu L. Association of a tgf-b1-509c/t polymorphism with gastric cancer risk: a meta-analysis. Ann Hum Genet. 2013;77(1):1–8.
76. Wu Y, Liu B, Lin W, Xu Y, Li L, Zhang Y, et al. Human leukocyte antigen class II alleles and risk of cervical cancer in China. Hum Immunol. 2007;68(3):192–200.
77. Andersson E, Villabona L, Bergfeldt K, Carlson JW, Ferrone S, Kiessling R, et al. Correlation of

HLA-A02∗ genotype and HLA class I antigen down-regulation with the prognosis of epithelial ovarian cancer. Cancer Immunol Immunother. 2012;61(8):1243–53.
78. Madeleine MM, Brumback B, Cushing-Haugen KL, Schwartz SM, Daling JR, Smith AG, et al. Human leukocyte antigen class II and cervical cancer risk: a population-based study. J Infect Dis. 2002;186(11):1565–74.
79. Nowak J, Kalinka-Warzocha E, Juszczynski P, Bilinski P, Mika-Witkowska R, Zajko M, et al. Association of human leukocyte antigen ancestral haplotype 8.1 with adverse outcome of non-Hodgkin's lymphoma. Genes Chromosomes Cancer. 2007;46(5):500–7.
80. Abele R, Tampe R. The ABCs of immunology: structure and function of TAP, the transporter associated with antigen processing. Physiology (Bethesda). 2004;19:216–24.
81. Martin MP, Carrington M. Immunogenetics of HIV disease. Immunol Rev. 2013;254(1):245–64.
82. Oguz FS, Kalayoglu S, Diler AS, Tozkir H, Sargin D, Carin M, et al. HLA system affects the age-at-onset in chronic myeloid leukemia. Am J Hematol. 2003;73(4):256–62.
83. Diepstra A, Niens M, Vellenga E, van Imhoff GW, Nolte IM, Schaapveld M, et al. Association with HLA class I in Epstein-Barr-virus-positive and with HLA class III in Epstein-Barr-virus-negative Hodgkin's lymphoma. Lancet. 2005;365(9478):2216–24.
84. Rhodes DA, Trowsdale J. Genetics and molecular genetics of the MHC. Rev Immunogenet. 1999;1(1):21–31.
85. Noguchi K, Isogai M, Kuwada E, Noguchi A, Goto S, Egawa K. Detection of anti-HLA-F antibodies in sera from cancer patients. Anticancer Res. 2004;24(5c):3387–92.
86. Powell AG, Horgan PG, Edwards J. The bodies fight against cancer: is human leucocyte antigen (HLA) class 1 the key? J Cancer Res Clin Oncol. 2012;138(5):723–8.
87. Hassen E, Nahla G, Bouaouina N, Chouchane L. The human leukocyte antigen class I genes in nasopharyngeal carcinoma risk. Mol Biol Rep. 2010;37(1):119–26.
88. Horowitz A, Djaoud Z, Nemat-Gorgani N, Blokhuis J, Hilton HG, Beziat V, et al. Class I HLA haplotypes form two schools that educate NK cells in different ways. Sci Immunol. 2016;1(3):eaag1672.
89. Iwaszko M, Bogunia-Kubik K. Clinical significance of the HLA-E and CD94/NKG2 interaction. Arch Immunol Ther Exp. 2011;59(5):353–67.
90. Ishitani A, Sageshima N, Hatake K. The involvement of HLA-E and -F in pregnancy. J Reprod Immunol. 2006;69(2):101–13.
91. Kovats S, Main EK, Librach C, Stubblebine M, Fisher SJ, DeMars R. A class I antigen, HLA-G, expressed in human trophoblasts. Science (New York, NY). 1990;248(4952):220–3.
92. Blaschitz A, Lenfant F, Mallet V, Hartmann M, Bensussan A, Geraghty DE, et al. Endothelial cells in chorionic fetal vessels of first trimester placenta express HLA-G. Eur J Immunol. 1997;27(12):3380–8.
93. Bainbridge DR, Ellis SA, Sargent IL. HLA-G suppresses proliferation of CD4(+) T-lymphocytes. J Reprod Immunol. 2000;48(1):17–26.
94. Ye SR, Yang H, Li K, Dong DD, Lin XM, Yie SM. Human leukocyte antigen G expression: as a significant prognostic indicator for patients with colorectal cancer. Mod Pathol. 2007;20(3):375–83.
95. Gooden MJ, van Hall T. Infiltrating CTLs are bothered by HLA-E on tumors. Oncoimmunology. 2012;1(1):92–3.
96. Robinson J, Halliwell JA, McWilliam H, Lopez R, Parham P, Marsh SG. The IMGT/HLA database. Nucleic Acids Res. 2013;41(Database issue):D1222–7.
97. Niens M, van den Berg A, Diepstra A, Nolte IM, van der Steege G, Gallagher A, et al. The human leukocyte antigen class I region is associated with EBV-positive Hodgkin's lymphoma: HLA-A and HLA complex group 9 are putative candidate genes. Cancer Epidemiol Biomarkers Prev. 2006;15(11):2280–4.
98. Bochtler W, Maiers M, Bakker JN, Baier DM, Hofmann JA, Pingel J, et al. An update to the HLA Nomenclature Guidelines of the World Marrow Donor Association, 2012. Bone Marrow Transplant. 2013;48(11):1387–8.
99. Gires O, Seliger B, editors. Tumor-associated antigens: identification, characterization, and clinical applications. Weinheim: Wiley-Blackwell; 2009.
100. Sosman JA, Unger JM, Liu PY, Flaherty LE, Park MS, Kempf RA, et al. Adjuvant immunotherapy of resected, intermediate-thickness, node-negative melanoma with an allogeneic tumor vaccine: impact of HLA class I antigen expression on outcome. J Clin Oncol Off J Am Soc Clin Oncol. 2002;20(8):2067–75.
101. Maat W, Haasnoot GW, Claas FH, Schalij-Delfos NE, Schreuder GM, Jager MJ. HLA class I and II genotype in uveal melanoma: relation to occurrence and prognosis. Invest Ophthalmol Vis Sci. 2006;47(1):3–6.
102. Wang SS, Abdou AM, Morton LM, Thomas R, Cerhan JR, Gao X, et al. Human leukocyte antigen class I and II alleles in non-Hodgkin lymphoma etiology. Blood. 2010;115(23):4820–3.
103. Sidney J, del Guercio MF, Southwood S, Hermanson G, Maewal A, Appella E, et al. The HLA-A∗0207 peptide binding repertoire is limited to a subset of the A∗0201 repertoire. Hum Immunol. 1997;58(1):12–20.
104. Huang X, Hepkema B, Nolte I, Kushekhar K, Jongsma T, Veenstra R, et al. HLA-A∗02:07 is a protective allele for EBV negative and a susceptibility allele for EBV positive classical Hodgkin lymphoma in China. PLoS One. 2012;7(2):e31865.

105. Gamzatova Z, Villabona L, Dahlgren L, Dalianis T, Nillson B, Bergfeldt K, et al. Human leucocyte antigen (HLA) A2 as a negative clinical prognostic factor in patients with advanced ovarian cancer. Gynecol Oncol. 2006;103(1):145–50.
106. Bahls L, Yamakawa R, Zanao K, Alfieri D, Flauzino T, Delongui F, et al. Human leukocyte antigen class I and class II polymorphisms and serum cytokine profiles in cervical cancer. Int J Mol Sci. 2017;18(9):pii: E1478.
107. Shugart YY, Wang Y, Jia WH, Zeng YX. GWAS signals across the HLA regions: revealing a clue for common etiology underlying infectious tumors and other immunity diseases. Chin J Cancer. 2011;30(4):226–30.
108. De Re V, Caggiari L, Talamini R, Crovatto M, De Vita S, Mazzaro C, et al. Hepatitis C virus-related hepatocellular carcinoma and B-cell lymphoma patients show a different profile of major histocompatibility complex class II alleles. Hum Immunol. 2004;65(11):1397–404.
109. Ramsuran V, Naranbhai V, Horowitz A, Qi Y, Martin MP, Yuki Y, et al. Elevated HLA-A expression impairs HIV control through inhibition of NKG2A-expressing cells. Science (New York, NY). 2018;359(6371):86–90.
110. Litwin TR, Clarke MA, Dean M, Wentzensen N. Somatic host cell alterations in HPV carcinogenesis. Viruses. 2017;9(8):pii: E206.
111. Rodriguez JA. HLA-mediated tumor escape mechanisms that may impair immunotherapy clinical outcomes via T-cell activation. Oncol Lett. 2017;14(4):4415–27.
112. Tang M, Lautenberger JA, Gao X, Sezgin E, Hendrickson SL, Troyer JL, et al. The principal genetic determinants for nasopharyngeal carcinoma in China involve the HLA class I antigen recognition groove. PLoS Genet. 2012;8(11):e1003103.
113. So T, Takenoyama M, Sugaya M, Yasuda M, Eifuku R, Yoshimatsu T, et al. Unfavorable prognosis of patients with non-small cell lung carcinoma associated with HLA-A2. Lung Cancer. 2001;32(1):39–46.
114. Ruiz-Cabello F, Garrido F. HLA and cancer: from research to clinical impact. Immunol Today. 1998;19(12):539–42.
115. Li X, Fasano R, Wang E, Yao KT, Marincola FM. HLA associations with nasopharyngeal carcinoma. Curr Mol Med. 2009;9(6):751–65.
116. McGranahan N, Rosenthal R, Hiley CT, Rowan AJ, Watkins TBK, Wilson GA, et al. Allele-specific HLA loss and immune escape in lung cancer evolution. Cell. 2017;171(6):1259–71.e11.
117. Akers NK, Curry JD, Conde L, Bracci PM, Smith MT, Skibola CF. Association of HLA-DQB1 alleles with risk of follicular lymphoma. Leuk Lymphoma. 2011;52(1):53–8.
118. van der Woude D, Lie BA, Lundstrom E, Balsa A, Feitsma AL, Houwing-Duistermaat JJ, et al. Protection against anti-citrullinated protein antibody-positive rheumatoid arthritis is predominantly associated with HLA-DRB1∗1301: a meta-analysis of HLA-DRB1 associations with anti-citrullinated protein antibody-positive and anti-citrullinated protein antibody-negative rheumatoid arthritis in four European populations. Arthritis Rheum. 2010;62(5):1236–45.
119. Wang SS, Lu Y, Rothman N, Abdou AM, Cerhan JR, De Roos A, et al. Variation in effects of non-Hodgkin lymphoma risk factors according to the human leukocyte antigen (HLA)-DRB1∗01:01 allele and ancestral haplotype 8.1. PLoS One. 2011;6(11):e26949.
120. Marincola FM, Venzon D, White D, Rubin JT, Lotze MT, Simonis TB, et al. HLA association with response and toxicity in melanoma patients treated with interleukin 2-based immunotherapy. Cancer Res. 1992;52(23):6561–6.
121. Wan R, Wang ZW, Li H, Peng XD, Liu GY, Ou JM, et al. Human leukocyte antigen-G inhibits the anti-tumor effect of natural killer cells via immunoglobulin-like transcript 2 in gastric cancer. Cell Physiol Biochem. 2017;44(5):1828–41.
122. De Re V, Caggiari L, Mussolin L, d'Amore ES, Famengo B, De Zorzi M, et al. HLA-G+3027 polymorphism is associated with tumor relapse in pediatric Hodgkin's lymphoma. Oncotarget. 2017;8(62):105957–70.
123. Garziera M, Scarabel L, Toffoli G. Hypoxic modulation of HLA-G expression through the metabolic sensor HIF-1 in human cancer cells. J Immunol Res. 2017;2017:4587520.
124. Dausset J. Iso-leuko-antibodies. Acta Haematol. 1958;20(1–4):156–66.
125. Mittal KK, Mickey MR, Singal DP, Terasaki PI. Serotyping for homotransplantation. 18. Refinement of microdroplet lymphocyte cytotoxicity test. Transplantation. 1968;6(8):913–27.
126. Uryu N, Maeda M, Ota M, Tsuji K, Inoko H. A simple and rapid method for HLA-DRB and -DQB typing by digestion of PCR-amplified DNA with allele specific restriction endonucleases. Tissue Antigens. 1990;35(1):20–31.
127. Krausa P, Browning MJ. A comprehensive PCR-SSP typing system for identification of HLA-A locus alleles. Tissue Antigens. 1996;47(3):237–44.
128. Donaldson PT, Ho S, Williams R, Johnson PJ. HLA class II alleles in Chinese patients with hepatocellular carcinoma. Liver. 2001;21(2):143–8.
129. Bain C, Merrouche Y, Puisieux I, Blay JY, Negrier S, Bonadona V, et al. Correlation between clinical response to interleukin 2 and HLA phenotypes in patients with metastatic renal cell carcinoma. Br J Cancer. 1997;75(2):283–6.
130. Xin YN, Lin ZH, Jiang XJ, Zhan SH, Dong QJ, Wang Q, et al. Specific HLA-DQB1 alleles associated with risk for development of hepatocellular carcinoma: a meta-analysis. World J Gastroenterol. 2011;17(17):2248–54.
131. Zhang X, Lv Z, Yu H, Wang F, Zhu J. The HLA-DQB1 gene polymorphisms associated with cervical cancer risk: a meta-analysis. Biomed Pharmacother. 2015;73:58–64.
132. Liu L, Guo W, Zhang J. Association of HLA-DRB1 gene polymorphisms with hepatocellular

carcinoma risk: a meta-analysis. Minerva Med. 2017;108(2):176–84.
133. Yao K, Yang S, Shen J, Zhang R, Li L. HLA-DRB1 allele polymorphism and nasopharyngeal carcinoma risk: a meta-analysis. Eur Arch Otorhinolaryngol. 2017;274(1):297–303.
134. Wei LZ, Wang HL, Liu X, Lu YP, Xu F, Yuan JQ, et al. Meta-analysis on the relationship between HLA-DRBl gene polymorphism and cervical cancer in Chinese population. PLoS One. 2014;9(2):e88439.
135. Lin ZH, Xin YN, Dong QJ, Wang Q, Jiang XJ, Zhan SH, et al. Association between HLA-DRB1 alleles polymorphism and hepatocellular carcinoma: a meta-analysis. BMC Gastroenterol. 2010;10:145.
136. Yang YC, Chang TY, Lee YJ, Su TH, Dang CW, Wu CC, et al. HLA-DRB1 alleles and cervical squamous cell carcinoma: experimental study and meta-analysis. Hum Immunol. 2006;67(4–5):331–40.
137. Chan SH, Day NE, Kunaratnam N, Chia KB, Simons MJ. HLA and nasopharyngeal carcinoma in Chinese--a further study. Int J Cancer. 1983;32(2):171–6.
138. Simons MJ, Wee GB, Goh EH, Chan SH, Shanmugaratnam K, Day NE, et al. Immunogenetic aspects of nasopharyngeal carcinoma. IV. Increased risk in Chinese of nasopharyngeal carcinoma associated with a Chinese-related HLA profile (A2, Singapore 2). J Natl Cancer Inst. 1976;57(5):977–80.
139. Burt RD, Vaughan TL, Nisperos B, Swanson M, Berwick M. A protective association between the HLA-A2 antigen and nasopharyngeal carcinoma in US Caucasians. Int J Cancer. 1994;56(4):465–7.
140. Pasini E, Caggiari L, Dal Maso L, Martorelli D, Guidoboni M, Vaccher E, et al. Undifferentiated nasopharyngeal carcinoma from a nonendemic area: protective role of HLA allele products presenting conserved EBV epitopes. Int J Cancer. 2009;125(6):1358–64.
141. Burt RD, Vaughan TL, McKnight B, Davis S, Beckmann AM, Smith AG, et al. Associations between human leukocyte antigen type and nasopharyngeal carcinoma in Caucasians in the United States. Cancer Epidemiol Biomarkers Prev. 1996;5(11):879–87.
142. Krausa P, Brywka M 3rd, Savage D, Hui KM, Bunce M, Ngai JL, et al. Genetic polymorphism within HLA-A∗02: significant allelic variation revealed in different populations. Tissue Antigens. 1995;45(4):223–31.
143. Hildesheim A, Apple RJ, Chen CJ, Wang SS, Cheng YJ, Klitz W, et al. Association of HLA class I and II alleles and extended haplotypes with nasopharyngeal carcinoma in Taiwan. J Natl Cancer Inst. 2002;94(23):1780–9.
144. Chan PK, Cheung TH, Lin CK, Siu SS, Yim SF, Lo KW, et al. Association between HLA-DRB1 polymorphism, high-risk HPV infection and cervical neoplasia in southern Chinese. J Med Virol. 2007;79(7):970–6.
145. Maciag PC, Schlecht NF, Souza PS, Franco EL, Villa LL, Petzl-Erler ML. Major histocompatibility complex class II polymorphisms and risk of cervical cancer and human papillomavirus infection in Brazilian women. Cancer Epidemiol Biomarkers Prev. 2000;9(11):1183–91.
146. Torgerson SR, Haddad RY, Atallah E. Chronic myelogenous leukemia for primary care physicians. Dis Mon. 2012;58(4):168–76.
147. Yan WH. HLA-G expression in cancers: potential role in diagnosis, prognosis and therapy. Endocr Metab Immune Disord Drug Targets. 2011;11(1):76–89.
148. Zhang Y, Yu S, Han Y, Wang Y, Sun Y. Human leukocyte antigen-G expression and polymorphisms promote cancer development and guide cancer diagnosis/treatment. Oncol Lett. 2018;15(1):699–709.
149. Zeng XC, Zhang T, Huang DH, Wang GY, Chen W, Li H, et al. RNA interfering targeting human leukocyte antigen-G enhanced immune surveillance mediated by the natural killer cells on hepatocellular carcinoma. Ann Clin Lab Sci. 2013;43(2):135–44.
150. Agaugue S, Carosella ED, Rouas-Freiss N. Role of HLA-G in tumor escape through expansion of myeloid-derived suppressor cells and cytokinic balance in favor of Th2 versus Th1/Th17. Blood. 2011;117(26):7021–31.
151. Chowell D, Morris LGT, Grigg CM, Weber JK, Samstein RM, Makarov V, et al. Patient HLA class I genotype influences cancer response to checkpoint blockade immunotherapy. Science (New York, NY). 2018;359(6375):582–7.
152. Muller M, Gfeller D, Coukos G, Bassani-Sternberg M. 'Hotspots' of antigen presentation revealed by human leukocyte antigen ligandomics for neoantigen prioritization. Front Immunol. 2017;8:1367.
153. Liu Z, Zhao Y, Fang J, Cui R, Xiao Y, Xu Q. SHP2 negatively regulates HLA-ABC and PD-L1 expression via STAT1 phosphorylation in prostate cancer cells. Oncotarget. 2017;8(32):53518–30.
154. Ahirwar DK, Manchanda PK, Mittal RD, Bid HK. BCG response prediction with cytokine gene variants and bladder cancer: where we are? J Cancer Res Clin Oncol. 2011;137(12):1729–38.
155. Wang N, Zhou R, Wang C, Guo X, Chen Z, Yang S, et al. 251 T/A polymorphism of the interleukin-8 gene and cancer risk: a HuGE review and meta-analysis based on 42 case-control studies. Mol Biol Rep. 2012;39(3):2831–41.
156. Xu J, Yin Z, Cao S, Gao W, Liu L, Yin Y, et al. Systematic review and meta-analysis on the association between IL-1B polymorphisms and cancer risk. PLoS One. 2013;8(5):e63654.
157. Basturk B, Yavascaoglu I, Oral B, Goral G, Oktay B. Cytokine gene polymorphisms can alter the effect of bacillus Calmette-Guerin (BCG) immunotherapy. Cytokine. 2006;35(1–2):1–5.
158. Yu KD, Di GH, Fan L, Chen AX, Yang C, Shao ZM. Lack of an association between a functional polymorphism in the interleukin-6 gene promoter and breast cancer risk: a meta-analysis involving 25,703 subjects. Breast Cancer Res Treat. 2010;122(2):483–8.

159. Song X, Voronov E, Dvorkin T, Fima E, Cagnano E, Benharroch D, et al. Differential effects of IL-1 alpha and IL-1 beta on tumorigenicity patterns and invasiveness. J Immunol. 2003;171(12):6448–56.
160. Apte RN, Dotan S, Elkabets M, White MR, Reich E, Carmi Y, et al. The involvement of IL-1 in tumorigenesis, tumor invasiveness, metastasis and tumor-host interactions. Cancer Metastasis Rev. 2006;25(3):387–408.
161. SNP FAQ Archive [Internet]. Bethesda: National Center for Biotechnology Information (US); 2005. Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/books/NBK3848/.
162. Cariaso M, Lennon G. SNPedia: a wiki supporting personal genome annotation, interpretation and analysis. Nucleic Acids Res. 2012;40(Database issue):D1308–12.
163. El-Omar EM, Rabkin CS, Gammon MD, Vaughan TL, Risch HA, Schoenberg JB, et al. Increased risk of noncardia gastric cancer associated with proinflammatory cytokine gene polymorphisms. Gastroenterology. 2003;124(5):1193–201.
164. Al-Moundhri MS, Alkindy M, Al-Nabhani M, Al-Bahrani B, Burney IA, Al-Habsi H, et al. Combined polymorphism analysis of glutathione S-transferase M1/G1 and interleukin-1B (IL-1B)/interleukin 1-receptor antagonist (IL-1RN) and gastric cancer risk in an Omani Arab population. J Clin Gastroenterol. 2009;43(2):152–6.
165. Kupcinskas L, Wex T, Kupcinskas J, Leja M, Ivanauskas A, Jonaitis LV, et al. Interleukin-1B and interleukin-1 receptor antagonist gene polymorphisms are not associated with premalignant gastric conditions: a combined haplotype analysis. Eur J Gastroenterol Hepatol. 2010;22(10):1189–95.
166. Vincenzi B, Patti G, Galluzzo S, Pantano F, Venditti O, Santini D, et al. Interleukin 1beta-511T gene (IL1beta) polymorphism is correlated with gastric cancer in the Caucasian population: results from a meta-analysis. Oncol Rep. 2008;20(5):1213–20.
167. Chen B, Luo MX, Zhou X, Lv Y, Su GQ. Correlation between Interleukin-1beta-511 C/T polymorphism and gastric cancer in Chinese populations: a meta-analysis. Med Sci Monit. 2016;22:1742–50.
168. Park MJ, Hyun MH, Yang JP, Yoon JM, Park S. Effects of the interleukin-1beta-511 C/T gene polymorphism on the risk of gastric cancer in the context of the relationship between race and H. pylori infection: a meta-analysis of 20,000 subjects. Mol Biol Rep. 2015;42(1):119–34.
169. Wu S, Hu G, Chen J, Xie G. Interleukin 1beta and interleukin 1 receptor antagonist gene polymorphisms and cervical cancer: a meta-analysis. Int J Gynecol Cancer. 2014;24(6):984–90.
170. Lee YH, Song GG. A meta-analysis of the association between CTLA-4 +49 A/G, −318 C/T, and IL-1 polymorphisms and susceptibility to cervical cancer. Neoplasma. 2014;61(4):481–90.
171. Xu H, Ding Q, Jiang HW. Genetic polymorphism of interleukin-1A (IL-1A), IL-1B, and IL-1 receptor antagonist (IL-1RN) and prostate cancer risk. Asian Pac J Cancer Prev. 2014;15(20):8741–7.
172. Li C, Wang C. Current evidences on IL1B polymorphisms and lung cancer susceptibility: a meta-analysis. Tumour Biol. 2013;34(6):3477–82.
173. Peng WJ, He Q, Yang JX, Wang BX, Lu MM, Wang S, et al. Meta-analysis of association between cytokine gene polymorphisms and lung cancer risk. Mol Biol Rep. 2012;39(5):5187–94.
174. Jin F, Xiong WJ, Jing JC, Feng Z, Qu LS, Shen XZ. Evaluation of the association studies of single nucleotide polymorphisms and hepatocellular carcinoma: a systematic review. J Cancer Res Clin Oncol. 2011;137(7):1095–104.
175. Zhang Y, Liu C, Peng H, Zhang J, Feng Q. IL1 receptor antagonist gene IL1-RN variable number of tandem repeats polymorphism and cancer risk: a literature review and meta-analysis. PLoS One. 2012;7(9):e46017.
176. Xue H, Lin B, Ni P, Xu H, Huang G. Interleukin-1B and interleukin-1 RN polymorphisms and gastric carcinoma risk: a meta-analysis. J Gastroenterol Hepatol. 2010;25(10):1604–17.
177. Camargo MC, Mera R, Correa P, Peek RM Jr, Fontham ET, Goodman KJ, et al. Interleukin-1beta and interleukin-1 receptor antagonist gene polymorphisms and gastric cancer: a meta-analysis. Cancer Epidemiol Biomarkers Prev. 2006;15(9):1674–87.
178. Loh M, Koh KX, Yeo BH, Song CM, Chia KS, Zhu F, et al. Meta-analysis of genetic polymorphisms and gastric cancer risk: variability in associations according to race. Eur J Cancer. 2009;45(14):2562–8.
179. Ying HY, Yu BW, Yang Z, Yang SS, Bo LH, Shan XY, et al. Interleukin-1B 31 C>T polymorphism combined with Helicobacter pylori-modified gastric cancer susceptibility: evidence from 37 studies. J Cell Mol Med. 2016;20(3):526–36.
180. Yang Y, Luo C, Feng R, Bi S. The TNF-alpha, IL-1B and IL-10 polymorphisms and risk for hepatocellular carcinoma: a meta-analysis. J Cancer Res Clin Oncol. 2011;137(6):947–52.
181. Witkin SS, Gerber S, Ledger WJ. Influence of interleukin-1 receptor antagonist gene polymorphism on disease. Clin Infect Dis. 2002;34(2):204–9.
182. Seno H, Satoh K, Tsuji S, Shiratsuchi T, Harada Y, Hamajima N, et al. Novel interleukin-4 and interleukin-1 receptor antagonist gene variations associated with non-cardia gastric cancer in Japan: comprehensive analysis of 207 polymorphisms of 11 cytokine genes. J Gastroenterol Hepatol. 2007;22(5):729–37.
183. Glas J, Torok HP, Schneider A, Brunnler G, Kopp R, Albert ED, et al. Allele 2 of the interleukin-1 receptor antagonist gene is associated with early gastric cancer. J Clin Oncol Off J Am Soc Clin Oncol. 2004;22(23):4746–52.
184. Prokopchuk O, Liu Y, Henne-Bruns D, Kornmann M. Interleukin-4 enhances proliferation of human pancreatic cancer cells: evidence for autocrine and paracrine actions. Br J Cancer. 2005;92(5):921–8.

185. Nagai S, Toi M. Interleukin-4 and breast cancer. Breast Cancer. 2000;7(3):181–6.
186. Sugimoto M, Yamaoka Y, Furuta T. Influence of interleukin polymorphisms on development of gastric cancer and peptic ulcer. World J Gastroenterol. 2010;16(10):1188–200.
187. Zhang J, Xie D, Zhou H, Fan R, Zhang L, Li C, et al. The -590C/T polymorphism in the IL-4 gene and the risk of cancer: a meta-analysis. Tumour Biol. 2013;34(4):2261–8.
188. Li Q, Wang Q, Xu X, Ren S, Wang L. Association between IL-4 -589C>T polymorphism and colorectal cancer risk. Tumour Biol. 2014;35(3):2675–9.
189. Chen P, Chen C, Chen K, Xu T, Luo C. Polymorphisms in IL-4/IL-13 pathway genes and glioma risk: an updated meta-analysis. Tumour Biol. 2015;36(1):121–7.
190. Zhenzhen L, Xianghua L, Qingwei W, Zhan G, Ning S. Three common polymorphisms in the IL-4 gene and cancer risk: a meta-analysis involving 5,392 cases and 6,930 controls. Tumour Biol. 2013;34(4):2215–24.
191. Sun Z, Cui Y, Jin X, Pei J. Association between IL-4 -590C>T polymorphism and gastric cancer risk. Tumour Biol. 2014;35(2):1517–21.
192. Cho YA, Kim J. Association of IL4, IL13, and IL4R polymorphisms with gastrointestinal cancer risk: a meta-analysis. J Epidemiol. 2017;27(5):215–20.
193. Jia Y, Xie X, Shi X, Li S. Associations of common IL-4 gene polymorphisms with cancer risk: a meta-analysis. Mol Med Rep. 2017;16(2):1927–45.
194. Waldner MJ, Foersch S, Neurath MF. Interleukin-6--a key regulator of colorectal cancer development. Int J Biol Sci. 2012;8(9):1248–53.
195. Pantsulaia I, Trofimov S, Kobyliansky E, Livshits G. Genetic and environmental influences on IL-6 and TNF-alpha plasma levels in apparently healthy general population. Cytokine. 2002;19(3):138–46.
196. Smith AJ, D'Aiuto F, Palmen J, Cooper JA, Samuel J, Thompson S, et al. Association of serum interleukin-6 concentration with a functional IL6 -6331T>C polymorphism. Clin Chem. 2008;54(5):841–50.
197. Brull DJ, Montgomery HE, Sanders J, Dhamrait S, Luong L, Rumley A, et al. Interleukin-6 gene -174g>c and -572g>c promoter polymorphisms are strong predictors of plasma interleukin-6 levels after coronary artery bypass surgery. Arterioscler Thromb Vasc Biol. 2001;21(9):1458–63.
198. Boiardi L, Casali B, Farnetti E, Pipitone N, Nicoli D, Cantini F, et al. Relationship between interleukin 6 promoter polymorphism at position −174, IL-6 serum levels, and the risk of relapse/recurrence in polymyalgia rheumatica. J Rheumatol. 2006;33(4):703–8.
199. Ravaglia G, Forti P, Maioli F, Chiappelli M, Dolzani P, Martelli M, et al. Associations of the −174 G/C interleukin-6 gene promoter polymorphism with serum interleukin 6 and mortality in the elderly. Biogerontology. 2005;6(6):415–23.
200. Malarstig A, Wallentin L, Siegbahn A. Genetic variation in the interleukin-6 gene in relation to risk and outcomes in acute coronary syndrome. Thromb Res. 2007;119(4):467–73.
201. Fishman D, Faulds G, Jeffery R, Mohamed-Ali V, Yudkin JS, Humphries S, et al. The effect of novel polymorphisms in the interleukin-6 (IL-6) gene on IL-6 transcription and plasma IL-6 levels, and an association with systemic-onset juvenile chronic arthritis. J Clin Invest. 1998;102(7):1369–76.
202. Ziakas PD, Karsaliakos P, Prodromou ML, Mylonakis E. Interleukin-6 polymorphisms and hematologic malignancy: a re-appraisal of evidence from genetic association studies. Biomarkers. 2013;18(7):625–31.
203. Joshi N, Kannan S, Kotian N, Bhat S, Kale M, Hake S. Interleukin 6 -174G>C polymorphism and cancer risk: meta-analysis reveals a site dependent differential influence in ancestral north Indians. Hum Immunol. 2014;75(8):901–8.
204. Yu Y, Wang W, Zhai S, Dang S, Sun M. IL6 gene polymorphisms and susceptibility to colorectal cancer: a meta-analysis and review. Mol Biol Rep. 2012;39(8):8457–63.
205. Hu JJ, Wang ZT, Zhong J. Lack of association between the interleukin 6 gene −174G>C polymorphism and colorectal cancer: evidence from a meta-analysis. Genet Mol Res. 2013;12(3):2205–14.
206. Wu M, Cao Y, Liu YL, Ma LL, Yang XH. Meta-analysis of the correlation between interleukin-6 promoter polymorphism -174G/C and Interferon Regulatory Factor 4 rs12203592 polymorphism with skin cancer susceptibility. Am J Ther. 2016;23(6):e1758–e67.
207. Wang S, Zhang W. Genetic variants in IL-6/JAK/STAT3 pathway and the risk of CRC. Tumour Biol. 2016;37(5):6561–9.
208. Tian G, Mi J, Wei X, Zhao D, Qiao L, Yang C, et al. Circulating interleukin-6 and cancer: a meta-analysis using Mendelian randomization. Sci Rep. 2015;5:11394.
209. Liu Y, Gao SJ, Du BX, Wang JJ. Association of IL-6 polymorphisms with hepatocellular carcinoma risk: evidences from a meta-analysis. Tumour Biol. 2014;35(4):3551–61.
210. Yin YW, Sun QQ, Hu AM, Wang Q, Liu HL, Hou ZZ, et al. Associations between interleukin-6 gene -174 C/G and −572 C/G polymorphisms and the risk of gastric cancer: a meta-analysis. J Surg Oncol. 2012;106(8):987–93.
211. Wang J, He W, Liu J, Nong L, Wei Y, Yang F. Association of IL-6 polymorphisms with gastric cancer risk: evidences from a meta-analysis. Cytokine. 2012;59(1):176–83.
212. Liu Y, Song XL, Zhang GL, Peng AM, Fu PF, Li P, et al. Lack of association between IL-6 -174G>C polymorphism and lung cancer: a meta-analysis. Genet Mol Res. 2015;14(1):163–9.
213. Wang W, Chen J, Zhao F, Zhang B, Yu H. Lack of association between a functional polymorphism

(rs1800796) in the interleukin-6 gene promoter and lung cancer. Diagn Pathol. 2014;9:134.
214. Zhao Q, Zhang B, Chen Y, Li M, Zhao X, Fan H, et al. Association of the interleukin-6 gene -572G/C polymorphism with cancer risk: a meta-analysis. Genet Mol Res. 2015;14(4):16921–8.
215. Du Y, Gao L, Zhang K, Wang J. Association of the IL6 polymorphism rs1800796 with cancer risk: a meta-analysis. Genet Mol Res. 2015;14(4):13236–46.
216. Magalhaes JF, Cortinhas AJ, Albuquerque CM, Baptista CS, Ribeiro R, Viegas C, et al. Interleukin-6 gene -174G>C and -636G>C promoter polymorphisms and prostate cancer risk. Mol Biol Rep. 2013;40(1):449–55.
217. Lee WP, Tai DI, Lan KH, Li AF, Hsu HC, Lin EJ, et al. The -251T allele of the interleukin-8 promoter is associated with increased risk of gastric carcinoma featuring diffuse-type histopathology in Chinese population. Clin Cancer Res. 2005;11(18):6431–41.
218. Ahirwar DK, Mandhani A, Mittal RD. IL-8 -251 T > A polymorphism is associated with bladder cancer susceptibility and outcome after BCG immunotherapy in a northern Indian cohort. Arch Med Res. 2010;41(2):97–103.
219. Gao LB, Pan XM, Jia J, Liang WB, Rao L, Xue H, et al. IL-8 -251A/T polymorphism is associated with decreased cancer risk among population-based studies: evidence from a meta-analysis. Eur J Cancer. 2010;46(8):1333–43.
220. Wang Z, Liu Y, Yang L, Yin S, Zang R, Yang G. The polymorphism interleukin-8 -251A/T is associated with a significantly increased risk of cancers from a meta-analysis. Tumour Biol. 2014;35(7):7115–23.
221. Wang Z, Wang C, Zhao Z, Liu F, Guan X, Lin X, et al. Association between -251A>T polymorphism in the interleukin-8 gene and oral cancer risk: a meta-analysis. Gene. 2013;522(2):168–76.
222. Huang Q, Wang C, Qiu LJ, Shao F, Yu JH. IL-8-251A>T polymorphism is associated with breast cancer risk: a meta-analysis. J Cancer Res Clin Oncol. 2011;137(7):1147–50.
223. Gao P, Zhao H, You J, Jing F, Hu Y. Association between interleukin-8 -251A/T polymorphism and risk of lung cancer: a meta-analysis. Cancer Investig. 2014;32(10):518–25.
224. Wang XB, Li YS, Li J, Han Y, Liu ZD. Interleukin-8 -251A/T gene polymorphism and lung cancer susceptibility: a meta-analysis. J Cell Mol Med. 2015;19(6):1218–22.
225. Xue H, Liu J, Lin B, Wang Z, Sun J, Huang G. A meta-analysis of interleukin-8 -251 promoter polymorphism associated with gastric cancer risk. PLoS One. 2012;7(1):e28083.
226. Yang L, Zhu X, Liang X, Ling Z, Li R. Association of IL-8-251A>T polymorphisms with oral cancer risk: evidences from a meta-analysis. Tumour Biol. 2014;35(9):9211–8.
227. Hu LX, Du YY, Zhang Y, Pan YY. Lack of association between interleukin-8-251 T>A polymorphism and colorectal cancer risk: a meta-analysis based on 3,019 cases and 3,984 controls. Asian Pac J Cancer Prev. 2012;13(10):5075–9.
228. Ng TH, Britton GJ, Hill EV, Verhagen J, Burton BR, Wraith DC. Regulation of adaptive immunity; the role of interleukin-10. Front Immunol. 2013;4:129.
229. Pan F, Tian J, Pan YY, Zhang Y. Association of IL-10-1082 promoter polymorphism with susceptibility to gastric cancer: evidence from 22 case-control studies. Mol Biol Rep. 2012;39(6):7143–54.
230. Westendorp RG, Langermans JA, Huizinga TW, Elouali AH, Verweij CL, Boomsma DI, et al. Genetic influence on cytokine production and fatal meningococcal disease. Lancet. 1997;349(9046):170–3.
231. Zou YF, Wang F, Feng XL, Tian YH, Tao JH, Pan FM, et al. Lack of association of IL-10 gene polymorphisms with prostate cancer: evidence from 11,581 subjects. Eur J Cancer. 2011;47(7):1072–9.
232. Ding Q, Shi Y, Fan B, Fan Z, Ding L, Li F, et al. The interleukin-10 promoter polymorphism rs1800872 (-592C>A), contributes to cancer susceptibility: meta-analysis of 16,785 cases and 19,713 controls. PLoS One. 2013;8(2):e57246.
233. Ni J, Ye Y, Teng F, Interleukin WQ. 10 polymorphisms and cervical cancer risk: a meta-analysis. Int J Gynecol Cancer. 2013;23(1):126–33.
234. Cao HY, Zou P, Zhou H. Genetic association of interleukin-10 promoter polymorphisms and susceptibility to diffuse large B-cell lymphoma: a meta-analysis. Gene. 2013;519(2):288–94.
235. Xue H, Lin B, An J, Zhu Y, Huang G. Interleukin-10-819 promoter polymorphism in association with gastric cancer risk. BMC Cancer. 2012;12:102.
236. Cui X, Huang Q, Li X, Liu F, Wang D, Yan D, et al. Relationship between Interleukin-10 gene C-819T polymorphism and gastric cancer risk: insights from a meta-analysis. Med Sci Monit. 2016;22:2839–45.
237. Niu YM, Du XY, Cai HX, Zhang C, Yuan RX, Zeng XT, et al. Increased risks between Interleukin-10 gene polymorphisms and haplotype and head and neck cancer: a meta-analysis. Sci Rep. 2015;5:17149.
238. Ni P, Xu H, Xue H, Lin B, Lu Y. A meta-analysis of interleukin-10-1082 promoter polymorphism associated with gastric cancer risk. DNA Cell Biol. 2012;31(4):582–91.
239. Yu YF, Han ZG, Guo WB, Zhang GJ, Yang JK, Wu FL, et al. Interleukin-10 polymorphisms and nasopharyngeal carcinoma risk: a meta-analysis. Genet Mol Res. 2015;14(4):18945–57.
240. Zhang Y, Xia ZG, Zhu JH, Chen MB, Wang TM, Shen WX, et al. Association of Interleukin-10 -3575T>A and -1082A>G polymorphisms with non-Hodgkin lymphoma susceptibility: a comprehensive review and meta-analysis. Mol Genet Genom. 2015;290(6):2063–73.
241. Dai ZM, Liu J, Cao XM, Zhang Y, Wang M, Liu XH, et al. Association between interleukin-10-3575T>A (rs1800890) polymorphism and cancer risk. Genet Test Mol Biomarkers. 2015;19(6):324–30.

242. Yu Z, Liu Q, Huang C, Wu M, Li G. The interleukin 10 -819C/T polymorphism and cancer risk: a HuGE review and meta-analysis of 73 studies including 15,942 cases and 22,336 controls. Omics. 2013;17(4):200–14.
243. Zhu Y, Wang J, He Q, Zhang JQ. The association between interleukin-10-592 polymorphism and gastric cancer risk: a meta-analysis. Med Oncol. 2011;28(1):133–6.
244. Li C, Tong W, Liu B, Zhang A, Li F. The −1082A>G polymorphism in promoter region of interleukin-10 and risk of digestive cancer: a meta-analysis. Sci Rep. 2014;4:5335.
245. Qi M, Liu DM, Pan LL, Lin YX. Interleukin-10 gene -592C>A polymorphism and susceptibility to gastric cancer. Genet Mol Res. 2014;13(4):8954–61.
246. Shao N, Xu B, Mi YY, Hua LX. IL-10 polymorphisms and prostate cancer risk: a meta-analysis. Prostate Cancer Prostatic Dis. 2011;14(2):129–35.
247. Yu KD, Chen AX, Yang C, Fan L, Huang AJ, Shao ZM. The associations between two polymorphisms in the interleukin-10 gene promoter and breast cancer risk. Breast Cancer Res Treat. 2012;131(1):27–31.
248. Zhang S, Kong YL, Li YL, Yin YW. Interleukin-10 gene -1082 G/A polymorphism in cervical cancer and cervical intraepithelial neoplasia: meta-analysis. J Int Med Res. 2014;42(6):1193–201.
249. Del Vecchio M, Bajetta E, Canova S, Lotze MT, Wesa A, Parmiani G, et al. Interleukin-12: biological properties and clinical application. Clin Cancer Res. 2007;13(16):4677–85.
250. Engel MA, Neurath MF. Anticancer properties of the IL-12 family--focus on colorectal cancer. Curr Med Chem. 2010;17(29):3303–8.
251. Zhou L, Yao F, Luan H, Wang Y, Dong X, Zhou W, et al. Functional polymorphisms in the interleukin-12 gene contribute to cancer risk: evidence from a meta-analysis of 18 case-control studies. Gene. 2012;510(1):71–7.
252. Chen H, Cheng S, Wang J, Cao C, Bunjhoo H, Xiong W, et al. Interleukin-12B rs3212227 polymorphism and cancer risk: a meta-analysis. Mol Biol Rep. 2012;39(12):10235–42.
253. Liu L, Xu Y, Liu Z, Chen J, Zhang Y, Zhu J, et al. IL12 polymorphisms, HBV infection and risk of hepatocellular carcinoma in a high-risk Chinese population. Int J Cancer. 2011;128(7):1692–6.
254. Yang Y, Feng R, Bi S, Xu Y. TNF-alpha polymorphisms and breast cancer. Breast Cancer Res Treat. 2011;129(2):513–9.
255. Pan F, Tian J, Ji CS, He YF, Han XH, Wang Y, et al. Association of TNF-alpha-308 and -238 polymorphisms with risk of cervical cancer: a meta-analysis. Asian Pac J Cancer Prev. 2012;13(11):5777–83.
256. Ding B, Fu S, Wang M, Yue C, Wang W, Zhou D, et al. Tumor necrosis factor alpha −308 G>A polymorphisms and cervical cancer risk: a meta-analysis. Int J Gynecolog Cancer. 2012;22(2):213–9.
257. Liu L, Yang X, Chen X, Kan T, Shen Y, Chen Z, et al. Association between TNF-alpha polymorphisms and cervical cancer risk: a meta-analysis. Mol Biol Rep. 2012;39(3):2683–8.
258. Fang F, Yao L, Yu XJ, Yu L, Wu Q, Yu L. 308 TNFalpha-G/A polymorphism is associated with breast cancer risk: a meta-analysis involving 10,184 cases and 12,911 controls. Breast Cancer Res Treat. 2010;122(1):267–71.
259. Warzocha K, Ribeiro P, Bienvenu J, Roy P, Charlot C, Rigal D, et al. Genetic polymorphisms in the tumor necrosis factor locus influence non-Hodgkin's lymphoma outcome. Blood. 1998;91(10):3574–81.
260. Hou L, El-Omar EM, Chen J, Grillo P, Rabkin CS, Baccarelli A, et al. Polymorphisms in Th1-type cell-mediated response genes and risk of gastric cancer. Carcinogenesis. 2007;28(1):118–23.
261. Seidemann K, Zimmermann M, Book M, Meyer U, Burkhardt B, Welte K, et al. Tumor necrosis factor and lymphotoxin alfa genetic polymorphisms and outcome in pediatric patients with non-Hodgkin's lymphoma: results from Berlin-Frankfurt-Munster Trial NHL-BFM 95. J Clin Oncol Off J Am Soc Clin Oncol. 2005;23(33):8414–21.
262. Juszczynski P, Kalinka E, Bienvenu J, Woszczek G, Borowiec M, Robak T, et al. Human leukocyte antigens class II and tumor necrosis factor genetic polymorphisms are independent predictors of non-Hodgkin lymphoma outcome. Blood. 2002;100(8):3037–40.
263. Higuchi T, Seki N, Kamizono S, Yamada A, Kimura A, Kato H, et al. Polymorphism of the 5'-flanking region of the human tumor necrosis factor (TNF)-alpha gene in Japanese. Tissue Antigens. 1998;51(6):605–12.
264. Ahirwar DK, Mandhani A, Dharaskar A, Kesarwani P, Mittal RD. Association of tumour necrosis factor-alpha gene (T-1031C, C-863A, and C-857T) polymorphisms with bladder cancer susceptibility and outcome after bacille Calmette-Guerin immunotherapy. BJU Int. 2009;104(6):867–73.
265. Wei Y, Liu F, Li B, Chen X, Ma Y, Yan L, et al. Polymorphisms of tumor necrosis factor-alpha and hepatocellular carcinoma risk: a HuGE systematic review and meta-analysis. Dig Dis Sci. 2011;56(8):2227–36.
266. Pociot F, Briant L, Jongeneel CV, Molvig J, Worsaae H, Abbal M, et al. Association of tumor necrosis factor (TNF) and class II major histocompatibility complex alleles with the secretion of TNF-alpha and TNF-beta by human mononuclear cells: a possible link to insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus. Eur J Immunol. 1993;23(1):224–31.
267. Messer G, Spengler U, Jung MC, Honold G, Blomer K, Pape GR, et al. Polymorphic structure of the tumor necrosis factor (TNF) locus: an NcoI polymorphism in the first intron of the human TNF-beta gene correlates with a variant amino acid in position 26 and a reduced level of TNF-beta production. J Exp Med. 1991;173(1):209–19.

268. Zhou P, Lv GQ, Wang JZ, Li CW, Du LF, Zhang C, et al. The TNF-alpha-238 polymorphism and cancer risk: a meta-analysis. PLoS One. 2011;6(7): e22092.
269. Gaudet MM, Milne RL, Cox A, Camp NJ, Goode EL, Humphreys MK, et al. Five polymorphisms and breast cancer risk: results from the Breast Cancer Association Consortium. Cancer Epidemiol Biomarkers Prev. 2009;18(5):1610–6.
270. Li HH, Zhu H, Liu LS, Huang Y, Guo J, Li J, et al. Tumour necrosis factor-alpha gene polymorphism is associated with metastasis in patients with triple negative breast cancer. Sci Rep. 2015;5:10244.
271. Jin G, Zhao Y, Sun S, Kang H. Association between the tumor necrosis factor alpha gene -308G> A polymorphism and the risk of breast cancer: a meta-analysis. Tumour Biol. 2014;35(12):12091–8.
272. Jin Y. Association of single nucleotide polymorphisms in tumor necrosis factor-alpha with cervical cancer susceptibility. Cell Biochem Biophys. 2015;71(1):77–84.
273. Xiao Q, Fu B, Chen P, Liu ZZ, Wang W, Ye Q. Three polymorphisms of tumor necrosis factor-alpha and hepatitis B virus related hepatocellular carcinoma: a meta-analysis. Medicine. 2016;95(50):e5609.
274. Guo XF, Wang J, Yu SJ, Song J, Ji MY, Cao Z, et al. TNF-alpha-308 polymorphism and risk of digestive system cancers: a meta-analysis. World J Gastroenterol. 2013;19(48):9461–71.
275. Gorouhi F, Islami F, Bahrami H, Kamangar F. Tumour-necrosis factor-A polymorphisms and gastric cancer risk: a meta-analysis. Br J Cancer. 2008;98(8):1443–51.
276. Yang JP, Hyun MH, Yoon JM, Park MJ, Kim D, Park S. Association between TNF-alpha-308 G/A gene polymorphism and gastric cancer risk: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Cytokine. 2014;70(2):104–14.
277. Zhang J, Dou C, Song Y, Ji C, Gu S, Xie Y, et al. Polymorphisms of tumor necrosis factor-alpha are associated with increased susceptibility to gastric cancer: a meta-analysis. J Hum Genet. 2008;53(6):479–89.
278. Zhu F, Zhao H, Tian X, Meng X. Association between tumor necrosis factor-alpha rs1800629 polymorphism and risk of gastric cancer: a meta-analysis. Tumour Biol. 2014;35(3):1799–803.
279. Min L, Chen D, Qu L, Shou C. Tumor necrosis factor-a polymorphisms and colorectal cancer risk: a meta-analysis. PLoS One. 2014;9(1):e85187.
280. Wang J, Jin X, Wang H, Yang J, Wang L, Lei L, et al. The -308G/A polymorphism of the tumor necrosis factor-alpha gene is associated with the risk of upper aerodigestive tract cancer: a meta-analysis. Tohoku J Exp Med. 2013;229(4):245–54.
281. Chen FC, Zhang F, Zhang ZJ, Meng SY, Wang Y, Xiang XR, et al. Tumor necrosis factor-alpha gene polymorphisms and risk of oral cancer: evidence from a meta-analysis. Asian Pac J Cancer Prev. 2013;14(12):7243–9.
282. Cai J, Yang MY, Hou N, Li X. Association of tumor necrosis factor-alpha 308G/A polymorphism with urogenital cancer risk: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Genet Mol Res. 2015;14(4): 16102–12.
283. He YQ, Zhu JH, Huang SY, Cui Z, He J, Jia WH. The association between the polymorphisms of TNF-alpha and non-Hodgkin lymphoma: a meta-analysis. Tumour Biol. 2014;35(12):12509–17.
284. Yang C, Wang W, Zi Y, Han X, Qin X, Li J, et al. Association between tumor necrosis factor-alpha gene polymorphisms and diffuse large B-cell lymphoma in Chinese Han population: evidence from two center case-control study and a meta-analysis. Int J Clin Exp Pathol. 2015;8(10):13011–22.
285. Liu N, Liu GJ, Liu J. Genetic association between TNF-alpha promoter polymorphism and susceptibility to squamous cell carcinoma, basal cell carcinoma, and melanoma: a meta-analysis. Oncotarget. 2017;8(32):53873–85.
286. Xie H, Yao H, Huo Y, Li N, Cheng Y. Association between TNF-alpha gene 308G>A polymorphism and lung cancer risk: a meta-analysis. Tumour Biol. 2014;35(10):9693–9.
287. Ma L, Zhao J, Li T, He Y, Wang J, Xie L, et al. Association between tumor necrosis factor-alpha gene polymorphisms and prostate cancer risk: a meta-analysis. Diagn Pathol. 2014;9:74.
288. Cheng K, Zhao YJ, Liu L, Wan JJ. Tumor necrosis factor-alpha 238 G/A polymorphism and risk of hepatocellular carcinoma: evidence from a meta-analysis. Asian Pac J Cancer Prev. 2013;14(5):3275–9.
289. Hui M, Yan X, Jiang Y. The tumor necrosis factor-alpha-238 polymorphism and digestive system cancer risk: a meta-analysis. Clin Exp Med. 2016;16(3):367–74.
290. Yu JY, Li L, Ma H, Liu K, Cheng X, Li YL, et al. Tumor necrosis factor-alpha 238 G/A polymorphism and gastric cancer risk: a meta-analysis. Tumour Biol. 2013;34(6):3859–63.
291. Cen G, Wu W. Association between tumor necrosis factor-alpha 857C/T polymorphism and gastric cancer: a meta-analysis. Tumour Biol. 2013;34(6):3383–8.
292. Wang P, Wang J, Yu M, Li Z. Tumor necrosis factor-alpha T-857C (rs1799724) polymorphism and risk of cancers: a meta-analysis. Dis Markers. 2016;2016:4580323.
293. Shen C, Sun H, Sun D, Xu L, Zhang X, Liu A, et al. Polymorphisms of tumor necrosis factor-alpha and breast cancer risk: a meta-analysis. Breast Cancer Res Treat. 2011;126(3):763–70.
294. Zhang Q, Zhao GS, Yuan XL, Li XH, Yang Z, Cui YF, et al. Tumor necrosis factor alpha-238G/A polymorphism and risk of breast cancer: an update by meta-analysis. Medicine. 2017;96(29):e7442.
295. Zhou P, Huang W, Chu X, Du LF, Li JP, Zhang C. The lymphotoxin-alpha 252A>G polymorphism and breast cancer: a meta-analysis. Asian Pac J Cancer Prev. 2012;13(5):1949–52.

296. Luo M, Yang Y, Luo D, Liu L, Zhang Y, Xiao F, et al. Tumor necrosis factor-alpha promoter polymorphism 308 G/A is not significantly associated with esophageal cancer risk: a meta-analysis. Oncotarget. 2016;7(48):79901–13.
297. Yuan C, Xu XH, Xu L, Liu Y, Sun M, Ni LH, et al. No association of TNF-alpha-308G/A polymorphisms with head and neck cancer risk: a PRISMA-compliant meta-analysis. Medicine. 2017;96(25):e7298.
298. Lu PH, Tang Y, Li C, Shen W, Ji L, Guo YJ, et al. Meta-analysis of association of tumor necrosis factor alpha-308 gene promoter polymorphism with gastric cancer. Zhonghua Yu Fang Yi Xue Za Zhi [Chin J Prev Med]. 2010;44(3):209–14.
299. Qin H, Liu B, Shi T, Liu Y, Sun Y, Ma Y. Tumour necrosis factor-alpha polymorphisms and hepatocellular carcinoma: a meta-analysis. J Int Med Res. 2010;38(3):760–8.
300. Guo YM, Wei WY, Shen XZ. Tumour necrosis factor 308 polymorphisms and hepatocellular carcinoma risk: a meta-analysis. Hepato-Gastroenterology. 2010;57(101):926–31.
301. Yang Z, Lv Y, Lv Y, Wang Y. Meta-analysis shows strong positive association of the TNF-alpha gene with tumor stage in bladder cancer. Urol Int. 2012;89(3):337–41.
302. Danforth KN, Rodriguez C, Hayes RB, Sakoda LC, Huang WY, Yu K, et al. TNF polymorphisms and prostate cancer risk. Prostate. 2008;68(4):400–7.
303. Skibola CF, Bracci PM, Nieters A, Brooks-Wilson A, de Sanjose S, Hughes AM, et al. Tumor necrosis factor (TNF) and lymphotoxin-alpha (LTA) polymorphisms and risk of non-Hodgkin lymphoma in the InterLymph Consortium. Am J Epidemiol. 2010;171(3):267–76.
304. Gong LL, Han FF, Lv YL, Liu H, Wan ZR, Zhang W, et al. TNF-alpha and LT-alpha polymorphisms and the risk of leukemia: a meta-analysis. Tumori. 2017;103(1):53–9.
305. Zhai K, Ding J, Zhou Y. Different role of tumor necrosis factor-alpha polymorphism in non-Hodgkin lymphomas among Caucasian and Asian populations: a meta-analysis. Int J Mol Sci. 2014;15(5):7684–98.
306. Yang L, Feng R, Liu G, Liao M, Zhang L, Wang W. TNF-beta +252 A>G polymorphism and susceptibility to cancer. J Cancer Res Clin Oncol. 2013;139(5):765–72.
307. Xu Z, Shi R, Zhang R, Zhang D, Wang L. Association between tumor necrosis factor beta 252 A/G polymorphism and risk of gastric cancer: a meta-analysis. Tumour Biol. 2013;34(6):4001–5.
308. Lu R, Dou X, Gao X, Zhang J, Ni J, Guo L. A functional polymorphism of lymphotoxin-alpha (LTA) gene rs909253 is associated with gastric cancer risk in an Asian population. Cancer Epidemiol. 2012;36(6):e380–6.
309. Mi YY, Yu QQ, Xu B, Zhang LF, Min ZC, Hua LX, et al. Interferon gamma +874 T/A polymorphism contributes to cancer susceptibility: a meta-analysis based on 17 case-control studies. Mol Biol Rep. 2011;38(7):4461–7.
310. Sun Y, Lu Y, Pen Q, Li T, Xie L, Deng Y, et al. Interferon gamma +874 T/A polymorphism increases the risk of cervical cancer: evidence from a meta-analysis. Tumour Biol. 2015;36(6):4555–64.
311. Zhou H, Wang L, Li X, Song J, Jiang T, Wu X, et al. Interferon-gamma +874A/T polymorphism and hepatocellular carcinoma risk: a meta-analysis. Med Sci Monit. 2015;21:689–93.
312. Ge YZ, Wang YD, Xu Z, Xu LW, Wang YP, Gu MH, et al. Lack of association between interferon gamma +874 T/A polymorphism and cancer risk: an updated meta-analysis. Tumour Biol. 2014;35(7):6405–14.
313. Wu Z, Sun Y, Zhu S, Tang S, Liu C, Qin W. Association of Interferon gamma +874T/A polymorphism and leukemia risk: a meta-analysis. Medicine (Baltimore). 2016;95(12):e3129.
314. Bierie B, Moses HL. Transforming growth factor beta (TGF-beta) and inflammation in cancer. Cytokine Growth Factor Rev. 2010;21(1):49–59.
315. Nagaraj NS, Datta PK. Targeting the transforming growth factor-beta signaling pathway in human cancer. Expert Opin Investig Drugs. 2010;19(1):77–91.
316. Jakowlew SB. Transforming growth factor-beta in cancer and metastasis. Cancer Metastasis Rev. 2006;25(3):435–57.
317. Le Marchand L, Haiman CA, van den Berg D, Wilkens LR, Kolonel LN, Henderson BE. T29C polymorphism in the transforming growth factor beta1 gene and postmenopausal breast cancer risk: the Multiethnic Cohort Study. Cancer Epidemiol Biomarkers Prev. 2004;13(3):412–5.
318. Gu D, Zhuang L, Huang H, Cao P, Wang D, Tang J, et al. TGFB1 T29C polymorphism and breast cancer risk: a meta-analysis based on 10,417 cases and 11,455 controls. Breast Cancer Res Treat. 2010;123(3):857–61.
319. Wei BB, Xi B, Wang R, Bai JM, Chang JK, Zhang YY, et al. TGFbeta1 T29C polymorphism and cancer risk: a meta-analysis based on 40 case-control studies. Cancer Genet Cytogenet. 2010;196(1):68–75.
320. Kaklamani VG, Baddi L, Liu J, Rosman D, Phukan S, Bradley C, et al. Combined genetic assessment of transforming growth factor-beta signaling pathway variants may predict breast cancer risk. Cancer Res. 2005;65(8):3454–61.
321. Qi X, Zhang F, Yang X, Fan L, Zhang Y, Chen L, et al. Transforming growth factor-beta1 polymorphisms and breast cancer risk: a meta-analysis based on 27 case-control studies. Breast Cancer Res Treat. 2010;122(1):273–9.
322. Cai Q, Tang Y, Zhang M, Shang Z, Li G, Tian J, et al. TGFbeta1 Leu10Pro polymorphism contributes to the development of prostate cancer: evidence from a meta-analysis. Tumour Biol. 2014;35(1):667–73.
323. Fan H, Yu H, Deng H, Chen X. Transforming growth factor-beta1 rs1800470 polymorphism is associated with lung cancer risk: a meta-analysis. Med Sci Monit. 2014;20:2358–62.

324. Chang WW, Zhang L, Su H, Yao YS. An updated meta-analysis of transforming growth factor-beta1 gene: three polymorphisms with gastric cancer. Tumour Biol. 2014;35(4):2837–44.
325. Fang F, Yu L, Zhong Y, Yao L. TGFB1 509 C/T polymorphism and colorectal cancer risk: a meta-analysis. Med Oncol. 2010;27(4):1324–8.
326. Wang Y, Yang H, Li L, Xia X. An updated meta-analysis on the association of TGF-beta1 gene promoter -509C/T polymorphism with colorectal cancer risk. Cytokine. 2013;61(1):181–7.
327. Ma X, Chen C, Xiong H, Li Y. Transforming growth factorbeta1 L10P variant plays an active role on the breast cancer susceptibility in Caucasian: evidence from 10,392 cases and 11,697 controls. Breast Cancer Res Treat. 2010;124(2):453–7.
328. Alqumber MA, Dar SA, Haque S, Wahid M, Singh R, Akhter N. No association of the TGF-beta1 29T/C polymorphism with breast cancer risk in Caucasian and Asian populations: evidence from a meta-analysis involving 55,841 subjects. Asian Pac J Cancer Prev. 2014;15(20):8725–34.
329. Huang Y, Li B, Qian J, Xie J, Yu L. TGF-beta1 29T/C polymorphism and breast cancer risk: a meta-analysis involving 25,996 subjects. Breast Cancer Res Treat. 2010;123(3):863–8.
330. Woo SU, Park KH, Woo OH, Yang DS, Kim AR, Lee ES, et al. Association of a TGF-beta1 gene −509 C/T polymorphism with breast cancer risk: a meta-analysis. Breast Cancer Res Treat. 2010;124(2):481–5.
331. Niu W, Qi Y, Gao P, Zhu D. Association of TGFB1 -509 C>T polymorphism with breast cancer: evidence from a meta-analysis involving 23,579 subjects. Breast Cancer Res Treat. 2010;124(1):243–9.
332. Wang Y, Chu X, Meng X, Zou F. Association of TGF-beta1-509C/T polymorphisms with breast cancer risk: evidence from an updated meta-analysis. Tumour Biol. 2014;35(2):935–42.
333. Deng Z, Yang Y, Huang X, Kuang Y, Qin Z, Wang B, et al. Polymorphisms of TGFbeta1T+869C and C-509T with lung cancer risk: a meta-analysis. Adv Clin Exp Med. 2016;25(6):1165–72.
334. Liu Y, Lin XF, Lin CJ, Jin SS, Wu JM. Transforming growth factor beta-1 C-509T polymorphism and cancer risk: a meta-analysis of 55 case-control studies. Asian Pac J Cancer Prev. 2012;13(9):4683–8.
335. Zhang JM, Cui XJ, Xia YQ, Guo S. Correlation between TGF-beta1-509 C>T polymorphism and risk of digestive tract cancer in a meta-analysis for 21,196 participants. Gene. 2012;505(1):66–74.

Epigenetics and MicroRNAs in Cancer

21

Petra M. Wise, Kishore B. Challagundla, and Muller Fabbri

Contents

21.1 Introduction

MicroRNAs (miRNAs) are small noncoding RNAs (ncRNAs) which regulate gene expression by directly binding mostly, but not exclusively, to the 3′-untranslated region (3′-UTR) of target mRNAs [1]. In 1993, Victor Ambros first identified a small ncRNA, called lin-4, able to regulate the expression of a gene called lin-14 involved in the development of *C. elegans* [2]. In 2001, Lagos-Quintana et al. [3] showed for the first time that many of these small ncRNAs (in the meantime called microRNAs) are present not only in invertebrates but also in vertebrates. In 2002, Croce's group provided the first evidence of miRNA involvement in cancer by showing that a specific cluster of miRNAs (namely, the miR-15a/16-1 cluster) is located in the frequently deleted chromosomal region 13q14 in chronic lymphocytic leukemia (CLL) [4]. In 2005, Frank Slack supported this molecular evidence of

P. M. Wise · K. B. Challagundla
Department of Pediatric Hematology/Oncology, Children's Center for Cancer and Blood Diseases, Norris Comprehensive Cancer Center, University of Southern California, Children's Hospital Los Angeles, Los Angeles, CA, USA

Department of Pediatric Hematology/Oncology, Children's Hospital Los Angeles, Los Angeles, CA, USA

M. Fabbri (✉)
Department of Pediatric Hematology/Oncology, Children's Center for Cancer and Blood Diseases, Norris Comprehensive Cancer Center, University of Southern California, Children's Hospital Los Angeles, Los Angeles, CA, USA

Department of Pediatric Hematology/Oncology, Children's Hospital Los Angeles, Los Angeles, CA, USA

Department of Molecular Microbiology and Immunology, Children's Hospital Los Angeles, Los Angeles, CA, USA
e-mail: mfabbri@chla.usc.edu

N. Rezaei (ed.), *Cancer Immunology*, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-30845-2_21

miRNA involvement by demonstrating that let-7 directly targets the *RAS* oncogene in lung cancer [5]. In the same year, Cimmino et al. [6] found that the miR-15a/16-1 cluster directly targets the antiapoptotic *BCL2* gene in human CLL. From this time on, we assist at a plethora of studies identifying dysregulation of miRNAs in almost all types of human cancers and unraveling their contribution to human carcinogenesis by identifying which genes are modulated by the dysregulated miRNAs. Overall, these studies clearly state that aberrancies of the miRNome (defined as the full spectrum of miRNAs in a specific genome) contribute to human cancer development and can be therapeutically targeted to restore miRNA expression to normal [7]. Moreover, it has become clearer that miRNA involvement goes beyond cancer, since they are involved in a variety of biological processes, spanning from development, differentiation, apoptosis, and proliferation to senescence and metabolism [8–13].

MiRNAs are genes, like any other *protein coding gene (PCG)*, transcribed by RNA polymerase II into a capped and polyadenylated precursor, called pri-miRNA [14, 15]. A double-stranded RNA-specific ribonuclease called Drosha, in conjunction with its binding partner DGCR8 (DiGeorge syndrome critical region gene 8, or Pasha), cleaves the pri-miRNA into a hairpin-shaped RNA precursor (pre-miRNA), about 70–100 nucleotides (nt) long [16]. Transferred to the cytoplasm by Exportin 5, the pre-miRNA is cleaved into an 18–24 nt duplex by a ribonucleoprotein complex, composed of a ribonuclease III (Dicer), and TRBP (HIV-1 transactivating response RNA binding protein). Finally, the duplex interacts with a large protein complex called RISC (RNA-induced silencing complex), which includes proteins of the Argonaute family (Ago1-4 in humans), which drives one strand of the duplex (the so-called mature miRNA) mainly, but not exclusively, to the 3′-UTR of the target mRNAs. Overall, miRNAs exert its effect by modulating the expression of the target mRNAs either by mRNA cleavage or by translational repression. In 2007, Vasudevan et al. [17] discovered that miRNAs can also increase the expression of target mRNAs. Each miRNA can target several different transcripts. For instance, it has been demonstrated that a cluster of two miRNAs (namely, miR-15a and miR-16) can affect the expression of about 14% of the human genome in a leukemic cell line [18]. In addition, the same mRNA can be targeted by several miRNAs [19].

Epigenetics is defined as all heritable changes in gene expression not associated with concomitant alterations in the DNA sequence. In a traditional sense, gene epigenetic regulation usually includes DNA promoter methylation and chromatin histone modifications which are catalyzed by specific enzymes, overall indicated as effectors of the epigenetic machinery. However, if we consider the above definition, also *miRNA* gene regulation sensu stricto represents a component of epigenetics. Interestingly, it has been discovered that there is a two-way correlation between miRNAs and other epigenetic mechanisms: miRNAs can regulate the expression of effectors of the epigenetic machinery and miRNA genes undergo the same epigenetic regulatory mechanisms of any other *PCG*. These two main aspects of miRNome-epigenome cross-regulation and their implications in human carcinogenesis will be the main focus of this chapter.

21.2 MiRNAs Regulate Effectors of the Epigenetic Machinery

In 2007, Fabbri et al. [20] provided the first evidence that miRNAs can affect the expression of epigenetically regulated *PCG* in cancer by directly targeting key effectors of the epigenetic machinery, such as DNA methyltransferases (DNMTs). The miR-29 family (composed of miR-29a, miR-29b, and miR-29c) can directly silence the expression of de novo *DNMT3A* and *DNMT3B* in non-small cell lung cancer (NSCLC), leading to a global hypomethylation status of cancer cells and re-expression of *tumor suppressor genes (TSGs)* such as *FHIT* and *WWOX*, whose expression is silenced in NSCLC by promoter hypermethylation. As a result of the re-expression of these TSGs, NSCLC cells undergo apoptosis both in vitro and in an in vivo xenograft model [20]. Subsequently, Garzon et al. [21]

showed that in addition to directly targeting de novo *DNMTs*, miR-29b is also capable of targeting the *maintenance DNMT1*, even though in an indirect way: by directly silencing Sp1, a transactivator of *DNMT1*. These combined effects of miR-29s on all three major *DNMTs* highlight their relevance for epigenetic processes and explain the profound effects of their restoration on the global methylation status of cells. MiRNAs such as the miR-29 family, able to directly target effectors of the epigenetic machinery, have been called "epi-miRNAs." In mouse embryonic stem (ES) cells, two independent groups have shown that members of miR-290 cluster directly target RBL2, an inhibitor of *DNMT3* genes [22, 23]. ES Dicer null cells are characterized by no expression of the miR-290 cluster, overexpression *of RBL2*, and disruption of de novo methylation pathway, leading to increased telomere recombination and aberrant telomere elongation. Restoration of the miRNA cluster reverted this phenotype [22, 23]. Interestingly, the regulatory effect of miR-290 cluster on de novo *DNMTs* was not observed in human embryonic kidney 293 cells following Dicer knockdown, suggesting that miR-290 targeting effect on *DNMT3s* might be cell- and/or species-specific [22].

Another important family of epi-miRNAs is the miR-148a/b-152 family. In 2008, Duursma et al. [24] showed that miR-148a and miR-148b can indeed bind to the coding region (not the 3′-UTR) of DNMT3b mRNA, affecting the expression of this gene. This seminal study also concluded that by binding to this unusual site, miR-148 family might be responsible for the several different splice variants of DNMT3b [24]. A role for the miR-148a/b-152 family was further confirmed in cholangiocarcinoma, where it was shown that these miRNAs, in addition to miR-301, can directly target DNMT1, and their expression is silenced by IL-6, which is involved in cholangio-cancerogenesis [25]. This paper provided the first evidence of a correlation between epi-miRNAs, inflammation, and cancer. In 2010, Das et al. [26] showed that all-trans-retinoic acid (ATRA)-treated neuroblastoma cells undergo downregulation of MYCN, hence leading to overexpression of MYCN repressed miRNAs such as miR-152, miR-26a/b, and miR-125a/b. They also showed that these miRNAs are epi-miRNAs in this model, since they downregulate DNMT1 and DNMT3B expression, leading to re-expression of epigenetically silenced NOS1, which promotes neural cell differentiation. Also, the expression of miR-152 was normally downregulated with concurrent increase of *DNMT1* expression in HBV-induced HCCs [27]. More recently, Wang et al. [28] identified miR-342 as another epi-miRNA involved in colon carcinogenesis. They showed that the expression of *miR-342* is inversely correlated to DNMT1 levels in colorectal cancer (CRC) tissues and cell lines, and that this miRNA targets DNMT1, leading to reactivation of epigenetically silenced TSGs such as *ADAM23*, *Hint1*, *RASSF1A*, and *RECKS*. Functionally, restoration of miR-342 resulted in a reduction of *DNMT1* expression, reduced cell proliferation, and invasiveness in CRC cells and inhibition of tumor growth and lung metastasis formation in nude mice [28]. In 2010, viral epi-miRNAs have been shown to control the epigenetic machinery of host cells through DNMTs [29]. MiR-K12-4-5p, a Kaposi sarcoma-associated herpesvirus (KSHV) miRNA, was found to regulate the expression of DNMT1, 3A, and 3B indirectly, by targeting the expression of Rbl2, a known repressor of DNMT1, 3A, and 3B transcription. Ectopic expression of miR-K12-4-5p reduces Rbl2 protein expression and increases DNMT1, 3A, and 3B mRNA levels in 293 cells, thus affecting the overall epigenetic reprogramming of the host cell [29].

Epi-miRNAs are also involved in regulating the expression of histone deacetylases (*HDACs*) and Polycomb Repressive Complex (*PRC*) genes. For instance, HDAC4 is a direct target of both miR-1 and miR-140 [30, 31], while miR-449a binds to the 3′-UTR region of *HDAC1* [32]. *HDAC1* is upregulated in several kind of cancers, and *miR-449a* re-expression in prostate cancer cells induces cell-cycle arrest, apoptosis, and a senescent-like phenotype by reducing the levels of HDAC1 [32]. Recently, Jeon et al. [33] showed that miR-449a, b regulate *HDAC1* expression by directly targeting its 3′UTR transcript, indicating that this might be one of the reasons for the low

miR-449a, b expression and the high expression of *HDAC1* in lung cancer. MiR-140 has also been shown to be involved in chemoresistance mechanisms by targeting *HDAC4* [34]. Inhibition of endogenous miR-140 by locked nucleic acid (LNA)-modified anti-miRNAs partially sensitized resistant colon cancer stemlike cells to 5-FU treatment by increasing HDAC4 levels, leading to a G_1 and G_2 phase arrest [34]. Low expression of miR-9 along with high expression levels of *HDACs* (*HDAC4* and *5*) were discovered in Waldenstrom macroglobulinemia (WM) [35]. Mir-9 targets HDAC4 and HDAC5 in WM cells. Overexpression of miR-9 causes downregulation of HDAC4, 5, leading to an upregulation of acetylated-histone-H3 and acetylated-histone-H4. This provides evidence that the loss of miR-9 might be responsible for upregulation of HDAC4 and HDAC5 in WM cells, contributing to the pathogenesis of WM disease [35].

EZH2 is the catalytic subunit of the Polycomb Repressive Complex 2 (PRC2) and is responsible for heterochromatin formation by trimethylating histone H3 lysine 27 (H3K27me3), leading to the silencing of several TSGs. Varambally et al. showed that in prostate cancer cell lines and primary tumors, the expression of miR-101 decreases during cancer progression, inversely correlating with an increase of EZH2. These findings are suggestive of a role as epi-miRNA for miR-101, a hypothesis which was tested and confirmed by showing that miR-101 directly targets EZH2 both in prostate and in bladder cancer models [36, 37]. Moreover, miR-101-mediated suppression of EZH2 inhibits cancer cell proliferation and colony formation, revealing a TSG role for miR-101, mediated by its modulatory effects on cancer epigenome [37]. The inverse correlation between *miR-101* and *EZH2* was also observed in glioblastoma [38], gastric cancer [39], and NSCLC [40]. In prostate cancer it has been shown that *miR-101* can be inhibited by androgen receptor and HIF-1α/HIF-1β [41]. Ectopic expression of miR-26a targets *EZH2* in Burkitt's lymphoma, leading to reduced cell proliferation, increased percentage of cells in G1-phase, and increased apoptosis in Raji and Namalwa cells [42]. Intriguingly, the authors also found that c-Myc negatively regulates miR-26a, therefore maintaining high *EZH2* expression levels in cells and significantly contributing to c-Myc-induced tumorigenesis [42]. In 2009, Juan et al. [43] analyzed a regulatory double-negative feedback loop between miR-214 and EZH2 in controlling PcG-dependent gene expression during differentiation. PcG proteins suppress the transcription of miR-214 in undifferentiated skeletal muscle cells (SMC). Ectopic expression of miR-214 directly targets *EZH2*, increases myogenin expression, and promotes muscle differentiation [43]. *EZH2* is also highly expressed in nasopharyngeal carcinoma (NPC) patients and correlates with a higher risk of relapse [44]. *MiR-26a*, *miR-98*, and *miR-101*, whose expression is consistently downregulated in human NPC specimens when compared to normal nasopharyngeal epithelial tissue samples, have been shown to directly target *EZH2* [44], suggesting a prognostic role for these three miRNAs in NPC. Recently, there has been an extensive series of studies unraveling the central role of miR-101 in the regulation of *EZH2*, in several types of cancer. In hepatoma tissues, it was shown that miR-101 and miR-29c are downregulated, but their expression can be restored (leading to reduced levels of EZH2, EED, and H3K27me3 proteins) after treatment with TPA (12-O-tetradecanoylphorbol 13-acetate), which is dependent on protein kinase C (PKC) and ERK pathways in HepG2 cells [45]. Also, Smiths et al. [46] have established a pro-angiogenic effect of miRNA-101 working together with EZH2 and VEGF during the process of angiogenesis. The group analyzed the expression of miR-101 in endothelial cells derived from glioma patients and found it to be low. VEGF downregulates the expression of miR-101 resulting in increased protein expression of EZH2 and induces the elongation of endothelial cells leading to a pro-angiogenic response. Transfection with pre-miR-101, or EZH2 siRNA, or treatments with DZNep, a small inhibitor of EZH2 methyltransferase activity, reverses this process in HBMVECs controls, providing a network between VEGF/miR-101/EZH2 proteins toward pro-angiogenic response in endothelial cells

[46]. A summary of the described epi-miRNAs is provided.

Overall, these studies indicate that epi-miRNAs can modulate several key effectors of the epigenetic machinery, which indirectly affects the expression of epigenetically regulated genes. Considering that inactivation of *TSGs* by epigenetic mechanisms represents one of the main strategies adopted by cancer cells to promote their oncogenic phenotype, it is of the utmost importance to completely dissect these mechanisms, since they could provide new molecular targets for anticancer treatments.

21.3 MiRNAs Are Epigenetically Regulated in Several Types of Human Cancers

As previously anticipated, the relationship between miRNome and epigenome is bidirectional. Not only do miRNAs regulate the expression of effectors of the epigenetic machinery, but they also undergo the same epigenetic regulation of any other *PCG*.

By treating bladder cancer cell lines with both a DNA demethylating agent (5-aza-2′-deoxycytidine, 5-AZA) and an HDAC inhibitor (4-phenylbutyric acid), Saito et al. found that about 5% of all human miRNAs increased their expression levels [47]. MiR-127 was the most upregulated after this treatment, and its re-expression led to direct targeting and downregulation of the oncogene *BCL-6*, inducing a tumor suppressor function. MiR-127 is part of a cluster which includes miR-136, miR-431, miR-432, and miR-433 and is embedded in a CpG island region; however, *miR-127* is the only member of the cluster whose expression increases upon treatment with the two epigenetic drugs [47]. Moreover, when each drug was used alone, no variation in *miR-127* expression was observed [47], suggesting that both DNA methylation and histone modifications affect the epigenetic regulation of *miR-127*. This seminal work shows that indeed miRNAs undergo epigenetic regulation, that it is a complex epigenetic regulation (involving both methylation and histone modifications), and that there are differences among miRNAs which even belong to the same cluster. Lujambio et al. created a double knockout (DKO) for DNMT1 and DNMT3B in the CRC cell line HCT-116 and compared miRNA expression profile of DKO and wild-type cells. About 6% analyzed miRNAs were re-expressed in the DKO cells [48]. Among them, miR-124a (embedded in a CpG island heavily methylated in this cell line) was re-expressed, reducing the levels of its direct target gene *CDK6* and impacting on the phosphorylation status of CDK6-downstream effector Rb protein [48]. Prosper's work has identified a signature of 13 miRNAs embedded in CpG islands, with high heterochromatic markers (such as high levels of K9H3me2 and/or low levels of K4H3me3) in acute lymphoblastic leukemia (ALL) patients [49, 50]. Among these, miR-124a was methylated in 59% of ALLs, and its promoter hypermethylation was associated with higher relapse rate and mortality rate vs. non-hypermethylated cases; hence, miR-124a promoter methylation status was an independent prognostic factor for disease-free and overall survival [50]. Finally, supporting Lujambio's results, also in ALL the impact of miR-124a in the CDK6-Rb pathway was confirmed by showing that miR-124a directly silences *CDK6* [50]. Hypermethylation of miR-124a promoter is also involved in the formation of epigenetic field defect which is a gastric cancer predisposing condition characterized by accumulation of abnormal DNA methylation in normal-appearing gastric mucosa, mostly induced by *H. pylori* infection [51]. These findings also suggest that miR-124a promoter hypermethylation is an early event in gastric carcinogenesis. MiR-107, another epigenetically controlled miRNA, targets *CDK6* in pancreatic cancer as well and impacts this oncogenic pathway [52]. In HCT-116 cells, deficient for DNMT1 and DNMT3B, Bruckner et al. showed increased expression of let-7a-3, an miRNA normally silenced by promoter hypermethylation in the wild-type cell line [53]. In lung adenocarcinoma, primary tumors let-7a-3 promoter was found hypomethylated with respect to the normal counterpart [53], whereas hypermethylation of let-7a-3 promoter was described in epithelial ovarian cancer, paralleled the low expression

of insulin-like growth factor-II expression, and was associated with a good prognosis [54]. Therefore, DNA methylation could act as a protective mechanism by silencing miRNA with oncogenic function. Also, the miRNA-200 family participates in the maintenance of an epithelial phenotype, and loss of its expression can result in epithelial to mesenchymal transition (EMT). Furthermore, the loss of expression of miR-200 family members is associated with an aggressive cancer phenotype. Vrba et al. [55] found that hypermethylation of the miR-200c/141 CpG island is closely linked to their inappropriate silencing in cancer cells, and the epigenetic regulation of this cluster appears evolutionarily conserved, since similar results were obtained in mouse. Interestingly, no variation in miRNA expression was observed in lung cancer cells treated with either demethylating agents or HDAC inhibitors or their combination [56]. Another miRNA which is under epigenetic control is miR-1. In hepatocarcinoma, miR-1 is frequently silenced by promoter hypermethylation [57]. However, in DNMT1 null HCT-116 cells (but not in DNMT3B null cells), hypomethylation and re-expression of miR-1-1 were observed [57], revealing a key role for the maintenance DNMT in the regulation of this miRNA. Han et al. [58] observed that neither *5-AZA* nor *DNMT1* deletion alone can recapitulate miRNA expression profile of DKO DNMT1/DNMT3B HCT-116 cells. Also, Lehmann et al. [59] found that in breast cancer cell lines, 5-AZA re-activates miR-9-1 (hypermethylated in up to 86% of primary tumors), but not miR-124a-3, miR-148, miR-152, or miR-663 (hypermethylated as well). Previously, Meng et al. [60] observed that in malignant, but not in normal cholangiocytes, 5-AZA induces re-expression of miR-370. Overall, these results indicate that the epigenetic control of miRNAs is both cancer specific and miRNA specific. More recently, Chang and Sharan [61] reported that *BRCA1* recruits the *HDAC2* complex to the miR-155 promoter, which is consequently silenced epigenetically through the deacetylation of H2A and H3 histones. The study also showed the upregulation of miR-155 in BRCA1-deficient or BRCA1-mutant human tumors. The knockdown of miR-155 in a BRCA1 mutant tumor cell line attenuates in vivo tumor growth. However, a knockdown of BRCA1 results in a two- to threefold increase in miR-155 levels in vitro. In contrast, a 50–150-fold increase in miR-155 in human breast cancer cell lines or tumor samples was observed, suggesting that this increase may not be caused only by *BRCA1* loss; other transcription factors may activate the miR-155 promoter after it is epigenetically activated due to the loss of BRCA1 [61]. Mazar et al. [62] studied which miRNAs were re-expressed upon treatment of a melanoma cell line with demethylating agents. Among the 15 re-expressed miRNAs, miR-375 and miR-34b were also involved in melanoma progression [62]. Liu et al. [63] found that miR-182 was significantly upregulated in human melanoma cells after combined treatment with 5-AZA and trichostatin A. Genome sequence analysis revealed the presence of a prominent CpG island 8–10 kb upstream of miR-182, but methylation analysis showed that this genomic region was exclusively methylated in melanoma cells, not in normal human melanocytes. Since miR-182 has been shown to harbor oncogenic properties, this finding raises a possible concern for melanoma patients treated with epigenetic drugs [63]. MiR-31 maps at 9p21, a genomic region frequently deleted in solid cancers including melanoma. Asangani et al. [64] found recurrent downregulation of miR-31 in melanoma primary tumors and was associated with genomic loss or epigenetic silencing by DNA methylation and EZH2-mediated histone methylation. Moreover, miR-31 overexpression resulted in downregulation of EZH2 and a derepression of its target gene rap-1GAP. The increased expression of EZH2 was associated with melanoma progression and poor overall survival [64].

Nickel (Ni) compounds are well described human carcinogens. Recently an important regulatory double-negative feedback loop has been discovered between *miR-152* and *DNMT1* in nickel sulfide (NiS)-transformed human bronchial epithelial (16HBE) cells [65]. Expression of *miR-152* was specifically downregulated by promoter hypermethylation, whereas ectopic expression of *miR-152* resulted in a remarkable reduction of *DNMT1* expression in transformed cells.

Interestingly, treatment with 5-AZA or knock down of DNMT1 reversed this process. Further, inhibition of *miR-152* expression in 16HBE cells was found to increase *DNMT1* expression and DNA methylation. Moreover, ectopic expression of *miR-152* caused a significant decrease of cell growth, whereas inhibition of *miR-152* reversed this process in 16HBE cells, suggesting the existence of an important functional negative feedback loop between *miR-152* and *DNMT1*, likely to play an important role in NiS-induced lung carcinogenesis [65]. The relationship between miRNA and cognate host gene epigenetic regulation was addressed by Grady et al. by studying miR-342, located in an intron of the *EVL* (*Ena/Vasp-like*) gene [66]. EVL promoter hypermethylation occurs in 86% of colorectal cancers and is already present in 67% of adenomas, suggesting that it is an early event in colon carcinogenesis. The combined treatment with 5-AZA and the HDAC inhibitor trichostatin A restores the synchronized expression of EVL and miR-342. The *EGFL7* gene, frequently downregulated in several cancer cell lines and in primary bladder and prostate tumors, hosts miR-126 in one of its introns. While the mature miR-126 can be encoded by three different transcripts of the cognate host gene, each of them with its own promoter, *miR-126* is concomitantly upregulated with one of *EGFL7* transcripts which has a CpG island promoter, when cancer cell lines are treated with inhibitors of DNA methylation and histone deacetylation, indicating that silencing of intronic miRNAs in cancer may occur by means of epigenetic changes of cognate host genes [67]. In summary, miRNAs are encoded by either *ncRNA* genes with their own promoters or by noncoding sequences in introns of *PCGs*. In the latter case, miRNA expression is usually driven by the same promoters of the corresponding *PCGs*.

The role of miRNA epigenetic modifications in the metastatic process has also been investigated by several groups. Lujambio et al. [68] treated three lymph-node metastatic cell lines with 5-AZA and identified three miRNAs which showed cancer-specific CpG island hypermethylation: miR-148a, miR-34b/c, and miR-9. The reintroduction of miR-148a and miR-34b/c in cancer cells with epigenetic inactivation inhibited cell motility and their metastatic potential in xenograft models and was associated with downregulation of miRNA oncogenic target genes, such as *c-MYC, E2F3, CDK6*, and *TGIF2* [68]. Finally, promoter hypermethylation of these three miRNAs was significantly associated with metastasis formation also in human malignancies [68]. MiR-34b/c cluster is also epigenetically regulated in CRC (promoter hypermethylation in 90% of primary CRC samples vs. normal colon mucosa) [69], whereas epigenetic silencing of miR-9 and miR-148a (together with miR-152, miR-124a, and miR-663) was described also in breast cancer [59].

Finally, Fazi et al. showed that transcription factors can recruit epigenetic effectors at miRNA promoter regions and contribute to the regulation of their expression. The AML1/ETO fusion oncoprotein is the aberrant product of *t*(8, 21) translocation in acute myeloid leukemia (AML) and can bind to the pre-miR-223 region. The oncoprotein recruits epigenetic effectors (i.e., DNMTs, HDAC1, and MeCP2), leading to aberrant hypermethylation of the CpG in close proximity to the AML1/ETO binding site and H3-H4 deacetylation of the same chromatin region [70]. In SkBr3 breast cancer cell line, Scott et al. were able to demonstrate that 27 miRNA expression levels are rapidly modified (5 up- and 22 downregulated) by a treatment with the HDAC inhibitor LAQ824 [71], indicating that some miRNAs are mainly silenced by histone modifications. In A549 lung cancer cell line, the HDAC inhibitor SAHA deregulates 64 miRNA (>twofold change) targeting genes involved in angiogenesis, apoptosis, chromatin modification, cell proliferation, and differentiation [72]. A list of the discussed epigenetically regulated miRNAs is provided.

In summary, these studies convincingly support an epigenetic regulation of miRNAs, and the fact that cancer cells adopt epigenetic mechanisms to silence/re-express key miRNAs modulating relevant PCGs for the development of their oncogenic phenotype. The metastatic process also seems to be driven, at least in part, by the selected epigenetic regulation of miRNAs, in addition to the well-known epigenetic regulation of relevant PCGs.

21.4 Concluding Remarks

The series of studies listed in this chapter should have convinced the readers that a tight connection relates miRNAs and epigenetics, and this relationship harbors significant implications in the development and spreading of malignancies. Aberrancies of the miRNome can effectively be reversed by overexpressing miRNAs that are downregulated in cancer and/or by silencing miRNAs overexpressed by cancer cells. Synthetically generated miRNA-mimic molecules can be effectively delivered to cancer cells. Conversely, miRNAs can be administered as anti-miRNA molecules in case the silencing of a miRNA needs to be achieved. Most commonly, anti-miRNAs can be administered as antagomiRs [73], or LNA anti-miRNAs [74], which are oligonucleotides complementary to the sequence of the targeted mature miRNA, but biochemically modified to reduce the risk of degradation by cellular RNAses, and are conjugated with cholesterol to facilitate their entrance in the cells. By designing mimics and/or anti-miRNAs of epi-miRNAs, a profound modulation of several epigenetically regulated PCGs is anticipated. Similarly, epigenetic drugs such as 5-AZA and histone active drugs will directly affect the expression of several epigenetically regulated miRNAs, as well as indirectly the expression of those mRNAs modulated by these epigenetically regulated miRNAs. The overall effect on cell phenotype is the combination of these modifications in the transcriptome and miRNome. Therefore, a clear and deep understanding of these basic mechanisms is necessary in order to avoid re-expression of oncogenes and/or onco-miRNAs. Despite the complexity suggested by these interactions, an increasing number of excellent works is bringing us on the right track by dissecting the complexity of such mechanisms and supporting a general optimistic view: that in a future not too far to come, we will be able to effectively translate these discoveries into new strategies to fight cancer, resulting in decreased mortality.

References

1. Ambros V. MicroRNA pathways in flies and worms: growth, death, fat, stress, and timing. Cell. 2003;113(6):673–6.
2. Lee RC, Feinbaum RL, Ambros V. The C. elegans heterochronic gene lin-4 encodes small RNAs with antisense complementarity to lin-14. Cell. 1993;75(5):843–54.
3. Lagos-Quintana M, Rauhut R, Lendeckel W, Tuschl T. Identification of novel genes coding for small expressed RNAs. Science. 2001;294(5543):853–8.
4. Calin GA, Dumitru CD, Shimizu M, Bichi R, Zupo S, Noch E, et al. Frequent deletions and down-regulation of micro-RNA genes miR15 and miR16 at 13q14 in chronic lymphocytic leukemia. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2002;99(24):15524–9.
5. Johnson SM, Grosshans H, Shingara J, Byrom M, Jarvis R, Cheng A, et al. RAS is regulated by the let-7 microRNA family. Cell. 2005;120(5):635–47.
6. Cimmino A, Calin GA, Fabbri M, Iorio MV, Ferracin M, Shimizu M, et al. miR-15 and miR-16 induce apoptosis by targeting BCL2. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2005;102(39):13944–9.
7. Croce CM. Causes and consequences of microRNA dysregulation in cancer. Nat Rev Genet. 2009;10(10):704–14.
8. Ambros V, Lee RC. Identification of microRNAs and other tiny noncoding RNAs by cDNA cloning. Methods Mol Biol. 2004;265:131–58.
9. Bartel DP. MicroRNAs: genomics, biogenesis, mechanism, and function. Cell. 2004;116(2):281–97.
10. He L, Hannon GJ. MicroRNAs: small RNAs with a big role in gene regulation. Nat Rev Genet. 2004;5(7):522–31.
11. Plasterk RH. Micro RNAs in animal development. Cell. 2006;124(5):877–81.
12. Pasquinelli AE, Hunter S, Bracht J. MicroRNAs: a developing story. Curr Opin Genet Dev. 2005;15:200–5.
13. Carleton M, Cleary MA, Linsley PS. MicroRNAs and cell cycle regulation. Cell Cycle. 2007; 6(17):2127–32.
14. Lee Y, Kim M, Han J, Yeom KH, Lee S, Baek SH, et al. MicroRNA genes are transcribed by RNA polymerase II. EMBO J. 2004;23(20):4051–60.
15. Cai X, Hagedorn CH, Cullen BR. Human microRNAs are processed from capped, polyadenylated transcripts that can also function as mRNAs. RNA. 2004;10(12):1957–66.
16. Cullen BR. Transcription and processing of human microRNA precursors. Mol Cell. 2004;16(6):861–5.
17. Vasudevan S, Tong Y, Steitz JA. Switching from repression to activation: microRNAs can up-regulate translation. Science. 2007;318(5858):1931–4.
18. Calin GA, Cimmino A, Fabbri M, Ferracin M, Wojcik SE, Shimizu M, et al. MiR-15a and miR-16-1 cluster

functions in human leukemia. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2008;105(13):5166–71.
19. Vatolin S, Navaratne K, Weil RJ. A novel method to detect functional microRNA targets. J Mol Biol. 2006;358(4):983–96.
20. Fabbri M, Garzon R, Cimmino A, Liu Z, Zanesi N, Callegari E, et al. MicroRNA-29 family reverts aberrant methylation in lung cancer by targeting DNA methyltransferases 3A and 3B. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2007;104(40):15805–10.
21. Garzon R, Liu S, Fabbri M, Liu Z, Heaphy CE, Callegari E, et al. MicroRNA -29b induces global DNA hypomethylation and tumor suppressor gene re-expression in acute myeloid leukemia by targeting directly DNMT3A and 3B and indirectly DNMT1. Blood. 2009;113(25):6411–8.
22. Sinkkonen L, Hugenschmidt T, Berninger P, Gaidatzis D, Mohn F, Artus-Revel CG, et al. MicroRNAs control de novo DNA methylation through regulation of transcriptional repressors in mouse embryonic stem cells. Nat Struct Mol Biol. 2008;15(3):259–67.
23. Benetti R, Gonzalo S, Jaco I, Munoz P, Gonzalez S, Schoeftner S, et al. A mammalian microRNA cluster controls DNA methylation and telomere recombination via Rbl2-dependent regulation of DNA methyltransferases. Nat Struct Mol Biol. 2008;15(9):998.
24. Duursma AM, Kedde M, Schrier M, le Sage C, Agami R. miR-148 targets human DNMT3b protein coding region. RNA. 2008;14(5):872–7.
25. Braconi C, Huang N, Patel T. MicroRNA-dependent regulation of DNA methyltransferase-1 and tumor suppressor gene expression by interleukin-6 in human malignant cholangiocytes. Hepatology. 2010;51(3):881–90.
26. Das S, Foley N, Bryan K, Watters KM, Bray I, Murphy DM, et al. MicroRNA mediates DNA demethylation events triggered by retinoic acid during neuroblastoma cell differentiation. Cancer Res. 2010;70(20):7874–81.
27. Huang J, Wang Y, Guo Y, Sun S. Down-regulated microRNA-152 induces aberrant DNA methylation in hepatitis B virus-related hepatocellular carcinoma by targeting DNA methyltransferase 1. Hepatology. 2010;52(1):60–70.
28. Wang H, Wu J, Meng X, Ying X, Zuo Y, Liu R, et al. MicroRNA-342 inhibits colorectal cancer cell proliferation and invasion by directly targeting DNA methyltransferase 1. Carcinogenesis. 2011;32(7):1033–42.
29. Lu F, Stedman W, Yousef M, Renne R, Lieberman PM. Epigenetic regulation of Kaposi's sarcoma-associated herpesvirus latency by virus-encoded microRNAs that target Rta and the cellular Rbl2-DNMT pathway. J Virol. 2010;84(6):2697–706.
30. Chen JF, Mandel EM, Thomson JM, Wu Q, Callis TE, Hammond SM, et al. The role of microRNA-1 and microRNA-133 in skeletal muscle proliferation and differentiation. Nat Genet. 2006;38(2):228–33.
31. Tuddenham L, Wheeler G, Ntounia-Fousara S, Waters J, Hajihosseini MK, Clark I, et al. The cartilage specific microRNA-140 targets histone deacetylase 4 in mouse cells. FEBS Lett. 2006;580(17):4214–7.
32. Noonan EJ, Place RF, Pookot D, Basak S, Whitson JM, Hirata H, et al. miR-449a targets HDAC-1 and induces growth arrest in prostate cancer. Oncogene. 2009;28(14):1714–24.
33. Jeon HS, Lee SY, Lee EJ, Yun SC, Cha EJ, Choi E, et al. Combining microRNA-449a/b with a HDAC inhibitor has a synergistic effect on growth arrest in lung cancer. Lung Cancer. 2012;76(2):171–6.
34. Song B, Wang Y, Xi Y, Kudo K, Bruheim S, Botchkina GI, et al. Mechanism of chemoresistance mediated by miR-140 in human osteosarcoma and colon cancer cells. Oncogene. 2009;28(46):4065–74.
35. Roccaro AM, Sacco A, Jia X, Azab AK, Maiso P, Ngo HT, et al. microRNA-dependent modulation of histone acetylation in Waldenstrom macroglobulinemia. Blood. 2010;116(9):1506–14.
36. Varambally S, Cao Q, Mani RS, Shankar S, Wang X, Ateeq B, et al. Genomic loss of microRNA-101 leads to overexpression of histone methyltransferase EZH2 in cancer. Science. 2008;322(5908):1695–9.
37. Friedman JM, Liang G, Liu CC, Wolff EM, Tsai YC, Ye W, et al. The putative tumor suppressor microRNA-101 modulates the cancer epigenome by repressing the polycomb group protein EZH2. Cancer Res. 2009;69(6):2623–9.
38. Smiths M, Nilsson J, Mir SE, van der Stoop PM, Hulleman E, Niers JM, et al. miR-101 is down-regulated in glioblastoma resulting in EZH2-induced proliferation, migration, and angiogenesis. Oncotarget. 2010;1(8):710–20.
39. Wang HJ, Ruan HJ, He XJ, Ma YY, Jiang XT, Xia YJ, et al. MicroRNA-101 is down-regulated in gastric cancer and involved in cell migration and invasion. Eur J Cancer. 2010;46(12):2295–303.
40. Zhang JG, Guo JF, Liu DL, Liu QA, Wang JJ. MicroRNA-101 exerts tumor-suppressive functions in non-small cell lung cancer through directly targeting enhancer of zeste homolog 2. J Thorac Oncol. 2011;6(4):671–8.
41. Cao P, Deng ZY, Wan MM, Huang WW, Cramer SD, Xu JF, et al. MicroRNA-101 negatively regulates Ezh2 and its expression is modulated by androgen receptor and HIF-1 alpha/HIF-1 beta. Mol Cancer. 2010;9:108.
42. Sander S, Bullinger L, Klapproth K, Fiedler K, Kestler HA, Barth TF, et al. MYC stimulates EZH2 expression by repression of its negative regulator miR-26a. Blood. 2008;112(10):4202–12.
43. Juan AH, Kumar RM, Marx JG, Young RA, Sartorelli V. Mir-214-dependent regulation of the polycomb protein Ezh2 in skeletal muscle and embryonic stem cells. Mol Cell. 2009;36(1):61–74.
44. Alajez NM, Shi W, Hui ABY, Bruce J, Lenarduzzi M, Ito E, et al. Enhancer of Zeste homolog 2 (EZH2) is overexpressed in recurrent nasopharyngeal carcinoma and is regulated by miR-26a, miR-101, and miR-98. Cell Death Dis. 2010;1:e85.

45. Chiang CW, Huang Y, Leong KW, Chen LC, Chen HC, Chen SJ, et al. PKCalpha mediated induction of miR-101 in human hepatoma HepG2 cells. J Biomed Sci. 2010;17:35.
46. Smiths M, Mir SE, Nilsson RJA, van der Stoop PM, Niers JM, Marquez VE, et al. Down-regulation of miR-101 in endothelial cells promotes blood vessel formation through reduced repression of EZH2. PLoS One. 2011;6(1):e16282.
47. Saito Y, Liang G, Egger G, Friedman JM, Chuang JC, Coetzee GA, et al. Specific activation of microRNA-127 with downregulation of the proto-oncogene BCL6 by chromatin-modifying drugs in human cancer cells. Cancer Cell. 2006;9(6):435–43.
48. Lujambio A, Ropero S, Ballestar E, Fraga MF, Cerrato C, Setien F, et al. Genetic unmasking of an epigenetically silenced microRNA in human cancer cells. Cancer Res. 2007;67(4):1424–9.
49. Roman-Gomez J, Agirre X, Jimenez-Velasco A, Arqueros V, Vilas-Zornoza A, Rodriguez-Otero P, et al. Epigenetic regulation of microRNAs in acute lymphoblastic leukemia. J Clin Oncol. 2009;27(8):1316–22.
50. Agirre X, Vilas-Zornoza A, Jimenez-Velasco A, Ignacio-Martin-Subero J, Cordeu L, Garate L, et al. Epigenetic silencing of the tumor suppressor microRNA Hsa-miR-124a regulates CDK6 expression and confers a poor prognosis in acute lymphoblastic leukemia. Cancer Res. 2009;69(10):4443–53.
51. Ando T, Yoshida T, Enomoto S, Asada K, Tatematsu M, Ichinose M, et al. DNA methylation of microRNA genes in gastric mucosae of gastric cancer patients: its possible involvement in the formation of epigenetic field defect. Int J Cancer. 2009;124(10):2367–74.
52. Lee KH, Lotterman C, Karikari C, Omura N, Feldmann G, Habbe N, et al. Epigenetic silencing of MicroRNA miR-107 regulates cyclin-dependent kinase 6 expression in pancreatic cancer. Pancreatology. 2009;9(3):293–301.
53. Brueckner B, Stresemann C, Kuner R, Mund C, Musch T, Meister M, et al. The human let-7a-3 locus contains an epigenetically regulated microRNA gene with oncogenic function. Cancer Res. 2007;67(4):1419–23.
54. Lu L, Katsaros D, de la Longrais IA, Sochirca O, Yu H. Hypermethylation of let-7a-3 in epithelial ovarian cancer is associated with low insulin-like growth factor-II expression and favorable prognosis. Cancer Res. 2007;67(21):10117–22.
55. Vrba L, Jensen TJ, Garbe JC, Heimark RL, Cress AE, Dickinson S, et al. Role for DNA methylation in the regulation of miR-200c and miR-141 expression in normal and cancer cells. PLoS One. 2010;5(1):e8697.
56. Yanaihara N, Caplen N, Bowman E, Seike M, Kumamoto K, Yi M, et al. Unique microRNA molecular profiles in lung cancer diagnosis and prognosis. Cancer Cell. 2006;9(3):189–98.
57. Datta J, Kutay H, Nasser MW, Nuovo GJ, Wang B, Majumder S, et al. Methylation mediated silencing of MicroRNA-1 gene and its role in hepatocellular carcinogenesis. Cancer Res. 2008;68(13):5049–58.
58. Han L, Witmer PD, Casey E, Valle D, Sukumar S. DNA methylation regulates microRNA expression. Cancer Biol Ther. 2007;6(8):1284–8.
59. Lehmann U, Hasemeier B, Christgen M, Muller M, Romermann D, Langer F, et al. Epigenetic inactivation of microRNA gene hsa-mir-9-1 in human breast cancer. J Pathol. 2008;214(1):17–24.
60. Meng F, Wehbe-Janek H, Henson R, Smith H, Patel T. Epigenetic regulation of microRNA-370 by interleukin-6 in malignant human cholangiocytes. Oncogene. 2008;27(3):378–86.
61. Chang S, Sharan SK. Epigenetic control of an oncogenic microRNA, miR-155, by BRCA1. Oncotarget. 2012;3(1):5–6.
62. Mazar J, DeBlasio D, Govindarajan SS, Zhang S, Perera RJ. Epigenetic regulation of microRNA-375 and its role in melanoma development in humans. FEBS Lett. 2011;585(15):2467–76.
63. Liu YQ, Zhang M, Yin BC, Ye BC. Attomolar ultrasensitive microRNA detection by DNA-scaffolded silver-nanocluster probe based on isothermal amplification. Anal Chem. 2012;84(12):5165–9.
64. Asangani IA, Harms PW, Dodson L, Pandhi M, Kunju LP, Maher CA, et al. Genetic and epigenetic loss of microRNA-31 leads to feed-forward expression of EZH2 in melanoma. Oncotarget. 2012;3(9):1011–25.
65. Ji W, Yang L, Yuan J, Yang L, Zhang M, Qi D, et al. MicroRNA-152 targets DNA methyltransferase 1 in NiS-transformed cells via a feedback mechanism. Carcinogenesis. 2012;34(2):446–53.
66. Grady WM, Parkin RK, Mitchell PS, Lee JH, Kim YH, Tsuchiya KD, et al. Epigenetic silencing of the intronic microRNA hsa-miR-342 and its host gene EVL in colorectal cancer. Oncogene. 2008;27(27):3880–8.
67. Saito Y, Friedman JM, Chihara Y, Egger G, Chuang JC, Liang G. Epigenetic therapy upregulates the tumor suppressor microRNA-126 and its host gene EGFL7 in human cancer cells. Biochem Biophys Res Commun. 2009;379(3):726–31.
68. Lujambio A, Calin GA, Villanueva A, Ropero S, Sanchez-Cespedes M, Blanco D, et al. A microRNA DNA methylation signature for human cancer metastasis. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2008;105(36):13556–61.
69. Toyota M, Suzuki H, Sasaki Y, Maruyama R, Imai K, Shinomura Y, et al. Epigenetic silencing of microRNA-34b/c and B-cell translocation gene 4 is associated with CpG island methylation in colorectal cancer. Cancer Res. 2008;68(11):4123–32.
70. Fazi F, Racanicchi S, Zardo G, Starnes LM, Mancini M, Travaglini L, et al. Epigenetic silencing of the myelopoiesis regulator microRNA-223 by the AML1/ETO oncoprotein. Cancer Cell. 2007;12(5):457–66.

71. Scott GK, Mattie MD, Berger CE, Benz SC, Benz CC. Rapid alteration of microRNA levels by histone deacetylase inhibition. Cancer Res. 2006;66(3):1277–81.
72. Lee EM, Shin S, Cha HJ, Yoon Y, Bae S, Jung JH, et al. Suberoylanilide hydroxamic acid (SAHA) changes microRNA expression profiles in A549 human non-small cell lung cancer cells. Int J Mol Med. 2009;24(1):45–50.
73. Krutzfeldt J, Rajewsky N, Braich R, Rajeev KG, Tuschl T, Manoharan M, et al. Silencing of microRNAs in vivo with 'antagomirs'. Nature. 2005;438(7068):685–9.
74. Castoldi M, Schmidt S, Benes V, Noerholm M, Kulozik AE, Hentze MW, et al. A sensitive array for microRNA expression profiling (miChip) based on locked nucleic acids (LNA). RNA. 2006;12(5):913–20.

The Role of DNA Methylation in Cancer

22

Sepideh Shahkarami, Samaneh Zoghi, and Nima Rezaei

Contents

S. Shahkarami
Research Center for Immunodeficiencies, Children's Medical Center, Tehran University of Medical Sciences, Tehran, Iran

Department of Medical Genetics, School of Medicine, Tehran University of Medical Sciences, Tehran, Iran

Medical Genetics Network (MeGeNe), Universal Scientific Education and Research Network (USERN), Tehran, Iran

S. Zoghi
Research Center for Immunodeficiencies, Children's Medical Center, Tehran University of Medical Sciences, Tehran, Iran

Ludwig Boltzmann Institute for Rare and Undiagnosed Diseases, Vienna, Austria

CeMM Research Center for Molecular Medicine of the Austrian Academy of Sciences, Vienna, Austria

Cancer Immunology Project (CIP), Universal Scientific Education and Research Network (USERN), Vienna, Austria

N. Rezaei (✉)
Research Center for Immunodeficiencies, Children's Medical Center, Pediatrics Center of Excellence, Tehran University of Medical Sciences, Tehran, Iran

Department of Immunology, School of Medicine, Tehran University of Medical Sciences, Tehran, Iran

Network of Immunity in Infection, Malignancy and Autoimmunity (NIIMA), Universal Scientific Education and Research Network (USERN), Tehran, Iran
e-mail: rezaei_nima@tums.ac.ir

N. Rezaei (ed.), *Cancer Immunology*, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-30845-2_22

22.1 Introduction

It is becoming increasingly clear that along with genetic instability and mutations, as common events in cancer development, epigenetic and its regulatory mechanisms have a crucial role in malignant cellular transformation [1–3]. The term "epigenetics" was first described by Waddington [4] and literally means "above genetics." It refers to heritable modifications which lead to altered gene expression profiles, without making any changes in primary genome sequence [5]. Epigenetic processes, which include CpG island methylations, histone modifications, and gene expression regulation through non-coding RNAs, are of essential parts in normal developmental processes. However, aberrant epigenetic mechanisms contribute to deviated gene function and carcinogenesis [6, 7].

Among the epigenetic mechanisms mentioned above, DNA methylation is one of the most deeply studied epigenetic alterations [8]. In 1982, Gama-Sosa et al. observed the significant variation of 5-methylcytosine (5-mc) content and distribution in DNA samples from different tissues [9]. This finding led to the next study in 1983, which presented the overall and considerable different 5-mc content of DNA samples obtained from normal and tumor tissues [10]. In the same year, Feinberg and Vogelstein [11, 12] reported altered DNA methylation of specific genes in some human cancer cells compared with their normal counterparts. Afterwards, over three decades of research on DNA methylation, it is now revealed that this phenomenon as one of the most important epigenetic modifications is involved in the variety of biological procedures and play a critical role principally through regulating gene activity [13]. It is not surprising, therefore, that aberrant DNA methylation may lead to inappropriate gene expression and consequently uncontrolled cell growth which are the hallmarks of cancer [14–16].

This chapter focuses on the molecular basis of DNA methylation, tumor-related genes and tumor-specific methylation, clinical approaches of using DNA methylation as a biomarker in early diagnosis, prognosis and also as a therapeutic target, and common methods for assessing DNA methylation.

22.2 Molecular Basis of DNA Methylation

DNA methylation usually occurs at the 5′ position of cytosine within CpG dinucleotides and results in gene silencing. The CpG dinucleotides are distributed throughout the human genome, while CpG islands (CGIs) are condensed clusters of CpG dinucleotides of the genome, which are frequently positioned in the 5′-flanking promoter regions of genes. CGIs are predominantly free of methylation in "housekeeping" genes and provide an active transcription, although certain CpG islands, which are involved in imprinting and X inactivation, become normally methylated.

As shown in Fig. 22.1, transferring of a methyl group from S-adenosylmethionine (SAM) as a methyl-donor to the fifth-position of the cytosine residue in a CpG dinucleotide as a methyl-acceptor is catalyzed by DNA methyltransferases (DNMTs) [7, 17, 18].

Although the focus of this chapter is on the role of CpG island promoter methylation in inhibiting gene expression, regulating the role of methylation in non-CpG island promoters such as 5′-CpNpG-3′ or non-symmetrical 5′-CpA-3′ and 5′-CpT-3′ [19] should not be overlooked.

Cytosine is converted to 5-methylcytosine by transferring a methyl group from s-adenosyl methionine to fifth-position of cytosine. This reaction is catalyzed by DNA methyltransferases (DNMTs).

22.3 DNA Methyltransferases (DNMTs)

DNMT1, DNMT3A, DNMT3B are three active members of the highly conserved DNMT family in mammalians. The fourth protein, DNMT3L, is the regulatory subunit and does not possess any catalytic activity. However, it has a critical role in DNA methylation through stimulation of DNMT3A/B activity [20–22].

Alterations in DNMT genes (such as overexpression and mutation) are of primary mechanisms that result in aberrant methylation patterns and consequently malignant transformation [23–25].

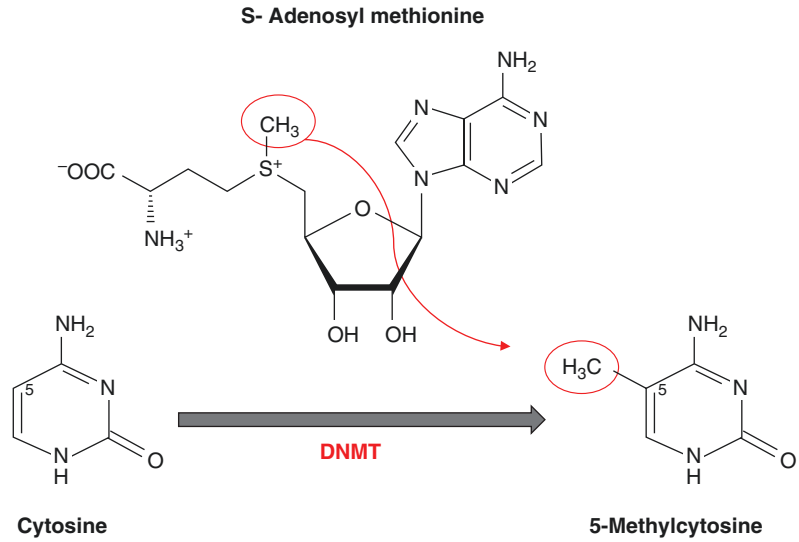


Fig. 22.1 Cytosine methylation

Table 22.1 Human DNMTs

Enzyme	Position	Function	Variation in DNMT genes and cancer development	OMIM
DNMT1	19p13.2	Methylation maintenance through binding to hemi-methylated DNA during DNA replication	*Overexpression* in cancers of breast [26], liver [27], pancreas [28], esophagus [29], AML[a] and CML[b] [30]/*Mutation* in colon cancer [31]	126,375
DNMT3A	2p23.3	De novo DNA methylation of both hemi-methylated and non-methylated DNA	*Overexpression* in liver cancer [32], CML and AML [30]/*Mutation* in AML [33–35], ALL[c] [36], and MDS[d] [37]	602,769
DNMT3B	20q11.21	De novo DNA methylation of both hemi-methylated and non-methylated DNA	*Overexpression* in cancers of breast [38], prostate [39], colon [40], AML and CML [30]	602,900
DNMT3L	21q22.3	Interacting with DNMT3A/B and increasing their catalytic activity	*Overexpression* in pure EC[e], advanced pure seminoma and pure yolk sac tumor [41, 42]	606,588

[a]*AML* acute myeloblastic leukemia
[b]*CML* chronic myeloblastic leukemia
[c]*ALL* acute lymphoblastic leukemia
[d]*MDS* myelodysplastic syndrome
[e]*EC* embryonal carcinoma

Location of human DNMT genes, their functions, and their association with tumorigenesis are indicated in Table 22.1.

22.4 Gene Silencing Mediated by DNA Methylation

Gene expression regulation in eukaryotic cells is almost a complex mechanism and interaction of a number of epigenetic components is required for a precise transcriptional regulation. Several hypotheses have been suggested as the mechanisms of gene silencing through DNA methylation (Fig. 22.2). In the first one, DNA methylation blocks promoter region and directly prevents binding of particular transcription factors (TFs) such as AP-2, c-Myc/Myn, CREB/ATF, E2F, the cyclic AMP-dependent activator CREB, and NF-kB to their recognition sites in their promoters [43, 44].

Another proposed mechanism of repression is the attachment of methyl-CpG binding domain proteins (MBDs) such as MeCP1, MeCP2, MBD1, MBD2, and MBD4 to methylated

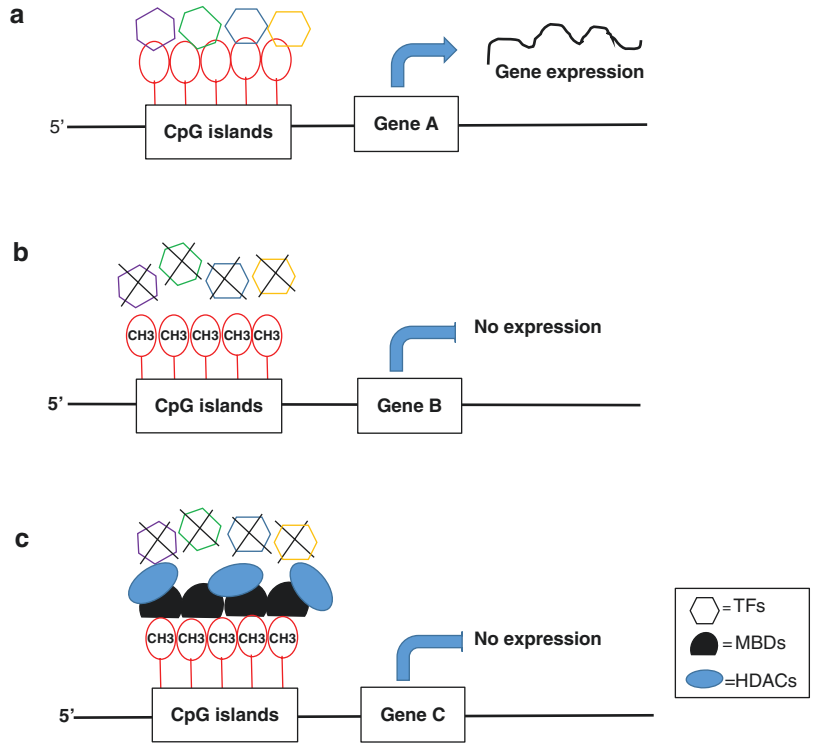


Fig. 22.2 Two proposed mechanisms of expression inhibiting mediated by DNA methylation. (**a**) When CpG islands are demethylated, transcription factors (TFs) can access to their respective recognition sites and the gene is expressed. (**b**) The expression is abolished by promoter methylation through the direct interference of binding specific TFs to the promoter region. (**c**) Methyl-CpG binding domain proteins (MBDs) bind methylated DNA, limit the accessibility of TFs to their promoter, and stimulate repressive potential of methylated DNA by employing histone deacetylases complexes (HDACs)

DNA. They repress transcription by blocking access to other elements required for gene expression and recruiting histone deacetylases complexes (HDACs), which results in chromatin denseness and gene silencing [45, 46].

22.5 Aberrant DNA Methylation and Cancer

Any disruption in proper DNA methylation—as an essential process for normal development and cell function—may lead to several disorders, including cancer. When compared with normal cells, cancer cells show a different pattern in DNA methylation, including global hypomethylation of repeated DNA sequences (such as long interspersed transposable elements (LINEs), short interspersed transposable (SINEs), and Arthrobacter luteus (Alu)) and localized disrupted hypermethylation events in CpG islands. A global reduction in methylated CpG content results in activation of silenced oncogenes and consequently increasing positive growth signals. In contrast, inactivation of tumor suppressor genes occurs due to CGI hypermethylation, which leads to a decrease in growth preventive signals. These events together provide a selective growth advantage to the cell and therefore tumorigenesis [47–49].

22.6 DNA Hypermethylation and Hypomethylation in Cancer

There is now no doubt that DNA methylation has a vital role in tumor development and is a hallmark of all types of human cancers. Studies have

shown a greater contribution of hypermethylation than hypomethylation to cancers. To date, several numbers of genes have been reported, which are influenced by aberrant methylation in malignancies. Some of these genes have been found to undergo altered methylation in one type of cancer, while some other genes are subjected to disrupted methylation in varieties of tumor types. In addition, some tumors present aberrant methylation in various genes. For instance, more than 40 genes and 60 genes have been found to have the alteration in DNA methylation patterns in lung and gastric cancer, respectively. RARB, RASSF1A, CDKN2A, MGMT, BRCA1, IGFBP3, CDH1, TIMP3, DAPK1, GSTP1, ESR1, and APC are examples of commonly hypermethylated ones in both lung and gastric cancers (Table 22.2) [88, 121].

Certain genes, which are unmethylated in normal cells, become inactivated in the cancer cells as a result of hypermethylation. Hypermethylation was first reported in the promoter of retinoblastoma tumor repressor gene (RB1) in patients with retinoblastoma [122, 123] and followed by identification of numerous tumor suppressor genes, which were silenced through hypermethylation in various cancers. These genes are involved in several crucial pathways such as angiogenesis, DNA repair, cell cycle, apoptosis, transcription, cell growth, differentiation, and cell adhesion (Table 22.2).

The cell cycle is the specific sequential events, which are regulated strictly by the complex group of components and eventually lead to cell growth, DNA replication, and cell division. Dysregulated cell cycle due to any alterations in proteins involved in cell cycle may result in the development of tumors [124]. For instance, CDKN2A (P14/P16) and CDKN2B, three important cell cycle-related tumor suppressor genes located on chromosome 9, encode cyclin-dependent kinase inhibitors and are involved in inhibiting cell cycle G1 progression. They undergo DNA methylation and become suppressed in different types of cancer (Table 22.2) [62, 125].

The genes associated with DNA repairs such as MGMT, hMLH1, BRCA1, XRCC1, and WRN are also hypermethylated in carcinomas. Genomic integrity maintenance would be assured by the accurate function of DNA repair system (Table 22.2) [126]. Defective DNA repair pathways lead to unrepaired or incorrectly repaired lesions, which eventually result in cell neoplastic transformation. MGMT which protects against the negative impact of DNA alkylation in normal tissues was indicated to be silenced through hypermethylation in various types of tumors (Table 22.2) [56, 57]. MLH1 is one of the main members of DNA mismatch repair (MMR) system and was shown that hypermethylation in this gene is frequently associated with colorectal and gastric cancers (Table 22.2) [50–52]. DNA methylation-mediated silencing in BRCA1, as a gene involved in DNA repair of double-stranded breaks, maintenance of genome integrity and transcription, has been identified in many tumor tissues. They include breast, lung, esophageal, gastric and ovarian cancer, as well as high-grade serous ovarian cancer (HGSOC) which is a subtype of ovarian cancer with distinct clinical behaviors and biomolecular features (Table 22.2) [59, 60, 127]. Aberrant promoter methylation of X-ray repair cross complementing 1 (XRCC1), which acts as a scaffolding protein for single-strand break repair (SSBR), BER (base excision repair), and NER (nucleotide excision repair) has shown association with gastric cancer (Table 22.2) [61]. WRN functions as a tumor suppressor gene and its inactivation via promoter hypermethylation leads to errors in DNA replication and chromosomal instability, as well as DNA repair. Aberrant epigenetic silencing of WRN has been reported in a wide range of tumors including colon, gastric, prostate, lung, and breast cancers (Table 22.2) [109, 110].

Cancer metastasis causes neoplastic progression through the spread of cancer cells from the primary tumor mass to surrounding tissues and forming a new tumor. Cell–cell and cell–matrix interactions are crucial in the maintenance of tissue integrity [76]. Silencing the genes involved in cell adhesion via DNA hypermethylation leads to loss of contact inhibition and consequently invasion and metastasis. Several genes connected with cell adhesion have been identified in different tumors that are silenced by DNA hypermethylation, including CDH1/E-cadherin, TSP1, PCDH10, PCDH17, CDH13/ H-cadherin,

Table 22.2 Examples of genes commonly methylated in different types of cancer

Gene	Full name	Location	Function	Tumor type
hMLH1	Mut L homologue 1	3p22.2	DNA mismatch repair	Colon [50], Gastric [51, 52], Endometrium [53], Lung [54], Ovarian [55]
MGMT	O-6-methylguanine-DNA methyltransferase	10q26.3	DNA repair	Lung [53], Brain [53], Gastric [56, 57], Lymphoma [53], Colon [53], Prostate [58]
BRCA1	Breast cancer 1	17q21.31	DNA repair, transcription	Breast [14, 59], Ovarian [59], high-grade serous ovarian cancer [60]
XRCC1	X-Ray repair cross complementing 1	19q13.31	DNA repair	Gastric [61]
CDKN1C	Cyclin-dependent kinase inhibitor 1C	11p15.4	Cell cycle	Gastric [62]
IGFBP3	Insulin like Growth Factor Binding Protein 3	7p12.3	Cell growth and cellular proliferation regulation	Gastric [63]
PTEN	Phosphatase and tensin homolog	10q23.31	Apoptosis, neurogenesis, PI3K-AKT/PKB and mTOR pathway regulation	Gastric [64]
TCF4	Transcription factor 4	18q21	Differentiation, transcription regulation	Gastric [65]
PRDM5	PR/SET Domain 5	4q27	Transcription regulation	Gastric [66]
CDKN2A/P16	Cyclin-dependent kinase 2A	9p21.3	Cell cycle	Lymphoma [14, 67], Lung [14], Gastric [62], Bladder [14], Melanoma [68], Ovarian [69], Pancreas [70], Colon [14]
CDKN2A/P14	Cyclin-dependent kinase 2A	9p21.3	Stabilizing p53, cell cycle	Colon [53], Gastric [62]
CDKN2B / P15	Cyclin-dependent kinase inhibitor 2B	9p21.3	Cell cycle	Leukemia [53, 71], Lymphoma [72, 73], Gastric [62], Squamous cell carcinoma [72]
CDH1	Cadherin 1	16q22.1	Cell adhesion, proliferation	Breast [74], Thyroid [75], Gastric [62, 76], Lung [77], Lymphoma [64]
FLNc	Filamin C	7q32.1	Cell junction	Gastric [52]
HOXA10	Homeobox A10	7p15.2	Developmental protein, transcription regulation	Gastric [62]
TIMP3	Tissue inhibitor of metalloproteinases 3	22q12.3	Cell migration, differentiation	Gastric [78], Renal [79], Brain [79], Breast [79], Colon [79], Lung [79, 80]
TSP1	Thrombospondin 1	15q14	Cell adhesion, cell cycle arrest, cell migration	Gastric [81]
HOXA1	Homeobox A1	7p15.2	Developmental protein, transcription regulation	Gastric [62]
HoxD10	Homeobox D10	2q31.1	Developmental protein, transcription regulation	Gastric [82]
NDRG2	NDRG family member 2	14q11.2	Cell differentiation, Wnt signalling pathway regulation	Gastric [83]
RARRES1	Retinoic acid receptor responder 1	3q25.32	Cell proliferation	Gastric [62], Prostate [84]
BNIP3	BCL2 interacting protein	10q26.3	Apoptosis	Gastric [85, 86]
CACNA1G	Calcium voltage-gated channel subunit alpha1 G	17q21.33	Gene expression, cell division and cell death, cell growth	Gastric [62], Leukemia [87]

Table 22.2 (continued)

Gene	Full name	Location	Function	Tumor type
DAPK1	Death-associated protein kinase 1	9q21.33	Apoptosis, translation regulation	Lung [80], Gastric [86, 88], Lymphoma [53]
GSTP1	Glutathione S-transferase Pi 1	11q13.2	Glutathione transferase activity	Prostate [53], Breast [53], Renal [53], Gastric [89]
PCDH10	Protocadherin 10	4q28.3	Cell adhesion, apoptosis	Gastric [90]
PCDH17	Protocadherin 17	13q21.1	Cell adhesion, apoptosis	Gastric [91], Colon [91]
ESR1	Estrogen receptor 1	6q25.1	Transcription regulation, signal transduction	Breast [92], Prostate [58], Colon [93]
hDAB2IP	DAB2 interacting protein	9q33.2	Angiogenesis, apoptosis, cell cycle, growth regulation	Prostate [58], Gastric [94]
RASSF1A	RASSF1A, Ras association domain family member 1	3p21.31	Cell cycle, apoptosis, signal transduction	Lung [95], Breast [95], Gastric [96], Ovarian [95], Renal [97], Nasopharyngeal [98]
RASSF6	Ras association domain family member 6	4q13.3	Cell cycle, apoptosis, cell migration, signal transduction	Leukemia [99, 100]
RASSF10	Ras association domain family member 10	11p15.2	Cell cycle, apoptosis, cell migration, signal transduction	Leukemia [99, 100]
SOCS-1	Suppressor of cytokine signaling 1	16p13.13	Signal transduction, growth regulation	Liver, Gastric [101]
APC	Adenomatous polyposis coli	5q22.2	Wnt signaling antagonist	Breast [102], Lung [102], Esophageal [103], Gastric [78], Prostate [58]
Dkk-3	Dickkopf WNT Signaling pathway inhibitor 3	11 p15.3	Developmental protein, Wnt signaling pathway	Gastric [104, 105]
ITGA4	Integrin subunit alpha 4	2q31.3	Cell adhesion	Gastric [62]
TP73	Tumor protein p73	1p36.32	Apoptosis, cell cycle, transcription regulation	Lymphoma [53], Leukemia [53], Gastric [62]
VHL	Von Hippel–Lindau tumor suppressor	3p25.3	Protein ubiquitination pathway	Renal [97]
RARB	Retinoic acid receptor beta	3p24.2	Cell growth, differentiation, gene expression regulation	Colon [53], Leukemia, Lymphoma [53], Lung [53], Prostate [58], Gastric [106–108], Breast [53]
WRN	Werner syndrome RecQ like helicase	8p12	DNA repair	Colon [109, 110], Gastric [109], Prostate [109], Lung [109], Breast [109], Thyroid [109]
EMP3	Epithelial membrane protein 3	19q13.33	Cell growth, cell proliferation, cell death, cell-cell interactions	Brain [111]
THBS1	Thrombospondin-1	15q14	Cell adhesion, angiogenesis inhibitor	Colon [112]
TPEF	Transmembrane Protein with EGF like and two follistatin like Domains 2	2q32.3	Proliferation, differentiation, apoptosis	Bladder [113], Colon [114], Gastric [115]
ARNTL	Aryl hydrocarbon receptor nuclear translocator like	11p15.3	Transcription regulation, circadian rhythms	Leukemia [116], Lymphoma [116]
CDH13	Cadherin 13	16q23.3	Cell adhesion	Breast [117], Lung [118], Lymphoma [64]
GATA4	GATA Binding Protein 4	8p23.1	Transcription regulation	Colon [119]
GATA5	GATA Binding Protein 5	20q13.33	Transcription regulation	Colon [119]
AR	Androgen receptor	Xq12	Signal transduction, transcription regulation	Prostate [120]

ITGA4, and THBS1. CDH1 is one of the most important ones and its promoter methylation is assumed to be associated with tumor invasion and metastasis, particularly in primary gastric cancer (Table 22.2) [76, 128–131].

DNA hypermethylation also affects further genes which contribute to other cellular processes, such as the genes involved in apoptosis (for example, PYCARD, CASP8, and BCL2), or transcription (like GATA4 and GATA5 that are implicated in colon cancer, and ID4 in leukemia), or angiogenesis (for instance, THBS1 and hDAB2IP) (Table 22.2).

Some examples of tumor-related genes, silenced by CGI promoter hypermethylation and their biological role are listed in Table 22.2.

Genome-wide hypomethylation of DNA, on the other hand, results in a reduction of 5-mC and has been reported in a variety of malignancies [11, 132]. It is found that reduced levels of DNA hypomethylation in proto-oncogenes and repetitive DNA sequences are correlated with loss of imprinting, reactivation of transposons and retroviruses, and chromosome instability, which all may be implicated in oncogenesis [133]. It is shown that during the cancer progression, hypomethylation level increases in the area of lesions; so that a benign cell proliferation would be changed to an invasive malignant tumor [134]. Genome-wide hypomethylation was seen in esophageal squamous cell carcinoma (ESCC) [135], metastatic hepatocellular cancer [136], cervical cancer [132], and prostate tumors [137]. Increasing the grade of global hypomethylation of DNA in several cancers, including breast, cervical, and brain, has been associated with the level of malignancy [48].

Hypomethylation of mobile DNAs causes loss of genomic integrity and stability through integration at random sites in the genome. For instance, the L1 mutational insertions leading to disrupted expression have been identified in APC and CMYC genes in colon and breast cancers, respectively [20]. Reduced level of methylation in the L1 long interspersed nuclear element also leads to transcriptional activation and is found in ESCC [135], gastric [138], colon [139], and urinary bladder cancer [140]. Moreover, hypomethylation of satellite repeats has been frequently seen in human cancers such as Wilms tumor, ovarian and breast cancer [141–144].

Loss of DNA methylation can be linked to distinct stages in different cancers. Sat2 (juxtacentromeric satellite 2) and Sat α (centromeric satellite α) are two examples of satellite sequences which are associated to primary tumor development in breast cancer, whereas they contribute to tumor progression in ovarian cancer [145, 146].

As shown in Table 22.1, variations in DNMT genes such as their overexpression or mutations are linked to cancer development. There is also a relationship between aberrant DNMTs and genome-wide hypomethylation, along with subsequent tumor occurrence [8]. For example, it is found that any reduction in DNMT1 leads to global hypomethylation and chromosomal instability [147]. Mutations in DNMT3A are also seen in acute myeloblastic leukemia (AML), following hypomethylated CpG islands of the HOXB cluster [34].

22.7 DNA Methylation as a Biomarker

The effectiveness of therapy and prognosis in most cancers are often dependent on the clinical stage at the time of diagnosis, as well as the ability to the prediction of therapeutic response through monitoring cancerous cells. Diagnostic tools have proven valuable. However, they are not always suitable for early diagnosis, comfortable enough, and risk-free for the patients. Thus, there is an eager to develop novel, less-invasive, and more powerful strategies for earlier detection, investigating treatment response, detection of residual disease, and risk assessment of relapse.

DNA methylation patterns have been provided a spectrum of opportunities to be applied as biomarkers in clinical practice. DNA methylation alterations are frequently involved in tumorigenesis/or cancer development and could be detected in surrogate tissues such as specimens like sputum, plasma, serum, stool, or urine in a non-invasive manner, which makes them the attractive

source of potential biomarkers to diagnosis and therapeutic stratification.

Factor pathway inhibitor 2 (*TFPI2*), septin 9 (*SEPT9*), glutathione S-transferase pi 1 (*GSTP1*), vimentin (*VIM*), and short stature homeobox 2 (*SHOX2*) are some of the most widely studied and well-validated DNA methylation detection biomarkers which are detectable in distal sites [148, 149]. DNA methylation of *TFPI2* is sensitively and specifically detectable in the stool DNA from stage I to III of [150], and with the less sensitivity in the serum of patients with CRC [151]. Hypermethylation of *SEPT9* gene in blood samples of the patients affected with colorectal cancer is successfully measurable with a high sensitivity and specificity, as well [152–154]. DNA methylation of *GSTP1* has been provided value as a promising biomarker in the urine samples of prostate cancer patients [155–157]. *VIM* and *SHOX2* are another valuable DNA methylation-based biomarkers for the early detection of colorectal and lung cancer, respectively. Hypermethylation of *VIM* can be detected in the stool sample of 86% of colon cancers and 76% of adenomas [158–160]. Methylation quantification of *SHOX2* in bronchial aspirates and plasma of the patients diagnosed with malignant lung disease has been proved that *SHOX2* is one of the most promising methylation biomarkers in lung cancer patients [161–165].

The DNA methylation profile can also be screened for minimal residual disease (MRD) detection, molecular prognosis, and therapy response prediction. DNA hypermethylation in the promoter of the genes *CDKN2A* (*P16*), H-cadherin (*CDH13*), Ras association domain family 1A (*RassF1A*), and adenomatous polyposis coli (*APC*) has been showing strong association with high risk of early relapse and short survival in non-small-cell lung cancer (*NSCLC*) [166, 167]. Hypermethylation of the gene O6-methylguanine-DNA methyltransferase (*MGMT*) can be used as a predictive biomarker in the patients with colorectal and brain tumor [168–174]. Methylation status of paired-like homeodomain 2 (*PITX2*) gene is a candidate prognostic biomarker in breast [175–178], prostate [179–181], and lung cancer [182].

It should be noticed that although DNA methylation profile has been provided the mentioned valuable opportunities, there are some challenges for using DNA methylation as a cancer biomarker and the following criteria should ideally be considered: First of all, the entire promoter region CpG island has to be carefully studied. Secondly, regarding inter-individual variations in DNA methylation of the specific genes, for DNA methylation analysis a reference line needs to be defined in the normal control tissue to compare the rate of aberrant methylation with cancerous tissue. In addition, the examined region should be unmethylated in normal individuals and methylated in cancerous cells. Furthermore, false-positive (maybe due to age-dependent increase in DNA methylation or other reasons) and false-negative (maybe as a result of improper selection of investigated region or other explanations) results should be considered [149].

22.8 DNA Methylation as a Therapeutic Target

In contrast with genetic alterations, epigenetic variations are reversible, which provides the opportunity for epigenetic targeting in order to cancer therapy. One of the developed strategies for epigenetic therapy is employing the agents that can inhibit DNMTs and restore the normal DNA methylation pattern [183].

The DNMT inhibitors (DNMTi) which are currently using clinically are cytosine analogs, DNA binders, S-adenosyl-l-methionine cofactor competitors, or oligonucleotides that unlike other chemotherapeutic medications do not target cells for immediate death [184]. DNMTi inhibit the function of DNMTs whether through incorporation into newly synthesized DNA and binding DNMT enzymes covalently during DNA replication, or by trapping DNMT enzymes which subsequently leads to proteasomal DNMTs degradation [184, 185].

Two most commonly used DNMT inhibitors, which are currently US Food and Drug Administration (FDA) and the European

Medicines Agency (EMA) approved for the treatment of myelodysplastic syndrome (MDS), acute myeloid leukemia (AML), and chronic myelomonocytic leukemia (CML), are 5-azacitidine (5-Aza-CR, vidaza) and 5-aza-2′-deoxycytidine (5-Aza-CdR, decitabine) [186, 187]. Even though these compounds have also been investigated in various solid tumors, clinical trials represent that this kind of treatment has not been fruitful in solid tumors [188].

While 5-azacitidine and decitabine are particularly potent inhibitors of DNA methylation, several other agents have been proposed as being DNMTs due to some weak points (such as relative instability, low specificity, and side effects) [189]. For example, zebularine is a more stable and less toxic cytidine analogs. However, higher dose requirement for efficient therapy prevents it to be used in the clinical practice [184, 190]. Other inhibitors such as the local anesthetic procaine, epigallocatechin-3-gallate (EGCG), RG108, SGI-1027, SGI-110 (guadecitabine), hydralazine, procainamide, or psammaplin have been developed to improve the pharmacokinetic profile [191–198].

SGI-1027 inhibits DNMT1 and DNMT3a through DNA-binding mechanism, induces DNMT1 degradation, and reactivates tumor suppressor genes such as TIMP3, MLH1, and P16 by blocking DNMT1 [195, 199].

SGI-110, a dinucleotide composing of decitabine and deoxyguanosine, is one of the second-generation DNMT inhibitors that is in clinical trials (NCT01261312, NCT02901899, NCT01752933) for the treatment of AML, MDS, ovarian and advanced hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC) [184, 191, 200].

4′ -Thio-2′ -deoxycytidine (TdCyd), 5-fluoro-2′-deoxycytidine (FdCyd) are other examples of cytosine analogs that are in clinical trials for cancer therapy. The first one is in phase I trial in the patients with advanced solid malignancies (NCT02423057) [201], and the latter is in trials for the treatment of advanced solid tumors, AML, and MS (NCT00359606, NCT01041443) [202].

MG98 and miR29b are also examples of oligonucleotide-based inhibitors, which repress DNA methylation of tumor suppressor genes and prevent tumor growth [203–206].

Phthalimido-L-tryptophan RG-108 is one of the SAM competitors that show DNMT inhibition activity and TSG reactivation in the colon cancer cell line HCT116 [193, 207].

In addition, the results of many clinical trials suggest that using DNMTi in combination with other therapies (such as cytotoxic agents, immunotherapy, or other epigenetic therapies) have been associated with beneficial effects in cancer treatment.

Emerging data represent that immunotherapeutic approaches show impressive improved responses when they are simultaneously used with epigenetic agents. Using immune checkpoint blockades such as inhibitors of programmed cell death protein 1 (PD-1) and its ligand (PD-L1) or anti-cytotoxic T-lymphocyte-associated protein 4 (CTLA-4) immune checkpoints, combined with epigenetic targeting has shown promising in cancer immunotherapy improvement. Combining decitabine with nivolumab (anti-PD-1) in patients with non-small cell lung cancer (NSCLC) (phase II, NCT02664181); the combination of azacitidine and pembrolizumab (anti-PD-1) in metastatic melanoma (phase II, NCT02816021); azacitidine in combination with durvalumab (anti-PD-L1) and tremelimumab (anti-CTLA-4) in the patients with head and neck cancer who developed during or subsequent to anti-PD-1, anti-PD-L1, or anti-CTLA-4 monotherapy (phase I/II, NCT03019003); using guadecitabine in combination with ipilimumab (anti-CTLA-4) in metastatic melanoma (phase I, NCT02608437); the combination of azacitidine and pembrolizumab in non-small cell lung cancer patients who previously treated locally advanced or metastatic (phase II, NCT02546986); decitabine in combination with ipilimumab in relapsed or refractory MDS and AML (phase I, NCT02890329) are examples of clinical trials combining DNMTi and immune checkpoint blockades in cancer therapy [208, 209].

22.9 Common Methods for Assessing DNA Methylation

Research projects on DNA methylation have grown dramatically during the past decade and numerous strategies have been designed for detecting and validating DNA methylation status.

DNA methylation pattern detection by various methods is carried out based on three strategies:

22.9.1 Affinity-Based

The third strategy to differentiate between methylated and unmethylated cytosines is affinity-based approaches. In this technique, methylated fragments of DNA are immunoprecipitated by specific antibodies against the proteins that recognize 5-methylcytosines (methyl-CpG-binding proteins/MBDs). The procedure is processed by affinity purification on MBD beads, which allows purification of methylated fragments of DNA. Purified fragments are then subjected to further analysis such as microarray-based analyses or sequencing to identify them [210]. Affinity-based methods for screening of DNA methylation alterations are shown in Table 22.3.

22.9.2 Bisulfite-Based

Sodium bisulfite sequencing is one of the most widely used techniques for investigating and gold standard for validating the DNA methylation status. During bisulfite treatment, methylated and unmethylated cytosines on CpG dinucleotides react differentially to sodium bisulfite, so that 5-mC remains unaffected while C is converted into uracil (U). The conversion could then be identified using a variety of approaches through comparing the DNA sequence before and after bisulfite treatment. Table 22.4 provides an overview of the techniques based on sodium bisulfite treatment [214].

22.9.3 Methyl-Sensitive Restriction Enzyme-Based

In this approach, restriction enzymes distinguish sequences based on methylation status, so that only one of the two portions (either methylated or unmethylated) is digested and the other part remains unchanged after the restriction digestions. Several methyl-sensitive restriction enzyme-based methods are listed in Table 22.5, with their advantages and limitations.

It should be mentioned that nowadays a variety of massively parallel DNA sequencing platforms are available for DNA methylation analysis, which include next-generation sequencing (NGS) and single-molecule sequencing. The advent of NGS technology allows sequencing and DNA methylation analysis of millions of DNA fragments across the genome, in parallel. NGS approaches not only have increased the speed and throughput abilities of DNA sequencing, but also they are becoming a

Table 22.3 Affinity-based strategies DNA methylation: (reviewed in Olkhov-Mitsel and Bapat [211])

Method	Short description	Advantages	Limitations
Methylated DNA immunoprecipitation (MeDIP)	Methylated fractions of single-stranded DNA are immunoprecipitated using monoclonal anti-5-methylcytosine antibodies, following by amplification and sequencing (MeDIP-Seq) or hybridization to microarray platforms	Very sensitive to densely methylated sequences, commercial kits are available, global methylation analysis	Single-stranded DNA is needed, large amounts of genomic DNA is required, restricted to the antibody quality and specificity
Methylated CpG island recovery assay (MIRA)	Methyl-CpG-binding proteins (MBD2b/MBD3-Like1 protein) complex are utilized for purification of methylated DNA sequences, following by microarray-based analyses or direct sequencing	High sensitivity, sequence-independent, single-stranded DNA is not required, global methylation analysis	Restricted to the MBD binding specificity

Table 22.4 Bisulfite-based strategies (reviewed in literature [211–213])

Method	Short description	Advantages	Limitations
Whole genome shotgun bisulfite sequencing (WGSGS)	Short fragments of bisulfite-modified DNA are sequenced in parallel	High sensitivity, global DNA methylation analysis	Too expensive
Reduced representation bisulfite sequencing (RRBS)	DNA is digested using BglII or MspI to enrich the CpG sites, following by bisulfite-modification, PCR and sequencing	High sensitivity, global DNA methylation analysis, low cost, low sample input	Restricted to restriction enzymes digestion sites, all CpG islands or promoters are not captured
Denaturing HPLC (DHPLC)	Bisulfite-modified DNA is partially denatured and separated based on different G/C content by HPLC	Simple, rapid, simultaneous detection of methylated CpGs	Expensive equipment, large sample input
MethyLight	Bisulfite-converted DNA is amplified with methylation-specific primers and a TaqMan fluorescent probe	High-throughput, sensitive, quantitative, low cost	A control gene is needed for analysis, it needs a great number of specific probes to detect a region with many CpG sites
Bisulfite sequencing (BS)	Amplified fragments are sequenced to detect the methylation status of multiple CpG sites	10–30 CpG sites can be checked	Medium sensitivity, laborious, relatively expensive
Methylation-specific PCR (MSP)	Bisulfite-modified DNA is amplified with two pairs of primers (one for methylated and one for unmethylated CpGs) for detection of methylation status	Easy, rapid, cheap	A few CpGs can be investigated, qualitative, high sensitivity
Methylation-sensitive melting curve analysis (MS-MCA)	Bisulfite-modified DNA is monitored using a fluorescent dye, based on changing in the melting properties of PCR amplicons during MSP	High-throughput, quantitative	Medium sensitivity, difficult to interpret
Methylation-sensitive high-resolution melting (MS-HRM)	Bisulfite-modified DNA is monitored using a fluorescent dye, based on changing in the melting properties of PCR amplicons during MSP	High-throughput, quantitative, high sensitivity	Difficult to interpret
Sensitive melting analysis after real-time methylation-specific PCR (SMART-MSP)	Bisulfite-modified DNA is amplified using a fluorescent dye and methylation-specific primers, following by HRM analysis	High sensitivity, low false-positive frequency, high-throughput, quantitative	A control gene is needed for analysis
Methylation-specific fluorescent amplicon generation (MS-FLAG)	Bisulfite-modified DNA is amplified using methylation-specific primers and released signal is detected during PCR by PspGI-mediated digestion	Quantitative, high-throughput, low false-positive frequency	Medium sensitivity, using gel electrophoresis, low resolution
Methylation-sensitive single-nucleotide primer extension (MS-SNuPE)	Bisulfite-modified DNA is amplified using the primers that anneal to the sequence up to the nucleotide located prior to the CpG of interest. The methylated DNA results in the tag of dCTP at the end of primer, whereas the unmethylated DNA produces the dTTP to anneal to the primer	Quantitative, simultaneous detection of methylated CpGs, rapid	Medium sensitivity, using radioactive labeling

Table 22.5 Methyl-sensitive restriction enzyme-based strategies (reviewed in literature [211–213])

Method	Short description	Advantages	Limitations
Restriction landmark genome scanning (RLGS)	DNA is digested using methylation-sensitive restriction enzymes, then digested fragments are separated on a two-dimensional gel electrophoresis	Global methylation analysis	Using radioactive material and gel electrophoresis, low sensitivity, limited genome coverage
HpaII tiny fragment enrichment by ligation-mediated PCR (HELP)	DNA is digested using both HpaII and MspI restriction enzymes, followed by PCR amplification and hybridization to microarrays	Positive representation of hypomethylation and hypermethylation status of CpGs, global methylation analysis	Only CpG islands located within restriction sites are detected, low sensitivity for high CpG density regions
Methyl-Seq	DNA is digested using HpaII or MspI restriction enzymes, followed by size fractioning and next-generation sequencing	High sensitivity	High-quality DNA is required
Luminometric methylation assay (LUMA)	DNA is digested using EcoRI and HpaII, or EcoRI and MspI, followed by pyrosequencing extension	High sensitivity, quantitative, relatively small amount of DNA is required	High-quality DNA is required
Methyl-sensitive cut counting (MSCC)	DNA is digested using HpaII and MmeI restriction enzymes, followed by deep sequencing	High sensitivity	High-quality DNA is required
Comprehensive high-throughput arrays for relative methylation (CHARM)	DNA is digested using MseI and McrBC restriction enzymes and then analyzed on a specially designed array	Quantitative, global methylation analysis, not restricted to the CGIs, *regions of lower CpG density* are taken into the consideration	Medium sensitivity, restricted to enzymatic digestion
Microarray-based methylation assessment of single samples (MMASS)	DNA is digested using MseI and BstUI, HhaI, and HpaII in MMASS-v1 or AciI, HinP1I, HpyCH4IV, and HpaII in MMASS-v2	High-throughput	Medium sensitivity, high-quality DNA is required
Differential methylation hybridization (DMH)	DNA is first digested using MseI and subsequently digested using BstUI, HhaI, and HpaII, McrBC restriction enzymes. Digested DNA fragments are then amplified, fluorescently labeled, and hybridized to arrays	Semiquantitative, able to identification of hyper- and hypo-methylated CpGs, global methylation analysis	Medium sensitivity, restricted to enzymatic digestion
Methylation single-nucleotide polymorphism (MSNP)	DNA is digested using XbaI and HpaII restriction enzymes	Able to detect single-nucleotide polymorphisms (SNPs), copy number variations, loss of heterozygosity (LOH), and methylation	Medium sensitivity, restricted to enzymatic digestion
Methylation-sensitive arbitrarily primed PCR (MS-AP-PCR)	DNA is digested using RsaI, MspI, or HpaII	Simple	Low sensitivity, low-throughput, high-quality DNA is required, large sample input
Amplification of inter-methylated sites (AIMS)	DNA is digested with SmaI and XmaI, followed by PCR amplification of methylated sequences	Simple	Low sensitivity, low-throughput, using radioactive material, high-quality DNA is required, large sample input

more affordable possibility for global epigenetic profiling and are gradually replacing traditional sequencing technologies [212].

22.10 Conclusions

Epigenetic events, particularly DNA methylation, are well-recognized drivers in the pathogenesis of cancers. Emerging evidence demonstrates that altered DNA methylation, mainly promoter hypermethylation, is frequently involved in modifying the expression of key genes, which predispose to oncogenesis and tumor progression. Understanding the role and importance of aberrant DNA methylation in the pathogenesis of cancers has been increasingly resulted in exploiting DNA methylation signatures in clinical practice, including developing them as diagnostic, prognostic, and predictive biomarkers, as well as identifying novel anti-tumor targets and therapeutic strategies. DNA methylation profiling using new advancements will be promising in helping unravel the cancer complexity, improving clinical outcomes and quality of life in cancer patients, and would be a way forward to personalized, precision-based cancer therapy.

References

1. Baylin SB, Jones PA. A decade of exploring the cancer epigenome—biological and translational implications. Nat Rev Cancer. 2011;11(10):726.
2. Berger SL, Kouzarides T, Shiekhattar R, Shilatifard A. An operational definition of epigenetics. Genes Dev. 2009;23(7):781–3.
3. Ahuja N, Sharma AR, Baylin SB. Epigenetic therapeutics: a new weapon in the war against cancer. Annu Rev Med. 2016;67:73–89.
4. Waddington C. The epigenotype. Endeavour. 1942;1:18–20.
5. Sandoval J, Esteller M. Cancer epigenomics: beyond genomics. Curr Opin Genet Dev. 2012;22(1):50–5.
6. Ducasse M, Brown MA. Epigenetic aberrations and cancer. Mol Cancer. 2006;5:60.
7. Kanwal R, Gupta S. Epigenetics and cancer. J Appl Physiol. 2010;109(2):598–605.
8. Baylin SB, Jones PA. Epigenetic determinants of cancer. Cold Spring Harb Perspect Biol. 2016;8(9):a019505.
9. Ehrlich M, Gama-Sosa MA, Huang LH, Midgett RM, Kuo KC, McCune RA, et al. Amount and distribution of 5-methylcytosine in human DNA from different types of tissues of cells. Nucleic Acids Res. 1982;10(8):2709–21.
10. Gama-Sosa MA, Slagel VA, Trewyn RW, Oxenhandler R, Kuo KC, Gehrke CW, et al. The 5-methylcytosine content of DNA from human tumors. Nucleic Acids Res. 1983;11(19):6883–94.
11. Feinberg AP, Vogelstein B. Hypomethylation distinguishes genes of some human cancers from their normal counterparts. Nature. 1983;301(5895):89–92.
12. Feinberg AP, Vogelstein B. Hypomethylation of ras oncogenes in primary human cancers. Biochem Biophys Res Commun. 1983;111(1):47–54.
13. Smith ZD, Meissner A. DNA methylation: roles in mammalian development. Nat Rev Genet. 2013;14(3):204–20.
14. Esteller M. Epigenetics in cancer. N Engl J Med. 2008;358(11):1148–59.
15. Sharma S, Kelly TK, Jones PA. Epigenetics in cancer. Carcinogenesis. 2010;31(1):27–36.
16. Hanahan D, Weinberg RA. Hallmarks of cancer: the next generation. Cell. 2011;144(5):646–74.
17. Jones PA, Baylin SB. The fundamental role of epigenetic events in cancer. Nat Rev Genet. 2002;3(6):415–28.
18. Paulsen M, Ferguson-Smith AC. DNA methylation in genomic imprinting, development, and disease. J Pathol. 2001;195(1):97–110.
19. Han H, Cortez CC, Yang X, Nichols PW, Jones PA, Liang G. DNA methylation directly silences genes with non-CpG island promoters and establishes a nucleosome occupied promoter. Hum Mol Genet. 2011;20(22):4299–310.
20. Costello JF, Plass C. Methylation matters. J Med Genet. 2001;38(5):285–303.
21. Kareta MS, Botello ZM, Ennis JJ, Chou C, Chedin F. Reconstitution and mechanism of the stimulation of de novo methylation by human DNMT3L. J Biol Chem. 2006;281(36):25893–902.
22. Long MD, Smiraglia DJ, Campbell MJ. The genomic impact of DNA CpG methylation on gene expression; relationships in prostate cancer. Biomol Ther. 2017;7(1).
23. Dawson MA, Kouzarides T. Cancer epigenetics: from mechanism to therapy. Cell. 2012;150(1):12–27.
24. Rodriguez-Paredes M, Esteller M. Cancer epigenetics reaches mainstream oncology. Nat Med. 2011;17(3):330–9.
25. Zhang W, Xu J. DNA methyltransferases and their roles in tumorigenesis. Biomark Res. 2017;5:1.
26. Agoston AT, Argani P, Yegnasubramanian S, De Marzo AM, Ansari-Lari MA, Hicks JL, et al. Increased protein stability causes DNA methyltransferase 1 dysregulation in breast cancer. J Biol Chem. 2005;280(18):18302–10.
27. Saito Y, Kanai Y, Nakagawa T, Sakamoto M, Saito H, Ishii H, et al. Increased protein expression of

DNA methyltransferase (DNMT) 1 is significantly correlated with the malignant potential and poor prognosis of human hepatocellular carcinomas. Int J Cancer. 2003;105(4):527–32.
28. Peng DF, Kanai Y, Sawada M, Ushijima S, Hiraoka N, Kitazawa S, et al. DNA methylation of multiple tumor-related genes in association with overexpression of DNA methyltransferase 1 (DNMT1) during multistage carcinogenesis of the pancreas. Carcinogenesis. 2006;27(6):1160–8.
29. Zhao SL, Zhu ST, Hao X, Li P, Zhang ST. Effects of DNA methyltransferase 1 inhibition on esophageal squamous cell carcinoma. Diseases of the esophagus: official journal of the international society for. Dis Esophagus. 2011;24(8):601–10.
30. Mizuno S, Chijiwa T, Okamura T, Akashi K, Fukumaki Y, Niho Y, et al. Expression of DNA methyltransferases DNMT1, 3A, and 3B in normal hematopoiesis and in acute and chronic myelogenous leukemia. Blood. 2001;97(5):1172–9.
31. Kanai Y, Ushijima S, Nakanishi Y, Sakamoto M, Hirohashi S. Mutation of the DNA methyltransferase (DNMT) 1 gene in human colorectal cancers. Cancer Lett. 2003;192(1):75–82.
32. Zhao Z, Wu Q, Cheng J, Qiu X, Zhang J, Fan H. Depletion of DNMT3A suppressed cell proliferation and restored PTEN in hepatocellular carcinoma cell. J Biomed Biotechnol. 2010;2010:737535.
33. Ley TJ, Ding L, Walter MJ, McLellan MD, Lamprecht T, Larson DE, et al. DNMT3A mutations in acute myeloid leukemia. N Engl J Med. 2010;363(25):2424–33.
34. Yan XJ, Xu J, Gu ZH, Pan CM, Lu G, Shen Y, et al. Exome sequencing identifies somatic mutations of DNA methyltransferase gene DNMT3A in acute monocytic leukemia. Nat Genet. 2011;43(4):309–15.
35. Yamashita Y, Yuan J, Suetake I, Suzuki H, Ishikawa Y, Choi YL, et al. Array-based genomic resequencing of human leukemia. Oncogene. 2010;29(25):3723–31.
36. Neumann M, Heesch S, Schlee C, Schwartz S, Gokbuget N, Hoelzer D, et al. Whole-exome sequencing in adult ETP-ALL reveals a high rate of DNMT3A mutations. Blood. 2013;121(23):4749–52.
37. Walter MJ, Ding L, Shen D, Shao J, Grillot M, McLellan M, et al. Recurrent DNMT3A mutations in patients with myelodysplastic syndromes. Leukemia. 2011;25(7):1153–8.
38. Butcher DT, Rodenhiser DI. Epigenetic inactivation of BRCA1 is associated with aberrant expression of CTCF and DNA methyltransferase (DNMT3B) in some sporadic breast tumours. Eur J Cancer. 2007;43(1):210–9.
39. Kobayashi Y, Absher DM, Gulzar ZG, Young SR, McKenney JK, Peehl DM, et al. DNA methylation profiling reveals novel biomarkers and important roles for DNA methyltransferases in prostate cancer. Genome Res. 2011;21(7):1017–27.
40. Ibrahim AE, Arends MJ, Silva AL, Wyllie AH, Greger L, Ito Y, et al. Sequential DNA methylation changes are associated with DNMT3B overexpression in colorectal neoplastic progression. Gut. 2011;60(4):499–508.
41. Matsuoka T, Kawai K, Ando S, Sugita S, Kandori S, Kojima T, et al. DNA methyltransferase-3 like protein expression in various histological types of testicular germ cell tumor. Jpn J Clin Oncol. 2016;46(5):475–81.
42. Minami K, Chano T, Kawakami T, Ushida H, Kushima R, Okabe H, et al. DNMT3L is a novel marker and is essential for the growth of human embryonal carcinoma. Clin Cancer Res. 2010;16(10):2751–9.
43. Singal R, Ginder GD. DNA methylation. Blood. 1999;93(12):4059–70.
44. Tate PH, Bird AP. Effects of DNA methylation on DNA-binding proteins and gene expression. Curr Opin Genet Dev. 1993;3(2):226–31.
45. Prokhortchouk E, Hendrich B. Methyl-CpG binding proteins and cancer: are MeCpGs more important than MBDs? Oncogene. 2002;21(35):5394–9.
46. Kass SU, Pruss D, Wolffe AP. How does DNA methylation repress transcription? Trends Genet. 1997;13(11):444–9.
47. Baylin SB, Herman JG. DNA hypermethylation in tumorigenesis: epigenetics joins genetics. Trends Genet. 2000;16(4):168–74.
48. Ehrlich M. DNA methylation in cancer: too much, but also too little. Oncogene. 2002;21(35):5400–13.
49. Paz MF, Fraga MF, Avila S, Guo M, Pollan M, Herman JG, et al. A systematic profile of DNA methylation in human cancer cell lines. Cancer Res. 2003;63(5):1114–21.
50. Li X, Yao X, Wang Y, Hu F, Wang F, Jiang L, et al. MLH1 promoter methylation frequency in colorectal cancer patients and related clinicopathological and molecular features. PLoS One. 2013;8(3):e59064.
51. Wani M, Afroze D, Makhdoomi M, Hamid I, Wani B, Bhat G, et al. Promoter methylation status of DNA repair gene (hMLH1) in gastric carcinoma patients of the Kashmir valley. Asian Pac J Cancer Prev. 2012;13(8):4177–81.
52. Shi J, Zhang G, Yao D, Liu W, Wang N, Ji M, et al. Prognostic significance of aberrant gene methylation in gastric cancer. Am J Cancer Res. 2012;2(1):116–29.
53. Esteller M. Relevance of DNA methylation in the management of cancer. Lancet Oncol. 2003;4(6):351–8.
54. Wang YC, Lu YP, Tseng RC, Lin RK, Chang JW, Chen JT, et al. Inactivation of hMLH1 and hMSH2 by promoter methylation in primary non-small cell lung tumors and matched sputum samples. J Clin Invest. 2003;111(6):887–95.
55. Strathdee G, MacKean MJ, Illand M, Brown R. A role for methylation of the hMLH1 promoter in loss of hMLH1 expression and drug resistance in ovarian cancer. Oncogene. 1999;18(14):2335–41.

56. Hibi K, Sakata M, Yokomizo K, Kitamura YH, Sakuraba K, Shirahata A, et al. Methylation of the MGMT gene is frequently detected in advanced gastric carcinoma. Anticancer Res. 2009;29(12):5053–5.
57. Schneider BG, Peng DF, Camargo MC, Piazuelo MB, Sicinschi LA, Mera R, et al. Promoter DNA hypermethylation in gastric biopsies from subjects at high and low risk for gastric cancer. Int J Cancer. 2010;127(11):2588–97.
58. Manoharan M, Ramachandran K, Soloway MS, Singal R. Epigenetic targets in the diagnosis and treatment of prostate cancer. Int Braz J Urol. 2007;33(1):11–8.
59. Catteau A, Morris JR. BRCA1 methylation: a significant role in tumour development? Semin Cancer Biol. 2002;12(5):359–71.
60. Ruscito I, Dimitrova D, Vasconcelos I, Gellhaus K, Schwachula T, Bellati F, et al. BRCA1 gene promoter methylation status in high-grade serous ovarian cancer patients--a study of the tumour Bank ovarian cancer (TOC) and ovarian cancer diagnosis consortium (OVCAD). Eur J Cancer. 2014;50(12):2090–8.
61. Wang P, Tang JT, Peng YS, Chen XY, Zhang YJ, Fang JY. XRCC1 downregulated through promoter hypermethylation is involved in human gastric carcinogenesis. J Dig Dis. 2010;11(6):343–51.
62. Kang GH, Lee S, Cho NY, Gandamihardja T, Long TI, Weisenberger DJ, et al. DNA methylation profiles of gastric carcinoma characterized by quantitative DNA methylation analysis. Lab Investig. 2008;88(2):161–70.
63. Chen HY, Zhu BH, Zhang CH, Yang DJ, Peng JJ, Chen JH, et al. High CpG island methylator phenotype is associated with lymph node metastasis and prognosis in gastric cancer. Cancer Sci. 2012;103(1):73–9.
64. Tamura G. Alterations of tumor suppressor and tumor-related genes in the development and progression of gastric cancer. World J Gastroenterol: WJG. 2006;12(2):192–8.
65. Joo JK, Kim SH, Kim HG, Kim DY, Ryu SY, Lee KH, et al. CpG methylation of transcription factor 4 in gastric carcinoma. Ann Surg Oncol. 2010;17(12):3344–53.
66. Shu XS, Geng H, Li L, Ying J, Ma C, Wang Y, et al. The epigenetic modifier PRDM5 functions as a tumor suppressor through modulating WNT/beta-catenin signaling and is frequently silenced in multiple tumors. PLoS One. 2011;6(11):e27346.
67. Cameron EE, Baylin SB, Herman JG. p15(INK4B) CpG island methylation in primary acute leukemia is heterogeneous and suggests density as a critical factor for transcriptional silencing. Blood. 1999;94(7):2445–51.
68. Gonzalgo ML, Bender CM, You EH, Glendening JM, Flores JF, Walker GJ, et al. Low frequency of p16/CDKN2A methylation in sporadic melanoma: comparative approaches for methylation analysis of primary tumors. Cancer Res. 1997;57(23):5336–47.
69. McCluskey LL, Chen C, Delgadillo E, Felix JC, Muderspach LI, Dubeau L. Differences in p16 gene methylation and expression in benign and malignant ovarian tumors. Gynecol Oncol. 1999;72(1):87–92.
70. Schutte M, Hruban RH, Geradts J, Maynard R, Hilgers W, Rabindran SK, et al. Abrogation of the Rb/p16 tumor-suppressive pathway in virtually all pancreatic carcinomas. Cancer Res. 1997;57(15):3126–30.
71. Melki JR, Vincent PC, Clark SJ. Concurrent DNA hypermethylation of multiple genes in acute myeloid leukemia. Cancer Res. 1999;59(15):3730–40.
72. Herman JG, Jen J, Merlo A, Baylin SB. Hypermethylation-associated inactivation indicates a tumor suppressor role for p15INK4B. Cancer Res. 1996;56(4):722–7.
73. Garcia MJ, Martinez-Delgado B, Cebrian A, Martinez A, Benitez J, Rivas C. Different incidence and pattern of p15INK4b and p16INK4a promoter region hypermethylation in Hodgkin's and CD30-positive non-Hodgkin's lymphomas. Am J Pathol. 2002;161(3):1007–13.
74. Graff JR, Herman JG, Lapidus RG, Chopra H, Xu R, Jarrard DF, et al. E-cadherin expression is silenced by DNA hypermethylation in human breast and prostate carcinomas. Cancer Res. 1995;55(22):5195–9.
75. Graff JR, Greenberg VE, Herman JG, Westra WH, Boghaert ER, Ain KB, et al. Distinct patterns of E-cadherin CpG island methylation in papillary, follicular, Hurthle's cell, and poorly differentiated human thyroid carcinoma. Cancer Res. 1998;58(10):2063–6.
76. Martin TA, Jiang WG. Loss of tight junction barrier function and its role in cancer metastasis. Biochim Biophys Acta. 2009;1788(4):872–91.
77. Toyooka S, Toyooka KO, Maruyama R, Virmani AK, Girard L, Miyajima K, et al. DNA methylation profiles of lung tumors. Mol Cancer Ther. 2001;1(1):61–7.
78. Ksiaa F, Ziadi S, Amara K, Korbi S, Trimeche M. Biological significance of promoter hypermethylation of tumor-related genes in patients with gastric carcinoma. Clin Chim Acta [Int J Clin Chem]. 2009;404(2):128–33.
79. Bachman KE, Herman JG, Corn PG, Merlo A, Costello JF, Cavenee WK, et al. Methylation-associated silencing of the tissue inhibitor of metalloproteinase-3 gene suggest a suppressor role in kidney, brain, and other human cancers. Cancer Res. 1999;59(4):798–802.
80. Esteller M, Corn PG, Baylin SB, Herman JG. A gene hypermethylation profile of human cancer. Cancer Res. 2001;61(8):3225–9.
81. Guo W, Dong Z, He M, Guo Y, Guo J, Chen Z, et al. Aberrant methylation of thrombospondin-1 and its association with reduced expression in gastric cardia adenocarcinoma. J Biomed Biotechnol. 2010;2010:721485.
82. Wang L, Chen S, Xue M, Zhong J, Wang X, Gan L, et al. Homeobox D10 gene, a candidate tumor

suppressor, is downregulated through promoter hypermethylation and associated with gastric carcinogenesis. Mol Med. 2012;18:389–400.
83. Chang X, Li Z, Ma J, Deng P, Zhang S, Zhi Y, et al. DNA methylation of NDRG2 in gastric cancer and its clinical significance. Dig Dis Sci. 2013;58(3):715–23.
84. Zhang J, Liu L, Pfeifer GP. Methylation of the retinoid response gene TIG1 in prostate cancer correlates with methylation of the retinoic acid receptor beta gene. Oncogene. 2004;23(12):2241–9.
85. Hiraki M, Kitajima Y, Koga Y, Tanaka T, Nakamura J, Hashiguchi K, et al. Aberrant gene methylation is a biomarker for the detection of cancer cells in peritoneal wash samples from advanced gastric cancer patients. Ann Surg Oncol. 2011;18(10):3013–9.
86. Sugita H, Iida S, Inokuchi M, Kato K, Ishiguro M, Ishikawa T, et al. Methylation of BNIP3 and DAPK indicates lower response to chemotherapy and poor prognosis in gastric cancer. Oncol Rep. 2011;25(2):513–8.
87. Toyota M, Ho C, Ohe-Toyota M, Baylin SB, Issa JP. Inactivation of CACNA1G, a T-type calcium channel gene, by aberrant methylation of its 5' CpG island in human tumors. Cancer Res. 1999;59(18):4535–41.
88. Qu Y, Dang S, Hou P. Gene methylation in gastric cancer. Clin Chim Acta [Int J Clin Chem]. 2013;424:53–65.
89. Ksiaa F, Ziadi S, Amara K, Korbi S, Trimeche M. Biological significance of promoter hypermethylation of tumor-related genes in patients with gastric carcinoma. Clin Chim Acta. 2009;404(2):128–33.
90. Yu J, Cheng YY, Tao Q, Cheung KF, Lam CN, Geng H, et al. Methylation of protocadherin 10, a novel tumor suppressor, is associated with poor prognosis in patients with gastric cancer. Gastroenterology. 2009;136(2):640–51. e1
91. Hu X, Sui X, Li L, Huang X, Rong R, Su X, et al. Protocadherin 17 acts as a tumour suppressor inducing tumour cell apoptosis and autophagy, and is frequently methylated in gastric and colorectal cancers. J Pathol. 2013;229(1):62–73.
92. Ottaviano YL, Issa JP, Parl FF, Smith HS, Baylin SB, Davidson NE. Methylation of the estrogen receptor gene CpG island marks loss of estrogen receptor expression in human breast cancer cells. Cancer Res. 1994;54(10):2552–5.
93. Issa JP, Ottaviano YL, Celano P, Hamilton SR, Davidson NE, Baylin SB. Methylation of the oestrogen receptor CpG island links ageing and neoplasia in human colon. Nat Genet. 1994;7(4):536–40.
94. Dote H, Toyooka S, Tsukuda K, Yano M, Ota T, Murakami M, et al. Aberrant promoter methylation in human DAB2 interactive protein (hDAB2IP) gene in gastrointestinal tumour. Br J Cancer. 2005;92(6):1117–25.
95. Agathanggelou A, Honorio S, Macartney DP, Martinez A, Dallol A, Rader J, et al. Methylation associated inactivation of RASSF1A from region 3p21.3 in lung, breast and ovarian tumours. Oncogene. 2001;20(12):1509–18.
96. Wang YC, Yu ZH, Liu C, Xu LZ, Yu W, Lu J, et al. Detection of RASSF1A promoter hypermethylation in serum from gastric and colorectal adenocarcinoma patients. World J Gastroenterol. 2008;14(19):3074–80.
97. Morrissey C, Martinez A, Zatyka M, Agathanggelou A, Honorio S, Astuti D, et al. Epigenetic inactivation of the RASSF1A 3p21.3 tumor suppressor gene in both clear cell and papillary renal cell carcinoma. Cancer Res. 2001;61(19):7277–81.
98. Kwong J, Lo KW, To KF, Teo PM, Johnson PJ, Huang DP. Promoter hypermethylation of multiple genes in nasopharyngeal carcinoma. Clin Cancer Res. 2002;8(1):131–7.
99. Younesian S, Shahkarami S, Ghaffari P, Alizadeh S, Mehrasa R, Ghavamzadeh A, et al. DNA hypermethylation of tumor suppressor genes RASSF6 and RASSF10 as independent prognostic factors in adult acute lymphoblastic leukemia. Leuk Res. 2017;61:33–8.
100. Hesson LB, Dunwell TL, Cooper WN, Catchpoole D, Brini AT, Chiaramonte R, et al. The novel RASSF6 and RASSF10 candidate tumour suppressor genes are frequently epigenetically inactivated in childhood leukaemias. Mol Cancer. 2009;8:42.
101. Oshimo Y, Kuraoka K, Nakayama H, Kitadai Y, Yoshida K, Chayama K, et al. Epigenetic inactivation of SOCS-1 by CpG island hypermethylation in human gastric carcinoma. Int J Cancer. 2004;112(6):1003–9.
102. Virmani AK, Rathi A, Sathyanarayana UG, Padar A, Huang CX, Cunnigham HT, et al. Aberrant methylation of the adenomatous polyposis coli (APC) gene promoter 1A in breast and lung carcinomas. Clin Cancer Res. 2001;7(7):1998–2004.
103. Kawakami K, Brabender J, Lord RV, Groshen S, Greenwald BD, Krasna MJ, et al. Hypermethylated APC DNA in plasma and prognosis of patients with esophageal adenocarcinoma. J Natl Cancer Inst. 2000;92(22):1805–11.
104. Yu J, Tao Q, Cheng YY, Lee KY, Ng SS, Cheung KF, et al. Promoter methylation of the Wnt/beta-catenin signaling antagonist Dkk-3 is associated with poor survival in gastric cancer. Cancer. 2009;115(1):49–60.
105. Guo Y, Guo W, Chen Z, Kuang G, Yang Z, Dong Z. Hypermethylation and aberrant expression of Wnt-antagonist family genes in gastric cardia adenocarcinoma. Neoplasma. 2011;58(2):110–7.
106. Ben Ayed-Guerfali D, Benhaj K, Khabir A, Abid M, Bayrouti MI, Sellami-Boudawara T, et al. Hypermethylation of tumor-related genes in Tunisian patients with gastric carcinoma: clinical and biological significance. J Surg Oncol. 2011;103(7):687–94.
107. Yao D, Shi J, Shi B, Wang N, Liu W, Zhang G, et al. Quantitative assessment of gene methylation and their impact on clinical outcome in

gastric cancer. Clin Chim Acta [Int J Clin Chem]. 2012;413(7–8):787–94.
108. Oue N, Mitani Y, Motoshita J, Matsumura S, Yoshida K, Kuniyasu H, et al. Accumulation of DNA methylation is associated with tumor stage in gastric cancer. Cancer. 2006;106(6):1250–9.
109. Agrelo R, Cheng WH, Setien F, Ropero S, Espada J, Fraga MF, et al. Epigenetic inactivation of the premature aging Werner syndrome gene in human cancer. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2006;103(23):8822–7.
110. Kawasaki T, Ohnishi M, Suemoto Y, Kirkner GJ, Liu Z, Yamamoto H, et al. WRN promoter methylation possibly connects mucinous differentiation, microsatellite instability and CpG island methylator phenotype in colorectal cancer. Mod Pathol. 2008;21(2):150–8.
111. Zheng S, Houseman EA, Morrison Z, Wrensch MR, Patoka JS, Ramos C, et al. DNA hypermethylation profiles associated with glioma subtypes and EZH2 and IGFBP2 mRNA expression. Neuro-Oncology. 2011;13(3):280–9.
112. Ahuja N, Mohan AL, Li Q, Stolker JM, Herman JG, Hamilton SR, et al. Association between CpG island methylation and microsatellite instability in colorectal cancer. Cancer Res. 1997;57(16):3370–4.
113. Takahashi T, Shivapurkar N, Riquelme E, Shigematsu H, Reddy J, Suzuki M, et al. Aberrant promoter hypermethylation of multiple genes in gallbladder carcinoma and chronic cholecystitis. Clin Cancer Res. 2004;10(18):6126–33.
114. Ebert MP, Mooney SH, Tonnes-Priddy L, Lograsso J, Hoffmann J, Chent J, et al. Hypermethylation of the TPEF/HPP1 gene in primary, metastatic colorectal cancers. Neoplasia. 2005;7(8):771–8.
115. Geddert H, Kiel S, Iskender E, Florl AR, Krieg T, Vossen S, et al. Correlation of hMLH1 and HPP1 hypermethylation in gastric, but not in esophageal and cardiac adenocarcinoma. Int J Cancer. 2004;110(2):208–11.
116. Taniguchi H, Fernandez AF, Setien F, Ropero S, Ballestar E, Villanueva A, et al. Epigenetic inactivation of the circadian clock gene BMAL1 in hematologic malignancies. Cancer Res. 2009;69(21):8447–54.
117. Moelans CB, Verschuur-Maes AH, van Diest PJ. Frequent promoter hypermethylation of BRCA2, CDH13, MSH6, PAX5, PAX6 and WT1 in ductal carcinoma in situ and invasive breast cancer. J Pathol. 2011;225(2):222–31.
118. Kim JS, Han J, Shim YM, Park J, Kim DH. Aberrant methylation of H-cadherin (CDH13) promoter is associated with tumor progression in primary nonsmall cell lung carcinoma. Cancer. 2005;104(9):1825–33.
119. Akiyama Y, Watkins N, Suzuki H, Jair KW, van Engeland M, Esteller M, et al. GATA-4 and GATA-5 transcription factor genes and potential downstream antitumor target genes are epigenetically silenced in colorectal and gastric cancer. Mol Cell Biol. 2003;23(23):8429–39.
120. Jarrard DF, Kinoshita H, Shi Y, Sandefur C, Hoff D, Meisner LF, et al. Methylation of the androgen receptor promoter CpG island is associated with loss of androgen receptor expression in prostate cancer cells. Cancer Res. 1998;58(23):5310–4.
121. Tsou JA, Hagen JA, Carpenter CL, Laird-Offringa IA. DNA methylation analysis: a powerful new tool for lung cancer diagnosis. Oncogene. 2002;21(35):5450–61.
122. Sakai T, Toguchida J, Ohtani N, Yandell DW, Rapaport JM, Dryja TP. Allele-specific hypermethylation of the retinoblastoma tumor-suppressor gene. Am J Hum Genet. 1991;48(5):880–8.
123. Greger V, Passarge E, Hopping W, Messmer E, Horsthemke B. Epigenetic changes may contribute to the formation and spontaneous regression of retinoblastoma. Hum Genet. 1989;83(2):155–8.
124. Tian Y, Wan H, Tan G. Cell cycle-related kinase in carcinogenesis. Oncol Lett. 2012;4(4):601–6.
125. Drexler HG. Review of alterations of the cyclin-dependent kinase inhibitor INK4 family genes p15, p16, p18 and p19 in human leukemia-lymphoma cells. Leukemia. 1998;12(6):845–59.
126. Jackson SP, Bartek J. The DNA-damage response in human biology and disease. Nature. 2009;461(7267):1071–8.
127. Cancer Genome Atlas Research Network. Integrated genomic analyses of ovarian carcinoma. Nature. 2011;474(7353):609–15.
128. Katoh M. Epithelial-mesenchymal transition in gastric cancer (review). Int J Oncol. 2005;27(6):1677–83.
129. Christofori G, Semb H. The role of the cell-adhesion molecule E-cadherin as a tumour-suppressor gene. Trends Biochem Sci. 1999;24(2):73–6.
130. Chan AO. E-cadherin in gastric cancer. World J Gastroenterol. 2006;12(2):199–203.
131. Tamura G. Alterations of tumor suppressor and tumor-related genes in the development and progression of gastric cancer. World J Gastroenterol. 2006;12(2):192–8.
132. Kim YI, Giuliano A, Hatch KD, Schneider A, Nour MA, Dallal GE, et al. Global DNA hypomethylation increases progressively in cervical dysplasia and carcinoma. Cancer. 1994;74(3):893–9.
133. Robertson KD. DNA methylation, methyltransferases, and cancer. Oncogene. 2001;20(24):3139–55.
134. Fraga MF, Herranz M, Espada J, Ballestar E, Paz MF, Ropero S, et al. A mouse skin multistage carcinogenesis model reflects the aberrant DNA methylation patterns of human tumors. Cancer Res. 2004;64(16):5527–34.
135. Hoshimoto S, Takeuchi H, Ono S, Sim MS, Huynh JL, Huang SK, et al. Genome-wide hypomethylation and specific tumor-related gene hypermethylation are associated with esophageal squamous cell carcinoma outcome. J Thorac Oncol. 2015;10(3):509–17.
136. Lin CH, Hsieh SY, Sheen IS, Lee WC, Chen TC, Shyu WC, et al. Genome-wide hypomethylation in hepatocellular carcinogenesis. Cancer Res. 2001;61(10):4238–43.

137. Bedford MT, van Helden PD. Hypomethylation of DNA in pathological conditions of the human prostate. Cancer Res. 1987;47(20):5274–6.
138. Shigaki H, Baba Y, Watanabe M, Murata A, Iwagami S, Miyake K, et al. LINE-1 hypomethylation in gastric cancer, detected by bisulfite pyrosequencing, is associated with poor prognosis. Gastric Cancer. 2013;16(4):480–7.
139. Sunami E, de Maat M, Vu A, Turner RR, Hoon DSB. LINE-1 hypomethylation during primary colon cancer progression. PLoS One. 2011;6(4):e18884.
140. Jurgens B, Schmitz-Drager BJ, Schulz WA. Hypomethylation of L1 LINE sequences prevailing in human urothelial carcinoma. Cancer Res. 1996;56(24):5698–703.
141. Qu G, Dubeau L, Narayan A, Yu MC, Ehrlich M. Satellite DNA hypomethylation vs. overall genomic hypomethylation in ovarian epithelial tumors of different malignant potential. Mutat Res. 1999;423(1–2):91–101.
142. Ehrlich M, Jiang G, Fiala E, Dome JS, Yu MC, Long TI, et al. Hypomethylation and hypermethylation of DNA in Wilms tumors. Oncogene. 2002;21(43):6694–702.
143. Jackson K, Yu MC, Arakawa K, Fiala E, Youn B, Fiegl H, et al. DNA hypomethylation is prevalent even in low-grade breast cancers. Cancer Biol Ther. 2004;3(12):1225–31.
144. Ehrlich M, Hopkins NE, Jiang G, Dome JS, Yu MC, Woods CB, et al. Satellite DNA hypomethylation in karyotyped Wilms tumors. Cancer Genet Cytogenet. 2003;141(2):97–105.
145. Costa FF, Paixao VA, Cavalher FP, Ribeiro KB, Cunha IW, Rinck JA Jr, et al. SATR-1 hypomethylation is a common and early event in breast cancer. Cancer Genet Cytogenet. 2006;165(2):135–43.
146. Widschwendter M, Jiang G, Woods C, Muller HM, Fiegl H, Goebel G, et al. DNA hypomethylation and ovarian cancer biology. Cancer Res. 2004;64(13):4472–80.
147. Gaudet F, Hodgson JG, Eden A, Jackson-Grusby L, Dausman J, Gray JW, et al. Induction of tumors in mice by genomic hypomethylation. Science. 2003;300(5618):489–92.
148. Fukushige S, Horii A. DNA methylation in cancer: a gene silencing mechanism and the clinical potential of its biomarkers. Tohoku J Exp Med. 2013;229(3):173–85.
149. Mikeska T, Bock C, Do H, Dobrovic A. DNA methylation biomarkers in cancer: progress towards clinical implementation. Expert Rev Mol Diagn. 2012;12(5):473–87.
150. Glockner SC, Dhir M, Yi JM, McGarvey KE, Van Neste L, Louwagie J, et al. Methylation of TFPI2 in stool DNA: a potential novel biomarker for the detection of colorectal cancer. Cancer Res. 2009;69(11):4691–9.
151. Hibi K, Goto T, Shirahata A, Saito M, Kigawa G, Nemoto H, et al. Detection of TFPI2 methylation in the serum of colorectal cancer patients. Cancer Lett. 2011;311(1):96–100.
152. Warren JD, Xiong W, Bunker AM, Vaughn CP, Furtado LV, Roberts WL, et al. Septin 9 methylated DNA is a sensitive and specific blood test for colorectal cancer. BMC Med. 2011;9:133.
153. Church TR, Wandell M, Lofton-Day C, Mongin SJ, Burger M, Payne SR, et al. Prospective evaluation of methylated SEPT9 in plasma for detection of asymptomatic colorectal cancer. Gut. 2014;63(2):317–25.
154. Toth K, Sipos F, Kalmar A, Patai AV, Wichmann B, Stoehr R, et al. Detection of methylated SEPT9 in plasma is a reliable screening method for both left- and right-sided colon cancers. PLoS One. 2012;7(9):e46000.
155. Cairns P, Esteller M, Herman JG, Schoenberg M, Jeronimo C, Sanchez-Cespedes M, et al. Molecular detection of prostate cancer in urine by GSTP1 hypermethylation. Clin Cancer Res. 2001;7(9):2727–30.
156. Hoque MO, Topaloglu O, Begum S, Henrique R, Rosenbaum E, Van Criekinge W, et al. Quantitative methylation-specific polymerase chain reaction gene patterns in urine sediment distinguish prostate cancer patients from control subjects. J Clin Oncol. 2005;23(27):6569–75.
157. Rosenbaum E, Hoque MO, Cohen Y, Zahurak M, Eisenberger MA, Epstein JI, et al. Promoter hypermethylation as an independent prognostic factor for relapse in patients with prostate cancer following radical prostatectomy. Clin Cancer Res. 2005;11(23):8321–5.
158. Itzkowitz S, Brand R, Jandorf L, Durkee K, Millholland J, Rabeneck L, et al. A simplified, noninvasive stool DNA test for colorectal cancer detection. Am J Gastroenterol. 2008;103(11):2862–70.
159. Chen WD, Han ZJ, Skoletsky J, Olson J, Sah J, Myeroff L, et al. Detection in fecal DNA of colon cancer-specific methylation of the nonexpressed vimentin gene. J Natl Cancer Inst. 2005;97(15):1124–32.
160. Zou H, Allawi H, Cao X, Domanico M, Harrington J, Taylor WR, et al. Quantification of methylated markers with a multiplex methylation-specific technology. Clin Chem. 2012;58(2):375–83.
161. Kneip C, Schmidt B, Seegebarth A, Weickmann S, Fleischhacker M, Liebenberg V, et al. SHOX2 DNA methylation is a biomarker for the diagnosis of lung cancer in plasma. J Thorac Oncol. 2011;6(10):1632–8.
162. Weiss G, Schlegel A, Kottwitz D, Konig T, Tetzner R. Validation of the SHOX2/PTGER4 DNA methylation marker panel for plasma-based discrimination between patients with malignant and nonmalignant lung disease. J Thorac Oncol. 2017;12(1):77–84.
163. Schmidt B, Liebenberg V, Dietrich D, Schlegel T, Kneip C, Seegebarth A, et al. SHOX2 DNA methylation is a biomarker for the diagnosis of lung cancer based on bronchial aspirates. BMC Cancer. 2010;10:600.

164. Ilse P, Biesterfeld S, Pomjanski N, Wrobel C, Schramm M. Analysis of SHOX2 methylation as an aid to cytology in lung cancer diagnosis. Cancer Genomics Proteomics. 2014;11(5):251–8.
165. Dietrich D, Kneip C, Raji O, Liloglou T, Seegebarth A, Schlegel T, et al. Performance evaluation of the DNA methylation biomarker SHOX2 for the aid in diagnosis of lung cancer based on the analysis of bronchial aspirates. Int J Oncol. 2012;40(3):825–32.
166. Brock MV, Hooker CM, Ota-Machida E, Han Y, Guo M, Ames S, et al. DNA methylation markers and early recurrence in stage I lung cancer. N Engl J Med. 2008;358(11):1118–28.
167. Yu Q, Guo Q, Chen L, Liu S. Clinicopathological significance and potential drug targeting of CDH1 in lung cancer: a meta-analysis and literature review. Drug Des Devel Ther. 2015;9:2171–8.
168. Dunn J, Baborie A, Alam F, Joyce K, Moxham M, Sibson R, et al. Extent of MGMT promoter methylation correlates with outcome in glioblastomas given temozolomide and radiotherapy. Br J Cancer. 2009;101(1):124–31.
169. Reifenberger G, Hentschel B, Felsberg J, Schackert G, Simon M, Schnell O, et al. Predictive impact of MGMT promoter methylation in glioblastoma of the elderly. Int J Cancer. 2012;131(6):1342–50.
170. Weller M, Tabatabai G, Kastner B, Felsberg J, Steinbach JP, Wick A, et al. MGMT promoter methylation is a strong prognostic biomarker for benefit from dose-intensified temozolomide rechallenge in progressive glioblastoma: the DIRECTOR trial. Clin Cancer Res. 2015;21(9):2057–64.
171. van den Bent MJ, Dubbink HJ, Sanson M, van der Lee-Haarloo CR, Hegi M, Jeuken JW, et al. MGMT promoter methylation is prognostic but not predictive for outcome to adjuvant PCV chemotherapy in anaplastic oligodendroglial tumors: a report from EORTC brain tumor group study 26951. J Clin Oncol. 2009;27(35):5881–6.
172. Barault L, Amatu A, Bleeker FE, Moutinho C, Falcomata C, Fiano V, et al. Digital PCR quantification of MGMT methylation refines prediction of clinical benefit from alkylating agents in glioblastoma and metastatic colorectal cancer. Ann Oncol. 2015;26(9):1994–9.
173. Binabaj MM, Bahrami A, ShahidSales S, Joodi M, Joudi Mashhad M, Hassanian SM, et al. The prognostic value of MGMT promoter methylation in glioblastoma: a meta-analysis of clinical trials. J Cell Physiol. 2018;233(1):378–86.
174. Inno A, Fanetti G, Di Bartolomeo M, Gori S, Maggi C, Cirillo M, et al. Role of MGMT as biomarker in colorectal cancer. World J Clin Cases. 2014;2(12):835–9.
175. Nimmrich I, Sieuwerts AM, Meijer-van Gelder ME, Schwope I, Bolt-de Vries J, Harbeck N, et al. DNA hypermethylation of PITX2 is a marker of poor prognosis in untreated lymph node-negative hormone receptor-positive breast cancer patients. Breast Cancer Res Treat. 2008;111(3):429–37.
176. Harbeck N, Nimmrich I, Hartmann A, Ross JS, Cufer T, Grutzmann R, et al. Multicenter study using paraffin-embedded tumor tissue testing PITX2 DNA methylation as a marker for outcome prediction in tamoxifen-treated, node-negative breast cancer patients. J Clin Oncol. 2008;26(31):5036–42.
177. Maier S, Nimmrich I, Koenig T, Eppenberger-Castori S, Bohlmann I, Paradiso A, et al. DNA-methylation of the homeodomain transcription factor PITX2 reliably predicts risk of distant disease recurrence in tamoxifen-treated, node-negative breast cancer patients--technical and clinical validation in a multi-Centre setting in collaboration with the European Organisation for Research and Treatment of Cancer (EORTC) PathoBiology group. Eur J Cancer. 2007;43(11):1679–86.
178. Hartmann O, Spyratos F, Harbeck N, Dietrich D, Fassbender A, Schmitt M, et al. DNA methylation markers predict outcome in node-positive, estrogen receptor-positive breast cancer with adjuvant anthracycline-based chemotherapy. Clin Cancer Res. 2009;15(1):315–23.
179. Banez LL, Sun L, van Leenders GJ, Wheeler TM, Bangma CH, Freedland SJ, et al. Multicenter clinical validation of PITX2 methylation as a prostate specific antigen recurrence predictor in patients with post-radical prostatectomy prostate cancer. J Urol. 2010;184(1):149–56.
180. Dietrich D, Hasinger O, Banez LL, Sun L, van Leenders GJ, Wheeler TM, et al. Development and clinical validation of a real-time PCR assay for PITX2 DNA methylation to predict prostate-specific antigen recurrence in prostate cancer patients following radical prostatectomy. J Mol Diagn. 2013;15(2):270–9.
181. Weiss G, Cottrell S, Distler J, Schatz P, Kristiansen G, Ittmann M, et al. DNA methylation of the PITX2 gene promoter region is a strong independent prognostic marker of biochemical recurrence in patients with prostate cancer after radical prostatectomy. J Urol. 2009;181(4):1678–85.
182. Dietrich D, Hasinger O, Liebenberg V, Field JK, Kristiansen G, Soltermann A. DNA methylation of the homeobox genes PITX2 and SHOX2 predicts outcome in non-small-cell lung cancer patients. Diagn Mol Pathol. 2012;21(2):93–104.
183. Jankowska AM, Millward CL, Caldwell CW. The potential of DNA modifications as biomarkers and therapeutic targets in oncology. Expert Rev Mol Diagn. 2015;15(10):1325–37.
184. Castillo-Aguilera O, Depreux P, Halby L, Arimondo PB, Goossens L. DNA methylation targeting: the DNMT/HMT crosstalk challenge. Biomol Ther. 2017;7(1):3.
185. Ghoshal K, Datta J, Majumder S, Bai S, Kutay H, Motiwala T, et al. 5-Aza-deoxycytidine induces selective degradation of DNA methyltransferase 1 by a proteasomal pathway that requires the KEN box, bromo-adjacent homology domain, and nuclear localization signal. Mol Cell Biol. 2005;25(11):4727–41.

186. Erdmann A, Halby L, Fahy J, Arimondo PB. Targeting DNA methylation with small molecules: what's next? J Med Chem. 2015;58(6):2569–83.
187. Kaminskas E, Farrell A, Abraham S, Baird A, Hsieh LS, Lee SL, et al. Approval summary: azacitidine for treatment of myelodysplastic syndrome subtypes. Clin Cancer Res. 2005;11(10):3604–8.
188. Ghoshal K, Bai S. DNA methyltransferases as targets for cancer therapy. Drugs Today. 2007;43(6):395–422.
189. Gros C, Fahy J, Halby L, Dufau I, Erdmann A, Gregoire JM, et al. DNA methylation inhibitors in cancer: recent and future approaches. Biochimie. 2012;94(11):2280–96.
190. Kim CH, Marquez VE, Mao DT, Haines DR, McCormack JJ. Synthesis of pyrimidin-2-one nucleosides as acid-stable inhibitors of cytidine deaminase. J Med Chem. 1986;29(8):1374–80.
191. Yoo CB, Jeong S, Egger G, Liang G, Phiasivongsa P, Tang C, et al. Delivery of 5-aza-2′-deoxycytidine to cells using oligodeoxynucleotides. Cancer Res. 2007;67(13):6400–8.
192. Deng C, Lu Q, Zhang Z, Rao T, Attwood J, Yung R, et al. Hydralazine may induce autoimmunity by inhibiting extracellular signal-regulated kinase pathway signaling. Arthritis Rheum. 2003;48(3):746–56.
193. Brueckner B, Garcia Boy R, Siedlecki P, Musch T, Kliem HC, Zielenkiewicz P, et al. Epigenetic reactivation of tumor suppressor genes by a novel small-molecule inhibitor of human DNA methyltransferases. Cancer Res. 2005;65(14):6305–11.
194. Lu J, Getz G, Miska EA, Alvarez-Saavedra E, Lamb J, Peck D, et al. MicroRNA expression profiles classify human cancers. Nature. 2005;435(7043):834–8.
195. Datta J, Ghoshal K, Denny WA, Gamage SA, Brooke DG, Phiasivongsa P, et al. A new class of quinoline-based DNA hypomethylating agents reactivates tumor suppressor genes by blocking DNA methyltransferase 1 activity and inducing its degradation. Cancer Res. 2009;69(10):4277–85.
196. Heninger E, Krueger TE, Lang JM. Augmenting antitumor immune responses with epigenetic modifying agents. Front Immunol. 2015;6:29.
197. Stresemann C, Brueckner B, Musch T, Stopper H, Lyko F. Functional diversity of DNA methyltransferase inhibitors in human cancer cell lines. Cancer Res. 2006;66(5):2794–800.
198. Pina IC, Gautschi JT, Wang GY, Sanders ML, Schmitz FJ, France D, et al. Psammaplins from the sponge Pseudoceratina purpurea: inhibition of both histone deacetylase and DNA methyltransferase. J Org Chem. 2003;68(10):3866–73.
199. Gros C, Fleury L, Nahoum V, Faux C, Valente S, Labella D, et al. New insights on the mechanism of quinoline-based DNA Methyltransferase inhibitors. J Biol Chem. 2015;290(10):6293–302.
200. Brueckner B, Rius M, Markelova MR, Fichtner I, Hals PA, Sandvold ML, et al. Delivery of 5-azacytidine to human cancer cells by elaidic acid esterification increases therapeutic drug efficacy. Mol Cancer Ther. 2010;9(5):1256–64.
201. O'Sullivan Coyne G, Chen A, Kummar S, Collins JM, Meehan RS, Suto M, et al. First-in-human trial of 4′-thio-2′-deoxycytidine (TdCyd) in patients with advanced solid tumors. Ann Oncol. 2016;27(suppl_6):411TiP-TiP.
202. Newman EM, Morgan RJ, Kummar S, Beumer JH, Blanchard MS, Ruel C, et al. A phase I, pharmacokinetic, and pharmacodynamic evaluation of the DNA methyltransferase inhibitor 5-fluoro-2′-deoxycytidine, administered with tetrahydrouridine. Cancer Chemother Pharmacol. 2015;75(3):537–46.
203. Kumar S, Horton JR, Jones GD, Walker RT, Roberts RJ, Cheng X. DNA containing 4′-thio-2′-deoxycytidine inhibits methylation by HhaI methyltransferase. Nucleic Acids Res. 1997;25(14):2773–83.
204. Garzon R, Heaphy CE, Havelange V, Fabbri M, Volinia S, Tsao T, et al. MicroRNA 29b functions in acute myeloid leukemia. Blood. 2009;114(26):5331–41.
205. Jiang H, Zhang G, Wu JH, Jiang CP. Diverse roles of miR-29 in cancer (review). Oncol Rep. 2014;31(4):1509–16.
206. Amato RJ, Stephenson J, Hotte S, Nemunaitis J, Belanger K, Reid G, et al. MG98, a second-generation DNMT1 inhibitor, in the treatment of advanced renal cell carcinoma. Cancer Investig. 2012;30(5):415–21.
207. Siedlecki P, Garcia Boy R, Musch T, Brueckner B, Suhai S, Lyko F, et al. Discovery of two novel, small-molecule inhibitors of DNA methylation. J Med Chem. 2006;49(2):678–83.
208. Gallagher SJ, Shklovskaya E, Hersey P. Epigenetic modulation in cancer immunotherapy. Curr Opin Pharmacol. 2017;35:48–56.
209. Barrero MJ. Epigenetic strategies to boost cancer immunotherapies. Int J Mol Sci. 2017;18(6).
210. Down TA, Rakyan VK, Turner DJ, Flicek P, Li H, Kulesha E, et al. A Bayesian deconvolution strategy for immunoprecipitation-based DNA methylome analysis. Nat Biotechnol. 2008;26(7):779–85.
211. Olkhov-Mitsel E, Bapat B. Strategies for discovery and validation of methylated and hydroxymethylated DNA biomarkers. Cancer Med. 2012;1(2):237–60.
212. Kurdyukov S, Bullock M. DNA methylation analysis: choosing the right method. Biology. 2016;5(1):3.
213. Sant KE, Nahar MS, Dolinoy DC. DNA methylation screening and analysis. Methods Mol Biol. 2012;889:385–406.
214. Hayatsu H, Wataya Y, Kai K, Iida S. Reaction of sodium bisulfite with uracil, cytosine, and their derivatives. Biochemistry. 1970;9(14):2858–65.

Immunosenescence, Oxidative Stress, and Cancers

23

Tamas Fulop, Graham Pawelec, Gilles Dupuis, Rami Kotb, Bertrand Friguet, Jacek M. Witkowski, and Anis Larbi

Contents

T. Fulop (✉)
Geriatrics Division, Department of Medicine, Research Center on Aging, University of Sherbrooke, Sherbrooke, QC, Canada
e-mail: tamas.fulop@usherbrooke.ca

G. Pawelec
Tübingen Ageing and Tumour Immunology Group, Second Department of Internal Medicine, Center for Medical Research, University of Tuebingen, Tuebingen, Germany

G. Dupuis
Biochemistry Department and Graduate Program in Immunology, Faculty of Medicine and Health Sciences, University of Sherbrooke, Sherbrooke, QC, Canada

R. Kotb
Department of Medicine, BCCA Victoria, British Columbia Cancer Center, Victoria, BC, Canada

The University of British Columbia, Victoria, BC, Canada

B. Friguet
Biological Adaptation and Ageing – UMR UPMC-CNRS 8256 – ERL INSERM U1164, Unité de vieillissement stress, inflammation – UR 4, Universite Pierre et Marie Curie-Paris 6, Paris, France

J. M. Witkowski
Department of Pathophysiology, Medical University of Gdansk, Gdansk, Poland

A. Larbi
Geriatrics Division, Department of Medicine, Research Center on Aging, University of Sherbrooke, Sherbrooke, QC, Canada

Singapore Immunology Network (SIgN), Biopolis, Agency for Science Technology and Research (A∗STAR), Singapore, Singapore

Department of Microbiology and Immunology, Yong Loo Lin School of Medicine, University of Singapore, Singapore, Singapore

Department of Biology, Faculty of Sciences, University Tunis El Manar, Tunis, Tunisia

N. Rezaei (ed.), *Cancer Immunology*, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-30845-2_23

23.1 Introduction

The most important risk factor for cancer development is age [1]. With increasing age, numerous alterations at multiple levels including the molecular, cellular, organ, and systemic levels are observed. On the one hand, cellular senescence seems to be an anti-cancer mechanism related to aging due to the combined effects of proliferation and environmental factors such as oxidative stress, DNA damage, and telomere shortening [2]; on the other hand, there are various interactions among physiological systems (e.g., hormonal) which can favor the development and progression of cancers with aging [2]. After several years of debate, it is now clear that the immune system plays a major role in the control of the emergence of cancerous cells [3, 4]. With aging, there are changes in the immune system leading to the state called immunosenescence which might adversely affect the anticancer activity: immune-editing, immune-surveillance, and immune-competence against cancer [5, 6]. One of the most important characteristics of immunosenescence is its implication in "inflammaging" [7–9], a state of low-grade inflammation which can also contribute to the increased cancer incidence, and, more effectively, combat the emergence of tumor cells. Experimental data implicating immunosenescence in the susceptibility to cancers and response to treatment are accumulating, but there remains much to discover. Here, we describe changes in innate and adaptive immunity with age in relation to age-related increased cancer development.

23.2 Immune System and Cancer

It took some time to understand how the immune system may interact with the cancer at various stages of its development [10–12]. Currently, this synthesis of ideas developed over the decades following the original suggestion of immune-surveillance against tumors, known as "immune-editing" that describes all facets of the interaction between the immune system and cancer. Immunity plays an important role in the host defense against tumor development. Cancer originates from self cells and, as such, usually is only weakly antigenic, which is still generally enough for their recognition as foreign. This phase of the interaction is called the elimination stage or true immune-surveillance. At this level, the immune system involves many different immune cells and is efficient at eliminating cancer cells. However, this action can result in the emergence of tumor variants and the establishment of a temporary equilibrium between the transformed cells and the efficient immune defense. At this stage, the cancer remains clinically insignificant. As the equilibrium shifts and the continuously growing, genetically unstable malignant cells generate variants, the immune response can become inhibited or exhausted, and resistant cancer cells will survive and proliferate as explained by the deficit of the built-in tumor suppressor mechanisms such as cell senescence, DNA, and damage-induced apoptosis. Eventually, the tumor escapes from immune-surveillance and becomes clinically apparent. At this stage, the tumor is orchestrating the behavior of the immune system by actively suppressing the immune response through the production of various inhibitory

substances, such as NO, IDO (indoleamine-2,3-dioxygenase), PGE2, and via other pathways. At the same time, immune suppressor cells including Tregs and MDSCs may become dominant, hence inhibiting the tumor-eliminating activity of the immune system. Thus, to eliminate the nascent tumor cells, organisms need a completely and fully functioning immune system. As we age, there are several physiological alterations in the immune system ultimately contributing to the appearance of cancers with higher incidence in the elderly.

23.2.1 Immunosenescence or Immune Aging

It is currently well established that the immune response is profoundly altered with aging [13]. Most aging-associated changes initially reported related to the adaptive immune system, but it is now accepted that the innate immune system is also affected [14–17]. Collectively, it is very difficult to establish whether the changes are only detrimental or are at least partly an adaptation to sustain decreasing immune responses by changing the threshold for immune activation. The presence of low-grade inflammation can be part of this adaptation process. This phenomenon can overcome the decreased immune reserve with aging. Nevertheless, as the immune response is implicated in cancer immunosurveillance, it can be hypothesized that even if the changes in the aging immune system may be adaptive in respect to the pathogenic environment, they can still contribute to the increased incidence of cancers [18–21]. The age-related changes in the innate and adaptive immune system in view of their implication in putative cancer development and progression will be discussed here.

23.2.2 Innate Immune System

The innate immune system plays an essential role in cancer immunosurveillance by directly eliminating the tumor cells and maintaining them in a quiescent state – but may also favor the development and progression of cancers in some ways. It should be stressed that interactions between the innate and adaptive immune system are recognized as essential for an efficient adaptive immune response. These functions are mediated by various innate cells including neutrophils, monocyte/macrophages, and NK cells. It is now recognized that most phenotypes and functions of the cells of the innate immune system are altered with aging, as briefly summarized in the following.

23.2.2.1 Neutrophils

Neutrophils are the most abundant innate immune cells. They are the first to arrive at the site of any aggression but are markedly altered with aging [17, 22]. It is interesting to note that not all their functions are changed with aging. Thus, the number of neutrophils and their capacity to adhere at inflammatory sites is not altered [23, 24]. It is also of note that while most of the effector functions are increased with aging at the basal level, they cannot be further modulated [25–28]. The most important functions increased at quiescent state are the production of free radicals and the production of proteases [25, 26] which can be important for tumor fighting and influence tumor development. Nonetheless, this can also contribute to the low-grade inflammation observed with aging, which can be detrimental. In contrast, an acute stimulation of neutrophils in the elderly reveals that they are unable to perform correctly by increasing chemotaxis, phagocytosis, and intra- and extracellular killing and to stay viable and active for a longer functional period [27]. These functions are mediated through the activation of specific receptors such as pattern recognition receptors (PRRs), Fcγ, and complement receptors. Another important function recently recognized for the elimination of foreign invaders is autophagy. Engagement of different Toll-like receptors (TLRs) such as TLR4 and TLR7 has been implicated in the activation of macroautophagy [29], which has been shown to be defective with aging [30–32], suggesting altered foreign antigen (Ag) processing. Recently, it has

been shown that the inflammasome is a complex of molecules activated by specific PRRs (NLRs and AIM2) responding specifically to challenge via the activation of inflammatory caspases such as caspase-1 and caspase-5. This ultimately results in the production of a wide range of cytokines, particularly IL-1β [33], playing a role in inflammation. There are currently very scarce data on how these inflammasomes are affected by aging [34]. After the alterations observed in neutrophil functions, it can only be suggested that their assembly and function may be altered [35].

The causes of these dysregulated effector functions remain unknown, but changes in the inflammatory environment and in the signaling pathways may contribute. Neutrophils can also be stimulated via their pattern recognition receptors by Ags that may be present in higher amounts in the periphery of aged individuals, such as DNA degradation products, altered proteins, latent/chronic viral antigen, and/or tumor-derived Ags. Recently, one of the most important discoveries was of PRRs on the surface of many immune cells including neutrophils recognizing pathogen-associated molecular patterns (PAMPs) [36]. The ever-growing family of the PRRs now includes three main types: the TLRs, the retinoic acid-inducible gene 1 protein (RIG-1)-like helicases (RLRs), and the nucleotide-binding domain and leucine-rich-repeat-containing proteins (NLRs) [37]. It is now recognized that they play an essential role in many cell functions, including neutrophil biology, allowing immune cells to discriminate between self and non-self and acting as danger-sensing receptors to alert the organism to the presence of microorganisms, transformed cells, or damaged cells.

There are currently 13 TLRs described with different recognition specificities and signaling pathways leading to well-characterized cellular responses [36]. Bacterial products are recognized by TLR2 and TLR4, while TLR3 and TLR7 recognize intracellular pathogens. Signaling is mediated either by the MyD88 pathway [38] or by the TRIF pathway [39, 40]. Activation of these TLRs results in the activation of NF-κB, a transcription factor furthering strong cytokine production [41]. Neutrophils from aged individuals display alterations in the signaling of these TLRs leading to their altered functionality [14, 27]. While the number of these receptors is not significantly changed with age, there is a significant alteration in the trafficking of signaling molecules in and out of lipid rafts. There is a need for further studies in order to truly appreciate the role of TLR in the altered functions of neutrophils with age [27].

Taken together, all available experimental evidence indicate that neutrophils participate in inflammaging (low-grade, paucisymptomatic inflammation associated with aging) but can no longer effectively counteract pathological challenges and as such may contribute to the inflammatory process becoming more chronic. Neutrophils also interact with other cells of the immune system, in addition to the adaptive arm such as B-cells for antibody production and T-cells for efficient effector functions [42, 43]. They also participate in the recruitment of monocyte/macrophages to the challenge site which take over their functions for a longer time period.

23.2.2.2 Monocyte/Macrophages

Monocyte/macrophages have been relatively poorly studied in human aging. However, currently available data indicate that there are phenotypic changes associated with altered effector functions in older individuals. Recent studies characterizing monocytes showed the existence of two distinct subpopulations: $CD14^{++}$(high) CD16- and $CD14^{+}$(low) $CD16^{+}$ [44]. These subpopulations are very distinct in their surface protein expression and their functions. The first ($CD14^{++}$(high) $CD16^{-}$) subpopulation expresses CD62L, CD64, and CCR2 with low levels of CXCR1. The second ($CD14^{+}$(low) $CD16^{+}$) lacks all these surface markers, but expresses high levels of CX3CR1. These latter cells are considered to be mainly proinflammatory, as they produce high levels of TNF-α in response to TLR2 and TLR4 ligation. By analyzing the four subpopulations of human monocytes, it was found the $CD14^{+}$ (low) $CD16^{+}$ and the $CD14^{++}$(high) $CD16^{+}$ populations were increased with aging, whereas the proportion and number of $CD14^{+}$ (low) $CD16^{-}$ were decreased compared to the young [45].

The few existing data suggest that monocyte/macrophages from aged individuals display age-related dysfunction [46–48]. These alterations include a decrease of cell surface TLR expression (TLR1 and TLR4), although this finding is controversial [31, 49, 50]. Other receptors also show an altered expression, such as the expression of the important T-cell CD80/CD86 costimulatory receptors which is decreased on monocytes upon TLR stimulation [51]. In vitro studies in humans demonstrated a higher proinflammatory cytokine profile, especially for IL-6 and IL-8 production by resting monocytes [9], despite the finding that cytokine production following stimulation with LPS is reduced. Consistent with this, another recent study found that the four monocyte subsets had lower IL-6 production upon TLR1/TLR2 stimulation, confirming earlier studies on TLR stimulation [52, 53], which indicates that monocytes are not a homogeneous population and react differently depending on the nature of the stimuli.

Many years ago, it was shown that several surface receptors such as Fcγ and FMLP had altered signal transduction upon appropriate stimulation, resulting in altered function [25, 26]. Recent data further suggest that in addition to the decrease in some TLR expression, the TLR signaling pathways show age-related alterations [27] linked to altered chemotaxis as evidenced by the reduced number of infiltrating macrophages in wounds of elderly humans. Alteration in the MAPK signaling pathways including p38 MAPK and ERK1/2 MAPKs has been reported in human monocytes with aging.

Macrophages from elderly people produce more prostaglandin E2, which suppresses T-cell activation via decreased IL-12 production [54]. Furthermore, it was demonstrated that phagocytosis, free radical production, and chemotaxis were reduced in monocytes/macrophages from healthy aged subjects [55]. No data seem to exist regarding age-related changes in the clearance of apoptotic cells, known as an important macrophage function. We can only speculate that considering the functional changes described above and the process of inflammaging, the clearance of apoptotic cells may be impaired with aging. Decrease in some receptors, as well as altered signaling leading to changes in chemotaxis and phagocytosis, supports the hypothesis that apoptotic cells are not cleared efficiently. This could lead to their persistence in becoming proinflammatory and sustaining the quiescent state stimulation of monocyte/macrophages, finally contributing to the process of inflammaging. Furthermore, these data confirm that, like neutrophils, monocytes are to some degree activated at the basal state, but are less receptive to further stimulation through their surface receptors. This baseline activation state may be very important to maintain their functions for combating/constraining constant and chronic challenges, but insufficient for eliminating new infections. Therefore, it seems that neutrophils and monocytes are probably both contributing to the low-grade inflammation with aging which not only impairs the immune environment but also creates a vicious circle which maintains their functioning at an adequate level while impairing their contribution to combating new invaders, including tumor cells. Taken together, all the experimental data available suggest that with aging, most monocyte/macrophage functions are changed with age, leading to altered tumor cell and pathogen clearing and altered regulation of the adaptive immune response and the inflammatory process, resulting in chronic low-grade inflammation and ultimately to increased age-related diseases such as infections, cardiovascular disease, and cancers. It would be of high interest to develop a clinical trial to modulate low-grade inflammation in longitudinal studies and identify potential clinical benefits.

23.2.2.3 Dendritic Cells

Dendritic cells (DCs) are the most potent antigen-presenting cells (APC) that can prime specific T-cells. There are several types of DCs [56]: Plasmacytoid dendritic cells (pDCs) are important in host defense, as they are one of the first cells to produce type I interferon, hence initiating several other responses, including NK-cell activation which amplifies host response [57–59].

The second type of DC is the conventional or myeloid-derived dendritic cell (mDC), regarded as the most important APC for T-cell activation. They express TLRs and C-type lectins for the detection of Ags and subsequently produce IL-12, IL-15, and IL-18. IL-12 is essential for induction of Th1 cell responses which will induce cytotoxic T-lymphocyte responses to clear virus-infected cells [39]. They can also activate NK cells, which directly eliminate tumor cells. In addition to presenting Ag, they also provide costimulatory signals and cytokines for optimal T-cell priming, differentiation, and proliferation [60]. Whether the numbers of DCs change during aging is still controversial.

There are several studies demonstrating alterations in pDC function in aged humans including reduced type I interferon production following TLR stimulation, e.g., via TLR7 and TLR9. It has been suggested that the increased basal oxidative stress related to aging could be the underlying cause of the decreased upregulation of the interferon regulatory factors by TLRs [61, 62]. In contrast, mDCs from aged humans showed increased expression of CD86 signaling, another sign of activation even in the "quiescent" state. However, these findings have not been corroborated by in vitro studies. Nonetheless, they do seem to retain the capacity to produce proinflammatory cytokines and to activate $CD8^+$ T-cells [63], as well as to induce IL-17 production, which is known to recruit neutrophils [64]. DCs have also been reported to have a decreased ability in naïve $CD4^+$ T-cell activation via Ag presentation [65, 66], attributed to decreased PI3K activity, a major pathway mediating cell function. Reduced PI3K was implicated in both age-related reduced DC migration and also as a negative regulator of TLR signaling. Thus, the global result of this decreased PI3K activation is a higher stimulation of the NF-kB pathway further contributing to inflammaging due to greater production of proinflammatory cytokines such as IL-6 and TNF-α in the basal state [65]. DCs have reduced Ag processing capacity concomitant with the altered expression and function of their costimulatory molecules.

23.2.2.4 Natural Killer and Alike Cells

Natural killer (NK) cells are one of the most important antitumor players in the innate immune system [10]. The NK cell population is now also divided into different subpopulations; those with a $CD16^-CD56^+$ or $CD16^+CD56^{++}$ phenotype produce high amounts of IFN-γ and are among the most cytotoxic subtypes [67]. Subset distribution changes with aging, and the number of $CD56^{dim}$ NK cells increases, while $CD56^{bright}$ cells decrease [68, 69]. Furthermore, the expression of CD57 is increased on $CD56^{dim}$ NK cells from elderly subjects, representing a highly differentiated subset of NK cells. These observations were recently extended by the finding that CD94 (member of the C-type lectin family) and KLRG1 expression on NK cells was significantly decreased in elderly subjects. Although the exact consequence of this decrease is not known, it was hypothesized that the decreased expression of these surface markers induces unregulated cell lysis contributing to chronic inflammatory conditions. Moreover, the same study revealed the presence of a greater proportion of IFN-γ-positive $CD3^-CD56^{bright}$ NK cells with aging. This may suggest a shift to a more cytotoxic, cytokine-producing, and potentially immunomodulatory NK-cell phenotype occurring as a mechanism to compensate for the decreased proportion of $CD56^{bright}$ NK cells. Aging also influences the dynamics of NK cells [67]. NK cells from the elderly have a significantly decreased proliferation and production rate, and there is an increased proportion of long-lived NK cells which can be related to the increased proportion of $CD56^{dim}$ NK cells. The increased expression of CD57 may also suggest that the NK cells of elderly people are late-stage or terminally differentiated, like many of their $CD8^+$ T-cells [70]. Taken together, the data indicate that although the number of NK cells often increases with age, there is a profound redistribution of NK cell subsets with altered receptor expression, explaining the functional alterations, leading either to decreased direct defense against virus-infected and tumor cells and/or decreased regulatory activity for other components of the innate immune response, ultimately resulting in decreased modulation of the adaptive immune

response. Recently, it has been shown that NK-cell activity is also under the control of IL15Rα/IL15, released by nonimmune cells such as muscle cells, which, by its decrease with aging can also contribute to these NK cell functional alterations [71].

Studies in very healthy elderly populations revealed that the total NK cell number tends to increase with age, while their cytotoxicity is not significantly affected [72]. However, other studies in unselected elderly populations revealed that decreased NK cell functions with aging were associated with a higher incidence of infectious diseases [73]. IL-2-induced NK cell proliferation is decreased with aging and many cytokines and chemokines produced by NK cells, such as IL-2, IL-8, are also decreased but with maintenance of IFN-γ production [74]. This decreased production of cytokines contributes to the altered activation of macrophages with aging, resulting in decreased microbicidal and tumoricidal activities. Thus, NK cells of elderly people show decreased proliferative responses to cytokines; higher total cytotoxic capacity when stimulated with certain cytokines including IL-2, IL-12, or IFN-γ; and a greater sensitivity to stimulation via CD16. The cytotoxic activity of NK cells depends on whether the whole NK cell population or activity per cell is considered. On a per-cell basis, it is decreased, which might be important for protection against developing cancer cells.

Furthermore, other receptors involved in the cytotoxic activity of NK cells, including members of the natural cytotoxicity receptor family, namely NKp30 and NKp46, decrease with aging [75]. NKp30 has also been shown to be important in the regulation of the cross-talk between NK cells and DCs. By this interaction, the NK cells can activate the DCs to more efficiently prime T-cells. DCs release Th1 cytokines which further enhance NK activation. Thus, NK cells can modulate the adaptive immune response against virus-infected or tumor cells via this interaction with DCs.

NKT cells are innate T-lymphocyte population that recognize lipid Ags presented in the context of the CD1d molecule found on monocytes, macrophages, and DCs [76]. They can increase the functions of NK cells. NKT cells are rapidly recruited from the circulation during acute inflammation and interact with various APCs expressing the CD1d molecule. Recently, it has been shown that NKT cells are able to recruit neutrophils and activate them via their IFN-γ secretion [77]. Thus, NKT cells may play an important regulatory role in the acute phase of a microbial and/or tumor cell challenge by interacting with various APCs via CD1d lipid antigenic presentation and secretion of different cytokines. There are only a few reports on NKT cell functioning in the elderly [72]. However, it can be hypothesized that the altered activation of APCs via their TLR receptors will create an unfavorable milieu for NKT activation either directly or by their cytokine secretion.

IL-17 is mainly secreted by γδ T-cells, Th-17, and NKT cells [78]. This cytokine acts indirectly on neutrophil survival through stimulation of the secretion of G-CSF. IL-17 is also released by neutrophils themselves and reinforces their survival and recruitment [79]. It can also promote tumor vascularization by angiogenic factors. These immune cells as well as IL-17 itself may have pro- and antitumor activities; currently it is not known what determines this dual effect on cancer. However, their differentiation in various subtypes, expression of specific receptors, and production of various cytokines is likely to be determined by and in turn influence the tumor microenvironment [77]. How aging affects γδ T-cells has not been well investigated to date.

23.2.3 Adaptive Immune System

Although there are changes in the innate immune response with aging as described above, it is still thought that the most important and relevant changes occur in the adaptive immune response. Among the cells composing the adaptive immune response, the T-cells are thought to be the most affected; in addition, more and more data are emerging showing that B-cells are also changed with aging. Nonetheless, it is well recognized that some of the most marked immune alterations

associated with aging concern T-lymphocyte subpopulations and functions [13]. The most recognized model for T-cell subpopulations identifies naïve ($CD45RA^+$ $CCR7^+$), central memory T_{CM} ($CD45RA^-$ $CCR7^+$), effector memory T_{EM} ($CD45RA^-$ $CCR7^-$), and T_{EMRA} or T_{TE} ($CD45RA^+$ $CCR7^-$) cells. Among these subpopulations, the highly differentiated populations of EM (effector memory: *CCR7-, CD28-, CD27-, CD45RA-*) and TEMRA-like CD4 and CD8 T-cells (T effector memory cells re-expressing CD45RA) have been shown to accumulate in older humans [13]. Currently, the suggested reason for this accumulation is a chronic antigenic stimulation, especially that caused by chronic viral infections (predominantly CMV); however, other chronic inflammatory stimulations related to specific diseases may also contribute (including diabetes mellitus type 2, atherosclerosis, and possibly Alzheimer disease) [80–83]. Interestingly, there are some reports showing that these cells also accumulate in cancer, such as at the early stage of breast cancer [84] and in renal carcinoma [85]. Furthermore, they also express the characteristic inhibitory surface receptors of exhausted and/or senescent cells like KLRG1, CD57, PD-1, and CTLA-4, as well as having reduced replicative capacity and decreased survival after TCR activation [86]. The role of these cells in cancer development is still questionable. Whether they are metabolically inert as senescent cells with short telomeres and decreased telomerase activity, or are metabolically active and able to secrete various proinflammatory cytokines and contribute to cancer development is a matter which is yet to be elucidated. The cause of this exhaustion is not known with certainty, but could either be due to direct antigenic stimulation by viral Ags such as CMV or they could be innocent bystanders affected by the chronic low-grade inflammatory environment induced by such chronic antigenic stimulation caused by constant basal proinflammatory cytokines such as TNF-α produced by the innate immune system [87]. It was shown that p38 has a role in cell activation, proliferation, and cell cycle progression [88, 89]. TNF-α can further activate p38, thus contributing to immunosenescence [87]. Interestingly, p38 is constitutively phosphorylated in EM and EMRA T-cells, contributing to their reduced telomerase activity. Thus, the proinflammatory environment causing hyperphosphorylation of signaling molecules, such as p38, may influence the development of T-cell subpopulations as found in aging and inflammatory diseases. Together, these changes may be well tumorigenic by altering adequate tumor-specific immune response; they may be good targets for therapeutic modulation, as recently demonstrated so encouragingly for PD-1/PDL-1 [90–92]. Considering these changes, it is reasonable to assume that an alteration in T-lymphocyte activation is a central issue in the age-related modifications of the immune response. Currently, the most important paradigm underlying these changes is the repetitive antigenic stimulation over the life span that could lead to partial unresponsiveness (immune exhaustion) and accumulation of memory cells. This has been shown for both $CD4^+$ and $CD8^+$ T-cells with distinct senescent status, surface molecule expression, telomere length, and functionality. This was further supported by a longitudinal study, the OCTA/NONA study, resulting in the development of the Immune Risk Profile (IRP) integrating several of these parameters [93–96]. It is of note that as appealing as the CMV paradigm may appear, it is not yet proven [97–99]. It is likely that other factors could also contribute to causing the changes in the T-cell compartment of the immune system with aging including the slight but detectable amounts of the proinflammatory cytokines concomitant with increased reactive oxygen species found in this basal proinflammatory state. Moreover, the intracellular T-cell redox environment influences T-cell function in aging [100, 101] which will be discussed later. Concomitant with these phenotypic changes, the functions of T-cells are also altered, and there is increasing evidence to implicate altered activation in the decreased T-cell functions with increasing age.

Studies of elderly humans and animals have revealed that one function of T-cells most noticeably altered is the production of interleukin-2 (IL-2) compared to younger counterparts [102]. It can be hypothesized that defects or alterations

in the proximal events during T-cell activation will strongly affect the efficiency of immune responses [102]. Thus, appropriate signal transduction cascades trigger an appropriate T-cell response, whereas alterations in the early events of T-cell signaling will result in less effective, altered overall responses [103–106]. The most important changes occur in $CD4^+$ T-cells, resulting in decreased production of IL-2 and clonal expansion. Although there are no changes in TCR number at the cell surface, the number of CD28 costimulatory molecules decreases with aging, especially on $CD8^+$ T-cells. One of the most important driving forces to decrease surface CD28 expression is TNF-α. This cytokine can also activate p38 which plays an essential role in fibroblast senescence [87]. Nearly all of the signaling pathways associated with TCR activation or IL-2 receptor responses are found to be altered with aging [107, 108]. There is an alteration in the early steps of T-cell activation including protein tyrosine phosphorylation, calcium mobilization, and the translocation of PKC to the plasma membrane. In addition, subsequent steps of the signaling pathways including the Raf-Ras-MAP kinase pathway are impaired. Decline in proximal and intermediate events of transmembrane signaling leads to the decreased activity of transcription factors, especially NF-kB and NF-AT. Not only activation signaling but also the negative regulatory network is altered with aging [108]. This altered signaling followed by decreased activation may be caused by a differential inflammatory state and subsequent T-cell phenotypic and functional change.

There are also age-related changes in the B-cell compartment [109–113]. Production of B-cells is altered with aging at different levels, resulting in decreased naive B-cells. In addition, an age-dependent loss of diversity of B-cell receptors is also observed which has been correlated to poor health and may reflect expanded clones of memory B-cells. These changes may also lead to a shift in antibody specificity and the increase of autoantibodies. These alterations in the B-cell compartment may also favor the emergence of cancers related to aging. As the B-cells respond by proliferation to the T-cell-derived cytokine and other signals even without direct antigenic stimulation [114], the collapse of antibody production in the aged may be also associated with poorer T-cell help.

Taken together, aging is associated with an exhaustion of the adaptive immune response, especially by rendering T-cells dysfunctional and unable to appropriately respond to receptor ligation. This, together with B-cell alterations, contributes to the establishment of a chronic inflammatory state, leading to higher susceptibility to diseases such as cancer and increased mortality predicted by the IRP [93].

23.2.4 Interaction Between Innate and Adaptive Immune Responses: Effect of Aging

It is evident that if any component of the immune response is not functioning optimally, the outcome cannot be optimal. Thus, the first line of defense of the organism, the innate immune response, is not only a powerful eradicator of foreign invaders but is also responsible for the activation of the adaptive immune system for long-lasting and highly specific immunity by Ag-specific, clonally expanded B- and T-lymphocytes. The reduced functioning of both monocytes/macrophages and DCs with aging will lead to reduced Ag presentation and activation of T-cell immune responses by these APCs. In addition, neutrophils secrete many molecules such as HMG-B1 and other alarmins which can directly induce DC maturation or the activation of both the innate and the adaptive immune response. It is possible that the reduced neutrophil function with aging will also affect this aspect of their role in immune response.

A very efficient network exists among the different cells participating in the innate immune response aiming to eradicate invaders, restore homeostasis by resolving acute inflammation, and ultimately to efficiently activate the adaptive immune response [16]. The individual functioning of the innate immune cells was shown to be dysregulated with aging either because of receptor-driven signaling pathway alterations or

because of an age-related proinflammatory milieu sustained by cytokines and oxidative stress [22]. These alterations will induce a disruption in their functioning and in their mutually supporting network, resulting in inefficient eradication of the challenge, contribution in chronic antigenic stimulation, and a chronic low-grade inflammation. On the other hand, they ultimately lead to the altered and inadequate activation of the adaptive immune response.

One of the important central players of the cooperation of the innate and adaptive immune response is TNF-α. This factor is at the center stage of the cytokines secreted by various cells of the innate immune system, such as monocytes stimulated by many external or internal agents leading to modulation of the T-cell response either to enhance it or dampen it via downregulation of CD28 or exhaustion of T-cells [115]. TNF-α production is increased in oxidative stress, chronic antigenic stimulation, CMV infection, and visceral adiposity [116–118]. Thus, the regulation and control of this vital molecule to maintain it under a beneficial threshold may be the key to aging and age-related pathologies such as cancer.

Alterations in the T-cell compartment can also trigger changes in the innate immune system because the accumulation of memory and terminally differentiated/exhausted T-cells secreting more proinflammatory cytokines and chemokines will chronically stimulate and attract the innate immune cells. The increased susceptibility to apoptosis of certain T-cell subsets like $CD4^+$ naive T-cells may also chronically contribute to the stimulation of innate cells.

All these data demonstrate that with aging, alterations in both arms of the immune system, as well as in their efficient cooperation, contribute to altered protection against different challenges and participate in the development and maintenance of age-related low-grade inflammation and increased susceptibility to diseases such as cancer [9]. The same interaction between the innate and adaptive immune response may favor either the eradication or the progression of cancers depending on their state of activation, the phenotype repartition, and the microenvironment.

23.3 Inflammation, Aging, and Oxidative Stress

The relationship between chronic low-grade inflammation (inflammaging) related to immunosenescence and age-associated diseases, such as cancer, remains to be elucidated. It is of note that alterations of certain proinflammatory (IL-6, TNF, IL-1) as well as anti-inflammatory cytokines (IL-10, IL-4) are observed at greater frequencies in age-associated diseases compared to healthy aging [9]. Thus, age-related immune dysregulation manifested essentially by a basic chronic low-grade inflammation and a suppression of the adaptive response may eventually lead to the development of clinically significant pathological conditions including cardiovascular disease, dementia, diabetes mellitus, osteoporosis, and cancer [8]. Age-related low-grade inflammatory process seems to accelerate the progression of chronic diseases, as well as having an immunosuppressive effect on cellular immune responses by contributing to their exhaustion. The question arises as to whether this proinflammatory activity is the *primum movens* for disease development or just a secondary reaction following latent chronic inflammatory diseases. Moreover, this low-grade inflammation may also represent an adaptive mechanism to maintain an acceptable level of response against pathogens and cells, including nascent tumor cells. However, when increasing over a certain level, it could become predominantly detrimental by favoring their proliferation and the clinical appearance of cancer.

What are the molecular events underlying inflammaging? It seems that NF-κB is at the center stage of metabolic pathways, as it controls the secretion of proinflammatory molecules, such as cytokines, chemokines, MMPs, COX2, and iNOS [119, 120]. NF-κB is also activated by many of these molecules via various pathways such as the MAPK and the IP3/Akt pathway. As might be expected from knowledge of the pathways leading to their development, NF-κB activity is highest in $CD8^+$ TEMRA cells [121]. Moreover, the FOXO family of transcription factors plays a role in longevity, cell survival, and proliferation via

the modulation of NF-κB by free radical production [122]. Thus, NF-κB modulating pathways are heavily implicated in the occurrence, as well as in the perpetuation of this low-grade inflammation.

Thus, what is the relation between inflammaging and free radicals which have been shown to increase with aging as a result of increased oxidative stress [123]? The degree of oxidative stress is the result of the disequilibrium between the production of ROS and endogenous antioxidant species. Free radicals are produced as by-products of aerobic respiration [124]. They are hormetically beneficial for signaling, enzyme activation, and microbial elimination, while over a certain threshold, they may become detrimental by causing mutations in DNA and oxidation of macromolecules [125]. The role of free radicals became the basis of one of the leading theories of aging and consequently has been related to many age-associated diseases including cancer [126, 127]. In this context, it has been known for many years that age-related increased ROS production due to mitochondrial dysfunction may cause DNA damage and favor cancer development [128]. Recently, it was recognized that local inflammatory processes such as in the intestine and stomach may lead to the development of cancers. However, the relationship between oxidative stress and inflammaging is less well established. When innate immune cells are chronically activated, they continuously release free radicals which can contribute to tumorigenesis directly as well as via the alterations they cause to the adaptive immune system, as already mentioned [129]. It is of note that free radicals can create a vicious circle by maintaining (through TLRs and inflammasome activation) the production of free radicals by other innate immune cells such as neutrophils, DCs, and monocyte/macrophages which in turn reactivate them. Thus, free radicals directly and indirectly via oxidatively modified proteins or lipids activate NF-kB, leading to pro-inflammatory cytokine production. Similarly, these free radicals and lipid peroxides also activate the Nalp3 inflammasome. These events lead to low level of activation of innate cells at the basal level and participate in its maintenance.

Oxidatively modified proteins are also continuously produced as a result of the low-grade inflammation [130, 131], accumulating in immune cells, especially in T-cells, which interfere with their functioning. Many proteins including TCR, CD45, and enzymes are targeted by free radicals and become carbonylated or glycoxidated. This accumulation is further enhanced by decreased proteasome (and other intracellular proteolytic) activity to eliminate these altered proteins [132–134]. Thus, the free radicals create an altered cellular environment, favoring the activation of innate cells and decreased functioning of adaptive immune cells.

Furthermore, these free radicals will affect the surrounding cells in infiltrating tissues by inducing cell proliferation, evasion of apoptosis, tissue invasion, angiogenesis, autophagy, and alterations in macromolecule functions either by gain of functions or by loss of functions. All these activities may contribute to some extent to tumorigenesis. Free radicals mediate these functions by stimulating different molecular pathways including the Ras, MAPK, PI3K, mTOR, and NF-kB pathways. Consequently, ROS also alter Nrf2 activity which is considered to be the master regulator of the antioxidant response [129]. Nrf2 modulates a large number of genes that control several processes including immune and inflammatory responses [135]. We have shown that with T-cell aging, the Nrf2 is altered [22], which is also hypothesized in innate immune cells, and further contributes to the inflammatory process and consequently to carcinogenesis. Thus, the immunosenescence-associated inflammaging contributes to cancer development by many pathways, especially by the increased basal free radical production, which in turn further activates these cells by propagating inflammatory signal by free radicals.

23.4 Immunosenescence and Cancer

A causative connection between inflammation and some cancers is well established [136]. Inflammation in its uncontrolled state highly

favors tumorigenesis by increasing genomic instability via the production of free radicals, persistence of proinflammatory cytokines and chemokines, and the subversion of Treg, γδT cell, and MDSC functions, as well as through angiogenesis [137]. The apparent disequilibrium between the retention of a reactive innate immune response at basal state and the more severely altered adaptive immune response with aging leads to the presence of the low-grade inflammatory status commonly present in the elderly, the inflammaging, as discussed above. Although the cause of this increased basal inflammatory state is certainly multifactorial, it is likely that one of the most important causes is chronic antigenic stimulation concomitant with increased free radical production related to oxidative stress. In recent years, the increased reactivity of the innate immune response which in the aging context is called inflammaging has been elucidated [138–140]. This phenomenon is called the trained innate memory. The basis of this phenomenon are the epigenetic and immunometabolic modifications induced by an initial challenge which render the innate cells more reactive when subsequent unrelated challenge is met [141]. This is the concept of immunological training of the innate immune system. Thus, in the context of aging, this may be an adaptation serving the better response to the lifelong antigenic challenges [141, 142, 143]. The antigenic source can be exogenous, as with persistent viral infections such as CMV [97] and subclinical bacterial infections, or endogenous like the various posttranslationally modified macromolecules such as DNA or proteins which can be modified by oxidation, acylation, or glycosylation. Such altered molecules can stimulate the innate immune response, particularly macrophages via TLRs, thus contributing to a sustained proinflammatory state which is measurable in some circumstances via increased circulating levels of IL-6, IL-1β, or TNF-α. Thus, aging is accompanied by a chronic low-grade inflammatory process and by many other changes, some related to inflammaging, some independent thereof. Hence, this may be the price that has to be paid for maintaining immunosurveillance against persistent pathogens or endogenous stressors such as cancer cells. All these changes contribute to a decreasingly effective immune environment, probably unable to appropriately respond either to new Ags such as represented by the continuous risk of exposure to new pathogens, or to chronic persisting Ags such as those from CMV or tumor cells during the life span. Therefore, inflammaging related to immunosenescence is likely to be one of the most important general driving forces for cancer development. It is of note that every individual alteration at all cellular and molecular levels also contributes to increased tumorigenesis. The most important elements for immunosenescence are the decreased neutrophil, macrophage, and DC functions but maintaining uncontrolled proinflammatory cytokine production, as well as the decreased specific adaptive immune response by T-cells to tumor Ags. TNF-α seems to play a particularly important role, as it is secreted mainly by immune cells, in contrast to IL-6. It is the consequence of and the support for inflammaging via NF-kB and AP-1 signaling.

Furthermore, an important aspect of the inflammatory response is the production of free radicals which leads to the activation of various signaling cascades resulting in effector functions and apoptosis as well as in the further production of proinflammatory cytokines. They also increase the possibility of genomic instability and epigenetic deregulation leading to enhanced mutations. These proinflammatory cytokines secreted by the cells of the innate immune system are also able to induce the production of free radicals. Thus, the deregulation of innate immune responses strongly contributes to age-related chronic inflammatory processes and associated pathologies, as well as a functionally neutral consequence of the aging process. As a result, its modulation could be beneficial in the treatment of these diseases.

Moreover, the deregulated immune response with aging also produces directly pro-tumor molecules as well as induces the accumulation of immunosuppressive immune cells either systemically or in the tumor microenvironment. Data suggest that pro-tumor *molecules* such as NO,

IDO, TGFβ, IL-10, VEGF, and PD-1,, as well as *cells* dampening the immune reactivity like MDSCs (*CD11b+, CD33+, CD34+, CD14-HLADR-*) under the high proinflammatory cytokine micro- and macroenvironment and Tregs, are increasing with age which suppress the antitumor activities of cytotoxic T-cells, NK, and NKT cells [18, 21]. These changes completely alter tumor-immune interactions necessary for cancer eradication or at least for the maintenance of the equilibrium stage.

Finally, altered immune network functioning also favors tumorigenesis. The altered presentation of antigens by DC and macrophages decreases the activation of T-cells, the functions of which are further altered by oxidative stress and proinflammatory cytokines produced by innate immune cells. In contrast, the altered T-cell phenotype and functions are further increasing the innate cell functions. Thus, a vicious circle is created leading to the appearance of tumor cells.

23.5 Modulation

Due to our increased understanding of tumor-immune interactions now, the patient's immune system, even in nonimmunological treatments, like radiotherapy, should be taken into consideration [12, 144], in order to achieve long-term tumor control or complete tumor elimination. Thus, the patient's immune system needs to become integral to cancer therapy. It is also clear that immunotherapies are mostly used in late-stage cancers when the immune system is already subverted. Consequently, immunotherapy should be initiated when the immune system is still able to react.

Dendritic cells (DCs) possess the specialized potential to present exogenously derived antigen to cytotoxic T lymphocytes in order to elicit an immune response. This process, termed cross-presentation, is crucial for the generation of immune response to viruses and tumors and in autoimmune disease. The ability of DCs to cross-present exogenous Ag to CTLs makes them an attractive target for exploitation in immunotherapy. In recent years, significant advances have been made in understanding the mechanism of cross-presentation and the DC subsets involved. The recent discovery of human cross-presenting DC has given this field a new lease of life relative to cancer immunotherapy [145]. Such an example is the injection of monoclonal antibodies (mAbs) which not only directly eliminate tumor cells but also result in the release of new tumor antigens by killing tumor cells. These can then participate in cross-presentation to T and B-cells, thus amplifying the primary treatment [146].

Modern immunotherapy clearly needs to consider many aspects of tumor biology and associated immune reactions. The heterogeneity of tumors and their microenvironment combined with the diversity of immune cells/molecules will need complex approaches to immunotherapy. The new paradigm is to use autologous tumor cells for vaccine and/or in combination with personalized peptide vaccination which would lead to eradication of tumors or at least to the retardation of their development and metastasis formation [21]. In an aging/geriatric environment, certain characteristics specific to elderly subjects, such as functional status and comorbidities, should definitely be further considered.

These last years, immune checkpoint immunotherapy targeting exhausted T-cells in earlier fatal tumor types became excessively successful to treat melanoma, renal cancer, NSCLC as well as bladder cancer [147, 148]. It was longtime debated whether because of the occurrence of all the changes in the immune response with aging the immunotherapy may be efficiently used also in elderly. The most recent clinical trials indicate that this therapy may be as almost as efficiently used to treat the above cancers in old people suffering from them as in the younger patients [149–151]. While aging has been associated with immunosenescence, we have here the evidence that certain aspects of immunity are sustained in older age, including the boosting capacity of checkpoint inhibitors. This also suggests whether older individuals or those with weakened immunity may benefit from low doses of checkpoint inhibitors in other context than cancer immunotherapy.

23.6 Concluding Remarks

There is no doubt that aging is the main risk factor for the development of many diseases including cancers, type 2 diabetes, and cardiovascular and neurodegenerative diseases. Understanding the mechanisms regulating aging is the most important for the comprehension of the occurrence of these different diseases. The low-grade inflammation seen with aging can be a common factor linking aging to these diseases; thus, it is strictly deleterious. However, from a different perspective considering inflammaging as a consequence of immunosenescence, it may be essential to survival, likely ensuring that elderly can probably react to challenge much more easily and rapidly than they would be able to with an immune response similar to young people. In fact, this could be an evolutionary adaptation to maintain a response without losing control if the immune system would have a youngish function in an aging milieu. There are several examples, such as the increase in the number of NK cells and CMV-specific late differentiated $CD8^+$ T-cells, as well as their IFN-γ secretion [72, 97, 98]. Indeed in semi-supercentenarians, it was demonstrated that the presence of a controlled inflammatory status was the most determinant for their longevity [152].Therefore, understanding the interaction between this low-grade inflammation and its shifting toward pathogenic pathways, either in cells or their microenvironment, can provide the key to unveiling why aging is the most important risk factor for these diseases. It is also evident that a unifying picture starts to emerge implicating genomic instability, metabolism, and immunity in the development of cancer and other inflammation-related diseases. However, the challenge is to discover why differentiation toward individual diseases occurs under the presence of the same elements. Notably, the occurrence of each disease predisposes to other conditions as well; the best example would be diabetes, recognized to be a very high risk for the development of cancer or rheumatoid arthritis, as well as cardiovascular diseases. The problem is to intervene in the aging process to maintain its reactivity toward different challenges and at the same time decrease the risk for the development of disease. Thus, understanding the real mechanism underlying aging may lead to delay in the onset of these pathologies, ultimately extending the healthiest life span possible with aging.

Acknowledgments This work is partly supported by grants from the Canadian Institutes of Health Research (CIHR) (No. 106634 and No. 106701), the Université de Sherbrooke, the Research Center on Aging, the European Commission [FP7 259679 “IDEAL”], the Polish Ministry of Science and Higher Education statutory grant 02-0058/07/262, and the Singapore Immunology Network and the Agency for Science Technology and Research (JCO #1434 m00115).

References

1. Anisimov VN. Carcinogenesis and aging 20 years after: escaping horizon. Mech Ageing Dev. 2009;130:105–21.
2. Hoenicke L, Zender L. Immune surveillance of senescent cells – biological significance in cancer- and non-cancer pathologies. Carcinogenesis. 2012;33:1123–6.
3. Dunn GP, Bruce AT, Ikeda H, Old LJ, Schreiber RD. Cancer immunoediting: from immunosurveillance to tumor escape. Nat Immunol. 2002;3:991–8.
4. Zitvogel L, Tesniere A, Kroemer G. Cancer despite immunosurveillance: immunoselection and immunosubversion. Nat Rev Immunol. 2006;6:715–27.
5. Fülöp T, Larbi A, Hirokawa K, et al. Immunosupportive therapies in aging. Clin Interv Aging. 2007;2:33–54.
6. Larbi A, Franceschi C, Mazzatti D, et al. Aging of the immune system as a prognostic factor for human longevity. Physiology (Bethesda). 2008;23:64–74.
7. Miki C, Kusunoki M, Inoue Y, et al. Remodeling of the immunoinflammatory network system in elderly cancer patients: implications of inflamm-aging and tumor-specific hyperinflammation. Surg Today. 2008;38:873–8.
8. Vasto S, Carruba G, Lio D, Colonna-Romano G, Di Bona D, Candore G, Caruso C. Inflammation, ageing and cancer. Mech Ageing Dev. 2009;130:40–5.
9. Franceschi C, Capri M, Monti D, Giunta S, Olivieri F, Sevini F, et al. Inflammaging and anti-inflammaging: a systemic perspective on aging and longevity emerged from studies in humans. Mech Ageing Dev. 2007;128:92–105.
10. Finn OJ. Immuno-oncology: understanding the function and dysfunction of the immune system in cancer. Ann Oncol. 2012;23(Suppl 8):viii6–9.
11. Dranoff G. Cytokines in cancer pathogenesis and cancer therapy. Nat Rev Cancer. 2004;4:11–22.

12. Demaria S, Formenti SC. Role of T lymphocytes in tumor response to radiotherapy. Front Oncol. 2012;2:95.
13. Pawelec G. Hallmarks of human "immunosenescence": adaptation or dysregulation? Immun Ageing. 2012;9:15.
14. Arnold CR, Wolf J, Brunner S, Herndler-Brandstetter D, Grubeck-Loebenstein B. Gain and loss of T-cell subsets in old age – age-related reshaping of the T-cell repertoire. J Clin Immunol. 2011;31:137–46.
15. Douziech N, Seres I, Larbi A, Szikszay E, Roy PM, Arcand M, Dupuis G, Fulop T Jr. Modulation of human lymphocyte proliferative response with aging. Exp Gerontol. 2002;37:369–87.
16. Solana R, Tarazona R, Gayoso I, Lesur O, Dupuis G, Fulop T. Innate immunosenescence: effect of aging on cells and receptors of the innate immune system in humans. Semin Immunol. 2012;24:331–41.
17. Desai A, Grolleau-Julius A, Yung R. Leukocyte function in the aging immune system. J Leukoc Biol. 2010;87:1001–9.
18. Fulop T, Larbi A, Kotb R, de Angelis F, Pawelec G. Aging, immunity, and cancer. Discov Med. 2011;11:537–50.
19. Fulop T, Kotb R, Fortin CF, Pawelec G, de Angelis F, Larbi A. Potential role of immunosenescence in cancer development. Ann N Y Acad Sci. 2010;1197:158–65.
20. Derhovanessian E, Solana R, Larbi A, Pawelec G. Immunity, ageing and cancer. Immun Ageing. 2008;5:11.
21. Mazzola P, Radhi S, Mirandola L, Annoni G, Jenkins M, Cobos E, Chiriva-Internati M. Aging, cancer, and cancer vaccines. Immun Ageing. 2012;9:4.
22. Fulop T, Fortin C, Lesur O, Dupuis G, Kotb R, Lord JM, Larbi A. The innate immune system and aging: what is the contribution to immunosenescence? Open Longev Sci. 2012;6:121–32.
23. Wessels I, Jansen J, Rink L, Uciechowski P. Immunosenescence of polymorphonuclear neutrophils. Sci World J. 2010;10:145–60.
24. Fortin CF, McDonald PP, Lesur O, Fülöp T Jr. Aging and neutrophils: there is still much to do. Rejuvenation Res. 2008;11:873–82.
25. Fulop T Jr, Foris G, Worum I, Leovey A. Age-dependent alterations of fc gamma receptor-mediated effector functions of human polymorphonuclear leucocytes. Clin Exp Immunol. 1985;61:425–32.
26. Fulop T, Foris G, Worum I, Leovey A. Age-dependent changes of the fc gamma-receptor-mediated functions of human monocytes. Int Arch Allergy Appl Immunol. 1984;74:76–9.
27. Fulop T, Larbi A, Douziech N, Fortin C, Guérard KP, Lesur O, et al. Signal transduction and functional changes in neutrophils with aging. Aging Cell. 2004;3:217–26.
28. Wenisch C, Patruta A, Daxbock F, Krause R, Horl W. Effect of age on human neutrophil functions. J Leukoc Biol. 2000;67:40–5.
29. Delgado MA, Elmaoued RA, Davis AS, Kyei G, Deretic V. Toll-like receptors control autophagy. EMBO J. 2008;27:1110–21.
30. Shaw AC, Panda A, Joshi SR, et al. Dysregulation of human toll-like receptor function in aging. Ageing Res Rev. 2011;10:346–53.
31. Renshaw M, Rockwell J, Engleman C, Gewirtz A, Katz J, Sambhara S. Cutting edge: impaired toll-like receptor expression and function in aging. J Immunol. 2002;169:4697–701.
32. van Duin D, Shaw AC. Toll-like receptors in older adults. J Am Geriatr Soc. 2007;55:1438–44.
33. Mankan AK, Dau T, Jenne D, Hornung V. The NLRP3/ASC/Caspase-1 axis regulates IL-1β processing in neutrophils. Eur J Immunol. 2012;42:710–5.
34. Furman D, Chang J, Lartigue L, Bolen CR, Haddad F, Gaudilliere B, Ganio EA, Fragiadakis GK, Spitzer MH, Douchet I, Daburon S, Moreau JF, Nolan GP, Blanco P, Déchanet-Merville J, Dekker CL, Jojic V, Kuo CJ, Davis MM, Faustin B. Expression of specific inflammasome gene modules stratifies older individuals into two extreme clinical and immunological states. Nat Med. 2017;23:174–84.
35. Molony RD, Malawista A, Montgomery RR. Reduced dynamic range of antiviral innate immune responses in aging. Exp Gerontol. 2018;107:130–5.
36. Kawai T, Akira S. The role of pattern-recognition receptors in innate immunity: update on toll-like receptors. Nat Immunol. 2010;11:373–84.
37. Wu S, Metcalf JP, Wu W. Innate immune response to influenza virus. Curr Opin Infect Dis. 2011;24:235–40.
38. Kawai T, Akira S. Antiviral signaling through pattern recognition receptors. J Biochem. 2007;141:137–45.
39. Casanova JL, Abel L, Quintana-Murci L. Human TLRs and IL-1Rs in host defense: natural insights from evolutionary, epidemiological, and clinical genetics. Annu Rev Immunol. 2011;29:447–91.
40. Ostuni R, Zanoni I, Granucci F. Deciphering the complexity of toll-like receptor signaling. Cell Mol Life Sci. 2010;67:4109–34.
41. Kawai T, Akira S. Signaling to NF-kappaB by toll-like receptors. Trends Mol Med. 2007;13:460–9.
42. Puga I, Cols M, Barra CM, He B, Cassis L, et al. B-cell-helper neutrophils stimulate the diversification and production of immunoglobulin in the marginal zone of the spleen. Nat Immunol. 2011;13:170–80.
43. Ryan SO, Johnson JL, Cobb BA. Neutrophils confer T-cell resistance to myeloid derived suppressor cells-mediated suppression to promote chronic inflammation. J Immunol. 2013;190:5037–47.
44. Geissmann F, Manz MG, Jung S, Sieweke MH, Merad M, Ley K. Development of monocytes, macrophages, and dendritic cells. Science. 2010;327:656–61.
45. Nyugen J, Agrawal S, Gollapudi S, Gupta S. Impaired functions of peripheral blood monocyte

subpopulations in aged humans. J Clin Immunol. 2010;30:806–13.
46. Aw D, Silva AB, Palmer DB. Immunosenescence: emerging challenges for an ageing population. Immunology. 2007;120:435–46.
47. Panda A, Arjona A, Sapey E, Bai F, Fikrig E, Montgomery RR, et al. Human innate immunosenescence: causes and consequences for immunity in old age. Trends Immunol. 2009;30:325–33.
48. Crétel E, Veen I, Pierres A, Bongrand P, Gavazzi G. Immunosenescence and infections, myth or reality? Med Mal Infect. 2010;40:307–18.
49. Agarwal S, Busse PJ. Innate and adaptive immunosenescence. Ann Allergy Asthma Immunol. 2010;104:183–90.
50. Shaw AC, Joshi S, Greenwood H, Panda A, Lord JM. Aging of the innate system. Curr Opin Immunol. 2010;22:507–13.
51. van Duin D, Allore HG, Mohanty S, Ginter S, Newman FK, Belshe RB, et al. Prevaccine determination of the expression of costimulatory B7 molecules in activated monocytes predicts influenza vaccine responses in young and older adults. J Infect Dis. 2007;195:1590–7.
52. Plowden J, Renshaw-Hoelscher M, Engleman C, Katz J, Sambhara S. Innate immunity in aging: impact on macrophage function aging. Cell. 2004;3:161–7.
53. Ashcroft GS, Horan MA, Ferguson MW. Aging alters the inflammatory and endothelial cell adhesion molecule profiles during human cutaneous wound healing. Lab Investig. 1998;78:47–58.
54. Wu D, Hayek MG, Meydani S. Vitamin E and macrophage cyclooxygenase regulation in the aged. J Nutr. 2001;131:382S–8.
55. Gomez CR, Nomellini V, Faunce DE, Kovacs EJ. Innate immunity and aging. Exp Gerontol. 2008;43:718–28.
56. Liu YJ. Dendritic cell subsets and lineages, and their functions in innate and adaptive immunity. Cell. 2001;106:259–62.
57. Romagnani C, Della Chiesa M, Kohler S, Moewes B, Radbruch A, Moretta L, et al. Activation of human NK cells by plasmacytoid dendritic cells and its modulation by CD4+ T helper cells and CD4+ CD25hi T regulatory cells. Eur J Immunol. 2005;35:2452–8.
58. Ferlazzo G, Pack M, Thomas D, Paludan C, Schmid D, Strowig T, et al. Distinct roles of IL-12 and IL-15 in human natural killer cell activation by dendritic cells from secondary lymphoid organs. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2004;101:16606–11.
59. Lande R, Gilliet M. Plasmacytoid dendritic cells: key players in the initiation and regulation of immune responses. Ann N Y Acad Sci. 2010;1183:89–103.
60. Lanzavecchia A, Sallusto F. Regulation of T-cell immunity by dendritic cells. Cell. 2001;106:263–6.
61. Peters T, Weiss JM, Sindrilaru A, Wang H, Oreshkova T, Wlaschek M, et al. Reactive oxygen intermediate-induced pathomechanisms contribute to immunosenescence, chronic inflammation and autoimmunity. Mech Ageing Dev. 2009;130:564–87.
62. Stout-Delgado HW, Yang X, Walker WE, Tesar BM, Goldstein DR. Aging impairs IFN regulatory factor 7 up-regulation in plasmacytoid dendritic cells during TLR9 activation. J Immunol. 2008;181:6747–56.
63. Agrawal A, Agrawal S, Tay J, Gupta S. Biology of dendritic cells in aging. J Clin Immunol. 2008;28:14–20.
64. Stout-Delgado HW, Du W, Shirali AC, Booth CJ, Goldstein DR. Aging promotes neutrophil-induced mortality by augmenting IL-17 production during viral infection. Cell Host Microbe. 2009;6:446–56.
65. Agrawal A, Gupta S. Impact of aging on dendritic cell functions in humans. Ageing Res Rev. 2011;10:336–45.
66. Della Bella S, Bierti L, Presicce P, Arienti R, Valenti M, Saresella M, Vergani C, Villa ML. Peripheral blood dendritic cells and monocytes are differently regulated in the elderly. Clin Immunol. 2007;122:220–8.
67. Takahashi E, Kuranaga N, Satoh K, Habu Y, Shinomiya N, Asano T, Seki S, Hayakawa M. Induction of CD16+ CD56bright NK cells with antitumour cytotoxicity not only from CD16-CD56bright NK cells but also from CD16-CD56dim NK cells. Scand J Immunol. 2007;65:126–38.
68. Borrego F, Alonso MC, Galiani MD, Carracedo J, Ramirez R, Ostos B. NK phenotypic markers and IL2 response in NK cells from elderly people. Exp Gerontol. 1999;34:253–65.
69. Chidrawar SM, Khan N, Chan YL, Nayak L, Moss PA. Ageing is associated with a decline in peripheral blood CD56bright NK cells. Immunol Ageing. 2006;3:10.
70. Brenchley JM, Karandikar NJ, Betts MR, Ambrozak DR, Hill BJ, Crotty LE. Expression of CD57 defines replicative senescence and antigen-induced apoptotic death of CD8+ T-cells. Blood. 2003;101:2711–20.
71. Lutz CT, Quinn LS. Sarcopenia, obesity, and natural killer cell immune senescence in aging: altered cytokine levels as a common mechanism. Aging (Albany NY). 2012;4:535–46.
72. Le Garff-Tavernier M, Beziat V, Decocq J, Siguret V, Gandjbakhch F, Pautas E, Debré P, Merle-Beral H, Vieillard V. Human NK cells display major phenotypic and functional changes over the life span. Aging Cell. 2010;9:527–35.
73. Ogata K, An E, Shioi Y, Nakamura K, Luo S, Yokose N, Minami S, Dan K. Association between natural killer cell activity and infection in immunologically normal elderly people. Clin Exp Immunol. 2001;124:392–7.
74. Mariani E, Pulsatelli L, Neri S, Dolzani P, Meneghetti A, Silvestri T. RANTES and MIP-1alpha production by T lymphocytes, monocytes and NK cells from nonagenarian subjects. Exp Gerontol. 2002;37:219–26.
75. Almeida-Oliveira A, Smith-Carvalho M, Porto LC, Cardoso-Oliveira J, Ribeiro AS, Falcao

RR. Age-related changes in natural killer cell receptors from childhood through old age. Hum Immunol. 2011;72:319–29.
76. Godfrey DI, Berzins SP. Control points in NKT-cell development. Nat Rev Immunol. 2007;7:505–18.
77. Lança T, Silva-Santos B. The split nature of tumor-infiltrating leukocytes: implications for cancer surveillance and immunotherapy. Oncoimmunology. 2012;1:717–25.
78. Cua DJ, Tato CM. Innate IL-17-producing cells: the sentinels of the immune system. Nat Rev Immunol. 2010;10:479–89.
79. Kuang DM, Zhao Q, Wu Y, Peng C, Wang J, Xu Z, Yin XY, Zheng L. Peritumoral neutrophils link inflammatory response to disease progression by fostering angiogenesis in hepatocellular carcinoma. J Hepatol. 2011;54:948–55.
80. Pawelec G, Akbar A, Caruso C, Solana R, Grubeck-Loebenstein B, Wikby A. Human immunosenescence: is it infectious? Immunol Rev. 2005;205:257–68.
81. Pellicanò M, Larbi A, Goldeck D, Colonna-Romano G, Buffa S, Bulati M, Rubino G, Iemolo F, Candore G, Caruso C, Derhovanessian E, Pawelec G. Immune profiling of Alzheimer patients. J Neuroimmunol. 2012;242:52–9.
82. Larbi A, Pawelec G, Witkowski JM, Schipper HM, Derhovanessian E, Goldeck D, Fulop T. Dramatic shifts in circulating CD4 but not CD8 T-cell subsets in mild Alzheimer's disease. J Alzheimers Dis. 2009;17:91–103.
83. Solana R, Tarazona R, Aiello AE, Akbar AN, Appay V, et al. CMV and immunosenescence: from basics to clinics. Immun Ageing. 2012;9:23.
84. Poschke I, De Boniface J, Mao Y, Kiessling R. Tumor-induced changes in the phenotype of blood-derived and tumor-associated T-cells of early stage breast cancer patients. Int J Cancer. 2012;131:1611–20.
85. Hotta K, Sho M, Fujimoto K, Shimada K, Yamato I, Anai S, Konishi N, Hirao Y, Nonomura K, Nakajima Y. Prognostic significance of CD45RO+ memory T-cells in renal cell carcinoma. Br J Cancer. 2011;105:1191–6.
86. Henson SM, Riddell NE, Akbar AN. Properties of end-stage human T-cells defined by CD45RA re-expression. Curr Opin Immunol. 2012;24:476–81.
87. Di Mitri D, Azevedo RI, Henson SM, Libri V, Riddell NE, Macaulay R, et al. Reversible senescence in human CD4 + CD45RA + CD27- memory T-cells. J Immunol. 2011;187:2093–100.
88. Li C, Beavis P, Palfreeman AC, Amjadi P, Kennedy A, Brennan FM. Activation of p38 mitogen-activated protein kinase is critical step for acquisition of effector function in cytokine-activated T-cells, but acts as a negative regulator in T-cells activated through the T-cell receptor. Immunology. 2011;132:104–10.
89. Rincón M, Pedraza-Alva G. JNK and p38 MAP kinases in CD4+ and CD8+ T-cells. Immunol Rev. 2003;192:131–42.
90. Rosenblatt J, Glotzbecker B, Mills H, Vasir B, Tzachanis D, et al. PD-1 blockade by CT-011, anti-PD-1 antibody, enhances ex vivo T-cell responses to autologous dendritic cell/myeloma fusion vaccine. J Immunother. 2011;34:409–18.
91. Robert C, Thomas L, Bondarenko I, O'Day S, Garbe C, et al. Ipilimumab plus dacarbazine for previously untreated metastatic melanoma. N Engl J Med. 2011;364:2517–26.
92. Simeone E, Ascierto PA. Immunomodulating antibodies in the treatment of metastatic melanoma: the experience with anti-CTLA-4, anti-CD137, and anti-PD1. J Immunotoxicol. 2012;9:241–7.
93. Wikby A, Ferguson F, Forsey R, Thompson J, Strindhal J, Lofgren S, Nilsson BO, Ernerudh J, Pawelec G, Johansson B. An immune risk phenotype, cognitive impairment, and survival in very late life: impact of allostatic load in Swedish octogenarian and nonagenarian humans. J Gerontol A Biol Sci Med Sci. 2005;60:556–65.
94. Wikby A, Månsson IA, Johansson B, Strindhall J, Nilsson SE. The immune risk profile is associated with age and gender: findings from three Swedish population studies of individuals 20–100 years of age. Biogerontology. 2008;9:299–308.
95. Wikby A, Johansson B, Olsson J, Löfgren S, et al. Expansions of peripheral blood CD8 T-lymphocyte subpopulations and an association with cytomegalovirus seropositivity in the elderly: the Swedish NONA immune study. Exp Gerontol. 2002;37:445–53.
96. Olsson J, Wikby A, Johansson B, et al. Age-related change in peripheral blood T-lymphocyte subpopulations and cytomegalovirus infection in the very old: the Swedish longitudinal OCTO immune study. Mech Ageing Dev. 2000;121:187–201.
97. Pawelec G, McElhaney JE, Aiello AE, Derhovanessian E. The impact of CMV infection on survival in older humans. Curr Opin Immunol. 2012;24:507–11.
98. Derhovanessian E, Maier AB, Hähnel K, Zelba H, de Craen AJ, Roelofs H, et al. Lower proportion of naïve peripheral CD8+ T-cells and an unopposed pro-inflammatory response to human cytomegalovirus proteins in vitro are associated with longer survival in very elderly people. Age (Dordr). 2013;35(4):1387–99.
99. Bartlett DB, Firth CM, Phillips AC, Moss P, Baylis D, Syddall H, Sayer AA, Cooper C, Lord JM. The age-related increase in low-grade systemic inflammation (inflammaging) is not driven by cytomegalovirus infection. Aging Cell. 2012;11:912–5.
100. Griffiths HR, Dunston CR, Bennett SJ, Grant MM, Phillips DC, Kitas GD. Free radicals and redox signalling in T-cells during chronic inflammation and ageing. Biochem Soc Trans. 2011;39:1273–8.
101. Larbi A, Cabreiro F, Zelba H, Marthandan S, Combet E, Friguet B, et al. Reduced oxygen tension results in reduced human T-cell proliferation and increased intracellular oxidative damage and susceptibility to

apoptosis upon activation. Free Radic Biol Med. 2010;48:26–34.
102. Larbi A, Dupuis G, Khalil A, Douziech N, Fortin C, Fülöp T Jr. Differential role of lipid rafts in the functions of CD4+ and CD8+ human T lymphocytes with aging. Cell Signal. 2006;18:1017–30.
103. Larbi A, Douziech N, Dupuis G, Khalil A, Pelletier H, Guerard KP, Fulop T Jr. Age associated alterations in the recruitment of signal transduction proteins to lipid rafts in human T lymphocytes. J Leukoc Biol. 2004;75:373–81.
104. Larbi A, Dupuis G, Douziech N, Fulop T. Low-grade inflammation with aging has consequences for T-lymphocyte signaling. Ann N Y Acad Sci. 2004;1030:125–33.
105. Salmond RJ, Filby A, Qureshi I, Caserta S, Zamoyska R. T-cell receptor proximal signaling via the Src-family kinases, Lck and Fyn, influences T-cell activation, differentiation, and tolerance. Immunol Rev. 2009;228:9–22.
106. Schoenborn JR, Tan YX, Zhang C, Shokat KM, Weiss A. Feedback circuits monitor and adjust basal Lck-dependent events in T-cell receptor signaling. Sci Signal. 2011;4:ra59.
107. Goronzy JJ, Li G, Yu M, Weyand CM. Signaling pathways in aged T-cells – a reflection of T-cell differentiation, cell senescence and host environment. Semin Immunol. 2012;24:365–72.
108. Larbi A, Pawelec G, Wong SC, Goldeck D, Tai JJ, Fülöp T. Impact of age on T-cell signaling: a general defect or specific alterations? Ageing Res Rev. 2011;10:370–8.
109. Heinbokel T, Elkhal A, Liu G, Edtinger K, Tullius SG. Immunosenescence and organ transplantation. Transplant Rev (Orlando). 2013;27:65–75.
110. Riley RL, Blomberg BB, Frasca D. B-cells, E2A and aging. Immunol Rev. 2005;205:30–47.
111. Gibson KL, Wu YC, Barnett Y, Duggan O, Vaughan R, Kondeatis E, et al. B-cell diversity decreases in old age and is correlated with poor health status. Aging Cell. 2009;8:18–25.
112. Colonna-Romano G, Bulati M, Aquino A, Scialabba G, Candore G, Lio D, Motta M, Malaguarnera M, Caruso C. Mech Ageing Dev. 2003;124:389–93.
113. Lazuardi L, Jenewein B, Wolf AM, Pfister G, Tzankov A, Grubeck-Loebenstein B. Age-related loss of naïve T-cells and dysregulation of T-cell/B-cell interactions in human lymph nodes. Immunology. 2005;114:37–43.
114. Jasiulewicz A, Lisowska KA, Pietruczuk K, Frąckowiak J, Fulop T, Witkowski JM. Homeostatic 'bystander' proliferation of human peripheral blood B-cells in response to polyclonal T-cell stimulation in vitro. Int Immunol. 2015;27:579–88.
115. Bryl E, Vallejo AN, Matteson EL, Witkowski JM, Weyand CM, Goronzy JJ. Modulation of CD28 expression with anti-tumor necrosis factor alpha therapy in rheumatoid arthritis. Arthritis Rheum. 2005;52:2996–03.
116. Hotamisligil GS, Shargill NS, Spiegelman BM. Adipose expression of tumor necrosis factor-alpha: direct role in obesity-linked insulin resistance. Science. 1993;259:87–91.
117. Akulian JA, Pipeling MR, John ER, Orens JB, Lechtzin N, McDyer JF. High-quality CMV-specific CD4 (+) memory is enriched in the lung allograft and is associated with mucosal viral control. Am J Transplant. 2013;13(1):146–56.
118. Brüning CA, Prigol M, Luchese C, Jesse CR, Duarte MM, Roman SS, Nogueira CW. Protective effect of diphenyl diselenide on ischemia and reperfusion-induced cerebral injury: involvement of oxidative stress and pro-inflammatory cytokines. Neurochem Res. 2012;37:2249–58.
119. Chung HY, Cesari M, Anton S, Marzetti E, Giovannini S, Seo AY, et al. Molecular inflammation: underpinnings of aging and age-related diseases. Ageing Res Rev. 2009;8:18–30.
120. Brand K, Page S, Rogler G, Bartsch A, Brandl R, Page R, Knuechel M, Kaltschmidt C, Baeuerle PA, Neumeier D. Activated transcription factor nuclear factor-kappa B is present in the atherosclerotic lesion. J Clin Invest. 1996;97:1715–22.
121. Macaulay R, Akbar AN, Henson SM. The role of the T-cell in age-related inflammation. Age (Dordr). 2013;35(3):563–72.
122. Novosyadlyy R, Leroith D. Insulin-like growth factors and insulin: at the crossroad between tumor development and longevity. J Gerontol A Biol Sci Med Sci. 2012;67:640–51.
123. Harman D. About origin and evolution of the free radical theory of aging: a brief personal history, 1954–2009. Biogerontology. 2009;10:783–1.
124. Sosa V, Moliné T, Somoza R, Paciucci R, Kondoh H, LLeonart ME. Oxidative stress and cancer: an overview. Ageing Res Rev. 2013;12:376–90.
125. Lisanti MP, Martinez-Outschoorn UE, Lin Z, Pavlides S, Whitaker-Menezes D, Pestell RG, et al. Hydrogen peroxide fuels aging, inflammation, cancer metabolism and metastasis: the seed and soil also needs fertilizer. Cell Cycle. 2011;10:2440–9.
126. Cannizzo ES, Clement CC, Sahu R, Follo C, Santambrogio L. Oxidative stress, inflamm-aging and immunosenescence. J Proteome. 2011;74:2313–23.
127. De la Fuente M, Miquel J. An update of the oxidation-inflammation theory of aging: the involvement of the immune system in oxi-inflamm-aging. Curr Pharm Des. 2009;15:3003–26.
128. Mammucari C, Rizzuto R. Signaling pathways in mitochondrial dysfunction and aging. Mech Age Dev. 2010;131:536–43.
129. Bellot GL, Liu D, Pervaiz S. ROS, autophagy, mitochondria and cancer: Ras the hidden master? Mitochondrion. 2013;13:155–62.
130. Baraibar MA, Ladouce R, Friguet B. Proteomic quantification and identification of carbonylated proteins upon oxidative stress and during cellular aging. J Proteome. 2013;92:63–70.

131. Baraibar MA, Liu L, Ahmed EK, Friguet B. Protein oxidative damage at the crossroads of cellular senescence, aging, and age-related diseases. Oxide Med Cell Longev. 2012;2012:919832.
132. Mishto M, Santoro A, Bellavista E, Bonafé M, Monti D, Franceschi C. Immunoproteasomes and immunosenescence. Ageing Res Rev. 2003;2(4):419–32.
133. Friguet B. Proteasome activity and immunosenescence. In: Fulop T, Franceschi C, Hirokawa K, Pawelec G, editors. Handbook on immunosenescence. Amsterdam: Springer; 2009. p. 729–52.
134. Witkowski JM, Mikosik A, Bryl E, Fulop T. Proteodynamics in aging human T-cells - the need for its comprehensive study to understand the fine regulation of T lymphocyte functions. Exp Gerontol. 2018;107:161–8.
135. Hybertson BM, Gan B, Rose SK, McCord JM. Oxidative stress in health and disease: the therapeutic potential of Nrf2 activation. Mol Asp Med. 2011;32:234–46.
136. Vendramini-Costa DB, Carvalho JE. Molecular link mechanisms between inflammation and cancer. Curr Pharm Des. 2012;18:3831–52.
137. Ye J, Ma C, Hsueh EC, Eickhoff CS, Zhang Y, Varvares MA, et al. Tumor-derived γδ regulatory T-cells suppress innate and adaptive immunity through the induction of immunosenescence. J Immunol. 2013;190:2403–14.
138. van der Meer JW, Joosten LA, Riksen N, Netea MG. Trained immunity: a smart way to enhance innate immune defence. Mol Immunol. 2015;68:40–4.
139. Netea MG, Schlitzer A, Placek K, Joosten LAB, Schultze JL. Innate and adaptive immune memory: an evolutionary continuum in the Host's response to pathogens. Cell Host Microbe. 2019;25:13–26.
140. Franceschi C, Salvioli S, Garagnani P, de Eguileor M, Monti D, Capri M. Immunobiography and the heterogeneity of immune responses in the elderly: a focus on Inflammaging and trained immunity. Front Immunol. 2017;8:982.
141. Fok ET, Davignon L, Fanucchi S, Mhlanga MM. The lncRNA connection between cellular metabolism and epigenetics in trained immunity. Front Immunol. 2019;9:3184.
142. Fulop T, Dupuis G, Baehl S, Le Page A, Bourgade K, Frost E, Witkowski JM, Pawelec G, Larbi A, Cunnane S. From inflamm-aging to immune-paralysis: a slippery slope during aging for immune-adaptation. Biogerontology. 2016;17:147–57.
143. Nyström T, Yang J, Molin M. Peroxiredoxins, gerontogenes linking aging to genome instability and cancer. Genes Dev. 2012;26:2001–8.
144. Hanna MG Jr. Cancer vaccines: are we there yet? Hum Vaccin Immunother. 2012;8(8):1161–5.
145. Flinsenberg TW, Compeer EB, Boelens JJ, Boes M. Antigen cross-presentation: extending recent laboratory findings to therapeutic intervention. Clin Exp Immunol. 2011;165:8–18.
146. Ma Y, Aymeric L, Locher C, Kroemer G, Zitvogel L. The dendritic cell-tumor cross-talk in cancer. Curr Opin Immunol. 2011;23:146–52.
147. Salmaninejad A, Valilou SF, Shabgah AG, Aslani S, Alimardani M, Pasdar A, Sahebkar A. PD-1/PD-L1 pathway: basic biology and role in cancer immunotherapy. J Cell Physiol. 2019;234(10):16824–37.
148. Łuksza M, Riaz N, Makarov V, Balachandran VP, Hellmann MD, Solovyov A, Rizvi NA, Merghoub T, Levine AJ, Chan TA, Wolchok JD, Greenbaum BD. A neoantigen fitness model predicts tumour response to checkpoint blockade immunotherapy. Nature. 2017;551:517–20.
149. Daste A, Domblides C, Gross-Goupil M, Chakiba C, Quivy A, Cochin V, de Mones E, Larmonier N, Soubeyran P, Ravaud A. Immune checkpoint inhibitors and elderly people: a review. Eur J Cancer. 2017;82:155–66.
150. Elias R, Hartshorn K, Rahma O, Lin N, Snyder-Cappione JE. Aging, immune senescence, and immunotherapy: a comprehensive review. Semin Oncol. 2018;45:187–200.
151. Pawelec G. Immunosenescence and cancer. Biogerontology. 2017;18:717–21.
152. Arai Y, Martin-Ruiz CM, Takayama M, Abe Y, Takebayashi T, Koyasu S, Suematsu M, Hirose N, von Zglinicki T. Inflammation, but not telomere length, predicts successful ageing at extreme old age: a longitudinal study of semi-supercentenarians. EBioMedicine. 2015;2:1549–58.

Nutrition, Immunity, and Cancers

24

Hassan Abolhassani, Niyaz Mohammadzadeh Honarvar, Terezie T. Mosby, and Maryam Mahmoudi

Contents

H. Abolhassani
Research Center for Immunodeficiencies, Children's Medical Center Hospital, Tehran University of Medical Sciences, Tehran, Iran

Division of Clinical Immunology, Department of Laboratory Medicine, Karolinska Institutet, Karolinska University Hospital Huddinge, Stockholm, Sweden

Cancer Immunology Project (CIP), Universal Scientific Education and Research Network (USERN), Stockholm, Sweden

N. Mohammadzadeh Honarvar
M. Mahmoudi (✉)
School of Nutritional Sciences and Dietetics, Tehran University of Medical Sciences, Tehran, Iran

Dietitians and Nutrition Experts Team (DiNET), Universal Scientific Education and Research Network (USERN), Tehran, Iran
e-mail: m-mahmoudi@sina.tums.ac.ir

T. T. Mosby
Department of Nutrition, St. Jude Children's Research Hospital, Memphis, TN, USA

N. Rezaei (ed.), *Cancer Immunology*, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-30845-2_24

24.1 Introduction

Changes in immunologic pathways play a leading role in all stages of cancer. Proper immune function also associates with quantitative and qualitative aspects of nutrition [1, 2]. Therefore, overnutrition and imbalanced nutrition may affect development, progression, and therapeutic response of cancer [2]. Pro-inflammatory cytokines such as tumor necrosis factor (TNF), interferon-γ (IFN-γ), and interleukins 1 and 6 (IL-1 and IL-6) are important mediators of cancer complications such as cachexia [3]. A tumor can trigger the release of cytokines such as IL-6 [4], which is associated with an increase in lipolysis and proteolysis, which in turn affect the appetite and host neuroendocrine axis and induce anorexia and cachexia [4, 5]. Several neuropeptides such as neuropeptide Y (NPY) and adipokines such as leptin have been implicated in the pathogenesis of cancer cachexia syndrome [5, 6]. Thus, an imbalance of cytokine production, and neuropeptide and adipokine dysfunction as well as changes in microbiota (particularly in GI in the consequence of cancer and tumor suppressive agents) may be a major cause of the nutritional consequences of cancer.

24.2 Role of Nutrition in Predisposition of Cancer from an Immunologic View

One of the known risk factors for cancer is obesity, especially with the modern lifestyle and low physical activity [3]. Dietary patterns have a significant effect on the cytokine profile; for instance, the high intake of saturated fats, especially in obese people, leads to infiltration of adipose tissue by macrophages producing IL-1β, IL-6, and macrophage inhibitory factor (MIF) [4–6]. Moreover, a decrease in the secretion of anti-inflammatory adipokines such as adiponectin may maintain pro-inflammatory signals and activate the production of C-reactive protein (CRP) by the liver [7, 8]. Based on previous studies, this chronic inflammatory process is related to an increased susceptibility to various types of cancer, including cancers of the gastrointestinal, respiratory, and genitourinary systems [9–11]. It has been evident that the inflammation is promoted by saturated fatty acids and their binding to the Toll-like receptors (TLR 2 and 4) activating pro-inflammatory factors such as nuclear factor-kappa B (NF-κB) [12]. Moreover, downregulation of autophagy and decreased cytoplasmic recycling of damaged organelles accelerate activation of inflammasome and complement components [13, 14]. Chronic inflammation dysregulates immune function from immunosurveillance to carcinogenic inflammasome by stimulating cellular turnover, increasing stem cell divisions, enhancing production of reactive oxygen species and metabolic rate locally [15]. Unresolved inflammation due to overnutrition provides a local immunosuppressive microenvironment by production of transforming growth factor beta (TGF-β) and myeloid-derived suppressor cells within the tumor lesion [16, 17]. Obesity also affects the microbiota leading to an intestinal dysbiosis and diminishes the bacterial and endotoxin barriers, which increases the risk of procarcinogenic metabolites presentation [18, 19]. Decreased autophagy also enhances aging process affecting immune profile by decreasing

cytotoxic T-cells, thymic atrophy, and dendritic cells' dysfunction [19–21].

Vice versa, intermittent fasting and adjusted low-carbohydrate/hypocaloric diet has beneficial effects on antagonizing the chronic inflammation process mediated by increased ketone-bodies, decreased risk factors of metabolic syndrome [1, 22–25]. Surprisingly this method can be used for boosting chemotherapy since it can increase the remodeling of the immune-cell infiltrate by an increased infiltrating cytotoxic T-cells and local depletion of regulatory T-cells [26, 27]. Treatment with one or several fasting cycles diminishes tumor growth, prevents cellular transformation, and upregulates autophagy [28–30].

Influenced by this important effect of nutrition on the immune system, characteristics of the human diet can directly stimulate gastrointestinal malignancies [31]. A diet low in fiber and vegetables may affect the regulation of carbohydrate absorption and short chain fatty acid formation, which affects the metabolism of carcinogens [32]. This process is linked to colon cancer and its progression [33]; apparently, a decrease in fiber intake may allow more time for exposure of colon cells and the immune system to the potential carcinogens, affecting intestinal transit [34]. However, recently the anti-inflammatory effects of fiber and multiple distinct phytochemicals (e.g., enterolactone, flaxseed, lignin, and spermidine) on microbiome have been reported including increased proportion of *Lactobacilli* and *Bifidobacteria* [35, 36]. Moreover, based on the evidence used to draw conclusions about a gluten free diet in patients with celiac disease leading to cancer protection, it seems reasonable to consider gluten as a booster for cancer in celiac patients [37, 38]. Meat consumption is a risk factor for some cancers, especially colon, rectum, and prostate. Red meat consumption increases the risk of colon cancer by causing increased production of heterocyclic amines [39, 40]. On the other hand, a change in the normal diet and deficiency of vitamins or minerals may affect the adequacy of either innate immunity (phagocytic activity, chemotaxis of neutrophils, or release of cytokines from monocytes) or adaptive immunity (immunoglobulin production of B-cells or cell-mediated immunity) [41–44]. Many of the consequences of malnutrition in the regulation of signal transduction and immunoregulatory gene expression were first recognized in the early 1800s as nutrigenomics [44, 45]. The majority of these changes are reversible after administration of adequate nutrition supplements [46]. The following list of specific dietary factors has been studied in relation to the immune aspects of cancer.

24.2.1 Protein–Calorie Balance

The formation of lymphocytes, eosinophils, and vital immune system proteins such as thymic hormones, antibody (Ab) responses to T-cell dependent antigens (Ags), and Ab affinity are affected by protein–calorie imbalance [47]. It has long been recognized that caloric restriction with a well-balanced diet avoiding certain nutrient deficiencies can increase longevity and has cancer preventive effects in mammals [48].

24.2.2 Essential Fatty Acids

Essential fatty acids, mainly suggested by consumption of nuts, in our body can regulate the production of prostaglandins, prostacyclins, thromboxanes, and leukotrienes, causing a significant effect on the host immune system and regulation of inflammation and C-reactive proteins [49].

24.2.3 Antioxidants (Selenium, Vitamin E, and Vitamin C)

These nutrients have strong antioxidative effects and may reduce the risk of cancer by neutralizing reactive oxygen species or free radicals that can damage DNA [50, 51].

24.2.3.1 Vitamin A

Vitamin A plays an important role in protection against measles, white blood cell (WBC) function, resistance to carcinogens, and skin and mucous membrane defenses. Vitamin A precursor carotenoids, such as lycopene, have a potential effect on cancer prevention [52, 53].

24.2.4 Vitamin D

25-hydroxyvitamin D has been of interest based on ecologic studies on populations with greater exposure to ultraviolet light who had a lower risk of breast cancer, colon cancer, and prostate cancer. This vitamin regulates humoral Ab response, enhances organ specific cytotoxic T-cells, and supports a Th2-mediated anti-inflammatory profile of cytokines; therefore, its anticancer properties are strongly suggested [54–56].

24.2.5 Vitamin B6

Pyridoxine and its metabolite PLP (pyridoxal-5′ phosphate) induce immunosurveillance activation and Th1 cytokine-mediated immune responses. Epidemiologic studies and laboratory animal models have shown that vitamin B6 modulates the risk of cancer. It is not clear how vitamin B6 mediates this effect, but it has been reported that high dietary vitamin B6 attenuates and low dietary vitamin B6 increases the risk of cancer [55, 57–59].

24.2.6 Folate

Folate is important for DNA methylation, repair, and synthesis, which is also crucial for lymphocyte development [60, 61]. Epidemiologic studies have shown that low folic acid intake is associated with a higher risk of various cancers, most notably colon, breast, and probably cervical cancer. The fact that methylenetetrahydrofolate reductase, an enzyme predicted to reduce the risk of colon cancer, is associated with folate status supports the role of folate deficiency in cancers [62, 63].

24.2.7 Calcium

Many studies show that calcium may reduce the risk of colorectal cancer via direct and indirect effects. Calcium has a direct effect on proliferation, stimulating differentiation, and apoptosis in the colonic mucosa [64, 65]. Its indirect effect is binding to toxic secondary bile acids and ionized fatty acids to form insoluble soaps in the lumen of the colon [66].

24.2.8 Nutrition Overdose in Cancer

In addition to deficiency, an overdose of some micronutrients can also have an immunosuppressive effect, especially megadoses of vitamin E [67]. High doses of certain minerals such as chromium, copper, iron, manganese, and zinc also may induce cancer and immune dysfunction [68].

In summary, attenuated innate and adaptive immunity as a result of an inadequate diet leads to a higher risk of cancer and lower homeostasis for cancerous antigens, which could be resulted from reducing nutrient intake, increasing losses, and interfering with utilization due to altering metabolic pathways. Thus, nutrition may have a significant role in immune prevention and immune surveillance of cancer.

24.3 Aging as a Confounder of the Triangle of Nutrition, Immunity, and Cancer

Aging may be a confounder of the triangle of nutrition, immunity, and cancer (Fig. 24.1); however, neither the relationships nor the mechanisms of interaction are known. Unfortunately, only a few studies have considered that nutrition and immune function simultaneously decrease in elderly individuals [69]. It is known that increased age adversely affects the function of the immune system as well as nutrient intake habits [70]. Therefore, both immunosuppression (mainly due to decreased effectiveness of T and natural killer cells) and nutritional deficiencies (as defined by the 1989 recommended dietary allowances) in the elderly may have independent correlations with an increased risk of infection and neoplasia development [42].

One of the probable mechanisms that may affect both immunity and nutrition in old people is turn-

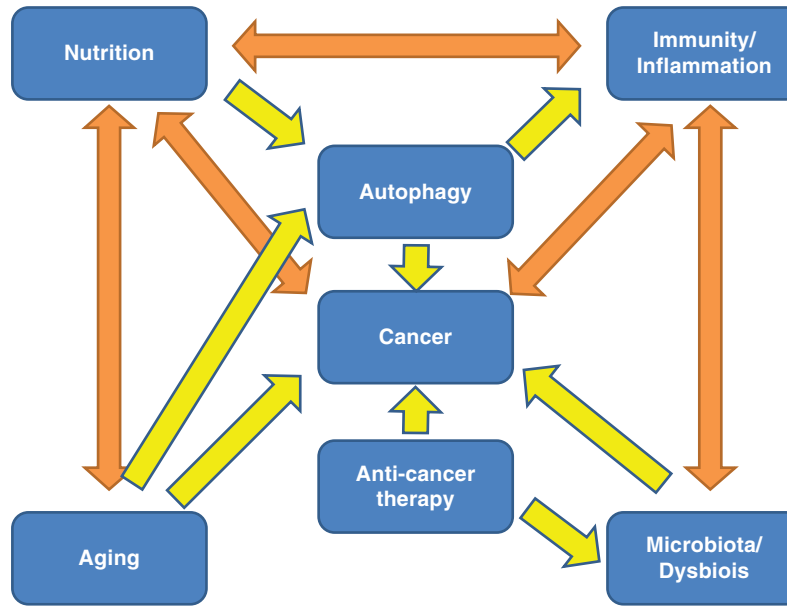


Fig. 24.1 Schematic overview of complex network of diet-immunity-cancer

over fluctuations of cellular components in lysosomes or autophagy. Advanced age leads to a reduction in the autophagy of loading viral Ags and cross presentation of tumor Ags into MHC class I molecules, as well as pathogen killing [71–73]. Similarly, the capability of autophagy for energetic balance recycling of amino acids to maintain protein synthesis under starvation conditions and the capacity of intracellular lipid stores or glycogen mobilization are disturbed [74, 75]. However, only minimal information has been produced concerning human cancer initiation as a direct result of a specific dietary etiology in the elderly.

24.4 Microbiota as a Confounder of the Triangle of Nutrition, Immunity, and Cancer

Studies examining the composition of alimentary elements on the intestinal microbiome and the role of dysbiosis in different diseases states have uncovered associations with inflammation and tumorigenesis [76, 77]. Moreover, the impact of immunosuppressive and anticancer agents on the microbiota profile has been recorded [78–81]. High protein diet can increase the microbial diversity and proportion of *Bifidobacteria*, *Lactobacilli,* and *Eubacterium Rectale* but can decrease *Bacteroides* species. Similarly most of natural sugar can enhance incidence of *Bifidobacteria* rather than *Bacteroides*. Moreover high fat diet inhibits propagation of the lactic acid bacteria but provide an environment in favor of *Clostridiales* and *Bacteroides.* Probiotics also can change the microbiota by overpresentation of *Bifidobacteria, Lactobacilli*, *aerobes/anaerobes,* and lower presentation *coliforms, Helicobacter pylori, Escherichia coli* [82, 83].

Immunosurveillance profile (low short chain fatty acids, low lipopolysaccharide levels, low IL-6, and high IL-10) is associated with specific microbiome molecular patterns which usually can be linked with Mediterranean diet with dominancy of *Bifidobacteria, Lactobacilli, Eubacteria, Bacteroides,* and *Prevotella.* Studies that involve intake of a specific dietary component demonstrate how certain bacteria tend to respond to the nutrient-specific challenge. Protein, fats, digestible and non-digestible carbohydrates, and probiotics all induce shifts in the microbiome with secondary effects on host immunologic and metabolic markers suggesting maintaining healthy gut microbiome is critical to human health [84, 85].

24.5 Role of Cancer in Predisposition to Malnutrition from an Immunologic View

Despite the role of nutrition in either preventing or causing cancer in humans, malnutrition is a common problem (global percentage of 56.5%), and weight loss is often predictive of shortened survival in these patients [86]. In advanced stages of cancer, up to 35% of related deaths may be linked to improper diet [87, 88]. Moreover, a proportion of patients with malignancy develop cachexia, a progressive involuntary weight loss status that is attributed to clinic-pathologic factors of the tumor (origin, metastasis, and size), host immunity, and antitumor treatment (Fig. 24.2) [89]. During the development of cancer-associated cachexia, several Th2-dominant condition mediators such as IL-2 and TNF (prognostic markers) are implicated in appetite loss and metabolic disturbances, as well as leptin, IL-1, IL-6, IFN-γ, leukemia inhibitory factor, NPY, and proteoglycan 24 K [90, 91]. These immunologic and metabolic changes induce cancer cachexia syndrome, which is characterized by patient tissue wasting, anorexia, appetite loss, prolonged fatigue and lethargy, insulin resistance, microcytic anemia, hyperlipidemia, and hypoalbuminemia [92, 93]. Metabolic features of this syndrome include increases in the heterogeneity of energy requirement, substrate cycling and turnover, Cori cycle activity, and hepatic protein synthesis, as well as decreases in peripheral muscle protein synthesis, serum protein lipase activity, and plasma concentration of branched chain amino acids. In general, the severity of malnutrition and cachexia in digestive neoplasias is in highest percentages (from 79% in esophageal cancer to 40% in rectum cancers) due to the involvement of all predisposing factors described in Fig. 24.2 during the development of cancer and in chemotherapy or tumor resection. It should be noted that antitumor agents with their side effect on cells with high turnover may exacerbate malnutrition [94]. This could be explained by the competition between cancerous regions and normal cells of the gastrointestinal system to use nutrients to repair the adverse effects of antitumor drugs (hypermetabolic state) [95]. Briefly, impaired caloric intake, side effects of therapy, changes in taste and mood, pain and other adverse consequences of eating, obstruction, fistula, and malabsorption all promote malnutrition in cancer patients; therefore, well-nourished cancer patients with intact gastrointestinal integrity have lower morbidity and mortality than others [96]. It should be noted that cachexia after cancer differs from cachexia following starvation. Increased protein and glucose turnover, high whole body synthesis and catabolism, accelerated hepatic protein production (especially acute phase

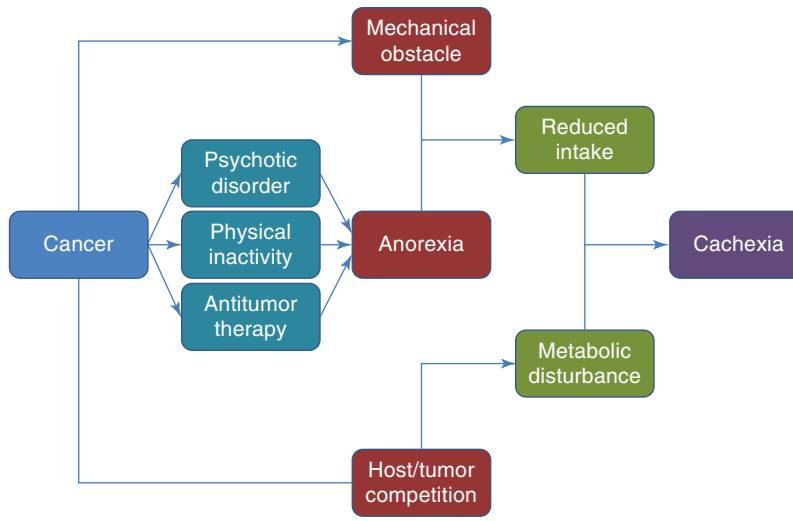


Fig. 24.2 The casual pathways of cachexia occurrence after malignancy

agents), increased serum free fatty acid levels, and depletion of fat stores were reported only in cancer patients. However, metabolic abnormalities and, paradoxically, impaired immune response are probable consequences of cancer cachexia, as explained in the previous section. Increased levels of immunosuppressive mediators (e.g., TGF-β), decreased C3 and delayed hypersensitivity response, and diminished numbers and activity of NK cells are the most common changes in the immune system of patients with cancer cachexia, leading to more infectious complications and poor prognosis [96]. Neutrophil chemotaxis, monocyte phagocytosis and cytotoxicity, number of T-cells, and proliferation of lymphocytes are also defective in patients with lung cancer. Phagocytic and bactericidal activities of neutrophils were low in hepatocellular carcinoma patients. In addition, surgical stress in cancer patients enhances Th2 and compromises the Th1/Th2 balance and expression of HLA-DR on monocytes, which is considered to be a central marker of immune paralysis after surgical trauma [97, 98]. Most of these immune parameters are also reduced during radiotherapy and chemotherapy because of their side effects on bone marrow. However, these factors are reversible after nutrition improvement [99].

24.6 Role of Nutritional Support in Immune Restoration of Cancer Patients

Adjuvant therapy of cancer patients by different nutritional support strategies (dietary counseling, oral nutritional supplements, enteral tube feeding, and parenteral tube feeding) is the mainstream recommendation to increase their quality of life and to obviate the risks associated with gastrointestinal complications and reverse malnutrition. However, there is no comprehensive approach based on the needs of cancer patients with cachexia or those with increased nutrient requirements. Several studies have shown the effectiveness of nutritional supply in groups of patients with malignancy that resulted in weight gain, increased appetite, increased energy and protein intake, reduced gastrointestinal toxicity, and enhanced immune function [100]. In the clinical setting with standard treatment protocols, it turns out that the implementation of nutrition support in patients with cancer is most effective when it is limited to special, well-described circumstances. Nonetheless, the potential advantages of some specific nutrients have been described and are outlined below [101].

24.6.1 Arginine

Arginine is a semi-essential amino acid with immunomodulatory potentials such as stimulated thymic growth and mononuclear cell response to mitogens, which enhances lymphokine-activated killer cell generation via a nitric oxide-mediated mechanism and stimulates the release of polyamines by the small intestine. In one randomized trial of malnourished patients with head and neck cancer, follow-up at 10 years indicated better survival in those who received supplemental arginine preoperatively [102].

24.6.2 Glutamine

Glutamine is the most abundant amino acid in the human body and the preferential fuel of rapidly dividing cells such as lymphocytes and macrophages [103]. However, supplementing glutamine in the diets of patients with cancer may be counterproductive because glutamine (which is essential for fast growing cells in culture) may promote accelerated tumor growth. A meta-analysis of studies that used parenteral glutamine postoperatively showed it was associated with a shorter hospital stay and a lower incidence of infectious complications [104].

24.6.3 Branched Chain Amino Acids

L-valine, L-leucine, and L-isoleucine can improve the immune response and maintain serum albumin level in the course of hepatocellular carcinoma recurrence [105].

24.6.4 Nucleotides, Long-Chain

Omega-3 polyunsaturated fatty acids and eicosapentaenoic acid. These lipid agents have anti-inflammatory, anticachectic, immunomodulating, and antitumor effects [106–108].

24.6.5 Fructooligosaccharides

This group of functional fibers associated with increased lactic acid bacteria acts as an immunomodulator by stimulating IgA synthesis, promoting mucin production, modulating inflammatory cytokines, and decreasing Ag absorption [90].

24.6.6 Bioactive Compounds

Agaricaceae fungus consisting of ergosterol, oleic acid, and triterpenes may inhibit neovascularization induced by tumors and therefore attenuate cancer progression [109].

24.6.7 Antioxidants (Vitamin E and Vitamin C)

Since chemotherapy may induce mucositis and bleomycin in particular induces chromosomal damage in lymphocytes, the administration of vitamins C and E may reduce the side effects of therapy [110].

24.6.8 Vitamin A

This fat-soluble vitamin can increase the numbers of NK cells or regulatory lymphocytes in cancer patients [89]. A recent study showed that all-trans retinoic acid can potentiate the chemotherapeutic effect of cisplatin by inducing differentiation of tumor initiating cells in liver cancer [111].

24.7 Concluding Remarks

In summary, due to the safety and cost-effectiveness of oral dietary therapies, nutrition counseling and the implementation of nutritional supplements should be the initial approaches to nutritional support [112]. Even though parenteral nutrition may also lead to weight gain and improvement in nitrogen balance in patients with cancer, it does not clearly improve serum albumin levels or alter whole body protein turnover even with prolonged administration. Therefore, when nutrition support is chosen as a therapy, the use of enteral nutrition is preferred if the gastrointestinal tract is functional [113, 114]. The use of parenteral nutrition should be limited to malnourished cancer patients who are receiving active anticancer treatment, whose gastrointestinal tract is not functional or who cannot tolerate enteral nutrition, and who are anticipated to be unable to meet their nutrient requirements for 14 days or more [113]. Moreover, it is proposed that preoperative and postoperative immune-nutrition intervention by total parenteral nutrition using a lipid-based regimen is the method of choice in cancer patients who have undergone major surgery to reduce immune dysfunction without enhancing tumor growth (increased augmentation of lymphocyte blastogenesis and production of helper T-lymphocyte lymphokine IL-2, increased ICAM-1 level, and decreased IL-4 and IL-10 values) [114, 115]. This observed preference of parenteral nutrition is marginal, and enteral methods are always the preferable route for cancer patients with an intact digestive system. It is also reported that complement components and lymphocyte response may be better with enteral rather than parenteral nutrition [115, 116].

References

1. Zitvogel L, Pietrocola F, Kroemer G. Nutrition, inflammation and cancer. Nat Immunol. 2017;18(8):843–50.
2. Font-Burgada J, Sun B, Karin M. Obesity and cancer: the oil that feeds the flame. Cell Metab. 2016;23(1):48–62.
3. Dossus L, Kaaks R. Nutrition, metabolic factors and cancer risk. Best Pract Res Clin Endocrinol Metab. 2008;22(4):551–71.
4. Wellen KE, Hotamisligil GS. Obesity-induced inflammatory changes in adipose tissue. J Clin Invest. 2003;112(12):1785–8.
5. Schaffler A, Muller-Ladner U, Scholmerich J, Buchler C. Role of adipose tissue as an inflam-

matory organ in human diseases. Endocr Rev. 2006;27(5):449–67.
6. Weisberg SP, McCann D, Desai M, Rosenbaum M, Leibel RL, Ferrante AW Jr. Obesity is associated with macrophage accumulation in adipose tissue. J Clin Invest. 2003;112(12):1796–808.
7. Tilg H, Moschen AR. Adipocytokines: mediators linking adipose tissue, inflammation and immunity. Nat Rev Immunol. 2006;6(10):772–83.
8. Matsubara M, Namioka K, Katayose S. Decreased plasma adiponectin concentrations in women with low-grade C-reactive protein elevation. Eur J Endocrinol. 2003;148(6):657–62.
9. Il'yasova D, Colbert LH, Harris TB, Newman AB, Bauer DC, Satterfield S, et al. Circulating levels of inflammatory markers and cancer risk in the health aging and body composition cohort. Cancer Epidemiol Biomark Prev. 2005;14(10):2413–8.
10. Demaria S, Pikarsky E, Karin M, Coussens LM, Chen YC, El-Omar EM, et al. Cancer and inflammation: promise for biologic therapy. J Immunother. 2010;33(4):335–51.
11. Balkwill F, Charles KA, Mantovani A. Smoldering and polarized inflammation in the initiation and promotion of malignant disease. Cancer Cell. 2005;7(3):211–7.
12. Pal D, Dasgupta S, Kundu R, Maitra S, Das G, Mukhopadhyay S, et al. Fetuin-A acts as an endogenous ligand of TLR4 to promote lipid-induced insulin resistance. Nat Med. 2012;18(8):1279–85.
13. Yang L, Li P, Fu S, Calay ES, Hotamisligil GS. Defective hepatic autophagy in obesity promotes ER stress and causes insulin resistance. Cell Metab. 2010;11(6):467–78.
14. Doerner SK, Reis ES, Leung ES, Ko JS, Heaney JD, Berger NA, et al. High-fat diet-induced complement activation mediates intestinal inflammation and neoplasia, independent of obesity. Mol Cancer Res. 2016;14(10):953–65.
15. Nathan C, Cunningham-Bussel A. Beyond oxidative stress: an immunologist's guide to reactive oxygen species. Nat Rev Immunol. 2013;13(5):349–61.
16. Elliott LA, Doherty GA, Sheahan K, Ryan EJ. Human tumor-infiltrating myeloid cells: phenotypic and functional diversity. Front Immunol. 2017;8:86.
17. Chen W, Ten Dijke P. Immunoregulation by members of the TGFbeta superfamily. Nat Rev Immunol. 2016;16(12):723–40.
18. Louis P, Hold GL, Flint HJ. The gut microbiota, bacterial metabolites and colorectal cancer. Nat Rev Microbiol. 2014;12(10):661–72.
19. Lamas O, Marti A, Martinez JA. Obesity and immunocompetence. Eur J Clin Nutr. 2002;56(Suppl 3):S42–5.
20. Yang H, Youm YH, Vandanmagsar B, Rood J, Kumar KG, Butler AA, et al. Obesity accelerates thymic aging. Blood. 2009;114(18):3803–12.
21. Macia L, Delacre M, Abboud G, Ouk TS, Delanoye A, Verwaerde C, et al. Impairment of dendritic cell functionality and steady-state number in obese mice. J Immunol. 2006;177(9):5997–6006.
22. Traba J, Kwarteng-Siaw M, Okoli TC, Li J, Huffstutler RD, Bray A, et al. Fasting and refeeding differentially regulate NLRP3 inflammasome activation in human subjects. J Clin Invest. 2015;125(12):4592–600.
23. Pietrocola F, Demont Y, Castoldi F, Enot D, Durand S, Semeraro M, et al. Metabolic effects of fasting on human and mouse blood in vivo. Autophagy. 2017;13(3):567–78.
24. Wang A, Huen SC, Luan HH, Yu S, Zhang C, Gallezot JD, et al. Opposing effects of fasting metabolism on tissue tolerance in bacterial and viral inflammation. Cell. 2016;166(6):1512–25 e12.
25. Youm YH, Nguyen KY, Grant RW, Goldberg EL, Bodogai M, Kim D, et al. The ketone metabolite beta-hydroxybutyrate blocks NLRP3 inflammasome-mediated inflammatory disease. Nat Med. 2015;21(3):263–9.
26. Lee C, Raffaghello L, Brandhorst S, Safdie FM, Bianchi G, Martin-Montalvo A, et al. Fasting cycles retard growth of tumors and sensitize a range of cancer cell types to chemotherapy. Sci Transl Med. 2012;4(124):124ra27.
27. Di Biase S, Lee C, Brandhorst S, Manes B, Buono R, Cheng CW, et al. Fasting-mimicking diet reduces HO-1 to promote T cell T-cell-mediated tumor cytotoxicity. Cancer Cell. 2016;30(1):136–46.
28. Madeo F, Pietrocola F, Eisenberg T, Kroemer G. Caloric restriction mimetics: towards a molecular definition. Nat Rev Drug Discov. 2014;13(10):727–40.
29. Woolf EC, Syed N, Scheck AC. Tumor metabolism, the ketogenic diet and beta-hydroxybutyrate: novel approaches to adjuvant brain tumor therapy. Front Mol Neurosci. 2016;9:122.
30. Husain Z, Huang Y, Seth P, Sukhatme VP. Tumor-derived lactate modifies antitumor immune response: effect on myeloid-derived suppressor cells and NK cells. J Immunol. 2013;191(3):1486–95.
31. Campos FG, Logullo Waitzberg AG, Kiss DR, Waitzberg DL, Habr-Gama A, Gama-Rodrigues J. Diet and colorectal cancer: current evidence for etiology and prevention. Nutr Hosp. 2005;20(1):18–25.
32. Brockman DA, Chen X, Gallaher DD. Consumption of a high beta-glucan barley flour improves glucose control and fatty liver and increases muscle acylcarnitines in the Zucker diabetic fatty rat. Eur J Nutr. 2013;52(7):1743–53.
33. Green CJ. Fibre in enteral nutrition: a new era? Nutr Hosp. 2002;17(Suppl 2):1–6.
34. Zeng H, Lazarova DL, Bordonaro M. Mechanisms linking dietary fiber, gut microbiota and colon cancer prevention. World J Gastrointest Oncol. 2014;6(2):41–51.
35. Han M, Wang C, Liu P, Li D, Li Y, Ma X. Dietary fiber gap and host gut microbiota. Protein Pept Lett. 2017;24(5):388–96.
36. Stecher B. The roles of inflammation, nutrient availability and the commensal microbiota in enteric pathogen infection. Microbiol Spectr. 2015;3(3).
37. Daien CI, Pinget GV, Tan JK, Macia L. Detrimental impact of microbiota-accessible carbohydrate-deprived

diet on gut and immune homeostasis: an overview. Front Immunol. 2017;8:548.
38. Maukonen J, Saarela M. Human gut microbiota: does diet matter? Proc Nutr Soc. 2015;74(1):23–36.
39. Ollberding NJ, Wilkens LR, Henderson BE, Kolonel LN, Le Marchand L. Meat consumption, heterocyclic amines and colorectal cancer risk: the Multiethnic Cohort Study. Int J Cancer. 2012;131(7):E1125–33.
40. Marques-Vidal P, Ravasco P, Ermelinda Camilo M. Foodstuffs and colorectal cancer risk: a review. Clin Nutr. 2006;25(1):14–36.
41. Langer CJ, Hoffman JP, Ottery FD. Clinical significance of weight loss in cancer patients: rationale for the use of anabolic agents in the treatment of cancer-related cachexia. Nutrition. 2001;17(1 Suppl):S1–20.
42. Wardwell L, Chapman-Novakofski K, Herrel S, Woods J. Nutrient intake and immune function of elderly subjects. J Am Diet Assoc. 2008;108(12):2005–12.
43. Mahima IAM, Verma AK, Tiwari R, Karthik K, Chakraborty S, et al. Immunomodulators in day to day life: a review. Pak J Biol Sci. 2013;16(17):826–43.
44. Meydani SN, Erickson KL. Nutrients as regulators of immune function: introduction. FASEB J. 2001;15(14):2555.
45. Marcos A, Nova E, Montero A. Changes in the immune system are conditioned by nutrition. Eur J Clin Nutr. 2003;57(Suppl 1):S66–9.
46. Keusch GT. The history of nutrition: malnutrition, infection and immunity. J Nutr. 2003;133(1):336S–40S.
47. Longo VD, Fontana L. Calorie restriction and cancer prevention: metabolic and molecular mechanisms. Trends Pharmacol Sci. 2010;31(2):89–98.
48. Rizza W, Veronese N, Fontana L. What are the roles of calorie restriction and diet quality in promoting healthy longevity? Ageing Res Rev. 2014;13:38–45.
49. Vineyard KR, Warren LK, Kivipelto J. Effect of dietary omega-3 fatty acid source on plasma and red blood cell membrane composition and immune function in yearling horses. J Anim Sci. 2010;88(1):248–57.
50. Ray G, Husain SA. Oxidants, antioxidants and carcinogenesis. Indian J Exp Biol. 2002;40(11):1213–32.
51. Blokhina O, Virolainen E, Fagerstedt KV. Antioxidants, oxidative damage and oxygen deprivation stress: a review. Ann Bot. 2003;91:179–94.
52. Niu ZY, Wei FX, Liu FZ, Qin XG, Min YN, Gao YP. Dietary vitamin A can improve immune function in heat-stressed broilers. Animal. 2009;3(10):1442–8.
53. Yano H, Ohtsuka H, Miyazawa M, Abiko S, Ando T, Watanabe D, et al. Relationship between immune function and serum vitamin A in Japanese black beef cattle. J Vet Med Sci. 2009;71(2):199–202.
54. Wintergerst ES, Maggini S, Hornig DH. Contribution of selected vitamins and trace elements to immune function. Ann Nutr Metab. 2007;51(4):301–23.
55. Goodwin PJ, Ennis M, Pritchard KI, Koo J, Hood N. Prognostic effects of 25-hydroxyvitamin D levels in early breast cancer. J Clin Oncol. 2009;27(23):3757–63.
56. Tretli S, Hernes E, Berg JP, Hestvik UE, Robsahm TE. Association between serum 25(OH)D and death from prostate cancer. Br J Cancer. 2009;100(3):450–4.
57. Choi SW, Friso S. Vitamins B6 and cancer. Subcell Biochem. 2012;56:247–64.
58. Mocellin S, Briarava M, Pilati P. Vitamin B6 and cancer risk: a field synopsis and meta-analysis. J Natl Cancer Inst. 2017;109(3):1–9.
59. Galluzzi L, Vitale I, Senovilla L, Olaussen KA, Pinna G, Eisenberg T, et al. Prognostic impact of vitamin B6 metabolism in lung cancer. Cell Rep. 2012;2(2):257–69.
60. Duthie SJ, Narayanan S, Blum S, Pirie L, Brand GM. Folate deficiency in vitro induces uracil misincorporation and DNA hypomethylation and inhibits DNA excision repair in immortalized normal human colon epithelial cells. Nutr Cancer. 2000;37(2):245–51.
61. McGlynn AP, Wasson GR, O'Reilly SL, McNulty H, Downes CS, Chang CK, et al. Low colonocyte folate is associated with uracil misincorporation and global DNA hypomethylation in human colorectum. J Nutr. 2013;143(1):27–33.
62. Eichholzer M, Luthy J, Moser U, Fowler B. Folate and the risk of colorectal, breast and cervix cancer: the epidemiological evidence. Swiss Med Wkly. 2001;131(37–38):539–49.
63. Thompson JR, Gerald PF, Willoughby ML, Armstrong BK. Maternal folate supplementation in pregnancy and protection against acute lymphoblastic leukaemia in childhood: a case-control study. Lancet. 2001;358(9297):1935–40.
64. Fedirko V, Bostick RM, Flanders WD, Long Q, Shaukat A, Rutherford RE, et al. Effects of vitamin D and calcium supplementation on markers of apoptosis in normal colon mucosa: a randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled clinical trial. Cancer Prev Res. 2009;2(3):213–23.
65. Lipkin M, Newmark H. Effect of added dietary calcium on colonic epithelial-cell proliferation in subjects at high risk for familial colonic cancer. N Engl J Med. 1985;313(22):1381–4.
66. Fedirko V, Bostick RM, Flanders WD, Long Q, Sidelnikov E, Shaukat A, et al. Effects of vitamin d and calcium on proliferation and differentiation in normal colon mucosa: a randomized clinical trial. Cancer Epidemiol Biomark Prev. 2009;18(11):2933–41.
67. Morante M, Sandoval J, Gomez-Cabrera MC, Rodriguez JL, Pallardo FV, Vina JR, et al. Vitamin E deficiency induces liver nuclear factor-kappaB DNA-binding activity and changes in related genes. Free Radic Res. 2005;39(10):1127–38.
68. Boyle P, Autier P, Bartelink H, Baselga J, Boffetta P, Burn J, et al. European code against cancer and

scientific justification: third version (2003). Ann Oncol. 2003;14(7):973–1005.
69. Drewnowski A, Shultz JM. Impact of aging on eating behaviors, food choices, nutrition, and health status. J Nutr Health Aging. 2001;5(2):75–9.
70. Sebastian RS, Cleveland LE, Goldman JD, Moshfegh AJ. Older adults who use vitamin/mineral supplements differ from nonusers in nutrient intake adequacy and dietary attitudes. J Am Diet Assoc. 2007;107(8):1322–32.
71. Wolfe RR, Miller SL, Miller KB. Optimal protein intake in the elderly. Clin Nutr. 2008;27(5):675–84.
72. English L, Chemali M, Duron J, Rondeau C, Laplante A, Gingras D, et al. Autophagy enhances the presentation of endogenous viral antigens on MHC class I molecules during HSV-1 infection. Nat Immunol. 2009;10(5):480–7.
73. Li F, Wang L, Burgess RJ, Weinshilboum RM. Thiopurine S-methyltransferase pharmacogenetics: autophagy as a mechanism for variant allozyme degradation. Pharmacogenet Genomics. 2008;18(12):1083–94.
74. Cuervo AM, Macian F. Autophagy, nutrition and immunology. Mol Asp Med. 2012;33(1):2–13.
75. Singh R, Cuervo AM. Autophagy in the cellular energetic balance. Cell Metab. 2011;13(5):495–504.
76. Carruba G, Cocciadiferro L, Di Cristina A, Granata OM, Dolcemascolo C, Campisi I, et al. Nutrition, aging and cancer: lessons from dietary intervention studies. Immun Ageing. 2016;13:13.
77. Singh RK, Chang HW, Yan D, Lee KM, Ucmak D, Wong K, et al. Influence of diet on the gut microbiome and implications for human health. J Transl Med. 2017;15(1):73.
78. Karin M, Jobin C, Balkwill F. Chemotherapy, immunity and microbiota--a new triumvirate? Nat Med. 2014;20(2):126–7.
79. Poutahidis T, Kleinewietfeld M, Erdman SE. Gut microbiota and the paradox of cancer immunotherapy. Front Immunol. 2014;5:157.
80. Nelson MH, Diven MA, Huff LW, Paulos CM. Harnessing the microbiome to enhance cancer immunotherapy. J Immunol Res. 2015;2015:368736.
81. Bashiardes S, Tuganbaev T, Federici S, Elinav E. The microbiome in anti-cancer therapy. Semin Immunol. 2017;32:74–81.
82. Kuo SM. The interplay between fiber and the intestinal microbiome in the inflammatory response. Adv Nutr. 2013;4(1):16–28.
83. Russo E, Taddei A, Ringressi MN, Ricci F, Amedei A. The interplay between the microbiome and the adaptive immune response in cancer development. Ther Adv Gastroenterol. 2016;9(4):594–605.
84. Zitvogel L, Daillere R, Roberti MP, Routy B, Kroemer G. Anticancer effects of the microbiome and its products. Nat Rev Microbiol. 2017;15(8):465–78.
85. Zitvogel L, Ayyoub M, Routy B, Kroemer G. Microbiome and anticancer immunosurveillance. Cell. 2016;165(2):276–87.
86. Zoico E, Roubenoff R. The role of cytokines in regulating protein metabolism and muscle function. Nutr Rev. 2002;60(2):39–51.
87. Elia M, van der Schueren MA V B-d, Garvey J, Goedhart A, Lundholm K, Nitenberg G, et al. Enteral (oral or tube administration) nutritional support and eicosapentaenoic acid in patients with cancer: a systematic review. Int J Oncol. 2006;28(1):5–23.
88. Elia M, Russell CA, Stratton RJ. Malnutrition in the UK: policies to address the problem. Proc Nutr Soc. 2010;69(4):470–6.
89. Nitenberg G, Raynard B. Nutritional support of the cancer patient: issues and dilemmas. Crit Rev Oncol Hematol. 2000;34(3):137–68.
90. Akbulut G. New perspective for nutritional support of cancer patients: enteral/parenteral nutrition. Exp Ther Med. 2011;2(4):675–84.
91. Liu MY, Tang HC, Hu SH, Yang HL, Chang SJ. Influence of preoperative peripheral parenteral nutrition with micronutrients after colorectal cancer patients. Biomed Res Int. 2015;2015:535431.
92. Tisdale MJ. Cancer cachexia. Curr Opin Gastroenterol. 2010;26(2):146–51.
93. Fearon K, Strasser F, Anker SD, Bosaeus I, Bruera E, Fainsinger RL, et al. Definition and classification of cancer cachexia: an international consensus. Lancet Oncol. 2011;12(5):489–95.
94. Flint TR, Fearon DT, Janowitz T. Connecting the metabolic and immune responses to cancer. Trends Mol Med. 2017;23(5):451–64.
95. Onesti JK, Guttridge DC. Inflammation based regulation of cancer cachexia. Biomed Res Int. 2014;2014:168407.
96. Yamagishi A, Morita T, Miyashita M, Kimura F. Symptom prevalence and longitudinal follow-up in cancer outpatients receiving chemotherapy. J Pain Symptom Manag. 2009;37(5):823–30.
97. Seelaender MC, Batista ML. Adipose tissue inflammation and cancer cachexia: the role of steroid hormones. Horm Mol Biol Clin Invest. 2014;17(1):5–12.
98. Tsoli M, Robertson G. Cancer cachexia: malignant inflammation, tumorkines, and metabolic mayhem. Trends Endocrinol Metab. 2013;24(4):174–83.
99. Tong H, Isenring E, Yates P. The prevalence of nutrition impact symptoms and their relationship to quality of life and clinical outcomes in medical oncology patients. Support Care Cancer. 2009;17(1):83–90.
100. Murphy G, McCormack V, Abedi-Ardekani B, Arnold M, Camargo MC, Dar NA, et al. International cancer seminars: a focus on esophageal squamous cell carcinoma. Ann Oncol. 2017;28(9):2086–93.
101. Caccialanza R, Pedrazzoli P, Cereda E, Gavazzi C, Pinto C, Paccagnella A, et al. Nutritional support in cancer patients: A Position Paper from the Italian Society of Medical Oncology (AIOM) and the Italian Society of Artificial Nutrition and Metabolism (SINPE). J Cancer. 2016;7(2):131–5.
102. Buijs N, van Bokhorst-de van der Schueren MA, Langius JA, Leemans CR, Kuik DJ, Vermeulen MA, et al. Perioperative arginine-supplemented nutrition

in malnourished patients with head and neck cancer improves long-term survival. Am J Clin Nutr. 2010;92(5):1151–6.
103. Savarese DM, Savy G, Vahdat L, Wischmeyer PE, Corey B. Prevention of chemotherapy and radiation toxicity with glutamine. Cancer Treat Rev. 2003;29(6):501–13.
104. Wang Y, Jiang ZM, Nolan MT, Jiang H, Han HR, Yu K, et al. The impact of glutamine dipeptide-supplemented parenteral nutrition on outcomes of surgical patients: a meta-analysis of randomized clinical trials. J Parenter Enter Nutr. 2010;34(5):521–9.
105. Kakazu E, Kondo Y, Kogure T, Ninomiya M, Kimura O, Iwata T, et al. Supplementation of branched-chain amino acids maintains the serum albumin level in the course of hepatocellular carcinoma recurrence. Tohoku J Exp Med. 2013;230(4):191–6.
106. Thies F, Nebe-von-Caron G, Powell JR, Yaqoob P, Newsholme EA, Calder PC. Dietary supplementation with gamma-linolenic acid or fish oil decreases T lymphocyte proliferation in healthy older humans. J Nutr. 2001;131(7):1918–27.
107. Takagi K, Yamamori H, Furukawa K, Miyazaki M, Tashiro T. Perioperative supplementation of EPA reduces immunosuppression induced by postoperative chemoradiation therapy in patients with esophageal cancer. Nutrition. 2001;17(6):478–9.
108. Waitzberg DL, Torrinhas RS. Fish oil lipid emulsions and immune response: what clinicians need to know. Nutr Clin Pract. 2009;24(4):487–99.
109. Fortes RC, Novaes MR, Recova VL, Melo AL. Immunological, hematological, and glycemia effects of dietary supplementation with Agaricus sylvaticus on patients' colorectal cancer. Exp Biol Med. 2009;234(1):53–62.
110. Conklin KA. Dietary antioxidants during cancer chemotherapy: impact on chemotherapeutic effectiveness and development of side effects. Nutr Cancer. 2000;37(1):1–18.
111. Zhang Y, Guan DX, Shi J, Gao H, Li JJ, Zhao JS, et al. All-trans retinoic acid potentiates the chemotherapeutic effect of cisplatin by inducing differentiation of tumor initiating cells in liver cancer. J Hepatol. 2013;59(6):1255–63.
112. Piquet MA, Ozsahin M, Larpin I, Zouhair A, Coti P, Monney M, et al. Early nutritional intervention in oropharyngeal cancer patients undergoing radiotherapy. Support Care Cancer. 2002;10(6):502–4.
113. Bozzetti F. Rationale and indications for preoperative feeding of malnourished surgical cancer patients. Nutrition. 2002;18(11–12):953–9.
114. Bozzetti F. Nutritional support in oncologic patients: where we are and where we are going. Clin Nutr. 2011;30(6):714–7.
115. Bozzetti F, Gavazzi C, Miceli R, Rossi N, Mariani L, Cozzaglio L, et al. Perioperative total parenteral nutrition in malnourished, gastrointestinal cancer patients: a randomized, clinical trial. J Parenter Enter Nutr. 2000;24(1):7–14.
116. Ponton F, Wilson K, Cotter SC, Raubenheimer D, Simpson SJ. Nutritional immunology: a multi-dimensional approach. PLoS Pathog. 2011;7(12):e1002223.

Inborn Errors of Immunity and Cancers

25

Mona Hedayat, Waleed Al-Herz, Asghar Aghamohammadi, Kim E. Nichols, and Nima Rezaei

Contents

M. Hedayat
Department of Anesthesiology, Perioperative and Pain Medicine, Brigham and Women's Hospital, Harvard Medical School, Boston, MA, USA

Network of Immunity in Infection, Malignancy and Autoimmunity (NIIMA), Universal Scientific Education and Research Network (USERN), Boston, MA, USA

W. Al-Herz
Department of Pediatrics, Faculty of Medicine, Kuwait University, Kuwait, Kuwait

Primary Immunodeficiency Diseases Network (PIDNet), Universal Scientific Education and Research Network (USERN), Kuwait, Kuwait

A. Aghamohammadi
Research Center for Immunodeficiencies, Children's Medical Center, Pediatrics Center of Excellence, Tehran University of Medical Sciences, Tehran, Iran

Primary Immunodeficiency Diseases Network (PIDNet), Universal Scientific Education and Research Network (USERN), Tehran, Iran

K. E. Nichols
Department of Oncology, St. Jude Children's Research Hospital, Memphis, TN, USA

N. Rezaei (✉)
Research Center for Immunodeficiencies, Children's Medical Center, Pediatrics Center of Excellence, Tehran University of Medical Sciences, Tehran, Iran

Department of Immunology, School of Medicine, Tehran University of Medical Sciences, Tehran, Iran

Network of Immunity in Infection, Malignancy and Autoimmunity (NIIMA), Universal Scientific Education and Research Network (USERN), Tehran, Iran
e-mail: rezaei_nima@tums.ac.ir

N. Rezaei (ed.), *Cancer Immunology*, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-30845-2_25

25.1 Introduction

Immunodeficiency disorders are classified as either primary (genetic) or secondary (acquired). Primary immunodeficiencies (PIDs) are a heterogeneous group of disorders that predispose to frequent and severe infections, autoimmune disorders, and in certain diseases, cancers. The genomic revolution has identified hundreds of new genetic etiologies of immune dysfunction, including defects in regulators of known immune pathways, scaffolding proteins of immune receptors, transcription factors, and genes involved in DNA replication and repair [1]. The International Union of Immunological Societies Expert Committee in 2015 has reported more than 300 genetically defined single-gene inborn error of immunity [2].

The actual incidence and prevalence of PIDs remain unclear given lack of specific, dedicated epidemiologic studies; however, recent epidemiologic studies have suggested that PIDs are more common than generally thought. In a report by Bousfiha et al. [3] published in 2013, it was estimated that six million people may be living with a PID worldwide, whereas only 27,000–60,000 have been identified to date. The overall risk of developing cancers in children with PIDs is reportedly 4–25%, with lymphomas representing up to 60% of all cancer types [4–6]. As therapeutic strategies improve, we should anticipate that the emergence of cancers will be unmasked by increasing longevity.

Increasing evidence suggests that defective immunosurveillance mechanisms, interacting with oncogenic viruses, chronic antigen stimulation, defective DNA damage response, and genetic alterations of oncogenic and tumor suppressor genes, are the major factors driving the development of cancer in patients with PIDs [7–11]. While further elucidation of the precise molecular pathogenesis of cancers in the context of immunodeficiency syndromes offers an exciting prospect for the development of targeted cancer therapies, we report here the most recent clinical observations on the incidence and types of cancers, which should alert clinicians to the potential importance of more vigilant screening

in immunodeficient patients. It should be noted, however, that surveillance protocols should be applied judiciously, without indiscriminate and frequent use of certain radiological procedures, due to increased risk of radiosensitivity in some syndromes [12]. Furthermore, early intervention with hematopoietic cell transplantation, which is indicated in certain PIDs, may decrease not only the infection but also the cancer risk [13].

25.2 Predominantly Antibody Deficiencies

25.2.1 Common Variable Immunodeficiency

Common variable immunodeficiency (CVID) is the second most common PID (second to selective IgA deficiency), which affects both children and adults, with an estimated prevalence of 1 in 25,000 individuals [14]. CVID is a clinically and genetically heterogeneous group of diseases characterized by hypogammaglobulinemia of two or more isotypes (IgG, IgA, or IgM), impaired functional antibody responses, and consequently increased susceptibility to chronic recurrent bacterial infections [15]. Furthermore, affected individuals are predisposed to autoimmune and granulomatous diseases as well as hematological and certain solid malignancies in 1.5–20.7% of subjects [15–17].

Non-Hodgkin lymphomas (NHLs) represent the most common malignancies with up to a 259-fold increase in risk compared to the general population [18–20]. NHLs in CVID are mostly extranodal, well differentiated, and of B-cell origin [18]. In older studies, there was an increased risk of gastric cancer (up to 47-fold) [19–21], probably related to the increased frequency of pernicious anemia or *Helicobacter pylori* infection [22]. However, a 2010 study of 476 patients revealed that gastric cancer was diagnosed in only 0.6% of patients, suggesting a potential downward trend. In this study, 6.7% of patients developed NHL and 0.8% developed Hodgkin lymphoma (HL). Other solid malignancies, including breast, colon, oral, and other cancers, collectively accounted for cancer in up to 4% of patients [16].

There are multiple genetic components involved in CVID pathogenesis [23, 24]. Monogenic causes of CVID have been found in approximately 2–10% of cases. Genes that have been implicated in monogenic CVID include *CD19* (OMIM∗107265), *CD20* (*MS4A1*, OMIM∗112210), *CD21* (*CR2*, OMIM∗120650), *CD81* (OMIM∗186845), isotype switching and somatic hypermutation (*ICOS*; OMIM∗604558), tumor necrosis factor (TNF) receptor superfamily, member 13B (*TNFRSF13B* or *TACI*; OMIM∗604907), member 13C (*TNFRSF13C* or *BAFF-R*; OMIM∗606269), and member 7 (*TNFRSF7*, OMIM∗186711), TNF ligand superfamily, member 12 (*TNFSF12* or *TWEAK*, OMIM∗602695), *IL21* (OMIM∗605384), IL21 receptor (*IL21R*, OMIM∗605383), cytotoxic T lymphocyte-associated 4 (*CTLA-4,* OMIM∗123890), protein kinase C, delta (*PRKCD*, OMIM 176977), phospholipase C, gamma-2 (*PLCG2*, OMIM∗600220), nuclear factor-kappa B, subunit 1 (*NF-κB1*, OMIM∗164011) and subunit 2 (*NF-κB2*, OMIM∗164012), NLR family pyrin domain containing 12 (*NLRP12,* OMIM∗609648), lipopolysaccharide-responsive beige-like anchor protein (*LRBA, OMIM∗606453)* among so many others [24]. There is accumulating evidence that at least a subgroup of patients with CVID has a complex rather than a monogenic inheritance. Further genetic complexity may come from transcriptional and epigenetic disturbances.

The immunologic defects in CVID are multifaceted. Despite normal numbers of B-cells in the majority of affected individuals, their inability to undergo terminal differentiation into immunoglobulin-secreting plasma cells forms the core common defect [25]. T-cell abnormalities are also frequently encountered in patients with CVID, including impaired T-cell proliferative responses, partly due to defects in T-cell receptor signaling [26, 27]; decreased numbers of CD_4^+ T-cells in conjunction with normal to increased numbers of CD_8^+ T-cells, giving rise to reversed CD_4:CD_8 ratio [28, 29]; imbalanced T-helper cell responses, representing a shift toward a Th1 phenotype [30, 31]; increased suppressor T-cell activity [30]; and diminished

expression of the costimulatory molecule CD40 ligand [32]. Several studies have also reported disturbed frequencies and functional characteristics of Treg, which contributes to the aberrant immune responses observed in CVID [33]. Moreover, the absolute and relative NK, invariant NKT, and plasmacytoid dendritic cell numbers are reported to be decreased in patients with CVID [34, 35].

The complex derangement in numerical and functional characteristics of B, T, NK, and dendritic cells results in impaired humoral and cellular immune responses. As a result, patients often develop chronic inflammatory and autoimmune diseases, as well as recurrent bacterial infections. These factors, along with persistent antigenic stimulation, mainly from chronic *Helicobacter pylori* [36], human herpesvirus 8 [37], cytomegalovirus [38], human papillomavirus (HPV) [39], and Epstein–Barr virus (EBV) [40] infections, may ultimately drive tumorigenesis; however, their relative contribution and the precise underlying mechanisms remain to be elucidated [15]. Furthermore, given the possible role of an autocrine B-cell activating factor (BAFF) signaling circuit in promoting tumor cell survival and proliferation [41, 42], it is possible that aberrant BAFF-R signal transduction resulting from CVID-related mutations might enhance malignant transformation [15]. Finally, defective DNA repair, as evident by enhanced radiosensitivity, has been reported in patients with CVID [43], with those having the highest rate of chromosomal aberration developing lymphoma [42, 43].

25.2.2 X-Linked Agammaglobulinemia

X-linked agammaglobulinemia (XLA) is the prototypic humoral immunodeficiency arising from a defect in B-cell maturation, affecting the transition of B-cell progenitors into mature B lymphocytes and leading to the consequent failure of immunoglobulin production. It is estimated to afflict three to six out of every million males of all racial and ethnic groups. As the maternally derived antibodies are degraded, most patients with XLA begin to experience recurrent infections by the end of the first year of life [21, 44]. Approximately 10–15% of individuals with XLA have higher concentrations of serum immunoglobulin than expected or are not recognized to have immunodeficiency until after the age of 5 years. XLA is mainly characterized by recurrent bacterial infections, in particular with extracellular encapsulated bacteria, most commonly localized in the respiratory tract. Diarrhea and skin infections are also frequently seen [21, 44, 45]. Despite general resistance to viral infections, affected individuals are susceptible to severe and chronic enteroviral infections [46].

The gene defective in XLA, Bruton's tyrosine kinase (*BTK*; OMIM∗300300), encodes a cytoplasmic tyrosine kinase of the Btk/Tec family [47]. The crucial role of BTK in B-cell growth and differentiation has been documented by a developmental block at the pro-B-cell to pre-B-cell transition with a reduction in mature B-cells [45], whereas T lymphocyte subsets are normal and may show a relative increase. In B-cells, B-cell antigen receptor (BCR) cross-linking activates BTK downstream of the Src family kinases [48, 49], where it is a critical component in BCR-coupled calcium signaling cascade [50, 51]. BTK also acts as a mediator of oxidative stress-induced apoptosis of irradiated neoplastic B-cells and B-cell precursors [57], probably via the negative regulation of the antiapoptotic signal transducer and activator of transcription 3 (STAT3) function [52]. In addition, BTK interacts with and functions downstream of Toll-like receptor (TLR)-8 and TLR9, linking BTK to the innate immune system [52–54].

Although the overall chance of developing malignancies in XLA is low, there are reports of a 30-fold increased risk of colorectal cancer in patients with XLA [55]. Aberrant immunological function and/or persistent asymptomatic inflammation in the colon is generally thought to contribute to the increased risk of colorectal cancer. However, it has been shown that *BTK* loss of function is associated with excessive Wnt-β-catenin signaling [56], which is known as a major contributor to the development of colorectal carcinoma [57]. In addition to colorectal cancer,

cases of pituitary adenomas [21], gastric adenocarcinoma [58], squamous lung cancer [59], and extranodal cytotoxic T-cell lymphoma [60] have been reported.

25.2.3 Selective IgA Deficiency

Selective IgA deficiency (IgAD) is the most common PID with a prevalence that varies from 1 in 143 to 1 in 18,550 in different ethnic groups [61, 62]. It is defined as occurring when serum IgA levels are equal to or below 0.07 g/L with normal IgM and IgG levels in individuals 4 years of age or older in whom other causes of hypogammaglobulinemia have been excluded [63]. As many as 85–90% of patients with IgAD are asymptomatic, which could be explained by a compensatory increase in IgM production and subsequent increase in secretary IgM in the mucosal lumen [64]. However, IgAD can present with a broad spectrum of clinical manifestations, including recurrent sinopulmonary and gastrointestinal infections, allergic disorders, GI diseases (especially celiac disease), progressive neurodegenerative disorders, autoimmunity, and malignancy, with gastric carcinomas and lymphomas being frequently associated with the disease [64–68].

In IgAD, the common finding is a defect in the maturation of B-cells producing IgA [67]. The genetic basis of IgAD is complex and has remained unclear. Autosomal recessive, autosomal dominant, and sporadic transmission patterns have all been observed. In view of the lack of an identified primary genetic defect and the variation in the inheritance patterns, it is likely that IgAD represents a heterogeneous group of genetic abnormalities such as CVID. In support of this notion is the observation that mutations in transmembrane activator and calcium modulator and cyclophilin ligand interactor (*TACI*) gene (*TNFRSF13B*; OMIM∗604907), which appear to act as a disease-modifying mutation, have been found in IgA deficiency and CVID [69]. Moreover, a novel shared risk locus associated with lower inducible costimulator (ICOS) and higher cytotoxic T lymphocyte-associated protein-4 (CTLA-4) expression has been recently defined in both diseases [70]. Both major histocompatibility complex (MHC) and non-MHC associations have been identified. Among the former, the ancestral HLA-A1, B8, DR3, and DQ2 (8.1) have been associated with susceptibility to IgAD [71]. Non-MHC genetic associations include *IFIH1* (OMIM∗606951), *CLEL16A* (OMIM∗611303), *PVT1* (OMIM∗165140), and *ATG13-AMBRA1* (OMIM∗615088-OMIM∗611359) [72].

The association of malignancy, especially of the lymphoreticular and gastrointestinal systems, with IgAD has been documented mainly in adults [73, 74] with an estimated twofold increased risk compared to general population [75]. However, in a combined Danish and Swedish study of 386 patients with IgAD, the incidence of cancer was not increased. Yet, the investigators in the same study found that relatives of the same patients had slightly elevated cancer rates. In contrast to adults, children with IgAD appear not to be at risk of malignancy [76, 77], which has only been reported in case reports [78–80].

25.3 Immunodeficiencies Affecting Cellular and Humoral Immunity

25.3.1 Coronin-1A Deficiency

Coronin-1A deficiency is a rare PID manifested by either $T^{-}B^{+}NK^{+}$ severe combined immunodeficiency or variable degrees of T-cell lymphopenia associated with severe viral infections, EBV-associated lymphoproliferative disease (LPD), and shortened telomeres. Thus far, nine patients with coronin-1A deficiency have been reported in the literature, of who five developed B-cell lymphomas before reaching the age of 2 years [81–86].

Coronin-1A, expressed predominantly in hematopoietic cells, is a member of the Coronin family of actin-associated proteins. Coronin-1A can link the plasma membrane to the actin cytoskeleton and is essential for signal transduction, migration, phagocytosis, and vesicle trafficking [82, 87–91]. Coronin-1A deficiency is caused by mutations in *CORO1A* gene (OMIM∗605000).

There seems to be a genotype–phenotype correlation in the patients reported so far. Complete absence of Coronin-1A is associated with severe combined immunodeficiency, whereas hypomorphic mutations causing diminished but still detectable protein expression lead to a milder immunological phenotype [81–85]. Recently, a truncating mutation in CORO1A was identified in two young adult siblings with a history of disseminated varicella, cutaneous warts, and $CD4^+$ T-cell lymphopenia, which permits normal protein expression and survival into young adulthood. This mutant was shown to prevent oligomerization and was associated with increased filamentous actin accumulation in T-cells, severely defective thymic output, and impaired T-cell survival but normal calcium flux and cytotoxicity [86].

25.3.2 MST1 (STK4) Deficiency

MST1 deficiency, also known as STK4 deficiency, is a novel autosomal recessive PID, which has been only reported in 12 patients from five different families [92–95]. MST1 deficiency is characterized by profound CD4 lymphopenia, accompanied by multiple bacterial and viral infections, mucocutaneous candidiasis, and autoimmune complications. EBV-associated LPD developed in 4 out of 12 patients during the course of their illness [92–95].

MST1 deficiency is caused by homozygous mutations resulting in premature stop codon in macrophage stimulating 1 (*MST1*) gene, also known as serine/threonine kinases 4 (*STK4*) (OMIM∗604965) [92–95]. MST1 deficiency results in a naïve T-cell survival defect (due to defective IL-7R/Bcl2 pathway and increased Fas expression) [92, 93], as well as impaired lymphocyte trafficking (both non-functional expression of the homing receptors CCR7 and CD62L and impaired LFA-1 activation and cell polarization have been proposed) [93, 95]. Notably, MST1 deficiency has overlapping features with other PIDs involving defects in actin cytoskeletal reorganization, including DOCK8 deficiency and WAS. Recent studies have also suggested a role for MST1 in regulation of autophagy, though with conflicting evidence regarding its precise role [96–98].

25.3.3 Purine Nucleoside Phosphorylase Deficiency

Purine nucleoside phosphorylase (PNP) deficiency is a rare, autosomal recessive, combined immunodeficiency disorder, with an estimated frequency of 4% among patients with SCID [99]. The disease usually manifests during the first year of life; however, the onset of symptoms may vary, with some patients having no apparent clinical immunodeficiency until later in childhood [100–102]. Common clinical manifestations in patients with PNP deficiency include recurrent bacterial, viral, and opportunistic infections; prolonged diarrhea; failure to thrive; neurologic abnormalities, including nonprogressive cerebral palsy, ataxic diplegia, or disequilibrium; and autoimmune disorders, including autoimmune hemolytic anemia, idiopathic thrombocytopenia, autoimmune neutropenia, lupus, and central nervous system vasculitis [99, 100, 103–106]. Due to profound T-cell abnormalities, patients are extremely susceptible to viral infections and may develop disseminated or even fatal disease [99, 101]. A high frequency of malignancy is also noted, including pharyngeal tumors, lymphoma, and lymphosarcoma [99, 107, 108]. In a report of 33 patients with PNP deficiency, 4 had developed lymphoma or lymphosarcoma and 1 had a pharyngeal tumor [99].

Several disease-causing mutations have been identified in the *PNP* gene (OMIM∗164010), producing proteins with differing degrees of enzymatic activity that inversely correlate with clinical severity (i.e., more functional proteins are associated with milder forms of disease, while less functional proteins lead to severe phenotypes) [102, 109, 110]. PNP is an enzyme in the purine salvage pathway that reversibly converts inosine to hypoxanthine and guanosine to guanine. Of all accumulated PNP substrates, only deoxyguanosine can be phosphorylated further in the mammalian cells. Thus, in PNP deficiency,

there is accumulation of abnormally high levels of lymphotoxic dGTP [111, 112]. This, in turn, inhibits ribonucleotidase reductase activity, depletes dCTP, and inhibits DNA synthesis and repair [111, 112]. Moreover, mitochondrial dGTP is also likely to inhibit mitochondrial DNA repair and initiate the apoptotic protease cascade triggered by cytochrome C release [113–115].

The most characteristic immune abnormality in PNP deficiency is a profound defect in T-cell number and function; however, abnormal B-cell functions, including defective antibody production, are common and in part due to abnormal T-cell help [99, 116]. However, an intrinsic defect in B-cell function has not been excluded. The T-cell specificity of PNP lies in the high deoxyguanosine phosphorylating activity in the T lymphocytes, as compared with B lymphocytes or other tissues [117, 118], and the inherent susceptibility of immature thymocytes to apoptosis during T-cell selection [119, 120].

25.3.4 Wiskott–Aldrich Syndrome

Wiskott–Aldrich syndrome (WAS) is a rare X-linked immunodeficiency with highly variable manifestations characterized by thrombocytopenia with small platelets, eczema, and humoral and cellular immunodeficiency with increased susceptibility to pyogenic and opportunistic infections. Patients with WAS may also present with an increased incidence of autoimmunity and malignancies [121–126].

The disease is caused by mutations in the *WAS* gene (OMIM∗300392), which is expressed exclusively in hematopoietic cells. More than 300 unique mutations spanning the *WAS* gene have been described. The effect of a given mutation on WASp expression correlates with the disease severity: mutations that cause decreased WASp levels result in the mild variant X-linked thrombocytopenia (XLT), characterized mainly by thrombocytopenia [127, 128], whereas mutations that abolish WASp expression or result in the expression of a truncated protein are associated with classic WAS. In addition, a third disorder termed X-linked neutropenia (XLN), characterized by neutropenia and variable myelodysplasia, has been attributed to activating mutations in the GTPase-binding domain of WASp [129–131].

The WASp is a multifaceted protein which exists in complex with several partners involved in relaying signals from cell surface receptors to the actin cytoskeleton; lack of WASp results in cytoskeletal defects that compromise multiple aspects of normal cellular activity including proliferation, phagocytosis, immune synapse formation, adhesion, and directed migration [124]. It is therefore not surprising that lack of WASp results in a wide range of defects in cellular function involving all hematopoietic cell lineages [124].

Malignancies are relatively common in older patients (adolescent and young adults), especially in those with autoimmune manifestations, and are frequently associated with a poor prognosis [122, 125, 132]. The most frequent malignancy reported is B-cell lymphoma, which often occurs in EBV-positive patients [122, 126]. In a report of 154 patients with WAS, 21 (13%) developed malignancies, mostly of lymphoreticular origin, with the average age at onset of 9.5 years [122]. Nonlymphoid malignancies, including glioma, acoustic neuroma, testicular carcinoma, and Kaposi sarcoma, have infrequently been reported [122, 133]. The development of hematological malignancies in WAS patients is at least partly due to NK cell and cytotoxic T lymphocyte dysfunction [134–136], absence of invariant NKT cells [137, 138], and chronic stimulation of autoreactive cells and ineffective clearance of virally infected cells [139, 140]. It has been reported that despite normal expression levels of lytic molecules, the cytotoxic $CD8^+$ T-cells from WAS patients failed to effectively kill B-cell lymphoma target cells due to inefficient polarization of cytotoxic granules toward the target tumor cells [134]. Recently, activating mutations in WASp (which give rise to XLN) have been found to lead to genetic instability through dysregulation of actin polymerization. Enhanced and delocalized actin polymerization throughout the cell was shown to inhibit myelopoiesis through defective mitosis and cytokinesis, with micronuclei formation indicative of genomic instability [141].

Despite lack of direct evidence, genomic instability might contribute to the development of malignancies in WAS patients [124].

Early HSCT is the treatment of choice for patients with classic WAS, preferably from a matched related donor [142]. Furthermore, immune reconstitution in WAS patients following HSCT leads to a decrease in cancer risk [142]. Gene therapy is an alternative to HSCT in the treatment of WAS [143]; however, the long-term outcome needs to be further monitored. This could be explained by the fact that the viruses used for therapy integrate in the host genome, with preferential insertion at transcription start sites, promoter and enhancer regions of active genes, and at conserved noncoding DNA, resulting in a high rate of transformations and the development of secondary malignancies [144, 145]. Acute T-cell leukemia due to vector insertion in the vicinity of the T-cell oncogene *LMO2* has been reported in one patient [146, 147].

25.3.5 Dedicator of Cytokinesis 8 Deficiency

Dedicator of cytokinesis 8 (DOCK8) deficiency, initially described as a form of autosomal recessive hyper-IgE syndrome [148], is now regarded as a combined immunodeficiency disorder presenting early in life with: (1) recurrent sinopulmonary infections; (2) cutaneous viral, bacterial, and fungal infections; (3) severe atopy, asthma, and allergies; (4) immune-mediated pathologies including autoimmune hemolytic anemia and vasculitis; (5) neurological complications; (6) malignancies; and (7) extremely high serum IgE levels and eosinophilia [148–152]. Cutaneous viral infections are the most distinctive clinical feature and often identified as recalcitrant, extensive lesions caused by herpes simplex virus, HPV, Molluscum contagiosum virus, and varicella zoster virus [149–152]. Moreover, EBV and/or cytomegalovirus infections are documented in up to 40% of patients [151, 152]. Increased frequencies of malignancies, including squamous cell carcinoma (SCC), cutaneous T-cell lymphoma/leukemia, Burkitt's lymphoma, anaplastic B-cell lymphoma, acute myeloid leukemia (AML), as well as adrenal leiomyoma and microcytic adnexal carcinoma, have been reported in up to 17% of DOCK8-deficient patients [149, 150, 152–154].

The disease is due to biallelic mutations in the *DOCK8* gene (OMIM∗611432), which encodes DOCK8, a member of the DOCK180-related family of atypical guanine- nucleotide-exchange factors (GEFs) highly expressed in lymphocytes [155]. DOCK8 was initially shown to bind to the Rho GTPases Cdc42, Rac1, RHOJ, and RHOQ in a yeast two-hybrid system but not in GST pulldown assay [156]. Following the generation of *Dock8*-knockout mice, Dock8 was found to have Cdc42-specific GEF activity [157]. Ham et al. [158] reported that DOCK8 exists in a macromolecular complex with the Wiskott–Aldrich syndrome protein (WASp), an actin nucleation-promoting factor activated by Cdc42, as well as with talin, a protein required for integrin-mediated adhesion. Subsequently, Janssen et al. [159] demonstrated that the WASp-interacting protein (WIP) bridges DOCK8 to WASp and actin in T-cells, and that the Cdc42-specific GEF activity of DOCK8 is essential for the integrity of the subcortical actin cytoskeleton as well as for TCR-driven WASp activation, F-actin assembly, immune synapse formation, mechanotransduction, T-cell transendothelial migration, and homing to lymph nodes, all of which also depend on WASp. These findings indicate the role of DOCK8 in TCR-driven actin dynamics and formation of the immunologic synapse, which are required for full T-cell activation, proliferation, and acquisition of effector functions. Additional roles of DOCK8 have also emerged, including linking the TLR9-MyD88 cascade to the transcription factor STAT3 that is essential for B-cell proliferation and differentiation [160, 161], regulating Src-dependent NK cell cytotoxicity and cytokine production in response to target cell engagement or receptor ligation [162], and controlling IL-2 signaling, crucial for maintenance and competitive fitness of regulatory T-cells, via a STAT5-dependent manner [163].

DOCK8 deficiency impacts both innate and adaptive immune responses. Immunological

features of DOCK8 deficiency, besides high serum IgE levels and eosinophilia, include lymphopenia (progressive with age) affecting $CD4^+$ and $CD8^+$ T-cells (especially the $CD4^+$ T-cells) and, to a lesser extent, NK and B-cells [149–152], plus a virtual lack of circulating $CD19^+CD27^+$ memory B-cells [160]. Studies in DOCK8-deficient patients have demonstrated decreased T-cell activation and proliferation in response to mitogens [149–152], but not to specific antigens [151]; however, these functional studies are inconclusive due to the difficulty in isolating naive T-cells from the peripheral blood. In murine models of Dock8 deficiency, despite the twofold reduction in peripheral naïve T-cells, the Dock8-deficient mice generated a normal primary $CD8^+$ immune response to viral infection and the defect was mainly localized to decreased survival of $CD8^+$ memory T-cells [164], which can explain why DOCK8 deficient patients are susceptible to recurrent infections. DOCK8-deficient humans and/or mice also exhibit abnormalities in cytokine secretion associated with a T-helper 2-biased immune response [149, 151, 164], low serum IgM levels and impaired antibody responses [160, 165], decreased $CD4^+$ T-helper type 17 cells, and impaired NK cell cytotoxicity [149, 150, 158, 166].

Increased susceptibility to malignancy in DOCK8-deficient patients can be explained by failure of $CD8^+$ T- and NK cell-mediated tumor immunosurveillance, as well as chronic antigenic stimulation. Moreover, there is evidence that DOCK8 itself might have direct tumor suppressor activity [167–170], and that loss of DOCK8 expression might contribute to carcinogenesis [171]. Reduced DOCK8 expression has been demonstrated in the vast majority of primary lung cancers, irrespective of the histological type, compared with normal lung tissue. Epigenetic mechanisms, including DNA methylation and histone deacetylation, were indicated to be involved in DOCK8 downregulation in lung cancer cells [167], as with other candidate tumor suppressor genes, such as p16, RASSF1A, and MYO18B [172–175]. Moreover, homozygous deletions of the *DOCK8* gene have been shown in breast and gastric cancer cell lines. These results suggest that genetic and epigenetic inactivation of DOCK8 is involved in the development and/or progression of lung cancers and other cancers by disturbing the regulatory functions of DOCK8 in cell migration, morphology, adhesion, and growth of cells [167].

25.3.6 RHOH Deficiency

Ras homolog family member H (RHOH) deficiency is a novel form of PID recently identified by genome-wide linkage analysis in two young adult siblings born to consanguineous French parents [176]. Since childhood, both patients displayed a phenotype resembling epidermodysplasia verruciformis (EV), characterized by persistent cutaneous infections with EV-specific HPV (EV-HPV) genotypes. The older sibling had also developed Burkitt's lymphoma in childhood, granulomatous lung disease, and psoriatic-like lesions, whereas the younger sibling had molluscum contagiosum, psoriatic lesions, and gingivostomatitis, indicating that the phenotypic spectrum of the disease is not restricted to susceptibility to HPV [176].

RHOH deficiency results from homozygous loss-of-expression mutations (Y38X) in the *RHOH* gene (OMIM∗602037) located on chromosome 4p13, which encodes an atypical Rho GTPase (RHOH) expressed predominantly in hematopoietic cells. RHOH is GTPase deficient and remains constitutively in the active, GTP-bound state, suggesting that its activity is likely regulated by the level of the protein expressed in the cells rather than guanine nucleotide cycling [177]. It has been shown to counteract Rac GTPase activities in lymphoid cell lines and cytokine-stimulated hematopoietic progenitor cells, resulting in reduced proliferation, increased apoptosis, and defective actin polymerization [177–180].

Immunologic evaluation of RHOH-deficient patients revealed no major abnormality in the frequencies of B-cell subsets, NK cells, NKT cells, monocytes, or polymorphonuclear cells, as well as in antibody production. Despite maintaining normal T-cell counts, both patients displayed a

restricted T-cell repertoire, lack of circulating naive T-cells consistent with the defect in thymic T-cell development observed in *Rhoh*−/− mice [179], expansion of effector memory T-cells (more likely to be consequences of chronic infection), altered expression of T-cell tissue-homing markers with strikingly lower than normal proportion of skin-homing $\beta7^+$ T-cells, and impaired T-cell proliferative responses to anti-CD3 but variable responses to mitogens and recall antigens [176]. It is evident that on TCR stimulation, murine RhoH undergoes tyrosine phosphorylation and mediates recruitment of Zap70 and Lck to the TCR/linker of activation in T-cell (LAT) signalosome [181]. This finding has been confirmed in RHOH-deficient T-cells of patients, showing little or no ZAP70 phosphorylation in the presence or absence of CD3 stimulation [176]. The combination of T-cell defects common to both mice and humans, including impaired T-cell responses, a lack of naive cells, and smaller than normal proportion of $\beta7^+$ T-cells, might explain the pathogenesis of susceptibility to cutaneous EV-HPVs.

The *RhoH/TTF* (translocation three four) gene was first identified by fusion to the *BCL6/LAZ3* oncogene resulting from *t*(3;4)(q27;p11) translocation in an NHL cell line [182–184]. Another chromosomal alteration involving the *RhoH/TTF* gene in a patient with multiple myeloma and *t*(4;14)(p13;q32) translocation has also been identified [184]. Moreover, aberrant somatic hypermutations in *RHOH* gene have been previously reported in various B-cell malignancies, including diffuse large B-cell lymphomas [185], AIDS-related NHL [186], primary central nervous system lymphomas [187], and, rarely, Burkitt's lymphoma [185]. However, it remains unclear whether these mutations translate into abnormal levels of RhoH expression in lymphomas and what pathophysiological contribution hypermutation in the RhoH gene plays in lymphomagenesis.

25.3.7 MCM4 Deficiency

MCM4 deficiency is an autosomal recessive disorder manifested with short stature, adrenal failure, selective NK cell deficiency (low number and function), and predisposition to viral infections [188–191]. To date, only one patient with MCM4 deficiency has been reported to develop EBV-associated LPD [188].

MCM4 deficiency is caused by homozygous mutations in minichromosome maintenance complex component 4 (*MCM4)* gene (OMIM∗602638). MCM4 is part of the replicative helicase MCM2-7 complex, which is essential for normal DNA replication and genome stability in all eukaryotes. MCM4 is crucial for preserving the DNA integrity during the proliferation of NK cells. The immunologic defect in MCM4 deficient patients is lack of transition of $CD56^{bright}$ NK cells to $CD56^{dim}$ NK cells, which account for about 90 % of circulating NK cells. Other immune cell lines are normal in number and function.

It is also possible that MCM4 deficient patients may have an increased risk of neoplastic change due to defective DNA damage response pathways. It has been demonstrated that Chaos3 mouse model, which by virtue of an amino acid alteration in MCM4 that destabilizes the MCM2–7 DNA replicative helicase, is at increased risk of genomic instability and cancer development [192].

25.3.8 Signal Transducer and Activator of Transcription 3 Deficiency

Hyper-IgE syndrome (HIES) is a complex PID characterized by recurrent staphylococcal infections beginning early in infancy, predominantly involving the skin and lungs, chronic eczema, and markedly high serum IgE concentrations [193–195]. Skin infections due to *S. aureus* lack the usual local or systemic features of inflammation, forming so-called cold abscesses [196]. Recurrent sinopulmonary infections, resulting in bronchiectasis and pneumatocele formation frequently superimposed with bacterial and fungal infections, are the major causes of morbidity and mortality in patients with HIES [197]. Despite having extremely high serum IgE levels and eosinophilia, patients with HIES are usually free

from other allergic manifestations, recognized as a marked difference from DOCK8 deficiency [193, 195]. In patients with HIES, serum IgG, IgM, and IgA levels are usually normal; however, most have impaired antigen-specific antibody response to immunization [198]. Diminished circulating memory B-cells and defects in the differentiation of Th17 cells have also been demonstrated [198–200]. The multisystem nature of the disease extends beyond the immune system and accounts for the characteristics craniofacial, musculoskeletal, dental, and vascular abnormalities [201–204].

Dominant negative mutations in *STAT3* (OMIM∗102582) have been identified as the major molecular etiology of autosomal dominant and sporadic cases of HIES [205, 206]. STAT3, one of the seven STAT proteins in the human, is a transcription factor and plays a critical role in responses to many cytokines and growth factors through the shared signal-transducing molecule gp130 [194, 195]. It is crucial for cell proliferation, survival, migration, apoptosis, and inflammation in various tissues [207], probably explaining the diverse clinical findings in patients with HIES.

STAT3 deficiency is associated with an increased risk of LPD, most notably HL and NHL (relative risk: 259), with the majority of B-cell origin and aggressive histology [208–210]. Other cancers described in patients with HIES include leukemia and cancers of the vulva, liver, and lung [211]. The underlying mechanisms, however, remain unclear. The higher risk of tumor formation has been attributed to defective immunosurveillance and chronic B-cell stimulation, resulting in an increased turnover of B-cells and accumulating genetic aberrations, giving rise to malignant B-cell clones [212].

25.3.9 Chromosome 22q11.2 Deletion Syndrome

Chromosome 22q11.2 deletion syndrome is relatively common (estimated in 1 in 4000 births) [213], and about 6% of newly diagnosed cases are familial [214]. The presenting symptoms of chromosome 22q11.2 deletion syndrome vary depending on age. While developmental delay and speech issues are the usual presenting symptoms in older children and adults, cardiac anomalies, hypocalcemia, and infection are the major manifestations in infants. Cardiac defects are seen in approximately 80% of patients; and conversely, tetralogy of Fallot and interrupted aortic arch type B have a strong positive predictive value for chromosome 22q11.2 deletion syndrome [215, 216]. Palatal dysfunction, feeding problems, facial dysmorphism, renal anomalies, and gastrointestinal manifestations also are seen in most of these patients [217]. Patients are also at an increased risk of atopy and autoimmune disease development [218, 219].

The immune system is affected in approximately 75% of the patients [217, 219, 220]. The severity ranges from absent thymic tissue and no circulating T-cells to completely normal T-cell counts. Many infants with low T-cell counts will demonstrate improvement in the first year of life, but after that, T-cell counts decline [221]. Patients may also suffer from variable degrees of B-cell defects [222, 223]. In a cohort of 687 patients with chromosome 22q11.2 deletion syndrome, six cases of malignancy were identified. This gives an overall frequency of 0.9% (900 per 100,000) in this large pediatric group of patients, whereas the overall risk of malignancy in children under the age of 14 years is 3.4 per 100,000 children [224]. As reported in the literature, patients with chromosome 22q11.2 deletion syndrome have a clearly increased risk of lymphoma, particularly B-cell lymphoma [225–228]. There have also been reports of myelodysplasia, acute lymphoblastic leukemia, SCC, astrocytoma, neuroblastoma, hepatoblastoma, renal cell carcinoma, and rhabdoid tumors [224, 229–233].

25.3.10 DNA Repair Defects

B and T lymphocyte development depends largely on multiplex genetic rearrangements, i.e., V(D)J recombination, class switch recombination, and somatic hypermutation, which are

carried out by multiple DNA repair and damage response protein complexes [234]. Variations in the DNA repair genes might compromise the delicate balance between the generation of genetic variation and replication fidelity of DNA [235, 236].

PIDs associated with defects in DNA repair, collectively termed genomic instability syndromes, are generally associated with cellular radiosensitivity, developmental defects, and predisposition to cancer [236–238]. Syndromes known to be associated with malignancies, including ataxia-telangiectasia, Nijmegen syndrome, Bloom syndrome, DNA ligase IV deficiency, Artemis deficiency, cartilage hair hypoplasia, PMS2 deficiency, and FAAP24 deficiency are summarized in Table 25.1.

Although these defects are associated with an increased risk of lymphoid malignancies, mainly NHL, nonlymphoid tumors affecting the brain, skin, breast, and gastrointestinal tract have also been reported [238–244]. This is partly due to the fact that diverse DNA repair processes are not specific to antigen receptor diversification. DNA double-strand breaks, arising from multiple sources, including exposure to ionizing radiation, can potentially lead to replication errors, loss or rearrangements of genomic material, and eventually cell death or carcinogenesis. The DNA damage response pathway, responsible for sensing and repairing the damaged DNA, comprises the most powerful tumor surveillance mechanism [243]. The observation of an increased risk of cancer development in heterozygote carriers provides additional insight into their tumorigenic potential [244–247]. Additionally, defects in immunosurveillance mechanisms per se, similar to certain PIDs not associated with DNA repair defects, contribute to cancer development.

25.4 Congenital Defects of Phagocyte Number or Function

The underlying mechanism of cancer development in PIDs caused by defects of phagocytic cells is quite different from that observed in other immunodeficiency disorders. Here the implicated genes are important for proper myeloid cell development; thus cancers form due to dysregulated myelopoiesis. This is distinct from cancers that occur in some other conditions including impaired immunosurveillance and presence of specific viruses.

25.4.1 Severe Congenital Neutropenia (Kostmann Syndrome)

Severe congenital neutropenia (SCN) is a rare PID characterized by a maturation arrest of myelopoiesis at the level of the promyelocyte/myelocyte stage with peripheral blood absolute neutrophil counts (ANCs) below 0.5×10^9/L, in addition to early-onset superficial and systemic bacterial infections [254, 255]. The skin and mucous membranes are usually affected by ulceration, gingival hyperplasia, periodontitis, and abscess formation [256]. Patients may also suffer from neurological disorders including developmental delay, mental retardation, epilepsy, and decreased cognitive function [257, 258].

SCN follows an autosomal dominant or recessive pattern of inheritance or can occur sporadically. It is a genetically heterogeneous disorder caused by a variety of mutations in several different genes. Nonetheless, the different genetic forms of SCN share a rather similar clinical phenotype. Mutations in the neutrophil elastase (*ELA2*) gene (OMIM∗130130) are found in approximately 50% of all cases, i.e., those with dominant autosomal or sporadic SCN [256, 259]. ELA2 is a serine protease, exclusively expressed in neutrophils and monocytes, and is stored in the primary granules of neutrophils [260]. Interestingly, mutations in the *ELA2* gene are also responsible for the clinical phenotype of cyclic neutropenia. The pathophysiological mechanisms responsible for the development of different phenotypes, congenital or cyclic neutropenia, are not yet understood [261]. Most patients with autosomal recessive disease, which comprises approximately 30% of SCN, have mutations in the HS-1-associated protein X (*HAX1*)

Table 25.1 Clinical and immunological features of DNA repair defects associated with cancers

Gene	Disease	Inheritance	Clinical features	Pathogenesis	Immune defects	Associated cancers
ATM (OMIM∗607585)	Ataxia-telangiectasia	AR	Cerebellar ataxia, oculocutaneous telangiectasia, chromosomal instability, radiosensitivity, thymic aplasia, recurrent sinopulmonary infections, cancer predisposition (up 40%)	Disorder of cell cycle checkpoint and DSB repair, role in V(D)J, CSR	Often decreased IgA, IgE, and IgG subclasses, increased IgM, antibodies variably decreased, progressive T-cell lymphopenia, normal B-cell count	Lymphomas, lymphoid leukemias (mainly T-cells), epithelial tumors, gastric carcinoma [238, 239, 248]
NBN (OMIM∗602667)	Nijmegen breakage syndrome	AR	Severe microcephaly, bird-like face, mental and growth retardation, chromosomal instability, radiosensitivity, recurrent sinopulmonary infections, strong predisposition to lymphoid malignancy	Disorder of cell cycle checkpoint and DSB repair, role in V(D)J, CSR, SHM	Often decreased IgA, IgE, and IgG subclasses, increased IgM, antibodies variably decreased, decreased B- and T-cell counts	Hodgkin and non-Hodgkin lymphomas, leukemias (mainly B-cells), brain tumors [240]
BLM (*OMIM*∗210900)	Bloom syndrome	AR	Short stature, bird-like face, sun-sensitive erythema, erythema, marrow failure, chromosomal instability, cancer predisposition	Role as a RecQ-like helicase	Low IgM and IgA, normal B- and T-cell counts	Leukemias, lymphomas, carcinomas [249]
LIG4 (OMIM∗601837)	DNA ligase IV deficiency	AR	Microcephaly, facial dysmorphisms, radiation sensitivity, may present with RS-SCID, Omenn syndrome, or with a delayed clinical onset	Impaired NHEJ, role in V(D)J, CSR	Decreased serum Igs, decreased B- and T-cell counts	EBV-positive B-cell lymphomas, T-cell ALL [241, 250]
DCLRE1C (OMIM∗602450)	Artemis deficiency	AR	Radiation sensitivity, may present with RS-SCID or Omenn syndrome	Role in V(D)J, CSR	Decreased serum Igs, markedly decreased B- and T-cell counts	EBV-positive B-cell lymphomas [251]
RMRP (OMIM∗250250)	Cartilage hair hypoplasia	AR	Short-limbed dwarfism with metaphyseal dysostosis, sparse hair, bone marrow failure, autoimmunity, predisposition to cancers, impaired spermatogenesis, neuronal dysplasia of the intestine	Role in ribosomal RNA processing, mitochondrial DNA replication, and cell cycle control	Normal or reduced serum Igs, variably decreased antibodies, normal B-cell count, decreased or normal T-cell count, impaired lymphocyte proliferation	Non-Hodgkin lymphomas, basal-cell carcinoma [242]

(continued)

Table 25.1 (continued)

Gene	Disease	Inheritance	Clinical features	Pathogenesis	Immune defects	Associated cancers
PMS2 (OMIM∗600259)	PMS2 deficiency (class switch recombination deficiency due to impaired mismatch repair)	AR	Recurrent infections, café au lait spots, cancer predisposition	Defective CSR-induced DSBs in Ig switch regions	Low IgG and IgA, elevated IgM, abnormal antibody responses, normal B-cell count, decreased, switched, and non-switched B-cell counts	Leukemias, lymphomas, colorectal carcinoma, brain tumors [243]
FAAP24 (OMIM∗610884)	FAAP24 deficiency	AR	Fatal EBV-associated LPD in early childhood	Increased endogenous DNA damage and failure to efficiently invoke cell cycle checkpoint responses	Failure of peripheral mononuclear cells to limit outgrowth of autologous EBV-infected B-cells, as well as failure of T-cell lines established from lymph node biopsy to kill autologous EBV-infected B-cells and K562 target cells	EBV-associated LPD [252, 253]

gene (OMIM∗605998) [262]. HAX-1, a mitochondria-targeted protein containing Bcl-2 homology domains, is an apoptosis-regulating protein [262]. Mutations in the glucose-6-phosphatase catalytic subunit 3 (*G6PC3*) gene (OMIM∗611045) have been identified in a group of autosomal recessive SCN patients with additional syndromic features including cardiac and urogenital anomalies and increased venous marking [263]. Patients with X-linked SCN harbor activating mutations in Wiskott–Aldrich syndrome (*WAS*) gene (OMIM∗300392), leading to a constitutively active form of the WAS protein and unregulated actin polymerization [131]. Inactivating mutations in the proto-oncogene growth factor-independent 1 (*GFI1*) gene (OMIM∗600871) are also associated with SCN [264]. In addition, SCN without a maturation arrest has recently been associated with p14 protein deficiency [265]. Finally, acquired nonsense mutations in colony-stimulating factor 3 receptor (*CSF3R*) gene (OMIM∗138971) have also been found to affect 20% of SCN patients [266].

SCN patients are at an increased risk of myelodysplasia (MDS) and AML development with a cumulative incidence of leukemia of 22% after 15 years of G-CSF treatment [267, 268]. Independent of the genetic subtype, conversion to leukemia in patients with SCN is often associated with one or more somatic cellular genetic abnormalities (e.g., monosomy 7, *RAS* mutations, trisomy 21, or *CSF3R* mutations), which may be diagnostically useful to identify subgroups of patients at high risk of developing leukemia [261]. Other risk factors for progression to MDS and/or AML are the severity of neutropenia, younger age at diagnosis, and prior exposure to G-CSF [269]. Interestingly, marrow cells from nearly 80% of patients with SCN who transform to leukemia show point mutations in *CSF3R*, suggesting that these mutations play an important role in leukemogenesis [270].

Hematopoietic stem-cell transplantation (HSCT) is the only definitive treatment for patients with bone marrow failure, MDS, or leukemia; however, it seems that patients with SCN may be at increased risk of transplant-related mortality for unknown reasons. As a result, there is no clear consensus on when a patient with SCN should undergo HSCT [271].

25.4.2 Shwachman–Diamond Syndrome

Shwachman–Diamond syndrome (SDS) is a rare autosomal recessive, systemic disease characterized by exocrine pancreatic insufficiency, impaired hematopoiesis, and leukemia predisposition [272]. Other clinical features include skeletal, immunologic, hepatic, and cardiac disorders [271]. There is considerable phenotypic variability between individuals, and making the diagnosis can be challenging, particularly in older patients in whom symptoms such as steatorrhea may have resolved [271] or may not be present [273]. The most common hematologic abnormality in patients with SDS is neutropenia, which can be chronic or intermittent. Anemia and thrombocytopenia are also common manifestations. Patients with SDS are susceptible to recurrent infections [274] likely due to neutropenia. Other immune defects have also been reported. These include neutrophil chemotactic defects [275, 276], decreased proportions of circulating B-cells, low immunoglobulin levels, decreased in vitro B-cell proliferation, lack of specific antibodies, or decreased total circulating T lymphocytes, as well as decreased proliferative responses [277, 278].

Approximately 90% of patients with clinical features of SDS have mutations in the Shwachman–Bodian–Diamond syndrome (*SBDS*) gene (OMIM∗607444) [279], with the encoded protein being essential for normal ribosome maturation, though its precise molecular function remains unclear [280, 281]. In addition to a stem-cell defect [282], patients with SDS have also a serious, generalized marrow dysfunction with an abnormal bone marrow stroma in terms of its ability to support and maintain hematopoiesis [281, 283].

Similar to other marrow failure syndromes, patients with SDS have an increased risk for MDS and AML [284], with an estimated risk of 19% at 20 years and 36% at 30 years [269]. There

are also case reports of solid tumors in patients with SDS [285–287]. The reason behind this malignant predisposition is not known. However, several theories have been proposed, including chromosome instability [288, 289], accelerated apoptosis linked to increased expression of the Fas antigen and to hyperactivation of the Fas signaling pathway [290], and abnormal gene expression patterns as evident by upregulation of several oncogenes, including *LARG*, *TAL1*, and *MLL*, and downregulation of several tumor suppressor genes, including *DLEU1*, *RUNX1*, *FANCD2*, and *DKC1*, which might result in continuous stimulation favoring evolution or progression of malignant clones [291]. Accordingly, all patients with SDS should be monitored with peripheral blood counts every 3–4 months and marrow evaluation on a yearly basis, and if indicated, HSCT should be done prior to the development of overt leukemia.

25.4.3 GATA2 Deficiency

GATA2 deficiency causes a wide spectrum of phenotypes including disseminated mycobacterial infections (typically Mycobacterium avium complex), opportunistic fungal infections, disseminated HPV infections, and pulmonary alveolar proteinosis, with an increased risk of myelodysplasia, cytogenetic abnormalities, and myeloid leukemias [292–295]. Germline mutations in *GATA2* have been initially associated with several clinical entities, including MonoMAC syndrome (Monocytopenia and Mycobacterium avium complex infections) [293, 296], DCML (dendritic cell, monocyte, and lymphocyte) deficiency [294], familial MDS/AML (without other hematopoietic defects) [297, 298], and Emberger's syndrome characterized by congenital deafness and primary lymphedema of the lower limb [299], which are now collectively defined as GATA2 deficiency. Despite pleiotropic clinical manifestations, the high propensity for the development of MDS constitutes the most common clinical denominator. This form of immunodeficiency occurs either as an autosomal dominant form or sporadically, and can present from early childhood to late adulthood [296]. Reportedly, near 380 GATA2-deficient patients have been reported, with a roughly estimated prevalence of myeloid neoplasia of at least 75% [300].

While considerable efforts have been made to identify the mutations that characterize this disorder, pathogenesis remains a work in progress. Heterozygous disease-causing germline mutations in *GATA2* gene (OMIM∗137295) indicate dominant interference of gene function by either dominant negative effects or haploinsufficiency [293, 301, 302]. The GATA family of transcription factors, which contain zinc fingers in their DNA-binding domain, have emerged as candidate regulators of gene expression in hematopoietic cells. GATA2 functions in the regulation of hematopoiesis and, in particular, is required for maintenance and survival of the hematopoietic stem-cell pool [303, 304]. GATA2 also functions in the formation of early blood and lymphatic vessels [305, 306]. The role of *GATA2* mutation in disease manifestation is incompletely understood but likely complex and thought to be linked to the generation or maintenance of progenitors required for the affected cell subsets [301].

Immunological characterization of patients with the MonoMAC syndrome/DCML deficiency revealed profoundly decreased or absent monocytes, NK cells, and B-cells as well as a severe decrease in circulating and tissue dendritic cells (DCs). In most cases, GATA2 deficiency is accompanied by a severe reduction in peripheral blood NK cells, specifically the $CD56^{bright}$ subset, with marked functional impairment [293], which predispose to significant HPV and other viral infections, as well as HPV-associated SCC. Bone marrow failure resulting from loss of stem cells may underlie the multilineage cytopenias described in most patients; however, the underlying mechanisms for cytogenetic abnormalities or the leukemic transformation need to be further clarified [300]. In addition to MDS/AML and SCC, two cases of invasive melanoma have been reported, suggesting an association between decreased GATA2 expression and melanoma progression [307].

25.5 Defects in Intrinsic and Innate Immunity

25.5.1 Epidermodysplasia Verruciformis

Epidermodysplasia verruciformis (EV) is a chronic, genetically inherited skin condition characterized by increased susceptibility to cutaneous infection with certain HPV genotypes, referred to as EV-HPVs [308, 309]. EV begins during infancy or early childhood, and the more benign lesions manifest as flat, wart-like, hypopigmented, or hyperpigmented papules, or pityriasis versicolor-like plaques, whereas lesions with greater potential for malignant transformation present more variably as verrucous and seborrheic keratosis-like lesions, occurring mainly on sun-exposed areas [308–310]. Approximately 30–60% of individuals eventually develop skin malignancies, eventually in the fourth to fifth decades, with Bowen carcinoma in situ being the most frequent tumor, followed by invasive SCC and, less frequently, basal-cell carcinoma [310–313].

EV is inherited primarily in an autosomal recessive pattern [314], although both X-linked recessive and autosomal dominant modes of inheritance have been reported [315, 316]. Genome-wide linkage studies have identified two EV susceptibility loci *EV1* and *EV2*, on chromosomes 17 and 2, respectively [317]. Mutations in the *EVER1* (OMIM∗605828) and *EVER2* (OMIM∗605829) genes, which are part of the EV1 locus, have been identified in approximately 75% of patients with EV [308].

The EVER proteins, localized in the endoplasmic reticulum of human keratinocytes [318], interact with ZnT-1 [319], a zinc transporter regulating cellular zinc homeostasis. Loss of EVER zinc homeostasis enhances the expression of viral genes, specifically the pro-oncogenic *E6* and *E7*, contributing to HPV-mediated carcinogenesis. Besides keratinocytes, EVER proteins are expressed in T and B lymphocytes, NK cells, endothelial cells, myeloid cells, and DCs. Zinc has been shown to contribute to TCR signaling by increasing ZAP70 phosphorylation [320]. Mutated, dysfunctional *EVER* genes would disrupt zinc homeostasis and consequently produce a defect in cell-mediated immunity, which could compromise viral clearance and lead to malignant transformation [319, 321].

25.5.2 Warts, Hypogammaglobulinemia, Infections, and Myelokathexis Syndrome

Warts, hypogammaglobulinemia, infections, and myelokathexis (WHIM) syndrome is a rare, dominantly inherited PID characterized by warts, hypogammaglobulinemia, infections, and myelokathexis, which refers to neutropenia resulting from abnormal retention of mature neutrophils and increased neutrophils apoptosis in the bone marrow [322–324]. The incidence of WHIM syndrome has been estimated to be 0.23 cases per million births [325]. The clinical onset usually occurs during infancy or early childhood with recurrent gastrointestinal, respiratory, and cutaneous bacterial infections and increased susceptibility to HPV infection, causing numerous, recalcitrant skin and genital warts [323, 324]. Genital warts (condylomata acuminata) may undergo dysplastic changes conferring to an increased risk of malignancy [322–324]. Contrary to the long-held belief, HPV is not the only unique viral susceptibility in WHIM syndrome. More recently, EBV-associated LPD [326, 327] as well as herpes zoster [328], herpes simplex virus [328, 329], and molluscum contagiosum [326] infections have been reported, indicating a generalized susceptibility to *Herpesviridae* viruses.

WHIM syndrome is primarily caused by gain-of-function mutations in the gene encoding the chemokine receptor CXCR4 (OMIM∗162643) [330], a member of the G-protein-coupled receptor superfamily specific for the CXC chemokine stromal cell-derived factor 1 (SDF-1) [331], also known as CXCL12. All *CXCR4* mutations reported to date disrupt receptor downregulation leading to enhanced and prolonged chemotactic responsiveness to SDF-1 [332, 333].

Immunological and hematological abnormalities in WHIM syndrome include peripheral

neutropenia, B lymphopenia with a particular reduction in the number of switched memory B-cells ($CD27^+$ IgD^-), T lymphopenia with decreased number of naïve T-cells, and a relative expansion of memory T-cells with a restricted repertoire, deficiency of plasmacytoid DCS, and hypogammaglobulinemia [334–337]. The mechanisms by which dysregulated CXCR4 signaling affects leukocyte homeostasis and predisposes to a selective susceptibility to HPV infection and carcinogenesis are still unknown. It remains possible that defective trafficking of effector cells (T-cells and NK cells) and antigen-presenting cells might contribute to defective cutaneous immunity, explaining the abnormal susceptibility to viruses affecting the skin [212].

25.6 Diseases of Immune Dysregulation

25.6.1 X-Linked Lymphoproliferative Disease

X-linked lymphoproliferative disease (XLP), formerly known as Duncan disease, is a rare and often fatal inherited immunodeficiency disorder initially described by Purtilo et al. [338], with an estimated incidence of one to three per million male births [339]. It is characterized by severe immune dysregulation in males with a variable clinical presentation, often following EBV infection, manifesting as fulminant infectious mononucleosis and/or acquired hemophagocytic lymphohistiocytosis (HLH), dysgammaglobulinemia, and malignant lymphoma [340–343]. Other, albeit less common, clinical features of XLP include aplastic anemia, lymphocytic vasculitis, pulmonary lymphoid granulomatosis, arthritis, colitis, and psoriasis [343–345].

Most cases of XLP are caused by germ line mutations in the Src homology 2 domaincontaining gene 1A (*SH2D1A*; OMIM∗300490) encoding the 128 amino acid signaling lymphocytic activation molecule (SLAM)-associated protein (SAP) [346–348]. In humans, SAP is expressed predominantly in NK, NKT, and T-cells [349–351]. It has been shown to serve as an adaptor molecule downstream of several SLAM immunomodulatory receptors family [352]. The SLAM–SAP association potentiates the development of NKT cells, T–B-cell conjugation required for the development of germinal centers and immunoglobulin production, and EBV-directed cytotoxicity by T- and NK cells. In addition, it is required for normal T-cell homeostasis mediated by reactivation-induced cell death (RICD) [353, 354]. A second XLP-like disorder caused by mutations in the X-linked inhibitor of apoptosis protein (*XIAP*; OMIM∗300079) was described in 2006 [355]. XIAP directly limits the activity of several critical death-inducing caspases, either by direct enzyme inhibition or through ubiquitin-mediated proteasomal degradation. XIAP overexpression, or increased activity, is associated with cancer progression, resistance to therapy and poor prognosis [356]. XIAP deficiency is predominantly associated with recurrent EBV-associated HLH; however, no lymphoma occurrence has been reported in affected patients till now [171, 343, 355, 357].

SAP-deficient patients are at increased risk of lymphoma development, as well as other LPD. Approximately 30% of patients develop lymphoma at a mean age of 15 years at diagnosis [343, 358]. Expectedly, the majority are of B-cell origin, arising in extranodal sites, most commonly localized in the ileocecal region, with Burkitt's lymphoma comprising approximately 50–60% of total lymphomas [343, 359, 360]. Notably, not all cases of lymphomas arise due to malignant transformation of EBV-infected B-cells, as up to one-third of patients with lymphoma are EBV seronegative [343, 358, 360], indicating that the genetic defect per se can result in lymphoma. It is likely that defective antitumor immunosurveillance due to poor $CD8^+$ T- and NK cell cytotoxic responses and lack of NKT cells contributes to lymphomagenesis [212].

25.6.2 IL-2-Inducible T-Cell Kinase Deficiency

IL-2-inducible T-cell kinase (ITK) deficiency is a novel PID characterized by severe EVB-

associated immune dysregulation, with a clinical picture similar to that seen in X-linked lymphoproliferative disease (XLP) [361]. ITK deficiency was originally described in 2009, where two ITK-deficient female siblings from a consanguineous Turkish family developed uncontrolled EBV infection resembling hemophagocytic lymphohistiocytosis (HLH) with eventual progression to HL [362]. In a report of three cases from a single Arab family, the first presentation was HL, whereas fulminant hemophagocytosis and severe mononucleosis appeared after remission of lymphoma [361]. Adding to the complexity of the disease, seven additional ITK-deficient patients, of who four developed HL, were identified following the screen of patients with autoimmune lymphoproliferative syndrome or suspicion of congenital forms of HLH [363, 364]. More recently, the clinical spectrum of ITK deficiency has been further extended to include late-onset isolated involvement of the lungs and the mediastinal lymph nodes with a polyclonal proliferation of small B-cells not suggestive of any malignant lymphoma [365].

In ITK deficiency, germ line loss-of-function mutations in the *ITK* gene (OMIM∗186973) result in pronounced instability or truncation of the ITK protein [361]. ITK, a member of the Tec family tyrosine kinases, is expressed in T as well as NK cells, invariant NKT cells, and mast cells [366]. ITK plays a critical modulatory role in the T-cell receptor (TCR) signaling cascade. In mice, it functions in the positive/negative selection of thymocyte development, as well as regulation of conventional vs. innate-type $CD8^+$ T-cell development [367, 368]. Moreover, $Itk^{-/-}$ $CD8^+$ T-cells fail to mount effective primary or memory immune responses to a variety of viral infections [368–370]. ITK deficiency affects the expansion of cytotoxic T lymphocytes, causes a delay in the expression of cytolytic effectors during activation, and leads to an intrinsic defect in degranulation [371]. In the absence of ITK, enhanced development of $CD4^+$ gammadelta T-cells can induce the secretion of IgE by wild-type B-cells [372]. Itk is also crucial for invariant NKT-cell development and function in mice [366]. Similarly, a characteristic reduction in naive $CD45RA^+$ T-cells and NKT cells has been reported in ITK-deficient patients [373]. Moreover, ITK has been shown to differentially regulate NK cell-mediated cytotoxicity, which might be impaired in the absence of ITK protein [374].

The development of LPD in ITK-deficient patients almost always follows primary EBV infection and is diagnosed as HL, as opposed to Burkitt's lymphoma or other NHL seen in XLP [375]. It is speculated that perturbed innate and adaptive antitumor immunosurveillance, including lack of NKT cells and impaired NK- and T-cell-mediated cytotoxicity, plays contributory roles in the development of EBV-associated LPD in ITK-deficient patients [212].

25.6.3 XMEN Disease

X-linked immunodeficiency with magnesium defect, EBV infection, and neoplasia (XMEN) disease has been recently identified in nine male patients (two of which were siblings) [376–378]. The major clinical features of XMEN disease include persistent elevation in EBV-viral load, EBV-associated LPD, often with splenomegaly, dysgammaglobulinemia, and decreased CD4:CD8 ratio. In addition, XMEN patients may have susceptibility to sinopulmonary and ear infections, viral pneumonias, and other viral infections, but these are generally mild and infrequent. EBV-associated lymphoproliferation ultimately emerges in late childhood and is the most common cause of severe morbidity and mortality in this patient population [376–378].

XMEN disease is caused by loss-of-function mutations in *MAGT1* (OMIM∗300715), which encodes a membrane-associated transporter that selectively conducts Mg^{2+} across the membrane, with almost no permeability to other cations including Ca^{2+} [379, 380]. Immunological investigations in patients with MAGT1 deficiency revealed CD4 lymphopenia, leading to an inverted CD4:CD8 ratio and reduced number of recent thymic emigrant T-cells, indicating that impaired thymopoiesis may contribute to CD4 lymphopenia. No major disturbance was observed in other lymphocyte populations. MAGT1-deficient

T-cells showed impaired proliferation and activation upon in vitro stimulation with anti-CD3 antibody. In contrast, T-cell activation in response to phorbol myristate acetate and ionomycin was intact, showing that the patients had a proximal TCR signaling defect prior to the induction of the Ca^{2+} flux. MAGT1-deficint B-cells showed normal activation upon BCR stimulation [376]. Recapitulating the patients' phenotype by knocking down MGAT1 in normal T-cells, as well as rescuing patients' T-cells with ectopic expression of MAGT1, established that MAGT1 is required for TCR-stimulated Mg^{2+} influx that transiently raises free $[Mg^{2+}]_i$ in order to temporarily coordinate T-cell activation [376, 381].

XMEN patients have uncontrolled EBV infection and a predisposition to lymphoma. This has been attributed to a selective loss of NKG2D expression (posttranscriptional, accelerated protein turnover) and the resultant impaired cytolytic responses of NK and cytotoxic $CD8^+$ T lymphocytes [377], which are essential for control of viral infections and tumor immunosurveillance [382]. Hence, MAGT1 not only mediates TCR-induced Mg^{2+} flux but also regulates the basal-free $[Mg^{2+}]_i$ homeostasis required for NKG2D cytolytic activity. This has been verified by cultivation of NK and cytotoxic $CD8^+$ T lymphocytes from XMEN patients in Mg^{2+}-supplemented medium, causing a dose-dependent increase in free $[Mg^{2+}]_i$, which did recover the cytotoxicity defect partially in cytotoxic $CD8^+$ T lymphocytes and almost completely in NK cells [377]. Most notably, magnesium supplementation in vivo concurrently reduced EBV-infected cells, which may provide an adjunctive treatment to prevent early lymphoma development and mortality in XMEN patients.

25.6.4 CD27 Deficiency and CD70 Deficiency

CD27 deficiency and CD70 deficiency are two related, newly identified PID predominantly manifesting with EBV-related diseases, hypogammaglobulinemia, and additional viral infections [383–387]. CD27 deficiency has been reported in 17 patients, of who five developed EBV-associated LPD and six developed lymphoma (HL, T-cell lymphoma, or diffuse large B-cell lymphoma) [386]. CD70 deficiency has been recently identified in four patients, of who three developed EBV-associated HL. The immunological phenotype of CD27- and CD70-deficient patients includes largely normal counts of T, B, and NK cells but reduced proportions of memory B-cells, impaired $CD8^+$ T cytotoxic responses to EBV, and variably reduced NK cell function [383, 384, 387].

CD27, a member of TNF receptor superfamily, is expressed on human naïve and some memory T-cells, germinal center and memory B-cells, plasma cells, and a subset of NK cells [388–392]. CD27 binds to its specific ligand CD70, which is structurally related to TNF and is only transiently expressed on activated dendritic, T-, and B-cells [390, 393, 394]. CD27 deficiency is caused by homozygous/compound heterozygous mutations in *CD27* gene (OMIM∗615122), resulting in absent/reduced CD27 expression [386]. CD70 deficiency is caused by homozygous frameshift or in-frame deletions in *CD70* gene (OMIM∗602840), causing an abolished CD70 surface expression or binding to its cognate receptor CD27 [387].

CD27-CD70 interaction regulates the survival, function, and differentiation of T-, B-, NK, and plasma cells [383, 390, 395]. In T-cells, CD27-CD70 interaction is critical for cell proliferation, long-term maintenance of antigen-specific T-cells, antiviral responses, antitumor immunity, and alloreactivity [396, 397]. In B-cells, ligation of CD27 by CD70 results in enhanced plasma cell formation and increased IgG production [397]. CD27–CD70 interaction is also essential for augmented IFN-γ secretion by NK cells [398, 399] and development of iNKT cells [384]. These data support the notion that CD27 deficiency and Cd70 deficiency can increase susceptibility to malignancies.

25.6.5 CTPS1 Deficiency

CTP synthase 1 (CTPS1) deficiency is a novel autosomal recessive PID characterized with

early-onset severe viral (EBV and VZV) and bacterial infections, LPD and EBV-associated NHL. CTPS1 deficiency has been reported in eight patients from five different families, of who two patients developed EBV-driven B-cell NHL. The immunologic features of CTPS1 deficiency include variable lymphopenia (exacerbated during infection episodes) with inversed CD4:CD8 T-cell ratio and poor proliferation to antigen, decreased expansion of NK cells, and low numbers of iNKT and MAIT cells, with normal to elevated immunoglobulin levels [400].

CTPS1 deficiency is caused by homozygous mutations in cytidine 5-prime triphosphate synthase 1 (*CTPS1*) gene (OMIM∗123860). CTPS1 is required for the de novo synthesis of the CTP nucleotide, a precursor of the metabolism of nucleic acid. CTP synthase activity is a potentially important step for DNA synthesis in lymphocytes, as evident by enhanced expression of CTPS1 following TCR activation, as well as impaired capacity of activated T- and B-cells to proliferate in response to antigen receptor mediated activation in the absence of CTPS1 [400]. The finding that CTPS1 deficiency causes no extra-hematopoietic manifestations favors a redundancy with CTPS2 activity in other cell lineages and tissues.

25.6.6 RASGRP1 Deficiency

RASGRP1 deficiency is a novel autosomal recessive PID, which has been reported in only four patients presented with EBV-associated LPD and EBV-driven HL [401–403]. The immunologic features of RASGRP1 deficiency include lymphopenia notably characterized by decreased counts of B-cells, naïve $CD4^+$ and $CD8^+$ T-cells, NK cells, MAIT and absence of iNKT cells, and impaired T-cell proliferation in response to antigens and mitogens [401–403].

RASGRP1 deficiency is caused by homozygous mutations in RAS guanyl releasing protein 1 (*RASGRP1*) gene (OMIM∗603962). RASGRP1 is a guanine-nucleotide-exchange factor (GEF) preferentially expressed in T- and NK cells, which in turn activates the cascade of Raf-MEK-ERK kinases (also termed as the MAP kinases/MAPK cascade) [404, 405]. Notably, RASGRP1-deficient T-cells exhibit defective MAPK activation and decreased CD27-dependent proliferation toward CD70-expressing EBV-transformed B-cells, which is a crucial pathway required for expansion of antigen-specific T-cells during anti-EBV immunity, as well as failure to up-regulate CTPS1, which is an important enzyme involved in DNA synthesis [401].

25.6.7 RLTPR (CARMIL2) Deficiency

RLTPR deficiency is a novel autosomal recessive PID characterized by recurrent bacterial, fungal, and mycobacterial infections, viral warts, Molluscum contagiosum, malignancies, as well as atopy [406–408]. To date, 14 patients have been reported in the literature, of who one was diagnosed with leiomyosarcoma and four were diagnosed with EBV-positive disseminated smooth muscle tumors [406, 408]. Immune phenotypic and functional studies are indicative of impaired naïve-T cell activation, proliferation, effector function, and insufficient gain of T-cell memory, with particular absence of regulatory T-cells [408].

RLTPR deficiency is caused by mutations in RGD motif, leucine rich repeats, tropomodulin domain, and proline-rich containing (*RLTPR*) gene (OMIM∗610859), also known as *CARMIL2* (capping protein regulator and myosin 1 linker 2). RLTPR deficiency selectively impairs the activation of the canonical NF-κB pathway in a CD28-dependent manner, and leads to defective cytoskeletal organization and migration. Of note, RLTPR deficiency is not associated with EBV-induced B-cell proliferation, but rather with slowly proliferating smooth muscle tumors associated with EBV infection [408].

25.6.8 Autoimmune Lymphoproliferative Syndrome

Autoimmune lymphoproliferative syndrome (ALPS) is a rare disease characterized by defective

Fas-mediated apoptosis that disrupt lymphocyte homeostasis [409]. The prevalence and true incidence of ALPS are unknown, likely since many instances remain undiagnosed or misdiagnosed. Though considered a rare disease, ALPS is now more commonly diagnosed given recognition of adult-onset disease and patients with a mild phenotype [410]. Apoptotic defects lead to LPD manifesting with lymphadenopathy, hepatomegaly, splenomegaly, autoimmune disease, and secondary malignancies. Autoimmunity, affecting over 70% of patients, is mainly directed against blood cells [411]. Other autoimmune manifestations are rare and include autoimmune nephritis, hepatitis, arthritis, uveitis, iridocyclitis, and vasculitis [412]. Autoantibodies are more common than obvious clinical disease and present in up to 92% of patients [413]. Signature laboratory abnormalities in ALPS include an increased number of characteristic T-cell population termed double-negative T (DNT) cells (though not pathogonomic), as well as in vitro evidence of defective Fas-mediated lymphocyte apoptosis. Furthermore, elevated circulating levels of soluble FAS ligand (sFASL), IL-10, vitamin B12, IL-18, and IgG may be useful to aid in diagnosis [414–420].

Germline or somatic mutations in genes regulating the Fas apoptotic pathway, including *FAS* (*TNFRSF6*, or *CD95*; OMIM∗134637), *FASL* (*TNFSF6*, or *CD95L*; OMIM∗134638), and *CASP10* (OMIM∗601762), have all been linked to ALPS [421]. Over the past decade, improvements in genomic technologies have led to the description of a number of ALPS-like autoimmune and LPD which are often misdiagnosed as ALPS, including *RAS*-associated leukoproliferative disease (RALD) [422]; caspase-8 deficiency state (CEDS) [423]; *p110delta* activating mutation causing senescent T-cells, lymphadenopathy, and immunodeficiency (PASLI or activated PI3K delta syndrome) [424]; *CTLA-4* haploinsufficiency with autoimmune infiltration (CHAI) [425]; gain-of-function signal transducer and activator of transcription 3 (*STAT3*) mutations [426]; and lipopolysaccharide-responsive vesicle trafficking, beach and anchor containing (*LRBA*) deficiency with autoantibodies, regulatory T-cell defects, autoimmune infiltration, and enteropathy (LATAIE) [425, 427]. XLP, a genetic immunodeficiency caused by mutations or deletions in the *SH2D1A* gene, can be included in the spectrum of ALPS-like disorders, since these patients frequently display defective apoptosis in response to TCR restimulation [428, 429]. Mutations in the ALPS and ALPS-related genes often manifest with variable penetrance [430]. Thus, patients with ALPS often have family members with the same genetic mutation with no clinical phenotype or very mild symptoms. The penetrance of the mutation is not related to the type of mutation but probably depends on unknown genetic and environmental modifiers. Hence, the clinical significance of isolated detection of a heterozygous Fas mutation in a healthy relative of a patient with ALPS is not yet clear.

Apoptosis is critical in tumor scrutiny as FAS, a putative tumor suppressor, is silenced in many tumors [431–433]. As anticipated, patients with ALPS have an increased risk of malignancies, most commonly both HL and NHL [434, 435]. This risk is estimated to be up to 60 to 150 times that of the general population and is more prevalent in *FAS* mutant [410, 434]. An increased risk of cancer has also been observed in unaffected family members who may inherit the same mutation but fail to develop an overt ALPS phenotype [434]. Sporadic NHL harbors somatic mutations of the *FAS* gene in 11% [436] of cases and in the *CASP10* gene in 14.5% of cases [437]. Furthermore, in HL, somatic *FAS* gene mutations are found in Reed–Sternberg cells in 10–20% of cases [431, 438].

25.6.9 Autoimmune Polyendocrinopathy with Candidiasis and Ectodermal Dystrophy

Autoimmune polyendocrinopathy with candidiasis and ectodermal dystrophy (APECED), formerly known as autoimmune polyendocrine syndrome type I (APS-1), is a rare autosomal recessive disease, most commonly seen in Iranian

Jews, Sardinians, and Finns. The diagnosis of APECED is reached if patients manifest at least two of the following conditions: (1) chronic mucocutaneous candidiasis (CMC), (2) hypoparathyroidism, or (3) Addison's disease. Additional autoimmune components may appear throughout life and include gonadal failure, diabetes mellitus type 1, hypothyroidism, pernicious anemia, hepatitis, alopecia, vitiligo, and/or ectodermal dystrophies. Although the endocrine features are clearly autoimmune, the underlying immunodeficiency predisposing to CMC has been a long-standing puzzle. Recently, autoantibodies against the Th17-related cytokines IL-22, IL-17A, and IL-17F, which are implicated in protection against fungi at epithelial surfaces, were discovered in the sera of APS-1 patients [439, 440], suggesting that the underlying immunodeficiency in patients with APECED has an autoimmune basis.

The disease is characterized by loss of tolerance against self-antigens [441, 442], which is caused by mutations in the autoimmune regulator (*AIRE*) gene (OMIM∗607358) [443, 444]. AIRE acts as a crucial transcription regulator that prompts immunological central tolerance by inducing the ectopic thymic expression of many tissue-specific antigens, among other functions [445, 446]. Although the syndrome is a monogenic disease, the great variability that characterizes APECED implies that additional factors modulate the clinical expression of the disease.

Several cases of oral and esophageal SCC have been reported in APECED patients with CMC [447–450]. In a cohort of 92 Finnish patients, six had developed oral or esophageal SCC by the mean age of 37, representing 10% of patients older than 25 years [447]. The partial T-cell defect of APECED seems to favor the growth of *Candida albicans* and predispose to chronic mucositis and the development of SCC. Besides chronic inflammation and increased cell turnover, *Candida albicans* biotypes are capable of producing the carcinogenic nitrosamine N-nitrosobenzylmethylamine [451, 452], and can also act to promote oral carcinogenesis in rats when a known carcinogen, 4-nitroquinoline-1-oxide, is repeatedly applied [453].

25.7 Concluding Remarks

The expanded life expectancy of patients with PIDs has increased the overall risk for developing cancers. However, the management of cancers in such patients remains challenging, in part due to the rarity, the increased risk for infection and other complications, as well as the rather slow pace of scientific advancement related to these conditions. Continued progress in understanding the interplay between chronic antigen stimulation, oncogenic viruses, genetic factors, and impaired host immunity during tumor formation in various PIDs may lead to earlier diagnosis of the disease, choosing the best treatment modalities available and development of novel therapeutic strategies to decrease morbidity and mortality brought about by malignancies.

References

1. Chinen J, Badran YR, Geha RS, Chou JS, Fried AJ. Advances in basic and clinical immunology in 2016. J Allergy Clin Immunol. 2017;140(4):959–73.
2. Bousfiha A, Jeddane L, Al-Herz W, Ailal F, Casanova JL, Chatila T, et al. The 2015 IUIS phenotypic classification for primary immunodeficiencies. J Clin Immunol. 2015;35(8):727–38.
3. Bousfiha AA, Jeddane L, Ailal F, Benhsaien I, Mahlaoui N, Casanova JL, et al. Primary immunodeficiency diseases worldwide: more common than generally thought. J Clin Immunol. 2013;33(1):1–7.
4. Filipovich AH, Mathur A, Kamat D, Shapiro RS. Primary immunodeficiencies: genetic risk factors for lymphoma. Cancer Res. 1992;52(19 Suppl):5465s–7s.
5. Mueller BU, Pizzo PA. Cancer in children with primary or secondary immunodeficiencies. J Pediatr. 1995;126(1):1–10.
6. Salavoura K, Kolialexi A, Tsangaris G, Mavrou A. Development of cancer in patients with primary immunodeficiencies. Anticancer Res. 2008;28(2B):1263–9.
7. Dunn GP, Old LJ, Schreiber RD. The immunobiology of cancer immunosurveillance and immunoediting. Immunity. 2004;21(2):137–48.
8. Martin D, Gutkind JS. Human tumor-associated viruses and new insights into the molecular mechanisms of cancer. Oncogene. 2008;27(Suppl 2):S31–42.
9. Philip M, Rowley DA, Schreiber H. Inflammation as a tumor promoter in cancer induction. Semin Cancer Biol. 2004;14(6):433–9.

10. Bartkova J, Horejsi Z, Koed K, Kramer A, Tort F, Zieger K, et al. DNA damage response as a candidate anti-cancer barrier in early human tumorigenesis. Nature. 2005;434(7035):864–70.
11. Tran H, Nourse J, Hall S, Green M, Griffiths L, Gandhi MK. Immunodeficiency-associated lymphomas. Blood Rev. 2008;22(5):261–81.
12. Chakraborty R, Sankaranarayanan K. Cancer predisposition, radiosensitivity and the risk of radiation-induced cancers. II. A Mendelian single-locus model of cancer predisposition and radiosensitivity for predicting cancer risks in populations. Radiat Res. 1995;143(3):293–301.
13. Kamani NR, Kumar S, Hassebroek A, Eapen M, LeRademacher J, Casper J, et al. Malignancies after hematopoietic cell transplantation for primary immune deficiencies: a report from the Center for International Blood and Marrow Transplant Research. Biol Blood Marrow Transplant. 2011;17(12):1783–9.
14. Hammarstrom L, Vorechovsky I, Webster D. Selective IgA deficiency (SIgAD) and common variable immunodeficiency (CVID). Clin Exp Immunol. 2000;120(2):225–31.
15. Chua I, Quinti I, Grimbacher B. Lymphoma in common variable immunodeficiency: interplay between immune dysregulation, infection and genetics. Curr Opin Hematol. 2008;15(4):368–74.
16. Cunningham-Rundles C. How I treat common variable immune deficiency. Blood. 2010;116(1):7–15.
17. Tak Manesh A, Azizi G, Heydari A, Kiaee F, Shaghaghi M, Hossein-Khannazer N, et al. Epidemiology and pathophysiology of malignancy in common variable immunodeficiency? Allergol Immunopathol. 2017;45(6):602–15.
18. Cunningham-Rundles C, Bodian C. Common variable immunodeficiency: clinical and immunological features of 248 patients. Clin Immunol. 1999;92(1):34–48.
19. Kinlen LJ, Webster AD, Bird AG, Haile R, Peto J, Soothill JF, et al. Prospective study of cancer in patients with hypogammaglobulinaemia. Lancet. 1985;1(8423):263–6.
20. Cunningham-Rundles C, Siegal FP, Cunningham-Rundles S, Lieberman P. Incidence of cancer in 98 patients with common varied immunodeficiency. J Clin Immunol. 1987;7(4):294–9.
21. Hermaszewski RA, Webster AD. Primary hypogammaglobulinaemia: a survey of clinical manifestations and complications. Q J Med. 1993;86(1):31–42.
22. Zullo A, Romiti A, Rinaldi V, Vecchione A, Tomao S, Aiuti F, et al. Gastric pathology in patients with common variable immunodeficiency. Gut. 1999;45(1):77–81.
23. Kienzler AK, Hargreaves CE, Patel SY. The role of genomics in common variable immunodeficiency disorders. Clin Exp Immunol. 2017;188(3):326–32.
24. Bogaert DJ, Dullaers M, Lambrecht BN, Vermaelen KY, De Baere E, Haerynck F. Genes associated with common variable immunodeficiency: one diagnosis to rule them all? J Med Genet. 2016;53(9):575–90.
25. Cunningham-Rundles C. Clinical and immunologic analyses of 103 patients with common variable immunodeficiency. J Clin Immunol. 1989;9(1):22–33.
26. Boncristiano M, Majolini MB, D'Elios MM, Pacini S, Valensin S, Ulivieri C, et al. Defective recruitment and activation of ZAP-70 in common variable immunodeficiency patients with T cell defects. Eur J Immunol. 2000;30(9):2632–8.
27. Gulbranson-Judge A, Tybulewicz VL, Walters AE, Toellner KM, MacLennan IC, Turner M. Defective immunoglobulin class switching in Vav-deficient mice is attributable to compromised T cell help. Eur J Immunol. 1999;29(2):477–87.
28. Baumert E, Wolff-Vorbeck G, Schlesier M, Peter HH. Immunophenotypical alterations in a subset of patients with common variable immunodeficiency (CVID). Clin Exp Immunol. 1992;90(1):25–30.
29. Holm AM, Sivertsen EA, Tunheim SH, Haug T, Bjerkeli V, Yndestad A, et al. Gene expression analysis of peripheral T cells in a subgroup of common variable immunodeficiency shows predominance of CCR7(-) effector-memory T cells. Clin Exp Immunol. 2004;138(2):278–89.
30. North ME, Webster AD, Farrant J. Primary defect in CD8+ lymphocytes in the antibody deficiency disease (common variable immunodeficiency): abnormalities in intracellular production of interferon-gamma (IFN-gamma) in CD28+ ('cytotoxic') and CD28- ('suppressor') CD8+ subsets. Clin Exp Immunol. 1998;111(1):70–5.
31. Bayry J, Hermine O, Webster DA, Levy Y, Kaveri SV. Common variable immunodeficiency: the immune system in chaos. Trends Mol Med. 2005;11(8):370–6.
32. Farrington M, Grosmaire LS, Nonoyama S, Fischer SH, Hollenbaugh D, Ledbetter JA, et al. CD40 ligand expression is defective in a subset of patients with common variable immunodeficiency. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 1994;91(3):1099–103.
33. Azizi G, Hafezi N, Mohammadi H, Yazdani R, Alinia T, Tavakol M, et al. Abnormality of regulatory T cells in common variable immunodeficiency. Cell Immunol. 2017;315:11–7.
34. Aspalter RM, Sewell WA, Dolman K, Farrant J, Webster AD. Deficiency in circulating natural killer (NK) cell subsets in common variable immunodeficiency and X-linked agammaglobulinaemia. Clin Exp Immunol. 2000;121(3):506–14.
35. Trujillo CM, Muskus C, Arango J, Patino PJ, Montoya CJ. Quantitative and functional evaluation of innate immune responses in patients with common variable immunodeficiency. J Investig Allergol Clin Immunol. 2011;21(3):207–15.
36. Hussell T, Isaacson PG, Crabtree JE, Spencer J. The response of cells from low-grade B-cell gastric lymphomas of mucosa-associated lymphoid tissue to Helicobacter pylori. Lancet. 1993;342(8871):571–4.

37. Wheat WH, Cool CD, Morimoto Y, Rai PR, Kirkpatrick CH, Lindenbaum BA, et al. Possible role of human herpesvirus 8 in the lymphoproliferative disorders in common variable immunodeficiency. J Exp Med. 2005;202(4):479–84.
38. Raeiszadeh M, Kopycinski J, Paston SJ, Diss T, Lowdell M, Hardy GA, et al. The T cell response to persistent herpes virus infections in common variable immunodeficiency. Clin Exp Immunol. 2006;146(2):234–42.
39. Vu J, Wallace GR, Singh R, Diwan H, Prieto V, Rady P, et al. Common variable immunodeficiency syndrome associated with epidermodysplasia verruciformis. Am J Clin Dermatol. 2007;8(5):307–10.
40. Zuccaro G, Della Bella S, Polizzi B, Vanoli M, Scorza R. Common variable immunodeficiency following Epstein–Barr virus infection. J Clin Lab Immunol. 1997;49(1):41–5.
41. He B, Chadburn A, Jou E, Schattner EJ, Knowles DM, Cerutti A. Lymphoma B cells evade apoptosis through the TNF family members BAFF/BLyS and APRIL. J Immunol. 2004;172(5):3268–79.
42. Kern C, Cornuel JF, Billard C, Tang R, Rouillard D, Stenou V, et al. Involvement of BAFF and APRIL in the resistance to apoptosis of B-CLL through an autocrine pathway. Blood. 2004;103(2):679–88.
43. Vorechovsky I, Scott D, Haeney MR, Webster DA. Chromosomal radiosensitivity in common variable immune deficiency. Mutat Res. 1993;290(2):255–64.
44. Lederman HM, Winkelstein JA. X-linked agammaglobulinemia: an analysis of 96 patients. Medicine (Baltimore). 1985;64(3):145–56.
45. Ochs HD, Smith CI. X-linked agammaglobulinemia. A clinical and molecular analysis. Medicine (Baltimore). 1996;75(6):287–99.
46. McKinney RE Jr, Katz SL, Wilfert CM. Chronic enteroviral meningoencephalitis in agammaglobulinemic patients. Rev Infect Dis. 1987;9(2):334–56.
47. Vihinen M, Mattsson PT, Smith CI. Bruton tyrosine kinase (BTK) in X-linked agammaglobulinemia (XLA). Front Biosci. 2000;5:D917–28.
48. Aoki Y, Isselbacher KJ, Pillai S. Bruton tyrosine kinase is tyrosine phosphorylated and activated in pre-B lymphocytes and receptor-ligated B cells. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 1994;91(22):10606–9.
49. Afar DE, Park H, Howell BW, Rawlings DJ, Cooper J, Witte ON. Regulation of Btk by Src family tyrosine kinases. Mol Cell Biol. 1996;16(7):3465–71.
50. Takata M, Kurosaki T. A role for Bruton's tyrosine kinase in B cell antigen receptor-mediated activation of phospholipase C-gamma 2. J Exp Med. 1996;184(1):31–40.
51. Scharenberg AM, El-Hillal O, Fruman DA, Beitz LO, Li Z, Lin S, et al. Phosphatidylinositol-3,4,5-trisphosphate (PtdIns-3,4,5-P3)/Tec kinase-dependent calcium signaling pathway: a target for SHIP-mediated inhibitory signals. EMBO J. 1998;17(7):1961–72.
52. Uckun F, Ozer Z, Vassilev A. Bruton's tyrosine kinase prevents activation of the anti-apoptotic transcription factor STAT3 and promotes apoptosis in neoplastic B-cells and B-cell precursors exposed to oxidative stress. Br J Haematol. 2007;136(4):574–89.
53. Sochorova K, Horvath R, Rozkova D, Litzman J, Bartunkova J, Sediva A, et al. Impaired Toll-like receptor 8-mediated IL-6 and TNF-alpha production in antigen-presenting cells from patients with X-linked agammaglobulinemia. Blood. 2007;109(6):2553–6.
54. Lougaris V, Baronio M, Vitali M, Tampella G, Cattalini M, Tassone L, et al. Bruton tyrosine kinase mediates TLR9-dependent human dendritic cell activation. J Allergy Clin Immunol. 2014;133(6):1644–50 e4.
55. van der Meer JW, Weening RS, Schellekens PT, van Munster IP, Nagengast FM. Colorectal cancer in patients with X-linked agammaglobulinaemia. Lancet. 1993;341(8858):1439–40.
56. James RG, Biechele TL, Conrad WH, Camp ND, Fass DM, Major MB, et al. Bruton's tyrosine kinase revealed as a negative regulator of Wnt-beta-catenin signaling. Sci Signal. 2009;2(72):ra25.
57. Espada J, Calvo MB, Diaz-Prado S, Medina V. Wnt signalling and cancer stem cells. Clin Transl Oncol. 2009;11(7):411–27.
58. Lavilla P, Gil A, Rodriguez MC, Dupla ML, Pintado V, Fontan G. X-linked agammaglobulinemia and gastric adenocarcinoma. Cancer. 1993;72(5):1528–31.
59. Echave-Sustaeta JM, Villena V, Verdugo M, Lopez-Encuentra A, de Agustin P, Alberti N. X-linked agammaglobulinaemia and squamous lung cancer. Eur Respir J. 2001;17(3):570–2.
60. Kanavaros P, Rontogianni D, Hrissovergi D, Efthimiadoy A, Argyrakos T, Mastoris K, et al. Extranodal cytotoxic T-cell lymphoma in a patient with X-linked agammaglobulinaemia. Leuk Lymphoma. 2001;42(1-2):235–8.
61. al-Attas RA, Rahi AH. Primary antibody deficiency in Arabs: first report from eastern Saudi Arabia. J Clin Immunol. 1998;18(5):368–71.
62. Kanoh T, Mizumoto T, Yasuda N, Koya M, Ohno Y, Uchino H, et al. Selective IgA deficiency in Japanese blood donors: frequency and statistical analysis. Vox Sang. 1986;50(2):81–6.
63. Conley ME, Notarangelo LD, Etzioni A. Diagnostic criteria for primary immunodeficiencies. Representing PAGID (Pan-American Group for Immunodeficiency) and ESID (European Society for Immunodeficiencies). Clin Immunol. 1999;93(3):190–7.
64. Yel L. Selective IgA deficiency. J Clin Immunol. 2010;30(1):10–6.
65. Jacob CM, Pastorino AC, Fahl K, Carneiro-Sampaio M, Monteiro RC. Autoimmunity in IgA deficiency: revisiting the role of IgA as a silent housekeeper. J Clin Immunol. 2008;28(Suppl 1):S56–61.

66. Ballow M. Primary immunodeficiency disorders: antibody deficiency. J Allergy Clin Immunol. 2002;109(4):581–91.
67. Cunningham-Rundles C. Physiology of IgA and IgA deficiency. J Clin Immunol. 2001;21(5):303–9.
68. Chow MA, Lebwohl B, Reilly NR, Green PH. Immunoglobulin A deficiency in celiac disease. J Clin Gastroenterol. 2012;46(10):850–4.
69. Castigli E, Wilson SA, Garibyan L, Rachid R, Bonilla F, Schneider L, et al. TACI is mutant in common variable immunodeficiency and IgA deficiency. Nat Genet. 2005;37(8):829–34.
70. Haimila K, Einarsdottir E, de Kauwe A, Koskinen LL, Pan-Hammarstrom Q, Kaartinen T, et al. The shared CTLA4-ICOS risk locus in celiac disease, IgA deficiency and common variable immunodeficiency. Genes Immun. 2009;10(2):151–61.
71. Wang N, Hammarstrom L. IgA deficiency: what is new? Curr Opin Allergy Clin Immunol. 2012;12(6):602–8.
72. Bronson PG, Chang D, Bhangale T, Seldin MF, Ortmann W, Ferreira RC, et al. Common variants at PVT1, ATG13-AMBRA1, AHI1 and CLEC16A are associated with selective IgA deficiency. Nat Genet. 2016;48(11):1425–9.
73. Zenone T, Souquet PJ, Cunningham-Rundles C, Bernard JP. Hodgkin's disease associated with IgA and IgG subclass deficiency. J Intern Med. 1996;240(2):99–102.
74. Cunningham-Rundles C, Pudifin DJ, Armstrong D, Good RA. Selective IgA deficiency and neoplasia. Vox Sang. 1980;38(2):61–7.
75. Strober W, Sneller MC. IgA deficiency. Ann Allergy. 1991;66(5):363–75.
76. Buckley RH. Clinical and immunologic features of selective IgA deficiency. Birth Defects Orig Artic Ser. 1975;11(1):134–42.
77. De Laat PC, Weemaes CM, Gonera R, Van Munster PJ, Bakkeren JA, Stoelinga GB. Clinical manifestations in selective IgA deficiency in childhood. A follow-up report. Acta Paediatr Scand. 1991;80(8-9):798–804.
78. Lee CH, Quin JW, Wong CS, Grace CS, Rozenberg MC. IgA deficiency, superior mediastinal tumour with unusual clinical manifestations. Aust N Z J Med. 1979;9(3):306–9.
79. Hamoudi AB, Ertel I, Newton WA Jr, Reiner CB, Clatworthy HW Jr. Multiple neoplasms in an adolescent child associated with IGA deficiency. Cancer. 1974;33(4):1134–44.
80. Shkalim V, Monselize Y, Segal N, Zan-Bar I, Hoffer V, Garty BZ. Selective IgA deficiency in children in Israel. J Clin Immunol. 2010;30(5):761–5.
81. Shiow LR, Paris K, Akana MC, Cyster JG, Sorensen RU, Puck JM. Severe combined immunodeficiency (SCID) and attention deficit hyperactivity disorder (ADHD) associated with a Coronin-1A mutation and a chromosome 16p11.2 deletion. Clin Immunol. 2009;131(1):24–30.
82. Shiow LR, Roadcap DW, Paris K, Watson SR, Grigorova IL, Lebet T, et al. The actin regulator coronin 1A is mutant in a thymic egress-deficient mouse strain and in a patient with severe combined immunodeficiency. Nat Immunol. 2008;9(11):1307–15.
83. Moshous D, Martin E, Carpentier W, Lim A, Callebaut I, Canioni D, et al. Whole-exome sequencing identifies Coronin-1A deficiency in 3 siblings with immunodeficiency and EBV-associated B-cell lymphoproliferation. J Allergy Clin Immunol. 2013;131(6):1594–603.
84. Stray-Pedersen A, Jouanguy E, Crequer A, Bertuch AA, Brown BS, Jhangiani SN, et al. Compound heterozygous CORO1A mutations in siblings with a mucocutaneous-immunodeficiency syndrome of epidermodysplasia verruciformis-HPV, molluscum contagiosum and granulomatous tuberculoid leprosy. J Clin Immunol. 2014;34(7):871–90.
85. Punwani D, Pelz B, Yu J, Arva NC, Schafernak K, Kondratowicz K, et al. Coronin-1A: immune deficiency in humans and mice. J Clin Immunol. 2015;35(2):100–7.
86. Yee CS, Massaad MJ, Bainter W, Ohsumi TK, Foger N, Chan AC, et al. Recurrent viral infections associated with a homozygous CORO1A mutation that disrupts oligomerization and cytoskeletal association. J Allergy Clin Immunol. 2016;137(3):879–88 e2.
87. Mace EM, Orange JS. Lytic immune synapse function requires filamentous actin deconstruction by Coronin 1A. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2014;111(18):6708–13.
88. Nal B, Carroll P, Mohr E, Verthuy C, Da Silva MI, Gayet O, et al. Coronin-1 expression in T lymphocytes: insights into protein function during T cell development and activation. Int Immunol. 2004;16(2):231–40.
89. Ferrari G, Langen H, Naito M, Pieters J. A coat protein on phagosomes involved in the intracellular survival of mycobacteria. Cell. 1999;97(4):435–47.
90. Grogan A, Reeves E, Keep N, Wientjes F, Totty NF, Burlingame AL, et al. Cytosolic phox proteins interact with and regulate the assembly of coronin in neutrophils. J Cell Sci. 1997;110(Pt 24):3071–81.
91. Pick R, Begandt D, Stocker TJ, Salvermoser M, Thome S, Bottcher RT, et al. Coronin 1A, a novel player in integrin biology, controls neutrophil trafficking in innate immunity. Blood. 2017;130(7):847–58.
92. Abdollahpour H, Appaswamy G, Kotlarz D, Diestelhorst J, Beier R, Schaffer AA, et al. The phenotype of human STK4 deficiency. Blood. 2012;119(15):3450–7.
93. Nehme NT, Schmid JP, Debeurme F, Andre-Schmutz I, Lim A, Nitschke P, et al. MST1 mutations in autosomal recessive primary immunodeficiency characterized by defective naive T-cell survival. Blood. 2012;119(15):3458–68.
94. Halacli SO, Ayvaz DC, Sun-Tan C, Erman B, Uz E, Yilmaz DY, et al. STK4 (MST1) deficiency in two

siblings with autoimmune cytopenias: a novel mutation. Clin Immunol. 2015;161(2):316–23.
95. Dang TS, Willet JD, Griffin HR, Morgan NV, O'Boyle G, Arkwright PD, et al. Defective leukocyte adhesion and chemotaxis contributes to combined immunodeficiency in humans with autosomal recessive MST1 deficiency. J Clin Immunol. 2016;36(2):117–22.
96. Lee JK, Shin JH, Hwang SG, Gwag BJ, McKee AC, Lee J, et al. MST1 functions as a key modulator of neurodegeneration in a mouse model of ALS. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2013;110(29):12066–71.
97. Maejima Y, Kyoi S, Zhai P, Liu T, Li H, Ivessa A, et al. Mst1 inhibits autophagy by promoting the interaction between Beclin1 and Bcl-2. Nat Med. 2013;19(11):1478–88.
98. Wilkinson DS, Jariwala JS, Anderson E, Mitra K, Meisenhelder J, Chang JT, et al. Phosphorylation of LC3 by the Hippo kinases STK3/STK4 is essential for autophagy. Mol Cell. 2015;57(1):55–68.
99. Markert ML. Purine nucleoside phosphorylase deficiency. Immunodefic Rev. 1991;3(1):45–81.
100. Pannicke U, Tuchschmid P, Friedrich W, Bartram CR, Schwarz K. Two novel missense and frameshift mutations in exons 5 and 6 of the purine nucleoside phosphorylase (PNP) gene in a severe combined immunodeficiency (SCID) patient. Hum Genet. 1996;98(6):706–9.
101. Banzhoff A, Schauer U, Riedel F, Gahr M, Rieger CH. Fatal varicella in a 5-year-old boy. Eur J Pediatr. 1997;156(4):333–4.
102. Gelfand EW, Dosch HM, Biggar WD, Fox IH. Partial purine nucleoside phosphorylase deficiency. Studies of lymphocyte function. J Clin Invest. 1978;61(4):1071–80.
103. Andrews LG, Markert ML. Exon skipping in purine nucleoside phosphorylase mRNA processing leading to severe immunodeficiency. J Biol Chem. 1992;267(11):7834–8.
104. Aust MR, Andrews LG, Barrett MJ, Norby-Slycord CJ, Markert ML. Molecular analysis of mutations in a patient with purine nucleoside phosphorylase deficiency. Am J Hum Genet. 1992;51(4):763–72.
105. Tam DA Jr, Leshner RT. Stroke in purine nucleoside phosphorylase deficiency. Pediatr Neurol. 1995;12(2):146–8.
106. Carpenter PA, Ziegler JB, Vowels MR. Late diagnosis and correction of purine nucleoside phosphorylase deficiency with allogeneic bone marrow transplantation. Bone Marrow Transplant. 1996;17(1):121–4.
107. Stoop JW, Zegers BJ, Hendrickx GF, van Heukelom LH, Staal GE, de Bree PK, et al. Purine nucleoside phosphorylase deficiency associated with selective cellular immunodeficiency. N Engl J Med. 1977;296(12):651–5.
108. Soutar RL, Day RE. Dysequilibrium/ataxic diplegia with immunodeficiency. Arch Dis Child. 1991;66(8):982–3.
109. Markert ML, Finkel BD, McLaughlin TM, Watson TJ, Collard HR, McMahon CP, et al. Mutations in purine nucleoside phosphorylase deficiency. Hum Mutat. 1997;9(2):118–21.
110. Ochs UH, Chen SH, Ochs HD, Osborne WR, Scott CR. Purine nucleoside phosphorylase deficiency: a molecular model for selective loss of T cell function. J Immunol. 1979;122(6):2424–9.
111. Gudas LJ, Ullman B, Cohen A, Martin DW Jr. Deoxyguanosine toxicity in a mouse T lymphoma: relationship to purine nucleoside phosphorylase-associated immune dysfunction. Cell. 1978;14(3):531–8.
112. Ullman B, Gudas LJ, Clift SM, Martin DW Jr. Isolation and characterization of purine-nucleoside phosphorylase-deficient T-lymphoma cells and secondary mutants with altered ribonucleotide reductase: genetic model for immunodeficiency disease. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 1979;76(3):1074–8.
113. Snyder FF, Jenuth JP, Dilay JE, Fung E, Lightfoot T, Mably ER. Secondary loss of deoxyguanosine kinase activity in purine nucleoside phosphorylase deficient mice. Biochim Biophys Acta. 1994;1227(1-2):33–40.
114. Jenuth JP, Dilay JE, Fung E, Mably ER, Snyder FF. Absence of dGTP accumulation and compensatory loss of deoxyguanosine kinase in purine nucleoside phosphorylase deficient mice. Adv Exp Med Biol. 1991;309B:273–6.
115. Park I, Ives DH. Properties of a highly purified mitochondrial deoxyguanosine kinase. Arch Biochem Biophys. 1988;266(1):51–60.
116. Giblett ER, Ammann AJ, Wara DW, Sandman R, Diamond LK. Nucleoside-phosphorylase deficiency in a child with severely defective T-cell immunity and normal B-cell immunity. Lancet. 1975;1(7914):1010–3.
117. Carson DA, Kaye J, Seegmiller JE. Lymphospecific toxicity in adenosine deaminase deficiency and purine nucleoside phosphorylase deficiency: possible role of nucleoside kinase(s). Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 1977;74(12):5677–81.
118. Kazmers IS, Mitchell BS, Dadonna PE, Wotring LL, Townsend LB, Kelley WN. Inhibition of purine nucleoside phosphorylase by 8-aminoguanosine: selective toxicity for T lymphoblasts. Science. 1981;214(4525):1137–9.
119. Veis DJ, Sentman CL, Bach EA, Korsmeyer SJ. Expression of the Bcl-2 protein in murine and human thymocytes and in peripheral T lymphocytes. J Immunol. 1993;151(5):2546–54.
120. Cohen A, Lee JW, Dosch HM, Gelfand EW. The expression of deoxyguanosine toxicity in T lymphocytes at different stages of maturation. J Immunol. 1980;125(4):1578–82.
121. Kirchhausen T, Rosen FS. Disease mechanism: unravelling Wiskott–Aldrich syndrome. Curr Biol. 1996;6(6):676–8.
122. Sullivan KE, Mullen CA, Blaese RM, Winkelstein JA. A multiinstitutional survey of the Wiskott–Aldrich syndrome. J Pediatr. 1994;125(6 Pt 1):876–85.

123. Dupuis-Girod S, Medioni J, Haddad E, Quartier P, Cavazzana-Calvo M, Le Deist F, et al. Autoimmunity in Wiskott–Aldrich syndrome: risk factors, clinical features, and outcome in a single-center cohort of 55 patients. Pediatrics. 2003;111(5 Pt 1):e622–7.
124. Massaad MJ, Ramesh N, Geha RS. Wiskott–Aldrich syndrome: a comprehensive review. Ann N Y Acad Sci. 2013;1285:26–43.
125. Imai K, Morio T, Zhu Y, Jin Y, Itoh S, Kajiwara M, et al. Clinical course of patients with WASP gene mutations. Blood. 2004;103(2):456–64.
126. Shcherbina A, Candotti F, Rosen FS, Remold-O'Donnell E. High incidence of lymphomas in a subgroup of Wiskott–Aldrich syndrome patients. Br J Haematol. 2003;121(3):529–30.
127. Villa A, Notarangelo L, Macchi P, Mantuano E, Cavagni G, Brugnoni D, et al. X-linked thrombocytopenia and Wiskott–Aldrich syndrome are allelic diseases with mutations in the WASP gene. Nat Genet. 1995;9(4):414–7.
128. Zhu Q, Zhang M, Blaese RM, Derry JM, Junker A, Francke U, et al. The Wiskott–Aldrich syndrome and X-linked congenital thrombocytopenia are caused by mutations of the same gene. Blood. 1995;86(10):3797–804.
129. Ancliff PJ, Blundell MP, Cory GO, Calle Y, Worth A, Kempski H, et al. Two novel activating mutations in the Wiskott–Aldrich syndrome protein result in congenital neutropenia. Blood. 2006;108(7):2182–9.
130. Beel K, Cotter MM, Blatny J, Bond J, Lucas G, Green F, et al. A large kindred with X-linked neutropenia with an I294T mutation of the Wiskott–Aldrich syndrome gene. Br J Haematol. 2009;144(1):120–6.
131. Devriendt K, Kim AS, Mathijs G, Frints SG, Schwartz M, Van Den Oord JJ, et al. Constitutively activating mutation in WASP causes X-linked severe congenital neutropenia. Nat Genet. 2001;27(3):313–7.
132. Ochs HD, Filipovich AH, Veys P, Cowan MJ, Kapoor N. Wiskott–Aldrich syndrome: diagnosis, clinical and laboratory manifestations, and treatment. Biol Blood Marrow Transplant. 2009;15(1 Suppl):84–90.
133. Picard C, Mellouli F, Duprez R, Chedeville G, Neven B, Fraitag S, et al. Kaposi's sarcoma in a child with Wiskott–Aldrich syndrome. Eur J Pediatr. 2006;165(7):453–7.
134. De Meester J, Calvez R, Valitutti S, Dupre L. The Wiskott–Aldrich syndrome protein regulates CTL cytotoxicity and is required for efficient killing of B cell lymphoma targets. J Leukoc Biol. 2010;88(5):1031–40.
135. Gismondi A, Cifaldi L, Mazza C, Giliani S, Parolini S, Morrone S, et al. Impaired natural and CD16-mediated NK cell cytotoxicity in patients with WAS and XLT: ability of IL-2 to correct NK cell functional defect. Blood. 2004;104(2):436–43.
136. Orange JS, Ramesh N, Remold-O'Donnell E, Sasahara Y, Koopman L, Byrne M, et al. Wiskott–Aldrich syndrome protein is required for NK cell cytotoxicity and colocalizes with actin to NK cell-activating immunologic synapses. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2002;99(17):11351–6.
137. Locci M, Draghici E, Marangoni F, Bosticardo M, Catucci M, Aiuti A, et al. The Wiskott–Aldrich syndrome protein is required for iNKT cell maturation and function. J Exp Med. 2009;206(4):735–42.
138. Astrakhan A, Ochs HD, Rawlings DJ. Wiskott–Aldrich syndrome protein is required for homeostasis and function of invariant NKT cells. J Immunol. 2009;182(12):7370–80.
139. Schuetz C, Niehues T, Friedrich W, Schwarz K. Autoimmunity, autoinflammation and lymphoma in combined immunodeficiency (CID). Autoimmun Rev. 2010;9(7):477–82.
140. Blundell MP, Worth A, Bouma G, Thrasher AJ. The Wiskott–Aldrich syndrome: the actin cytoskeleton and immune cell function. Dis Markers. 2010;29(3-4):157–75.
141. Moulding DA, Blundell MP, Spiller DG, White MR, Cory GO, Calle Y, et al. Unregulated actin polymerization by WASp causes defects of mitosis and cytokinesis in X-linked neutropenia. J Exp Med. 2007;204(9):2213–24.
142. Moratto D, Giliani S, Bonfim C, Mazzolari E, Fischer A, Ochs HD, et al. Long-term outcome and lineage-specific chimerism in 194 patients with Wiskott–Aldrich syndrome treated by hematopoietic cell transplantation in the period 1980-2009: an international collaborative study. Blood. 2011;118(6):1675–84.
143. Boztug K, Schmidt M, Schwarzer A, Banerjee PP, Diez IA, Dewey RA, et al. Stem-cell gene therapy for the Wiskott–Aldrich syndrome. N Engl J Med. 2010;363(20):1918–27.
144. Cattoglio C, Pellin D, Rizzi E, Maruggi G, Corti G, Miselli F, et al. High-definition mapping of retroviral integration sites identifies active regulatory elements in human multipotent hematopoietic progenitors. Blood. 2010;116(25):5507–17.
145. Modlich U, Navarro S, Zychlinski D, Maetzig T, Knoess S, Brugman MH, et al. Insertional transformation of hematopoietic cells by self-inactivating lentiviral and gammaretroviral vectors. Mol Ther. 2009;17(11):1919–28.
146. Galy A, Thrasher AJ. Gene therapy for the Wiskott–Aldrich syndrome. Curr Opin Allergy Clin Immunol. 2011;11(6):545–50.
147. Avedillo Diez I, Zychlinski D, Coci EG, Galla M, Modlich U, Dewey RA, et al. Development of novel efficient SIN vectors with improved safety features for Wiskott–Aldrich syndrome stem cell based gene therapy. Mol Pharm. 2011;8(5):1525–37.
148. Renner ED, Puck JM, Holland SM, Schmitt M, Weiss M, Frosch M, et al. Autosomal recessive hyperimmunoglobulin E syndrome: a distinct disease entity. J Pediatr. 2004;144(1):93–9.
149. Zhang Q, Davis JC, Lamborn IT, Freeman AF, Jing H, Favreau AJ, et al. Combined immunodeficiency associated with DOCK8 mutations. N Engl J Med. 2009;361(21):2046–55.

150. Engelhardt KR, McGhee S, Winkler S, Sassi A, Woellner C, Lopez-Herrera G, et al. Large deletions and point mutations involving the dedicator of cytokinesis 8 (DOCK8) in the autosomal-recessive form of hyper-IgE syndrome. J Allergy Clin Immunol. 2009;124(6):1289–302 e4.
151. Al-Herz W, Ragupathy R, Massaad MJ, Al-Attiyah R, Nanda A, Engelhardt KR, et al. Clinical, immunologic and genetic profiles of DOCK8-deficient patients in Kuwait. Clin Immunol. 2012;143(3):266–72.
152. Alsum Z, Hawwari A, Alsmadi O, Al-Hissi S, Borrero E, Abu-Staiteh A, et al. Clinical, immunological and molecular characterization of DOCK8 and DOCK8-like deficient patients: single center experience of twenty-five patients. J Clin Immunol. 2013;33(1):55–67.
153. Lei JY, Wang Y, Jaffe ES, Turner ML, Raffeld M, Sorbara L, et al. Microcystic adnexal carcinoma associated with primary immunodeficiency, recurrent diffuse herpes simplex virus infection, and cutaneous T-cell lymphoma. Am J Dermatopathol. 2000;22(6):524–9.
154. Kuskonmaz B, Ayvaz D, Baris S, Unal S, Tezcan I, Uckan D. Acute myeloid leukemia in a child with dedicator of cytokinesis 8 (DOCK8) deficiency. Pediatr Blood Cancer. 2017;64(12).
155. Meller N, Merlot S, Guda C. CZH proteins: a new family of Rho-GEFs. J Cell Sci. 2005;118(Pt 21):4937–46.
156. Ruusala A, Aspenstrom P. Isolation and characterisation of DOCK8, a member of the DOCK180-related regulators of cell morphology. FEBS Lett. 2004;572(1-3):159–66.
157. Harada Y, Tanaka Y, Terasawa M, Pieczyk M, Habiro K, Katakai T, et al. DOCK8 is a Cdc42 activator critical for interstitial dendritic cell migration during immune responses. Blood. 2012;119(19):4451–61.
158. Ham H, Guerrier S, Kim J, Schoon RA, Anderson EL, Hamann MJ, et al. Dedicator of cytokinesis 8 interacts with talin and Wiskott–Aldrich syndrome protein to regulate NK cell cytotoxicity. J Immunol. 2013;190(7):3661–9.
159. Janssen E, Tohme M, Hedayat M, Leick M, Kumari S, Ramesh N, et al. A DOCK8-WIP-WASp complex links T cell receptors to the actin cytoskeleton. J Clin Invest. 2016;126(10):3837–51.
160. Jabara HH, McDonald DR, Janssen E, Massaad MJ, Ramesh N, Borzutzky A, et al. DOCK8 functions as an adaptor that links TLR-MyD88 signaling to B cell activation. Nat Immunol. 2012;13(6):612–20.
161. Massaad MJ, Cangemi B, Al-Herz W, LeFranc G, Freeman A, Baxi S, et al. DOCK8 and STAT3 dependent inhibition of IgE isotype switching by TLR9 ligation in human B cells. Clin Immunol. 2017;183:263–5.
162. Kearney CJ, Vervoort SJ, Ramsbottom KM, Freeman AJ, Michie J, Peake J et al. DOCK8 drives Src-dependent NK cell effector function. J Immunol. 2017;199(6):2118–27.
163. Singh AK, Eken A, Hagin D, Komal K, Bhise G, Shaji A et al. DOCK8 regulates fitness and function of regulatory T cells through modulation of IL-2 signaling. JCI Insight. 2017;2(19).
164. Lambe T, Crawford G, Johnson AL, Crockford TL, Bouriez-Jones T, Smyth AM, et al. DOCK8 is essential for T-cell survival and the maintenance of CD8+ T-cell memory. Eur J Immunol. 2011;41(12):3423–35.
165. Randall KL, Lambe T, Johnson AL, Treanor B, Kucharska E, Domaschenz H, et al. Dock8 mutations cripple B cell immunological synapses, germinal centers and long-lived antibody production. Nat Immunol. 2009;10(12):1283–91.
166. Mizesko MC, Banerjee PP, Monaco-Shawver L, Mace EM, Bernal WE, Sawalle-Belohradsky J, et al. Defective actin accumulation impairs human natural killer cell function in patients with dedicator of cytokinesis 8 deficiency. J Allergy Clin Immunol. 2013;131(3):840–8.
167. Takahashi K, Kohno T, Ajima R, Sasaki H, Minna JD, Fujiwara T, et al. Homozygous deletion and reduced expression of the DOCK8 gene in human lung cancer. Int J Oncol. 2006;28(2):321–8.
168. Saelee P, Wongkham S, Puapairoj A, Khuntikeo N, Petmitr S, Chariyalertsak S, et al. Novel PNLIPRP3 and DOCK8 gene expression and prognostic implications of DNA loss on chromosome 10q25.3 in hepatocellular carcinoma. Asian Pac J Cancer Prev. 2009;10(3):501–6.
169. Idbaih A, Carvalho Silva R, Criniere E, Marie Y, Carpentier C, Boisselier B, et al. Genomic changes in progression of low-grade gliomas. J Neurooncol. 2008;90(2):133–40.
170. Su HC. Dedicator of cytokinesis 8 (DOCK8) deficiency. Curr Opin Allergy Clin Immunol. 2010;10(6):515–20.
171. Marsh RA, Madden L, Kitchen BJ, Mody R, McClimon B, Jordan MB, et al. XIAP deficiency: a unique primary immunodeficiency best classified as X-linked familial hemophagocytic lymphohistiocytosis and not as X-linked lymphoproliferative disease. Blood. 2010;116(7):1079–82.
172. Minna JD, Roth JA, Gazdar AF. Focus on lung cancer. Cancer Cell. 2002;1(1):49–52.
173. Yokota J, Kohno T. Molecular footprints of human lung cancer progression. Cancer Sci. 2004;95(3):197–204.
174. Nishioka M, Kohno T, Tani M, Yanaihara N, Tomizawa Y, Otsuka A, et al. MYO18B, a candidate tumor suppressor gene at chromosome 22q12.1, deleted, mutated, and methylated in human lung cancer. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2002;99(19):12269–74.
175. Hamada K, Kohno T, Kawanishi M, Ohwada S, Yokota J. Association of CDKN2A(p16)/CDKN2B(p15) alterations and homozygous chromosome arm 9p deletions in human lung carcinoma. Genes Chromosomes Cancer. 1998;22(3):232–40.

176. Crequer A, Troeger A, Patin E, Ma CS, Picard C, Pedergnana V, et al. Human RHOH deficiency causes T cell defects and susceptibility to EV-HPV infections. J Clin Invest. 2012;122(9):3239–47.
177. Li X, Bu X, Lu B, Avraham H, Flavell RA, Lim B. The hematopoiesis-specific GTP-binding protein RhoH is GTPase deficient and modulates activities of other Rho GTPases by an inhibitory function. Mol Cell Biol. 2002;22(4):1158–71.
178. Gu Y, Zheng Y, Williams DA. RhoH GTPase: a key regulator of hematopoietic cell proliferation and apoptosis? Cell Cycle. 2005;4(2):201–2.
179. Gu Y, Chae HD, Siefring JE, Jasti AC, Hildeman DA, Williams DA. RhoH GTPase recruits and activates Zap70 required for T cell receptor signaling and thymocyte development. Nat Immunol. 2006;7(11):1182–90.
180. Li S, Yamauchi A, Marchal CC, Molitoris JK, Quilliam LA, Dinauer MC. Chemoattractant-stimulated Rac activation in wild-type and Rac2-deficient murine neutrophils: preferential activation of Rac2 and Rac2 gene dosage effect on neutrophil functions. J Immunol. 2002;169(9):5043–51.
181. Dorn T, Kuhn U, Bungartz G, Stiller S, Bauer M, Ellwart J, et al. RhoH is important for positive thymocyte selection and T-cell receptor signaling. Blood. 2007;109(6):2346–55.
182. Dallery-Prudhomme E, Roumier C, Denis C, Preudhomme C, Kerckaert JP, Galiegue-Zouitina S. Genomic structure and assignment of the RhoH/TTF small GTPase gene (ARHH) to 4p13 by in situ hybridization. Genomics. 1997;43(1):89–94.
183. Dallery E, Galiegue-Zouitina S, Collyn-d'Hooghe M, Quief S, Denis C, Hildebrand MP, et al. TTF, a gene encoding a novel small G protein, fuses to the lymphoma-associated LAZ3 gene by t(3;4) chromosomal translocation. Oncogene. 1995;10(11):2171–8.
184. Preudhomme C, Roumier C, Hildebrand MP, Dallery-Prudhomme E, Lantoine D, Lai JL, et al. Nonrandom 4p13 rearrangements of the RhoH/TTF gene, encoding a GTP-binding protein, in non-Hodgkin's lymphoma and multiple myeloma. Oncogene. 2000;19(16):2023–32.
185. Pasqualucci L, Neumeister P, Goossens T, Nanjangud G, Chaganti RS, Kuppers R, et al. Hypermutation of multiple proto-oncogenes in B-cell diffuse large-cell lymphomas. Nature. 2001;412(6844):341–6.
186. Gaidano G, Pasqualucci L, Capello D, Berra E, Deambrogi C, Rossi D, et al. Aberrant somatic hypermutation in multiple subtypes of AIDS-associated non-Hodgkin lymphoma. Blood. 2003;102(5):1833–41.
187. Montesinos-Rongen M, Van Roost D, Schaller C, Wiestler OD, Deckert M. Primary diffuse large B-cell lymphomas of the central nervous system are targeted by aberrant somatic hypermutation. Blood. 2004;103(5):1869–75.
188. Eidenschenk C, Dunne J, Jouanguy E, Fourlinnie C, Gineau L, Bacq D, et al. A novel primary immunodeficiency with specific natural-killer cell deficiency maps to the centromeric region of chromosome 8. Am J Hum Genet. 2006;78(4):721–7.
189. Casey JP, Nobbs M, McGettigan P, Lynch S, Ennis S. Recessive mutations in MCM4/PRKDC cause a novel syndrome involving a primary immunodeficiency and a disorder of DNA repair. J Med Genet. 2012;49(4):242–5.
190. Hughes CR, Guasti L, Meimaridou E, Chuang CH, Schimenti JC, King PJ, et al. MCM4 mutation causes adrenal failure, short stature, and natural killer cell deficiency in humans. J Clin Invest. 2012;122(3):814–20.
191. Gineau L, Cognet C, Kara N, Lach FP, Dunne J, Veturi U, et al. Partial MCM4 deficiency in patients with growth retardation, adrenal insufficiency, and natural killer cell deficiency. J Clin Invest. 2012;122(3):821–32.
192. Wallace MD, Southard TL, Schimenti KJ, Schimenti JC. Role of DNA damage response pathways in preventing carcinogenesis caused by intrinsic replication stress. Oncogene. 2014;33(28):3688–95.
193. Sowerwine KJ, Holland SM, Freeman AF. Hyper-IgE syndrome update. Ann N Y Acad Sci. 2012;1250:25–32.
194. Heimall J, Freeman A, Holland SM. Pathogenesis of hyper IgE syndrome. Clin Rev Allergy Immunol. 2010;38(1):32–8.
195. Minegishi Y. Hyper-IgE syndrome. Curr Opin Immunol. 2009;21(5):487–92.
196. Davis SD, Schaller J, Wedgwood RJ. Job's Syndrome. Recurrent, "cold", staphylococcal abscesses. Lancet. 1966;1(7445):1013–5.
197. Freeman AF, Kleiner DE, Nadiminti H, Davis J, Quezado M, Anderson V, et al. Causes of death in hyper-IgE syndrome. J Allergy Clin Immunol. 2007;119(5):1234–40.
198. Buckley RH. The hyper-IgE syndrome. Clin Rev Allergy Immunol. 2001;20(1):139–54.
199. Ma CS, Chew GY, Simpson N, Priyadarshi A, Wong M, Grimbacher B, et al. Deficiency of Th17 cells in hyper IgE syndrome due to mutations in STAT3. J Exp Med. 2008;205(7):1551–7.
200. Mazerolles F, Picard C, Kracker S, Fischer A, Durandy A. Blood CD4+CD45RO+CXCR5+ T cells are decreased but partially functional in signal transducer and activator of transcription 3 deficiency. J Allergy Clin Immunol. 2013;131(4):1146–56.
201. Grimbacher B, Holland SM, Gallin JI, Greenberg F, Hill SC, Malech HL, et al. Hyper-IgE syndrome with recurrent infections--an autosomal dominant multisystem disorder. N Engl J Med. 1999;340(9):692–702.
202. Hoger PH, Boltshauser E, Hitzig WH. Craniosynostosis in hyper-IgE-syndrome. Eur J Pediatr. 1985;144(4):414–7.
203. O'Connell AC, Puck JM, Grimbacher B, Facchetti F, Majorana A, Gallin JI, et al. Delayed eruption of permanent teeth in hyperimmunoglobulinemia E recurrent infection syndrome. Oral Surg Oral Med Oral Pathol Oral Radiol Endod. 2000;89(2):177–85.

204. Ling JC, Freeman AF, Gharib AM, Arai AE, Lederman RJ, Rosing DR, et al. Coronary artery aneurysms in patients with hyper IgE recurrent infection syndrome. Clin Immunol. 2007;122(3):255–8.
205. Holland SM, DeLeo FR, Elloumi HZ, Hsu AP, Uzel G, Brodsky N, et al. STAT3 mutations in the hyper-IgE syndrome. N Engl J Med. 2007;357(16):1608–19.
206. Minegishi Y, Saito M, Tsuchiya S, Tsuge I, Takada H, Hara T, et al. Dominant-negative mutations in the DNA-binding domain of STAT3 cause hyper-IgE syndrome. Nature. 2007;448(7157):1058–62.
207. Akira S. Roles of STAT3 defined by tissue-specific gene targeting. Oncogene. 2000;19(21):2607–11.
208. Gorin LJ, Jeha SC, Sullivan MP, Rosenblatt HM, Shearer WT. Burkitt's lymphoma developing in a 7-year-old boy with hyper-IgE syndrome. J Allergy Clin Immunol. 1989;83(1):5–10.
209. Leonard GD, Posadas E, Herrmann PC, Anderson VL, Jaffe ES, Holland SM, et al. Non-Hodgkin's lymphoma in Job's syndrome: a case report and literature review. Leuk Lymphoma. 2004;45(12):2521–5.
210. Kashef MA, Kashef S, Handjani F, Karimi M. Hodgkin lymphoma developing in a 4.5-year-old girl with hyper-IgE syndrome. Pediatr Hematol Oncol. 2006;23(1):59–63.
211. Oztop I, Demirkan B, Tarhan O, Kayahan H, Yilmaz U, Kargi A, et al. The development of pulmonary adenocarcinoma in a patient with Job's syndrome, a rare immunodeficiency condition. Tumori. 2004;90(1):132–5.
212. Rezaei N, Hedayat M, Aghamohammadi A, Nichols KE. Primary immunodeficiency diseases associated with increased susceptibility to viral infections and malignancies. J Allergy Clin Immunol. 2011;127(6):1329–41 e2. quiz 42-3
213. Shaffer LG, Lupski JR. Molecular mechanisms for constitutional chromosomal rearrangements in humans. Annu Rev Genet. 2000;34:297–329.
214. McDonald-McGinn DM, Tonnesen MK, Laufer-Cahana A, Finucane B, Driscoll DA, Emanuel BS, et al. Phenotype of the 22q11.2 deletion in individuals identified through an affected relative: cast a wide FISHing net. Genet Med. 2001;3(1):23–9.
215. Kobrynski LJ, Sullivan KE. Velocardiofacial syndrome, DiGeorge syndrome: the chromosome 22q11.2 deletion syndromes. Lancet. 2007;370(9596):1443–52.
216. Peyvandi S, Lupo PJ, Garbarini J, Woyciechowski S, Edman S, Emanuel BS, et al. 22q11.2 deletions in patients with conotruncal defects: data from 1,610 consecutive cases. Pediatr Cardiol. 2013;34(7):1687–94.
217. McDonald-McGinn DM, Sullivan KE. Chromosome 22q11.2 deletion syndrome (DiGeorge syndrome/velocardiofacial syndrome). Medicine (Baltimore). 2011;90(1):1–18.
218. Staple L, Andrews T, McDonald-McGinn D, Zackai E, Sullivan KE. Allergies in patients with chromosome 22q11.2 deletion syndrome (DiGeorge syndrome/velocardiofacial syndrome) and patients with chronic granulomatous disease. Pediatr Allergy Immunol. 2005;16(3):226–30.
219. Jawad AF, McDonald-Mcginn DM, Zackai E, Sullivan KE. Immunologic features of chromosome 22q11.2 deletion syndrome (DiGeorge syndrome/velocardiofacial syndrome). J Pediatr. 2001;139(5):715–23.
220. Jawad AF, Prak EL, Boyer J, McDonald-McGinn DM, Zackai E, McDonald K, et al. A prospective study of influenza vaccination and a comparison of immunologic parameters in children and adults with chromosome 22q11.2 deletion syndrome (digeorge syndrome/velocardiofacial syndrome). J Clin Immunol. 2011;31(6):927–35.
221. Chinen J, Rosenblatt HM, Smith EO, Shearer WT, Noroski LM. Long-term assessment of T-cell populations in DiGeorge syndrome. J Allergy Clin Immunol. 2003;111(3):573–9.
222. Zemble R, Luning Prak E, McDonald K, McDonald-McGinn D, Zackai E, Sullivan K. Secondary immunologic consequences in chromosome 22q11.2 deletion syndrome (DiGeorge syndrome/velocardiofacial syndrome). Clin Immunol. 2010;136(3):409–18.
223. Patel K, Akhter J, Kobrynski L, Benjamin Gathmann MA, Davis O, Sullivan KE, et al. Immunoglobulin deficiencies: the B-lymphocyte side of DiGeorge Syndrome. J Pediatr. 2012;161(5):950–3.
224. McDonald-McGinn DM, Reilly A, Wallgren-Pettersson C, Hoyme HE, Yang SP, Adam MP, et al. Malignancy in chromosome 22q11.2 deletion syndrome (DiGeorge syndrome/velocardiofacial syndrome). Am J Med Genet A. 2006;140(8):906–9.
225. Ramos JT, Lopez-Laso E, Ruiz-Contreras J, Giancaspro E, Madero S. B cell non-Hodgkin's lymphoma in a girl with the DiGeorge anomaly. Arch Dis Child. 1999;81(5):444–5.
226. Itoh S, Ohno T, Kakizaki S, Ichinohasama R. Epstein–Barr virus-positive T-cell lymphoma cells having chromosome 22q11.2 deletion: an autopsy report of DiGeorge syndrome. Hum Pathol. 2011;42(12):2037–41.
227. Sato T, Tatsuzawa O, Koike Y, Wada Y, Nagata M, Kobayashi S, et al. B-cell lymphoma associated with DiGeorge syndrome. Eur J Pediatr. 1999;158(7):609.
228. Pongpruttipan T, Cook JR, Reyes-Mugica M, Spahr JE, Swerdlow SH. Pulmonary extranodal marginal zone lymphoma of mucosa-associated lymphoid tissue associated with granulomatous inflammation in a child with chromosome 22q11.2 deletion syndrome (DiGeorge syndrome). J Pediatr. 2012;161(5):954–8.
229. Asamoto H, Furuta M. Di George syndrome associated with glioma and two kinds of viral infection. N Engl J Med. 1977;296(21):1235.
230. Tewfik HH, Ptacek JJ, Krause CJ, Latourette HB. DiGeorge syndrome associated with multiple squamous cell carcinomas. Arch Otolaryngol. 1977;103(2):105–7.

231. Patrone PM, Chatten J, Weinberg P. Neuroblastoma and DiGeorge anomaly. Pediatr Pathol. 1990;10(3):425–30.
232. Scattone A, Caruso G, Marzullo A, Piscitelli D, Gentile M, Bonadonna L, et al. Neoplastic disease and deletion 22q11.2: a multicentric study and report of two cases. Pediatr Pathol Mol Med. 2003;22(4):323–41.
233. Ozbek N, Derbent M, Olcay L, Yilmaz Z, Tokel K. Dysplastic changes in the peripheral blood of children with microdeletion 22q11.2. Am J Hematol. 2004;77(2):126–31.
234. Revy P, Buck D, le Deist F, de Villartay JP. The repair of DNA damages/modifications during the maturation of the immune system: lessons from human primary immunodeficiency disorders and animal models. Adv Immunol. 2005;87:237–95.
235. Moses RE. DNA damage processing defects and disease. Annu Rev Genomics Hum Genet. 2001;2:41–68.
236. de Villartay JP, Fischer A, Durandy A. The mechanisms of immune diversification and their disorders. Nat Rev Immunol. 2003;3(12):962–72.
237. de Miranda NF, Bjorkman A, Pan-Hammarstrom Q. DNA repair: the link between primary immunodeficiency and cancer. Ann N Y Acad Sci. 2011;1246:50–63.
238. Patiroglu T, Eke Gungor H, Arslan D, Deniz K, Unal E, Coskun A. Gastric signet ring carcinoma in a patient with ataxia-telangiectasia: a case report and review of the literature. J Pediatr Hematol Oncol. 2013;35(8):e341–3.
239. Peterson RD, Funkhouser JD, Tuck-Muller CM, Gatti RA. Cancer susceptibility in ataxia-telangiectasia. Leukemia. 1992;6(Suppl 1):8–13.
240. Kondratenko I, Paschenko O, Polyakov A, Bologov A. Nijmegen breakage syndrome. Adv Exp Med Biol. 2007;601:61–7.
241. Enders A, Fisch P, Schwarz K, Duffner U, Pannicke U, Nikolopoulos E, et al. A severe form of human combined immunodeficiency due to mutations in DNA ligase IV. J Immunol. 2006;176(8):5060–8.
242. Eisner JM, Russell M. Cartilage hair hypoplasia and multiple basal cell carcinomas. J Am Acad Dermatol. 2006;54(2 Suppl):S8–10.
243. De Vos M, Hayward BE, Charlton R, Taylor GR, Glaser AW, Picton S, et al. PMS2 mutations in childhood cancer. J Natl Cancer Inst. 2006;98(5):358–61.
244. Ahmed M, Rahman N. ATM and breast cancer susceptibility. Oncogene. 2006;25(43):5906–11.
245. Ciara E, Piekutowska-Abramczuk D, Popowska E, Grajkowska W, Barszcz S, Perek D, et al. Heterozygous germ-line mutations in the NBN gene predispose to medulloblastoma in pediatric patients. Acta Neuropathol. 2010;119(3):325–34.
246. Gruber SB, Ellis NA, Scott KK, Almog R, Kolachana P, Bonner JD, et al. BLM heterozygosity and the risk of colorectal cancer. Science. 2013;297(5589):2002.
247. Lynch HT, Lynch PM, Lanspa SJ, Snyder CL, Lynch JF, Boland CR. Review of the Lynch syndrome: history, molecular genetics, screening, differential diagnosis, and medicolegal ramifications. Clin Genet. 2009;76(1):1–18.
248. Taylor AM, Metcalfe JA, Thick J, Mak YF. Leukemia and lymphoma in ataxia telangiectasia. Blood. 1996;87(2):423–38.
249. German J. Bloom's syndrome. XX. The first 100 cancers. Cancer Genet Cytogenet. 1997;93(1):100–6.
250. Toita N, Hatano N, Ono S, Yamada M, Kobayashi R, Kobayashi I, et al. Epstein–Barr virus-associated B-cell lymphoma in a patient with DNA ligase IV (LIG4) syndrome. Am J Med Genet A. 2007;143A(7):742–5.
251. Moshous D, Callebaut I, de Chasseval R, Poinsignon C, Villey I, Fischer A, et al. The V(D)J recombination/DNA repair factor artemis belongs to the metallo-beta-lactamase family and constitutes a critical developmental checkpoint of the lymphoid system. Ann N Y Acad Sci. 2003;987:150–7.
252. Daschkey S, Bienemann K, Schuster V, Kreth HW, Linka RM, Honscheid A, et al. Fatal lymphoproliferative disease in two siblings lacking functional FAAP24. J Clin Immunol. 2016;36(7):684–92.
253. Schuster V, Kreth HW, Muller-Hermelink HK, Huppertz HI, Feller AC, Neumann-Haefelin D, et al. Epstein–Barr virus infection rapidly progressing to monoclonal lymphoproliferative disease in a child with selective immunodeficiency. Eur J Pediatr. 1990;150(1):48–53.
254. Welte K, Zeidler C, Dale DC. Severe congenital neutropenia. Semin Hematol. 2006;43(3):189–95.
255. Boxer LA. Severe congenital neutropenia: genetics and pathogenesis. Trans Am Clin Climatol Assoc. 2006;117:13–31. discussion-2
256. Rezaei N, Moazzami K, Aghamohammadi A, Klein C. Neutropenia and primary immunodeficiency diseases. Int Rev Immunol. 2009;28(5):335–66.
257. Rezaei N, Chavoshzadeh Z, R Alaei O, Sandrock I, Klein C. Association of HAX1 deficiency with neurological disorder. Neuropediatrics. 2007;38(5):261–3.
258. Ishikawa N, Okada S, Miki M, Shirao K, Kihara H, Tsumura M, et al. Neurodevelopmental abnormalities associated with severe congenital neutropenia due to the R86X mutation in the HAX1 gene. J Med Genet. 2008;45(12):802–7.
259. Dale DC, Person RE, Bolyard AA, Aprikyan AG, Bos C, Bonilla MA, et al. Mutations in the gene encoding neutrophil elastase in congenital and cyclic neutropenia. Blood. 2000;96(7):2317–22.
260. Takahashi H, Nukiwa T, Basset P, Crystal RG. Myelomonocytic cell lineage expression of the neutrophil elastase gene. J Biol Chem. 1988;263(5):2543–7.
261. Welte K, Zeidler C. Severe congenital neutropenia. Hematol Oncol Clin North Am. 2009;23(2):307–20.
262. Klein C, Grudzien M, Appaswamy G, Germeshausen M, Sandrock I, Schaffer AA, et al. HAX1 deficiency causes autosomal recessive severe congeni-

tal neutropenia (Kostmann disease). Nat Genet. 2007;39(1):86–92.
263. Boztug K, Appaswamy G, Ashikov A, Schaffer AA, Salzer U, Diestelhorst J, et al. A syndrome with congenital neutropenia and mutations in G6PC3. N Engl J Med. 2009;360(1):32–43.
264. Person RE, Li FQ, Duan Z, Benson KF, Wechsler J, Papadaki HA, et al. Mutations in proto-oncogene GFI1 cause human neutropenia and target ELA2. Nat Genet. 2003;34(3):308–12.
265. Bohn G, Allroth A, Brandes G, Thiel J, Glocker E, Schaffer AA, et al. A novel human primary immunodeficiency syndrome caused by deficiency of the endosomal adaptor protein p14. Nat Med. 2007;13(1):38–45.
266. Ward AC. The role of the granulocyte colony-stimulating factor receptor (G-CSF-R) in disease. Front Biosci. 2007;12:608–18.
267. Dale DC, Bolyard AA, Schwinzer BG, Pracht G, Bonilla MA, Boxer L, et al. The severe chronic neutropenia international registry: 10-year follow-up report. Support Cancer Ther. 2006;3(4):220–31.
268. Rosenberg PS, Zeidler C, Bolyard AA, Alter BP, Bonilla MA, Boxer LA, et al. Stable long-term risk of leukaemia in patients with severe congenital neutropenia maintained on G-CSF therapy. Br J Haematol. 2010;150(2):196–9.
269. Donadieu J, Leblanc T, Bader Meunier B, Barkaoui M, Fenneteau O, Bertrand Y, et al. Analysis of risk factors for myelodysplasias, leukemias and death from infection among patients with congenital neutropenia. Experience of the French Severe Chronic Neutropenia Study Group. Haematologica. 2005;90(1):45–53.
270. Germeshausen M, Ballmaier M, Welte K. Incidence of CSF3R mutations in severe congenital neutropenia and relevance for leukemogenesis: results of a long-term survey. Blood. 2007;109(1):93–9.
271. Burroughs L, Woolfrey A, Shimamura A. Shwachman–Diamond syndrome: a review of the clinical presentation, molecular pathogenesis, diagnosis, and treatment. Hematol Oncol Clin North Am. 2009;23(2):233–48.
272. Dror Y, Freedman MH. Shwachman–Diamond syndrome. Br J Haematol. 2002;118(3):701–13.
273. Andolina JR, Morrison CB, Thompson AA, Chaudhury S, Mack AK, Proytcheva M, et al. Shwachman–Diamond syndrome: diarrhea, no longer required? J Pediatr Hematol Oncol. 2013;35(6):486–9.
274. Grinspan ZM, Pikora CA. Infections in patients with Shwachman-Diamond syndrome. Pediatr Infect Dis J. 2005;24(2):179–81.
275. Aggett PJ, Harries JT, Harvey BA, Soothill JF. An inherited defect of neutrophil mobility in Shwachman syndrome. J Pediatr. 1979;94(3):391–4.
276. Stepanovic V, Wessels D, Goldman FD, Geiger J, Soll DR. The chemotaxis defect of Shwachman–Diamond Syndrome leukocytes. Cell Motil Cytoskeleton. 2004;57(3):158–74.
277. Dror Y, Ginzberg H, Dalal I, Cherepanov V, Downey G, Durie P, et al. Immune function in patients with Shwachman-Diamond syndrome. Br J Haematol. 2001;114(3):712–7.
278. Kornfeld SJ, Kratz J, Diamond F, Day NK, Good RA. Shwachman–Diamond syndrome associated with hypogammaglobulinemia and growth hormone deficiency. J Allergy Clin Immunol. 1995;96(2):247–50.
279. Boocock GR, Morrison JA, Popovic M, Richards N, Ellis L, Durie PR, et al. Mutations in SBDS are associated with Shwachman–Diamond syndrome. Nat Genet. 2003;33(1):97–101.
280. Huang JN, Shimamura A. Clinical spectrum and molecular pathophysiology of Shwachman–Diamond syndrome. Curr Opin Hematol. 2011;18(1):30–5.
281. Liu JM, Lipton JM, Mani S. Sixth International Congress on Shwachman–Diamond syndrome: from patients to genes and back. Ann N Y Acad Sci. 2011;1242:26–39.
282. Saunders EF, Gall G, Freedman MH. Granulopoiesis in Shwachman's syndrome (pancreatic insufficiency and bone marrow dysfunction). Pediatrics. 1979;64(4):515–9.
283. Dror Y, Freedman MH. Shwachman–Diamond syndrome: an inherited preleukemic bone marrow failure disorder with aberrant hematopoietic progenitors and faulty marrow microenvironment. Blood. 1999;94(9):3048–54.
284. Woods WG, Roloff JS, Lukens JN, Krivit W. The occurrence of leukemia in patients with the Shwachman syndrome. J Pediatr. 1981;99(3):425–8.
285. Dhanraj S, Manji A, Pinto D, Scherer SW, Favre H, Loh ML, et al. Molecular characteristics of a pancreatic adenocarcinoma associated with Shwachman–Diamond syndrome. Pediatr Blood Cancer. 2013;60(5):754–60.
286. Singh SA, Vlachos A, Morgenstern NJ, Ouansafi I, Ip W, Rommens JM, et al. Breast cancer in a case of Shwachman Diamond syndrome. Pediatr Blood Cancer. 2012;59(5):945–6.
287. Verbrugge J, Tulchinsky M. Lymphoma in a case of Shwachman–Diamond syndrome: PET/CT findings. Clin Nucl Med. 2012;37(1):74–6.
288. Austin KM, Gupta ML Jr, Coats SA, Tulpule A, Mostoslavsky G, Balazs AB, et al. Mitotic spindle destabilization and genomic instability in Shwachman–Diamond syndrome. J Clin Invest. 2008;118(4):1511–8.
289. Maserati E, Pressato B, Valli R, Minelli A, Sainati L, Patitucci F, et al. The route to development of myelodysplastic syndrome/acute myeloid leukaemia in Shwachman–Diamond syndrome: the role of ageing, karyotype instability, and acquired chromosome anomalies. Br J Haematol. 2009;145(2):190–7.
290. Dror Y, Freedman MH. Shwachman–Diamond syndrome marrow cells show abnormally increased apoptosis mediated through the Fas pathway. Blood. 2001;97(10):3011–6.

291. Rujkijyanont P, Beyene J, Wei K, Khan F, Dror Y. Leukaemia-related gene expression in bone marrow cells from patients with the preleukaemic disorder Shwachman–Diamond syndrome. Br J Haematol. 2007;137(6):537–44.
292. Bigley V, Haniffa M, Doulatov S, Wang XN, Dickinson R, McGovern N, et al. The human syndrome of dendritic cell, monocyte, B and NK lymphoid deficiency. J Exp Med. 2011;208(2):227–34.
293. Hsu AP, Sampaio EP, Khan J, Calvo KR, Lemieux JE, Patel SY, et al. Mutations in GATA2 are associated with the autosomal dominant and sporadic monocytopenia and mycobacterial infection (MonoMAC) syndrome. Blood. 2011;118(10):2653–5.
294. Dickinson RE, Griffin H, Bigley V, Reynard LN, Hussain R, Haniffa M, et al. Exome sequencing identifies GATA-2 mutation as the cause of dendritic cell, monocyte, B and NK lymphoid deficiency. Blood. 2011;118(10):2656–8.
295. Ostergaard P, Simpson MA, Connell FC, Steward CG, Brice G, Woollard WJ, et al. Mutations in GATA2 cause primary lymphedema associated with a predisposition to acute myeloid leukemia (Emberger syndrome). Nat Genet. 2011;43(10):929–31.
296. Vinh DC, Patel SY, Uzel G, Anderson VL, Freeman AF, Olivier KN, et al. Autosomal dominant and sporadic monocytopenia with susceptibility to mycobacteria, fungi, papillomaviruses, and myelodysplasia. Blood. 2010;115(8):1519–29.
297. Hahn CN, Chong CE, Carmichael CL, Wilkins EJ, Brautigan PJ, Li XC, et al. Heritable GATA2 mutations associated with familial myelodysplastic syndrome and acute myeloid leukemia. Nat Genet. 2011;43(10):1012–7.
298. Holme H, Hossain U, Kirwan M, Walne A, Vulliamy T, Dokal I. Marked genetic heterogeneity in familial myelodysplasia/acute myeloid leukaemia. Br J Haematol. 2012;158(2):242–8.
299. Mansour S, Connell F, Steward C, Ostergaard P, Brice G, Smithson S, et al. Emberger syndrome-primary lymphedema with myelodysplasia: report of seven new cases. Am J Med Genet A. 2010;152A(9):2287–96.
300. Hirabayashi S, Wlodarski MW, Kozyra E, Niemeyer CM. Heterogeneity of GATA2-related myeloid neoplasms. Int J Hematol. 2017;106(2):175–82.
301. Rodrigues NP, Janzen V, Forkert R, Dombkowski DM, Boyd AS, Orkin SH, et al. Haploinsufficiency of GATA-2 perturbs adult hematopoietic stem-cell homeostasis. Blood. 2005;106(2):477–84.
302. Hsu AP, Johnson KD, Falcone EL, Sanalkumar R, Sanchez L, Hickstein DD, et al. GATA2 haploinsufficiency caused by mutations in a conserved intronic element leads to MonoMAC syndrome. Blood. 2013;121(19):3830–7, S1-7.
303. Tsai FY, Keller G, Kuo FC, Weiss M, Chen J, Rosenblatt M, et al. An early haematopoietic defect in mice lacking the transcription factor GATA-2. Nature. 1994;371(6494):221–6.
304. Tsai FY, Orkin SH. Transcription factor GATA-2 is required for proliferation/survival of early hematopoietic cells and mast cell formation, but not for erythroid and myeloid terminal differentiation. Blood. 1997;89(10):3636–43.
305. Kazenwadel J, Secker GA, Liu YJ, Rosenfeld JA, Wildin RS, Cuellar-Rodriguez J, et al. Loss-of-function germline GATA2 mutations in patients with MDS/AML or MonoMAC syndrome and primary lymphedema reveal a key role for GATA2 in the lymphatic vasculature. Blood. 2012;119(5):1283–91.
306. Johnson KD, Hsu AP, Ryu MJ, Wang J, Gao X, Boyer ME, et al. Cis-element mutated in GATA2-dependent immunodeficiency governs hematopoiesis and vascular integrity. J Clin Invest. 2012;122(10):3692–704.
307. Nguyen J, Alexander T, Jiang H, Hill N, Abdullaev Z, Pack SD, et al. Melanoma in patients with GATA2 deficiency. Pigment Cell Melanoma Res. 2018;31(2):337–40.
308. Orth G. Genetics of epidermodysplasia verruciformis: insights into host defense against papillomaviruses. Semin Immunol. 2006;18(6):362–74.
309. Gewirtzman A, Bartlett B, Tyring S. Epidermodysplasia verruciformis and human papilloma virus. Curr Opin Infect Dis. 2008;21(2):141–6.
310. de Oliveira WR, Festa Neto C, Rady PL, Tyring SK. Clinical aspects of epidermodysplasia verruciformis. J Eur Acad Dermatol Venereol. 2003;17(4):394–8.
311. Segura S, Carrera C, Ferrando J, Mascaro JM Jr, Palou J, Malvehy J, et al. Dermoscopy in epidermodysplasia verruciformis. Dermatol Surg. 2006;32(1):103–6.
312. Lutzner MA, Blanchet-Bardon C, Orth G. Clinical observations, virologic studies, and treatment trials in patients with epidermodysplasia verruciformis, a disease induced by specific human papillomaviruses. J Invest Dermatol. 1984;83(1 Suppl):18s–25s.
313. Majewski S, Jablonska S. Epidermodysplasia verruciformis as a model of human papillomavirus-induced genetic cancer of the skin. Arch Dermatol. 1995;131(11):1312–8.
314. Lutzner MA. Epidermodysplasia verruciformis. An autosomal recessive disease characterized by viral warts and skin cancer. A model for viral oncogenesis. Bull Cancer. 1978;65(2):169–82.
315. Androphy EJ, Dvoretzky I, Lowy DR. X-linked inheritance of epidermodysplasia verruciformis. Genetic and virologic studies of a kindred. Arch Dermatol. 1985;121(7):864–8.
316. McDermott DF, Gammon B, Snijders PJ, Mbata I, Phifer B, Howland Hartley A, et al. Autosomal dominant epidermodysplasia verruciformis lacking a known EVER1 or EVER2 mutation. Pediatr Dermatol. 2009;26(3):306–10.
317. Ramoz N, Taieb A, Rueda LA, Montoya LS, Bouadjar B, Favre M, et al. Evidence for a nonallelic heterogeneity of epidermodysplasia verruciformis

with two susceptibility loci mapped to chromosome regions 2p21-p24 and 17q25. J Invest Dermatol. 2000;114(6):1148–53.
318. Ramoz N, Rueda LA, Bouadjar B, Montoya LS, Orth G, Favre M. Mutations in two adjacent novel genes are associated with epidermodysplasia verruciformis. Nat Genet. 2002;32(4):579–81.
319. Lazarczyk M, Cassonnet P, Pons C, Jacob Y, Favre M. The EVER proteins as a natural barrier against papillomaviruses: a new insight into the pathogenesis of human papillomavirus infections. Microbiol Mol Biol Rev. 2009;73(2):348–70.
320. Yu M, Lee WW, Tomar D, Pryshchep S, Czesnikiewicz-Guzik M, Lamar DL, et al. Regulation of T cell receptor signaling by activation-induced zinc influx. J Exp Med. 2011;208(4):775–85.
321. Cooper KD, Androphy EJ, Lowy D, Katz SI. Antigen presentation and T-cell activation in epidermodysplasia verruciformis. J Invest Dermatol. 1990;94(6):769–76.
322. Diaz GA. CXCR4 mutations in WHIM syndrome: a misguided immune system? Immunol Rev. 2005;203:235–43.
323. Diaz GA, Gulino AV. WHIM syndrome: a defect in CXCR4 signaling. Curr Allergy Asthma Rep. 2005;5(5):350–5.
324. Kawai T, Malech HL. WHIM syndrome: congenital immune deficiency disease. Curr Opin Hematol. 2009;16(1):20–6.
325. Beaussant Cohen S, Fenneteau O, Plouvier E, Rohrlich PS, Daltroff G, Plantier I, et al. Description and outcome of a cohort of 8 patients with WHIM syndrome from the French Severe Chronic Neutropenia Registry. Orphanet J Rare Dis. 2012;7:71.
326. Imashuku S, Miyagawa A, Chiyonobu T, Ishida H, Yoshihara T, Teramura T, et al. Epstein–Barr virus-associated T-lymphoproliferative disease with hemophagocytic syndrome, followed by fatal intestinal B lymphoma in a young adult female with WHIM syndrome. Warts, hypogammaglobulinemia, infections, and myelokathexis. Ann Hematol. 2002;81(8):470–3.
327. Chae KM, Ertle JO, Tharp MD. B-cell lymphoma in a patient with WHIM syndrome. J Am Acad Dermatol. 2001;44(1):124–8.
328. Tarzi MD, Jenner M, Hattotuwa K, Faruqi AZ, Diaz GA, Longhurst HJ. Sporadic case of warts, hypogammaglobulinemia, immunodeficiency, and myelokathexis syndrome. J Allergy Clin Immunol. 2005;116(5):1101–5.
329. Balabanian K, Lagane B, Pablos JL, Laurent L, Planchenault T, Verola O, et al. WHIM syndromes with different genetic anomalies are accounted for by impaired CXCR4 desensitization to CXCL12. Blood. 2005;105(6):2449–57.
330. Hernandez PA, Gorlin RJ, Lukens JN, Taniuchi S, Bohinjec J, Francois F, et al. Mutations in the chemokine receptor gene CXCR4 are associated with WHIM syndrome, a combined immunodeficiency disease. Nat Genet. 2003;34(1):70–4.
331. Murphy PM, Baggiolini M, Charo IF, Hebert CA, Horuk R, Matsushima K, et al. International union of pharmacology. XXII. Nomenclature for chemokine receptors. Pharmacol Rev. 2000;52(1):145–76.
332. Busillo JM, Benovic JL. Regulation of CXCR4 signaling. Biochim Biophys Acta. 2007;1768(4):952–63.
333. Liu Q, Chen H, Ojode T, Gao X, Anaya-O'Brien S, Turner NA, et al. WHIM syndrome caused by a single amino acid substitution in the carboxy-tail of chemokine receptor CXCR4. Blood. 2012;120(1):181–9.
334. Gorlin RJ, Gelb B, Diaz GA, Lofsness KG, Pittelkow MR, Fenyk JR Jr. WHIM syndrome, an autosomal dominant disorder: clinical, hematological, and molecular studies. Am J Med Genet. 2000;91(5):368–76.
335. Arai J, Wakiguchi H, Hisakawa H, Kubota H, Kurashige T. A variant of myelokathexis with hypogammaglobulinemia: lymphocytes as well as neutrophils may reverse in response to infections. Pediatr Hematol Oncol. 2000;17(2):171–6.
336. Gulino AV, Moratto D, Sozzani S, Cavadini P, Otero K, Tassone L, et al. Altered leukocyte response to CXCL12 in patients with warts hypogammaglobulinemia, infections, myelokathexis (WHIM) syndrome. Blood. 2004;104(2):444–52.
337. Tassone L, Moratto D, Vermi W, De Francesco M, Notarangelo LD, Porta F, et al. Defect of plasmacytoid dendritic cells in warts, hypogammaglobulinemia, infections, myelokathexis (WHIM) syndrome patients. Blood. 2010;116(23):4870–3.
338. Purtilo DT, Cassel CK, Yang JP, Harper R. X-linked recessive progressive combined variable immunodeficiency (Duncan's disease). Lancet. 1975;1(7913):935–40.
339. Purtilo DT, Grierson HL. Methods of detection of new families with X-linked lymphoproliferative disease. Cancer Genet Cytogenet. 1991;51(2):143–53.
340. Sumegi J, Huang D, Lanyi A, Davis JD, Seemayer TA, Maeda A, et al. Correlation of mutations of the SH2D1A gene and Epstein–Barr virus infection with clinical phenotype and outcome in X-linked lymphoproliferative disease. Blood. 2000;96(9):3118–25.
341. Filipovich AH, Zhang K, Snow AL, Marsh RA. X-linked lymphoproliferative syndromes: brothers or distant cousins? Blood. 2010;116(18):3398–408.
342. Rezaei N, Mahmoudi E, Aghamohammadi A, Das R, Nichols KE. X-linked lymphoproliferative syndrome: a genetic condition typified by the triad of infection, immunodeficiency and lymphoma. Br J Haematol. 2011;152(1):13–30.
343. Pachlopnik Schmid J, Canioni D, Moshous D, Touzot F, Mahlaoui N, Hauck F, et al. Clinical similarities and differences of patients with X-linked lymphoproliferative syndrome type 1 (XLP-1/SAP deficiency) versus type 2 (XLP-2/XIAP deficiency). Blood. 2011;117(5):1522–9.
344. Purtilo DT, Grierson HL, Davis JR, Okano M. The X-linked lymphoproliferative disease: from autopsy

toward cloning the gene 1975-1990. Pediatr Pathol. 1991;11(5):685–710.
345. Dutz JP, Benoit L, Wang X, Demetrick DJ, Junker A, de Sa D, et al. Lymphocytic vasculitis in X-linked lymphoproliferative disease. Blood. 2001;97(1):95–100.
346. Coffey AJ, Brooksbank RA, Brandau O, Oohashi T, Howell GR, Bye JM, et al. Host response to EBV infection in X-linked lymphoproliferative disease results from mutations in an SH2-domain encoding gene. Nat Genet. 1998;20(2):129–35.
347. Sayos J, Wu C, Morra M, Wang N, Zhang X, Allen D, et al. The X-linked lymphoproliferative-disease gene product SAP regulates signals induced through the co-receptor SLAM. Nature. 1998;395(6701):462–9.
348. Nichols KE, Harkin DP, Levitz S, Krainer M, Kolquist KA, Genovese C, et al. Inactivating mutations in an SH2 domain-encoding gene in X-linked lymphoproliferative syndrome. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 1998;95(23):13765–70.
349. Shinozaki K, Kanegane H, Matsukura H, Sumazaki R, Tsuchida M, Makita M, et al. Activation-dependent T cell expression of the X-linked lymphoproliferative disease gene product SLAM-associated protein and its assessment for patient detection. Int Immunol. 2002;14(10):1215–23.
350. Nagy N, Mattsson K, Maeda A, Liu A, Szekely L, Klein E. The X-linked lymphoproliferative disease gene product SAP is expressed in activated T and NK cells. Immunol Lett. 2002;82(1-2):141–7.
351. Nichols KE, Hom J, Gong SY, Ganguly A, Ma CS, Cannons JL, et al. Regulation of NKT cell development by SAP, the protein defective in XLP. Nat Med. 2005;11(3):340–5.
352. Ma CS, Nichols KE, Tangye SG. Regulation of cellular and humoral immune responses by the SLAM and SAP families of molecules. Annu Rev Immunol. 2007;25:337–79.
353. Dong Z, Veillette A. How do SAP family deficiencies compromise immunity? Trends Immunol. 2010;31(8):295–302.
354. Snow AL, Pandiyan P, Zheng L, Krummey SM, Lenardo MJ. The power and the promise of restimulation-induced cell death in human immune diseases. Immunol Rev. 2010;236:68–82.
355. Rigaud S, Fondaneche MC, Lambert N, Pasquier B, Mateo V, Soulas P, et al. XIAP deficiency in humans causes an X-linked lymphoproliferative syndrome. Nature. 2006;444(7115):110–4.
356. LaCasse EC. Pulling the plug on a cancer cell by eliminating XIAP with AEG35156. Cancer Lett. 2013;332(2):215–24.
357. Jin YY, Zhou W, Tian ZQ, Chen TX. Variable clinical phenotypes of X-linked lymphoproliferative syndrome in China: report of five cases with three novel mutations and review of the literature. Hum Immunol. 2016;77(8):658–66.
358. Seemayer TA, Gross TG, Egeler RM, Pirruccello SJ, Davis JR, Kelly CM, et al. X-linked lymphoproliferative disease: twenty-five years after the discovery. Pediatr Res. 1995;38(4):471–8.
359. Harrington DS, Weisenburger DD, Purtilo DT. Malignant lymphoma in the X-linked lymphoproliferative syndrome. Cancer. 1987;59(8):1419–29.
360. Egeler RM, de Kraker J, Slater R, Purtilo DT. Documentation of Burkitt lymphoma with t(8;14) (q24;q32) in X-linked lymphoproliferative disease. Cancer. 1992;70(3):683–7.
361. Stepensky P, Weintraub M, Yanir A, Revel-Vilk S, Krux F, Huck K, et al. IL-2-inducible T-cell kinase deficiency: clinical presentation and therapeutic approach. Haematologica. 2011;96(3):472–6.
362. Huck K, Feyen O, Niehues T, Ruschendorf F, Hubner N, Laws HJ, et al. Girls homozygous for an IL-2-inducible T cell kinase mutation that leads to protein deficiency develop fatal EBV-associated lymphoproliferation. J Clin Invest. 2009;119(5):1350–8.
363. Ghosh S, Bienemann K, Boztug K, Borkhardt A. Interleukin-2-inducible T-cell kinase (ITK) deficiency – clinical and molecular aspects. J Clin Immunol. 2014;34(8):892–9.
364. Linka RM, et al. Germline mutations within the IL2-inducible T cell kinase impede T cell differentiation or survival, cause protein destabilisation, loss of membrane recruitment and lead to severe EBV lymphoproliferation. In: 53rd ASH Annual Meeting and Exposition, Orlando. 2010.
365. Mansouri D, Mahdaviani SA, Khalilzadeh S, Mohajerani SA, Hasanzad M, Sadr S, et al. IL-2-inducible T-cell kinase deficiency with pulmonary manifestations due to disseminated Epstein–Barr virus infection. Int Arch Allergy Immunol. 2012;158(4):418–22.
366. Felices M, Berg LJ. The Tec kinases Itk and Rlk regulate NKT cell maturation, cytokine production, and survival. J Immunol. 2008;180(5):3007–18.
367. Schaeffer EM, Broussard C, Debnath J, Anderson S, McVicar DW, Schwartzberg PL. Tec family kinases modulate thresholds for thymocyte development and selection. J Exp Med. 2000;192(7):987–1000.
368. Prince AL, Yin CC, Enos ME, Felices M, Berg LJ. The Tec kinases Itk and Rlk regulate conventional versus innate T-cell development. Immunol Rev. 2009;228(1):115–31.
369. Bachmann MF, Littman DR, Liao XC. Antiviral immune responses in Itk-deficient mice. J Virol. 1997;71(10):7253–7.
370. Atherly LO, Brehm MA, Welsh RM, Berg LJ. Tec kinases Itk and Rlk are required for CD8+ T cell responses to virus infection independent of their role in CD4+ T cell help. J Immunol. 2006;176(3):1571–81.
371. Kapnick SM, Stinchcombe JC, Griffiths GM, Schwartzberg PL, Inducible T. Cell kinase regulates the acquisition of cytolytic capacity and degranulation in CD8(+) CTLs. J Immunol. 2017;198(7):2699–711.
372. Qi Q, Xia M, Hu J, Hicks E, Iyer A, Xiong N, et al. Enhanced development of CD4+ gammadelta T cells

in the absence of Itk results in elevated IgE production. Blood. 2009;114(3):564–71.
373. Borkhardt A. New forms of EBV-associated lymphoproliferation and their treatment by allo SCT. In: 3rd Meeting on clinical immunology, allergy and immunodeficiencies, Tehran. 2010.
374. Khurana D, Arneson LN, Schoon RA, Dick CJ, Leibson PJ. Differential regulation of human NK cell-mediated cytotoxicity by the tyrosine kinase Itk. J Immunol. 2007;178(6):3575–82.
375. Bienemann K, Borkhardt A, Klapper W, Oschlies I. High incidence of Epstein–Barr virus (EBV)-positive Hodgkin lymphoma and Hodgkin lymphoma-like B-cell lymphoproliferations with EBV latency profile 2 in children with interleukin-2-inducible T-cell kinase deficiency. Histopathology. 2015;67(5):607–16.
376. Li FY, Chaigne-Delalande B, Kanellopoulou C, Davis JC, Matthews HF, Douek DC, et al. Second messenger role for Mg2+ revealed by human T-cell immunodeficiency. Nature. 2011;475(7357):471–6.
377. Chaigne-Delalande B, Li FY, O'Connor GM, Lukacs MJ, Jiang P, Zheng L, et al. Mg2+ regulates cytotoxic functions of NK and CD8 T cells in chronic EBV infection through NKG2D. Science. 2013;341(6142):186–91.
378. Li FY, Chaigne-Delalande B, Su H, Uzel G, Matthews H. Lenardo MJ. XMEN disease: a new primary immunodeficiency affecting Mg2+ regulation of immunity against Epstein–Barr virus. Blood. 2014;123(14):2148–52.
379. Goytain A, Quamme GA. Identification and characterization of a novel mammalian Mg2+ transporter with channel-like properties. BMC Genomics. 2005;6:48.
380. Zhou H, Clapham DE. Mammalian MagT1 and TUSC3 are required for cellular magnesium uptake and vertebrate embryonic development. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2009;106(37):15750–5.
381. Li FY, Lenardo MJ, Chaigne-Delalande B. Loss of MAGT1 abrogates the Mg2+ flux required for T cell signaling and leads to a novel human primary immunodeficiency. Magnes Res. 2011;24(3):S109–14.
382. Orange JS. Human natural killer cell deficiencies and susceptibility to infection. Microbes Infect. 2002;4(15):1545–58.
383. van Montfrans JM, Hoepelman AI, Otto S, van Gijn M, van de Corput L, de Weger RA, et al. CD27 deficiency is associated with combined immunodeficiency and persistent symptomatic EBV viremia. J Allergy Clin Immunol. 2012;129(3):787–93 e6.
384. Salzer E, Daschkey S, Choo S, Gombert M, Santos-Valente E, Ginzel S, et al. Combined immunodeficiency with life-threatening EBV-associated lymphoproliferative disorder in patients lacking functional CD27. Haematologica. 2013;98(3):473–8.
385. Seidel MG. CD27: a new player in the field of common variable immunodeficiency and EBV-associated lymphoproliferative disorder? J Allergy Clin Immunol. 2012;129(4):1175. author reply -6
386. Alkhairy OK, Perez-Becker R, Driessen GJ, Abolhassani H, van Montfrans J, Borte S, et al. Novel mutations in TNFRSF7/CD27: clinical, immunologic, and genetic characterization of human CD27 deficiency. J Allergy Clin Immunol. 2015;136(3):703–12 e10.
387. Abolhassani H, Edwards ES, Ikinciogullari A, Jing H, Borte S, Buggert M, et al. Combined immunodeficiency and Epstein–Barr virus-induced B cell malignancy in humans with inherited CD70 deficiency. J Exp Med. 2017;214(1):91–106.
388. Tangye SG, Liu YJ, Aversa G, Phillips JH, de Vries JE. Identification of functional human splenic memory B cells by expression of CD148 and CD27. J Exp Med. 1998;188(9):1691–703.
389. Jung J, Choe J, Li L, Choi YS. Regulation of CD27 expression in the course of germinal center B cell differentiation: the pivotal role of IL-10. Eur J Immunol. 2000;30(8):2437–43.
390. Borst J, Hendriks J, Xiao Y. CD27 and CD70 in T cell and B cell activation. Curr Opin Immunol. 2005;17(3):275–81.
391. Silva A, Andrews DM, Brooks AG, Smyth MJ, Hayakawa Y. Application of CD27 as a marker for distinguishing human NK cell subsets. Int Immunol. 2008;20(4):625–30.
392. Vossen MT, Matmati M, Hertoghs KM, Baars PA, Gent MR, Leclercq G, et al. CD27 defines phenotypically and functionally different human NK cell subsets. J Immunol. 2008;180(6):3739–45.
393. Lens SM, de Jong R, Hooibrink B, Koopman G, Pals ST, van Oers MH, et al. Phenotype and function of human B cells expressing CD70 (CD27 ligand). Eur J Immunol. 1996;26(12):2964–71.
394. Tesselaar K, Xiao Y, Arens R, van Schijndel GM, Schuurhuis DH, Mebius RE, et al. Expression of the murine CD27 ligand CD70 in vitro and in vivo. J Immunol. 2003;170(1):33–40.
395. Hendriks J, Gravestein LA, Tesselaar K, van Lier RA, Schumacher TN, Borst J. CD27 is required for generation and long-term maintenance of T cell immunity. Nat Immunol. 2000;1(5):433–40.
396. Nolte MA, van Olffen RW, van Gisbergen KP, van Lier RA. Timing and tuning of CD27-CD70 interactions: the impact of signal strength in setting the balance between adaptive responses and immunopathology. Immunol Rev. 2009;229(1):216–31.
397. Denoeud J, Moser M. Role of CD27/CD70 pathway of activation in immunity and tolerance. J Leukoc Biol. 2011;89(2):195–203.
398. Jang YS, Kang W, Chang DY, Sung PS, Park BC, Yoo SH, et al. CD27 engagement by a soluble CD70 protein enhances non-cytolytic antiviral activity of CD56bright natural killer cells by IFN-gamma secretion. Clin Immunol. 2013;149(3):379–87.
399. Takeda K, Oshima H, Hayakawa Y, Akiba H, Atsuta M, Kobata T, et al. CD27-mediated activation of murine NK cells. J Immunol. 2000;164(4):1741–5.
400. Martin E, Palmic N, Sanquer S, Lenoir C, Hauck F, Mongellaz C, et al. CTP synthase 1 deficiency in

humans reveals its central role in lymphocyte proliferation. Nature. 2014;510(7504):288–92.
401. Winter S, Martin E, Boutboul D, Lenoir C, Boudjemaa S, Petit A, et al. Loss of RASGRP1 in humans impairs T-cell expansion leading to Epstein–Barr virus susceptibility. EMBO Mol Med. 2018;10(2):188–99.
402. Salzer E, Cagdas D, Hons M, Mace EM, Garncarz W, Petronczki OY, et al. RASGRP1 deficiency causes immunodeficiency with impaired cytoskeletal dynamics. Nat Immunol. 2016;17(12):1352–60.
403. Platt CD, Fried AJ, Hoyos-Bachiloglu R, Usmani GN, Schmidt B, Whangbo J, et al. Combined immunodeficiency with EBV positive B cell lymphoma and epidermodysplasia verruciformis due to a novel homozygous mutation in RASGRP1. Clin Immunol. 2017;183:142–4.
404. Hogquist K. RasGRP: the missing link for Ras activation in thymocytes. Trends Immunol. 2001;22(2):69.
405. Kortum RL, Rouquette-Jazdanian AK, Samelson LE. Ras and extracellular signal-regulated kinase signaling in thymocytes and T cells. Trends Immunol. 2013;34(6):259–68.
406. Sorte HS, Osnes LT, Fevang B, Aukrust P, Erichsen HC, Backe PH, et al. A potential founder variant in CARMIL2/RLTPR in three Norwegian families with warts, molluscum contagiosum, and T-cell dysfunction. Mol Genet Genomic Med. 2016;4(6):604–16.
407. Wang Y, Ma CS, Ling Y, Bousfiha A, Camcioglu Y, Jacquot S, et al. Dual T cell- and B cell-intrinsic deficiency in humans with biallelic RLTPR mutations. J Exp Med. 2016;213(11):2413–35.
408. Schober T, Magg T, Laschinger M, Rohlfs M, Linhares ND, Puchalka J, et al. A human immunodeficiency syndrome caused by mutations in CARMIL2. Nat Commun. 2017;8:14209.
409. Rao VK, Straus SE. Causes and consequences of the autoimmune lymphoproliferative syndrome. Hematology. 2006;11(1):15–23.
410. Price S, Shaw PA, Seitz A, Joshi G, Davis J, Niemela JE, et al. Natural history of autoimmune lymphoproliferative syndrome associated with FAS gene mutations. Blood. 2014;123(13):1989–99.
411. Deutsch M, Tsopanou E, Dourakis SP. The autoimmune lymphoproliferative syndrome (Canale-Smith) in adulthood. Clin Rheumatol. 2004;23(1):43–4.
412. Turbyville JC, Rao VK. The autoimmune lymphoproliferative syndrome: a rare disorder providing clues about normal tolerance. Autoimmun Rev. 2010;9(7):488–93.
413. Madkaikar M, Mhatre S, Gupta M, Ghosh K. Advances in autoimmune lymphoproliferative syndromes. Eur J Haematol. 2011;87(1):1–9.
414. Teachey DT. Autoimmune lymphoproliferative syndrome: new approaches to diagnosis and management. Clin Adv Hematol Oncol. 2011;9(3):233–5.
415. Teachey DT. New advances in the diagnosis and treatment of autoimmune lymphoproliferative syndrome. Curr Opin Pediatr. 2012;24(1):1–8.
416. Tarbox JA, Keppel MP, Topcagic N, Mackin C, Ben Abdallah M, Baszis KW, et al. Elevated double negative T cells in pediatric autoimmunity. J Clin Immunol. 2014;34(5):594–9.
417. Teachey DT, Seif AE, Grupp SA. Advances in the management and understanding of autoimmune lymphoproliferative syndrome (ALPS). Br J Haematol. 2010;148(2):205–16.
418. Klemann C, Esquivel M, Magerus-Chatinet A, Lorenz MR, Fuchs I, Neveux N, et al. Evolution of disease activity and biomarkers on and off rapamycin in 28 patients with autoimmune lymphoproliferative syndrome. Haematologica. 2017;102(2):e52–e6.
419. Oliveira JB, Bleesing JJ, Dianzani U, Fleisher TA, Jaffe ES, Lenardo MJ, et al. Revised diagnostic criteria and classification for the autoimmune lymphoproliferative syndrome (ALPS): report from the 2009 NIH International Workshop. Blood. 2010;116(14):e35–40.
420. Caminha I, Fleisher TA, Hornung RL, Dale JK, Niemela JE, Price S, et al. Using biomarkers to predict the presence of FAS mutations in patients with features of the autoimmune lymphoproliferative syndrome. J Allergy Clin Immunol. 2010;125(4):946–9 e6.
421. Bride K, Teachey D. Autoimmune lymphoproliferative syndrome: more than a FAScinating disease. F1000Res. 2017;6:1928.
422. Calvo KR, Price S, Braylan RC, Oliveira JB, Lenardo M, Fleisher TA, et al. JMML and RALD (Ras-associated autoimmune leukoproliferative disorder): common genetic etiology yet clinically distinct entities. Blood. 2015;125(18):2753–8.
423. Su HC, Lenardo MJ. Genetic defects of apoptosis and primary immunodeficiency. Immunol Allergy Clin North Am. 2008;28(2):329–51. ix
424. Lucas CL, Chandra A, Nejentsev S, Condliffe AM, Okkenhaug K. PI3Kdelta and primary immunodeficiencies. Nat Rev Immunol. 2016;16(11):702–14.
425. Lo B, Fritz JM, Su HC, Uzel G, Jordan MB, Lenardo MJ. CHAI and LATAIE: new genetic diseases of CTLA-4 checkpoint insufficiency. Blood. 2016;128(8):1037–42.
426. Milner JD, Vogel TP, Forbes L, Ma CA, Stray-Pedersen A, Niemela JE, et al. Early-onset lymphoproliferation and autoimmunity caused by germline STAT3 gain-of-function mutations. Blood. 2015;125(4):591–9.
427. Lo B, Zhang K, Lu W, Zheng L, Zhang Q, Kanellopoulou C, et al. AUTOIMMUNE DISEASE. Patients with LRBA deficiency show CTLA4 loss and immune dysregulation responsive to abatacept therapy. Science. 2015;349(6246):436–40.
428. Snow AL, Marsh RA, Krummey SM, Roehrs P, Young LR, Zhang K, et al. Restimulation-induced apoptosis of T cells is impaired in patients with X-linked lymphoproliferative disease caused by SAP deficiency. J Clin Invest. 2009;119(10):2976–89.

429. Lenardo M, Chan KM, Hornung F, McFarland H, Siegel R, Wang J, et al. Mature T lymphocyte apoptosis--immune regulation in a dynamic and unpredictable antigenic environment. Annu Rev Immunol. 1999;17:221–53.
430. Lenardo MJ, Oliveira JB, Zheng L, Rao VK. ALPS-ten lessons from an international workshop on a genetic disease of apoptosis. Immunity. 2010;32(3):291–5.
431. Muschen M, Re D, Brauninger A, Wolf J, Hansmann ML, Diehl V, et al. Somatic mutations of the CD95 gene in Hodgkin and Reed-Sternberg cells. Cancer Res. 2000;60(20):5640–3.
432. Muschen M, Re D, Jungnickel B, Diehl V, Rajewsky K, Kuppers R. Somatic mutation of the CD95 gene in human B cells as a side-effect of the germinal center reaction. J Exp Med. 2000;192(12):1833–40.
433. Muschen M, Warskulat U, Beckmann MW. Defining CD95 as a tumor suppressor gene. J Mol Med (Berl). 2000;78(6):312–25.
434. Straus SE, Jaffe ES, Puck JM, Dale JK, Elkon KB, Rosen-Wolff A, et al. The development of lymphomas in families with autoimmune lymphoproliferative syndrome with germline Fas mutations and defective lymphocyte apoptosis. Blood. 2001;98(1):194–200.
435. Poppema S, Maggio E, van den Berg A. Development of lymphoma in Autoimmune Lymphoproliferative Syndrome (ALPS) and its relationship to Fas gene mutations. Leuk Lymphoma. 2004;45(3):423–31.
436. Gronbaek K, Straten PT, Ralfkiaer E, Ahrenkiel V, Andersen MK, Hansen NE, et al. Somatic Fas mutations in non-Hodgkin's lymphoma: association with extranodal disease and autoimmunity. Blood. 1998;92(9):3018–24.
437. Shin MS, Kim HS, Kang CS, Park WS, Kim SY, Lee SN, et al. Inactivating mutations of CASP10 gene in non-Hodgkin lymphomas. Blood. 2002;99(11):4094–9.
438. Maggio EM, Van Den Berg A, de Jong D, Diepstra A, Poppema S. Low frequency of FAS mutations in Reed-Sternberg cells of Hodgkin's lymphoma. Am J Pathol. 2003;162(1):29–35.
439. Kisand K, Boe Wolff AS, Podkrajsek KT, Tserel L, Link M, Kisand KV, et al. Chronic mucocutaneous candidiasis in APECED or thymoma patients correlates with autoimmunity to Th17-associated cytokines. J Exp Med. 2010;207(2):299–308.
440. Puel A, Doffinger R, Natividad A, Chrabieh M, Barcenas-Morales G, Picard C, et al. Autoantibodies against IL-17A, IL-17F, and IL-22 in patients with chronic mucocutaneous candidiasis and autoimmune polyendocrine syndrome type I. J Exp Med. 2010;207(2):291–7.
441. Anderson MS, Venanzi ES, Klein L, Chen Z, Berzins SP, Turley SJ, et al. Projection of an immunological self shadow within the thymus by the aire protein. Science. 2002;298(5597):1395–401.
442. Gardner JM, Devoss JJ, Friedman RS, Wong DJ, Tan YX, Zhou X, et al. Deletional tolerance mediated by extrathymic Aire-expressing cells. Science. 2008;321(5890):843–7.
443. Nagamine K, Peterson P, Scott HS, Kudoh J, Minoshima S, Heino M, et al. Positional cloning of the APECED gene. Nat Genet. 1997;17(4):393–8.
444. Finnish-German AC. An autoimmune disease, APECED, caused by mutations in a novel gene featuring two PHD-type zinc-finger domains. Nat Genet. 1997;17(4):399–403.
445. Passos GA, Speck-Hernandez CA, Assis AF, Mendes-da-Cruz DA. Update on Aire and thymic negative selection. Immunology. 2018;153(1):10–20.
446. De Martino L, Capalbo D, Improda N, Lorello P, Ungaro C, Di Mase R, et al. Novel findings into AIRE genetics and functioning: clinical implications. Front Pediatr. 2016;4:86.
447. Rautemaa R, Hietanen J, Niissalo S, Pirinen S, Perheentupa J. Oral and oesophageal squamous cell carcinoma--a complication or component of autoimmune polyendocrinopathy-candidiasis-ectodermal dystrophy (APECED, APS-I). Oral Oncol. 2007;43(6):607–13.
448. Firth NA, O'Grady JF, Reade PC. Oral squamous cell carcinoma in a young person with candidosis endocrinopathy syndrome: a case report. Int J Oral Maxillofac Surg. 1997;26(1):42–4.
449. Rosa DD, Pasqualotto AC, Denning DW. Chronic mucocutaneous candidiasis and oesophageal cancer. Med Mycol. 2008;46(1):85–91.
450. McGurk M, Holmes M. Chronic muco-cutaneous candidiasis and oral neoplasia. J Laryngol Otol. 1988;102(7):643–5.
451. Field EA, Field JK, Martin MV. Does Candida have a role in oral epithelial neoplasia? J Med Vet Mycol. 1989;27(5):277–94.
452. Krogh P, Hald B, Holmstrup P. Possible mycological etiology of oral mucosal cancer: catalytic potential of infecting Candida albicans and other yeasts in production of N-nitrosobenzylmethylamine. Carcinogenesis. 1987;8(10):1543–8.
453. O'Grady JF, Reade PC. Candida albicans as a promoter of oral mucosal neoplasia. Carcinogenesis. 1992;13(5):783–6.

Allergies and Cancers

26

Delia Waldenmaier and Axel Lorentz

Contents

D. Waldenmaier
Department of Nutritional Medicine, University of Hohenheim, Stuttgart, Germany

Institute for Diabetes-Technology GmbH, Ulm University, Ulm, Germany

A. Lorentz (✉)
Department of Nutritional Medicine, University of Hohenheim, Stuttgart, Germany
e-mail: Lorentz@uni-hohenheim.de

26.1 Introduction

Worldwide, especially in industrialized countries, allergies and cancer cause high morbidity, mortality, and financial burden to healthcare systems. An overall of 14.1 million people were diagnosed with cancer, and 8.2 million died from cancer in 2012, with increasing incidences

N. Rezaei (ed.), *Cancer Immunology*, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-30845-2_26

especially in developing countries [1]. In developed countries, for instance, in Germany and in the USA, cancer is the second leading cause of death after cardiovascular diseases [2, 3]. Cancer rates are rising due to an increasingly aging population and changes in lifestyle [1]. Allergies are even more prevalent, but mortality is much lower. In Germany about 30% of all adults have been diagnosed with some type of allergy during their life time, and about 300 million people are suffering from asthma worldwide [4, 5].

Interest in possible relationships between these prevalent diseases arose in the 1950s. Following studies revealed a decreased prevalence of allergies among cancer patients [6]. Since then a lot of research has been done, but still no generally accepted statement about the correlation has been established. As the immune system is involved in both allergic and neoplastic diseases, a connection might be obvious; nonetheless, the nature of this connection is dichotomous. On the one hand, allergies are regarded as a hyperactive state of the immune system, which leads to better detection and destruction of tumor cells. On the other hand, allergic reactions go along with inflammatory processes, which might initiate and support tumor growth [7]. Hence, there are different hypotheses on the relationship, which appears to be complex and not universally applicable for every type of cancer or allergy. This chapter will give an overview about studies examining these relationships and describes possible mechanisms that could explain them.

26.2 Molecular Mechanisms of Allergy

By definition, allergy is an immunologic reaction to normally innocuous environmental antigens (Ags), so-called allergens, and it is mostly equated with type I hypersensitivity (immediate-type hypersensitivity) according to the classification by Coombs and Gell. This type is mediated by immunoglobulin (Ig) E in response to T helper cell type 2 (Th2) polarization of $CD4^+$ T-cells [8]. Usually IgE is associated with defense against helminthic infections [9]. Atopy is the hereditary tendency to immediate-type reactions and increased production of IgE, however, not every allergic disease has to be atopic [10]. There are different genes associated with atopy, but environmental factors are of great importance as well. During fetal and postnatal periods, the immune system is rather Th2 polarized which shifts toward Th1 during the first years of life [9]. According to the hygiene hypothesis, infectious diseases in childhood are important for Th1 bias. This corresponds with an increasing incidence of allergic diseases in industrialized countries where excessive hygiene leads to an inadequate Th1/Th2 balance [11].

Allergic reactions are induced by low doses of allergens. Allergens are proteins, many of which are enzymes, and their allergenicity is determined by protease activity, surface features, or glycosylation patterns. Soluble allergens enter the body, orally or by inhalation, where they are taken up by antigen-presenting cells (APCs) such as dendritic cells (DC) which present them to naïve $CD4^+$ T-cells via major histocompatibility complex (MHC) class II [12]. In the presence of interleukin (IL)-4, naïve $CD4^+$ T-cells differentiate into Th2 cells which are characterized by the production of mainly IL-4 and IL-5. On the contrary, Th1 cells which develop under the influence of IL-12 from the same precursor cells predominantly produce interferon (IFN)-γ and IL-2. Further factors determining polarization are the Ag's route of entry, Ag dose, and the way of Ag presentation [13, 14]. Th2 cells organize the further allergic response towards the specific allergen, as shown in Fig. 26.1. Secretion of IL-4 or IL-13 by Th2 cells causes the isotype switch to IgE in B-cells. Additionally, a costimulatory signal, namely the engagement of CD40 on the surface of B-cells and CD40 ligand on the surface of Th2 cells, is required for the stimulation of the B-cell [15]. Subsequently, sensitized B-cells differentiate into plasma cells and produce allergen-specific IgE. Moreover, B-cells themselves are also able to take up soluble Ags via specific B-cell receptors and present them to naïve $CD4^+$ T-cells inducing Th2 differentiation [9]. IL-5, IL-6, and IL-9 may enhance IgE production, whereas Th1 cytokines like IFN-γ and IL-12 act as inhibitors [14].

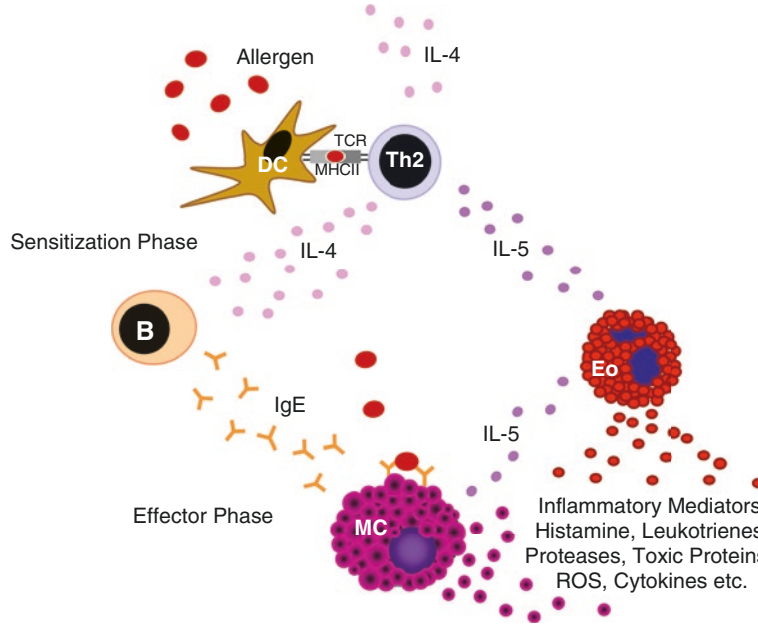


Fig. 26.1 Type I allergic reaction. *B* B-cell, *DC* dendritic cell, *eo* eosinophilic granulocyte, *IgE* immune globulin E, *IL* interleukin, *MC* mast cell, *Th2* T helper cell type 2, *ROS* reactive oxygen species. For further explanation, see text.

Most of the IgE engage to the high affinity receptor FcεRI on the surface of mast cells even in absence of Ag. If allergens bind to specific IgE, FcεRI is cross-linked, followed by an inflammatory reaction [15]. Mast cell mediators such as histamine, lipid mediators, and cytokines are released during the effector phase of an allergic reaction and induce typical allergic symptoms. FcεRI is also expressed on basophils, which are also able to release allergic mediators being stored in granules [16]. As basophils are able to produce IL-4 as well, they can amplify IgE production [17]. When specific IgE was once built, further exposition to the corresponding allergen elicits an allergic reaction without renewed sensitization [9].

Production of IL-5 by Th2 cells and mast cells activates eosinophils to secrete inflammatory mediators as well as highly toxic proteins and free radicals from their granules [8, 9]. Hours after the early phase of the reaction, the late phase may take place, which is characterized by infiltration of further inflammatory leukocytes and eventually a chronic inflammation may be established [18]. The cells involved in allergic reactions reside predominantly in tissues close to the body surface as their actual function is to defend against multi-cellular parasites, which invade primarily into skin and mucosa-associated lymphoid tissue. Therefore, these cells are specialized to evoke Th2 immune responses [8].

26.3 Types of Allergic Diseases

Allergic asthma is a chronic inflammatory disease of the airways caused by inhaled allergens. Symptoms are breathlessness, wheezing, and coughing due to bronchial constriction and increased mucus secretion. It is often accompanied by hyper reactivity of the airways to other stimuli [10, 19]. Allergic rhinitis or hay fever is an allergic inflammation of the nasal mucosa, which results in sneezing, itching, runny or blocked nose, and is often combined with allergic conjunctivitis [20]. Atopic dermatitis or eczema is a manifestation of atopy, which occurs predominantly among children, showing symptoms like itching, red rashes, and small vesicles on the skin [20, 21]. Food allergies mostly cause diarrhea or vomiting, but they may also affect the respiratory tract and others [8]. Anaphylaxis is a systemic reaction against an allergen with life-threatening symptoms like hypotension or airway constriction [20].

26.4 Molecular Basics of Carcinogenesis

Cancer is a genetic disease in consequence of a number of mutations in somatic cells. Unlimited growth of the mutated cells leads to formation of neoplasms. Tumor cells are capable of invading into tissues, and eventually of disseminating and building metastases in distant regions of the body. The clinical phenotype is varying as well as the implications, depending on the type of cancer and the affected patient. Although the incidence of cancer increases with age, tumors occur in every age group [22].

The development of cancer, carcinogenesis, is a multistep process which requires progressive alterations in the genome of normal cells. Mutations can occur spontaneously or can be generated by so-called carcinogens [23]. A carcinogen is an environmental factor like a chemical compound, a biological substance, a virus or radiation that is able to interact with DNA and cause damages or alterations in the genome. Usually cells have several mechanisms to repair DNA damages. During the process of repair, the cell cycle is stalled, preventing that this mutation is multiplied. If no repair is possible, the cell is destroyed by apoptosis [24]. An abolition of these mechanisms is a precondition for oncogenesis. Therefore, mutations have to occur in genes that are responsible for the control of cell proliferation, differentiation, or apoptosis [25]. Such critical genes can be divided into two groups: oncogenes and tumor suppressor genes [26]. Products of oncogenes are, e.g., transcription factors, growth factors or their receptors. Tumor cells are characterized by gain-of-function-mutations in oncogenes resulting in overexpression of oncogene proteins and subsequent increased growth [27]. Tumor suppressor genes, or rather their products, have a repressive effect on cell growth. Loss-of-function-mutations in tumor suppressor genes result in unimpeded proliferation or evasion of apoptosis [25].

However, one single mutation is not sufficient for the formation of a cancer cell. Carcinogenesis is a multistep process involving several events that incapacitate control of the cell cycle, thereby creating a cell with growth advantages [28]. The initiation process of carcinogenesis, characterized by somatic changes, is followed by the process of promotion. Different promoters like chemical irritants, hormones, or inflammation induce proliferation of the damaged cells and further mutations, as the genome of cancer cells is very unstable [25, 29]. The next step is tumor progression. By means of alteration of cell adhesion molecules and protease activity, cancer cells are capable of leaving the primary tumor and infiltrating into tissues. Subsequently tumor cells spread through blood or lymphoid vessels, and build metastases in distant parts of the body while they are displacing healthy tissue [30].

26.5 Types of Cancers

Pancreatic cancer is one of the cancer types with the poorest prognosis, as mortality rates almost correspond to incidence rates [31]. The most common type is adenocarcinoma, which affects the exocrine component of the pancreas, but other components of the pancreas may also be affected. Main causes are smoking, diabetes mellitus, and chronic pancreatitis [22]. Lung cancer is the third leading type of cancer among men and women, and the leading cause of death from cancer among men. More than two thirds of the cases are caused by cigarette smoke [31]. Cancers of the colon and rectum represent the second most common type of cancer. Besides the hereditary component, dietary habits are a major risk factor [3, 31]. Skin cancer includes malignant melanoma, basal cell carcinoma, squamous cell carcinoma, and some others [22]. The first one causes more deaths; however, the others are more prevalent, yet with higher curing rates [31]. Meningioma and glioma are the two most common types of brain cancer, whereby the causes are largely unknown [32]. Lymphatic and hematopoietic cancers are, e.g., leukemia, Hodgkin's lymphoma, or non-Hodgkin's lymphoma. Leukemia is characterized by an abnormal proliferation of leukocytes and can be classified into acute or chronic and myelogenous or lymphocytic forms [22]. Acute lymphocytic leukemia is

the most common tumor disease in childhood, whereas the etiology is still not identified [31]. Among reproductive cancer, prostate cancer in men and breast cancer in women are the leading types of cancer. Furthermore, breast cancer is the most frequent cancer-induced cause of death among women. Other common reproductive tumors are tumors of the uterus, cervix, and ovaries [31].

26.6 Anti-tumor Immunity

In 1970, Burnet and Thomas established the hypothesis of cancer immuno-surveillance. It states that, to a certain degree, the immune system is able to detect and destroy tumor cells before they can arise to clinically detectable malignancies. Meanwhile this hypothesis has been expanded to the theory of immuno-editing, which is comprised of three phases: the elimination phase, the equilibrium phase, and finally the escape phase [33].

The elimination phase complies with the process of immuno-surveillance. Immune cells of innate and adaptive immune response identify tumor cells by so-called tumor Ags [34]. If these are presented to an activated $CD8^+$ T-cell, the tumor cell is directly destroyed by release of cytotoxic proteins. Moreover, antigen-specific B-cells produce specific antibodies, which can opsonize tumor cells, and lead to either antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity (ADCC) or complement-dependent cytotoxicity (CDC) [35].

Besides this adaptive immune reaction, there are cells of the innate immune system involved in immuno-surveillance, which execute antigen-independent immune responses. Among them are natural killer (NK) cells and NK T-cells, which are able to recognize and directly kill tumor cells [25]. In addition, these two cell types produce IFN-γ that is probably the most important cytokine in anti-tumor immunity [33]. It acts indirectly by modulating the immune response, e.g., by activation of macrophages or augmentation of T-cell response and NK cell activity, and it is able to increase immunogenicity of tumor cells. Moreover, IFN-γ itself has anti-proliferative, apoptotic, and angiostatic capacities, which directly affect tumor cells [36, 37]. However, cancer cells are capable of defending against these immune mechanisms. Either they lack certain MHC peptides, making them unrecognizable to T-cells or they do not express costimulating signals, which lead to T-cell tolerance [38]. Hence, if the immune system is not able to kill the entire tumor cells, the process of immunoediting reaches the equilibrium phase, characterized by dynamic dying and generation of further mutated cancer cells [34]. Following Darwin's rules, those cells, which show surviving advantages through reduced immunogenicity, resist the immune attacks. Thus, tumor cells also are shaped and sculpted by immune cells, leading to cell populations that are capable of evading any immune reactions [33]. In this case, surviving tumor cells enter the escape phase. Besides the absent immunogenicity, tumor cells are also able to suppress immune reactivity so that they can proliferate continuously and eventually develop a malignant tumor [38].

Altogether, the immuno-surveillance hypothesis describes that the immune system is in fact able to fight tumor cells, but also promotes carcinogenesis by sculpting poorly immunogenic mutants.

26.7 Relationship Between Allergies and Cancers in General

The first studies relating to possible associations between allergies and cancer date back to more than half a century [39, 40]. However, until now the results have not been consistent, despite the various researches in this regard [41].

Regarding cancer in general, there seems to be a balance between studies reporting positive and negative correlations with different types of allergies. While analyses of the Cancer Prevention Study II indicate a slightly decreased risk for people suffering from hay fever or asthma [42], data from the First National Health and Nutrition Examination Survey (NHANES I) show an up to

50% increased risk of developing any type of cancer [43]. Together with several other studies [19, 21, 39, 44–56], no general conclusion can be drawn which identifies the role of allergies in cancer epidemiology. As the term cancer includes diseases of diverse etiologies and a variety of affected tissues, it is necessary to distinguish between different cancer sites as well as specific types of allergy. In the following, those associations that are supported by the majority of studies are presented.

26.7.1 Cancers Positively Correlated with Allergies

With one exception, all of the evaluated studies suggest a positive association between a history of asthma and lung cancer. Without controlling for smoking, a study of 78,000 asthmatic patients found an increased risk for women as well as for men [49]. Another study observed a positive association with asthma, yet no associations with hay fever only, both asthma and hay fever, and any of these conditions [42]. A further survey calculated a lower, but still elevated risk for asthma when controlling for smoking. An additional analysis of the effect of respiratory drugs taken for the treatment of asthma showed no connection to cancer development [19]. In a Taiwanese study asthma was the only type of allergy associated with risk of lung cancer [48]. In contrast, El-Zein et al. [57] reported an inverse relationship between lung cancer and asthma and other allergic diseases.

The prevalence of skin cancer was predominantly examined among subjects suffering from atopic dermatitis, for other types of allergy there is only little evidence available. Atopic dermatitis was associated with a clearly increased risk of keratinocyte carcinoma, which made up half of all observed excess cancers in this study. Among 6275 hospitalized patients with atopic dermatitis, not a single case of malignant melanoma was found [50]. Another study involving patients with atopic dermatitis found an increased risk of melanoma as well as of non-melanoma skin cancer [51].

26.7.2 Tumor-Promoting Effects of Allergies

The positive association between specific types of cancer and allergies is mainly explained by exemplary description of the relationship between asthma and lung cancer. Increased susceptibility to inhaled carcinogens due to impaired mucociliary clearance and pulmonary obstruction and, above all, inflammatory processes are regarded to be responsible for the increased prevalence of lung cancer among asthmatic patients [49, 58–60]. As described before, allergic reactions go along with chronic or subchronic inflammation. There is evidence that tumors predominantly arise at sites of inflammation, and that inflammatory cells and mediators are found in all tumors [61].

Inflammatory reactions are usually triggered by infections. Macrophages, which have detected infectious agents, release chemokines that attract other inflammatory leukocytes, such as neutrophils and further macrophages. Additionally they release cytokines, which increase vascular permeability to facilitate migration of attracted cells into afflicted tissues. Leukocyte recruitment is mediated by adhesion molecules and extracellular proteases, which relieve movement into the tissue [29]. Since inflammatory responses are supposed to remove the causes as well as to rebuild damaged tissues, an environment rich in growth promoting, but also rich in damage causing factors is required. Consequently, the conditions for carcinogenesis are established.

Reactive oxygen species (ROS) released by macrophages are capable of causing DNA damages, thus promoting tumor initiation. Permanent cell regeneration raises the probability of carcinogenic mutations [29]. Cancer promotion is supported by growth factors like TGF, IL-1, IL-6, or IL-8. Furthermore, several inflammatory mediators have angiogenic properties or stimulate the production of angiogenic factors. For dissemination, cancer cells exploit the mechanisms that leukocytes utilize for extravasation into inflamed tissues. These are activation of selectin molecules, interactions between integrins and adhesion molecules of the immunoglobulin superfamily, and secretion of proteinases [29].

Apparently, an inflammatory microenvironment is essential for tumor progression, but vice versa, tumors themselves also secrete inflammatory mediators, which recruit leukocytes and mediate inflammation [38, 62]. Accordingly, Dvorak [63] described tumors as "wounds that do not heal," indicating that pathogen-induced inflammation is usually self-limiting, while cancer-related inflammation is triggered permanently [29]. Oncogenic mutations that initiate carcinogenesis may also lead to the establishment of an inflammatory environment. The activation of the Ras oncogene by mutation, for instance, leads to the expression of proteins that induce the production of inflammatory mediators [38, 61]. The main mediator cells of tumor-induced inflammation are tumor-associated macrophages (TAM). They are able to release almost all of the cytokines and chemokines required for tumor progression and their abundance has been shown to correlate with a poor prognosis [29, 64].

One of the key molecules in the connection between inflammation and carcinogenesis is the transcription factor nuclear factor (NF)-κB. NF-κB is an endogenous tumor promoter as it is activated immoderately by carcinogenic mutations. In addition, it is a coordinator of inflammation by regulating expression of several pro-inflammatory and survival factors [59, 64].

26.7.3 Cancers Negatively Correlated with Allergies

The association between a history of allergy and pancreatic cancer seems to be quite definite. Five surveys could demonstrate an inverse association. Holly et al. reported a decreased prevalence of any self-reported allergy among pancreatic cancer patients. This correlation was available for multiple allergens like house dust, plants, mold, animals, and food. Furthermore, with increasing numbers of allergies and increasing severity of symptoms the risk of cancer development decreased. It should be noted that even after receiving a hypo-sensitization therapy, allergic patients still showed a reduced risk [65]. Hay fever was correlated with a reduced risk of pancreatic cancer in Turner's prospective study [42]. Eppel et al. [66] found a risk of pancreatic cancer in allergic patients that was scaled down by more than 50%, but not for asthma patients. Similar results were reported by Cotterchio et al. [67] a few years later, but another study could demonstrate an inverse correlation with asthma, which was strongest with the intake of asthma medication [68]. Another study that additionally investigated a possible association between variants in IL-4 and IL-4 receptor α genes and cancer prevalence found a negative correlation for any allergy, hay fever, and reaction to animals. However, variants in the above-mentioned genes were not correlated to cancer [69]. A more recent study detected a significantly increased survival of non-resected pancreatic cancer patients with self-reported allergies. In the cohort that has undergone a resection, results were non-significant [70].

Cancers of the colon and rectum are less prevalent among individuals that show a history of allergy. Several studies identified allergies to be inversely associated with colorectal cancer. The probability of developing colorectal cancer with any self-reported allergy in an Italian study was lowered, whereas the association was stronger when allergy was diagnosed at age 35 or older. Regarding colon and rectum cancer separately, the risk of rectum cancer development was lower than colon cancer, whereas the latter was not statistically significant [71]. Another case-control study obtained a protective effect of any allergy on cancer development. Self-reported allergy was inversely associated with both colon and rectum cancer [72]. The risk of colorectal cancer calculated by Turner et al. was reduced by more than 20% among patients suffering from both asthma and hay fever, and less reduction was observed among patients suffering from hay fever only [42]. In addition, a large prospective study in Hawaii and California showed an inverse relation between atopic diseases and colorectal cancer [73]. A prospective study from Iowa involving only women noted an inverse correlation for allergy in general which was the strongest in patients with skin allergies. Moreover, the risk was decreasing

with an increasing number of allergies [74]. Allergic rhinitis was negatively associated with rectal cancer among Taiwanese patients, and the association was stronger for males than for females [48]. Combining the cohorts from the Cancer Prevention Study (CPS) I and II, Jacobs et al. [75] calculated a relative risk of 0.83 for colorectal cancer mortality when having both asthma and hay fever. A current meta-analysis of prospective studies confirmed a 12% decreased risk for colorectal cancer and any allergic condition [76].

Most studies agree about a decreased risk of tumors of the brain, specifically glioma, being associated with atopic diseases. In a hospital-based case-control study, the prevalence of glioma was reduced in combination with physician-diagnosed history of any allergy and asthma as well as with self-reported allergy to chemicals. Meningioma risk was not associated with any type of allergy. In addition, the risk of acoustic neuroma was positively associated with hay fever, allergy to food, and allergy to other substances [77]. One further case-control study found hospitalized glioma cases to be less likely to suffer from asthma, as well as hay fever, atopic dermatitis, or allergy in general. Moreover, there was a stronger risk reduction in conjunction with use of any allergic medication like nasal spray or antihistamines [78]. Wigertz et al. contrasted the prevalence of allergy among glioma and meningioma cases with non-cancerous individuals. They showed a decreased risk of glioma among subjects with asthma, atopic dermatitis, and hay fever. Treatment of hay fever with nasal spray or eye drops was associated with lower risks than non-treated disease. Meningioma risk was only reduced among atopic dermatitis patients [79]. In children having asthma, a 45% risk reduction could be observed [80]. One case-control study used immunoglobulin E (IgE) levels for the measurement of allergy besides a self-reported history of allergy. As IgE levels did not significantly confirm self-reported allergies, odds ratios for the risk of glioma development varied but both implicated a decreased risk [81]. A few years later the same research group reported similar risks for meningioma development [32]. A more recent study confirmed this with an odds ratio of 0.46 for allergen-specific IgE levels and glioma [82]. Besides glioma and meningioma, data from the INTERPHONE study also indicate allergies to protect from acoustic neuroma [83]. Data from the Glioma International Case-Control Study involving more than 8000 participants from 14 countries recently indicated a 30% lower risk for glioma among patient with respiratory allergies [84].

26.8 Tumor-Protecting Effects of Allergies

The majority of the presented studies attribute negative associations between allergies and cancers to an enhanced immuno-surveillance among allergic patients due to a hypersensitive and hyperactive immune system. This implies that immune cells of allergic subjects are more effective in detecting and destroying cancer cells [48, 53]. The pivotal cells of immuno-surveillance are NK cells by virtue of their capacity to carry out ADCC and to produce IFN-γ [37]. There is evidence for increased numbers and activity of NK cells in subjects suffering from asthma or allergic rhinitis [85–87]. Additionally, it could be proved that there is a negative correlation between cancer incidence and natural cytotoxicity which would further explain an improved potential for immuno-surveillance among allergic individuals [88].

Besides the classical cells of immuno-surveillance, other immune cells may be anti-tumor effectors as well. Below, critical cells and mediators of allergic reactions and their possible anti-tumor activities are given. While in non-allergic individuals their activity may be negligible due to low occurrences, their actions may be increased among allergic subjects, explaining a negative correlation between allergies and cancer incidence.

Allergic disorders are marked by increased levels of eosinophils, a condition named eosinophilia, as eosinophils are important effector cells in allergic reactions [89]. A role for eosinophils in immuno-surveillance of tumors

was considered since they were observed in different tumor infiltrates. Indeed, higher numbers of tissue or blood eosinophils correlated with better prognosis, e.g., improved survival rates in lung and colon cancer [90, 91]. Although eosinophils might contribute to tumor growth by release of VEGF, thereby initiating angiogenesis, in vitro and in vivo studies substantiated rather anti-tumor activities [6, 92].

Eosinophils are recruited by secretion of IL-5 from Th2 cells and eotaxin-1, a specific chemokine. Particularly IL-5 induces differentiation from $CD34^+$ precursor cells, stimulates synthesis of granule proteins, and activates eosinophil effector functions [93, 94]. These effector functions are mainly mediated by the release of their granule proteins, which are highly toxic towards pathogens, as well as towards tumor cells. In vitro studies could prove the direct cytotoxicity of eosinophil cationic protein (ECP) [90, 91, 94]. ECP causes lysis of tumor cells by creating pores in the cell membrane [95]. Further granule proteins like major basic protein or eosinophil peroxidase have indirect anti-tumor properties in terms of triggering the release of histamine from mast cells. Besides the IL-5 dependent activation, eosinophils are also responsive to specific IgE. As they express IgE receptors on their surface, binding of IgE leads to tumor-specific antibody-dependent cellular phagocytosis (ADCP) [6].

A study that involved lung cancer patients, investigated anti-tumor activities of eosinophils in vitro. For this purpose, eosinophilia was induced by IL-2 treatment in cancer patients. Eosinophils were then purified from blood samples and added to tumor cells. ADCC and direct lysis by eosinophils from IL-2 treated patients were highly increased compared to those of non-treated patients or healthy donors, which did not harm tumor cells at all [90]. This suggests that in fact there are differences in cytotoxic potentials between allergic and non-allergic individuals. The influence of IL-2 was to ascribe to secondary cytokine production because IL-2 has no direct effect on eosinophils, but stimulates lymphocytes. Thus, eosinophil activation was most likely mediated by IL-5.

Another study confirmed the involvement of eosinophils in anti-tumor immunity in methylcholanthrene-induced fibrosarcoma models. Among IL-5 transgenic mice, which show increased levels of eosinophils, tumor growth and incidence were reduced whereas among eotaxin-deficient mice incidence was increased. An even greater increase of incidence was observed in eosinophil-deficient mice. This provides evidence that, at least chemically induced cancers, may be effectively fought and inhibited in growth by eosinophils [93].

IgE is the key mediator of allergic reactions. Binding of IgE to the high affinity receptor FcεRI on the surface of mast cells and basophils leads to ADCC, whereas binding to the low affinity receptor CD23 on the surface of macrophages or eosinophils leads to ADCP [6]. Usually IgE is predominantly present in tissues bound to its receptors, but in allergic patients, serum IgE levels are up to tenfold higher than normal [96]. In addition to defense against helminths and hypersensitivity towards allergens, IgE Abs may also be directed against tumor Ags, thereby mediating anti-tumor activities. In vitro studies could demonstrate IgE-mediated effector activities against human ovarian carcinoma cells [96, 97]. Furthermore, treatment of mice with IgE targeted on tumor cells resulted in decreased growth of induced cancer. The effect was significantly stronger for IgE than for treatment with IgG. Besides the curative potential of IgE, a protective long-term immunity against the specific tumor cells was observed as well [98]. The incidence of survival was monitored within a case-control study among glioma patients. Those who had elevated levels of IgE were observed to survive on average 9 months longer compared to patients with moderate or borderline IgE levels. Additionally, elevated IgE levels were more common among control subjects than in patients, which might support the assumption of an anti-tumor capacity of IgE [99]. Among pancreatic cancer patients, IgE levels were detected to be fivefold higher than in control groups, whereas levels of other Igs were similar. Tumor-specific IgE was found to mediate ADCC against tumor cells, whereas IgE isolated from healthy controls

did not [100]. Recapitulating, IgE is an effective mediator of anti-tumor cytotoxicity as well as phagocytosis of tumor cells.

Mast cells, generally associated with allergic reactions are also frequently found in tumors, attracted by the tumor cells themselves, where they assume an angiogenic role [101]. In most cancer types, mast cells therefore act as tumor-promoters by producing angiogenic and lymphangiogenic factors. However, in some cancers, e.g., breast cancer, they might rather be tumor-suppressors by producing anti-tumorigenic molecules such as TNF and IL-9, whereas in yet others they are apparently innocent bystanders [102].

Typical Th2 cytokines are IL-4, IL-5, IL-13, and IL-10. The role of IL-5 in recruiting and activating eosinophils has already been described. IL-10 and IL-13 exhibit rather tumor-promoting than anti-tumor activities [92, 103]. IL-4 is known as Th2 differentiation factor and mediator of IgE isotype switch in B-cells [104]. However, IL-4 also shows anti-tumor activities. First, IL-4 induces the infiltration of macrophages and eosinophils, which mediate cytotoxicity towards tumor cells [105]. Second, IL-4 is one of the most potent inhibitors of angiogenesis by blocking migration of endothelial cells. The resulting restricted tumor growth could be proved for local as well as for systemic application of IL-4 in vivo [106]. Moreover, IL-4 receptor has been shown to be expressed on different human tumors and immunogenicity of melanoma cells could be increased by IL-4 by means of enhanced MHC class II expression [107]. In animal studies, induction of an allergic reaction in IL-4 transgenic mice additionally suppressed melanoma growth through the activation of NK cells, which subsequently activate the STAT6 pathway [108].

Tumor growth factor (TGF)-β, which is involved, e.g., in the inflammatory processes in asthma, plays a dichotomous role in cancer, depending on the stage of the tumor as well as the cellular context. Especially during early stages of tumorigenesis, TGF-β can act as a tumor suppressor through its cytostatic and pro-apoptotic effects [109].

As described, many crucial components of allergic reactions were separately shown to have anti-tumor activities, but only little research has been done yet to evaluate the combined effects of these cells. One study evaluated growth of inoculated tumor cells in mice that were sensitized against ovalbumin. Tumor cells in allergic mice showed the same proliferation rate like those in non-allergic mice, whereas apoptosis was increased [110]. Consequently, tumor progression was decreased in allergic mice, which might support the relationship between allergy and some types of cancer in humans.

26.9 Concluding Remarks

Even despite extensive research, the relationship between allergies and cancer remains elusive. As there are studies, which show negative as well as positive correlations, one has to take a closer look at the specific type of cancer and the location it arises. Allergies are accompanied by inflammatory reactions, which constitute an optimal environment for carcinogenesis, thus promoting the development of tumors at this specific site. Additionally, systemic effects in terms of enhanced immunosurveillance can likewise be evoked, thus preventing from cancer at other areas. The presented examples of a positive correlation between asthma and lung cancer as well as atopic dermatitis and skin cancer and a negative correlation between allergies and pancreatic cancer, colorectal cancer and glioma fit this classification. Nonetheless, there is still a need for well-conducted epidemiological studies, as well as for investigations on the molecular level to clearly define the relationship between allergy and cancer.

References

1. Torre LA, Bray F, Siegel RL, Ferlay J, Lortet-Tieulent J, Jemal A. Global cancer statistics, 2012 – Torre – 2015 – CA: a Cancer Journal for Clinicians – Wiley Online Library CA. Cancer J Clin. 2015;65:87–108.
2. Robert Koch-Institut. Gesundheit in Deutschland. Berlin: Gesundheitsberichterstattung des Bundes; 2015.

3. American Cancer Society. Cancer facts & figures 2017. Atlanta: American Cancer Society; 2017.
4. Langen U, Schmitz R, Steppuhn H. Häufigkeit allergischer Erkrankungen in Deutschland. Bundesgesundheitsblatt. 2013;56:698–706.
5. Masoli M, Fabian D, Holt S, Beasley R. The global burden of asthma: executive summary of the GINA Dissemination Committee Report. Allergy. 2004;59:469–78.
6. Jensen-Jarolim E, Turner MC, Karagiannis S. Allergo Oncology: IgE- and IgG4-mediated immune mechanisms linking allergy with cancer and their translational implications. J Allergy Clin Immunol. 2017;140:982–4.
7. Carrozzi L, Viegi G. Allergy and cancer: a biological and epidemiological rebus. Allergy. 2005;60:1095–7.
8. Bischoff S, Crowe SE. Gastrointestinal food allergy: new insights into pathophysiology and clinical perspectives. Gastroenterology. 2005;128:1089–113.
9. Grammatikos AP. The genetic and environmental basis of atopic diseases. Ann Med. 2008;40:482–95.
10. Newman Taylor AJ. ABC of allergies. Asthma and allergy. Br Med J. 1998;316:997–9.
11. Strachan DP. Hay fever, hygiene, and household size. Br Med J. 1989;299:1259–60.
12. Shakib F, Ghaemmaghami AM, Sewell HF. The molecular basis of allergenicity. Trends Immunol. 2008;29:633–42.
13. Romagnani S. The role of lymphocytes in allergic disease. J Allergy Clin Immunol. 2000;105:399–408.
14. Robinson DS. The Th1 and Th2 concept in atopic allergic disease. Chem Immunol. 2000;78:50–61.
15. Geha RS, Jabara HH, Brodeur SR. The regulation of immunoglobulin E class-switch recombination. Nat Rev Immunol. 2003;3:721–32.
16. Gould HJ, Sutton BJ. IgE in allergy and asthma today. Nat Rev Immunol. 2008;8:205–17.
17. Gauchat J, Henchoz S, Mazzei G, Aubry J, Brunner T, Blasey H, Life P, Talabot D, Flores-Romo L, Thompson J, Kishi K, Butterfield J, Dahinden C, Bonnefoy J. Induction of human IgE synthesis in B cells by mast cells and basophils. Nature. 1993;365:340–3.
18. Grimbaldeston MA, Metz M, Yu M, Tsai M, Galli SJ. Effector and potential immunoregulatory roles of mast cells in IgE-associated acquired immune responses. Curr Opin Immunol. 2006;18:751–60.
19. González-Pérez A, Fernández-Vidaurre C, Rueda A, Rivero E, García Rodríguez LA. Cancer incidence in a general population of asthma patients. Pharmaco Epidemiol Drug Saf. 2006;15:131–8.
20. Kay AB. Overview of 'allergy and allergic diseases: with a view to the future'. Br Med Bull. 2000;56:843–64.
21. Hagströmer L, Ye W, Nyrén O, Emtestam L. Incidence of cancer among patients with atopic dermatitis. Arch Dermatol. 2005;141:1123–7.
22. Weinberg RA. The biology of cancer. New York: Garland Science; 2007.
23. Knudson AG. Cancer genetics. Am J Med Genet. 2002;111:96–102.
24. Kastan MB, Bartek J. Cell-cycle checkpoints and cancer. Nature. 2004;432:316–23.
25. Jakóbisiak M, Lasek W, Golab J. Natural mechanisms protecting against cancer. Immunol Lett. 2003;90:103–22.
26. Hanahan D, Weinberg RA. The hallmarks of cancer. Cell. 2000;100:57–70.
27. Croce CM. Oncogenes and cancer. New Engl J Med. 2008;358:502–11.
28. Delaval B, Birnbaum D. A cell cycle hypothesis of cooperative oncogenesis (review). Int J Oncol. 2007;30:1051–8.
29. Coussens LM, Werb Z. Inflammation and cancer. Nature. 2002;420:860–7.
30. Yilmaz M, Christofori G, Lehembre F. Distinct mechanisms of tumor invasion and metastasis. Trends Mol Med. 2007;13:535–41.
31. Robert Koch-Institut und die Gesellschaft der epidemiologischen Krebsregister in Deutschland e. V. Krebs in Deutschland 2005/2006. Häufigkeiten und Trends. 2010.
32. Wiemels JL, Wrensch M, Sison JD, Zhou M, Bondy M, Calvocoressi L, Black PM, Yu H, Schildkraut JM, Claus EB. Reduced allergy and immunoglobulin E among adults with intracranial meningioma compared to controls. Int J Cancer. 2011;129:1932–9.
33. Dunn GP, Bruce AT, Ikeda H, Old LJ, Schreiber RD. Cancer immunoediting: from immunosurveillance to tumor escape. Nat Immunol. 2002;3:991–8.
34. Dunn GP, Old LJ, Schreiber RD. The immunobiology of cancer immunosurveillance and immunoediting. Immunity. 2004;21:137–48.
35. Morse MA, Lyerly HK, Clay TM, Abdel-Wahab O, Chui SY, Garst J, Gollob J, Grossi PM, Kalady M, Mosca PJ, Onaitis M, Sampson JH, Seigler HF, Toloza EM, Tyler D, Vieweg J, Yang Y. How does the immune system attack cancer? Curr Probl Surg. 2004;41:15–132.
36. Ikeda H, Old LJ, Schreiber RD. The roles of IFNγ in protection against tumor development and cancer immunoediting. Cytokine Growth Factor Rev. 2002;13:95–109.
37. Dunn GP, Old LJ, Schreiber RD. The three Es of cancer immunoediting. Anonymous. 2004;22:329–60.
38. Cavallo F, De Giovanni C, Nanni P, Forni G, Lollini PL. The immune hallmarks of cancer. Cancer Immunol Immunother. 2011;60:319–26.
39. Fisherman EW. Does the allergic diathesis influence malignancy? J Allergy. 1960;31:74–8.
40. Martin EG. Predisposing factors and diagnosis of rectal cancer: a discussion of allergy. Ann Surg. 1935;102:56–61.
41. Wang H, Diepgen TL. Is atopy a protective or a risk factor for cancer? A review of epidemiological studies. Allergy. 2005;60:1098–11.
42. Turner MC, Chen Y, Krewski D, Ghadirian P, Thun MJ, Calle EE. Cancer mortality among US men and women with asthma and hay fever. Am J Epidemiol. 2005;162:212–21.

43. McWhorter WP. Allergy and risk of cancer. A prospective study using NHANESI followup data. Cancer. 1988;62:451–5.
44. Mackay WD. The incidence of allergic disorders and cancer. Br J Cancer. 1966;20:434–7.
45. Allegra J, Lipton A, Harvey H, Luderer J, Brenner D, Mortel R, Demers L, Gillin M, White D, Trautlein J. Decreased prevalence of immediate hypersensitivity (atopy) in a cancer population. Cancer Res. 1976;36:3225–6.
46. Vena JE, Bona JR, Byers TE. Allergy-related diseases and cancer: an inverse association. Am J Epidemiol. 1985;122:66–74.
47. Mills PK, Beeson WL, Fraser GE, Phillips RL. Allergy and cancer: organ site-specific results from the Adventist health study. Am J Epidemiol. 1992;136:287–95.
48. Hwang CY, Chen YJ, Lin MW, Chen TJ, Chu SY, Chen CC, Lee DD, Chang YT, Wang WJ, Liu HN. Cancer risk in patients with allergic rhinitis, asthma and atopic dermatitis: a nationwide cohort study in Taiwan. Int J Cancer. 2012;130(5):1160–7.
49. Vesterinen E, Pukkala E, Timonen T, Aromaa A. Cancer incidence among 78 000 asthmatic patients. Int J Epidemiol. 1993;22:976–82.
50. Olesen AB, Engholm G, Storm HH, Thestrup-Pedersen K. The risk of cancer among patients previously hospitalized for atopic dermatitis. J Invest Dermatol. 2005;125:445–9.
51. Arana A, Wentworth CE, Fernández-Vidaurre C, Schlienger RG, Conde E, Arellano FM. Incidence of cancer in the general population and in patients with or without atopic dermatitis in the U.K. Br J Dermatol. 2010;163:1036–43.
52. Shapiro S, Heinonen OP, Siskind V. Cancer and allergy. Cancer. 1971;28:396–400.
53. Eriksson NE, Mikoczy Z, Hagmar L. Cancer incidence in 13811 patients skin tested for allergy. J Invest Allergol Clin Immunol. 2005;15:161–6.
54. Lindelöf B, Granath F, Tengvall-Linder M, Ekbom A. Allergy and cancer. Allergy. 2005;60:1116–20.
55. Pompei R, Lampis G, Ingianni A, Nonnis D, Ionta MT, Massidda B. Allergy and tumour outcome after primary cancer therapy. Int Arch Allergy Immunol. 2004;133:174–8.
56. Taghizadeh N, Vonk JM, Hospers JJ, Postma DS, de Vries EGE, Schouten JP, et al. Objective allergy markers and risk of cancer mortality and hospitalization in a large population-based cohort. Cancer Causes Control. 2015;26:99–109.
57. El-Zein M, Parent ME, Siemiatycki J, Rousseau MC. History of allergic diseases and lung cancer risk. Ann Allergy Asthma Immunol. 2014;112:230–6.
58. Wang H, Rothenbacher D, Löw M, Stegmaier C, Brenner H, Diepgen TL. Atopic diseases, immunoglobulin E and risk of cancer of the prostate, breast, lung and colorectum. Int J Cancer. 2006;119:695–701.
59. Turner MC, Chen Y, Krewski D, Ghadirian P. An overview of the association between allergy and cancer. Int J Cancer. 2006;118:3124–32.
60. Santillan AA, Camargo CA Jr, Colditz GA. A meta-analysis of asthma and risk of lung cancer (United States). Cancer Causes Control. 2003;14:327–34.
61. Mantovani A, Allavena P, Sica A, Balkwill F. Cancer-related inflammation. Nature. 2008;454:436–44.
62. Balkwill F, Mantovani A. Inflammation and cancer: back to Virchow? Lancet. 2001;357:539–45.
63. Dvorak HF. Tumors: wounds that do not heal: similarities between tumor stroma generation and wound healing. New Engl J Med. 1986;315:1650–9.
64. Karin M, Greten FR. NF-κB: linking inflammation and immunity to cancer development and progression. Nat Rev Immunol. 2005;5:749–59.
65. Holly EA, Eberle CA, Bracci PM. Prior history of allergies and pancreatic cancer in the San Francisco Bay area. Am J Epidemiol. 2003;158:432–41.
66. Eppel A, Cotterchio M, Gallinger S. Allergies are associated with reduced pancreas cancer risk: a population-based case-control study in Ontario, Canada. Int J Cancer. 2007;121:2241–5.
67. Cotterchio M, Lowcock E, Hudson TJ, Greenwood C, Gallinger S. Association between allergies and risk of pancreatic cancer. Cancer Epidemiol Biomarkers Prev. 2014;23:469–80.
68. Gomez-Rubio P, Zock J, Rava M, Marquez M, Sharp L, Hidalgo M, et al. Reduced risk of pancreatic cancer associated with asthma and nasal allergies. Gut. 2017;66:314–22.
69. Olson SH, Orlow I, Simon J, Tommasi D, Roy P, Bayuga S, Ludwig E, Zauber AG, Kurtz RC. Allergies, variants in IL-4 and IL-4Rα genes, and risk of pancreatic cancer. Cancer Detect Prev. 2007;31:345–51.
70. Olson SH, Chou JF, Ludwig E, O'Reilly E, Allen PJ, Jarnagin WR, Bayuga S, Simon J, Gonen M, Reisacher WR, Kurtz RC. Allergies, obesity, other risk factors and survival from pancreatic cancer. Int J Cancer. 2010;127:2412–9.
71. Negri E, Bosetti C, La Vecchia C, Levi F, Tomei F, Franceschi S. Allergy and other selected diseases and risk of colorectal cancer. Eur J Cancer. 1999;35:1838–41.
72. Bosetti C, Talamini R, Franceschi S, Negri E, Giacosa A, La Vecchia C. Allergy and the risk of selected digestive and laryngeal neoplasms. Eur J Cancer Prev. 2004;13:173–6.
73. Tambe NA, Wilkens LR, Wan P, Stram DO, Gilliland F, Park SL, et al. Atopic allergic conditions and colorectal cancer risk in the Multiethnic Cohort Study. Am J Epidemiol. 2015;181:889–97.
74. Prizment AE, Folsom AR, Cerhan JR, Flood A, Ross JA, Anderson KE. History of allergy and reduced incidence of colorectal cancer, Iowa women's health study. Cancer Epidemiol Biomarkers Prev. 2007;16:2357–62.
75. Jacobs EJ, Gapstur SM, Newton CC, Turner MC, Campbell PT. Hay fever and asthma as markers of atopic immune response and risk of colorectal cancer in three large cohort studies. Cancer Epidemiol Biomarkers Prev. 2013;22:661–9.

76. Ma W, Yang J, Li P, Lu X, Cai J. Association between allergic conditions and colorectal cancer risk/mortality: a meta-analysis of prospective studies. Sci Rep. 2017;7:5589.
77. Brenner AV, Linet MS, Fine HA, Shapiro WR, Selker RG, Black PM, Inskip PD. History of allergies and autoimmune diseases and risk of brain tumors in adults. Int J Cancer. 2002;99:252–9.
78. Schoemaker MJ, Swerdlow AJ, Hepworth SJ, McKinney PA, Van Tongeren M, Muir KR. History of allergies and risk of glioma in adults. Int J Cancer. 2006;119:2165–72.
79. Wigertz A, Lönn S, Schwartzbaum J, Hall P, Auvinen A, Christensen HC, Johansen C, Klæboe L, Salminen T, Schoemaker MJ, Swerdlow AJ, Tynes T, Feychting M. Allergic conditions and brain tumor risk. Am J Epidemiol. 2007;166:941–50.
80. Roncarolo F, Infante-Rivard C. Asthma and risk of brain cancer in children. Cancer Causes Control. 2012;23:617–23.
81. Wiemels JL, Wilson D, Patil C, Patoka J, McCoy L, Rice T, Schwartzbaum J, Heimberger A, Sampson JH, Chang S, Prados M, Wiencke JK, Wrensch M. IgE, allergy, and risk of glioma: update from the San Francisco Bay Area Adult Glioma Study in the temozolomide era. Int J Cancer. 2009;125:680–7.
82. Schwartzbaum J, Ding B, Johannesen TB, Osnes LT, Karavodin L, Ahlbom A, Feychting M, Grimsrud TK. Association between prediagnostic IgE levels and risk of glioma. J Natl Cancer Inst. 2012;104:1251–9.
83. Turner MC, Krewski D, Armstrong BK, Chetrit A, Giles GG, Hours M, McBride ML, Parent ME, Sadetzki S, Siemiatycki J, Woodward A, Cardis E. Allergy and brain tumors in the INTERPHONE study: pooled results from Australia, Canada, France, Israel, and New Zealand. Cancer Causes Control. 2013;24:949–60.
84. Amirian ES, Zhou R, Wrensch MR, Olson SH, Scheurer ME, Il'yasova D, et al. Approaching a scientific consensus on the association between allergies and glioma risk: a report from the Glioma International Case-Control Study. Cancer Epidemiol Biomarkers Prev. 2016;25:282–90.
85. Krejsek J, Král B, Vokurková D, Derner V, Toušková M, Paráková Z, Kopecký O. Decreased peripheral blood γδ T-cells in patients with bronchial asthma. Allergy. 1998;53:73–7.
86. Mesdaghi M, Vodjgani M, Salehi E, Hadjati J, Sarrafnejad A, Bidad K, Berjisian F. Natural killer cells in allergic rhinitis patients and nonatopic controls. Int Arch Allergy Immunol. 2010;153:234–8.
87. Timonen T, Stenius-Aarniala B. Natural killer cell activity in asthma. Clin Exp Immunol. 1985;59:85–90.
88. Imai K, Matsuyama S, Miyake S, Suga K, Nakachi K. Natural cytotoxic activity of peripheral-blood lymphocytes and cancer incidence: an 11-year follow-up study of a general population. Lancet. 2000;356:1795–9.
89. Rothenberg ME. Eosinophilia. New Engl J Med. 1998;338:1592–600.
90. Rivoltini L, Viggiano V, Spinazze S, Santoro A, Colombo MP, Takatsu K, Parmiani G. In vitro anti-tumor activity of eosinophils from cancer patients treated with subcutaneous administration of interleukin 2. Role of interleukin 5. Int J Cancer. 1993;54:8–15.
91. Munitz A, Levi-Schaffer F. Eosinophils: 'New' roles for 'old' cells. Allergy. 2004;59:268–75.
92. Ellyard JI, Simson L, Parish CR. Th2-mediated anti-tumour immunity: friend or foe? Tissue Antigens. 2007;70:1–11.
93. Simson L, Ellyard JI, Dent LA, Matthaei KI, Rothenberg ME, Foster PS, Smyih MJ, Parish CR. Regulation of carcinogenesis by IL-5 and CCL11: a potential role for eosinophils in tumor immune surveillance. J Immunol. 2007;178:4222–9.
94. Gleich GJ. Mechanisms of eosinophil-associated inflammation. J Allergy Clin Immunol. 2000;105:651–63.
95. Pereira MC, Oliveira DT, Kowalski LP. The role of eosinophils and eosinophil cationic protein in oral cancer: a review. Arch Oral Biol. 2011;56:353–8.
96. Karagiannis SN, Bracher MG, Beavil RL, Beavil AJ, Hunt J, McCloskey N, Thompson RG, East N, Burke F, Sutton BJ, Dombrowicz D, Balkwill FR, Gould HJ. Role of IgE receptors in IgE antibody-dependent cytotoxicity and phagocytosis of ovarian tumor cells by human monocytic cells. Cancer Immunol Immunother. 2008;57:247–63.
97. Gould HJ, Mackay GA, Karagiannis SN, O'Toole CM, Marsh PJ, Daniel BE, Coney LR, Zurawski VR Jr, Joseph M, Capron M, Gilbert M, Murphy GF, Korngold R. Comparison of IgE and IgG antibody-dependent cytotoxicity in vitro and in a SCID mouse xenograft model of ovarian carcinoma. Eur J Immunol. 1999;29:3527–37.
98. Reali E, Greiner JW, Corti A, Gould HJ, Bottazzoli F, Paganelli G, Schlom J, Siccardi AG. IgEs targeted on tumor cells: therapeutic activity and potential in the design of tumor vaccines. Cancer Res. 2001;61:5517–22.
99. Wrensch M, Wiencke JK, Wiemels J, Miike R, Patoka J, Moghadassi M, McMillan A, Kelsey KT, Aldape K, Lamborn KR, Parsa AT, Sison JD, Prados MD. Serum IgE, tumor epidermal growth factor receptor expression, and inherited polymorphisms associated with glioma survival. Cancer Res. 2006;66:4531–41.
100. Fu SL, Pierre J, Smith-Norowitz TA, Hagler M, Bowne W, Pincus MR, Mueller CM, Zenilman ME, Bluth MH. Immunoglobulin E antibodies from pancreatic cancer patients mediate antibody-dependent cell-mediated cytotoxicity against pancreatic cancer cells. Clin Exp Immunol. 2008;153:401–9.
101. Marone G, Varricchi G, Loffredo S, Granata F. Mast cells and basophils in inflammatory and tumor angiogenesis and lymphangiogenesis. Eur J Pharmacol. 2015;778:146–51.

102. Varricchi G, Galdiero MR, Loffredo S, Marone G, Iannone R, Marone G, et al. Are mast cells MASTers in cancer? Front Immunol. 2017;8:424.
103. Terabe M, Park JM, Berzofsky JA. Role of IL-13 in regulation of anti-tumor immunity and tumor growth. Cancer Immunol Immunother. 2004;53:79–85.
104. Mocellin S, Wang E, Marincola FM. Cytokines and immune response in the tumor microenvironment. J Immunother. 2001;24:392–407.
105. Tepper RI, Coffman RL, Leder P. An eosinophil-dependent mechanism for the antitumor effect of interleukin-4. Science. 1992;257:548–51.
106. Volpert OV, Fong T, Koch AE, Peterson JD, Waltenbaugh C, Tepper RI, Bouck NP. Inhibition of angiogenesis by interleukin 4. J Exp Med. 1998;188:1039–46.
107. Obiri NI, Siegel JP, Varricchio F, Puri RK. Expression of high-affinity IL-4 receptors on human melanoma, ovarian and breast carcinoma cells. Clin Exp Immunol. 1994;95:148–55.
108. Son DJ, Jung YY, Park MH, Lee HL, Song MJ, Yoo HS, et al. Activated natural killer cells mediate the suppressive effect of Interleukin-4 on tumor development via STAT6 activation in an atopic condition Melanoma Model. Neoplasia. 2017;19:537–48.
109. Tirado-Rodriguez B, Ortega E, Segura-Medina P, Huerta-Yepez S. TGF-beta: an important mediator of allergic disease and a molecule with dual activity in cancer development. J Immunol Res. 2014;2014:318481.
110. Pinto FCH, Menezes GB, Moura SAL, Cassali GD, Teixeira MM, Cara DC. Induction of apoptosis in tumor cells as a mechanism of tumor growth reduction in allergic mice. Pathol Res Pract. 2009;205:559–67.

27 Envisioning the Application of Systems Biology in Cancer Immunology

Tanushree Jaitly, Shailendra K. Gupta, Olaf Wolkenhauer, Gerold Schuler, and Julio Vera

Contents

T. Jaitly · G. Schuler · J. Vera (✉)
Department of Dermatology, Faculty of Medicine, Friedrich Alexander Universität Erlangen-Nürnberg, Erlangen, Germany
e-mail: julio.vera-gonzalez@uk-erlangen.de

S. K. Gupta · O. Wolkenhauer
Department of Systems Biology and Bioinformatics, Institute of Computer Science, University of Rostock, Rostock, Germany

N. Rezaei (ed.), *Cancer Immunology*, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-30845-2_27

27.1 A Primer on Systems Biology

Biomedicine has evolved extremely fast in the last decade. Many challenging new insights into the nature of biological systems and the avenue of new experimental techniques have synergized during this period to change our perception about Biomedicine. Biological systems are nowadays envisioned as complex networks composed of dozens to thousands of proteins, genes, and miRNAs, which interact to control cellular- and tissue-level phenotypes. One can say that Biology is the Science of the ultimate complexity because in one sense every single cell contains as much complexity as entire solar systems or galaxies. In this context of increasing complexity, Systems Biology has emerged a decade ago.

Systems Biology is a methodological approach that combines quantitative experimental data, mathematical modeling, and other tools from computational biology to address biological and biomedical questions from a systemic perspective. It is almost a mandatory research strategy when: (a) analyzing massive amounts of high-throughput quantitative experimental data, (b) trying to understand the function and regulation of biochemical networks enriched in regulatory motifs like feedback loops, and (c) integrating biological data from diverse sources across temporal and spatial scales. Within the methodology, the use of mathematical or computational modeling is an essential step, necessary to integrate and analyze data, formulate and explore biological hypothesis, or perform quantitative predictions with a therapeutic aim [1]. It has a clear interdisciplinary nature because it involves expertise in biomedicine, quantitative experimental techniques, data engineering, mathematical modeling, and bioinformatics, only to mention some of the scientific profiles of researchers that can get involved in a systems biology project.

Due to this multiplicity of disciplines, over the years the concept of Systems Biology has become fuzzy and difficult to define precisely. At the moment, Systems Biology describes at least three different approaches, all of them relying on the use of quantitative experimental data and mathematical modeling. We describe them briefly in the following subsections.

27.1.1 The "Omics" Paradigm and the Use of Statistical Models

In the last few years, it has become technically and economically affordable to perform quantitative, high-throughput experiments to measure the concentrations or activation state of proteins and other biomolecules like RNAs or metabolites. This has given rise to numbers of new experimental fields (e.g., genomics, transcriptomics, proteomics, and metabolomics, collectively known as "Omics" techniques). When applied to samples obtained from large cohorts of patients suffering complex multifactorial diseases, especially cancer, these techniques have already generated massive amounts of clinical and biomedical data. These data are a precious resource to discover the molecular mechanism behind the emergence of a disease. From an applied perspective, these techniques can be used to generate new protocols and tools for early diagnosis, or more efficient and personalized therapeutic treatments. However, the data alone are not sufficient: human intuition and direct interpretation are not well-suited tools for the analysis of massive volumes of high-throughput data. Complex mathematical models, which rely on the intensive use of

advanced statistical and computational methods, are necessary to interpret and analyze the amount and type of data generated through the "Omics" paradigm.

These statistical models have been successfully exploited in the search of biomarkers for cancer progression, metastasis, or resistance [2]. In this case, patients in a clinical study are classified in groups according to the progression status of the tumor. Expression profiles of proteins, RNAs, or other biomolecules, obtained from patient samples, are analyzed using statistical models to find one or more disease-associated genetic signatures. These genetic signatures account for groups of genes having an expression pattern that, considered globally, can be used to discriminate between patient groups. The ultimate aim is to use these genetic signatures for improving diagnosis and/or prognosis. For some tumor entities, genetic signatures have been already found that could be successfully associated with progression, and are currently used in prognosis tests [3, 4]. However, one has to say that the statistical elucidation of this kind of signatures should never be the end point of a research process. It has to be followed by additional in vitro/in vitro experiments and clinical studies to find a mechanistic interpretation for them [5].

27.1.2 Mathematical Modeling and Systems Theory: Dissecting the Complexity Emerging Out of the Structure of Biochemical Networks

Accumulating experimental evidences indicate that, at the molecular level, cells are organized in large and complex regulatory networks that involve genes, interacting proteins, and different kinds of coding and noncoding RNAs and metabolites. When trying to find a mechanistic interpretation for the behavior behind these large networks, simple human intuition and direct data analysis fail because they involve too many interacting variables [1, 6]. Furthermore, these networks contain a plethora of cross-talking regulatory motifs, like feedback and feedforward loops that show often counterintuitive behavior. In Engineering and Physics, mathematical modeling has been used for a century to investigate the dynamics, regulation, and controllability of other physical or artificial systems containing similar regulatory motifs. It is therefore not a surprise that biological data-based mathematical modeling has emerged as a powerful tool, able to dissect the nature of biochemical networks, interpret the complex nonintuitive relations between their compounds, and provide support in the design of hypothesis and experiments. This strategy has been used with remarkable success in the last years in molecular oncology and cancer signaling. It has proved to be useful in: (a) the detection and analysis of the nonlinear behavior emerging from the combination of feedback, feedforward, and other regulatory motifs in biochemical networks [7, 8]; (b) the integration of diverse sources of high-throughput data accounting for the regulation and dynamics of large cross-talked biochemical networks, with hundreds of compounds [9]; (c) the derivation, analysis, and validation of hypotheses concerning the structure and regulation of cancer-related pathways [10, 11], or (d) the design and assessment of conventional, targeted, or combined anticancer therapies [12, 13].

27.1.3 Bridging Biological Scales Through the Integration of Biological Data in Multiscale Models

Evidences are growing in recent years pointing to the fact that, in many cases, the influence of the surrounding media in the tumor cannot be separated from the tumor biology [14]. The microenvironment interacts with the tumor and affects its progression via a number of selective forces including hypoxia, lack of nutrients, or immune-driven apoptosis, while the tumor can modify the features of its microenvironment to subvert the body protective mechanisms [15]. This notion is the motivation behind the many efforts to develop data-driven mathematical models of cancer progression, able to account for the spatial organization of tumors and

the interaction with the surrounding microenvironment [16]. The so-called cancer multiscale models are mathematical constructs that are able to simulate global spatio-temporal features of tumors like growth, angiogenesis, as well as therapy or hypoxia-mediated apoptosis and necrosis [17].

27.2 One Step Further: Integrating the Different Perspectives of Systems Biology into a Unified Framework

Although each one of these mathematical model-based approaches has proved to be quite successful in accelerating the discovery in tumor basic biology and clinics, they have limitations that cannot be ignored. Statistic models are extremely useful tools to analyze enormous amount of patient data and find expression patterns associated with given clinical phenotypes; however, those statistical expression patterns alone suffer with the lack of support provided by a truly mechanistic interpretation of the data, the sort of analysis that provides biological causation. Mathematical models of biochemical networks can provide insights into the biological mechanisms underlying cancer progression, but are not able to account for the effects of the tumor–microenvironment interaction. Current multiscale models are accurate in describing biomechanical forces, cell phenotypes, and spatial interactions between tumor cells and their surroundings. However, they lack a precise description of the intracellular mechanisms driving those phenotypic features, as well as a connection to the clinical understanding of the tumor biology.

These limitations are the motivation why researches have tried to integrate the different scopes into a unified conception of Systems Biology in recent years [8, 18–21]. The idea is to develop a unique framework that integrates tools and methods from statistics, bioinformatics, computational biology, and mathematical modeling with the aim of integrating biomedical data across biological and spatiotemporal scales. This approach must be able to: (a) link massive clinical patient data with the function and (dis)regulation of biochemical networks; (b) provide a strategy to combine different kinds of quantitative high-throughput biological data into integrative pictures of cancer; (c) connect cancer genotypes and phenotypes from a mechanistic, causal, data-driven perspective; (d) provide tools to detect and investigate regulatory, feedback loop-like structures that extend across multiple biological organization levels like paracrine and autocrine loops; and (e) determine the consequences of this multilevel cross-talk in the context of cancer and the immune response. In our vision, this ultimate version of the Systems Biology method involves iterative integration of data from clinical trials and in vitro/in vivo biomedical research using techniques of data analysis, bioinformatics, and mathematical modeling and simulation. The proposed workflow is sketched in the following paragraphs (Fig. 27.1).

Step 1 In clinical cohorts of, for example, cancer patients vs. healthy individuals, high-throughput data of tissue and/or plasma concentrations for proteins, RNAs or other molecules are collected together with biometric data from the patients. The data are processed, integrated, and analyzed using statistical models aiming to group them according to their gene expression vs. the progression status profiles. In this way, one can obtain cancer-associated genetic signatures relevant to the phenotype under investigation (e.g., chemoresistance, aggressiveness, and metastatic potential). These signatures account for a group of genes, proteins, miRNAs, or other molecules, for which a robust statistical correlation is found between their combined expression pattern and the investigated cancer phenotype [5].

Step 2 Relevant biomedical and clinical knowledge is gathered from databases, computational algorithms, and publications inspected via manual curation or text mining. This information is used to find feasible biochemical interactions (i.e., protein–protein interactions, transcriptional regulation…) between compounds of the genetic signature, but also with other kinases, transcrip-

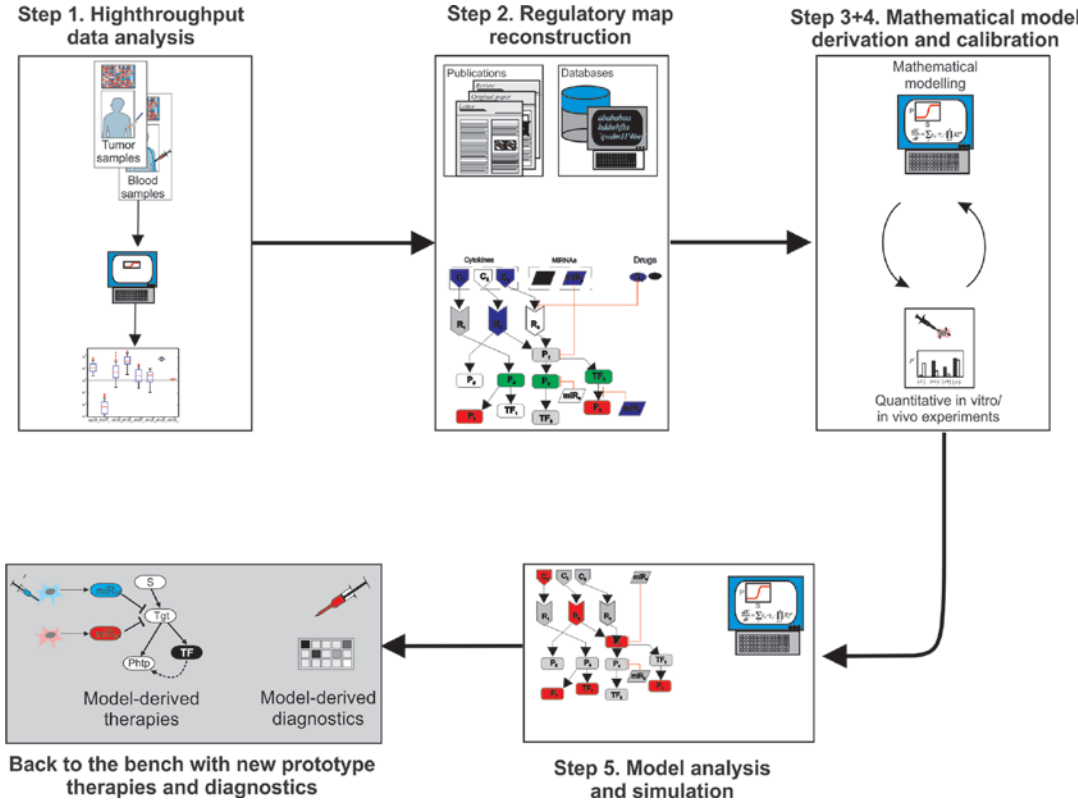


Fig. 27.1 Sketch of an advanced systems biology workflow

tion factors, or microRNAs, all of them relevant to the investigated cancer phenotype. In this way, we can construct a network of cross-talked intracellular pathways relevant to the investigation of the aimed cancer phenotypes. Furthermore, similar networks can be constructed for the cell types in the tumor microenvironment related to the phenotype investigated. Since tumor cells and cells in the microenvironment secrete cytokines and other molecules signaling each other, the obtained network is one of cell-to-cell communication, accounting for the tumor–microenvironment interaction in the cancer phenotype under investigation. The network obtained is often called regulatory map, nothing but a visualization of the state of the art of the biochemical and biomedical knowledge about the cancer phenotype under investigation. Tools from network biology can be used to dissect the topology of the regulatory map and isolate regulatory motifs relevant for the derivation of hypothesis and experiments [8, 22].

The method involves iterative integration of data from clinical trials and in vitro/in vivo biomedical research using techniques of data analysis, bioinformatics, network biology, and mathematical modeling.

Step 3 The parts of the network relevant to the biomedical scenarios which are related to the investigated cancer phenotype are translated into a mathematical model. The model consists of mathematical equations, in an adequate modeling formalism, accounting for the evolution on time of the expression and/or activation status of the network compounds, as well as their connection to the phenotypes. Many modeling formalisms are available, all of which are with advantages and disadvantages [6]. To circumvent some of these disadvantages, one can combine them in hybrid models. For example, we have combined interconnected submodules in ordinary differential equations and Boolean logic. Ordinary differential

equations are excellent tools to analyze the nonlinear behavior of signaling pathways with multiple, nested feedback and feedforward loops, while logic models are an ideal representation of massive transcriptional networks. The combination of both model types allowed us to analyze the large-scale, nonlinear transcriptional and posttranscriptional networks and their connection to cancer cell phenotypes [23].

Step 4 Additional quantitative in vitro/in vivo experimental data are used to improve the biological characterization of the model, that is, to make it more accurate in terms of prediction of the relevant biomedical scenarios. This is often called model calibration and allows assigning appropriate values to model parameters and other model features. Alternatively, this process also allows for the validation of hypothesis concerning the structure and regulation of the network in the biomedical context analyzed; in this case, iterative cycles of modeling and experimentation can be used to formulate, refine, prove, or disprove hypothesis concerning the existence and relevance of given biochemical interactions [24]. With the use of the mathematical model, one can analyze spatio-temporal regulatory features of the network that elude the elucidation via conventional experimentation, like self-sustained oscillations, or bistability.

Step 5 In recent years, various studies have proved that a well-calibrated, data-driven mathematical model can be used with predictive purposes in the context of molecular oncology. The underlying idea is to use model simulations and other tools to assess existing therapies in a personalized manner, design new therapies, or detect sets of biomarkers for cancer prognosis. In a final step, one has to go back to the bench and design additional in vivo/in vitro experiments to confirm the model predictions. Alternatively, the model predictions can be combined with virtual screening and other techniques from computational biology and immunoinformatics, and used in the process of drug discovery or vaccine development. For example, potential drug targets, identified via mathematical modeling, can be used as most promising candidates in a drug screening procedure via protein docking-based techniques [21].

27.3 Does Cancer Immunology Need a Systems Biology Approach?

In our opinion, the immune system is one of the most complex realizations of a biological system. The immune system is actually a multiscale system [25] (Fig. 27.2). It involves many types of cells, whose fate, proliferation, or activation status is controlled by feedback loop-regulated pathways. These pathways very often cross-talk, creating complex networks. Furthermore, the activation status of given immune cells depends on other immune cells by direct contact or through secretion of local or global signaling molecules, especially cytokines. In this way, the immune system is enriched in cell-to-cell communication circuits and autocrine loops. When we further consider the interaction between the immune system and a tumor, the picture becomes more systemic-like. Tumor cells and the immune cells in the surroundings communicate through chemical signals and affect each other's fate. Tumors secrete antigens (Ags) detected by immune cells like dendritic cells, while cells from the immune system secrete cytokines and antibodies (Abs) targeting the tumor cells. In addition, features of the microenvironment in which the tumor is hosted can affect the response of the immune cells. Finally, all these processes are happening at the same time, and affecting each other at different biological and temporal scales. Altogether, this suggests the use of a systemic strategy to tackle the complexities of the tumor–immune system interaction. In the following section, we discuss some published results that illustrate how systems biology can be used in the context of oncology and tumor immunology.

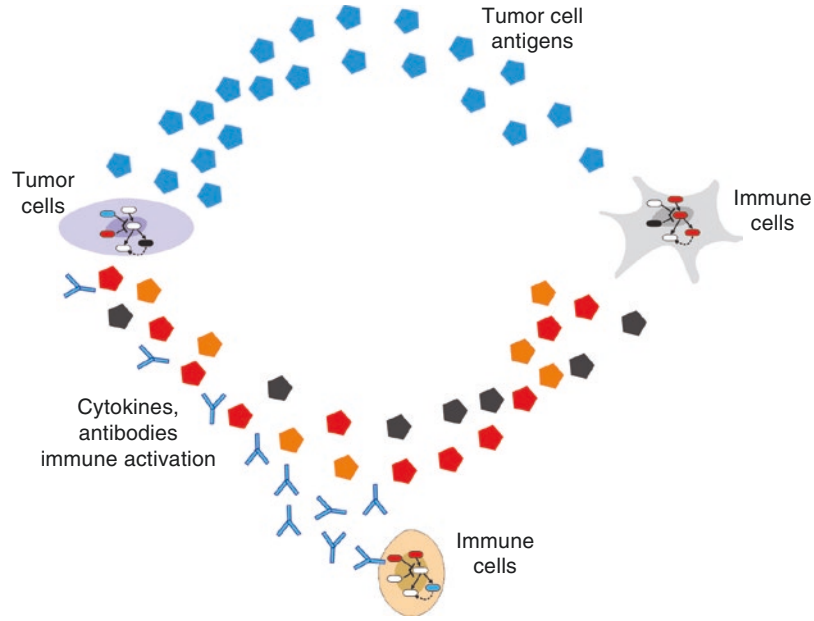


Fig. 27.2 Tumor-immune cells interaction envisioned as a multilevel system

27.4 A Quick View on Current Results

27.4.1 Computational Biology, Bioinformatics, and High-Throughput Data Analysis Used in the Design of Immune Therapies for Cancer

Availability of next-generation sequencing along with –omics data shifted the paradigm for the cancer treatment and opens the doors toward possible cancer immunotherapy [26]. Like traditional vaccines that stimulate host immune system to recognize and destroy pathogens, cancer vaccines are aimed to generate immune response to differentiate tumor cells from the normal cells for their possible elimination. For several of the pathogen origin cancers, such as cervical cancer caused by Human Papillomavirus; hepatocellular carcinoma caused by Hepatitis B and Hepatitis C virus; Hodgkin's lymphoma by Epstein-Barr virus; T-cell leukemia by Human T-cell leukemia virus; and Kaposi's sarcoma by Kaposi's sarcoma herpes virus, there have been considerable success in designing cancer vaccines in the past and many of them are currently in use or in the advance stages of clinical trials. Most of these vaccines are designed in a similar way to the traditional epitope-based vaccine-designing approaches. However, for the nonpathogen origin cancer, the major challenge for the immune system is to distinguish cancer cells from the health cells in order to activate B-lymphocytes to produce Abs or T-lymphocytes. In order to trigger antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity or phagocytosis to kill cancer cells, these Abs need to recognize specific proteins normally on the outer membrane of the cancer cells [27]. T-lymphocytes have the capacity to selectively recognize peptides (antigens) derived from self/ nonself proteins attached with major histocompatibility complexes on the antigen-presenting cells (APCs). Use of cytotoxic T-cells (CTLs), dendritic cells (DCs), and monoclonal antibodies are now well-established strategies to design potential cancer immunotherapeutics [28].

The major challenge in the development of cancer vaccines is the recognition of "self" Ags by the immune system for which the system is already tolerized. Therefore, the potential approach is to identify nontolerogenic, tumor-associated antigens (TAAs) suitable to develop

Ag-specific anticancer vaccines from a large pool of "self" Ags [29]. In spite of success in other infectious diseases, the use of small self-peptides as Ags in cancer vaccines did not attain much interest in the past because of their poor immune response and minimal therapeutic benefits. Most of these free peptides are likely to have short half-life and poor pharmacokinetics properties and thus rapidly cleared before they are loaded on the dendritic cell surfaces in the complex with MHC molecules to stimulate $CD8^+$ and $CD4^+$ T-cells for the initiation of adaptive immune responses [30]. However, the coadministration of suitable dendritic-cell-activating adjuvant along with short TAAs peptides was shown to boost immune responses in advanced melanoma [31] and vulvar intraepithelial neoplasia patients [32]. These studies generated the hope to design effective therapeutic cancer vaccines.

In order to avoid the "self" recognition that normally results in the weakened immune responses for cancer vaccines; researchers have validated the use of DNA vaccines in preclinical studies where the tumor-derived sequences were initially fused with the genes encoding microbial proteins [33]. This strategy helped T helper cells in the induction of Abs against tumor Ags along with epitope-specific antimicrobial $CD8^+$ T-cells. Another example PROSTVAC, a DNA vaccine for prostate cancer, which includes recombinant vaccinia virus encoding prostate TAAs along with adhesion molecules and DCs stimulator, is already in the clinical trial phase III [34]. Besides, several monoclonal antibodies (mAbs) and other small molecules such as kinase inhibitors, angiogenesis inhibitors, proteasome inhibitors, and molecular receptor blockers are also combined with immunotherapy for developing targeted anticancer therapies [35]. Many Abs boost the immune response against cancer cells. Ofatumumab and ipilimumab are two such mAbs recently approved by the US FDA. While ofatumumab targets CD20 protein which inhibits early-stage B-lymphocyte activation in chronic lymphocytic leukemia [36], ipilimumab specifically targets cytotoxic T-lymphocyte-associated antigen 4 (CTLA-4) that provide inhibitory signal for activated T-cells [37]. Unconventionally, mAbs are also shown to target intracellular oncoproteins; this finding opens a new possibility to predict potential targets for TAAs discovery [38, 39].

Still, the detection of effective nontolerogenic TAAs from extra/ intracellular oncoproteins is one of the major challenges in cancer immunotherapy. To recognize TAAs, one has to carefully investigate sites for cancer-specific point mutations, chromosomal aberrations, splicing variants, alternative reading frames along with overexpressed gene/proteins and other regulatory elements (Transcription factors, miRNAs, etc.) [40–42]. For many of these data mining approaches, well-established computational pipelines already exist in the public domain. For therapeutic cancer vaccines, the idea is to either amplify or induce new immunogenic responses in the cancer patients based on $CD8^+$ or $CD4^+$ T-cell responses by recognizing differentially expressing TAAs from microarray data repositories [43]. One of such databases is Oncomine, which has huge repository of gene expression profiles from microarray studies to identify differentially expressing genes in various stages of major types of cancer [44]. These data analysis pipelines facilitate the discovery of novel cancer biomarkers and drug/vaccine candidates. In the following section, we will describe the use of bioinformatics tools and computational pipelines to discover potential cancer vaccine candidates with a case study.

27.4.1.1 Case Study: Computational Approaches to Design DNA Vaccine for Cervical Cancer Caused by Human Papillomavirus

Cervical cancer is the most common and slow-growing malignant cancer present in the tissues of the cervix or cervical area in women. Persistent infection with human papillomavirus (HPV) is considered to be one of the major etiological factors for cervical cancer [45]. More than 100 different types of human papillomaviruses (HPV) have been identified [46] and categorized into high-risk and low-risk strains. A total of 16 different high-risk strains have

already been identified, among them strain 16 and 18 are together responsible for approximately 70% of all cervical cancer cases [47]. Two HPV vaccines GARDASIL and CERVARIX are currently in use as prophylactic vaccines and offer no therapeutic benefit for patients already infected with the virus or those with precancerous lesions or cervical cancer [48]; also, they are not completely effective against all high-risk strains of this virus. In contrast, therapeutic vaccines generate a T-cell immune response to eliminate existing viral infection. Epitope-based vaccines provide a specific strategy for prophylactic and therapeutic application of pathogen-specific immunity. The identification of epitopes suitable for diagnostic use and for therapeutic or prophylactic intervention is clearly a crucial prerequisite of these strategies. Selection of immunogenic, consensus, and conserved epitopes from proteins of major high-risk strains may provide an experimental basis for the design of very specific T-cell and DNA vaccines effective against all high-risk strains [49]. Likewise, many metastatic tumors also exhibit heterogeneity at the genomic level and some subclones able to escape the immune system [50, 51]. It is therefore important to design tumor vaccine in such a way that it is effective against all the subclones. Herein, the authors will highlight computational pipeline adopted in one of their previously published research work which was used to design in silico DNA vaccine against human papillomavirus (HPV) by using consensus epitopic sequences of L2 capsid protein from all high-risk HPV strains [52]. In addition, various computational parameters are optimized to increase the immunogenicity of the vaccine by considering multiepitopic sequence, codon optimization, CpG motifs optimization, inclusion of promoters and other immune-stimulatory molecules. A generalized computational pipeline for the design of DNA vaccine is highlighted in Fig. 27.3.

The work initiates with the detection of differentially expressing genes/ proteins in cancer (non-pathogenic) or identification of conserved immunogenic regions from pathogens involved as the major etiological agents. From the conserved regions, MHC class I and class II epitopes are predicted followed by inclusion of proteosomal/lysosomal cleavage sites. Various computational approaches may be followed to filter the immunogenic peptide such as 3D structure modeling to calculate the solvent accessibility of cleavage sites, post-cleavage conservancy of epitopes, and then long half-life for proper immunogenicity using molecular dynamics simulations. The selected peptide can then be back translated and optimized for codons and CpG motifs. In silico cloning experiments may also be performed for the selection of good expression systems to be used for vaccine development.

27.4.2 Retrieval of Sequence Data and Identification of Conserved Regions in the Protein

In case of previously designed HPV vaccines, researchers thoroughly investigated L1 and L2 capsid protein form the virus to detect potential vaccine candidates. Although previous in vitro neutralization studies demonstrated high cross-reactivity with L2 antisera, yet, some of the high-risk HPV strains failed to neutralize due to high rate of mutation in the L2 capsid protein. To overcome this problem, we first retrieved L2 capsid protein sequences for all the high-risk HPV strains from NCBI (http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov) and UniProt (http://www.uniprot.org) database. To identify conserved regions in the protein, we performed multiple sequence alignment using ClustalX software. Based on the multiple alignment files, we identified conserved regions in the L2 capsid proteins using Shannon entropy function available on Protein Variability Server (http://imed.med.ucm.es/PVS). From the alignment file, Shannon entropy was calculated as:

$$H = -\sum_{i=1}^{M} P_i \log_2 P_i$$

where P_i is the fraction of residues of amino acid type *i,* and M is the number of amino acid types.

To identify the conserved regions in the L2 capsid proteins of all high-risk HPV strains, the

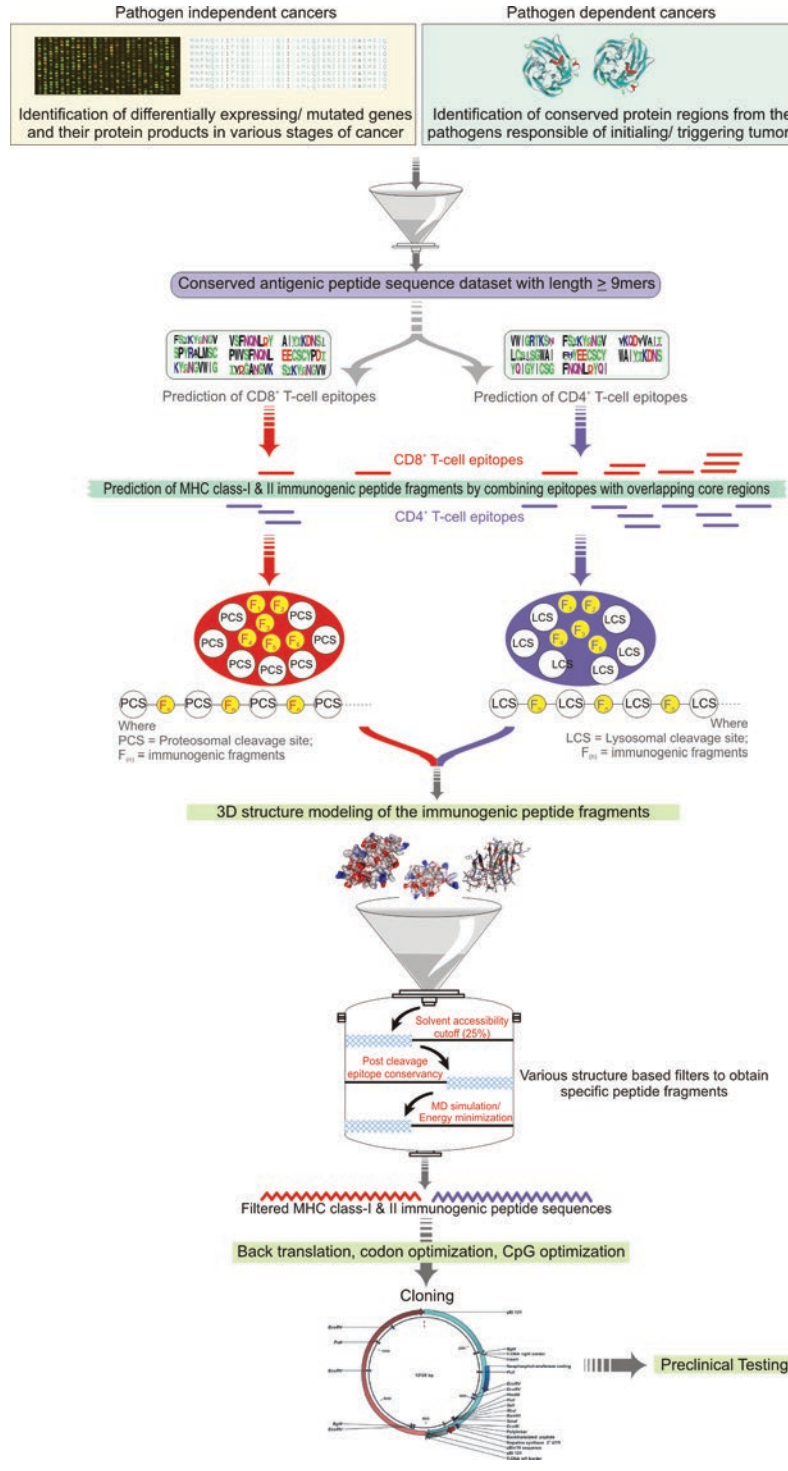


Fig. 27.3 Generalized workflow for computer-aided epitope-based DNA vaccine design

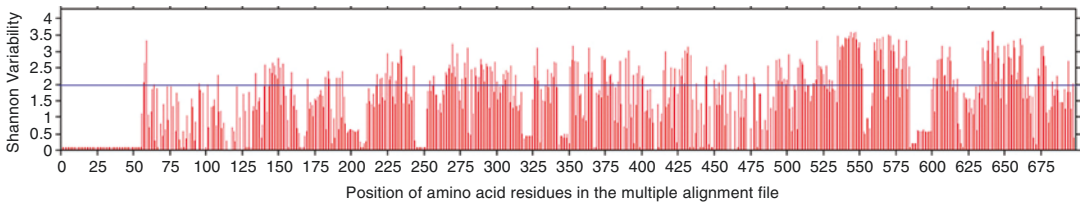


Fig. 27.4 Figure showing the Shannon variability score of individual positions in the multiple alignment files of L2 capsid protein from high-risk HPV strains. Red bars indicate the variability score of amino acid residue *i* at the given position in the multiple alignment file. Blue line represents the cut-off Shannon variability score. All the red bars below the blue line are potential conserved sites for analysis

cut-off score of Shannon entropy was set to 2.0 (Fig. 27.4). The fragments with Shannon variability score <2.0 and continuous length of >9 amino acid residues were further selected for the epitopes identification.

27.4.3 Prediction of MHC Class I and Class II Epitopes

Epitope mapping is always the key step in the vaccine designing. Epitopes are usually thought to be derived from nonself protein Ag that interacts with Abs or T-cell receptors and thereby activating an immune response. Besides from nonself proteins, epitopic sequences from host can also be recognized by MHC molecules. For the effective vaccine, it is important for the epitopes to invoke strong response from T and B-cells. Large numbers of bioinformatics algorithms were designed for this purpose, to name a few are Position Specific Scoring Matrices (PSSMs) based SYFPEITHI [53], Artificial Neural Network (ANN) [54], Stabilized Matrix Method (SMM) [55], and Average Relative Binding (ARB) [56]. According to Tong and colleagues, computational methods for MHC peptide binding can be based on (a) sequence binding pattern using binding motifs, decision trees, or machine learning algorithms line artificial neural networks, hidden Markov models and support vector machines, and (b) three-dimensional peptide/MHC interactions using homology modeling and docking studies [57]. Feldhahn and colleagues implemented FRED, a framework for T-cell epitope detection, which predicts the binding of epitopes to MHC class I and class II HLA alleles using several binding affinity algorithms (SYFPEITHI, SVMHC, BIMAS, and NetMHCpan) and predictions on the features of antigen processing and proteosomal cleavage [58]. The same team has developed EpiToolKit, a web-based platform that implements a variety of computational methods for immunomics [59], including tools for HLA genotyping based on next-generation sequencing data, polymorphic and nonpolymorphic epitope prediction, as well as epitope selection and ranking based on scoring matrices and predictions for proteosomal degradation [60].

In case of DNA vaccine designing against HPV causing cervical cancer, we used RankPep server (http://imed.med.ucm.es/Tools/rankpep.html) for the prediction of consensus binding epitopes (9 mers) for both MHC class I and class II molecules with default parameters. In total, we used 75 MHC class I and 49 for MHC class II matrices for the prediction of potential epitopes from all the consensus L2 capsid proteins.

27.4.4 Reverse Translation of Immunogenic Peptide Fragments

To back translate peptide sequence into the DNA sequence, large numbers of bioinformatics tools are available in the public domain. Because of the degeneracy of the genetic code, the back translation is ambiguous as most amino acid residues are encoded by multiple codons. To design optimal DNA sequence, most of these tools use codon frequency table specific for the organism of interest. We used Backtranseq program of mEMBOSS 6.0.1 for this purpose.

27.4.5 Optimization of Codons and CpG Motifs

Codon optimization is the process to enhance the efficiency of DNA expression vector to express the foreign gene in the host's cell environment. DynaVacs server (http://miracle.igib.res.in/dynavac) was used to compute optimal codon for each of the amino acid residue encoded by the stretch of DNA. The server optimizes codons according to the codon usage table derived from the Kazusa Codon Usage Database (http://kazusa.or.jp/codon). We used codon frequency table for *Homo sapiens* that rank codons by analyzing their frequency of occurrence in 93,487 coding sequences [61]. Immunogenicity of Ag-specific DAN vaccine was previously shown to significantly increase by the optimization of CpG motifs [62]. We again used the DynaVacs server for CpG optimization [63]. In this process, the consensus motif XCGY (where X is any base but C, and Y is any base but G) was incorporated in the sequence as triplet (XCG or CGY) by substituting the less frequent codons that codes the same amino acid residues.

27.4.6 Insertion of Cleavage Motifs and Finalization of DNA Sequence

For the purpose of generating specific epitopes, proteasomal and lysosomal cleavage motifs were also included before and after each MHC class I and class II epitope, respectively. These cleavage motifs are targeted by the proteasomal and lysosomal cleavage machineries to generate immune responses in the host. The corresponding nucleotide sequence of 12-residues long peptide HEYGAEALERAG was added as proteosomal cleavage motif before and after the optimized DNA sequence of each MHC class I epitope. HEYGAEALERAG motif contains all five cleavage sites Y3-G4, A5-E6, A7-L8, L8-E9, and R10-A11 defined for eukaryotic proteasomes in which A5-E6 is the major cleavage site [64]. Similarly, nucleotide sequence of 5-residues long peptide KFERQ was added as lysosomal cleave motif before and after the DNA sequence of each MHC class II epitopes. KFERQ specifically acts as a recognition motif toward heat shock proteins and facilitates further steps for the degradation of proteins by lysosomes [65] to generate MHC class II epitopes. At the end, start and stop codons were added to finalize the DNA vaccine. Arrangement of the epitopes is very crucial and one of the deterministic factors for the efficacy of the DNA vaccine. The folding of the protein product in the host will largely depend on the arrangement of these epitopes and also determine the solvent accessibility of the cleavage motifs. Various computational tools can be used for this purpose including molecular dynamics simulation approaches. The overall arrangement of the DNA vaccine construct is shown in Fig. 27.5.

27.4.7 In Silico Cloning Experiments of DNA Vaccine Construct

Several expression systems have been successfully designed in the past, for the cloning of number of genes encoding surface antigens from pathogens for vaccine development. A good DNA vaccine vector should be designed with minimal functions so that the only gene expressed in mammalian cells is the antigen-encoding gene. We performed the cloning experiments using clc-DNA Workbench 5.0.1. For our purpose, pVAX1

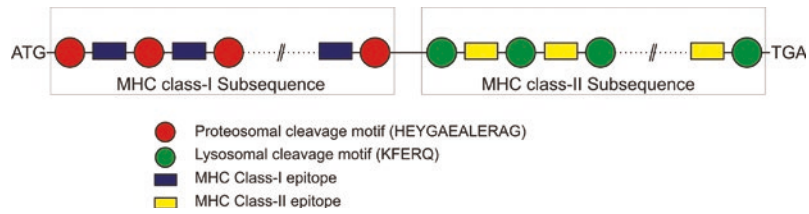


Fig. 27.5 Arrangement of various segments of DNA vaccine constructs. The arrangement of epitopes in the sequence is very crucial to increase the efficacy of DNA vaccine

vector was selected as an expression system. pVAX1 is a nonfusion vector specifically designed to stimulate cellular as well as humoral immune responses [66] and requires that the inserted gene of interest contain Kozak translation initiation sequence (Kozak), an initiation codon (ATG), and a termination codon (TAA, TGA, or TAG). When these designed DNA vaccines are injected into host, antigenic protein gets translated and alerts the body's immune system to generate immunization memory cells.

The methodology described above highlights how various bioinformatics algorithms and computational tools can be combined to design novel and effective vaccine candidates before being subjected to in vitro confirmatory studies.

27.4.8 Personalized Detection of Tumor Epitopes Using Sequencing Data

Tailor-made therapeutic vaccination is an emerging field in cancer immunotherapy, in which the vaccine is customized based on the genomic profiling of the patient, taken by whole-exome and RNA-sequencing of blood and tumor samples. Integrating this information with bioinformatics pipelines to acquire the unique mutation profile of each individual patient, tumor neoepitopes are predicted, synthesized, and injected into the patient intravenously, often using patient blood-derived mature dendritic cells [67]. Usually, only 7–9 neoepitopes are loaded on to the dendritic cell for vaccination [68]. That makes the selection of the right neoepitopes based on patient's genomic profile crucial for the success of the immunotherapy. Hundal and colleagues developed pVAC-Seq, a software tool for predicting tumor neoantigens using genomics and transcriptomics data [69]. In this tool, the prediction of somatic variants using whole-exome sequencing data and that of gene expression profile using tumor transcriptomics data are used as input to generate wild-type and mutant epitope sequences. The obtained mutant epitopes are scored based on binding affinity, coverage, and Variant Allele Frequency. Jaitly and colleagues presented a pipeline for detecting patient-specific epitopes using whole-exome sequencing data and transcriptomics data [70]. In their method, they analyzed whole-exome sequencing data to predict and annotate somatic variants. Next, they predicted epitopes containing mutations after combining genomics and transcriptomics data based on patient's MHC class I HLA haplotypes. The predicted epitopes are ranked based on (a) the number of patient alleles they target, (b) the expression level of the gene the epitope is associated with, and (c) their binding affinity to their targets. The final selection of promising tumor epitopes relies on the use 3D docking simulations of the epitope to the MHC.

27.4.9 Detection of Gene Signatures Associated with Immunotherapy Responsiveness

As we mentioned before, gene expression profiles of patient samples acquired making use of RNA sequencing, proteomics, or other high-throughput data generation techniques can be analyzed using advanced statistical techniques to find genetic signatures. These signatures are intended to provide more accurate diagnosis or guidance on the feasibility of given therapies. In recent years, a number of publications illustrate the use of this approach in onco-immunology. In an analysis of a large amount of colon cancer patient samples and clinical records, Mlecnik and coworkers found that the use of a scoring system to quantify the immune cell infiltration in colon cancer, which is based on gene expression profiling and in situ immunohistochemical staining, had superior abilities to predict tumor recurrence and patient survival than the analysis of microsatellite instability, the current standard marker for colon cancer prognosis [71]. In line with this, Charoentong and coworkers made use of large amounts of sequencing data in public repositories to create a web-based tool able to characterize in detail the tumor immune profile in 20 highly prevalent solid tumor entities (https://tcia.at/) [72]. In their platform, they implement the

so-called Immunophenoscore, a computational tool that utilizes tumor-sequencing data to generate a machine learning-based score accounting for tumor immunogenicity. Similar approaches can be used to predict the efficiency of anticancer immunotherapy. Buschow and collaborators used microarrays from the blood transcriptome of patients treated with therapeutic dendritic cell vaccination in melanoma to predict the efficacy of the treatment [73]. They found a gene signature correlated with the treatment efficacy, in which low Raf Kinase inhibitory protein (RKIP) expression levels in blood samples taken after the first months of vaccination correlated with a poor overall survival.

Sequencing data analysis can be combined with network analysis to generate mechanistic hypothesis on genes signatures obtained by correlation and other statistical methods. Dreyer and coworkers developed and loaded into a web platform a comprehensive regulatory network of signaling pathways important in malignant melanoma (www.vcells.net/melanoma). The regulatory network was designed to facilitate the mining of RNA sequencing data from tumor samples and cell lines. When they used the network to analyze RNA sequencing datasets from malignant melanoma patients treated with anti-PD-1 immunotherapy, they could isolate a core regulatory network differentially regulated in pretreatment tumor samples of responding patients vs. nonresponding patients to anti-PD-1 immunotherapy. This core regulatory network includes multiple genes involved in mesenchymal cell-related phenotypes, especially epithelial to mesenchymal transition, commonly associated with resistant to multiple anticancer therapies. The analysis linked upregulation of factors like SLUG, AP-2, and the E2F family to a decrease in the responsiveness to anti-PD-1 therapy in melanoma. Interestingly, Khan and coworkers found an E2F-centered core regulatory network associated with high aggressiveness and poor survival in bladder and breast tumors, two other highly immunogenic solid tumors [74]. Further, Lai and coworkers found that several miRNAs, including MiR-205-5p and miR-342-3p, can cooperate repressing E2F1, one of the transcription factors upregulated in the mentioned core network accounting for resistance to anti-PD-1 therapy in melanoma [75]. This suggests an intriguing hypothesis, that of using miRNA-based therapy as coadjuvant of immunotherapy in melanoma [76].

27.5 Mathematical Models Used in Basic Oncology Research

27.5.1 Pathways and Networks

The successful use of systems biology to elucidate the regulation and function of cancer-related pathways is well proved by a large body of literature published in the last decade. In this context, mathematical modeling has been used to investigate the time-dependent behavior of biochemical systems, to integrate multiple data sources, or to validate the existence of new regulatory or transcriptional interactions in given regulatory pathways. A question in biochemical networks for which data-driven mathematical modeling is necessary is the elucidation of the nonlinear properties emerging from the combination of regulatory motifs containing positive/negative feedback and coherent/incoherent feedforward loops. When biochemical pathways or networks hold these regulatory structures, they often display behavior that evades direct reasoning. Many papers, which use data-driven modeling approach, succeeded proving how signal amplification [11], sustained oscillations [77], or bistability [78] emerge as hallmarks of signaling and transcriptional networks.

To mention an example on immune-related pathways, Das and colleagues [79] integrated different modeling approaches with in vitro experiments to elucidate the interplay between Ras activation and SOS proteins in the activation of T- and B-lymphocytes. What makes their work interesting is that both proteins, Ras and SOS, are integrated in a positive feedback loop that participates in the Ag receptor stimulation of lymphocytes. In this feedback loop, Ras gets strongly activated upon membrane receptor stimulation, a process which is mediated by members of the SOS family. In turn, SOS activity at the plasma

membrane is allosterically upregulated by active RasGTP. To validate the existence of this positive feedback loop and its functional consequences, the authors combined model simulations and time-dependent in vitro experiments with human and chicken lymphocytic cell lines. They found that under some stimulatory conditions, the biochemical system displays bistability. That is, for intense enough stimulation, the pathway works like and all-or-nothing system: transient but intense stimulus can trigger a sustained activation of the system and the downstream pathway. When we consider a population of lymphocytes, this property may induce the emergence of a bimodal response, with a subpopulation of lymphocytes getting full and sustained activation, while others remain inactive. From an immunological perspective, the authors hypothesize that this system induces the emergence of a short-term mechanism of molecular memory. This mechanism can improve the activation of T-lymphocytes which were stimulated in previous serial encounters with rare antigen-bearing cells.

In the study by Das et al. [79], the focus was to elucidate the dynamics of a small signaling system containing regulatory loops. In other cases, one tries to address how several pathways crosstalk to each other and integrate their signals to achieve the regulation of given phenotypic responses. This has also been explored using mathematical models of large regulatory networks in the context of cancer [80] and immunology [81]. For example, Carbo and collaborators [82] used a systems biology approach to investigate the regulation of the pathways underlying $CD4^+$ T-cell differentiation. By collecting and organizing the state of the art of biomedical knowledge, they constructed a comprehensive regulatory map of the critical pathways regulating the differentiation of naïve $CD4^+$ T-lymphocytes into Th1, Th2, Th17, or iTreg. The regulatory map was translated into a mathematical model in ordinary differential equations, and characterized using perturbation experiments, in which different concentrations of relevant cytokines were used to stimulate the shift between different signaling and transcriptional pathways and therefore the distinctive differentiation of the naïve T-cells. Once the model was calibrated and validated, model simulations and sensitivity analysis were combined to determine the model parameters controlling the activation of different pathways. They found that the pathway regulating the nuclear receptor PPARc function plays a major role controlling the shift between the Th17 and iTreg transcriptional and phenotypic programs. Based on these findings, they foresee a therapeutic potential to the regulation of PPARc signaling in the context of chronic inflammatory and infectious diseases. In this way, the authors show how a full systems biology strategy can be extremely useful to dissect the signaling and transcriptional networks controlling differentiation and plasticity of in immune cells.

27.5.2 Genotype–Phenotype Mapping

Mathematical models can be used to bridge the gap between intracellular pathways and the cellular phenotypes they regulate. In this case, the idea is to develop mathematical models that consider how genetic or epigenetic changes in critical cancer-related pathways can affect the fate of tumor cells, and trigger (or disrupt) phenotypic responses at the cellular level. Some authors call this the genotype–phenotype mapping [83]. This idea has been applied to investigate the deregulation of critical cancer regulatory networks during tumorigenesis and emergence of chemoresistance phenotypes in melanoma [8] and colorectal cancer [84]. Santos and coworkers extended this idea and integrated tumor sample gene expression data with kinetic modeling simulations to investigate the genotype–phenotype mechanisms promoting resistance to immunotherapy in metastatic melanoma [85] (Fig. 27.6). The mathematical model used accounts for the interplay between cytotoxic T and tumor cells in melanoma micrometastases (Fig. 27.6a, b). Further, the model includes equations reflecting key processes belonging to the innate immune response at the tumor site, like natural killer cells activation, and

equations describing the immunity elicited by the immunotherapy, here dendritic-cell or melanoma antigen vaccination. Systematic perturbative model simulations accounting for sensitivity and resistance to anticancer vaccination were performed and clustered in model-derived phenotypic signatures. They further matched these phenotypic signatures with existing transcriptomics data from tumor samples of melanoma patients treated with immunotherapy. To make the comparison possible, they annotated the differentially expressed genes and aggregated the expression of those with similar gene ontologies into metagenes. The model-derived phenotypic signatures were in agreement with metagenomic signatures obtained from the clinical data (Fig. 27.6c). Among other predictions, the model-derived phenotypic signatures pointed to the existence of an unexpected new mechanism of immunotherapy resistance, in which genes linked to antigen presentation get intermediate expression levels, in a way melanoma micrometastases are able to minimize the complementary antitumor immune responses elicited by both cytotoxic T and natural killer cells (Fig. 27.6d).

27.5.2.1 Multiscale Modeling

In a more refined version of the previous strategy, systems biology and data-driven modeling can be used to account for spatial features of tumor organization and the interaction of the tumor with the surrounding microenvironment. This is the rationale for the so-called cancer multiscale models, which has been successfully used in the last years to investigate the detailed dynamics of tumor growth or angiogenesis [17]. In the recent literature, there are several excellent reviews about the topic [83], as well as a number of

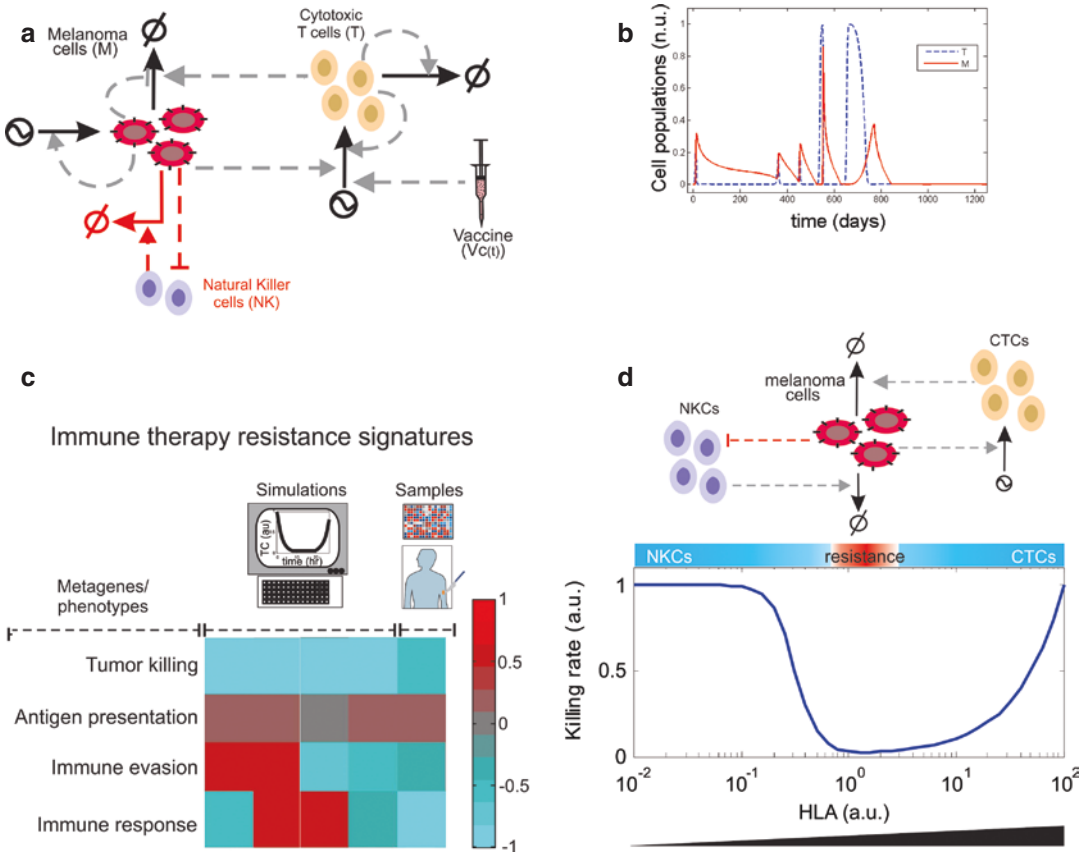


Fig. 27.6 Model-based genotype–phenotype mechanisms promoting resistance to immunotherapy in metastatic melanoma according to Santos et al. [85]

examples of cancer multiscale models [16, 86], many of which referred to angiogenesis.

To mention an example with a cancer immunology focus, Pak and coauthors [87] derived a mathematical model to investigate features of the delivery of recombinant immunotoxins, a family of new molecules with anticancer activity. They are composed of an Ab fragment targeting specific tumor cell Ags, and a protein toxin fragment, which is released and triggers cytotoxic effects upon recognition, internalization, and processing of the molecule. The authors derived a mathematical model that links recombinant immunotoxin dosing and changes in tumor volume. In the model, a tumor is divided into a series of spherical subunits that contain a blood vessel and a number of tumor cells surrounding it, which can be present as normal, intoxicated, or dead tumor cells. For each one of these structures, the model contains a set of differential equations accounting for the dynamics of immunotoxin, from its release from the blood vessel until its internalization in a tumor cell, which becomes intoxicated. In this way, the model accounts for the amount of immunotoxin released, present, and degraded in each tumor subunit. The other part of the model describes the dynamics of tumor cell populations existing in the subunit. This part of the model considers processes like cell growth, immunotoxin-related death, and cell migration to occupy the space cleared after the death of highly intoxicated cells. Using model simulations, Pak and colleagues found that Ag shedding, a key mechanism in the dynamics of tumor-specific surface Ags, is critical for the success of the therapy. Using model simulations, they found that Ag shedding homogenizes the distribution of the immunotoxin in solid tumors; therefore increasing the efficiency of the therapy.

27.5.3 Mathematical Models Used to Assess and Design Therapies

Previous results illustrate the potential of systems biology and data-driven modeling to explore the structure, function, and regulation of biochemical networks, as well as their interplay with cancer-related cell and tissue phenotypes. In addition, Systems biology can play a major role in translational medicine, providing tools for clinical data integration, as well as for design, assessment, and personalization of anticancer therapies [88, 89]. In the following, we illustrate these possibilities with several recent examples.

27.5.3.1 Assessment of Conventional Therapies

A very promising use for systems biology is the personalized assessment of anticancer therapies. The literature contains many recent works illustrating how date-driven modeling can be used to maximize the efficiency of current therapies, but also to detect patient subpopulations for which they are not suitable. For example, mathematical models can be used to determine under which conditions a conventional therapy: (a) is toxicologically safe [90, 91], (b) does not induce further resistance [8, 92], and (c) can be combined with other therapies [8]. Furthermore, data-driven models can be used to establish the drug dosage and timing that optimize the anticancer effect and/or reduce toxicity [93].

For example, Engel and collaborators [90] made use of data-driven mathematical modeling to look for the optimal administration dose and timing of several conventional anticancer drugs minimizing the risk of acute neutropenia, a side effect of anticancer therapy in malignant lymphoma and other cancers. What makes therapy-associated acute neutropenia important for cancer patients is that they get a drastic reduction of neutrophil blood levels, which make them more vulnerable to bacterial infections and increases the risk of life-threatening sepsis. Engel and coworkers derived, characterized, and tested a quantitative data-based ODE model that describes the generation, proliferation, and differentiation of neutrophils and other human granulocytes. The model was extended to account for the changes in the granulocyte dynamics suffered by patients with lymphoma treated with cytostatic drugs and recombinant GSCF, an adjuvant therapy that stimulates granulocyte production and accelerates the recover from neutropenia. The model

was characterized with patient data obtained from several large randomized clinical trials, in which efficacy and safety of multidrug chemotherapies were. The obtained model describes precisely the time-response of white blood cell levels for ten different therapeutic regimes. Furthermore, the authors suggest that the model can be used as a predictive tool, able to assess the safety of other nonexplored conventional anticancer drugs regimes. Although the model was characterized with data from patients suffering malignant lymphoma, they claim that the model can be adapted to assess the risk of therapy-associated neutropenia in other tumor entities.

This idea can be extended to other conventional anticancer therapies. For example, Ribba and colleagues [91] developed a multiscale model to investigate the effect of some tumor features in the efficiency of radiotherapy. The authors constructed a model for colorectal cancer progression that links cell cycle progression, DNA damage level, and other signaling pathways to the sensitivity of individual cells to the irradiation doses. Their model integrated four modules, implemented using different modeling frameworks. Some of the key features of the model are: (a) it includes regulatory pathways controlling cell cycle, cell division, and apoptosis; (b) these pathways are connected with the fate of individual tumor cells and actually control tumor cell death and proliferation; (c) the model also considers the spatial structure of the tumor, that is, how cells get distributed and interact with the tumor microenvironment through gradients, growth- and antigrowth-factors, and hypoxia; and (d) additional model equations describe how different irradiation dosing (time and dose) triggers DNA damage in proliferative tumor cells. When they simulated radiotherapy administration with their model, they found that the efficacy of conventional irradiation protocols can be improved if the cell cycle-regulated dynamics of tumor growth is considered when planning the schedule of irradiation sessions. This result is in line with others suggesting similar optimal schedule of chemotherapy sessions, something known as cancer chronotherapy [94]. In line with these results, mathematical modeling has also been applied to the assessment and personalization of immunotherapies in solid tumors. Kronik and coworkers employed computational modeling and simulation to personalize the design of a therapeutic vaccine against metastatic prostate cancer [95]. In their approach, clinical trial data are used to generate personalized instances of a computational model, which predicts the levels of known prostate cancer antigens in the curse of vaccination, a parameter used as a surrogate biomarker of the therapy efficacy. These authors further elaborated these ideas and deployed a similar strategy to personalize adoptive T-cell therapy in the context of metastatic melanoma [96]. In their approach, data on the growth rate or residual tumor size of the individual patient are used as input in the computational model and used to personalize the T-cell dosage or the schedule of the therapy administration.

27.5.3.2 Design of New Chemo and Immune Therapies

Systems biology has become a valuable approach to boost the procedure of drug discovery and the design of combined therapies that integrate conventional and targeted chemotherapy. The underlying idea is to combine predictive model simulations, sensitivity analysis, and other advanced model-based computational methods to help detect single or combined potential drug targets. These model-obtained potential drug targets can later direct the search from new drugs [21, 97, 98]. In a quite remarkable example of this strategy, Schoeberl and colleagues combined high-throughput and time series data with mathematical modeling of the receptor tyrosine kinase signaling family to detect new anticancer drug targets [12, 99]. They derived, calibrated, and validated an ODE mathematical model describing the known features of the ErbB/PI3K signaling network in the context of cancer progression. Predictive model simulations were combined with computational sensitivity analysis to identify which members of the ErbB family have a major effect in the activation of AKT signaling in cancer cell lines. They later synthesized a human monoclonal antibody that inhibits the phosphorylation and subsequent activation of their top one

model-detected drug target, the ErbB3 receptor. The model predictions were validated by showing that this antibody stops the growth of human tumor xenografts in mice models. Interestingly, the team is entirely composed of researchers from a biotech company devoted to the use of systems biology in drug discovery (Merrimack Pharmaceuticals, Cambridge, USA). This strategy has also delivered some interesting results in the context of immune anticancer therapies.

Kim and Lee [100] used data-driven modeling of the lymph node-tumor interaction to analyze whether preventive vaccination with cytotoxic T lymphocytes (CTLs) can be employed to promote the clearance of microtumors before clinical detection (Fig. 27.7). Toward this end, they derived a hybrid mathematical model composed of two interconnected modules. The first module describes the dynamics of CTL activation, including the tumor antigen production at the tumor site, its detection by antigen-presenting cells, and the subsequent maturation and their migration to the lymph node. Furthermore, the module includes the activation of cytotoxic T-lymphocytes by the matured antigen-presenting cells and its subsequent proliferation, maturation, and migration, as well as the emergence of memory T-cells. The second module describes the interplay between active cytotoxic T-lymphocytes and tumor cells, including tumor cell detection, recruitment of additional CTLS and CTL-mediated tumor cell death. The model was characterized using data from breast cancer. The authors used the mathematical model to determine a threshold in the size of the anti-cancer memory CTL pool able to promote an effective clearance of microtumors. Furthermore, the model predictions attribute an important role in the success of the immune response to the rapidity in which CTLs detect the tumor site. Paradoxically, the model simulations suggested that tumors with fast growth rate are more prone to CTL destruction due to the faster production of tumor antigens and hence, faster detection by cytotoxic T-lymphocytes. The model describes the dynamics of CTL activation, including tumor Ag production, its detection by antigen-presenting cells and the activation of cytotoxic T-lymphocytes by the matured antigen-presenting

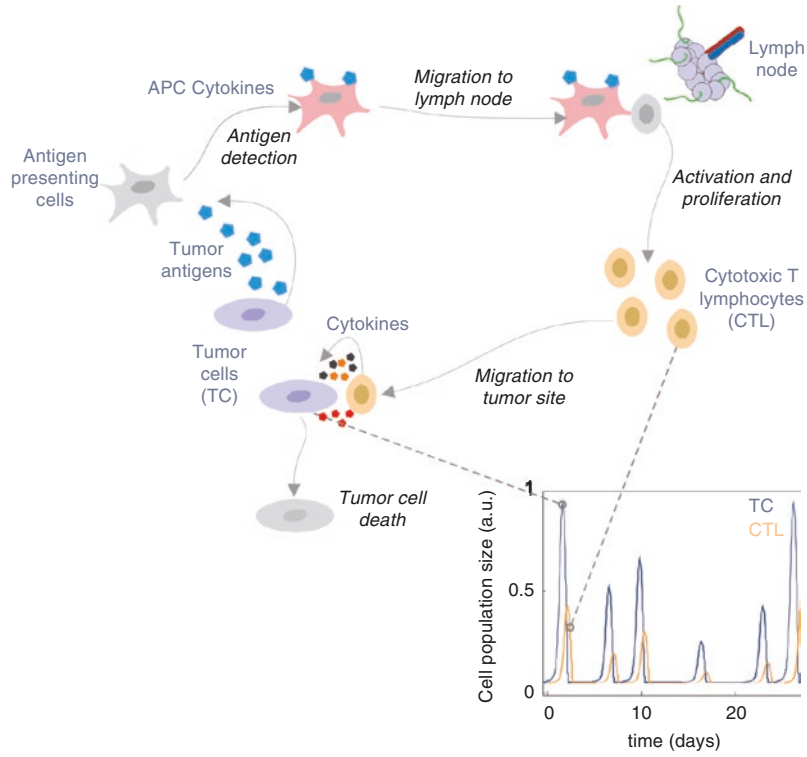


Fig. 27.7 Data-driven modeling of the lymph node–tumor interaction and the clearance of microtumors with cytotoxic T-lymphocytes (CTL) vaccination

cells. In addition, the model describes tumor cell detection by CTLs and CTL-mediated tumor cell death. The model can simulate variations over time of the populations of different immune cells and the tumor cells. In a mouse model of breast cancer, Pennisi and collaborators derived a hybrid computational model describing the immune response to lung metastases elicited by an anticancer vaccine [101]. By making computational simulations, they succeeded in finding vaccine administration protocols maximizing the suppression of lung metastases while reducing the amount of vaccine doses. In an effort that continued over time, de Pillis and collaborators have proven that mathematical modeling is a useful tool to work in the design and assessment of anticancer dendritic cell vaccination [102, 103], as well as in its combination with chemotherapy [104].

27.5.3.3 Unconventional Therapies

A fascinating option with data-driven mathematical modeling is to explore therapies inspired in not yet experimentally proven concepts and ideas. In this sense, modeling is used to formulate new hypothesis on the origin and progress of cancer, as well as to foresee how one could derive new therapies based on this. In the recent literature, there are some examples of this procedure [105, 106]. In a series of recent papers, Gatenby and coworkers hypothesized that adaption to chemotherapeutic agents has an energetic cost for cancer cells, and this can be exploited to design anticancer therapies [106, 107]. In fact, the starting point of their hypothesis is that chemoresistant cells need additional energetic resources to keep working the resistance mechanisms against drugs. Their adaptive therapy relies on considering the existence of several coexisting subpopulations of cancer cells in the tumor, with different genetic and phenotypic backgrounds regarding chemoresistance. In their hypothesis, one can favor the proliferation of chemosensitive cells by manipulating the timing and dose of conventional chemotherapy, in a manner in which these cells can effectively compete with chemoresistant ones for space and resources and delay the development of a fully resistant tumor. To substantiate their hypothesis, they have derived a series of in vitro data-driven mathematical models, which describe the growth of tumors composed of chemosensitive and chemoresistant cancer cell subpopulations. For the most updated version of the model, they performed in vitro experiments under conditions of normal growth and genotoxic drug administration using either normal MCF-7 cell lines or mutant cell lines overexpressing proteins involved in the efflux of anticancer drugs. Using data from these experiments, they characterized the rates of growth and drug sensitivity of both tumor cell subpopulations in the model. Later, model simulations were performed to analyze the tumor growth rate when different versions of their adaptive therapy were used; they compared the results with the tumor growth rate under conventional genotoxic chemotherapy. They found that the combination of their adaptive therapy (which tunes the timing and dose of conventional chemotherapy) with the administration of nonchemotherapeutic membrane pump substrates (a kind of "competitive" inhibitors of drug efflux) and 2-deoxyglucose (an inhibitor of glucose transporters and glycolysis) provokes a fourfold increase in the progression-free survival in their computational models. Serre and coworkers derived and validated against clinical data a pharmacodynamics mathematical model intended to predict the combination of immune checkpoint inhibitors (anti PD-L1 and anti CTLA-4) and conventional radiotherapy in the treatment of aggressive tumors [108]. The authors envision the mathematical mode like a computational tool to optimize and help in the synchronization of the schedules for immunotherapy and radiotherapy. Hatzikirou and collaborators derived and calibrated a mathematical model that accounts for the interplay between bacterial infection and TNFα-driven immunity in the context of experimental therapies against aggressive solid tumors [109]. Their results, partially validated with in vitro experimentation, suggested that intermediate bacterial loads combined with low-level TNFα therapy could trigger a favorable anticancer immune response in tumor-bearing individuals.

Acknowledgments This work was supported by the German Federal Ministry of Education and Research (BMBF) as part of the projects eBio:MelEVIR [031L0073A to JV and 031L0073B to OW]. JV is funded by the Staedler Stiftung and the Manfred Roth Stiftung.

Glossary (Extended Definitions Are Available in the Encyclopedia of Systems Biology [110])

Pathway Biochemical system with a unique input signal, in which network compound interactions follow a rather sequential cascade of events.

Network Complex and highly interconnected biochemical system composed of dozens to hundreds of interacting proteins, metabolites, RNAs, as well as several concurrent input signals.

Cross-Talk Property of a biochemical system integrated by several pathways, in which signals from one pathway modulate the activity of the other.

Regulatory Map Graphical depiction, following a code of symbols, of the compounds, interactions, input signals, and phenotypic output of a biochemical network. One can say that a regulatory map is a visualization of the state of the art of the biomedical knowledge about the biochemical network.

Positive Feedback Loop Biochemical system in which the activation of a biochemical event positively regulates a biochemical process upstream the system. Under some conditions, this kind of system induces signal amplification, bistability and hence the conversion of a transient signaling into a sustained one.

Negative Feedback Loop Biochemical system in which the activation of a biochemical event negatively regulates a biochemical process upstream the system. Under some conditions, this kind of system induces homeostasis, but it can also provoke the emergence of sustained oscillations in the concentration or activation of the network compounds.

Feedforward Loop Biochemical system in which a downstream network compound is simultaneously regulated by, for example, a transcription factor and a protein whose expression is regulated by the transcription factor. The feedforward loop is coherent when the downstream network compound is consistently regulated by both interactions (both interactions activate or both inhibit) and incoherent when the regulation is opposite.

Model Calibration Computational procedure in which quantitative data are integrated with the mathematical model. The aim is to give values to the model parameters, in a way that model simulations are able to reproduce the experimental data available.

Predictive Model Simulation Computational procedure in which the model can be used to extrapolate the behavior of the system investigated under experimental conditions not yet tested.

Model Validation Procedure by which predictive model simulations are compared with new experimental data, not used in model calibration. A model is considered validated when there is an agreement between the predictive simulations and the experimental data used.

ODE Model Mathematical model of biochemical systems that describe spatio-temporal changes of protein concentrations and other biological molecules using kinetic equations. These equations describe the variation on time of the populations or concentration of the considered biomolecules.

Boolean/Logic Model Class of discrete computational models used to model biochemical systems, in which the network compounds can have one of the two possible states at any time: 1 or ON, which means that the compound is expressed or active; and 0 or OFF, nonexpressed or inactive.

Agent-Based Model Class of discrete computational models used to model biochemical systems and cell-to-cell interactions. A cellular automaton is the computational representation of a regular grid of cells. Each cell can have a finite number of states (similar to the ON/OFF of Boolean models), and transitions in states affected by the states of the surrounding cells in the grid.

Bistability Property of biochemical networks containing positive feedback loops, by which small perturbations drastically change the behavior of the system, for example, inducing a transition between quick signal termination after transient stimulation and persistent activation.

Self-Sustained Oscillations Property of some biochemical systems containing negative feedback loops, in which the concentration of the network components oscillates regularly in time, even under constant external stimulation.

Sensitivity Analysis Computational tool used to analyze mathematical models. This tool provides information about the model parameters for which a variation in their value significantly affects the behavior of the system.

References

1. Vera J, Wolkenhauer O. A system biology approach to understand functional activity of cell communication systems. Methods Cell Biol. 2008;90:399–415. Elsevier.
2. Brooks JD. Translational genomics: the challenge of developing cancer biomarkers. Genome Res. 2012;22:183–7. Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory.
3. Bittner M, Meltzer P, Chen Y, Jiang Y, Seftor E, Hendrix M, et al. Molecular classification of cutaneous malignant melanoma by gene expression profiling. Nature. 2000;406:536–40.
4. van't Veer LJ, Dai H, van de Vijver MJ, He YD, Hart AAM, Mao M, et al. Gene expression profiling predicts clinical outcome of breast cancer. Nature. 2002;415:530–6. Springer Nature.
5. Quackenbush J. Computational approaches to analysis of DNA microarray data. Yearb Med Inform. 2006;2(6):91–103.
6. Vera J, Wolkenhauer O. Mathematical tools in cancer signalling systems biology. In: Cancer systems biology, bioinformatics and medicine. Dordrecht: Springer; 2011. p. 185–212.
7. Reynolds AR, Tischer C, Verveer PJ, Rocks O, Bastiaens PIH. EGFR activation coupled to inhibition of tyrosine phosphatases causes lateral signal propagation. Nat Cell Biol. 2003;5:447–53. Springer Nature.
8. Vera J, Schmitz U, Lai X, Engelmann D, Khan FM, Wolkenhauer O, et al. Kinetic modeling-based detection of genetic signatures that provide chemoresistance via the E2F1-p73/DNp73-miR-205 network. Cancer Res. 2013;73:3511–24.
9. Alexopoulos LG, Saez-Rodriguez J, Cosgrove BD, Lauffenburger DA, Sorger PK. Networks inferred from biochemical data reveal profound differences in toll-like receptor and inflammatory signaling between Normal and transformed hepatocytes. Mol Cell Proteomics. 2010;9:1849–65. American Society for Biochemistry & Molecular Biology (ASBMB).
10. Rehm M, Huber HJ, Dussmann H, Prehn JHM. Systems analysis of effector caspase activation and its control by X-linked inhibitor of apoptosis protein. EMBO J. 2006;25:4338–49. Wiley-Blackwell.
11. Vera J, Bachmann J, Pfeifer AC, Becker V, Hormiga JA, Darias N, et al. A systems biology approach to analyse amplification in the JAK2-STAT5 signalling pathway. BMC Syst Biol. 2008;2:38. Springer Nature.
12. Schoeberl B, Pace EA, Fitzgerald JB, Harms BD, Xu L, Nie L, et al. Therapeutically targeting ErbB3: a key node in ligand-induced activation of the erbb receptor-PI3K axis. Sci Signal. 2009;2:ra31. American Association for the Advancement of Science (AAAS).
13. Chmielecki J, Foo J, Oxnard GR, Hutchinson K, Ohashi K, Somwar R, et al. Optimization of dosing for EGFR-mutant non-small cell lung cancer with evolutionary cancer modeling. Sci Transl Med. 2011;3:90ra59. American Association for the Advancement of Science (AAAS).
14. Gilbert LA, Hemann MT. DNA damage-mediated induction of a chemoresistant niche. Cell. 2010;143:355–66. Elsevier (BV)
15. Witz IP. Tumor-microenvironment interactions: dangerous liaisons. Adv Cancer Res. 2008;100:203–29. Elsevier
16. Perfahl H, Byrne HM, Chen T, Estrella V, Alarcón T, Lapin A, et al. Multiscale modelling of vascular tumour growth in 3D: the roles of domain size and boundary conditions. PLoS One. 2011;6:e14790. Secomb TW, editor. Public Library of Science (PLoS)
17. Byrne HM. Dissecting cancer through mathematics: from the cell to the animal model. Nat Rev Cancer. 2010;10:221–30. Springer Nature.
18. Segata N, Blanzieri E, Priami C. Towards the integration of computational systems biology and high-throughput data: supporting differential analysis of microarray gene expression data. J Integr Bioinform. 2008;5:57–71. Walter de Gruyter (GmbH).
19. Nikolov S, Vera J, Schmitz U, Wolkenhauer O. A model-based strategy to investigate the role of microRNA regulation in cancer signalling networks. Theory Biosci. 2011;130:55–69.
20. Lai X, Schmitz U, Gupta SK, Bhattacharya A, Kunz M, Wolkenhauer O, et al. Computational analysis of target hub gene repression regulated by multiple and cooperative miRNAs. Nucleic Acids Res. 2012;40:8818–34.
21. Marin-Sanguino A, Gupta SK, Voit EO, Vera J. Biochemical pathway modeling tools for drug target detection in cancer and other complex diseases. Methods Enzymol. 2011;487:319–69.
22. Wong E, Baur B, Quader S, Huang C-H. Biological network motif detection: principles and practice. Brief Bioinform. 2011;13:202–15. Oxford University Press (OUP)
23. Khan FM, Schmitz U, Nikolov S, Engelmann D, Pützer BM, Wolkenhauer O, et al. Hybrid modeling of the crosstalk between signaling and transcriptional networks using ordinary differential equations and

multi-valued logic. Biochim Biophys Acta Proteins Proteomics. 1844;2014:289–98.
24. Vera J, Rath O, Balsa-Canto E, Banga JR, Kolch W, Wolkenhauer O. Investigating dynamics of inhibitory and feedback loops in ERK signalling using power-law models. Mol BioSyst. 2010;6:2174–91.
25. Eberhardt M, Lai X, Tomar N, Gupta S, Schmeck B, Steinkasserer A, et al. Third-kind encounters in biomedicine: immunology meets mathematics and informatics to become quantitative and predictive. Methods Mol Biol. 2016;1386:135–79.
26. Gupta SK, Jaitly T, Schmitz U, Schuler G, Wolkenhauer O, Vera J. Personalized cancer immunotherapy using systems medicine approaches. Brief Bioinform. 2016;17:453–67.
27. Nahta R, Esteva FJ. Herceptin: mechanisms of action and resistance. Cancer Lett. 2006;232:123–38. Elsevier (BV).
28. Pappalardo F, Chiacchio F, Motta S. Cancer vaccines: state of the art of the computational modeling approaches. Biomed Res Int. 2013;2013:1–6. Hindawi Limited.
29. Yaddanapudi K, Mitchell RA, Eaton JW. Cancer vaccines: looking to the future. Oncoimmunology. 2013;2:e23403. Informa (UK) Limited.
30. Mellman I, Coukos G, Dranoff G. Cancer immunotherapy comes of age. Nature. 2011;480:480–9. Springer Nature.
31. Schwartzentruber DJ, Lawson DH, Richards JM, Conry RM, Miller DM, Treisman J, et al. gp100 peptide vaccine and Interleukin-2 in patients with advanced melanoma. N Engl J Med. 2011;364:2119–27. New England Journal of Medicine (NEJM/MMS).
32. Kenter GG, Welters MJP, Valentijn ARPM, Lowik MJG, der Meer DMAB, Vloon APG, et al. Vaccination against HPV-16 oncoproteins for vulvar intraepithelial Neoplasia. N Engl J Med. 2009;361:1838–47. New England Journal of Medicine (NEJM/MMS)
33. Stevenson FK, Ottensmeier CH, Johnson P, Zhu D, Buchan SL, McCann KJ, et al. DNA vaccines to attack cancer. Proc Natl Acad Sci. 2004;101:14646–52.
34. Campbell CT, Gulley JL, Oyelaran O, Hodge JW, Schlom J, Gildersleeve JC. Serum antibodies to blood group a predict survival on PROSTVAC-VF. Clin Cancer Res. 2013;19:1290–9. American Association for Cancer Research (AACR).
35. Vanneman M, Dranoff G. Combining immunotherapy and targeted therapies in cancer treatment. Nat Rev Cancer. 2012;12:237–51. Springer Nature.
36. Cheson BD. Ofatumumab, a novel anti-CD20 monoclonal antibody for the treatment of B-cell malignancies. J Clin Oncol. 2010;28:3525–30. American Society of Clinical Oncology (ASCO).
37. Korman AJ, Peggs KS, Allison JP. Checkpoint blockade in Cancer immunotherapy. Adv Immunol. 2006;90:297–339. Elsevier.
38. Guo K, Li J, Tang JP, Tan CPB, Hong CW, Al-Aidaroos AQO, et al. Targeting intracellular oncoproteins with antibody therapy or vaccination. Sci Transl Med. 2011;3:99ra85. American Association for the Advancement of Science (AAAS).
39. Hong CW, Zeng Q. Awaiting a new era of cancer immunotherapy. Cancer Res. 2012;72:3715–9. American Association for Cancer Research (AACR).
40. Caballero OL, Chen Y-T. Cancer/testis (CT) antigens: potential targets for immunotherapy. Cancer Sci. 2009;100:2014–21. Wiley-Blackwell.
41. Castle JC, Kreiter S, Diekmann J, Lower M, van de Roemer N, de Graaf J, et al. Exploiting the mutanome for tumor vaccination. Cancer Res. 2012;72:1081–91. American Association for Cancer Research (AACR).
42. Charoentong P, Angelova M, Efremova M, Gallasch R, Hackl H, Galon J, et al. Bioinformatics for cancer immunology and immunotherapy. Cancer Immunol Immunother. 2012;61:1885–903. Springer Nature.
43. Boon T, Coulie PG, Van den Eynde BJ, van der Bruggen P. Human T cell responses against melanoma. Annu Rev Immunol. 2006;24:175–208.
44. Rhodes DR, Yu J, Shanker K, Deshpande N, Varambally R, Ghosh D, et al. ONCOMINE: a cancer microarray database and integrated data-mining platform. Neoplasia. 2004;6:1–6. Elsevier (BV).
45. Muñoz N, Castellsagué X, de González AB, Gissmann L. HPV in the etiology of human cancer. Vaccine. 2006;24:S1–S10. Elsevier (BV).
46. de Villiers E-M, Fauquet C, Broker TR, Bernard H-U, zur Hausen H. Classification of papillomaviruses. Virology. 2004;324:17–27. Elsevier (BV).
47. Dunne EF, Unger ER, Sternberg M, McQuillan G, Swan DC, Patel SS, et al. Prevalence of HPV infection among females in the United States. JAMA. 2007;297:813. American Medical Association (AMA).
48. Wain G. The human papillomavirus (HPV) vaccine, HPV related diseases and cervical cancer in the post-reproductive years. Maturitas. 2010;65:205–9. Elsevier (BV).
49. Singh KP, Verma N, Akhoon BA, Bhatt V, Gupta SK, Gupta SK, et al. Sequence-based approach for rapid identification of cross-clade CD8+ T-cell vaccine candidates from all high-risk HPV strains. 3 Biotech. 2016;6:39.
50. Lee J-Y, Yoon J-K, Kim B, Kim S, Kim MA, Lim H, et al. Tumor evolution and intratumor heterogeneity of an epithelial ovarian cancer investigated using next-generation sequencing. BMC Cancer. 2015;15:85.
51. Jiménez-Sánchez A, Memon D, Pourpe S, Veeraraghavan H, Li Y, Vargas HA, et al. Heterogeneous tumor-immune microenvironments among differentially growing metastases in an ovarian Cancer patient. Cell. 2017;170:927–938.e20.
52. Gupta SK, Singh A, Srivastava M, Gupta SK, Akhoon BA. In silico DNA vaccine designing against human papillomavirus (HPV) causing cervical cancer. Vaccine. 2009;28:120–31.
53. Rammensee H-G, Bachmann J, Emmerich NPN, Bachor OA, Stevanović S. SYFPEITHI: database for

MHC ligands and peptide motifs. Immunogenetics. 1999;50:213–9. Springer Nature.
54. Nielsen M, Lundegaard C, Worning P, Lauemøller SL, Lamberth K, Buus S, et al. Reliable prediction of T-cell epitopes using neural networks with novel sequence representations. Protein Sci. 2003;12:1007–17.
55. Peters B, Sette A. Generating quantitative models describing the sequence specificity of biological processes with the stabilized matrix method. BMC Bioinformatics. 2005;6:132.
56. Bui H-H, Sidney J, Peters B, Sathiamurthy M, Sinichi A, Purton K-A, et al. Automated generation and evaluation of specific MHC binding predictive tools: ARB matrix applications. Immunogenetics. 2005;57:304–14. Springer Nature.
57. Tong JC, Tan TW, Ranganathan S. Methods and protocols for prediction of immunogenic epitopes. Brief Bioinform. 2007;8:96–108.
58. Feldhahn M, Dönnes P, Thiel P, Kohlbacher O. FRED - a framework for T-cell epitope detection. Bioinformatics. 2009;25:2758–9.
59. Feldhahn M, Thiel P, Schuler MM, Hillen N, Stevanovic S, Rammensee HG, et al. EpiToolKit--a web server for computational immunomics. Nucleic Acids Res. 2008;36:W519–22.
60. Szolek A, Schubert B, Mohr C, Sturm M, Feldhahn M, Kohlbacher O. OptiType: precision HLA typing from next-generation sequencing data. Bioinformatics. 2014;30:3310–6.
61. Nakamura Y. Codon usage tabulated from international DNA sequence databases: status for the year 2000. Nucleic Acids Res. 2000;28:292. Oxford University Press (OUP).
62. Klinman DM, Ishii KJ, Verthelyi D. CpG DNA augments the immunogenicity of plasmid DNA vaccines. In: Immunobiology of Bacterial CpG-DNA. Berlin: Springer; 2000. p. 131–42.
63. Harish N, Gupta R, Agarwal P, Scaria V, Pillai B. DyNAVacS: an integrative tool for optimized DNA vaccine design. Nucleic Acids Res. 2006;34:W264–6. Oxford University Press (OUP)
64. Dolenc I, Seemüller E, Baumeister W. Decelerated degradation of short peptides by the 20S proteasome. FEBS Lett. 1998;434:357–61. Wiley-Blackwell
65. Chiang H, Terlecky PC, Dice J. A role for a 70-kilodalton heat shock protein in lysosomal degradation of intracellular proteins. Science. 1989;246:382–5. American Association for the Advancement of Science (AAAS)
66. Montgomery DL, Prather KJ. Design of plasmid DNA constructs for vaccines. DNA vaccines. Methods Mol Med. 2006;127:11–22. Humana Press
67. Gross S, Erdmann M, Haendle I, Voland S, Berger T, Schultz E, et al. Twelve-year survival and immune correlates in dendritic cell–vaccinated melanoma patients. JCI Insight. 2017;2:91438.
68. Schuler G, Schuler-Thurner B, Steinman RM. The use of dendritic cells in cancer immunotherapy. Curr Opin Immunol. 2003;15(2):138–47.
69. Hundal J, Carreno BM, Petti AA, Linette GP, Griffith OL, Mardis ER, et al. pVAC-Seq: a genome-guided in silico approach to identifying tumor neoantigens. Genome Med. 2016;8:11.
70. Jaitly T, Schaft N, Doerrie J, Gross S, Schuler-Thurner B, Wolkenhauer O, et al. An integrative computational framework for personalized detection of tumor epitopes in melanoma immunotherapy. Peer J Prepr. 2016;4:e2385v1.
71. Mlecnik B, Bindea G, Angell HK, Maby P, Angelova M, Tougeron D, et al. Integrative analyses of colorectal cancer show immunoscore is a stronger predictor of patient survival than microsatellite instability. Immunity. 2016;44:698–711.
72. Charoentong P, Finotello F, Angelova M, Mayer C, Efremova M, Rieder D, et al. Pan-cancer immunogenomic analyses reveal genotype-immunophenotype relationships and predictors of response to checkpoint blockade. Cell Rep. 2017;18:248–62.
73. Buschow SI, Ramazzotti M, Reinieren-Beeren IMJ, Heinzerling LM, Westdorp H, Stefanini I, et al. Survival of metastatic melanoma patients after dendritic cell vaccination correlates with expression of leukocyte phosphatidylethanolamine-binding protein 1 / Raf kinase inhibitory protein. Oncotarget. 2017;5:67439–56.
74. Khan FM, Marquardt S, Gupta SK, Knoll S, Schmitz U, Spitschak A, et al. Unraveling a tumor type-specific regulatory core underlying E2F1-mediated epithelial-mesenchymal transition to predict receptor protein signatures. Nat Commun. 2017;8:198.
75. Lai X, Gupta SK, Schmitz U, Marquardt S, Knoll S, Spitschak A, et al. MiR-205-5p and miR-342-3p cooperate in the repression of the E2F1 transcription factor in the context of anticancer chemotherapy resistance. Theranostics. 2018;8:1106–20.
76. Shah MY, Ferrajoli A, Sood AK, Lopez-Berestein G, Calin GA. microRNA therapeutics in cancer — an emerging concept. EBioMedicine. 2016;12:34–42.
77. Ashall L, Horton CA, Nelson DE, Paszek P, Harper CV, Sillitoe K, et al. Pulsatile stimulation determines timing and specificity of NF-kB-dependent transcription. Science. 2009;324:242–6. American Association for the Advancement of Science (AAAS).
78. Aguda BD, Kim Y, Piper-Hunter MG, Friedman A, Marsh CB. MicroRNA regulation of a cancer network: consequences of the feedback loops involving miR-17-92, E2F, and Myc. Proc Natl Acad Sci. 2008;105:19678–83. Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences.
79. Das J, Ho M, Zikherman J, Govern C, Yang M, Weiss A, et al. Digital signaling and hysteresis characterize Ras activation in lymphoid cells. Cell. 2009;136:337–51. Elsevier (BV).
80. Guebel DV, Schmitz U, Wolkenhauer O, Vera J. Analysis of cell adhesion during early stages of colon cancer based on an extended multi-valued logic approach. Mol BioSyst. 2012;8:1230–42.

81. Saez-Rodriguez J, Simeoni L, Lindquist JA, Hemenway R, Bommhardt U, Arndt B, et al. A logical model provides insights into T cell receptor signaling. PLoS Comput Biol. 2007;3:e163.
82. Carbo A, Hontecillas R, Kronsteiner B, Viladomiu M, Pedragosa M, Lu P, et al. Systems modeling of molecular mechanisms controlling cytokine-driven CD4+ T cell differentiation and phenotype plasticity. PLoS Comput Biol. 2013;9:e1003027. Gabhann F Mac, editor. Public Library of Science (PLoS).
83. Pigliucci M. Genotype-phenotype mapping and the end of the "genes as blueprint" metaphor. Philos Trans R Soc B Biol Sci. 2010;365:557–66.
84. Nikolov S, Santos G, Wolkenhauer O, Vera J. Model-based phenotypic signatures governing the dynamics of the stem and semi-differentiated cell populations in dysplastic colonic crypts. Bull Math Biol. 2017;80(2):1–25.
85. Santos G, Nikolov S, Lai X, Eberhardt M, Dreyer FS, Paul S, et al. Model-based genotype-phenotype mapping used to investigate gene signatures of immune sensitivity and resistance in melanoma micrometastasis. Sci Rep. 2016;6:24967.
86. Ramis-Conde I, Drasdo D, Anderson ARA, Chaplain MAJ. Modeling the influence of the E-cadherin-B-catenin pathway in cancer cell invasion: a multiscale approach. Biophys J. 2008;95:155–65. Elsevier (BV).
87. Pak Y, Zhang Y, Pastan I, Lee B. Antigen shedding may improve efficiencies for delivery of antibody-based anticancer agents in solid tumors. Cancer Res. 2012;72:3143–52. American Association for Cancer Research (AACR).
88. Wolkenhauer O, Auffray C, Baltrusch S, Bluthgen N, Byrne H, Cascante M, et al. Systems biologists seek fuller integration of systems biology approaches in new cancer research programs. Cancer Res. 2009;70:12–3. American Association for Cancer Research (AACR).
89. Wolkenhauer O, Auffray C, Jaster R, Steinhoff G, Dammann O. The road from systems biology to systems medicine. Pediatr Res. 2013;73:502–7. Springer Nature.
90. Engel C, Scholz M, Loeffler M. A computational model of human granulopoiesis to simulate the hematotoxic effects of multicycle polychemotherapy. Blood. 2004;104:2323–31. American Society of Hematology.
91. Ribba B, Colin T, Schnell S. A multiscale mathematical model of cancer, and its use in analyzing irradiation therapies. Theor Biol Med Model. 2006;3:7. Springer Nature.
92. Foo J, Chmielecki J, Pao W, Michor F. Effects of pharmacokinetic processes and varied dosing schedules on the dynamics of acquired resistance to Erlotinib in EGFR-mutant lung cancer. J Thorac Oncol. 2012;7:1583–93. Elsevier (BV).
93. Ballesta A, Dulong S, Abbara C, Cohen B, Okyar A, Clairambault J, et al. A combined experimental and mathematical approach for molecular-based optimization of irinotecan circadian delivery. PLoS Comput Biol. 2011;7:e1002143. Lengauer T, editor. Public Library of Science (PLoS).
94. Lévi F. Circadian chronotherapy for human cancers. Lancet Oncol. 2001;2:307–15. Elsevier (BV).
95. Kronik N, Kogan Y, Elishmereni M, Halevi-Tobias K, Vuk-Pavlović S, Agur Z. Predicting outcomes of prostate cancer immunotherapy by personalized mathematical models. PLoS One. 2010;5(12):e15482.
96. Kronik N, Kogan Y, Schlegel PG, Wölfl M. Improving T-cell immunotherapy for melanoma through a mathematically motivated strategy: efficacy in numbers? J Immunother. 2012;35:116–24.
97. Vera J, Curto R, Cascante M, Torres NV. Detection of potential enzyme targets by metabolic modelling and optimization: application to a simple enzymopathy. Bioinformatics. 2007;23:2281–9. Oxford University Press (OUP).
98. Rateitschak K, Winter F, Lange F, Jaster R, Wolkenhauer O. Parameter identifiability and sensitivity analysis predict targets for enhancement of STAT1 activity in pancreatic cancer and stellate cells. PLoS Comput Biol. 2012;8:e1002815. Markel S, editor. Public Library of Science (PLoS).
99. Kirouac DC, Du JY, Lahdenranta J, Overland R, Yarar D, Paragas V, et al. Computational modeling of ERBB2-amplified breast cancer identifies combined ErbB2/3 blockade as superior to the combination of MEK and AKT inhibitors. Sci Signal. 2013;6:ra68. American Association for the Advancement of Science (AAAS)
100. Kim PS, Lee PP. Modeling protective anti-tumor immunity via preventative cancer vaccines using a hybrid agent-based and delay differential equation approach. PLoS Comput Biol. 2012;8:e1002742. Beerenwinkel N, editor. Public Library of Science (PLoS).
101. Pennisi M, Pappalardo F, Palladini A, Nicoletti G, Nanni P, Lollini PL, et al. Modeling the competition between lung metastases and the immune system using agents. BMC Bioinformatics. 2010;11:S13.
102. De Pillis LG, Radunskaya AE, Wiseman CL. A validated mathematical model of cell-mediated immune response to tumor growth. Cancer Res. 2005;65:7950–8.
103. DePillis L, Gallegos A, Radunskaya A. A model of dendritic cell therapy for melanoma. Front Oncol. 2013;3:56.
104. De Pillis LG, Gu W, Radunskaya AE. Mixed immunotherapy and chemotherapy of tumors: modeling, applications and biological interpretations. J Theor Biol. 2006;238:841–62.
105. Maley CC, Reid BJ, Forrest S. Cancer prevention strategies that address the evolutionary dynamics of neoplastic cells: simulating benign cell boosters and selection for chemosensitivity. Cancer Epidemiol Biomark Prev. 2004;13:1375–84.
106. Gatenby RA, Silva AS, Gillies RJ, Frieden BR. Adaptive therapy. Cancer Res. 2009;69:4894–903. American Association for Cancer Research (AACR).

107. Silva AS, Kam Y, Khin ZP, Minton SE, Gillies RJ, Gatenby RA. Evolutionary approaches to prolong progression-free survival in breast Cancer. Cancer Res. 2012;72:6362–70. American Association for Cancer Research (AACR)
108. Serre R, Benzekry S, Padovani L, Meille C, Andre N, Ciccolini J, et al. Mathematical modeling of cancer immunotherapy and its synergy with radiotherapy. Cancer Res. 2016;76(17):4931–40.
109. Hatzikirou H, Alfonso JCL, Leschner S, Weiss S, Meyer-Hermann M. Therapeutic potential of bacteria against solid tumors. Cancer Res. 2017;77:1553–63.
110. Dubitzky W, Wolkenhauer O, Cho K-H, Yokota H, editors. Encyclopedia of systems biology. New York: Springer; 2013.

Principles of Immunological Diagnostic Tests for Cancers

28

Amber C. Donahue and Yen-lin Peng

Contents

28.1 Introduction

Through the use of deliberate mutation of immunoglobulin genes, the immune system has evolved the ability to produce antibodies (Abs) able to bind targets with exquisite specificity (i.e., recognition of ONLY the target) and impressive affinity (i.e., strong binding to the target). These abilities explain why Abs remain an invaluable tool for the detection and measurement of biological phenomena and already represent some of the treatment modalities of the present and near future. While most of the work with Abs is currently ex vivo, their use in vivo has already shown significant progress and benefits. Antibodies are currently used for biosensing of

A. C. Donahue (✉) · Y.-l. Peng
Department of Hematology and Oncology Research and Development, Quest Diagnostics-Nichols Institute, San Juan Capistrano, CA, USA
e-mail: amber.c.donahue@questdiagnostics.com

N. Rezaei (ed.), *Cancer Immunology*, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-30845-2_28

specific targets in the body, in order to deliver radioactive isotopes or cytotoxic drugs (reviewed in Ricart and Tolcher [1]). Antibodies have also been used for visualizing specific biological processes such as tumor shrinking and tumor growth [2–5] or to aid in the imaging of tumors. These types of applications for antibodies will likely become more common as immunoglobulin engineering becomes more sophisticated, increasing the potential of using Abs in vivo for the targeting of specific lesions or tumors or even for the neutralization of specific biological processes. In the meantime, Abs are widely used in multiple formats and platforms to aid in the detection of a wide range of cancers. This chapter will introduce the structure of the immunoglobulin protein, including the most commonly used altered and engineered variants created by researchers, and provide detail on how these various Abs can be labeled to allow their detection. A number of different applications then become possible. The principles of these applications and the ways in which they can be combined to create diagnostic tests will be outlined, including how diagnostic assays are increasingly being designed to include the detection of large numbers of targets simultaneously, a technique known as multiplexing.

28.2 Overview of Antibodies

Antibodies, or soluble forms of immunoglobulin (Ig), possess a vast array of possible specificities and a structure that is one of the more stable among mammalian proteins. Researchers have capitalized on the large pool of specificities provided by naïve B lymphocytes as well as on the refinement of specificities for the recognized motif, or epitope, provided by the process of somatic hypermutation during clonal expansion of activated B-cells. However, the ex vivo generation of Abs is becoming the standard for the purposes of research, diagnostics, and therapy. This allows for an increased amount of versatility through a large number of sources and formats. Clinicians and researchers have the choice of intact Ab molecules or fragments, as well as polyclonal or monoclonal antibodies (mAbs) from a number of different species. Each of these various Ab molecules can also be chemically linked to a multitude of reporter molecules, allowing the use of Abs in a wide range of assay platforms. The most common of these platform variants is described below.

28.2.1 Monoclonal Vs. Polyclonal Antibodies

A polyclonal Ab preparation consists of a mixture of immunoglobulin molecules with multiple specificities, all of which are directed against the target. Most polyclonal Ab mixtures are created by the injection of a purified full-length recombinant protein into an animal, which can lead to the generation of Abs that recognize many portions of the protein. In other instances, a short peptide comprising a more specific region of interest is used, creating a number of different Abs that recognize a very specific region or "epitope." In most cases, the rabbit is used to generate polyclonal Ab mixtures. Many other species can also be used to create these Abs, contributing to the multiplexing flexibility of Abs. The injected peptide or protein, known as an immunogen, is selected to include a very specific, and preferably unique, region of interest in a target molecule. When the injected animal's immune system recognizes the peptide or recombinant protein as foreign, the resulting immune response will generate multiple immunogen-specific Abs, which can then be isolated from the animal to yield a polyclonal antiserum. In some cases, this antiserum is purified further using affinity chromatography [6].

Because of a higher degree of confidence in their affinity and specificity, mAbs are often chosen over polyclonal preparations when possible. Kohler and Milstein developed the first mAbs in the mid-1970s by expanding on the techniques used to generate polyclonal Ab preparations. As with polyclonal Ab stimulation, an immune response is elicited to an injected immunogen. In this case, however, multiple antibody-producing daughter B-cells are isolated from the spleen of the injected animal after several days. Myeloma

cells are then fused with the harvested antibody-producing B lymphocytes to generate hybridomas. These hybridomas can produce large amounts of the Abs expressed by the original activated daughter B-cells and are capable of proliferating in culture indefinitely. Single hybridomas are separated and expanded in culture to create monoclonal populations. The Abs produced by the monoclonal populations are then screened for affinity and specificity [7, 8].

Several technologies for more cost-effective, rapid, and simpler generation of mAbs have since been developed. Chimeric or "humanized" Abs have been made possible by recombinant techniques, combining human Ab DNA with the sequence encoding the binding site of a mouse mAb [9]. Recent years have also seen the emergence of bacterial expression of antibodies, which allows for the selection of advantageous Ab specificities via phage display. The displayed Ab fragments are generated from the plasma cells of human donors or from the spleen of an immunized animal. Increasingly, however, these phage libraries and other screening tools are generated by genetic engineering (discussed in greater detail in Donzeau and Knappik [9]). The highly specific high-affinity mAbs required for therapies, diagnosis, and basic research are created using these methods.

28.2.2 Antibody Fragments

Depending on the requirements of the assay platform, Abs can be used in a number of different formats, including the intact immunoglobulin molecule as well as multiple types of smaller fragments (Fig. 28.1). The Fab fragment includes the entire light chain, as well as the variable and first constant region of the heavy chain, and can form stable H/L heterodimers without being covalently linked. In some cases, Fab fragments can remain joined through a C-terminal disulfide bond (Fig. 28.1c) [9]. Fab fragments can be created by papain digestion of intact immunoglobulin molecules, or more recently, through genetic manipulation. The F(ab')$_2$ fragment is similar, in that it also retains the disulfide bond which covalently links the two chains of the Fab fragment (Fig. 28.1b). In the case of the F(ab')$_2$ fragment, however, a portion of the flexible hinge region remains intact following its creation by digestion of intact Abs with pepsin. Additional small fragments and multivalent engineered Abs can also be created through genetic engineering and may enjoy increasing use in diagnostic assays and possibly cancer therapy in the coming years.

28.2.3 Reporter Labeling

There are a number of reporter molecules available for use in visualizing and even quantifying the binding of an Ab to its target [10]. One such class of reporters is the group of laser-activated fluorescent molecules called fluorophores or fluorochromes, commonly used in flow cytometry (see Sect. 28.8). Other reporters can be enzymatic and therefore depend on chemical reactions to be detected. For these reporters, the Abs are chemically linked, or conjugated, to an enzyme such as alkaline phosphatase (ALP) or horseradish peroxidase (HRP). An intense color is generated by the product created when these enzymes are incubated with chromogenic substrates, allowing measurement with a spectrophotometer. It is also possible to incubate these enzyme-linked Abs with a chemiluminescent substrate, the product of which gives off light, which can then be quantified by a number of different instruments and even captured on film.

A common third approach, often used to allow greater flexibility for the multiplexing of targets, includes biotin-conjugated Abs [11]. Biotin recognizes streptavidin with a high level of specificity and affinity, forming one of the strongest known noncovalent bonds. Streptavidin can be linked either to fluorophores or to enzymes like HRP and ALP, providing the flexibility to use a particular biotinylated Ab across multiple assay platforms. Similarly, within a single platform, the same biotinylated Ab can be used in multiple wells or tubes and, if necessary, be identified by different colors by using varied streptavidin-conjugated reporters, as with the multiple fluorophores used in flow cytometry [12].

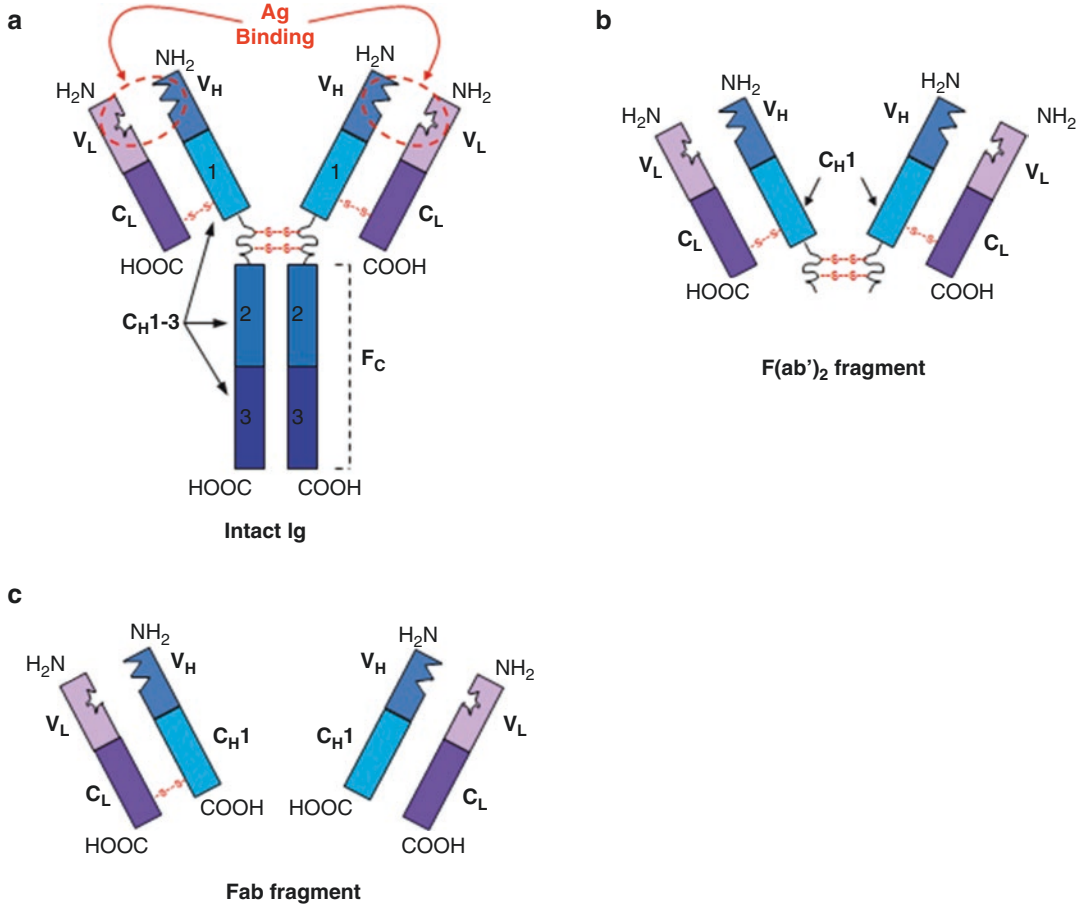


Fig. 28.1 Intact immunoglobulin and common antibody fragments. (**a**) Schematic representation of an intact immunoglobulin molecule. Each heavy chain (*blue*) consists of three constant domains (C_H1–3) and the variable domain (V_H). C_H1 and C_H2 are linked by the flexible hinge region, which forms two disulfide bonds with the hinge region of the complementary heavy chain. Each light chain (*purple*) consists of one constant domain (C_L) and one variable domain ($V\ L$) and is associated with the heavy chain through a disulfide bond proximal to the carboxy-termini of the two chains (COOH). The antigen-binding regions of the molecule (Ag Binding) are found at the amino-termini of the V_H/V_L pairs (NH_2) and are circled in red. The Fc portion of the molecule, consisting of C_H2–3, is indicated. Domain labels are constant throughout the figure. (**b**) The $F(ab')_2$ antibody fragment. Enzymatic digestion of intact immunoglobulin with pepsin results in the cleavage of the molecule at the hinge region, maintaining the disulfide bonds and yielding the $F(ab')_2$ fragment. (**c**) Papain cleaves the hinge region of intact immunoglobulin just above the disulfide bonds, generating two Fab fragments. Fab fragments can also be created through genetic manipulation. The heavy and light chains can associate noncovalently (*right*) or may maintain a disulfide bond near the carboxy-termini (*left*)

28.2.4 Primary and Secondary Antibodies

Some diagnostic assay formats require the use of Ab pairs for detection (see Fig. 28.6b for a schematic representation). The first, or primary, Ab is specific for the target. A secondary reporter-conjugated Ab can be used in cases where the primary Ab does not include a reporter. Antispecies Abs, which are directed against immunoglobulin molecules produced by a different species, are commonly used as secondary Abs. For example, mouse immunoglobulin is injected into a goat to produce an immune response, resulting in a polyclonal goat anti-mouse Ab preparation that can be labeled with a

reporter molecule. The goat anti-mouse Ab preparation is used to detect the presence of the primary mouse mAb wherever it may be bound to the target. However, in order to avoid possible cross-reactivity and to minimize the complexity of the assay, simpler assays in which the primary Ab is directly conjugated to a reporter are preferred when the assay system permits.

28.3 Immunoprecipitation

For many years, specific Abs have been used as a means to bind and concentrate targets in solution [13]. This process, known as immunoprecipitation (IP), involves the mixing and incubation of the specific Ab with a solution containing the molecule of interest (Fig. 28.2). After sufficient time to allow the Ab to bind the target, the Ab itself can be captured through binding to beads coated with bacterial protein A, protein G, or a mixture of both. The solution can then be centrifuged to pellet the beads at the bottom of the tube, allowing the supernatant to be transferred or discarded. Through this process, the target has been isolated and greatly concentrated and is now more readily detected.

When searching for comparatively rare proteins, which are present at much lower concentrations, a larger number of cells or volume of bodily fluids like plasma are required. This larger amount of material often presents problems for the detection system, which can be solved through the capture and concentration of the target by IP. In other cases, IP is used to diminish the amount of background detected by the assay system. The background can be minimized either by pulling the target out of the sample mixture for detection or by specifically depleting the mixture of an unwanted protein(s) that has been found to conflict with the detection of the target. IP is often used as a first step before detection by immunoblotting.

28.4 Immunoblotting

Also known as Western blotting, immunoblotting (IB) makes use of specific Abs for the detection of proteins of interest [14]. Sodium dodecyl sulfate (SDS) and heat are used to denature the proteins in a sample, which can range from a bodily fluid such as plasma, to a solution of cellular proteins released from cells by treatment with a lysis

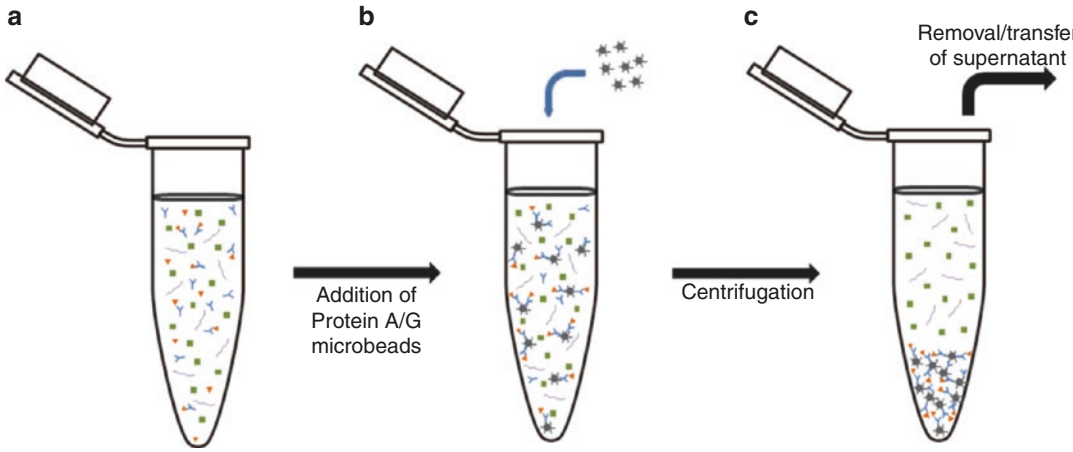


Fig. 28.2 Immunoprecipitation. (**a**) Cell lysate or other biological sample is incubated with specific antibody (*Ab*), which binds to the target in solution. (**b**) Microbeads coated with bacterial protein A, protein G, or a combination of both are added to the solution. The Abs, whether bound to target protein or free, will be bound by the bacterial proteins coating the bead. (**c**) Following centrifugation, the beads and their cargo of Ab and target protein will form a pellet at the bottom of the tube. The supernatant, now depleted of the target protein, can be transferred to another tube or discarded. These schematic representations of Abs and their targets will be used for all subsequent figures

buffer. These proteins are separated according to mass via polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis (SDS-PAGE) and transferred to a membrane for detection (Fig. 28.3). The specific primary Ab is washed over the surface of the membrane for a prolonged incubation period, allowing it to bind the target protein, followed by incubation with a secondary enzyme-conjugated anti-species Ab. After the addition of a chemiluminescent substrate, a band of light will be generated at the position where the primary and secondary Abs are bound to the membrane. The amount of protein present dictates the amount of primary and secondary Ab bound to the membrane, which in turn dictates the intensity of the light generated. This light signal is traditionally detected by exposure to autoradiography film, but advances in low-light camera-based systems have led to increasing use of these documentation methods. On a traditional immunoblot exposed to film, lower intensity signals correspond to fainter, thinner bands, while larger amounts of signal create fatter, darker bands (Fig. 28.3).

Due to the fact that it provides an opportunity to physically view the interactions of an Ab with the proteins present in a sample matrix, immunoblotting is still widely used in a research setting despite being an older technique. This characteristic can help researchers determine the specificity of an Ab during the development of a cancer test, even if another technique will ultimately be used for detection. However, despite the fact that the method is comparatively time consuming and labor intensive, there are still

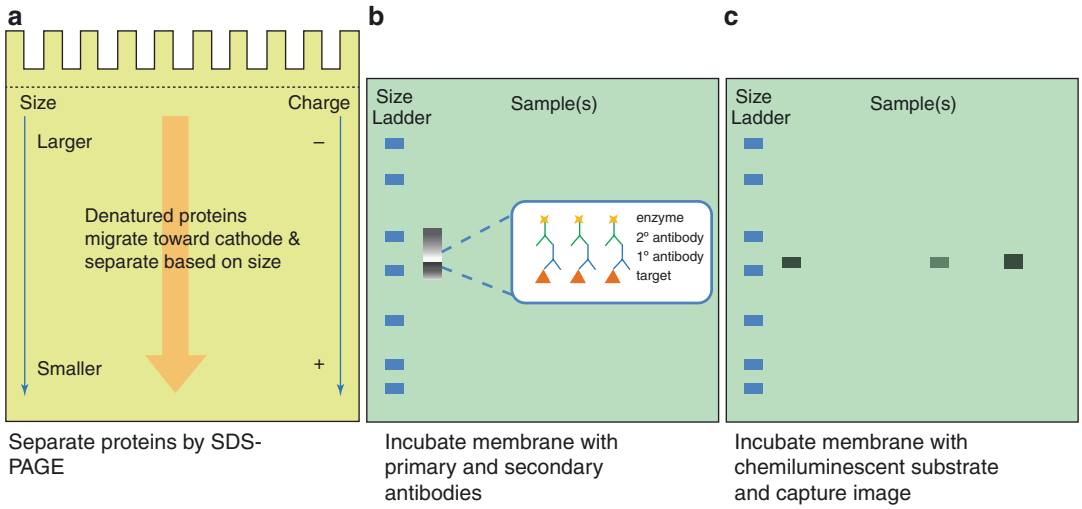


Fig. 28.3 Immunoblotting. (**a**) Samples are denatured in lysis buffer, loaded onto a polyacrylamide gel, and separated by electrophoresis (*PAGE*). The presence of sodium dodecyl sulfate (*SDS*) in the buffer masks the native charges of the proteins and lends an overall negative charge, allowing the proteins to migrate toward the cathode according to size, with smaller proteins traveling farther through the matrix than large proteins (SDS-PAGE). Proteins can also be analyzed by their native conformations under nondenaturing conditions in the absence of SDS (not shown). (**b**) Separated proteins are transferred to a nitrocellulose or polyvinylidene fluoride (*PVDF*) membrane via the application of electrical current. The membrane is then probed with primary Ab specific for the target protein or residue, followed by an enzyme-conjugated secondary anti-species Ab (more detail on secondary antibodies and reporters is given in Fig. 28.5). A molecular weight standard containing multiple proteins of known molecular weights is usually included in each experiment (size ladder), to provide an estimation of the distribution of the sample proteins. The proteins in these ladders are often dyed, sometimes with multiple colors, to allow visualization on the membrane. (**c**) The target is visualized by incubating the membrane with the chemiluminescent substrate of the reporter enzyme, which emits light. The signal is captured by exposure to autoradiography film or by a camera-based gel-documentation system. The quantity of target can then be extrapolated from signal intensity and/or band size, with larger bands corresponding to more bound target, although this measure is not truly quantitative, but relative to the other samples in that experiment only

some cancer-related diagnostic tests which make use of Western blotting. Examples include confirmatory tests for Ri, Hu, or Yo, which are found in paraneoplastic syndromes associated with a number of cancers. The proteins of interest in these Western-based tests are actually Abs themselves. The Ri immunoblot detects the anti-Ri Ab present in patients with paraneoplastic myoclonus/opsoclonus syndrome, which is most often associated with gynecological cancers, breast cancer, and small cell lung cancer. The Yo, or Purkinje cell, Ab is also found in patients with breast, ovarian, and other gynecological cancers, in this case suffering from paraneoplastic cerebellar degeneration. Hu antineuronal nuclear Abs are detected by Western blot in a small percentage of patients with small cell lung cancer and are associated with paraneoplastic sensory neuropathy and encephalomyelitis. The highly specific Abs used in these Western blots provide confirmation of the identity of the Hu, Yo, and Ri Abs initially detected by first-line screening tests.

28.5 Radioimmunoassays

One of the first highly sensitive methods for measuring the levels of proteins such as hormones in the blood was the radioimmunoassay (RIA) [15]. In a classic RIA, a known quantity of purified target protein is radiolabeled, most often with a gamma radioisotope of iodine. This "hot" protein is mixed with a specific Ab that has been immobilized on a surface, and then, the biological sample containing unlabeled or "cold" protein is added to the mixture (Fig. 28.4). In a standard competition assay, the cold protein will then compete with the radiolabeled protein for binding to the Ab, leading to the displacement of a fraction of the radiolabeled protein. The amount of target protein present in the sample can then be extrapolated by measuring the amount of displaced radioactivity.

RIA technology allowed some of the first specific and sensitive tracking of important hormones like insulin in human blood [16] and is still used in some cancer-related diagnostics today, including thyroid hormone testing. Some thyroid hormone tests, including reverse T3, free T4, and especially thyroid-stimulating hormone (TSH), are still offered via RIA. These thyroid hormone tests are included as diagnostic tests in the preliminary characterization of thyroid nodules as malignant or benign and in the diagnosis of TSH-secreting pituitary adenomas. In the interest of laboratory safety, however, technology has moved away from techniques requiring the handling of radioactivity, and the RIA method has largely been replaced by enzymatic immunoassays.

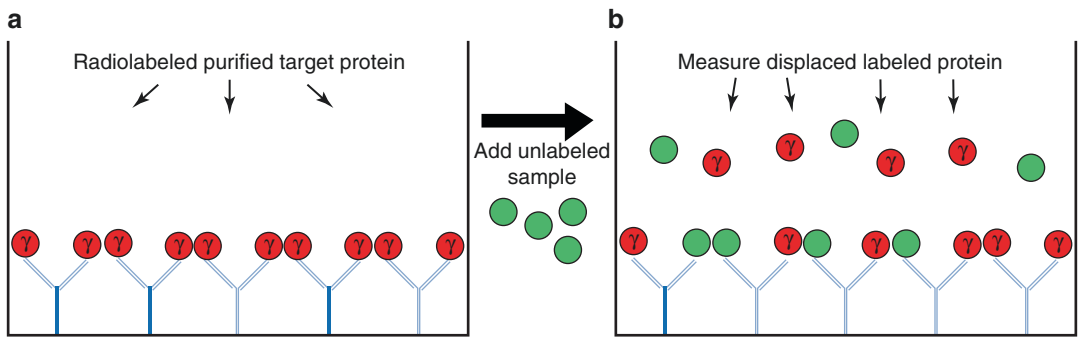


Fig. 28.4 Radioimmunoassay. (**a**) Purified target protein is radiolabeled, often with the gamma isotope of iodine (γ) and incubated with immobilized specific antibody (*Ab*). Sample containing unlabeled target protein is then added to the well. (**b**) The unlabeled target protein competes with the purified radiolabeled protein for binding to the Abs, displacing some of the radiolabeled protein when present at high enough concentrations. The unbound protein is removed from the well, and the radioactivity of the displaced radiolabeled protein is measured to give an indirect measure of the amount of unlabeled target protein present in the sample

28.6 Enzymatic Immunoassays

Enzymatic immunoassays (EIAs) are the archetypal antibody-based detection format and a foundation of basic cellular biology research. The best known EIA format is the enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA) [17], which has been used for the detection of targets in both cell lysates and nearly every bodily fluid, ranging from whole blood to sputum to cerebrospinal fluid. Most commonly, ELISA assays are performed in microtiter plates containing 96 or more wells, providing the opportunity to test a large number of samples in a single run. Further, as the treatment of each well is often identical, the format of the ELISA assay lends itself to a high degree of automation using liquid handling robots and plate washers. Since the ELISA often contains multiple lengthy incubation steps, the ease with which it can be automated provides valuable time and labor savings in a high-throughput cancer diagnostics laboratory.

ELISA formats can range from simple to complex, incorporating from one to four Abs (Fig. 28.5) [17]. At the most basic end of the spectrum is the "direct" ELISA, which uses a single reporter-labeled primary Ab to detect the target that has been adsorbed to the surface of the well or plate (Fig. 28.5a). More commonly used, however, is the "sandwich" ELISA, which can use from two to four Abs as shown in Fig. 28.5b. In many cases, the sandwich format is preferred due to the greater level of specificity conferred by requiring two different specific antibodies to bind the target before detection is achieved. The first Ab which binds the target is referred to as the "capture" Ab and is bound to the plate/well either through direct adsorption or through interaction with a corresponding anti-species Ab that is bound to the plate instead. The capture Ab will bind the target during incubation with the lysate or bodily fluid, after which the irrelevant proteins are washed away, leaving the enriched and purified target. The second, or "detection," Ab is now incubated in the well and allowed to bind to the target wherever it has been captured in the well. The detection Ab can be directly labeled with a reporter or can be detected itself by a secondary reporter-conjugated anti-species Ab. The important consideration to remember when designing a sandwich ELISA is that if a secondary anti-species Ab will be used for detection, the capture and detection Abs must have been generated in different species, to prevent the binding of the secondary detection Ab to both.

The flexibility made possible by the sandwich ELISA allows the detection of specialized protein motifs. Examples include the differentiation between isoforms created by alternative splicing [18] or detection of posttranslational modifications such as phosphorylation, acetylation, glycosylation, methylation, ubiquitination, and even protein cleavage [18–23]. The turnover rate of

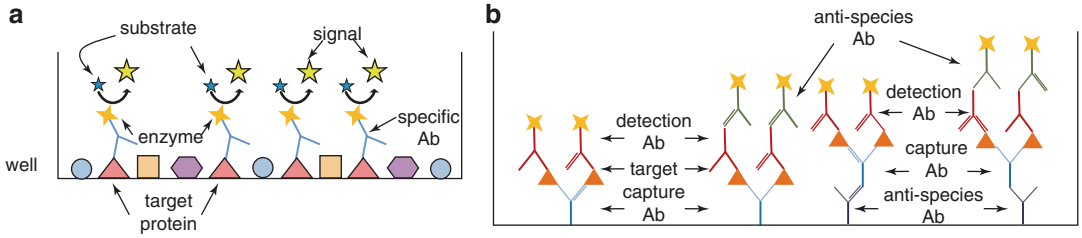


Fig. 28.5 ELISA. (**a**) The simplest ELISA consists of proteins adsorbed to the surface of a well and incubated with specific enzyme-conjugated Abs. After binding of the Abs to the target protein, the well is washed, and the colorimetric or chemiluminescent substrate is added. The reporter enzyme acts on the substrate, generating signal in the form of color or light, respectively. (**b**) The sandwich ELISA and its possible variations. The specific capture Ab can be directly coated onto the surface of the well or be bound itself by an anti-species Ab. After capture of the target protein, the target is bound by the detection Ab, which can be conjugated to a reporter itself or bound by a reporter-conjugated secondary anti-species Ab. Each of these permutations is represented

important proteins, the activation status of specific pathways, and other important cellular activities can be inferred from the posttranslational modifications of important cell signaling proteins. For detection of these modifications, the target protein can be bound by the capture Ab, the unbound background protein is washed away, and then a detection antibody specific for the modification of interest can be used to determine whether the protein contains that posttranslational change. The opposite approach can also be taken, in which a detection Ab specific for the target protein can be used to probe the proteins pulled out of solution by a capture Ab specific for phosphotyrosine, for example. In some cases, the posttranslational modification at a specific amino acid residue is even included in the immunogen, in order to generate an Ab specific ONLY for the version of the protein containing a phosphorylated residue at a given position rather than the nonphosphorylated version.

It is also theoretically possible, though generally technically difficult, to use a sandwich ELISA to detect the protein product of a gene fusion, such often happens in cancer. One such example is the BCR-ABL fusion protein, which is the result of the so-called Philadelphia chromosome, or the reciprocal translocation t(9;22);(q34;q11), that occurs most often in chronic myeloid leukemia (CML). In this example, a capture Ab specific for the BCR protein would immobilize both wild-type (WT) and fused BCR, while only the fusion protein would be bound by the anti-Abl detection Ab.

The ability to detect multiple targets side by side in a single aliquot of sample can provide a great deal of important information, as well as maximize the information derived from the often inadequate and precious samples received in cancer diagnostic laboratories. Newer ELISA technologies have emerged in the last decade that make multiplexing possible through the use of multispot wells. In this assay layout, a number of different capture Abs are bound to the bottom of each well in discrete spots, ranging from 2 to 4 up to 100 (Fig. 28.6a). Flexibility has been further increased by breakthroughs in chemical linkers, which allow assay designers to mix and match the capture Abs in a given well and do it in-house (Fig. 28.6b). These linker-conjugated capture Abs are used with specialized plates, in which the binding partner of each chemical linker has already been spotted in a specific position on the bottom of the well. Each capture Ab

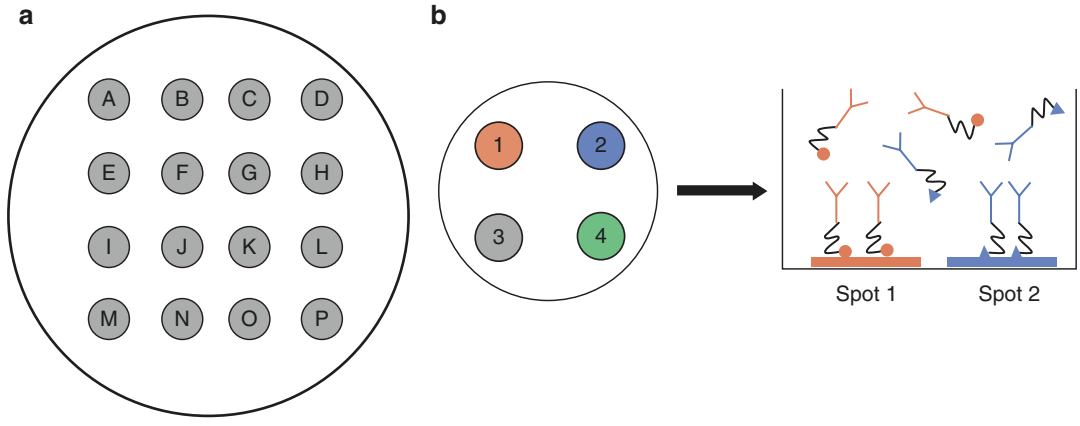


Fig. 28.6 Multispot ELISAs. (**a**) A schematic representation of a 16-spot multispot ELISA well. Each spot, or letter, corresponds to a different capture Ab that is carefully applied to the plate in one discrete area, usually by robot. A single sample can then be incubated in the well and 16 different sandwich ELISAs performed simultaneously on one small volume of analyte. (**b**) Chemical linkers can create multispot assays without robotic spotting of the capture antibodies, allowing mixing and matching of desired analytes. Each capture Ab is conjugated to one of several chemical linkers and incubated simultaneously in the well. Each linker binds only to its corresponding spot, isolating each capture Ab in one specific region of the plate. Multiple sandwich ELISAs can then be performed as in (**a**)

will therefore only bind to one particular spot within the well, and the sample can then be added to the well and interrogated for the presence of many target proteins at once.

These sorts of multiplexed ELISA platforms generally require camera-based detection systems that include sophisticated software capable of discriminating and parsing the signal generated by multiple spots in a single small well. Adding an ever greater level of control over the process, some more advanced ELISA platforms now include computer-controlled initiation of the chemiluminescent reaction. In this system, the reporter is a true electrochemiluminescent (ECL) reagent, requiring an electrical current to undergo the chemical reaction, and the assay is performed in a specialized plate containing a small electrode in each well. The computer controls the application of current, usually breaking the plate down into sections read in sequence. These sorts of adaptations to the ELISA platform represent some of the advances made in the last decade and will likely see increasing uptake in the design of cancer tests.

This versatility in the sandwich ELISA platform, as well as the flexibility provided by the large number of available reporter/detection formats, suggests that similarly ingenious ELISAs will continue to be developed. Most commonly in cancer diagnostics, however, more straightforward sandwich ELISAs are used for the purposes of quantitative detection and monitoring of relevant proteins. An example is the HER2 ELISA, which measures the level of HER2/neu present in the serum of breast cancer patients. With the inclusion of a standard curve on the ELISA plate, the amount of HER2/neu protein present in the well can be quantified, and the concentration of the protein circulating in the body can be extrapolated. These data can be used by the clinician to assess the patient's prognosis and to determine the likely response of the patient to a given therapy. Further, if a baseline concentration of the circulating protein is established prior to administering therapy, subsequent longitudinal measurements can be compared to that baseline and used to monitor the efficacy of therapy.

28.7 Immunocytochemical and Immunohistochemical Assays

Immunohistochemistry (IHC) and immunocytochemistry (ICC) are similar techniques used by researchers and pathologists to recognize particular cell types or to determine the location of important proteins within the cell. These proteins can include indicators of apoptosis or proliferation, as well as tumor markers. IHC and ICC assays can provide a wealth of information to the trained observer (Fig. 28.7) [24, 25]. The cells being studied can be found in an intact tissue section as is the case in IHC or taken from suspension or from a smear as in ICC. As with an ELISA, these cells are incubated with the primary Ab specific for the protein of interest and can be detected either through direct conjugation of that primary Ab or by the binding of a secondary reporter-conjugated anti-species Ab. ICC and IHC can use both enzymatic and fluorescent reporters; the use of fluorescent reporters is also sometimes referred to as immunofluorescence, differentiating the technique slightly due to the requirement for a fluorescent or confocal microscope, as opposed to the light microscope that can be used to visualize enzymatic reporters. Additional common antibodies or dyes are often used to identify structures within the cell, such as the nucleus. The prepared samples are viewed using advanced microscopy techniques and often computer-based image analysis systems as well.

In recent years, advances in automation have generated higher throughput solutions for IHC and ICC. One such advance, tissue arrays, allows the placement of multiple patients' samples on a single slide, which leads to a significant increase in the uniformity and speed of slide preparation. Further, increasingly sophisticated software and new automation systems reduce the amount of time that is required to screen slides, thereby greatly increasing throughput. An example is the InScape system, which includes the scanning of the slide to create a high-resolution digital image, and automated determination of results using marker-based algorithms after the region of interest is chosen by a pathologist. The result is then

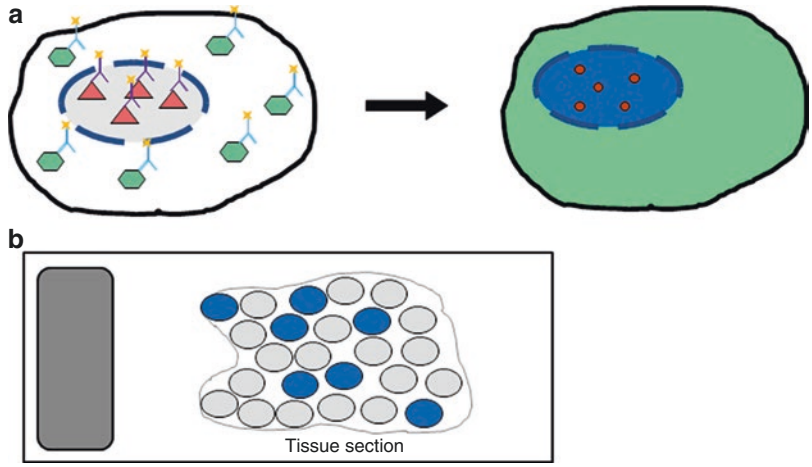


Fig. 28.7 Immunocytochemistry and immunohistochemistry. (**a**) Simplified schematic of ICC, depicting a single cell probed for two specific proteins. One protein is found to be localized to the cytoplasm (*green*), while the other protein is localized to the nucleus (*red*). This nuclear localization is confirmed by a co-stain which identifies the nucleus (*blue*). (**b**) Simplified schematic of IHC, depicting a slide-mounted tissue section. Only a few cells in the tissue section express the protein for which the sample has been stained (*dark blue*). IHC and ICC can make use of both colored stains and fluorescent markers and often require microscopes with multiple excitation and/or emission filters (not shown)

verified by the pathologist, saving a great deal of time in the analysis of IHC stains.

ICC and IHC continue to be valuable tools for pathologists due to the ability of the technique to map the location of the target protein to a specific position within the cell. Some types of proteins, such as transcription factors, are regulated wholly or in part by localization. For example, many transcription factors are found in the cytoplasm when inactive and shuttled to the nucleus following activation. Mutations in some proteins that lead to improper localization within the cell have been demonstrated to contribute to malignancy. ICC/IHC assays for the visualization of the localization of these proteins, as well as assays that detect the presence or absence of posttranslational modifications, different isoforms, and even mutant proteins, are all valuable diagnostic and prognostic tools for pathologists.

One of the best known and most commonly used IHC tests in cancer diagnostics is the staining of breast cancer sections for the presence of the estrogen receptor protein (ER). As a predictive marker, ER is currently the most useful test for establishing patient prognosis. In addition, it continues at this time to be the best predictor of patient response to hormone therapies. ER is often ordered in tandem with IHC staining for the progesterone receptor (PR) as well, which provides similar, if less statistically significant predictive information.

28.8 Flow Cytometry

One of the most powerful techniques to make use of the versatility of Abs is flow cytometry [26]. An ever-increasing number of fluorophores are available as reporters, allowing high orders of multiplexing with newer instruments; in some cases, up to 11 different parameters can be recorded simultaneously. These reporter fluorophores absorb the energy provided by laser light at a specific "excitation" wavelength and then emit energy at a different "emission" wavelength. This emitted light is captured by the cytometer using an elegant and elaborate series of optical filters and photomultipliers (Fig. 28.8). In newer cytometers, multiple lasers are used to increase the available excitation spectrum and thus take advantage of the range of available fluorophores; these cytometers therefore require computer-controlled timing of the lasers

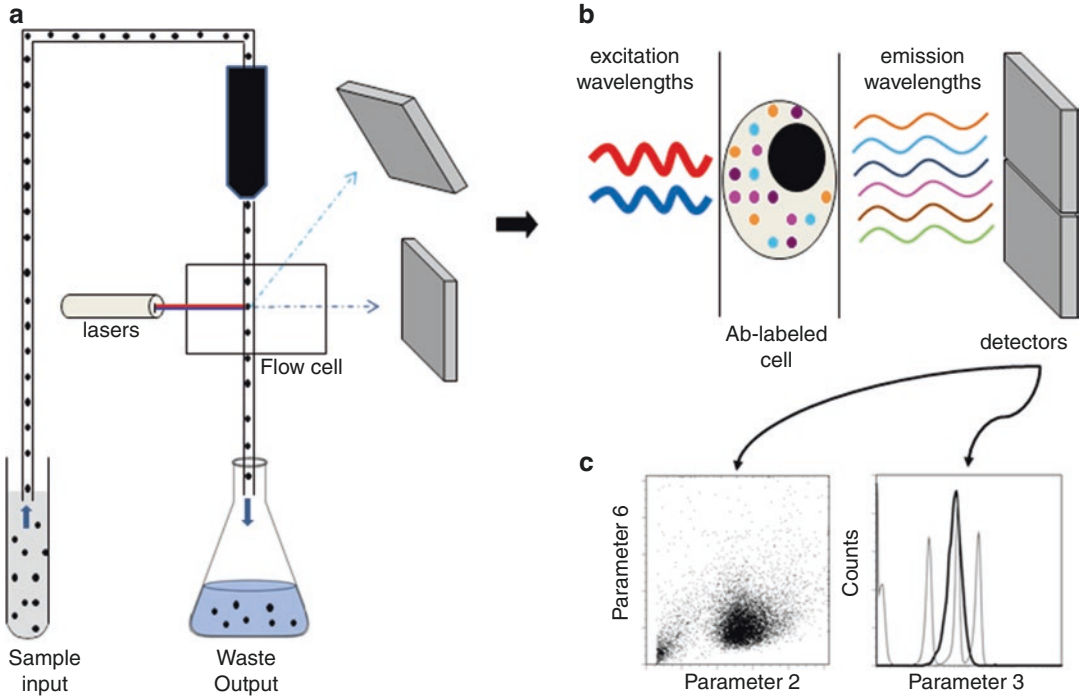


Fig. 28.8 Basic principles of flow cytometry. (**a**) Cells, which have been incubated with fluorophore-conjugated Abs, are drawn from the sample tube into the machine, where they pass the beam(s) of laser light in single file and continue on to a waste receptacle. (**b**) As the cells pass the interrogation point, any bound fluorophores are excited by the laser light. The excited fluorophores then emit light at slightly different wavelengths, which are captured by detectors after passing through a complex system of optics (not shown). (**c**) Software manipulation of the recorded light signals results in data that can be analyzed in many ways and combinations. Each target assayed, or parameter, can be analyzed in tandem with any other in a dot plot (*left*; see Fig. 28.9 for more details) or analyzed singly in the form of histograms and then compared to the histograms of other samples (*right*)

and optical filters. The combination of these numerous reporters with the adaptability provided by streptavidin conjugation of the fluorophores and pairing with biotin-conjugated Abs provides an impressive number of possible analyte combinations that can be studied for a particular cell type or biological fluid.

Initially, and perhaps still predominantly, flow cytometry was used as a platform for the study of intact cells, intended to measure the levels of proteins present on the surface of the cell. The multiplexing ability provided by the range of fluorophores and number of possible parameters allows the analysis of several surface markers simultaneously and has made possible the characterization of the numerous subsets of cell types present in the human body. However, advances in the technology in the last few decades have also allowed the detection and quantitation of both intracellular and soluble proteins using flow cytometry, as well as cellular DNA content, greatly expanding the possibilities afforded by this platform.

The events occurring inside a given cell can provide valuable insights, including whether the cell is activated, in the process of proliferating or in the process of dying under particular conditions. In more traditional cell biology research, these questions would generally be answered using Western blotting or perhaps even ELISAs. Despite being powerful methods which characterize the response of a population of cells to a given condition, both techniques actually offer the average response of the entire population tested. Even the most carefully purified cell preparations generally contain a mixture of different cell types, and this heterogeneous population may very well express the protein of interest at different levels or even exhibit a differential reaction to the conditions

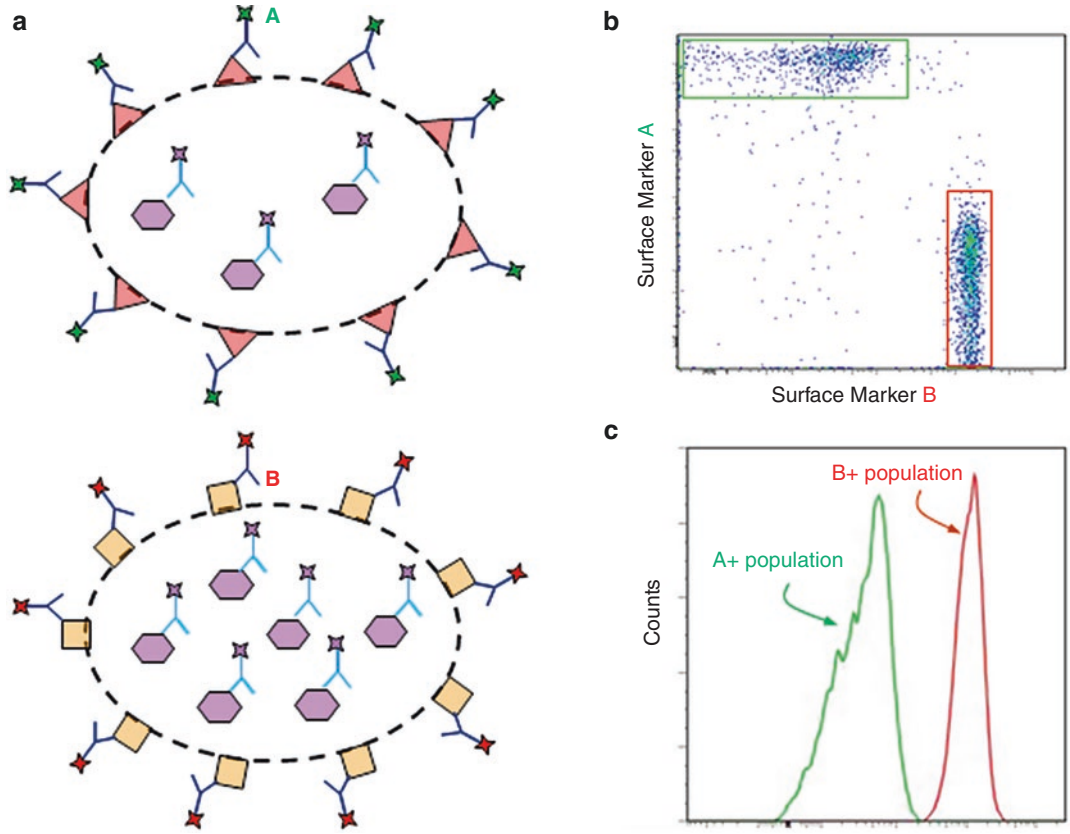


Fig. 28.9 Surface and intracellular cytokine staining of permeabilized cells. (**a**) Mixed cell populations are labeled with Abs specific for surface markers that identify subsets such as different lineages, different activation states, and others. Two different cell subsets are indicated here by binding to two different surface marker Abs, represented here by green ("A," *upper*) and red ("B," *lower*) reporters, which will be seen by the cytometer as different parameters. The cells are then permeabilized to allow passage of Abs across the membrane, represented by the dashed line surrounding the cell. Permeabilized cells are incubated with Abs specific for the intracellular target (*purple* reporter), which will be seen by the cytometer as a third parameter that is the same for all cells. (**b**) After sample acquisition by the flow cytometer, the different cell subsets are differentiated by their expression of the surface markers for which they were stained. Comparison of two parameters is generally done with a dot plot, in which each dot represents a single cell; the dot plot shown here is colored like a heat map to indicate areas of greater and lesser cell density. Surface marker "A" (*green* reporter; y-axis) is present at high levels on the upper cell, while surface marker "B" (*red* reporter; x-axis) is absent, indicating that these cells will fall in the top left corner of the dot plot. Conversely, the lower cell shows high levels of marker "B" and low levels of marker "A," placing them in the lower right corner of the dot plot. These expression patterns create two distinct populations in the dot plot. "Gates" can then be drawn around the populations (*rectangles*), telling the software to consider only those cells falling within the gate in downstream analyses. (**c**) The cells within each gate are analyzed for levels of the intracellular protein (*purple* reporter). Levels are suggested by the intensity of the staining for the third parameter ("Intracellular Marker," x-axis). The diagram in (**a**) depicts the upper cell as having a lower level of the target intracellular protein, and this is reflected by the green histogram falling farther to the left on the scale than the red histogram, indicating a higher intensity of staining in the surface marker B-positive cells than in the marker A-positive cells

being studied. This heterogeneity can make it difficult to interpret results and represents a major roadblock for the study of rare cell types, which are in short supply and often difficult to adequately purify. For these reasons, the ability of flow cytometry to discriminate between lineages by surface marker expression, and combine this with intracellular cytokine staining in preparations of fixed and permeabilized cells, is an important advance in studying intracellular events in mixed populations of cells (Fig. 28.9) [27–32]. These sorts of intracellular cytokine staining protocols have allowed

the study of cell signaling cascades in intact normal cells [33], as well as characterization of aberrant signaling in mutation-bearing cancer cells and in cancer cells exposed to emerging therapies.

Further advances in flow cytometry have even made it possible to mix samples from two different sources, including from two discrete patients or from a single patient pre- and posttreatment, using a "barcoding" method [34]. Each sample is mixed with a different fluorescent dye that emits at a distinct "signature" wavelength, which, when the samples are mixed, allows discrimination of each through sorting based on the detection of the signature. Although a boon for researchers, this technique has yet to become standard practice in clinical oncology diagnostics laboratories. Flow cytometry itself, however, is firmly entrenched, primarily as a valuable tool for hematopathologists, who use flow cytometry to examine the populations of circulating cells in the blood in order to discover subsets of abnormal cells, such as those present in hematological malignancies like leukemias and lymphomas. Flow cytometry panels for differential diagnosis of leukemia/lymphoma can contain upward of 20 cell surface markers, and algorithms characterizing the patterns of these markers on the surface of cell populations in the blood help pathologists identify the particular type of leukemia or lymphoma present.

28.9 Bead-Based Assays

As with the detection of intracellular proteins, the study of soluble proteins present in bodily fluids and in cell culture supernatants was traditionally performed by immunoblots or ELISA. But again, as with intracellular proteins, flow cytometry now represents an additional platform for the detection of soluble proteins through the use of bead-based assays. In a design that combines the best features of IP and sandwich ELISAs, Abs are coated onto microbeads rather than plates, and these beads can then be incubated with the sample fluid putatively containing the protein of interest. Following capture by the beads, the protein can then be bound by a specific detection Ab. As with sandwich ELISAs, the bead-based assay can use up to four Abs, but again, fewer Abs are generally preferred (Fig. 28.10). One successful

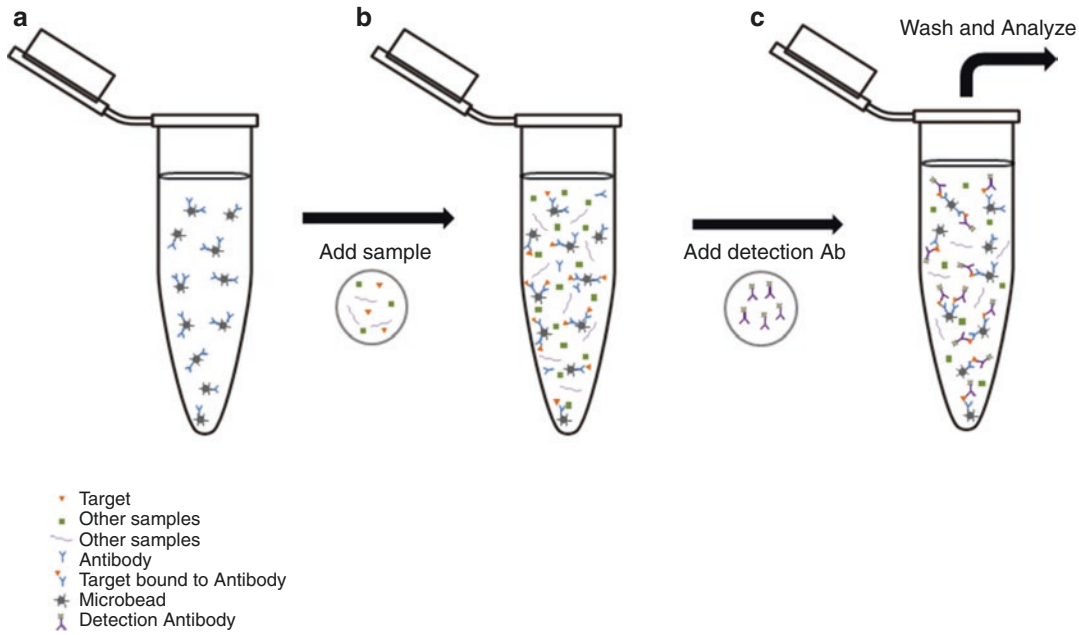


Fig. 28.10 Bead-based flow cytometry assays. (**a**) Capture Abs are coated on microspheres. (**b**) The beads are incubated with proteins in solution (e.g., lysate, cell culture supernatant, or plasma) and bind only the target protein. (**c**) The target protein is bound by fluorophore-conjugated detection antibody, the sample is washed to remove unbound detection antibody, and the beads are analyzed by flow cytometry

application of this technology is the detection of soluble proteins released into the bloodstream by dying leukemia cells [35–37]. Despite the similarities of the technique to the sandwich ELISA, the bead-based assay benefits from greater multiplexing possibilities, including the Luminex and cytometric bead array technologies.

As stated above, the most advanced cytometers can measure upward of 11 or more parameters. This often presents calibration issues due to the slight spectral overlap of the fluorophores available. One approach to avoiding this problem is to use a single fluorophore to measure different analytes, rather than a large number of different "colors." The cytometric bead array (CBA) makes use of beads of different sizes, one size for each of the different capture antibodies to be used. All detection antibodies can then be conjugated to the same reporter fluorophore, because the discrimination between the different proteins detected will be provided by the size of the bead, which is one of the parameters measured as the particle flows past the cytometer's detector. These different bead sizes will result in easily distinguishable populations and thus analytes, as shown in Fig. 28.11a, while the level of protein captured and detected by a given antibody pair will be quantified by the intensity of the reporter's fluorescence (not shown). In this way, the CBA assay allows the measurement of multiple analytes side by side in the same sample.

Beyond just determining the relative amounts of protein captured by the CBA assay, however, researchers have applied a standard curve to the assay, allowing the quantitation of detection Ab molecules bound to a bead. Each experiment includes a tube containing four groups of beads, each with a different known level of bound reporter fluorophore. The data derived from this sample are used to generate a standard curve, plotting the known number of reporter molecules against the mean fluorescence intensity (MFI) measured by the cytometer. Using this curve and the MFI value recorded for a given sample, the number of bound reporter-conjugated detection Abs can be calculated. This technique provides an even more accurate quantitation of the level of the target protein present in the matrix and can even be applied to the more traditional nonbead-based flow cytometry methods of intracellular and surface protein detection.

The Luminex technology makes use of a combination of the advantages of both microbead assays and flow cytometry, creating a method ostensibly able to analyze up to 100 targets in one well (see Luminex Corporation for examples). Luminex makes use of polystyrene microspheres impregnated with carefully controlled levels of both red and infrared dyes. These different titrations create different color signatures for each population of beads, much like the barcoding technique described above (Fig. 28.11b). These different beads can then be coated with discrete capture Abs, mixed together, and incubated with the biological matrix. Following capture of the target proteins, detection Abs are added, all conjugated to the same reporter fluorophore as in the case of the CBA assay. The data are then collected using the basic principles of flow cytometry, in that the dyes inside the beads are excited with a red laser to reveal the "signature" identifying which target should be captured by that particular bead, and a green laser is used to excite the reporter fluorophore to allow the measurement of the levels of protein actually captured [38]. The multiplexing capabilities of this platform provide the potential for Luminex to provide as much information about a sample as some types of antibody microarrays or multispot ELISAs (see below) and is therefore currently more often used in a cancer research or clinical trial setting.

28.10 Antibody Arrays

The antibody microarray makes possible the detection of a very large number of analytes in a complex sample, similar to its predecessor, the DNA microarray [39, 40]. Most antibody microarray formats are essentially ELISAs on a necessarily grand scale, as shown in Fig. 28.12. These arrays are valuable both for basic research and in the search for diagnostic and prognostic markers of cancer. A small volume of biological material can yield a substantial amount of information using this technique, and often of greater importance, relationships, and patterns within the data

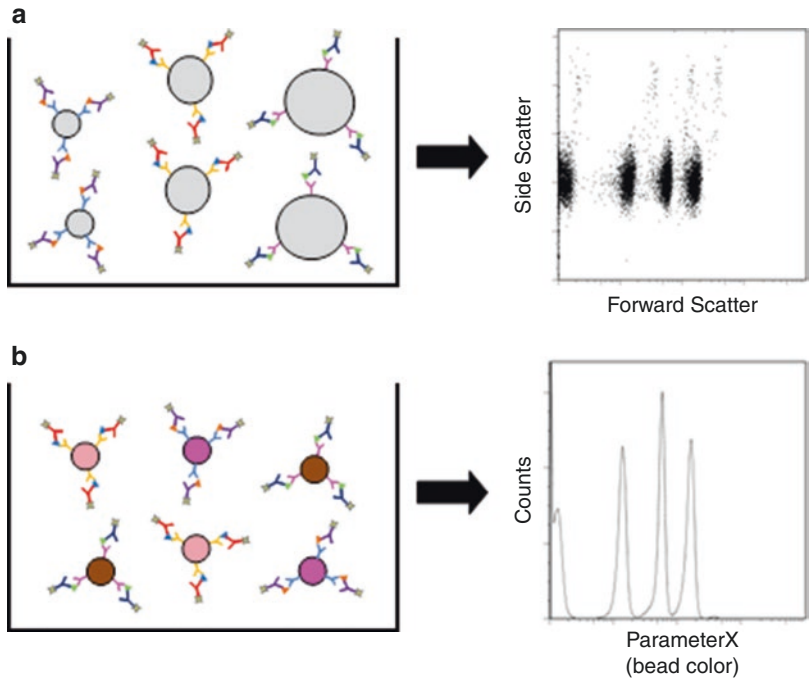


Fig. 28.11 Cytometric bead array and Luminex technologies. (**a**) The CBA platform consists of the Abs specific for each target being conjugated to beads of a different size. The beads are incubated with the sample at the same time, allowing capture of the target proteins. The beads are then incubated with detection Abs for each target, all conjugated to the same fluorophore (*left*). When analyzed, the different bead sizes are recognized by the cytometer via the forward and side scatter parameters and are identifiable as discrete populations that can be analyzed separately via gating (*right*). (**b**) Luminex technology makes use of beads of the same size which have been impregnated with dyes of slightly different wavelengths. Each set of beads is coated with a different capture Ab, incubated with sample to capture target protein, and detected with a fluorophore-conjugated detection Ab (*left*). The cytometer-based analysis instrument detects the slight variations in the color of the bead (Parameter X), creating discrete populations based on bead color which can be gated (*right*). The reporter fluorophore intensities within each population can then be analyzed, yielding information about the concentration of each target analyte

can be recognized and characterized in a single snapshot experiment. Antibody microarrays can be designed in a number of different formats, including the variable of whether it is protein or antibody bound to the array itself.

In its infancy, antibody array technology most closely paralleled that of DNA microarrays by spotting the surface of the array with probes consisting of mAbs. Universally labeled proteins are then incubated with the array, and the captured protein is identified by its binding position on the array (Fig. 28.12a) [39]. The protein-labeling process includes either direct labeling with reporters or indirect detection using biotin or digoxigenin. Through the use of multiple reporters, it is also possible to compare two samples by incubating them together in a classic competition assay (Fig. 28.12a). This antibody array format is generally referred to as a direct array and is the best option for assaying truly large numbers of analytes in a single array, as the only major limitations are space and the availability of specific antibodies for the desired targets. To date, most arrays offered commercially contain analytes numbered in the hundreds. The primary technical hurdles encountered when using direct Ab arrays include limited specificity and sensitivity and filtering out background signal. In addition, there is

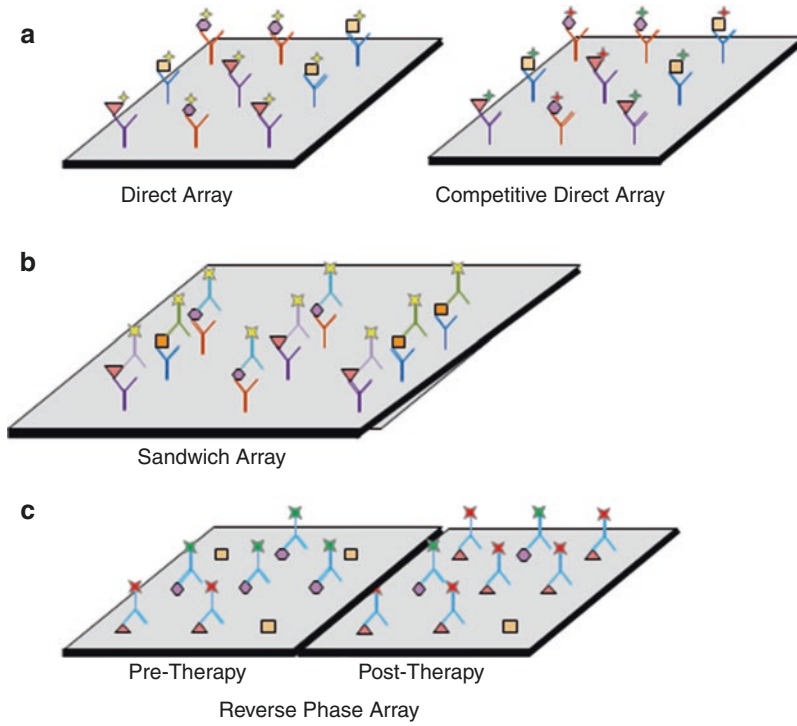


Fig. 28.12 Antibody array formats. (**a**) Direct antibody arrays involve the spotting of specific Abs onto a surface. The array is then incubated with reporter-labeled proteins (*left*). The identity of a target protein that binds to the array is determined by matching the location of the signal to the known layout of the Abs. In a competitive direct array, the proteins in two separate samples are labeled with distinct reporters (*red* and *green*) and incubated with the array simultaneously (*right*). The target proteins will compete for binding to the Abs on the array, and the relative signal intensities will indicate which sample contained greater quantities of each protein assayed. (**b**) The sandwich antibody array is highly similar to the sandwich ELISA depicted in Fig. 28.5b, simply with a large number of capture Ab specificities combined into a single assay and requiring one small volume of analyte. (**c**) The reverse-phase array consists of the proteins in a sample being adsorbed to the array surface, followed by detection with reporter-conjugated Abs as in Fig. 28.6a. Although the number of targets that can be analyzed simultaneously is limited here, the value of the reverse-phase array is that it allows multiple samples to be analyzed side by side. The example represented here is pre- and posttherapy, and the changes in protein expression resulting from the treatment are clear

always the concern that the direct labeling of the proteins may interfere with recognition of the protein by the Ab due to the physical masking or alteration of the epitope.

With these limitations in mind, additional antibody microarray formats were developed to include both capture and detection antibodies (Fig. 28.12b) [41]. Specificity is greatly enhanced when relying on the recognition of the target protein by two different Abs for detection, as one source of background is minimized. In addition, the problem of possible epitope masking is also solved by removing the necessity of labeling the proteins. One limitation of this sandwich approach, in both basic ELISAs and the antibody array, is the occasional lack of good matched antibody pairs. Another concern is the problem of cross-reactivity among the detection antibodies, which generally serves to limit the number of possible targets when using a sandwich microarray in contrast to a direct array. However, as the targets of greatest interest or benefit for a given model or cancer type are determined, highly customized arrays are being developed for diagnostic, prognostic, and research uses. For example, some arrays are designed to study groups of putative or known breast cancer markers, while others are used to screen the effects of drug candidates on their target cells.

There is also, as might be expected, an antibody microarray design in which it is the protein mixture that is immobilized on the surface of the array (Fig. 28.12c) [41]. These protein spots can then be probed with reporter-conjugated-specific Abs. This reverse-phase array allows the immobilization of multiple samples' proteins on a single array, providing side-by-side analysis, and simplifies the analysis of insoluble proteins. This assay format is also plagued by nonspecific interactions, however, and restricted to a smaller number of detection Abs by the limited reporter multiplexing options. In spite of these technological restrictions, the reverse-phase Ab array is also a valuable tool for clinicians and researchers alike.

28.11 Concluding Remarks

Many of the most spectacular breakthroughs in the field of cancer diagnostics in recent years have been on the molecular side of the coin, with the advent of next-generation or advanced sequencing leading the charge. In the shadow of such advances, many of the techniques described in this chapter tend to look outdated and simplistic. Despite this (likely unfair) comparison, many of the diagnostic assays based on the platforms discussed herein continue to be the foundation of cancer patient workups and represent many of the gold standards in diagnosis, prognosis, and treatment decision-making. One chief reason for the importance of these assays is that molecular assays do not tell the whole story. For example, it has been amply demonstrated that the level of mRNA, though often useful as a marker in and of itself, does not always directly correlate to the level of the protein that will be translated. Similarly, molecular assays reveal nothing about the posttranslational modifications that can dictate subcellular localization or activation of a protein, which can be a more telling measure of aberrant function than the sequence of the gene. The ability to study the actual protein of interest itself is an important aspect of learning as much as possible about the malignancy, to better fight and defeat it. To this end, researchers have harnessed the power of the immune system to create clever tools for the study of proteins via the exquisite sensitivity of Abs, and these tools continue to be absolutely invaluable in the diagnostic workup of cancer patients.

References

1. Ricart AD, Tolcher AW. Technology insight: cytotoxic drug immunoconjugates for cancer therapy. Nat Clin Pract Oncol. 2007;4(4):245–55.
2. Sofou S, Sgouros G. Antibody-targeted liposomes in cancer therapy and imaging. Expert Opin Drug Deliv. 2008;5(2):189–204.
3. Tanaka K, Fukase K. PET (positron emission tomography) imaging of biomolecules using metal-DOTA complexes: a new collaborative challenge by chemists, biologists, and physicians for future diagnostics and exploration of in vivo dynamics. Org Biomol Chem. 2008;6(5):815–28.
4. van Dongen GA, Visser GW, Lub-de Hooge MN, de Vries EG, Perk LR. Immuno-PET: a navigator in monoclonal antibody development and applications. Oncologist. 2007;12(12):1379–89.
5. Weber WA, Czernin J, Phelps ME, Herschman HR. Technology insight: novel imaging of molecular targets is an emerging area crucial to the development of targeted drugs. Nat Clin Pract Oncol. 2008;5(1):44–54.
6. Cooper HM, Paterson Y. Production of polyclonal antisera. Curr Protoc Mol Biol. 2008;13(1):2–4. Chapter 11:Unit 11.12.
7. Mechetner E. Development and characterization of mouse hybridomas. In: Albitar M, editor. Monoclonal antibodies: methods and protocols. Totowa: Humana Press; 2007. p. 1–13.
8. Zhang ZJ, Albitar M. Monoclonal antibodies. In: Walker JM, Rapley R, editors. Molecular biomethods handbook. 2nd ed. Totowa: Humana Press; 2008. p. 547–61.
9. Donzeau M, Knappik A. Recombinant monoclonal antibodies. In: Albitar M, editor. Monoclonal antibodies: methods and protocols. Totowa: Humana Press; 2007. p. 15–31.
10. Haugland RP. Antibody conjugates for cell biology. Curr Protoc Cell Biol. 2001;6(1):16–5. Chapter 16:Unit 16.5.
11. Hirsch JD, Haugland RP. Conjugation of antibodies to biotin. Methods Mol Biol. 2005;295:135–54.
12. Haugland RP, Bhalgat MK. Preparation of avidin conjugates. Methods Mol Biol. 2008;418:1–12.
13. Bonifacino JS, Dell'Angelica EC, Springer TA. Immunoprecipitation. Curr Protoc Immunol. 2001;41(1):1–28. Chapter 8:Unit 8.3.
14. Gallagher S, Winston SE, Fuller SA, Hurrell JG. Immunoblotting and immunodetection. Curr Protoc Mol Biol. 2004;83(1):10–8. Chapter 10:Unit 10.8.

15. Zamrazilova L, Kazihnitkova H, Lapcik O, Hill M, Hampl R. A novel radioimmunoassay of 16alpha-hydroxy-dehydroepiandrosterone and its physiological levels. J Steroid Biochem Mol Biol. 2007;104(3–5):130–5.
16. Yalow RS, Berson SA. Immunoassay of endogenous plasma insulin in man. J Clin Invest. 1960;39:1157–75.
17. Hornbeck P. Enzyme-linked immunosorbent assays. Curr Protoc Immunol. 2001;1(1):1–2. Chapter 2:Unit 2.1.
18. Bulanova E, Budagian V, Duitman E, Orinska Z, Krause H, Ruckert R, et al. Soluble Interleukin IL-15Ralpha is generated by alternative splicing or proteolytic cleavage and forms functional complexes with IL-15. J Biol Chem. 2007;282(18):13167–79.
19. Kocinsky HS, Girardi AC, Biemesderfer D, Nguyen T, Mentone S, Orlowski J, et al. Use of phospho-specific antibodies to determine the phosphorylation of endogenous Na+/H+ exchanger NHE3 at PKA consensus sites. Am J Physiol Renal Physiol. 2005;289(2):F249–58.
20. Liang Z, Wong RP, Li LH, Jiang H, Xiao H, Li G. Development of pan-specific antibody against trimethyllysine for protein research. Proteome Sci. 2008;6:2.
21. Spoettl T, Hausmann M, Klebl F, Dirmeier A, Klump B, Hoffmann J, et al. Serum soluble TNF receptor I and II levels correlate with disease activity in IBD patients. Inflamm Bowel Dis. 2007;13(6):727–32.
22. Sumbayev VV, Yasinska IM. Protein S-nitrosation in signal transduction: assays for specific qualitative and quantitative analysis. Methods Enzymol. 2008;440:209–19.
23. Takada K, Nasu H, Hibi N, Tsukada Y, Ohkawa K, Fujimuro M, et al. Immunoassay for the quantification of intracellular multi-ubiquitin chains. Eur J Biochem. 1995;233(1):42–7.
24. Hofman F. Immunohistochemistry. Curr Protoc Immunol. 2002;103(1):21–4. Chapter 21:Unit 21.4.
25. Polak JM, Van Noorden S. Introduction to immunocytochemistry. 3rd ed. Oxford: BIOS Scientific Publishers Ltd; 2002.
26. Sharrow SO. Overview of flow cytometry. Curr Protoc Immunol. 2002;50(1):5–1. Chapter 5: Unit 5 1.
27. Darzynkiewicz Z, Huang X. Analysis of cellular DNA content by flow cytometry. Curr Protoc Immunol. 2004;119(1):5–7. Chapter 5:Unit 5.7.
28. Donahue AC, Fruman DA. Distinct signaling mechanisms activate the target of rapamycin in response to different B-cell stimuli. Eur J Immunol. 2007;37(10):2923–36.
29. Donahue AC, Kharas MG, Fruman DA. Measuring phosphorylated Akt and other phosphoinositide 3-kinase-regulated phosphoproteins in primary lymphocytes. Methods Enzymol. 2007;434:131–54.
30. Foster B, Prussin C, Liu F, Whitmire JK, Whitton JL. Detection of intracellular cytokines by flow cytometry. Curr Protoc Immunol. 2007;78(1):6–24. Chapter 6:Unit 6.
31. June CH, Moore JS. Measurement of intracellular ions by flow cytometry. Curr Protoc Immunol. 2004;14(1):5. Chapter 5:Unit 5.5.
32. Schulz KR, Danna EA, Krutzik PO, Nolan GP. Single-cell phospho-protein analysis by flow cytometry. Curr Protoc Immunol. 2007;78(1):8–17. Chapter 8:Unit 8.17.
33. Irish JM, Czerwinski DK, Nolan GP, Levy R. Kinetics of B cell receptor signaling in human B cell subsets mapped by phosphospecific flow cytometry. J Immunol. 2006;177(3):1581–9.
34. Krutzik PO, Nolan GP. Fluorescent cell barcoding in flow cytometry allows high-throughput drug screening and signaling profiling. Nat Methods. 2006;3(5):361–8.
35. Jilani I, Kantarjian H, Faraji H, Gorre M, Cortes J, Ottmann O, et al. An immunological method for the detection of BCR-ABL fusion protein and monitoring its activation. Leuk Res. 2008;32(6):936–43.
36. Jilani I, Kantarjian H, Gorre M, Cortes J, Ottmann O, Bhalla K, et al. Phosphorylation levels of BCR-ABL, CrkL, AKT and STAT5 in imatinib-resistant chronic myeloid leukemia cells implicate alternative pathway usage as a survival strategy. Leuk Res. 2008;32(4):643–9.
37. Kellar KL, Douglass JP. Multiplexed microsphere-based flow cytometric immunoassays for human cytokines. J Immunol Methods. 2003;279(1–2):277–85.
38. Gu AD, Xie YB, Mo HY, Jia WH, Li MY, Li M, et al. Antibodies against Epstein-Barr virus gp78 antigen: a novel marker for serological diagnosis of nasopharyngeal carcinoma detected by xMAP technology. J Gen Virol. 2008;89(Pt 5):1152–8.
39. Borrebaeck CA, Wingren C. High-throughput proteomics using antibody microarrays: an update. Expert Rev Mol Diagn. 2007;7(5):673–86.
40. Haab BB. Antibody arrays in cancer research. Mol Cell Proteomics. 2005;4(4):377–83.
41. Jaras K, Ressine A, Nilsson E, Malm J, Marko-Varga G, Lilja H, et al. Reverse-phase versus sandwich antibody microarray, technical comparison from a clinical perspective. Anal Chem. 2007;79(15):5817–25.

Immunohistochemistry of Cancers

29

Alireza Ghanadan, Issa Jahanzad, and Ata Abbasi

Contents

A. Ghanadan (✉)
Department of Dermatopathology, Razi Dermatology Hospital, Tehran University of Medical Sciences, Tehran, Iran

Department of Pathology, Cancer Institute, Imam Khomeini Hospital Complex, Tehran University of Medical Sciences, Tehran, Iran

I. Jahanzad
Department of Pathology, Cancer Institute, Imam Khomeini Complex Hospital, School of Medicine, Tehran University of Medical Sciences, Tehran, Iran

A. Abbasi
Department of Pathology, Imam Khomeini Hospital, School of Medicine, Urmia University of Medical Sciences, Urmia, Iran

N. Rezaei (ed.), *Cancer Immunology*, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-30845-2_29

29.1 Introduction

Immunohistochemistry (IHC) is the art of using antibodies (Abs) to detect specific antigens (Ags) in tissues. Histopathologic evaluation of diseases has been altered and enhanced by the advent of IHC and some sophisticated techniques have been replaced by IHC due to its easy and versatile immunohistochemical techniques. Of course, disorganized application of IHC could be misleading.

Immunohistochemistry is based on specific Ab–Ag interactions. The Abs which are used to detect Ag(s) are called primary Abs. Primary Abs are linked to enzymes (main part of chromogenic system) via another Ab called link Ab. This linkage to enzymes is mediated by polymers or some molecules such as streptavidin–biotin complexes. Peroxidase is the enzyme mostly used in immunohistochemistry. Alkaline phosphatase is also used (but less frequently). Some mechanisms are shown in Fig. 29.1.

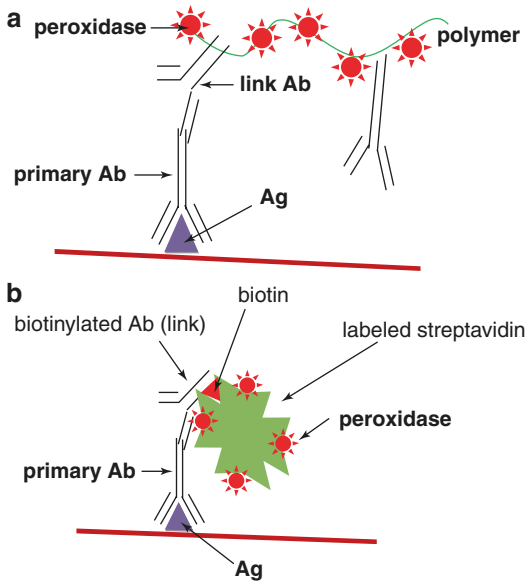


Fig. 29.1 Schematic mechanisms of two immunohistochemistry methods. (**a**) Secondary antibodies and enzymes link to polymer molecule. (**b**) Biotinylated secondary antibody and labeled streptavidine

Immunohistochemistry has wide application including research uses, diagnostic purposes, prognostic and therapeutic aims. IHC is a nice technique for tracking of proteins and haptens, so it is used to define expression of specific genes at the level of proteins. It is also very useful in diagnostic pathology including definition of cellular lineage (epithelial, vascular, lymphoid, etc.) or subtyping of some specific lesions and malignancies such as malignant lymphomas. Prognostic and therapeutic applications have gradually become widely popular such as the definition of hormone receptor status of breast cancer (ER, PR, and AR) and oncogene products (e.g., Her2, EGFR, and c-kit) which could be a part of guidelines for targeted therapy of the tumors.

29.2 Immunohistochemistry of Skin Tumors

29.2.1 Markers of Normal Skin

Skin tissue is composed of epidermal and adnexal components as well as mesenchymal dermal components. All epithelial cells in epidermis, folliculosebaceous unit, and sweat glands reveal pankeratin markers such as AE1/AE3 (Fig. 29.2a). Keratinized squamous cells (SC) and proliferative keratinocytes express cytokeratin (CK) 6/16, non-keratinized SC reacts with CK4/13 and basal keratinocytes exhibit reactivity for CK 5/14/15 (Fig. 29.2b). Squamous cells in palm and sole are reactive for CK 1/9/10 [1, 2]. Eccrine and apocrine glands comprise sweat structures of the skin. Normal eccrine glands show reactivity with CD7, CD20 (Fig. 29.2c, d), CEA, and S100, while apocrine glands exhibit immunostaining for CEA and GCDFP15 [3, 4]. Sebaceous glands exhibit reactivity for CK10 as well as EMA rimming cytoplasmic lipid vesicles (Fig. 29.2e) [5]. Normal melanocytes express S100, HMB45, and MART-1/melan-A, but do not react with tyrosinase [6]. Langerhans cells are stained with CD1a (Fig. 29.2f), S100, langerin, and CD31 [7]. Displaying neurotactile differentiation, Merkel cells of normal skin are reactive for CK20, MOC-31, neurofilament, and CD56 [8–10]. Markers of the normal epidermal components are depicted in Fig. 29.3. The immunoprofile of normal skin components and respective cancers is summarized in Table 29.1.

29.2.2 Epithelial Tumors

Squamous cell carcinoma (SCC) and basal cell carcinoma (BCC) are derived from spinous layer and basal layer of the epidermis, respectively. Well-differentiated SCC expresses high molecular cytokeratin, while those with poor differentiation express low molecular cytokeratin. Cytokeratin, p63, and vimentin are present in the sarcomatoid variant of SCC [11]. EMA, one of human milk fat globule proteins not expressed in normal keratinocytes, is expressed on malignant squamous cells. Basal cell carcinoma expresses BerEP4 (Fig. 29.4), but do not demonstrate reactivity with EMA and p63, distinguishing it from SCC [12].

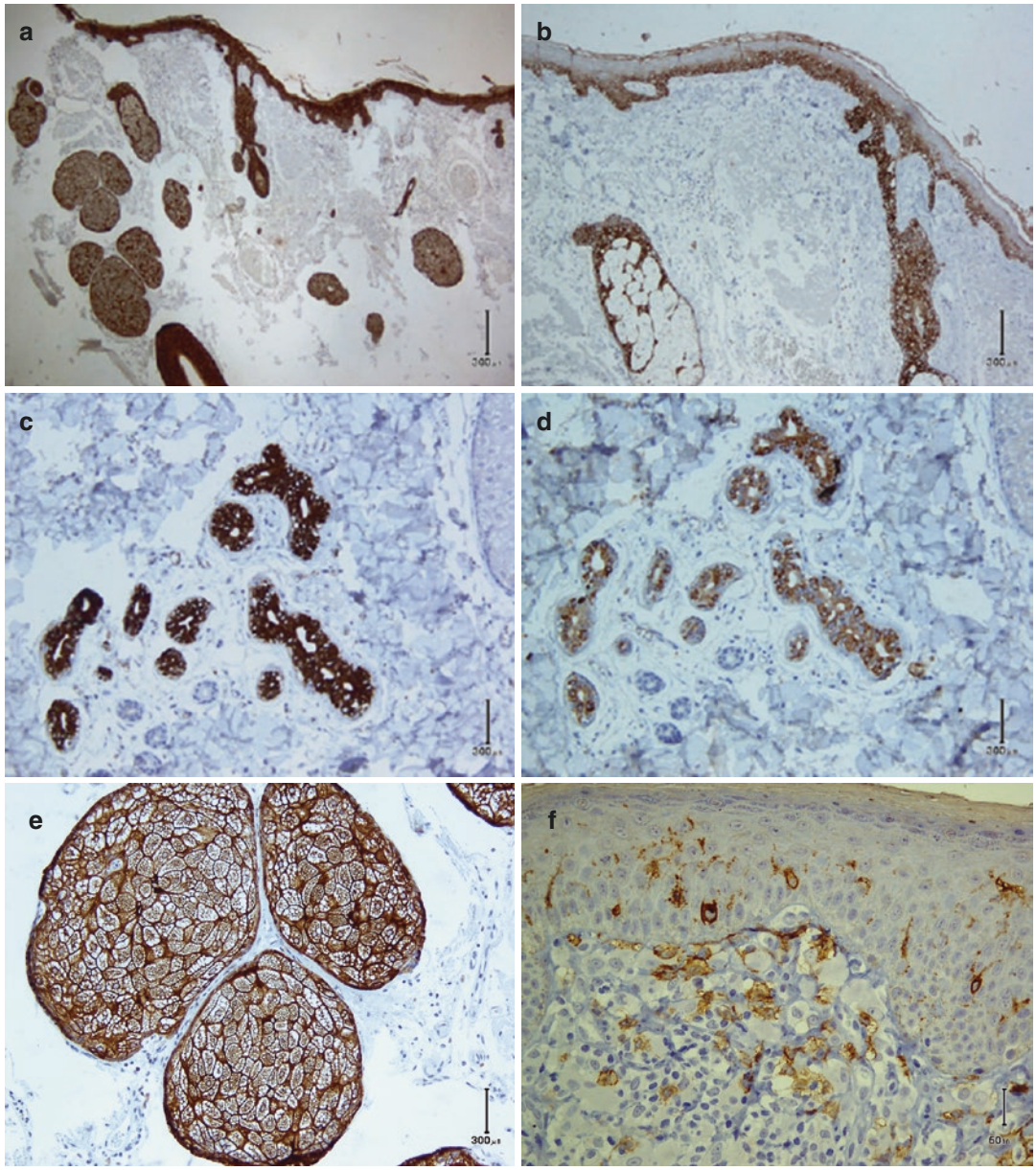


Fig. 29.2 Normal skin. (**a**) Pankeratin of AE1/AE3 stains epidermis, folliculosebaceous unit epithelium, and sweat glands. Basal keratinocytes is highlighted by CK5 (**b**). Sweat glands are immunostained by CK7 (**c**) and CK20 (**d**). EMA (**e**) reacts with sebaceous glands rimming cytoplasmic vacuoles and CD1a highlights dendritic Langerhans cells in epidermis (**f**)

29.2.3 Sweat Gland Tumors

Malignant eccrine tumors are distinct from benign eccrine tumors by displaying reactivity with EMA. Eccrine tumors display CEA, CD15, and p63, which are also common with apocrine tumors. Differentiating markers of apocrine tumors are TAG-72 (CA72.4) and GCDFP15 (Fig. 29.5), which are not expressed on eccrine tumors [13]. S100 is demonstrated in 50% of eccrine tumors, but not in apocrine tumors. A remaining challenge is distinguishing primary

eccrine carcinoma from metastatic carcinoma by immunoprofile of CK5/6 and p63, which are positive in eccrine carcinoma, but not in metastatic carcinoma [14]. Paget disease is an intraepidermal extension of neoplastic cells into the epidermis, which shares similar histopathologic features with malignant melanoma and Bowen disease. Immunohistochemistry study can be a helpful method in differentiating these tumors as denoted in Table 29.2 [15]. CK20 and GCDFP-15 are useful markers in distinguishing primary and secondary perianal Paget's diseases, respectively [16].

29.2.4 Trichogenic Tumors

Tumors with trichilemmal differentiation display reaction with CK14/15/19, BerEP4, and p63 but not react with EMA (except proliferating trichilemmal tumor), CEA, S100, CD15, CA72.4, HMB45, and GCDFP15 [3]. Trichilemmal carcinoma displays reactivity with CEA and S100 and proliferating trichilemmal carcinoma (malignant proliferating tumor) shows reactivity with EMA and CD34 [18]. Desmoplastic trichoepithelioma shares histopathologic similarities with infiltrating BCC and microcystic adnexal carcinoma. The immunoprofile of these tumors are demonstrated in Table 29.3.

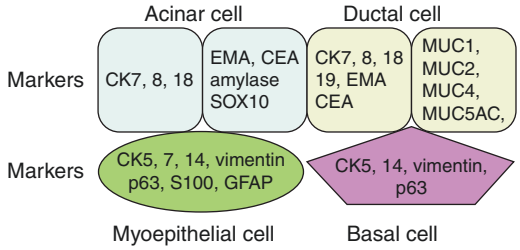


Fig. 29.3 Immunohistochemistry antibodies in schematic normal epidermal components

29.2.5 Sebaceous Tumors

Sebaceous tumors exhibit reactivity with CK5/14/15, CK8/18, EMA, CD15, anti-adipophilin (ADP), and androgen receptor. CK15 is positive in sebaceoma but does not exhibit reactivity in sebaceous carcinoma [22]. Sebaceous tumors do not express CEA, S-100, CA72.4, and GCDFP-15 in comparison with sweat gland tumors, which are positive for these markers [4, 23]. Sebaceous carcinoma is differentiated from BCC by showing reactivity for EMA (Fig. 29.6) and negative reaction to BerEP4, vice versa of BCC [24]. Proliferating markers are good markers to differentiate sebaceous adenoma from sebaceous carcinoma (Table 29.4).

29.2.6 Melanocytic Tumors

Being a sensitive but a nonspecific marker of melanoma, S100 is a calcium-binding protein given its name because of solubility in 100% saturated ammonium sulfate solution. Other S100-positive tumors include undifferentiated carcinoma, nerve sheath and glial tumors, adipose tumors and histiocytic and Langerhans cell proliferations [27, 28]. Considering as highly specific marker of melanocytes, the gp100 group include HMB-45

Table 29.1 Immunoprofile of normal epidermis, folliculosebaceous, and sweat gland structures in comparison with respective tumors

Cell	Antibodies	Tumor	Markers
Keratinocyte	CK6/16	Squamous cell carcinoma	EMA, p63
Basal keratinocyte	CK5/14/15	Basal cell carcinoma	BerEP4
Eccrine cell	CK7, CK20, CK5/14, CK1/10, CEA, S100	Eccrine carcinoma	EMA, CEA, CD15, p63, S100
Apocrine cell	CEA, GCDFP15	Apocrine carcinoma	EMA, CEA, CD15, p63, CA72.4, GCDFP15
Trichogenic cell	CK14/15/19	Trichilemmal carcinoma	CEA, S100
		Proliferating trichilemmal carcinoma	EMA, CD34
Sebaceocyte	CK5/14/15, CK8/18	Sebaceous carcinoma	EMA

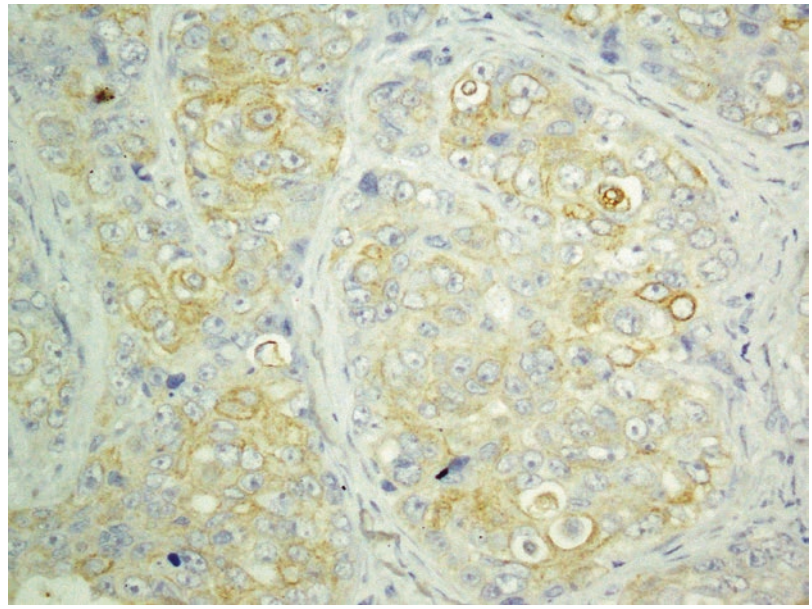


Fig. 29.4 Immunoreaction of basal cell carcinoma with BerEP4

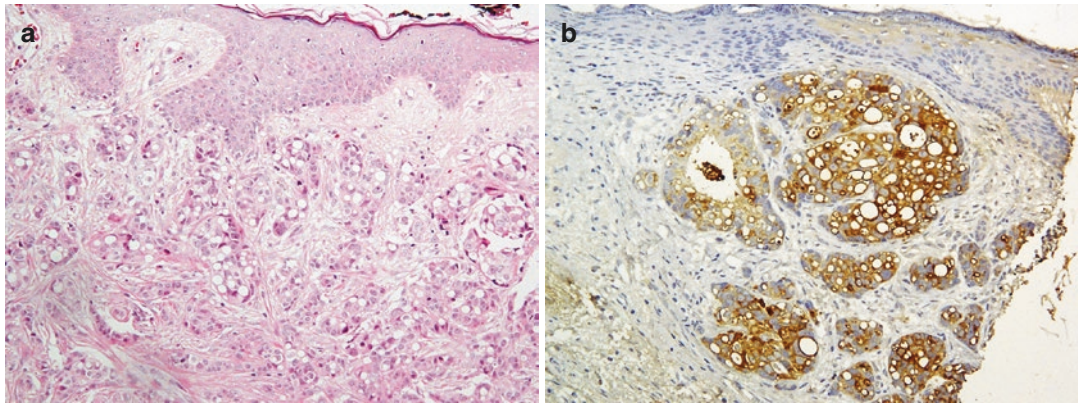


Fig. 29.5 Primary skin apocrine carcinoma (**a**) immunostained by GCDFP15 (**b**)

Table 29.2 Immunophenotype of mammary and extramammary Paget disease (PD), Bowen disease, and malignant melanoma

Makers	Mammary PD	Extramammary PD (apocrine carcinoma in situ)	Bowen disease (SCC in situ)	Melanoma (in situ)
CK7	+	+	–	–
CEA	+	+	–	–
CAM5.2	+	+	–	–
GCDFP15	+	+	–	–
MUC1	+	+	–	–
MUC5AC	–	+	–	–
CA15-3	+	–	–	–
CA72.4	–	+	–	–
KA-93	–	+	–	–
CK5/6	–	–	+	–
S100/HMB45/MART	–	–	–	+

References: [15–17]

Table 29.3 Immunoprofile of desmoplastic trichoepithelioma (DTE), infiltrating basal cell carcinoma (IBCC), and microcystic adnexal carcinoma (MAC)

Tumor	DTE	IBCC	MAC
Panel antibodies	EMA, CK5/6, CD10 (stroma), CK15, CK20, p63, Bcl-2, BerEP4	CK5/6, CD10 (epithelial), p63, Bcl-2, BerEP4, stromelysin-3, p53	EMA, CK7, Ck5/6, CK15, p63, SMA

References: [19–21]

and MART-1/melan-A with 60% and 80% sensitivity, respectively. Melanoma Antigen Recognized by T-cells-1 (MART-1) is a protein, which serves as a potential target for cytotoxic T lymphocytes recognized by two monoclonal antibodies (mAbs), A103, and melan-A [29]. Desmoplastic/spindle cell variant of melanomas do not show reactivity with HMB45 and MART/melan-A. Instead, these melanomas are more reactive with S100, p75-NGF-R, and tyrosinase [30]. Small-cell melanoma is another variant of the melanoma, which could be distinguished from other small-cell undifferentiated tumors of the skin and subcutaneous tissue by panel Abs (Fig. 29.7). The immunoprofiles of these tumors are summarized in Table 29.5.

29.2.7 Prognostic Markers of Melanoma

Detection of BRAF p. V600E mutation by immunohistochemistry in melanomas could be used as a first step to identify patients with melanoma as candidates for BRAF inhibitors. Displaying by immunohistochemistry, melanoma progression is correlated with MERTK expression: highest in metastatic melanomas, followed by primary melanomas and nevi [33, 34]. Other prognostic markers correlated with melanoma progression and prognosis include MIB-1 (Ki-67), Bcl2, p53, p16, cyclin-D1, cyclin-D3, osteopontin, NM23, E-cadherin, beta-catenin, Wnt5a/frizzled, Cdc42, and CXCR4 [35–41]. Novel makers including PD-L1, RORα, and RORγ have also been introduced recently, but further studies are needed to prove their role in malignant melanoma [42–44].

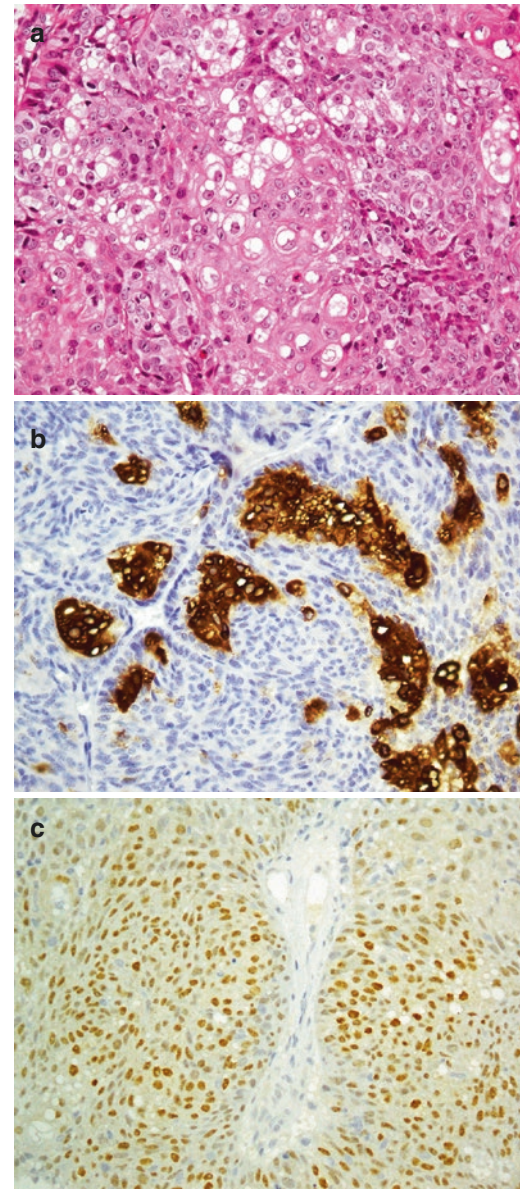


Fig. 29.6 Sebaceous carcinoma (**a**). Sebocytes are stained with EMA (**b**). Nuclear reactivity of tumor cells for androgen receptor (**c**)

Table 29.4 Immunoprofile of sebaceous adenoma (SA) and sebaceous carcinoma (SC)

Tumor	Ki67	p53	Bcl2	P21
Sebaceous adenoma	10%	11%	56%	34%
Sebaceous carcinoma	30%	50%	7%	16%

References: [25, 26]

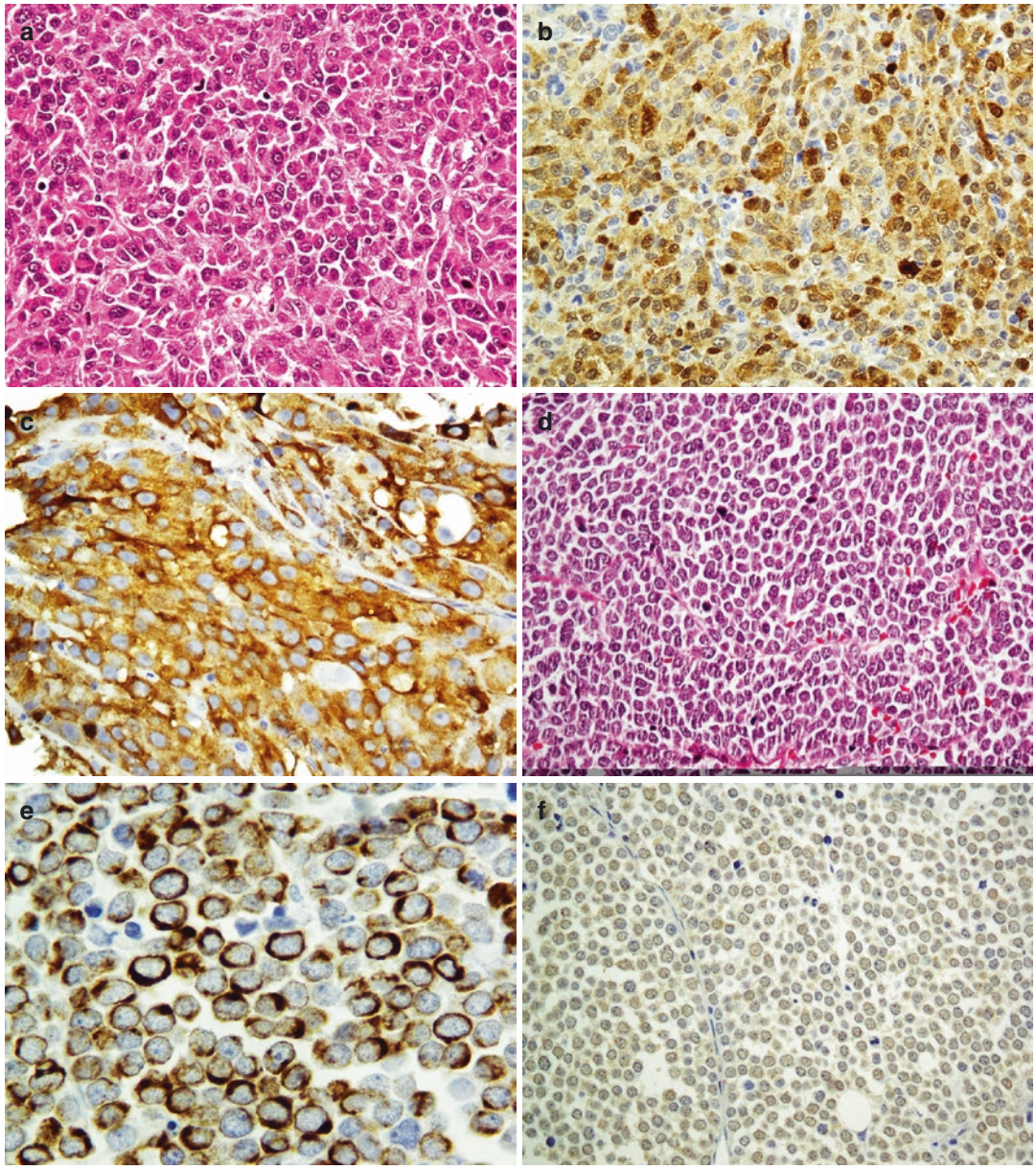


Fig. 29.7 Small round cell tumor in skin. Malignant melanoma (**a**) reacts with S100 (**b**) and Melan-A (**c**) antibodies. Merkel cell carcinoma (**d**) immunostained by CK20 as paranuclear dots (**e**) and shows weak reaction with CD99 (**f**)

29.2.8 Specific Mesenchymal Tumors of the Skin

Mesenchymal tumors are discussed in soft tissue tumors, but some tumors which are more seen in skin are discussed here. Kaposi sarcoma, which originates from endothelial cells, is an intermediate malignant potential vascular tumor of the skin positive for a highly sensitive and specific Ab called HHV8-Latent Nuclear Antigen-1 [45]. Dermatofibrosarcoma protuberance is an intermediate tumor of fibrohistiocytic cell origin which is diffusely positive for CD34 (Fig. 29.8) and negative for factor XIIIa separate from

Table 29.5 Immunopanel of small-cell melanoma (SCM), Merkel cell carcinoma (MCC), small-cell squamous carcinoma (SSCC), small-cell eccrine carcinoma (SEC), peripheral neuroectodermal tumor/extraskeletal Ewing's sarcoma (PNET/ES), lymphoma, rhabdomyosarcoma (RMS), and metastatic pulmonary small-cell carcinoma (MPSC)

Panel antibodies	SCM	MCC	SSCC	SEC	PNET/ES	Lymphoma	RMS	MPSC
S100/HMB45/MART	+	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
CK20/CD56/SYN/CGN	–	+	–	–	–	–	–	–
CK/EMA	–	–	+	+	–	–	–	+
CD15/MOC31/TAG-72	–	–	–	+	–	–	–	–
CD99/CD56/SYN/CGN	–	+	–	–	+	–	–	–
LCA/CD3/CD20	–	–	–	–	–	+	–	–
DES/MSA/MYG	–	–	–	–	–	–	+	–
CEA/TTF-1	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	+

Note: *CGN* chromogranin A, *DES* desmin, *MYG* myogenin, *MSA* muscle-specific antigen, *LCA* leukocyte common antigen, *SYN* synaptophysin
References: [27–32]

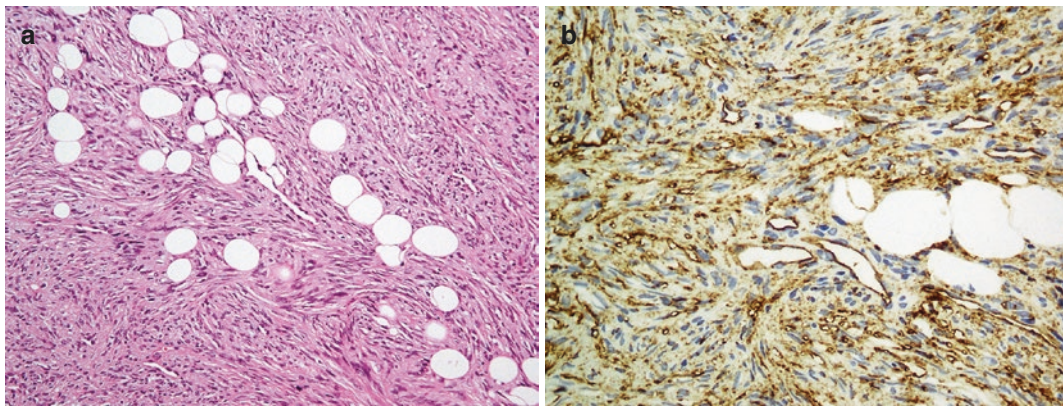


Fig. 29.8 Dermatofibrosarcoma protuberans. Spindle fibrohistiocytic cells, entrapping subcutaneous fat tissue (**a**) highlighted by CD34 (**b**)

dermatofibroma which is in reverse of DFSP (CD34−, factor XIIIa+) [46]. Considering it as a superficial variant of malignant fibrous histiocytoma, atypical fibroxanthoma is a fibrohistiocytic tumor exhibiting reactivity with vimentin, CD10, and CD99 (Fig. 29.9) [47]. Among tumors with smooth muscle differentiation, leiomyoma and leiomyosarcoma are reactive for SMA, desmin, and caldesmon similar to extracutaneous equivalents [48–50]. Neurothekeoma (NTKs) is a distinctive neoplasm of the skin showing schwannian and neuroectodermal differentiation which typically labels with S100 (conventional variant), CD99, and NKI-C3 (cellular variant) [51].

29.3 Immunohistochemistry of Head and Neck Tumors

29.3.1 Tumors of the Nasal Cavity and Paranasal Sinuses

Tumors of nose and paranasal sinuses can be categorized in two groups of small-cell carcinomas and undifferentiated carcinomas. Small-cell carcinomas of nasal cavity and paranasal sinuses include olfactory neuroblastoma (ONB), melanoma, lymphoma, rhabdomyosarcoma, small-cell neuroendocrine carcinoma, and ES/PNET (Table 29.6). Undifferentiated carcinomas include sinonasal undifferentiated carcinoma,

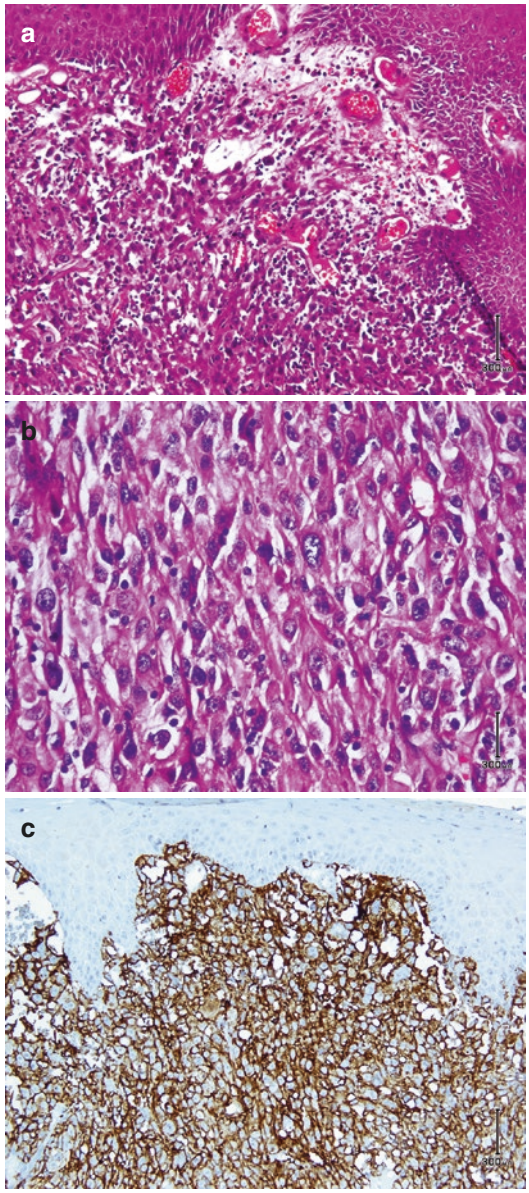


Fig. 29.9 Atypical fibroxanthoma. Atypical pleomorphic cells with vesicular nuclei in dermis (**a**, **b**) are immunostained by CD10 (**c**)

undifferentiated nasopharyngeal carcinoma (Fig. 29.10), and undifferentiated neuroendocrine carcinoma [57, 58]. All poorly differentiated and undifferentiated carcinomas express cytokeratin [52]. Undifferentiated nasopharyngeal carcinoma reacts with EBV and undifferentiated neuroendocrine carcinoma is positive for neuroendocrine markers and S100 [59]. NUT midline carcinoma (NMC) is an aggressive tumor with translocation of *NUT* (Nuclear protein in testis) gene resulting in the formation of *BRD4-NUT* fusion gene. Recently, new mAbs against the NUT Ag have been designed which will improve the diagnosis of NMC [60]. Immunohistochemistry of poorly differentiated and undifferentiated carcinomas are denoted in Table 29.7.

29.3.1.1 Theranostic Application

In olfactory neuroblastoma, immunoreactivity with Bcl-2 may predict response to neoadjuvant chemotherapy and seems to be associated with worse survival [63] (Fig. 29.11).

29.3.2 Tumors of Larynx, Nasopharynx, and Oropharynx

Squamous cell carcinoma (SCC) is the most common malignancy in the head and neck. Typically, head and neck SCCs are positive for cytokeratin cocktails, AE1/AE3, and pancytokeratin. Human papilloma virus (HPV) is detected in some SCCs of oropharynx and known as a risk factor of head and neck SCCs [64, 65]. Being as a variant of SCC, basaloid squamous cell carcinoma (BSCC) is another tumor with predominance of basaloid components. Basaloid

Table 29.6 Immunohistochemistry of small-cell carcinomas of nasal cavity: olfactory neuroblastoma (ONB), rhabdomyosarcoma (RMS), Ewing sarcoma/peripheral neuroectodermal tumor (ES/PNET), and small-cell neuroendocrine carcinoma (SNEC)

Tumor	ONB	Melanoma	Lymphoma	RMS	SCC	ES/PNET	SNEC
Immunoreactive markers	SYN	HMB45, S100, vimentin	LCA, vimentin	Desmin, Myogenin, vimentin	AE1/AE3, EMA, SYN	CD99, SYN	Cytokeratin, neuroendocrine markers

References: [50, 52–56]

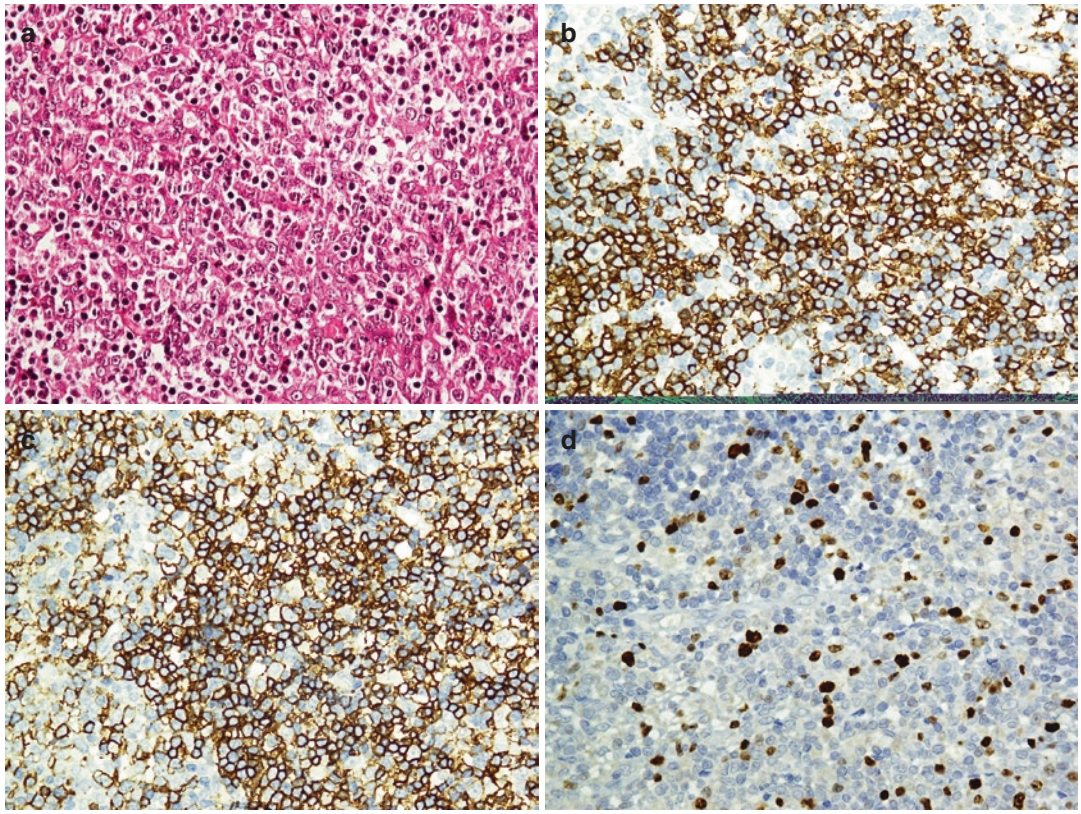


Fig. 29.10 Undifferentiated nasopharyngeal carcinoma shows infiltration of large undifferentiated cells with intermixed small lymphocytes (**a**). Cytokeratin antibody highlights malignant cells (**b**) and intermixed lymphocytes react with LCA (**c**). Ki-67 antibody reacts with about 20% of malignant cells (**d**)

Table 29.7 Immunohistochemistry of poorly differentiated and undifferentiated carcinomas of nasal cavity: sinonasal undifferentiated carcinoma (SNUC), undifferentiated neuroendocrine carcinoma (UNEC), and undifferentiated nasopharyngeal carcinoma (UNPC)

Markers	SNUC	UNPC	UNEC (Fig. 29.11)
Cytokeratin	+	+	+
EBV	–	+	–
Neuroendocrine	–	–	+
CD99	–	–	+/–
S100	–	–	+

References: [52, 61, 62]

squamous cell carcinomas express p63 which is relatively specific, but also found in other squamous tumors (Fig. 29.12). Neuroendocrine markers are negative in BSCC [66]. Spindle squamous cell carcinoma (SSCC) is a cytokeratin-negative SCC of which spindle cell component is uniformly and strongly positive for vimentin [67]. Undifferentiated nasopharyngeal carcinoma shows reactivity to EBV immunostaining as well as some SCCs and BSCCs [68, 69].

29.3.2.1 Prognostic Marker

As a transcription repressor of E-cadherin, Snail-1 is expressed in more than half of the cases of SSCC but not in SCC. In addition, it can be a novel marker for the prediction of metastasis [70].

29.3.3 Tumors of the Salivary Glands

Salivary glands are tubuloacinar exocrine glands having two layered epithelia, which comprise of luminal (acinar and ductal cells) and abluminal (myoepithelial and basal cells). Luminal cells are positive for low molecular cytokeratin, whereas

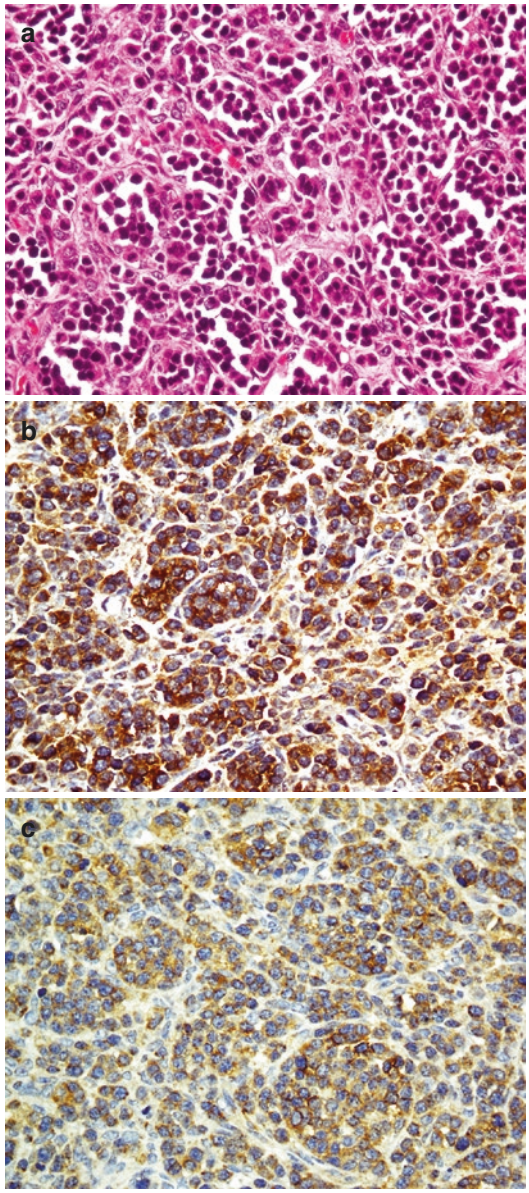


Fig. 29.11 Neuroendocrine carcinoma (**a**). Tumor cells are immunostained with synaptophysin (**b**) and NSE (**c**)

myoepithelial and basal cells react with high molecular cytokeratin and myoepithelial markers. The majority of salivary gland carcinomas can be diagnosed by routine Hematoxylin and Eosin (H&E) stained slides and immunohistochemical (IHC) staining has only a limited role in the diagnosis of salivary gland tumors [57, 71]. Figure 29.13 summarizes the various components of the normal salivary glands with an emphasis on the immunohistochemistry Abs.

29.3.4 Immunohistochemistry of Salivary Gland Tumors

The most common malignant tumors of salivary glands consist of acinic cell carcinoma, adenoid cystic carcinoma (Fig. 29.14), basal cell adenocarcinoma, epithelial-myoepithelial carcinoma, mucoepidermoid carcinoma (Fig. 29.15), myoepithelial carcinoma, polymorphous low-grade adenocarcinoma, and salivary duct carcinoma. All tumors are cytokeratin-positive; however, different immunoprofile patterns exist [72]. C-kit (CD117) is positive in acinic cell carcinoma and adenoid cystic carcinoma [73, 74]. Acinic cell tumor and mucoepidermoid carcinoma demonstrate reactivity with membrane-bound mucin (MUC) [75, 76]. Myoepithelial carcinomas are positive for both epithelial and myoepithelial markers but do not exhibit reaction with EMA and CEA [77]. Malignant monophasic salivary gland tumors include acinic cell carcinoma, myoepithelial carcinoma, mucoepidermoid carcinoma, and polymorphous low-grade adenocarcinoma. Immunophenotype profile of monophasic and biphasic tumors are denoted in Tables 29.8 and 29.9. Application of CK7 and CK20 is a useful panel in distinguishing primary salivary gland carcinoma ($CK7^+$, $CK20^-$) from metastatic carcinoma ($CK7^-$, $CK20^+$) [86].

29.3.4.1 Prognostic Marker

In mucoepidermoid carcinoma, MUC1 expression is correlated with tumor progression and worsened prognosis, whereas MUC4 expression is related to a better prognosis [76] (Fig. 29.17).

29.3.5 Tumors of Thyroid and Parathyroid Glands

The functional unit of thyroid is the follicle, which is composed of follicular cells and C cells.

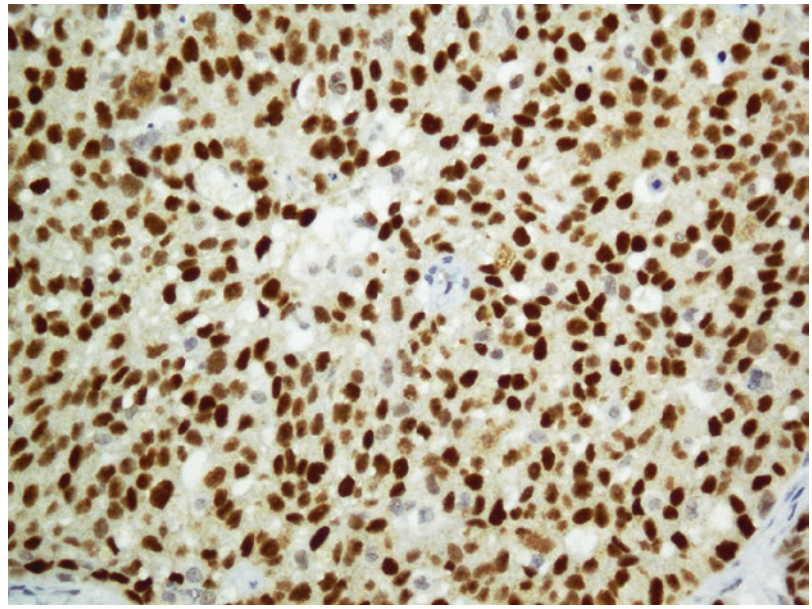


Fig. 29.12 p63 immunoreaction in basaloid squamous cell carcinoma

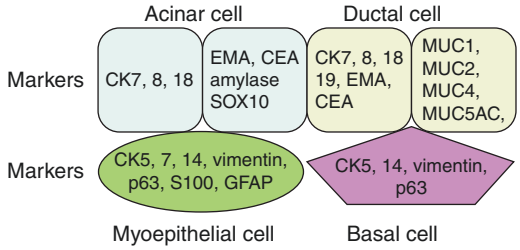


Fig. 29.13 Normal salivary gland components with immunohistochemistric antibodies

Follicular cells exhibit reactivity with thyroglobulin, TTF1, PAX8, AE1/AE3, EMA and CK7, CK8/18/19, whereas C cells are positive for calcitonin, TTF1, CK7, synaptophysin, and chromogranin. Being as a nuclear transcription factor, TTF1 is expressed on follicular and C cells. A follicular cell-specific marker is thyroglobulin, which does not react with C cells (Fig. 29.16). As a member of the paired box (PAX) gene family, PAX8 is a sensitive marker of thyroid tumors similar to TTF1. Among intermediate filaments, CK19 is more expressed in papillary carcinoma than other tumors [87]. Parathyroid hormone (PTH) and parafibromin are markers of parathyroid tumors. Parafibromin is uniformly expressed in parathyroid adenomas, whereas its expression is often reduced in parathyroid carcinomas. Table 29.10 shows an immunopanel of thyroid and parathyroid tumors.

29.4 Immunohistochemistry of Lung Tumors

Lung tumors are classified as small-cell and non-small cell lung cancers. Among non-small cell lung cancers, adenocarcinoma is the most common form and would be discussed in this book. Other variants including SCC and bronchoalveolar carcinomas also share similar IHC patterns.

29.4.1 Adenocarcinoma

The most frequent IHC pattern for lung is positivity for CK7, TTF1, and Napsin A, along with negative staining for CK20, CDX2, and MUC2. It is highly advocated to consider the fact that there are recently increasing reports of primary pulmonary adenocarcinomas with intestinal differentiation, which are CK7- and TTF1-negative, but CK20-positive which can be highly misinterpreted

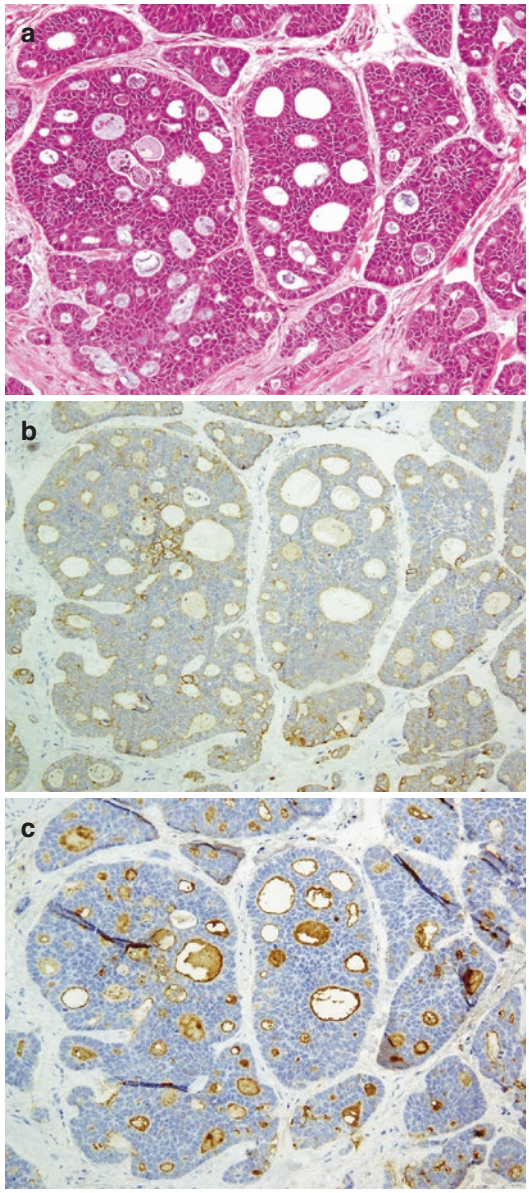


Fig. 29.14 Adenoid cystic carcinoma with typical cribriform pattern (**a**) shows immunoreaction with EMA (**b**) and CEA (**c**)

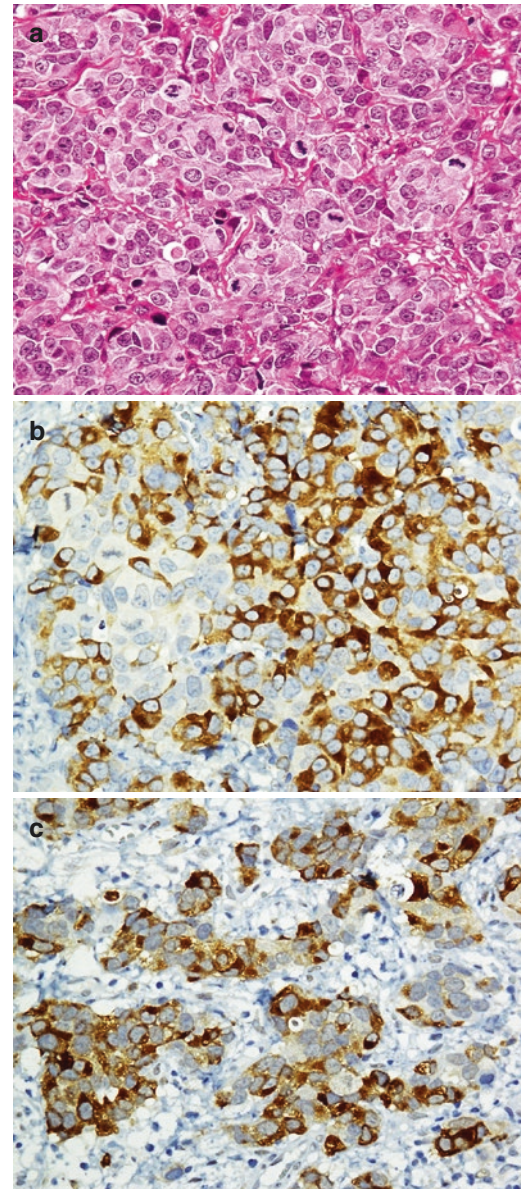


Fig. 29.15 Poorly differentiated mucoepidermoid carcinoma with polygonal atypical epidermoid cells (**a**) exhibits immunostaining with CK7 (**b**) and EMA (**c**)

Table 29.8 Immunophenotype of monophasic malignant salivary gland tumors: acinic cell carcinoma (AC), myoepithelial carcinoma (MC), mucoepidermoid carcinoma (MEC), and polymorphous low-grade adenocarcinoma (PLGC)

Tumor	AC	MC	MEC	**PLGC**
Epithelial markers	CAM5.2, CK7/8/18, EMA, CEA, MUC3	AE1/AE3, CAM5.2, CK14, 34βE12	CAM5.2, CK7/8/14/18/19, EMA, CEA, MUC1/4/5AC, 5B	CAM5.2, CK7, 14, EMA
Myoepithelial/ basal markers	N	p63, calponion, SMA, myosin	p63 (epidermoid component)	p63
Other markers	c-kit, S100	Vimentin, S100, GFAP	–	S100

References: [72, 73, 75–79]

Table 29.9 Immunophenotype of biphasic malignant salivary gland tumors: adenoid cystic carcinoma (ACC), basal cell adenocarcinoma (BCA), epithelial-myoepithelial carcinoma (EMC), and salivary duct carcinoma (SDC)

Tumor	ACC	BCA	EMC	SDC
Epithelial markers	CAM5.2, CK7/14/19, EMA, CEA	AE1/AE3, CAM5.2, CK7, EMA, CEA	AE1/AE3, CAM5.2, CK14	AE1/AE3, EMA, CEA
Myoepithelial/basal markers	p63, calponin	p63, calponin, SMA	p63, calponin, SMA	p63
Other markers	c-kit, S100	c-kit, S100	S100	AR, GATA3, Her2/neu

References: [72, 73, 75, 80–85]

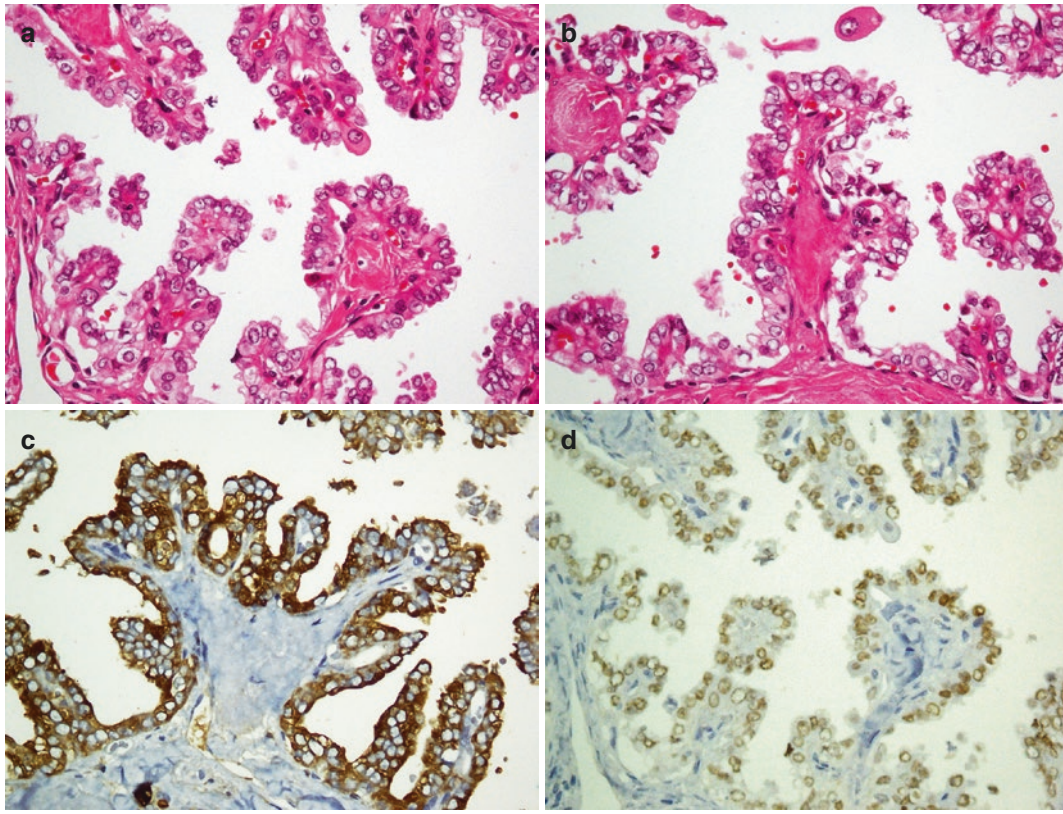


Fig. 29.16 Thyroid papillary carcinoma. Papillary projections with intranuclear inclusions (**a**) and Orphan Annie nuclei (**b**) are highlighted by thyroglobulin in cytoplasm (**c**) and TTF1 in nuclei (**d**)

Table 29.10 Immunopanel of thyroid and parathyroid tumors

First-choice antibody panel	Second-choice antibody panel	Consistent with
CK+, TTF1+, TGB+	PAX8+, CK19+	Papillary carcinoma (Fig. 29.16)
	PAX8±, VIM+	Follicular carcinoma
CK+, TTF1+, TGB−	Calcitonin+, SYN+, CGN+	Medullary carcinoma (Fig. 29.17)
CK±, TTF1+, TGB−	p53+, VIM+, PAX8±	Anaplastic carcinoma
CK+, TTF1−, TGB−	PTH+, CGN+, parafibromin±	Parathyroid tumor

Note: *CGN* chromogranin, *SYN* synptophysin, *TGB* thyroglobulin, *VIM* vimentin
References: [88–106]

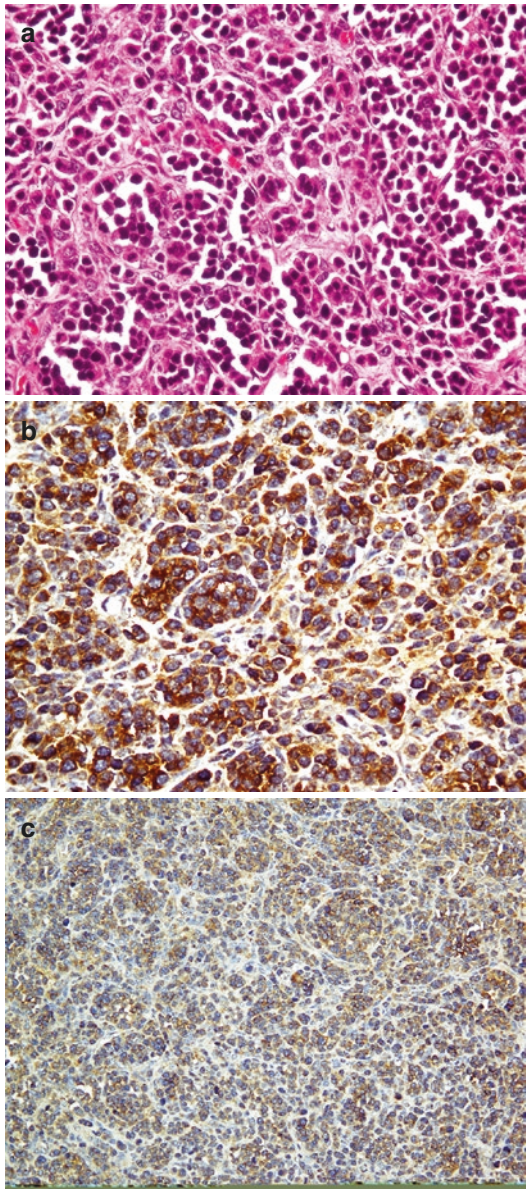


Fig. 29.17 Thyroid medullary carcinoma. Solid nests with medium size atypical cells (**a**), exhibit immunoreaction with calcitonin (**b**) and chromogranin (**c**)

as metastatic colorectal adenocarcinomas. Therefore, the importance of physical examination and imaging studies is highlighted.

29.4.2 Small-Cell Carcinoma

Small-cell carcinoma of lung usually express neuroendocrine markers and is classified as a high-grade neuroendocrine tumor. It should be noted that neuroendocrine markers including chromogranin, synaptophysin, NSE, and Leu7 (CD57) could be positive in lung non-neuroendocrine carcinomas such as adenocarcinomas and SCC. Recent studies have shown EGFR, Her2, and BRAF mutations in lung cancers, which can increase the chance for targeted therapies in these cancers [107–110]. In addition, there are growing data on novel markers such as PD-L1 and surviving to introduce them as novel prognostic markers in non-small cell lung cancers, but the results are debating and more studies are needed [111, 112].

29.4.3 Mesothelioma

Neoplasms of pleura are very rare and most tumors in this area are usually metastatic lesions. One of the most important applications of IHC is to assist pathologists in differentiating mesotheliomas from lung adenocarcinomas [113–116]. Table 29.11 shows the most frequent markers stained by IHC staining in mesothelioma compared with pulmonary adenocarcinoma (Fig. 29.18).

29.5 Immunohistochemistry of Gastrointestinal Tumors

Immunohistochemistry is used in gastrointestinal and colon cancers to particularly determine the tumor subtype and origin, especially for poorly or undifferentiated cancers for which morphology alone cannot determine the origin. Generally, it should be noted that definite tissue diagnosis clinical practice needs combination of IHC results and clinical information, including biopsy site and the patients' clinical history [117]. Previous studies show that blinded use of an IHC panel for differential diagnosis can primarily identify about 83% of tumor origins vs. 65.6% of metastasis. Several publications on IHC studies are available, and each recommends its own IHC panel for differential diagnosis. This makes it clear that there is no single IHC panel, or standard of care, for tissue determination and pathologists have long

Table 29.11 Immunohistochemistric differentiation of pulmonary adenocarcinoma (PAC) and malignant mesothelioma

Marker	Pulmonary AC	Mesothelioma	Comment
Calretinin	R	Usually +	The most specific and reproducible positive marker in mesothelioma
CDX2	R	–	About 13% positive, in pulmonary mucinous carcinomas
Cytokeratin	AE1/AE3, CK5/6 (R), CK7	CK5/6 (S), CK7 (used to differentiate mesotheliomas from sarcomas)	CK7: Most common CK in primary lung cancer (about 100% in AC, 40% in small-cell carcinoma, about 20% in carcinoid tumor and none of SCC arising from lung) CK5+ specially in lung SCC
D2–40	–	+	Usually positive specially in sarcomatoid variants of mesothelioma
EMA	S (cytoplasmic)	S (membranous)	
TTF1	+	–	
Mesothelin	–	+	
p63	–	–	Positive in pulmonary SCC
pCEA	+	–	
S100	+	–	
SMA	–	50–60%	
SP-A (Surfactant protein-A)	50%	–	
Thrombomodulin	–	+	
Vimentin	+	–	
WT1	–	60%	

Note: *pCEA* polyclonal CEA, *SMA* specific muscle antigen

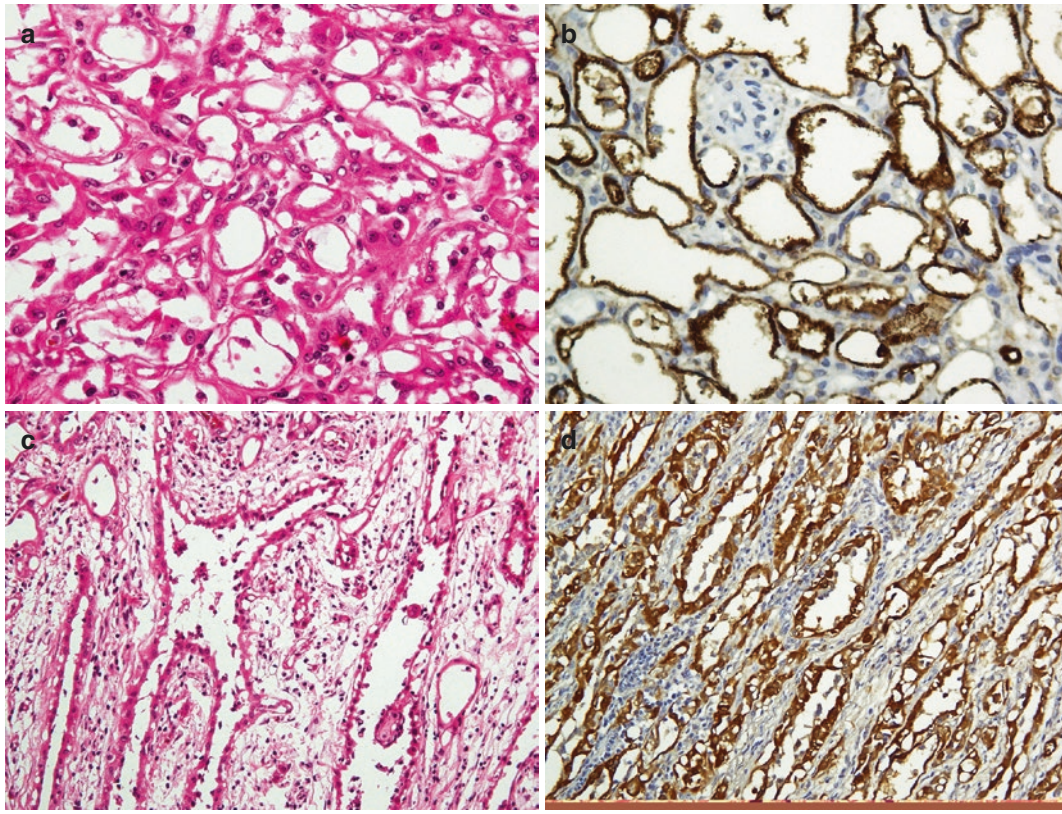


Fig. 29.18 Mesothelioma. Adenomatoid type (**a**), shows immunostaining for mesothelin (**b**) and tubular type (**c**) shows immunoreaction for calretinin (**d**)

known that tissue of origin identification is inherently a multiplex problem [118–120].

Here, the authors have briefly tried to introduce the major and common IHC markers used to differentiate frequent gastrointestinal tumors. It should be noted that the average positivity of a marker in a specific tumor differs from one study to another, as well as in different textbooks. In this chapter the most prevalent and reliable data are provided.

29.5.1 Liver

The most common primary hepatic cancer is hepatocellular carcinoma, which is well known to have a wide spectrum of histologic differentiation and a great diversity of appearances. It necessitates the application of IHC as an ancillary aid for better diagnosis of the lesion. It is important to reiterate that IHC is after all an ancillary aid. A significant clinicopathologic correlation seems mandatory for the final diagnosis. If a definitive diagnosis cannot be clinched, at the least, certain differential diagnoses can be excluded [121–125]. Immunophenotype of normal liver is summarized in Table 29.12 (Figs. 29.19 and 29.20).

Cholangiocarcinoma is a malignant tumor with characteristics mostly similar to other types of adenocarcinomas. The tumor is usually positive for CK7, CK19, CAM5.2, CK AE1/AE3, pCEA, mCEA (noncanalicular pattern), and MOC31. MUC4, MUC5AC, MUC6 can also be useful not in diagnosis, but in classification and predicting the prognosis. Additionally, CD56, which is positive in benign bile ductular proliferations and negative in cholangiocarcinomas, can be useful in differentiating malignant lesions from benign proliferation. The exception for this rule is clear cell cholangiocarcinoma, which is positive for CD56. Staining for CK7 and CK19 in

Table 29.12 Immunohistochemistry of normal liver

	Markers				
Normal tissue	Hepatocellular	Adenocarcinoma	Carcinoma	Canalicular	Others
Hepatocytes	HepPar1, TTF1 (cytoplasmic)	MOC31	CAM5.2	CD10, pCEA	B-catenin
Bile duct cells	–	CK7, CK19 (+/–), MUC6	CAM5.2, CKAE1/AE3, EMA, BerEP4	–	B-catenin

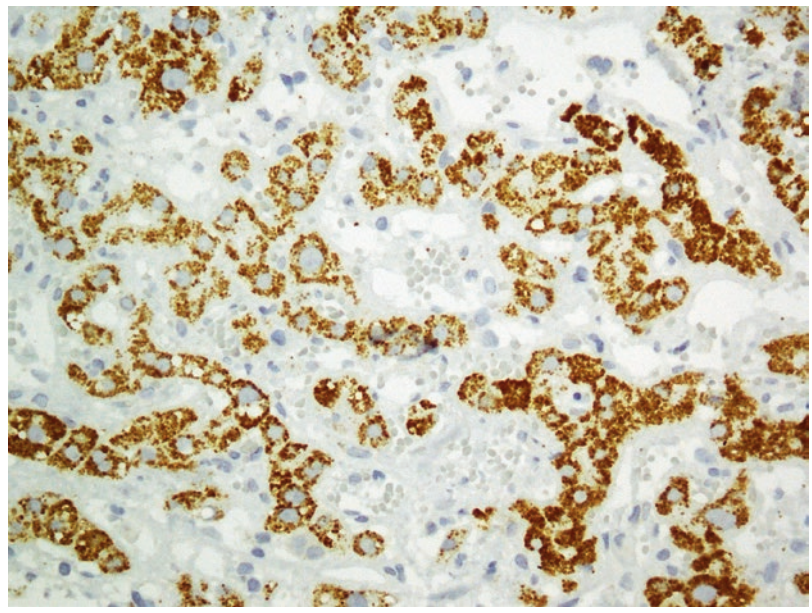


Fig. 29.19 Normal liver stains with HepPar1 showing typical cytoplasmic coarse granules of hepatocytes

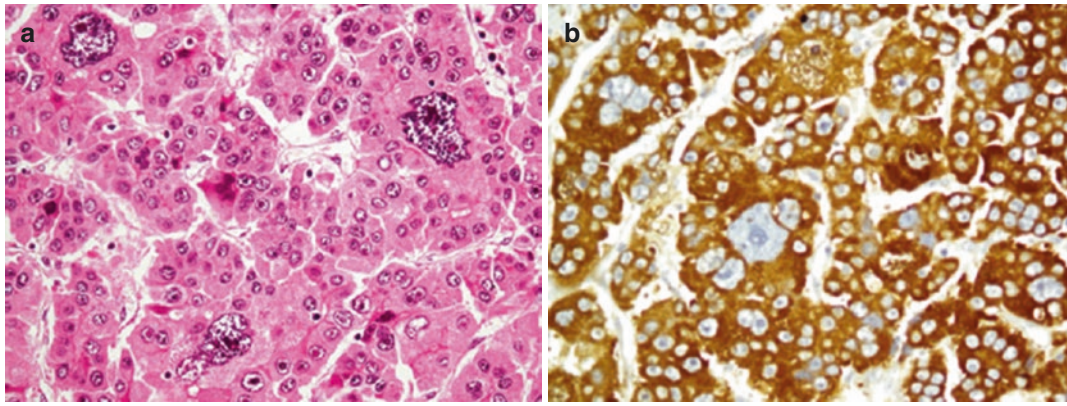


Fig. 29.20 Hepatocellular carcinoma with huge bizarre giant nuclei making diagnosis simple as malignant (**a**) exhibits reactivity with HepPar1 (**b**)

Table 29.13 Immunohistochemistry of hepatocellular carcinoma and cholangiocarcinoma

	Markers				
Tumor	Hepatocellular	Adenocarcinoma	Carcinoma	Canalicular	Sinusoidal
Hepatocellular carcinoma	HepPar1, TTF1 (cytoplasmic)	–	CAM5.2, EMA (−/+)	CD10, pCEA	CD34, FVIII
Cholangiocarcinoma	–	MOC31, CK7, CK19, MUC4, MUC5AC, MUC6	CAM5.2, CKAE1/AE3	pCEA, mCEA (noncanalicular)	–

cholangiocarcinoma can help to differentiate this tumor from HCC, which is negative for the mentioned markers [126, 127]. Table 29.13 indicates the immunophenotypes of hepatocellular carcinoma and cholangiocarcinoma.

29.5.2 Esophagus

The most common esophageal cancers are adenocarcinomas and SCC. Adenocarcinoma of the esophagus is immunophenotypically similar to gastric adenocarcinomas and there is no IHC panel to distinguish these two. Esophageal SCC is usually positive for most CK markers including CK AE1/AE3, CK 34bE12, CK5/6, CK19 (positivity increases with tumor grade whereas benign squamous lesions are negative for this marker) and p63. Additionally, most SCCs are negative for CK7 and CK20, which can be useful in distinguishing poorly differentiated SCCs from poorly differentiated adenocarcinomas positive for these two CK markers [128–130].

29.5.3 Stomach

Stomach glandular epithelium expresses CK20 and less commonly CK7 (CK7+, CK20+) and MUC5AC, distinguishing it from small intestine and colorectal epithelium. Immunoprofile of normal gastrointestinal mucosa is denoted in Table 29.14. Gastric adenocarcinoma has many histologic variants, but they have almost similar immunophenotyping. It should be mentioned that synaptophysin and chromogranin as neuroendocrine markers can be positive in gastric adenocarcinomas; therefore, positive staining with these markers is not sufficient for the diagnosis of neuroendocrine carcinoma [131–133]. Some gastric cancers may also express PD-L1, Her2/neu, EGFR, and VEGFR, which

Table 29.14 Immunoprofile of normal gastrointestinal mucosa

	Simple epithelial marker					MUC			
Normal tissue	CK7	CK20	AE1/AE3	CAM5.2	CEA	Gastric (MUC5AC)	Intestinal (MUC2, MUC4)	CDX2 (intestinal marker)	CD15
Stomach	+/−	+	+	+	+	+	−	−	+
Small intestine	−	+	+	−	−/+	−	+	+	+
Large intestine/appendix	−	+	+	+	+	−	+	+	+

Note: + (>90%), +/− (>50%), −/+ (<50%), − (<10%)

Table 29.15 Immunoprofile of gastric, small intestine, and colorectal adenocarcinoma (AC)

	Tumor associated marker						MUC			
Tumor type	CK 18/19	CK7	CK20	AE1/AE3	CAM5.2	CEA	Gastric (MUC5AC)	Intestinal (MUC2, MUC4)	CDX2 (intestinal marker)	CD15
Gastric AC	+	+/−	−/+	+	+	+	−/+	−/+	−/+	−
Small intestine AC	+	+/−	+/−	+	−/+	−/+	−/+	+/−	+/−	−
Large intestine/ appendix AC	+	−	+	+	+	+	−/+	+/−	+	−

Note: + (>90%), +/− (>50%), −/+ (<50%), − (<10%)

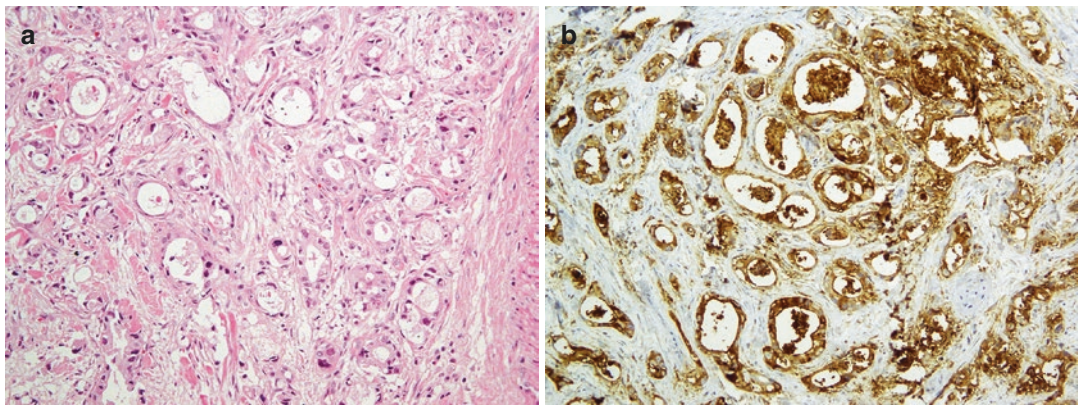


Fig. 29.21 Adenocarcinoma of stomach with atypical glands and nuclear pleomorphism (**a**) immunostained with CEA (**b**)

can be used in targeted therapies against gastric cancer [134–136]. Immunoprofile of gastric adenocarcinoma is demonstrated in Table 29.15 (Fig. 29.21).

29.5.4 Small Intestine

Immunophenotyping of adenocarcinoma is also valuable in neuroendocrine tumors (NET) [137–139]. Tables 29.14 and 29.15 summarize the immunoprofile of normal small intestine, its adenocarcinoma, as well as their comparison with stomach and colon adenocarcinoma.

29.5.5 Colon

In contrast to older studies, which have discussed colon cancers generally, recent studies reveal that colon cancers arise from two different pathways (chromosomal instability of APC gene vs. microsatellite instability (MSI) pathway with different immunophenotypic features) [123, 140–146].

Table 29.16 Immunoprofile of colon adenocarcinoma based on chromosomal instability and MSI pathways

Chromosomal instability pathway (80–85%)		MSI pathway (15–20%)	
CK20	100%	CK20	Can be negative in about 30%
MUC2	Usually positive	MLH1	Complete absence of staining with a sufficient internal control needed for a positive result
MUC5AC	Usually negative (about 30% positive, especially in mucinous carcinomas)	MSH2	
CAM5.2	Usually positive	MSH6	
MOC31	Usually positive	PMS2	
CDX2	About 90%	CDX2	Can be negative in about 20%
CK7	5–10%		
CEA	Usually positive especially monoclonal type		
CK8	Usually positive		
CK18	Usually positive		
CK19	Usually positive		
CKAE1/AE3	Usually positive		
MSI-related markers	These markers are usually positive in this subtype of colon carcinomas		

Table 29.17 Immunoprofile of normal pancreas

Marker			Normal tissue
Exocrine	Glandular/ductal	Epithelial	CAM5.2, AE1/AE3, CK7, CK8/1/8/19
		MUC	MUC1, MUC6
		ONP	–
	Acinar		Trypsin, chemotrypsin, lipase, amylase, elastase
Endocrine			CGN, SYN, NSE

Immunoprofile of normal and colon adenocarcinoma is denoted in Tables 29.14, 29.15, and 29.16.

29.5.6 Anal

The most frequent anal cancers are SCC and adenocarcinoma. Anal SCC is almost similar to SCC of other origins; nonetheless, the role of HPV is highlighted. Adenocarcinomas of anus are usually positive for CK7 and negative for CK20, CDX2, and CK5/6, which helps to differentiate them from adenocarcinomas of the colon origin [145, 147, 148].

29.5.7 Appendix

Mucinous adenocarcinomas of appendix origin can be distinguished from mucinous colorectal carcinomas with immunostaining for CK7 and MUC markers [149–151].

29.5.8 Pancreas

Pancreas is composed of glandular/ductal, acinal epithelium, and endocrine cells. Pancreatic neoplasms can be roughly divided into two categories of exocrine and endocrine system neoplasms. This part mostly discusses about the exocrine system and mostly adenocarcinomas of this area. Additionally, tumor suppressor genes including DPC4 and SMAD4 are inactivated in about 50–60% of the adenocarcinomas of this site [123, 152, 153]. Immunoprofile of normal pancreas and some pancreatic tumors are summarized in Tables 29.17 and 29.18. Figure 29.22 depicts solid-pseudopapillary neoplasm.

Table 29.18 Immunoprofile of some pancreatic tumors: pancreatic ductal adenocarcinoma (PDAC), acinar cell carcinoma (ACC), neuroendocrine carcinoma (NEC), and solid-pseudopapillary neoplasm (SPN)

Marker			PDAC	ACC	NEC	SPN (Fig. 29.22)
Exocrine	Glandular/ductal	Epithelial	CAM5.2, AE1/AE3, CK7, CK8/18/19, pCEA, PSCA	CAM5.2, AE1/AE3, CK8/18, EMA	CAM5.2, AE1/AE3, CK19	– (positive for β-Catenin, vimentin, PR, CD10)
		MUC	MUC1, 3, 4, 5AC, 6 (+/−)	–	–	–
		ONP	CA19.9, CA125, B72.3, DUPAN-2, CECAM1	–	–	–
	Acinar		–	Trypsin, chemotrypsin, lipase, amylase, elastase	–	α1-antitrypsin
Endocrine			–	CGN, SYN	CGN, SYN, NSE, CD56, CD57	CGN, SYN, NSE, CD56

Note: *CGN* chromogranin, *NSE* neuron-specific enolase, *ONP* oncoprotein, *PR* progesterone receptor, *SYN* synaptophysin

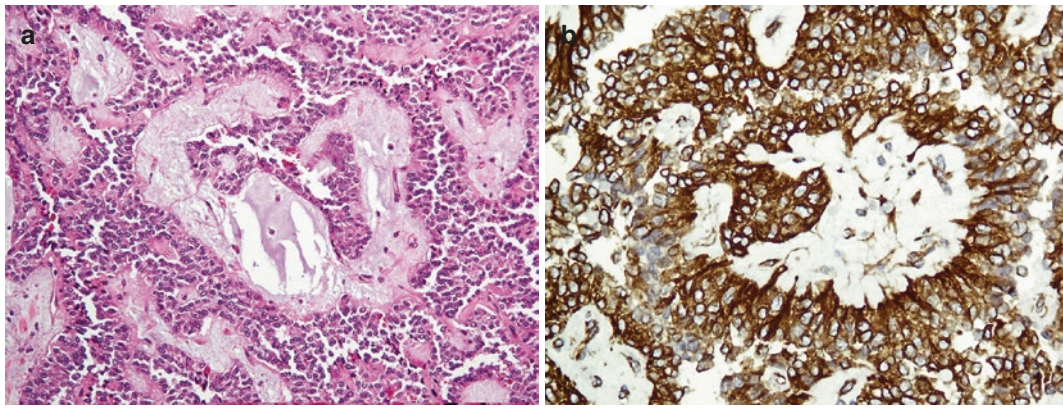


Fig. 29.22 Solid-pseudopapillary neoplasm. Papillary projection covered by relatively bland-looking cells supported by a hyalinized stroma (**a**) highlighted with vimentin (**b**)

29.5.9 Gastrointestinal Stromal Tumor

Gastrointestinal stromal tumor (GIST) is a soft tissue tumor of GI wall, which is in differential diagnosis of leiomyoma and fibromatosis. Most GISTs express C-kit (>95%), CD34, and CD99 (Fig. 29.23). Sometimes weak positivity for S100, SMA, desmin, and synaptophysin (but not chromogranin) can also be found [145, 154, 155].

29.5.10 Neuroendocrine Carcinomas

Neuroendocrine tumors arise from different organs. Most have similar morphology and tumor marker expression and the most important diagnostic clues are histologic features, as well as immunostaining for synaptophysin, chromogranin, and NSE (Fig. 29.24). In addition to the mentioned markers most of neuroendocrine tumors can express the tissue markers in which they are originated which help to diagnose the origin of metastatic neuroendocrine tumors [153, 156–158].

29.6 Immunohistochemistry of the Urinary Tract

29.6.1 Kidney

Renal cell carcinoma (RCC) is the most common tumor of the kidney with variants of clear renal cell carcinoma (CRCC), papillary renal cell carcinoma

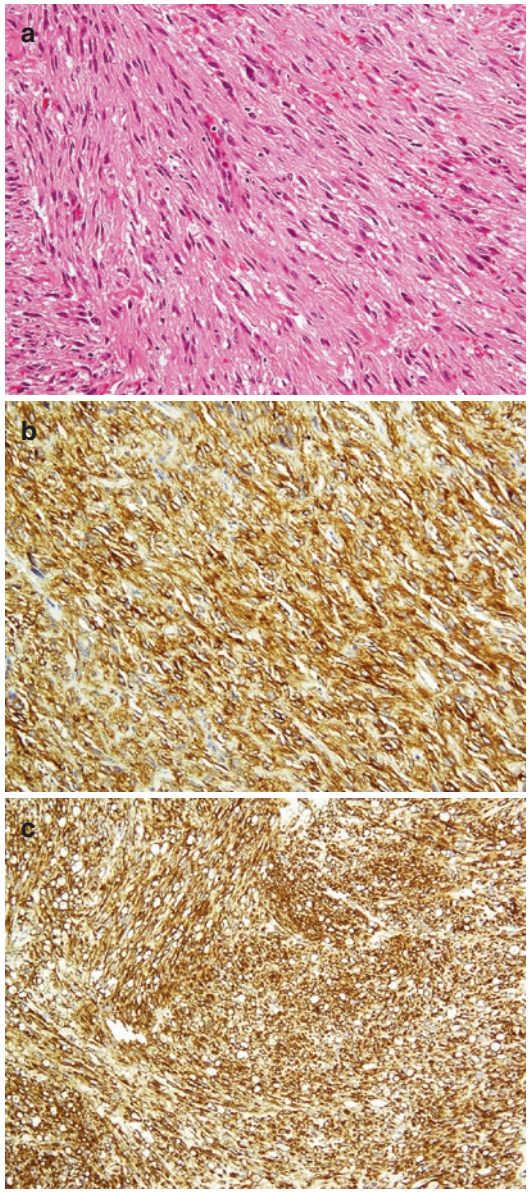


Fig. 29.23 Gastrointestinal stromal tumor. A low-grade intestinal wall tumor shows uniform spindle cells with elongated nuclei (**a**), with immunoreaction to C-kit (**b**) and CD34 (**c**)

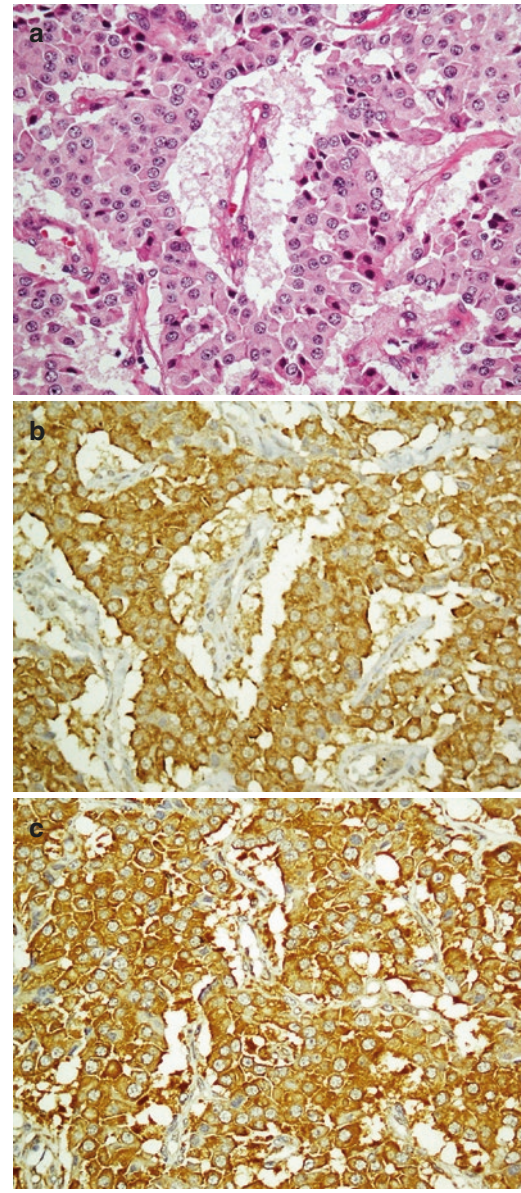


Fig. 29.24 Neuroendocrine carcinoma consists of atypical cells with round nuclei and dusty chromatin (**a**). Tumor cells are immunostained with chromogranin (**b**) and synaptophysin (**c**)

(PRCC), and chromophobe carcinoma (CC). Commonly used immunohistochemical Abs in the urinary system are summarized in Table 29.19. Immunohistochemistry is an ancillary test used to distinguish variants of RCC as well as tumors with histopathologic similarities including collecting duct carcinoma and urothelial carcinoma of the renal pelvis. Carcinomas with clear cell feature include CRCC (Fig. 29.25), papillary renal cell carcinoma, and transitional (urothelial) cell carcinoma of the renal pelvis. Differential diagnoses of carcinoma with oncocytic appearance are chromophobe

Table 29.19 Immunohistochemical markers in the urinary system tumors

Marker	Function	Immunoreaction in tumor
AE1/AE3	Pan-CK epithelial marker	RCC
CAIX	Carbonic anhydrase IX: maintenance of intracellular and extracellular pH, regulatory role in cell proliferation	PRCC
CAM5.2	Intermediate cytoskeleton filament	RCC, PRCC, CC, CDC
CD10 (CALLA)	A zinc-dependent cell membrane metalloprotein	RCC, PRCC
CD117 (C-kit)	Transmembrane glycoprotein receptor tyrosine kinase	CC, CDC, OC
CK7	LMWCK (simple epithelia)	PRCC, CC, UC, PAC (+/−)
CK20	LMWCH (simple epithelia)	UC (+/−), PAC (+/−)
34βE12	HMWCK (CK1, 5, 10, 14)	CDC, UC
EGFR	Receptor with tyrosine kinase activity	UC (+/−)
Ep-Cam	Glycosylated transmembrane cell surface epithelial protein in distal nephron	PRCC (+/−), CC, CDC
HMWCK	Intermediate cytokeratin filaments of prostate basal cell	"Negative" marker in PAC
Ki-67 (MIB1)	Nuclear protein expressed in all phases of the active cell cycle (G1, S, G2, M)	Proliferative marker
Ksp-Cadherin (kidney-specific)	Calcium-dependent cell adhesion molecule plays an important role in the maintenance of tissue integrity	CC, OC
p53	Tumor suppressor protein	UC
p63	A member of p53 family transcription factor, marker of basal cells	"Negative" marker in PAC
P501S (Prostein)	A 553-amino acid protein localized to the Golgi complex	PAC
P504S (AMACR)	Enzyme mainly localized to peroxisomal structures	PRCC, PAC
PAX2/PAX8	Members of the paired box (PAX) gene family expressed in the development of the urogenital tract	RCC, PRCC, CC, CDC, OC (+/−)
PSA	330-kD glycoprotein, prostate-specific antigen	PAC
PSAP	100-kD glycoprotein, prostate-specific antigen	PAC
PSMA	100-kD glycoprotein, prostate-specific antigen	PAC
RCC	200-kD glycoprotein expressed in epithelial cells lining normal renal proximal tubule	RCC, PRCC
Thrombomodulin	75-kD glycoprotein, to convert thrombin from a coagulant protein to an anticoagulant	UC
Uroplakin III	A transmembrane protein unique to urothelium	UC
Vimentin	Intermediate cytoskeleton filament	RCC, PRCC, CDC

Note: *CC* chromophobe carcinoma, *CDC* collecting duct carcinoma, *OC* oncocytoma, *PAC* prostatic adenocarcinoma, *PRCC* papillary renal cell carcinoma, *UC* urothelial carcinoma
References: [159–193]

carcinoma, oncocytoma, and oncocytic papillary RCC (Fig. 29.26) [163–189]. The immunophenotype of collecting duct carcinoma is 34βE12$^+$, CD10$^-$, and AMACR$^-$, in contrast to PRCC, which is 34βE12$^-$, CD10$^+$, and AMACR$^+$ [159, 164]. Considering the histopathologic pattern, the following immunopanels (Tables 29.20 and 29.21) compare the immunohistochemical Abs in these tumors.

29.6.2 Bladder

Normal urothelium exhibits a unique pattern of cytokeratin expression characterized by coexpression of simple epithelium cytokeratin (CK7, CK20, and CAM5.2) and HMWCK (CK5/6 and 34βE12). While CK20 is expressed in umbrella cells of the normal urothelium, in dysplastic urothelium and carcinoma in situ, it is expressed in all layers of the urothelium [159–163, 177, 178]. CD44 is expressed in the basal layer of normal urothelium and shows focal staining of basal layers of the dysplastic urothelium [179]. Urothelial carcinomas are divided into: (1) non-invasive papillary carcinoma and (2) invasive carcinoma which can appear as papillary or non-papillary itself (Fig. 29.27). Immunohistochemistry can be helpful to differentiate urothelial carcinoma

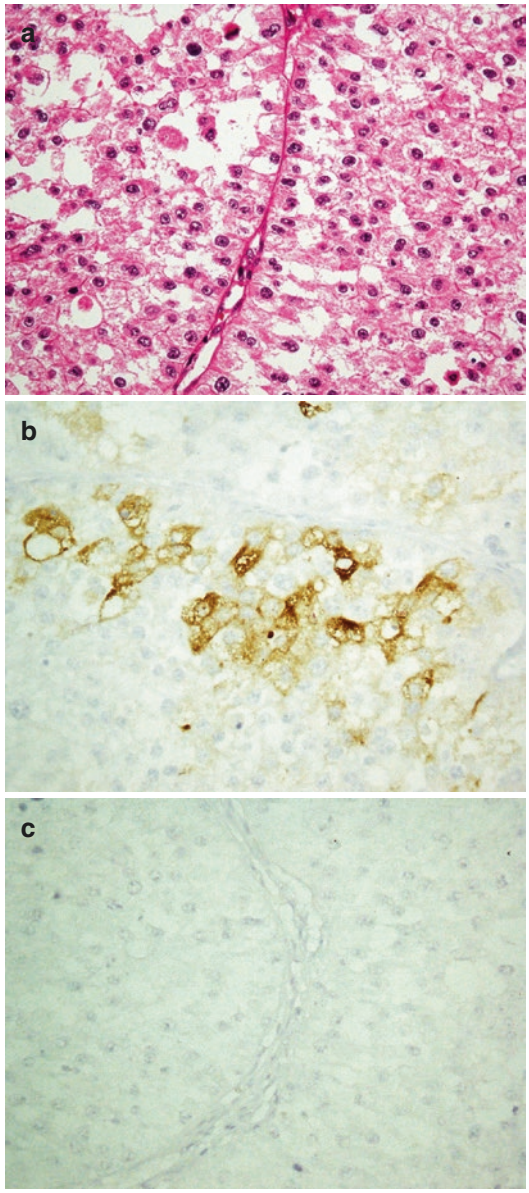


Fig. 29.25 Renal cell carcinoma with eosinophilic to clear cells (**a**) is immunostained with CD10 (**b**) but not with CK20 (**c**)

from direct extension of an adjacent primary carcinoma (prostate, colorectal, cervix, and uterine) as well as metastasis and also to distinguish variants of urothelial carcinoma. Common immunohistochemistry Abs in normal urothelium, urothelial hyperplasia, urothelial dysplasia, and urothelial carcinoma are summarized in Table 29.22.

29.7 Immunohistochemistry of Female and Male Genital Tumors

29.7.1 Uterine Cervix

The most important and also frequent cervix cancers are cervix SCCs and adenocarcinomas. Cervix SCC markers are similar to those seen in SCCs of other origins. P16 is a unique marker expressed in tumors of cervix, which can help in differentiating this lesion from same counterparts from uterine or other origins. Adenocarcinomas of cervix also express most adenocarcinoma markers. One of the advantages of IHC is to differentiate adenocarcinomas of cervix from endometrium. Cervix adenocarcinomas usually express p16 and CEA, and are negative for vimentin and ER, whereas endometrium adenocarcinomas have a reverse expression pattern [185–190].

29.7.2 Vulva and Vagina

As other organs, various malignancies can occur in these two organs but similar to cervix the most common cancer of these two sites is SCC, with IHC marker expression similar to cervix counterparts [191, 192].

29.7.3 Uterine Corpus

Uterine tumors are of myometrium or endometrium origin. The myometrial tumors are usually sarcomas and were discussed in the sarcoma section. The endometrium may develop various cancers, but the most frequent one is endometrial adenocarcinoma. Endometrial adenocarcinoma has some variants in which endometrioid adenocarcinoma is the most frequent one. Endometrioid adenocarcinoma usually expresses CK7, CA125, ER, PR, and vimentin, but is negative for CEA, CK20, and p16. Some endometrial carcinomas express Her2/neu marker, which along with ER and PR markers can be used in targeted therapies [185–190, 193–196].

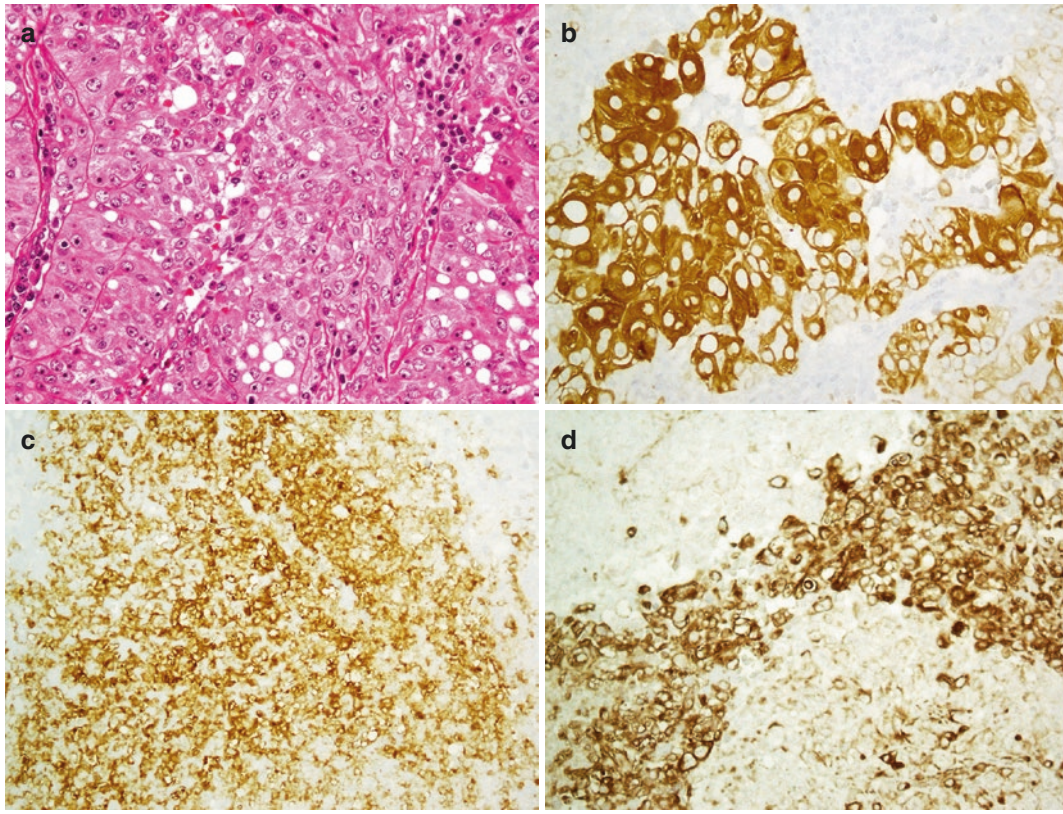


Fig. 29.26 Papillary renal cell carcinoma with oncocytic feature (**a**). Tumor cells are positive for CK7 (**b**), CD10 (**c**) and vimentin (**d**)

Table 29.20 Immunoprofile of kidney carcinoma with clear cell appearance: Clear RCC (CRCC), papillary RCC (PRCC), and urothelial carcinoma (UC)

Tumor	CK7	CK20	Vimentin	RCC	CD10	PAX2/8	AMARC	Uroplakin	p63
CRCC	–	–	+	+	+	+	–	–	–
PRCC	+	–	+	+	+	+	+	–	–
UC	+	+	–	–	–	–	–	+	+

References: [159–169]

Table 29.21 Immunoprofile of kidney carcinoma with oncocytic cell appearance: oncocytic papillary RCC (OPRCC), chromophobe carcinoma (CC), and oncocytoma (OC)

Tumor	CK7	CK20	CAM5.2, EMA, AE1/AE3	Vimentin	RCC	CAIX	CD10	CD117	Ep-Cam	Ksp-Cadherin
OPRCC	+	–	+	+	+	+	+	–	+	–
CC	+	–	+	–	–	–	–	–	+	+
OC	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	+	–	+

References: [172–176]

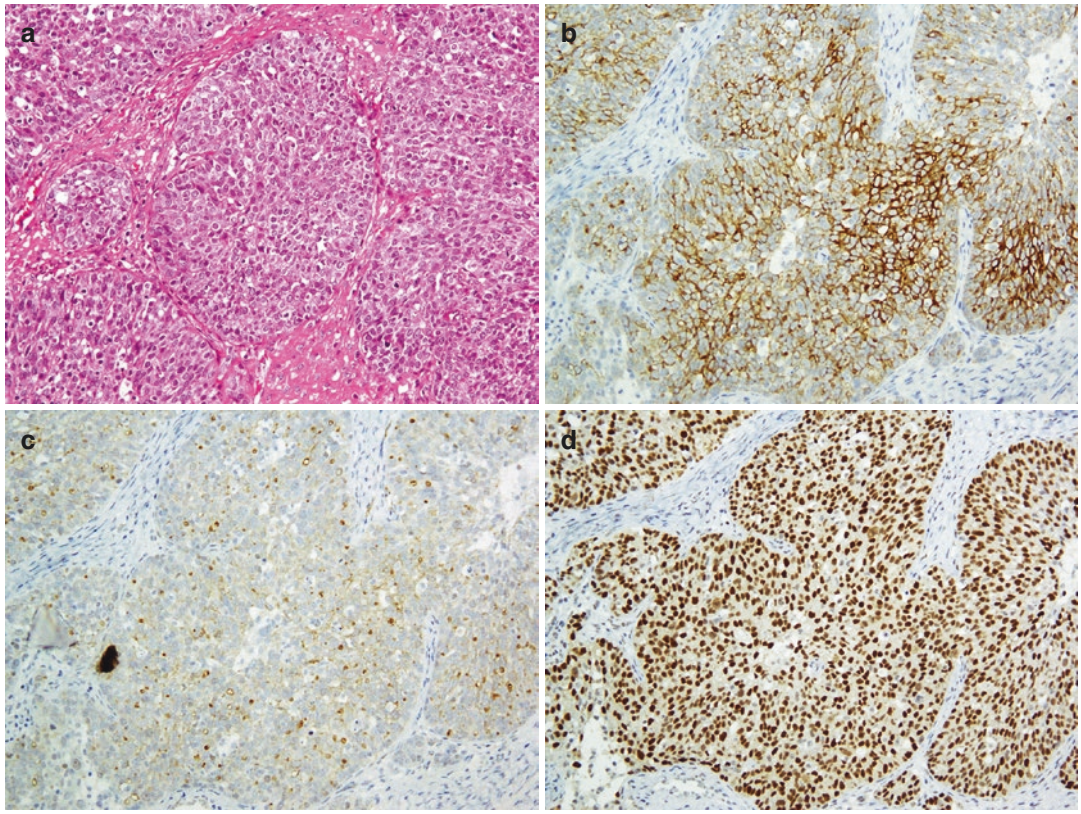


Fig. 29.27 Transitional cell carcinoma, invasive, non-papillary type (**a**). Tumor cells exhibit immunoreaction with CK7 (**b**), CK20 (**c**) and p63 (**d**)

Table 29.22 Antibody immunoprofile in normal urothelium, urothelial hyperplasia, dysplasia, and carcinoma

Marker	Normal urothelium	Urothelial hyperplasia	Urothelial dysplasia	Urothelial carcinoma
CK7	+	+	ND	+
CK20	+ U	+	+	+
34βE12	+ B	ND	ND	+
CD44	+ B	ND	−/+	ND
EGFR	−/+	+	+/−	+/−
p63	ND	ND	ND	+[a]
UPIII	+ U	ND	ND	+[a]
TM	+ U	ND	ND	+[a]
p53	−	−	+	+[a]

Note: + (>90%), +/− (>50%), −/+ (<50%), − (<10%). *B* basal layer, *TM* thrombomodulin, *U* umbrella cell, *UPIII* uroplakin III
References: [177–184]
[a]Non-invasive carcinoma > invasive carcinoma

29.7.4 Ovary

Except the intestinal type of mucinous adenocarcinoma, all primary ovarian carcinomas are CK7-positive and CK20-negative (Fig. 29.28). This can be used in differentiating primary ovarian carcinoma from metastatic tumors [149–151, 189, 197–200]. The immunophenotype of primary ovarian tumors is described in Table 29.23.

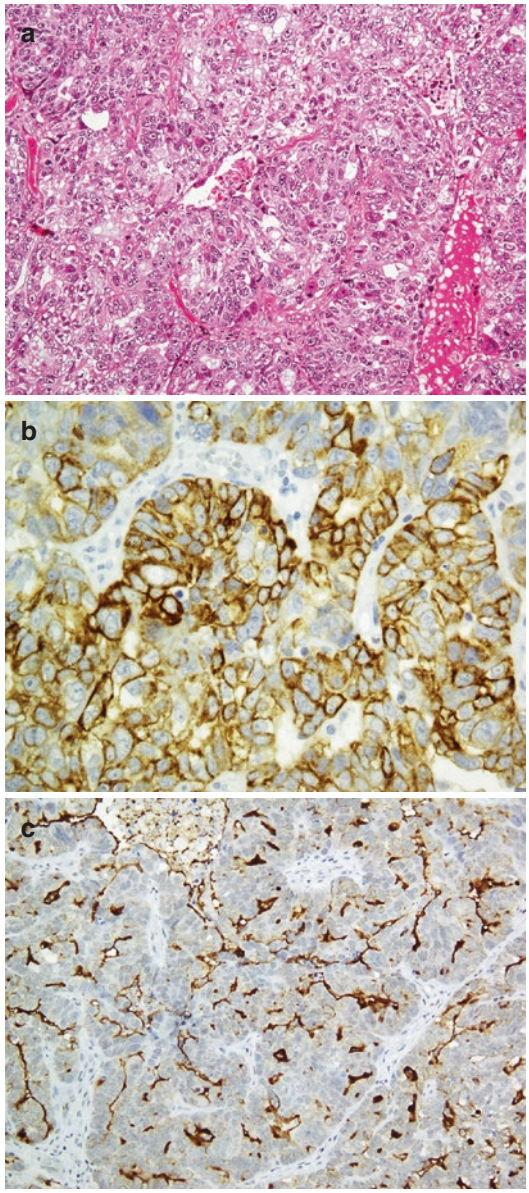


Fig. 29.28 Ovarian serous carcinoma poorly differentiated (**a**), shows immunoreaction with CK7 (**b**). CA125 is highlighted in the luminal surface (**c**)

29.7.5 Breast

Breast cancer is one of the most common malignancies with various histopathological types; however, adenocarcinomas and its two subtypes including invasive ductal (IDC) and lobular carcinomas (ILC) comprise the majority. Most breast cancers including IDC and ILC are positive for mammaglobin, GCDFP15, ER, PR and some are positive for Her2/neu markers. Additionally, epithelial tumor markers, CK (especially CK7) and EMA, are also positive in these tumors [201–206]. The lack of reaction with myoepithelial markers is in favor of an invasive carcinoma. Both normal (Fig. 29.29) and proliferative glands (Fig. 29.30) as well as ductal carcinoma in situ (Fig. 29.31) exhibit reactivity with myoepithelial markers. Application of p63 and calponin or p63 and SMA is a good way to evaluate the presence of myoepithelial cells [201, 207]. Immunoprofile of normal breast glands and breast cancers are summarized in Tables 29.24 and 29.25 (Figs. 29.32 and 29.33).

29.7.6 Prostate

Prostate gland is composed of two layers, epithelium and basal cell layer. Normal prostate epithelium exhibits immunoreactivity with prostate-specific antigen (PSA), prostate-specific membrane antigen (PSMA), prostate-specific acid phosphatase (PSAP), and prostein (P501S) whereas prostate basal cells display immunostaining with HMWCK (34βE12), p63, and S100A6 (Fig. 29.34) [159–163, 210]. Immunolabeling for basal cell markers is usually used in a mode of "negative" diagnostic marker in order to show the absence of basal cells in prostate carcinoma (Fig. 29.35). Basal cell cocktail is a mixture of basal cell markers (HMWCH and p63 or CK5/6 and p63) used to highlight the presence of basal cells in normal glands, which differentiates them from prostate intraepithelial neoplasia (PIN) and prostate adenocarcinoma [211]. In addition, prostatic adenocarcinomas usually express α-Methylacyl coenzyme A racemase (AMACR) enzyme, which is negative in normal prostatic epithelium and helps to differentiate its malignant lesions from benign neoplasms. Most of metastatic carcinomas from prostate origin exhibits reactivity to CK 7 and CK20 as well as PSA (Fig. 29.36) Table 29.26 summarizes the immunoprofile of normal prostate glands as compared with PIN and adenocarcinoma.

Table 29.23 Immunophenotype of ovarian cancers

Epithelial tumors		Germ cell tumors				Stromal tumors (almost always negative for EMA)	
Serous (Fig. 29.28)	Mucinous	Dysgerminoma	Yolk sac	Embryonal carcinoma	Chori-carcinoma	Granulosa cell tumor	Sertoli-Leydig cell tumor
EMA CK7 CA125 DPC4 ER PR WT1	EMA CK7 CK20 mCEA CDX2 MUC5A	PLAP CD117 (c-kit) Oct-4 D2-40	PLAP AFP CK AE1/AE3 Glypican-3	PLAP Oct-4 CK AE1/AE3 CD30	HCG Inhibin CK	Inhibin CD99 WT1 Calretinin CD56	CK CD99 WT1

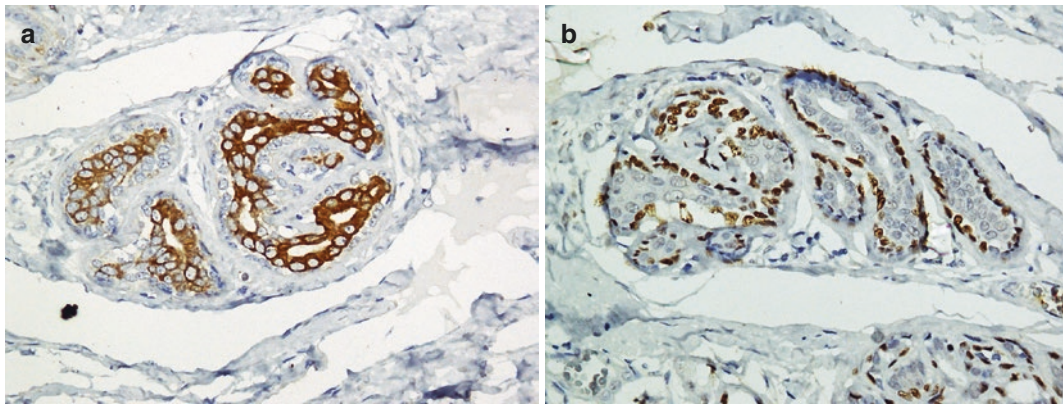


Fig. 29.29 Cytokeratin (**a**) stains epithelial cells and p63 (**b**) stains myoepithelial cells of normal breast glands

29.7.7 Testis

Tasticular tumors are classified into germ cell tumors and sex-cord stromal tumors. Germ cell tumors are the most common type with classic seminoma subtype comprising the majority. The definite diagnosis of these tumors is depended on proper application of the immunohistochemistric markers and histopathologic evaluation of the biopsy (Figs. 29.37, 29.38, and 29.39). Table 29.27 summarizes the immunophenotype of testicular tumors.

29.8 Immunohistochemistry of Lymphoma

Immunohistochemistry is an integrated part of diagnostic surgical pathology of Hodgkin lymphoma (HL) and non-Hodgkin lymphoma (NHL). Various Ags, mostly CD markers, are the targets of IHC. Neoplastic lymphoid cells express the same CD Ags with some aberrancy in type and amount. Several oncogene products are also expressed in some lymphomas (i.e., Follicular lymphoma). These Ags have diagnostic and probably prognostic value. Proliferative Ags like Ki67 are also of great value.

Morphology is the main stem of lymphoma diagnosis; nonetheless, IHC seems mandatory for the diagnosis and typing of malignant lymphoma. As a general rule, panels should be used for immunophenotypic evaluation and there is no single marker absolutely specific for one definite lymphoproliferative disorder. Some routinely used markers are shown in Tables 29.28, 29.29, 29.30, 29.31, and 29.32 and Figs. 29.40, 29.41, 29.42, and 29.43.

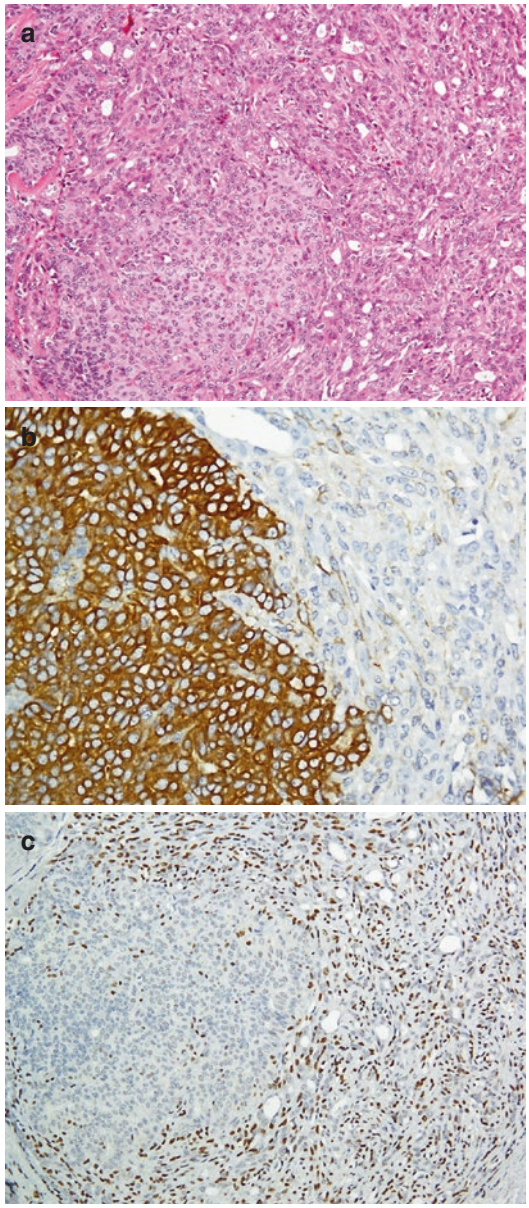


Fig. 29.30 Breast proliferative lesion (**a**). Presence of myoepithelial cells confirmed by immunoreaction to HMWCK (**b**) and p63 (**c**) which is indicative of a benign process

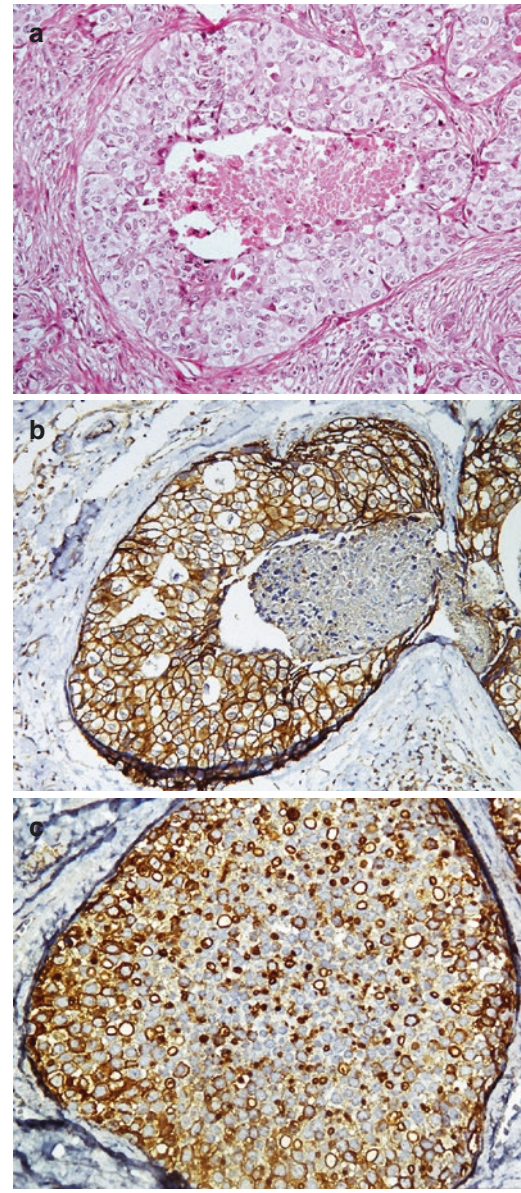


Fig. 29.31 Ductal carcinoma in situ (**a**) is immunostained with Her2neu (**b**) and CA15.3 (**c**)

29.9 Immunohistochemistry of Soft Tissue and Bone Tumors

Soft tissue sarcomas are a diverse family with different histologic origins and common histo-

Table 29.24 Immunoprofile of normal breast gland tissue

Normal epithelium	Immunoreactive antibodies
Luminal cells (LC)	CK8/18, CK19
Myoepithelial cells (MC)	CK5/6, CK14, CK17, p63, SMA, calponin, CD10
Both LC and MC	Pan-CK, AE1/AE3, CK7, S100

Table 29.25 Immunoprofile of invasive ductal carcinoma (IDC) and invasive lobular carcinoma (ILC) (Figs. 29.32 and 26.33)

Marker	IDC	ILC
Mamoglobin	−/+	+/−
ER	+/−	+
GCDFP15	−/+	−/+
E-cadherin	+	−
p120	+	+
34βE12	−	+

Note: + (>90%), +/− (>50%), −/+ (<50%), − (<10%)
References: [201, 206–209]

pathologic features. Given similar histopathologic features, immunohistochemistry is an ancillary method in distinguishing soft tissue tumors in order to attain a final diagnosis. As soft tissue tumor classification is based on specific line tissue origin, immunohistochemistry study by using specific Abs can be valuable in distinguishing them. Soft tissue tumors are vimentin-positive and keratin-negative tumors of a divergence family with heterogenous tissue origins. Vimentin, a nonspecific marker, appears to react with all soft tissue tumors and is considered as a control marker preserved in the tissue [256–262]. Immunohistochemistry of normal mesenchymal tissues with related tumors are summarized in Table 29.33.

29.9.1 Epithelial Markers

Recognized as an intermediate filament protein, Keratin is a sensitive and specific marker in the diagnosis of carcinomas among malignant tumors. Epithelial membrane antigen (EMA), derived from the mammary epithelium, is another epithelial marker expressed in most epithelial cells except squamous cells. Keratin and EMA are expressed exceptionally in some soft tissue tumors including synovial sarcoma, epithelioid sarcoma, chordoma, and myoepithelioma/myoepithelial carcinoma (previously known as parachordoma) [263].

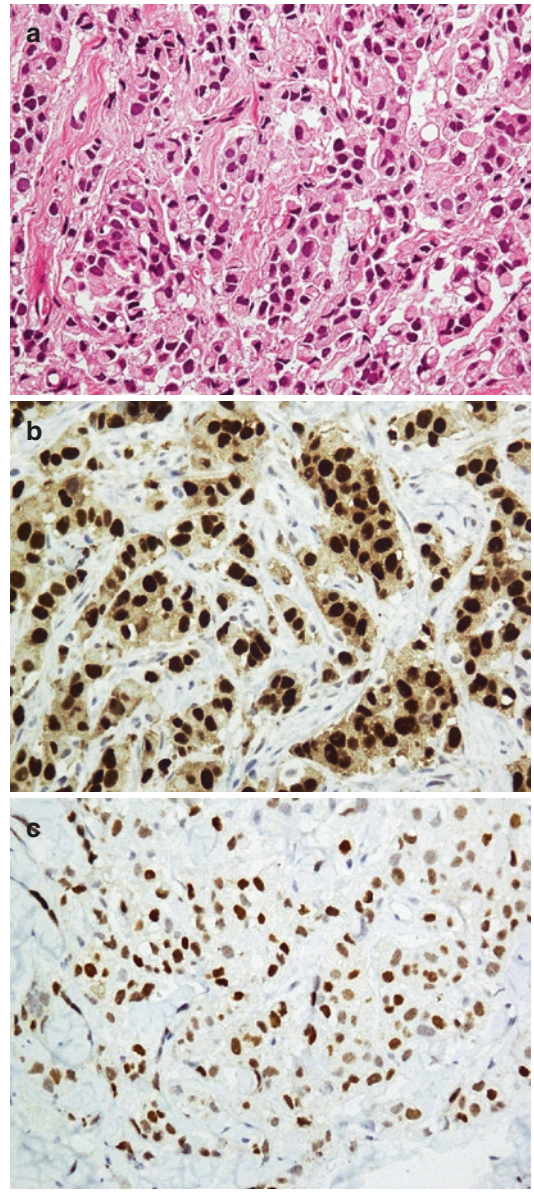


Fig. 29.32 Invasive ductal carcinoma (**a**) with ER (**b**) and PR (**c**) immunoreaction

29.9.2 Myogenic Markers

There are some Abs, which react with myogenic cells including desmin, actin, myoglobin, myoD1, myogenin, caldesmon, and calponin. Desmin

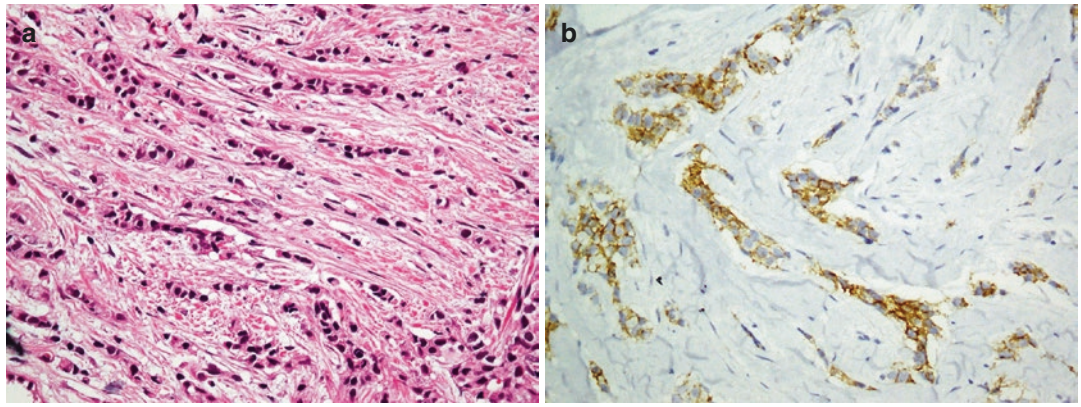


Fig. 29.33 Infiltrating carcinoma with Indian file pattern simulating lobular carcinoma (**a**), revealing immunoreaction with E-cadherin which is in favor of invasive ductal carcinoma (**b**)

is an intermediate filament protein present in the cytoplasm of smooth and skeletal muscles. The Ab against this protein reacts with myogenic tumors such as rhabdomyoma, leiomyoma, rhabdomyosarcoma, and leiomyosarcoma (Fig. 29.44) [264]. Similar to desmin, actin is another myogenic protein detected in smooth and skeletal muscles. In addition, smooth muscle actin may react with some other cells like myofibroblasts and myoepithelial cells [265–267]. Myoglobin is exclusively seen in skeletal muscle cytoplasm, whereas myo-D1 and myogenin are nuclear transcription factors, which are specifically expressed in skeletal muscle nuclei [268–270]. Myogenin has technical advantages over those of MyoD1, as the latter may cross-react with an unknown cytoplasmic Ag in non-muscle cells and tumors [271, 272]. However, Abs against these Ags are useful in determining rhabdomyosarcoma (Fig. 29.45). Calponin, a smooth muscle protein, is also expressed in myofibroblasts and myoepithelial cells and limits the usefulness of diagnostic pathology [49]. A relatively smooth muscle-specific marker being expressed in cytoplasm, Caldesmon is a useful Ab in distinguishing smooth muscle tumors from myofibroblastic tumors [273]. A novel Ag of smooth muscle differentiation, transgelin is a calponin-related protein found in smooth muscle showing higher sensitivity and specificity than other markers [274].

29.9.3 Nerve and Schwann Cell Markers

First isolated from the central nervous system (CNS), S-100 protein is known as a marker of nerve sheath tumors as well as melanocytic and chondrocytic tumors. S-100 is expressed by a wide range of cell types including glial cells, neurons, Schwann cells, melanocytes, chondrocytes, lipocytes, myoepithelial cells, sustentacular cells, Langerhans histiocytes, interdigitating reticulum cells, and various epithelia [27]. CD56 (neural cell adhesion molecule) and CD57 (myelin-associated glycoprotein) are expressed by a variety of different cell types including tissues of peripheral nervous system (PNS) and CNS, as well as natural killer (NK) cells and neuroendocrine cells [275–277].

29.9.4 Endothelial Markers

von Willebrand factor (vWF) is exclusively expressed by endothelial cells and is principally used to distinguish vascular neoplasms from their morphologic mimickers. Due to low sensitivity of vWF in detecting high grade vascular neoplasms, other endothelial markers such as CD31, CD34, and FLI -1 have limited the routine use of vWF in the context of vascular tumors. Given similar sensitivity to CD34,

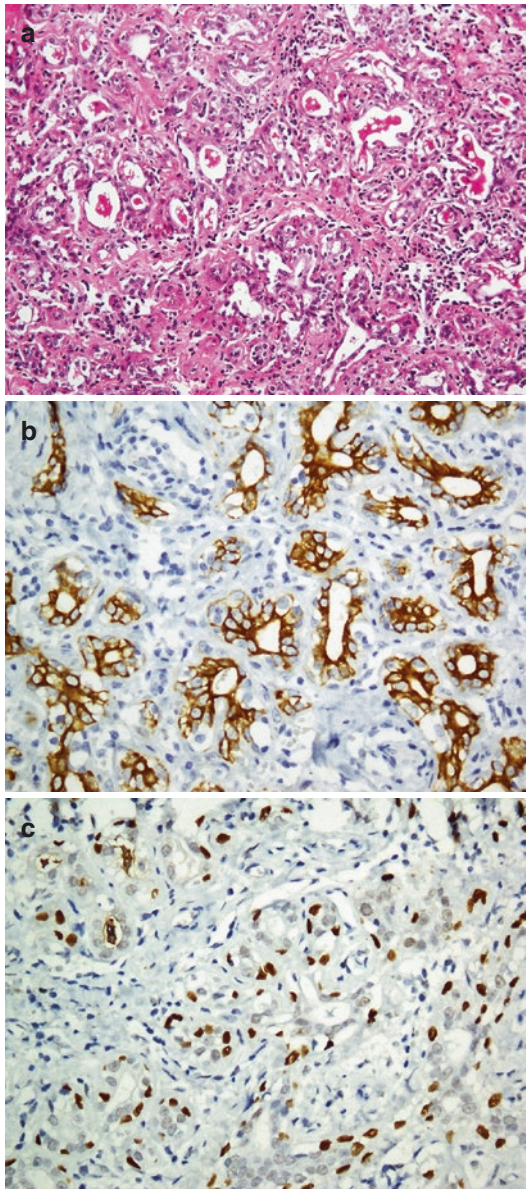


Fig. 29.34 Normal prostate epithelium (**a**) is immunostained with PSA (**b**) and basal cells are immunoreacted with p63 (**c**)

CD31 is expressed by macrophages, being a more specific vascular marker than CD34. CD34 is expressed by bone marrow hematopoietic precursor cells and dendritic interstitial cells limiting its application in vascular tumors [278–281]. As a nuclear transcription factor, FLI-1 (Freund's leukemia integration site) is an endothelial marker expressed in vascular tumors as well as ES/PNET and lymphoblastic lymphoma [56].

29.9.5 Fibrohistiocytic Markers

There are some nonspecific markers such as alpha1-antitrypsin, muramidase (lysozyme), alpha1-antichymotrypsin, cathepsin B, CD68, CD163, factor XIIIa, and the HAM 56 Ag which are expressed in melanomas, carcinomas, as well as some sarcomas like MFH [282–288]. Therefore, application of these markers is limited and should be considered after ruling out other sarcomas with specific line differentiation.

29.9.6 Lipocytic Markers

MDM2 (an inhibitor of p53 transcriptional activation) and CDK4 (a protein involved with cell cycle progression) are markers to separate dedifferentiated liposarcomas from other poorly differentiated sarcomas [289].

29.9.7 Chondrocyte Markers

Chondrocytes do not display specific markers, and show reactivity with S100 and vimentin. Chondrosarcoma also exhibits reactivity with CD57 [290]. Being as a master regulator of chondrogenesis, SOX9 is a sensitive marker for cartilogenous differentiation distinguishing mesenchymal chondrosarcoma from other small blue round cell tumors [291].

29.9.8 Osteogenic Markers

Osteocalcin (a non-collagenous intraosseous protein) with approximately 70% sensitivity is a completely specific marker for bone-forming tumors. In addition, osteonectin (a bone matrix glycoprotein participates in stromal mineralization) also a sensitivity of 90% and a specificity of

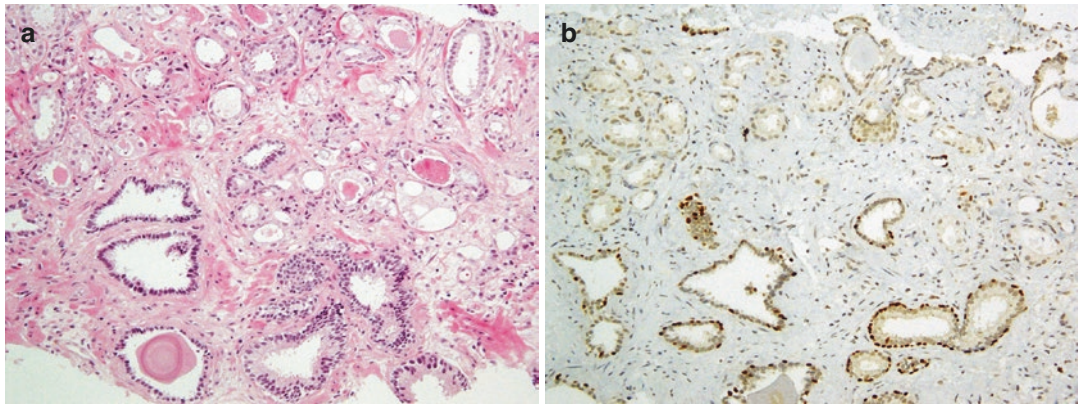


Fig. 29.35 Atypical prostate glands in the top of the picture which are highly suspicious to adenocarcinoma (**a**), show negative reaction to p63 (**b**). Some normal glands at the bottom of picture exhibit reaction with p63

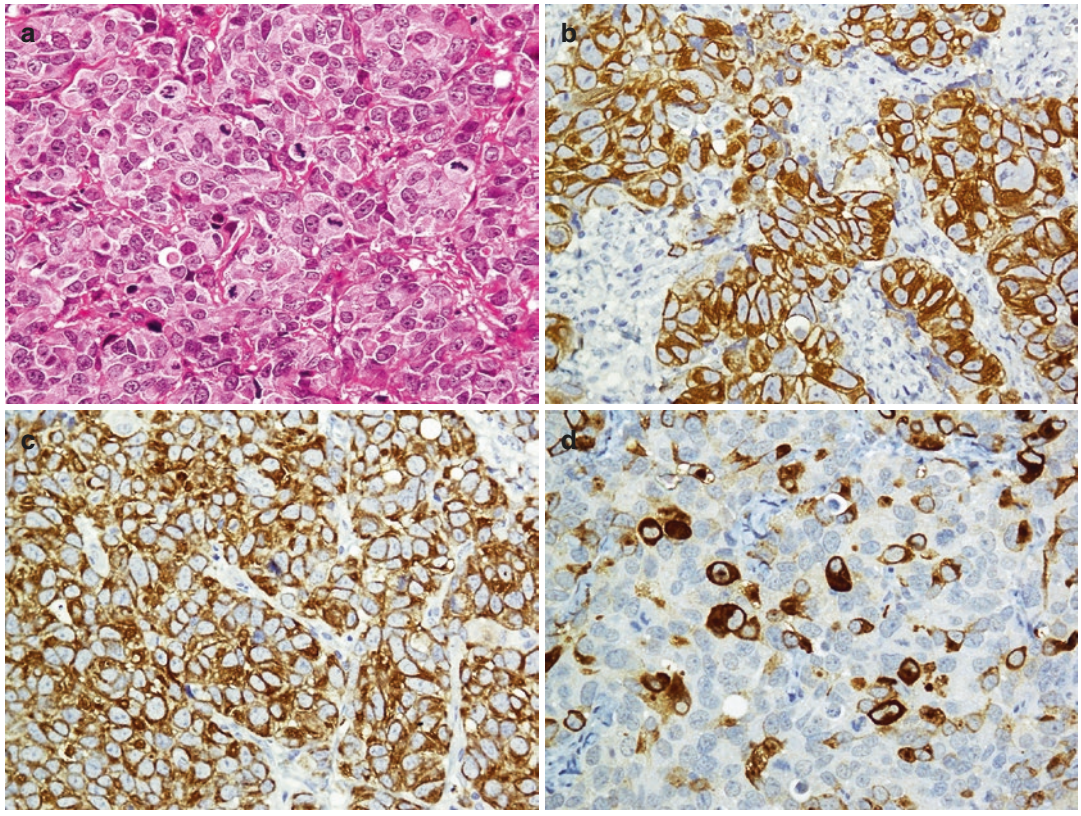


Fig. 29.36 An undifferentiated carcinoma from pelvis with high mitotic rate (**a**) demonstrates cytoplasmic reaction with CK7 (**b**), CK20 (**c**) and PSA (**d**) which support the origin of this tumor as prostate

54% in the diagnosis of osteoblastic neoplasms [292, 293]. These markers are rarely being used in routine diagnosis because the diagnosis of the osteosarcoma is based on the presence of osteoid in the H&E stained slides.

29.9.9 Unknown-Origin Soft Tissue Tumors

Ewing sarcoma/peripheral nerve sheath tumor (ES/PNET) comprises a prototype of small

Table 29.26 Immunoprofile of normal prostate (NP), high-grade prostate intraepithelial neoplasia (HGPIN), and prostate adenocarcinoma (PAC)

Marker	NP	HGPIN	PAC	Application
PSA	+E	+	+	Weak reaction in HGPAC or metastatic carcinoma, to differentiate HGPAD from other undifferentiated carcinoma (colon, urothelium)
PSAP	+E	+	+	Similar to PSA
PSMA	+E	+	++	Correlated with grade and stage, more intense in HGPAC
P501S	+E	+	+	To differentiate high grade PAC from other high-grade adenocarcinomas (colon, urothelium)
P504S (AMACR)	–	++	++	Combine with basal cell markers to differentiate HGPIN and PAC from normal prostate
HMWCK (34βE12)	+B	Partial loss	–	Complete loss in PAC ("negative" marker)
p63	+B	Partial loss	–	More sensitive than HMWCK ("negative" marker)
CK5/6	+B	Partial loss	–	More sensitive than HMWCK ("negative" marker)

Note: *B* basal cell, *E* epithelium
References: [211–219]

round cell neoplasms of bone and soft tissue exhibiting neuroectodermal features. As a product of the MIC2 gene, CD99 is a cell surface transmembrane glycoprotein diffusely present in nearly all tumors (Fig. 29.46) [294]. Clear cell sarcoma (malignant soft part melanoma) shares markers of malignant melanoma such as S-100, MART-1, HMB45, and tyrosinase [295]. Alveolar soft part sarcoma has been evaluated by the presence of Myo-D1 and myogenin [296, 297]. Desmoplastic small round cell tumor (DSRCT) is characterized by the coexpression of epithelial and mesenchymal markers [298]. The immunohistochemistry characteristics of these tumors are summarized in Table 29.34.

29.10 Immunohistochemistry of the Nervous System

The brain tumors are classified into two major groups: primary and metastatic. Primary brain tumors are further categorized into three major subtypes: neuroepithelial tumors (astrocytoma, oligodendroglioma, ependymoma, choroid plexus tumors, neuronal tumors, and pineal tumors), non-neuroepithelial tumors (meningioma, nerve sheath tumors, lymphoma, chordoma, and germ cell tumors) and primitive undifferentiated tumors (medulloblastoma, pineoblastoma, ependymoblastoma, and PNET) [299–305]. Primary origin

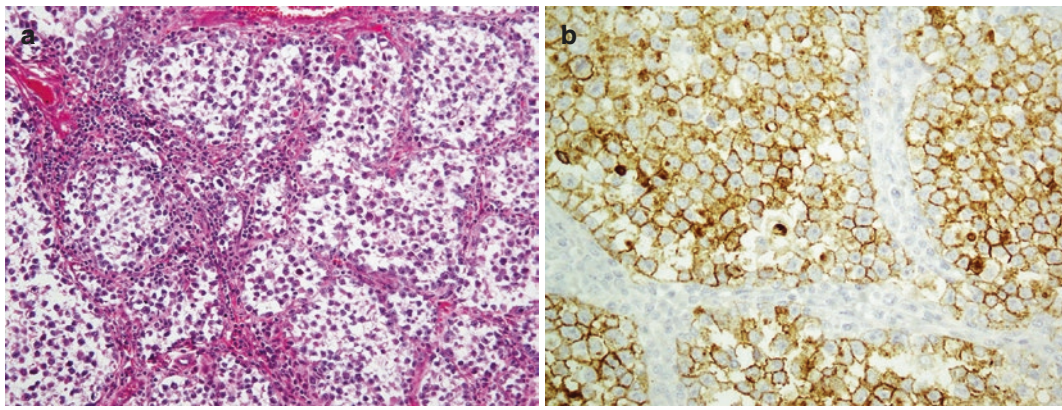


Fig. 29.37 Classic seminoma with polygonal cells and abundant watery cytoplasm (**a**) shows immunostaining with PLAP (**b**)

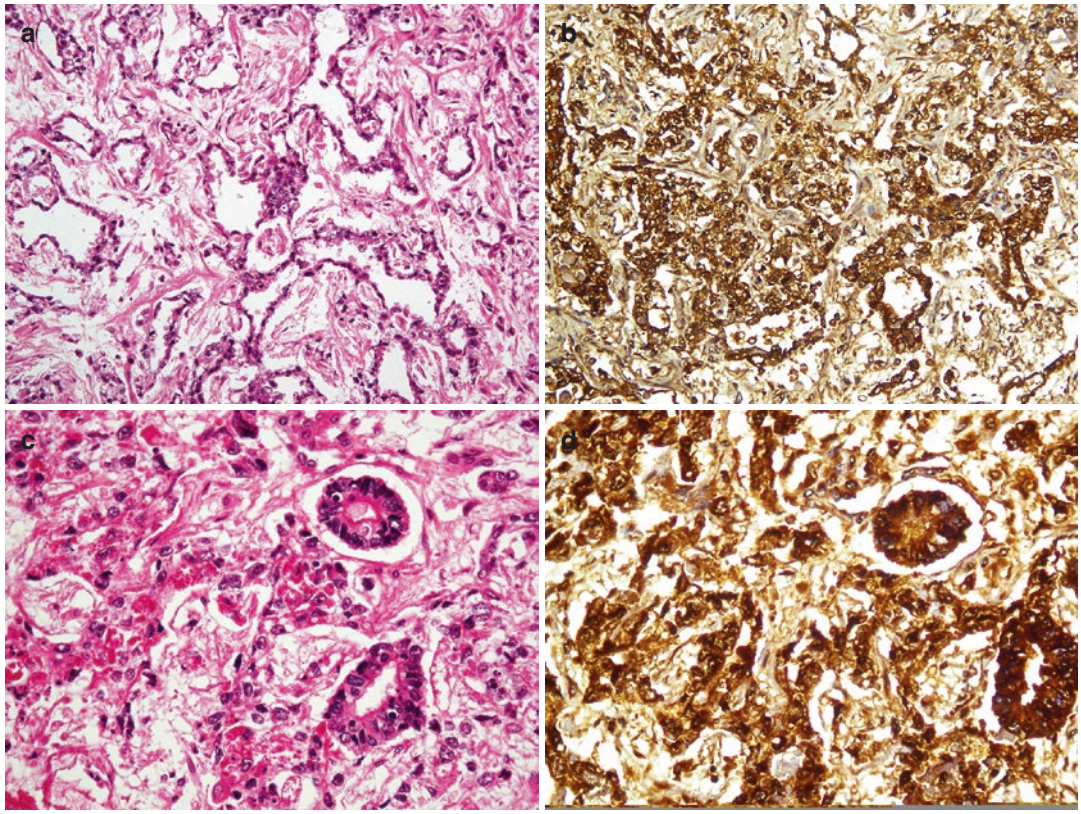


Fig. 29.38 Yolk sac tumor with tubuloglandular structures exhibits immunostaining with AFP (**a**, **b**) and glandular structures with numerous hyaline globules which are positive for AFP (**c**, **d**)

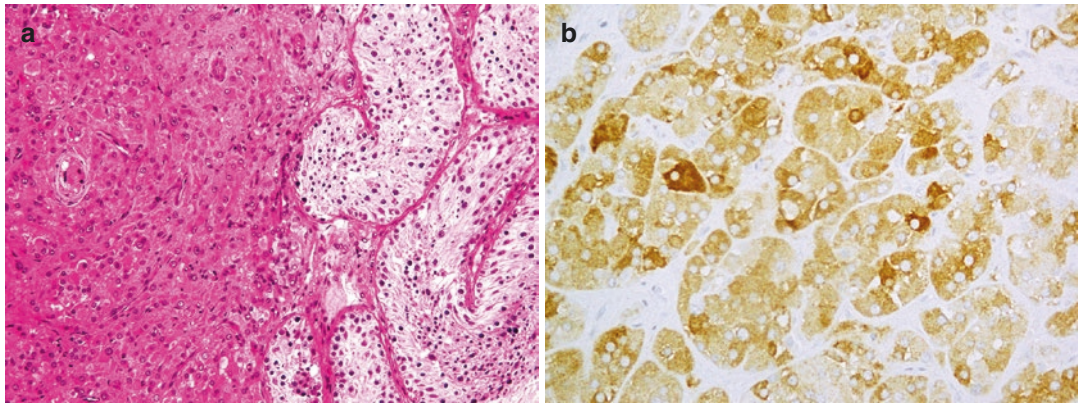


Fig. 29.39 Leydig cell tumor. Eosinophilic polygonal cells growth in the adjacent of seminiferous tubules (**a**) show immunoreaction with Inhibin-A (**b**)

of metastatic carcinoma is determined by the use of immunohistochemical panel. Commonly used IHC Abs in primary CNS tumors are demonstrated in Table 29.35.

29.10.1 Neuroepithelial Tumors

Glial tumors (astrocytoma, oligodendroglioma, and ependymoma) usually react with glial

Table 29.27 Immunophenotype of testicular tumors: classic seminoma (CS), spermatocytic seminoma (SS), embryonal carcinoma (EC), yolk sac tumor (YST), choriocarcinoma (CC), Sertoli cell tumor (SCT), and Leydig cell tumor (LCT)

Germ cell tumors (PLAP+, Inhibin−)					Sex-cord stroma tumors (PLAP−, Inhibin+)	
CS (Fig. 29.37)	SS	EC	YST (Fig. 29.38)	CC	SCT	LCT (Fig. 29.39)
C-kit+ OCT3/4+ CD117+ D2-40+	C-kit+/−	C-kit+/− OCT3/4+ AE1/AE3+ AFP+/− CD117+ CD30+	C-kit+/− AE1/AE+ AFP+ Glypican-3+ HepPar-1+	Inhibin+ AE1/AE3+ Glypican-3+ HCG+	AE1/AE−/+ CAM5.2+ Vimentin+ SMA+ SYN+ NSE+	AE1/AE−/+ GAL-3+ Vimentin+ CD99+/−

Note: + (>90%), +/− (>50%), −/+ (<50%), − (<10%)
References: [163, 220–233]

Table 29.28 Immunoprofile of precursor lymphoid neoplasms (Fig. 29.40)

Lymphoma	CD2	CD5	CD20	CD79a	PAX5	CD45	CD34	CD10	CD99	Tdt	CD43	CD56
B ALL/LBL	−	−	+/−	+	+	−/+	+	+	−	+	+	−
T ALL/LBL	+	+	−	−	−	−/+	+	+/−	+	+	+	+

Note: + (>90%), +/− (>50%), −/+ (<50%), − (<10%)
References: [234–240]

Table 29.29 Immunoprofile of small B-cell lymphomas: B-cell small lymphocytic lymphoma/chronic lymphocytic lymphoma (B SLL/CLL), mantle cell lymphoma (MCL), marginal zone lymphoma (MZL), mucosa-associated lymphoid tissue (MALT), follicular lymphoma (FL), lymphoplasmacytic lymphoma (LPL), and hairy cell leukemia (HCL)

Lymphoma	CD20	CD23	CD10	CD5	BCL6	MUM1	CD43	CyclinD1	AnnexinA1	BCL2
B SLL/CLL	+ (weak)	+	−	+	−	+/−	+	−/+	−	+
MCL	+	−/+	−	+	−	−	+	+	−	+
MZL (nodal)	+	−	−	−	−/+	+	+/−	−	−	+
MZL (MALT)	+	−	−	−	−	+/−	+/−	−	−	+
MZL (splenic)	+	−	−	−	−	+/−	−	−	−	+
FL	+	−/+	+	−	+	−	−[a]	−	−	+
LPL	+	−/+	−/+	−	−	+[b]	−/+	−	−	+
HCL	+	−/+	−/+	−	−	NT	NT	+	+	+

Note: + (>90%), +/− (>50%), −/+ (<50%), − (<10%)
References: [234–237, 241–249]
[a]Maybe positive in grade 3
[b]More intense in plasmacytoid cells

Table 29.30 Immunoprofile of some aggressive mature B-cell lymphomas: diffuse large B-cell lymphoma (DLBL), T-cell/histiocyte-rich B-cell lymphoma (TC/HRBCL), and anaplastic large-cell lymphoma kinase (ALK)

Lymphoma	CD20	CD10	MUM1	Bcl-2	Bcl-6	CD30	Ki-67	EMA	CD45	CD138
DLBCL (NOS) (Fig. 29.41)	+	+[a]	−[b]	+/−	+[a]	−[a]	<90%	−	+	−
TC/HRBCL	+	−/+	−/+	+/−	+	−	<90%	+	+	−
DLBCL Plasmablastic	−[a]	−	+	−	−	+/−	>90%	+	−[a]	+
DLBCL-ALK + (Fig. 29.42)	−	−	+/−	−	−	−	<90%	+	+ weak	+
Burkitt lymphoma	+	+	−	−[a]	+	−	>95%	−	+	−

Note: + (>90%), +/− (>50%), −/+ (<50%), − (<10%)
References: [234–237, 246, 249–252]
[a]Some cells may be weakly positive
[b]Positive in non germinal centers (35–65%)

Table 29.31 Immunoprofile of some mature T-cell/NK cell lymphomas: mycosis fungoides (MF), adult T-cell lymphoma/leukemia (ATLL), angioimmunoblastic T-cell lymphoma (AILT), anaplasticg large-cell lymphoma (ATCL), and T-cell lymphoma (TCL)

Lymphoma	CD3	CD5	CD4	CD8	CD30	ALK	TIA1	CD56
MF	+	+	+	–	+[c]	–	+[c]	–
ATLL	+	+	+[a]	–[a]	+/–	–	–	–
AILT	+	+	+	–	+[c]	–	–	–
ALCL	–/+	+	+	–	+	+ (60–80%)	+/–[d]	–
Subcutaneous Panniculitis-like TCL	+	–	–	+	–	–	+	–
Cutaneous TCL	+	–	–	–/+	–	–	+	+
Hepatosplenic TCL	+	–/+	–	–/+	–	–	+	+
Nasal or nasal-type NK/TCL	+ (cytoplasmic)	–	–	+/–	–	–	+	+
Enteropathy-type TCL	+	–	–	+	+/–	–	+	+[b]

Note: + (>90%), +/– (>50%), –/+ (<50%), – (<10%)
References: [234–237, 253–255]
[a]Most cases
[b]Subset with monomorphic small-cell morphology
[c]Some large cells
[d]More often ALK positive cases

Table 29.32 Immunophenotypic features of classic Hodgkin lymphoma (CHL) and nodular lymphocyte predominant Hodgkin lymphoma (NLPHL) (Fig. 29.43)

Lymphoma	CD20	Pax-5	CD15	CD30	Facsin	EMA	ALK-1
CHL	+/–	+ (weak)	+	+	+	–/+	–
NLPHL	+	+	–	–/+	–	+/–	–

Note: + (>90%), +/– (>50%), –/+ (<50%), – (<10%)
References: [234–237]

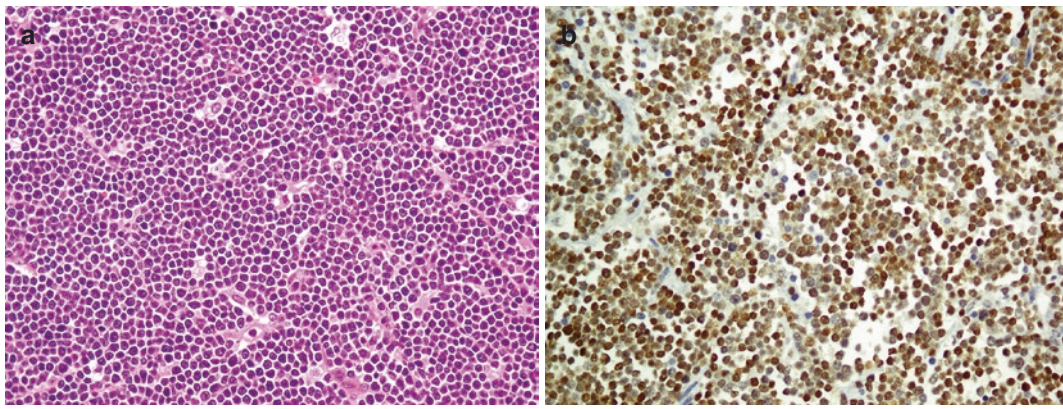


Fig. 29.40 Lymphoma with starry sky feature declares a highly proliferative phase (**a**) in which antibodies to terminal deoxynucleotidyl transfer (TdT) marks it as a precursor lymphoid neoplasm (**b**)

fibrillary acidic protein (GFAP) [160, 161, 306]. Oligodendroglioma variably expresses GFAP and commonly reacts with Leu7 and S-100 [307, 308]. Moreover, GFAP is present in other mixed glial and neuronal-glial tumors including oligoastrocytoma and ganglioglioma (Fig. 29.47) [306]. Neurocytoma and pineal tumors are GFAP-negative and synaptophysin-positive.

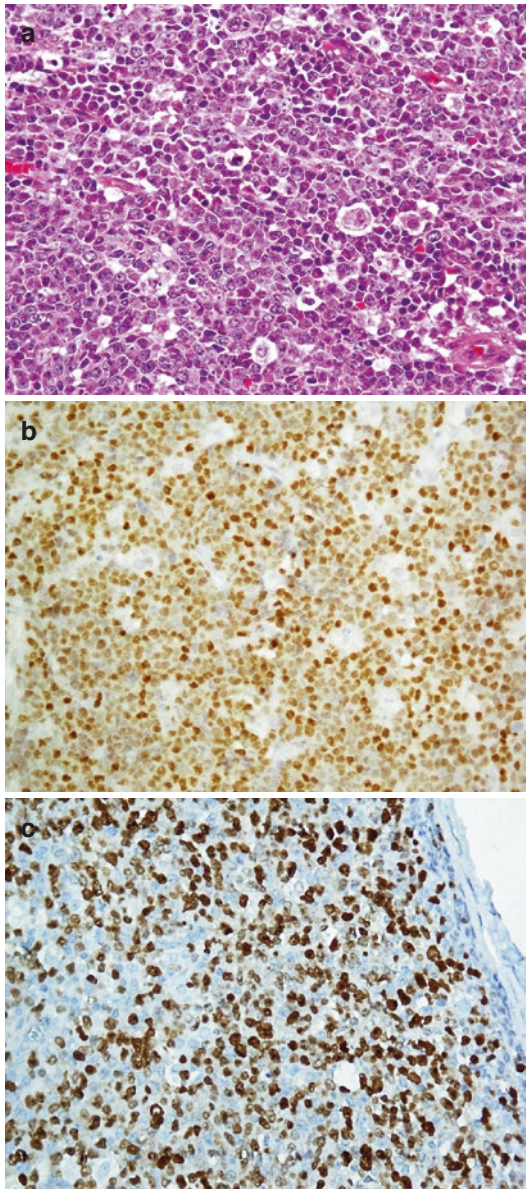


Fig. 29.41 Diffuse large B-cell lymphoma (NOS) (**a**) weakly reacts with Bcl-6 and (**b**) indicates a high proliferative index by Ki-67 (**c**)

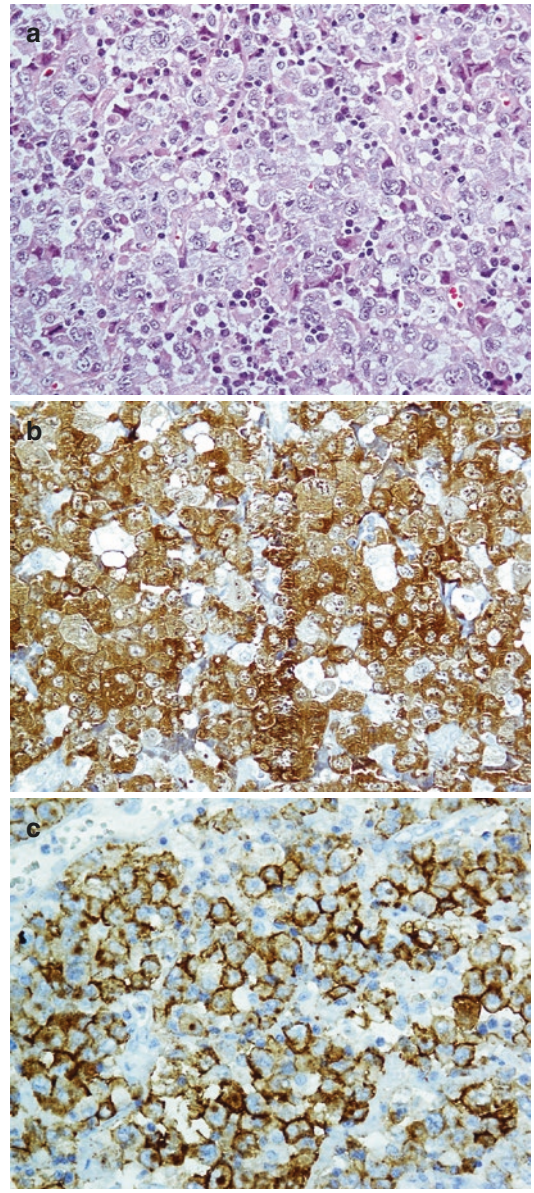


Fig. 29.42 Diffuse large B-cell lymphoma (ALK). Large anaplastic cells intermixed with lymphoplasma cells (**a**) are strongly positive for ALK (**b**) and EMA (**c**)

Among neuroepithelial tumors, choroid plexus tumors demonstrate reactivity with epithelial markers such as cytokeratin, CAM5.2, and EMA. Additionally, transthyretin, as a potential marker, and IGF-II, as a newer marker, are positive in choroid plexus tumors [309–311]. Pineal tumors are GFAP and epithelial-negative tumors, which exhibit reactivity with synaptophysin and neurofilament (Table 29.36).

29.10.2 Non-neuroepithelial Tumors

Among non-neuroepithelial tumors, meningiomas are positive for EMA, which differentiates

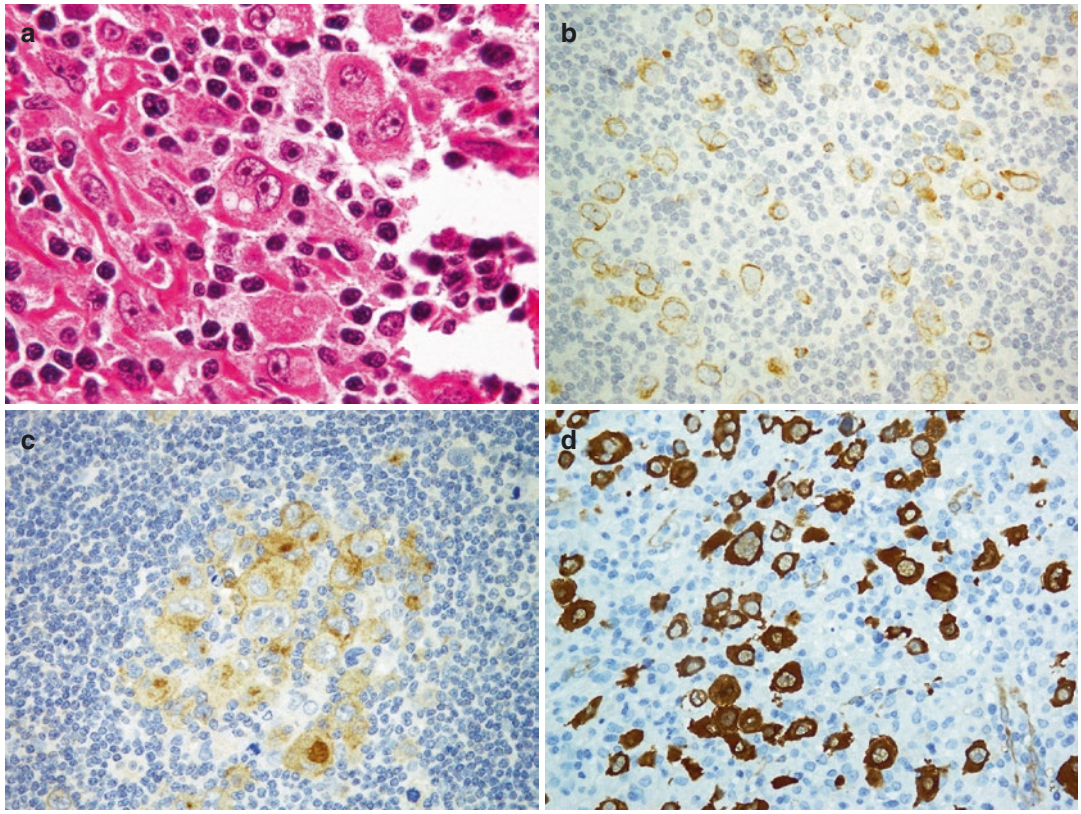


Fig. 29.43 Hodgkin lymphoma. Typical Reed–Stenberg cell with mirror binuclear feature of "Owl's eye"(**a**) weakly reacts with CD 15 (**b**) and CD30 (**c**) and strongly reacts with fascin (**d**)

Table 29.33 Immunohistochemical antibodies of normal mesenchymal tissues and related tumors

Soft tissue	Markers of soft tissue	Related tumor	Immunoreactive markers
Chondrocyte	S100, SOX9, vimentin	Chondrosarcoma	S100, vimentin, CD57, SOX9: sensitive marker for cartilaginous differentiation
Endothelial cells	Vimentin, CD-31, CD-34, FLI-1	Angiosarcoma	CD-31, CD-34, FLI-1
	D2-40 (lymphatic endothelium)	Lymphangiosarcoma	D2-40
Fibroblasts	Vimentin, CD10, CD99	Fibrosarcoma	Vimentin
Fibrohistiocyte	CD68, CD168, a1AT, cathepsin B, factor IIIA, HAM 56	Malignant fibrous histiocytoma	CD68
Lipocytes	Vimentin, S100 (variable), calretinin, MDM2, CDK4, CD-34	Liposarcoma	S100, MDM2, CDK4
Osteoblast	CD56, osteocalcin, osteonectin, vimentin	Osteosarcoma	Osteocalcin, collagen IV, CK, EMA, CD99, S100, desmin, SMA, factor 13
Nerve/Schwann cell	Vimentin, S100, CD56, CD57	MPNST	S-100
Skeletal muscle	Desmin, myoglobin, CD56, GFAP	Rhabdomyosarcoma	Myogenin, myo-D1, PLAP, WT-1
Smooth muscle	Desmin, NSE, SMA, MSA	Leiomyosarcoma	Desmin, SMA, MSA, h-caldesmon, collagen IV
Synovial cell	CD68, clusterin	Synovial sarcoma	CK, EMA, vimentin, CD68, CD-99, E-cadherin, Collagen IV

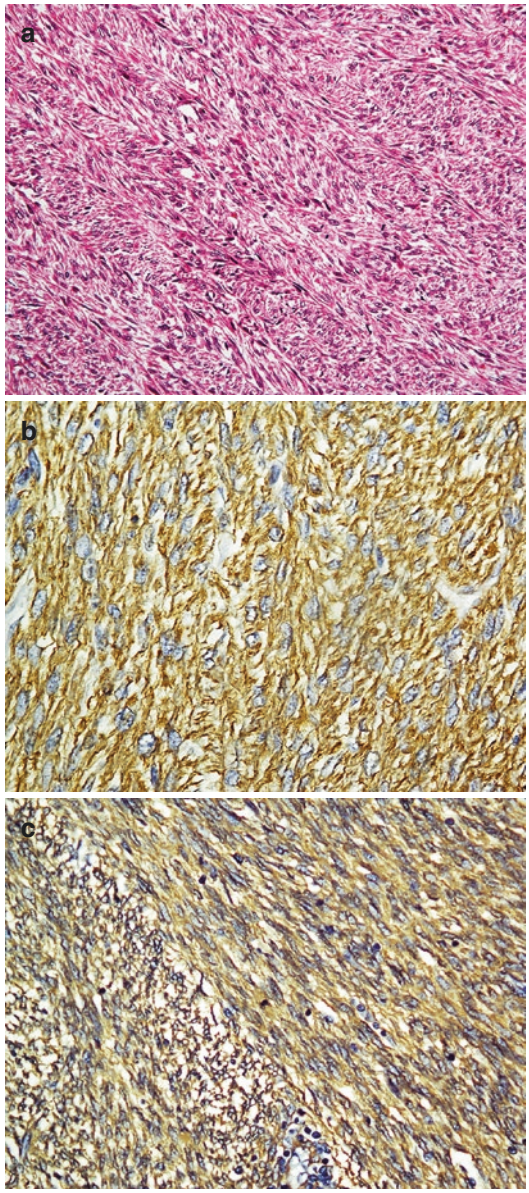


Fig. 29.44 Leiomyosarcoma. Spindle cells arranged in interlacing cross-striated fascicles (**a**) are immunostained with desmin (**b**) and H-caldesmon (**c**)

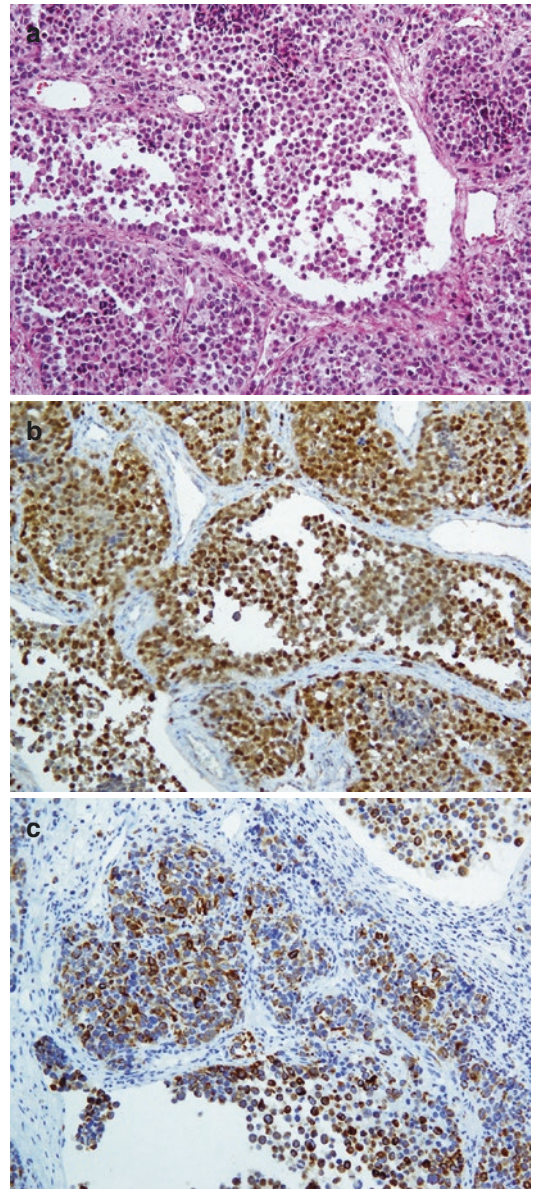


Fig. 29.45 Alveolar rhabdomyosarcoma. Large polygonal cells with alveolar pattern (**a**) are highlighted with myogenin (**b**) and desmin (**c**)

them from nerve sheath tumors, and are negative for GFAP which distinguishes meningioma from gliomas. Schwannoma is distinct from glioma, meningioma, and neurofibroma by showing reaction to collagen type IV. Neurofibroma differs from schwannoma by having neurofilament-positive axons. Primary and secondary brain lymphomas express LCA as a common marker and CD3 and CD20 as differentiating markers of T-cell and B-cell type lymphomas, respectively. Arising from notochord remnants, chordomas are malignant tumors along the axial skeleton

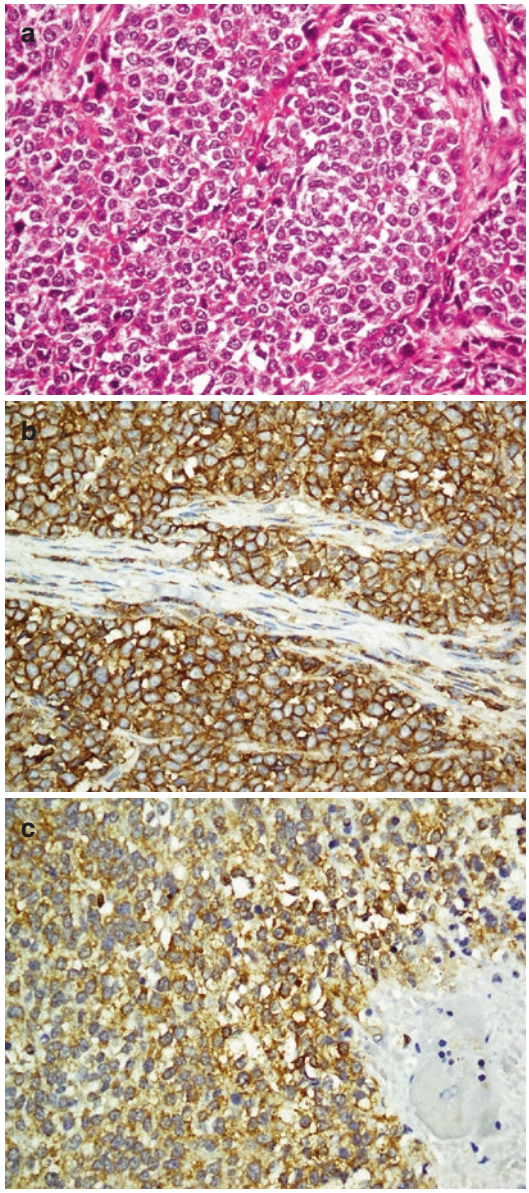


Fig. 29.46 Small round cell tumor (**a**). Immunoreaction with MIC2 (**b**) and NSE (**c**) antibodies supports the diagnosis of PNET

recognized by characteristic physaliphorous cells with large intracytoplasmic vacuoles. Chordoma exhibits reactivity for CK and EMA as well as S100, whereas chondrosarcomas lack these features (CK/EMA-negative and S100-positive). Primary germ cell tumors are found along the midline in the pineal and suprasellar regions which demonstrate immunostaining with

Table 29.34 Immunoprofile of unknown-origin soft tissue tumors: Ewing sarcoma/peripheral neuroectodermal tumor (ES/PNET), clear-cell sarcoma (CCS), alveolar soft part sarcoma (ASPS), and desmoplastic small round cell tumor (DSRCT)

Panel antibodies	ES/PNET	CCS	ASPS	DSRCT
CD99/FLI-1	+	–	–	–
S100/HMB45/ MITF/Melan-A	–	+	–	–
TFE3	–	–	+	–
NSE	+	–	–	+
Desmin	–	–	–	+
CK/EMA	–	–	–	+
WT1	–	–	–	+

References: [294–298]

placental alkaline phosphatase (PLAP), alpha fetoprotein (AFP), beta-HCG, and CEA (Fig. 29.48) (Table 29.37).

29.10.3 Undifferentiated Tumors

Medulloblastoma, pineoblastoma, ependymoblastoma, and PNET are primitive undifferentiated tumors commonly located in the posterior fossa, pineal gland, periventricular area, and anterior fossa, respectively. Medulloblastoma, pineoblastoma, and ependymoblastoma differentiate from PNET by negative reaction for CD99. Ependymoblastoma can be distinguished from meduloblastoma/pineoblastoma/PNET by the absence of reactivity to synaptophysin and neurofilament (Table 29.38).

29.10.4 Proliferative Markers

MIB1 (Ki67) is an Ab that detects proliferating cells in various phases of the cell cycle, and is important in the grading of CNS tumors. It is used to predict patient outcome and distinguishes long- and short-time survivals in patients with glial tumors (Table 29.39 and Fig. 29.49). p53 and EGFR overexpression can be defined immunohistochemically. Overexpression of p53 is associated with tumor progression in glioblastoma multiforme (GBM). EGFR overexpression correlates with poor prognosis in gliomas and is

Table 29.35 Commonly used antibodies in primary CNS tumors

Antibody	Normal brain	Tumor
EMA	Epithelial, perineural, meningothelial cells	Meningioma, chordoma, medulloblastoma
GFAP	Glial cells	Glial tumors except oligodendroglioma, medulloepithelioma, choroid plexus tumor, ganglioglioma
Leu7 (CD57)	Oligodendroglial cells, Schwann cells	Oligodendroglioma, schwannoma, Neurofibroma, oligoastrocytoma
Neurofilament	Neuropil	Ganglion cell tumors, neurocytoma, pineocytoma, neurofibroma, medulloblastoma, PNET
NSE	Neuroectodermal and neuroendocrine cells	Neuroblastoma, hemangioblastoma, PNET, oligodendroglioma
S-100	Glial cells, Schwann cells, dendritic and Langerhans cells, melanocytes, other mesenchymal cells	Gliomas, meningioma, schwannoma, neurofibroma, chordoma, craniopharyngioma, PNET, medulloblastoma, pineoblastoma, neuroblastoma, melanoma, chondroid tumors
Synaptophysin	Neuroendocrine cells, neuropil	Neurocytoma, ganglion cell tumors, pineocytoma, choroid plexus papilloma, medulloblastoma, pineoblastoma, neuroblastoma, PNET, oligodendroglioma, dysembryoblastic neuroepithelial tumor
Vimentin	Meningoendothelial cells, other mesenchymal cells	Meningioma, gliomas, chordoma, ependymoblastoma, hemangiopericytoma, ganglioglioma, embryonal tumors
Collagen IV	Ganglion cell, Schwann cell, other mesenchymal cells	Ganglion cell tumor, schwannoma, medulloblastoma/ pineoblastoma

References: [160, 161, 306]

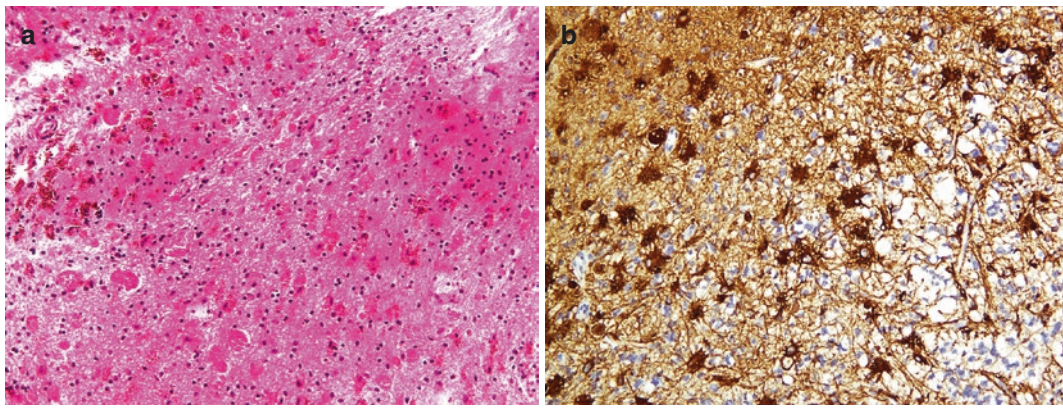


Fig. 29.47 Fibrillary astrocytoma with proliferation of atypical astrocytes (**a**), exhibit GFAP-positive cytoplasmic processes (**b**)

Table 29.36 Immunopanel of neuroepithelial tumors

First-choice antibody panel	Second-choice antibody panel	Consistent with
GFAP+, EMA−, CAM5.2−	Vim+, NF+, S100+	Astrocytoma (Fig. 29.47)
	Leu7+, NSE+, S100+	Oligodendroglioma
GFAP+, EMA (R), CAM5.2 (R)	Vim+, S100+	Ependymoma
GFAP (S), EMA+, CAM5.2+	Laminin+, SPN+, S100+, IGF-II+	Choroid plexus papilloma
GFAP−, EMA−, CAM5.2−	SPN+, NF+	Central neurocytoma
	SPN (S), NF (S), Collagen IV+	Ganglion cell tumor
	NSE+, SPN+, NF (R)	Pineal tumor

Note: *N* negative, *R* rare, *S* sometimes
References: [160, 161, 306–308, 312–320]

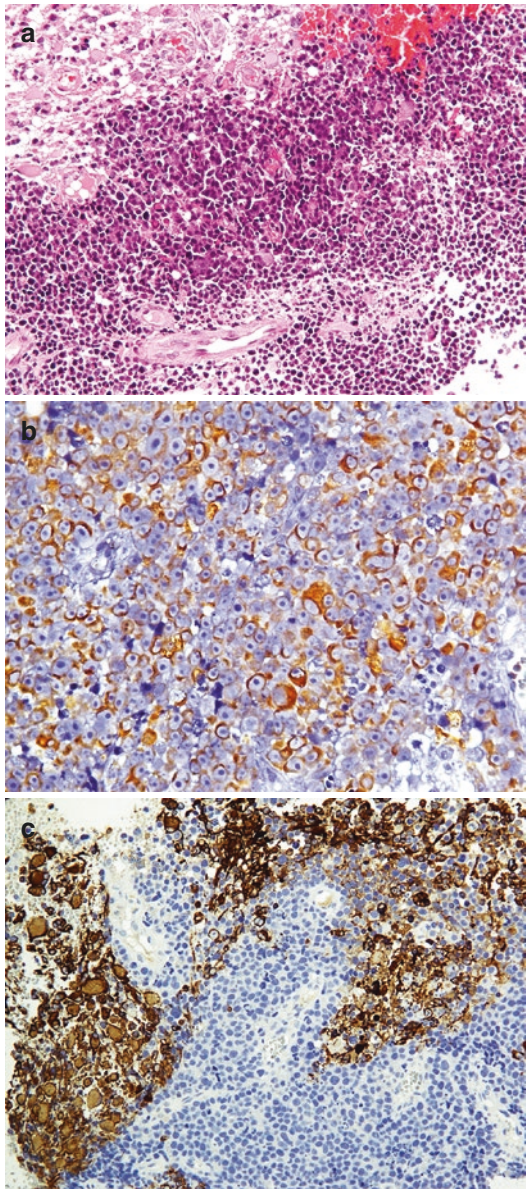


Fig. 29.48 Germinoma. (**a**) A tumor with relatively medium to large polygonal cells resembling an undifferentiated tumor surrounded by reactive astrocytes (upper right corner). Tumor cells react with PLAP (**b**) and reactive astrocytes stain by GFAP (**c**). Courtesy of Dr. Taghi Ghiasi-Moghadam, Mashad, Iran

not present in low-grade gliomas. As a new therapeutic target, EGFR tyrosine kinase inhibitors are used for the treatment of GBM.

29.11 Immunohistochemistry of Pediatric Tumors

Solid pediatric tumors comprise a heterogenic group of variable entities with morphologies including small round cells, spindle cells, and polygonal cells. Small round cell tumors include neuroblastoma, rhabdomyosarcoma, Ewing's sarcoma/PNET, desmoplastic small round cell tumor, Wilms' tumor (Fig. 29.50), small-cell osteosarcoma, lymphoma, and melanoma. Rhabdomyosarcoma, Wilms' tumor, and melanoma also display spindle cell components or present as pure spindle cell tumor. Polygonal cell tumors of childhood comprise of rhabdomyosarcoma, malignant rhabdoid tumor, osteosarcoma, and melanoma [341, 342].

Frequently confused with primitive neuroectodermal tumors (PNETs), neuroblastoma is the most common malignant tumor of the posterior mediastinum in pediatric patients with morphology of small round cell tumor. Neuroblastoma has a predilection for adrenal glands and sympathetic ganglia, whereas PNETs are cholinergic tumors [343, 344]. Expression of CD44s and c-kit receptor correlates with favorable prognosis in a subset of neuroblastoma [345, 346]. Rhabdomyosarcoma is the most common pediatric soft tissue sarcoma subclassified into embryonal, botryoid, alveolar, and spindle cell subtypes. Embryonal rhabdomyosarcoma (including botryoid), the most common type in childhood, usually displays small-cell morphology, whereas the alveolar variant usually exhibits features of polygonal cells [347–350].

Initially regarded as an undifferentiated sarcoma of the bone and soft tissue, Ewing's sarcoma/primitive neuroectodermal tumor (ES/PNET) is now being classified as a small round cell tumor with varying degrees of neuroectodermal differentiation with pseudorosette formation [351]. Desmoplastic small round cell tumor is an aggressive, malignant tumor usually involving the abdominal or pelvic cavity of children or young adults with the morphology of small round

Table 29.37 Immunopanel of non-neuroepithelial tumors

First-choice antibody panel	Second-choice antibody panel	Consistent with
Vimentin+, S100+	EMA+	Chordoma
Vimentin+, S100 (R)	EMA (S)	Meningioma
Vimentin−, S100+	Leu7+, collagen IV+, GFAP (R)	Schwannoma
	Leu7+, NF+, EMA+	Neurofibroma
Vimentin−, S100−	LCA+, L26+	Lymphoma
	PLAP+, HCG+, AFP+	Germ cell tumor (Fig. 29.48)

Note: *N* negative, *R* rare, *S* sometimes
References: [160, 161, 306–308, 321–326]

Table 29.38 Immunopanel of primitive undifferentiated tumors

First-choice antibody panel	Second-choice antibody panel	Anatomic site	Consistent with
SYNP+, S100+	NF (R), GFAP (R), Collagen IV+, Vim (S), CD99−	Posterior fossa	Meduloblastoma
		Pineal gland	Pineoblastoma
	NF (R), GFAP (R), Collagen IV−, Vim−, CD99 (S)	Anterior fossa	PNET
SYNP−, S100+	NF−, GFAP (R), Collagen IV−, Vim (S), CD99−	Cerebrum, cerebellum	Ependymoblastoma

Note: *N* negative, *R* rare, *S* sometimes
References: [160, 161, 306–308, 319, 327–332]

Table 29.39 Proliferative factor of MIB1 in some CNS tumors and correlation with survival (Fig. 29.49)

Tumor	MIB1 %		Survival
Astrocytoma	<2		80%
	>2		20%
Anaplastic astrocytomas	5–10		–
Glioblastoma multiforme	>10		–
Oligodendroglioma	<5		Longer survival
	>5		Shorter survival
Ependymal tumor	>5		Shorter survival
Choroid plexus papilloma	3.7		<6% nonaggressive
Choroid plexus carcinoma	14		>6% aggressive
Meningioma	Ozen study	Abramovich study	Lanzafame study
Benign (grade 1)	1.2	1	<1% no recurrence
Anaplastic (grade 2)	2.3	5.5	>1% recurrence
Malignant (grade 3)	6.7	12	
Medulloblastoma	50%		–

References: [160, 333–340]

cells arranged in nests and separated by a dense collagenized and desmoplastic stroma [298].

Wilms' tumor (WT) or nephroblastoma is the most common pediatric neoplasm of the kidney derived from nephrogenic rests displaying divergent differentiation. The classic histopathologic pattern of WT consists of triphasic elements of blastemal, epithelial, and stromal components. Blastemal component is composed of small round cells exhibiting reactivity with vimentin and desmin. Epithelial component shows staining with cytokeratin, whereas stromal component demonstrates variable reactivity based on its differentiation pattern [352, 353]. Lacking a characteristic immunohistochemical profile, the diagnostic feature of osteosarcoma is the presence of osteoid, which can be distinguished from other undifferentiated small round cell tumors

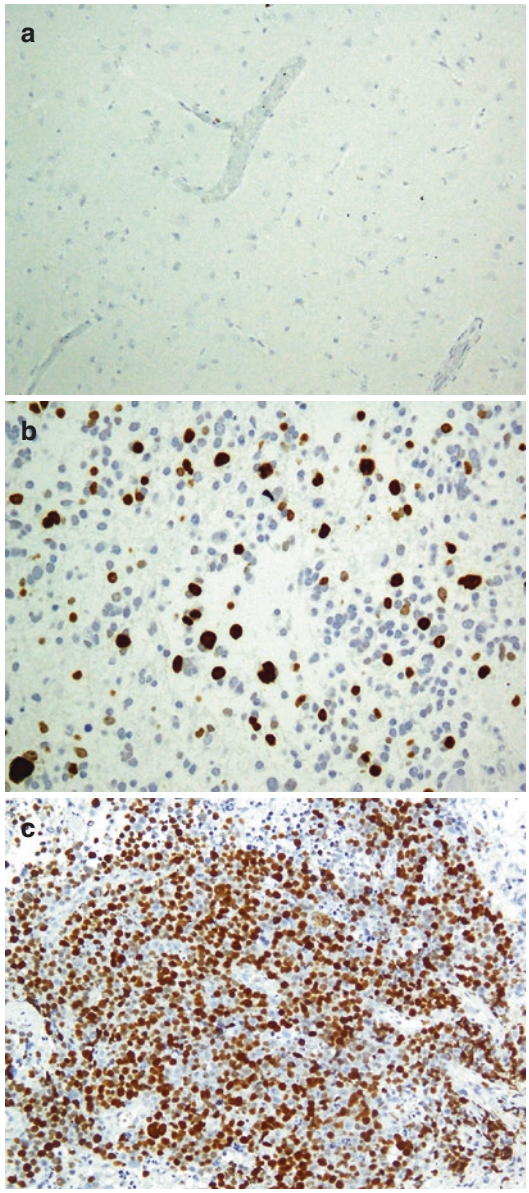


Fig. 29.49 Proliferating marker of Ki-67 is "non-reactive" in normal brain (**a**), 30% reactive in astrocytoma (**b**) and 80% reactive in germinoma (**c**)

[354, 355]. Originally described in the kidney and CNS, malignant rhabdoid tumor is a highly aggressive neoplasm of the childhood with a tendency of widespread metastases. Malignant rhabdoid tumor is a densely cellular tumor comprised of cords and sheets of polygonal cells with abundant eosinophilic cytoplasm and large eccentric nuclei containing prominent eosinophilic nucleoli [356, 357]. Table 29.40 displays an immunopanel to the diagnosis of common pediatric tumors.

29.12 Immune Surveillance, Immune Editing, Immune Constant of Rejection, Immune Contexture, and Immune Scoring of Cancers

Cancer is a complex disease involving cellular and molecular interactions between the tumor and the immune system [373]. The concept of *"Immunosurveillance,"* first described by Lewis Thomas and Macfarlane Burnet, refers to the detection and destruction of tumor cells by the immune system [374, 375]. This theory has been supported by the analysis of experimental and clinical tumor microenvironment data. The strongest argument for the existence of immunosurveillance is that immunodeficient hosts are associated with increased frequency of cancers. In addition, regression of primary and metastatic tumors has been attributed to immunologic mechanisms, but many other factors may have been responsible (e.g., hormonal, nutritional, or vascular). Tumor microenvironment is a complex milieu comprised of extracellular matrix and host cells, including mesenchymal, endothelial, and immune cells. During carcinogenesis process, the neoplastic cells constantly interact with host cells, extracellular matrix, and bioactive molecules, which constitute the tumor microenvironment [376–378].

The concept of *"cancer immunoediting,"* proposed by a series of mouse model publications that immune deficiencies are associated with tumor aggressiveness, describes how the immune system encounters with tumor cells during tumorigenesis [379–382]. Immune cells engage to combat with cancer cells in three sequential phases: cancer elimination, cancer equilibrium, and cancer escape. In the elimination phase, the immune system clears most tumor cells; a population of immune-resistant tumor cells appears in the equilibrium phase; and finally, in escape phase, the

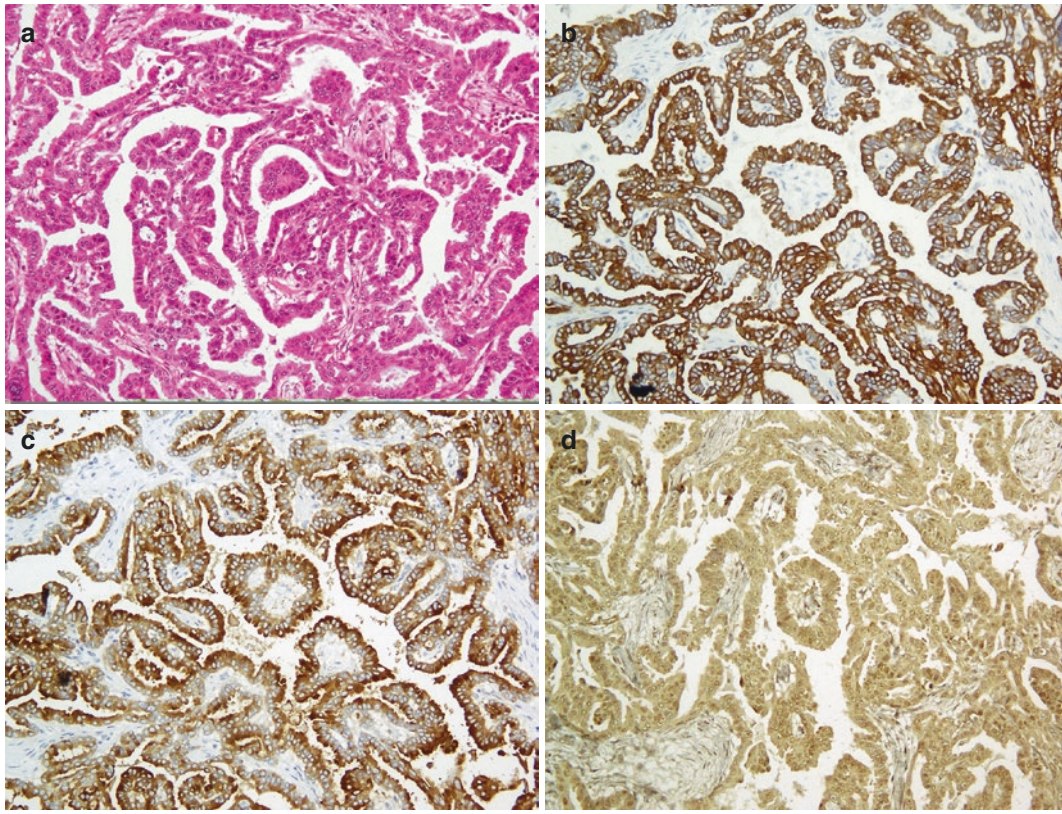


Fig. 29.50 Wilms' tumor. Epithelial component with tubuloglandular structures (**a**) showing immunoreaction with CKAE1/AE3 (**b**), EMA (**c**) and WT1 (**d**)

Table 29.40 Immunopanel of pediatric tumors

First-choice antibody panel	Second-choice antibody panel	Additional antibody/ histopathologic feature	Consistent with
AE1/AE3+, CAM5.2+, VIM+	DES+, WT1+, EMA+	SYN+, CHG+, NSE+/small round cell	Wilms tumor
		SYN+, CHG+, NSE+/ polygonal cell	Malignant rhabdoid tumor
		SYN–, CHG–, NSE+/small round cell	Desmoplastic small round cell tumor
AE1/AE3–, CAM5.2–, VIM+	DES+, MYOG+, MyoD1+	MSA+, CD99±, CK±/small round/spindle/pylogonal cell	Rhabdomyosarcoma
	DES–, MYOG–, MyoD1–	CD45+/small round cell	Lymphoma
		CD99+, S100+/small round/ polygonal cell + osteoid	Osteosarcoma
		CD99+/small round cell	ES/PNET
		S100+, SYN+, CHG+, NSE+/ small round cell	Neuroblastoma
		S100+, HMB45+, MART1+/ small round/polygonal cell	Melanoma

References: [54, 358–372]

tumor develops strategies to evade immune destruction. The last phase is a consequence of immune exhaustion and inhibition or results from the emergence of tumor cell variants (Fig. 29.51).

It is now well known that innate and adaptive immune systems can promote tumor development and progression through immunosurveillance. However, there are many interactions between the innate immune cells [macrophages, neutrophils, mast cells, NK cells, and immature dendritic cells (DC)] and the adaptive immune cells [mature DC, B-lymphocytes, T lymphocyte, and regulatory T-cells (Tregs)]. Initially mediated by innate immunity, interaction between tumor cells and immune system develops and the tumor is eliminated through adaptive immune system activation [383, 384]. The immune-mediated, tissue destruction process described by the concept of *"immunologic constant of rejection"* (ICR) which includes the coordination of interferon-stimulated genes (ISGs) pathway and immune effector functions (IEFs) pathway. This constant demonstrates the activation of ISGs, recruitment of cytotoxic immune cells (primarily through CXCR3/CCR5 ligand pathways), and activation of the IEFs pathway (IEF genes; granzymes A/B, perforin) [385, 386].

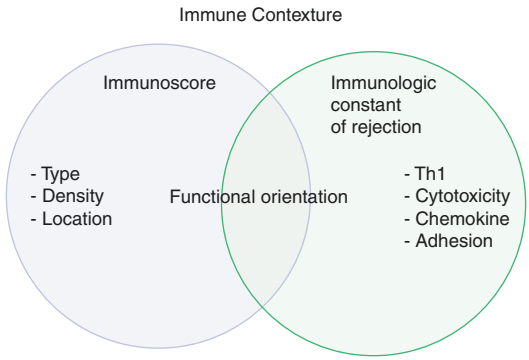


Fig. 29.51 The "Immune contexture" at the background is defined by combination of immune variables associating the nature, density, functional orientation, and distribution of immune cells within the tumor. The "Immunoscore" and the "Immunologic constant of rejection" are overlapped by functional orientation

The *"immune contexture"* is characterized as the density, type, location, and functional orientation of adaptive immune cells within the tumor, which is essential to accurately define the impact of cancer prognosis [387–389]. Parameters of the immune contexture comprise of $CD3^+$ density, cytotoxic $CD8^+$, and memory $CD45RO^+$ T-cells, their location at the tumor center (CT) and invasive margin (IM), combined with the quality of tertiary lymphoid structures (TLS) (Fig. 29.52). Evaluation of immune contexture in the clinical setting will provide prognostic and predictive benefits [387, 388].

In human, the presence of tumor infiltrating lymphocytes (TILs) has been reported as a favorable prognostic factor in many primary tumors. The high density of TILs associated with good prognosis has been well documented, not only to various organs of cancer origin (such as breast, colon, lung, head and neck, kidney, bladder, ovary, prostate), but also to various cancer cell types (adenocarcinoma, squamous cell carcinoma, large-cell cancer, melanoma, etc.) (reviewed in [389–391]) (Fig. 29.53). The quantification of TILs allowed defining a novel scoring system based on the densities of two lymphocyte populations ($CD3^+$ and $CD8^+$), both in CT and in IM of tumors. Based on the immune contexture, a standardized, simple, powerful immune scoring system ("Immunoscore") was determinate. Immune classification of cancers provides a scoring system

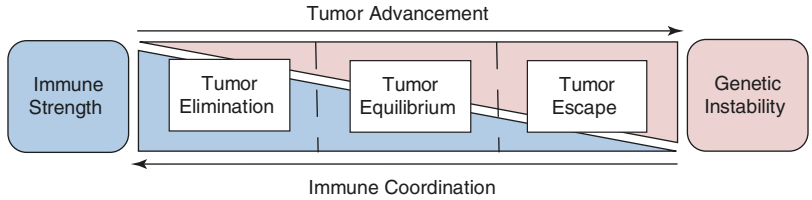


Fig. 29.52 Cancer-immune spectrum. The immunoediting theory describes how a tumor can evade from immune destruction and how immune system restraint the tumor

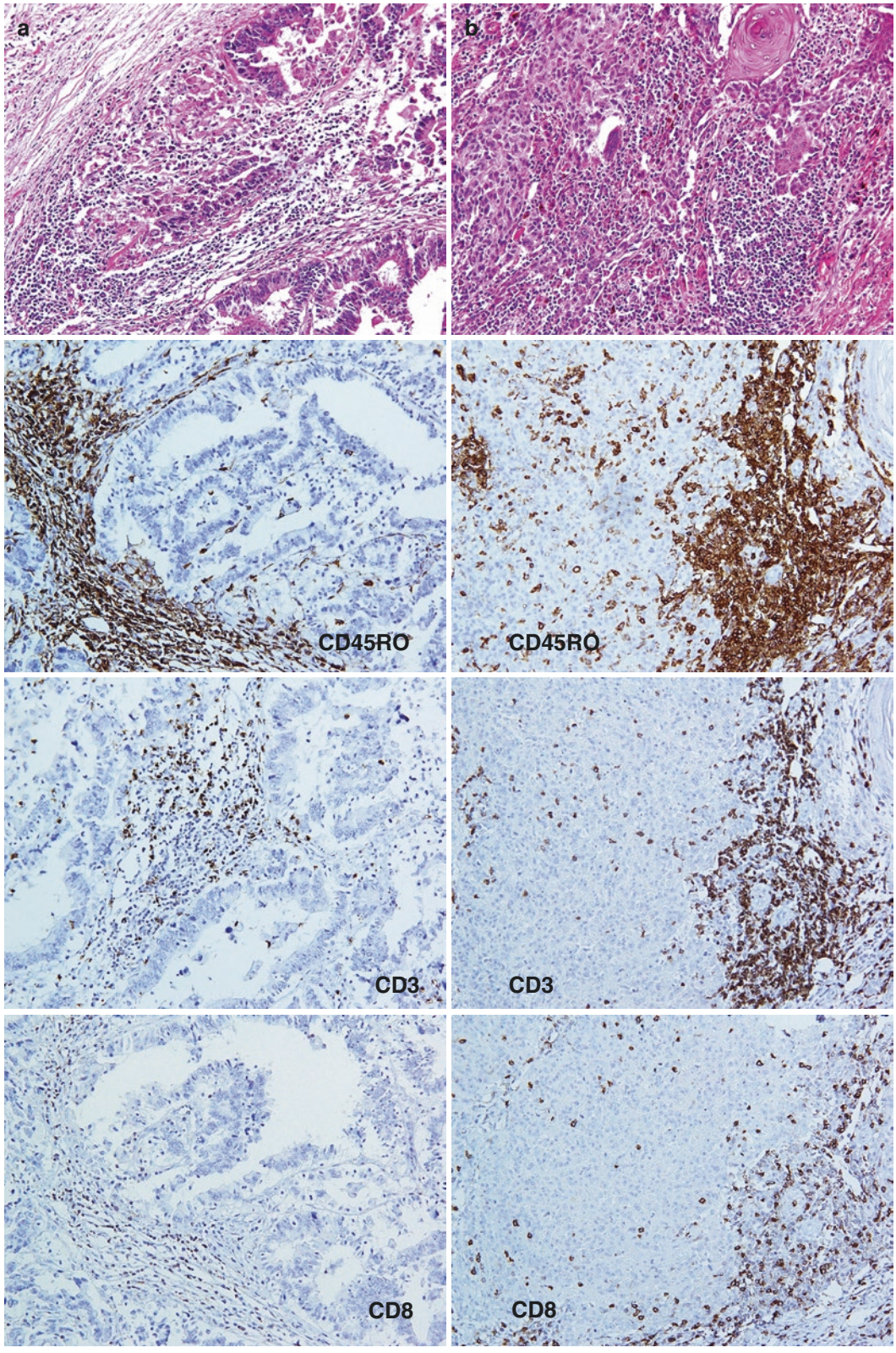


Fig. 29.53 (**a**) Colon adenocarcinoma and (**b**) skin SCC with surrounding TILs, immunostained with CD45RO, CD3, and CD8

Table 29.41 The characteristics of immune contexture, Immunoscore, and immunologic constant of rejection

Concepts	Characteristic
Immune contexture	Type, density, location, and functional orientation of adaptive immune cells (Th1 cell, cytotoxicity, chemokine, adhesion)
Immunoscore	Standardized, simple, quantitative, routine test derived from the immune contexture
Type	$CD3^+$ T-cell, $CD8^+$ T-cell
Density	Quantification (cells/mm^2)
Location	Tumor center, invasive margin, tertiary lymphoid islets
Immunologic constant of rejection	Immune-mediated, tissue destruction processes: (a) Interferon-stimulated genes pathway (b) Cytotoxic immune cells (primarily through CXCR3/CCR5 ligand pathways) (c) Immune effector functions pathway (IEF genes; granzymes A/B, perforin)

ranging from Immunoscore 0–4; and low to high densities of both lymphocyte populations in CT and IM of tumors (Table 29.41). The Immunoscore system has shown to have a prognostic significance superior to AJCC/UICC-TNM staging systems. Thus, incorporating the Immunoscore into traditional staging systems has an essential prognostic and predictive value [392, 393].

In 2012, an international task force was initiated to promote the Immunoscore in routine clinical settings as a new component of cancer classification, designated TNM-I (TNM-Immune) [394]. The purpose of the Immunoscore international task force was: (1) to validate the feasibility and reproducibility of the Immunoscore, (2) to validate the major prognostic and predictive power of the Immunoscore in colon cancer patients. In order to become globally applicable in routine clinical setting, evaluation of the Immunoscore must be pathology based, feasible in routine settings, simple, inexpensive, rapid, robust, reproducible, quantitative, standardized, and powerful [30, 394].

Multiple laboratory variables influence the validity and reliability of immunoscoring in the clinical setting, which need to coordinate with distinct criteria. They are included in the complexity of quantitative IHC assay, variable protocols across laboratories, and immune cell analysis accompanied by uneven region selection criteria and variable ways to quantify TILs. An effort for harmonization and reproducibility of IHC method recommends laboratories to test the prognostic value of Immunoscore using initial guidelines [393, 394]. It is also acknowledged that additional markers may be used to further refine the prognostic value of the Immunoscore.

Concluding Remarks Besides conventional histopathologic evaluation of various tissues, IHC has provided a significant aid in diagnosis, and its role is growing not only in arriving diagnosis but also for targeted therapies and predicting prognosis. Recently, various markers have been introduced which have therapeutic or prognostic value. Notably, it should be emphesized that IHC has some limitations and should be used in an appropriate setting by an experienced pathologist to avoid misdiagnosis. Additionally, a panel of related antibodies instead of single marker are needed to yield at a correct and precise diagnosis.

References

1. Moll R, Divo M, Langbein L. The human keratins: biology and pathology. Histochem Cell Biol. 2008;129(6):705–33.
2. Freedberg IM, Tomic-Canic M, Komine M, Blumenberg M. Keratins and the keratinocyte activation cycle. J Invest Dermatol. 2001;116(5):633–40.
3. Wick MR, Swanson PE, Patterson JW. Immunohistology of skin tumors. In: Dabbs DJ, editor. Diagnostic immunohistochemistry. 3rd ed. Philadelphia, PA: Churchill Livingstone Elsevier; 2010. p. 464–99.
4. Ansai S, Koseki S, Hozumi Y, Kondo S. An immunohistochemical study of lysozyme, CD15 (Leu-M1), and gross cystic disease fluid protein-15 in various skin tumors: assessment of the specificity and sensitivity of markers of apocrine differentiation. Am J Dermatopathol. 1995;17:249–55.
5. Latham JA, Redfern CP, Thody AJ, De Kretser TA. Immunohistochemical markers of human seba-

ceous gland differentiation. J Histochem Cytochem. 1989;37(5):729–34.
6. Clarkson KS, Sturdgess IC, Molyneux AJ. The usefulness of tyrosinase in the immunohistochemical assessment of melanocytic lesions: a comparison of the novel T311 antibody (anti-tyrosinase) with S-100, HMB45, and A103 (anti-melan-A). J Clin Pathol. 2001;54(3):196–200.
7. Lau SK, Chu PG, Weiss LM. Immunohistochemical expression of Langerin in Langerhans cell histiocytosis and non-Langerhans cell histiocytic disorders. Am J Surg Pathol. 2008;32(4):615–9.
8. Bickle K, Glass LF, Messina JL, Fenske NA, Siegrist K. Merkel cell carcinoma: a clinical, histopathologic, and immunohistochemical review. Semin Cutan Med Surg. 2004;23(1):46–53.
9. García-Caballero T, Pintos E, Gallego R, Parrado C, Blanco M, Bjornhagen V, et al. MOC-31/Ep-CAM immunoreactivity in Merkel cells and Merkel cell carcinomas. Histopathology. 2003;43(5):480–4.
10. McCalmont TH. Paranuclear dots of neurofilament reliably identify Merkel cell carcinoma. J Cutan Pathol. 2010;37(8):821–3.
11. Dotto JE, Glusac EJ. p63 is a useful marker for cutaneous spindle cell squamous cell carcinoma. J Cutan Pathol. 2006;33(6):413–7.
12. Beer TW, Shepherd P, Theaker JM. Ber EP4 and epithelial membrane antigen aid distinction of basal cell, squamous cell and basosquamous carcinomas of the skin. Histopathology. 2000;37(3):218–23.
13. Ansai S, Koseki S, Hozumi Y, Kondo S. An immunohistochemical study of lysozyme, CD-15 (Leu M1), and gross cystic disease fluid protein-15 in various skin tumors. Assessment of the specificity and sensitivity of markers of apocrine differentiation. Am J Dermatopathol. 1995;17(3):249–55.
14. Qureshi HS, Ormsby AH, Lee MW, Zarbo RJ, Ma CK. The diagnostic utility of p63, CK5/6, CK7, and CK20 in distinguishing primary cutaneous adnexal neoplasms from metastatic carcinomas. J Cutan Pathol. 2004;31(2):145–52.
15. Yao DX, Hoda SA, Chiu A, Ying L, Rosen PP. Intraepidermal cytokeratin 7 immunoreactive cells in the non-neoplastic nipple may represent interepithelial extension of lactiferous duct cells. Histopathology. 2002;40(3):230–6.
16. Nowak MA, Guerriere-Kovach P, Pathan A, Campbell TE, Deppisch LM. Perianal Paget's disease: distinguishing primary and secondary lesions using immunohistochemical studies including gross cystic disease fluid protein-15 and cytokeratin 20 expression. Arch Pathol Lab Med. 1998;122(12):1077–81.
17. Yoshii N, Kitajima S, Yonezawa S, Matsukita S, Setoyama M, Kanzaki T. Expression of mucin core proteins in extramammary Paget's disease. Pathol Int. 2002;52(5–6):390–9.
18. Chaichamnan K, Satayasoontorn K, Puttanupaab S, Attainsee A. Malignant proliferating trichilemmal tumors with CD34 expression. J Med Assoc Thail. 2010;93(Suppl 6):S28–34.
19. Abdelsayed RA, Guijarro-Rojas M, Ibrahim NA, Sangueza OP. Immunohistochemical evaluation of basal cell carcinoma and trichepithelioma using Bcl-2, Ki67, PCNA and P53. J Cutan Pathol. 2000;27(4):169–75.
20. Krahl D, Sellheyer K. Monoclonal antibody Ber-EP4 reliably discriminates between microcystic adnexal carcinoma and basal cell carcinoma. Cutan Pathol. 2007;34(10):782–7.
21. Heidarpour M, Rajabi P, Sajadi F. CD10 expression helps to differentiate basal cell carcinoma from trichoepithelioma. Res Med Sci. 2011;16(7):938–44.
22. Misago N, Narisawa Y. Cytokeratin 15 expression in neoplasms with sebaceous differentiation. J Cutan Pathol. 2006;33(9):634–41.
23. Misago N, Mihara I, Ansai S, Narisawa Y. Sebaceoma and related neoplasms with sebaceous differentiation: a clinicopathologic study of 30 cases. Am J Dermatopathol. 2002;24(4):294–304.
24. Fan YS, Carr RA, Sanders DS, Smith AP, Lazar AJ, Calonje E. Characteristic Ber-EP4 and EMA expression in sebaceoma is immunohistochemically distinct from basal cell carcinoma. Histopathology. 2007;51(1):80–6.
25. Ansai S, Arase S, Kawana S, Kimura T. Immunohistochemical findings of sebaceous carcinoma and sebaceoma: retrieval of cytokeratin expression by a panel of anti-cytokeratin monoclonal antibodies. J Dermatol. 2011;38(10):951–8.
26. Cabral ES, Auerbach A, Killian JK, Barrett TL, Cassarino DS. Distinction of benign sebaceous proliferations from sebaceous carcinomas by immunohistochemistry. Am J Dermatopathol. 2006;28(6):465–71.
27. Nakajima T, Watanabe S, Sato Y, Kameya T, Hirota T, Shimosato Y. An immunoperoxidase study of S-100 protein distribution in normal and neoplastic tissues. Am J Surg Pathol. 1982;6(8):715–27.
28. Cochran AJ, Lu HF, Li PX, Saxton R, Wen DR. S100 protein remains a practical marker for melanocytic and other tumors. Melanoma Res. 1993;3:325–30.
29. Jungbluth AA, Busam KJ, Gerald WL, Stockert E, Coplan KA, Iversen K, et al. A103: an anti-melan-a monoclonal antibody for the detection of malignant melanoma in paraffin-embedded tissues. Am J Surg Pathol. 1998;22(5):595–602.
30. Lazova R, Tantcheva-Poor I, Sigal AC. P75 nerve growth factor receptor staining is superior to S100 in identifying spindle cell and desmoplastic melanoma. J Am Acad Dermatol. 2010;63(5):852–8.
31. Barnhill RL, Mihm MC Jr. The histopathology of cutaneous malignant melanoma. Semin Diagn Pathol. 1993;10(1):47–75.
32. Devoe K, Weidner N. Immunohistochemistry of small round-cell tumors. Semin Diagn Pathol. 2000;17:216–24.
33. Marin C, Beauchet A, Capper D, Zimmermann U, Julié C, Ilie M, et al. Detection of BRAF p.V600E

mutations in melanoma by immunohistochemistry has a good interobserver reproducibility. Arch Pathol Lab Med. 2014;138(1):71–5.
34. Long GV, Wilmott JS, Capper D, Preusser M, Zhang YE, Thompson JF, et al. Immunohistochemistry is highly sensitive and specific for the detection of V600E BRAF mutation in melanoma. J Surg Pathol. 2013;37(1):61–5.
35. Hazan C, Melzer K, Panageas KS, Li E, Kamino H, Kopf A, Cordon-Cardo C, et al. Evaluation of the proliferation marker MIB-1 in the prognosis of cutaneous malignant melanoma. Cancer. 2002;95(3):634–40.
36. Sirigu P, Piras F, Minerba L, Murtas D, Maxia C, Colombari R, et al. Prognostic prediction of the immunohistochemical expression of p16 and p53 in cutaneous melanoma: a comparison of two populations from different geographical regions. Eur J Histochem. 2006;50(3):191–8.
37. Flørenes VA, Faye RS, Maelandsmo GM, Nesland JM, Holm R. Levels of cyclin D1 and D3 in malignant melanoma: deregulated cyclin D3 expression is associated with poor clinical outcome in superficial melanoma. Clin Cancer Res. 2000;6(9):3614–20.
38. Conway C, Mitra A, Jewell R, Randerson-Moor J, Lobo S, Nsengimana J, et al. Gene expression profiling of paraffin-embedded primary melanoma using the DASL assay identifies increased osteopontin expression as predictive of reduced relapse-free survival. Clin Cancer Res. 2009;15(22):6939–46.
39. van den Oord JJ, Maes A, Stas M, Nuyts J, De Wever I, De Wolf-Peeters C. Prognostic significance of nm23 protein expression in malignant melanoma. An immunohistochemical study. Melanoma Res. 1997;7(2):121–8.
40. Tucci MG, Lucarini G, Brancorsini D, Zizzi A, Pugnaloni A, Giacchetti A, et al. Involvement of E-cadherin, beta-catenin, Cdc42 and CXCR4 in the progression and prognosis of cutaneous melanoma. Br J Dermatol. 2007;157(6):1212–6.
41. Bachmann IM, Straume O, Puntervoll HE, Kalvenes MB, Akslen LA. Importance of P-cadherin, beta-catenin, and Wnt5a/frizzled for progression of melanocytic tumors and prognosis in cutaneous melanoma. Clin Cancer Res. 2005;11(24 Pt 1):8606–14.
42. Kakavand H, Rawson RV, Pupo GM, Yang JYH, Menzies AM, Carlino MS, et al. PD-L1 expression and immune escape in melanoma resistance to MAPK inhibitors. Clin Cancer Res. 2017;23(20):6054–61.
43. Brüggemann C, Kirchberger MC, Goldinger SM, Weide B, Konrad A, Erdmann M, et al. Predictive value of PD-L1 based on mRNA level in the treatment of stage IV melanoma with ipilimumab. J Cancer Res Clin Oncol. 2017;143(10):1977–84.
44. Brozyna AA, Jozwicki W, Skobowiat C, Jetten A. Slominski AT.RORα and RORγ expression inversely correlates with human melanoma progression. Oncotarget. 2016;7(39):63261–82.
45. Robin YM, Guillou L, Michels JJ, Coindre JM. Human herpesvirus 8 immunostaining: a sensitive and specific method for diagnosing Kaposi sarcoma in paraffin-embedded sections. Am J Clin Pathol. 2004;121(3):330–4.
46. Goldblum JR, Tuthill RJ. CD34 and factor-XIIIa immunoreactivity in dermatofibrosarcoma protuberans and dermatofibroma. Am J Dermatopathol. 1997;19(2):147–53.
47. Kanner WA, Brill LB 2nd, Patterson JW, Wick MR. CD10, p63 and CD99 expression in the differential diagnosis of atypical fibroxanthoma, spindle cell squamous cell carcinoma and desmoplastic melanoma. J Cutan Pathol. 2010;37(7):744–50.
48. Ghanadan A, Abbasi A, Kamyab HK. Cutaneous leiomyoma: novel histologic findings for classification and diagnosis. Acta Med Iran. 2013;51(1):19–24.
49. Perez-Montiel MD, Plaza JA, Dominguez-Malagon H, Suster S. Differential expression of smooth muscle myosin, smooth muscle actin, h-caldesmon, and calponin in the diagnosis of myofibroblastic and smooth muscle lesions of skin and soft tissue. Am J Dermatopathol. 2006;28(2):105–11.
50. Yu CH, Chen HH, Liu CM, Jeng YM, Wang JT, Wang YP, et al. HMB-45 may be a more sensitive maker than S-100 or Melan-A for immunohistochemical diagnosis of primary oral and nasal mucosal melanomas. J Oral Pathol Med. 2005;34(9):540–5.
51. Plaza JA, Torres-Cabala C, Evans H, Diwan AH, Prieto VG. Immunohistochemical expression of S100A6 in cellular neurothekeoma: clinicopathologic and immunohistochemical analysis of 31 cases. Am J Dermatopathol. 2009;31(5):419–22.
52. Hunt JL. Immunohistology of head and neck neoplasms. In: Dabbs DJ, editor. Diagnostic immunohistochemistry. 3rd ed. Philadelphia, PA: Churchill Livingstone Elsevier; 2010. p. 256–90.
53. Faragalla H, Weinreb I. Olfactory neuroblastoma: a review and update. Adv Anat Pathol. 2009;16:322–31.
54. Cessna MH, Zhou H, Perkins SL, Tripp SR, Layfield L, Daines C, et al. Are myogenin and myoD1 expression specific for rhabdomyosarcoma? A study of 150 cases, with emphasis on spindle cell mimics. Am J Surg Pathol. 2001;25(9):1150–7.
55. Babin E, Rouleau V, Vedrine PO, Toussaint B, de Raucourt D, Malard O, et al. Small cell neuroendocrine carcinoma of the nasal cavity and paranasal sinuses. J Laryngol Otol. 2006;120(4):289–97.
56. Folpe AL, Hill CE, Parham DM, O'Shea PA, Weiss SW. Immunohistochemical detection of FLI-1 protein expression: a study of 132 round cell tumors with emphasis on CD99-positive mimics of Ewing's sarcoma/primitive neuroectodermal tumor. Am J Surg Pathol. 2000;24(12):1657–62.
57. Gnepp DR, editor. Diagnostic surgical pathology of the head and neck. 2nd ed. Philadelphia, PA: Saunders Elsevier; 2009.

58. Casiraghi O, Lefèvre M. Undifferentiated malignant round cell tumors of the sinonasal tract and nasopharynx. Ann Pathol. 2009;29(4):296–312.
59. Jeng YM, Sung MT, Fang CL, Huang HY, Mao TL, Cheng W, et al. Sinonasal undifferentiated carcinoma and nasopharyngeal-type undifferentiated carcinoma: two clinically, biologically, and histopathologically distinct entities. Am J Surg Pathol. 2002;26(3):371–6.
60. Haack H, Johnson LA, Fry CJ, Crosby K, Polakiewicz RD, Stelow EB, et al. Diagnosis of NUT midline carcinoma using a NUT-specific monoclonal antibody. Am J Surg Pathol. 2009;33(7):984–91.
61. Gallo O, Graziani P, Fini-Storchi O. Undifferentiated carcinoma of the nose and paranasal sinuses. An immunohistochemical and clinical study. Ear Nose Throat J. 1993;72(9):588–90. 593-5
62. Smith SR, Som P, Fahmy A, Lawson W, Sacks S, Brandwein M. A clinicopathological study of sinonasal neuroendocrine carcinoma and sinonasal undifferentiated carcinoma. Laryngoscope. 2000;110(10 Pt 1):1617–22.
63. Kim JW, Kong IG, Lee C, Kim DY, Rhee CS, Min YG, et al. Expression of Bcl-2 in olfactory neuroblastoma and its association with chemotherapy and survival. Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg. 2008;139(5):708–12.
64. Marur S, D'Souza G, Westra WH, Forastiere AA. HPV-associated head and neck cancer: a virus-related cancer epidemic. Lancet Oncol. 2010;11(8):781–9.
65. Bisht M, Bist SS. Human papilloma virus: a new risk factor in a subset of head and neck cancers. J Cancer Res Ther. 2011;7(3):251–5.
66. Begum S, Westra WH. Basaloid squamous cell carcinoma of the head and neck is a mixed variant that can be further resolved by HPV status. Am J Surg Pathol. 2008;32(7):1044–50.
67. Luo WR, Chen XY, Li SY, Wu AB, Yao KT. Neoplastic spindle cells in nasopharyngeal carcinoma show features of epithelial-mesenchymal transition. Histopathology. 2012;61(1):113–22.
68. Franchi A, Moroni M, Massi D, Paglierani M, Santucci M. Sinonasal undifferentiated carcinoma, nasopharyngeal-type undifferentiated carcinoma, and keratinizing and nonkeratinizing squamous cell carcinoma express different cytokeratin patterns. Am J Surg Pathol. 2002;26(12):1597–604.
69. Cerilli LA, Holst VA, Brandwein MS, Stoler MH, Mills SE. Sinonasal undifferentiated carcinoma: immunohistochemical profile and lack of EBV association. Am J Surg Pathol. 2001;25(2):156–63.
70. Zidar N, Gale N, Kojc N, Volavsek M, Cardesa A, Alos L, et al. Cadherin-catenin complex and transcription factor Snail-1 in spindle cell carcinoma of the head and neck. Virchows Arch. 2008;453(3):267–74.
71. Cheuk W, Chan JKC. Salivary gland tumors. In: Fletcher CDM, editor. Diagnostic histopathology of tumors. 3rd ed. Philadelphia, PA: Churchill Livingstone Elsevier; 2007.
72. Nagao T, Sato E, Inoue R, Oshiro H, Takahashi R, Nagai T, et al. Immunohistochemical analysis of salivary gland tumors: application for surgical pathology practice. Acta Histochem Cytochem. 2012;45(5):269–82.
73. Andreadis D, Epivatianos A, Poulopoulos A, Nomikos A, Papazoglou G, Antoniades D, et al. Detection of C-KIT (CD117) molecule in benign and malignant salivary gland tumours. Oral Oncol. 2006;42(1):57–65.
74. Penner CR, Folpe AL, Budnick SD. C-kit expression distinguishes salivary gland adenoid cystic carcinoma from polymorphous low-grade adenocarcinoma. Mod Pathol. 2002;15(7):687–91.
75. Lee JH, Lee JH, Kim A, Kim I, Chae YS. Unique expression of MUC3, MUC5AC and cytokeratins in salivary gland carcinomas. Pathol Int. 2005;55(7):386–90.
76. Handra-Luca A, Lamas G, Bertrand JC, Fouret P. MUC1, MUC2, MUC4, and MUC5AC expression in salivary gland mucoepidermoid carcinoma: diagnostic and prognostic implications. Am J Surg Pathol. 2005;29(7):881–9.
77. Seethala RR, Barnes EL, Hunt JL. Epithelial-myoepithelial carcinoma: a review of the clinicopathologic spectrum and immunophenotypic characteristics in 61 tumors of the salivary glands and upper aerodigestive tract. Am J Surg Pathol. 2007;31(1):44–57.
78. Azevedo RS, de Almeida OP, Kowalski LP, Pires FR. Comparative cytokeratin expression in the different cell types of salivary gland mucoepidermoid carcinoma. Head Neck Pathol. 2008;2:257–64.
79. Darling MR, Schneider JW, Phillips VM. Polymorphous low-grade adenocarcinoma and adenoid cystic carcinoma: a review and comparison of immunohistochemical markers. Oral Oncol. 2002;38(7):641–5.
80. Epivatianos A, Iordanides S, Zaraboukas T, Antoniades D. Adenoid cystic carcinoma and polymorphous low-grade adenocarcinoma of minor salivary glands: a comparative immunohistochemical study using the epithelial membrane and carcinoembryonic antibodies. Oral Dis. 2005;11(3):175–80.
81. Edwards PC, Bhuiya T, Kelsch RD. Assessment of p63 expression in the salivary gland neoplasms adenoid cystic carcinoma, polymorphous low-grade adenocarcinoma, and basal cell and canalicular adenomas. Oral Surg Oral Med Oral Pathol Oral Radiol Endod. 2004;97(5):613–9.
82. Farrell T, Chang YL. Basal cell adenocarcinoma of minor salivary gland. Arch Pathol Lab Med. 2007;131(10):1602–4.
83. Moriki T, Ueta S, Takahashi T, Mitani M, Ichien M. Salivary duct carcinoma: cytologic characteristics and application of androgen receptor immunostaining for diagnosis. Cancer. 2001;93(5):344–50.

84. Johnson CJ, Barry MB, Vasef MA, et al. Her-2/neu expression in salivary duct carcinoma: an immunohistochemical and chromogenic in situ hybridization study. Appl Immunohistochem Mol Morphol. 2008;16(1):54–8.
85. Schwartz LE, Begum S, Westra WH, Bishop JA. GATA3 immunohistochemical expression in salivary gland neoplasms. Head Neck Pathol. 2013;7(4):311–5.
86. Meer S, Altini M. CK7+/CK20- immunoexpression profile is typical of salivary gland neoplasia. Histopathology. 2007;51(1):26–32.
87. Noroozinia F, Gheibi A, Ilkhanizadeh B, Abbasi A. Ck19 is a useful marker in distinguishing follicular variant of papillary thyroid carcinoma from benign thyroid lesions with follicular growth pattern. Acta Endo (Buc). 2016;12(4):387–91.
88. DeLellis RA, Shin SJ, Treaba DO. Immunohistology of endocrine tumors. In: Dabbs DJ, editor. Diagnostic immunohistochemistry. 3rd ed. Philadelphia, PA: Churchill Livingstone Elsevier; 2010. p. 298–313.
89. Liu H, Lin F, DeLellis RA. Thyroid and parathyroid gland. In: Lin F, Prichard J, editors. Handbook of practical immunohistochemistry. 1st ed. New York, NY: Springer; 2011. p. 137–58.
90. Fischer S, Asa SL. Application of immunohistochemistry to thyroid neoplasms. Arch Pathol Lab Med. 2008;132(3):359–72.
91. Cheung CC, Ezzat S, Freeman JL, Rosen IB, Asa SL. Immunohistochemical diagnosis of papillary thyroid carcinoma. Mod Pathol. 2001;14(4):338–42.
92. Kragsterman B, Grimelius L, Wallin G, et al. Cytokeratin 19 expression in papillary thyroid carcinoma. Appl Immunohistochem. 1999;7:181–5.
93. Ordonez NG. Thyroid transcription factor-1 is a marker of lung and thyroid carcinomas. Adv Anat Pathol. 2000;7(2):123–7.
94. Albores-Saavedra J, Nadji M, Civantos F, Morales AR. Thyroglobulin in carcinoma of the thyroid: an immunohistochemical study. Hum Pathol. 1983;14(1):62–6.
95. Liles N, Hamilton G, Shen SS, Krishnan B, Truong LD. PAX-8 is a sensitive marker for thyroid differentiation. Comparison with PAX-2, TTF-1 and thyroglobulin [USCAP abstract 573]. Mod Pathol. 2010;23(Suppl ls):130A.
96. Nonaka D, Tang Y, Chiriboga L, Rivera M, Ghossein R. Diagnostic utility of thyroid transcription factors Pax8 and TTF-2 (FoxE1) in thyroid epithelial neoplasms. Mod Pathol. 2008;21(2):192–200.
97. Katoh R, Miyagi E, Nakamura N, Li X, Suzuki K, Kakudo K, et al. Expression of thyroid transcription factor-1 (TTF-1) in human C cells and medullary thyroid carcinomas. Hum Pathol. 2000;31(3):386–93.
98. Uribe M, Fenoglio-Preiser CM, Grimes M, Feind C. Medullary carcinoma of the thyroid gland. Clinical, pathological, and immunohistochemical features with review of the literature. Am J Surg Pathol. 1985;9(8):577–94.
99. DeLellis RA, Rule AH, Spiler I, Nathanson L, Tashjian AH Jr, Wolfe HJ. Calcitonin and carcinoembryonic antigen as tumor markers in medullary thyroid carcinoma. Am J Clin Pathol. 1978;70(4):587–94.
100. Miettinen M, Franssila KO. Variable expression of keratins and nearly uniform lack of thyroid transcription factor 1 in thyroid anaplastic carcinoma. Hum Pathol. 2000;31(9):1139–45.
101. Hurlimann J, Gardiol D, Scazziga B. Immunohistology of anaplastic thyroid carcinoma. A study of 43 cases. Histopathology. 1987;11(6):567–80.
102. Albores-Saavedra J, Nadji M, Civantos F, Morales AR, Delellis RA. Challenging lesions in the differential diagnosis of endocrine tumors: parathyroid carcinoma. Endocr Pathol. 2008;19(4):221–5.
103. DeLellis RA. Parathyroid carcinoma: an overview. Adv Anat Pathol. 2005;12(2):53–61.
104. Erickson LA, Jin L, Papotti M, Lloyd RV. Oxyphil parathyroid carcinomas: a clinicopathologic and immunohistochemical study of 10 cases. Am J Surg Pathol. 2002;26(3):344–9.
105. Tomita T. Immunocytochemical staining patterns for parathyroid hormone and chromogranin in parathyroid hyperplasia, adenoma and carcinoma. Endocr Pathol. 1999;10:145–56.
106. Juhlin CC, Villablanca A, Sandelin K, Haglund F, Nordenström J, Forsberg L, et al. Parafibromin immunoreactivity; its use as an additional diagnostic marker for parathyroid tumor classification. Endocr Relat Cancer. 2007;14:501–12.
107. Mangray S, Kurek KC, Sabo E, DeLellis RA. Immunohistochemical expression of parafibromin is of limited value in distinguishing parathyroid carcinoma from adenoma. Mod Pathol. 2008;21:108A.
108. Hatanaka K, Tsuta K, Watanabe K, Sugino K, Uekusa T. Primary pulmonary adenocarcinoma with enteric differentiation resembling metastatic colorectal carcinoma: a report of the second case negative for cytokeratin 7. Pathol Res Pract. 2011;207(3):188–91.
109. Inamura K, Satoh Y, Okumura S, Nakagawa K, Tsuchiya E, Fukayama M, et al. Pulmonary adenocarcinomas with enteric differentiation histologic and immunohistochemical characteristics compared with metastatic colorectal cancers and usual pulmonary adenocarcinomas. Am J Surg Pathol. 2005;29:660–5.
110. Beheshti J, Sabo E, Janne PA, et al. TTF-1 positivity is a sensitive predictor of EGFR mutation and treatment response in pulmonary adenocarcinomas, by pathologist interpretation and by image analysis. Mod Pathol. 2008;21:336A.
111. Hammar SP, Dacic S. Immunohistology of lung and pleural neoplasms. In: Dabbs DJ, editor. Diagnostic immunohistochemistry. New York: Churchill Livingstone; 2009. p. 369–3.
112. Cho HJ, Kim HR, Park YS, Kim YH, Kim DK, Park SI. Prognostic value of survivin expression

in stage III non-small cell lung cancer patients treated with platinum-based therapy. Surg Oncol. 2015;24(4):329–34.
113. Takada K, Toyokawa G, Shoji F, Okamoto T, Maehara Y. The significance of the PD-L1 expression in non-small-cell lung cancer: trenchant double swords as predictive and prognostic markers. Clin Lung Cancer. 2018;19(2):120–9.
114. Wirth PR, Legler J, Wright GL. Immunohistochemical evaluation of seven monoclonal antibodies for differentiation of pleural mesothelioma from lung adenocarcinoma. Cancer. 1991;67:655–62.
115. Chu AY, Litzky LA, Pasha TL, Acs G, Zhang PJ. Utility of D2-40, a novel mesothelial marker, in the diagnosis of malignant mesothelioma. Mod Pathol. 2005;18:105–10.
116. Hinterberger M, Reineke T, Storz M, Weder W, Vogt P, Moch H. D2-40 and calretinin: a tissue microarray analysis of 341 malignant mesotheliomas with emphasis on sarcomatoid differentiation. Mod Pathol. 2007;20:248–55.
117. Anderson GG, Weiss LM. Determining tissue of origin for metastatic cancers, meta-analysis and literature review of immunohistochemistry performance. Appl Immunohistochem Mol Morphol. 2010;18:3–8.
118. Dennis JL, Hvidsten TR, Wit EC, Komorowski J, Bell AK, Downie I, et al. Markers of adenocarcinoma characteristic of the site of origin: development of a diagnostic algorithm. Clin Cancer Res. 2005;11:3766–72.
119. Gamble AR, Bell JA, Ronan JE, Pearson D, Ellis IO. Use of tumour marker immunoreactivity to identify primary site of metastatic cancer. BMJ. 1993;306:295–8.
120. Lagendijk JH, Mullink H, van Diest PJ, Meijer GA, Meijer CJ. Immunohistochemical differentiation between primary adenocarcinomas of the ovary and ovarian metastases of colonic and breast origin. Comparison between a statistical and an intuitive approach. J Clin Pathol. 1999;52:283–90.
121. DeYoung BR, Wick MR. Immunohistologic evaluation of metastatic carcinomas of unknown origin: an algorithmic approach. Semin Diagn Pathol. 2000;17:184–93.
122. Wee A. Diagnostic utility of immunohistochemistry in hepatocellular carcinoma, its variants and their mimics. Appl Immunohistochem Mol Morphol. 2006;14:266–72.
123. Basturk O, Farris AB III, Adsay NV. Immunohistochemistry of pancreas, biliary tract and liver. In: Dabbs DJ, editor. Diagnostic immunohistochemistry. New York: Churchill Livingstone; 2009. p. 541–93.
124. Hurrlimann J, Gardiol D. Immunohistochemical characterization of 130 cases of primary hepatic carcinomas. Am J Surg Pathol. 1991;15:280–8.
125. Ma CK, Zarbo RJ, Frierson HF, Lee MW. Comparative immunohistochemical study of primary and metastatic carcinomas of the liver. Am J Clin Pathol. 1993;99:551–7.
126. Wee A, Nilsson B. Combined hepatocellular-cholangiocarcinoma: diagnostic challenge in hepatic fine needle aspiration biopsy. Acta Cytol. 1999;43:131–8.
127. Lau SK, Prakash S, Geller SA, Alsabeh R. Comparative immunohistochemical profile of hepatocellular carcinoma, cholangiocarcinoma, and metastatic adenocarcinoma. Hum Pathol. 2002;33:1175–81.
128. Taniere P, Borghi-Scoazec G, Saurin JC, Lombard-Bohas C, Boulez J, Berger F, et al. Cytokeratin expression in adenocarcinomas of the esophagogastric junction: a comparative study of adenocarcinomas of the distal esophagus and of the proximal stomach. Am J Surg Pathol. 2002;26:1213–21.
129. Driessen A, Nafteux P, Lerut T, Van Raemdonck D, De Leyn P, Filez L, et al. Identical cytokeratin expression pattern CK7+/CK20− in esophageal and cardiac cancer: etiopathological and clinical implications. Mod Pathol. 2004;17:49–55.
130. Lam KY, Loke SL, Shen XC, Ma LT. Cytokeratin expression in non-neoplastic oesophageal epithelium and squamous cell carcinoma of the oesophagus. Virchows Arch. 1995;426:345–9.
131. Werling RW, Yaziji H, Bacchi CE, Gown AM. CDX2, a highly sensitive and specific marker of adenocarcinomas of intestinal origin: an immunohistochemical survey of 476 primary and metastatic carcinomas. Am J Surg Pathol. 2003;27:303–10.
132. Kim MA, Lee HS, Yang HK, Kim WH. Cytokeratin expression profile in gastric carcinomas. Hum Pathol. 2004;35:576–81.
133. Chu PG, Weiss LM. Immunohistochemical characterization of signet-ring cell carcinomas of the stomach, breast, and colon. Am J Clin Pathol. 2004;121:884–92.
134. Wang HB, Liao XF, Zhang J. Clinicopathological factors associated with HER2-positive gastric cancer: a meta-analysis. Medicine (Baltimore). 2017;96(44):e8437.
135. Apicella M, Corso S, Giordano S. Targeted therapies for gastric cancer: failures and hopes from clinical trials. Oncotarget. 2017;8(34):57654–69.
136. Carlomagno N, Incollingo P, Tammaro V, Peluso G, Rupealta N, Chiacchio G, et al. Diagnostic, predictive, prognostic, and therapeutic molecular biomarkers in third millennium: a breakthrough in gastric cancer. Biomed Res Int. 2017;2017:7869802.
137. Chen ZM, Wang HL. Alteration of cytokeratin 7 and cytokeratin 20 expression profile is uniquely associated with tumorigenesis of primary adenocarcinoma of the small intestine. Am J Surg Pathol. 2004;28:1352–9.
138. Zhang MQ, Lin F, Hui P, Chen ZM, Ritter JH, Wang HL. Expression of mucins, SIMA, villin, and CDX2 in small-intestinal adenocarcinoma. Am J Clin Pathol. 2007;128:808–16.

139. Svrcek M, Jourdan F, Sebbagh N, Couvelard A, Chatelain D, Mourra N, et al. Immunohistochemical analysis of adenocarcinoma of the small intestine: a tissue microarray study. J Clin Pathol. 2003;56:898–903.
140. Berezowski K, Stastny JF, Kornstein MJ. Cytokeratins 7 and 20 and carcinoembryonic antigen in ovarian and colonic carcinoma. Mod Pathol. 1996;9:426–9.
141. Proca DM, Niemann TH, Porcell AI, DeYoung BR. MOC31 immunoreactivity in primary and metastatic carcinoma of the liver. Report of findings and review of other utilized markers. Appl Immunohistochem Mol Morphol. 2000;8:120–5.
142. Greenson JK, Huang SC, Herron C, Moreno V, Bonner JD, Tomsho LP, et al. Pathologic predictors of microsatellite instability in colorectal cancer. Am J Surg Pathol. 2009;33:126–33.
143. Wright CL, Stewart ID. Histopathology and mismatch repair status of 458 consecutive colorectal carcinomas. Am J Surg Pathol. 2003;27:1393–406.
144. Jover R, Paya A, Alenda C, Poveda MJ, Peiró G, Aranda FI, et al. Defective mismatch-repair colorectal cancer: clinicopathologic characteristics and usefulness of immunohistochemical analysis for diagnosis. Am J Clin Pathol. 2004;122:389–94.
145. Krasinskas AM, Goldsmith JD. Immunohistochemistry of the gastrointestinal tract. In: Dabbs DJ, editor. Diagnostic immunohistochemistry. New York: Churchill Livingstone; 2009. p. 500–40.
146. Valentini AM, Armentano R, Pirrelli M, Gentile M, Caruso ML. Immunohistochemical mismatch repair proteins expression in colorectal cancer. Appl Immunohistochem Mol Morphol. 2006;14:42–5.
147. Longacre TA, Kong CS, Welton ML. Diagnostic problems in anal pathology. Adv Anat Pathol. 2008;15:263–78.
148. Lisovsky M, Patel K, Cymes K, Chase D, Bhuiya T, Morgenstern N. Immunophenotypic characterization of anal gland carcinoma: loss of p63 and cytokeratin 5/6. Arch Pathol Lab Med. 2007;131:1304–11.
149. Ronnett BM, Kurman RJ, Shmookler BM, Sugarbaker PH, Young RH. The morphologic spectrum of ovarian metastases of appendiceal adenocarcinomas:a clinicopathologic and immunohistochemical analysis of tumors often misinterpreted as primary ovarian tumors or metastatic tumors from other gastrointestinal sites. Am J Surg Pathol. 1997;21:1144–55.
150. Ronnett BM, Shmookler BM, Diener-West M, Sugarbaker PH, Kurman RJ. Immunohistochemical evidence supporting the appendiceal origin of pseudomyxoma peritonei in women. Int J Gynecol Pathol. 1997;16:1–9.
151. Baker PM, Oliva E. Immunohistochemistry as a tool in the differential diagnosis of ovarian tumors: an update. Int J Gynecol Pathol. 2004;24:39–55.
152. Park SY, Kim BH, Kim JH, Lee S, Kang GH. Panels of immunohistochemical markers help determine primary sites of metastatic adenocarcinoma. Arch Pathol Lab Med. 2007;131:1561–7.
153. Chan ES, Alexander J, Swanson PE, Jain D, Yeh MM. PDX-1, CDX-2, T TF-1, and CK7: a reliable Immunohistochemical panel for pancreatic neuroendocrine neoplasms. Am J Surg Pathol. 2012;36:737–43.
154. Kiśluk J, Gryko M, Guzińska-Ustymowicz K, Kemona A, Kędra B. Immunohistochemical diagnosis of gastrointestinal stromal tumors - an analysis of 80 cases from 2004 to 2010. Adv Clin Exp Med. 2013;22(1):33–9.
155. Miettinen M, Majidi M, Lasota J. Pathology and diagnostic criteria of gastrointestinal stromal tumors (GISTs): a review. Eur J Cancer. 2002;38(Suppl 5):S39–51.
156. Kloppel G, Rindi G, Anlauf M, Perren A, Komminoth P. Site-specific biology and pathology of gastroenteropancreatic neuroendocrine tumors. Virchows Arch. 2007;451(Suppl 1):S9–27.
157. Bernick PE, Klimstra DS, Shia J, Minsky B, Saltz L, Shi W, et al. Neuroendocrine carcinomas of the colon and rectum. Dis Colon Rectum. 2004;47:163–9.
158. Alsaad KO, Serra S, Schmitt A, Perren A, Chetty R. Cytokeratins 7 and 20 immunoexpression profile in goblet cell and classical carcinoids of appendix. Endocr Pathol. 2007;18:16–22.
159. Netto GJ, Epstein JI. Immunohistology of the prostate, bladder, kidney, and testis. In: Dabbs DJ, editor. Diagnostic immunohistochemistry. 3rd ed. Philadelphia, PA: Churchill Livingstone Elsevier; 2010. p. 593–661.
160. Lin F, Prichard J, editors. Handbook of practical immunohistochemistry. 1st ed. New York, NY: Springer; 2011.
161. Chu PG, Weiss LM. Modern immunohistochemistry. New York, NY: Cambridge University Press; 2009.
162. Kim MK, Kim S. Immunohistochemical profile of common epithelial neoplasms arising in the kidney. Appl Immunohistochem Mol Morphol. 2000;10(4):332–8.
163. Hammerich KH, Ayala GE, Wheeler TM. Application of immunohistochemistry to the genitourinary system (prostate, urinary bladder, testis, and kidney). Arch Pathol Lab Med. 2008;132(3):432–40.
164. Kobayashi N, Matsuzaki O, Shirai S, Aoki I, Yao M, Nagashima Y. Collecting duct carcinoma of the kidney: an immunohistochemical evaluation of the use of antibodies for differential diagnosis. Hum Pathol. 2008;39(9):1350–9.
165. Yasir S, Herrera L, Gomez-Fernandez C, Reis IM, Umar S, Leveillee R, et al. CD10+ and CK7/RON− immunophenotype distinguishes renal cell carcinoma, conventional type with eosinophilic morphology from its mimickers. Appl Immunohistochem Mol Morphol. 2012;20(5):454–61.
166. Bakshi N, Kunju LP, Giordano T, Shah RB. Expression of renal cell carcinoma antigen

(RCC) in renal epithelial and nonrenal tumors: diagnostic implications. Appl Immunohistochem Mol Morphol. 2007;15(3):310–5.
167. Avery AK, Beckstead J, Renshaw AA, Corless CL. Use of antibodies to RCC and CD10 in the differential diagnosis of renal neoplasms. Am J Surg Pathol. 2000;24(2):203–10.
168. Sharma SG, Gokden M, McKenney JK, Phan DC, Cox RM, Kelly T, et al. The utility of PAX-2 and renal cell carcinoma marker immunohistochemistry in distinguishing papillary renal cell carcinoma from nonrenal cell neoplasms with papillary features. Appl Immunohistochem Mol Morphol. 2010;18(6):494–8.
169. Tretiakova MS, Sahoo S, Takahashi M, Turkyilmaz M, Vogelzang NJ, Lin F, et al. Expression of alpha-methylacyl-CoA racemase in papillary renal cell carcinoma. Am J Surg Pathol. 2004;28(1):69–76.
170. Cochand-Priollet B, Molinié V, Bougaran J, Bouvier R, Dauge-Geffroy MC, Deslignières S, et al. Renal chromophobe cell carcinoma and oncocytoma. A comparative morphologic, histochemical, and immunohistochemical study of 124 cases. Arch Pathol Lab Med. 1997;121(10):1081–6.
171. Liu L, Qian J, Singh H, Meiers I, Zhou X, Bostwick DG. Immunohistochemical analysis of chromophobe renal cell carcinoma, renal oncocytoma, and clear cell carcinoma: an optimal and practical panel for differential diagnosis. Arch Pathol Lab Med. 2007;131(8):1290–7.
172. Dorai T, Sawczuk IS, Pastorek J, Wiernik PH, Dutcher JP. The role of carbonic anhydrase IX overexpression in kidney cancer. Eur J Cancer. 2005;41(18):2935–47.
173. Pan CC, Chen PC, Chiang H. Overexpression of KIT (CD117) in chromophobe renal cell carcinoma and renal oncocytoma. Am J Clin Pathol. 2004;121(6):878–83.
174. Went P, Dirnhofer S, Salvisberg T, Amin MB, Lim SD, Diener PA, et al. Expression of epithelial cell adhesion molecule (EpCam) in renal epithelial tumors. Am J Surg Pathol. 2005;29(1):83–8.
175. Kuehn A, Paner GP, Skinnider BF, Cohen C, Datta MW, Young AN, et al. Expression analysis of kidney-specific cadherin in a wide spectrum of traditional and newly recognized renal epithelial neoplasms: diagnostic and histogenetic implications. Am J Surg Pathol. 2007;31(10):1528–33.
176. Adley BP, Gupta A, Lin F, Luan C, Teh BT, Yang XJ. Expression of kidney-specific cadherin in chromophobe renal cell carcinoma and renal oncocytoma. Am J Clin Pathol. 2006;126(1):79–85.
177. Southgate J, Harnden P, Trejdosiewicz LK. Cytokeratin expression patterns in normal and malignant urothelium: a review of the biological and diagnostic implications. Histol Histopathol. 1999;14(2):657–64.
178. Bassily NH, Vallorosi CJ, Akdas G, Montie JE, Rubin MA. Coordinate expression of cytokeratins 7 and 20 in prostate adenocarcinoma and bladder urothelial carcinoma. Am J Clin Pathol. 2000;113(3):383–8.
179. Desai S, Lim SD, Jimenez RE, Chun T, Keane TE, McKenney JK, et al. Relationship of cytokeratin 20 and CD44 protein expression with WHO/ISUP grade in pTa and pT1 papillary urothelial neoplasia. Mod Pathol. 2000;13(12):1315–23.
180. McKenney JK, Amin MB. The role of immunohistochemistry in the diagnosis of urinary bladder neoplasms. Semin Diagn Pathol. 2005;22(1):69–87.
181. Parker DC, Folpe AL, Bell J, Oliva E, Young RH, Cohen C, et al. Potential utility of uroplakin III, thrombomodulin, high molecular weight cytokeratin, and cytokeratin 20 in noninvasive, invasive, and metastatic urothelial (transitional cell) carcinomas. Am J Surg Pathol. 2003;27(1):1–10.
182. Mallofré C, Castillo M, Morente V, Solé M. Immunohistochemical expression of CK20, p53, and Ki-67 as objective markers of urothelial dysplasia. Mod Pathol. 2003;16(3):187–91.
183. Røtterud R, Nesland JM, Berner A, Fosså SD. Expression of the epidermal growth factor receptor family in normal and malignant urothelium. BJU Int. 2005;95(9):1344–50.
184. Margulis V, Lotan Y, Karakiewicz PI, Fradet Y, Ashfaq R, Capitanio U, et al. Multi-institutional validation of the predictive value of Ki-67 labeling index in patients with urinary bladder cancer. J Natl Cancer Inst. 2009;101(2):114–9.
185. Pinto AP, Schlecht NF, Woo TY, Crum CP, Cibas ES. Biomarker (ProEx C,p16(INK4A), and MiB-1) distinction of high-grade squamous intraepithelial lesion from its mimics. Mod Pathol. 2008;21:1067–74.
186. Ansari-Lari MA, Staebler A, Zaino RJ, Shah KV, Ronnett BM. Distinction of endocervical and endometrial adenocarcinomas: Immunohistochemical p16 expression correlated with human papillomavirus (HPV) DNA detection. Am J Surg Pathol. 2004;28:160–7.
187. Castrillon DH, Lee KR, Nucci MR. Distinction between endometrial and endocervical adenocarcinoma: an immunohistochemical study. Int J Gynecol Pathol. 2002;21:4–10.
188. Kamoi S, Al-Juboury MI, Akin MR, Silverberg SG. Immunohistochemical staining in the distinction between primary endometrial and endocervical adenocarcinomas: another viewpoint. Int J Gynecol Pathol. 2002;21:217–23.
189. McCluggage WG, Sumathi VP, McBride HA, Patterson A. A panel of immunohistochemical stains, including carcinoembryonic antigen, vimentin, and estrogen receptor, aids the distinction between primary endometrial and endocervical adenocarcinomas. Int J Gynecol Pathol. 2002;21:11–5.
190. McCluggage WG, Jenkins D. p16 immunoreactivity may assist in the distinction between endometrial and endocervical adenocarcinoma. Int J Gynecol Pathol. 2003;22:231–5.

191. Riethdorf S, Neffen EF, Cviko A, Löning T, Crum CP, Riethdorf L. p16INK4A expression as biomarker for HPV 16-related vulvar neoplasias. Hum Pathol. 2004;35:1477–83.
192. Mulvany NJ, Allen DG. Differentiated intraepithelial neoplasia of the vulva. Int J Gynecol Pathol. 2008;27:125–35.
193. Park KJ, Bramlage MP, Ellenson LH, Pirog EC. Immunoprofile of adenocarcinomas of the endometrium, endocervix, and ovary with mucinous differentiation. Appl Immunohistochem Mol Morphol. 2009;17:8–11.
194. Santin AD, Bellone S, Gokden M, Palmieri M, Dunn D, Agha J, et al. Overexpression of HER-2/neu in uterine serous papillary cancer. Clin Cancer Res. 2002;8:1271–9.
195. Santin AD, Bellone S, Van SS, Bushen W, De Las Casas LE, Korourian S, et al. Determination of HER2/neu status in uterine serous papillary carcinoma: comparative analysis of immunohistochemistry and fluorescence in situ hybridization. Gynecol Oncol. 2005;98:24–30.
196. Odicino FE, Bignotti E, Rossi E, Pasinetti B, Tassi RA, Donzelli C, et al. HER-2/neu overexpression and amplification in uterine serous papillary carcinoma: comparative analysis of immunohistochemistry, real-time reverse transcription-polymerase chain reaction, and fluorescence in situ hybridization. Int J Gynecol Cancer. 2008;18:14–21.
197. Hwang H, Quenneville L, Yaziji H, Gown AM. Wilms tumor gene product: sensitive and contextually specific marker of serous carcinomas of ovarian surface epithelial origin. Appl Immunohistochem Mol Morphol. 2004;12:122–6.
198. Ji H, Isacson C, Seidman JD, Kurman RJ, Ronnett BM. Cytokeratins 7 and 20, Dpc4 and MUC5AC in the distinction of metastatic mucinous carcinomas in the ovary from primary ovarian mucinous tumors: Dpc4 assists in identifying metastatic pancreatic carcinomas. Int J Gynecol Pathol. 2002;21:391–400.
199. Deavers MT, Malpica A, Liu J, Broaddus R, Silva EG. Ovarian sex cord-stromal tumors: an immunohistochemical study including a comparison of calretinin and inhibin. Mod Pathol. 2003;16:584–90.
200. McCluggage WG, Young RH. Immunohistochemistry as a diagnostic aid in the evaluation of ovarian tumors. Semin Diagn Pathol. 2005;22:3–32.
201. Bhargava R, Esposito NN, Dabbs DI. Immunohistology of the breast. In: Dabbs DJ, editor. Diagnostic immunohistochemistry. 3rd ed. Philadelphia, PA: Churchill Livingstone Elsevier; 2010. p. 763–819.
202. Keyhani E, Muhammadnejad A, Karimlou M. Prevalence of HER-2-positive invasive breast cancer: a systematic review from Iran. Asian Pac J Cancer Prev. 2012;13(11):5477–82.
203. Hardy LB, Fitzgibbons PL, Goldsmith JD, Eisen RN, Beasley MB, Souers RJ, et al. Immunohistochemistry validation procedures and practices: a College of American Pathologists survey of 727 laboratories. Arch Pathol Lab Med. 2013;137(1):19–25.
204. Gown AM. Current issues in ER and HER2 testing by IHC in breast cancer. Mod Pathol. 2008;21(Suppl 2):S8–S15.
205. Davion SM, Siziopikou KP, Sullivan ME. Cytokeratin 7: a re-evaluation of the 'tried and true' in triple-negative breast cancers. Histopathology. 2012;61(4):660–6.
206. Chia SY, Thike AA, Cheok PY, Tan PH. Utility of mammaglobin and gross cystic disease fluid protein-15 (GCDFP-15) in confirming a breast origin for recurrent tumors. Breast. 2010;19(5):355–9.
207. Reis-Filho JS, Milanezi F, Amendoeira I, Albergaria A, Schmitt FC. Distribution of p63, a novel myoepithelial marker, in fine-needle aspiration biopsies of the breast: an analysis of 82 samples. Cancer. 2003;99(3):172–9.
208. Dabbs DJ, Bhargava R, Chivukula M. Lobular versus ductal breast neoplasms: the diagnostic utility of p120 catenin. Am J Surg Pathol. 2007;31(3):427–37.
209. Dabbs DJ, Kaplai M, Chivukula M, Kanbour A, Kanbour-Shakir A, Carter GJ. The spectrum of morphomolecular abnormalities of the E-cadherin/catenin complex in pleomorphic lobular carcinoma of the breast. Appl Immunohistochem Mol Morphol. 2007;15(3):260–6.
210. Fletcher CD, editor. Diagnostic histopathology of tumors. 3rd ed. Philadelphia, PA: Churchill Livingstone Elsevier; 2007.
211. Weinstein MH, Signoretti S, Loda M. Diagnostic utility of immunohistochemical staining for p63, a sensitive marker of prostatic basal cells. Mod Pathol. 2002;15(12):1302–8.
212. Mhawech P, Uchida T, Pelte MF. Immunohistochemical profile of high-grade urothelial bladder carcinoma and prostate adenocarcinoma. Hum Pathol. 2002;33(11):1136–40.
213. Sheridan T, Herawi M, Epstein JI, Illei PB. The role of P501S and PSA in the diagnosis of metastatic adenocarcinoma of the prostate. Am J Surg Pathol. 2007;31(9):1351–5.
214. Kunju LP, Mehra R, Snyder M, Shah RB. Prostate-specific antigen, high-molecular-weight cytokeratin (clone 34βE12), and/or p63: an optimal immunohistochemical panel to distinguish poorly differentiated prostate adenocarcinoma from urothelial carcinoma. Am J Clin Pathol. 2006;125(5):675–81.
215. Lippert MC, Bensimon H, Javadpour N. Immunoperoxidase staining of acid phosphatase in human prostatic tissue. J Urol. 1982;128(5):1114–6.
216. Marchal C, Redondo M, Padilla M, Caballero J, Rodrigo I, García J, et al. Expression of prostate specific membrane antigen (PSMA) in prostatic adenocarcinoma and prostatic intraepithelial neoplasia. Histol Histopathol. 2004;19(3):715–8.

217. Yin M, Dhir R, Parwani AV. Diagnostic utility of p501s (prostein) in comparison to prostate specific antigen (PSA) for the detection of metastatic prostatic adenocarcinoma. Diagn Pathol. 2007;27(2):41.
218. Sung MT, Jiang Z, Montironi R, MacLennan GT, Mazzucchelli R, Cheng L. Alpha-methylacyl-CoA racemase (P504S)/34βE12/p63 triple cocktail stain in prostatic adenocarcinoma after hormonal therapy. Hum Pathol. 2007;38(2):332–41.
219. Boran C, Kandirali E, Yilmaz F, Serin E, Akyol M. Reliability of the 34βE12, keratin 5/6, p63, bcl-2, and AMACR in the diagnosis of prostate carcinoma. Urol Oncol. 2011;29(6):614–23.
220. Bahrami A, Ro JY, Ayala AG. An overview of testicular germ cell tumors. Arch Pathol Lab Med. 2007;131(8):1267–80.
221. Emerson RE, Ulbright TM. The use of immunohistochemistry in the differential diagnosis of tumors of the testis and paratestis. Semin Diagn Pathol. 2005;22(1):33–50.
222. Mostofi FK, Sesterhenn IA, Davis CJ Jr. Immunopathology of germ cell tumors of the testis. Semin Diagn Pathol. 1987;4(4):320–41.
223. Tickoo SK, Hutchinson B, Bacik J, Mazumdar M, Motzer RJ, Bajorin DF, et al. Testicular seminoma: a clinicopathologic and immunohistochemical study of 105 cases with special reference to seminomas with atypical features. Int J Surg Pathol. 2002;10(1):23–32.
224. Wick MR, Swanson PE, Manivel JC. Placental-like alkaline phosphatase reactivity in human tumors: an immunohistochemical study of 520 cases. Hum Pathol. 1987;18:946–54.
225. Bomeisl PE, MacLennan GT. Spermatocytic seminoma. J Urol. 2007;177(2):734.
226. Kraggerud SM, Berner A, Bryne M, Pettersen EO, Fossa SD. Spermatocytic seminoma as compared to classical seminoma: an immunohistochemical and DNA flow cytometric study. APMIS. 1999;107(3):297–302.
227. Jones TD, Ulbright TM, Eble JN, Baldridge LA, Cheng L. OCT4 staining in testicular tumors: a sensitive and specific marker for seminoma and embryonal carcinoma. Am J Surg Pathol. 2004;28:935–40.
228. Pallesen G, Hamilton-Dutoit SJ. Ki-1 (CD30) antigen is regularly expressed by tumor cells of embryonal carcinoma. Am J Pathol. 1988;133(3):446–50.
229. Leroy X, Augusto D, Leteurtre E, Gosselin B. CD30 and CD117 (c-kit) used in combination are useful for distinguishing embryonal carcinoma from seminoma. J Histochem Cytochem. 2002;50(2):283–5.
230. Lau SK, Weiss LM, Chu PG. D2-40 immunohistochemistry in the differential diagnosis of seminoma and embryonal carcinoma: a comparative immunohistochemical study with KIT (CD117) and CD30. Mod Pathol. 2007;20:320–5.
231. Young RH, Koelliker DD, Scully RE. Sertoli cell tumors of the testis, not otherwise specified: a clinicopathologic analysis of 60 cases. Am J Surg Pathol. 1998;22:709–21.
232. Iczkowski KA, Bostwick DG, Roche PC, Cheville JC. Inhibin A is a sensitive and specific marker for testicular sex cord-stromal tumors. Mod Pathol. 1998;11(8):774–9.
233. McCluggage WG, Shanks JH, Whiteside C, Maxwell P, Banerjee SS, Biggart JD. Immunohistochemical study of testicular sex cord-stromal tumors, including staining with anti-inhibin antibody. Am J Surg Pathol. 1998;22(5):615–9.
234. Swerdlow SH, Campo E, Harris NL, Jaffe ES, Pileri SA, Stein H, et al. WHO classification of tumours of haematopoietic and lymphoid tissues. 4th ed. Lyon: International Agency for Research on Cancer; 2008.
235. His ED. Hematopathology: a volume in foundations in diagnostic pathology series. 2nd ed. Philadelphia, PA: Elsevier Sanders; 2007.
236. Jaffe ES, Harris NL, Stein H, Vardiman JW, editors. Pathology and genetics of Tumours of Haematopoietic and lymphoid tissues. Lyon: IARC Press; 2001.
237. Chu PG, Chang KL, Arber DA, Weiss LM. Practical applications of immunohistochemistry in hematolymphoid neoplasms. Ann Diagn Pathol. 1999;3(2):104–33.
238. Mason DY, Cordell JL, Brown MH, Borst J, Jones M, Pulford K. CD79a: a novel marker for B-cell neoplasms in routinely processed tissue samples. Blood. 1995;86(4):1453–9.
239. Torlakovic E, Torlakovic G, Nguyen PL, Brunning RD, Delabie J. The value of anti-pax5 immunostaining in routinely fixed and paraffin embedded sections: a novel pan-B and B-cell marker. Am J Surg Pathol. 2002;26:1343–50.
240. Tsang WY, Chan JK, Ng CS, Pau MY. Utility of a paraffin section-reactive CD56 antibody (123C3) for characterization and diagnosis of lymphomas. Am J Surg Pathol. 1996;20(2):202–10.
241. Falini B, Fizzotti M, Pileri S, Lorenz IC, Hussein S, Bansal M, et al. Bcl-6 protein expression in normal and neoplastic lymphoid tissues. Ann Oncol. 1997;8(Suppl 2):101–4.
242. Watson P, Wood KM, Lodge A, McIntosh GG, Milton I, Piggott NH, et al. Monoclonal antibodies recognizing CD5, CD10 and CD23 in formalin-fixed, paraffin-embedded tissue: production and assessment of their value in the diagnosis of small B-cell lymphoma. Histopathology. 2000;36(2):145–50.
243. Ferry JA, Yang WI, Zukerberg LR, Wotherspoon AC, Arnold A, Harris NL. CD5+ extranodal marginal zone B-cell (MALT) lymphoma. A low grade neoplasm with a propensity for bone marrow involvement and relapse. Am J Clin Pathol. 1996;105(1):31–7.

244. Dogan A, Bagdi E, Munson P, Isaacson PG. CD10 and BCL-6 expression in paraffin sections of normal lymphoid tissue and B-cell lymphomas. Am J Surg Pathol. 2000;24(6):846–52.
245. Arends JE, Bot FJ, Gisbertz IA, Schouten HC. Expression of CD10, CD75 and CD43 in MALT lymphoma and their usefulness in discriminating MALT lymphoma from follicular lymphoma and chronic gastritis. Histopathology. 1999;35(3):209–15.
246. Natkunam Y, Warnke RA, Montgomery K, Falini B, van De Rijn M. Analysis of MUM1/IRF4 protein expression using tissue microarrays and immunohistochemistry. Mod Pathol. 2001;14:686–94.
247. Swerdlow SH, Yang WI, Zukerberg LR, Harris NL, Arnold A, Williams ME. Expression of cyclin D1 protein in centrocytic/mantle cell lymphomas with and without rearrangement of the BCL1/cyclin D1 gene. Hum Pathol. 1995;26(9):999–1004.
248. Zukerberg LR, Yang WI, Arnold A, Harris NL. Cyclin D1 expression in non-Hodgkin's lmphomas. Detection by immunohistochemistry. Am J Clin Pathol. 1995;103(6):756–60.
249. Lai R, Arber DA, Chang KL, Wilson CS, Weiss LM. Frequency of bcl-2 expression in non-Hodgkin's lymphoma: a study of 778 cases with comparison of marginal zone lymphoma and monocytoid B-cell hyperplasia. Mod Pathol. 1998;11(9):864–9.
250. de Melo N, Matutes E, Cordone I, Morilla R, Catovksy D. Expression of Ki-67 nuclear antigen in B and T-cell lymphoproliferative disorders. J Clin Pathol. 1992;45(8):660–3.
251. Nakamura S, Akazawa K, Yao T, Tsuneyoshi M. A clinicopathologic study of 233 cases with special reference to evaluation with the MIB-1 index. Cancer. 1995;76(8):1313–24.
252. O'Connell F, Pinkus J, Pinkus G. CDl38 (syndecanl), a plasma cell marker immunohistochemical profile in hematopoietic and nonhematopoietic neoplasms. Am J Clin Pathol. 2004;121:254–63.
253. Chan JK. Peripheral T-cell and NK-cell neoplasms: an integrated approach to diagnosis. Mod Pathol. 1999;12(2):177–99.
254. Piris M, Brown DC, Gatter KC, Mason DY. CD30 expression in non-Hodgkin's lymphoma. Histopathology. 1990;17:211–8.
255. Santucci M, Pimpinelli N, Massi D, Kadin ME, Meijer C, Muller-Hermelink H, et al. Cytotoxic/natural killer cell cutaneous lymphomas. Report of EORTC cutaneous lymphoma task force workshop. Cancer. 2003;97:610–27.
256. Miettinen M. Immunohistochemistry of soft tissue tumors. In: Miettinen M, editor. Modern soft tissue pathology: tumors and non-neoplastic conditions. 1st ed. New York, NY: Cambridge University Press; 2010. p. 44–104.
257. Folpe AL, Gown AM. Immunogistochemistry for analysis of soft tissue tumors. In: Weiss SW, Goldblum JR, editors. Enzinger and Weiss's soft tissue pathology. Philadelphia, PA: Mosby Elsevier; 2010. p. 129–74.
258. Wick MR, Hornick JL. Immunohistology of soft tissue and osseous neoplasms. In: Dabbs D, editor. Diagnostic immunohistochemistry. 3rd ed. Philadelphia: Churchill Livingstone Elsevier; 2010. p. 820–89.
259. Zhu S, Miettinen M. Soft tissue and bone tumors. In: Lin F, Prichard J, editors. Handbook of practical immunohistochemistry. 1st ed. New York, NY: Springer; 2011. p. 435–60.
260. Lau SK. Tumors soft tissue and bone. In: Chu PG, Weiss LM, editors. Modern immunohistochemistry. New York, NY: Cambridge University Press; 2009. p. 549–633.
261. Fisher C. The value of electronmicroscopy and immunohistochemistry in the diagnosis of soft tissue sarcomas: a study of 200 cases. Histopathology. 1990;16(5):441–54.
262. Carbone A, Gloghini A, Volpe R. The value of immunohistochemistry in the diagnosis of soft tissue sarcomas. Ann Oncol. 1992;3(Suppl 2):S51–4.
263. Swanson PE, Manivel JC, Scheithauer BW. Epithelial membrane antigen reactivity in mesenchymal neoplasms: an immunohistochemical study of 306 soft tissue sarcomas. Surg Pathol. 1989;2:313–22.
264. Rangdaeng S, Truong LD. Comparative immunohistochemical staining for desmin and muscle-specific actin: a study of 576 cases. Am J Clin Pathol. 1991;96:32–45.
265. Miettinen M. Antibody specific to muscle actins in the diagnosis and classification of soft tissue tumors. Am J Pathol. 1988;130(1):205–15.
266. Schurch W, Skalli O, Seemayer TA, Gabbiani G. Intermediate filament proteins and actin isoforms as markers for soft tissue tumor differentiation and origin. I. Smooth muscle tumors. Am J Pathol. 1987;128:91–103.
267. Skalli O, Gabbiani G, Babai F, Seemayer TA, Pizzolato G, Schürch W. Intermediate filament proteins and actin isoforms as markers for soft tissue tumor differentiation and origin. II. Rhabdomyosarcomas. Am J Pathol. 1988;130:515–31.
268. Corson JM, Pinkus GS. Intracellular myoglobin – a specific marker for skeletal muscle differentiation in soft tissue sarcomas. Am J Pathol. 1980;103:384–9.
269. Dias P, Parham DM, Shapiro DN, Tapscott SJ, Houghton PJ. Monoclonal antibodies to the myogenic regulatory protein MyoD1 epitope mapping and diagnostic utility. Cancer Res. 1992;52:6431–9.
270. Tallini G, Parham DM, Dias P, Cordon-Cardo C, Houghton PJ, Rosai J. Myogenic regulatory protein expression in adult soft tissue sarcomas: a sensitive and specific marker of skeletal muscle differentiation. Am J Pathol. 1994;144:693–701.

271. Cui S, Hano H, Harada T, Takai S, Masui F, Ushigome S. Evaluation of new monoclonal anti-MyoD1 and anti-myogenin antibodies for the diagnosis of rhabdomyosarcoma. Pathol Int. 1999;49:62–8.
272. Cessna MH, Zhou II, Perkins SL, Tripp SR, Layfield L, Daines C, et al. Are myogenin and MyoD 1 expression specific for rhabdomyosarcoma? A study of 150 cases, with emphasis on spindle cell mimics. Am J Surg Pathol. 2001;25(9):1150–7.
273. Ceballos KM, Nielsen GP, Selig MK, O'Connell JX. Is anti-h-caldesmon useful for distinguishing smooth muscle and myofibroblastic tumors? An immunohistochemical study. Am J Clin Pathol. 2001;14:746–53.
274. Robin YM, Penel N, Pérot G, Neuville A, Vélasco V, Ranchère-Vince D, et al. Transgelin is a novel marker of smooth muscle differentiation that improves diagnostic accuracy of leiomyosarcomas: a comparative immunohistochemical reappraisal of myogenic markers in 900 soft tissue tumors. Mod Pathol. 2013;26(4):502–10.
275. Mechtersheimer G, Staudter M, Moller P. Expression of the natural killer cell-associated antigens, CD56 and CD57 in human neural and striated muscle cells and their tumors. Cancer Res. 1991;51:1300–7.
276. Garin-Chesa P, Fellinger EJ, Huvos AG, Beresford HR, Melamed MR, Triche TJ, et al. Immunohistochemical analysis of neural cell adhesion molecules. Am J Pathol. 1991;139:275–86.
277. Arber DA, Weiss LM. CD57 – a review. Appl Immunohistochem. 1995;3:137–52.
278. Burgdorf WHC, Mukai K, Rosai J. Immunohistochemical identification of factor VIII-related antigen in endothelial cells of cutaneous lesions of alleged vascular nature. Am J Clin Pathol. 1981;75:167–71.
279. Miettinen M, Lindenmayer AE, Chaubal A. Endothelial cell markers CD31, CD34, and BNH9 antibody to H- and Y-antigens – evaluation of their specificity and sensitivity in the diagnosis of vascular tumors and comparison with von Willebrand's factor. Mod Pathol. 1994;7:82–90.
280. McKenney JK, Weiss SW, Folpe AL. CD31 expression in intratumoral macrophages: a potential diagnostic pitfall. Am J Surg Pathol. 2001;25:1167–73.
281. van de Rijn M, Rouse RV. CD34 – a review. Appl Immunohistochem. 1994;2:71–80.
282. Soini Y, Miettinen M. Alpha-1-antitrypsin and lysozyme. Their limited significance in fibrohistiocytic tumors. Am J Clin Pathol. 1989;91:515–21.
283. Leader M, Patel J, Collins M, Henry K. Alpha-1-antichymotrypsin staining of 194 sarcomas, 38 carcinomas and 17 malignant melanomas. Am J Surg Pathol. 1987;11:133–9.
284. Weiss LM, Arber DA, Chang KL. CD68: a review. Appl Immunohistochem. 1994;2:2–8.
285. McHugh M, Miettinen M. CD68 – its limited specificity for histiocytic tumors. Appl Immunohistochem. 1994;2:186–90.
286. Fabriek BO, Dijkstra CD, Van Den Berg TK. The macrophage scavenger receptor CD163. Immunobiology. 2005;210:153–60.
287. Nguyen TT, Schwartz EJ, West RB, Warnke RA, Arber DA, Natkunam Y. Expression of CD163 (hemoglobin scavenger receptor) in normal tissues, lymphomas, carcinomas, and sarcomas is largely restricted to the monocyte/macrophage lineage. Am J Surg Pathol. 2005;29:617–24.
288. Nemes Z, Thomázy V. Factor XIIIa and the classic histiocytic markers in malignant fibrous histiocytoma: a comparative immunohistochemical study. Hum Pathol. 1988;19(7):822–9.
289. Binh MB, Sastre-Garau X, Guillou L, de Pinieux G, Terrier P, Lagacé R, et al. MDM2 and CDK4 immunostainings are useful adjuncts in diagnosing well-differentiated and dedifferentiated liposarcoma subtypes: a comparative analysis of 559 soft tissueneoplasmswithgenetic data. Am J Surg Pathol. 2005;29:1340–7.
290. Goh YW, Spagnolo DV, Platten M, Caterina P, Fisher C, Oliveira AM, et al. Extraskeletal myxoid chondrosarcoma: a light microscopic, immunohistochemical, ultrastructural, and immunoultrastructural study indicating neuroendocrine differentiation. Histopathology. 2001;39:514–24.
291. Wehrli BM, Huang W, De Crombrugghe B, Ayala AG, Czerniak B. Sox9, a master regulator of chondrogenesis, distinguishes mesenchymal chondrosarcoma from other small blue round cell tumors. Hum Pathol. 2003;34:263–9.
292. Fanburg IC, Rosenberg AE, Weaver DL, Leslie KO, Mann KG, Taatjes DJ, et al. Osteocalcin and osteonectin immunoreactivity in the diagnosis of osteosarcoma. Am J Clin Pathol. 1997;108(4):464–73.
293. Fanburg-Smith JF, Bratthauer GL, Miettinen M. Osteocalcin and osteonectin immunoreactivity in extraskeletal osteosarcoma: a study of 28 cases. Hum Pathol. 1999;30:32–8.
294. Stevenson AJ, Chatten J, Bertoni F, Miettinen M. CD99 (p30/32 -MIC2) neuroectodermal/Ewing sarcoma antigen as an immunohistochemical marker: review of more than 600 tumors and the literature experience. Appl Immunohistochem. 1994;2:231–40.
295. Lucas DR, Nascimento AG, Sim FH. Clear cell sarcoma of soft tissues: Mayo Clinic experience with 35 cases. Am J Surg Pathol. 1992;16:1197–204.
296. Rosai J, Dias P, Parham DM, Shapiro DN, Houghton P. MyoD1 protein expression in alveolar soft part sarcoma as confirmatory evidence of its skeletal muscle nature. Am J Surg Pathol. 1991;15:974–81.
297. Wang NP, Bacchi CE, Jiang JJ, McNutt MA, Gown AM. Does alveolar soft-part sarcoma exhibit skeletal muscle differentiation? An immunocytochemical and biochemical study of myogenic regulatory protein expression. Mod Pathol. 1996;9:496–506.
298. Lae ME, Roche PC, Jin L, Lloyd RV, Nascimento AG. Desmoplastic small round cell tumor: a

clinicopathologic, immunohistochemical, and molecular study of 32 tumors. Am J Surg Pathol. 2002;26:823–35.
299. Vogel H. Nervous system. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press; 2009.
300. Miller DC. Modern surgical neuropathology. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press; 2009.
301. Louis DN, Ohgaki H, Wiestler OD, Cavenee WK. WHO classification of tumours of the central nervous system. 4th ed. Lyon: IARC (International Agency for Research on Cancer); 2007.
302. McKeever PE. The brain, spinal cord, and meninges. In: Mills SE, Carter D, Greenson JK, et al., editors. Sternsburg's diagnostic surgical pathology. 5th ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2010.
303. Burger PC, Scheithauer BW. Tumors of the central nervous system, vol. Fascicle 7. 4th ed. Washington, DC: American Registry of Pathology; 2007.
304. McKeever PE. Laboratory methods in brain tumor diagnosis. In: Nelson JS, Mena H, Parisi J, et al., editors. Principles and practice of neuropathology. 2nd ed. New York: Oxford University Press; 2003.
305. Burger PC, Scheithauer BW. AFIP atlas of tumor pathology: tumors of the central nervous system, 4th series. Washington, DC: American Registry of Pathology & Armed Forces Institute of Pathology; 2007.
306. McKeever PE. Immunohistology of the nervous system. In: Dabbs D, editor. Diagnostic immunohistochemistry. 3rd ed. Philadelphia: Churchill Livingstone Elsevier; 2010. p. 820–89.
307. Tena-Suck ML, Moreno-Jiménez S, Alonso M, Aguirre-Crux L, Sánchez A. Oligodendrogliomas in relation to astrocytes differentiation. Clinicopathologic and immunohistochemical study. Ann Diagn Pathol. 2008;12(5):313–21.
308. Wharton SB, Chan KK, Hamilton FA, Anderson JR. Expression of neuronal markers in oligodendrogliomas: an immunohistochemical study. Neuropathol Appl Neurobiol. 1998;24(4):302–8.
309. Herbert J, Cavallaro T, Dwork AJ. A marker for primary choroid plexus neoplasms. Am J Pathol. 1990;136(6):1317–25.
310. Kubo S, Ogino S, Fukushima T, Maruno M, Yoshimine T, Hasegawa H. Immunocytochemical detection of insulin-like growth factor II (IGF-II) in choroid plexus papilloma: a possible marker for differential diagnosis. Clin Neuropathol. 1999;18(2):74–9.
311. Kubo S, Ogino S, Fukushima T, Olson PR, Kida M, Maruno M, et al. Immunohistochemical study of insulin-like growth factor II (IGF-II) and insulin-like growth factor binding protein-2 (IGFBP-2) in choroid plexus papilloma. Neurol Res. 1999;21(4):339–44.
312. Vege KD, Giannini C, Scheithauer BW. The immunophenotype of ependymomas. Appl Immunohistochem Mol Morphol. 2000;8(1):25–31.
313. Hasselblatt M, Paulus W. Sensitivity and specificity of epithelial membrane antigen staining patterns in ependymomas. Acta Neuropathol. 2003;106(4):385–8.
314. Kawano N, Yasui Y, Utsuki S, Oka H, Fujii K, Yamashina S. Light microscopic demonstration of the microlumen of ependymoma: a study of the usefulness of antigen retrieval for epithelial membrane antigen (EMA) immunostaining. Brain Tumor Pathol. 2004;21(1):17–21.
315. Mahfouz S, Aziz AA, Gabal SM, el- Sheikh S. Immunohistochemical study of CD99 and EMA expression in ependymomas. Medscape J Med. 2008;10(2):41.
316. Miller DC, Koslow M, Budzilovich GN, Burstein DE. Synaptophysin: a sensitive and specific marker for ganglion cells in central nervous system neoplasms. Hum Pathol. 1990;21(1):93–8.
317. Hirose T, Scheithauer BW, Lopes MB, Gerber HA, Altermatt HJ, VandenBerg SR. Ganglioglioma: an ultrastructural and immunohistochemical study. Cancer. 1997;79(5):989–1003.
318. Wierzba-Bobrowicz T, Schmidt-Sidor B, Gwiazda E, Bertrand E. The significance of immunocytochemical markers, synaptophysin and neurofilaments in diagnosis of ganglioglioma. Folia Neuropathol. 1999;37(3):157–61.
319. Mena H, Rushing EJ, Ribas JL, Delahunt B, McCarthy WF. Tumors of pineal parenchymal cells: a correlation of histological features, including nucleolar organizer regions, with survival in 35 cases. Hum Pathol. 1995;26(1):20–30.
320. Ang LC, Taylor AR, Bergin D, Kaufmann JC. An immunohistochemical study of papillary tumors in the central nervous system. Cancer. 1990;65(12):2712–9.
321. Sell M, Sampaolo S, Di Lorio G, Theallier A. Chordomas: a histological and immunohistochemical study of cases with and without recurrent tumors. Clin Neuropathol. 2004;23(6):277–85.
322. Wojno KJ, Hruban RH, Garin-Chesa P, Huvos AG. Chondroid chordomas and low-grade chondrosarcomas of the craniospinal axis. An immunohistochemical analysis of 17 cases. Am J Surg Pathol. 1992;16(12):1144–52.
323. Hu Y, Gao Y, Zhang X. A clinicopathological and immunohistochemical study of 34 cases of chordoma. Zhonghua Bing Li Xue Za Zhi. 1996;25(3):142–4.
324. Meis JM, Ordóñez NG, Bruner JM. Meningiomas. An immunohistochemical study of 50 cases. Arch Pathol Lab Med. 1986;110(10):934–7.
325. Pérez-Guiones Bacete M, Cerda-Nicolás M, Piquer J, Barcia-Mariño C. Meningiomas: immunohistochemical analysis of 26 cases. Arch Neurobiol (Madr). 1992;55(2):43–9.
326. Jaffee ES, Harris NL, Stein H, editors. World Health Organization classification of tumors: pathology and genetics of tumors of haematopoietic and lymphoid tissues. Lyon: IARC Press; 2001.
327. Roberts RO, Lynch CF, Jones MP, Hart MN. Medulloblastoma: a population-based study of 532 cases. J Neuropathol Exp Neurol. 1991;50(2):134–44.

328. Coffin CM, Braun JT, Wick MR, Dehner LP. A clinicopathologic and immunohistochemical analysis of 53 cases of medulloblastoma with emphasis on synaptophysin expression. Mod Pathol. 1990;3(2):164–70.
329. Hayashi K, Motoi M, Nose S, Horie Y, Akagi T, Ogawa K, et al. An immunohistochemical study on the distribution of glial fibrillary acidic protein, S-100 protein, neuron-specific enolase, and neurofilament in medulloblastomas. Acta Pathol Jpn. 1987;37(1):85–96.
330. Mobley BC, Roulston D, Shah GV, Bijwaard KE, McKeever PE. Peripheral primitive neuroectodermal tumor/Ewing's sarcoma of the craniospinal vault: case reports and review. Hum Pathol. 2006;37(7):845–53.
331. Gyure KA, Prayson RA, Estes ML. Extracerebellar primitive neuroectodermal tumors: a clinicopathologic study with bcl-2 and CD99 immunohistochemistry. Ann Diagn Pathol. 1999;3(5):276–80.
332. Mørk SJ, Rubinstein LJ. Ependymoblastoma. A reappraisal of a rare embryonal tumor. Cancer. 1985;55(7):1536–42.
333. McKeever PE, Strawderman MS, Yamini B, Mikhail AA, Blaivas M. MIB-1 proliferation index predicts survival among patients with grade II astrocytoma. J Neuropathol Exp Neurol. 1998;57(10):931–6.
334. Hsu DW, Louis DN, Efird JT, Hedley-Whyte ET. Use of MIB-1 (Ki-67) immunoreactivity in differentiating grade II and grade III gliomas. J Neuropathol Exp Neurol. 1997;56(8):857–65.
335. Coons SW, Johnson PC, Pearl DK. The prognostic significance of Ki-67 labeling indices for oligodendrogliomas. Neurosurgery. 1997;41(4):878–84.
336. Korshunov A, Golanov A, Timirgaz V. Immunohistochemical markers for prognosis of ependymal neoplasms. J Neuro-Oncol. 2002;58(3):255–70.
337. Vajtai I, Varga Z, Aguzzi A. MIB-1 immunoreactivity reveals different labelling in low-grade and in malignant epithelial neoplasms of the choroid plexus. Histopathology. 1996;29(2):147–51.
338. Ozen O, Demirhan B, Altinörs N. Correlation between histological grade and MIB-1 and p53 immunoreactivity in meningiomas. Clin Neuropathol. 2005;24(5):219–24.
339. Abramovich CM, Prayson RA. MIB-1 labeling indices in benign, aggressive, and malignant meningiomas: a study of 90 tumors. Hum Pathol. 1998;29(12):1420–7.
340. Lanzafame S, Torrisi A, Barbagallo G, Emmanuele C, Alberio N, Albanese V. Correlation between histological grade, MIB-1, p53, and recurrence in 69 completely resected primary intracranial meningiomas with a 6 year mean follow-up. Pathol Res Pract. 2000;196(7):483–8.
341. Coffin CM, Comstock JM, Wallentine JC. Immunohistology of pediatric neoplasms. In: Dabbs DJ, editor. Diagnostic immunohistochemistry. 3rd ed. Philadelphia, PA: Churchill Livingstone Elsevier; 2010. p. 662–89.
342. Schmidt D, Harms D, Pilon VA. Small-cell pediatric tumors: histology, immunohistochemistry, and electron microscopy. Clin Lab Med. 1987;7(1):63–89.
343. Triche TJ, Askin FB. Neuroblastoma and the differential diagnosis of small-, round-, blue-cell tumors. Hum Pathol. 1983;14(7):569–95.
344. Parham DM. Neuroectodermal and neuroendocrine tumors principally seen in children. Am J Clin Pathol. 2001;115(Suppl):S113–28.
345. Munchar MJ, Sharifah NA, Jamal R, Looi LM. CD44s expression correlated with the International Neuroblastoma Pathology Classification (Shimada system) for neuroblastic tumours. Pathology. 2003;35(2):125–9.
346. Krams M, Parwaresch R, Sipos B, Heidorn K, Harms D, Rudolph P. Expression of the c-kit receptor characterizes a subset of neuroblastomas with favorable prognosis. Oncogene. 2004;23(2):588–95.
347. Newton WA Jr, Gehan EA, Webber BL, Marsden HB, van Unnik AJ, Hamoudi AB, et al. Classification of rhabdomyosarcomas and related sarcomas. Pathologic aspects and proposal for a new classification–an intergroup rhabdomyosarcoma study. Cancer. 1995;76(6):1073–85.
348. Tsokos M. The diagnosis and classification of childhood rhabdomyosarcoma. Semin Diagn Pathol. 1994;11(1):26–38.
349. Qualman SJ, Bowen J, Parham DM, Branton PA, Meyer WH, Members of the Cancer Committee, College of American Pathologists. Protocol for the examination of specimens from patients (children and young adults) with rhabdomyosarcoma. Arch Pathol Lab Med. 2003;127:1290–7.
350. Morotti RA, Nicol KK, Parham DM, Teot LA, Moore J, Hayes J, et al. An immunohistochemical algorithm to facilitate diagnosis and subtyping of rhabdomyosarcoma: the children's oncology group experience. Am J Surg Pathol. 2006;30(8):962–8.
351. Llombart-Bosch A, Machado I, Navarro S, Bertoni F, Bacchini P, Alberghini M, et al. Histological heterogeneity of Ewing's sarcoma/PNET: an immunohistochemical analysis of 415 genetically confirmed cases with clinical support. Virchows Arch. 2009;455(5):397–411.
352. Qualman SJ, Bowen J, Amin MB, Srigley JR, Grundy PE, Perlman EJ, et al. Protocol for the examination of specimens from patients with Wilms tumor (nephroblastoma) or other renal tumors of childhood. Arch Pathol Lab Med. 2003;127:1280–9.
353. Muir TE, Cheville JC, Lager DJ. Metanephric adenoma, nephrogenic rests, and Wilms' tumor: a histologic and immunophenotypic comparison. Am J Surg Pathol. 2001;25(10):1290–6.
354. Hasegawa T, Hirose T, Seki K, Hizawa K, Ishii S, Wakabayashi J. Histological and immunohistochemical diversities, and proliferative activity and grading in osteosarcomas. Cancer Detect Prev. 1997;21(3):280–7.

355. Devaney K, Vinh TN, Sweet DE. Small cell osteosarcoma of bone: an immunohistochemical study with differential diagnostic considerations. Hum Pathol. 1993;24(11):1211–25.
356. Schofield D. Extrarenal rhabdoid tumour. In: Fletcher CDM, Unni KK, Mertens F, editors. Pathology and genetics of tumours of soft tissue and bone, World Health Organization classification of tumours. Lyon: IARC Press; 2002. p. 219–20.
357. Kodet R, Newton WA Jr, Sachs N, Hamoudi AB, Raney RB, Asmar L, et al. Rhabdoid tumors of soft tissues: a clinicopathologic study of 26 cases enrolled on the intergroup rhabdomyosarcoma study. Hum Pathol. 1991;22:674–84.
358. Fisher C. Immunohistochemistry in diagnosis of soft tissue tumours. Histopathology. 2011;58(7):1001–12.
359. Parham DM. Immunohistochemistry of childhood sarcomas: old and new markers. Mod Pathol. 1993;6:133–8.
360. Tsuneyoshi M, Daimaru Y, Hashimoto H, Enjoji M. Malignant soft tissue neoplasms with the histologic features of renal rhabdoid tumors: an ultrastructural and immunohistochemical study. Hum Pathol. 1985;16:1235–42.
361. Tsokos M, Kouraklis G, Chandra RS, Bhagavan BS, Triche TJ. Malignant rhabdoid tumor of the kidney and soft tissues. Evidence for a diverse morphological and immunocytochemical phenotype. Arch Pathol Lab Med. 1989;113:115–20.
362. Barnoud R, Sabourin JC, Pasquier D, Ranchère D, Bailly C, Terrier-Lacombe MJ, et al. Immunohistochemical expression of WT1 by desmoplastic small round cell tumor: a comparative study with other small round cell tumors. Am J Surg Pathol. 2000;24(6):830–6.
363. Hill DA, Pfeifer JD, Marley EF, Dehner LP, Humphrey PA. Zhu X, et al. WT1 staining reliably differentiates desmoplastic small round cell tumor from Ewing sarcoma/primitive neuroectodermal tumor. An immunohistochemical and molecular diagnostic study. Am J Clin Pathol. 2000;114(3):345–53.
364. Kodet R. Rhabdomyosarcoma in childhood. An immunohistological analysis with myoglobin, desmin and vimentin. Pathol Res Pract. 1989;185:207–13.
365. Dias P, Parham DM, Shapiro DN, Webber BL, Houghton PJ. Myogenic regulatory protein (MyoD1) expression in childhood solid tumors: diagnostic utility in rhabdomyosarcoma. Am J Pathol. 1990;137(6):1283–91.
366. Dias P, Chen B, Dilday B, Palmer H, Hosoi H, Singh S, et al. Strong immunostaining for myogenin in rhabdomyosarcoma is significantly associated with tumors of the alveolar subclass. Am J Pathol. 2000;156:399–408.
367. Riedlinger WF, Kozakewich HP, Vargas SO. Myogenic markers in the evaluation of embryonal botryoid rhabdomyosarcoma of the female genital tract. Pediatr Dev Pathol. 2005;8(4):427–34.
368. Parham DM, Webber B, Holt H, Williams WK, Maurer H. Immunohistochemical study of childhood rhabdomyosarcomas and related neoplasms. Results of an intergroup rhabdomyosarcoma study project. Cancer. 1991;67:3072–80.
369. Carpentieri DF, Nichols K, Chou PM, Matthews M, Pawel B, Huff D. The expression of WT1 in the differentiation of rhabdomyosarcoma from other pediatric small round blue cell tumors. Mod Pathol. 2002;15(10):1080–6.
370. Chano T, Matsumoto K, Ishizawa M, Morimoto S, Hukuda S, Okabe H, et al. Analysis of the presence of osteocalcin, S-100 protein, and proliferating cell nuclear antigen in cells of various types of osteosarcomas. Eur J Histochem. 1996;40(3):189–98.
371. Perlman EJ, Dickman PS, Askin FB, Grier HE, Miser JS, Link MP. Ewing's sarcoma–routine diagnostic utilization of MIC2 analysis: a pediatric oncology group/children's cancer group intergroup study. Hum Pathol. 1994;25(3):304–7.
372. Fellinger EJ, Garin-Chesa P, Triche TJ, Huvos AG, Rettig WJ. Immunohistochemical analysis of Ewing's sarcoma cell surface antigen p30/32MIC2. Am J Pathol. 1991;139(2):317–25.
373. Finn OJ. Cancer immunology. N Engl J Med. 2008;358:2704–15.
374. Thomas L. On immunosurveillance in human cancer. Yale J Biol Med. 1982;55:329–33.
375. Burnet FM. The concept of immunological surveillance. Prog Exp Tumor Res. 1970;13:1–27.
376. Ungefroren H, Sebens S, Seidl D, Lehnert H, Hass R. Interaction of tumor cells with the microenvironment. Cell Commun Signal. 2011;9:18.
377. Allen M, Louise JJ. Jekyll and Hyde: the role of the microenvironment on the progression of cancer. J Pathol. 2011;223:162–76.
378. Fridman WH, Mlecnik B, Bindea G, Pages F, Galon J. Immunosurveillance in human non-viral cancers. Curr Opin Immunol. 2011;23:272–8.
379. Koebel CM, Vermi W, Swann JB, Zerafa N, Rodig SJ, Old LJ, et al. Adaptive immunity maintains occult cancer in an equilibrium state. Nature. 2007;450:903–7.
380. Schreiber RD, Old LJ, Smyth MJ. Cancer immunoediting: integrating immunity's roles in cancer suppression and promotion. Science. 2011;331:1565–70.
381. Shankaran V, Ikeda H, Bruce AT, White JM, Swanson PE, Old LJ, et al. IFN gamma and lymphocytes prevent primary tumour development and shape tumour immunogenicity. Nature. 2001;410:1107–11.
382. Smyth MJ, Dunn GP, Schreiber RD. Cancer immunosurveillance and immunoediting: the roles of immunity in suppressing tumor development and

shaping tumor immunogenicity. Adv Immunol. 2006;90:1–50.
383. Galon J, Fridman WH, Pages F. Th adaptive immunologic microenvironment in colorectal cancer: a novel perspective. Cancer Res. 2007;67: 1883–6.
384. Asciertoet ML, De Giorgi V, Liu Q, Bedognetti D, Spivey TL, Murtas D, et al. An immunologic portrait of cancer. J Transl Med. 2011;9:146.
385. Wang E, Worschech A, Marincola FM. The immunologic constant of rejection. Trends Immunol. 2008;29:256–62.
386. Marincola FM, Wang E. Immunologic signatures of rejection. New York, NY: Springer; 2010.
387. Galon J, Costes A, Sanchez-Cabo F, Kirilovsky A, Mlecnik B, Lagorce-Pages C, et al. Type, density, and location of immune cells within human colorectal tumors predict clinical outcome. Science. 2006;313:1960–4.
388. Bindea G, Mlecnik B, Fridman WH, Pages F, Galon J. Natural immunity to cancer in humans. Curr Opin Immunol. 2010;22:215–22.
389. Fridman WH, Pages F, Sautes-Fridman C, Galon J. The immune contexture in human tumours: impact on clinical outcome. Nat Rev Cancer. 2012;12:298–306.
390. Pages F, Galon J, Dieu-Nosjean MC, Tartour E, Sautes-Fridman C, Fridman WH. Immune infiltration in human tumors: a prognostic factor that should not be ignored. Oncogene. 2010;29:1093–102.
391. Angell HK, Galon J. From the immune contexture to the Immunoscore: the role of prognostic and predictive immune markers in cancer. Curr Opin Immunol. 2013;25:261–7.
392. Broussard EK, Disis ML. TNM staging in colorectal cancer: T is for T cell and M is for memory. J Clin Oncol. 2011;29:601–3.
393. Galon J, Pages F, Marincola FM, Thurin M, Trinchieri G, Fox BA, et al. The immune score as a new possible approach for the classification of cancer. J Transl Med. 2012;10:1.
394. Galon J, Franck P, Marincola FM, Angell HK, Thurin M, Lugli A, et al. Cancer classification using the Immunoscore: a worldwide task force. J Transl Med. 2012;10:205.

30 Fluorescent In Situ Hybridization: Methods and Application in Cancer Diagnosis

Roxana Karimi-Nejhad and Alireza Ghanadan

Contents

R. Karimi-Nejhad
Kariminejad-Najmabadi Pathology and Genetics Center, Tehran, Iran

A. Ghanadan (✉)
Department of Dermatopathology, Razi Dermatology Hospital, Tehran University of Medical Sciences, Tehran, Iran

Department of Pathology, Cancer Institute, Imam Khomeini Hospital Complex, Tehran University of Medical Sciences, Tehran, Iran

Cancer Immunology Project (CIP), Universal Scientific Education and Research Network (USERN), Tehran, Iran

30.1 Basic Principles

Fluorescent in situ hybridization (FISH) is a molecular cytogenetic technique developed in the 1980s [1] used for the identification, localization, and determination of the presence or absence of specific nucleotide sequences. The technique takes advantage of the inherent ability of complementary strands of DNA or RNA from

N. Rezaei (ed.), *Cancer Immunology*, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-30845-2_30

different sources to hybridize. In situ hybridization is based on the principle of annealing a labeled nucleic acid probe to complementary sequences within cells or tissue mounted (in situ) on a microscope slide. "Fluorescence" refers to the ability to emit light from a reaction within the emitter that renders the visualization of the probe under the microscope possible. Among its advantages in comparison to conventional cytogenetic techniques that require live mitotic cells is its ability to be applied to all nucleated cells or tissues given that the target nucleic acid is not degraded, can be mounted on a slide, and is accessible to the probe. It is a molecular based assay, and therefore is highly sensitive and specific, with a speedy assay time. FISH on nuclear DNA is a powerful tool in the identification of chromosome aneuploidies, segmental gains or losses of chromosomes, rearrangements, gene fusions, and gene amplifications. It can also be applied for the characterization of the highly rearranged chromosomes often present in karyotypes of cancerous cells.

In all its applications, the FISH procedure involves mounting of the specimen on the slide, preparation of the sample, design and choice of probe, pre-hybridization measures, hybridization step, post-hybridization washing of the slides, and microscopic analysis. All these steps shall be reviewed with special attention to the problems that may arise during the procedure. A major limitation of FISH is the limited number of probes that can be simultaneously applied and analyzed. The evolution of other molecular cytogenetic techniques such as multiplex FISH, spectral karyotyping, or array-based comparative genomic hybridization has overcome this limitation. We shall discuss these techniques briefly and the potential that they offer for the future.

30.1.1 Materials

FISH involves the application of nucleic acid probe/probes to complementary DNA in cells and tissues. Towards this end a direct or indirect fluorescent-labeled probe and a sample of cells, tissue, or metaphase spreads fixed on microscopic slides are required. We will proceed to consider each of these requirements separately.

30.1.1.1 Target Samples

Of the major advantages of FISH is the wider range of samples that it can be applied to in comparison to cytogenetic. Theoretically, it is possible to perform DNA FISH on any nucleated cell that can be adhered or fixed onto a microscopic slide. This encompasses all cells including those suspended in fluid such as peripheral blood, those obtained by smear preparations such as buccal smear or from disassociation of fresh tissue such as lymph nodes, and even those processed from cut sections of frozen tissue and paraffin-embedded tissue.

Compared to other molecular techniques the major advantage of FISH is its inherent capacity to present visual evidence of the location of the target and its microscopic morphology. As a result, in addition to the presence/absence of the target we can establish the location of the target within the chromosomes, cells, or tissue and their identity.

Essential requirements are first the integrity of the DNA in the nuclei of the cells of interest and second the preparation of a monolayer of these cells. Both conditions are necessary to allow the probe to penetrate the cells and hybridize to the DNA and then for the visualization of the signals within the nuclei. Processing of the samples and slide making is most often specific to the nature and type of sample.

30.1.1.2 FISH Probes

FISH probes are designed for three basic groups of DNA sequences: repetitive sequences such as centromeres, telomeres, NOR regions, non-repetitive sequences such as chromosome-specific centromeric regions, whole-chromosome arms or whole chromosomes, and locus-specific sequences.

Centromere probes are either universal or chromosome specific. The universal probe is designed to hybridize with the alphoid satellite DNA of centromeric region common to all centromeres and will hybridize to all centromeres

and the long arm of chromosome Y simultaneously. A chromosome-specific centromeric probe is designed to hybridize the sequences adjacent to the alphoid DNA of the centromere and specific to the chromosome in question. Certain chromosomes have regions of homology in the sequences adjoining their centromeric DNA, for instance chromosomes 13 and 21, thereby resulting in cross-hybridization.

Telomere probes are designed to hybridize the repetitive TTAGGG sequence common to all chromosomes. Subtelomeric probes however are unique to each chromosome and designed to hybridize with the unique sequences adjacent to the telomere on the short and long arms of the chromosome. They can be used to identify rearrangements involving the most distal regions of the chromosome arms. Their only limitation in many cases is their smaller size in comparison to many other probes.

NOR probes are designed to hybridize the ribosomal DNA sequences on the short arms of acrocentric chromosomes. As there is no variation in these sequences they are not chromosome specific and cannot be used to identify the chromosomes. Whole band, arm, or chromosome FISH probes are a series of locus-specific probes designed to cover the whole length of the region to be identified.

Locus-specific, gene-specific probes are designed to hybridize the sequences within or adjacent to specific genes or regions of interest. Increased GC content of the sequence will increase the specificity of hybridization.

30.1.1.3 Probe Types

Probes used in molecular biology are invariably RNA or DNA sequences, usually 100–1000 nucleotides, complementary to a specific DNA sequence. The sequence should be long enough to ensure specific bonding without causing physical impediments. In general, the longer the probe the more specific the bonding, yet inversely the lower the intensity of the signal in certain tissues due to the physical barriers impeding penetration of the probe.

There are various options in the choice of probes, DNA or RNA, and when DNA, single or double stranded. Probe labeling with fluorescent tags can be done directly or indirectly. The requirements of the analysis will determine to a great extent the choice of probes as there are advantages and disadvantages for each probe type.

RNA Probes

RNA probes are invariably synthesized by in vitro transcription with incorporation of fluorescent-labeled nucleotides [2]. Despite the fact that RNA probes have the advantage of being single stranded with less chance of reannealing, a higher fluorophore incorporation yielding higher signal intensity per size, and a relatively higher thermodynamic stability compared to DNA probes, they are less commonly used for DNA targets as they produce high levels of background.

DNA Probes

DNA probes can be synthesized and labeled as single-stranded or double-stranded probes. Double-stranded DNA probes are more stable as they will reanneal and thus do not require freezing, but will need to be denatured before application to the target. Single-stranded DNA probes, however, are less thermodynamically stable and will require freezing; yet they are more densely labeled in comparison to the double-stranded probes. The amount of incorporated labeled nucleotides will determine the signal intensity of the probe.

Single-stranded DNA probes can be prepared by primer extension on single-stranded template [3] by PCR [4], or by chemical synthesis of oligonucleotides. Chemical synthesis of oligonucleotides leads to oligomer probes usually ranging from 18 to 50 rarely up to 100 nucleotides. To compensate for the short length of these probes and hence the low signal intensity for in situ applications they may be designed in a series of probes sequentially complementary to the target.

Double-stranded probes are synthesized by nick translation [5], random priming [6], or polymerase chain reaction (PCR) [7] in the presence of a labeled nucleotide.

Major sources of locus- or gene-specific DNA probes are plasmid, BAC, PAC, or YAC, clones from the human genome library. A challenge in

the use of these probes is the presence of repetitive DNA sequences that could lead to cross hybridization or background and need to be eliminated from the reaction by the use of Cot-1 human DNA during hybridization.

Labeling of Probes

Fluorescent labeling of probes involves a process by which the nucleotides incorporated into the probe are chemically conjugated to a fluorophore, "direct labeling," or to a molecule that can bind to a fluorophore "indirect labeling." Despite the fact that indirect labeling has the potential for producing more intense signals compared to the direct labeled probes, the added incubation steps, and the higher background produced by nonspecific binding of the antibodies to the slide and the specimen itself, direct labeling is more often the choice in medical applications.

A range of fluorophores are used for the labeling of the probes. Most commonly used probes are labeled with fluorophores emitting signals in the visual spectrum of red (TRITC/spectrum orange/Texas Red) and green (FITC/green). Many other commercially available probes may also incorporate a third color of blue (Aqua). It is highly recommended to choose microscopic filters appropriate to the optimal emission range for the probes being used as a fluorophore may not be optimally detected with another filter for the same color.

30.1.2 Methodology

30.1.2.1 Sample Preparation

A good sample preparation will ensure proper hybridization and enable accurate analysis of results. It is therefore more provident to take time to prepare well-spread specimens in the case of suspension samples, and sufficiently exposed nuclei in the case of smears and paraffin-embedded preparations. Here we present briefly the basic principles.

Suspension Cell Preparation

Cells suspended in fluid most often used for FISH include peripheral blood, bone marrow, and occasionally other fluids such as pleural effusion. To obtain proper mounting of cells to enable efficient probe hybridization and enough number of cells, there are various methods that will vary according to laboratory experience. It is important to prepare slides with sufficient number of the cells of interest while at the same time eliminating those cells that are not of interest.

For peripheral blood and bone marrow samples which are the most frequently used suspension samples in the study of hematological disorders, it is helpful to eliminate the red blood cells before fixing the sample onto the slide. This will help eliminate unnecessary background noise. One method is to prepare the sample according to routine cytogenetic harvesting procedure which includes the use of KCL hypotonic solution. The resulting swelling will eliminate the cytoplasm. The pellet is fixed with Carnoy's fixative solution which lyses the red blood cells prior to slide making.

Alternatively, one can use FICOLL to eliminate the red blood cells and prepare direct smears of the cells. The advantage of this technique is that it will maintain the structure of the cell and enable recognition of the leukemic cells. For instance in the case of multiple myeloma where the plasma cells are the cells to be studied, maintenance of the cellular structure and visual recognition of these cells by cIG FISH are essential for the efficiency of the study.

For many studies and samples as in the study of multiple myeloma, enrichment of the affected cells, i.e., plasma cells, may be necessary and should be done accordingly. For T-cell or B-cell lymphocytes a 48–72-h culture with appropriate mitogens such as phytohemagglutinin M and pokeweed, respectively, will increase the cell count. The maintenance of a backup culture of the sample regardless of the indication may prove to be beneficial.

Smear Preparation

In many cases, we are able to obtain slides from fresh tissue such as lymph nodes or tumoral tissue prior to fixing in formalin for pathological study. The advantage of these preparations is the lack of fixation and the structural changes resulting from formaldehyde treatment. However, this

is limited to use for tumors that have distinct gross appearance and do not rely on microscopic identification and separation of the malignant cells, for example in large neuroblastomas.

Solid Tumor Preparation

Most solid tumors will be referred for FISH tests following initial pathological study and in many cases after immunohistochemistry has been completed. Therefore they are commonly embedded in paraffin blocks. For appropriate FISH study it is essential that certain criteria be taken into account in the preparation of these blocks. The process of fixation can greatly influence the efficiency of hybridization of probes. The most commonly used fixative is formalin at optimal concentration of 4% formaldehyde w/v and pH of 6.8–7.2.

The maintenance of these optimal conditions will determine to a great extent the efficiency with which FISH and in general all ISH techniques can be applied.

30.1.2.2 Pre-hybridization Treatment

All samples will require various degrees of pretreatment to make the DNA in the nuclei accessible to the fluorescent probe and to eliminate the autofluorescence that could result from poor or insufficient digestion of slides. The extent and nature of pretreatment required will depend on the nature of the sample, its cellular density, protein content, and the process of slide making including the time and manner of fixation. It is always fortuitous to spend time on trying to obtain an appropriate sample prior to hybridization as this will determine to a great extent the success of the analysis following hybridization. In our experience this might require several attempts at digestion and subsequent application of DAPI and microscopic evaluation of the efficiency of digestion by determining the degree of visible background or cellular fluorescence using the various filters.

Most protocols will involve a drying process where the slides are incubated in an oven at 50–80 degree centigrade prior to pretreatment. The time of incubation will depend on the age of the slides and the ambient humidity. This helps to eliminate any excess water that may be retained on the slide which will trap the probes and result in nonspecific background signal. It also helps to maintain the morphology of the nuclei and chromatin.

Following all pretreatment protocols the slides are dehydrated by a serial ethanol wash prior to applying the probe.

We will review the basic principles and protocols for the various sample types. Although there are many commercially available kits for the preparatory steps, they all follow the same basic principles that we will address and present here. The whole procedure is highly dependent on the specimen and the sample. We find it to be beneficial to work through the procedure by a series of trial-and-error attempts to obtain a working baseline protocol for the laboratory.

Suspension Samples

The slide making process should attempt to eliminate the unwanted cells and to retain the cells of interest facilitating analysis. It is often necessary to further eliminate any cytoplasmic debris or proteinaceous material that could interfere with the penetration of the probe. Treating the slides with mild proteinase digestion enzymes such as proteinase K or trypsin or simply washing in diluted glacial acetic acid will often prove to be sufficient. The concentration of the enzyme, the time of exposure, and the temperature will determine the extent of digestion and may require successive attempts before the optimal result is obtained.

Tap/Smear Preparations

The pre-hybridization procedure for fresh sample preparations is basically the same as for suspension samples. Archival sample preparations and smears may require further processing. For example, at times, fresh blood and bone marrow specimens may not be available for FISH studies and the smears prepared for morphological study at diagnosis will provide the only material that can be used. In these cases, it is best to remove the red blood cells of the slides by immersing the slides in Carnoy's fixative prior to pretreatment. This not only removes the red blood cells but it will also ensure further fixation and hardening of the cells.

Solid Tissue Samples

Working with paraffin-embedded specimens is probably by far the most challenging of all FISH procedures. The diversity of the specimens, their cellular composition and density, their protein content, and the different fixation processes that the specimens have been exposed to will determine the extent and strength of pretreatment measures and their success.

The most commonly used fixative for tissue preservation is formaldehyde. Formaldehyde can react with groups on lysine, arginine, cysteine, tyrosine, threonine, serine, and glutamine forming reactive complexes which may combine with each other forming methylene bridges (cross-links) or with hydrogen groups [8]. Though washing the tissue after formalin fixation can reverse some of these reactions important cross-links will remain and are deterrent in the accessibility of DNA to the probe [9]. To be able to perform FISH on these specimens it is necessary to effectively remove these cross-links and to dissolve the protein structures, thus making the nuclei accessible to the probes. The efficiency with which this can be done is greatly affected by the length of time of fixation which should not optimally exceed the 24 h, temperature of fixation process, and appropriate buffering of the formalin preparation.

The first step in preparation of FFPE specimens for FISH is the deparaffinization which is usually done by immersing the slides in serial xylene solutions. The slides are dehydrated again by immersion in 100× ethanol and air-dried.

Treatment with acid will help remove the histones from the DNA and to deproteinize the chromatin. Most often 0.2 HCl is used followed by rinsing the slides in water and sodium chloride, and trisodium citrate dihydrate solution (SSC).

This step is followed by chaotrope treatment which involves compounds that will disrupt the molecular structures that stabilize the proteins, nucleic acids, and polysaccharides. This treatment is necessary for the removal of the protein cross-links that result from the fixation in formaldehyde and will deter the process of hybridization of the probe to the DNA. The most commonly used compound is preheated 1 M sodium thiocyanate and 1 M NaSCN solution. After this step we will proceed with proteinase digestion of the protein as we do with all other slides.

The time of exposure to the various steps and the concentration and the temperature of the solutions will vary according to the sample and may be achieved for various specimens through trial-and-error attempts. Again, it is worthwhile to spend time at this stage to ensure proper exposure of the nuclei and appropriate elimination of the protein in order to reduce the autofluorescence.

30.1.2.3 Hybridization

The concept of hybridization is simple and common to all samples and probes. We need to denature the DNA of the probes and the target samples, and thereafter incubate them together under appropriate conditions allowing for hybridization to take place. These conditions need to be stringent enough to prohibit nonspecific binding and yet provide enough chance for the probe to find its target.

All commercial probes provide protocols, and are common in the basic concepts. The basic steps will invariably include a denaturation step. To denature the DNA of the sample and the probe, both will have to be brought to the DNA denaturation temperature of 94–95 degree centigrade. This can be done for the specimen slide by placing the slide on a heating block and giving it enough time to ensure that denaturation of DNA has taken place without leaving the slides to dry causing damage to the nuclear framework. We can denature the probe by placing the tube containing probe suspended in hybridization buffer in a heating block at same temperature, or as is more commonly done we can co-denature by placing the probe on the slide and denaturing them together on heating block.

Once the probes have been denatured, we can proceed with the hybridization step, which will involve incubating the specimens with the probe in a humid setting at 37–40 degree centigrade for a few hours to overnight. The time should be long enough for the specific hybridization of the probe to take place. We must ensure that there is enough hybridization buffers to allow for the hybridiza-

tion to take place in a moist and humid setting such that the slides do not dry and maintain the probes in liquid suspension.

30.1.2.4 Post-hybridization

Following the hybridization procedure it is essential to remove all nonspecific probe and hybridization buffer from the slides prior to microscopic analysis. Again, most commercial probes will have suggestions and protocols for the wash procedures. These steps will invariably include an initial wash procedure that involves removal of the slide cover and the hybridization buffer from the slide. This step is usually followed by a wash procedure aimed at removing all nonspecifically bound probes by submerging the slides in a preheated solution most often in the 70 degree centigrade range.

The following steps are concentrated on the removal of all salt solutions and crystals from the slide surface. The slides are often air-dried and thereafter ready for microscopic analysis. It is highly recommended to analyze the slides immediately following the wash procedures.

30.1.2.5 Counterstaining

In most FISH studies, the nucleophore DAPI counterstain is used which will stain the nucleus uniformly enabling us to visually see the whole nucleus and to recognize the specific signals within them.

30.1.3 Microscopy/Analysis

Basis of fluorescent analysis of specimens relies on the expertise of the technologist and the appropriate equipment. It is essential to use appropriate filters for the wavelength of the fluorophores of the probes being used. We highly recommend checking and choosing the optimal filter for each probe to ensure easier analysis of the signals under the microscope. For instance the red fluorophore platinum bright 590 with excitation at 587 and emission at 612 is best seen with the Texas Red filter with excitation filter of 580/25 and emission filter of 625/30 and not with the TRITC/orange filter that has excitation at 546/22 and emission at 590/23, which would in turn be more appropriate for the red fluorophore platinum bright 550 with excitation at 550 and emission at 580.

Most laboratories involved in the handling and interpretation of FISH results will find it necessary to invest in FISH imaging cameras and software, which will facilitate the interpretation, analysis, and storage of data and results.

30.1.3.1 Interphase

In many instances, especially when dealing with archival material, we have only interphase cells for analysis and it is especially important to choose them appropriately, as results can otherwise be misleading. First, we must identify and choose the cells of interest for exclusive scoring. For suspension preparations, this may involve a pre-slide making selection method such as cell sorting or may require the identification of the cells by immunohistochemical staining. At times, the population of the malignant cells is so abundant that by scoring appropriate numbers of interphase nuclei we are able to establish with relative certainty the inclusion of the clone of interest.

For slides prepared from paraffin-embedded tissue it is customary to locate the area with the highest population of tumoral cells on H&E preparations of same specimen prior to or simultaneously with the analysis.

Second, the analyst must strive to locate intact nuclei that have the least degree of folding or overlap with other nuclei/cells, thereby decreasing the likelihood of extra or lost signals. The number of signals is scored within the selected nuclei and theoretically corresponds to copy numbers of the regions of DNA homologous to the probes (Fig. 30.1).

Another consideration in the study of nuclei in slides prepared from paraffin-embedded tissue is the fact that there is the possibility of broken nuclei. In the sectioning of cells, there is always the possibility of losing signals because of the segmentation of the nucleus. This can be compensated for most efficiently by scoring a larger number of cells and in some cases by including only cells in the study that have appropriate number of control signals.

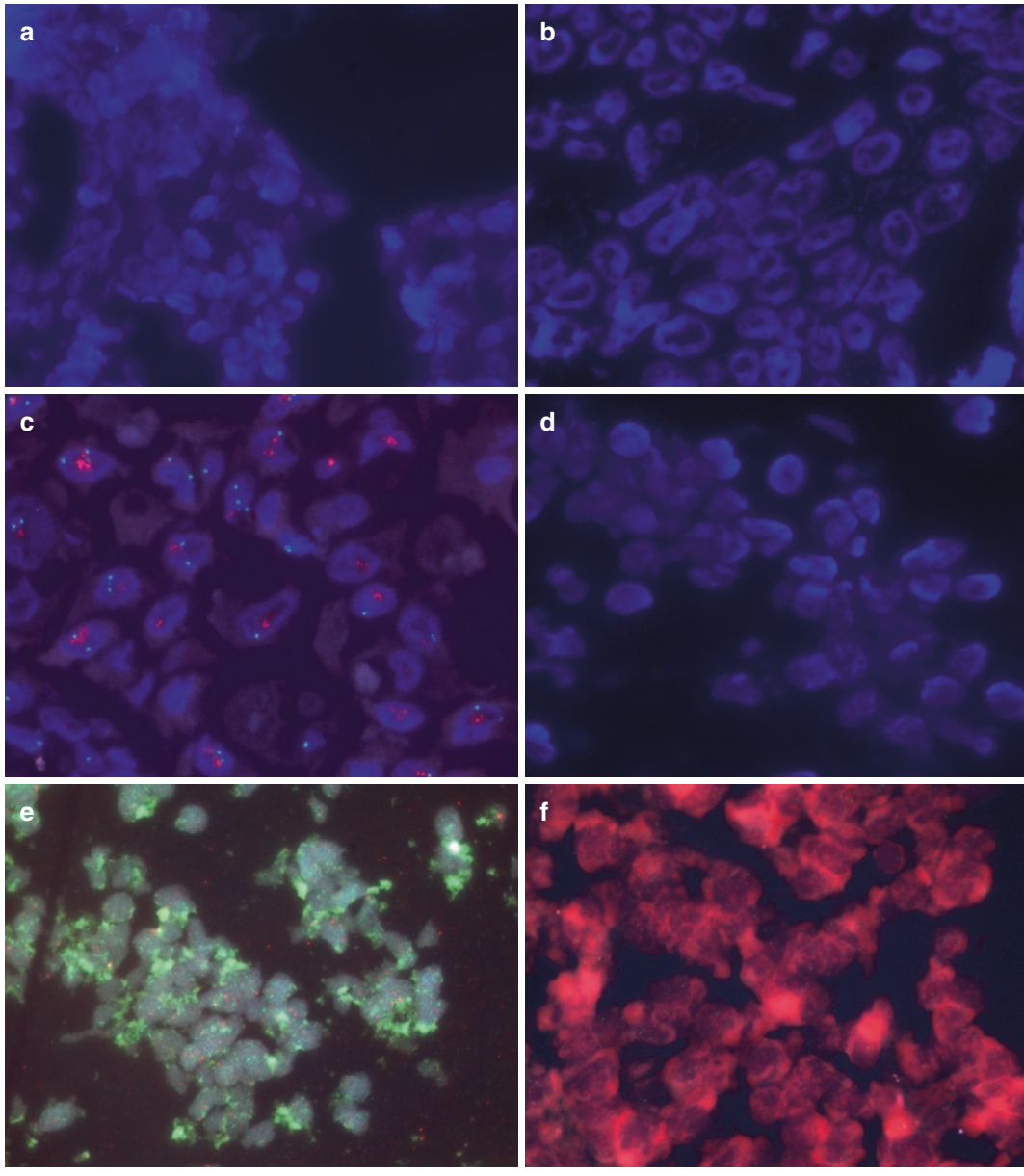


Fig. 30.1 Digestion of the preparation made from formalin-fixed paraffin-embedded tissue is extremely crucial in the success of FISH analysis as it will make the nuclei accessible to the probe. It is therefore worthwhile to invest time on proper digestion and time allowing to proceed with consecutive trial and errors. It is possible to check the success of the digestion by viewing the slide under the microscope with DAPI staining. (**a**) The tissue is not properly digested and as can be seen the nuclei are not individually visible but appear as a clump. (**b**, **c**) The tissue has been overdigested and the morphology of the nuclei has been compromised creating holes. There is the risk of loss of signals in these samples. (**d**) The tissue is properly digested and the nuclei are intact but separately visible. (**e**, **f**) As a result of underdigestion there is extreme autofluorescence. This can be viewed under the microscope prior to hybridization of the probe by checking the tissue preparation following digestion using various filters

30.1.3.2 Metaphase

The application of FISH for metaphase chromosomes is only possible on mitotic cells following culture. In the study of malignant processes this is most often used for study of leukemia and chronic proliferative processes. Obtaining metaphase from solid tumors is a more difficult process and involves the processing of fresh tissue specimens prior to any fixation.

Often, FISH study of metaphase spreads is limited to those cases where a karyotype has already been studied. FISH may be performed for clarification of findings in metaphases. It is a useful tool for the study of the difficult-to-interpret karyotypes, where a rearrangement is suspected but cannot be conclusively defined. The advantage of having a karyotype on which to do the FISH study is that a single probe may help determine the second partner chromosome on the karyotype without the necessity of going through a range of probes to identify the partner chromosome (Fig. 30.2).

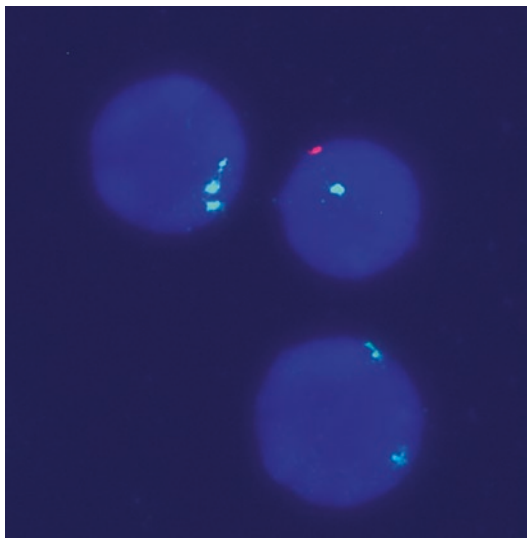


Fig. 30.2 Post-transplant chimerism was quantitated using Kreatech SE X(DXZ1)/SE Y(DYZ3) sex chromosome centromeric probes. The test is often requested for sex mismatch transplant as a designation of the success of the graft. In this case the donor is XX demonstrated by the cells with the two green signals, and the recipient is XY, those cells with one green and one red signal

At other times, it may be performed for the identification of cryptic rearrangements that are not detectable in routine cytogenetic analysis (Fig. 30.3).

30.1.3.3 Probe Design

One of the greatest achievements of molecular cytogenetics has been the advent of multicolor FISH, which allows for the use of different fluorophores simultaneously. The combination of the fluorophores has made possible variations in the design of probes specific to the needs of the case to be studied. Most FISH probes used in medical applications today are locus-specific probes and it is common practice to include a control probe labeled with different fluorophore in each FISH experiment. The control probe can be another locus-specific probe on the same or another chromosome. The variable design of the combination of these probes and their labeling will determine the application and the information that can be derived from the FISH procedure.

Enumeration Probes

These probes are designed with the intention of determining the copy number of a chromosome, region, or gene. They can therefore be centromeric probes, region-specific probes, or as is often the case locus-specific probes. The probe is often labeled with a given fluorophore emitting a red/green signal under the microscope and often there will be a second probe, which may or may not be on the same chromosome to be used simultaneously as the control, which is labeled with the other fluorophore red/green that has not been used. These probes can be used to count the copy number of a given chromosome, or a specific gene. For example, gain of chromosome 8 is a common finding in myelodysplastic syndrome, or acute myeloid leukemia. It is possible to count copy numbers of chromosome 8 by using the FISH probe that is designed for centromere of chromosome 8 labeled in one color fluorophore

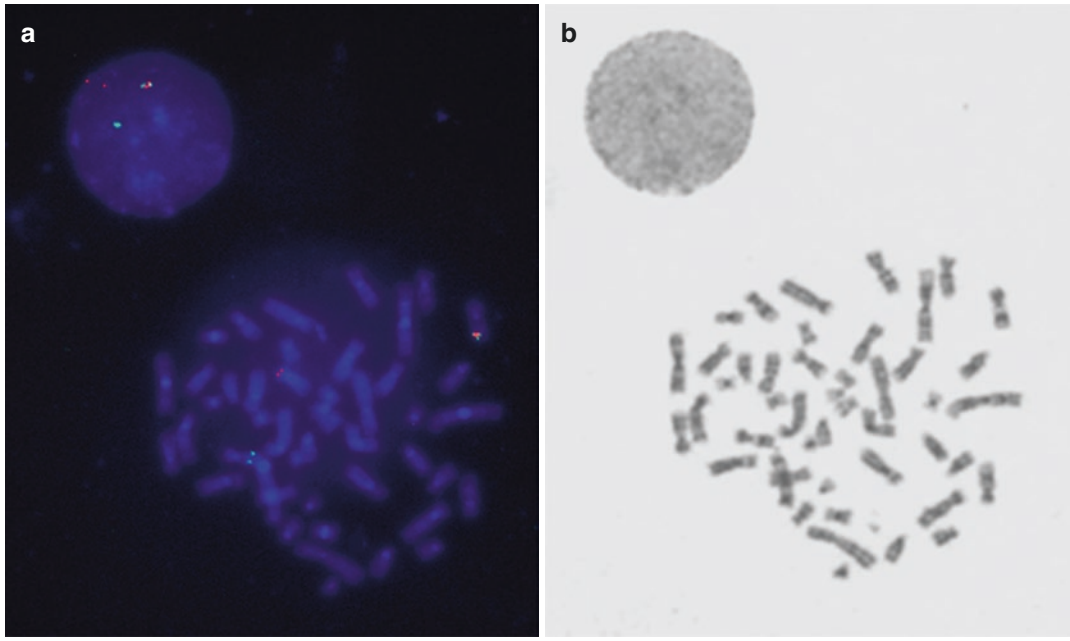


Fig. 30.3 Rearrangement of 11q23 was suspected in an otherwise apparently normal karyotype. To identify the partner chromosome FISH was performed using POSEIDON Kreatech MLL break-apart probe (**a**). The fused signal was observed on normal chromosome 11. A green signal corresponding to centromeric region of the MLL gene was present on the rearranged chromosome 11 while the distal region of MLL gene presented by the red probe was present on the short arm of chromosome 9 identified on the karyotype (**b**)

along with a locus-specific probe designed for MYC on 8q24 labeled in another color fluorophore. The presence of extra copies of both signals will suggest the presence of an extra copy of the chromosome 8. Loss of the p53 tumor-suppressor locus is often an adverse finding in many tumorigenic processes and is analyzed using enumeration probes specific for the locus along with a control probe that may or may not be on the same chromosome (Fig. 30.4).

Break-Apart Probes

Break-apart probes are most often used for the identification of rearrangement involving a specific gene of interest. Two probes are designed in close proximity to each other, most often within or flanking a given gene of interest and each probe is differentially labeled with green/red fluorophores. When there is no rearrangement we obtain a fused signal whereas in the

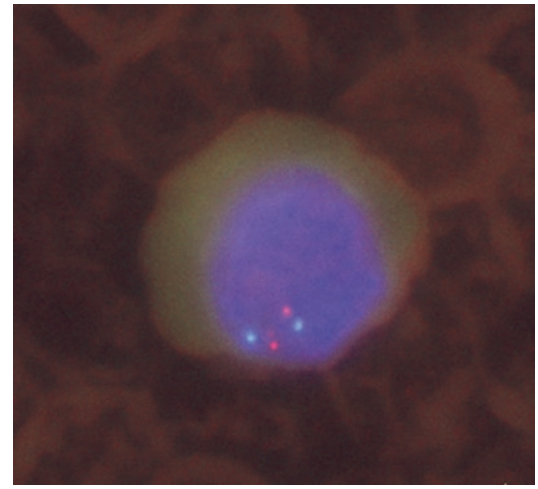


Fig. 30.4 FISH performed on plasma cells identified by cIG FISH using Poseidon Kreatech P53 enumeration probe. The gene locus is labeled in red and the centromere is labeled in green as control. As evident, there are two red and two green signals indicating that there has been no loss of the p53 locus

case of a rearrangement of the gene we would expect a visible separation of the signals in excess of the size of one signal. This is used for the identification of rearrangements of highly active and oncogenic loci such as MYC, IGH, and EWS. These loci have multiple rearrangement partners but their involvement is the driving oncogenic factor. One FISH probe will identify this involvement; further testing for the partners can be sequentially performed when and if warranted. For example, EWS–FLI1, resulting from t(11;22) (q24;q12), is seen in approximately 85% of cases of ES/PNET. Variant fusions of EWS with other ETS family genes—ERG (at 21q22), ETV1 (7p22), E1AF (17q12), and FEV (2q33)—have been found in rare cases of ES/PNET. Using a EWS break-apart probe will potentially detect both kinds of rearrangements in one assay. There does not seem to be any prognostic difference in the various rearrangement partners; therefore, in many cases, evidence of the EWS rearrangement will suffice in the confirmation of diagnosis (Fig. 30.5).

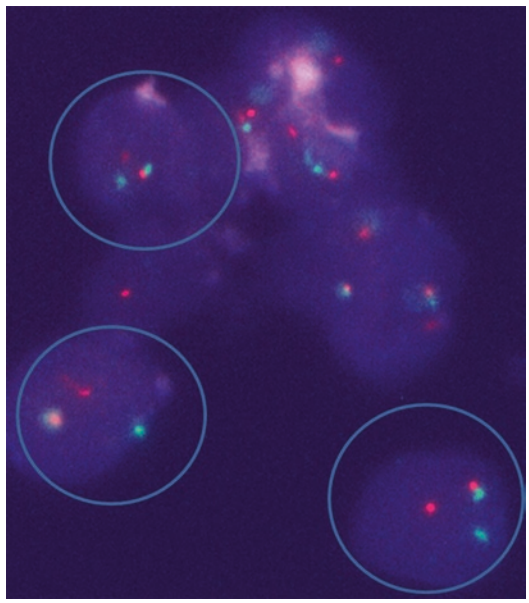


Fig. 30.5 FISH on paraffin-embedded tissue using POSEIDON Kreatech EWS 22q11.2 break-apart probe. Among the nuclei present in this setting we would choose the nuclei that have no overlap with other cells. The probe is designed such that any rearrangement of the EWS locus (fused signal) will lead to separation of the signals

Fusion Probes

Fusion probes are used for the identification of one or two fusion products resulting from a chromosomal rearrangement involving two loci from two different chromosomes. The probe/s on each chromosome will be labeled in the same color while those on the second chromosome will be of a different color. They often span or flank the breakpoint at the site of the rearrangement. These probes can be designed for the detection of the one tumorigenic fusion product and are called single fusion, or they can be designed to identify the additional second fusion on the reciprocal chromosome and are called dual-fusion probes. In the first case, the probes will target two regions flanking the gene of interest on the one chromosome and one region within or flanking the other gene of interest on the second chromosome. Most often the chromosome that is bearer of the tumorigenic fusion product will have a single probe and bear the fusion signal in the case of a rearrangement. In the case of dual-fusion probes, probes are targeted to two sequences within or adjacent to each of the two genes or breakpoints of interest one on each chromosome.

The advantage of using the dual-fusion probes for detection of fusion gene products is that it will convey additional information that may influence the interpretation. It can demonstrate the break-apart of one gene in the absence of the fusion product for which it is being tested (Fig. 30.6). For example a probe designed to detect the t(8;14) MYC/IGH rearrangement will also detect MYC rearrangement in the absence of IGH rearrangement and vice versa by showing an extra signal corresponding to the rearranged gene without a fusion signal.

It can identify amplification of the fusion gene product, for example extra copies of the BCR/ABL fusion gene product as shown in Fig. 30.7 in a case of acute-phase CML.

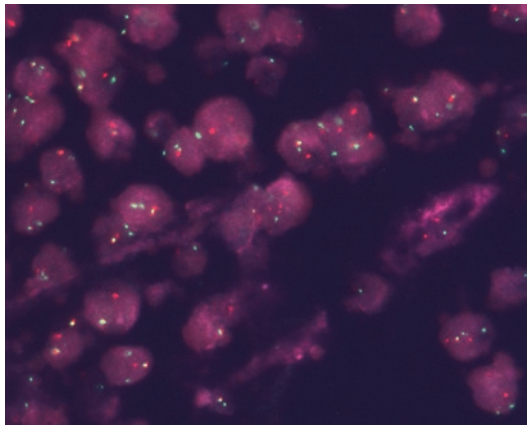


Fig. 30.6 FISH was performed using POSEIDON Kreatech t(8;14) MYC/IGH dual-fusion probes where the signals on MYC are labeled in red and the signals on IGH are labeled in green. In the reciprocal translocation of (8;14) where rearrangement occurs on both chromosomes, there are two fusion products MYC/IGH on chromosome 8 and IGH/MYC on chromosome 14. In actual fact, there may be many variations of the rearrangement, where one chromosome may be lost or deleted, or fusion may be the result of an insertional rearrangement. In this case, there is only one fusion gene product and the second fusion product has been lost

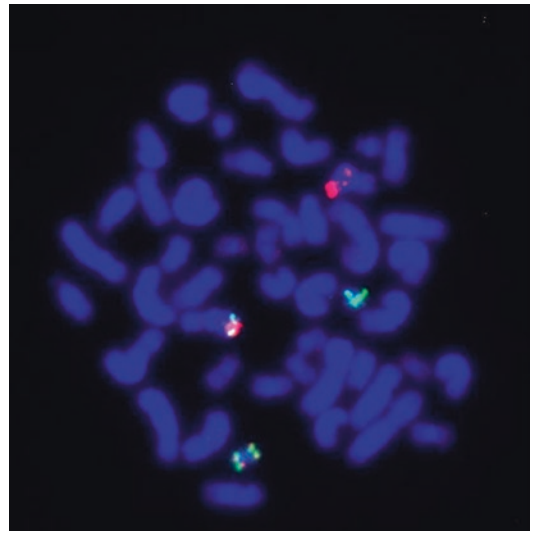


Fig. 30.7 FISH was performed using CYTOCELL 9;22 bcr/abl dual-fusion probe. In a reciprocal translocation, two fused signals corresponding to the reciprocal rearrangement are expected. In this case in addition to the two fused signals there is an additional fused signal corresponding to an extra copy of the Philadelphia chromosome which was present in the karyotype as an isochromosome

30.1.4 Other FISH/Labeling Techniques

30.1.4.1 Chromosome Painting/ Multiplex FISH

Chromosome painting refers to the hybridization of a series of probes complementary to the whole length of chromosomes allowing the visualization of all regions of that chromosome in metaphase spreads [10]. These complex DNA probes are derived from a single type of chromosome following flow-sorting or microdissection, subsequent amplification, and labeling by degenerate oligonucleotide polymerase chain reaction [11]. It enables the identification of numerical and structural aberration of whole chromosomes, but it cannot identify intrachromosomal rearrangements including deletions, duplications, and inversions. It is a strong tool for the detection of rearrangements, especially complex ones that are difficult to characterize in cytogenetic analysis.

Whole-chromosome painting is available for every human chromosome, allowing the simultaneous painting of each of the 24 chromosomes in distinguishable fluorescent colors. This capacity gave rise to two independent FISH techniques, multiplex FISH (M-FISH) [12] and spectral karyotyping (SKY) [13]. In both techniques, all 24 chromosomes are differentially labeled, and images are collected with a fluorescence microscope that has filter sets for each fluorochrome, and a combinatorial labeling algorithm allows separation and identification of all chromosomes, which are visualized in characteristic pseudo-colors [14]. M-FISH and SKY both rely on digital imaging equipment and appropriate software for discriminating the differentially labeled probes. SKY analyzes the spectral signature at each pixel of the image, while M-FISH uses specific narrow band-pass fluorescence filter sets for this distinction [15].

M-FISH and SKY have been most extensively used for the characterization of unbalanced translocations, complex chromosomal rearrangements, and marker chromosomes that are

common in solid tumors. The major limitations of these techniques are their expense and limited availability in general.

30.1.4.2 FISH/Immunohistochemistry Combined Techniques

For appropriate FISH study in many specimens, it is essential to identify the nuclei of the cells of interest to ensure the scoring of appropriate cells. Cell sorting prior to the sample preparation is an appropriate option, but may not always be possible. It is therefore advantageous to be able to identify the cells by another technique. One such technique is the use of immunohistochemistry antibodies specific for the cells of interest prior to hybridizing with FISH probes. For example, in the study of plasma cells in multiple myeloma, it is possible to identify the cells by immunohistochemical staining of the cells with cIG. This is a promising technique for samples where the cells are not morphologically recognizable and require other identifiable stains.

30.1.5 Microarray Comparative Genomic Hybridization

Comparative genomic hybridization (CGH) is a molecular cytogenetic technique that was initially developed in 1992 and applied for the study of solid tumors [16]. It is a DNA-based test whereby DNA of the test sample and the DNA of a normal reference sample are differentially labeled and jointly hybridized to a platform. Initially, in CGH, the platform was a slide prepared from human metaphase preparations. The differential intensity of the signals from the two DNA samples hybridized to each chromosome was measured and compared using a fluorescent microscope. The ratio of test DNA sample signal intensity to that of the reference was measured by software. This ratio was used to determine the copy number of the test genomic DNA for each chromosome segment. The resolution of the technique was limited to the resolution of the metaphase chromosomes which is around 5 Mbs.

Following the human genome project and the availability of the human genome library, the metaphase platform was replaced by a DNA-based platform [17]. In microarray-based comparative genomic hybridization, the slides are spotted with a microarray of genomic human DNA, supplied from BAC clones or synthesized oligonucleotides. The test and reference samples are differentially labeled as before, combined with Cot-1 human DNA, and hybridized onto the microarray slide. The microarray slide is scanned using a laser scanner and a ratio of the signal intensity for each spot determined by a software that recognizes the spots and their corresponding chromosomal and nucleotide location. The ratio of label signal intensity of test to reference sample will determine the copy number of the test sample for the genomic content represented by the spot. A ratio of 2:2 represents a diploid situation, a ratio of 3:2 represents a copy number gain, and a ratio of 1:2 represents a copy number loss.

The advantage of the microarray is the increased resolution and the limitless variation of the genomic content that could be spotted on the slide, whole genome, or targeted regions of the genome.

In recent years, array-based genomic comparative hybridization has become a routine part of the analysis of the genomic content of many tumors. It is an objective reproducible assay with the comprehensive analysis of a karyotype at a much higher resolution and the sensitivity of molecular techniques. It is DNA based and can therefore be applied to any archival material as long as good-quality DNA can be extracted. It has the advantage of being able to explore various markers simultaneously in one assay. However, it is limited in that it will not detect balanced rearrangements, ploidy changes, and low mosaicisms.

30.1.6 Clinical Application in Cancer Setting

FISH is a powerful and versatile diagnostic tool and its application in cancer setting has high clinical significance for tumor diagnosis and prognosis [14]. FISH is a highly sensitive, specific, and rapid turnover method with a high efficiency of

hybridization and determination of translocations, deletions, inversions, and amplification of target genes [18]. FISH is usually applied in metaphase and interphase chromosomes for the study of hematologic malignancies and solid tumors, respectively.

Hematologic malignancies including leukemia and lymphoma are frequently characterized by recurrent chromosome breakpoints that produce chromosomal rearrangement and translocation. The identification of specific translocations in many of these malignancies is possible with FISH method by finding fusion genes. In contrast, the vast majority of solid tumors are defined by a specific pattern of chromosome gains and losses that are tumor type specific. Here, we introduce most important chromosomal changes in hematologic malignancies and solid tumors diagnosed by FISH.

30.1.6.1 Hematologic Malignancies

FISH analysis in hematologic malignancies is a rapid and reliable complementary method to identify the specific chromosomal rearrangements in both mitotic and interphase cells, predict poor prognostic outcome, and determine the best therapeutic approach. FISH is regularly utilized as an initial assessment in conditions with normal karyotype, poor chromosome morphology, low mitotic activity of leukemic cells, and considerable karyotypic variability and complexity [19]. A more representative assessment of abnormal cells is provided when the proliferative activity is low or dividing cells do not represent the neoplastic clone [10, 20]. Monitoring of evolving cytogenetic abnormalities throughout the course of the disease allows clinicians to treat patients more effectively and assess their responses more efficiently. They are also used to differentiate the heterogeneous nature of the leukemias, manifested by the different genetic subtypes. For example, some gains and deletions have prognostic and predictive value in hematologic malignancies including gain of 1q/1p in multiple myeloma (Fig. 30.8). For the detection of residual disease in patients with hematologic malignancies or after allogeneic bone marrow transplantation, interphase FISH is the method of choice [20].

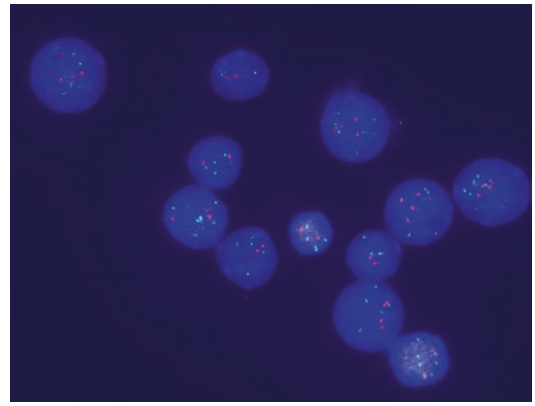


Fig. 30.8 FISH was performed using Kreatech 1p36/1q21 probes. There are multiple copies of both green and red signals compatible with additional copies of both arms of chromosome 1. The gain of 1p/1q is a prognostic factor in multiple myeloma

Here we represent some FISH probes usually applied in the hematologic malignancies with corresponding genes, functional sequence, and clinical outcome (Table 30.1).

30.1.6.2 Solid Tumors

In solid tumors, FISH is usually applied in the interphase cell nucleus for the simultaneous assessment of chromosomal aberrations, cellular phenotype, and tumor morphology [21]. Interphase FISH is analyzed on tumor cell smear, touch preparations, or formalin-fixed, paraffin-embedded tissue sections, thus enabling retrospective analyses and correlation of chromosome alterations with biological and clinical end points. Interphase FISH can screen large numbers of cells and identify chromosomal aberrations in a small subpopulation, thus providing the opportunity to identify early lesions and determine poor prognostic outcome and the best therapeutic approach [19]. For example, assessment of HER2 by FISH method can be performed on paraffin-embedded tissue sections to determine gene amplification. HER2 status is primarily evaluated to determine patient eligibility for anti-HER2 therapy. It may identify patients who have a greater benefit from anthracycline-based adjuvant therapy. Some assays use a single probe to determine the number of HER2 gene copies present, but most assays include a chromosome enumeration probe

Table 30.1 FISH analysis in hematologic malignancies with corresponding gene and clinical outcome

Disease	Chromosomal abnormality	Fusion gene/function	Clinical outcome
Myelodysplastic syndrome	Deletion of 5q, 20q, loss of chromosome Y		Low-risk disease
	Trisomy 8		Intermediate risk
	Complex karyotype (abnormality of chromosome 5, 7), del (7q)		Poor prognosis
ALL, B-cell type	t(12;21)	CBFα-ETV6	
ALL, T-cell type	Diverse chromosomal translocation	NOTCH1	
Chronic lymphocytic leukemia (CLL)	del (13q)		Low-risk disease
	Trisomy 12, del (6q)		Intermediate risk
	del (11q), del (17q), Rearrangements of 14q32		Poor prognosis
CML	t(9;22) (q34;q11)	BCR-ABL rearrangement	
AML	t(8;21), t(15; 17), inv.(16), t(16; 16)		Favorable group
	Gains of chromosomes 6, 8, 11, 13, 21, and 22; loss of the Y chromosome; del (7q, 9q, 12p, and 20q)		Intermediate group
	−5, −7, del (5q), inv. (3), t(3; 3), t(9; 11), t(11; 19), 20q, 21q, del (9q), t(9;9) and t(9; 22)		Poor prognosis
Therapy-related AML	t(3;5)	AML1-ETO rearrangement	
	t(8;21)(q22;q22)		
Multiple myeloma	del (13q), and 17p, and 11q rearrangements		Unfavorable cytogenetic abnormalities
	t(11;14)	CCND1-IGH rearrangement Cyclin D1 overexpression	Good prognosis in patients receiving high-dose chemotherapy and stem cell transplant
	t(4; 14)	MMSET-FGFR3	Poor prognosis after high-dose therapy
Burkitt's lymphoma	t(8;14)(q24;q32)	MYC-IGH	
	t(8;22)		
	t(2;8)		
Mantle cell lymphoma	t(11;14)	CCND1-IGH Cyclin D1 overexpression	
Extranodal marginal zone lymphoma	t(11;18)	MALT1-IAP2	
	t(1;14)	BCLW-IgH	
	t(14;18)	MALTl-IgH	
Anaplastic large-cell lymphoma	t(2;5)	NPM-ALK Constitutively activation of various signaling pathways	
Follicular lymphoma and B-cell lymphoma	t(14;18)(q32;q21)	IGH-BCL2 BCL2 overexpression	

(CEP17) to determine the ratio of HER2 signals to copies of chromosome 17 (Fig. 30.9). Overexpression of HER2 is both a prognostic and predictive factor but it should be underlined that in situ component of breast carcinoma has no predictive value and FISH analysis should be performed on the invasive carcinoma (Fig. 30.10). Prolonged fixation in formalin, decalcification, and insufficient protease treatment of tissue are factors to obtain negative result.

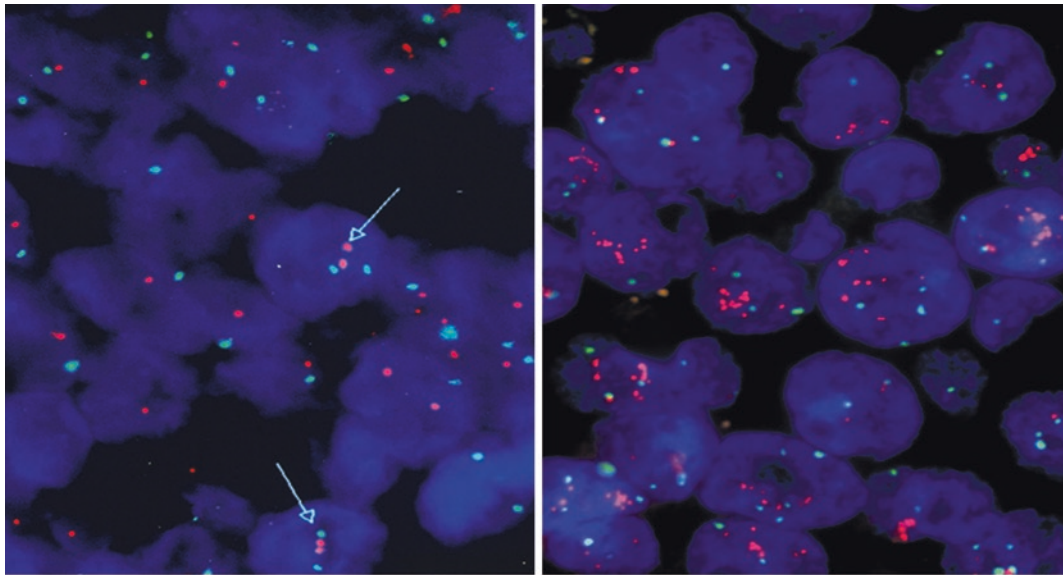


Fig. 30.9 Identification of HER2 with FISH. Her2/Neu amplification is measured by calculating the ratio of locus-specific signals to the centromere-specific probes. The latest CAP/ASCO guidelines specify positive HER2 amplification as FISH ratio higher than 2.2 or HER2 gene copy greater than 6.0 and negative HER2 amplification as FISH ratio lower than 1.8 or HER2 gene copy less than 4.0. FISH ratios of 1.8–2.2 or HER2 gene copy of 4.0–6.0 are considered as equivocal. In these images, Her2/Neu locus is labeled in red and the centromere is labeled in green. In the first image the ratio is less than 1.8 compatible with negative amplification and in the second image ratio is greater than 2.2 and compatible with amplification

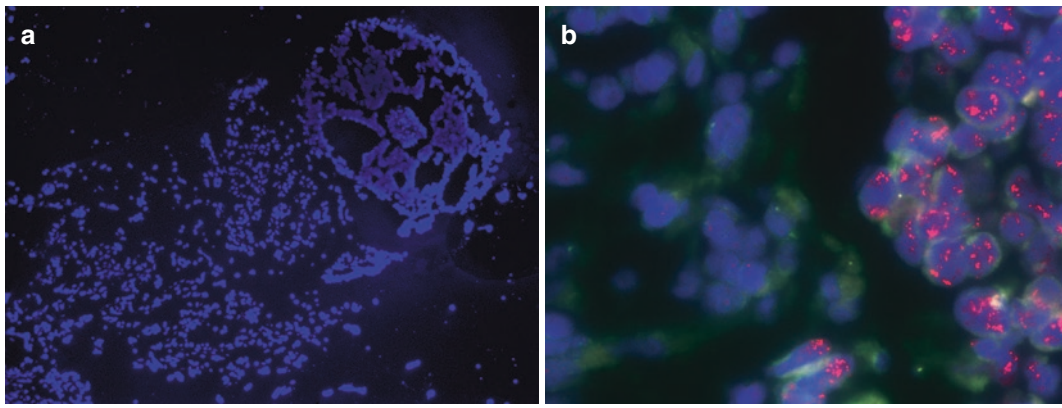


Fig. 30.10 The overview of the tissue and the selection of regions for performing FISH counts are essential in the interpretation of tumoral variations. It is important to analyze only those tumoral cells that are of value in the proliferation of the line. The above left images are overviews of tissue prepared from an invasive breast adenocarcinoma. As seen in the DAPI images there are multiple in situ foci. The cells within those in situ formations are shown on the right after application of Her2/Neu probe. As can be seen, there is amplification of the signals in these cells whereas the surrounding tissue is negative for amplification. The inclusion of these cells in the final count will affect the interpretation resulting in a false positive, as in situ formation is not representative of the tumoral population and should not be included

Genomic comparative hybridization offers an elegant, simple, and fast procedure and has become a routine part of the analysis of the genomic content of many tumors. The greatest impact of CGH is on the analysis of solid tumors and lymphomas whose study by conventional cytogenetics has been limited. Genomic analysis of DNA extracted from formalin-fixed, paraffin-embedded tissue allows the retrospective identification of chromosomal aberrations, and thus facilitates the correlation of cytogenetic findings with tumor phenotype, clinical course, and prognosis [22]. As with any technique, CGH has its limitations: it cannot detect balanced chromosomal translocations, inversions, point mutations, and aberrations.

The applications of FISH in solid tumor including sarcomas, carcinomas, and neuroepithelial tumors with corresponding gene and functional sequence are denoted in Tables 30.2, 30.3, and 30.4.

Table 30.2 FISH analysis in some sarcomas with corresponding gene and functional sequence

Tumor	Chromosomal abnormality	Involved gene/function
Alveolar soft-part sarcoma	t(X;17)	ASPSCR1-TFE3
Clear-cell sarcoma	t(2;22)(q34;q12)	EWSR1-CREB1
Dermatofibrosarcoma protuberans	Ring chromosome, t(17;22)	PDGFRB
Desmoplastic small round-cell tumor	t(11:22)(p13;q12)	EWSR1-WT1
Endometrial stromal tumor	t(7;17)	JAZF1-JJAZ1
Ewing sarcoma/PNET	t(11;22) t(21;22), t(7;22), t(17;22)	EWS-FLI1/activates transcription factor FLI1
Fibromatosis	del 5q	APC inactivation
Inflammatory myofibroblastic tumor	Translocation of 2p23	ALK overexpression
Liposarcoma		
Well differentiated/ dedifferentiated	Ring chromosome 12, amplification (12q15)	MDM2 amplification
Myxoid-round cell type	t(12;16)	FUS-DDIT3
	t(12;22)	DDIT3-EWSR
Solitary fibrous tumor	Inversion	NAB2-mediated constitutional activation of ERG transcription factors
Synovial sarcoma	t(X;18)(p11.2;q11.2)	SYT-SSX1/SYT-SSX2
	t(X;20)(p11.2;q13)	SS18L1-SSX1

Table 30.3 FISH analysis in some carcinoma with corresponding gene and functional sequence

Tumor	Chromosomal abnormality	Involved gene/function
Breast carcinoma	17q amplification	HER2
Colorectal carcinoma	17p12	EGFR
Gastric carcinoma	t(1;9), −8p, polysomy of chromosome 20	
Lung carcinoma		
NSCLC	t(2;2)(p21;p23)	EML4-ALK
SCLC	10q, 8p gene mutations	PTEN, FGFR1
	3q amplification	SOX2
NUT midline carcinoma	t(15;19)	NUT-BRD4
Prostate carcinoma		ERG-TMPRSS2 and ETV1-ETS
Renal cell carcinoma		
Clear-cell RCC	del 3p	VHL inactivation with CAIX overexpression
Papillary RCC	Trisomy 7 and 17, deletion X	MET activation
Translocation RCC	t(X;17), t(X;1), t(6;11)	TFE3, TFEB
Seminoma	Isochromosome (12p)	Gain of chromosomal material

Table 30.4 FISH analysis in neuroepithelial tumors with corresponding gene and functional sequence

Tumor	Chromosomal abnormality	Involved gene/function
Astrocytoma	BRAF duplication/fusion	BRAF
Ependymoma	+19	Unknown
Glioblastoma	7p12 amplification	EGFR
	10q23	PTEN, poor prognosis
Medulloblastoma	i(17q10) [17p/17q]	TP53
Meningioma	Monosomy 22	NF2 mutation, MN1?
Neuroblastoma	2p24 amplification	N-MYCgeh
Oligodendroglioma	del 1p/19q	Unknown
Schwannoma	Monosomy 22	NF2 mutation

Acknowledgments We would like to thank Kariminejad-Najmabadi Pathology and Genetics Center for providing us with the images, and we appreciate greatly the efforts of our colleague Dr. Siavash Ghaderi-Sohi who was responsible for the evaluation and the imaging of many of these specimens.

References

1. Langer-Safer PR, Levine M, Ward DC. Immunological method for mapping genes on Drosophila polytene chromosomes. Proc Natl Acad Sci. 1982;79(14):4381.
2. Urrutia R, McNiven MA, Kachar B. Synthesis of RNA probes by the direct in vitro transcription of PCR-generated DNA templates. J Biochem Biophys Methods. 1993;26(2–3):113–20.
3. Akam ME. The location of Ultrabithorax transcripts in Drosophila tissue sections. EMBO J. 1983;2:2075–84.
4. Hannon K, Johnstone E, Craft LS, et al. Synthesis of PCR-derived, single-stranded DNA probes suitable for in situ hybridization. Anal Biochem. 1993;212(2):421–7.
5. Rigby PW, Dieckmann M, Rhodes C, et al. Labeling deoxyribonucleic acid to high specific activity in vitro by nick translation with DNA polymerase I. J Mol Biol. 1977;113(1):237–51.
6. Feinberg AP, Vogelstein B. A technique for radiolabeling DNA restriction endonuclease fragments to high specific activity. Ann Biochem. 1983;132:6–13.
7. Mullis KB. Process for amplifying nucleic acid sequences. U.S. Patent 1985;4,683,202.
8. Eltoum I, Fredenburgh J, Myers RB, et al. Introduction to the theory and practice of fixation of tissues. J Histotechnol. 2001;24:173–90.
9. Eltoum I, Fredenburgh J, Grizzle WE. Advanced concepts in fixation: 1. Effects of fixation on immunohistochemistry, reversibility of fixation and recovery of proteins, nucleic acids, and other molecules from fixed and processed tissues. 2. Developmental methods of fixation. J Histotechnol. 2001;24:201–10.
10. Kearney L. Molecular cytogenetics. Best Pract Res Clin Haematol. 2001;14:645–68.
11. Ried T, Schröck E, Ning Y, et al. Chromosome painting: a useful art. Hum Mol Genet. 1998;7:1619–26.
12. Speicher MR, Ballard SG, Ward DC. Karyotyping human chromosomes by combinatorial multi-color FISH. Nat Gen. 1996;12:368–75.
13. Schröck E, du Manoir S, Veldman T, et al. Multicolor spectral karyotyping of human chromosomes. Science. 1996;273:494–7.
14. Speicher MR, Carter NP. The new cytogenetics: blurring the boundaries with molecular biology. Nat Rev Genet. 2005;6:782–92.
15. Bishop R. Applications of fluorescence in situ hybridization (FISH) in detecting genetic aberrations of medical significance. Bioscience Horizons. 2010;3(1):85–95.
16. Kallioniemi A, Kallioniemi OP, Sudar D, et al. Comparative genomic hybridization: a powerful new method for cytogenetic analysis of solid tumors. Science. 1992;258:818–21.
17. Pinkel D, Segraves R, Sudar S, et al. High resolution analysis of DNA copy number variation in breast cancer using comparative genomic hybridization to DNA microarrays. Nat Genet. 1998;20:207–11.
18. Tibiletti MG. Interphase FISH as a new tool in tumor pathology. Cytogenet Genome Res. 2007;118:229–36.
19. Sreekantaiah C. FISH panels for hematologic malignancies. Cytogenet Genome Res. 2007;118:284–96.
20. Kolialexi A, Tsangaris GTH, Kitsiou S, et al. Impact of cytogenetic and molecular cytogenetic studies on hematologic malignancies. Anticancer Res. 2005;25:2979–84.
21. Dorritie K, Montagna C, Difilippantonio MJ, et al. Advanced molecular cytogenetics in human and mouse. Expert Rev Mol Diagn. 2004;4(5):663–76.
22. Patel AS, Hawkins AL, Constance A, et al. Cytogenetics and cancer. Curr Opin Oncol. 2000;12:62–7.

Cancer Molecular and Functional Imaging

31

Farnaz Najmi Varzaneh and
Behnoud Baradaran Noveiry

Contents

31.1 Introduction

When cancer lesion is diagnosed, it is usually well far beyond the initial phase of the conversion of normal cells to abnormal [1–3]. Opportunity and challenges of tumor's early diagnosis have led the scientists to move forward to molecular imaging [4–7]. The ability to see inside the tumor cells and its environment, at a molecular level, is challenging. Study in this era allows researchers to completely understand how cancer cells initiate, grow, and spread [8–11].

Molecular and functional imaging techniques for detecting major characteristics of the tumor microenvironment such as angiogenesis and metastasis and evaluating treatment response have been developed recently [12–15]. The

F. Najmi Varzaneh (✉)
Department of Radiology and Biomedical Imaging, Yale University School of Medicine, New Haven, CT, USA

Department of Internal Medicine, St Agnes Hospital, Baltimore, MD, USA

Cancer Immunology Project (CIP), Universal Scientific Education of Research Network (USERN), Waterbury, CT, USA

B. Baradaran Noveiry
Cancer Immunology Project (CIP), Universal Scientific Education of Research Network (USERN), Waterbury, CT, USA

Department of Medicine, Saint Mary's Hospital, Waterbury, CT, USA

N. Rezaei (ed.), *Cancer Immunology*, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-30845-2_31

Cancer Molecular and Functional Imaging Program describes the potential use of CT and MR imaging biomarkers to differentiate cancerous cell from normal cells and also aggressive cancer from low-grade or benign tumors [16–19].

Many of these MRI biomarkers are adaptable into clinic, and well suited for "bench-to-bedside" approaches to develop the essential techniques for targeted treatments and attain the expected response against cancer [19–23]. Following the detection of cancerous cells, finding the most effective therapy based on biologic and genetic characteristics of tumor cells and interfering immune pathways to improve outcome would be the proceeding steps [24–26].

This chapter discusses the role of molecular and functional imaging in cancer immunotherapy.

31.2 Early Diagnosis of Cancer: Imaging at the Molecular Level

31.2.1 General Consideration

Molecular imaging, originated from the field of radio-pharmacology, is a kind of diagnostic imaging which provides detailed pictures of organisms inside at a molecular and cellular level [27].

While other diagnostic imaging techniques such as X-rays and computed tomography (CT) mainly provide structural pictures, molecular imaging allows clinicians to find the tumor function and to measure its chemical and biological pathways [22, 28].

Molecular imaging capabilities are listed as follows: providing functional and biochemical information which is unattainable via other imaging technologies, detecting important changes in cells and tissues at earlier stages compared with CT and MRI, and assisting in treatment planning by demonstrating specific molecular features [29, 30].

Molecular imaging routinely uses labeled probes that are injected into the patient's body. Once the imaging agent is administered, it accumulates in a target organ or attaches to cell surface receptors [31]. The imaging agents are detectable by imaging devices which generate body or tissue pictures based on agent distribution [32]. The pattern of agent distribution allows physicians to understand the function of organs and tissues within the body.

As a valuable tool for managing the patients' care, the growing field of molecular imaging helps clinicians to characterize the extent or spread of the disease in the body [13], offer personalize healthcare medicine, and choose the most effective therapeutic method, which are matched with the tumor type and tailored to fit individual patient's requirements based on unique biologic characteristics [33], ascertain patient's response to specific drugs [34], adjust treatment plans according to cellular activity changes, and manage ongoing care by evaluating tumor progression and detecting tumor recurrence [35, 36].

Molecular imaging with incorporating elements and development of pertinent materials such as imaging agents, reporter constructs, ligands, and probes is a rapidly evolving field. Various molecular imaging techniques such as PET/CT, magnetic resonance imaging (MRI), bioluminescent imaging (BLI), and fluorescence imaging (FLI) are applied for tracking immune and stem cell. We will discuss development and utilization of each modality separately [37–39].

31.2.2 Molecular PET and PET/CT Imaging in Oncology and Immunology

Positron-emission tomography (PET) is one of the most promising new techniques in nuclear medicine which provides vision into the biological behavior of tumors rather than their morphological features and allows physician to observe numerous physiological and biochemical processes in vivo [40]. PET scans use a radioactive tracer on a biologically active molecule that is presented into the patient's body to measure the cellular activity of the cell or the part of the body being examined [41, 42].

Fludeoxyglucose (FDG), an analogue of glucose, is the most common biologically active molecule used in PET which provides real-time and valuable information regarding the metabolic behavior of tracer based on the increased glucose uptake and glycolysis of cancer cells and shows metabolic abnormalities before alterations in morphology occur [43, 44].

A whole-body FDG-PET scan to explore the possibility of cancer metastasis is the most common type of PET scan in standard healthcare system [45]. The most limiting factor in PET scan is the poor structural landmarks that functional PET imaging generally provides [46, 47].

Integrated PET/CT is a new and powerful imaging modality that allows the acquisition of co-registered PET and CT data in one fused image and has synergistic benefits over each modality alone [48–50]. Therefore, the new modality PET/CT provides combined anatomical and functional imaging information and allows the physician to determine the exact location, extent of the tumor, and biological characterization of morphological abnormalities [51, 52].

Currently, most of the PET/CT studies in oncology use FDG as a tracer; however, the evolving demand to assess tumor angiogenesis, tumor hypoxia, and tumor cell proliferation has led to the development of other particular labeled tracers including amino acid F-fluoroethyl-L-tyrosine (FET) and thymidine analogue 3′-deoxy-3′-(18) F-fluorothymidine (FLT) [53, 54].

Tumor angiogenesis is a complicated biological process which presents as a central mechanism in tumor growth and metastasis [55, 56]. Vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF) is a potent proangiogenic factor that is secreted by growing stromal or cancerous cells [57, 58].

The VEGF secreted from cancerous cells stimulates tumor survival, cell proliferation, endothelial migration, and invasion and is therefore an important target for cancer therapy [59]. VEGF mediates its effects through numerous tyrosine kinase receptors [60]. Several VEGF targeted agents, including antibodies and soluble decoy receptor, have been developed recently [61]. As these targeted therapies undergo clinical evaluation, molecular imaging techniques such as dynamic contrast-enhanced-MRI (DCE-MRI), diffusion-weighted MRI (DW-MRI), and nuclear imaging modalities have been used to evaluate treatment response to anti-VEGF antibody [62, 63].

Hypoxia is another pathological condition which occurs when the system fails to supply oxygen to meet the main tissue demand [64]. The hypoxia phenomenon is present in most solid tumors and has been linked with a trend toward poor prognosis and ultimate poor clinical outcome [65].

Detecting and characterizing of hypoxia within tumors are of the highest clinical importance because tumor-cell aggressiveness, metastatic extent, and increased rate of recurrence are all associated with hypoxia [66, 67].

During the last decades, there has been growing appeal toward assessment of tumor hypoxia at sites inaccessible to invasive procedures [68]. As such, considerable effort has been put toward development of imaging modalities that can directly measure oxygen distribution and therefore hypoxia within tumor [65].

PET imaging, based on retention and uptake mechanism and through great number of tracers, is one of the most extensively investigated imaging modalities with the highest specificity for identification of hypoxia in solid tumors [69, 70].

In addition to the role of PET and PET/CT in oncology and cancerous cells, the use of nuclear medicine in characterization and diagnosis of infectious and inflammatory diseases and its role in therapeutic strategy have been rapidly evolving [71, 72]. In this regard, the role of PET/CT in detecting subclinical arthritis in preclinical RA [73], bone infection [74], vasculitis [75], and chest and abdominal inflammation [76] and its potential novel application for diagnosis and treatment evaluation have been discussed. However, since MRI is a better tool to detect soft tissue, PET/CT scan has lack of strong evidence in autoimmune pancreatitis [77, 78], inflammatory bowel disease [79], autoimmune thyroiditis [80], etc.

31.2.3 Molecular PET/MR Imaging and Functional MRI in Cancer

PET/MRI is a hybrid imaging modality, which provides MRI soft-tissue structural data incorporated with PET functional imaging information [81].

However, PET/MRI has convincing inherent advantages compared to PET/CT in terms of safety, lack of ionizing radiation, excellent soft-tissue contrast, and being a practical tool for staging and restaging of tumors; some recent studies report that these two modalities perform equally in most types of cancers [82]. In addition to FDG probes which is the most common probe used in PET, alternative probes have been used recently [83].

Fluorothymidine (FLT), an analogue of thymidine, is taken up by nucleoside transporters which are expressed on the cell surface and accumulated in highly proliferative tissues since it is incorporated into the nucleus during DNA synthesis, and is being used clinically for PET imaging of tumor proliferation [84]. In some studies, measuring cell proliferation with FLT provides better tumor specificity compared to measuring glycolytic activity with FDG which is due to elevated glycolysis and not limited to cancer cells [85].

FLT-PET could be a promising technique in diagnosing extramedullary sites of leukemia, particularly in brain in which there is a high level of physiologic FDG accumulation [86]. FLT-PET may also allow the detection of therapies planned to boost immune cell proliferation during cancer immunotherapy [87]. Functional MRI, including diffusion-weighted MRI (DWI), dynamic contrast-enhanced (DCE)-MRI, and dynamic susceptibility contrast (DSC) MRI, is also gaining increasing interest for a range of oncological applications from cancer detection to therapy response [88, 89].

DCE and DWI MRI sequences reflect changes in oxygenation, perfusion, vascularity, tumor microenvironment, and tissue physiology of the tumor and could be used as a surrogate biomarker for identifying early tumor response and treatment outcome which cannot be detected by conventional techniques [90]. Therefore, with the help of molecular imaging, treatment regimes in oncologic patients would be tailored according to tumor response which will have a positive effect on patient's quality of life and survival rate [91].

31.2.4 Bioluminescent Imaging (BLI) and Fluorescence Imaging (FLI) in Cancer

Bioluminescence imaging (BLI) is an imaging technology which is based on detecting visible light emitted from light-generating enzymes to report organism activity at a molecular level and to monitor transgene expression, progression of infection, tumor growth and micrometastasis, cell viability, cellular trafficking, protein-protein interactions, and gene therapy [92]. BLI is most commonly accomplished with luciferase in 2D/3D mode and the imaging technique is cost effective and very sensitive in animal models [93].

In vivo noninvasive BLI interrogation is widely becoming a method for modern biological research and is considered as a pivotal tool for tracking immune cells and optimization of cell-based therapy [94].

In this regard, the role of bioluminescent signals in localizing ER transcriptional activity in breast cancer [95], monitoring AFP-producing HCC by a chemical carcinogen in live animals [96], and androgen-independent prostate tumors in transgenic mice [97, 98] has been studied previously.

In vivo fluorescence imaging (FI) detects fluorescence release from fluorophores of small animal models by using sensitive cameras; provides a wide range of information including the location and dynamics of gene expression, tracking information of dendritic cell (DC) migration into lymph nodes and primary macrophage migration toward induced inflammatory lesions, protein expression, and molecular interactions in cells and tissues; and improves detection of malignant lesions at earlier stages [99, 100].

FI showed promising results in early detection and reduction of invasive procedures in cervical cancer [101], esophageal carcinoma [102], colorectal cancer [103], and bladder cancer [104].

31.3 Targeted Immunotherapy Based on Molecular Imaging

Immunotherapy is developed as a promising therapeutic approach for cancer treatment by stimulating the immune system against cancerous cells. Dendritic cells, T-cells, B-cells, and natural killer cells are among the immune cells which have important roles in cancer treatment [105–107].

While initial immunotherapies focused on stimulating T-cell activity, current immune-checkpoint inhibitors are being developed as antitumor immune responses.

The exclusive features of molecular imaging allow us to develop our knowledge of the role of immune cells against cancers in research era and clinical settings [108]. Recently several imaging strategies have been used to detect the distribution of immune-checkpoint molecules and identify patients who would probably take advantage from immunotherapies [87].

Up to now, three primary targets of checkpoint inhibition including the programmed death protein-1 receptor (PD-1), its ligand (programmed death ligand-1 [PD-L1]), and the cytotoxic T-lymphocyte-associated antigen-4 receptor (CTLA-4) have been offered [109].

PD-1 is expressed on the surface of activated T-cells, B-cells, and macrophages and is a negative regulator of T-cell activity. Several studies suggest that PD-1 and its ligands (PD-L1 and PD-L2) negatively regulate immune responses [110].

Interaction of PD-1 and PD-L results in inhibition of T-cell activation; thus, immunotherapy approaches that interfere with the PD-1 checkpoint would boost up anticancer activity [111]. Imaging techniques targeting PD-1 are distinctive since PD-1-targeted probes allow for imaging PD-1 expressed on the immune cell surface [112].

Cytotoxic T-lymphocyte-associated antigen 4 (CTLA-4) is a transmembrane inhibitory glycoprotein receptor expressed on activated T-lymphocytes; and it was recently discovered that CTLA-4 expression may be found by many tumor types [113, 114]. CTLA 4-targeted antibodies provide therapeutic efficacy in several cancers and molecular imaging such as PET helps screen patients by measuring levels of CTLA-4-positive T-cells and identifies individuals that are more likely to respond to anti-CTLA-4 immunotherapy [115]. Since molecular imaging of immunotherapy targets such as PD-1, PD-L1, and CTLA-4 has shown potential in preclinical settings as an effective tool to fight against cancer, we review molecular imaging in PD-1, PD-L, and CTLA-4 immune-checkpoint antibodies in details.

31.3.1 PD-1/PD-L

Immunotherapy blockade approaches are becoming more common in the management of numerous cancers; thus, the field is expected to keep up their rapid growth [116]. PD-1 and its ligand, PD-L1, play an important role in tumor immune evasion and the creating of tumor microenvironment suitable for tumor growth and development [109]. PD-L1 is expressed in different types of cancers, including melanoma [117], renal cell carcinoma [118], non-small cell lung cancer [119], and hepatocellular carcinoma [119].

Hindering the PD-1/PD-L1 pathway could reverse the tumor signals and develop the endogenous antitumor immune cytokines [120]. Therapeutic blockage of PD-1 and PD-L1 signaling axis with monoclonal antibodies has shown notable achievements in cancer therapy [121]. Visualizing the complex interactions between the immune system and tumor cells can offer important information regarding biomarkers that may be potential candidates for future immunotherapies [122].

Since PD-L1 is often expressed on the actual tumor cells, imaging modalities to detect this target have proven to be more reasonable than those for targets that are expressed only on immune cells [123]. Therefore, several anti-PD-L1 imaging agents have been developed to measure PD-L1 expression in preclinical settings [124].

"Immuno-PET" as a noninvasive tool measures the expression of PD-L1 throughout an entire tumor simultaneously, without the need of invasive procedures like biopsy [124].

Due to high affinity and specificity for PD-L1, a radiolabeled trace PD-1 could thus serve as an effective PET probe to assess tumor PD-L1 expression [125]. Therefore, by visualizing the PD-1/PD-L1 interaction, quantifying its expression, and mapping the bio-distribution of tracers, development of checkpoint-blocking drugs and their efficacy can be monitored.

31.3.2 CTLA-4

CTLA-4 is an inhibitory T-cell receptor that acts as a negative regulator of peripheral T-cell function. CTLA-4 is closely related to CD28 and they both bind with B7-1 (CD80) and B7-2 (CD86); however, CTLA-4 has >10-fold greater affinity in binding B7-1/B7-2 to transmit inhibitory signals [126].

CTLA-4 role is to induce peripheral immune tolerance by suppressing T-cells that are no longer needed. Both PD-1 and CTLA-4 signal inhibit T-cell activation; however, PD-1 ligation inhibits a more upstream membrane proximal step. The efficacy and safety of anti-CTLA-4 antibodies (tremelimumab) for treatment of HCC [127], melanoma [128], and non-small cell lung cancer [129] have been studied before.

PET-based whole-body molecular imaging as a noninvasive imaging has the ability to detect changes induced by treatment with anti-CTLA-4 antibodies in melanoma [130], NSCLC [131], and HCC [132].

31.4 Concluding Remarks

Immuno-oncology is a thrilling field in cancer therapy with the potential to control the growth of numerous malignancies by stimulating the body's immune system to target and fight against cancer [133]. Imaging modalities are needed to assess tumor response post-immunotherapy and further managements. Anatomic features are not sufficient biomarkers to predict response to immunotherapy; therefore functional and molecular imaging modalities are also needed to provide supplement information and monitor immune-based response. Visualization and tracking of immune cells and immunotherapy targets such as PD-1, PD-L1, and CTLA-4 would be extremely helpful in preclinical and clinical studies. In the future, molecular imaging of immunotherapy targets may improve patient classification based on tumor response and provide insight for development of novel immunotherapy targets.

References

1. Prescott DM. Biology of cancer and the cancer cell: normal and abnormal regulation of cell reproduction. Cancer J Clin. 1972;22(4):262–72.
2. Sporn MB. The war on cancer. Lancet. 1996;347(9012):1377–81.
3. Hanahan D, Weinberg RA. The hallmarks of cancer. Cell. 2000;100(1):57–70.
4. Feni L, Omrane MA, Fischer M, Zlatopolskiy BD, Neumaier B, Neundorf I. Convenient preparation of (18)F-labeled peptide probes for potential Claudin-4 PET imaging. Pharmaceuticals. 2017;10(4):99.
5. Zakeri ZF, Ahuja HS. Cell death/apoptosis: normal, chemically induced, and teratogenic effect. Mutat Res. 1997;396(1–2):149–61.
6. Weissleder R. Molecular imaging in cancer. Science. 2006;312(5777):1168–71.
7. Lucignani G. The immune system and cancer: the evolving role of molecular imaging and molecular targeted therapy. Eur J Nucl Med Mol Imaging. 2006;33(4):503–5.
8. Quail DF, Joyce JA. Microenvironmental regulation of tumor progression and metastasis. Nat Med. 2013;19(11):1423–37.
9. Gupta GP, Massague J. Cancer metastasis: building a framework. Cell. 2006;127(4):679–95.
10. Eccles SA, Welch DR. Metastasis: recent discoveries and novel treatment strategies. Lancet. 2007;369(9574):1742–57.
11. Vogelstein B, Kinzler KW. Cancer genes and the pathways they control. Nat Med. 2004;10(8):789–99.
12. Golestani R, Jung JJ, Sadeghi MM. Molecular imaging of angiogenesis and vascular remodeling in cardiovascular pathology. J Clin Med. 2016;5(6).
13. Winnard PT Jr, Pathak AP, Dhara S, Cho SY, Raman V, Pomper MG. Molecular imaging of metastatic potential. J Nucl Med. 2008;49(Suppl 2):96S–112S.
14. McCann TE, Kosaka N, Turkbey B, Mitsunaga M, Choyke PL, Kobayashi H. Molecular imaging of tumor invasion and metastases: the role of MRI. NMR Biomed. 2011;24(6):561–8.

15. Condeelis JS, Wyckoff J, Segall JE. Imaging of cancer invasion and metastasis using green fluorescent protein. Eur J Cancer. 2000;36(13):1671–80.
16. Haris M, Yadav SK, Rizwan A, Singh A, Wang E, Hariharan H, et al. Molecular magnetic resonance imaging in cancer. J Transl Med. 2015;13:313.
17. Blodgett TM, Meltzer CC, Townsend DW. PET/CT: form and function. Radiology. 2007;242(2):360–85.
18. Czernin J. Clinical applications of FDG-PET in oncology. Acta Med Austriaca. 2002;29(5):162–70.
19. Juweid ME, Cheson BD. Positron-emission tomography and assessment of cancer therapy. N Engl J Med. 2006;354(5):496–507.
20. Yankeelov TE, Arlinghaus LR, Li X, Gore JC. The role of magnetic resonance imaging biomarkers in clinical trials of treatment response in cancer. Semin Oncol. 2011;38(1):16–25.
21. Thoeny HC, Ross BD. Predicting and monitoring cancer treatment response with diffusion-weighted MRI. J Magn Reson Imaging. 2010;32(1):2–16.
22. Zaidi H, Alavi A. Current trends in PET and combined (PET/CT and PET/MR) systems design. PET Clinics. 2007;2(2):109–23.
23. Massoud TF, Gambhir SS. Integrating noninvasive molecular imaging into molecular medicine: an evolving paradigm. Trends Mol Med. 2007;13(5):183–91.
24. Kaliberov SA, Buchsbaum DJ. Chapter seven—cancer treatment with gene therapy and radiation therapy. Adv Cancer Res. 2012;115:221–63.
25. Guo XE, Ngo B, Modrek AS, Lee WH. Targeting tumor suppressor networks for cancer therapeutics. Curr Drug Targets. 2014;15(1):2–16.
26. Melero I, Gaudernack G, Gerritsen W, Huber C, Parmiani G, Scholl S, et al. Therapeutic vaccines for cancer: an overview of clinical trials. Nat Rev Clin Oncol. 2014;11(9):509–24.
27. Mankoff DA. A definition of molecular imaging. J Nucl Med. 2007;48(6):18N–21N.
28. Weissleder R, Mahmood U. Molecular imaging. Radiology. 2001;219(2):316–33.
29. Zaidi H, Prasad R. Advances in multimodality molecular imaging. J Med Phys. 2009;34(3):122–8.
30. Yentz S, Wang TD. Molecular imaging for guiding oncologic prognosis and therapy in esophageal adenocarcinoma. Hosp Pract. 2011;39(2):97–106.
31. Hellebust A, Richards-Kortum R. Advances in molecular imaging: targeted optical contrast agents for cancer diagnostics. Nanomedicine. 2012;7(3):429–45.
32. Chen ZY, Wang YX, Lin Y, Zhang JS, Yang F, Zhou QL, et al. Advance of molecular imaging technology and targeted imaging agent in imaging and therapy. Biomed Res Int. 2014;2014:819324.
33. Russell J, Tian J, Kinuya S, Shen B, Li XF. Molecular imaging for personalized medicine. Biomed Res Int. 2016;2016:5170159.
34. Willmann JK, van Bruggen N, Dinkelborg LM, Gambhir SS. Molecular imaging in drug development. Nat Rev Drug Discov. 2008;7(7):591–607.
35. Jimenez-Bonilla JF, Quirce R, Martinez-Rodriguez I, De Arcocha-Torres M, Carril JM, Banzo I. The role of PET/CT molecular imaging in the diagnosis of recurrence and surveillance of patients treated for non-small cell lung cancer. Diagnostics. 2016;6(4):36.
36. Jimenez-Bonilla JF, Quirce R, Martinez-Rodriguez I, Banzo I, Rubio-Vassallo AS, Del Castillo-Matos R, et al. Diagnosis of recurrence and assessment of post-recurrence survival in patients with extracranial non-small cell lung cancer evaluated by 18F-FDG PET/CT. Lung Cancer. 2013;81(1):71–6.
37. Puaux AL, Ong LC, Jin Y, Teh I, Hong M, Chow PK, et al. A comparison of imaging techniques to monitor tumor growth and cancer progression in living animals. Int J Mol Imag. 2011;2011:321538.
38. Sadikot RT, Blackwell TS. Bioluminescence imaging. Proc Am Thorac Soc. 2005;2(6):537–40. 11-2
39. Becker W. Fluorescence lifetime imaging--techniques and applications. J Microsc. 2012;247(2):119–36.
40. Gupta N, Price PM, Aboagye EO. PET for in vivo pharmacokinetic and pharmacodynamic measurements. Eur J Cancer. 2002;38(16):2094–107.
41. Chouinard JA, Rousseau JA, Beaudoin JF, Vermette P, Lecomte R. Positron emission tomography detection of human endothelial cell and fibroblast monolayers: effect of pretreatment and cell density on 18FDG uptake. Vasc Cell. 2012;4(1):5.
42. Hagan G, Southwood M, Treacy C, Ross RM, Soon E, Coulson J, et al. (18)FDG PET imaging can quantify increased cellular metabolism in pulmonary arterial hypertension: a proof-of-principle study. Pulm Circ. 2011;1(4):448–55.
43. Sengupta D, Pratx G. Imaging metabolic heterogeneity in cancer. Mol Cancer. 2016;15:4.
44. Almuhaideb A, Papathanasiou N, Bomanji J. 18F-FDG PET/CT imaging in oncology. Ann Saudi Med. 2011;31(1):3–13.
45. Hu C, Liu CP, Cheng JS, Chiu YL, Chan HP, Peng NJ. Application of whole-body FDG-PET for cancer screening in a cohort of hospital employees. Medicine. 2016;95(44):e5131.
46. Plaxton NA, Brandon DC, Corey AS, Harrison CE, Karagulle Kendi AT, Halkar RK, et al. Characteristics and limitations of FDG PET/CT for imaging of squamous cell carcinoma of the head and neck: a comprehensive review of anatomy, metastatic pathways, and image findings. Am J Roentgenol. 2015;205(5):W519–31.
47. Freedenberg MI, Badawi RD, Tarantal AF, Cherry SR. Performance and limitations of positron emission tomography (PET) scanners for imaging very low activity sources. Phys Med. 2014;30(1):104–10.
48. Pinilla I, Rodriguez-Vigil B, Gomez-Leon N, Integrated FDG. PET/CT: utility and applications in clinical oncology. Clin Med Oncol. 2008;2:181–98.
49. Bar-Shalom R, Yefremov N, Guralnik L, Gaitini D, Frenkel A, Kuten A, et al. Clinical performance of PET/CT in evaluation of cancer: additional value for

diagnostic imaging and patient management. J Nucl Med. 2003;44(8):1200–9.
50. von Schulthess GK, Steinert HC, Hany TF, Integrated PET. CT: current applications and future directions. Radiology. 2006;238(2):405–22.
51. Park JS, Yim JJ, Kang WJ, Chung JK, Yoo CG, Kim YW, et al. Detection of primary sites in unknown primary tumors using FDG-PET or FDG-PET/CT. BMC Res Notes. 2011;4:56.
52. Mirpour S, Mhlanga JC, Logeswaran P, Russo G, Mercier G, Subramaniam RM. The role of PET/CT in the management of cervical cancer. Am J Roentgenol. 2013;201(2):W192–205.
53. Nedergaard MK, Michaelsen SR, Perryman L, Erler J, Poulsen HS, Stockhausen MT, et al. Comparison of (18)F-FET and (18)F-FLT small animal PET for the assessment of anti-VEGF treatment response in an orthotopic model of glioblastoma. Nucl Med Biol. 2016;43(3):198–205.
54. Borbely K, Wintermark M, Martos J, Fedorcsak I, Bognar L, Kasler M. The pre-requisite of a second-generation glioma PET biomarker. J Neurol Sci. 2010;298(1–2):11–6.
55. Deryugina EI, Quigley JP. Tumor angiogenesis: MMP-mediated induction of intravasation- and metastasis-sustaining neovasculature. Matrix Biol. 2015;44–46:94–112.
56. Hillen F, Griffioen AW. Tumour vascularization: sprouting angiogenesis and beyond. Cancer Metastasis Rev. 2007;26(3–4):489–502.
57. Lee SH, Jeong D, Han YS, Baek MJ. Pivotal role of vascular endothelial growth factor pathway in tumor angiogenesis. Ann Surg Treat Res. 2015;89(1):1–8.
58. Shibuya M. Vascular Endothelial Growth Factor (Vegf) and Its Receptor (VEGFR) signaling in angiogenesis: a crucial target for anti- and pro-angiogenic therapies. Genes Cancer. 2011;2(12):1097–105.
59. Niu G, Chen X. Vascular endothelial growth factor as an anti-angiogenic target for cancer therapy. Curr Drug Targets. 2010;11(8):1000–17.
60. Jeltsch M, Leppanen VM, Saharinen P, Alitalo K. Receptor tyrosine kinase-mediated angiogenesis. Cold Spring Harb Perspect Biol. 2013;5(9).
61. Narayanan S, Srinivas S. Incorporating VEGF-targeted therapy in advanced urothelial cancer. Ther Adv Med Oncol. 2017;9(1):33–45.
62. Hoff BA, Bhojani MS, Rudge J, Chenevert TL, Meyer CR, Galban S, et al. DCE and DW-MRI monitoring of vascular disruption following VEGF-trap treatment of a rat glioma model. NMR Biomed. 2012;25(7):935–42.
63. Padhani AR, Miles KA. Multiparametric imaging of tumor response to therapy. Radiology. 2010;256(2):348–64.
64. Michiels C. Physiological and pathological responses to hypoxia. Am J Pathol. 2004;164(6):1875–82.
65. Walsh JC, Lebedev A, Aten E, Madsen K, Marciano L, Kolb HC. The clinical importance of assessing tumor hypoxia: relationship of tumor hypoxia to prognosis and therapeutic opportunities. Antioxid Redox Signal. 2014;21(10):1516–54.
66. Muz B, de la Puente P, Azab F, Azab AK. The role of hypoxia in cancer progression, angiogenesis, metastasis, and resistance to therapy. Hypoxia. 2015;3:83–92.
67. Hockel M, Vaupel P. Tumor hypoxia: definitions and current clinical, biologic, and molecular aspects. J Natl Cancer Inst. 2001;93(4):266–76.
68. Lopci E, Grassi I, Chiti A, Nanni C, Cicoria G, Toschi L, et al. PET radiopharmaceuticals for imaging of tumor hypoxia: a review of the evidence. Am J Nucl Med Mol Imaging. 2014;4(4):365–84.
69. Kelada OJ, Carlson DJ. Molecular imaging of tumor hypoxia with positron emission tomography. Radiat Res. 2014;181(4):335–49.
70. Rice SL, Roney CA, Daumar P, Lewis JS. The next generation of positron emission tomography radiopharmaceuticals in oncology. Semin Nucl Med. 2011;41(4):265–82.
71. Fleming IN, Manavaki R, Blower PJ, West C, Williams KJ, Harris AL, et al. Imaging tumour hypoxia with positron emission tomography. Br J Cancer. 2015;112(2):238–50.
72. Signore A, Glaudemans AW. The molecular imaging approach to image infections and inflammation by nuclear medicine techniques. Ann Nucl Med. 2011;25(10):681–700.
73. Yamashita H, Kubota K, Mimori A. Clinical value of whole-body PET/CT in patients with active rheumatic diseases. Arthritis Res Ther. 2014;16(5):423.
74. Basu S, Chryssikos T, Moghadam-Kia S, Zhuang H, Torigian DA, Alavi A. Positron emission tomography as a diagnostic tool in infection: present role and future possibilities. Semin Nucl Med. 2009;39(1):36–51.
75. Balink H, Bennink RJ, van Eck-Smit BL, Verberne HJ. The role of 18F-FDG PET/CT in large-vessel vasculitis: appropriateness of current classification criteria? Biomed Res Int. 2014;2014:687608.
76. Foley J, Mullan D, Mohan H, Schmidt K. Abdominal aortitis on PET CT: a case report and review of the literature. Int J Surg Case Rep. 2015;10:104–6.
77. Glaudemans AW, de Vries EF, Galli F, Dierckx RA, Slart RH, Signore A. The use of (18)F-FDG-PET/CT for diagnosis and treatment monitoring of inflammatory and infectious diseases. Clin Dev Immunol. 2013;2013:623036.
78. Lee TY, Kim MH, Park DH, Seo DW, Lee SK, Kim JS, et al. Utility of 18F-FDG PET/CT for differentiation of autoimmune pancreatitis with atypical pancreatic imaging findings from pancreatic cancer. Am J Roentgenol. 2009;193(2):343–8.
79. Perlman SB, Hall BS, Reichelderfer M. PET/CT imaging of inflammatory bowel disease. Semin Nucl Med. 2013;43(6):420–6.
80. Karantanis D, Bogsrud TV, Wiseman GA, Mullan BP, Subramaniam RM, Nathan MA, et al. Clinical significance of diffusely increased 18F-FDG uptake in the thyroid gland. J Nucl Med. 2007;48(6):896–901.

81. Pichler BJ, Kolb A, Nagele T, Schlemmer HP. PET/MRI: paving the way for the next generation of clinical multimodality imaging applications. J Nucl Med. 2010;51(3):333–6.
82. Riola-Parada C, Garcia-Canamaque L, Perez-Duenas V, Garcerant-Tafur M, Carreras-Delgado JL, Simultaneous PET. MRI vs. PET/CT in oncology. A systematic review. Revista Espanola De Medicina Nuclear E Imagen Molecular. 2016;35(5):306–12.
83. Jiang L, Tu Y, Shi H. PET probes beyond (18) F-FDG. J Biomed Res. 2014;28(6):435–46.
84. Peck M, Pollack HA, Friesen A, Muzi M, Shoner SC, Shankland EG, et al. Applications of PET imaging with the proliferation marker [18F]-FLT. Q J Nucl Med Mol Imaging. 2015;59(1):95–104.
85. Laing RE, Nair-Gill E, Witte ON, Radu CG. Visualizing cancer and immune cell function with metabolic positron emission tomography. Curr Opin Genet Dev. 2010;20(1):100–5.
86. Chen W, Cloughesy T, Kamdar N, Satyamurthy N, Bergsneider M, Liau L, et al. Imaging proliferation in brain tumors with 18F-FLT PET: comparison with 18F-FDG. J Nucl Med. 2005;46(6):945–52.
87. Juergens RA, Zukotynski KA, Singnurkar A, Snider DP, Valliant JF, Gulenchyn KY. Imaging biomarkers in immunotherapy. Biomark Cancer. 2016;8(Suppl 2):1–13.
88. Lucas R, Lopes Dias J, Cunha TM. Added value of diffusion-weighted MRI in detection of cervical cancer recurrence: comparison with morphologic and dynamic contrast-enhanced MRI sequences. Diagn Interv Radiol. 2015;21(5):368–75.
89. Mazaheri Y, Akin O, Hricak H. Dynamic contrast-enhanced magnetic resonance imaging of prostate cancer: a review of current methods and applications. World J Radiol. 2017;9(12):416–25.
90. Harry VN, Semple SI, Parkin DE, Gilbert FJ. Use of new imaging techniques to predict tumour response to therapy. Lancet Oncol. 2010;11(1):92–102.
91. Chan CWH, Law BMH, WKW S, Chow KM, MMY W. Novel strategies on personalized medicine for breast cancer treatment: an update. Int J Mol Sci. 2017;18(11):2423.
92. Luker KE, Smith MC, Luker GD, Gammon ST, Piwnica-Worms H, Piwnica-Worms D. Kinetics of regulated protein-protein interactions revealed with firefly luciferase complementation imaging in cells and living animals. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2004;101(33):12288–93.
93. Thompson SM, Callstrom MR, Knudsen BE, Anderson JL, Sutor SL, Butters KA, et al. Molecular bioluminescence imaging as a noninvasive tool for monitoring tumor growth and therapeutic response to MRI-guided laser ablation in a rat model of hepatocellular carcinoma. Investig Radiol. 2013;48(6):413–21.
94. Youn H, Hong KJ. In vivo noninvasive molecular imaging for immune cell tracking in small animals. Immune Netw. 2012;12(6):223–9.
95. Vantaggiato C, Dell'Omo G, Ramachandran B, Manni I, Radaelli E, Scanziani E, et al. Bioluminescence imaging of estrogen receptor activity during breast cancer progression. Am J Nucl Med Mol Imaging. 2016;6(1):32–41.
96. Kim KI, Chung HK, Park JH, Lee YJ, Kang JH. Alpha-fetoprotein-targeted reporter gene expression imaging in hepatocellular carcinoma. World J Gastroenterol. 2016;22(27):6127–34.
97. Gingrich JR, Barrios RJ, Kattan MW, Nahm HS, Finegold MJ, Greenberg NM. Androgen-independent prostate cancer progression in the TRAMP model. Cancer Res. 1997;57(21):4687–91.
98. Lyons SK, Lim E, Clermont AO, Dusich J, Zhu L, Campbell KD, et al. Noninvasive bioluminescence imaging of normal and spontaneously transformed prostate tissue in mice. Cancer Res. 2006;66(9):4701–7.
99. Yamaoka N, Kawasaki Y, Xu Y, Yamamoto H, Terada N, Okamura H, et al. Establishment of in vivo fluorescence imaging in mouse models of malignant mesothelioma. Int J Oncol. 2010;37(2):273–9.
100. Pham W, Xie J, Gore JC. Tracking the migration of dendritic cells by in vivo optical imaging. Neoplasia. 2007;9(12):1130–7.
101. Crane LM, Themelis G, Pleijhuis RG, Harlaar NJ, Sarantopoulos A, Arts HJ, et al. Intraoperative multispectral fluorescence imaging for the detection of the sentinel lymph node in cervical cancer: a novel concept. Mol Imaging Biol. 2011;13(5):1043–9.
102. Wang KK. Detection and staging of esophageal cancers. Curr Opin Gastroenterol. 2004;20(4):381–5.
103. Hoogstins CE, Weixler B, Boogerd LS, Hoppener DJ, Prevoo HA, Sier CF, et al. In search for optimal targets for intraoperative fluorescence imaging of peritoneal metastasis from colorectal cancer. Biomark cancer. 2017;9:1179299X17728254.
104. Nishizawa K, Nishiyama H, Oishi S, Tanahara N, Kotani H, Mikami Y, et al. Fluorescent imaging of high-grade bladder cancer using a specific antagonist for chemokine receptor CXCR4. Int J Cancer. 2010;127(5):1180–7.
105. Farkona S, Diamandis EP, Blasutig IM. Cancer immunotherapy: the beginning of the end of cancer? BMC Med. 2016;14:73.
106. Carotta S. Targeting NK cells for anticancer immunotherapy: clinical and preclinical approaches. Front Immunol. 2016;7:152.
107. Verbik D, Joshi S. Immune cells and cytokines – their role in cancer-immunotherapy (review). Int J Oncol. 1995;7(2):205–23.
108. Gangadaran P, Ahn BC. Molecular imaging: a useful tool for the development of natural killer cell-based immunotherapies. Front Immunol. 2017;8:1090.
109. Alsaab HO, Sau S, Alzhrani R, Tatiparti K, Bhise K, Kashaw SK, et al. PD-1 and PD-L1 checkpoint signaling inhibition for cancer immunotherapy: mechanism, combinations, and clinical outcome. Front Pharmacol. 2017;8:561.

110. Riella LV, Paterson AM, Sharpe AH, Chandraker A. Role of the PD-1 pathway in the immune response. Am J Transplant. 2012;12(10):2575–87.
111. Black M, Barsoum IB, Truesdell P, Cotechini T, Macdonald-Goodfellow SK, Petroff M, et al. Activation of the PD-1/PD-L1 immune checkpoint confers tumor cell chemoresistance associated with increased metastasis. Oncotarget. 2016;7(9):10557–67.
112. Hamanishi J, Konishi I. Targeting the PD-1/PD-L1 immune checkpoint signal – a new treatment strategy for cancer. Gan To Kagaku Ryoho. 2014;41(9):1071–6.
113. Walunas TL, Lenschow DJ, Bakker CY, Linsley PS, Freeman GJ, Green JM, et al. CTLA-4 can function as a negative regulator of T cell activation. Immunity. 1994;1(5):405–13.
114. Grosso JF, Jure-Kunkel MN. CTLA-4 blockade in tumor models: an overview of preclinical and translational research. Cancer Immun. 2013;13:5.
115. Ehlerding EB, England CG, McNeel DG, Cai W. Molecular imaging of immunotherapy targets in cancer. J Nucl Med. 2016;57(10):1487–92.
116. Khalil DN, Smith EL, Brentjens RJ, Wolchok JD. The future of cancer treatment: immunomodulation, CARs and combination immunotherapy. Nat Rev Clin Oncol. 2016;13(5):273–90.
117. Spranger S, Spaapen RM, Zha Y, Williams J, Meng Y, Ha TT, et al. Up-regulation of PD-L1, IDO, and T(regs) in the melanoma tumor microenvironment is driven by CD8(+) T cells. Sci Transl Med. 2013;5(200):200ra116.
118. Thompson RH, Gillett MD, Cheville JC, Lohse CM, Dong H, Webster WS, et al. Costimulatory molecule B7-H1 in primary and metastatic clear cell renal cell carcinoma. Cancer. 2005;104(10):2084–91.
119. Velcheti V, Schalper KA, Carvajal DE, Anagnostou VK, Syrigos KN, Sznol M, et al. Programmed death ligand-1 expression in non-small cell lung cancer. Lab Investig. 2014;94(1):107–16.
120. He J, Hu Y, Hu M, Li B. Development of PD-1/PD-L1 pathway in tumor immune microenvironment and treatment for non-small cell lung cancer. Sci Rep. 2015;5:13110.
121. Lee HT, Lee JY, Lim H, Lee SH, Moon YJ, Pyo HJ, et al. Molecular mechanism of PD-1/PD-L1 blockade via anti-PD-L1 antibodies atezolizumab and durvalumab. Sci Rep. 2017;7(1):5532.
122. Gulley JL, Berzofsky JA, Butler MO, Cesano A, Fox BA, Gnjatic S, et al. Immunotherapy biomarkers 2016: overcoming the barriers. J Immunother Cancer. 2017;5(1):29.
123. Madore J, Vilain RE, Menzies AM, Kakavand H, Wilmott JS, Hyman J, et al. PD-L1 expression in melanoma shows marked heterogeneity within and between patients: implications for anti-PD-1/PD-L1 clinical trials. Pigment Cell Melanoma Res. 2015;28(3):245–53.
124. Maute RL, Gordon SR, Mayer AT, McCracken MN, Natarajan A, Ring NG, et al. Engineering high-affinity PD-1 variants for optimized immunotherapy and immuno-PET imaging. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2015;112(47):E6506–14.
125. Chatterjee S, Lesniak WG, Gabrielson M, Lisok A, Wharram B, Sysa-Shah P, et al. A humanized antibody for imaging immune checkpoint ligand PD-L1 expression in tumors. Oncotarget. 2016;7(9):10215–27.
126. Kudo M. Immuno-oncology in hepatocellular carcinoma: 2017 update. Oncology. 2017;93(Suppl 1):147–59.
127. Raufi A, Tirona MT. Prospect of the use of checkpoint inhibitors in hepatocellular cancer treatments. Cancer Manag Res. 2017;9:19–27.
128. Ribas A, Kefford R, Marshall MA, Punt CJ, Haanen JB, Marmol M, et al. Phase III randomized clinical trial comparing tremelimumab with standard-of-care chemotherapy in patients with advanced melanoma. J Clin Oncol. 2013;31(5):616–22.
129. Antonia S, Goldberg SB, Balmanoukian A, Chaft JE, Sanborn RE, Gupta A, et al. Safety and antitumour activity of durvalumab plus tremelimumab in non-small cell lung cancer: a multicentre, phase 1b study. Lancet Oncol. 2016;17(3):299–308.
130. Ribas A, Benz MR, Allen-Auerbach MS, Radu C, Chmielowski B, Seja E, et al. Imaging of CTLA4 blockade-induced cell replication with (18)F-FLT PET in patients with advanced melanoma treated with tremelimumab. J Nucl Med. 2010;51(3):340–6.
131. Ehlerding EB, England CG, Majewski RL, Valdovinos HF, Jiang D, Liu G, et al. ImmunoPET imaging of CTLA-4 expression in mouse models of non-small cell lung cancer. Mol Pharm. 2017;14(5):1782–9.
132. Kudo M. Immune checkpoint blockade in hepatocellular carcinoma: 2017 update. Liver Cancer. 2016;6(1):1–12.
133. Kamta J, Chaar M, Ande A, Altomare DA, Ait-Oudhia S. Advancing cancer therapy with present and emerging immuno-oncology approaches. Front Oncol. 2017;7:64.

Cancer Imaging with Radiolabeled Monoclonal Antibodies

32

Sara Harsini and Nima Rezaei

Contents

S. Harsini (✉)
Department of Molecular Oncology, BC Cancer Research Centre, Vancouver, BC, Canada

Association of Nuclear Medicine and Molecular Imaging (ANMMI), Universal Scientific Education and Research Network (USERN), Tehran, Iran

Research Center for Nuclear Medicine, Dr. Shariati Hospital, Tehran University of Medical Sciences, Tehran, Iran

N. Rezaei
Research Center for Immunodeficiencies, Children's Medical Center, Pediatrics Center of Excellence, Tehran University of Medical Sciences, Tehran, Iran

Department of Immunology, School of Medicine, Tehran University of Medical Sciences, Tehran, Iran

Network of Immunity in Infection, Malignancy and Autoimmunity (NIIMA), Universal Scientific Education and Research Network (USERN), Tehran, Iran

N. Rezaei (ed.), *Cancer Immunology*, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-30845-2_32

32.1 Introduction

Cancer is a major public health issue and one of the leading causes of mortality, morbidity, and decreased quality of life worldwide. According to WHO estimates for 2011, cancer causes more deaths than all coronary heart disease or all stroke [1]. The ongoing global demographic and epidemiologic transitions signal an ever-increasing cancer burden over the next decades, specifically in low- and middle-resource countries, with over 20 million new cancer cases expected annually as early as 2025 [2, 3]. It is widely acknowledged that early and accurate detection of cancer could set the stage for successful treatment. Greater public awareness and increased use of screening tests have played a significant role in the detection of cancer in early stages. There is a need to reach precise answers to questions regarding the tumor location, size, spread to lymph nodes, and involvement of critical anatomical structures, so as to combat cancerous cells through modern clinical cancer therapeutic approaches. Such questions are being answered, at ever-increasing spatial resolution, through the application of traditional anatomical imaging methods such as computed tomography (CT), magnetic resonance imaging (MRI), and ultrasound (US). Although these methods still represent the mainstay of clinical imaging, it has become clear that the acquisition of molecular and physiological information by nuclear magnetic resonance and optical imaging technologies could vastly enhance our ability to fight cancer [4–6]. As molecular imaging allows the integration of the molecular and physiological information specific to each patient with anatomical information obtained by conventional imaging methods, it is acknowledged to play a central role in the transformation of the way in which cancer is clinically managed, with the hope to detect molecular or physiological alterations that signal the presence of cancer at a curable stage and to evaluate and adjust treatment protocols in real time in the forthcoming years. Among the aforementioned molecular imaging techniques, radioimmunodetection (RID), also known as radioimmunoscintigraphy, a diagnostic procedure allowing in vivo imaging of tumors using radiolabeled antibodies and standard gamma scintillation cameras, has been a topic of intensive research during the past five decades. A large array of antibodies directed against many human tumor antigens have been developed and labeled with a variety of radioisotopes in the abovementioned era and these investigations have led to many problems in the early years, most of which were related to the unpredictable nature of polyclonal antibodies as well as the variations in different serum preparations [7, 8]. However, the introduction of well-characterized tumoral antigens and the development of hybridoma technology for the production of specific monoclonal antibodies (mAbs) renewed interest and expectations in the field of tumor imaging. And all these resulted in the capability of most nuclear medicine departments to image cancer patients with radiolabeled monoclonal antibodies so as to identify the metastatic spread of specific cancers, staging of cancer in patients before surgery, and follow-up of patients at high risk for recurrence [9].

In this chapter, a glance at the basic components of RID systems as well as some of the clinical experience and future directions of tumor imaging with radiolabeled monoclonal antibodies in cancer patients has been made. Then the past and current limitations of RID are discussed. At the end, the clinical utility of RID has been discussed. Much has also been written about the role of monoclonal antibodies as radiotherapeutic

agents in the treatment of cancer. However, this area is beyond the scope of this chapter.

32.2 Historical Perspective

In the development of a RID system, following the selection of an appropriate antigen, an antibody against the antigen is prepared and labeled with an isotope, and eventually injected into patients with the hope of targeting tumors with high specificity. The beginning of cancer RID dates back to 1948, when Pressman et al. labeled antibodies against normal rat organs [10] and then rat tumors in 1953 [11] for localization after intravenous injection. This tumor targeting in rat models with radiolabeled polyclonal antibodies was later established by Bale et al. [12]. Later, radiolabeled antibodies targeting fibrin or fibrinogen were evaluated for tumor targeting [13, 14], but showed unpromising results to localize various tumors studied in animals or humans [13, 15–17]. However, administering large doses of radio-iodinated antibodies to human fibrinogen, short-term remissions were obtained in a few selected patients with cancer [15, 17]. Thereafter, Belitsky et al. [18] reported tumor imaging using radiolabeled antibodies to an undefined renal cancer antigen. Investigations performed during the abovementioned 20-year time span resulted in an important development, which was the use of paired radioiodine labeling of different immunoglobulin preparations in order to show specific localization of the antibody of interest [19].

The next era in RID began following two major accomplishments, including the development of specific antibodies against defined cancer-associated antigens such as human chorionic gonadotropin (hCG) and carcinoembryonic antigen (CEA), and the use of human tumor xenograft models to evaluate the targeting of these antibodies [20–23], which finally led to the improved targeting of the polyclonal antibodies by affinity purification, so as to increase their immunoreactivity [23]. Iodine-125 (^{125}I) and ^{131}I were the exclusive radiotracers, used for antibody labeling in those ages.

The transition from polyclonal antibody preparations labeled predominantly with ^{131}I to "tailored designed" monoclonal antibodies labeled with diverse radionuclides, including ^{131}I, ^{123}I, indium-111 (^{111}In), and technetium-99 m (^{99m}Tc), has revolutionized the radiolabeled antibody preparations during the past 40 years. This revolution, in turn, owes to the discovery and eventual purification of tumor-associated antigens, such as CEA, alpha-fetoprotein (AFP), hCG, and prostate-specific membrane-bound antigen (PSMA), which culminated in the improvement in antibody production, in a way that either animals or in vitro cell preparations could be immunized with purified and concentrated tumor-associated antigen preparations rather than with tumor extracts. Several studies have demonstrated the value of monoclonal antibodies as targeting agents over the polyclonal antibody preparations. Some prominent studies in this line have been conducted by Mach et al. [24], who firstly published an important paper using ^{131}I-labeled anti-CEA polyclonal antibody with the resultant imaging of 40% of known antigen-positive lesion in patients with colon cancer. However, the same group [25] later reported improved results (sensitivity of 73%), using an anti-CEA monoclonal antibody preparation, and concluded the clinical promise of RID with specific monoclonal antibodies. Therefore, this improvement in antibody production dramatically enhanced the specificity of antibodies and the outcome in clinical trials.

Much of the improvement in the quality of RID studies during the past 40 years can be attributed to the progress in our understanding and choice of tumor-associated antigens, the manufacture of more specific monoclonal antibodies, the selection of radionuclides, the changes in radiolabeling chemistry, as well as the advances in imaging techniques, such as the addition of single-photon emission computerized tomography (SPECT), positron-emission tomography (PET), use of dual-isotope technology, and image fusion. A brief discussion of these factors, contributing to RID improvement, follows.

32.3 Radioimmunodetection in the New Era of Personalized and Precision Medicine

Discovery of genomic alterations driving cancer cell proliferation and survival has been a major actor in increasing our understanding of cancer cell biology and in significant improvement in the development of diagnostic techniques for early tumor detection and treatment response evaluation in recent years. One of the major challenges in anticancer drug development is the identification of molecular predictive biomarkers to guide patient selection. Therefore, in spite of the prominent progress achieved to date, continued research is warranted to improve patient outcomes through establishment of novel strategies to combine molecular diagnostic and therapeutic components while reducing toxicity.

Molecular imaging, a discipline allowing characterization of cellular process directly in living subjects and merging knowledge from various sources, including imaging, cell biology, and pharmacology, to improve cancer diagnosis and treatment, has become a powerful tool in the development of personalized cancer detection and treatment over the last decade [26]. Using noninvasive techniques, molecular imaging enables in vivo definition of the molecular features of cancer cells and allows for the characterization and measurement of cell functions [27]. Depending on the clinical application, contrast agent, and tumor location, different molecular imaging modalities may be used [28], comprising positron-emission tomography (PET), utilizing positron-emitting radioactive tracers and a tomographic scanner creating a 3D image, following the detection of the radiotracer signal [29], as well as the single-photon emission computerized tomography (SPECT), which requires a gamma-emitting radioisotope and a tomographic imaging system for signal detection, both of which provide metabolic and functional information. Identification of the molecular features of cancer in vivo allows clinical application of molecular imaging in the early cancer detection, staging, noninvasive evaluation of the tumor phenotype, patient stratification, follow-up, treatment guidance, response evaluation, early detection of resistance to therapeutic agents, surgery guidance, and drug delivery monitoring [29–33]. Furthermore, delivery of a therapeutic radionuclide carried by a molecular imaging tracer directly to tumor cells enables the extension to targeted radiotherapy in the case of SPECT and PET [34, 35]. The relatively low spatial resolution of these molecular imaging modalities is often compensated by CT, or more recently MRI co-registration for precise anatomical localization with improved resolution [36, 37].

The increased understanding of molecular alterations driving tumor progression has led to the development of novel theranostic probes characterized by two components, a targeting moiety (such as antibody), identifying a specific cancer cell or the tumor microenvironment target, and a signaling reporter (such as a radionuclide) that could be detected by SPECT or PET, resulting in the integration of imaging and therapeutic functionalities [30]. Despite the promising advantages of molecular imaging probes, there are still several unmet bench-to-bedside challenges, which need to be resolved [38, 39].

32.4 The Antibody Revolution: Story of the Magic Bullet

Radiolabeled antibodies have been developed for imaging and therapeutic purposes for more than 30 years. Following the Ehrlich description of specific cytotoxic agents against cancer tissue [40], the feasibility of this approach has been a topic of intensive research. However, the real starting point was the introduction of the hybridoma technique [41], which made isolation of large quantities of antibodies with predefined specificity possible. This procedure was first described by Kohler and Milstein in 1975, who developed a laboratory technology to produce an in vitro immortal cell line of hybridoma cells capable of producing antibodies of predetermined specificity in large quantities [41]. The process is as follows: After the injection of a

carefully selected tumor-associated antigen into a mouse, the mouse responds through the production of abundant antibodies against the antigenic material in spleen B lymphocytes. Afterwards, B lymphocytes are extracted and positioned in separate culture media, after the splenectomy. As the myeloma cell genes could make the hybridoma cells capable of growing indefinitely in vitro, B lymphocytes are then mixed with mutated non-immunoglobulin-secreting myeloma cells and chemically merged, forming hybridoma cells, so as to evade their short-term survival in tissue culture medium. As each lymphocyte contains certain genes coding for specific monoclonal antibodies, they could produce a single type of antibody. However, these genes can be isolated, purified, and tested for desired immunoreactivity and specificity. Consequently, the hybridoma cell secretes a single antibody and stays in culture systems for a long period. Additionally, multiple clones of cells can be produced from single antigen injection and those cells making the desired antibody are cultured [42]. Developments in recombinant DNA technology circumvented the limitations of the first generations of mAbs of murine origin for clinical use due to their immunogenicity, through the production of chimeric (c-mAb), humanized (h-mAb), and complete human mAbs [43].

Real progress on developing diagnostic strategies using monoclonal antibodies has been made with the identification of the tumor-associated antigens (TAA) identified for a series of human tumor types, which could be either aberrantly expressed antigens, differentiation antigens expressed during organogenesis, or expressed elsewhere in nonrelated normal tissues [44–47]. Identification of different genomic mutations in oncogenes or tumor-suppressor genes responsible for cancer growth, proliferation, and metastasis has been a milestone in molecular characterization of tumors and subsequent development of agents targeting molecular alterations in cancer pathways in the last decade [48].

The use of anticancer mAbs that can be linked to radionuclides to allow in vivo imaging of the target enabling diagnosis, staging, and molecular characterization of tumors is known as a promising approach and has been examined in several preclinical studies and clinical trials [49]. Molecular imaging techniques offer the opportunity to reveal target expression on tumoral lesions throughout the body and to depict the temporal alterations in target expression through imaging at different times, and in this way to overcome certain limitations of other conventional in vitro techniques commonly used to assess receptor/antigen expression on tumor tissue, including enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA) and flow cytometry on blood cells for hematological malignancies or immunohistochemistry (IHC) for solid tumors, as these methods require invasive biopsy and are unable to evaluate the changes in target expression between a primary lesion and sites of metastasis in an individual or in the same lesion over time, or to assess inter-tumor heterogeneity as well as intra-tumor heterogeneity in a lesion due to the sampling approach.

It is well known that the monoclonal antibody selected for RID should yield the highest tumor-to-background ratio at the earliest time after injection. However, the heterogeneous expression of antigens between different tumor sites, varying degrees of TAA expression in the cells of the same tumor, and temporal modulation of their expression lead to suboptimal tumor targeting with monoclonal antibodies through incomplete cell targeting. In addition, other parameters such as the size of the tumor mass, antigen density, tumor physiology, fate of antigen-antibody immune complex, presence of circulating antigen, monoclonal antibody format, monoclonal antibody dose, route of administration, and monoclonal antibody circulatory half-life have been postulated to affect tumor targeting with monoclonal antibodies [50].

Using the previously mentioned hybridoma technology, a wide spectrum of monoclonal antibodies against TAAs have been developed, and are being currently investigated in various clinical trials so as to have an estimate of the safety and efficacy of the recently produced radionuclide-labeled monoclonal antibodies. Alteration of the basic structure of these monoclonal antibodies culminates in the modification

of the behavior and imaging characteristics of the complex. Together with intact mAb molecules (with the molecular weight of 150 kDa), mAb fragments and engineered variants, including fragment for antigen-binding unit (Fab), $F(ab')_2$, F(ab'), single chain Fv (scFv), and covalent dimers $scFv_2$, diabodies, and minibodies (with molecular weights ranging from 25 to 100 kDa), are being clinically implicated [43]. Radionuclide labeling of such small variable fragment of the monoclonal antibody molecule, which is the product of intact immunoglobulin G molecule chemical dissection with proteolytic enzymes such as pepsin or papain, results in brisk penetration to the target by quick leave of the vascular space and entrance to the tumor, less immunogenic properties than the intact antibody due to the lack of the Fc portion of the parent molecule, and rapid visualization of the tumor. However, the short residence time of this fragment in tissues makes it suboptimal for the detection of certain solid tumors. On the other hand, certain features of the intact immunoglobulin G, including slower clearance from vascular space due to the large size, less tumoral penetration, long serum and tissue residence time, and long time required between injection and imaging for an optimal target-to-background ratio, make them different from Fabs. The long-lasting binding of the whole immunoglobulins to tumor cells renders these agents ideal for the detection of various tumors. The aforementioned characteristics of the whole immunoglobulins, such as the long-lasting binding of the whole immunoglobulins to tumor cells and the resultant optimal tumor-to-nontumor ratios, in general, render these agents ideal for the therapeutic purpose, while the optimal format for diagnosis is still under investigation. New strategies, such as the use of pretargeting approaches, which separates the targeting antibody from the subsequent delivery of an imaging or therapeutic agent that binds to the tumor-localized antibody, have evolved to overcome some discussed obstacles [51].

Labeling of monoclonal antibodies with γ-emitting radionuclides and subsequent imaging with a single-photon emission computerized tomography (SPECT) camera have been carried out for diagnostic purposes thus far. Currently, four technetium-99 m (^{99m}Tc)- or indium-111 (^{111}In)-labeled murine mAbs (m-mAbs) have the FDA approval for cancer imaging [52], all of which had been mainly applicable in the staging of suspected recurrent or metastatic disease. The list of these radiolabeled mAbs is as follows: arcitumomab for colorectal cancer imaging (CEAScan™; Immunomedics, Morris Plains, NJ; ^{99m}Tc-labeled F(ab') to carcinoembryonic antigen [CEA]), capromab pendetide for prostate cancer imaging (ProstaScint™; Cytogen; ^{111}In-labeled IgG to prostate-specific membrane antigen), satumomab pendetide for imaging ovarian and colorectal cancer (OncoScint™; Cytogen, Princeton, NJ; ^{111}In-labeled IgG binding to the tumor-associated glycoprotein 72 antigen), and nofetumomab merpentan for small-cell lung cancer imaging (Verluma™; Boehringer Ingelheim, Ingelheim, Germany; ^{99m}Tc-labeled Fab to epithelial cell adhesion molecule). The clinical impact of these agents has not been impressive thus far. Among the four aforementioned agents, only ProstaScint remains commercially available, while the others are obsolete. This perspective might change with the use of some novel mAb formats directed against better targets, which are also suitable for therapy, in combination with cameras with improved characteristics.

To sum up, following Eisen observation of proteins being labeled with ^{131}I without alteration in their immunological specificity in 1950 [53], radiolabeling of antibodies was pioneered. Several other radionuclides (discussed under the next subheadings in detail), useful in both tumor imaging and therapeutic approaches, have been investigated since then. A multitude of radionuclides has been vectorized by monoclonal antibody derivatives to diagnose cancer since the initial establishment of radioimmunoconjugates and their subsequent use in clinical practice. Recent improvements in the production of monoclonal antibodies with higher specificity and greater binding affinity have been the consequence of several recent trials. Notwithstanding the fact that radioimmunoconjugates have exhibited promising efficacy, there is no doubt that these compounds still have limitations. However,

these stumbling blocks can partially be overcome by advancement in their usage optimization, highlighting future opportunities in radioimmunoconjugate imaging.

32.5 Theranostics

A treatment approach, based on radiolabeling compounds of interest, in which a single agent is used for both diagnostic and therapeutic purposes, is called theranostics. Using imaging methods such as SPECT or PET, this strategy is capable of assessing drug target expression and the actual presence of the drug at the tumor site in vivo in cancer patients. Among theranostic strategies, those using monoclonal antibodies (mAbs) and antibody-related therapeutic, including antibody-drug conjugates (ADCs), engineered antibody structures (minibodies, diabodies, and nanobodies), bispecific antibodies (bispecific T-cell engagers [BiTEs]), and radiolabeled antibodies for radioimmunotherapy, belonging to ever-expanding effective anticancer therapeutic agents, are of great interest. These agents, specifically designed against targets on the tumor cell membrane and immune cells together with targets in the microenvironment, and being easily radiolabeled, show promising characteristics for theranostic approaches. The mAbs could be administered either as noncurative agents, capable of lengthening disease-free survival [54–56], or as curative factors, increasing overall survival in cancer patients. The examples of the latter group consist of trastuzumab (antihuman epidermal growth factor receptor 2 (HER2) antibody) and ipilimumab (anti-cytotoxic T-lymphocyte antigen 4 (CTLA-4) antibody), which enhance the overall survival breast cancer and melanoma patients, respectively [57, 58].

The other focus of interest regarding theranostic approach can be its ability to provide information on the tumor target heterogeneity and successful drug delivery to tumor lesions, both of which could not be fully evaluated before the introduction of these novel approaches. It is widely accepted that not all individuals in a certain patient population using a drug with proven clinical benefit will have the same outcome; this variability is partly related to the heterogeneity in tumor target expression, tumor vascularization, or presence of an immunosuppressive tumor microenvironment. Furthermore, biopsy of a single tumor lesion was frequently required to make treatment decisions in both routine practice and drug development and the blood-based pharmacokinetic analyses were the only available method to determine dosing schedules, prior to the advent of theranostic approaches. As a result, molecular antibody imaging could set the stage for patient enrichment, drug development, and clinical decision-making. However, such therapeutic approaches are beyond the scope of this chapter.

32.6 Diagnostic Radioisotopes

Monoclonal antibodies and antibody-related therapeutics can be efficiently labeled with a wide spectrum of radionuclides, including indium-111 (^{111}In), iodine-123 (^{123}I), iodine-124 (^{124}I), iodine-131 (^{131}I), lutetium-177 (^{177}Lu), technetium-99 m (^{99m}Tc), copper-64 (^{64}Cu), gallium-68 (^{68}Ga), yttrium-86 (^{86}Y), and zirconium-89 (^{89}Zr), which are those most commonly used for cancer molecular imaging with mAbs and antibody-related therapeutics (Table 32.1). Using various labeling methods, these radiolabeled agents can therefore be administered in both murine and humans experiments [59].

As the radioactivity needs to be detected for a proper period of time for the mAbs or the antibody-related drugs to get to the specific cellular target while minimizing the duration of exposure to harmful radiation, an essential step to choose an appropriate radionuclide to label monoclonal antibodies with is matching of the physical half-life of the radionuclide and the serum half-life of the mAb, ranging from 30 min to 30 days (depending on the size and structure of mAb, the IgG subtype from which the mAb is derived, and whether the mAb is fully human, humanized murine, or chimeric). As stated in the preceding sections, the serum half-life is shorter for mAb fragments than for an intact mAb,

Table 32.1 Characteristics of radionuclide used in radioimmunoconjugate-associated cancer imaging and therapy

Technique	Radio-isotope	Half-life	Application
SPECT	^{99m}Tc	6.0 h	Diagnostic
	^{123}I	13.2 h	Diagnostic
	^{131}I	192.5 h	Diagnostic/therapeutic
	^{111}In	67.3 h	Diagnostic
	^{177}Lu	159.5 h	Therapeutic
PET	^{64}Cu	12.7 h	Diagnostic
	^{68}Ga	67.7 min	Diagnostic
	^{86}Y	14.7 h	Therapeutic
	^{89}Zr	78.4 h	Diagnostic
	^{124}I	100.3 h	Diagnostic
	^{18}F	109.7 min	Diagnostic

because of the molecular weight, which is often below the renal clearance threshold of approximately 70 kDa in mAb fragments [60].

Linking mAbs to metal-based radionuclides, such as ^{68}Ga, ^{86}Y, ^{64}Cu, ^{89}Zr, ^{111}In, and ^{177}Lu, warrants the use of a chelator, depending on the clinical applicability, the most stable chemical link, and the radionuclide itself.

The other significant factor to note while selecting a radionuclide is whether the mAb internalizes following binding to the target (such as what happens to radiometal-labeled drugs in the metabolizing process, during which the metal-based radionuclide is trapped intracellularly in lysosomes), culminating in the higher absolute uptake of the radiotracer and resultant higher tumor-to-blood ratios [61]. ^{89}Zr is an example of positron-emitter radionuclide with competent characteristics for stable antibody labeling, which has been widely used in recent years. These characteristics include a physical half-life of 78.4 h generally matching the serum half-life of most mAbs in vivo. Its physical half-life is also compatible with the residualization time, resulting in increased tumor-to-background ratios [62].

Most radiolabeled intact antibodies have a relatively long effective half-life of between 14 and 21 days, as stated above. These mAbs are distributed throughout the body and accumulate in both the tumor and other normal tissues expressing the target, with subsequent increasing tumor-to-background ratios due to the binding of the radiotracer to tumoral targets, residualization, and clearance of the nonbound tracer from the circulation over time. Target location, target expression levels, target saturation, internalization of the mAb, perfusion, and vascularization are among the factors influencing tumor accumulation of the radiolabeled mAb [60].

It is required to specify the optimal protein dose and time point to reach the proper tumor-to-background ratio prior to imaging study. Specific activity, expressed in MBq/mg, is a certain amount of radioactivity per milligram of the linked mAb, which is generally limited to 750–1000 MBq/mg for most mAbs. When the allowed safely administered protein dose is relatively low, reaching a sufficient radioactive dose for successful imaging is challenging, and this makes both the imaging and theranostic approaches arduous [63].

32.7 Limitations of Radioimmunoconjugate Compounds

The need for a reliable supply chain of radionuclide is a significant limitation in the administration of radioimmunoconjugates, which itself has multiple obstacles comprising the cost and availability of isotope production, specific activity, radionuclide purity, and chemical yield of the chemical purification process, and the radiolabeling yield, radiochemical purity, and final activity of the immunoconjugate radiolabeling process. All these points warrant specific verifications within the supply chain to obtain a reliable source to globally supply clinical facilities on a global scale.

Notwithstanding the fact that various techniques have been evolved in order to enhance the affinity and specificity of monoclonal antibody derivatives, limited tissue accessibility to the radioimmunoconjugate compound could, in turn, restrict the antibody-antigen binding. This limitation arises from both the morphologically abnormal and a highly structurally disorganized tumor neovasculature, which could exhibit anomalies such as blood flow inversion or arteriovenous shunting [64, 65], as well as the high interstitial pressure with a low passive diffusion rate, which causes large-sized macromolecules, such as monoclonal antibodies, to take longer to diffuse into the surrounding tissues [66]. The former phenomenon results from the appearance of morphologically abnormal tumor neovasculature as a result of the quick formation of new blood vessel networks during tumorigenesis so as to maintain the metabolic demands of the tumor. And the latter could be due to the slower pace of neolymphogenesis than neoangiogenesis during tumor growth. Both these phenomena are estimated to hinder monoclonal antibody penetration in solid tumors. A multitude of methods, comprising the alteration of monoclonal antibodies' global electrostatic charge through chemical modification [67–69], along with the prior use of vasoactive compounds, such as interleukin-2, to improve tumors targeting via opening of the vascular barriers [70, 71], have been examined previously, in order to optimize tumor penetration. However, as the complete coverage of tumors by full-length antibodies and their binding to antigen-positive regions while clearing from antigen-negative regions in tumor-bearing experimental models have been demonstrated by the autoradiography studies, it has been postulated that the poor penetration of monoclonal antibodies in tumors has been partly overestimated [72–74].

Another limitation in the use of diagnostic radioimmunoconjugates to be acknowledged is the reduced contrast and the efficacy of the technique, which is partly affected by the choice of the radioisotope. The main purpose is to obtain a high contrast between tumor and the surrounding healthy tissues. In addition, certain healthy tissues, such as liver, spleen, and lung, all of which are classically metastatic loci, are known to be sites for immunoconjugate metabolism and thus resulting in the reduced contrast.

32.8 Adverse Reactions

Interestingly, tracer uptake in normal tissues can partly describe observed side effects. Depending on the amount of the administered antibody or the immune phenotype of the patient, rare adverse reactions, encompassing a group of minor side effects, including rashes, hypotension, fever, and dyspnea, may appear in less than 4% of circumstances [75]. The development of immunity, caused by the formation of human antimurine antibodies (HAMA), human anti-chimeric antibodies (HACA), or human antihuman antibodies (HAHA), is variable, as the greater the amount of protein injected, the higher the frequency of HAMA, HACA, and HAHA development, increasing the risk of possible allergic reactions in repeated RID studies. This relationship is reported to be the same for monovalent antibody fragments in patients [76]. Furthermore, the possibility of the interference of the presence of circulating HAMA, HACA, or HAHA with the immunoassay results of certain tumor markers in the blood specimens of cancer patients should be kept in mind, as these antibodies may contribute to falsely elevated laboratory values in cancer patients for up to 6 months after the injection of labeled monoclonal antibodies.

32.9 Imaging Techniques

32.9.1 Revolutionary Road: From SPECT to PET

Since the 1990s, before PET technology became broadly available, mAbs have been coupled with gamma-emitting radionuclides, such as ^{99m}Tc, ^{111}In, or ^{131}I, and imaged with planar or single-photon emission computerized tomography (SPECT) cameras. SPECT images, obtained in regions of known or suspected lesions, have offered an improved contrast of the lesion in the

section of interest, differentiating it from the overlapping structures lying near the target, visualized in a planar view. At the same time, other anatomical imaging techniques, such as computed tomography (CT) and magnetic resonance imaging (MRI), could be applied to the same body region and eventually superimposed to the SPECT images of the same region by means of an appropriate computer software program, and finally result in the generation of fused images, containing both the anatomical and functional details of the region of interest.

Although informative, SPECT camera images suffered from limited sensitivity and low spatial resolution. More importantly, a need for reliable quantitative measurements was a rationale for the implication of PET as a powerful method for mAb imaging, with greater sensitivity, improved spatial resolution, and signal-to-noise ratios, as well as the capability to perform accurate quantification [77].

32.9.2 Immuno-PET

Immuno-PET is based on the coincidental recognition of a mAb labeled with a positron-emitting radionuclide. The basic description of the underlying mechanism of such technology is as follows: Based on the initial positron energy and the density of the surrounding matters, the emitted positron travels a distance of a few millimeters, loses its kinetic energy, and finally combines with an electron, leading to the so-called annihilation process, and yields two photons, each with an energy of 511 keV emitted simultaneously in opposite directions. Provided that these two emitted photons are registered by detectors, which are placed around the body of the patient, on opposite sides of the body within a 5–15 ns time interval, it is then assumed that an annihilation event has taken place somewhere along the line between the two detectors. Thus, the location of the radiolabeled mAb can be identified by means of the calculation of the crossing of all lines. In this way, detection of the annihilation photon pairs with a PET camera results in the identification of PET conjugate distribution in a patient [78].

Immuno-PET has been sentenced to several technical advances to further improve its sensitivity and resolution through accomplishments achieved by recent investigations. Additionally, combination of PET with computed tomography (CT) or magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) makes simultaneous registration of both biologic function and anatomy possible and facilitates accurate interpretation of PET images and quantification.

Positron emitters have to fulfill several requirements, such as appropriate decay characteristics for optimal resolution and quantitative accuracy, easy and cost-effective production, capability of efficient and stable coupling to mAbs, and compatibility of their physical half-life ($t_{1/2}$) with the time required for a mAb or mAb fragment to achieve optimal tumor-to-nontumor ratios, to be appropriate for immuno-PET. At the same time, maintenance of the antibody's in vivo binding and biodistribution characteristics is mandatory.

Keeping such considerations in mind, certain positron emitters, including gallium-68 (^{68}Ga; $t_{1/2}$, 67.7 min), fluorine-18 (^{18}F; $t_{1/2}$, 109.7 min), copper-64 (^{64}Cu; $t_{1/2}$, 12.7 h), yttrium-86 (^{86}Y; $t_{1/2}$, 14.7 h), bromine-76 (^{76}Br; $t_{1/2}$, 16.2 h), zirconium-89 (^{89}Zr; $t_{1/2}$, 78.4 h), and iodine-124 (^{124}I; $t_{1/2}$, 100.3 h), have been the focus of intensive research recently; and among them, ^{89}Zr and ^{124}I, having long half-lives which allow both easier transportation and imaging at late time points for obtaining maximum information, have been shown to be suitable in combination with intact mAbs, while very short-lived ^{68}Ga and ^{18}F can only be administered in combination with mAb fragments or in pretargeting technique, the approach in which antibodies capable of both binding antigens and radiolabeled small molecular weight ligands are administered and injection of the radioactive ligand takes place following the binding and clearance of the antibody, in order to bind the pre-localized antibody. Such techniques provide enhanced tumor-to-background ratios [51, 79]. Besides, it should be noted that long half-life of radiotracers causes greater radiation burden to patients. Radionuclides such as ^{76}Br and ^{124}I positron emitters can either be directly coupled to a

mAb or conjugated indirectly through a linker, using radiohalogens and radiometals [61].

Another important consideration to be taken into account while selecting a positron emitter for immuno-PET applications is whether the mAb becomes internalized following attachment to the target antigen, which results in rapid clearance of radioimmunoconjugates such as ^{76}Br- and ^{124}I-labeled mAbs from the target cells, and therefore less tumor contrast on PET images and the resultant inability to reflect the actual mAb distribution [61]. Our understanding of the abovementioned issues will open avenues to the routine clinical application of immuno-PET.

The field of PET molecular imaging, providing reproducible noninvasive whole-body biomarkers mapping, is rapidly progressing toward clinical use today. Moreover, this modality characterized by the improved image quality, the safety, as well as the potential for proper estimation of the antigenic expression level represents a promising tool for personalized medicine. Some of the recent advances in immuno-PET come next.

32.10 Monoclonal Antibodies: Clinical Utility

As stated in previous sections, among the most relevant applications of radiolabeled mAbs [80], noninvasive in vivo detection of molecular alterations and target expression also known as in vivo immunohistochemistry [81–83], evaluation of intra- and interindividual variability in tumor uptake and normal tissue accumulation and elimination, analysis of tumor heterogeneity in mAb uptake by tomographic imaging of the lesion that may be caused by either the expression of the target receptor/antigen or the variability in blood flow, delineation of molecular response to a specific targeted therapy [84], identification of resistance to targeted therapies due to changes in target expression [85], and assessment of therapeutic index via estimating the uptake of the mAbs in tumor and normal tissues could be named [86].

Recombinant engineering techniques have resulted in further accomplishments in the diagnostic application of radiolabeled mAbs through both the better recognition of cancer biology, which leads to appropriate target selection, and the improvement of the tumor:blood and tumor:normal tissue ratios [87]. Certain radiolabeled mAbs targeting tumor antigens have been investigated in both preclinical models and clinical studies and their specificity for imaging has been clearly delineated; however, further clinical trials are required to understand the exact diagnostic, prognostic, and therapeutic roles of these mAbs. A wide spectrum of promising targets are currently being assessed in clinical trials at various stages with the hope of finding ideal antigens which are intended to be readily accessible, highly overexpressed, and expressed only within the desired target tissue, and with minimal shedding or secretion from the cell surface, circulation in the blood, and residence in the interstitial compartment. Among the mAbs, those targeting well-studied molecular patterns, including program death-1 (PD-1), program death ligand-1 (PD-L1), prostate-specific membrane antigen (PSMA), CD20, epidermal growth factor receptor 2 (HER2), and epidermal growth factor receptor (EGFR), are discussed below (Table 32.2).

32.10.1 Program Death-1 (PD-1) and Program Death Ligand-1 (PD-L1)

T-cells are pivotal actors in the anticancer immune response. These immune cells express coinhibitory receptors capable of downregulating the immune response [109], one of which is programmed death 1 (PD-1) having two ligands, namely, programmed death ligand-1 (PD-L1) and PD-L2, of which PD-L1 is expressed to a greater extent. Interaction of PD-1 and PD-L1 transduces an inhibitory signal to the T-cell, leading to the impediment of T-cell proliferation, decreased levels of effector cytokines, and potentially exhaustion, making tumor cells capable of escaping immune recognition and attack [110–112], and in this way favors cancer growth and progression [113]. PD-L1 is overexpressed in different tumors, comprising ovarian cancer, non-small lung cancer, melanoma, breast cancer,

Table 32.2 Prominent radiolabeled monoclonal antibodies used for cancer molecular imaging

Target	Radiolabeled monoclonal antibody	Malignancy	Activity	Level of study	References
PD-L1	^{111}In-PD-L1	Breast	Evaluation of target expression	Preclinical	[88, 89]
PSMA	^{111}In-J591	Prostate	Estimation of ^{177}Lu-J591 activity	Clinical	[90]
VEGF	^{89}Zr-bevacizumab	Renal cell carcinoma	Identification of everolimus activity	Clinical	[91]
		Breast	Evaluation of target expression	Clinical	[92]
	^{111}In-bevacizumab	Melanoma	Evaluation of target expression and treatment response	Clinical	[93]
		Ovary	Evaluation of target expression	Preclinical	[94]
CD20	^{131}I-tositumomab (Bexxar)	Non-Hodgkin's lymphoma	Evaluation of target expression, toxicity assessment	FDA approved	[95]
	^{111}In/^{90}Y-ibritumomab tiuxetan (Zevalin)	Non-Hodgkin's lymphoma	Evaluation of target expression, toxicity assessment	FDA approved	[96]
HER2	^{111}DTPA-pertuzumab	Breast	Identification of trastuzumab activity	Preclinical	[84]
	^{89}Zr-trastuzumab	Gastric	Evaluation of target expression and afatinib activity	Preclinical	[97]
		Breast	Evaluation of target expression and drug activity	Clinical	[98–100]
	^{64}Cu-trastuzumab	Breast	Assessment of target expression and HSP90 inhibitor activity	Clinical	[101, 102]
	^{111}In-trastuzumab	Breast	Assessment of target expression and trastuzumab activity	Clinical	[103, 104]
EGFR	^{89}Zr-panitumumab	Colon	Evaluation of target expression	Preclinical	[105]
	^{89}Zr-cetuximab	Colon	Assessment of cetuximab activity	Clinical	[106]
		Lung, head and neck	Estimation of target expression and cetuximab activity	Clinical	[107, 108]

PSMA prostate-specific membrane antigen, *HSP90* heat-shock protein 90, *DTPA* diethylenetriamine pentaacetic acid, *VEGF* vascular endothelial growth factor, *HER2* epidermal growth factor receptor 2, *EGFR* epidermal growth factor receptor

gastric cancer, renal cell cancer, and hematologic malignancy, and both PD-1 and its ligand, PD-L1, have been considered to be associated with poor outcome of cancer patients [114].

Despite the promising results of anti-PD-1 or anti-PD-L1 mAb application in cancer therapy [115–119], not all the patients respond to these immune-checkpoint inhibitors. PD-L1 expression, routinely assessed with IHC on archival tissue, has been investigated as a potential biomarker of response but divulged no definitive correlation between PD-L1 expression and response. IHC method warrants a new tumor biopsy at the time of progression [120, 121]. Certain obstacles caused by immunohistochemical analysis of PD-L1 expression in tumor biopsies, which include sampling errors and, thus, misinterpretation due to intratumoral and interlesional heterogeneity, could be successfully handled using molecular in vivo imaging with radiolabeled anti-PD-L1 antibodies, which makes the measurement of PD-L1 expression prior to the commencement of therapy, of both the whole tumor lesions and their metastases, possible. As a consequence, molecular imaging could help us with more accurate detection of PD-L1 expression and accessibility and longitudinal monitoring of PD-L1 expression during disease progression and treatment, and in this way PD-1 and PD-L1 can potentially be used as a biomarker to select patients for PD-1/PDL1-targeted therapy.

SPECT imaging with ^{111}In-labeled PD-L1.3.1 mAb in mice bearing human breast cancer xenografts was found to recognize PD-L1 overexpression levels [88]. Additionally, investigation of PD-L1 expression in cell lines and in mice bear-

ing triple-negative breast cancer and non-small cell lung cancer xenografts [89], using an analog of anti PD-L1 mAb, atezolizumab, conjugated with ^{111}In together with a near-infrared dye, found ^{111}In-PD-L1-mAb and NIR-PD-L1-mAb to be capable of deciphering different levels of PD-L1 expression in tumor xenografts, and justified the feasibility of in vivo PD-L1 evaluation by imaging.

32.10.2 Prostate-Specific Membrane Antigen (PSMA)

Prostate-specific membrane antigen (PSMA), a transmembrane protein widely present in prostate cancer cells and specifically in castration-resistant tumors [122], is a cell membrane protein expressed in all stages of prostate cancer and is known to be correlated with higher tumor stages, preoperative prostate-specific antigen (PSA) levels, Gleason scores, and a higher risk of biochemical recurrence [123–125]. This marker has been characterized in other solid tumors such as colorectal cancer, renal cancer, and glioblastoma [126, 127]. PSMA has been established as a unique biomarker particularly expressed by tumor-associated neovasculature but not produced by normal vessels [128].

Monoclonal antibodies have been evolved against PSMA [122, 129]. ^{111}In-labeled capromab pendetide, marketed as ProstaScint, is an FDA-approved antibody directed against an intracellular epitope of PSMA for the detection of nodal metastases in patients with prostate cancer; however, this epitope is regarded as a suboptimal target for antibody imaging [130]. J591 is a mAb binding an epitope on the extracellular domain of PSMA [131], which has been administered in the form of ^{111}In-J591 for in vivo assessment of PSMA expression via SPECT imaging, and has been proven as a predictive biomarker of PSA response following radioimmunotherapy with ^{177}Lu-J591 [90]. This mAB has been applied for PET imaging following being labeled with ^{89}Zr or ^{124}I and for radioimmunotherapeutic approaches after being ^{90}Y and ^{177}Lu labeled [132, 133].

32.10.3 Vascular Endothelial Growth Factor (VEGF)

VEGF-A, usually referred to as VEGF, is the most prominent tumor angiogenesis mediator, with the gene comprising nine exons and eight introns mapped to chromosome 6p21.3 [134, 135]. Signal-sequence cleavage culminates in the development of six isoforms of 121, 145, 165, 183, 189, and 206 amino acid length, respectively, among which the VEGF165 is the most frequent isoform that has a significant portion bound to heparin sulfate proteoglycans on the cell surface and in the extracellular matrix after being secreted [136]. VEGF signals after binding to the VEGF receptor 2 (VEGFR-2) [137].

A humanized type of the anti-VEGF-A monoclonal antibody (mAb) A.4.6.1., bevacizumab, directed against a common epitope which is encoded by exon 4, that is commonly present in all VEGF-isoforms, is capable of the impediment of the interaction with VEGFR-1 and VEGFR-2 [138]. Noninvasive VEGF imaging using radiolabeled bevacizumab (^{89}Zr-bevacizumab and ^{111}In-bevacizumab) was first described by Nagengast et al. in nude mice with human ovarian tumor xenografts [94]. Meanwhile, an investigation carried out by Stollman et al. [139] in order to discover any possible association between VEGF-A expression in patients with colorectal liver metastases and level of ^{111}In-bevacizumab tumor accumulation did not reveal any clear-cut correlation between the VEGF-A expression and the level of antibody accumulation. Such finding could be partly attributed to the inability to visualize the soluble VEGF121 isoform and the elevated vascular permeability in tumors [140].

32.10.4 Cluster of Differentiation 20 (CD20)

CD20, a surface antigen expressed by B-cell hematological malignancies, has been the target of a chimeric mAb, rituximab, which has shown to be highly active in non-Hodgkin's lymphoma [141]. Keeping in mind the significant radiosen-

sitivity of non-Hodgkin's lymphoma, two radiolabeled murine mAbs against CD20, namely, ^{90}Y-ibritumomab tiuxetan (Zevalin) and ^{131}I-tositumomab (Bexxar), have been developed alongside rituximab and have been evaluated for cancer radioimmunotherapy (RIT) since then. Using ^{111}In-labeled mAbs, tumors can be imaged and according to the imaging results, which demonstrate the tumor uptake and the extent of normal organ localization such as spleen uptake, patients can be selected for RIT; such an approach is regarded as radiotheranostics and was applied early in the introduction of ^{90}Y-ibritumomab tiuxetan (Zevalin), although imaging is no longer routinely performed due to the safety and dosing issues [86].

32.10.5 Epidermal Growth Factor Receptor 2 (HER2)

Human epidermal growth factor receptor 2 (HER2) is overexpressed in a multitude of malignancies, comprising breast, ovary, prostate, bladder, gastric, and lung cancers, among which its diagnostic role is most vastly studied in breast cancer. The role of HER2 as a therapeutic target has been proven in patients with breast and gastric cancers [142, 143]. HER2 overexpression is found in 15–25% of patients with breast cancer and is known to be associated with the more aggressive clinical course. A spectrum of anti-HER2 drugs has shown encouraging results in patient outcomes in both advanced and early disease settings [144]. Hence, the assessment of HER2 as an important target in the management of breast cancer is a crucial step in the diagnostic workup and the selection of optimal treatments in both early-stage and metastatic settings. Immunohistochemistry (IHC) (usually with an antibody recognizing the intracellular domain of the receptor [145]) or fluorescence in situ hybridization (FISH) is the method commonly used in the clinical practice to identify HER2 status mostly from the primary tumor and when feasible [146] repeated at the time of progression to recognize any possible discordance between the primary tumor and metastasis [147]. However, there are some issues of concern with regard to these clinically available methods that need to be resolved; such issues include the limited number of metastases that can be easily accessed for a biopsy and the heterogeneity of the disease, particularly in the metastatic setting. Table 32.3 depicts multiple anti-HER2 probes developed for both SPECT and PET as noninvasive approaches for evaluating whole-body HER2 expression patterns, among which some have encouraging results in the clinical practice.

Several studies have assessed the applicability of trastuzumab, a humanized IgG1 mAb targeting epidermal growth factor receptor 2 (HER2), radiolabeled with ^{89}Zr, ^{111}In, or ^{64}Cu as a diagnostic tool to define in vivo HER2 expression in primary and metastatic breast cancer [101, 151], and has shown significant activity in patients with HER2-positive breast cancer [153]. SPECT imaging with ^{111}In-trastuzumab has shown promising results in tumor HER2 expression detection in mouse tumor xenograft studies as well as HER2-positive breast cancer human studies [103, 104]. PET imaging with positron-emitter ^{89}Zr-labeled trastuzumab has shown good spatial resolution and high and specific tumor uptake in animal models [98]. It has been postulated that reduction of downstream pathway activation implicated in cancer cell growth and proliferation by means of HER2 downregulation could be the possible mechanisms through which trastuzumab acts as a therapeutic agent [154].

Pertuzumab, a mAb that binds HER2 at an epitope other than the one trastuzumab attaches to, inhibits dimerization between HER2 and other epidermal growth factor family receptors, and can be used in its radiolabeled form to image tumoral HER2 expression alterations following treatment with trastuzumab, since these two affect different binding sites of HER2; such studies have revealed HER2 downregulation after continued trastuzumab treatment. Indeed, ^{111}In-labeled pertuzumab SPECT imaging has demonstrated promising results in the assessment of HER2 expression in mural breast cancer xenografts [84]. Uptake of ^{111}In-labeled pertuzumab has been indi-

Table 32.3 Monoclonal antibody-derived probes to assess HER2 overexpression in patients with breast cancer

Probe	Dose	Study population	Findings	References
^{111}In- or ^{68}Ga-labeled ABY-002	80–90 mg, activity ranging from 110 to 267 MBq	*N* = 3 (advanced stage)	High rate of detection of known lesion on ^{18}F-FDG PET	[148]
^{111}In-ABY-025	100 mg, mean activity of 142.6 MBq; range, 131–154 MBq	*N* = 7 (advanced stage, including 5 HER2-positive and 2 HER2-negative tumors)	Visualization of HER2-positive metastases, comprising both the liver and brain metastases	[149]
^{111}In-trastuzumab with variable amounts of trastuzumab	185 MBq	*N* = 10 (advanced stage)	Anticipation of cardiotoxicity and response to trastuzumab	[150]
^{111}In-trastuzumab	100–150 MBq	*N* = 15 (advanced stage)	Low tumor detection rate	[103]
^{89}Zr-trastuzumab	37 MBq + either 10 or 50 mg of trastuzumab	*N* = 14 (advanced stage)	Showing metastasis in liver, bone, lungs, and brain; excellent tumor uptake	[151]
^{64}Cu-trastuzumab	130 MBq	*N* = 6 (early and advanced stages)	Showing primary tumors and brain metastasis; suboptimal visualization of liver lesions	[101]
^{64}Cu-trastuzumab	364–512 MBq, 5 mg of trastuzumab preceded by 45 mg trastuzumab infusion	*N* = 8 (advanced stage)	Identification of lesions similar to ^{18}F-FDG PET; however, some lesions were only visualized on ^{64}Cu-trastuzumab PET	[152]
^{89}Zr-trastuzumab	185 MB ± 10%	*N* = 9 (advanced stage, pathologically confirmed HER2 negative)	Detection of unsuspected HER2-positive metastases in patients with HER2-negative primary breast cancer	[98]
^{89}Zr-trastuzumab	37 MBq (±10%) ^{89}Zr-trastuzumab and 50 mg cold trastuzumab	*N* = 56 (advanced stage)	Prediction of response to the antibody-drug immunoconjugate, trastuzumab-emtansine (TDM1) in patients with HER2-positive metastatic breast cancer	[99]

cated in HER2-positive breast cancer liver metastases, as well. As depicted in Table 32.3, the study performed by Ulaner et al. [98] has suggested ^{89}Zr-labeled trastuzumab to be able to detect HER2-positive metastatic lesions and select patients who may benefit from trastuzumab treatment in whom the primary tumor was found to be negative for overexpression of HER2 following conventional investigations, such as IHC and FISH; and these are all first steps to confirm the role of imaging with radiolabeled trastuzumab in defining spatial and temporal tumor heterogeneity in HER2 expression in breast cancer patients and to help us identify more patients who would benefit from HER2-targeted therapy providing an opportunity to personalize cancer treatment.

32.10.6 Epidermal Growth Factor Receptor (EGFR)

Epidermal growth factor receptor (EGFR), a member of the erbB family of tyrosine kinase receptors [155], is a 170 kDa cell surface protein composed of an intracellular domain with adenosine triphosphatase-dependent tyrosine kinase activity, a hydrophobic transmembrane domain, and an extracellular ligand-binding domain [156], which is overexpressed in different tumors, comprising lung, colon, breast, head and neck, pancreatic, and brain, and is associated with a multitude of mechanisms responsible for tumor growth and progression, such as autonomous cell growth, inhibition of apoptosis, angiogenic

potential, invasion, and metastases [157, 158]. The binding of EGF to its ligand results in the downstream activation of RAS/RAF/MAPK and PI3K/AKT cascades [159].

Different anti-EGFR mAbs, including cetuximab or panitumumab, have shown activity in different types of solid tumors and have been approved for clinical use, while some are currently under clinical evaluation. Cetuximab is an immunoglobulin G1 mouse–human chimeric monoclonal antibody that binds with high affinity to EGFR [160], inhibits the EGFR signal transduction pathway, and causes disruption of cell cycle progression and G1-phase cell cycle arrest through blockade of DNA repair mechanisms and survival pathways, decrease in matrix metalloproteinases required for metastatic invasion, and downregulation of angiogenesis and cellular adhesion [161].

It has been recently indicated that in spite of selection based on KRAS and NRAS mutational status, which is known to be predictive of resistance to anti-EGFR therapies [162], only 50% of patients with colorectal cancer treated with cetuximab achieved a benefit [163], the finding which leads to the hypothesis that the uptake of such anti-EGFR mAbs in cancer cells may anticipate its activity. Demonstration of tumor uptake of the radiolabeled mAb by PET imaging of advanced colorectal cancer patients with ^{89}Zr-labeled cetuximab following cetuximab infusion has been shown to be able to predict cetuximab activity [106]. Furthermore, another study has proposed the overexpression of EGFR as an actor in trastuzumab resistance in HER2-positive breast cancer patients [164]. The overexpression of this marker in triple-negative breast cancer cells (estrogen and progesterone receptor negative and HER2 negative) has also been associated with poor prognosis [165].

32.11 Future Perspectives and Concluding Remarks

Radiolabeled mAbs have successfully been used in the timely diagnosis of malignancies for many years, with encouraging clinical results. The current advances in the utilization of novel radionuclides for both diagnostic and therapeutic purposes have prompted the optimization of the radioimmunoconjugates and make this an appealing method for early detection and management of different cancers. Radiolabeled mAbs, as novel molecular imaging probes, have shown to be promising agents in preclinical models to enable in vivo molecular characterization of tumors to guide diagnosis and to favor response monitoring and early resistance detection. Furthermore, a shift in the paradigm from classical tumoral antigen targeting toward tumor microenvironment targeting has been achieved through the improvement in radioimmunoconjugate methodology. In vivo visualization of specific targets and pathways using molecular imaging techniques at the preclinical stage and in clinical trials has accelerated the development of new personalized cancer therapies. Hence, by means of the current advances in the theranostic application, using radiolabeled mAbs, personalized medicine, which has long been one of the main goals of cancer research thus far, has become a reality in the arsenal of cancer treatment and this results in the effectiveness of treatment and minimizes normal tissue toxicity.

Future work should focus on the integration of molecular imaging techniques using radiolabeled mAbs to address key questions in the preclinical and clinical evaluation of novel targeted agents with special regard to the imaging of expression and inhibition of drug targets and early assessment of the tumor response to treatment. Agents allowing precise measurement of tumor targets on a whole-body image upon administration of a functional agent, which are therefore expected to provide image-guided therapy, are required to adequately assess clinical endpoints, and in this way guidance on more efficient alternative treatment strategies could be possible.

References

1. Organization WH. Global health observatory data repository. 2011. Number of deaths (World) by cause. 2015.
2. Ferlay J, Soerjomataram I, Dikshit R, Eser S, Mathers C, Rebelo M, et al. Cancer incidence

and mortality worldwide: sources, methods and major patterns in GLOBOCAN 2012. Int J Cancer. 2015;136(5):E359–86.
3. Bray F. Transitions in human development and the global cancer burden. In: Wild CP, Stewart LBA, editors. World cancer report. France: International Agency for Research on Cancer; 2014. p. 54–68.
4. Juweid ME, Cheson BD. Positron-emission tomography and assessment of cancer therapy. N Engl J Med. 2006;354(5):496–507.
5. Jaffer FA, Weissleder R. Molecular imaging in the clinical arena. JAMA. 2005;293(7):855–62.
6. Weissleder R. Molecular imaging in cancer. Science. 2006;312(5777):1168–71.
7. Chatal J-F, Saccavini J-C, Fumoleau P, Douillard J-Y, Curtet C, Kremer M, et al. Immunoscintigraphy of colon carcinoma. J Nucl Med. 1984;25(3):307–14.
8. Beaumier PL, Krohn KA, Carrasquillo JA, Eary J, Hellström I, Hellström KE, et al. Melanoma localization in nude mice with monoclonal fab against p97. J Nucl Med. 1985;26(10):1172–9.
9. Spies SM, Zimmer AM, Spies WG, Rosen S, Silverstein EA. Considerations for tomographic imaging of monoclonal antibodies. Semin Nucl Med. 1987;17:267–72.
10. Pressman D, Keighley G. The zone of activity of antibodies as determined by the use of radioactive tracers; the zone of activity of nephritoxic antikidney serum. J Immunol. 1948;59(2):141.
11. Pressman D, Korngold L. The in vivo localization of anti-Wagner-osteogenic-sarcoma antibodies. Cancer. 1953;6(3):619–23.
12. Bale WF, Spar IL, Goodland RL, Wolfe DE. In vivo and in vitro studies of labeled antibodies against rat kidney and Walker carcinoma.∗. Proc Soc Exp Biol Med. 1955;89(4):564–8.
13. Dewey W, Bale W, Rose R, Marrack D. Localization of antifibrin antibodies in human tumors. Acta, Unio Intern Contra Cancrum. 1963;19:185–96.
14. Bale WF, Spar IL. Studies directed toward the use of antibodies as carriers of radioactivity for therapy. Adv Biol Med Phys. 1957;5:285–356.
15. McCardle RJ, Harper PV, Spar IL, Bale WF, Andros G, Jiminez F. Studies with iodine-131-labeled antibody to human fibrinogen for diagnosis and therapy of tumors. J Nucl Med. 1966;7(11):837–47.
16. Spar IL, Bale WF, Goodland RL, Casarett GW, Michaelson SM. Distribution of injected I131-labeled antibody to dog fibrin in tumor-bearing dogs. Cancer Res. 1960;20(10 Part 1):1501–4.
17. Bale WF, Spar IL, Goodland RL. Experimental radiation therapy of tumors with I131-carrying antibodies to fibrin. Cancer Res. 1960;20(10):1488–94.
18. Belitsky P, Ghose T, Aquino J, Tai J, MacDonald AS. Radionuclide imaging of metastases from renal-cell carcinoma by 131I-labeled antitumor antibody. Radiology. 1978;126(2):515–7.
19. Pressman D, Day ED, Blau M. The use of paired labeling in the determination of tumor-localizing antibodies. Cancer Res. 1957;17(9):845–50.
20. Primus FJ, Wang RH, Goldenberg DM, Hansen HJ. Localization of human GW-39 tumors in hamsters by radiolabeled heterospecific antibody to carcinoembryonic antigen. Cancer Res. 1973;33(11):2977–82.
21. Buchegger F, Haskell CM, Schreyer M, Scazziga BR, Randin S, Carrel S, et al. Radiolabeled fragments of monoclonal antibodies against carcinoembryonic antigen for localization of human colon carcinoma grafted into nude mice. J Exp Med. 1983;158(2):413–27.
22. Quiniones J, Mizejewski G, Beierwaltes W. Choriocarcinoma scanning using radiolabeled antibody to chorionic gonadotropin. J Nucl Med. 1971;12:69–75.
23. Goldenberg DM, Preston DF, Primus FJ, Hansen HJ. Photoscan localization of GW-39 tumors in hamsters using radiolabeled anticarcinoembryonic antigen immunoglobulin G. Cancer Res. 1974;34(1):1–9.
24. Mach J-P, Carrel S, Forni M, Ritschard J, Donath A, Alberto P. Tumor localization of radio-labeled antibodies against carcinoembryonic antigen in patients with carcinoma: a critical evaluation. N Engl J Med. 1980;303(1):5–10.
25. Mach J-P, Buchegger F, Forni M, Ritschard J, Berche C, Lumbroso J-D, et al. Use of radiolabelled monoclonal anti-CEA antibodies for the detection of human carcinomas by external photoscanning and tomoscintigraphy. Immunol Today. 1981;2(12):239–49.
26. Weissleder R, Mahmood U. Molecular imaging. Radiology. 2001;219(2):316–33.
27. Massoud TF, Gambhir SS. Molecular imaging in living subjects: seeing fundamental biological processes in a new light. Genes Dev. 2003;17(5):545–80.
28. Weissleder R, Pittet MJ. Imaging in the era of molecular oncology. Nature. 2008;452(7187):580–9.
29. Bailey DL, Townsend DW, Valk PE, Maisey MN. Positron emission tomography. London: Springer; 2005.
30. Kircher MF, Hricak H, Larson SM. Molecular imaging for personalized cancer care. Mol Oncol. 2012;6(2):182–95.
31. Cachin F, Prince HM, Hogg A, Ware RE, Hicks RJ. Powerful prognostic stratification by [18F] fluorodeoxyglucose positron emission tomography in patients with metastatic breast cancer treated with high-dose chemotherapy. J Clin Oncol. 2006;24(19):3026–31.
32. Van Dam GM, Themelis G, Crane LM, Harlaar NJ, Pleijhuis RG, Kelder W, et al. Intraoperative tumor-specific fluorescence imaging in ovarian cancer by folate receptor-[alpha] targeting: first in-human results. Nat Med. 2011;17(10):1315–9.
33. Cunha L, Szigeti K, Mathé D, Metello LF. The role of molecular imaging in modern drug development. Drug Discov Today. 2014;19(7):936–48.
34. Bodet-Milin C, Ferrer L, Pallardy A, Eugène T, Rauscher A, Faivre-Chauvet A, et al.

Radioimmunotherapy of B-cell non-Hodgkin's lymphoma. Front Oncol. 2013;3:177.
35. Pouget J-P, Navarro-Teulon I, Bardiès M, Chouin N, Cartron G, Pèlegrin A, et al. Clinical radioimmunotherapy—the role of radiobiology. Nat Rev Clin Oncol. 2011;8(12):720–34.
36. Rosenkrantz AB, Friedman K, Chandarana H, Melsaether A, Moy L, Ding Y-S, et al. Current status of hybrid PET/MRI in oncologic imaging. Am J Roentgenol. 2016;206(1):162–72.
37. von Schulthess GK, Steinert HC, Hany TF. Integrated PET/CT: current applications and future directions. Radiology. 2006;238(2):405–22.
38. Reilly RM, Lam K, Chan C, Levine M. Advancing novel molecular imaging agents from preclinical studies to first-in-humans phase I clinical trials in academia: a roadmap for overcoming perceived barriers. Bioconjug Chem. 2015;26(4):625–32.
39. Lanza GM, Moonen C, Baker JR, Chang E, Cheng Z, Grodzinski P, et al. Assessing the barriers to image-guided drug delivery. Wiley Interdiscip Rev Nanomed Nanobiotechnol. 2014;6(1):1–14.
40. Ehrlich P. Collected studies on immunology. New York: Wiley; 1906. p. 906.
41. Köhler G, Milstein C. Continuous cultures of fused cells secreting antibody of predefined specificity. Nature. 1975;256(5517):495–7.
42. Kearney JF. Hybridomas and monoclonal antibodies. In: Paul WE, editor. Fundamental immunology. New York: Raven Press; 1984. p. 751–66.
43. Holliger P, Hudson PJ. Engineered antibody fragments and the rise of single domains. Nat Biotechnol. 2005;23(9):1126–36.
44. Larson SM. Lymphoma, melanoma, colon cancer: diagnosis and treatment with radiolabeled monoclonal antibodies. The 1986 Eugene P. Pendergrass new horizons lecture. Radiology. 1987;165(2):297–304.
45. Goldenberg DM. Current status of cancer imaging with radiolabeled antibodies. J Cancer Res Clin Oncol. 1987;113(3):203–8.
46. Mach J-P, Pèlegrin A, Buchegger F. Imaging and therapy with monoclonal antibodies in nonhematopoietic tumors. Curr Opin Immunol. 1991;3(5):685–93.
47. Larson SM, Divgi CR, Scott AM. Overview of clinical radioimmunodetection of human tumors. Cancer. 1994;73(S3):832–5.
48. Stratton MR, Campbell PJ, Futreal PA. The cancer genome. Nature. 2009;458(7239):719–24.
49. Kelloff GJ, Sigman CC. New science-based endpoints to accelerate oncology drug development. Eur J Cancer. 2005;41(4):491–501.
50. Oosterwijk E, Divgi CR, Brouwers A, Boerman OC, Larson SM, Mulders P, et al. Monoclonal antibody-based therapy for renal cell carcinoma. Urol Clin N Am. 2003;30(3):623–31.
51. Goldenberg DM, Sharkey RM, Paganelli G, Barbet J, Chatal J-F. Antibody pretargeting advances cancer radioimmunodetection and radioimmunotherapy. J Clin Oncol. 2006;24(5):823–34.
52. Zuckier LS, DeNardo GL. Trials and tribulations: oncological antibody imaging comes to the fore. Semin Nucl Med. 1997;27:10–29.
53. Eisen HN, Keston AS. The immunologic reactivity of bovine serum albumin labelled with trace-amounts of radioactive iodine (I131). J Immunol. 1949;63(1):71–80.
54. Ribas A, Puzanov I, Dummer R, Schadendorf D, Hamid O, Robert C, et al. Pembrolizumab versus investigator-choice chemotherapy for ipilimumab-refractory melanoma (KEYNOTE-002): a randomised, controlled, phase 2 trial. Lancet Oncol. 2015;16(8):908–18.
55. El-Osta H, Shahid K, Mills GM, Peddi P. Immune checkpoint inhibitors: the new frontier in non-small-cell lung cancer treatment. Onco Targets Ther. 2016;9:5101.
56. Loibl S, Gianni L. HER2-positive breast cancer. Lancet. 2017;389(10087):2415–29.
57. Eggermont AM, Chiarion-Sileni V, Grob J-J, Dummer R, Wolchok JD, Schmidt H, et al. Prolonged survival in stage III melanoma with ipilimumab adjuvant therapy. N Engl J Med. 2016;375(19):1845–55.
58. Perez EA, Romond EH, Suman VJ, Jeong J-H, Sledge G, Geyer CE Jr, et al. Trastuzumab plus adjuvant chemotherapy for human epidermal growth factor receptor 2–positive breast cancer: planned joint analysis of overall survival from NSABP B-31 and NCCTG N9831. J Clin Oncol. 2014;32(33):3744–52.
59. Williams S-P. Tissue distribution studies of protein therapeutics using molecular probes: molecular imaging. AAPS J. 2012;14(3):389–99.
60. Moek KL, Giesen D, Kok IC, de Groot DJA, Jalving M, Fehrmann RS, et al. Theranostics using antibodies and antibody-related therapeutics. J Nucl Med. 2017;58(Supplement 2):83S–90S.
61. Van Dongen GA, Visser GW, Lub-de Hooge MN, De Vries EG, Perk LR. Immuno-PET: a navigator in monoclonal antibody development and applications. Oncologist. 2007;12(12):1379–89.
62. Verel I, Visser GW, Boellaard R, Stigter-van Walsum M, Snow GB, van Dongen GA. 89Zr immuno-PET: comprehensive procedures for the production of 89Zr-labeled monoclonal antibodies. J Nucl Med. 2003;44(8):1271–81.
63. Tibben JG, Boerman OC, Massuger LF, Schijf CP, Claessens RA, Corstens FH. Pharmacokinetics, biodistribution and biological effects of intravenously administered bispecific monoclonal antibody OC/TR F (ab') 2 in ovarian carcinoma patients. Int J Cancer. 1996;66:477–83.
64. Konerding M, Fait E, Gaumann A. 3D microvascular architecture of pre-cancerous lesions and invasive carcinomas of the colon. Br J Cancer. 2001;84(10):1354.
65. Brown JM, Giaccia AJ. The unique physiology of solid tumors: opportunities (and problems) for cancer therapy. Cancer Res. 1998;58(7):1408–16.
66. Netti PA, Hamberg LM, Babich JW, Kierstead D, Graham W, Hunter GJ, et al. Enhancement of fluid

filtration across tumor vessels: implication for delivery of macromolecules. Proc Natl Acad Sci. 1999;96(6):3137–42.
67. Sharifi J, Khawli L, Hornick J, Epstein A. Improving monoclonal antibody pharmacokinetics via chemical modification. Q J Nucl Med Mol Imaging. 1998;42(4):242.
68. Khawli LA, Mizokami MM, Sharifi J, Hu P, Epstein AL. Pharmacokinetic characteristics and biodistribution of radioiodinated chimeric TNT-1,-2, and-3 monoclonal antibodies after chemical modification with biotin. Cancer Biother Radiopharm. 2002;17(4):359–70.
69. Khawli LA, Glasky MS, Alauddin MM, Epstein AL. Improved tumor localization and radioimaging with chemically modified monoclonal antibodies. Cancer Biother Radiopharm. 1996;11(3):203–15.
70. LeBerthon B, Khawli LA, Alauddin M, Miller GK, Charak BS, Mazumder A, et al. Enhanced tumor uptake of macromolecules induced by a novel vasoactive interleukin 2 immunoconjugate. Cancer Res. 1991;51(10):2694–8.
71. Hu P, Hornick JL, Glasky MS, Yun A, Milkie MN, Khawli LA, et al. A chimeric Lym-1/interleukin 2 fusion protein for increasing tumor vascular permeability and enhancing antibody uptake. Cancer Res. 1996;56(21):4998–5004.
72. Thurber GM, Schmidt MM, Wittrup KD. Antibody tumor penetration: transport opposed by systemic and antigen-mediated clearance. Adv Drug Deliv Rev. 2008;60(12):1421–34.
73. Chen F-M, Epstein AL, Li Z, Taylor CR. A comparative autoradiographic study demonstrating differential intratumor localization of monoclonal antibodies to cell surface (Lym-1) and intracellular (TNT-1) antigens. J Nucl Med. 1990;31(6):1059–66.
74. Tabrizi M, Bornstein GG, Suria H. Biodistribution mechanisms of therapeutic monoclonal antibodies in health and disease. AAPS J. 2010;12(1):33–43.
75. Reynolds JC, Del Vecchio S, Sakahara H, Lora ME, Carrasquillo JA, Neumann RD, et al. Anti-murine antibody response to mouse monoclonal antibodies: clinical findings and implications. Int J Rad Appl Instrum B. 1989;16(2):121–5.
76. LoBuglio AF, Wheeler RH, Trang J, Haynes A, Rogers K, Harvey EB, et al. Mouse/human chimeric monoclonal antibody in man: kinetics and immune response. Proc Natl Acad Sci. 1989;86(11):4220–4.
77. Rahmim A, Zaidi H. PET versus SPECT: strengths, limitations and challenges. Nucl Med Commun. 2008;29(3):193–207.
78. Verel I, Visser GW, van Dongen GA. The promise of immuno-PET in radioimmunotherapy. J Nucl Med. 2005;46(1 suppl):164S–71S.
79. Sharkey RM, McBride WJ, Karacay H, Chang K, Griffiths GL, Hansen HJ, et al. A universal pretargeting system for cancer detection and therapy using bispecific antibody. Cancer Res. 2003;63(2):354–63.
80. van Dongen GA, Poot AJ, Vugts DJ. PET imaging with radiolabeled antibodies and tyrosine kinase inhibitors: immuno-PET and TKI-PET. Tumor Biol. 2012;33(3):607–15.
81. Su H, Seimbille Y, Ferl GZ, Bodenstein C, Fueger B, Kim KJ, et al. Evaluation of [18F] gefitinib as a molecular imaging probe for the assessment of the epidermal growth factor receptor status in malignant tumors. Eur J Nucl Med Mol Imaging. 2008;35(6):1089–99.
82. Holland JP, Divilov V, Bander NH, Smith-Jones PM, Larson SM, Lewis JS. 89Zr-DFO-J591 for immunoPET of prostate-specific membrane antigen expression in vivo. J Nucl Med. 2010;51(8):1293–300.
83. Glekas AP, Pillarsetty NK, Punzalan B, Khan N, Smith-Jones P, Larson SM. In vivo imaging of Bcr-Abl overexpressing tumors with a radiolabeled imatinib analog as an imaging surrogate for imatinib. J Nucl Med. 2011;52(8):1301–7.
84. McLarty K, Cornelissen B, Cai Z, Scollard DA, Costantini DL, Done SJ, et al. Micro-SPECT/CT with 111In-DTPA-pertuzumab sensitively detects trastuzumab-mediated HER2 downregulation and tumor response in athymic mice bearing MDA-MB-361 human breast cancer xenografts. J Nucl Med. 2009;50(8):1340–8.
85. Kraeber-Bodere F, Bailly C, Chérel M, Chatal J-F. ImmunoPET to help stratify patients for targeted therapies and to improve drug development. Eur J Nucl Med Mol Imaging. 2016;43(12):2166–8.
86. Colombo I, Overchuk M, Chen J, Reilly RM, Zheng G, Lheureux S. Molecular imaging in drug development: update and challenges for radiolabeled antibodies and nanotechnology. Methods. 2017;130:23–35.
87. Jain M, Kamal N, Batra SK. Engineering antibodies for clinical applications. Trends Biotechnol. 2007;25(7):307–16.
88. Heskamp S, Hobo W, Molkenboer-Kuenen JD, Olive D, Oyen WJ, Dolstra H, et al. Noninvasive imaging of tumor PD-L1 expression using radiolabeled anti-PD-L1 antibodies. Cancer Res. 2015;75(14):2928–36.
89. Chatterjee S, Lesniak WG, Gabrielson M, Lisok A, Wharram B, Sysa-Shah P, et al. A humanized antibody for imaging immune checkpoint ligand PD-L1 expression in tumors. Oncotarget. 2016;7(9):10215.
90. Tagawa ST, Milowsky MI, Morris M, Vallabhajosula S, Christos P, Akhtar NH, et al. Phase II study of lutetium-177–labeled anti-prostate-specific membrane antigen monoclonal antibody J591 for metastatic castration-resistant prostate cancer. Clin Cancer Res. 2013;19(18):5182–91.
91. van Es SC, Brouwers AH, Mahesh SVK, Leliveld-Kors AM, de Jong IJ, Lub-de Hooge MN, et al. (89) Zr-Bevacizumab PET: potential early indicator of everolimus efficacy in patients with metastatic renal cell carcinoma. J Nucl Med. 2017;58(6):905–10.
92. Gaykema SB, Brouwers AH, Lub-de Hooge MN, Pleijhuis RG, Timmer-Bosscha H, Pot L, et al. 89Zr-bevacizumab PET imaging in primary breast cancer. J Nucl Med. 2013;54(7):1014–8.

93. Nagengast WB, Lub-de Hooge MN, van Straten EM, Kruijff S, Brouwers AH, den Dunnen WF, et al. VEGF-SPECT with 111 in-bevacizumab in stage III/IV melanoma patients. Eur J Cancer. 2011;47(10):1595–602.
94. Nagengast WB, de Vries EG, Hospers GA, Mulder NH, de Jong JR, Hollema H, et al. In vivo VEGF imaging with radiolabeled bevacizumab in a human ovarian tumor xenograft. J Nucl Med. 2007;48(8):1313–9.
95. Kang HJ, Lee S-S, Byun BH, Kim KM, Lim I, Choi CW, et al. Repeated radioimmunotherapy with 131I-rituximab for patients with low-grade and aggressive relapsed or refractory B-cell non-Hodgkin lymphoma. Cancer Chemother Pharmacol. 2013;71(4):945–53.
96. Witzig TE, Gordon LI, Cabanillas F, Czuczman MS, Emmanouilides C, Joyce R, et al. Randomized controlled trial of yttrium-90-labeled ibritumomab tiuxetan radioimmunotherapy versus rituximab immunotherapy for patients with relapsed or refractory low-grade, follicular, or transformed B-cell non-Hodgkin's lymphoma. J Clin Oncol. 2002;20(10):2453–63.
97. Janjigian YY, Viola-Villegas N, Holland JP, Divilov V, Carlin SD, Gomes-DaGama EM, et al. Monitoring afatinib treatment in HER2-positive gastric cancer with 18F-FDG and 89Zr-trastuzumab PET. J Nucl Med. 2013;54(6):936–43.
98. Ulaner GA, Hyman DM, Ross DS, Corben A, Chandarlapaty S, Goldfarb S, et al. Detection of HER2-positive metastases in patients with HER2-negative primary breast cancer using 89Zr-trastuzumab PET/CT. J Nucl Med. 2016;57(10):1523–8.
99. Gebhart G, Lamberts L, Wimana Z, Garcia C, Emonts P, Ameye L, et al. Molecular imaging as a tool to investigate heterogeneity of advanced HER2-positive breast cancer and to predict patient outcome under trastuzumab emtansine (T-DM1): the ZEPHIR trial. Ann Oncol. 2015;27(4):619–24.
100. Dijkers EC, Kosterink JG, Rademaker AP, Perk LR, van Dongen GA, Bart J, et al. Development and characterization of clinical-grade 89Zr-trastuzumab for HER2/neu immunoPET imaging. J Nucl Med. 2009;50(6):974–81.
101. Tamura K, Kurihara H, Yonemori K, Tsuda H, Suzuki J, Kono Y, et al. 64Cu-DOTA-trastuzumab PET imaging in patients with HER2-positive breast cancer. J Nucl Med. 2013;54(11):1869–75.
102. Niu G, Li Z, Cao Q, Chen X. Monitoring therapeutic response of human ovarian cancer to 17-DMAG by noninvasive PET imaging with 64Cu-DOTA-trastuzumab. Eur J Nucl Med Mol Imaging. 2009;36(9):1510.
103. Perik PJ, Lub-De Hooge MN, Gietema JA, van der Graaf WT, de Korte MA, Jonkman S, et al. Indium-111–labeled trastuzumab scintigraphy in patients with human epidermal growth factor receptor 2–positive metastatic breast cancer. J Clin Oncol. 2006;24(15):2276–82.
104. Lub-de Hooge MN, Kosterink JG, Perik PJ, Nijnuis H, Tran L, Bart J, et al. Preclinical characterisation of 111In-DTPA-trastuzumab. Br J Pharmacol. 2004;143(1):99–106.
105. Chopra A. 89Zr-labeled p-isothiocyanatobenzyl-desferrioxamine B (Df-Bz-NCS)–conjugated panitumumab, a fully human monoclonal antibody directed against the extracellular domain III of the epidermal growth factor receptor. 2012 [last updated 21 June 2012].
106. Menke-van der Houven CW, van Oordt ECG, Huisman MC, Vugts DJ, Roth C, Luik AM, et al. 89Zr-cetuximab PET imaging in patients with advanced colorectal cancer. Oncotarget. 2015;6(30):30384.
107. Heukelom J, Hamming O, Bartelink H, Hoebers F, Giralt J, Herlestam T, et al. Adaptive and innovative radiation treatment FOR improving cancer treatment outcomE (ARTFORCE); a randomized controlled phase II trial for individualized treatment of head and neck cancer. BMC Cancer. 2013;13(1):84.
108. van Loon J, Even AJ, Aerts HJ, Öllers M, Hoebers F, van Elmpt W, et al. PET imaging of zirconium-89 labelled cetuximab: a phase I trial in patients with head and neck and lung cancer. Radiother Oncol. 2017;122(2):267–73.
109. Riella LV, Paterson AM, Sharpe AH, Chandraker A. Role of the PD-1 pathway in the immune response. Am J Transplant. 2012;12(10):2575–87.
110. Ostrand-Rosenberg S, Horn LA, Haile ST. The programmed death-1 immune-suppressive pathway: barrier to antitumor immunity. J Immunol. 2014;193(8):3835–41.
111. Hamid O, Carvajal RD. Anti-programmed death-1 and anti-programmed death-ligand 1 antibodies in cancer therapy. Expert Opin Biol Ther. 2013;13(6):847–61.
112. Saresella M, Rainone V, Al-Daghri NM, Clerici M, Trabattoni D. The PD-1/PD-L1 pathway in human pathology. Curr Mol Med. 2012;12(3):259–67.
113. Ishida Y, Agata Y, Shibahara K, Honjo T. Induced expression of PD-1, a novel member of the immunoglobulin gene superfamily, upon programmed cell death. EMBO J. 1992;11(11):3887.
114. Zou W, Chen L. Inhibitory B7-family molecules in the tumour microenvironment. Nat Rev Immunol. 2008;8(6):467–77.
115. Gettinger S, Rizvi NA, Chow LQ, Borghaei H, Brahmer J, Ready N, et al. Nivolumab monotherapy for first-line treatment of advanced non-small-cell lung cancer. J Clin Oncol. 2016;34(25):2980–7.
116. Rosenberg JE, Hoffman-Censits J, Powles T, Van Der Heijden MS, Balar AV, Necchi A, et al. Atezolizumab in patients with locally advanced and metastatic urothelial carcinoma who have progressed following treatment with platinum-based chemotherapy: a single-arm, multicentre, phase 2 trial. Lancet. 2016;387(10031):1909–20.
117. Ansell SM, Lesokhin AM, Borrello I, Halwani A, Scott EC, Gutierrez M, et al. PD-1 blockade with

nivolumab in relapsed or refractory Hodgkin's lymphoma. N Engl J Med. 2015;372(4):311–9.
118. Bauml J, Seiwert TY, Pfister DG, Worden F, Liu SV, Gilbert J, et al. Pembrolizumab for platinum-and cetuximab-refractory head and neck cancer: results from a single-arm, phase II study. J Clin Oncol. 2017;35(14):1542–9.
119. Topalian SL, Sznol M, McDermott DF, Kluger HM, Carvajal RD, Sharfman WH, et al. Survival, durable tumor remission, and long-term safety in patients with advanced melanoma receiving nivolumab. J Clin Oncol. 2014;32(10):1020–30.
120. Taube JM, Klein AP, Brahmer JR, Xu H, Pan X, Kim JH, et al. Association of PD-1, PD-1 ligands, and other features of the tumor immune microenvironment with response to anti-PD-1 therapy. Clin Cancer Res. 2014;20:5064–74.
121. Daud AI, Wolchok JD, Robert C, Hwu W-J, Weber JS, Ribas A, et al. Programmed death-ligand 1 expression and response to the anti–programmed death 1 antibody pembrolizumab in melanoma. J Clin Oncol. 2016;34(34):4102–9.
122. Ghosh A, Heston WD. Tumor target prostate specific membrane antigen (PSMA) and its regulation in prostate cancer. J Cell Biochem. 2004;91(3):528–39.
123. Wright GL, Haley C, Beckett ML, Schellhammer PF. Expression of prostate-specific membrane antigen in normal, benign, and malignant prostate tissues. Urol Oncol. 1995;1(1):18–28.
124. Wernicke AG, Edgar MA, Lavi E, Liu H, Salerno P, Bander NH, et al. Prostate-specific membrane antigen as a potential novel vascular target for treatment of glioblastoma multiforme. Arch Pathol Lab Med. 2011;135(11):1486–9.
125. Ristau BT, O'Keefe DS, Bacich DJ. The prostate-specific membrane antigen: lessons and current clinical implications from 20 years of research. Urol Oncol. 2014;32(3):272–9.
126. Baccala A, Sercia L, Li J, Heston W, Zhou M. Expression of prostate-specific membrane antigen in tumor-associated neovasculature of renal neoplasms. Urology. 2007;70(2):385–90.
127. Haffner MC, Kronberger IE, Ross JS, Sheehan CE, Zitt M, Mühlmann G, et al. Prostate-specific membrane antigen expression in the neovasculature of gastric and colorectal cancers. Hum Pathol. 2009;40(12):1754–61.
128. Chang SS, O'Keefe DS, Bacich DJ, Reuter VE, Heston WD, Gaudin PB. Prostate-specific membrane antigen is produced in tumor-associated neovasculature. Clin Cancer Res. 1999;5(10):2674–81.
129. Liu H, Moy P, Kim S, Xia Y, Rajasekaran A, Navarro V, et al. Monoclonal antibodies to the extracellular domain of prostate-specific membrane antigen also react with tumor vascular endothelium. Cancer Res. 1997;57(17):3629–34.
130. Chengazi VU, Feneley MR, Ellison D, Stalteri M. Imaging prostate cancer with technetium-99m-7E11-C5. 3 (CYT-351). J Nucl Med. 1997;38(5):675.
131. Chang SS, Reuter VE, Heston W, Bander NH, Grauer LS, Gaudin PB. Five different anti-prostate-specific membrane antigen (PSMA) antibodies confirm PSMA expression in tumor-associated neovasculature. Cancer Res. 1999;59(13):3192–8.
132. Vallabhajosula S, Goldsmith SJ, Kostakoglu L, Milowsky MI, Nanus DM, Bander NH. Radioimmunotherapy of prostate cancer using 90Y-and 177Lu-labeled J591 monoclonal antibodies: effect of multiple treatments on myelotoxicity. Clin Cancer Res. 2005;11(19):7195s–200s.
133. Fung EK, Cheal SM, Fareedy SB, Punzalan B, Beylergil V, Amir J, et al. Targeting of radiolabeled J591 antibody to PSMA-expressing tumors: optimization of imaging and therapy based on non-linear compartmental modeling. EJNMMI Res. 2016;6(1):7.
134. Ferrara N. Vascular endothelial growth factor: basic science and clinical progress. Endocr Rev. 2004;25(4):581–611.
135. Vincenti V, Cassano C, Rocchi M, Persico MG. Assignment of the vascular endothelial growth factor gene to human chromosome 6p21. 3. Circulation. 1996;93(8):1493–5.
136. Houck KA, Leung D, Rowland A, Winer J, Ferrara N. Dual regulation of vascular endothelial growth factor bioavailability by genetic and proteolytic mechanisms. J Biol Chem. 1992;267(36):26031–7.
137. Shibuya M, Claesson-Welsh L. Signal transduction by VEGF receptors in regulation of angiogenesis and lymphangiogenesis. Exp Cell Res. 2006;312(5):549–60.
138. Presta LG, Chen H, O'connor SJ, Chisholm V, Meng YG, Krummen L, et al. Humanization of an anti-vascular endothelial growth factor monoclonal antibody for the therapy of solid tumors and other disorders. Cancer Res. 1997;57(20):4593–9.
139. Stollman TH, Scheer MG, Leenders WP, Verrijp KC, Soede AC, Oyen WJ, et al. Specific imaging of VEGF-A expression with radiolabeled anti-VEGF monoclonal antibody. Int J Cancer. 2008;122(10):2310–4.
140. Scheer MG, Stollman TH, Boerman OC, Verrijp K, Sweep FC, Leenders WP, et al. Imaging liver metastases of colorectal cancer patients with radiolabelled bevacizumab: lack of correlation with VEGF-A expression. Eur J Cancer. 2008;44(13):1835–40.
141. Cheson BD, Leonard JP. Monoclonal antibody therapy for B-cell non-Hodgkin's lymphoma. N Engl J Med. 2008;359(6):613–26.
142. Singh J, Jhaveri K, Esteva F. HER2-positive advanced breast cancer: optimizing patient outcomes and opportunities for drug development. Br J Cancer. 2014;111(10):1888–98.
143. Chmielecki J, Ross JS, Wang K, Frampton GM, Palmer GA, Ali SM, et al. Oncogenic alterations in ERBB2/HER2 represent potential therapeutic targets across tumors from diverse anatomic sites of origin. Oncologist. 2015;20(1):7–12.

144. Hudis CA. Trastuzumab—mechanism of action and use in clinical practice. N Engl J Med. 2007;357(1):39–51.
145. Schrohl AS, Pedersen HC, Jensen SS, Nielsen SL, Brünner N. Human epidermal growth factor receptor 2 (HER2) immunoreactivity: specificity of three pharmacodiagnostic antibodies. Histopathology. 2011;59(5):975–83.
146. Nitta H, Kelly BD, Padilla M, Wick N, Brunhoeber P, Bai I, et al. A gene-protein assay for human epidermal growth factor receptor 2 (HER2): bright-field tricolor visualization of HER2 protein, the HER2 gene, and chromosome 17 centromere (CEN17) in formalin-fixed, paraffin-embedded breast cancer tissue sections. Diagn Pathol. 2012;7(1):60.
147. Öhlschlegel C, Zahel K, Kradolfer D, Hell M, Jochum W. HER2 genetic heterogeneity in breast carcinoma. J Clin Pathol. 2011;64(12):1112–6.
148. Baum RP, Prasad V, Müller D, Schuchardt C, Orlova A, Wennborg A, et al. Molecular imaging of HER2-expressing malignant tumors in breast cancer patients using synthetic 111In-or 68Ga-labeled affibody molecules. J Nucl Med. 2010;51(6):892–7.
149. Sörensen J, Sandberg D, Sandström M, Wennborg A, Feldwisch J, Tolmachev V, et al. First-in-human molecular imaging of HER2 expression in breast cancer metastases using the 111In-ABY-025 affibody molecule. J Nucl Med. 2014;55(5):730–5.
150. Behr T, Behe M, Angerstein C, Schauer A, Kaufmann C, Woermann B, et al. Does pretherapeutic immunoscintigraphy allow for diagnostic predictions with respect to the toxicity and therapeutic efficacy of cold immunotherapy with trastuzumab (Herceptin (R))? J Nucl Med. 2000;41:73.
151. Dijkers E, Oude Munnink T, Kosterink J, Brouwers A, Jager P, Jong JD, et al. Biodistribution of 89Zr-trastuzumab and PET imaging of HER2-positive lesions in patients with metastatic breast cancer. Clin Pharmacol Ther. 2010;87(5):586–92.
152. Mortimer JE, Bading JR, Colcher DM, Conti PS, Frankel PH, Carroll MI, et al. Functional imaging of human epidermal growth factor receptor 2-positive metastatic breast cancer using 64Cu-DOTA-trastuzumab PET. J Nucl Med. 2014;55(1):23–9.
153. Viani GA, Afonso SL, Stefano EJ, De Fendi LI, Soares FV. Adjuvant trastuzumab in the treatment of her-2-positive early breast cancer: a meta-analysis of published randomized trials. BMC Cancer. 2007;7(1):153.
154. Fornier M, Seidman A, Schwartz M, Ghani F, Thiel R, Norton L, et al. Serum HER2 extracellular domain in metastatic breast cancer patients treated with weekly trastuzumab and paclitaxel: association with HER2 status by immunohistochemistry and fluorescence in situ hybridization and with response rate. Ann Oncol. 2005;16(2):234–9.
155. Arteaga C. Targeting HER1/EGFR: a molecular approach to cancer therapy. Semin Oncol. 2003;30(3 Suppl 7):3–14.
156. Blobel CP. ADAMs: key components in EGFR signalling and development. Nat Rev Mol Cell Biol. 2005;6(1):32–43.
157. Starling N, Cunningham D. Monoclonal antibodies against vascular endothelial growth factor and epidermal growth factor receptor in advanced colorectal cancers: present and future directions. Curr Opin Oncol. 2004;16(4):385–90.
158. Schlessinger J. Cell signaling by receptor tyrosine kinases. Cell. 2000;103(2):211–25.
159. Mendelsohn J. Targeting the epidermal growth factor receptor for cancer therapy. J Clin Oncol. 2002;20(18 Suppl):1S.
160. Ciardiello F, Damiano V, Bianco R, Bianco C, Fontanini G, De Laurentiis M, et al. Antitumor activity of combined blockade of epidermal growth factor receptor and protein kinase a. J Natl Cancer Inst. 1996;88(23):1770–6.
161. Mendelsohn J, Baselga J. Status of epidermal growth factor receptor antagonists in the biology and treatment of cancer. J Clin Oncol. 2003;21(14):2787–99.
162. Lievre A, Bachet J-B, Le Corre D, Boige V, Landi B, Emile J-F, et al. KRAS mutation status is predictive of response to cetuximab therapy in colorectal cancer. Cancer Res. 2006;66(8):3992–5.
163. De Roock W, Claes B, Bernasconi D, De Schutter J, Biesmans B, Fountzilas G, et al. Effects of KRAS, BRAF, NRAS, and PIK3CA mutations on the efficacy of cetuximab plus chemotherapy in chemotherapy-refractory metastatic colorectal cancer: a retrospective consortium analysis. Lancet Oncol. 2010;11(8):753–62.
164. Gallardo A, Lerma E, Escuin D, Tibau A, Munoz J, Ojeda B, et al. Increased signalling of EGFR and IGF1R, and deregulation of PTEN/PI3K/Akt pathway are related with trastuzumab resistance in HER2 breast carcinomas. Br J Cancer. 2012;106(8):1367–73.
165. Klijn J, Berns P, Schmitz P, Foekens J. The clinical significance of epidermal growth factor receptor (EGF-R) in human breast cancer: a review on 5232 patients. Endocr Rev. 1992;13(1):3–17.

33 Flow Cytometry in Cancer Immunotherapy: Applications, Quality Assurance, and Future

Cécile Gouttefangeas, Steffen Walter, Marij J. P. Welters, Christian Ottensmeier, Sjoerd H. van der Burg, and Cliburn Chan

Contents

C. Gouttefangeas
Department of Immunology, Institute for Cell Biology, Tübingen, Germany

iFIT Cluster of Excellence, University of Tübingen, Tübingen, Germany

S. Walter
iFIT Cluster of Excellence, University of Tübingen, Tübingen, Germany

M. J. P. Welters
Immatics US, Inc., Houston, TX, USA

C. Ottensmeier
Department of Medical Oncology, Leiden University Medical Center, Leiden, The Netherlands

S. H. van der Burg
Faculty of Medicine, University of Southampton, Southampton General Hospital, Southampton, UK

C. Chan (✉)
Department of Biostatistics and Bioinformatics, Duke University Medical School, Durham, NC, USA
e-mail: cliburn.chan@duke.edu

N. Rezaei (ed.), *Cancer Immunology*, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-30845-2_33

33.1 Introduction

Cancer immunotherapy seeks to elicit or augment the antitumor immune response in a cancer patient in order to enlist the help of the patient's own immune system for long-lasting tumor control. In this context, active cancer immunotherapy refers to the use of cytokines, immunomodulatory monoclonal antibodies (e.g., blocking antibodies (Abs) for CTLA-4, PD-L1, and PD-1, but also agonistic Abs for CD40, CD137, OX40, …), cell-based products (e.g., adoptive transfer of tumor-infiltrating lymphocytes-TILs-or of engineered T-cells such as CAR-T-cells), or experimental vaccines based on various antigen (Ag) formats. When evaluating immunotherapies, particularly in the experimental setting, it is essential to monitor the immune response elicited by the treatment. Immunomonitoring delivers evidence of immunogenicity; guides the choice and dose of antigens; assesses the effects of adjuvants, immune modulators, and therapy combinations; and has the potential to reveal early biomarkers of clinical efficacy. In this respect, immunomonitoring is helpful for rational clinical development and supplements clinical efficacy parameters such as disease-free period or survival, which are often available only at later clinical trial stages.

In view of their role in the anticancer immune response, the quantity and quality of tumor-antigen-specific effector $CD4^+$ and $CD8^+$ T-cells are of particular interest. In addition, the role of immune-regulatory cells, e.g., regulatory T-cells (Tregs), myeloid-derived suppressor cells (MDSCs), or certain subsets of monocytes/macrophages that can suppress effector immune responses, is increasingly recognized, not only within the tumor microenvironment but also in its macro-environment, the lymph nodes, spleen, and blood [1–4]. Informative analysis requires multiple markers for the accurate identification and quantification of phenotypic and functional cell subsets that are typically found at relatively low frequencies in the peripheral blood. These characteristics call for an assay that is multiparametric, robust, and sensitive enough to characterize rare individual cells.

The canonical multiparameter assay for the characterization of single cells in solution is polychromatic flow cytometry; it is ubiquitously used for immune monitoring, both in preclinical tumor immunology and in cancer immunotherapy trials. While the first fluorescence-based flow cytometer dates to 1968, the past several years have brought major advances in cytometer technology, reagents, and range of applications. Minimal standards for assays and cytometer quality assurance, as well as for data reporting, are being adopted, along with automated analysis techniques, which are becoming essential for the analysis and visualization of high-throughput multiparameter flow data. Much has also been learned about the challenges facing the use of increasingly complex flow cytometry assays in clinical trials, and what needs to be done to harmonize the assays across laboratories. This chapter describes the main flow cytometry methods being applied in cancer immunotherapy, with an emphasis on recent progress in the field, challenges associated with quality control, its promise to reveal biomarkers of clinical efficacy, and further developments that are likely to be rapidly implemented in routine cancer immunology.

33.2 Main Flow Cytometry Assays in Cancer Immunotherapy

Together with immunohistochemistry, immunophenotyping by flow cytometry is probably the most commonly used assay to investigate cells in cancer immunology. Flow cytometry distinguishes human immune cells via a combination of physical properties and fluorescent markers such as labeled monoclonal antibodies (mAbs) against cell-associated molecules that are expressed at the cell membrane or intracellularly. Physical properties measured by the cytometer are forward-scattered light (FSC) which is roughly proportional to the cell size, and side-scattered light (SSC) which reflects the granularity of the cells. Markers recognized by fluorescent mAbs are mostly categorized in clusters of differentiation (CD). To date, the human cell differentiation molecule organization [5] has indexed

more than 370 CD markers [6]. "Basic" CD markers are CD3, CD4, and CD8 for T-cell subsets; CD19 or CD20 for B-cells, CD14 for monocytes; CD11c for subsets of dendritic cells; CD56 for natural killer (NK) cells; and CD15 for granulocytes. In most cases, and for obvious reasons, enumeration of the number and frequencies of immune cell types is performed on blood samples (either whole blood or PBMCs), which can be easily obtained from patients at regular intervals. More difficult to obtain but very informative is the tumor tissue, of which single-cell suspensions can be prepared for analysis of infiltrated immune cells. Indeed, the phenotype of TILs is often very different from that of autologous PBMCs, and many cell subsets can only be identified and characterized within the tumor microenvironment [7, 8]. Further markers can be added to identify endothelial cells (CD31), fibroblasts (ER-TR7, vimentin), epithelial cells (EpCAM, i.e., CD326), and particular tumor cells (e.g., CAIX for renal cell carcinoma).

Altogether, cell subpopulations are defined by combination, rather than single, markers, which is not surprising considering the complexity and plasticity of human immune cell subsets. As an example, a consensus was recently reached by a group of international experts for characterizing Tregs with a minimal set of seven nonoverlapping markers that can be used as a basic Ab panel for Treg monitoring [9]. Polychromatic cell surface flow cytometry is also useful to characterize the activation status, differentiation status, and clonality of T lymphocytes. Commonly used markers for this purpose include CD25, CD69, CD137, and CD154, CD27, CD28, CD45RA/RO. Currently, and along the clinical success of checkpoint blockade Abs, the characterization of T-cell co-receptors (e.g., PD-1, Tim-3, VISTA, LAG3, and CD40, CD137, OX40 for inhibiting and activating receptors, respectively) has become a major focus of clinical research [10, 11]. For checking the clonality of the T-cell receptors (TCR), Vβ usage can be determined with specific mAbs. Note that flow cytometry can only deliver limited information on TCR usage; hence sequencing is needed for a more detailed picture on CDR3 regions. A combination of mAbs against activation markers and chemokine receptors (i.e., CCR7 = CD197) can be used to identify naïve effector memory, central memory, terminally differentiated effector memory (TEMRA), and memory T-cells with stem cell-like features [12–16]. These differentiation stages are associated with changes in functional and proliferative properties [17] and their distribution is altered in the elderly [18, 19]; hence, this information is relevant for adoptive transfer therapy, checkpoint blockade, or vaccination in aging cancer patients.

A major interest in immunotherapy is to characterize tumor-antigen-specific T-cells. Accumulating data indicates that T-cells from patients responding to checkpoint blockade recognize tumor-specific neoantigens; as these neoantigens are generally derived from patient-individual mutations, analysis of T-cell specificities in treated patients currently requires a complex and work-intensive workflow [20–22]. In anticancer vaccination with defined Ags, monitoring is easier since the antigens are known.

The most direct characterization of antigen specificity is via the use of HLA-peptide multimers, which bind directly to the cognate TCRs. First described more than 20 years ago [23], the HLA-class I multimer assay currently serves as a versatile tool for enumerating and characterizing $CD8^+$ T-cell responses, and staining protocols are broadly available [24–26]. The detection limit of a conventional HLA-multimer test reaches approximately 0.02% of the $CD8^+$ repertoire; combinatorial staining which uses two fluorochromes per specificity allows increasing the number of T-cell specificities investigated in one sample (e.g., up to 27 specificities can be monitored simultaneously with only 8 fluorochromes) [27, 28]; this is advantageous when a limited number of cells is available, for example in the case of precious patient's material. Moreover, the detection threshold has been reported to be increased of approx. ten-fold as compared to single-color multimer staining. Coupled to the production of HLA-monomers by the UV exchange technology, this high-throughput method represents an important technical achievement for the T-cell immunology field, and

has started to deliver precious information by dissecting the antitumor T-cell repertoire in patients, including that directed at neoantigens [21, 29, 30]. Recently, the number of specificities that can be tested in one sample was enlarged to >1000 by DNA barcoding of the peptide-MHC multimers [31].

HLA-multimers are widely used to monitor T-cell responses, especially in the context of peptide-based vaccination approaches [29, 32–34]. They can easily be combined with mAb panels to assess the phenotype and differentiation status of antigen-specific $CD8^+$ T-cells [11, 35]. Also, the simple combinatorial staining approach could easily be implemented for monitoring vaccination trials, for example when applying cocktails of antigenic peptides for which many specificities need to be tested in a single PBMC sample. Limitations of HLA-multimers are that (1) both the precise T-cell epitope (i.e., the exact amino acid sequence of the peptide recognized by the TCR) and its HLA-restriction (i.e., the HLA-allelic product which binds and presents the peptide to the TCR) must be predicted in advance and (2) the assay does not deliver functional information. To date, there also remains a lack of general availability of class II multimers for $CD4^+$ T-cell detection [36].

Intracellular cytokine staining (ICS) is the most common functional assay used for monitoring antigen-specific T-cells. It is the flow cytometric method of choice when HLA-multimers are not available, if the exact T-cell epitope and/or HLA restriction is unknown, and for routine assessment of $CD4^+$ T-cell responses. ICS enables detection of multiple effector functions of both $CD4^+$ and $CD8^+$ T-cell subsets [37–39], including polyfunctional T-cells that have been associated with protection against pathogens [40, 41]. A few groups have described polyfunctional T-cells after cancer vaccination in patients, but whether these cells are associated with beneficial and long-lasting antitumor T-cell responses remains an open question [7, 42]. Intracellular cytokine staining is an intrinsically complex assay, which relies on optimal conditions during cell thawing, culture, antigenic stimulation, and of course cell staining. Optimized mAb combinations, protocols, and standardization approaches have been published [43–45].

With the development of new tools, reagents, and fluorochromes, many aspects that used to be studied with conventional methods can now be addressed with flow cytometry. This is the case for cytotoxicity, proliferation, or cell signaling (traditionally detected with radioactive substances). For assessment of killing activity, target cells (including controls) are differentially labeled using fluorescent dyes (e.g., Paul Karl Horan-PKH-or 6-carboxyfluorescein diacetate succinimidyl ester-CFSE) and incubated with the effector T-cells to be tested; killing is then measured by counting the remaining target cells. Apart from the obvious safety aspects over radioactivity-based assays advantages of addressing cytotoxicity by flow cytometry-based methods are that (1) the effector cells can be phenotyped, (2) several targets can be tested in the same tube, (3) the effector-target incubation time can be significantly prolonged (up to 24 h) compared to a classical ^{51}Cr release assay, and (4) the assay is sensitive and effective, even when low numbers of effectors are available [46–48]. Other approaches to indirectly determine the cytotoxic capacity of T (or NK) cells are the use of a mAb directed against CD107a (LAMP-1), which becomes extracellularly detectable after cytotoxic granules have fused with the cellular membrane (degranulation), and the measurement of granzyme B and/or perforin loss, or the caspase activity in the target cells [49, 50].

For measuring proliferation by flow cytometry, effector cells can be first labeled with fluorescent dyes (CFSE or other tracking dyes such as CellTrace™ reagents) and cultured for several days in the presence of relevant stimuli. Since the dyes are diluted from the mother to the daughter cells, the number of cell divisions is visible in the number of fluorescent peaks detected [51]. The frequency of proliferating cells can also be assessed directly by Ab staining of the proliferation-associated nucleus protein Ki-67, expressed at all phases of the cell cycle except the resting G_0 stage [52, 53]. Early signaling which takes place in effector cells upon activation can be detected by measuring Ca influx or

phosphorylation of components of the signal transduction cascade [54, 55].

These measurements have not been used in large-scale vaccine studies so far, probably because they are time consuming and require careful optimization and technical expertise to achieve reproducible results.

Finally, cell-free cytokine analysis can also be performed by flow cytometry with multiplex beads, a method that has been recently adapted to meet GCLP standards [56–59]. The method is based on the use of beads of known sizes that have been pre-labeled with different fluorescent intensities and coated with Abs against the different cytokines of interest. Simultaneous quantification of several soluble factors in one sample (i.e., culture supernatant, serum, or plasma) can be done by comparison to standard curves provided by the manufacturer, for example, to evaluate Th1/Th2 profiles [38]. The assay is as sensitive as ELISA, with detection limits in the range of 20 pg/ml for most cytokines and can be even more sensitive when an enhanced sensitivity system is used (below 1 pg/ml).

All these examples clearly show that flow cytometry is a versatile tool for investigations of the phenotype, frequency, and functional properties of immune cell subsets. Furthermore, assays can often be combined for multi-parametric probing of cell properties, which is advantageous as precious patient samples are spared. However, the need for both robustness and sensitivity to detect tumor-antigen-specific T-cells and/or rare cell subsets poses specific challenges for the use of these complex tools in clinical research applications. These are addressed in the following sections.

33.3 Ab Panel Development and Quality Assurance

Current state-of-the-art polychromatic flow cytometry involves multistep, multi-reagent assays followed by sample acquisition on sophisticated instruments that are able to capture up to 20 parameters per cell at a rate of tens of thousands of cells per second. Obtaining reproducible results from such a complex procedure requires well-trained staff, stringent quality management, and detailed standard protocols and operating procedures (SOPs) for panel development, cytometer calibration, reagent qualification, sample preparation, use of appropriate technical and biological controls, and careful data analysis.

We start with the factors important to consider when developing a mAb staining panel. Target molecules can have vastly different expression levels. While lineage markers such as CD45, CD3, or CD8 are expressed at very high copy numbers per cell, some important markers such as transcription factors (e.g., FOXP3 for $CD4^+$ Tregs) or chemokine receptors (e.g., CCR5 on $CD4^+$ Th1 cells) are often present at much lower levels. In addition, the available probes (such as mAb clones or HLA-peptide multimers) can have variable avidities for their respective targets. Probes are labeled with different chemical classes of fluorescent dyes that must be matched to the instrument—considering factors such as the availability of a high-power laser line with a wavelength close to the maximum absorption of the fluorescent dye—and with a detector (photomultiplier plus filters/mirrors) that has a high sensitivity in the spectral emission range of the given dye. Complicating matters, cellular autofluorescence (i.e., fluorescence due to cellular molecules such as NADPH even in the absence of all dyes) further limits the sensitivity that can be achieved with a given fluorescent probe, laser, and detector. In practical terms, autofluorescence of lymphocytes is usually limited to a distinct range of emission and absorption wavelengths [60, 61]. In general, the degree of autofluorescence determines the limit of detection of direct staining, which in earlier reports was of 3000 molecules for a standard flow cytometer [62]. Consideration of all these factors leads to the following recommendation for detecting cellular markers expressed at very low levels: use a high-affinity Ab conjugated to a fluorescent dye with high quantum yield with emission spectral range far away from cellular autofluorescence, and for which the cytometer has an appropriately matched high-power laser line and detector.

For polychromatic flow cytometry, additional constraints are set by the phenomena of optical spillover and spreading. In flow cytometry, cells are analyzed in a near-physiological aqueous solution to preserve the structural properties of biomolecules. Due to the spectral absorption of water and air, the useful spectral space is limited to the range from near UV (ca. 200 nm) to near IR (ca. 1000 nm). In addition, in aqueous solutions, both the absorption and emission of fluorochromes show relatively broad spectral lines. Together, this means that the number of fluorochromes that can be analyzed at the same time is ultimately limited.

As a further consequence, spectra of fluorescent dyes routinely overlap ("spillover") [63], requiring software deconvolution of true and observed signals (i.e., compensation). However, compensation cannot correct other errors caused by measurement, binning, and photon noise, and these errors accumulate to give an irreversible effect termed as "spreading error" or "spillover spreading" [64]. Spreading error will cause the presence of one bright fluorochrome to reduce sensitivity for spectrally-close fluorochromes present on the same cell. Use of a high-power laser close to the absorption maximum can reduce errors in photon counting, and narrow band-pass filters can reduce spillover; both these measures will reduce spreading error. Finally, probe combinations should be designed so that overlapping fluorochromes are chosen for labeling markers, which are expected to be expressed on different cells.

In practice, panel development usually starts with the definition of a "wish list" of cellular targets, followed by the prioritization of these cellular targets, characterization of their expression levels, and checking for the availability of probes and conjugated dyes appropriate for the cytometer to be used. Guidance documents [65], free tools from Ab manufacturers (spectraviewers or Guide Panel Solution from BD), and helpful software (Chromocyte [66], FluoroFinder [67], or FlowJo Panel Wizard [68]) are available. A practical limitation can be the lack of commercially available fluorochrome conjugates for individual antibody clones. Indirect staining with secondary reagents (such as the biotin-streptavidin system) is possible, but not convenient for routine multicolor applications. A better alternative is the use of new methods and kits commercially available for the self-conjugation of small amounts of Ab to fluorescent dyes [69, 70].

Based on the discussion above, the cornerstones of Ab panel development guidance are the assignment of "bright" probes for "dim" targets and strategies to avoid spreading error and autofluorescence in channels relevant for "dim" targets. It is also possible to change the optical pathway of the flow cytometer to optimize the instrument (e.g., choice of filters) according to the requirements of individual mAb panels. As the number of potential artefact interactions between dyes and/or Ab clones rapidly increases with the number of parameters in the panel and as a large number of critical parameters should be optimized (e.g., Ab concentration), the development of large (≥8 colors) panels and especially those involving separate staining steps for intracellular and extracellular targets can be an expensive iterative process requiring several man-months of dedicated work. Hence, the flow community is encouraged to share rigorously calibrated and optimized polychromatic panels via the "Optimized Multicolor Immunofluorescence Panels" (OMIPs) project [71]. For phenotyping of (malignant) leukocytes in fresh whole blood, the EuroFlow consortium has also developed polychromatic Ab panels and procedures for 8–12-color staining whereby the T-, B-, and myeloid cell subsets can be defined [72, 73].

Quality assurance (QA) of a flow cytometry assay starts with the optimization, calibration, and standardization of the cytometer itself, and we refer the reader to the technical report by the Roederer group for details [74] or to specialized books. These optimization steps must not be neglected, especially with new instruments, as they may identify faulty parts that need replacement, such as a photomultiplier tube (PMT) with reduced sensitivity or suboptimal filters, and are important to optimize general instrument parameters. Conveniently, some (but not all) of these steps have been incorporated in vendor software

packages, such as the cytometer setup and tracking (CS&T) application within BD FACSDiva that uses a proprietary mixture of calibration beads. In addition, unstained and single-stained beads are used to determine the spillover matrix for compensation. For long-term immunomonitoring, it is essential to maintain accurate records of daily monitoring checks to track reproducibility and stability.

For cell staining, reagent (e.g., mAbs) quality can be an issue, especially if the assay is performed repeatedly over time. Often, reagents used are classified as "research use only" (RUO) and can show considerable batch-to-batch variation in important properties, such as concentration of antibody-dye conjugate, concentration of free dye, and even in the spectral properties of the dye (as in the case of tandem dyes) [75]. In addition, the shelf life designated by vendors is not always based on quantitative specifications. As a result, individual reagent batches have to be pretested and pre-titrated, and optimally tests should be repeated even during the designated shelf life of a reagent. As batch sizes available from vendors are often limited, this can result in the requirement of reagent bridging (demonstration of the comparability of reagent batches) during the course of a study, leading to complex logistic and tracking processes. Reagent quality control (QC) may be facilitated by the preparation of mixtures of lyophilized reagents ("lyoplates") [76–78] that can increase reagent stability and reduce pipetting error.

Appropriate use of technical and biological controls is also vital for assay interpretation. Isotype and "fluorescence minus one" (FMO) controls can help with setting gate boundaries at the analysis stage, by defining the "negative" region. However, isotypes are not always optimal controls, even if provided from the same manufacturers; moreover, for some reagents like HLA-multimers, no perfect control exists, since each single peptide-HLA multimer is a unique reagent. In addition, Ab panels must be established on cells treated similarly to those which will be monitored afterwards; for example, activated cells not only are bigger than nonactivated cells, but also generally express different amounts of a variety of molecules. When working with TILs, it is important to verify that isolation protocols, which often include enzymatic digestion, do not modify epitope exposure [79]. Pretested, aliquoted, cryopreserved samples with prescreened, predictable properties (such as being positive or negative for individual markers in the mAb panel) can serve as valuable biological controls, which can be added regularly to assay runs in order to track the variations between reagent batches or in assay performance between operators and over time.

As flow cytometry-based methods become incorporated into clinical trials, the need for a stable and unlimited source of control cell specimens that contain a defined number of functional antigen-specific T-cells as a control becomes paramount. Cell samples containing a known number of T-cells specific for a defined Ag would allow easy assessment of the quality and accuracy of reagents and assays, and provide standard controls for comparison of results across laboratories or time. Conventional sources for reference cell samples are either (1) based on leukapheresis or buffy-coat material from healthy donors-which are restricted to reactivity against immunogenic viral Ags, expensive, and available in limited amount-or (2) dependent on the ability to generate and propagate T-cell lines/clones on a repetitive basis, which is a burdensome task. The Cancer Immunotherapy (CIMT) Immunoguiding Program (CIP) group has recently established a process for the generation of TCR-engineered reference samples (TERS) that can be used in T-cell assays. In a first proof-of-principle study, we showed that retrovirally TCR-transduced T-cells spiked at defined numbers in autologous PBMC could be used as standard samples. The T-cells could be accurately detected at all dilutions in a linear fashion, down to frequencies of at least 0.02%, and the feasibility of TERS was confirmed in a small-scale interlaboratory testing [80]. Subsequently, we established, optimized, and standardized the production of TERS obtained by transfection of modified and stabilized TCR-RNA. Such a platform offers a simple, virus-free, and scalable process for the personalized manufacturing of TERS that are stable over

time. Moreover, the analysis of the TERS is similar to that of the tested cell samples in that the same gating strategy (and even the same gates) could be used. TERS can be tested across multiple assay platforms and can sensitively detect assay variation resulting from common sources of error [81]. The kit-based production of TERS has been established [82] and the first kits are commercially available (www.jpt.com).

A final, critical aspect of quality management is the careful documentation of each procedure performed, as well as provision of detailed protocols and/or standard operating procedures (SOPs) for each stage including data analysis. Technical staff needs to be well trained and need to perform the analyses on a regular basis to keep up the performance. Participation in proficiency panels will also help improve and control laboratory standards over time.

33.4 Standardization, Validation, and Harmonization via Proficiency Programs

While HLA-multimers and ICS are commonly used for monitoring experimental immunotherapies, there are still notable obstacles to the advancement of these assays as robust biomarkers for clinical trials [83, 84]. First, there is no gold standard protocol for any of these assays. Second, correlations between in vitro immunomonitoring results and patient clinical benefits are increasingly reported [85–93], but not systematically observed. The reality is that assays performed at different institutions are not equal; this results in difficulties in comparing the efficacy of various immunotherapy approaches for the same disease type, let alone between different diseases, and this in turn hampers progress in the field.

The first approach for addressing these problems in individual laboratories is to implement a strict step-by-step assay establishment, optimization, standardization, and validation process. The use of validated assays to monitor clinical trials is now mandatory in the USA and in Europe, in line with Good Clinical Laboratory Practice. Validation does not necessarily improve performance, but indicates the strengths, weaknesses, operational range, and repeatability of assays. Validation guidelines have been published for ICS and HLA-multimer staining [94–96].

Once assays are validated in expert labs, immune monitoring may be centralized at a dedicated core facility, including for multicentric studies (for specific challenges, see Sect. 33.6). An attractive alternative to this strategy, especially at the early clinical development stage, is assay harmonization. The pros and cons of assay harmonization vs. inter-center standardization have been discussed in detail elsewhere [97, 98].

Assay harmonization is based on the participation of single laboratories in iterative testing exercises called proficiency panels. For example, pretested PBMC samples, synthetic peptides, and/or HLA-peptide multimers are shipped from a central lab to all panel participants who then use their own reagents, protocols, and analysis strategies for detecting antigen-specific T-cells. Participants then report their data, which are centrally analyzed, allowing comparison of individual assay variables and performance to detect T-cells. Thus, parameters involved in assay performance may be successively identified, corrected, and confirmed to exert an impact on subsequent panels (i.e., multistep approach). Finally, benchmarks and guidelines are formulated and disseminated to the community. Participating laboratories benefit by being able to measure their own performance in comparison to peer laboratories, and regularly taking part in proficiency panels over time can also be seen as a quality control of assay performance for individual labs. Additionally, the working group can guide laboratories to improve performance if needed while providing an exchange platform for assays and their application.

Proficiency panels can in principle be applied for any T-cell assay, including those based on flow cytometry [99–101]. In 2005, two consortia, the European Cancer Immunotherapy (CIMT) Immunoguiding Program (CIP) and the Cancer Immunotherapy Consortium of the Cancer Research Institute in the USA (CIC/CRI), launched a large program of proficiency panels,

and synergistically pioneered the concept of assay harmonization [98, 102]. From 2005 to 2017, the CIP [103] has organized 21 small- to large-scale proficiency panels, dedicated to the measurement of antigen-specific $CD8^+$ T-cells (HLA-multimers, ELISPOT, and ICS) and of other immune cell subsets relevant for immunotherapy (NK cells, MDSCs). Of note, with the increasing data on circulating myeloid subsets associated with the efficacy of immunotherapies [1–3], it will become important to rely on not only phenotypic markers but also functional measurement, similar to what is done for T-cells.

Proficiency panels have taught us that there are large variations in the performance of cell assays among the flow community. While the majority of labs do detect antigen-specific T-cells present at quite high frequencies in PBMC samples (approx. >0.2% of $CD8^+$ cells), the detection rate drastically decreases for low-frequency effectors (<0.05% of $CD8^+$ cells). This is very relevant for cancer immunotherapy, as tumor-specific T-cells are expected to be present at low frequencies in the blood, even after patient vaccination. Another lesson is that comparable performance is achievable with different laboratory-specific protocols and reagents, and that full interlaboratory standardization is not necessary for good results. Surprisingly, we also found that operator experience in a method does not necessarily predict performance, underlining the utility of a regular quality control of established methods. Finally, adoption of simple measures can lead to significant improvement in assay performance. For example, staining and acquiring larger numbers of $CD8^+$ cells increase the ability to detect low-frequency HLA-multimer-positive cells, and inclusion of a cell-resting phase improves sensitivity in the IFN-γ ELISPOT assay. In contrast, a high background production of the cytokine IFN-γ both in ICS and ELISPOT is clearly associated with decreased performance [104, 105].

Over several proficiency panel iterations, it also became clear that all steps of the assays, starting from cell handling (freezing/thawing/resting), assay conditions (reagents and protocols for mAb and HLA-multimer stainings, conditions of antigenic stimulation in ICS), and acquisition of the cells including instrument settings down to the data analysis, can benefit from harmonization for achieving comparable results between laboratories. Both CIC and CIP have observed in independent panels conducted for ICS [105, 106], HLA-multimer staining [97, 107], or MDSC detection [108] that suboptimal gating strategies strongly influence the ultimate results, i.e., the detection and deduced frequencies of the cells of interest. We also showed that analysis (gating) performed by a unique user substantially decreased the variation in the frequencies of specific cells as compared to those reported by single labs analyzing their own data or the same data [106, 109]. This is not a surprise, since manual gating is subjective and highly dependent on the experience of the experimenter and tradition in the lab. Further work is therefore needed with a focus on both data acquisition and analysis, including on automated analysis strategies that can reduce the subjectivity inherent in gating as described in Sect. 33.7.

33.5 Structured Reporting of Immune Assay Experiments

An increasing number of minimal information projects have emerged in the last years to provide guidance for structured reporting of biological assays. The first minimal information (MI) project that set the scene was the Minimal Information About Microarray Experiments (MIAME) published in 2001 [110]. It is now an established and mandatory standard for publishing microarray data for a growing list of highly recognized journals [111]. More than 40 such guidelines have emerged, asking for minimal information on reported results for next-generation sequencing (MIRING) [112], in situ hybridization, immunohistochemistry experiments (MISFISHIE) [113], cellular assays (MIACA) [114], and flow cytometry experiments (MIFlowCyt) [115]. Information on the majority of these MI projects can be found in a central portal for minimal information on biological and biomedical investiga-

tions (MIBBI) [116]. These guidelines aim at achieving two major goals: first, to annotate data to such extent that they give transparent evidence on the quality, reliability, and possible error sources of reported results, and second to use the reporting standard to systematically feed public databases [117].

Structured reporting guidelines have also been provided for immune assay experiments. As outlined before, the continuous conduct of proficiency panels over several years led to the identification of steps in the assay that critically impact the results, namely (1) the sample, (2) the assay, (3) the data acquisition, (4) the data analysis, and (5) certain characteristics of the lab environment. In concordance with these findings, a flowchart of decisions that can affect the quality of data produced in clinical trials in which immunological parameters are monitored by flow cytometry was given in a landmark publication [118]. Although the variables critically affecting the quality of the results are—for most of them—well known, only very few scientific publications provide sufficient information on these aspects in their materials and methods sections. This lack of transparency is one of the major reasons preventing meaningful comparison of published results generated across institutions. In contrast, study results reported with transparent information on the essential variables of assay conduct explicitly indicate awareness of the investigator to control critical variables and can be much better interpreted and reproduced.

To reduce the discrepancy between available knowledge on immune assay conduct and lack of critical information in scientific publications, a group of T-cell immunologists from the cancer immunology, infectious diseases, autoimmunity, and transplantation fields initiated the Minimal Information About T-cell Assays (MIATA) project [119]. The group conducted an intensive vetting process with two public-consultation periods, two open consensus workshops, and several webinars [120]. The process towards reaching a broadly acceptable guideline on the minimum information that should be provided for T-cell assays [121] can be found at the project's web page [122]. With the MIATA consensus guidelines becoming available, the implementation of more structured reporting for T-cell (and more recently for NK-cell) immune monitoring has begun. So far, eight peer-reviewed journals endorse the MIATA guidelines and assign the "MIATA label." The label indicates that authors of accepted manuscripts take great care about reporting on and control of variables that matter for T-cell assays. MIATA-compliant manuscripts are listed on the MIATA homepage leading to greater exposure of the published work, which may increase interest and citations over time. The authors therefore recommend considering structured reporting of results from T-cell assays whenever possible, especially in the context of clinical trials [123].

33.6 Organization of Immune Monitoring in Multicenter Trials

Clinical trials will often require the recruitment of patients at multiple sites in order to reduce the overall duration and costs. Two general strategies emerge on how analytical assays can be performed across different sites [124]: in the distributed analysis paradigm, each site analyzes its locally derived samples. On the contrast, in the central lab paradigm, all samples are transported to a single site for analysis. In either case, flow cytometry poses additional challenges due to the fragility of the sample and the complexity of the assay.

For distributed analysis, the assay and instrumentation at different sites must be comparable. This can be achieved via full interlaboratory standardization, as is already routinely performed in clinical flow cytometry with in vitro diagnostic (IVD)-certified reagents and instruments [125]. Due to the high development costs, the number of clinical flow cytometry products for IVD on the market is limited and focuses on the clinically most relevant tasks as, e.g., the quantification of $CD4^+$ T-cells in blood. In many cases, these applications lack the technical capabilities of modern polychromatic flow cytometry. Full-scale interlaboratory standardization (with demonstrated low interlaboratory variation) of research

assays with RUO-grade reagents and customized flow cytometric instrumentation such as the Euroflow initiative for monitoring hematological malignancies is feasible, but requires great efforts [72]. An alternative to full interlaboratory standardization discussed in Sect. 33.4 is harmonization, which can be achieved via regular participation in proficiency panels and/or testing exercises involving all labs from a certain consortium.

For highly complex flow cytometric assays within clinical trials, having all samples analyzed by the same central laboratory eliminates the need for full-scale interlaboratory standardization of participating institutes, and may be less demanding. However, maintaining sample quality becomes a critical issue with this strategy. The initial sample material for flow cytometry contains living cells (in most cases derived from blood with the addition of anticoagulants). In most cases, cells (PBMCs) have to be isolated from this sample material before the start of the flow cytometric assay. Cells are usually more fragile compared to biomolecules or small molecules. Several studies have been performed to determine how long blood can be stored or transported before peripheral blood mononuclear cell (PBMC) isolation (mostly using density gradient centrifugation), and how stable isolated cells are before the assay is started [43, 126, 127]. For simple phenotyping (e.g., $CD4^+$ T-cell counting), a 48-h delay before centralized analysis is acceptable, while the most demanding applications (such as some functional T-cell assays) require isolation of the cells within 8 h of venipuncture, followed by immediate analysis or cryopreservation of the cells [128]. Shipment to a central lab followed by processing of blood samples within 8 h is not feasible in international multicenter trials. Therefore, a mixed model may be chosen [53], whereby cells are isolated and cryopreserved from peripheral blood at individual labs close to the patient, and then shipped in the frozen state to the central lab where it is stored frozen before analysis. All stages of isolation, cryopreservation, and transport conditions should be fully standardized in this model. Standardized labeling of samples that allow the unambiguous assignment of a sample to a trial, site, patient, and visit is also critical. These procedures have to be clearly defined in the clinical trial protocol and are usually further detailed in the clinical trial laboratory manual.

As an example, demonstrating feasibility of this approach, an international, multicentric immunotherapy trial was conducted, including T-cell immunomonitoring, in which more than 40 clinical sites were trained in blood sampling, labeling, and shipping, with labels and collection tubes provided by a central laboratory. Local PBMC isolation laboratories were centrally supplied with pretested kits containing all critical reagents required for isolation and cryopreservation of PBMCs. All laboratory technicians were trained and qualified on central SOPs describing in detail the PBMC isolation and cryoconservation processes. Where required, the fresh blood was transported from the clinical sites to the PBMC isolating labs using temperature-controlled shipments. The isolated frozen PBMCs were shipped to the central lab in validated dry ice containers. Patient visits involving a PBMC sampling were carefully coordinated in advance among the clinical sites, the PBMC isolating laboratories, and the logistic service providers to ensure that the blood could be processed within 8 h after venipuncture of a patient. This process led to a successful logistic chain for 361/362 (99.7%) PBMC samples and an overall evaluability rate of 64/68 (94%) patients for T-cell immunomonitoring [53], and has been adopted for further studies [129].

33.7 Automated Analysis of Flow Data

As discussed in Sects. 33.4 and 33.5, the standard approach for analyzing flow cytometry data is by the visual identification of cell subsets of interest on histograms or two-dimensional scatter plots. With multiparameter data, gating consists of first choosing a gating strategy, i.e., a sequence of 2D dot plots that is designed to allow identification of the cells of interest. For example, a possible gating strategy for identifying HLA-multimer-

positive CD8+ T-cells might be FSC-H/FSC-W (singlets), FSC-A/SSC-A (lymphocytes), CD3/viability dye (viable T lymphocytes), CD4/CD8 (basic T lymphocyte subsets), and CD8/multimer. In each dot plot, cells of interest are included, and other events excluded by the use of elliptical or polygonal gates, or sometimes by splitting the dot plot into quadrants. The exact location and shape of these gates may be based on experience, or by comparison with negative (e.g., isotype, FMO, or unstimulated control in ICS) and positive (reference sample or T-cell clone, or superantigen stimulation) controls. After a gating strategy has been set, it is typically applied in common to all flow cytometry samples in the batch being analyzed. Some researchers will also adjust gates for individual samples to take individual variability into account. In general, there is no consensus or accepted standard gating strategy, and individual laboratories may apply different gating strategies to identify the same target cell subset. Notably, proficiency panels have made it very clear that the subjectivity of gating forms a significant source of assay variability between laboratories in the absence of a harmonization program [105, 130] (see also Sect. 33.4).

With the ever-growing dimensionality of flow and mass cytometry data, it is increasingly likely that manual gating strategies will miss novel cell subsets, due to the inefficiency of exploring high-dimensional space on 2D plots. Boolean gating is an attempt to exhaustively enumerate every potential cell subset by evaluating all the Boolean combinations of individual markers partitioned into positive/negative categories. For example, the Boolean gates in an ICS assay with IFN, TNF, and IL2 would be the eight combinations IFN−/TNF−/IL2−, IFN−/TNF−/IL2+, IFN−/TNF+/IL2−, IFN−/TNF+/IL2+, IFN+/TNF−/IL2−, IFN+/TNF−/IL2+, IFN+/TNF+/IL2−, and IFN+/TNF+/IL2+. However, the number of Boolean gates grows exponentially with the number of markers, and many of these gates are empty or uninformative, making this a low-yield strategy. To increase the objectivity of flow cytometry analysis and cope with more complex data sets, automated unsupervised learning methods in which cell subsets are directly quantified by machine algorithms have been proposed [109, 131–134]. In broad terms, these algorithms have to first partition all the events in a data sample into disjoint subsets, based on properties of each individual event and its relationship to other events, then assign these subsets to biologically meaningful categories (e.g., HLA-multimer-binding CD8+ lymphocytes). In the context of cancer immunology, a specific challenge for automated approaches is the high sensitivity required, since antigen-specific responses (e.g., HLA-multimer positivity or cytokine-producing cells) may be relevant at relatively low frequencies of 0.01–0.1% [135]. Data from multiple laboratories significantly increases the challenges for automated analysis, since the algorithms have to also account for the variability across laboratories and deal with issues such as inconsistent sample annotation. For managing multicenter data, specialized cytometry data upload and management applications are helpful to ensure metadata consistency and as a platform for data sharing [136, 137].

A typical automated analysis preprocessing pipeline starts with the extraction of the essential matrix of information stored in a flow cytometer standard (FCS) file, where each row represents an event and each column represents a detector channel, either scatter or fluorescent intensity. Preprocessing algorithms may apply compensation, or specific transformations to regularize the data distribution (e.g., bi-exponential transformation). Specific channels may be explicitly excluded from analysis if they are not likely to be informative for the cell subset targets of interest. Often, a quality control filter is also applied at this stage, and data sets with inconsistent annotation, too few events, anomalous event distributions, or signatures may be flagged for manual evaluation [138].

The core of most automated analysis is the unsupervised partitioning of events into cell subsets. There are a variety of approaches that can be taken to partition or cluster events [133]. One popular approach is the use of statistical mixture models, either identifying cell subsets with individual mixture components (which are typically multivariate Gaussian, student T, or skewed

versions of these distributions) or using features of the estimated density to assign events to cell subsets [139–141]. Such probabilistic approaches provide a declarative framework to model domain knowledge, and support formal statistical inferences for structure learning, classification, and prediction. The underlying statistical model for the domain knowledge can also be naturally extended in different contexts, for example, to incorporate specific assay details for combinatorial multimer encoding [142] or to incorporate multilevel effects via hierarchical modeling [143]. The power of probabilistic models comes at a price, in that these models tend to be much more computationally demanding than non-probabilistic approaches [144–147], and the run-time for analysis of high-volume, high-dimensional data sets may be prohibitive. However, recent developments in the use of highly parallel graphical processing units [148] have accelerated run-times by orders of magnitude, making the probabilistic approaches a viable approach for many applications in cancer immunology.

The essential step in post-processing is the alignment of cell subset clusters across multiple data samples, since comparative analysis of equivalent cell subsets is a necessary requirement of flow cytometry analysis in clinical research. Perhaps the most straightforward approach is to align each data sample with respect to either a reference or a consensus clustering via an optimization routine that minimizes some distance between pairs of clusters (e.g., Euclidean distance between cluster centroids). Other possible approaches skirt the problem entirely by enforcing a common clustering across all data samples, or partition the clusters from fitting all data samples into "superclusters"—all clusters in the supercluster are then assigned to the same cell subset. The final step of assigning meaningful cell subset labels to the aligned clusters is typically done manually, although there have been recent efforts to develop heuristics that can automatically label clusters by establishing a concordance between cluster features and cell phenotype characteristics in the Cell Ontology. Innovations in the visualization of high-dimensional cytometry data have also greatly increased our ability to interpret the results of automated analysis [149–151].

The detection of antigen-specific T-cells poses a specific challenge for automated algorithms because of the extremely low frequency of these cell subsets in many patient samples—for example, as few as 0.01–0.1% of the $CD8^+$ T lymphocyte population may be specific for a particular tumor Ag and bind the relevant HLA-multimer. Two nonexclusive approaches for improving the ability of automated algorithms to improve the limit of detection are biased subsampling to enrich the sample for rare events [150, 152] or increasing of the complexity of the statistical model [143]. The development of algorithms that can accurately and robustly identify rare cell populations is a driving motivator for much current research in automated flow analysis, and we expect rapid advances in this area. Illustrative examples comparing manual and automated analysis of antigen-specific cells for HLA-multimer and ICS assays are shown in Fig. 33.1.

Visualization of data has become a critical aspect of high-dimensional flow analysis, and algorithms that can generate informative two-dimensional plots are increasingly used for both flow and mass cytometry data sets. Traditional dimension reduction techniques such as principal components analysis (PCA) or multi-dimensional scaling (MDS) for visualizing rely on linear transformations, and often fail to capture the nonlinear manifold structure of cell subset clusters in cytometry data. Recent innovations in nonlinear dimension reduction have proven to be much more capable of capturing meaningful biological properties and of generating interpretable visualizations. SPADE (SPanning-tree progression Analysis of Density-normalized Events) was an early pioneer in visualization of single-cell data, and allows direct visualization of potential lineage relationships between different cell subsets by embedding density-sampled clusters onto a minimal spanning tree (MST) [150]. Similar to SPADE, FlowSOM visualization also generates MST plots, but uses self-organizing maps, an unsupervised artificial neural network (ANN) for dimensionality reduction [153]. Perhaps the most

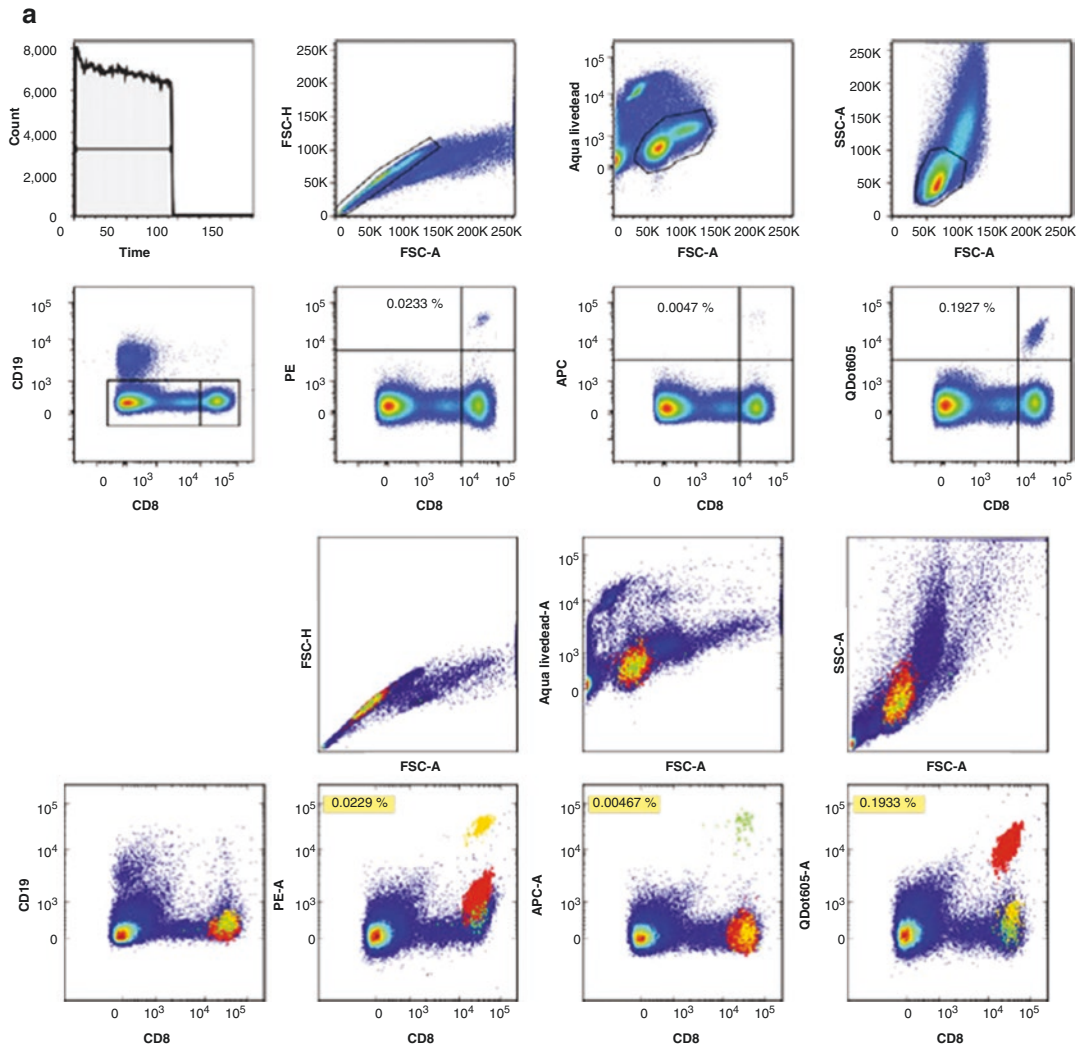


Fig. 33.1 (**a**) Manual and automated identification of antigen-specific MHC class I multimer-positive CD8+ T lymphocytes among PBMCs of a HLA-A2+ healthy donor. Top panel shows the manual gating strategy to identify CD8+ T-cells specific for three HLA-A*0201-restricted epitopes derived from the EBV, influenza, and CMV viruses using peptide-MHC tetramers. From left to right, the plots show gates to exclude artefact due to flow stream bubbles or clumps (count/time), find singlets (FSC-A/FSC-H), exclude non-viable cells (FSC-A/Aqua LiveDead), identify lymphocytes (FSC-A/SSC-A), identify CD8+ T-cells (CD8/CD19), and quantify CD8+ T-cells binding to EBV BRFL1 peptide-MHC tetramers (CD8/PE), influenza matrix peptide-MHC tetramers (CD8/APC), and CMV pp65 peptide-MHC tetramers (QDot605). Bottom panel shows the corresponding peptide-MHC-binding CD8+ T-cells identified using an automated analysis approach that fitted a Dirichlet Process Gaussian Mixture Model with 256 components to the data [143]. Essentially identical frequencies of peptide-MHC tetramer-positive cells are found with manual and automated analysis. (**b**) Manual and automated analysis of antigen-specific T-cells among PBMCs of a second HLA-A2+ healthy donor tested in an intracellular staining (ICS) assay after incubation with a synthetic peptide corresponding to an HLA-A*0201-restricted epitope of pp65 CMV. Manual analysis finds cells positive for IFN and TNF, and a few events positive for IL-2. Without further gating, it is not possible to tell if the IFN- and TNF-positive events come from two separate or a single bifunctional population. Automated analysis reveals that there is indeed a single-cell population positive for IFN and TNF, with no evidence for an IL-2-positive population. Again, the frequencies of antigen-specific events identified by expert gating and automated analysis are almost equivalent

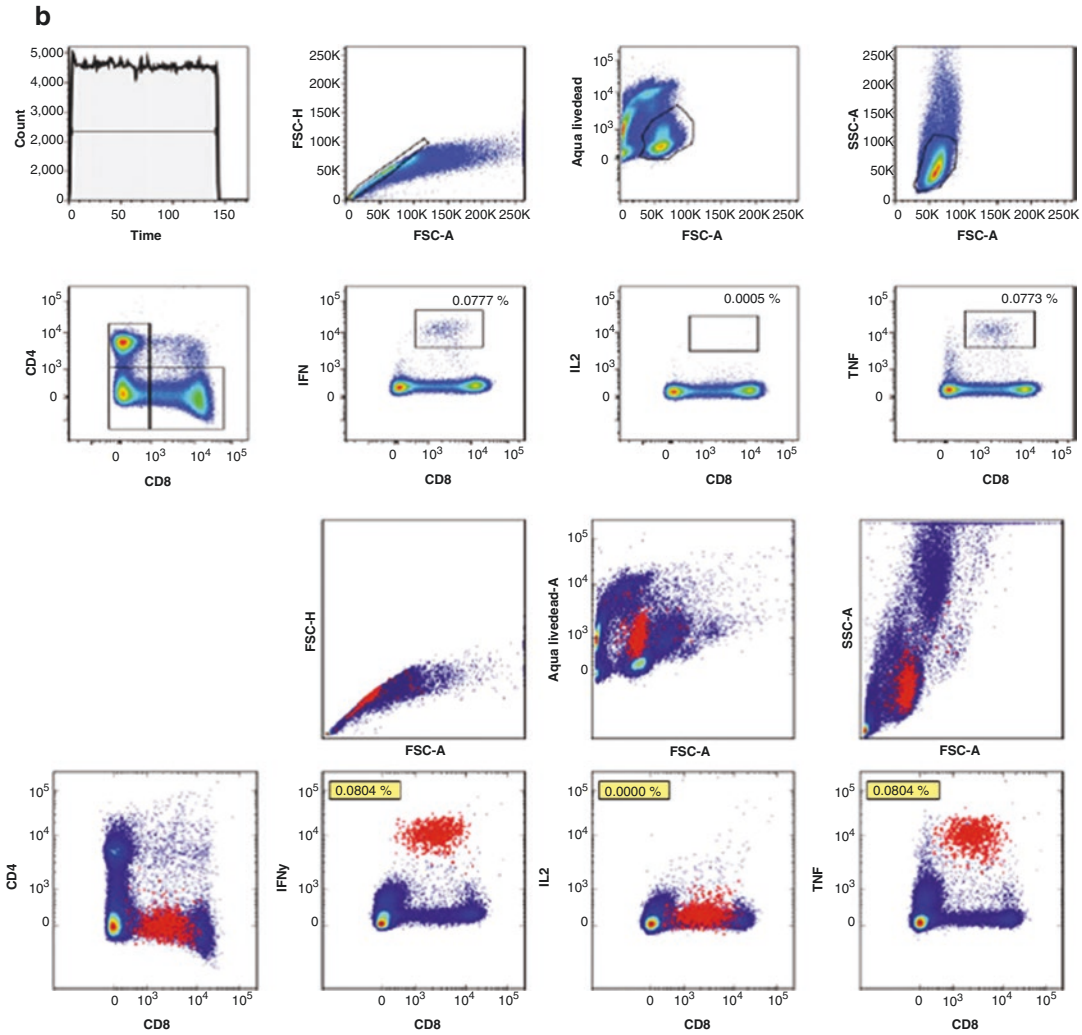


Fig. 1 (continued)

influential visualizing technique is t-Stochastic Neighbor Embedding (t-SNE) for dimensionality reduction [154], which is particularly effective at revealing local structure and minimizing crowding of individual cells, and hence at enhancing the visualization of cell subset clusters. Two t-SNE-based software packages for visualizing cytometry data on t-SNE plots pseudo-colored by marker intensities are viSNE [151] and HSNE (Hierarchical Stochastic Neighbor Embedding) [155]. Several of these visualization methods have also been implemented in cytometry analysis packages such as FlowJo [156], FCS Express [157], and cytosplore [158].

There have also been notable recent advances in the automated data-driven discovery of biomarkers and signatures from cytometry data sets. Citrus (cluster identification, characterization, and regression) is based on a pipeline that performs regularized regression on clustered data to identify cell subsets correlated with outcome. Notably, Citrus can be applied for identifying meaningful signature differences between data sets where two or more sample groups have been defined [159, 160]. A more specialized tool to identify functional cell subsets in ICS assays is COMPASS (Combinatorial Polyfunctionality Analysis of Single Cells), which uses a Bayesian

hierarchical framework to identify antigen-specific cells and directly addresses the limitations of Boolean gating [161]. Most recently there have been exciting developments in the application of deep learning algorithms to identify "interesting" features of cytometry data sets, taking advantage of the explosive growth of deep learning technology and algorithms [162]. As with other machine learning applications, these deep learning approaches are attractive as they are scalable, require minimal input data preprocessing, can be flexibly combined with outcome or confounding variable data, and typically outperform "shallow" algorithms with large data sets.

Finally, we note that most of these automated analysis tools are developed under open-source licenses, and so free to use without restriction. Some packages require a modicum of programming ability to use effectively (for example, R or Python scripting skills) and others are available online, but in general these algorithms are probably not easily used by the average flow operator in a clinical research laboratory. In the coming years, we expect that these automated analysis tools will become increasinlgy accessible to immunologists as developers of these tools continue to improve their ease of use; the most successful algorithms will be incorporated into commercial software analysis packages; and more workshops will be organized to train people in the use and potential pitfalls of these exciting new technologies.

33.8 Perspectives and New Technologies

Flow cytometry is playing an instrumental role in our comprehension of the immune system and of its interplay with human tumors. A fundamental advance in recent years is an increase in the number of parameters that can be simultaneously assessed on single cells. Access to more reagents and fluorochromes including tandem conjugates, semiconductor nanocrystals (quantum dots or eFluors), and organic polymers (brilliant violet family) [163–165], together with the wide availability of sophisticated flow cytometers, is making polychromatic analysis a routine method. Currently, the combination of 15–20 different fluorochromes represents the upper feasibility limit in expert laboratories [166], but new dyes and next-generation cytometers such as the FACSymphony (BD Biosciences), Aurora (Cytek Biosciences), ZE5 (BioRad), and Spectral Cell Analyzer (Sony) are already in use and might soon increase this limit. This, together with the development of unsupervised, automated analysis programs, is likely to broaden further the applications of flow cytometry. However, spectral overlap ultimately limits the number of fluorochromes in a single Ab panel. Mass cytometry (CyTOF, i.e., Helios and Hyperion) uses stable heavy metal ions tagged to Abs (or, e.g., HLA-multimers) in place of fluorochromes. These isotope labels are detected by time-of-flight mass spectrometry after vaporization of the cell. Although isotope labels generally produce a signal of low intensity, they have a lower background and virtually no spillover, making the simultaneous measurement of a much larger number of markers feasible.

Mass spectrometry has been reported to be qualitatively and quantitatively equivalent to flow cytometry, with the simultaneous analysis of more than 40 parameters [167, 168]. Hence, it is especially adapted for comprehensive studies of immune cell subsets in various donor/patient populations [53, 160, 169–172]. This new technology is currently available in a few highly expert laboratories and has the current following limitations as compared to traditional flow cytometry: lower label sensitivity, substantial cell loss, very low acquisition rate, and impossibility to sort living cells. Nevertheless, the method has started to reveal the complexity of immune cells and will become an indispensable technique in cancer immunology and immunotherapy, especially at the research phase or in biomarker discovery programs. As it was initiated for flow cytometry some years ago, the first standardized protocols and interlaboratory comparisons are coming [173, 174].

33.9 Conclusion

Flow cytometry is the prototypical multiparameter single-cell assay, with applications in cancer immunotherapy ranging from epitope screening to immune monitoring of clinical studies. Due to its ability to characterize complex immune phenotypes and flexibility in measuring multiple immune functions such as Ag binding, expression of activation and inhibitory markers, cytokine production, cytotoxicity, and proliferation, flow cytometry is indispensable in cancer immunology research. However, because of the complexity of the assay and the fragility of the cell sample, it is challenging to establish and maintain robustness, sensitivity, and reproducibility of the results, especially across multiple laboratories. Factors to consider when using flow cytometry in clinical research include understanding the range of flow-based assays available and introducing best practices for the reagent, sample, staining procedure, instrumentation, and data analysis, as well as regular performance controls especially participation in proficiency testing programs. The development of such expertise and measures is demanding, but more important than ever due to the increasing complexity of flow-based assays. Automated analysis with unsupervised and supervised leaning approaches has now been demonstrated to equal or improve the performance of human operators in multiple studies, and we predict that their use in clinical research will eventually be accepted as standard practice.

Acknowledgements CG, SW, MJPW, SvdB, and CO are members of the steering committee of the CIMT Immunoguiding Program (CIP). CC is supported by grants to the Duke University Center for AIDS Research and EQAPOL program funded by NIH grant 5P30 AI064518 and NIH contract HHSN272201000045C, respectively.

References

1. Romano E, Kusio-Kobialka M, Foukas PG, Baumgaertner P, Meyer C, Ballabeni P, et al. Ipilimumab-dependent cell-mediated cytotoxicity of regulatory T cells ex vivo by nonclassical monocytes in melanoma patients. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2015;112(19):6140–5.
2. Martens A, Wistuba-Hamprecht K, Geukes Foppen M, Yuan J, Postow MA, Wong P, et al. Baseline peripheral blood biomarkers associated with clinical outcome of advanced melanoma patients treated with Ipilimumab. Clin Cancer Res. 2016;22(12):2908–18.
3. Krieg C, Nowicka M, Guglietta S, Schindler S, Hartmann FJ, Weber LM, et al. High-dimensional single-cell analysis predicts response to anti-PD-1 immunotherapy. Nat Med. 2018;24(2):144–53.
4. Welters MJ, van der Sluis TC, van Meir H, Loof NM, van Ham VJ, van Duikeren S, et al. Vaccination during myeloid cell depletion by cancer chemotherapy fosters robust T cell responses. Sci Transl Med. 2016;8(334):334ra52.
5. Human Cell Differentiation Molecules Organization. http://www.hcdm.org.
6. Engel P, Boumsell L, Balderas R, Bensussan A, Gattei V, Horejsi V, et al. CD nomenclature 2015: human leukocyte differentiation antigen workshops as a driving force in immunology. J Immunol. 2015;195(10):4555–63.
7. Attig S, Hennenlotter J, Pawelec G, Klein G, Koch SD, Pircher H, et al. Simultaneous infiltration of polyfunctional effector and suppressor T cells into renal cell carcinomas. Cancer Res. 2009;69(21):8412–9.
8. Giraldo NA, Becht E, Vano Y, Petitprez F, Lacroix L, Validire P, et al. Tumor-infiltrating and peripheral blood T-cell immunophenotypes predict early relapse in localized clear cell renal cell carcinoma. Clin Cancer Res. 2017;23(15):4416–28.
9. Santegoets SJ, Dijkgraaf EM, Battaglia A, Beckhove P, Britten CM, Gallimore A, et al. Monitoring regulatory T cells in clinical samples: consensus on an essential marker set and gating strategy for regulatory T cell analysis by flow cytometry. Cancer Immunol Immunother. 2015;64(10):1271–86.
10. Sledzinska A, Menger L, Bergerhoff K, Peggs KS, Quezada SA. Negative immune checkpoints on T lymphocytes and their relevance to cancer immunotherapy. Mol Oncol. 2015;9(10):1936–65.
11. Baitsch L, Baumgaertner P, Devevre E, Raghav SK, Legat A, Barba L, et al. Exhaustion of tumor-specific CD8(+) T cells in metastases from melanoma patients. J Clin Invest. 2011;121(6):2350–60.
12. Romero P, Zippelius A, Kurth I, Pittet MJ, Touvrey C, Iancu EM, et al. Four functionally distinct populations of human effector-memory CD8+ T lymphocytes. J Immunol. 2007;178(7):4112–9.
13. Gattinoni L, Lugli E, Ji Y, Pos Z, Paulos CM, Quigley MF, et al. A human memory T cell subset with stem cell-like properties. Nat Med. 2011;17(10):1290–7.
14. Sallusto F, Lenig D, Forster R, Lipp M, Lanzavecchia A. Two subsets of memory T lymphocytes with distinct homing potentials and effector functions. Nature. 1999;401(6754):708–12.
15. Mahnke YD, Brodie TM, Sallusto F, Roederer M, Lugli E. The who's who of T-cell differentiation:

human memory T-cell subsets. Eur J Immunol. 2013;43(11):2797–809.
16. Mahnke YD, Beddall MH, Roederer M. OMIP-013: differentiation of human T-cells. Cytometry A. 2012;81(11):935–6.
17. Appay V, van Lier RA, Sallusto F, Roederer M. Phenotype and function of human T lymphocyte subsets: consensus and issues. Cytometry A. 2008;73(11):975–83.
18. Derhovanessian E, Maier AB, Hahnel K, Beck R, de Craen AJ, Slagboom EP, et al. Infection with cytomegalovirus but not herpes simplex virus induces the accumulation of late-differentiated CD4+ and CD8+ T-cells in humans. J Gen Virol. 2011;92(Pt 12):2746–56.
19. Kverneland AH, Streitz M, Geissler E, Hutchinson J, Vogt K, Boes D, et al. Age and gender leucocytes variances and references values generated using the standardized ONE-study protocol. Cytometry A. 2016;89(6):543–64.
20. Linnemann C, van Buuren MM, Bies L, Verdegaal EM, Schotte R, Calis JJ, et al. High-throughput epitope discovery reveals frequent recognition of neo-antigens by CD4+ T cells in human melanoma. Nat Med. 2015;21(1):81–5.
21. Rizvi NA, Hellmann MD, Snyder A, Kvistborg P, Makarov V, Havel JJ, et al. Cancer immunology. Mutational landscape determines sensitivity to PD-1 blockade in non-small cell lung cancer. Science. 2015;348(6230):124–8.
22. Snyder A, Makarov V, Merghoub T, Yuan J, Zaretsky JM, Desrichard A, et al. Genetic basis for clinical response to CTLA-4 blockade in melanoma. N Engl J Med. 2014;371(23):2189–99.
23. Altman JD, Moss PA, Goulder PJ, Barouch DH, McHeyzer-Williams MG, Bell JI, et al. Phenotypic analysis of antigen-specific T lymphocytes. Science. 1996;274(5284):94–6.
24. Melenhorst JJ, Scheinberg P, Chattopadhyay PK, Lissina A, Gostick E, Cole DK, et al. Detection of low avidity CD8(+) T cell populations with coreceptor-enhanced peptide-major histocompatibility complex class I tetramers. J Immunol Methods. 2008;338(1–2):31–9.
25. Chattopadhyay PK, Melenhorst JJ, Ladell K, Gostick E, Scheinberg P, Barrett AJ, et al. Techniques to improve the direct ex vivo detection of low frequency antigen-specific CD8+ T cells with peptide-major histocompatibility complex class I tetramers. Cytometry A. 2008;73(11):1001–9.
26. Wooldridge L, Lissina A, Cole DK, van den Berg HA, Price DA, Sewell AK. Tricks with tetramers: how to get the most from multimeric peptide-MHC. Immunology. 2009;126(2):147–64.
27. Davis MM, Altman JD, Newell EW. Interrogating the repertoire: broadening the scope of peptide-MHC multimer analysis. Nat Rev Immunol. 2011;11(8):551–8.
28. Hadrup SR, Bakker AH, Shu CJ, Andersen RS, van Veluw J, Hombrink P, et al. Parallel detection of antigen-specific T-cell responses by multidimensional encoding of MHC multimers. Nat Methods. 2009;6(7):520–6.
29. Andersen RS, Kvistborg P, Frosig TM, Pedersen NW, Lyngaa R, Bakker AH, et al. Parallel detection of antigen-specific T cell responses by combinatorial encoding of MHC multimers. Nat Protoc. 2012;7(5):891–902.
30. Kvistborg P, Shu CJ, Heemskerk B, Fankhauser M, Thrue CA, Toebes M, et al. TIL therapy broadens the tumor-reactive CD8(+) T cell compartment in melanoma patients. Oncoimmunology. 2012;1(4):409–18.
31. Bentzen AK, Marquard AM, Lyngaa R, Saini SK, Ramskov S, Donia M, et al. Large-scale detection of antigen-specific T cells using peptide-MHC-I multimers labeled with DNA barcodes. Nat Biotechnol. 2016;34(10):1037–45.
32. Slingluff CL Jr, Petroni GR, Olson WC, Smolkin ME, Ross MI, Haas NB, et al. Effect of granulocyte/macrophage colony-stimulating factor on circulating CD8+ and CD4+ T-cell responses to a multipeptide melanoma vaccine: outcome of a multicenter randomized trial. Clin Cancer Res. 2009;15(22):7036–44.
33. Speiser DE, Lienard D, Rufer N, Rubio-Godoy V, Rimoldi D, Lejeune F, et al. Rapid and strong human CD8+ T cell responses to vaccination with peptide, IFA, and CpG oligodeoxynucleotide 7909. J Clin Invest. 2005;115(3):739–46.
34. Coulie PG, Karanikas V, Colau D, Lurquin C, Landry C, Marchand M, et al. A monoclonal cytolytic T-lymphocyte response observed in a melanoma patient vaccinated with a tumor-specific antigenic peptide encoded by gene MAGE-3. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2001;98(18):10290–5.
35. Appay V, Dunbar PR, Callan M, Klenerman P, Gillespie GM, Papagno L, et al. Memory CD8+ T cells vary in differentiation phenotype in different persistent virus infections. Nat Med. 2002;8(4):379–85.
36. Cecconi V, Moro M, Del Mare S, Dellabona P, Casorati G. Use of MHC class II tetramers to investigate CD4+ T cell responses: problems and solutions. Cytometry A. 2008;73(11):1010–8.
37. Widenmeyer M, Griesemann H, Stevanovic S, Feyerabend S, Klein R, Attig S, et al. Promiscuous survivin peptide induces robust CD4+ T-cell responses in the majority of vaccinated cancer patients. Int J Cancer. 2012;131(1):140–9.
38. Welters MJ, Kenter GG, de Vos van Steenwijk PJ, Lowik MJ, Berends-van der Meer DM, Essahsah F, et al. Success or failure of vaccination for HPV16-positive vulvar lesions correlates with kinetics and phenotype of induced T-cell responses. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2010;107(26):11895–9.
39. Zelba H, Weide B, Martens A, Derhovanessian E, Bailur JK, Kyzirakos C, et al. Circulating CD4+ T cells that produce IL4 or IL17 when stimulated by melan-a but not by NY-ESO-1 have negative impacts

on survival of patients with stage IV melanoma. Clin Cancer Res. 2014;20(16):4390–9.
40. Seder RA, Darrah PA, Roederer M. T-cell quality in memory and protection: implications for vaccine design. Nat Rev Immunol. 2008;8(4):247–58.
41. Precopio ML, Betts MR, Parrino J, Price DA, Gostick E, Ambrozak DR, et al. Immunization with vaccinia virus induces polyfunctional and phenotypically distinctive CD8(+) T cell responses. J Exp Med. 2007;204(6):1405–16.
42. Yuan J, Gnjatic S, Li H, Powel S, Gallardo HF, Ritter E, et al. CTLA-4 blockade enhances polyfunctional NY-ESO-1 specific T cell responses in metastatic melanoma patients with clinical benefit. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2008;105(51):20410–5.
43. Bull M, Lee D, Stucky J, Chiu YL, Rubin A, Horton H, et al. Defining blood processing parameters for optimal detection of cryopreserved antigen-specific responses for HIV vaccine trials. J Immunol Methods. 2007;322(1–2):57–69.
44. Lamoreaux L, Roederer M, Koup R. Intracellular cytokine optimization and standard operating procedure. Nat Protoc. 2006;1(3):1507–16.
45. Singh SK, Meyering M, Ramwadhdoebe TH, Stynenbosch LF, Redeker A, Kuppen PJ, et al. The simultaneous ex vivo detection of low-frequency antigen-specific CD4+ and CD8+ T-cell responses using overlapping peptide pools. Cancer Immunol Immunother. 2012;61(11):1953–63.
46. Hermans IF, Silk JD, Yang J, Palmowski MJ, Gileadi U, McCarthy C, et al. The VITAL assay: a versatile fluorometric technique for assessing CTL- and NKT-mediated cytotoxicity against multiple targets in vitro and in vivo. J Immunol Methods. 2004;285(1):25–40.
47. Zaritskaya L, Shurin MR, Sayers TJ, Malyguine AM. New flow cytometric assays for monitoring cell-mediated cytotoxicity. Expert Rev Vaccines. 2010;9(6):601–16.
48. Laske K, Shebzukhov YV, Grosse-Hovest L, Kuprash DV, Khlgatian SV, Koroleva EP, et al. Alternative variants of human HYDIN are novel cancer-associated antigens recognized by adaptive immunity. Cancer Immunol Res. 2013;1(3):190–200.
49. Betts MR, Brenchley JM, Price DA, De Rosa SC, Douek DC, Roederer M, et al. Sensitive and viable identification of antigen-specific CD8+ T cells by a flow cytometric assay for degranulation. J Immunol Methods. 2003;281(1–2):65–78.
50. He L, Hakimi J, Salha D, Miron I, Dunn P, Radvanyi L. A sensitive flow cytometry-based cytotoxic T-lymphocyte assay through detection of cleaved caspase 3 in target cells. J Immunol Methods. 2005;304(1–2):43–59.
51. Lyons AB, Blake SJ, Doherty KV. Flow cytometric analysis of cell division by dilution of CFSE and related dyes. Curr Protoc Cytom. 2013;Chapter 9:Unit9.
52. Soares A, Govender L, Hughes J, Mavakla W, de Kock M, Barnard C, et al. Novel application of Ki67 to quantify antigen-specific in vitro lymphoproliferation. J Immunol Methods. 2010;362(1–2):43–50.
53. Walter S, Weinschenk T, Stenzl A, Zdrojowy R, Pluzanska A, Szczylik C, et al. Multipeptide immune response to cancer vaccine IMA901 after single-dose cyclophosphamide associates with longer patient survival. Nat Med. 2012;18(8):1254–61.
54. Goldeck D, Low I, Shadan NB, Mustafah S, Pawelec G, Larbi A. Multi-parametric phospho-flow cytometry: a crucial tool for T lymphocyte signaling studies. Cytometry A. 2013;83(3):265–72.
55. Wang SF, Fouquet S, Chapon M, Salmon H, Regnier F, Labroquere K, et al. Early T cell signalling is reversibly altered in PD-1+ T lymphocytes infiltrating human tumors. PLoS One. 2011;6(3):e17621.
56. Maino VC, Maecker HT. Cytokine flow cytometry: a multiparametric approach for assessing cellular immune responses to viral antigens. Clin Immunol. 2004;110(3):222–31.
57. Defawe OD, Fong Y, Vasilyeva E, Pickett M, Carter DK, Gabriel E, et al. Optimization and qualification of a multiplex bead array to assess cytokine and chemokine production by vaccine-specific cells. J Immunol Methods. 2012;382(1–2):117–28.
58. Pohla H, Buchner A, Stadlbauer B, Frankenberger B, Stevanovic S, Walter S, et al. High immune response rates and decreased frequencies of regulatory T cells in metastatic renal cell carcinoma patients after tumor cell vaccination. Mol Med. 2012;18:1499–508.
59. Duffy D, Rouilly V, Libri V, Hasan M, Beitz B, David M, et al. Functional analysis via standardized whole-blood stimulation systems defines the boundaries of a healthy immune response to complex stimuli. Immunity. 2014;40(3):436–50.
60. Aubin JE. Autofluorescence of viable cultured mammalian cells. J Histochem Cytochem. 1979;27(1):36–43.
61. Roederer M, Murphy RF. Cell-by-cell autofluorescence correction for low signal-to-noise systems: application to epidermal growth factor endocytosis by 3T3 fibroblasts. Cytometry. 1986;7(6):558–65.
62. Truneh A, Machy P. Detection of very low receptor numbers on cells by flow cytometry using a sensitive staining method. Cytometry. 1987;8(6):562–7.
63. Baumgarth N, Roederer M. A practical approach to multicolor flow cytometry for immunophenotyping. J Immunol Methods. 2000;243(1–2):77–97.
64. Nguyen R, Perfetto S, Mahnke YD, Chattopadhyay P, Roederer M. Quantifying spillover spreading for comparing instrument performance and aiding in multicolor panel design. Cytometry A. 2013;83(3):306–15.
65. Mahnke YD, Roederer M. Optimizing a multicolor immunophenotyping assay. Clin Lab Med. 2007;27(3):469–85.
66. Chromocyte. www.chromocyte.com.
67. FluoroFinder. www.fluorofinder.com.
68. FlowJo Panel Wizard. www.flowjo.com.
69. Lundberg E, Sundberg M, Graslund T, Uhlen M, Svahn HA. A novel method for reproducible fluores-

cent labeling of small amounts of antibodies on solid phase. J Immunol Methods. 2007;322(1–2):40–9.
70. Buchwalow IB, Böcker W. Antibody labeling and the choice of label immunohistochemistry basics and methods. Heidelberg: Springer; 2010. p. 9–12.
71. Roederer M, Tarnok A. OMIPs--orchestrating multiplexity in polychromatic science. Cytometry A. 2010;77(9):811–2.
72. EuroFlow. www.euroflow.org.
73. van Dongen JJ, Lhermitte L, Bottcher S, Almeida J, van der Velden VH, Flores-Montero J, et al. EuroFlow antibody panels for standardized n-dimensional flow cytometric immunophenotyping of normal, reactive and malignant leukocytes. Leukemia. 2012;26(9):1908–75.
74. Perfetto SP, Ambrozak D, Nguyen R, Chattopadhyay PK, Roederer M. Quality assurance for polychromatic flow cytometry using a suite of calibration beads. Nat Protoc. 2012;7(12):2067–79.
75. Bottcher S, van der Velden VHJ, Villamor N, Ritgen M, Flores-Montero J, Murua Escobar H, et al. Lot-to-lot stability of antibody reagents for flow cytometry. J Immunol Methods. 2017.
76. Nomura L, Maino VC, Maecker HT. Standardization and optimization of multiparameter intracellular cytokine staining. Cytometry A. 2008;73(11):984–91.
77. Finak G, Langweiler M, Jaimes M, Malek M, Taghiyar J, Korin Y, et al. Standardizing flow cytometry immunophenotyping analysis from the human immunophenotyping consortium. Sci Rep. 2016;6:20686.
78. van der Velden VH, Flores-Montero J, Perez-Andres M, Martin-Ayuso M, Crespo O, Blanco E, et al. Optimization and testing of dried antibody tube: the EuroFlow LST and PIDOT tubes as examples. J Immunol Methods. 2017.
79. Van Damme N, Baeten D, De Vos M, Demetter P, Elewaut D, Mielants H, et al. Chemical agents and enzymes used for the extraction of gut lymphocytes influence flow cytometric detection of T cell surface markers. J Immunol Methods. 2000;236(1–2):27–35.
80. Singh SK, Tummers B, Schumacher TN, Gomez R, Franken KL, Verdegaal EM, et al. The development of standard samples with a defined number of antigen-specific T cells to harmonize T cell assays: a proof-of-principle study. Cancer Immunol Immunother. 2013;62(3):489–501.
81. Bidmon N, Attig S, Rae R, Schroder H, Omokoko TA, Simon P, et al. Generation of TCR-engineered T cells and their use to control the performance of T cell assays. J Immunol. 2015;194(12):6177–89.
82. Bidmon N, Kind S, Welters MJP, Joseph-Pietras D, Laske K, Maurer D, et al. Development of an RNA-based kit for easy generation of TCR-engineered lymphocytes to control T-cell assay performance. J Immunol Methods. 2018;458:74–82.
83. Fox BA, Schendel DJ, Butterfield LH, Aamdal S, Allison JP, Ascierto PA, et al. Defining the critical hurdles in cancer immunotherapy. J Transl Med. 2011;9(1):214.
84. Britten CM, van der Burg SH, Gouttefangeas C. A framework for T cell assays. Oncotarget. 2015;6(34):35143–4.
85. Kenter GG, Welters MJ, Valentijn AR, Lowik MJ, Berends-van der Meer DM, Vloon AP, et al. Vaccination against HPV-16 oncoproteins for vulvar intraepithelial neoplasia. N Engl J Med. 2009;361(19):1838–47.
86. Rausch S, Gouttefangeas C, Hennenlotter J, Laske K, Walter K, Feyerabend S, et al. Results of a phase 1/2 study in metastatic renal cell carcinoma patients treated with a patient-specific adjuvant multi-peptide vaccine after resection of metastases. Eur Urol Focus. 2017.
87. de Vries IJ, Bernsen MR, Lesterhuis WJ, Scharenborg NM, Strijk SP, Gerritsen MJ, et al. Immunomonitoring tumor-specific T cells in delayed-type hypersensitivity skin biopsies after dendritic cell vaccination correlates with clinical outcome. J Clin Oncol. 2005;23(24):5779–87.
88. Slingluff CL Jr, Petroni GR, Chianese-Bullock KA, Smolkin ME, Hibbitts S, Murphy C, et al. Immunologic and clinical outcomes of a randomized phase II trial of two multipeptide vaccines for melanoma in the adjuvant setting. Clin Cancer Res. 2007;13(21):6386–95.
89. Kirkwood JM, Lee S, Moschos SJ, Albertini MR, Michalak JC, Sander C, et al. Immunogenicity and antitumor effects of vaccination with peptide vaccine+/−granulocyte-monocyte colony-stimulating factor and/or IFN-alpha2b in advanced metastatic melanoma: eastern cooperative oncology group phase II trial E1696. Clin Cancer Res. 2009;15(4):1443–51.
90. Trimble CL, Morrow MP, Kraynyak KA, Shen X, Dallas M, Yan J, et al. Safety, efficacy, and immunogenicity of VGX-3100, a therapeutic synthetic DNA vaccine targeting human papillomavirus 16 and 18 E6 and E7 proteins for cervical intraepithelial neoplasia 2/3: a randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled phase 2b trial. Lancet. 2015;386(10008):2078–88.
91. van Poelgeest MI, Welters MJ, Vermeij R, Stynenbosch LF, Loof NM, Berends-van der Meer DM, et al. Vaccination against oncoproteins of HPV16 for noninvasive vulvar/vaginal lesions: lesion clearance is related to the strength of the T-cell response. Clin Cancer Res. 2016;22(10):2342–50.
92. Scurr M, Pembroke T, Bloom A, Roberts D, Thomson A, Smart K, et al. Effect of modified Vaccinia Ankara-5T4 and low-dose cyclophosphamide on antitumor immunity in metastatic colorectal cancer: a randomized clinical trial. JAMA Oncol. 2017;3(10):e172579.
93. Nishida S, Koido S, Takeda Y, Homma S, Komita H, Takahara A, et al. Wilms tumor gene (WT1) peptide-based cancer vaccine combined with gemcitabine for patients with advanced pancreatic cancer. J Immunother. 2014;37(2):105–14.
94. Horton H, Thomas EP, Stucky JA, Frank I, Moodie Z, Huang Y, et al. Optimization and validation of an

8-color intracellular cytokine staining (ICS) assay to quantify antigen-specific T cells induced by vaccination. J Immunol Methods. 2007;323(1):39–54.
95. Wood B, Jevremovic D, Bene MC, Yan M, Jacobs P, Litwin V. Validation of cell-based fluorescence assays: practice guidelines from the ICSH and ICCS – part V – assay performance criteria. Cytometry B Clin Cytom. 2013;84(5):315–23.
96. Chandran PA, Laske K, Cazaly A, Rusch E, Schmid-Horch B, Rammensee HG, et al. Validation of immunomonitoring methods for application in clinical studies: the HLA-peptide multimer staining assay. Cytometry B Clin Cytom. 2016;94(2):342–53.
97. Britten CM, Gouttefangeas C, Welters MJ, Pawelec G, Koch S, Ottensmeier C, et al. The CIMT-monitoring panel: a two-step approach to harmonize the enumeration of antigen-specific CD8+ T lymphocytes by structural and functional assays. Cancer Immunol Immunother. 2008;57(3):289–302.
98. van der Burg SH, Kalos M, Gouttefangeas C, Janetzki S, Ottensmeier C, Welters MJ, et al. Harmonization of immune biomarker assays for clinical studies. Sci Transl Med. 2011;3(108):108ps44.
99. Scheibenbogen C, Romero P, Rivoltini L, Herr W, Schmittel A, Cerottini JC, et al. Quantitation of antigen-reactive T cells in peripheral blood by IFNgamma-ELISPOT assay and chromium-release assay: a four-Centre comparative trial. J Immunol Methods. 2000;244(1–2):81–9.
100. Cox JH, Ferrari G, Kalams SA, Lopaczynski W, Oden N, D'souza MP. Results of an ELISPOT proficiency panel conducted in 11 laboratories participating in international human immunodeficiency virus type 1 vaccine trials. AIDS Res Hum Retrovir. 2005;21(1):68–81.
101. Jaimes MC, Maecker HT, Yan M, Maino VC, Hanley MB, Greer A, et al. Quality assurance of intracellular cytokine staining assays: analysis of multiple rounds of proficiency testing. J Immunol Methods. 2011;363(2):143–57.
102. Britten CM, Janetzki S, van der Burg SH, Gouttefangeas C, Hoos A. Toward the harmonization of immune monitoring in clinical trials: quo vadis? Cancer Immunol Immunother. 2008;57(3):285–8.
103. European Cancer Immunotherapy Immunoguiding Program. www.CIMT.eu/workgroups/CIP.
104. Mander A, Gouttefangeas C, Ottensmeier C, Welters MJ, Low L, van der Burg SH, et al. Serum is not required for ex vivo IFN-gamma ELISPOT: a collaborative study of different protocols from the European CIMT Immunoguiding program. Cancer Immunol Immunother. 2010;59(4):619–27.
105. Welters MJ, Gouttefangeas C, Ramwadhdoebe TH, Letsch A, Ottensmeier CH, Britten CM, et al. Harmonization of the intracellular cytokine staining assay. Cancer Immunol Immunother. 2012;61(7):967–78.
106. McNeil LKPL, Britten CM, Jaimes M, Maecker H, Odunsi K, Matsuzaki J, Staats JS, Thorpe J, Yuan J, Janetzki S. A harmonized approach to intracellular cytokine staining gating: results from an international multi-consortia proficiency panel conducted by the cancer immunotherapy Consortium (CIC/CRI). Cytometry A. 2013;83(8):728–38.
107. Attig S, Price L, Janetzki S, Kalos M, Pride M, McNeil L, et al. A critical assessment for the value of markers to gate-out undesired events in HLA-peptide multimer staining protocols. J Transl Med. 2011;9:108.
108. Mandruzzato S, Brandau S, Britten CM, Bronte V, Damuzzo V, Gouttefangeas C, et al. Toward harmonized phenotyping of human myeloid-derived suppressor cells by flow cytometry: results from an interim study. Cancer Immunol Immunother. 2016;65(2):161–9.
109. Gouttefangeas C, Chan C, Attig S, Kollgaard TT, Rammensee HG, Stevanovic S, et al. Data analysis as a source of variability of the HLA-peptide multimer assay: from manual gating to automated recognition of cell clusters. Cancer Immunol Immunother. 2015;64(5):585–98.
110. Brazma A, Hingamp P, Quackenbush J, Sherlock G, Spellman P, Stoeckert C, et al. Minimum information about a microarray experiment (MIAME)-toward standards for microarray data. Nat Genet. 2001;29(4):365–71.
111. Minimal Information About Microarray Experiments (MIAME). http://www.mged.org/Workgroups/MIAME/journals.html.
112. Mack SJ, Milius RP, Gifford BD, Sauter J, Hofmann J, Osoegawa K, et al. Minimum information for reporting next generation sequence genotyping (MIRING): guidelines for reporting HLA and KIR genotyping via next generation sequencing. Hum Immunol. 2015;76(12):954–62.
113. Deutsch EW, Ball CA, Berman JJ, Bova GS, Brazma A, Bumgarner RE, et al. Minimum information specification for in situ hybridization and immunohistochemistry experiments (MISFISHIE). Nat Biotechnol. 2008;26(3):305–12.
114. Minimal Information About Cellular Assays (MIACA). http://miaca.Sourceforge.net.
115. Lee JA, Spidlen J, Boyce K, Cai J, Crosbie N, Dalphin M, et al. MIFlowCyt: the minimum information about a Flow Cytometry experiment. Cytometry A. 2008;73(10):926–30.
116. Minimal Information on Biological and Biomedical Investigations (MIBBI).
117. Brazma A, Robinson A, Cameron G, Ashburner M. One-stop shop for microarray data. Nature. 2000;403(6771):699–700.
118. Maecker HT, JP MC Jr, Amos M, Elliott J, Gaigalas A, Wang L, et al. A model for harmonizing flow cytometry in clinical trials. Nat Immunol. 2010;11(11):975–8.
119. Janetzki S, Britten CM, Kalos M, Levitsky HI, Maecker HT, Melief CJ, et al. "MIATA"-minimal information about T cell assays. Immunity. 2009;31(4):527–8.

120. Britten CM, Janetzki S, van der Burg SH, Huber C, Kalos M, Levitsky HI, et al. Minimal information about T cell assays: the process of reaching the community of T cell immunologists in cancer and beyond. Cancer Immunol Immunother. 2011;60(1):15–22.
121. Britten CM, Janetzki S, Butterfield LH, Ferrari G, Gouttefangeas C, Huber C, et al. T cell assays and MIATA: the essential minimum for maximum impact. Immunity. 2012;37(1):1–2.
122. Minimal Information About T-cell Assays (MIATA). www.miataproject.org.
123. Hoos A, Janetzki S, Britten CM. Advancing the field of cancer immunotherapy: MIATA consensus guidelines become available to improve data reporting and interpretation for T-cell immune monitoring. Oncoimmunology. 2012;1(9):1457–9.
124. Butterfield LH, Palucka AK, Britten CM, Dhodapkar MV, Hakansson L, Janetzki S, et al. Recommendations from the iSBTc-SITC/FDA/NCI workshop on immunotherapy biomarkers. Clin Cancer Res. 2011;17(10):3064–76.
125. Oldaker TA. Quality control in clinical flow cytometry. Clin Lab Med. 2007;27(3):671–85. viii
126. Kierstead LS, Dubey S, Meyer B, Tobery TW, Mogg R, Fernandez VR, et al. Enhanced rates and magnitude of immune responses detected against an HIV vaccine: effect of using an optimized process for isolating PBMC. AIDS Res Hum Retrovir. 2007;23(1):86–92.
127. Smith JG, Joseph HR, Green T, Field JA, Wooters M, Kaufhold RM, et al. Establishing acceptance criteria for cell-mediated-immunity assays using frozen peripheral blood mononuclear cells stored under optimal and suboptimal conditions. Clin Vaccine Immunol. 2007;14(5):527–37.
128. McKenna KC, Beatty KM, Vicetti MR, Bilonick RA. Delayed processing of blood increases the frequency of activated CD11b+ CD15+ granulocytes which inhibit T cell function. J Immunol Methods. 2009;341(1–2):68–75.
129. Hilf N, Kuttruff-Coqui S, Frenzel K, Bukur V, Stevanovic S, Gouttefangeas C, et al. Actively personalized vaccination trial for newly diagnosed glioblastoma. Nature. 2019;565(7738):240–5.
130. Maecker HT, Rinfret A, D'Souza P, Darden J, Roig E, Landry C, et al. Standardization of cytokine flow cytometry assays. BMC Immunol. 2005;6:13.
131. Bashashati A, Brinkman RR. A survey of flow cytometry data analysis methods. Adv Bioinforma. 2009;2009:584603.
132. Qiu P. Inferring phenotypic properties from single-cell characteristics. PLoS One. 2012;7(5):e37038.
133. Aghaeepour N, Finak G, Flow CAPC, Consortium D, Hoos H, Mosmann TR, et al. Critical assessment of automated flow cytometry data analysis techniques. Nat Methods. 2013;10(3):228–38.
134. Kvistborg P, Gouttefangeas C, Aghaeepour N, Cazaly A, Chattopadhyay PK, Chan C, et al. Thinking outside the gate: single-cell assessments in multiple dimensions. Immunity. 2015;42(4):591–2.
135. Pedersen NW, Chandran PA, Qian Y, Rebhahn J, Petersen NV, Hoff MD, et al. Automated analysis of flow cytometry data to reduce inter-lab variation in the detection of major histocompatibility complex multimer-binding T cells. Front Immunol. 2017;8:858.
136. White S, Laske K, Welters MJ, Bidmon N, van der Burg SH, Britten CM, et al. Managing multi-center flow cytometry data for immune monitoring. Cancer Inform. 2014;13(Suppl 7):111–22.
137. Chen TJ, Kotecha N. Cytobank: providing an analytics platform for community cytometry data analysis and collaboration. Curr Top Microbiol Immunol. 2014;377:127–57.
138. Finak G, Jiang W, Pardo J, Asare A, Gottardo R. QUAliFiER: an automated pipeline for quality assessment of gated flow cytometry data. BMC Bioinformatics. 2012;13:252.
139. Pyne S, Hu X, Wang K, Rossin E, Lin TI, Maier LM, et al. Automated high-dimensional flow cytometric data analysis. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2009;106(21):8519–24.
140. Chan C, Feng F, Ottinger J, Foster D, West M, Kepler TB. Statistical mixture modeling for cell subtype identification in flow cytometry. Cytometry A. 2008;73A(8):693–701.
141. Lo K, Brinkman RR, Gottardo R. Automated gating of flow cytometry data via robust model-based clustering. Cytometry A. 2008;73(4):321–32.
142. Lin L, Chan C, Hadrup SR, Froesig TM, Wang Q, West M. Hierarchical Bayesian mixture modelling for antigen-specific T-cell subtyping in combinatorially encoded flow cytometry studies. Stat Appl Genet Mol Biol. 2013;12(3):309–31.
143. Cron AGC, Frelinger J, Lin L, Singh SK, Britten CM, Marij JPMJP, van der Burg SH, West M, Chan C. Hierarchical modeling for rare event detection and cell subset alignment across flow cytometry samples. PLoS Comput Biol. 2013;9(7):e1003130.
144. Aghaeepour N, Nikolic R, Hoos HH, Brinkman RR. Rapid cell population identification in flow cytometry data. Cytometry A. 2011;79(1):6–13.
145. Ge Y, Sealfon SC. flowPeaks: a fast unsupervised clustering for flow cytometry data via K-means and density peak finding. Bioinformatics. 2012;28(15):2052–8.
146. Qian Y, Wei C, Eun-Hyung Lee F, Campbell J, Halliley J, Lee JA, et al. Elucidation of seventeen human peripheral blood B-cell subsets and quantification of the tetanus response using a density-based method for the automated identification of cell populations in multidimensional flow cytometry data. Cytometry B Clin Cytom. 2010;78(Suppl 1):S69–82.
147. Scheuermann R, Qian Y, Wei C, Sanz I. ImmPort FLOCK: automated cell population identification in high dimensional flow cytometry data. J Immunol. 2009;182:42–17.

148. Suchard MA, Wang Q, Chan C, Frelinger J, Cron AJ, West M. Understanding GPU programming for statistical computation: studies in massively parallel massive mixtures. J Comput Graph Stat. 2010;19:419–38.
149. Sarkar D, Le Meur N, Gentleman R. Using flowViz to visualize flow cytometry data. Bioinformatics. 2008;24(6):878–9.
150. Qiu P, Simonds EF, Bendall SC, Gibbs KD Jr, Bruggner RV, Linderman MD, et al. Extracting a cellular hierarchy from high-dimensional cytometry data with SPADE. Nat Biotechnol. 2011;29(10):886–91.
151. Amir EA, Davis KL, Tadmor MD, Simonds EF, Levine JH, Bendall SC, et al. viSNE enables visualization of high dimensional single-cell data and reveals phenotypic heterogeneity of leukemia. Nat Biotechnol. 2013;31(6):545–52.
152. Manolopoulou I, Chan C, West M. Selection sampling from large data sets for targeted inference in mixture modeling. Bayesian Anal. 2010;5(3):1–22.
153. Van Gassen S, Callebaut B, Van Helden MJ, Lambrecht BN, Demeester P, Dhaene T, et al. FlowSOM: using self-organizing maps for visualization and interpretation of cytometry data. Cytometry A. 2015;87(7):636–45.
154. van der Maaten L, Hinton G. Visualizing data using t-SNE. J Mach Learn Res. 2008;9:2579–605.
155. van Unen V, Hollt T, Pezzotti N, Li N, Reinders MJT, Eisemann E, et al. Visual analysis of mass cytometry data by hierarchical stochastic neighbour embedding reveals rare cell types. Nat Commun. 2017;8(1):1740.
156. FlowJo. https://www.flowjo.com.
157. FCS Express. https://www.denovosoftware.com.
158. Cytosplore. https://www.cytosplore.org.
159. Bruggner RV, Bodenmiller B, Dill DL, Tibshirani RJ, Nolan GP. Automated identification of stratifying signatures in cellular subpopulations. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2014;111(26):E2770–7.
160. Welters MJP, Ma W, Santegoets S, Goedemans R, Ehsan I, Jordanova ES, et al. Intratumoral HPV16-specific T cells constitute a type I-oriented tumor microenvironment to improve survival in HPV16-driven oropharyngeal cancer. Clin Cancer Res. 2018;24(3):634–47.
161. Lin L, Finak G, Ushey K, Seshadri C, Hawn TR, Frahm N, et al. COMPASS identifies T-cell subsets correlated with clinical outcomes. Nat Biotechnol. 2015;33(6):610–6.
162. Arvaniti E, Claassen M. Sensitive detection of rare disease-associated cell subsets via representation learning. Nat Commun. 2017;8:14825.
163. Chattopadhyay PK, Perfetto SP, Yu J, Roederer M. The use of quantum dot nanocrystals in multicolor flow cytometry. Wiley Interdiscip Rev Nanomed Nanobiotechnol. 2010;2(4):334–48.
164. Chattopadhyay PK, Gaylord B, Palmer A, Jiang N, Raven MA, Lewis G, et al. Brilliant violet fluorophores: a new class of ultrabright fluorescent compounds for immunofluorescence experiments. Cytometry A. 2012;81(6):456–66.
165. Jennings TL, Becker-Catania SG, Triulzi RC, Tao G, Scott B, Sapsford KE, et al. Reactive semiconductor nanocrystals for chemoselective biolabeling and multiplexed analysis. ACS Nano. 2011;5(7):5579–93.
166. Perfetto SP, Chattopadhyay PK, Roederer M. Seventeen-colour flow cytometry: unravelling the immune system. Nat Rev Immunol. 2004;4(8):648–55.
167. Bendall SC, Simonds EF, Qiu P, Amir E, Krutzik PO, Finck R, et al. Single-cell mass cytometry of differential immune and drug responses across a human hematopoietic continuum. Science. 2011;332(6030):687–96.
168. Lichtman A. Tumor immune landscape paintings from the CyTOF period. Sci Immunol. 2017;2:12.
169. Alcantara-Hernandez M, Leylek R, Wagar LE, Engleman EG, Keler T, Marinkovich MP, et al. High-dimensional phenotypic mapping of human dendritic cells reveals interindividual variation and tissue specialization. Immunity. 2017;47(6):1037–50 e6.
170. Mason GM, Lowe K, Melchiotti R, Ellis R, de Rinaldis E, Peakman M, et al. Phenotypic complexity of the human regulatory T cell compartment revealed by mass cytometry. J Immunol. 2015;195(5):2030–7.
171. Brodin P, Jojic V, Gao T, Bhattacharya S, Angel CJ, Furman D, et al. Variation in the human immune system is largely driven by non-heritable influences. Cell. 2015;160(1–2):37–47.
172. van Unen V, Li N, Molendijk I, Temurhan M, Hollt T, van der Meulen-de Jong AE, et al. Mass cytometry of the human mucosal immune system identifies tissue- and disease-associated immune subsets. Immunity. 2016;44(5):1227–39.
173. Leipold MD, Obermoser G, Fenwick C, Kleinstuber K, Rashidi N, McNevin JP, et al. Comparison of CyTOF assays across sites: results of a six-center pilot study. J Immunol Methods. 2017;453:37–43.
174. Subrahmanyam PB, Maecker HT. CyTOF measurement of immunocompetence across major immune cell types. Curr Protoc Cytom. 2017;82:9 54 1–9 12.

Index

N. Rezaei (ed.), *Cancer Immunology*, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-30845-2

I